KYOCERA

TASKalfa 6501i
TASKalfa 8001i

SERVICE MANUAL

Published in July 2016
2N7SM067
Rev. 7

CAUTION

RISK OF EXPLOSION IF BATTERY IS REPLACED BY AN INCORRECT TYPE. DISPOSE OF USED BATTERIES ACCORDING TO THE INSTRUCTIONS.

It may be illegal to dispose of this battery into the municipal waste stream. Check with your local solid waste officials for details in your area for proper disposal.

ATTENTION

IL Y A UN RISQUE D'EXPLOSION SI LA BATTERIE EST REMPLACEE PAR UN MODELE DE TYPE INCORRECT. METTRE AU REBUT LES BATTERIES UTILISEES SELON LES INSTRUCTIONS DONNEES.

Il peut être illégal de jeter les batteries dans des eaux d'égout municipales. Vérifiez avec les fonctionnaires municipaux de votre région pour les détails concernant des déchets solides et une mise au rebut appropriée.

Revision history

Revision	Date	Replaced pages	Remarks
1	September 27, 2013	Contents,1-2-3,1-2-27,1-2-28,1-2-35,1-2-47,1-2-74, 1-2-103,1-3-8,1-3-27,1-3-145,1-3-166,1-3-167,1-3-176, 1-3-177,1-3-192,1-3-194,1-4-4,1-4-24,1-4-25,1-4-108, 1-4-151,1-4-152,1-5-18,1-5-21,1-5-64,1-5-80,1-5-115, 2-1-5,2-1-6,2-1-32,2-1-33,2-2-15,2-2-16,2-3-32 to 2-3-35,2-3-81,2-3-83,2-3-88,2-4-1,2-4-2,2-4-4 to 2-4-9, 2-4-11 to 2-4-13,,2-4-41	-
2	October 31, 2013	Contents,1-1-3,1-1-4,1-1-12,1-1-13,1-2-5,1-2-12, 1-2-94,1-2-95,1-2-113 to 1-2-121,1-3-194,1-4-136, 1-5-60 to 1-5-62,1-5-72,2-4-4 to 2-4-8,2-4-10,2-4-12, 2-4-13,2-4-15 to 2-4-17,2-4-27 to 2-4-36	-
3	January 17,2014	Contents,1-1-1,1-2-26,1-2-104,1-3-5,1-3-29,1-3-92 to 1-3-94,1-3-115,1-3-152 to 1-3-160,1-3-164 to 1-3-172, 1-4-59,1-4-154 to 1-4-158,1-4-244,1-5-57,1-5-137	-
4	March 19,2014	1-1-13,1-2-1,1-2-31 to 1-2-33,1-3-2,1-3-8,1-3-42, 1-3-85,1-3-86,1-3-129,1-3-130,1-3-153,1-3-163, 1-3-176,1-3-177,1-3-193,1-4-9,1-4-155 to 1-4-158, 1-4-220,1-5-81,1-5-137,1-6-1,1-6-2,2-4-14	-
5	May 15,2014	1-2-32,1-3-29,1-3-85,1-3-201,1-4-63,1-6-1,1-6-2	-
6	April 28,2015	1-3-18, 1-3-22, 1-3-81, 1-4-152, 1-4-245 to 1-4-251, 1-5-41 to 1-5-43	-

Revision	Date	Pages	Revised contents
7	11 July 2016	1-2-75 to 1-2-77	Correction: Position of the wire saddles

This page is intentionally left blank.

Safety precautions

This booklet provides safety warnings and precautions for our service personnel to ensure the safety of their customers, their machines as well as themselves during maintenance activities. Service personnel are advised to read this booklet carefully to familiarize themselves with the warnings and precautions described here before engaging in maintenance activities.

Safety warnings and precautions

Various symbols are used to protect our service personnel and customers from physical danger and to prevent damage to their property. These symbols are described below:

⚠**DANGER:** High risk of serious bodily injury or death may result from insufficient attention to or incorrect compliance with warning messages using this symbol.

⚠**WARNING:** Serious bodily injury or death may result from insufficient attention to or incorrect compliance with warning messages using this symbol.

⚠**CAUTION:** Bodily injury or damage to property may result from insufficient attention to or incorrect compliance with warning messages using this symbol.

Symbols

The triangle (△) symbol indicates a warning including danger and caution. The specific point of attention is shown inside the symbol.

 General warning.

 Warning of risk of electric shock.

 Warning of high temperature.

⃠ indicates a prohibited action. The specific prohibition is shown inside the symbol.

 General prohibited action.

 Disassembly prohibited.

● indicates that action is required. The specific action required is shown inside the symbol.

 General action required.

 Remove the power plug from the wall outlet.

 Always ground the copier.

1. Installation Precautions

⚠ WARNING

- Do not use a power supply with a voltage other than that specified. Avoid multiple connections to one outlet: they may cause fire or electric shock. When using an extension cable, always check that it is adequate for the rated current. .....

- Connect the ground wire to a suitable grounding point. Not grounding the copier may cause fire or electric shock. Connecting the earth wire to an object not approved for the purpose may cause explosion or electric shock. Never connect the ground cable to any of the following: gas pipes, lightning rods, ground cables for telephone lines and water pipes or faucets not approved by the proper authorities. .....

⚠ CAUTION:

- Do not place the copier on an infirm or angled surface: the copier may tip over, causing injury. .....

- Do not install the copier in a humid or dusty place. This may cause fire or electric shock. .....

- Do not install the copier near a radiator, heater, other heat source or near flammable material. This may cause fire. .....

- Allow sufficient space around the copier to allow the ventilation grills to keep the machine as cool as possible. Insufficient ventilation may cause heat buildup and poor copying performance. .....

- Always handle the machine by the correct locations when moving it. .....

- Always use anti-toppling and locking devices on copiers so equipped. Failure to do this may cause the copier to move unexpectedly or topple, leading to injury. .....

- Avoid inhaling toner or developer excessively. Protect the eyes. If toner or developer is accidentally ingested, drink a lot of water to dilute it in the stomach and obtain medical attention immediately. If it gets into the eyes, rinse immediately with copious amounts of water and obtain medical attention. .....

- Advice customers that they must always follow the safety warnings and precautions in the copier's instruction handbook. .....

2. Precautions for Maintenance

⚠WARNING

- Always remove the power plug from the wall outlet before starting machine disassembly. 
- Always follow the procedures for maintenance described in the service manual and other related brochures. 
- Under no circumstances attempt to bypass or disable safety features including safety mechanisms and protective circuits. 
- Always use parts having the correct specifications. 
- Always use the thermostat or thermal fuse specified in the service manual or other related brochure when replacing them. Using a piece of wire, for example, could lead to fire or other serious accident. 
- When the service manual or other serious brochure specifies a distance or gap for installation of a part, always use the correct scale and measure carefully. 
- Always check that the copier is correctly connected to an outlet with a ground connection. 
- Check that the power cable covering is free of damage. Check that the power plug is dust-free. If it is dirty, clean it to remove the risk of fire or electric shock. 
- Never attempt to disassemble the optical unit in machines using lasers. Leaking laser light may damage eyesight. 
- Handle the charger sections with care. They are charged to high potentials and may cause electric shock if handled improperly. 

⚠CAUTION

- Wear safe clothing. If wearing loose clothing or accessories such as ties, make sure they are safely secured so they will not be caught in rotating sections. 
- Use utmost caution when working on a powered machine. Keep away from chains and belts. 
- Handle the fixing section with care to avoid burns as it can be extremely hot. 
- Check that the fixing unit thermistor, heat and press rollers are clean. Dirt on them can cause abnormally high temperatures. 

- Do not remove the ozone filter, if any, from the copier except for routine replacement. .....

- Do not pull on the AC power cord or connector wires on high-voltage components when removing them; always hold the plug itself. .....

- Do not route the power cable where it may be stood on or trapped. If necessary, protect it with a cable cover or other appropriate item. .....

- Treat the ends of the wire carefully when installing a new charger wire to avoid electric leaks. .....

- Remove toner completely from electronic components. .....

- Run wire harnesses carefully so that wires will not be trapped or damaged. .....

- After maintenance, always check that all the parts, screws, connectors and wires that were removed, have been refitted correctly. Special attention should be paid to any forgotten connector, trapped wire and missing screws. .....

- Check that all the caution labels that should be present on the machine according to the instruction handbook are clean and not peeling. Replace with new ones if necessary. .....

- Handle greases and solvents with care by following the instructions below: .....
  · Use only a small amount of solvent at a time, being careful not to spill. Wipe spills off completely.
  · Ventilate the room well while using grease or solvents.
  · Allow applied solvents to evaporate completely before refitting the covers or turning the power switch on.
  · Always wash hands afterwards.

- Never dispose of toner or toner bottles in fire. Toner may cause sparks when exposed directly to fire in a furnace, etc. .....

- Should smoke be seen coming from the copier, remove the power plug from the wall outlet immediately. .....

3. Miscellaneous

⚠WARNING

- Never attempt to heat the drum or expose it to any organic solvents such as alcohol, other than the specified refiner; it may generate toxic gas. .....

- Keep the machine away from flammable liquids, gases, and aerosols. A fire or an electric shock might occur. .....

This page is intentionally left blank.

CONTENTS

1-5 Assembly and disassembly

2-4 Appendixes

INSTALLATION GUIDE

1-1-1 Specifications

Machine

Item		Specifications	
		65 ppm	80 ppm
Type		Console	
Printing method		Electrophotography by semiconductor laser	
Paper weight	Cassette 1,2	60 to 256 g/m^2	
	Cassette 3,4	60 to 256 g/m^2	
	Multi Purpose tray	60 to 300 g/m^2	
Paper type	Cassette 1, 2	Plain, Rough, Vellum, Recycled, Preprinted, Bond, Color (Colour), Prepunched, Letterhead, Thick, High Quality, Custom 1 to 8(Duplex: Same as simplex)	
	Cassette 3, 4	Same as cassette 1,2	
	Multi Purpose tray	Plain, Transparency (OHP film), Rough, Vellum, Labels, Recycled, Preprinted, Bond, Cardstock, Color (Colour), Prepunched, Letterhead, Thick, Coated, Envelope, High Quality, Index Tab Dividers, Custom 1 to 8	
Paper size	Cassette 1, 2	A3, B4, A4, A4R, B5, B5R, A5R, Ledger, Legal, Oficio II, 12 × 18", Letter, LetterR, Statement-R, Folio, 8K, 16K, 16K-R, 216 × 340mm, Size Entry (Metric: X; 182 to 457 mm (in 1 mm increments), Y; 140 to 304 mm (in 1 mm increments), Inch: X; 7.17 to 18.00" (in 0.01" increments), Y; 5.51 to 12.00" (in 0.01" increments))	
	Cassette 3, 4	A4, B5, Letter	
	Multi Purpose tray	A3, B4, A4, A4R, B5, B5 (ISO), B5R, A5R, B6R, A6R, Return postcard, Postcards, Envelope DL, Envelope C5, Envelope C4, Envelope #10 (Commercial #10), Envelope #9 (Commercial #9), Envelope #6 (Commercial #6 3/4), Envelope Monarch, Youkei 2, Youkei 4, Ledger, Legal, Oficio II, 12 × 18", Letter, LetterR, Statement-R, Executive, Folio, 216 × 340mm, 8K, 16K, 16KR, Custom (98 ×148 mm to 304.8 × 1,220 mm)	
Warm-up time (22 °C/71.6 °F, 60% RH)	Power on	30 s or less	
	Low Power	20 s or less	
	Sleep	30 s or less	
Paper capacity	Cassette 1, 2	550 sheets (64 g/m^2) 500 sheets (80 g/m^2)	
	Cassette 3, 4	1750 sheets (64 g/m^2) 1500 sheets (80 g/m^2)	
	MP tray	A4/Letter or less 165 sheets (64 g/m^2) 150 sheets (80 g/m^2) More than A4/Letter 55 sheets (64 g/m^2) 50 sheets (80 g/m^2)	

Item		Specifications	
		65 ppm	80 ppm
Output tray capacity	Lower left tray	275 sheets (64 g/m²) 250 sheets (80 g/m²)	
	Upper left tray	110 sheets (64 g/m²) 100 sheets (80 g/m²)	
	Right tray	70 sheets (64 g/m²) 70 sheets (80 g/m²)	
Light source		LED	
Scanning system		Flat bed scanning by CCD image sensor	
Photoconductor		a-Si (drum diameter 40 mm)	
Image write system		Semiconductor laser	
Charging system		Charger roller	
Developing system		Touch down developing system Developer: 2-component Toner replenishing: Automatic from the toner container and toner hopper	
Transfer system		Belt + roller	
Separation system		Small diameter separation, Separation electrode	
Cleaning system		Drum: Counter blade, Cleaning roller Transfer belt: Fur brush	
Charge erasing system		Exposure by cleaning lamp (LED)	
Fusing system		Single-axle belt support fusing system Heat source: IH (belt), Halogen heater (press roller) Abnormally high temperature protection devices: thermostat	
CPU		Freescale QorIQ P1022 (Dual Core) 1067MHz	
Memory		3GB	
Hard Disk		160 GB or more	
Interface	Standard	USB Interface Connector: 1 (USB Hi-Speed) Network interface: 1 (10 BASE-T/100 BASE-TX/1000 BASE-T) USB Port: 4 (Hi-Speed USB)	
	Option	Fax (e-KUIO): 2 Network interface: 1 (10 BASE-T/100 BASE-TX/1000 BASE-T) A maximum of two interface options can be installed. Only one network interface can be installed. When a network interface is installed, only one fax line can be installed.	
Operating environment	Temperature	10 to 32.5 °C/ 50 to 90.5 °F	
	Humidity	15 to 80% RH	
	Altitude	2,500 m/ 8,202 ft or less	
	Brightness	1,500 lux or less	
Dimensions (W × D × H)	Machine only	1039 × 801 × 1347 mm 40 57/64 × 31 17/32 × 53 1/64”	
Space required (W × D)		1039 × 801 mm (using MP tray) 40 57/64 × 31 17/32” (using MP tray)	

Item	Specifications	
	65 ppm	80 ppm
Weight	155 kg / 341.7 lb (with toner container)	
Rated input	120 V Specification Model: 120 V AC 60 Hz 16.0 A (IH) 230 V Specification Model: 220 to 240 V AC 50/60 Hz 9.5 A	
Options	Side deck, Side multi tray, Side paper feeder, Side large capacity feeder, 4000-sheet finisher, Center-folding unit, Mailbox, Punch unit, Key counter, Fax kit, Expansion memory for Fax, Internet fax kit, Data security kit, Printed document guard kit, Emulation option kit, Gigabit ethernet board, Wire-less interface kit, IC card reader holder, Keyboard holder, Copy tray and Banner Tray	

Copy functions

Item	Specifications	
	65 ppm	80 ppm
Copying speed	A4 : 65 ppm Letter : 65 ppm A4R : 45 ppm LetterR : 45 ppm A3 : 32 ppm Ledger : 32 ppm B4 : 39 ppm Legal : 39 ppm B5 : 65 ppm B5R : 45 ppm A5R : 32 ppm	A4 : 80 ppm Letter : 80 ppm A4R : 56 ppm LetterR : 56 ppm A3 : 40 ppm Ledger : 40 ppm B4 : 48 ppm Legal : 48 ppm B5 : 80 ppm B5R : 56 ppm A5R : 40 ppm
First copy time (A4, feed from cassette)	5.2 s or less	4.7 s or less
Zoom level	Manual mode : 25 to 400%, 1% increments Auto mode : Preset zoom	
Continuous copying	1 to 9999 sheets	
Resolution	600 × 600 dpi	
Originals	Sheet, Book, 3-dimensional objects (maximum original size: Leger/ A3)	
Original feed system	Fixed	

Printer functions

Item	Specifications	
	65 ppm	80 ppm
Printing speed	A4 : 65 ppm Letter : 65 ppm A3 : 32 ppm Ledger : 32 ppm	A4 : 80 ppm Letter : 80 ppm A3 : 40 ppm Ledger : 40 ppm
First print time* (A4, feed from cassette)	5.8 s or less	5.4 s or less
Resolution	600 x 600 dpi	
Operating system	Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows 8, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2012, Macintosh OS 10.x	
Interface	USB interface connector: 1 (USB Hi-speed) Network interface: 1 (10BASE-T/100BASE-TX/1000BASE-T) Option interface (option): 1 * : Gigabit ethernet board, Wireless interface board	
Page description language	PRESCRIBE	
Emulation	PCL6 (PCL5c, PCL-XL), KPDL3 (PostScript3 compatible), XPS	

* : Excluding time for system stabilization immediately after turning on the main power.

Scanner functions

Item		Specifications
Resolution		600 dpi, 400 dpi, 300 dpi, 200 dpi, 200 ×100 dpi, 200 × 400 dpi (Resolution in FAX mode included)
File format		PDF (high compression, encrypted, PDF/A), JPEG, TIFF, XPS
Scanning speed (A4 landscape, 300 dpi, Image quality: Text/Photo original)*1	Simplex	B/W: 100 images/min Color: 70 images/min
	Duplex	B/W : 180 images/min Color: 100 images/min
Interface		Ethernet (10 BASE-T/100 BASE-TX/1000 BASE-T)
Network protocol		TCP/IP
Transmission system		SMB, SMTP, FTP, FTP over SSL, USB, TWAIN scan*2, WIA scan*3, WSD

*1 When using the document processor (except TWAIN and WIA scanning)
*2 Available operating system: Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Vista, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows 7, Windows Server 2012
*3 Available operating system: Windows Vista, Windows Server 2003, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows 7, Windows Server 2012

Document processor

Item		Specifications	
		Document Processor (Dual scan DP)	
Original Feed Method		Automatic feed	
Supported Original Types		Sheet originals	
Paper Size	Maximum	Ledger/ A3	
	Minimum	Statement-R /A6-R	
Paper Weight	1-sided	35 to 220 g/m^2	35 to 220 g/m^2 (B6R or less)
	2-sided	50 to 220 g/m^2	
Loading Capacity		270 sheets (50 to 80 g/m^2) maximum When originals have different widths, Mixed original sizes (auto selection): 30 sheets (50 to 80 g/m^2) maximum	

Side Feeder (500-sheet x 3) (Option)

Item		Specifications
Paper Supply Method		Feed & reverse roller method (No. Sheets: 500, 80 g/m^2, 3 cassettes/No. Sheets: 550, 64 g/m^2, 3 cassettes)
Paper Size		A3, B4, A4, A4-R, B5, B5-R, A5-R, Folio, Ledger, Legal, Oficio II, 12 × 18", Letter, Letter-R, Statement-R, 8K, 16K, 16K-R, 216 × 340 mm
Supported Paper	Paper weight	60 to 256 g/m^2
	Media types	Plain, Recycled, Thick, Coated*
Dimensions (W × D × H)		23 35/64 × 28 11/32 × 21 7/64” 598 × 720 × 536 mm
Weight		Approx. 114.6 lbs. / Approx. 52 kg

*: Only Cassette 5 can be used.

Large Capacity Side Feeder (500, 1,500-sheet x 2) (Option)

Item		Specifications
Paper Supply Method		Feed & reverse roller method (No. Sheets: 500 sheets (80 g/m^2) × 1 cassette, 1,500 sheets (80 g/m^2) × 2 cassettes/No. Sheets: 550 sheets (64 g/m^2) × 1 cassette, 1,750 sheets (64 g/m^2) × 2 cassettes)
Paper Size	**Cassette 5**	A3, B4, A4, A4-R, B5, B5-R, A5-R, Folio, Ledger, Legal, Oficio II, 12 × 18", Letter, Letter-R, Statement-R, 8K, 16K, 16K-R, 216 × 340 mm
	Cassette 6, 7	A4, B5, Letter
Supported Paper	**Paper weight**	60 to 256 g/m^2
	Media types	Plain, Recycled, Thick, Coated*
Dimensions (W × D × H)		23 35/64 × 28 11/32 × 21 7/64” 598 × 720 × 536 mm
Weight		Approx. 112.4 lbs / Approx. 51 kg

*: Only the cassette 5 is available.

Side Feeder (3,000-sheet) (Option)

Item		Specifications
Paper Supply Method		Feed & reverse roller method (No. Sheets: 3,000, 80 g/m^2/No. Sheets: 3,500 64 g/m^2)
Paper Size		A4, B5, Letter
Supported Paper	**Paper weight**	60 to 300 g/m^2
	Media types	Plain, Recycled, Thick
Dimensions (W × D × H)		12 41/64 × 24 13/32 × 19 27/32” 321 × 620 × 504 mm
Weight		Approx. 55.1 lbs. / Approx. 25 kg

4,000-sheet Finisher (Option)

Item		Specifications	
Type		Floor model	
Number of trays		Three tray	
Paper weight		45 to 300 g/m^2	
Tray capacity	**Main Try (Try A) When not stapling**	A3, B4, B5R,Ledger, Legal, 12 × 18", 8K, 13 × 19", A3 Wide (310 × 433mm), Ledger Wide (310 × 440mm), Foolscape, Oficio II, 216 × 340 mm, Custom (Cassette feeding: 140 × 182 mm to 305 × 458 mm): 1500 sheets A4, A4R, B5, Letter, Letter-R,16K,16KR,Folio, Executive-R, Index Tab Dividers: 4000 sheets ***** A5R, B6R,Statement R: 500 sheets	
	Sub Try left (Try B)	A3, B4, A4, A4R, B5, B5(ISO), B5R, A5R, A6R, B6R, Folio, Ledger, Legal, 12×18", 8K, Letter, 13×19", Letter-R, Statement-R, 16K, 16K-R, Executive-R, Oficio II, 216 × 340 mm, Cardstock, Oufuku hagaki, A3 Wide (310 × 433mm), Ledger Wide (310 × 440mm), Foolscape, Index Tab Dividers, Envelope C4, Custom (Cassette feeding: 140 × 182 mm to 305 × 458 mm, Multipurpose tray feeding: 98 × 148 mm to 297 × 432 mm): 200 sheets	
	Sub Try right (Try C)	A4, B5, B5 (ISO), B5R, B6R,A5R, A6R, Letter, Statement-R, 16K:100 sheets Cardstock, Oufuku hagaki, Envelope DL, Envelope C5, Envelope #10 (Commercial #10), Envelope #9 (Commercial #9), Envelope #6 (Commercial #6 3/4), Envelope Monarch, Youkei 2, Youkei 4, Index Tab Dividers, Bnner: (98 × 470.1 mm to 297 × 1220 mm), Custom (98 ×148 mm to 304.8 × 1,220 mm)	
Stapling	**Maximum Number**	A3, B4, B5R, Ledger, Legal, Oficio II, 12 × 18", 216 × 340 mm, Folio, 8K,16K-R	30 sheets (52 to 90 g/m^2) 30 sheets (91 to 105 g/m^2) 2 cover sheet only (106 g/m^2 to 256 g/m^2)
		A4, A4R, B5, Letter, Letter-R, 16K	70 sheets (52 to 74 g/m^2) 65 sheets (75 to 90 g/m^2) 55 sheets (91 to 105 g/m^2) 2 cover sheet only (106 g/m^2 to 256 g/m^2)
	Media types	Plain, Recycled, Prepunched, Preprinted, Bond, Letterhead, Color (Colour), Coated, Thick, High Quality, Custom 1 to 8	
Power source		Electrically connected to the machine	
Dimensions (W × D × H)		607.2 ×668.5 ×1061.3 mm 23 29/32 × 26 5/16 × 41 25/32”	
Weight		Approx. 40 kg / Approx. 88.2 lb or less	

* : When center-folding unit installed,3000 sheets.

Punch unit (option)

Item		Specifications
Paper size	2 Hole	A3, A4, A4R, A5R, B4, B5, B5R, Letter, Letter-R,Ledger, Legal, 12 × 18", Statement-R, Folio, 8K, 16K,16K-R
	3 Hole, 4 Hole	A3, A4, Letter, Ledger, Legal, 12 × 18", 8K, 16K
Paper weight		45 to 300 g/m^2
Media types		Plain, Preprinted, Bond, Recycled, Rough, Letterhead, Color (Colour), Thick, Coated, High Quality, Custom 1 to 8

Mail box (option)

Item	Specifications
Number of trays	7 trays
Paper size (80 g/m^2)	A3, B4, Ledger, Legal: 50 sheets A4, A4R, B5, B5R, A5R, Foolscap, Letter, Letter-R, 216 × 340 mm, Executive, Executive-R, Folio, 8K,16K, 16K-R, Statement-R, Oficio II: 100 sheets
Dimensions (W × D × H)	510 x 400 x 470 mm 20 1/16” x 15 3/4” x 18 1/2”
Weight	Approx. 10 kg/ 22 lbs

Center-folding unit (option)

Item		Specifications
Sizes	Bi-Fold	A3, B4, A4R, Ledger, Legal, Letter-R, Oficio II, 8K
	Saddle Stitch	A3, B4, A4R, Ledger, Legal, Letter-R, Oficio II, 8K
	Tri-Fold	A4R, Letter-R
Number of sheets	Bi-Fold	5 sheets (60 to 90 g/m^2) 3 sheets (91 to 120 g/m^2) 1 sheet (121 to 256 g/m^2)
	Saddle Stitch	16 sheets (60 to 90 g/m^2) 13 sheets (91 to 105 g/m^2) 1 cover sheet only (106 to 256 g/m^2)
	Tri-Fold	5 sheets (60 to 90 g/m^2) 3 sheets (91 to 120 g/m^2)
Maximum number for storage (80 g/m^2)	Bi-Fold	5 sheets or less per set: 30 sets or more 6 to 10 sheets per set: 20 sets or more 11 to 16 sheets per set: 10 sets or more.
	Saddle Stitch	5 sheets or less per set: 30 sets or more 6 to 10 sheets per set: 20 sets or more 11 to 16 sheets per set: 10 sets or more.
	Tri-Fold	1 sheet per set: 30 sets or more 2 to 5 sheets per set: 5 sets or more.

Item		Specifications
Media types	Bi-Fold	Plain, Recycled, Thick, Coated, Bond, Prepunched, Preprinted, Color (Colour), High Quality, Letterhead, Custom 1 to 8
	Saddle Stitch	Plain, Recycled, Thick, Coated, Bond, Prepunched, Preprinted, Color (Colour), High Quality, Letterhead, Custom 1 to 8
	Tri-Fold	Plain, Recycled, Coated, Bond, Prepunched, Preprinted, Color (Colour), High Quality, Letterhead, Custom 1 to 8

Banner Tray (Option)

Item		Specifications
Max. number of sheets		10 sheets (Multi Purpose tray)
Paper length		210 (8.26") to 304.8 (12") mm
Paper weight		Max. 1220 (48 1/64") mm
Paper Type	Paper weight	136 to 163 g/m^2
	Media types	Heavy 2
Dimensions (W × D × H)		9 27/32 × 14 23/32 × 5 63/64” 250 × 374 × 152 mm
Weight		Approx. 0.78 lbs. / Approx. 0.352 kg

NOTE: These specifications are subject to change without notice.

1-1-2 Parts names

(1) Machine

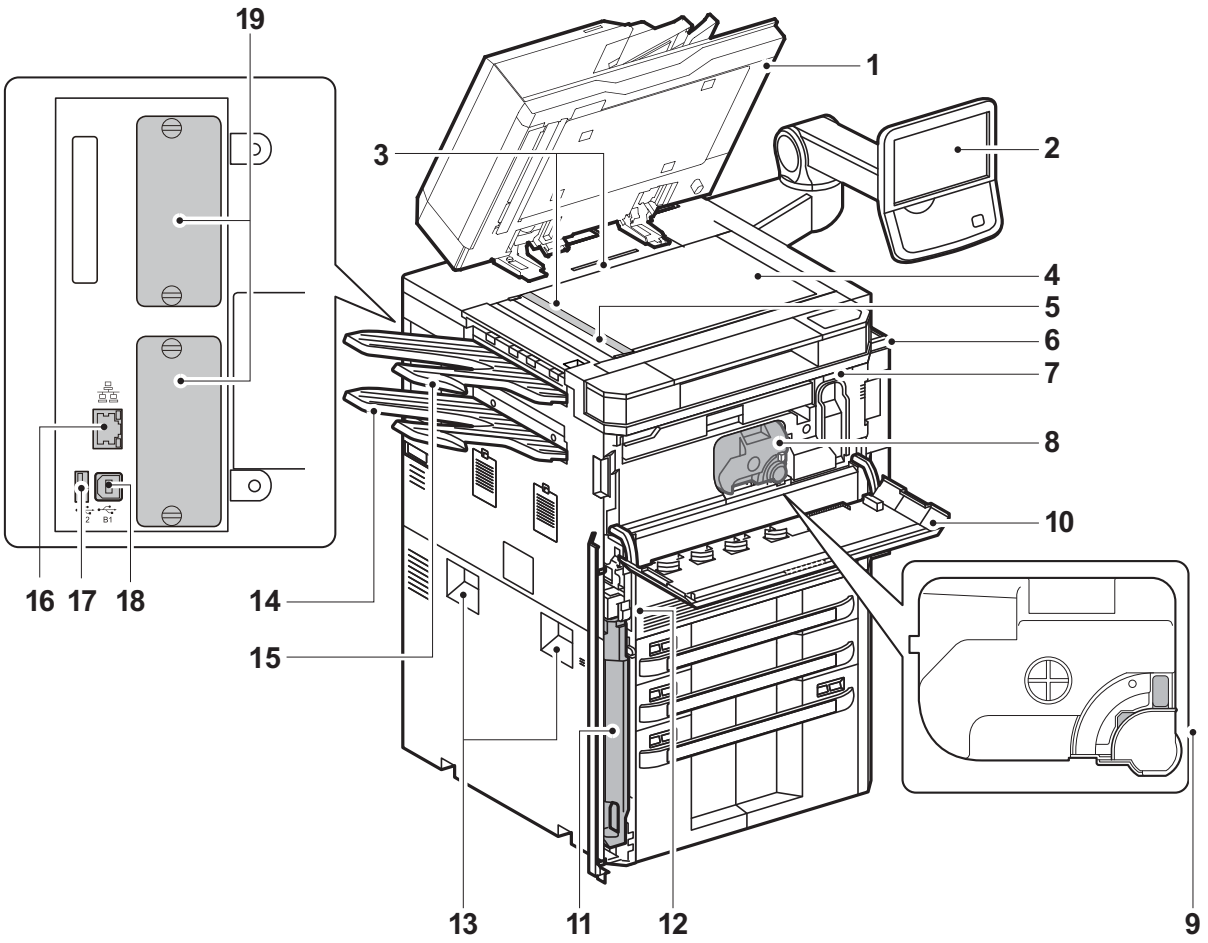


Figure 1-1-1

1. Document processor
2. Operation panel
3. Original size indicator plate
4. Platen (Contact glass)
5. Slit glass
6. Clip holder
7. Cleaning Brush
8. Toner container
9. Toner container release lever
10. Front upper cover
11. Waste toner box
12. Release button
13. Handles
14. Left lower tray
15. Left upper tray
16. Network interface connector
17. USB port
18. USB interface connector
19. Option interface

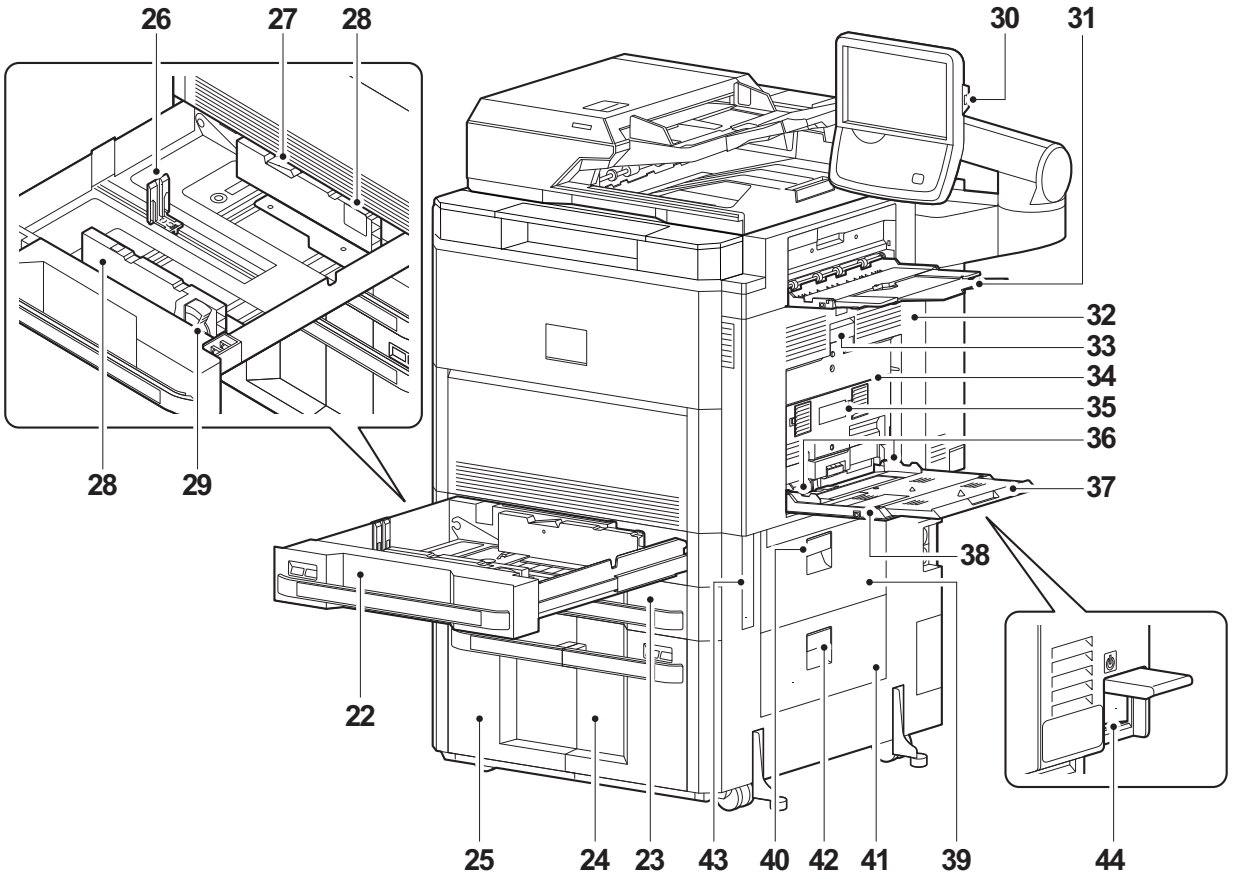


Figure 1-1-2

20. Cassette 1
21. Cassette 2
22. Cassette 3
23. Cassette 4
24. Paper length guide
25. Guide lock lever
26. Paper width guides
27. Paper width adjusting tab
28. USB port
29. Right tray
30. Paper conveying unit
31. Paper conveying unit lever
32. Duplex cover
33. Duplex cover lever
34. MP paper width guides
35. MP support Tray
36. MP (Multi-Purpose) tray
37. Paper conveying cover
38. Paper conveying cover lever
39. PF paper conveying cover
40. PF paper conveying cover lever
41. Handle
42. Main power switch

(2) Option

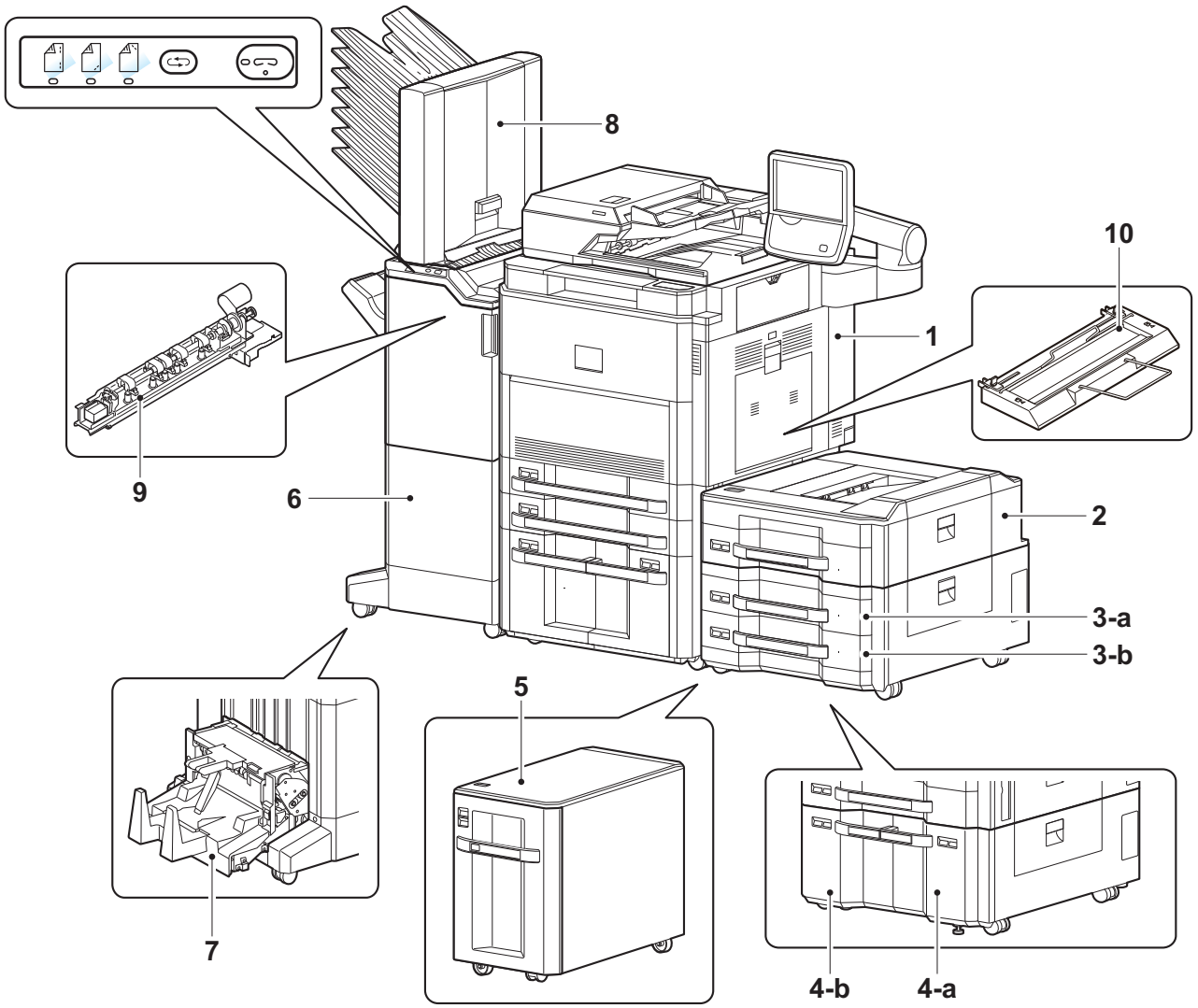


Figure 1-1-3

1. Machine
2. Side multi tray
   Cassette 5
3. Side paper feeder
   a: Cassette 6
   b: Cassette 7
4. Side large capacity feeder
   a: Cassette 6
   b: Cassette 7
5. Side deck
   Cassette 5
6. 4000-sheet finisher
7. Center-folding unit
8. Mailbox
9. Punch unit
10. Banner Tray

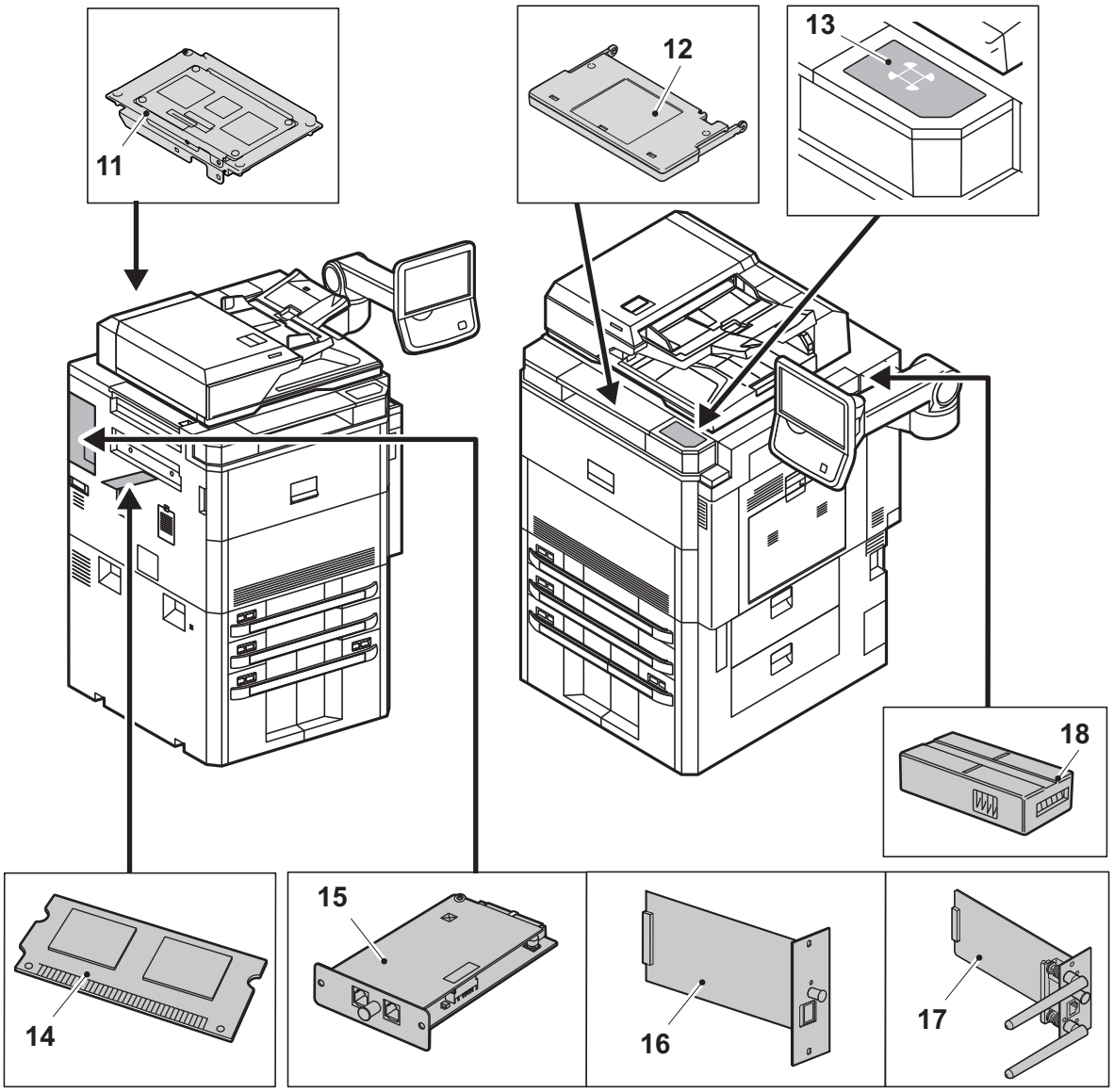


Figure 1-1-4

11. Printed document guard kit
12. Keyboard holder
13. IC card reader holder
14. Expansion memory for Fax
15. Fax kit
16. Gigabit ethernet board
17. Wire-less interface kit
18. Key counter

Software option

1. Data Security Kit
2. Internet FAX Kit
3. Card Authentication Kit
4. ThinPrint Option
5. Emulation Upgrade Kit

(3) Operation panel

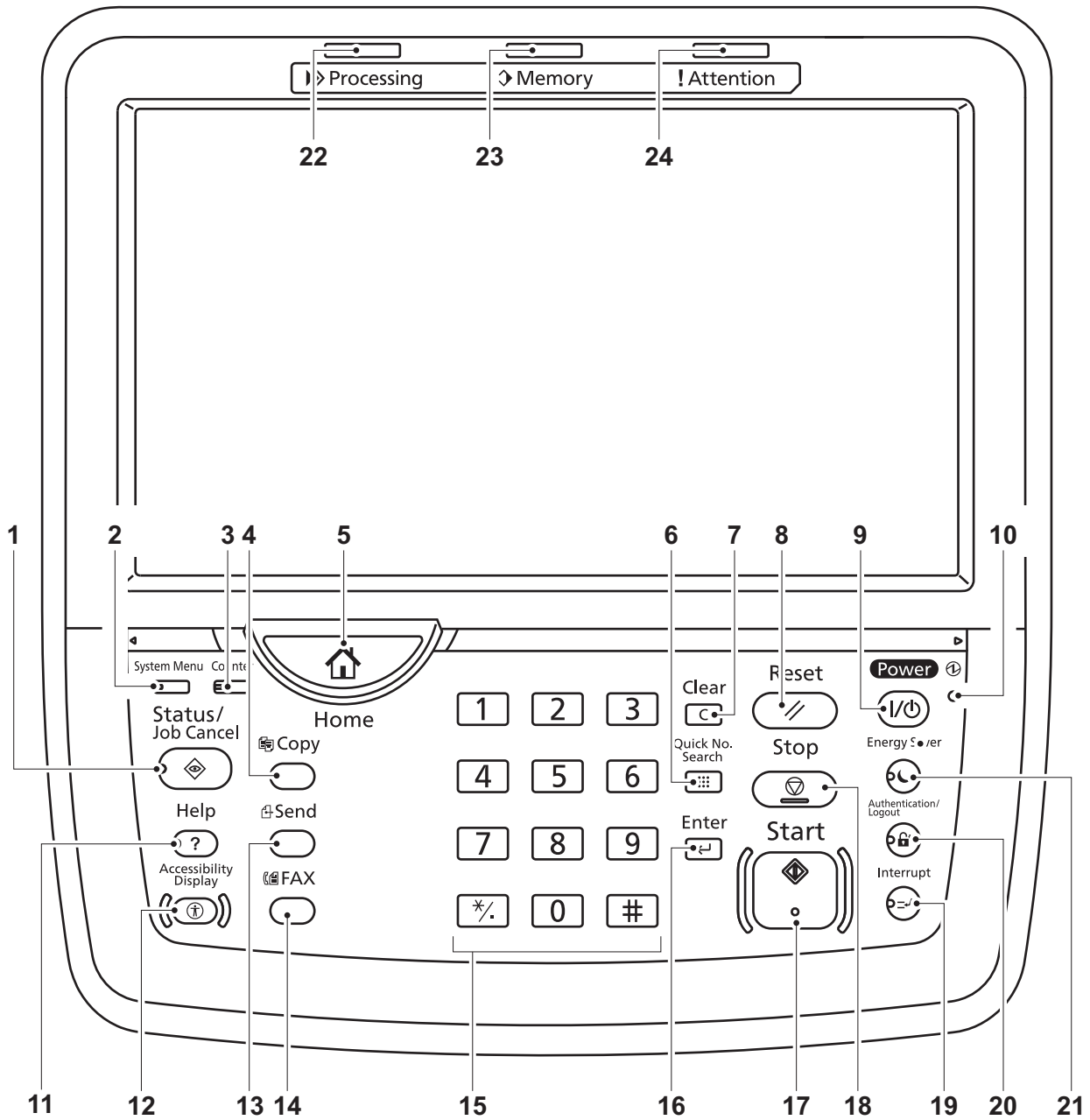


Figure 1-1-5

1. Status/Job cancel key
2. System menu key
3. Counter key
4. Copy key
5. Home key
6. Quick no. search key
7. Clear key
8. Reset key
9. Power key
10. Main power indicator
11. Help key
12. Accessibility display key
13. Send key
14. FAX key
15. Numeric keys
16. Enter key
17. Start key
18. Stop key
19. Interrupt key
20. Authentication/Logout key
21. Energy saver key
22. Processing indicator
23. Memory indicator
24. Attention indicator

1-1-3 Machine cross section

(1) Machine

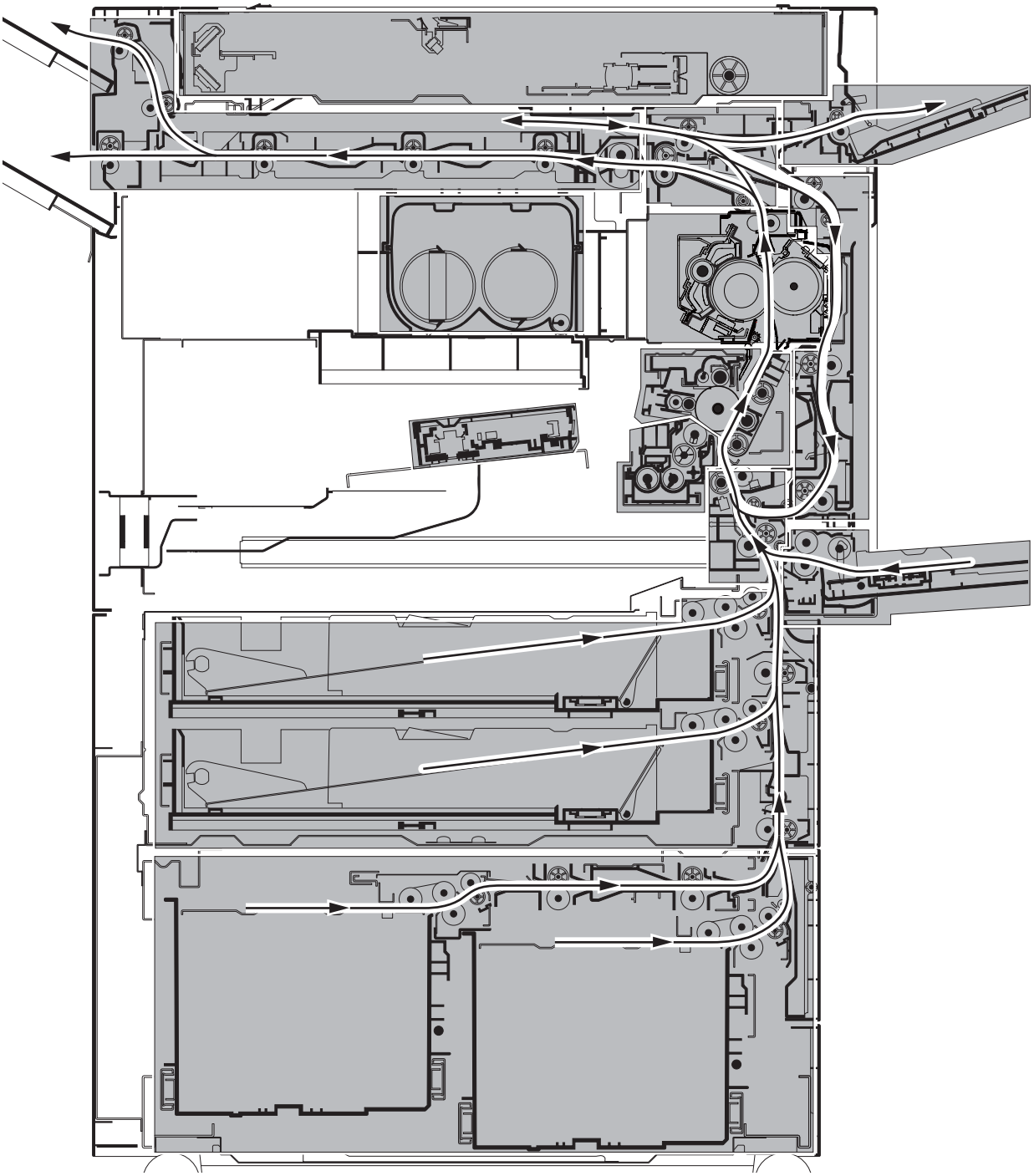


Figure 1-1-6

1. Paper feed section (cassette 1, 2)
2. Paper feed section (cassette 3, 4)
3. MP tray paper feed section
4. Paper conveying section
5. Optical section
6. Laser scanner unit
7. Drum unit
8. Developer unit
9. Toner container section
10. Transfer/Separation sections
11. Fuser section
12. Feed shift/Switchback sections
13. Duplex section
14. Bridge section
15. Job separator section

(2) Document processor

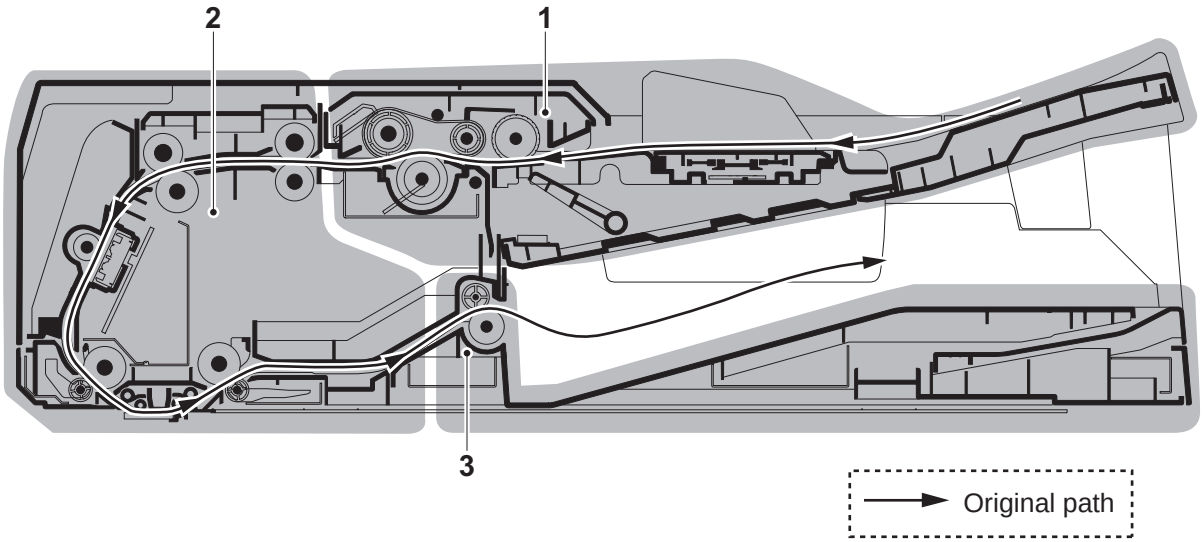


Figure 1-1-7

1. Original feed section
2. Original conveying section
3. Original eject section

1-2-1 Installation environment

1. Temperature: 10 to 32.5°C/50 to 90.5°F
   (But humidity should be 70% or less when temperature is 90.5 °F (32.5 °C).)
2. Humidity: 15 to 80% RH
   (But temperature should be 86 °F (30 °C) or less when humidity is 80%.)
   *: Use coated paper at a temperature of 80.6 °F (27°C) or less and a humidity of 60% or less.
   *: Adverse environmental conditions may affect the image quality. It is recommended to use the machine at a temperature: around 60.8 to 80.6 °F or less (16 to 27 °C), humidity: around 36 to 65%. In addition, Avoid the following locations when selecting a site for the machine.
   The machine automatically detects and displays the following message when the environmental temperature is too high or too low.
   Message: “Warning for high temperature. Adjust the room temperature.” or “Warning for low temperature. Adjust the room temperature.”
   To use the machine under optimum conditions, adjust the temperature and the humidity of your room if the message is displayed.
3. Power supply: 120 V AC, 16.0 A 220 - 240 V AC, 9.5 A
4. Power source frequency: 50 Hz ± 2%/60 Hz ± 2%
5. Installation location
   Avoid direct sunlight or bright lighting. Ensure that the photoconductor will not be exposed to direct sunlight or other strong light when removing paper jams.
   Avoid locations subject to high temperature and high humidity or low temperature and low humidity; an abrupt change in the environmental temperature; and cool or hot, direct air.
   Avoid places subject to dust and vibrations.
   Choose a surface capable of supporting the weight of the machine.
   Place the machine on a level surface (maximum allowance inclination: 1°).
   Avoid air-borne substances that may adversely affect the machine or degrade the photoconductor, such as mercury, acidic of alkaline vapors, inorganic gasses, NOx, SOx gases and chlorine-based organic solvents.
   Select a well-ventilated location.
   *: If the floor is delicate against casters, when this machine is moved after installation, the floor material may be damaged.
   *: During copying, some ozone is released, but the amount does not cause any ill effect to one's health. If, however, the machine is used over a long period of time in a poorly ventilated room or when making an extremely large number of copies, the smell may become unpleasant.
   To maintain the appropriate environment for copy work, it is suggested that the room be properly ventilated.

6. Allow sufficient access for proper operation and maintenance of the machine.
   Machine front : 100 cm/39 3/8"
   Machine rear : 10 cm/ 3 15/16"
   Machine right : 35 cm/13 3/4"
   Machine left : 30 cm/11 13/16"
   Machine top : 40 cm/15 3/4"

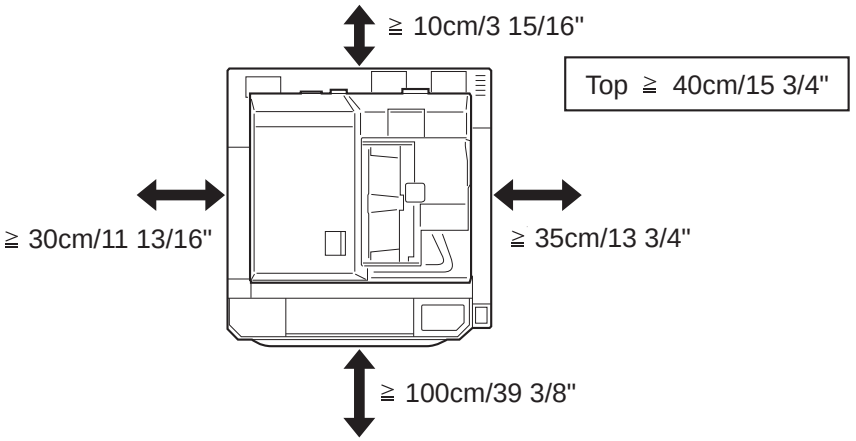
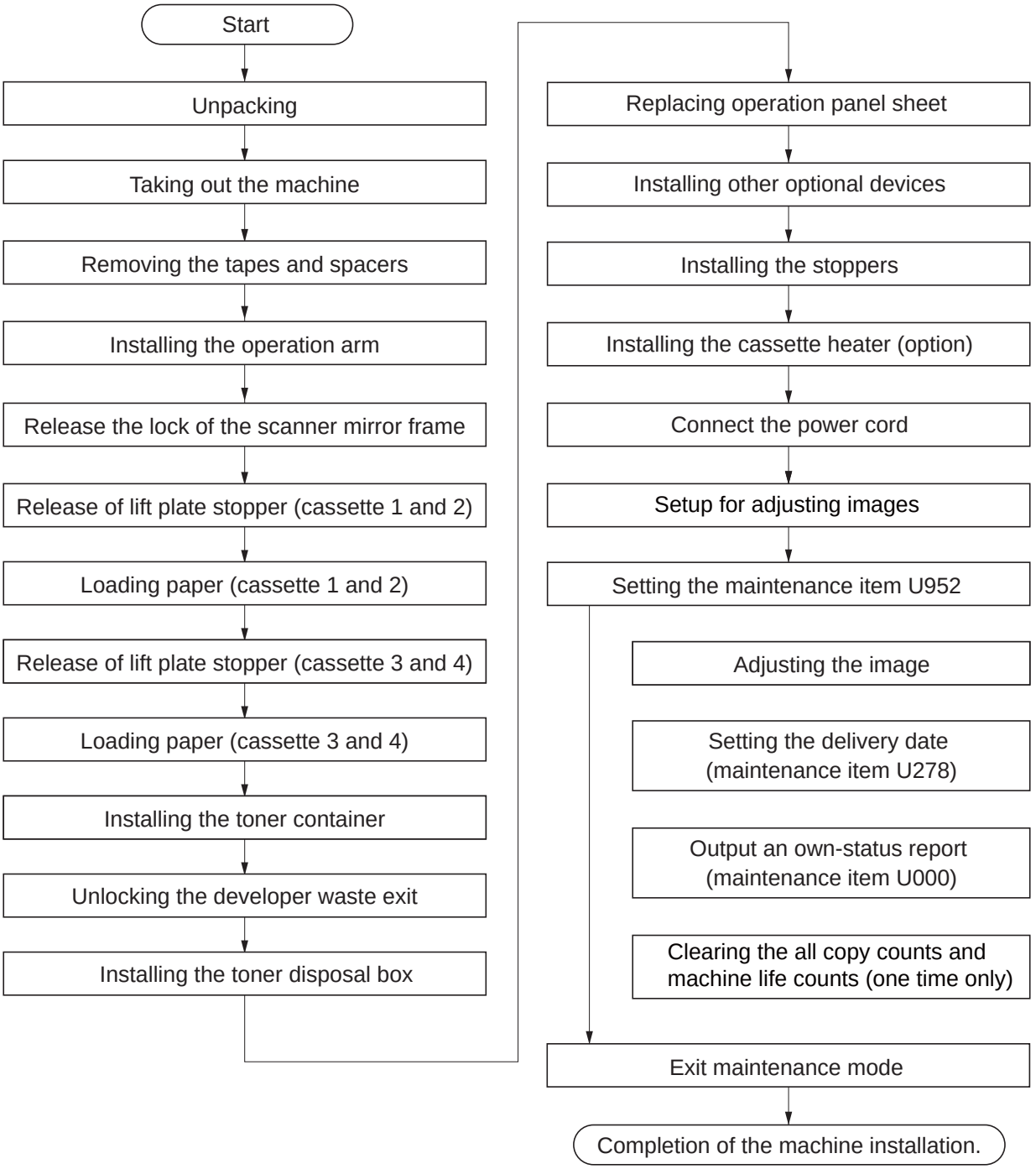


Figure 1-2-1

1-2-2 Unpacking and installation

(1) Installation procedure



Moving the machine

When moving the machine, pull out the carrying handle, and move with the carrying handle and three hand-holds.

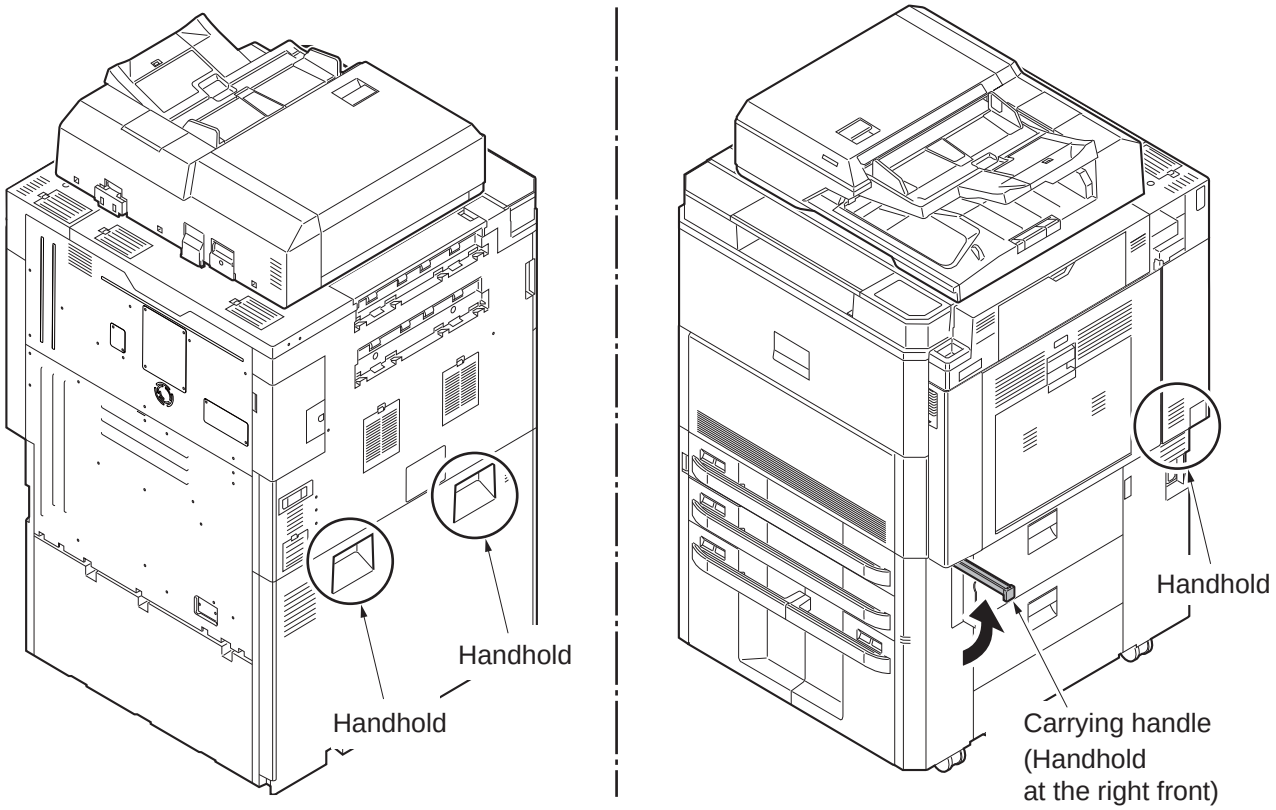
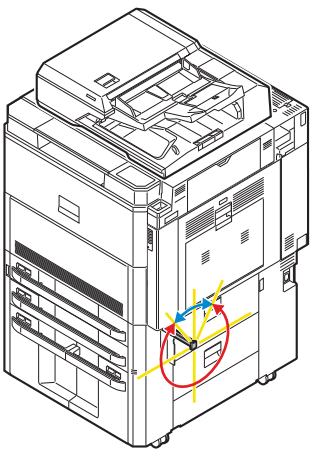


Figure 1-2-2

*: Use the handhold at the right front only for lifting the machine.
Use the handhold on the right side only for carrying the machine by lifting it up.
(Do not incline the machine for more than 30 degrees.)

*: Do not use the handhold at the right front to pull the machine around.
Do not use the right-side handhold to move the machine horizontally on the floor. (To prevent deformation due to horizontal stress)

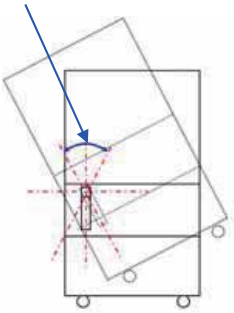
<Allowable angle of the right front handhold positions>



The handhold at the right front side must be lifted only upward at an angle of 30 degrees back and forth.

Do not use the handhold to incline or move the machine sideways.

Allowable range
(±30degree front and backwards)



Position of the handhold seen from the right side of the machine

Figure 1-2-3

Unpacking

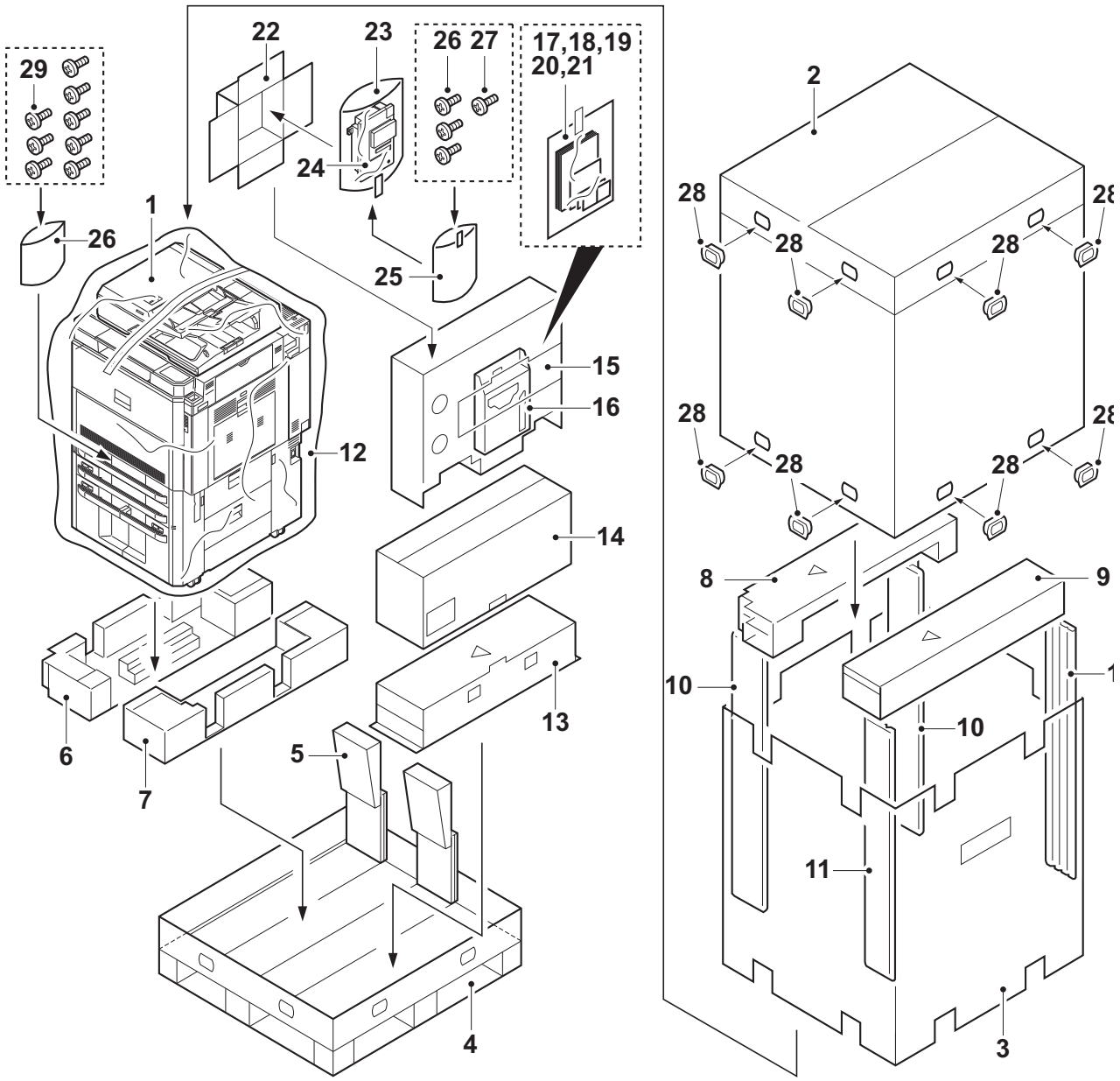


Figure 1-2-4

1. Machine
2. Outer case
3. Inner case
4. Skid
5. Slopes
6. Bottom left pad
7. Bottom right pad
8. Top left pad
9. Top right pad
10. Left stays
11. Right stays
12. Machine cover
13. Bottom spacer
14. Operation arm
15. Top spacer
16. Document tray
17. Plastic bag
18. Paper size plates
19. Paper media plates
20. Operation panel sheets
21. Operation guide etc.
22. Toner disposal box case
23. Air-padded bag
24. Toner disposal box
25. Plastic bag
26. M3 x 8 S tight screws
27. M3 x 8 P tight screw
28. Hinge joints
29. M3 x 8 screws (120V model only)

Place the machine on a level surface.

Operation arm

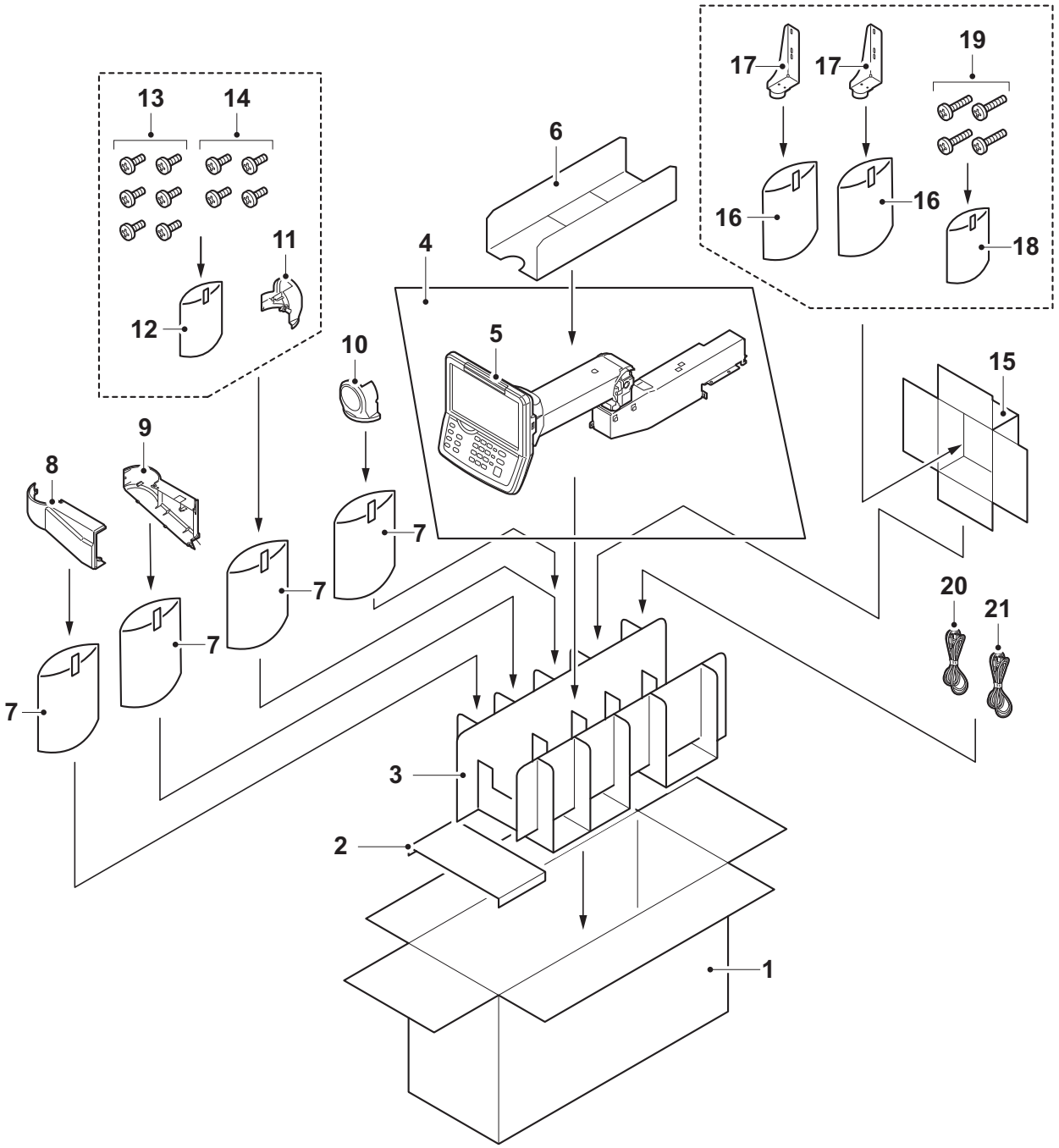


Figure 1-2-5

1. Arm outer case
2. Arm bottom spacer
3. Arm main pad
4. Plastic sheet
5. Operation arm assembly
6. Arm top spacer
7. Plastic bags
8. Operation mount cover A
9. Operation mount cover B
10. Arm hinge cover A
11. Arm hinge cover B
12. Plastic bag
13. M4 x 8 screws
14. M4 x 8 screws (black)
15. Stopper case
16. Plastic bags
17. Stoppers
18. Plastic bag
19. M4 x 20 screws (black)
20. Power cord
21. Power cord (120 V only)

Taking out the machine

*: When taking out the machine, a space for machine rear requires approximately 2 m.

1. Remove the hinge joints, and then remove the outer case, the inner case, the top left/right pads, the left/right stays, the front pad, the upper spacer, the operation arm and the bottom spacer.
2. Cut four tapes of the skid each corner.
3. Cut each tape which locks the slopes and the bottom left/right pads.

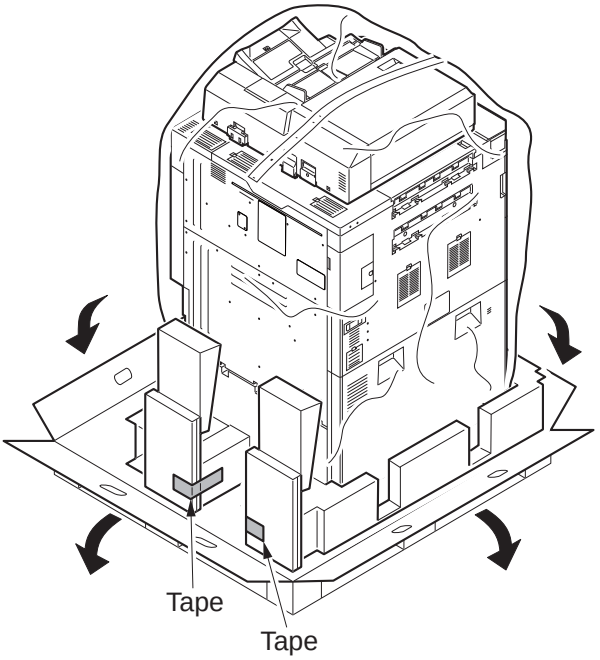


Figure 1-2-6

4. Rotate slopes as shown in the figure and make them for machine sliding.

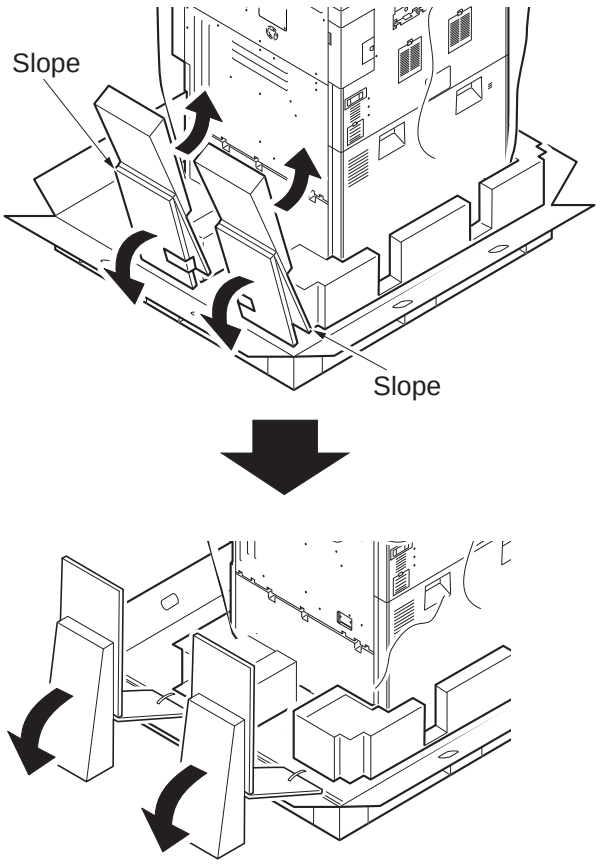


Figure 1-2-7

5. Check that there is no level difference in slopes (circle section of figure 1-2-7).
6. Open the machine cover.
7. Lift the machine each left and right one side, and then remove the bottom left and right pads and machine cover.

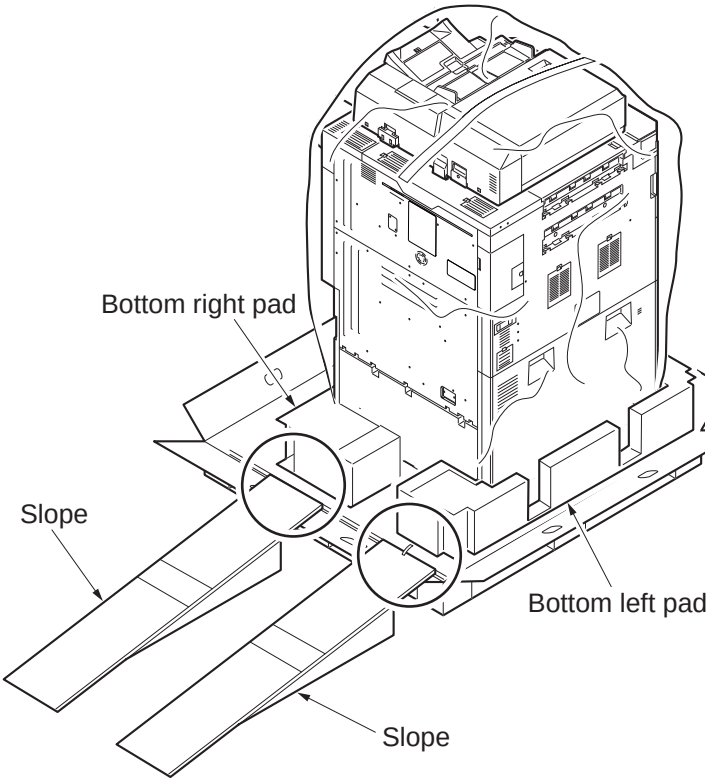


Figure 1-2-8

8. Move the machine alongside slopes to slide to the floor.

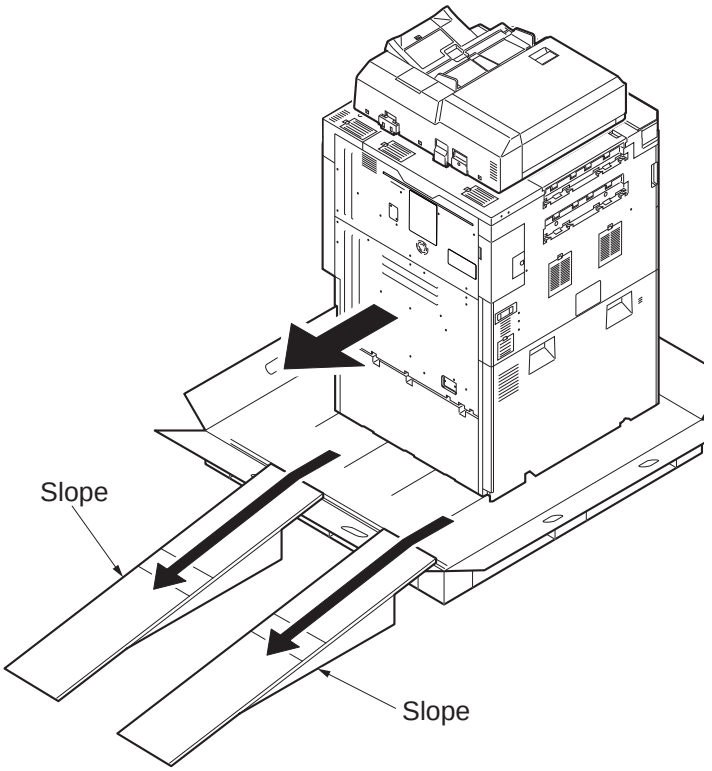


Figure 1-2-9

Removing the tapes and spacers

1. Remove five tapes and then remove the sheet.

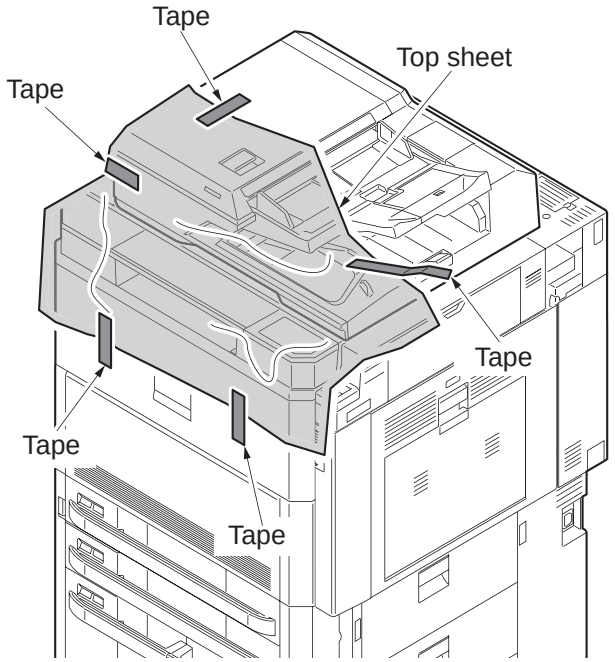


Figure 1-2-10

2. Remove five tapes.

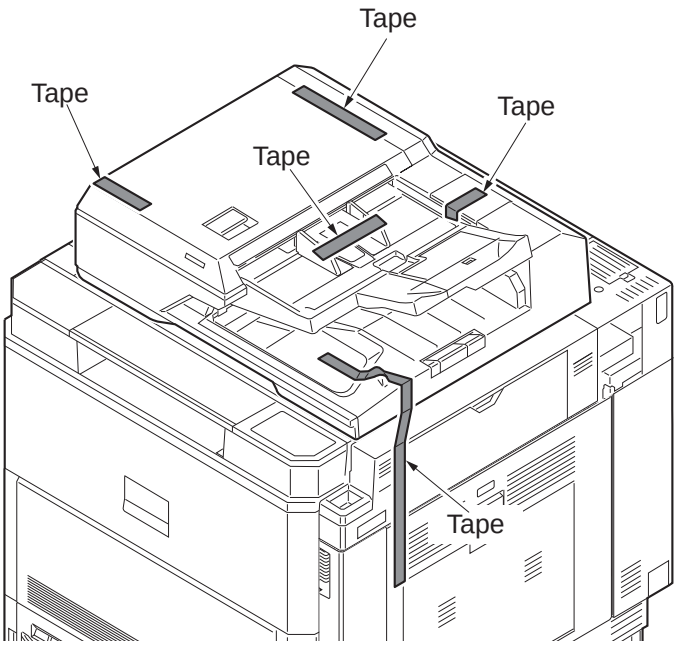


Figure 1-2-11

3. Open the original width guides and then remove the spacer.

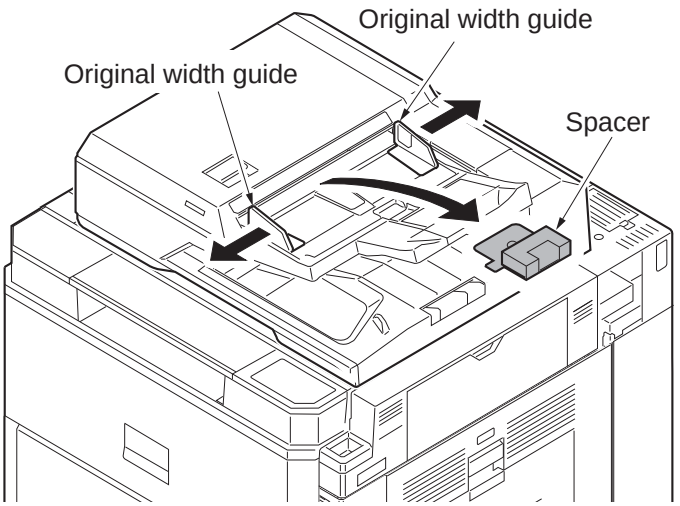


Figure 1-2-12

4. Remove fourteen tapes, silica gel and sheet.

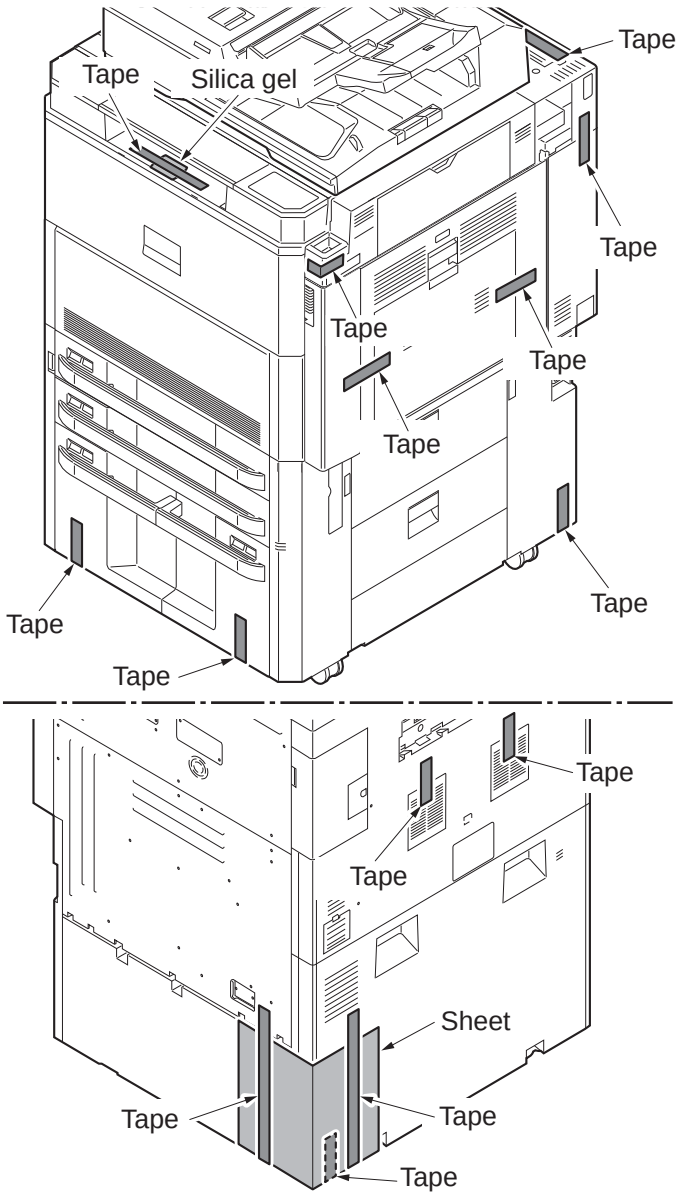


Figure 1-2-13

5. Remove six tapes and then remove three protect sheets.

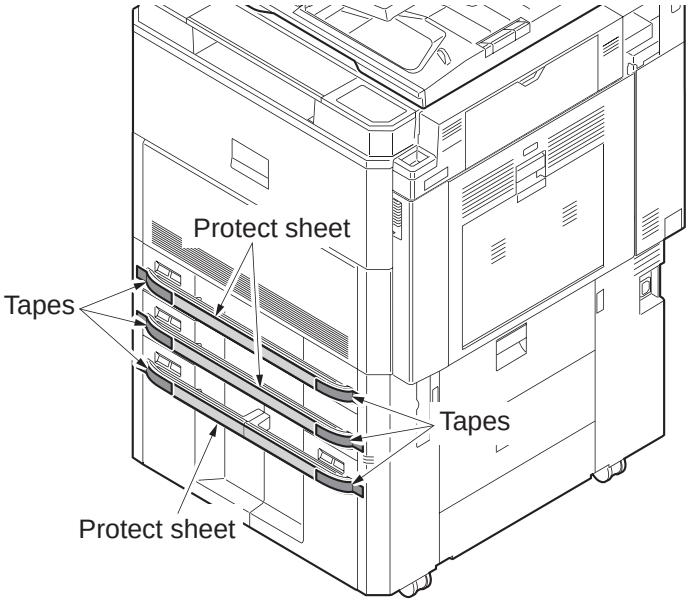
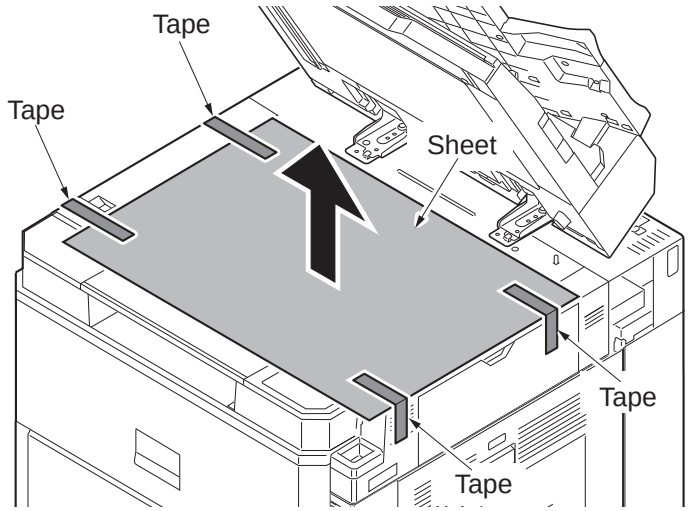


Figure 1-2-14

6. Open the DP.
7. Remove four tapes and then remove the sheet.
8. Remove the tape and then remove A2 papers.
9. Close the DP.



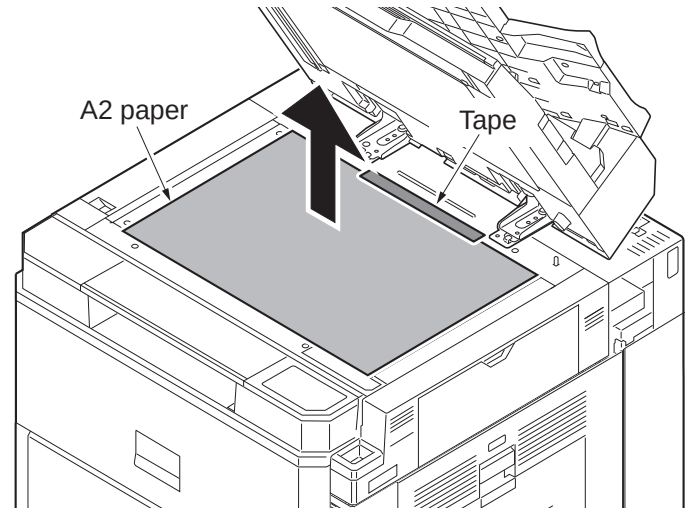


Figure 1-2-15

10. Open the front upper cover.
11. Remove two tapes and then remove two spacers
12. Close the front upper cover.

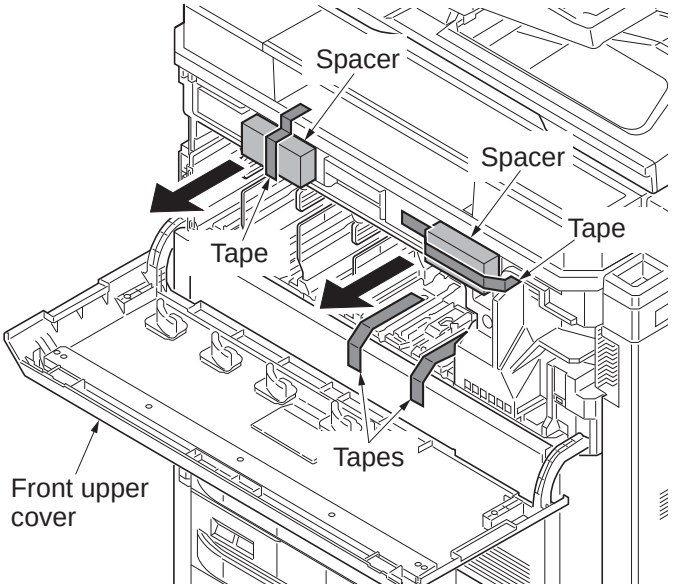


Figure 1-2-16

120V model only

13. Pull cassette 1 out.
14. Remove the tape and then remove the plate lock leaflet.
15. Remove the tape and then remove the plate lock screws.

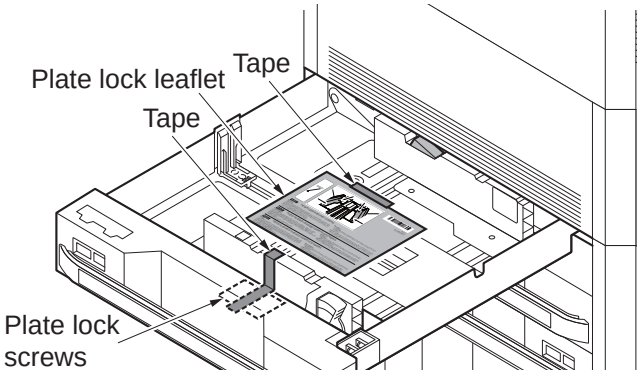


Figure 1-2-17

Installing the operation arm

1. Open the DP, and remove the operation mount cover C.

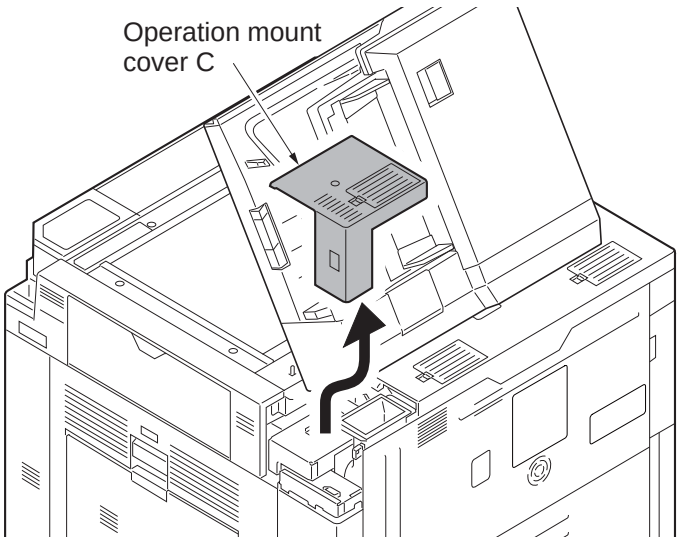


Figure 1-2-18

2. Insert two hooks and the install the operation arm to the machine.
*: Install the unit observing the caution not to damage the wires.

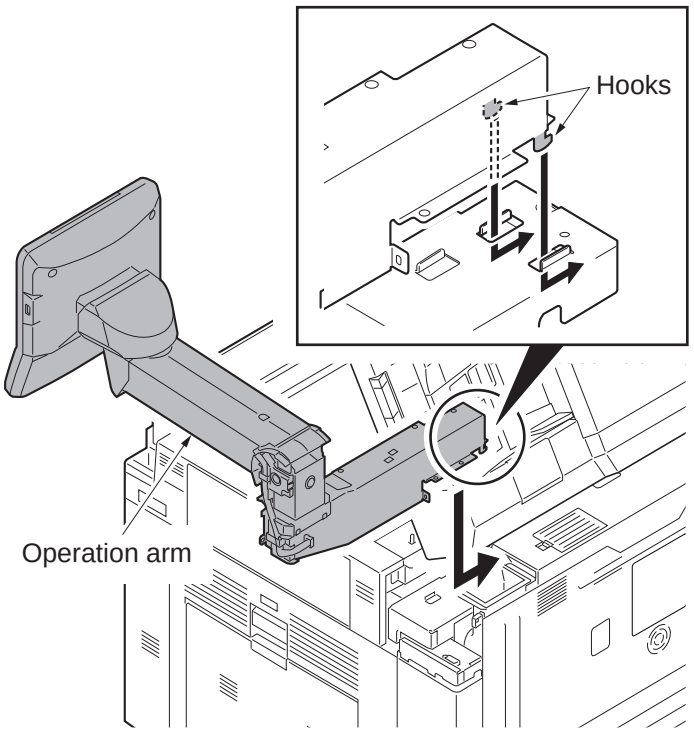


Figure 1-2-19

3. Align the two positioning keys with each other, fix the operation arm using four M4x8 screws a top and two M4x8 screws from the right side.

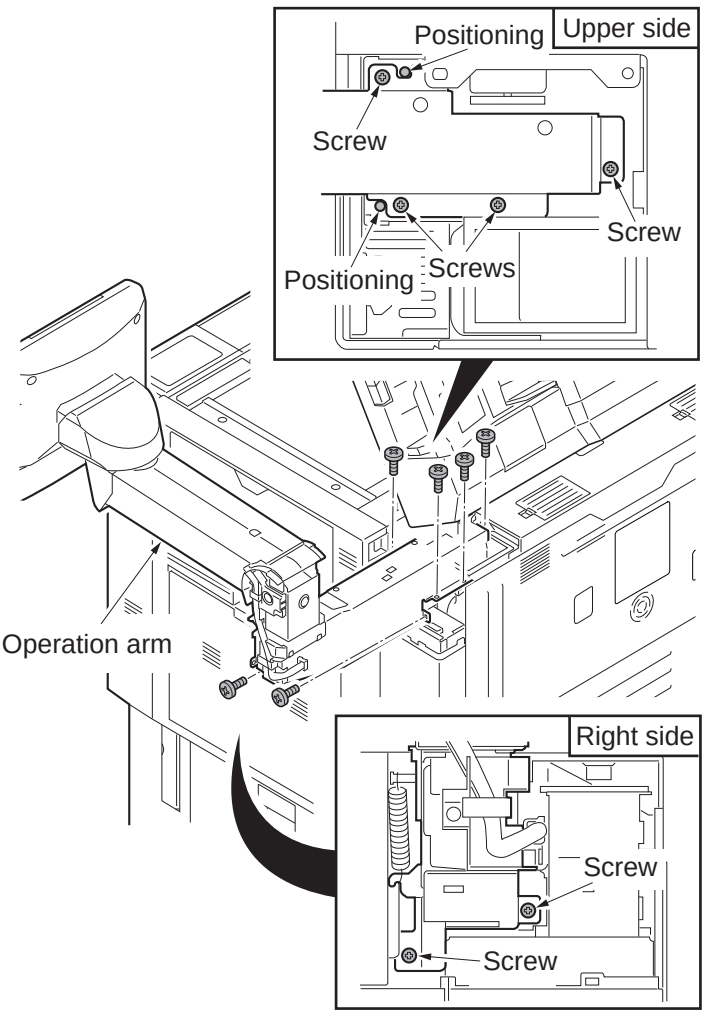


Figure 1-2-20

4. Connect four connectors of the operation arm to connectors of the machine.
5. Pass the wire through the wire saddle and then fasten the wire.

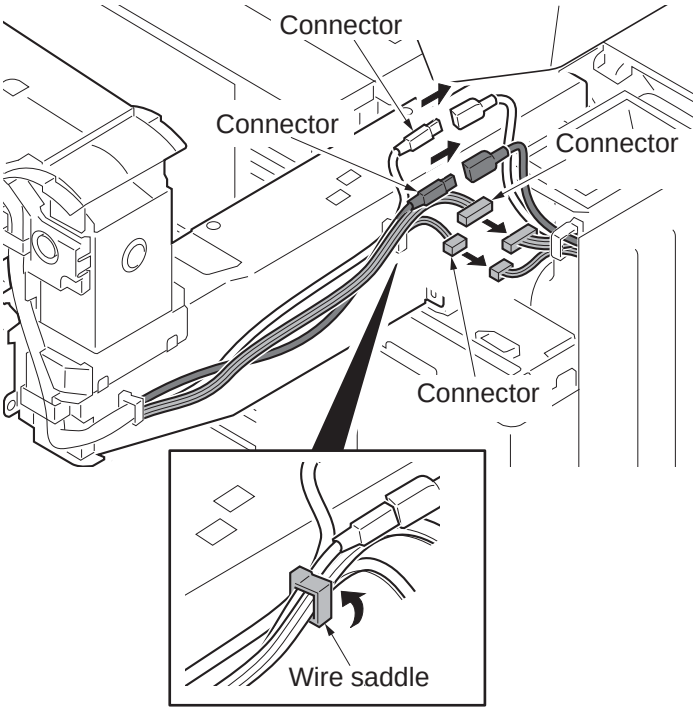


Figure 1-2-21

6. Fit the operation mount cover A and B using two M4 x 8 screws (black).

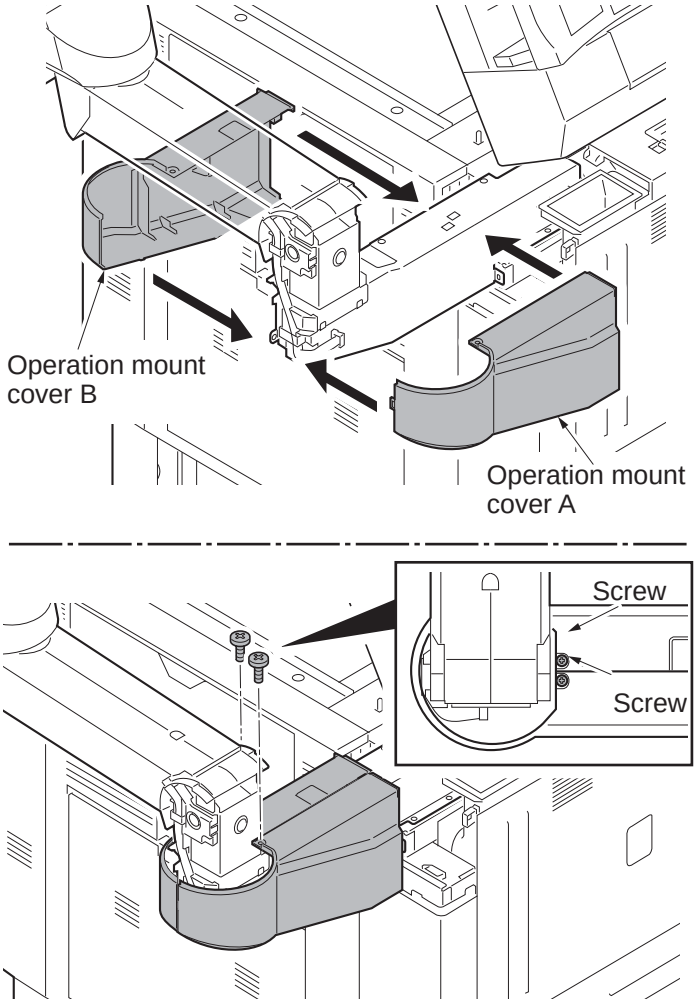


Figure 1-2-22

7. Fit the arm hinge cover A and B using the M4 x 8 screws (black).

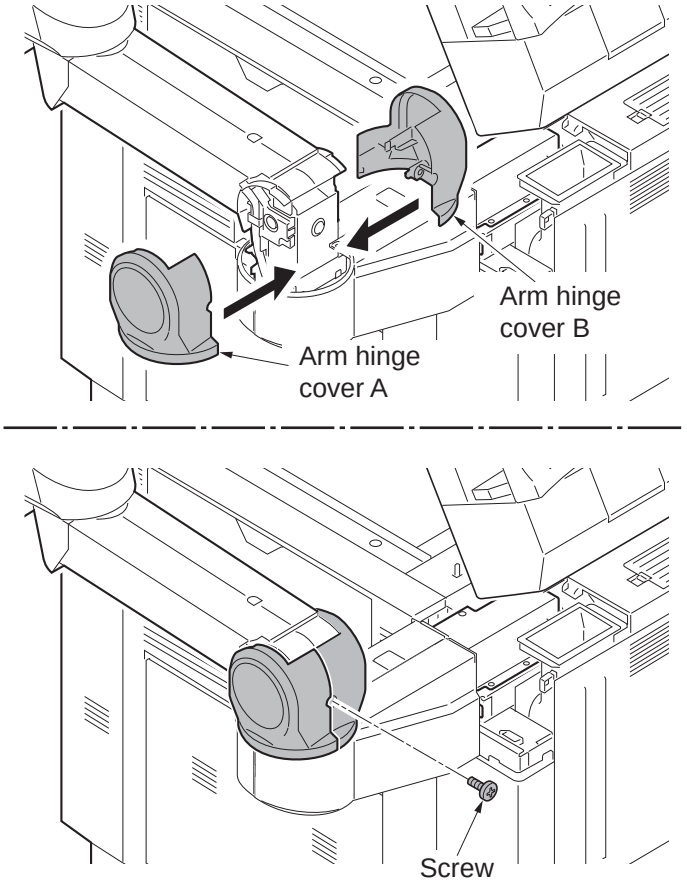


Figure 1-2-23

8. Fit the operation mount cover C using the M4 x 8 screws (black).

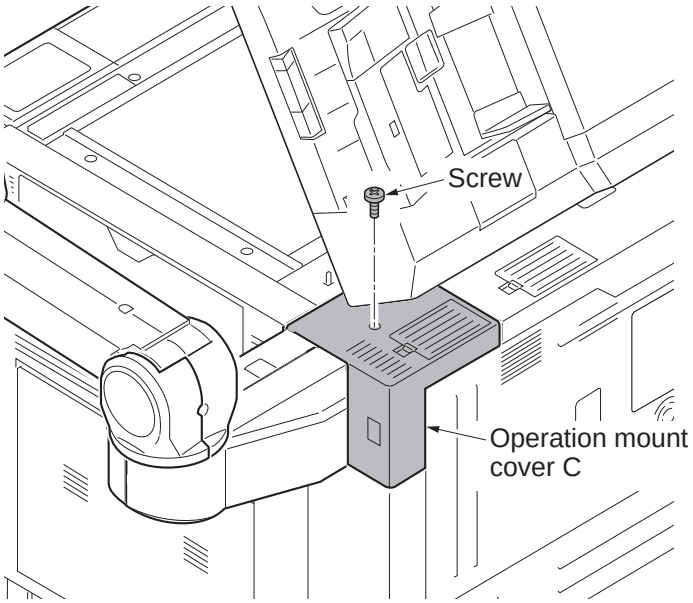


Figure 1-2-24

Release the lock of the scanner mirror frame

1. Open the DP.
1. Remove the tape and then remove the ISU lock leaflet.
2. Remove the scanner lock cover.
3. Mount the scanner lock cover in the reverse manner to restore in the original location.
4. Close the DP.

*: Unless unlocking is performed, C3100 is caused.

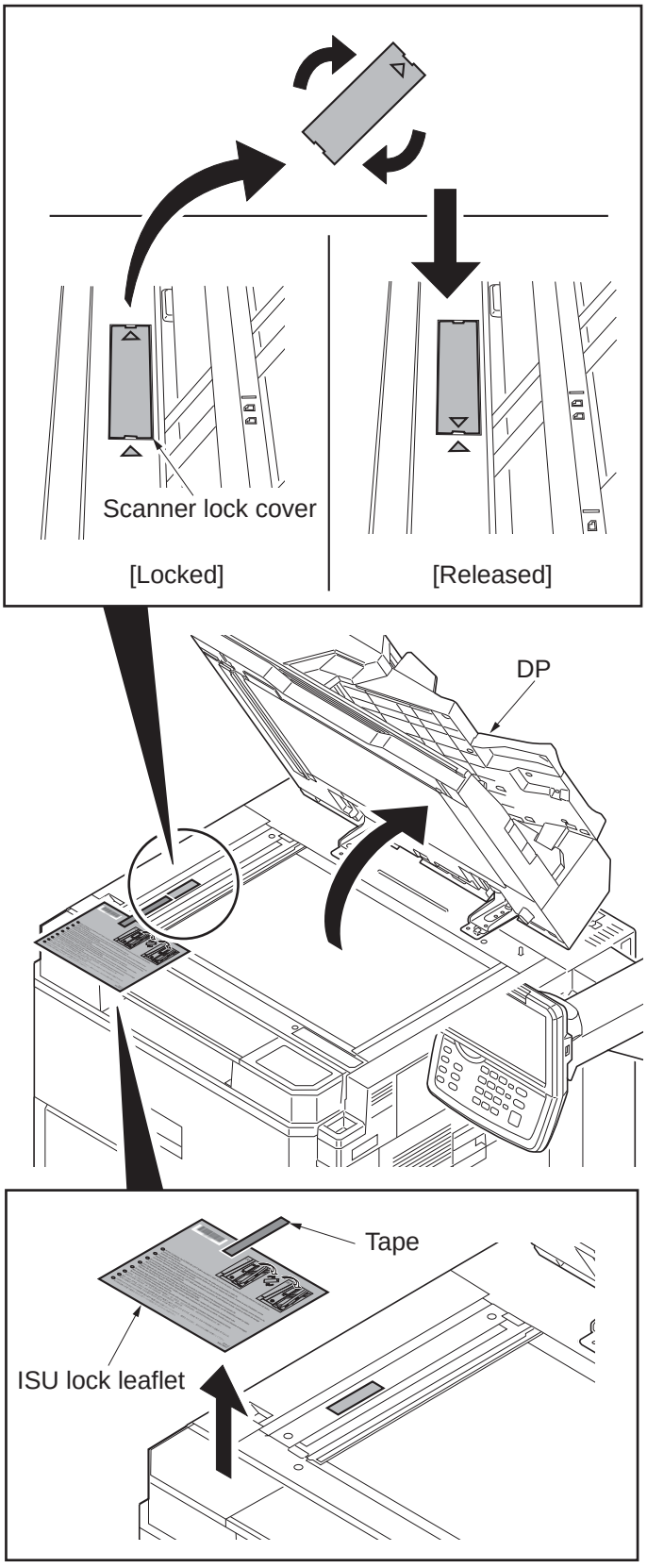


Figure 1-2-25

Release of lift plate stopper (cassette 1 and 2)

1. Pull cassette 1 and 2 out.
2. Remove the lift plate stopper from each cassette and attach it to the storage location.

*: When moving the machine, attach the lift plate in original position.

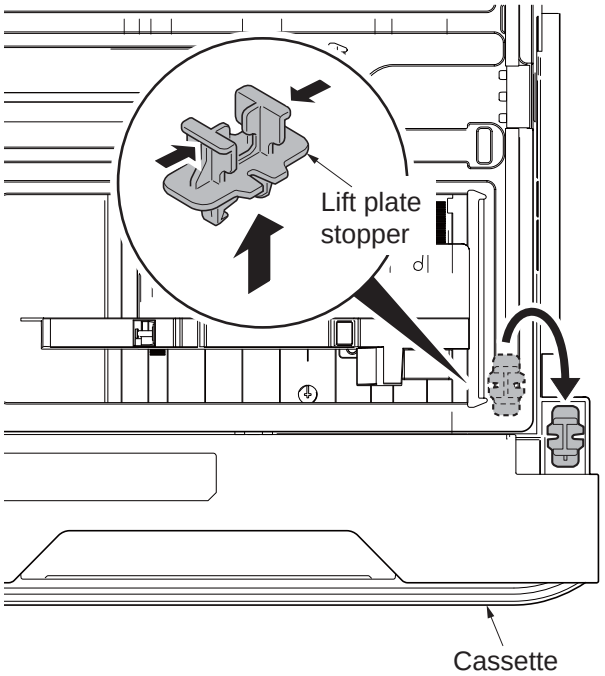


Figure 1-2-26

Loading paper (cassette 1 and 2)

1. Squeeze the ends of the bottom of the paper length guide and move the guide to fit the length of the paper.

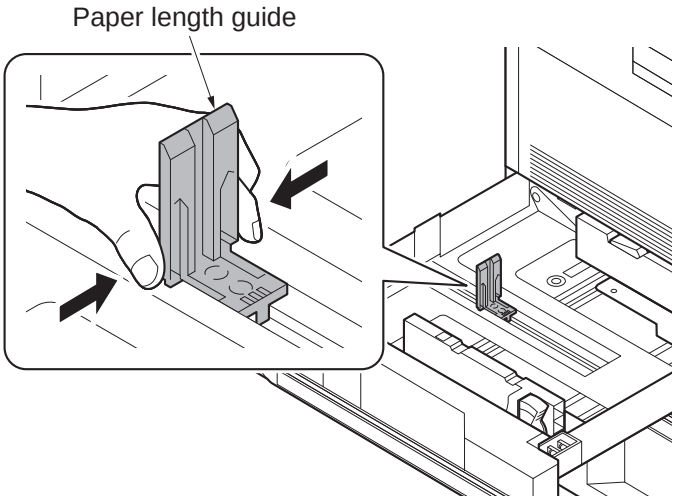


Figure 1-2-27

2. Press the guide lock lever to release the lock.
3. Grasp the paper width adjusting tab and move the paper width guides to fit the paper.

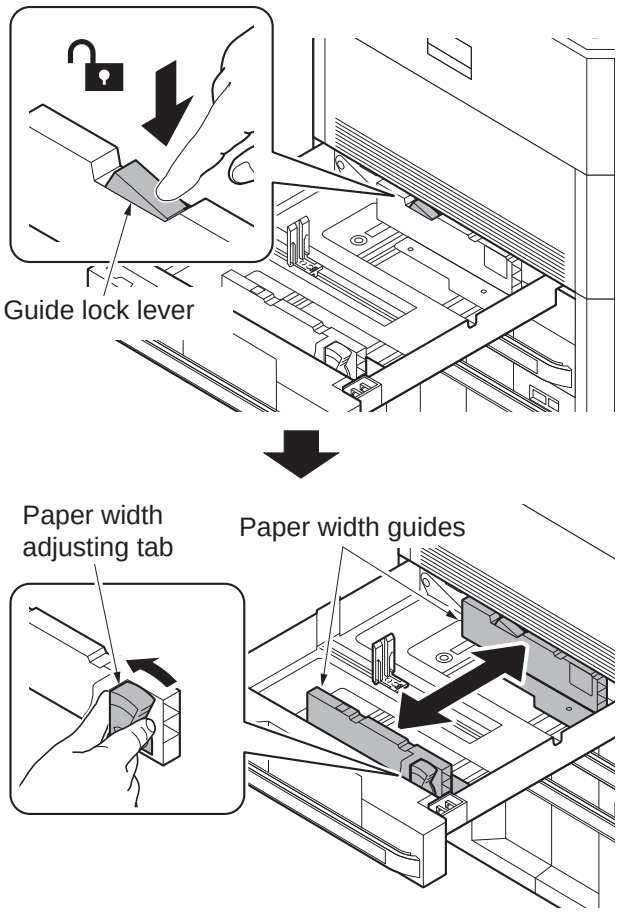


Figure 1-2-28

4. Align the paper flush against the right side of the cassette.

*: Before loading the paper, be sure that it is not curled or folded.

*: Ensure that the loaded paper does not exceed the level indicated.

*: Make sure that the paper length guide and the paper width guides are correctly abut with the paper. Be sure to remove spaces between the guides and the paper.

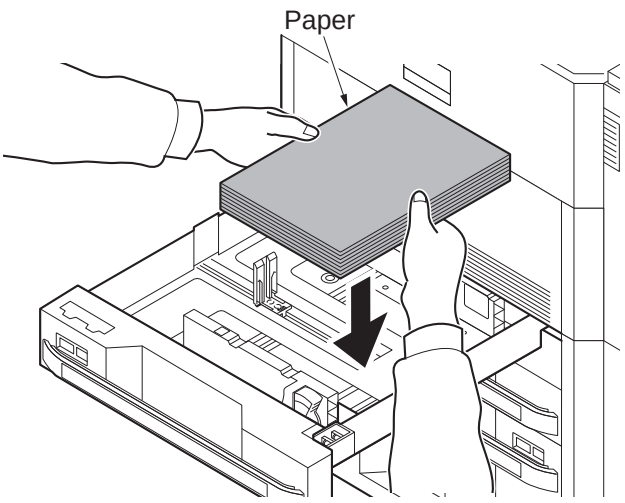


Figure 1-2-29

5. Press the guide lock lever to lock.

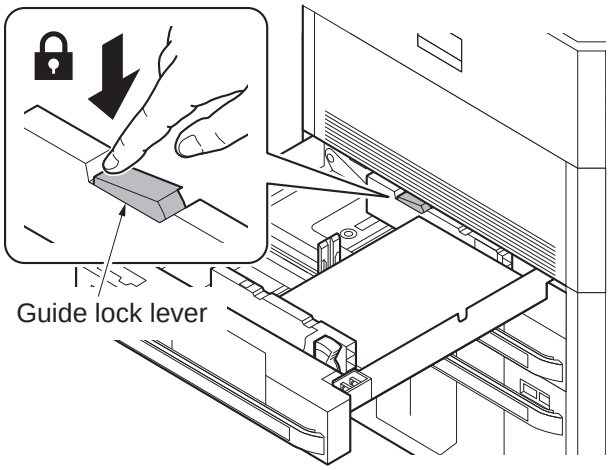


Figure 1-2-30

6. Insert the paper size plate and the paper media plate.
7. Gently push the cassette back in.

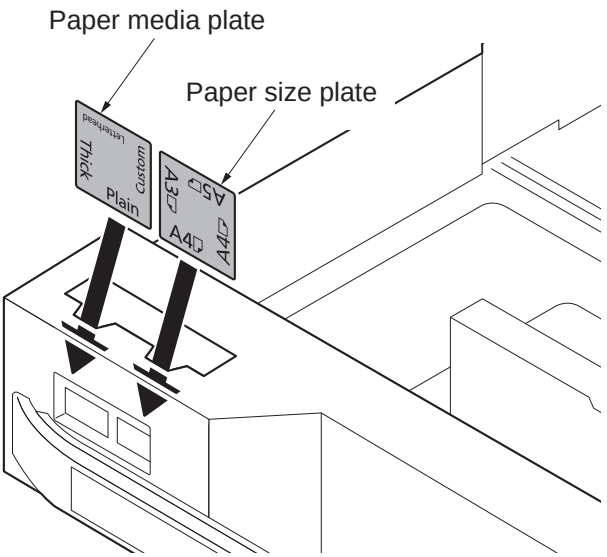


Figure 1-2-31

Release of lift plate stopper (cassette 3 and 4)

1. Pull cassette 3 and 4 out.
2. Remove the lift plate stopper from each cassette and attach it to the storage location.

*: When moving the machine, attach the lift plate in original position.

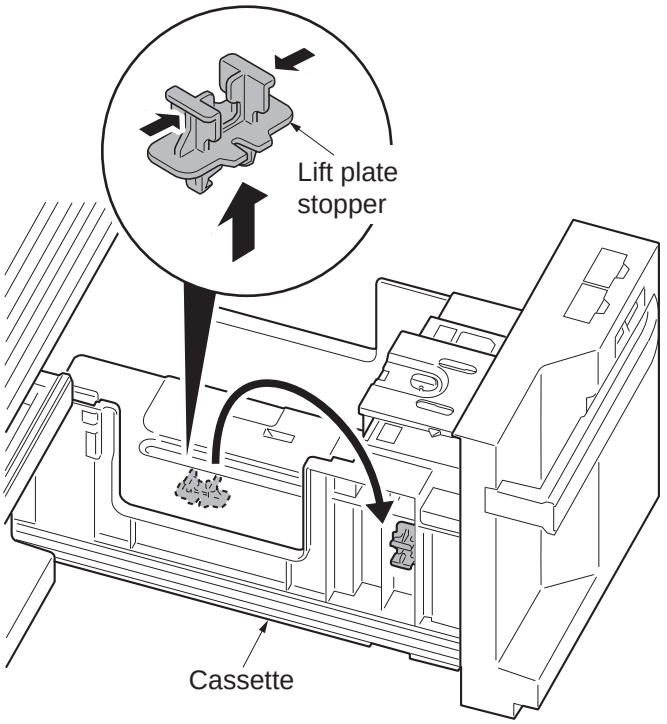


Figure 1-2-32

Loading paper (cassette 3 and 4)

1. Rotate the lock lever of the paper size guide A and remove the lever. Pull the paper size guide A up and out.

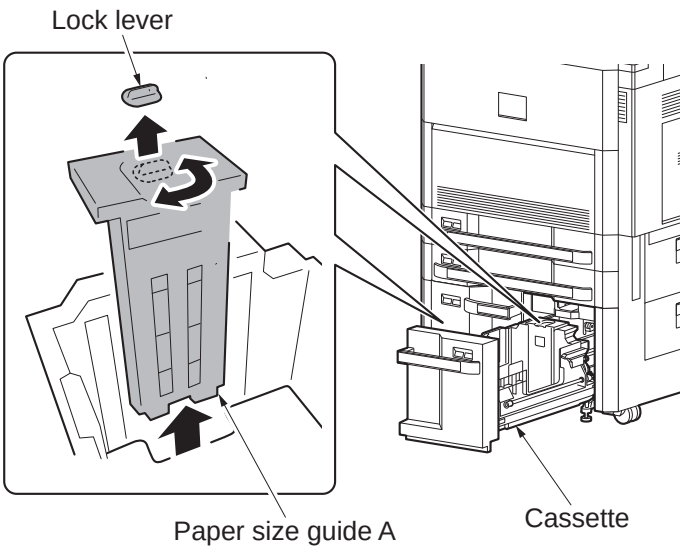


Figure 1-2-33

2. Insert the paper size guide A into the slot (bottom of cassette) for the paper size to be used.
3. Make sure that the top of the paper size guide A matches the paper size to be used, attach the lock lever, and rotate the lever to lock it.

*: Gently try moving the paper size guide A to verify that it is fixed.

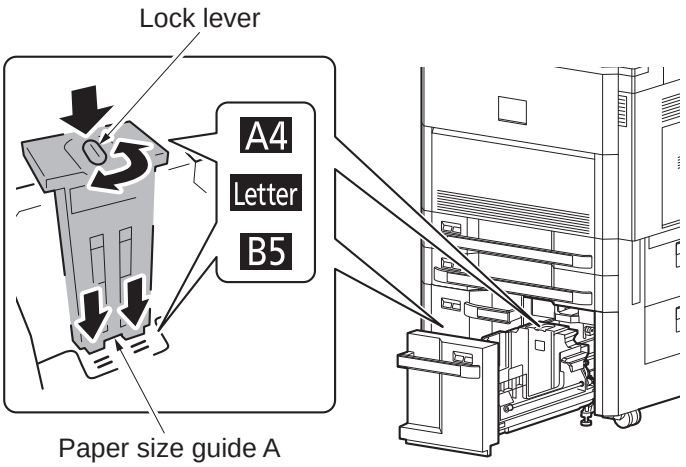


Figure 1-2-34

4. With the bottom of the cassette pressed all the way down, press the hook on the side of the paper size guide B to release it and pull out the paper size guide B.

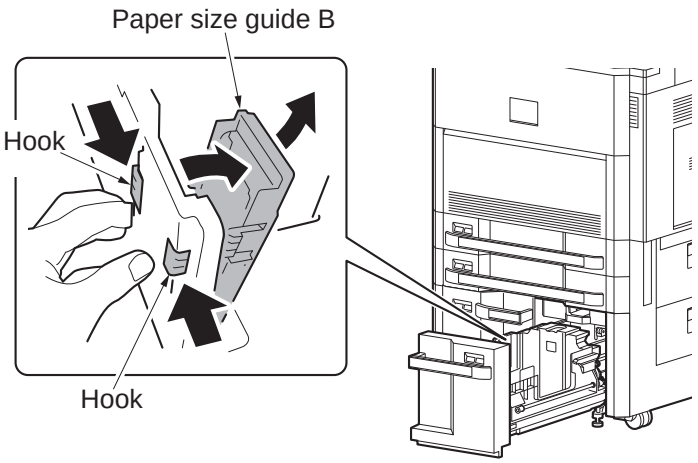


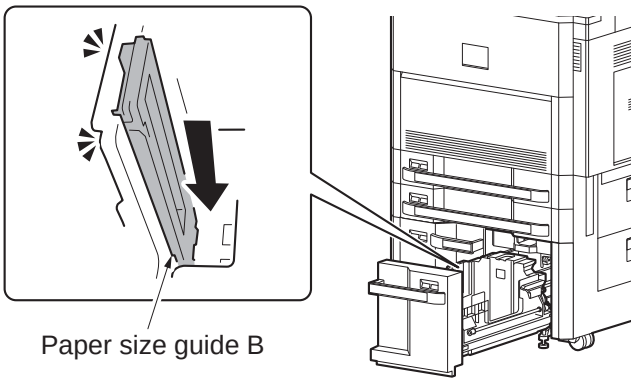
Figure 1-2-35

5. Adjust the paper size guide B to the paper size.

A4

Insert the paper size guide B into the slot marked A4 (on the bottom of the cassette), and lock the hook.
Gently try moving the paper size guide B to verify that it is fixed.

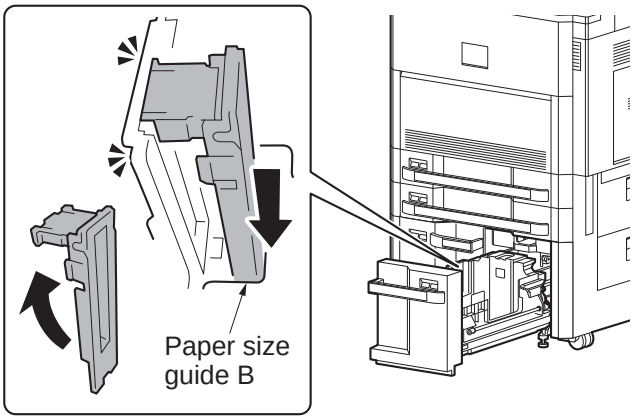
[A4]



B5

Open the paper size guide B as shown, insert into the slot marked B5 (on the bottom of the cassette), and lock the hook to the upper part.
Gently try moving the paper size guide B to verify that it is fixed.

[B5]



Letter

The paper size guide B is not attached.

[Letter]

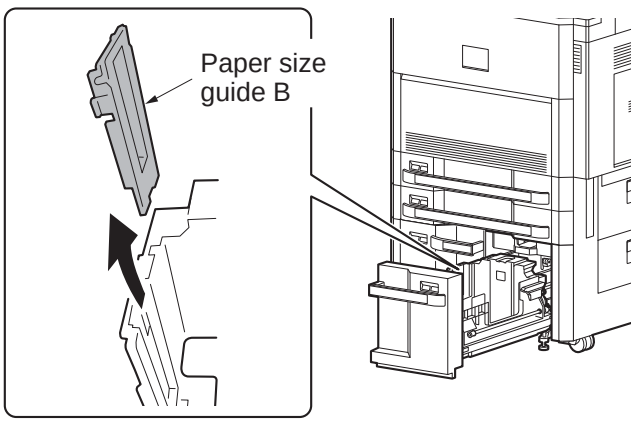


Figure 1-2-36

6. Align the paper flush against the right side of the cassette.
*: Before loading the paper, be sure that it is not curled or folded.
*: Ensure that the loaded paper does not exceed the level indicated.

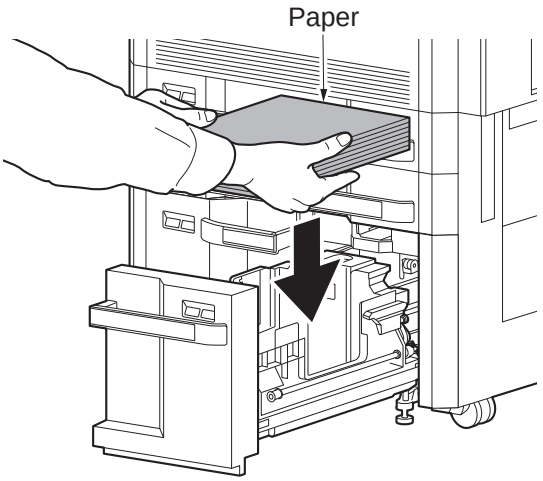


Figure 1-2-37

7. Insert the paper size plate and the paper media plate.
8. Gently push the cassette back in.

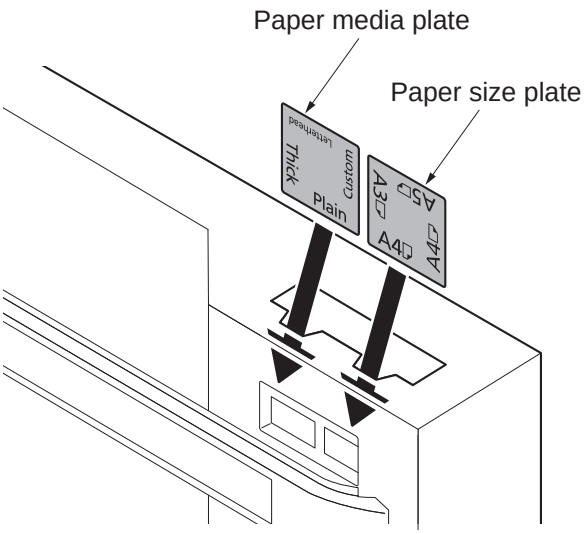


Figure 1-2-38

Installing the toner containers

1. Open the front upper cover.
2. Hold the toner container vertically and hit the upper part about 5 times. Invert the toner container so that the other end is up, and hit in the same way.
3. Shake the toner container in a wide vertical curve like motion about 5 times.

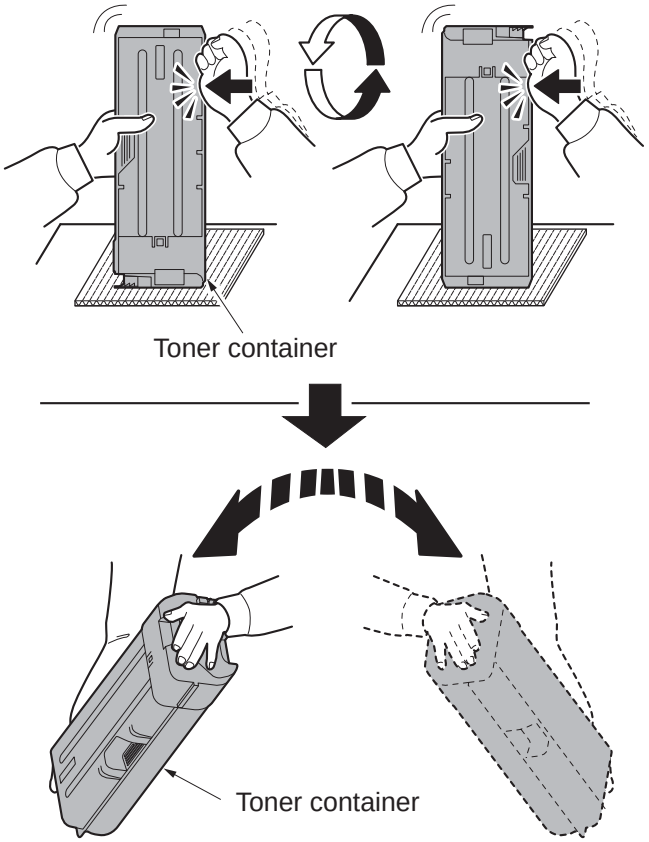


Figure 1-2-39

4. Install the toner container.
5. Turn down the toner container release lever to lock the toner container.
6. Close the front upper cover.

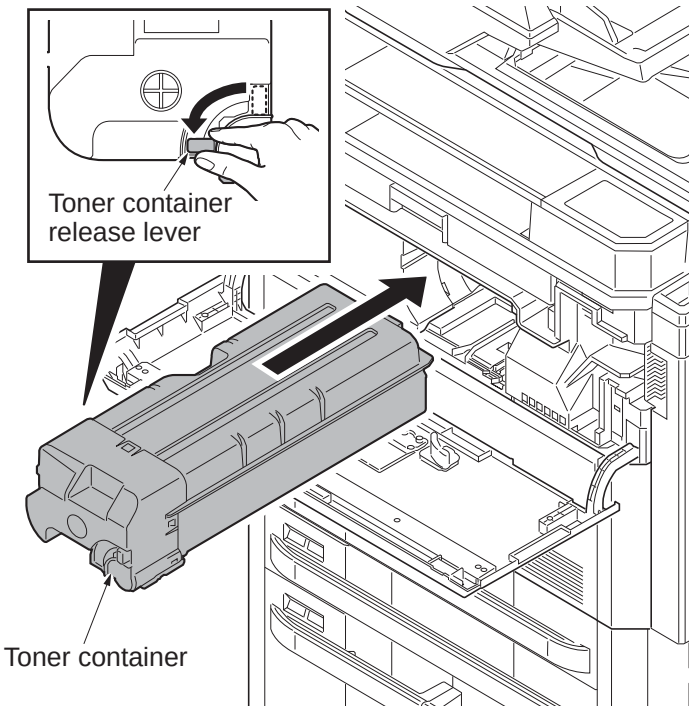


Figure 1-2-40

Unlocking the developer waste exit

Caution
To ease setup, the device was shipped with the developer unit already replenished with developer. Therefore, to prevent developer from spilling during shipping, a developer shutter is equipped with the developer unit.
To disengage the shutter, use the following procedure: Note that if the shutter is not completely disengaged and retained in place, the developer in the developer unit may clog at the outlet causing a damage to the developer unit.

1. Remove two tapes and then remove the set up leaflet.
*: The setup leaflet must be affixed in position before dispatching the machine.
2. Open the waste toner box cover.

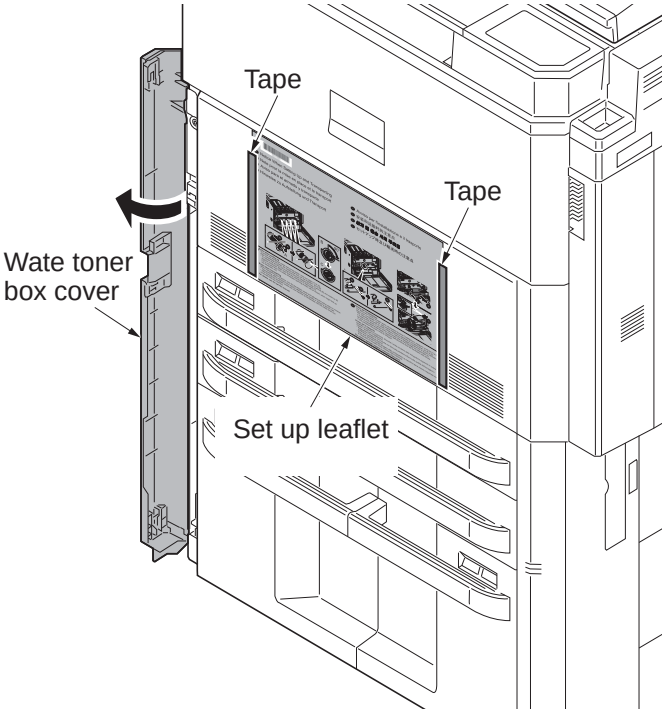


Figure 1-2-41

3. Pull the paper conveying unit out.
4. Remove the two screws and then open the front middle cover.

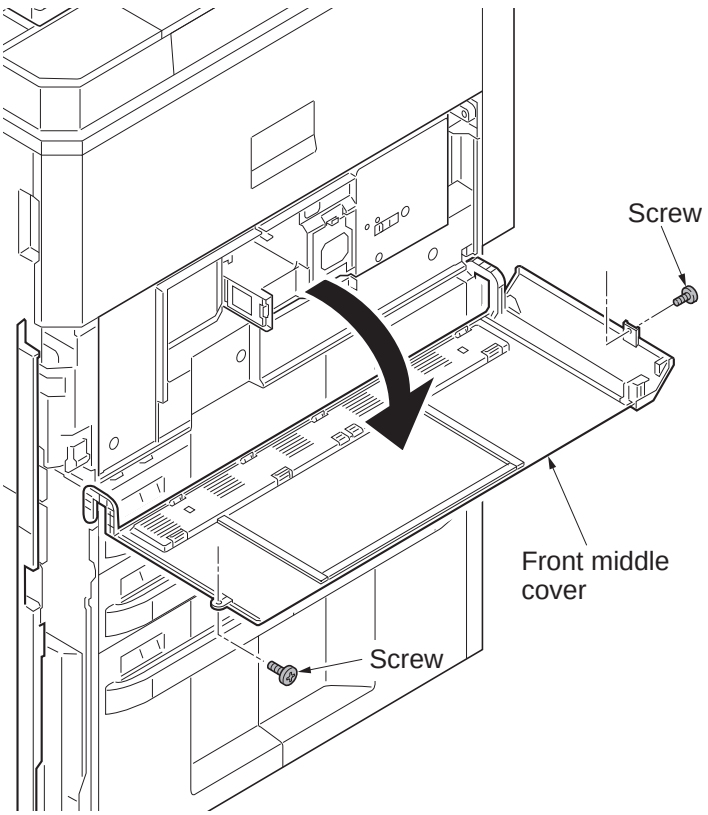


Figure 1-2-42

5. Press the fixing pin and rotate.
*: Fully insert the fixing pin with keeping the protrusions vertical and rotate it by 90 degrees clockwise. Make sure that the protrusions are then horizontal.

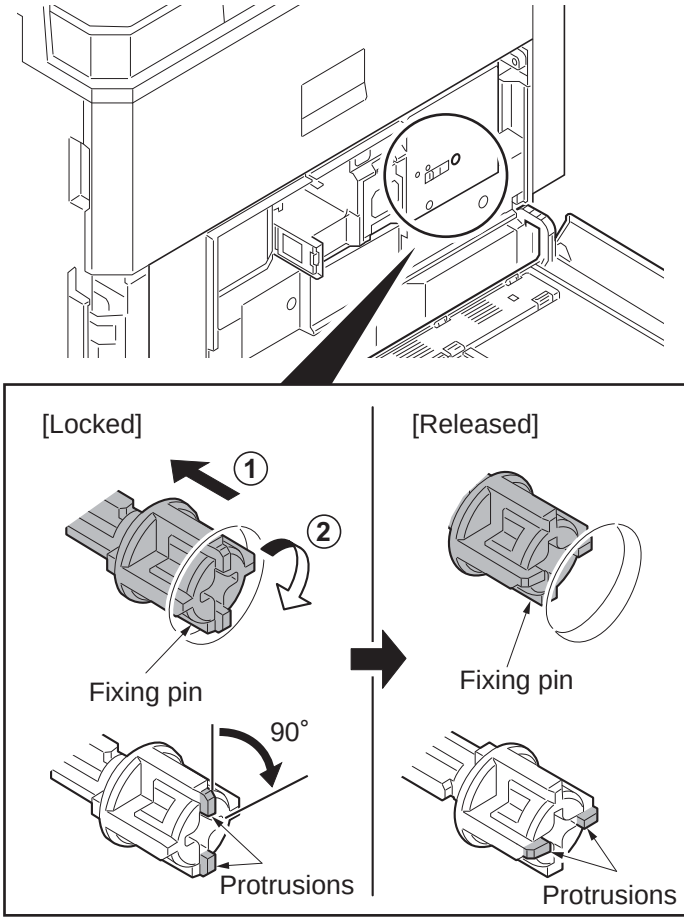


Figure 1-2-43

6. Remove a screw and slide the lever right wards.
7. Fix the lever using the screw previously removed at the right screw hole and unlock the developer waste exit.
*: When the device is shipped again or removed, use the reverse procedure to lock in the developer waste exit. Failure to observe this caution could result in deteriorated print quality and/or C call (C7460).

8. Close the front middle cover and fix the cover using the two screws.
9. Close the paper conveying unit.

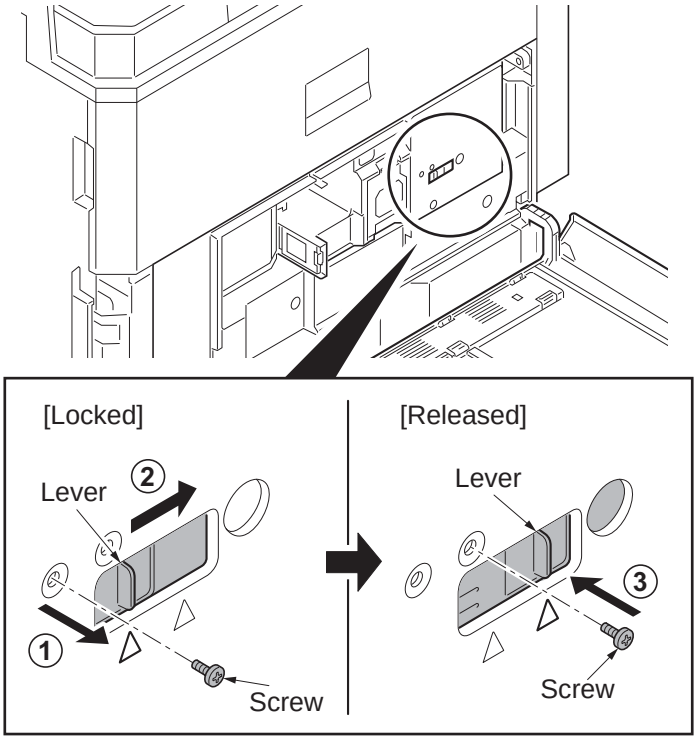


Figure 1-2-44

Installing the toner disposal box

1. Remove the tape.
2. Remove the cable cover.

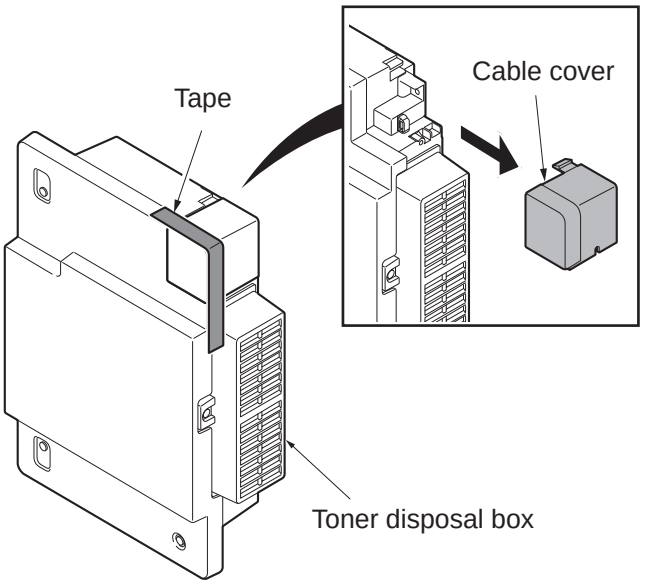


Figure 1-2-45

3. Fit the toner disposal box using three M3 x 8 S tight screws.

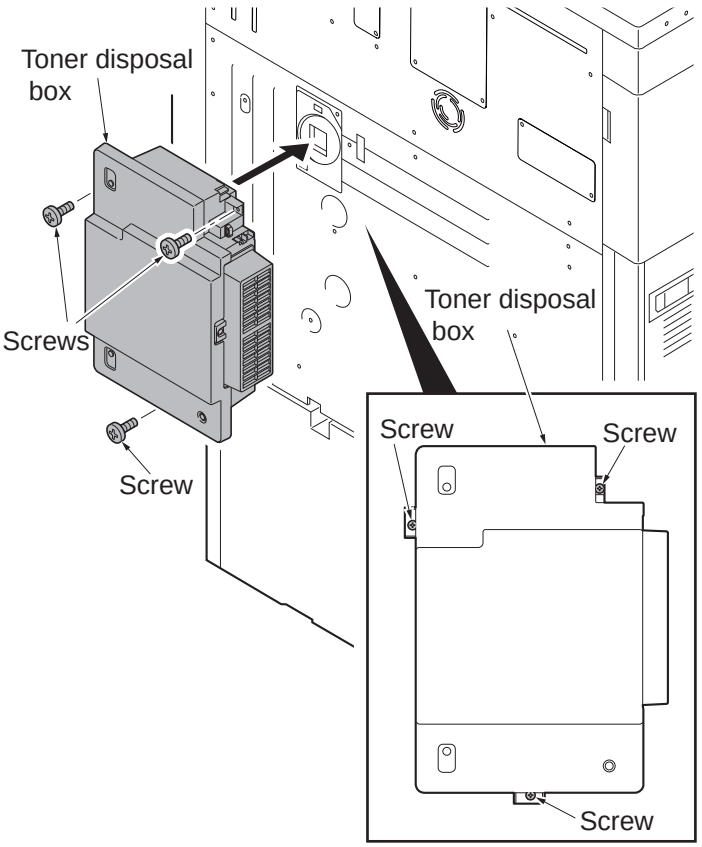


Figure 1-2-46

4. Connect the connector.
5. Fit the cable cover using M3 x 8 P tight screw.

*: If power is turned on without the toner waste box installed, the C Call is caused.
FAN unconnected: C7470

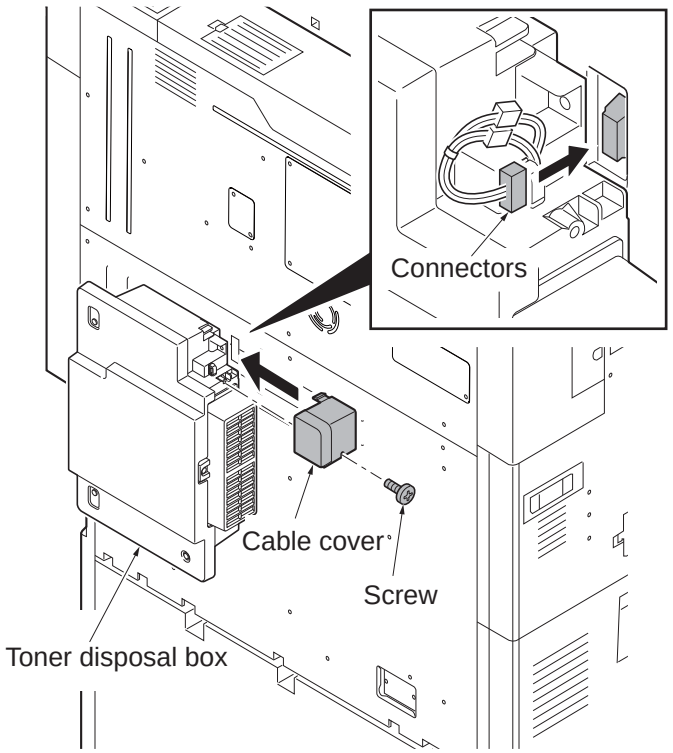


Figure 1-2-47

Replacing operation panel sheet

1. Insert a flat-head screwdriver and slide the operation panel covers A and B to remove them.

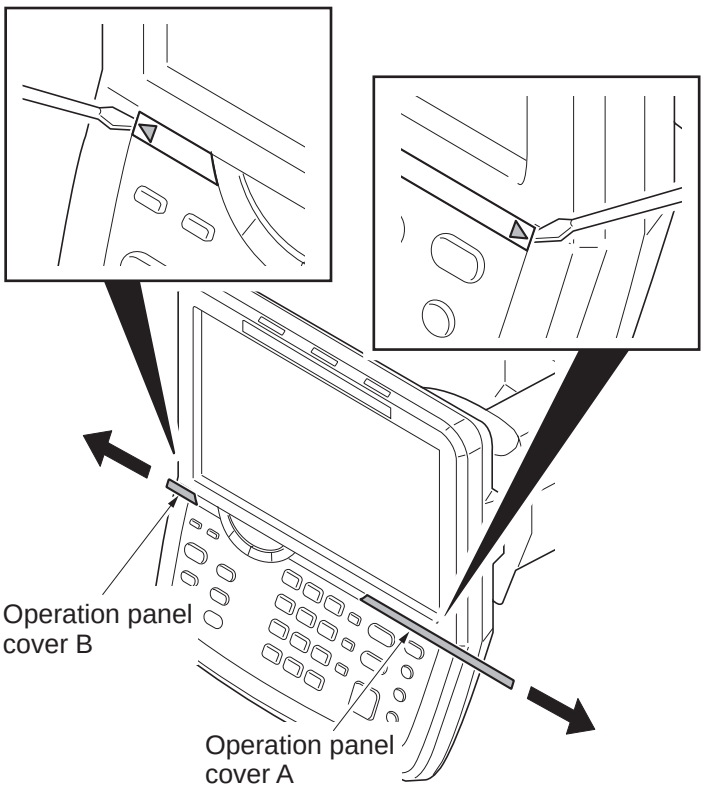


Figure 1-2-48

2. Remove the clear panel.

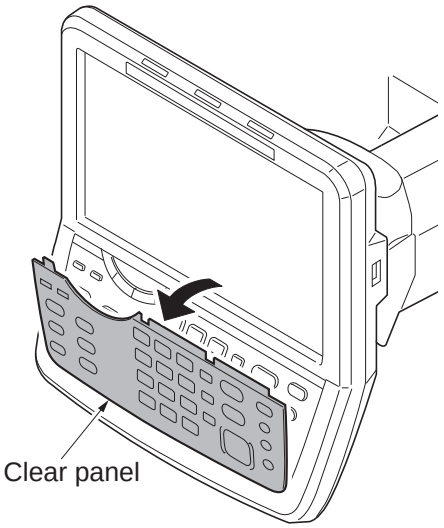


Figure 1-2-49

3. Remove the operation panel sheet.
4. Replace the operation panel sheet of the corresponding language.
5. Refit the clear panel.
6. Refit the operation panel covers A and B.

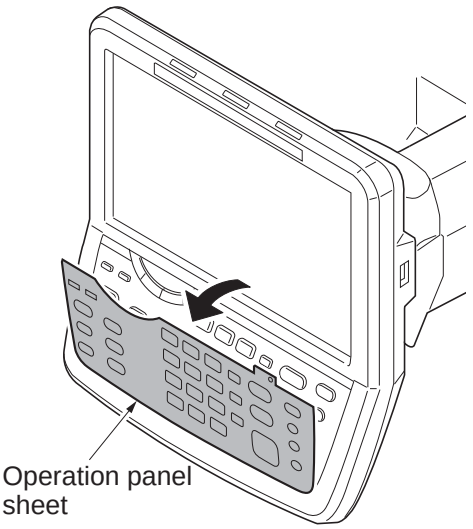


Figure 1-2-50

Installing other optional devices

1. Install the optional devices (document finisher, side feeder and/ or fax kit etc.) as necessary.

Installing the stoppers

The above is not required when an optional document finisher or the side feeder has been installed.

1. Fix the stoppers with two screws at the bottom right of the device.

*: Use the upper screw holes.

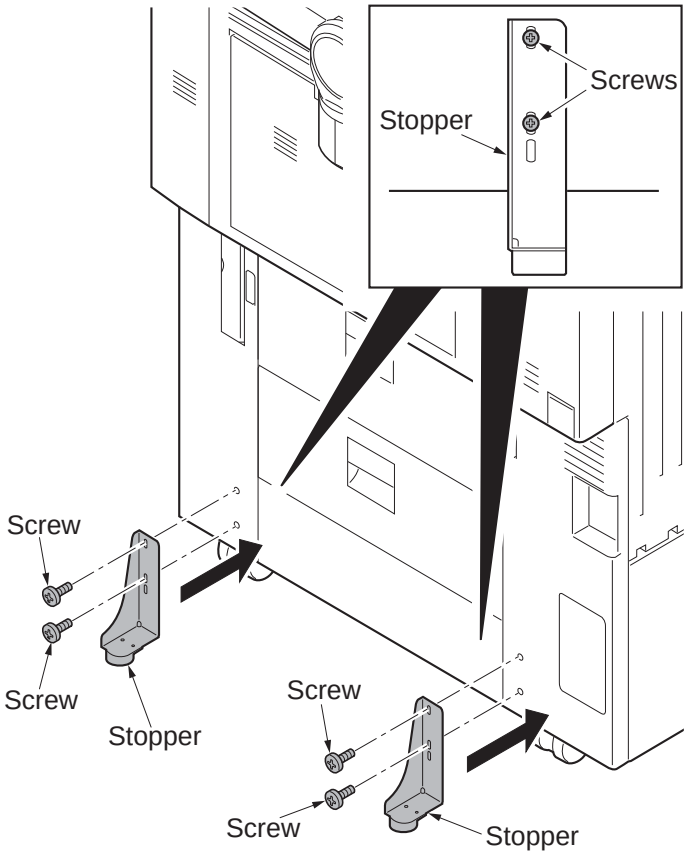


Figure 1-2-51

Caution

*: Turn the adjusters on each corner until they reach the floor and then secure the machine.

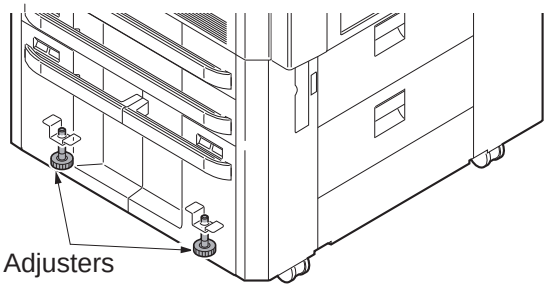


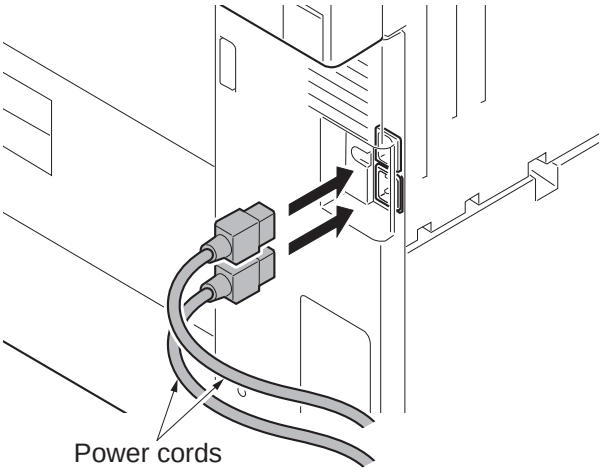
Figure 1-2-52

Installing the cassette heater (option)

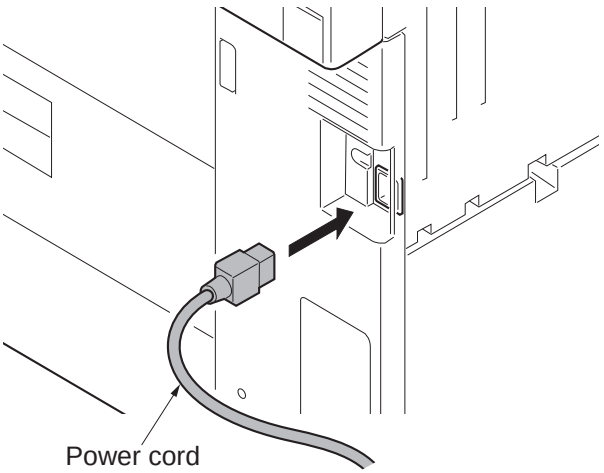
1. Install the optional cassette heater as necessary (see page 1-2-72).

Connect the power cord

1. Connect the power cord to the power cord connector on rear lower of the machine.
2. Connect the power plug to the wall outlet.



120 V specifications



220 - 240 V specifications

Figure 1-2-53

Installing toner

1. Turn the main power switch on. Toner installation is started.
2. The drive chain is disengaged when toner installation is completed.
   Run maintenance mode U132 if [Add Toner] remains displayed even after the drive chain is disengaged (see page 1-3-80).

Setup for adjusting images

1. **Check the messages on the operation panel**
   After completion of warming up, in case to display “Warning for high temperature. Adjust the room temperature.” on the operation panel, follow the step 2. (Performing Drum Refresh)
   In case to display “Warning for low temperature. Adjust the room temperature.” on the operation panel, install the machine in the other location this message won’t be shown.
   Installing the machine in a low temperature environment could cause image quality problems.

2. Setup setting at high altitude place.
   When setup is done at high altitude place, execute as follows (such as in Mexico City). (see page 1-3-83).
   U140 -> AC Calib -> Calibration -> Execute -> Start
   Result: developing leak image occur (see page 1-4-220).
   U140 - AC Calib -> Lowering the numerical value of Magnification

3. **Drum refresh (see the operation guide)**
   Press the System menu key.
   Press [Adjustment/Maintenance] and then [Next] of [Drum Refresh].
   Press [Execute] to perform drum refresh. When completed, press [OK].

Setting the maintenance item U952 (see page 1-3-199)

1. Enter the maintenance mode by entering 10871087 using the numeric keys.
2. Enter 952 using the numeric keys and press the start key.
3. Select [Execute].
4. Select [SETUP].
5. Press the start key.

*: Running the simulation allows execution histories to be logged.

Exit maintenance mode

1. Enter 001 using the numeric keys and press the start key. The machine exits the maintenance mode.

Completion of the machine installation

*: The maintenance mode U952 [SETUP] includes the following:
   If U952 is not used, follow the procedure below.

Adjusting the image

1. Performing calibration
   U464 Setting the ID correction operation - performing calibration (see page 1-3-175)

*: **See the operation guide**
   Press [Adjustment/Maintenance] and then [Next] of [Calibration].
   Press [Execute] to perform calibration. When completed, press [OK].

2. **Adjusting the halftone automatically** (see page 1-3-151)
   Load the cassette with multiple sheets of A4 or Letter paper.

Enter the maintenance mode by entering 10871087 using the numeric keys.
Enter 410 using the numeric keys and press the start key.
Press [Normal Mode] and then press the start key. A test patterns 1 and 2 are outputted.
Place the output test pattern 1 as the original.
Place approximately 20 sheets of white paper on the test pattern 1 and set them.
Press the start key. Adjustment is made.
Place the output test pattern 2 as the original.
Place approximately 20 sheets of white paper on the test pattern 2 and set them.
Press the start key. Adjustment is made.
[Finish] is displayed in [Phase] when normally completed.
Press the stop key twice to exit.

3. Make test copies

If image quality is unsatisfactory after test copying, execute calibration, then retry U410-Adjusting the halftone automatically.

*: If paper is fed skewed, perform the adjustment of skewed paper in the cassette (see page).
(see page 1-5-140)

Setting the delivery date (maintenance item U278)

1. Enter 278 using the numeric keys and press the start key.
2. Select [Today].
3. Press the start key. The delivery date is set.
4. Press the stop key to exit.

Output an own-status report (maintenance item U000)

1. Enter 000 using the numeric keys and press the start key.
2. Select [Maintenance] and press the start key. A status report is output.
3. Press the stop key to exit.

Clearing the all copy counts and machine life counts (one time only)

*: Clear the counter using the maintenance mode U927, if necessary.
1. Enter 927 using the numeric keys and press the start key.
2. Select [Execute].
3. Press the start key. All copy counts and machine life counts are cleared.

*: After completing the settings, back up the data with the U917 maintenance mode.
This enables data restoration when replacing the main PWB or hard disk drive.

(2) Setting initial copy modes

Factory settings are as follows:

Maintenance item No.	Contents	Factory setting
U253	Switching between double and single counts	DBL(A3/Ledger)
U260	Selecting the timing for copy counting	Eject
U285	Setting service status page	On
U323	Setting abnormal temperature and humidity warning	On
U325	Setting the paper interval	Off/1
U326	Setting the black line cleaning indication	On/8
U327	Setting the cassette heater control	Off
U343	Switching between duplex/simplex copy mode	Off

1-2-3 Installing the key counter (option)

Key counter installation requires the following parts:

Parts	Quantity	Part.No.
Key counter	1	3025418011
Key counter set	1	302A369709
Key counter wire*	1	302K946AJ0
Tray mount set	1	302LF94291

*: Not used in 120V model.

Supplied parts of key counter set (302A369709):

Parts	Quantity	Part.No.
Key counter socket assembly	1	3029236241
Key counter cover retainer	1	302GR03010
Key counter retainer	1	302GR03020
Key counter cover	1	3066060011
Key counter mount	1	3066060041
Edging	2*	7YZM210006++H01
Band	1*	M21AH010
M3 x 8 tap-tight P screw	1*	5MBTPB3008PW++R
M4 x 10 tap-tight P screw	2*	5MBTPB4010PW++R
M4 x 10 tap-tight S screw	2*	5MBTPB4010TW++R
M3 x 6 bronze flat-head screw	2	7BB003306H
M4 x 20 tap-tight S screw	2*	7BB100420H
M3 nut	1	7BC1003055++H01
M3 x 8 bronze binding screw	1*	B1B03080
M4 x 30 tap-tight S screw	1*	B1B54300
M4 x 6 chrome TP screw	5	B4A04060
M4 x 10 chrome TP screw	2*	B4A04100

*: Not used in this model.

Supplied parts of tray mount set (302LF94291):

Parts	Quantity	Part.No.
Tray cover	1	302LC04600
Tray mount	1	-
Tray film	2	-
M4 x 20 tap-tight S screw	4	7BB100420H
M4 x 8 tap-tight S screw	2	7BB700408H

Procedure

1. Press the power key on the operation panel to off. Make sure that the power indicator and the memory indicator are off before turning off the main power switch. And then unplug the power cable from the wall outlet.
2. Fit the key counter socket assembly to the key counter retainer using two screws and nut.
3. Fit the key counter mount to the key counter cover using two screws.
4. Fit the key counter retainer to the key counter mount using two screws.

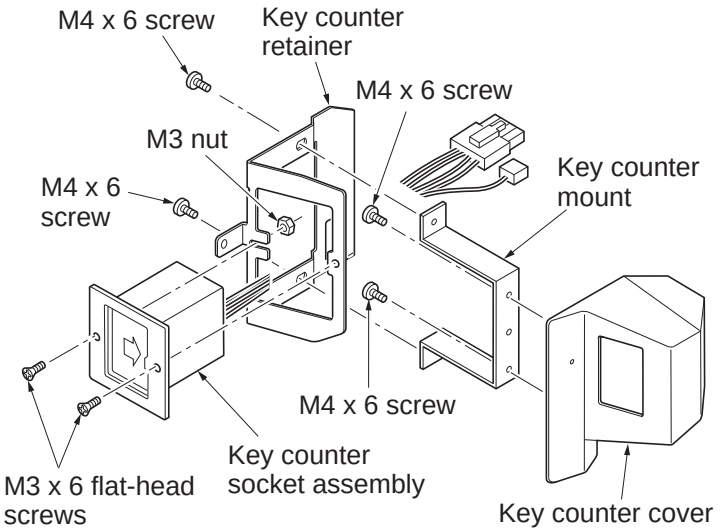


Figure 1-2-54

*: For the 120V model, proceed to step 24. Pass the connector of the key counter wire through the aperture in the operation mount cover B.
And then proceed to step 28.

5. Remove nine screws and then remove the rear upper cover.

*: To fix a cover, insert the hook at the left top first by bowing the cover.

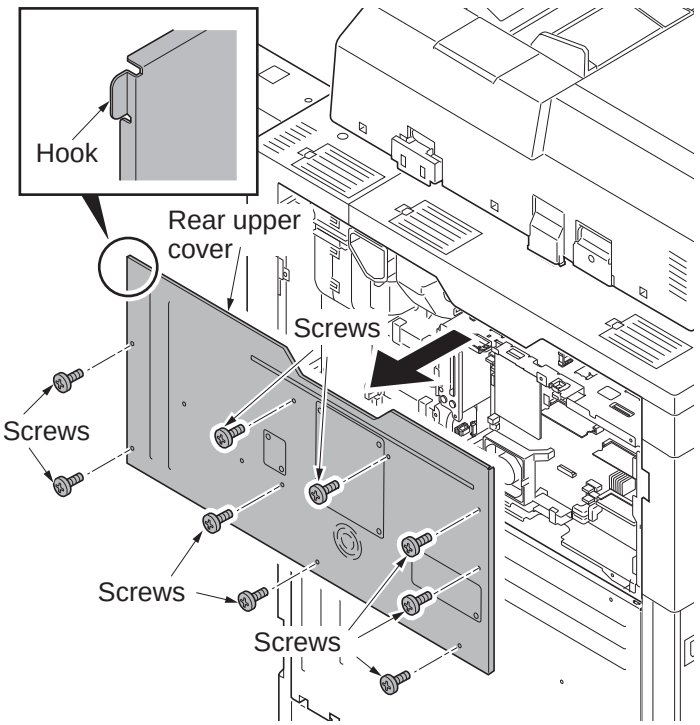


Figure 1-2-55

6. Remove the controller cover.
7. Remove the screw and then remove the controller lid.

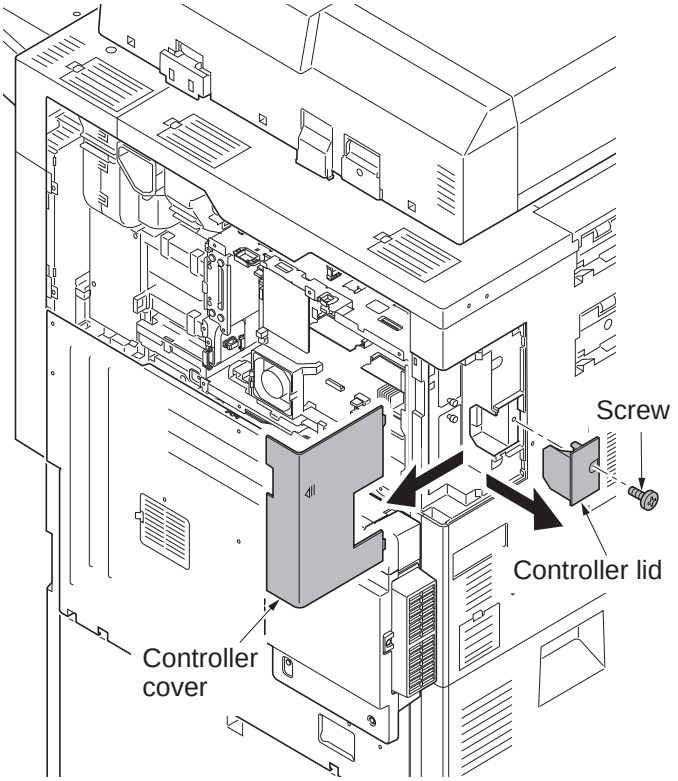


Figure 1-2-56

8. Release seven wire saddles on the controller box.
9. Remove three wire holders.

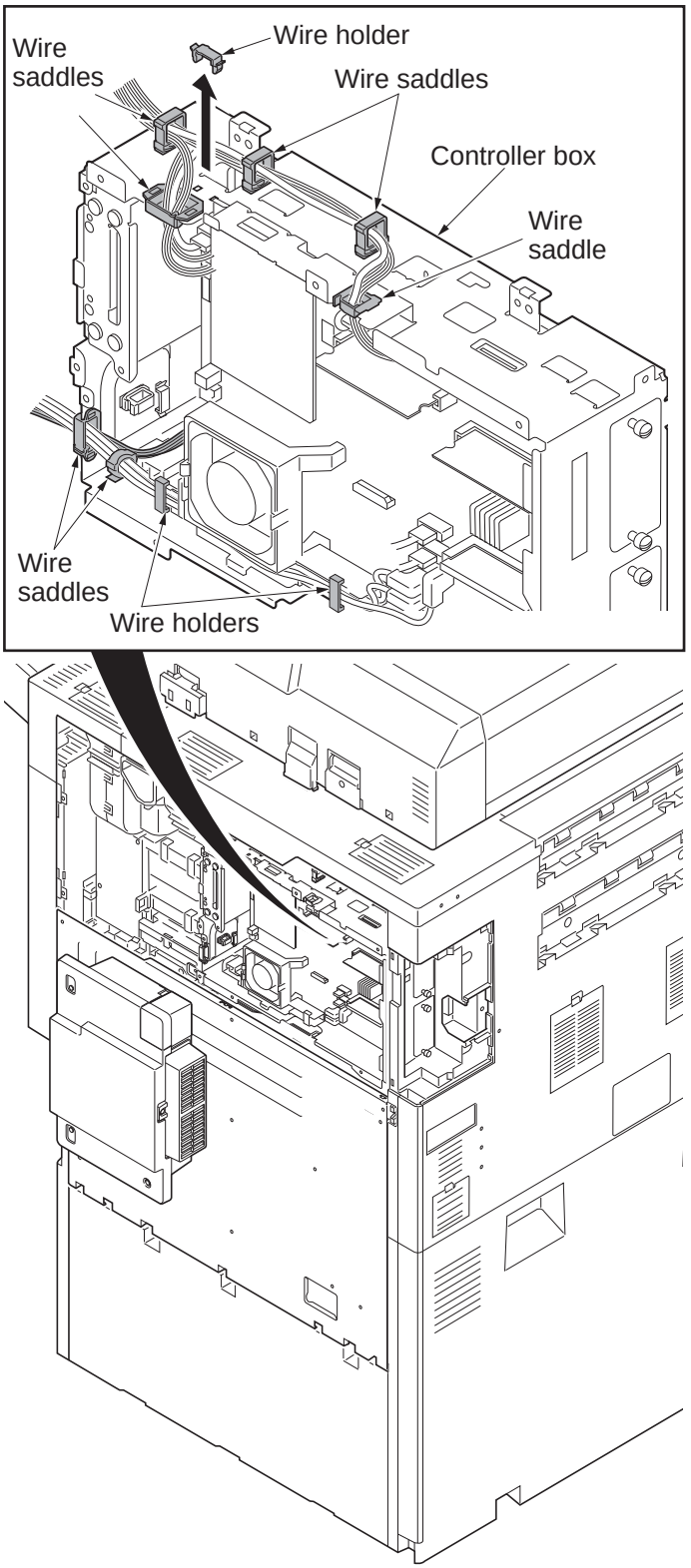


Figure 1-2-57

10. Remove the connector from the DP relay PWB,
11. Remove the following connectors that connected to the main PWB from the outside of the control box.
    YC25
    YC11
    YC30
    YC42
    YC43 (FFC connector with a lock)
    YC21 (WH)
    YC22 (WH)
    YC26 (BK)
    YC6
    YC12

*: Before removing the connector type FFC YC43, unlock the lock by pressing the lock levers at both ends.

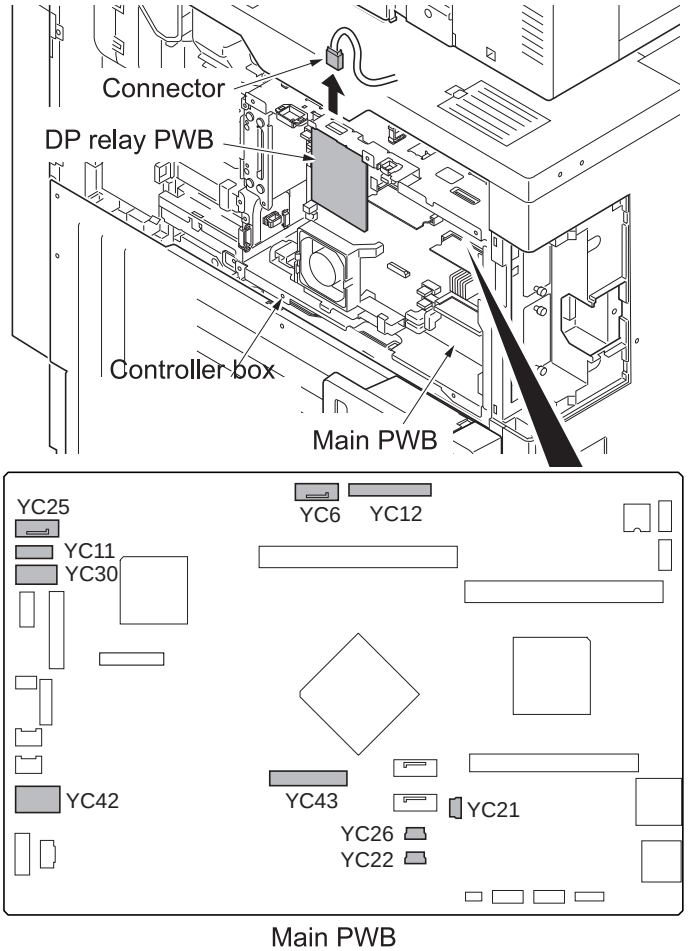


Figure 1-2-58

12. Remove five screws.
13. Unhook two hooks and then remove the controller box.

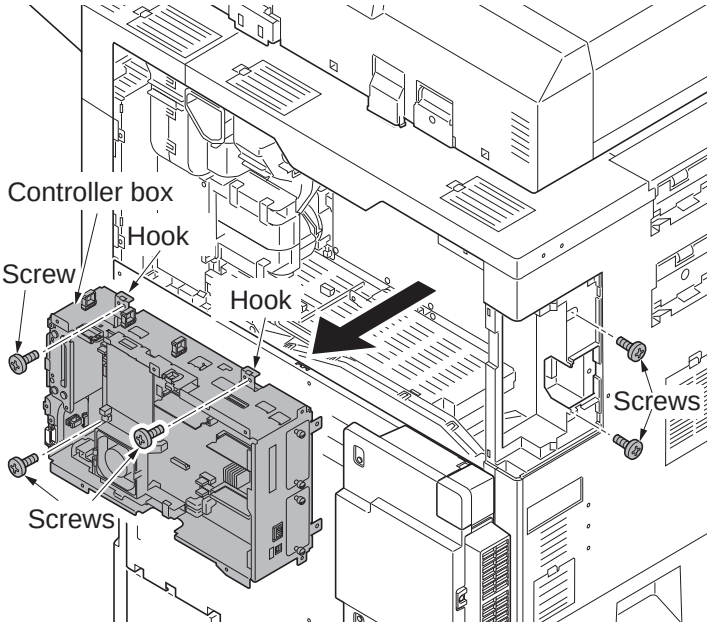


Figure 1-2-59

14. Open the DP.
    Remove the screw and then remove the operation mount cover C.

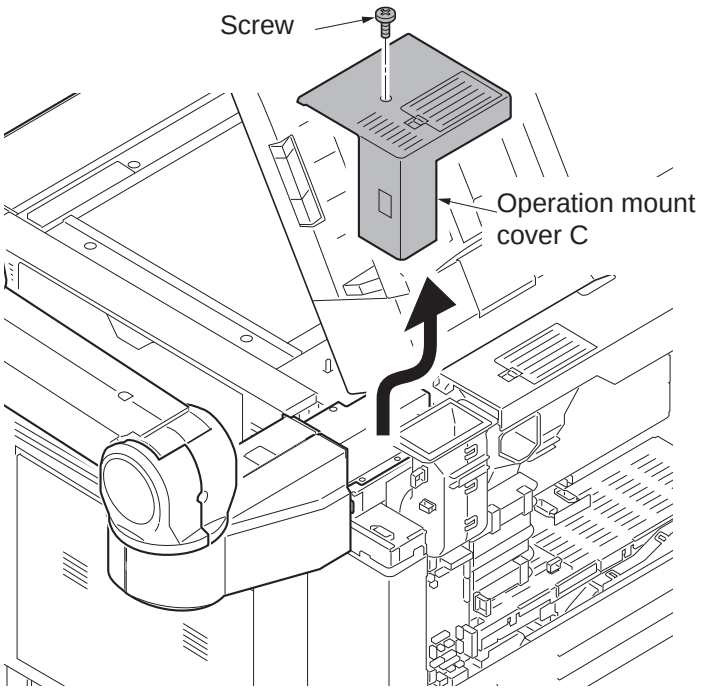


Figure 1-2-60

15. Remove the screw and then remove the arm hinge cover A and B.

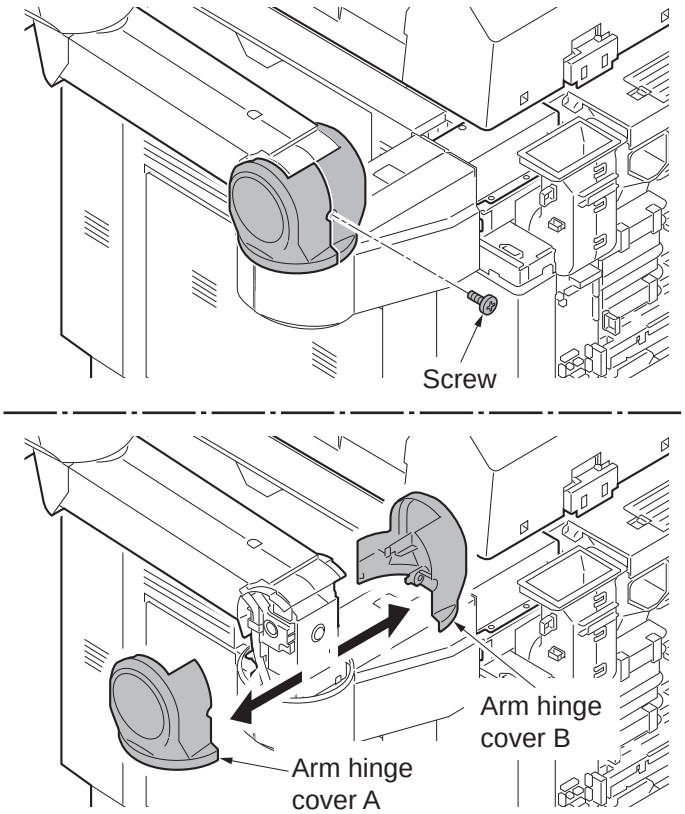


Figure 1-2-61

16. Remove the screw and then remove the operation mount cover A.

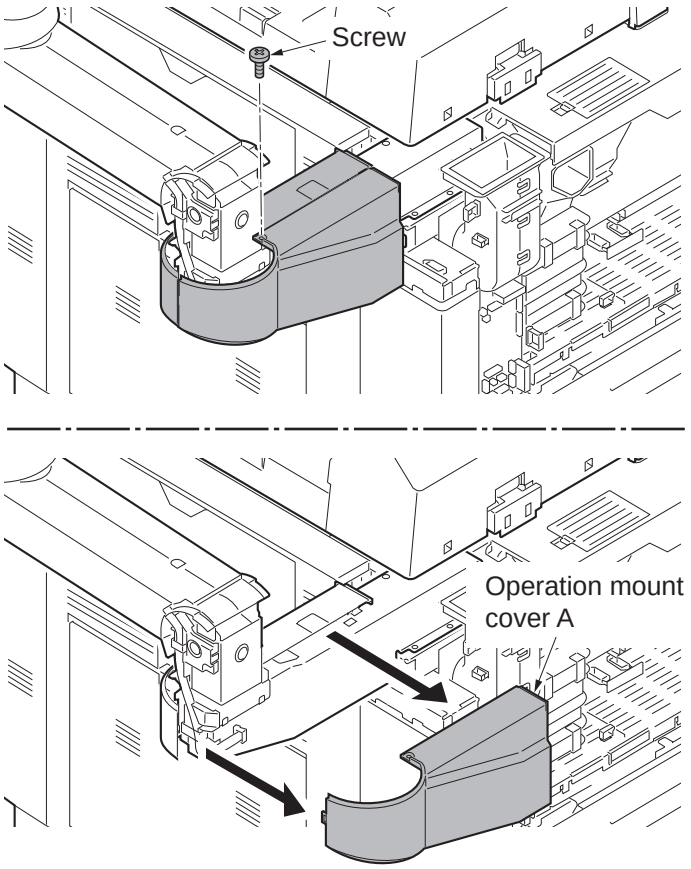


Figure 1-2-62

17. Cut out the aperture plate on the operation mount cover B using nippers.

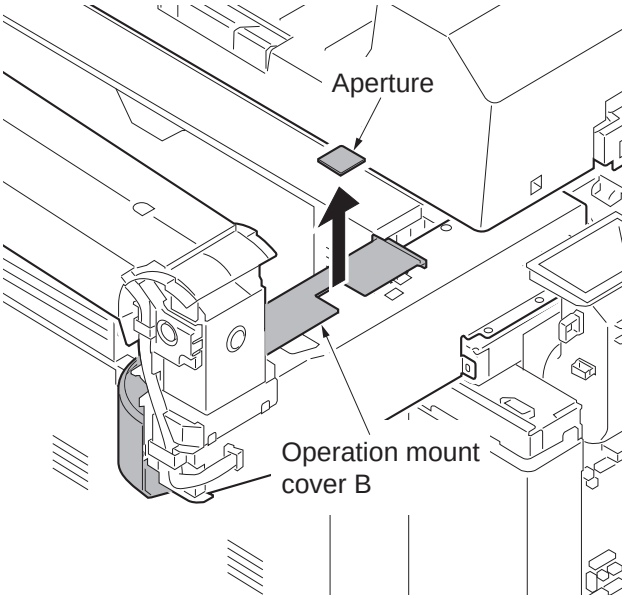


Figure 1-2-63

18. Connect the connector of the key counter wire to the connector YC24 on the engine PWB.

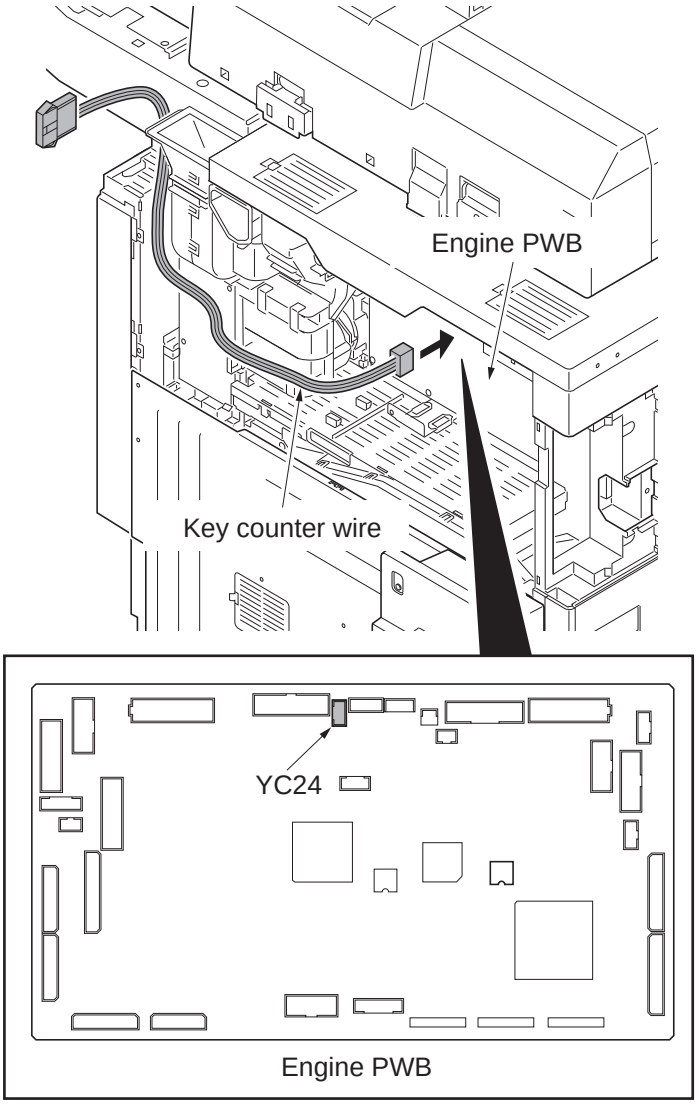


Figure 1-2-64

19. Remove two wire holders.
20. Route the key counter wire through the wire guide and fix it at the wire holders.

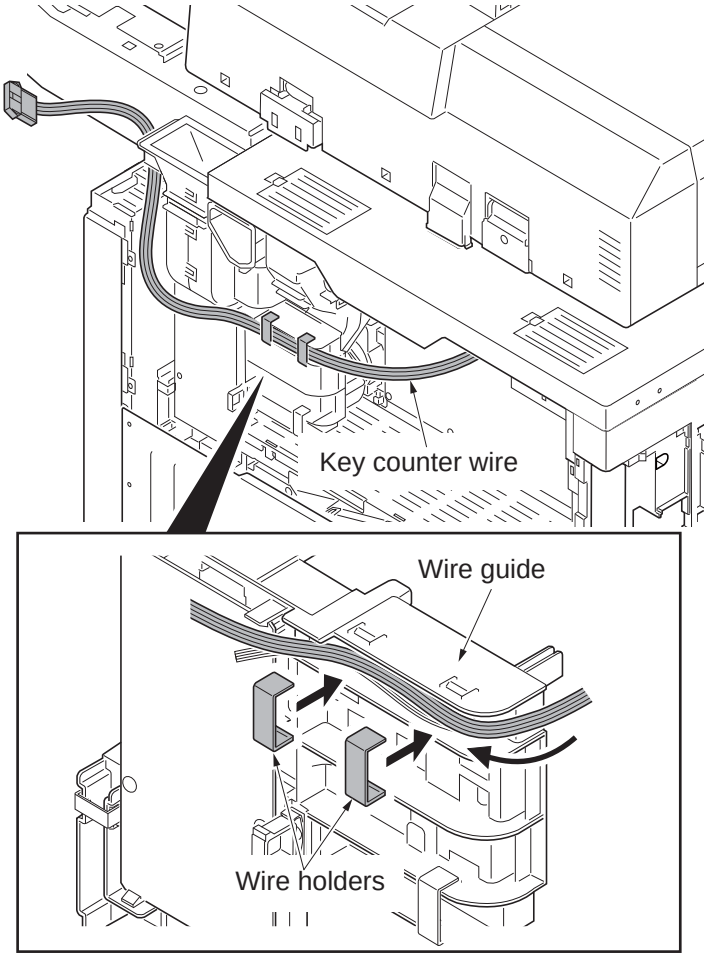


Figure 1-2-65

21. Route the key counter wire through the three wire saddles and fix it at the wire holder.

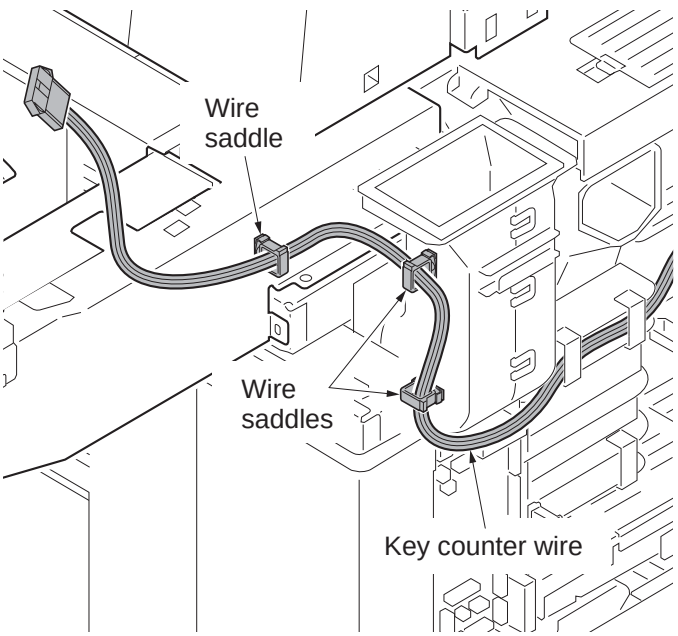


Figure 1-2-66

22. Pass the connector of the key counter wire through the aperture in the operation mount cover B and refit the operation mount cover A.
23. Refit the arm hinge cover A, B and operation mount cover C.
24. Refit the controller box.
25. Refit the rear upper cover.

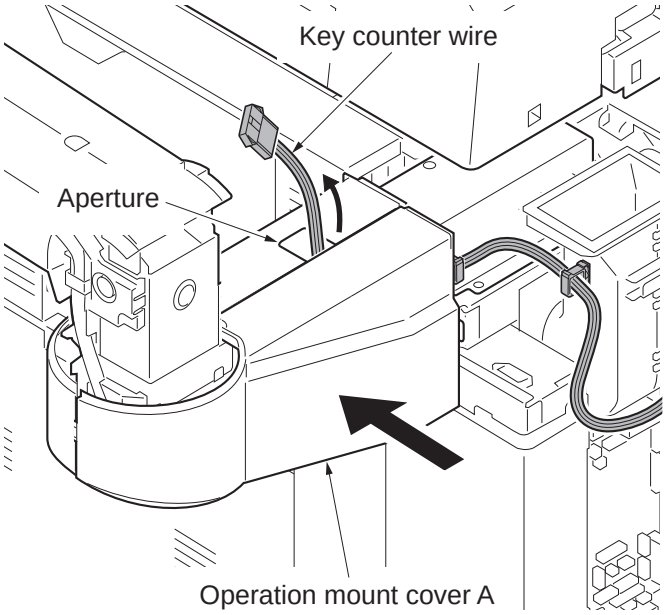


Figure 1-2-67

26. Peel the protective pad and then affix two tray films over the tray mount.

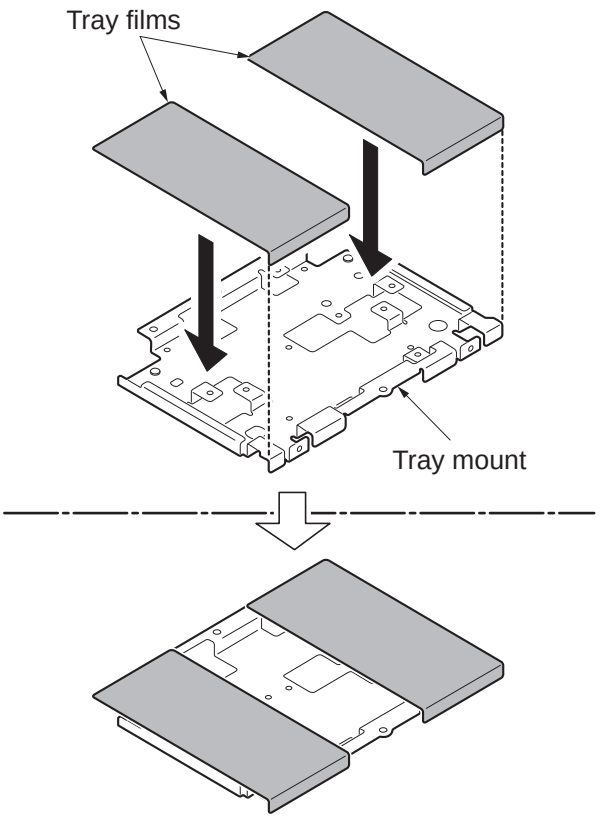


Figure 1-2-68

27. Fit the tray mount to the operation arm using two M4 x 20 tap-tight S screws.

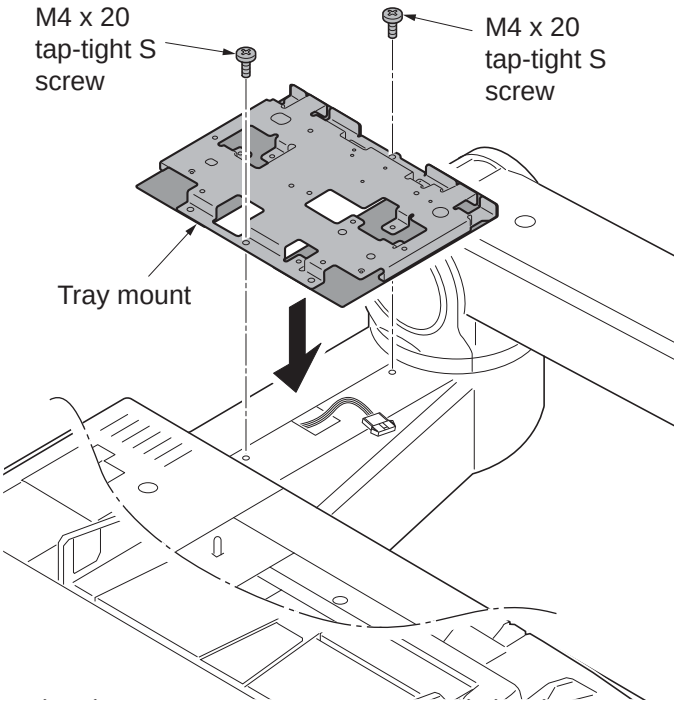


Figure 1-2-69

28. Cut out the aperture plate on the tray cover using nippers.
29. Fit the tray cover to the tray mount using two M4 x 8 screws.

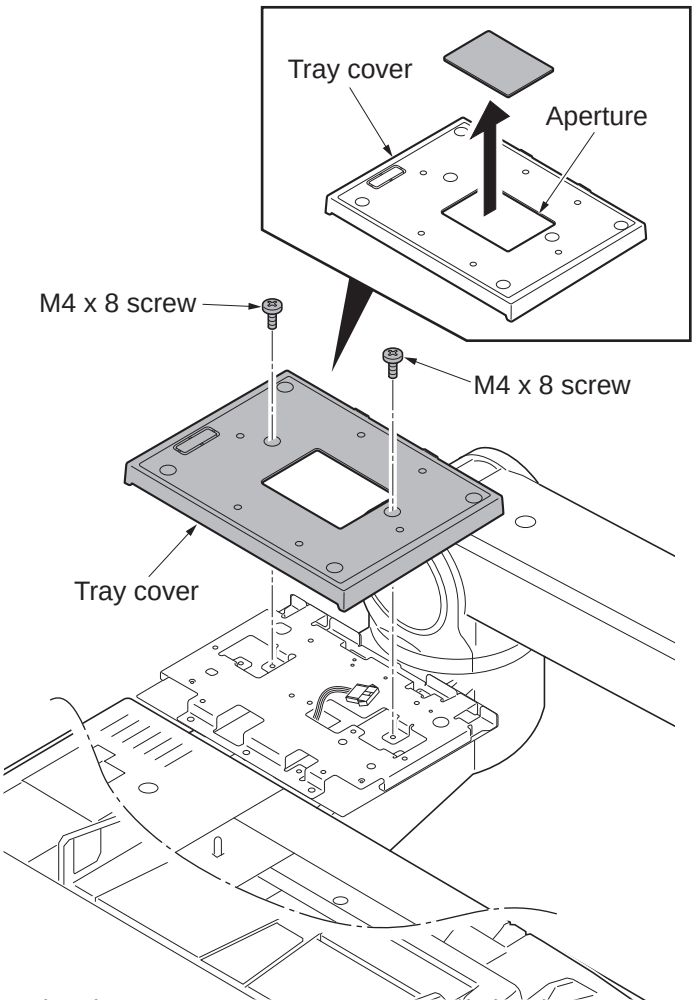


Figure 1-2-70

30. Fit the key counter cover retainer to the tray cover using two M4 x 20 tap-tight S screws.

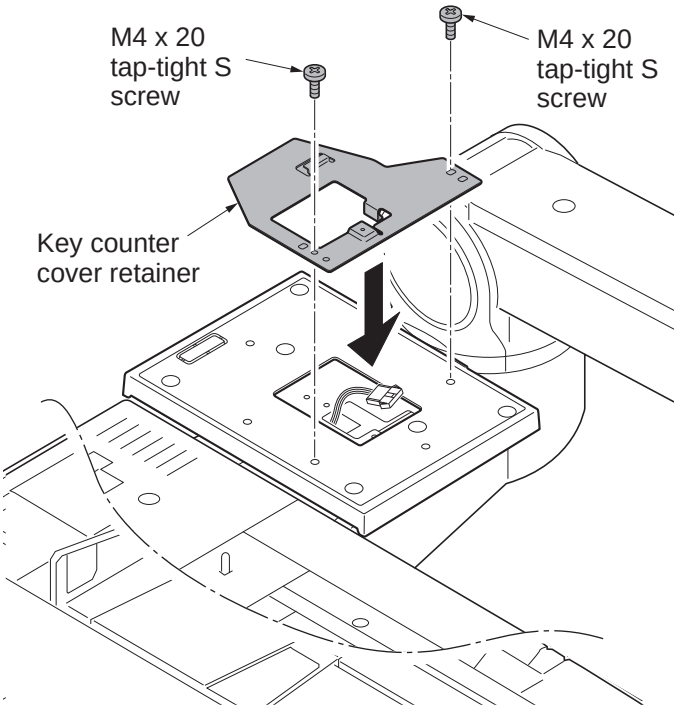


Figure 1-2-71

31. Connect the key counter signal cable to the key counter wire.
32. Fit the key counter cover to the machine using the M4 x 6 screw.

33. Insert the key counter into the key counter socket assembly.
34. Turn the main power switch on and enter the maintenance mode.
35. Run maintenance item U204 and select [Key-Counter] (see page 1-3-105).
36. Exit the maintenance mode.
37. Check that the message requesting the key counter to be inserted is displayed on the touch panel when the key counter is pulled out.
38. Check that the counter counts up as copies are made.

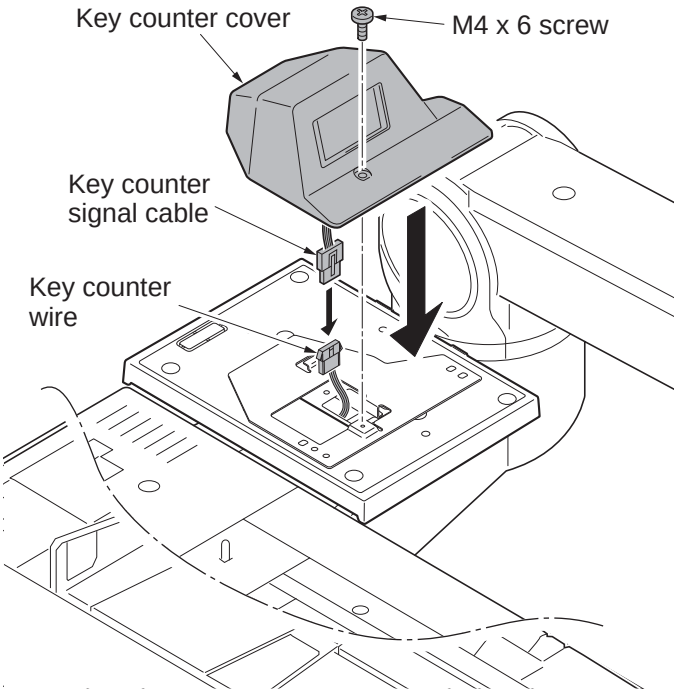


Figure 1-2-72

1-2-4 Installing the key card MK-2 (option for Japan only)

Key card installation requires the following parts:

Parts	Quantity	Part.No.
Key card MK-2	1	8J272002 (option)
MK-2 mount	1	Supplied with MK-2
M4 x 16 screw	2	
Tray mount set	1	302LF94291

Supplied parts of tray mount set (302LF94291):

Parts	Quantity	Part.No.
Tray cover	1	302LC04600
Tray mount	1	-
Tray film	2	-
M4 x 20 tap-tight S screw	4	7BB100420H
M4 x 8 tap-tight S screw	2	7BB700408H

Procedure

1. Press the power key on the operation panel to off. Make sure that the power indicator and the memory indicator are off before turning off the main power switch. And then unplug the power cable from the wall outlet.
2. Remove nine screws and then remove the rear upper cover.

*: To fix a cover, insert the hook at the left top first by bowing the cover.

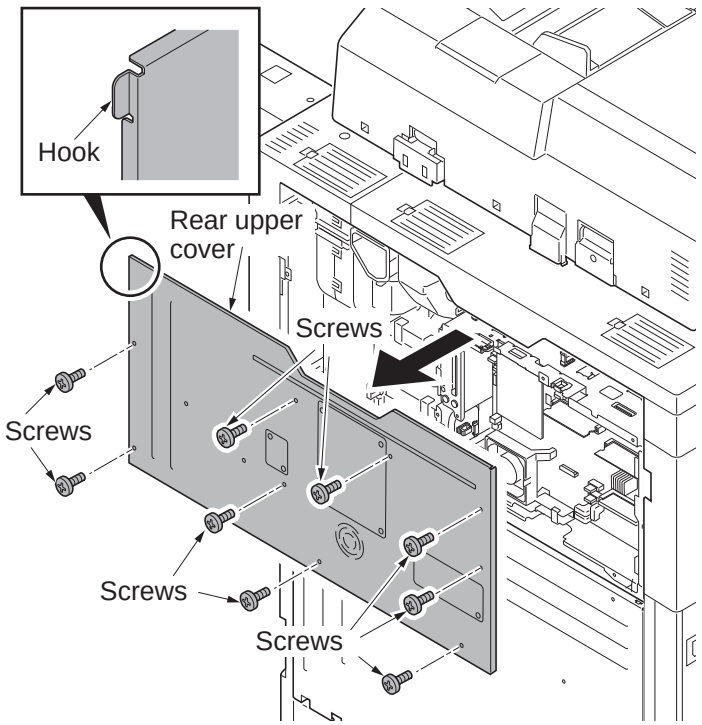


Figure 1-2-73

3. Remove the controller cover.
4. Remove the screw and then remove the controller lid.

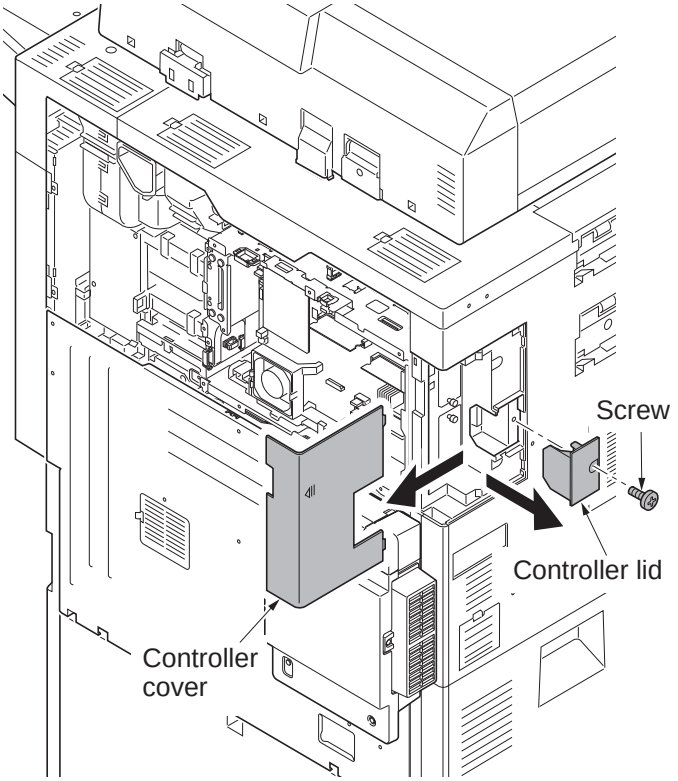


Figure 1-2-74

.

5. Release seven wire saddles on the controller box.
6. Remove three wire holders.

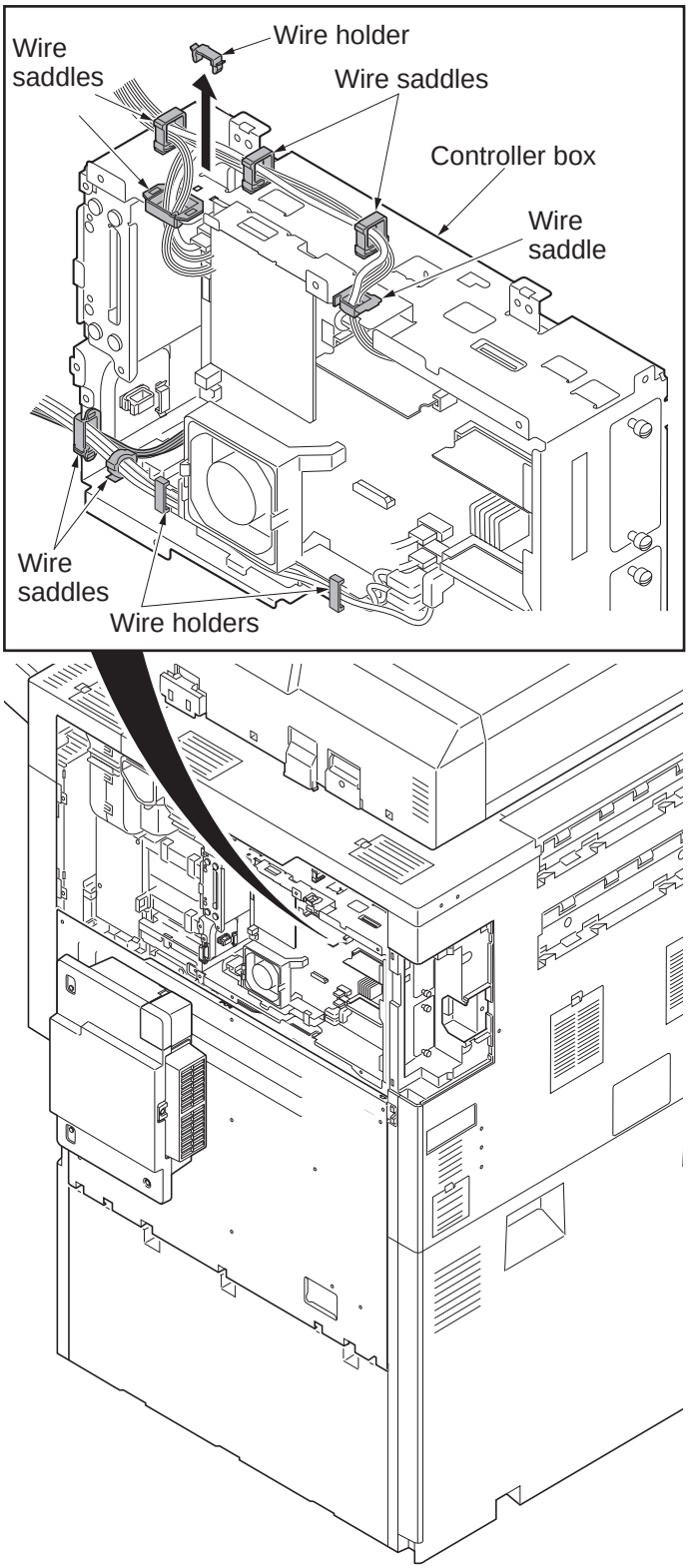


Figure 1-2-75

7. Remove the connector from the DP relay PWB,
8. Remove the following connectors that connected to the main PWB from the outside of the control box.
   YC25
   YC11
   YC30
   YC42
   YC43 (FFC connector with a lock)
   YC21 (WH)
   YC22 (WH)
   YC26 (BK)
   YC6
   YC12

*: Before removing the connector type FFC YC43, unlock the lock by pressing the lock levers at both ends.

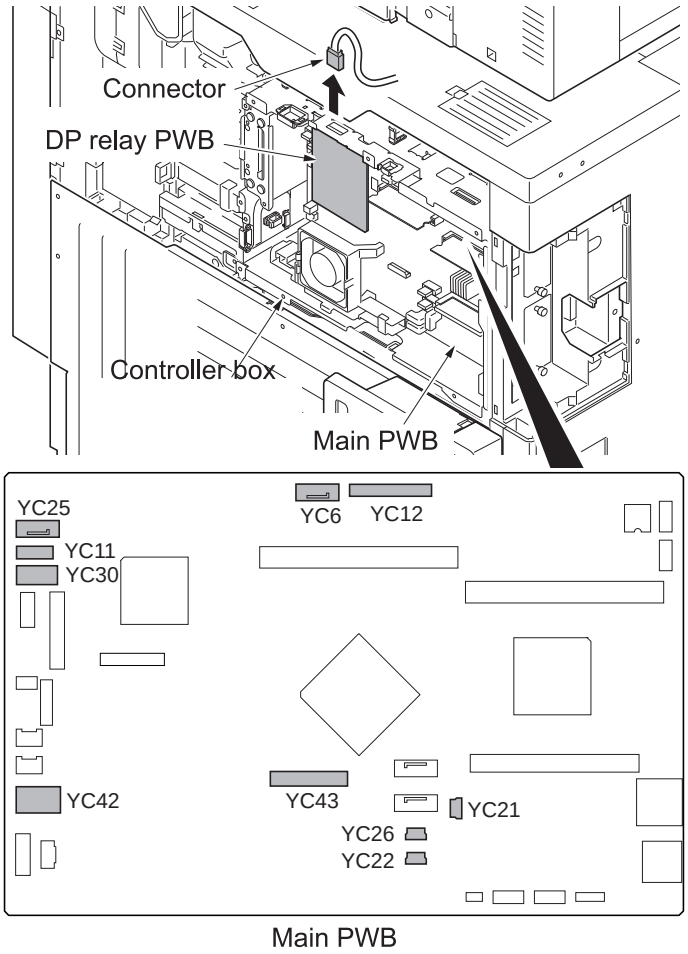


Figure 1-2-76

9. Remove five screws.
10. Unhook two hooks and then remove the controller box.

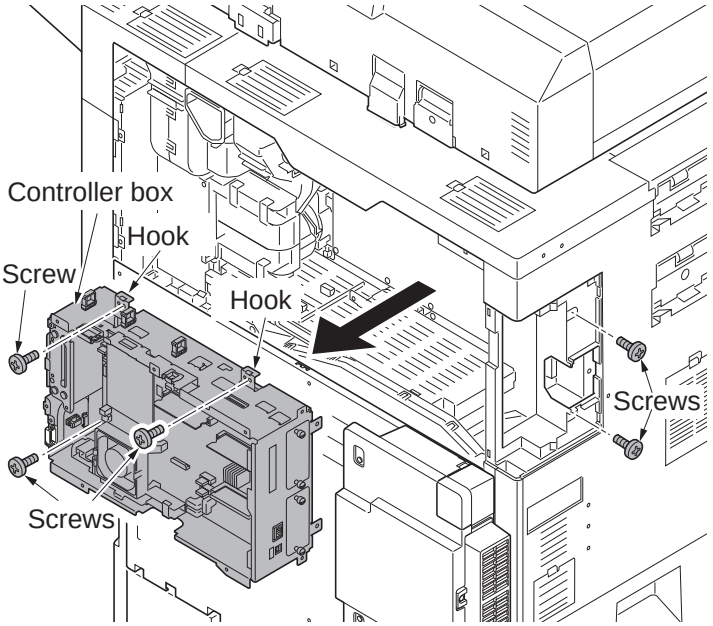


Figure 1-2-77

11. Open the DP.
    Remove the screw and then remove the operation mount cover C.

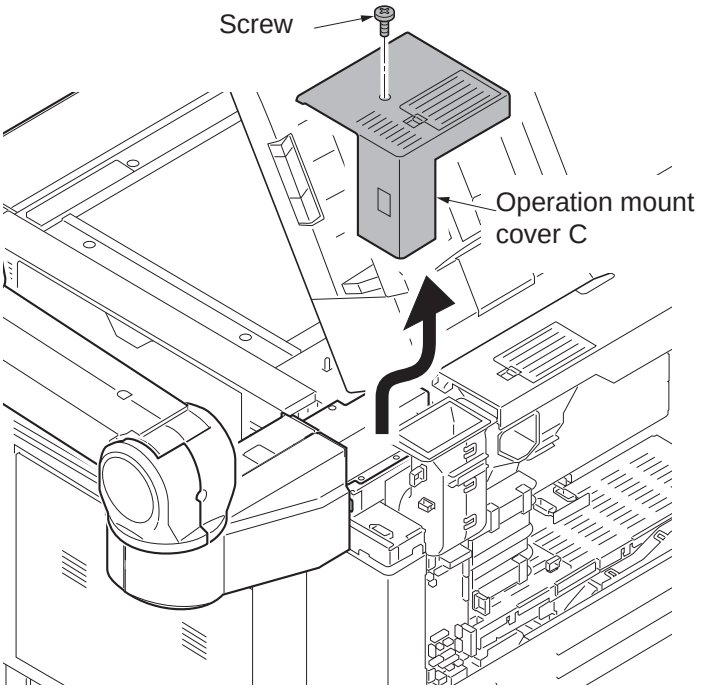


Figure 1-2-78

12. Cut out the aperture plate on the operation mount cover C using nippers.

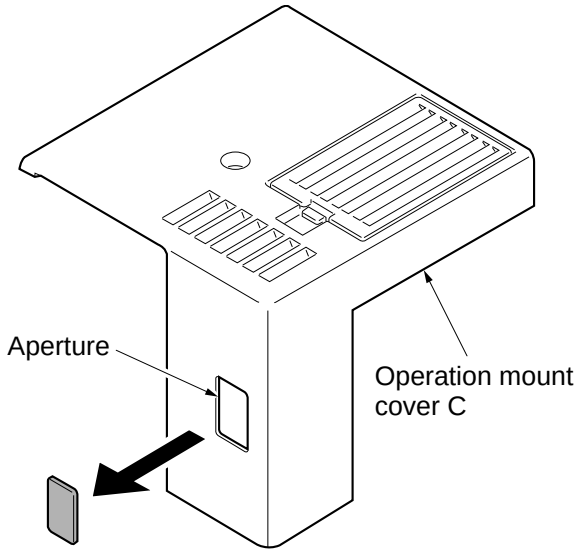


Figure 1-2-79

13. Pass the MK-2 signal cable through the aperture in the operation mount cover C.

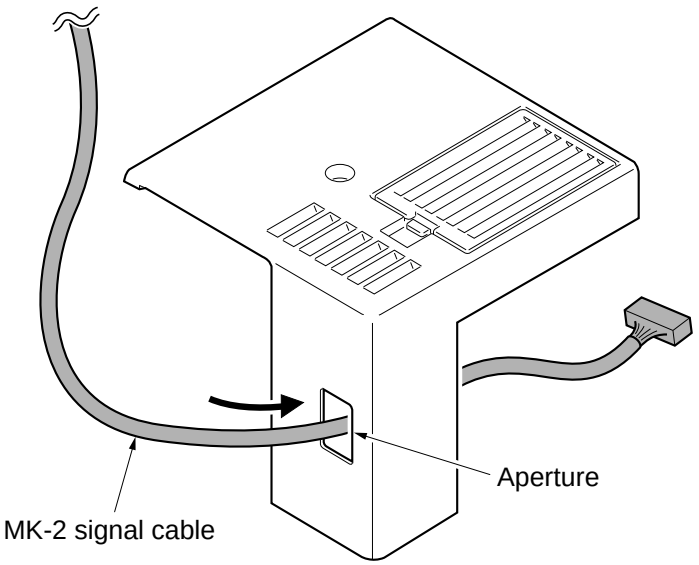


Figure 1-2-80

14. Connect the connector of the MK-2 signal cable to the connector YC25 on the engine PWB.
15. Remove the screw from the machine.
16. Fix the MK-2 signal cable to the ground terminal with the screw that was removed.

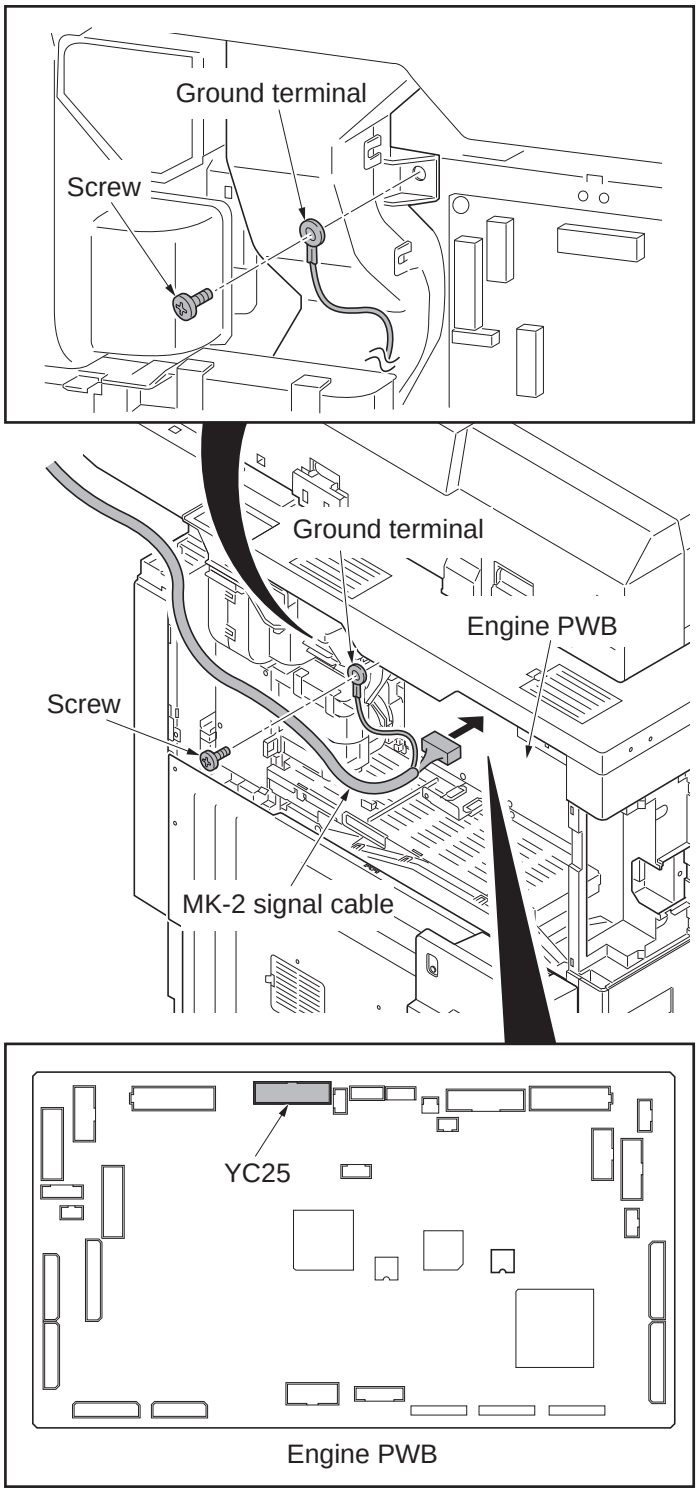


Figure 1-2-81

17. Remove two wire holders.
18. Route the MK-2 signal cable through the wire guide and fix it at two wire holders.
19. Refit the operation mount cover C.
20. Refit the controller box.
21. Refit the rear upper cover.

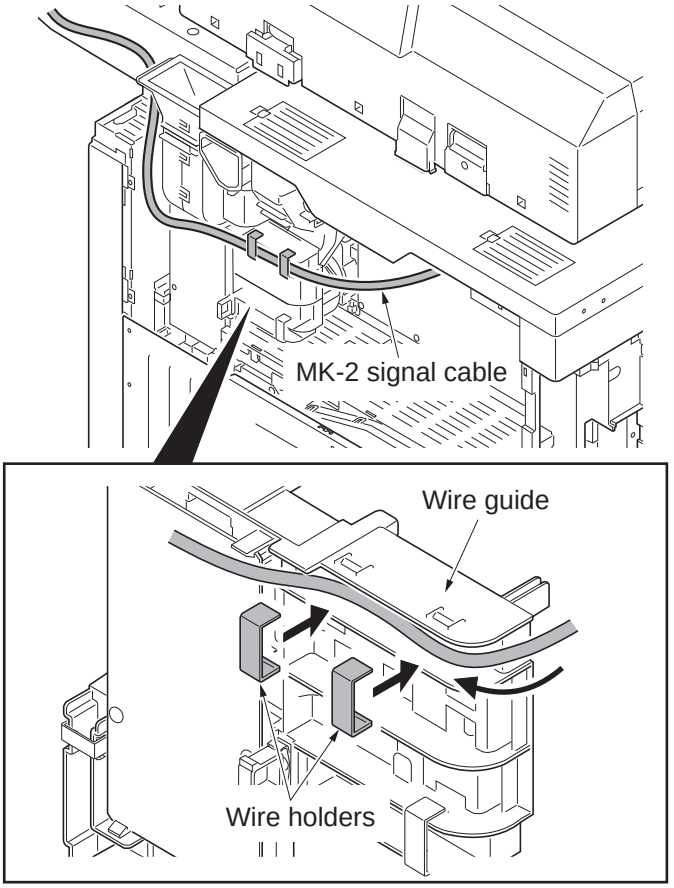


Figure 1-2-82

22. Peel the protective pad and then affix two tray films over the tray mount.

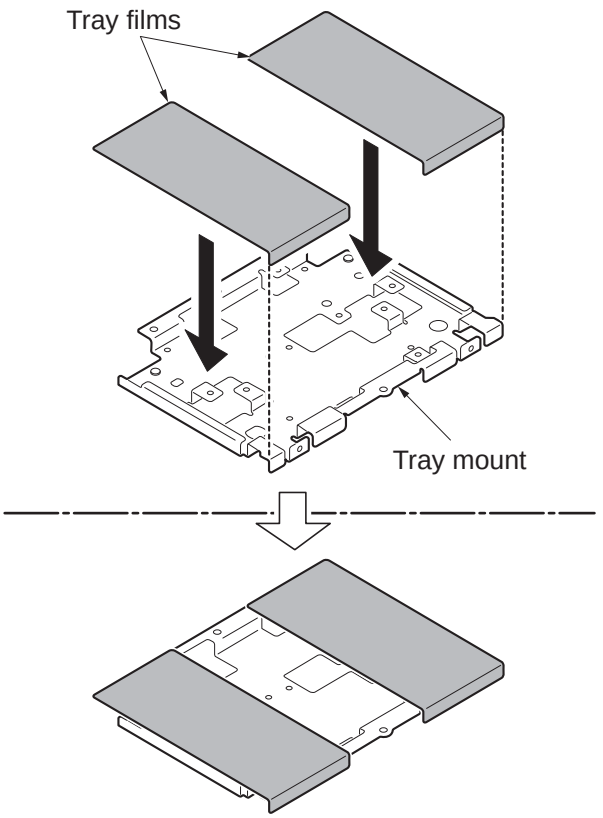


Figure 1-2-83

23. Fit the tray mount to the operation arm using two M4 x 20 tap-tight S screws.

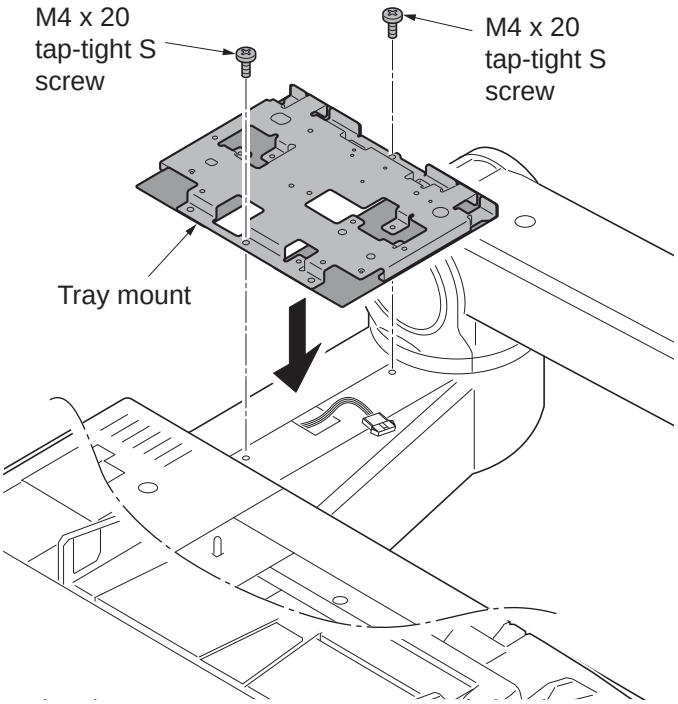


Figure 1-2-84

24. Fit the tray cover to the tray mount using two M4 x 8 screws.

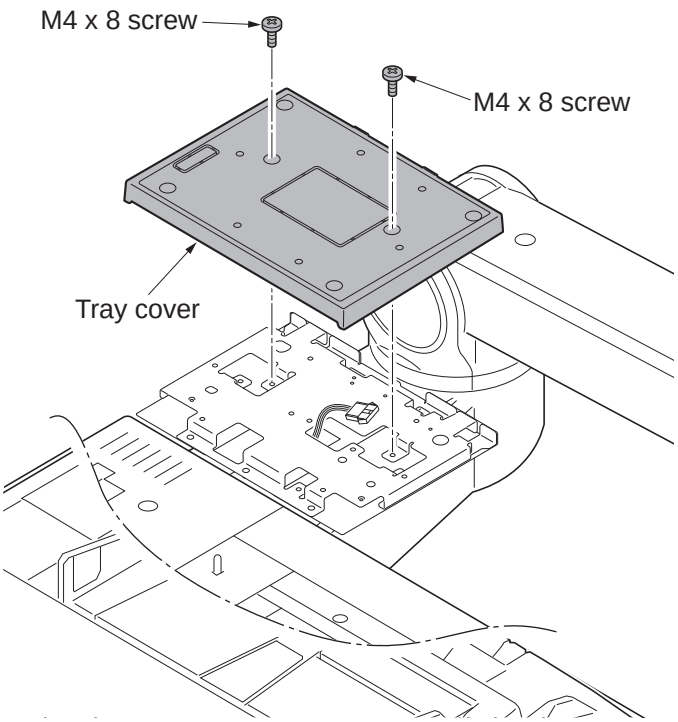


Figure 1-2-85

25. Remove the four screws securing the MK-2 cover; attach the MK-2 mount to the MK-2, and secure using the four screws.

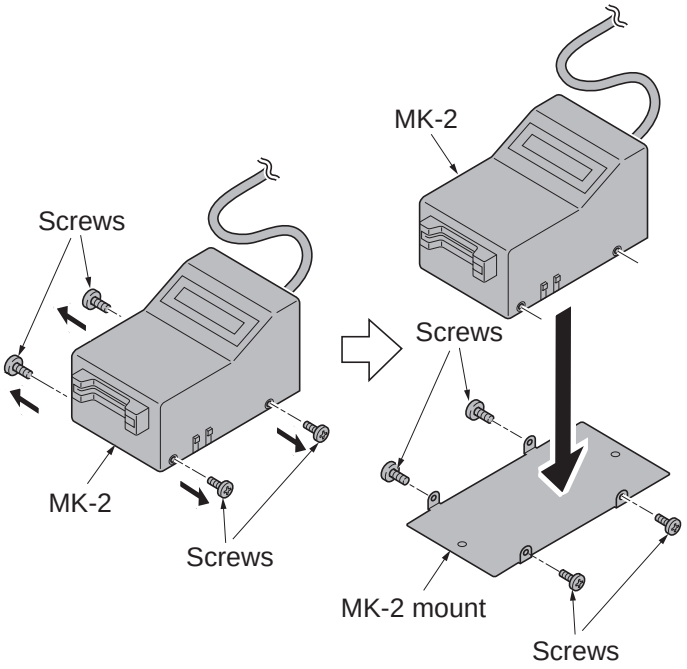


Figure 1-2-86

26. Fit the MK-2 to the tray cover using two M4 x 20 tap-tight S screws.

27. Turn the main power switch on and enter the maintenance mode.
28. Run maintenance item U204 and select [Key-Card] (see page 1-3-105).
29. Exit the maintenance mode.

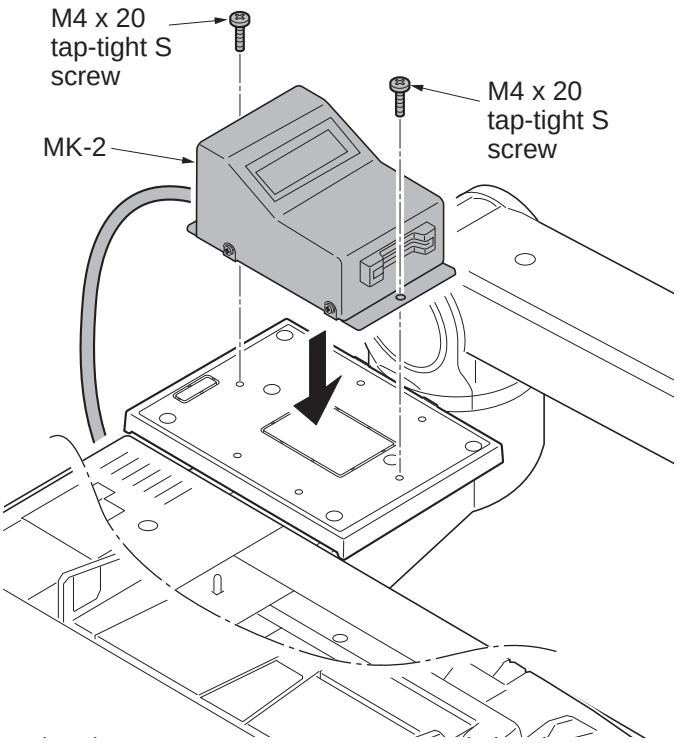


Figure 1-2-87

1-2-5 Installing the KMAS (option for Japan only)

KMAS installation requires the following parts:

Using the PHS module

Parts	Quantity	Part.No.
PHS module	1	HM000080 (option)
PHS signal cable	1	023CK200 (option)
KMAS interface PWB	1	023CK000 (option)
M3 x 16 bronze binding screw	2	B3323160
Ferrite core	1	2A027770
Clamp	1	M2105910
KMAS wire set	1	302K994610

Supplied parts of KMAS wire set (302K994610):

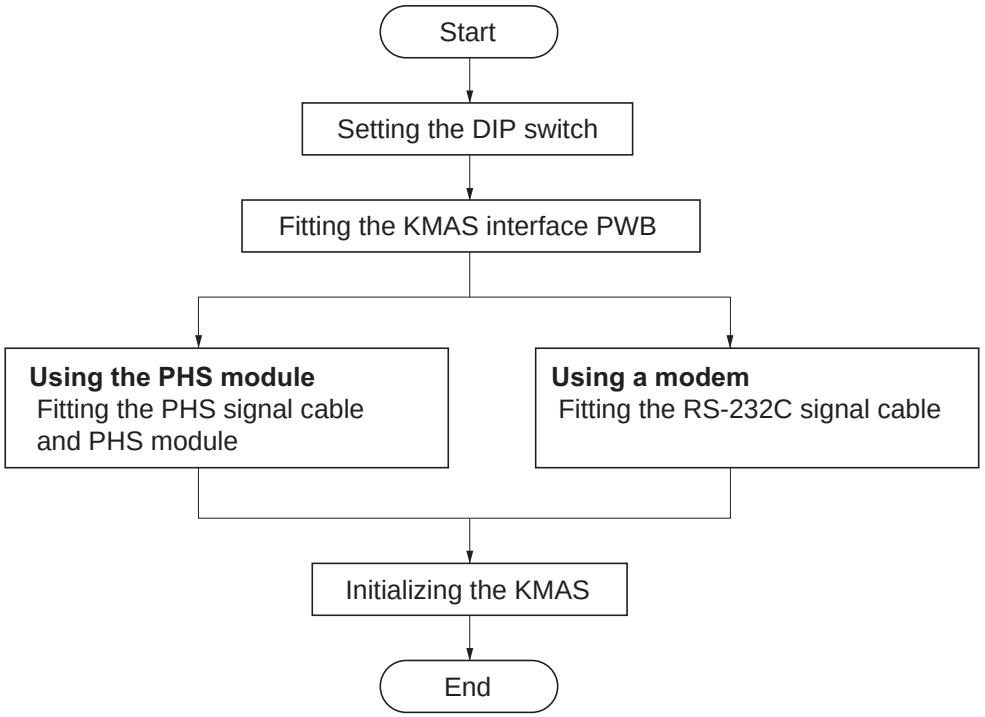
Parts	Quantity	Part.No.
KMAS wire	1	302K946AG0
Spacer A	1	7YZM510009++H01
Spacer B	3	7YZM510011++H01

Using a modem

Parts	Quantity	Part.No.
RS-232C signal cable	1	303CK60011
RS-232C relay cable	1	303CK60041
KMAS interface PWB	1	023CK000 (option)

Procedure

To fix KMAS, perform the following procedure:



Setting the DIP switch

1. Configure DIP switches 1 to 4 on the KMAS interface board as follows:

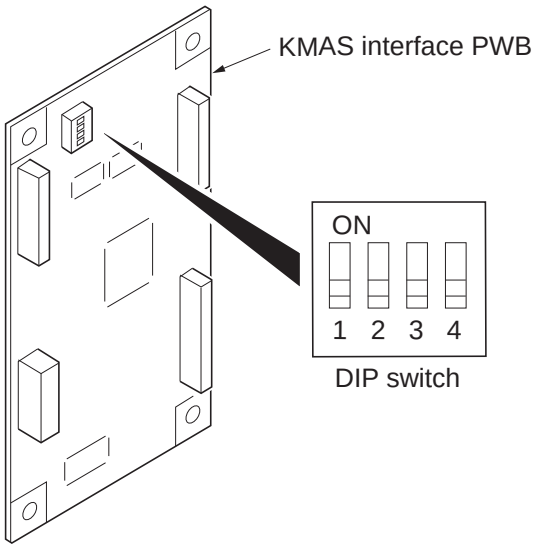


Figure 1-2-88

DIP SW No.	Description	Remarks
1	PHS module/modem switching ON: Use modem OFF: Use PHS module	
2	Modem outgoing switching ON: Pulse OFF: Tone	This is required when modem is used.
3	Communication speed switching with the device ON: 9600bps OFF: 19200bps	Set to OFF.
4	Communication log when automatically notifying service calls Switching messages ON: Message is fixed OFF: Normal message is used	When ON, the message is “Call a service representative.” When OFF, the message will vary depending on communication status. To setup the system with automatic accounting only, ON may be set.

Fitting the KMAS interface PWB

2. Remove nine screws and then remove the rear upper cover.
   *: To fix a cover, insert the hook at the left top first by bowing the cover.

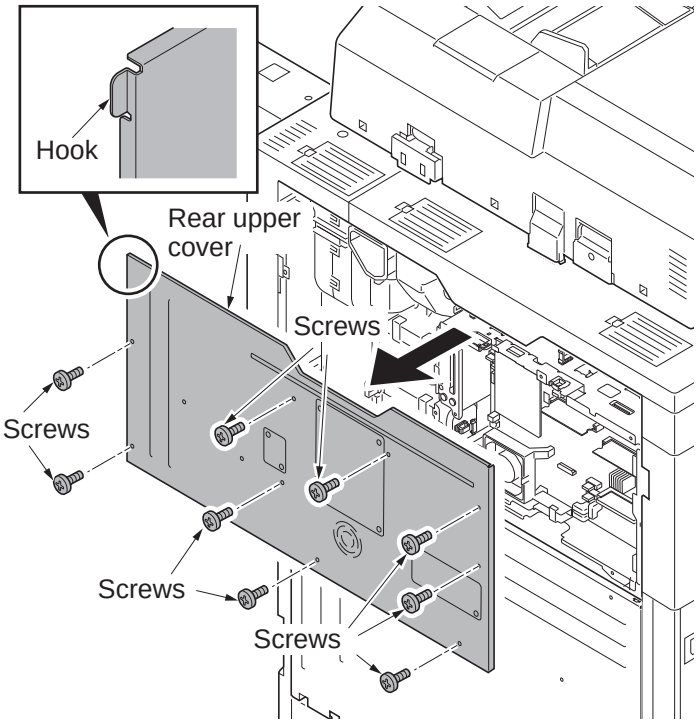


Figure 1-2-89

3. Attach one spacer A and three spacers B to the side of the controller box.

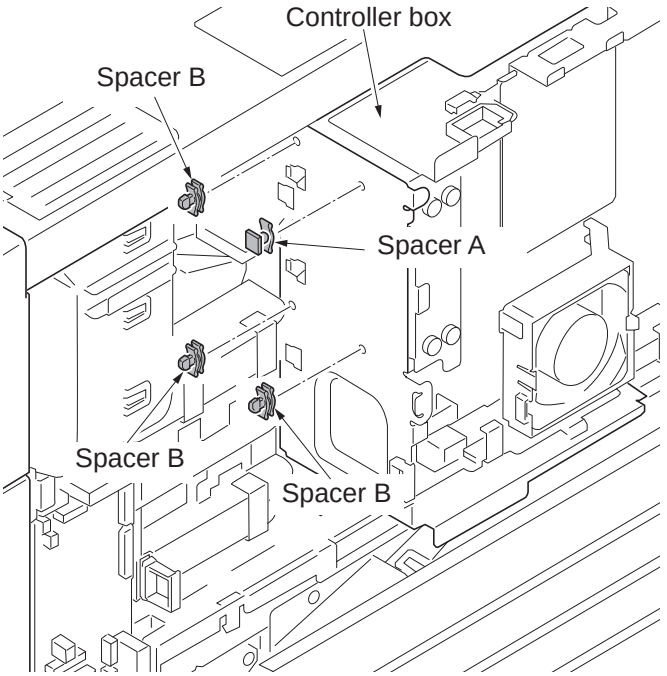


Figure 1-2-90

4. Insert the KMAS interface PWB to three spacers B.

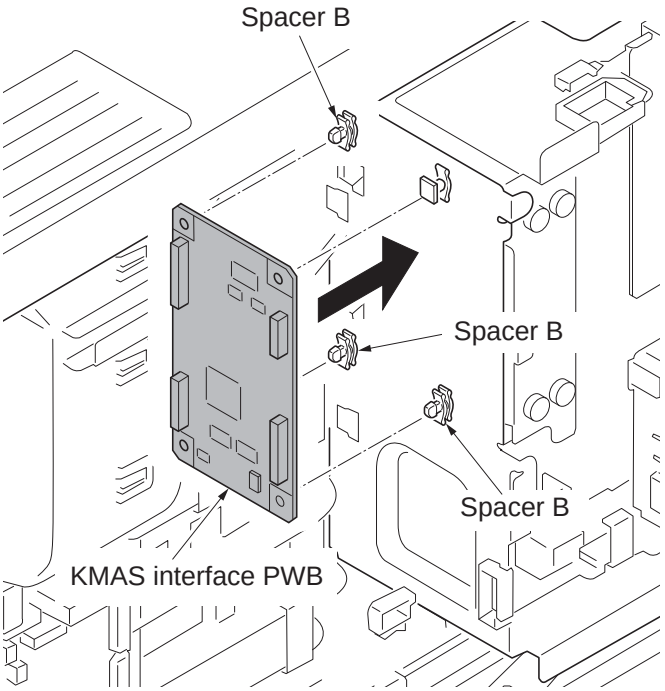


Figure 1-2-91

5. Connect the connector of the KMAS wire to the connector YC1 on the KMAS PWB.
6. Connect the connector of the KMAS wire to controller fan motor, YC7 on the main PWB.

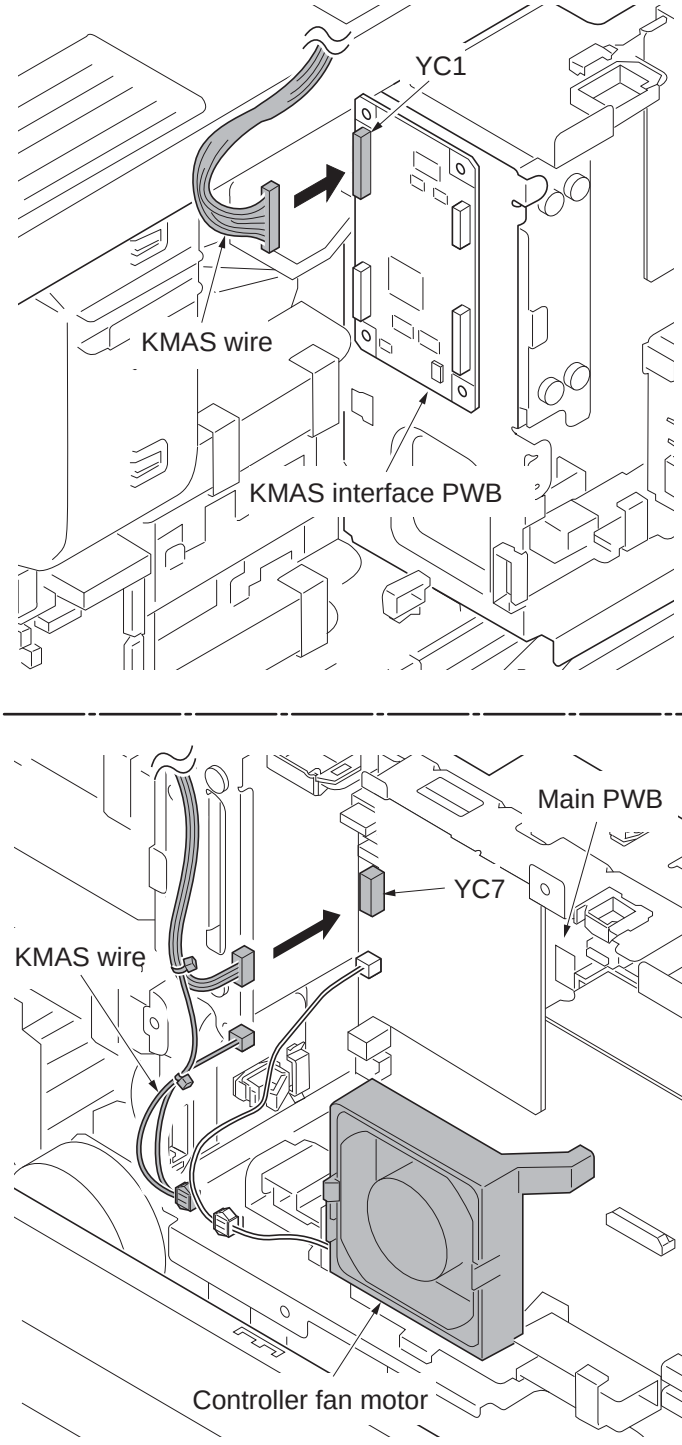


Figure 1-2-92

7. Pass the KMAS wire through the edging of the controller box and wire saddle and then fasten the KMAS wire.

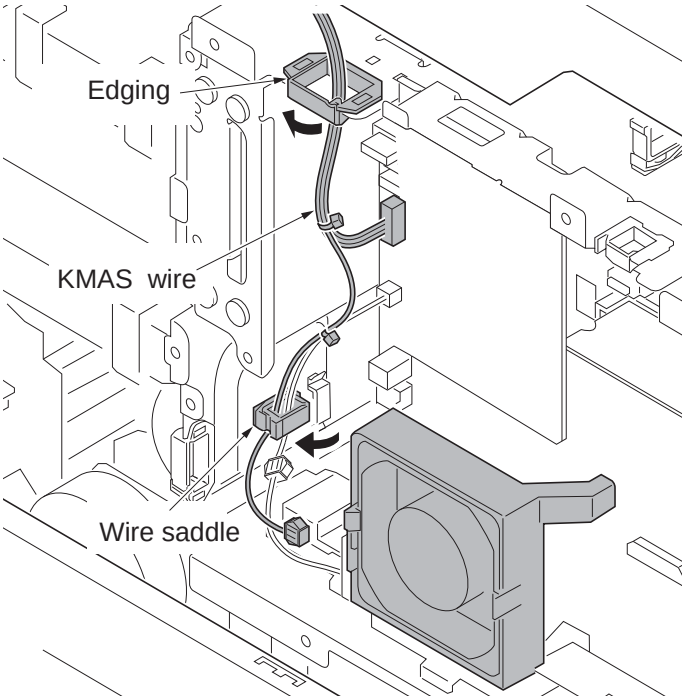


Figure 1-2-93

Fitting the PHS signal cable and PHS module

8. Remove two screws and then remove the lid from the rear upper cover.
9. Pass the PHS signal cable through the aperture in the rear upper cover.
10. Secure the PHS signal cable to rear upper cover with two screws.

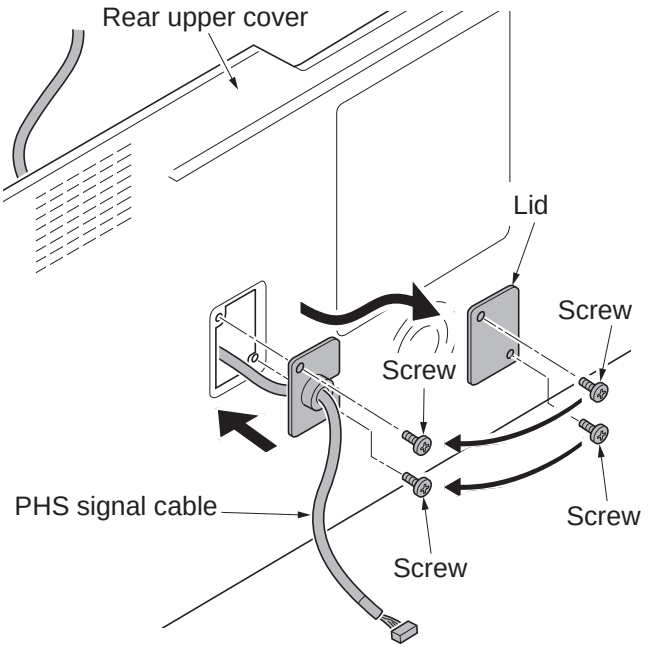


Figure 1-2-94

11. Connect the connector of the PHS signal cable to the connector YC2 on the KMAS interface PWB.
12. Refit the rear upper cover.

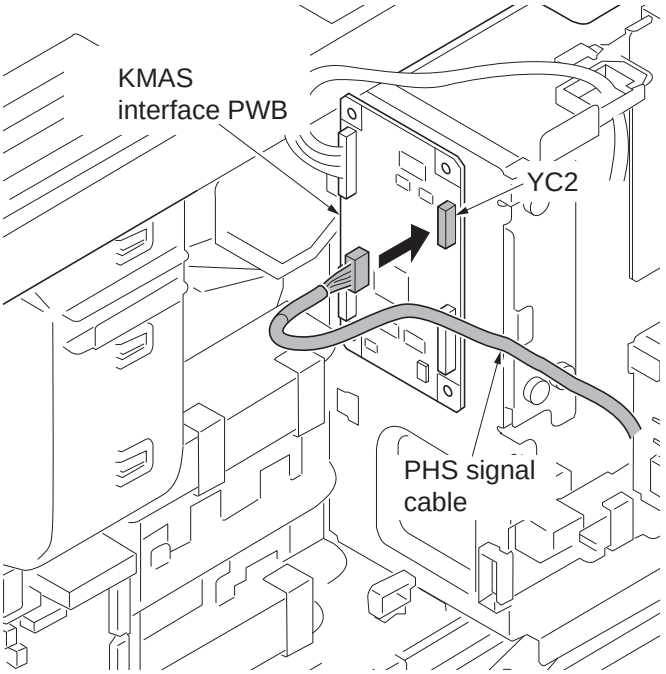


Figure 1-2-95

13. Fit the PHS module to rear upper cover using two M3 x 16 screws.

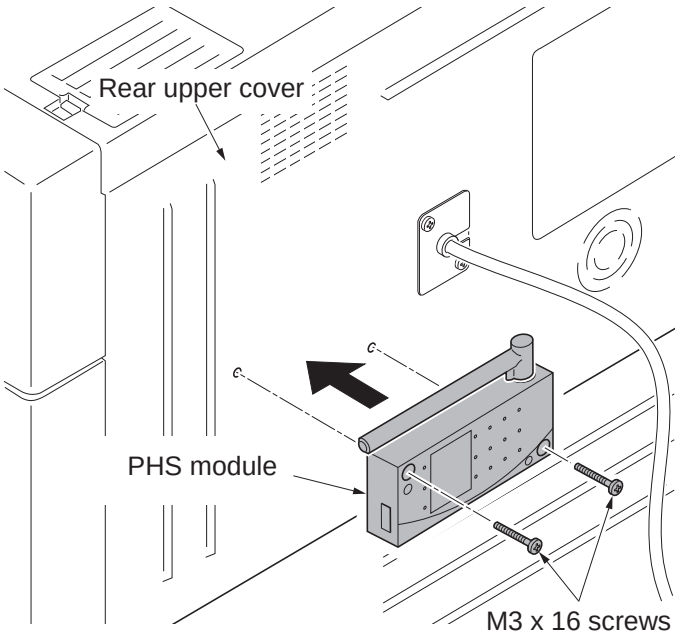


Figure 1-2-96

14. Wrap the PHS signal cable around the ferrite core a turn.
15. Connect the connector of the PHS signal cable to PHS module.
16. Fit the clamp to PHS signal cable.
17. After using alcohol to clean the rear upper cover, adhere the clamp to rear upper cover.

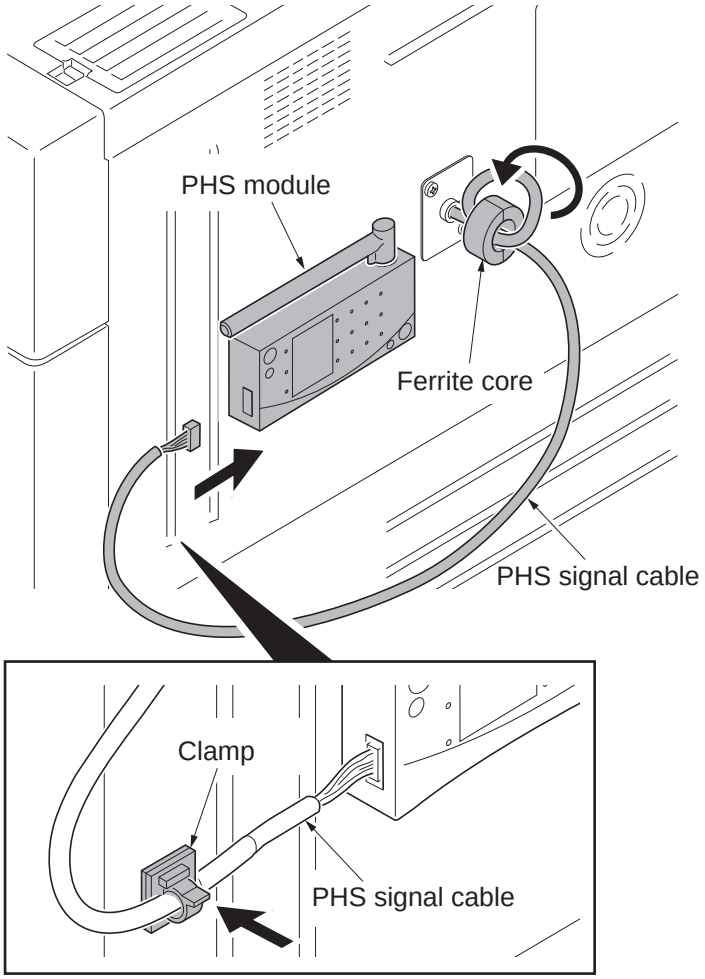


Figure 1-2-97

Fitting the RS-232C signal cable

1. By referring to the instructions given to fix the PHS signal wire, insert the connector at the end of the RS-232C relay cable to the YC3 connector on the KMAS interface PWB.
   If the wire length is short, use a RS-232C extension cable.
2. Connect the RS-232C signal cable to the modem.

Initializing the KMAS

1. Turn the main power switch on and enter the maintenance mode.
2. Run maintenance item U202 and Perform [Init/Set TEL No.] (see page 1-3-103).
3. Exit the maintenance mode.

1-2-6 Installing the coin vender (option for japan only)

Coin vender installation requires the following parts:

Parts	Quantity	Part.No.
Coin vender	1	1905H99JP0 (option)
Vender wire	1	Supplied with coin vender
Vender base	1	
M4 x 6 screw	4	
Ferrite core	1	
Clamp	1	
Vender signal cable	1	302K946AE0

Procedure

1. Press the power key on the operation panel to off. Make sure that the power indicator and the memory indicator are off before turning off the main power switch. And then unplug the power cable from the wall outlet.
2. Fit the vender base to coin vender using four M4 x 6 screws.

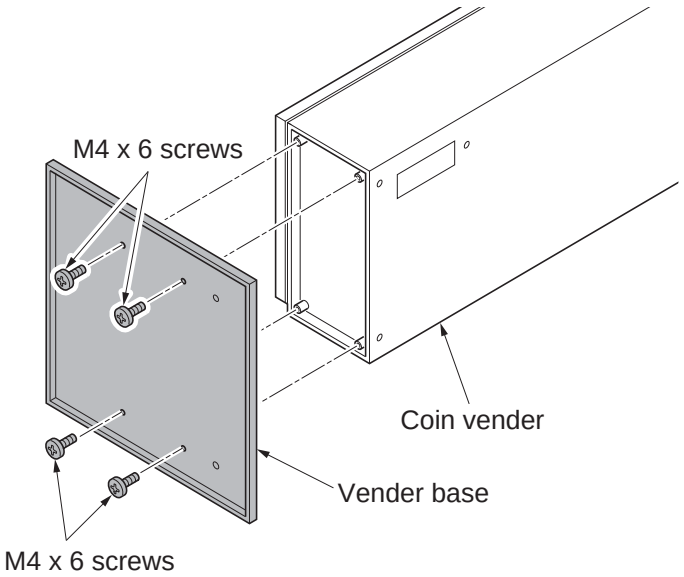


Figure 1-2-98

3. Remove nine screws and then remove the rear upper cover.
*: To fix a cover, insert the hook at the left top first by bowing the cover.

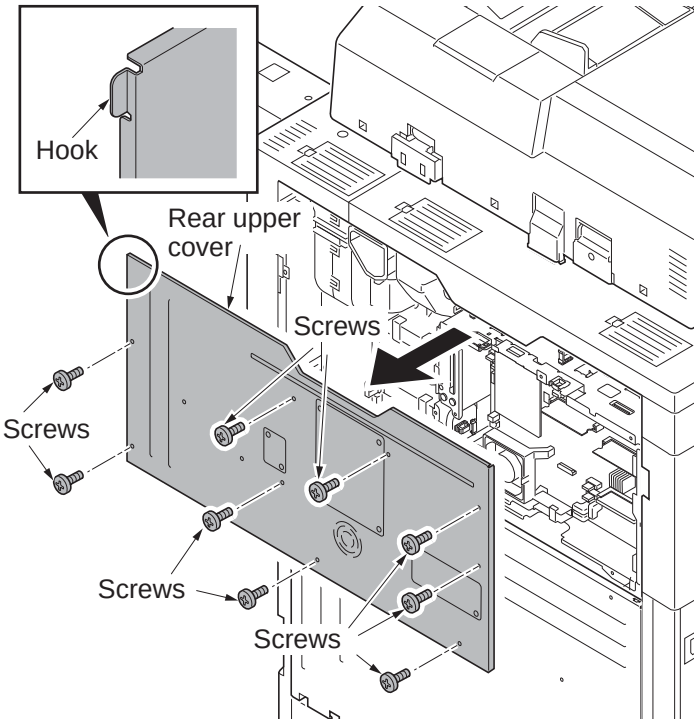


Figure 1-2-99

4. Cover the area under the toner disposal box to prevent contamination due to the scattered toner.
5. Remove the screw and then remove the cable cover.
6. Remove connector.

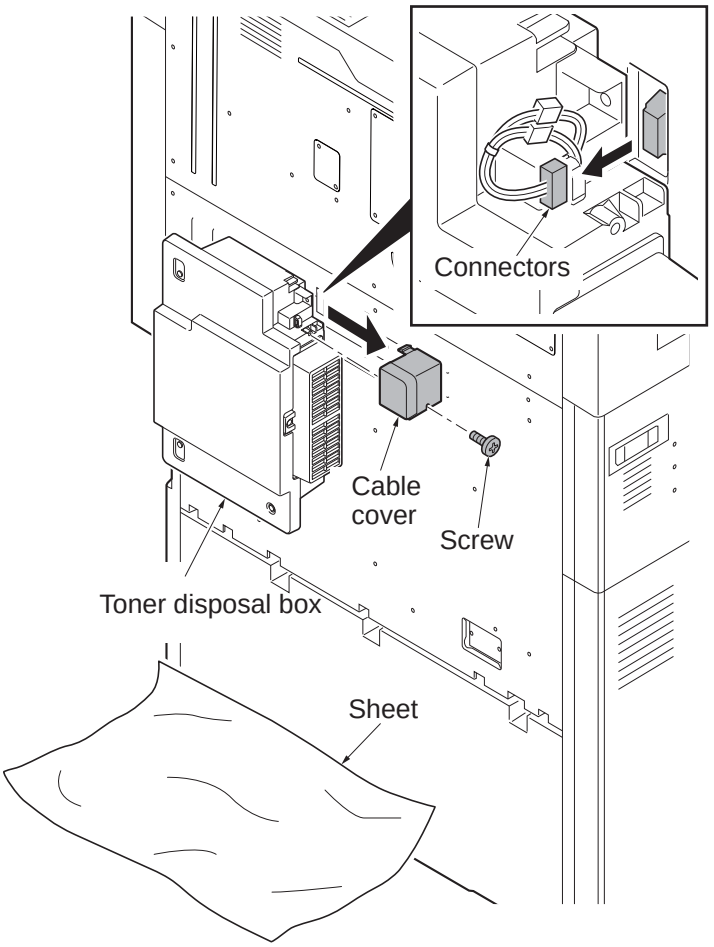


Figure 1-2-100

7. Remove three screws and then remove the toner disposal box.

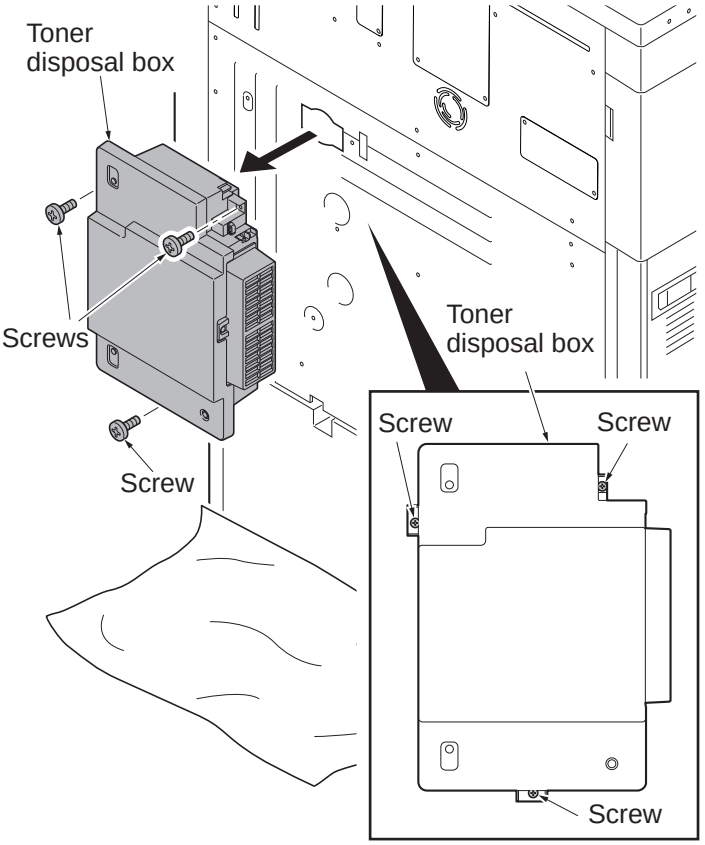


Figure 1-2-101

8. Remove nine screws.
9. Release two hanging parts and then remove the rear lower cover.

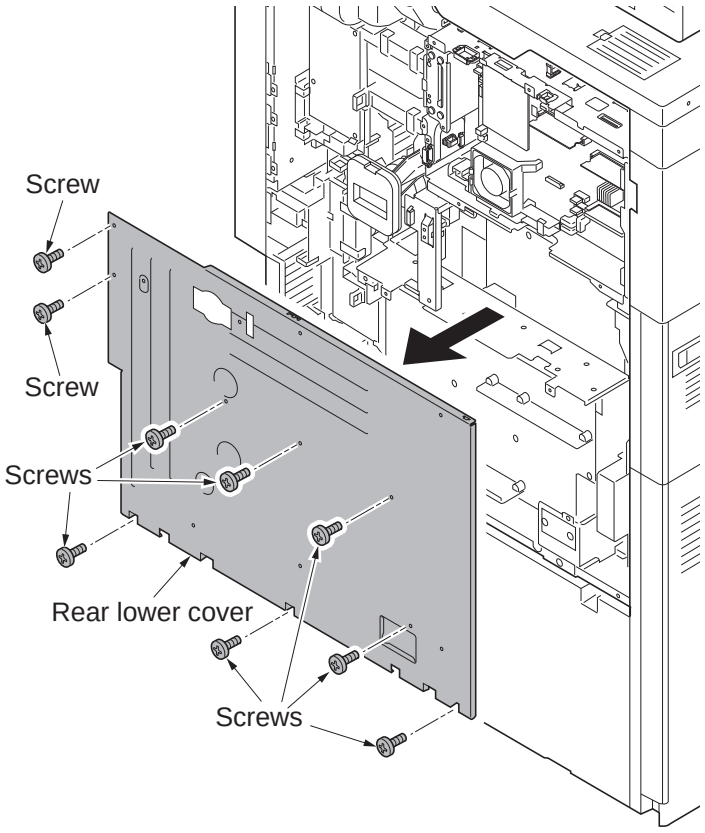


Figure 1-2-102

10. Remove two screws and then remove the lid.

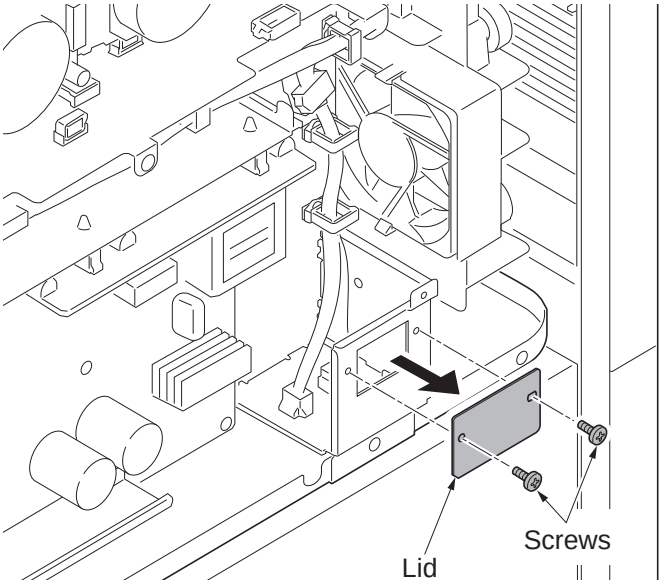


Figure 1-2-103

11. Connect the connector of the vender signal cable to the connector YC23 on the engine PWB.
12. Pass the vender signal cable through the wire guide and nine wire saddles and then fasten the cable.

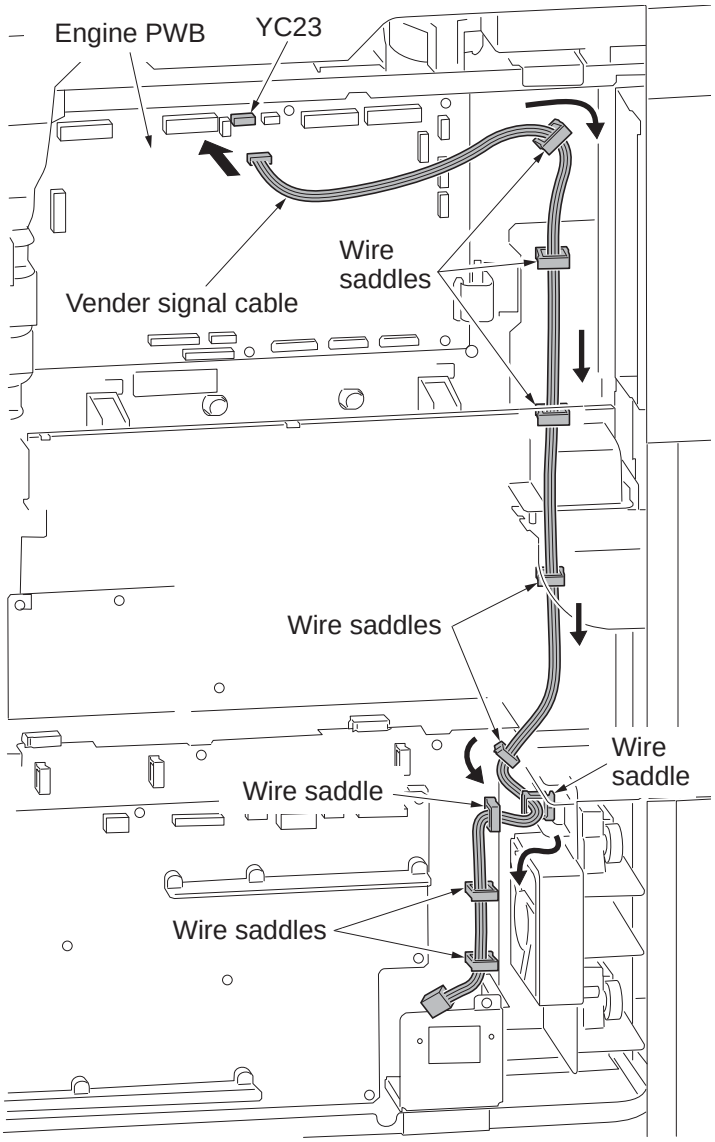


Figure 1-2-104

13. Pass the vender wire through the aperture in the IF mount.
14. Secure the vender wire with two screws removed in step 10.
15. Secure the ground terminal of the vender wire to rear frame with the screw.
16. Connect the connector of the vender wire to connector of the vender signal cable.

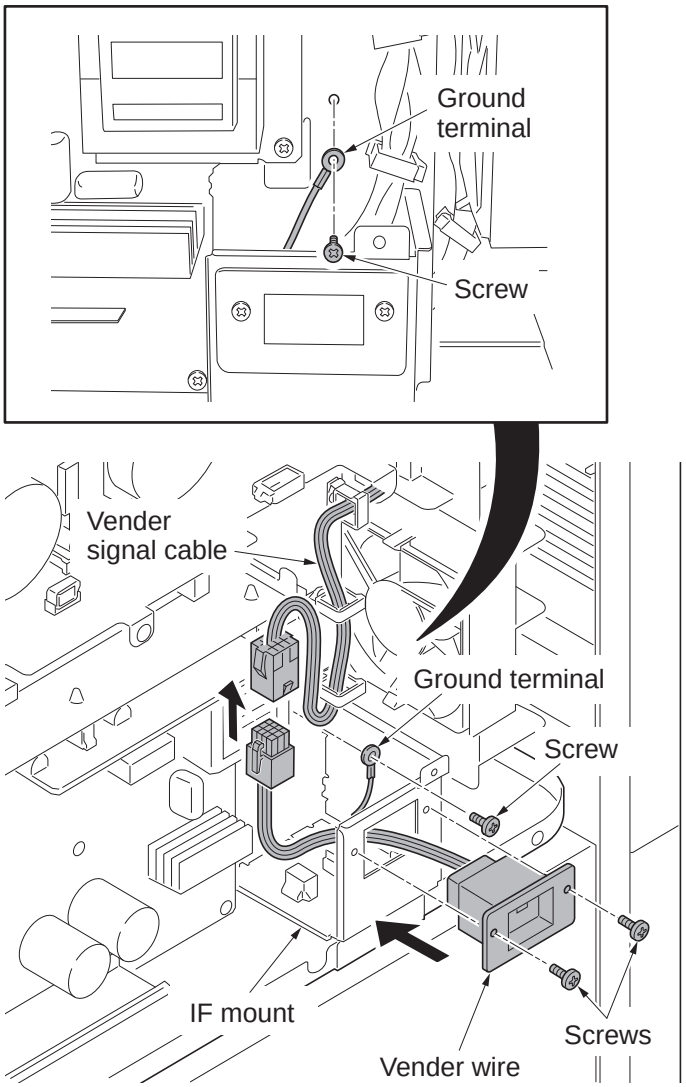


Figure 1-2-105

17. Refit the rear lower cover, toner disposal box and rear upper cover.
18. Connect the signal cable of coin vender to connector of the vender wire.

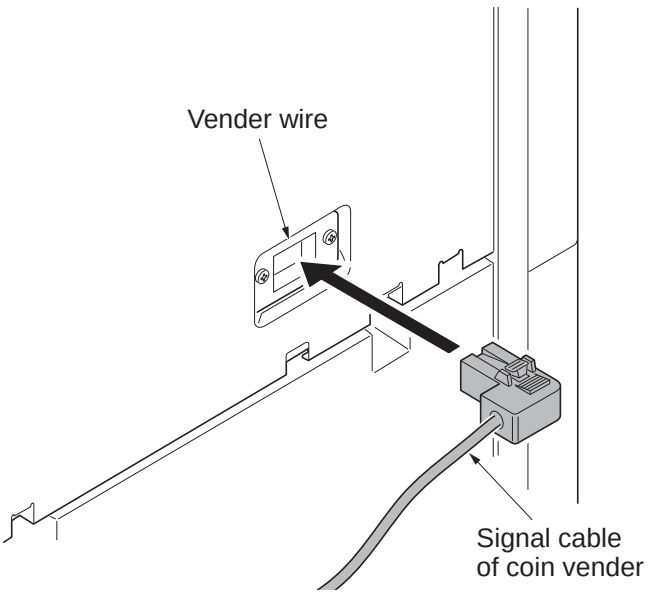


Figure 1-2-106

19. Fit the ferrite core to signal cable of coin vender.
20. Fit the clamp to signal cable of coin vender.
21. Remove a screw from the coin vender and fix the coin vender with a clamp.

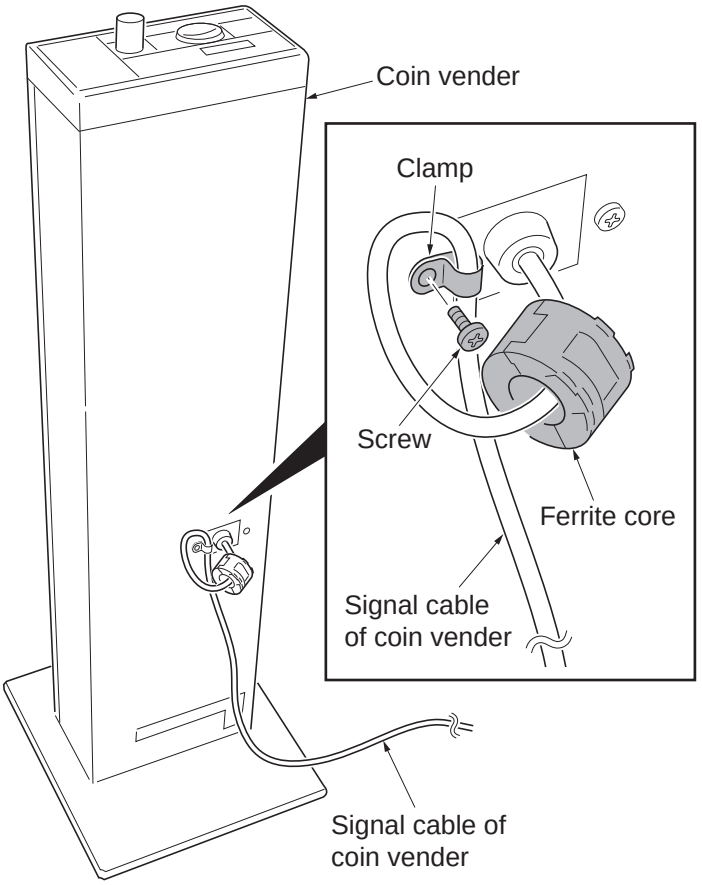


Figure 1-2-107

22. Affix the price size decal at the right side of the coin vender operation panel.

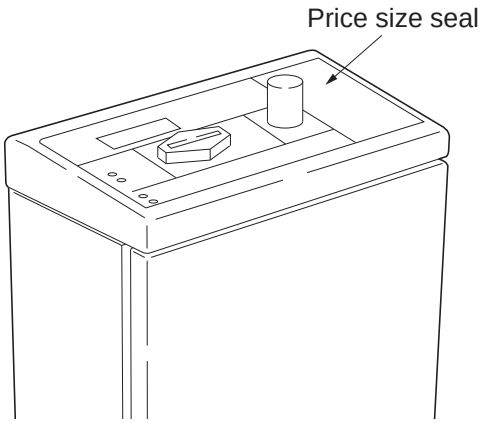


Figure 1-2-108

23. Turn the main power switch on and enter the maintenance mode.
24. Run maintenance mode U206 and activate 'Coin vender is installed.' Continue configuring the coin vender required (see page 1-3-106).
25. Exit the maintenance mode.

1-2-7 Installing the cassette heater (option)

Cassette heater installation requires the following parts:

120 V specifications

Parts	Quantity	Part.No.
Cassette heater set (for cassette 1 and 2)	1	302K994931
Cassette heater set (for cassette 3 and 4)	1	303NF94130

Supplied parts of cassette heater set (302K994931):

Parts	Quantity	Part.No.
Cassette heater 120V	1	302H794620
Wire saddle	3	7YZM610001++H01
Connector cover	1	303NF04140
Caution label	1	302KP34220
M3 x 8 tap-tight S screw	2	7BB700308H
M4 x 8 tap-tight S screw	1	7BB700408H

Supplied parts of cassette heater set (303NF94130):

Parts	Quantity	Part.No.
Cassette heater 120V	1	302H794620
Wire saddle	3	7YZM610001++H01
Connector cover	1	303NF04140
M3 x 8 tap-tight S screw	2	7BB700308H
M4 x 8 tap-tight S screw	1	7BB700408H
Caution label	1	302KP34220

220 - 240 V specifications

Parts	Quantity	Part.No.
Cassette heater set 240V (for cassette 1 and 2)	1	302K994941
Cassette heater set 240V (for cassette 3 and 4)	1	303NF94140

Supplied parts of cassette heater set (302K994941):

Parts	Quantity	Part.No.
Cassette heater 240V	1	302H794610
Wire saddle	3	7YZM610001++H01
Connector cover	1	303NF04140
Caution label	1	302KP34220
M3 x 8 tap-tight S screw	2	7BB700308H
M4 x 8 tap-tight S screw	1	7BB700408H

Supplied parts of cassette heater set (303NF94140):

Parts	Quantity	Part.No.
Cassette heater 240V	1	302H794610
Wire saddle	3	7YZM610001++H01
Connector cover	1	303NF04140
M3 x 8 tap-tight S screw	2	7BB700308H
M4 x 8 tap-tight S screw	1	7BB700408H
Caution label	1	302KP34220

Procedure

Installing for cassette 1 and 2

1. Press the power key on the operation panel to off. Make sure that the power indicator and the memory indicator are off before turning off the main power switch. And then unplug the power cable from the wall outlet.
2. Pull the cassette 1 forward.
3. Pull up the cassette.

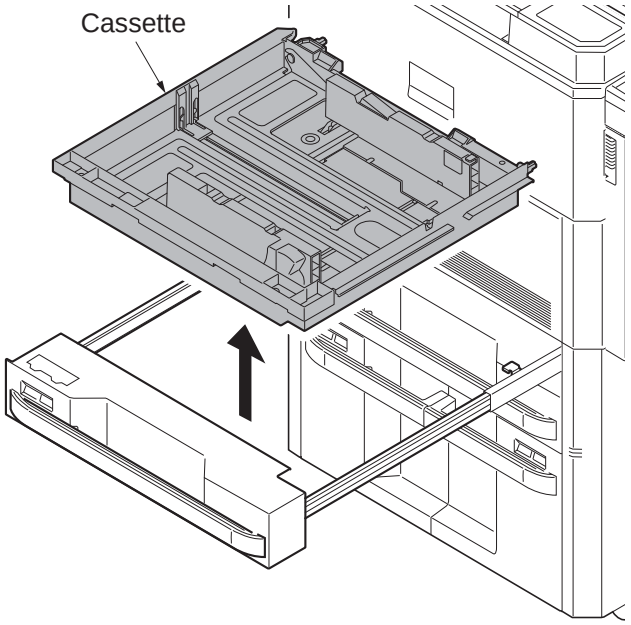


Figure 1-2-109

4. Remove the cassette 2 in the same manner as above.

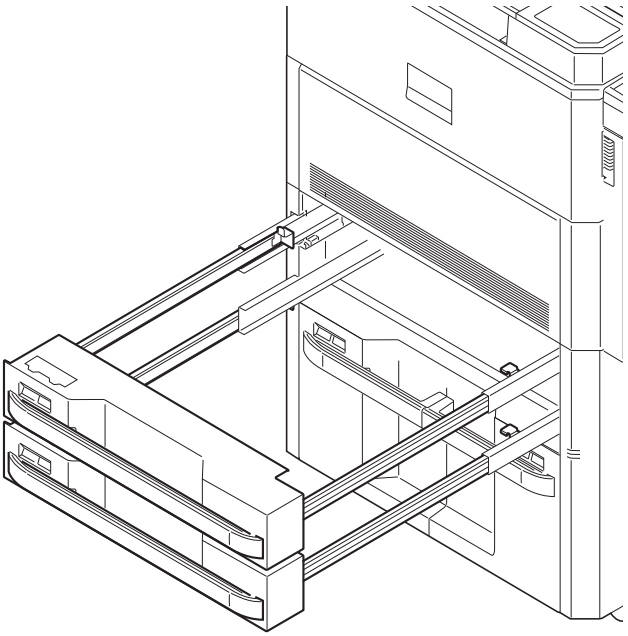


Figure 1-2-110

5. Fit three wire saddles on the bottom frame of the machine.
6. Fit the cassette heater using two M3 x 8 screws.

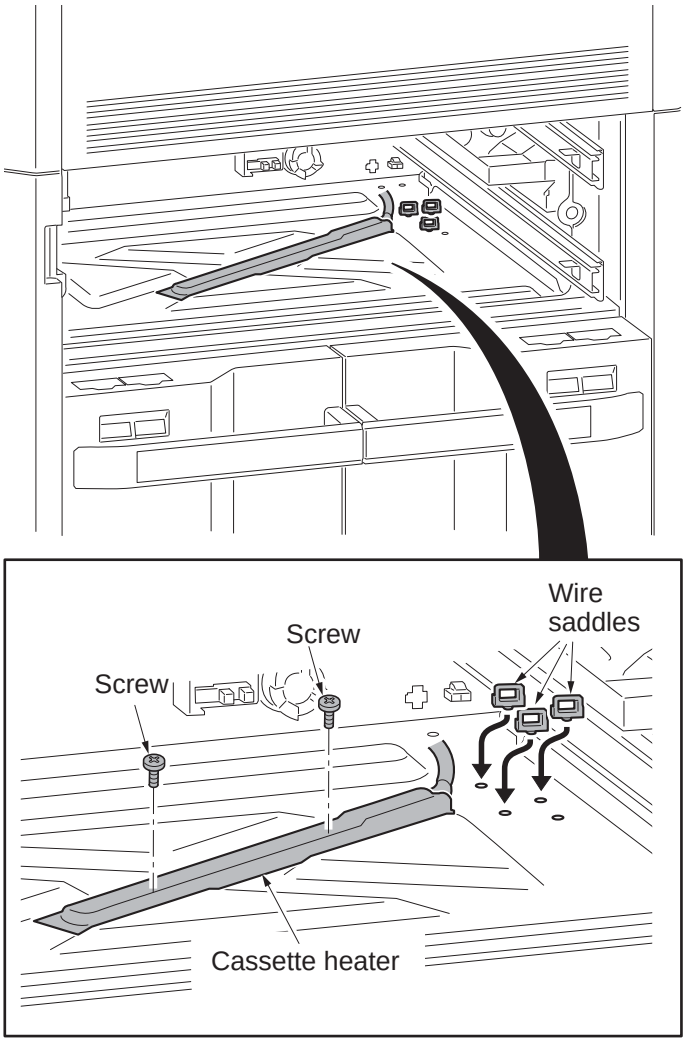


Figure 1-2-111

7. Pass the wire of the cassette heater through three wire saddles and then fasten the wire.
*: Route the wire so that it do not disturb opening and closing the cassettes.
8. Connect the connector of the cassette heater to the connector in the rear frame of the machine.

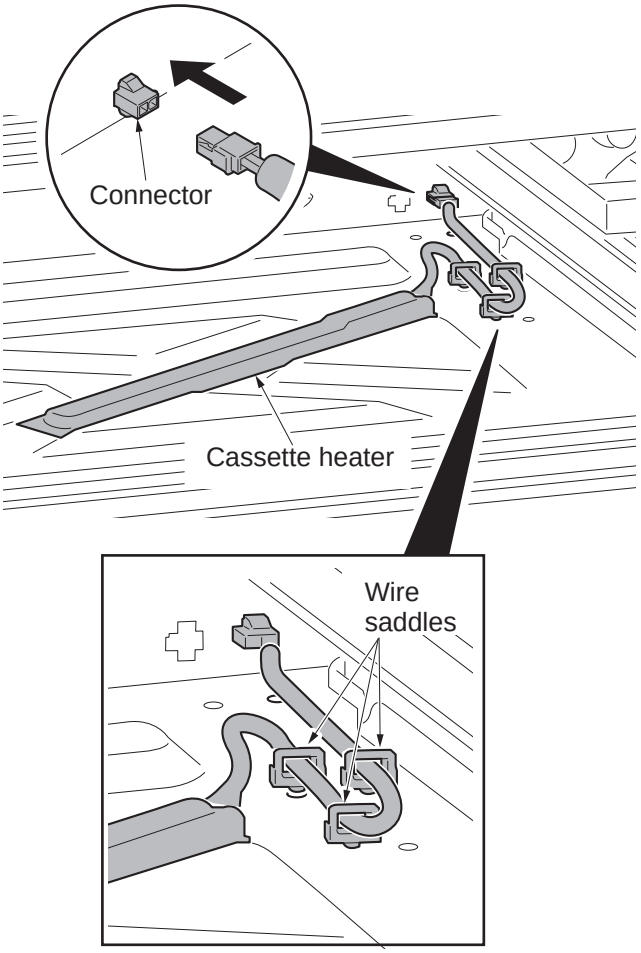


Figure 1-2-112

9. Insert two hooks of the connector cover to the holes of base of the machine each.
10. Install the connector cover by using a M4 x 8 screw.

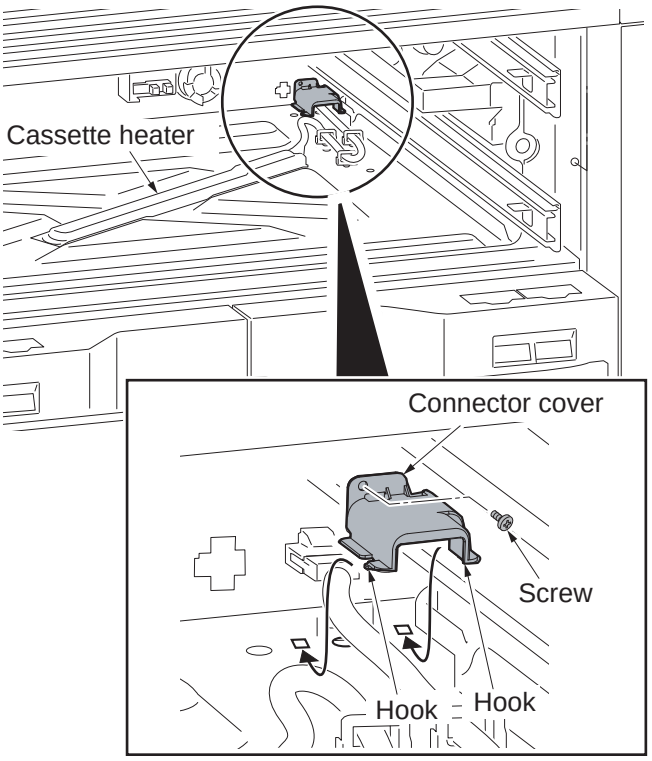


Figure 1-2-113

11. Adhere the caution label after wiping the bottom frame of this side of cassette heater with alcohol.

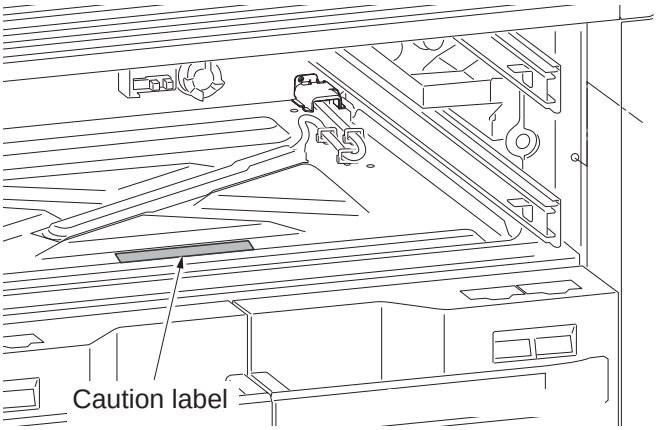


Figure 1-2-114

*: Perform the maintenance mode U327 to configure the cassette heater control settings after a cassette heater was installed.

Installing for cassette 3 and 4

1. Pull the cassette 3 forward.
2. Remove the four screws and then remove the cassette 3.

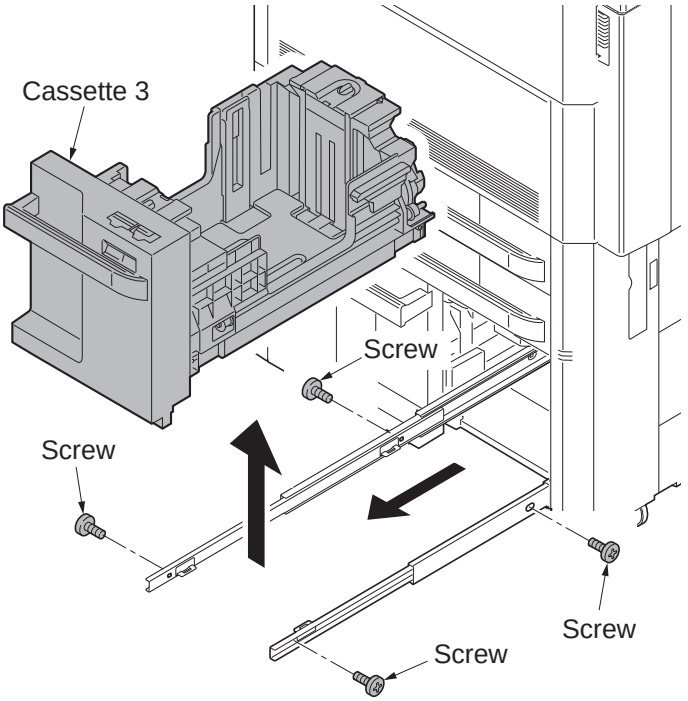


Figure 1-2-115

3. Pull the cassette 4 forward.
4. Remove the four screws and then remove the cassette 4.

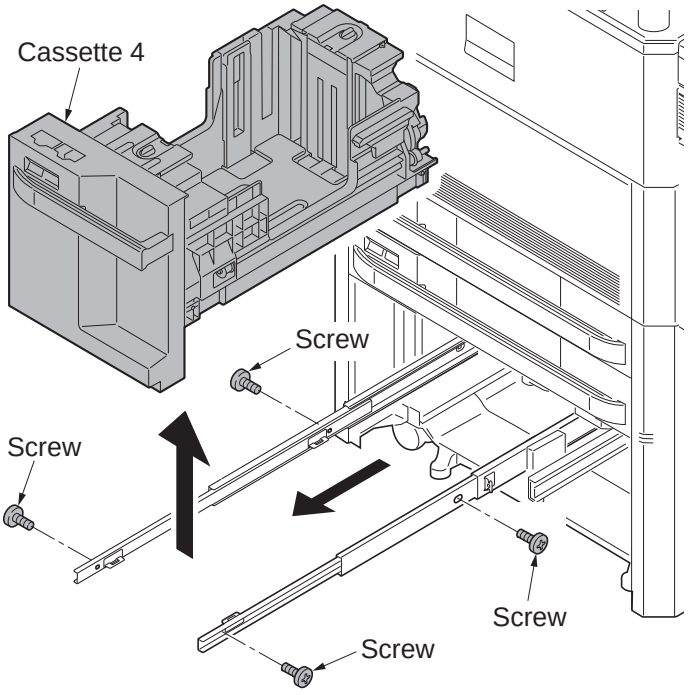


Figure 1-2-116

5. Fit three wire saddles on the bottom frame of the machine.
6. Fit the cassette heater using two M3 x 8 screws.

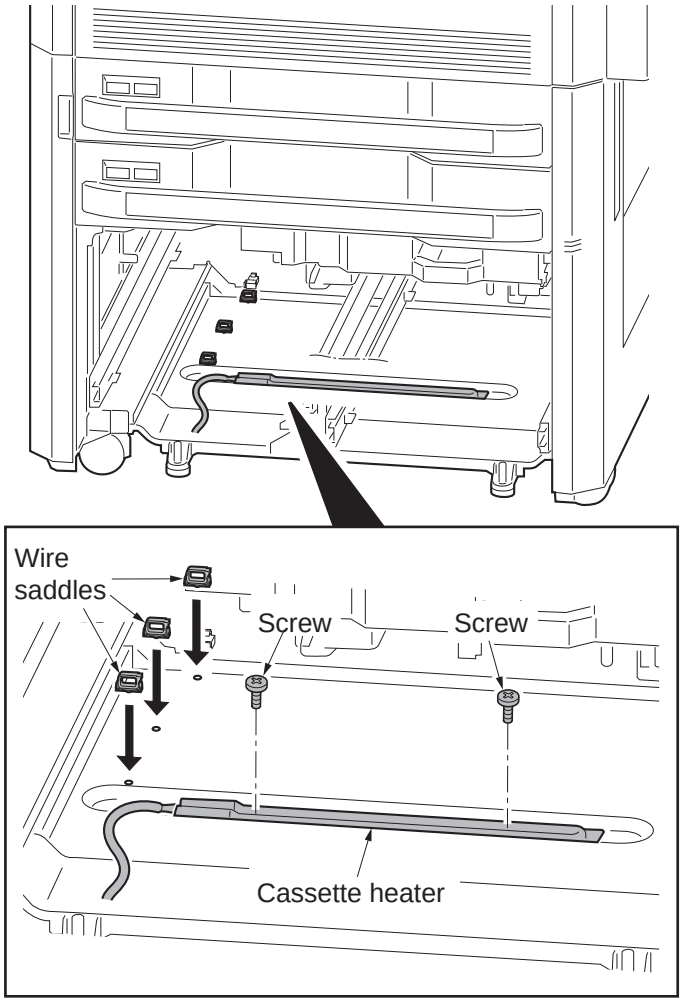


Figure 1-2-117

7. Pass the wire of the cassette heater through three wire saddles and then fasten the wire.
8. Connect the connector of the cassette heater to the connector in the rear frame of the machine.

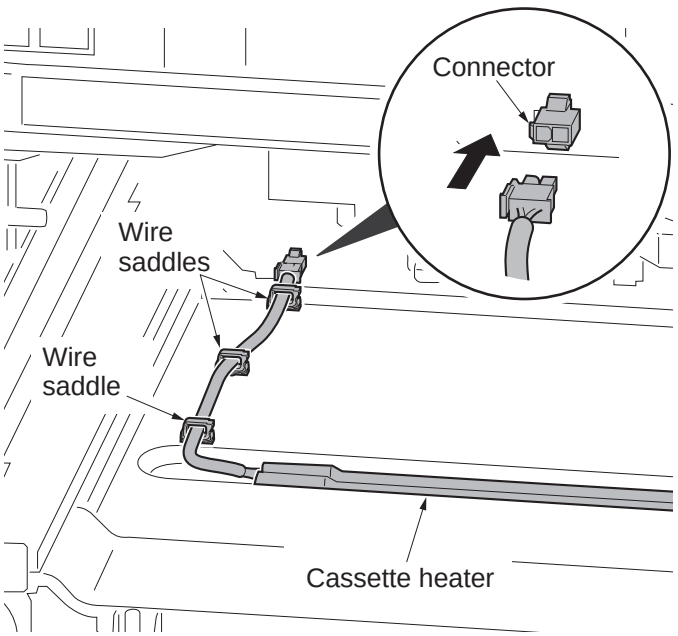


Figure 1-2-118

9. Insert two hooks of the connector cover to the holes of base of the machine each.
10. Install the connector cover by using a M4 x 8 screw.

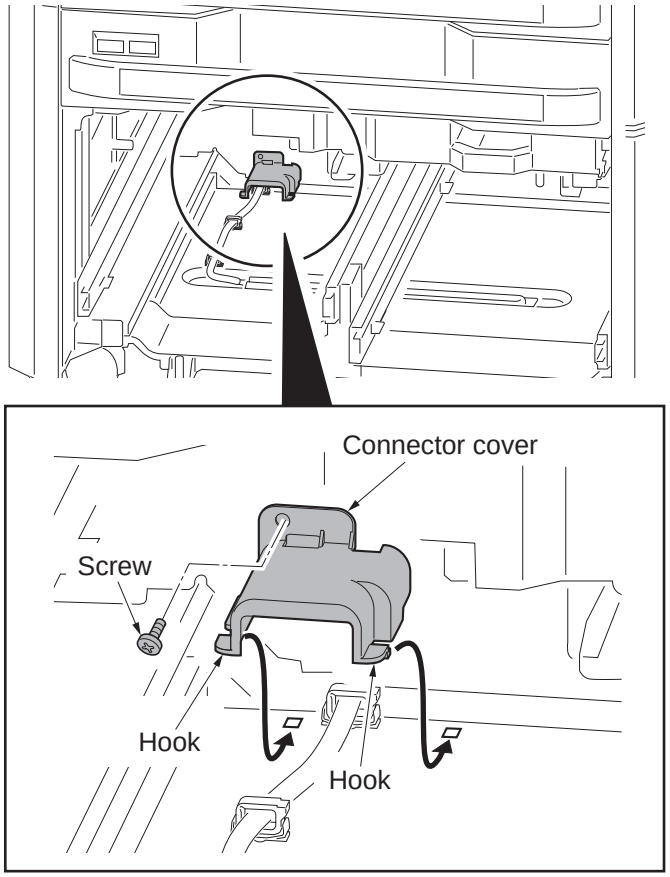


Figure 1-2-119

11. Adhere the caution label after wiping the bottom frame of this side of cassette heater with alcohol.

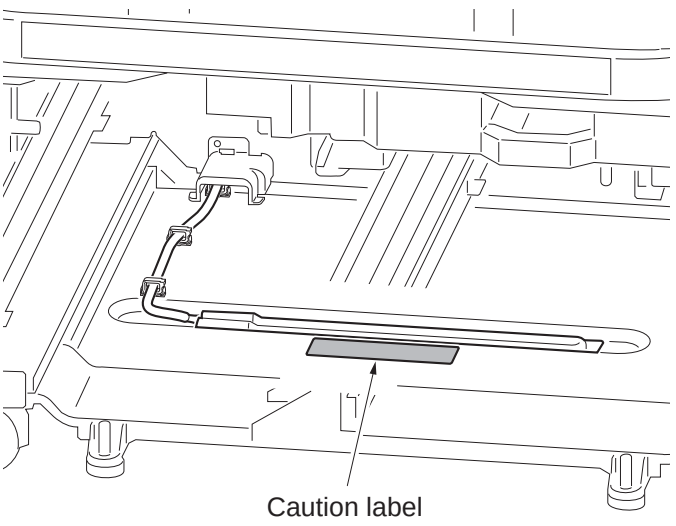


Figure 1-2-120

*: Perform the maintenance mode U327 to configure the cassette heater control settings after a cassette heater was installed.

1-2-8 Installing the gigabit ethernet board (option)

Gigabit ethernet board installation requires the following parts:

Parts	Quantity	Part.No.
Gigabit ethernet board	1	1505JV0UN0 (option)

Procedure

1. Press the power key on the operation panel to off. Make sure that the power indicator and the memory indicator are off before turning off the main power switch. And then unplug the power cable from the wall outlet.
2. Remove the controller cover.

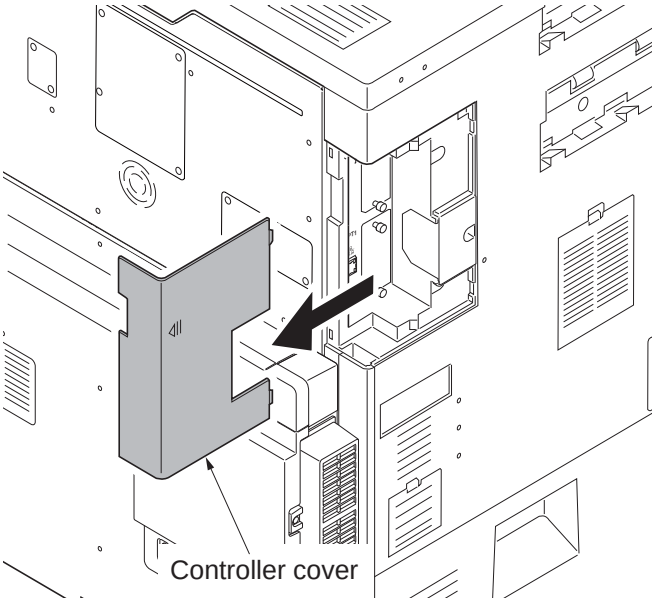


Figure 1-2-121

3. Remove two pins and then remove the slot cover of the OPT2.

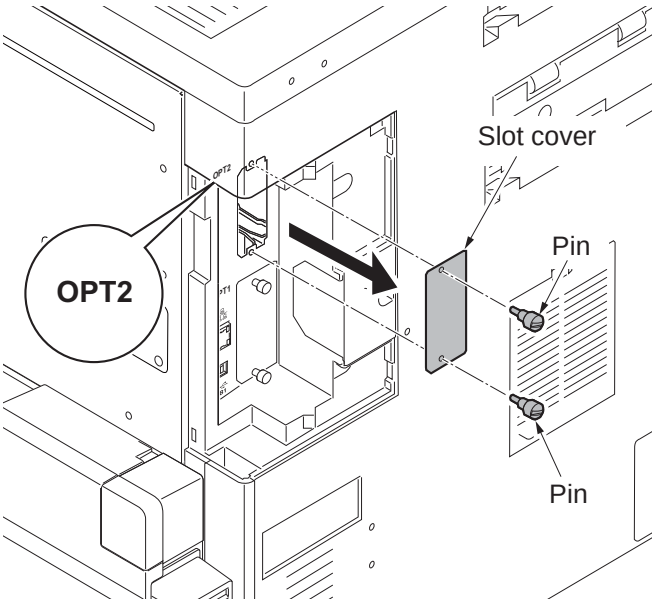


Figure 1-2-122

4. Insert the gigabit ethernet board along the groove in OPT2 and secure the board with two pins that have been removed in step 3.

*: Do not directly touch the gigabit ethernet board terminal.
Hold the top and bottom of the gigabit ethernet board, or the projection of the board to insert the gigabit ethernet board.

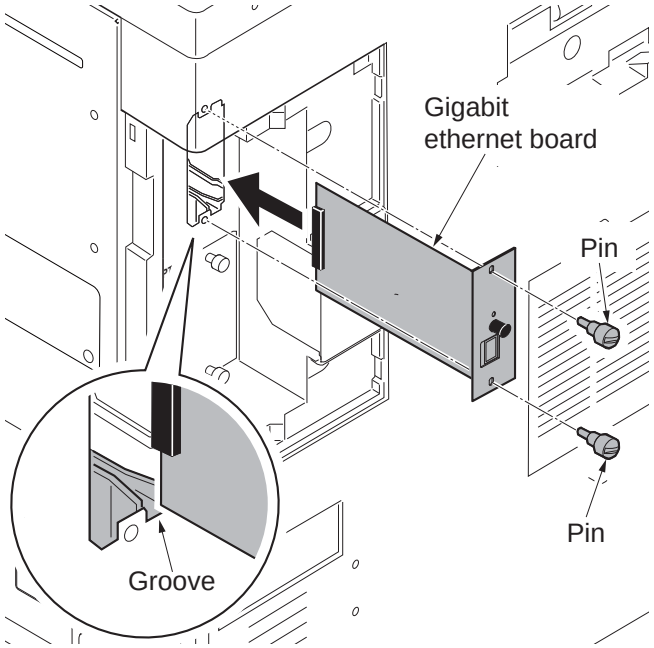


Figure 1-2-123

5. Plug the network cable into the connector.
6. Refit the controller cover.

*: Load the CD-ROM in the PC and run “Quick Network Setup” to set the IP address.

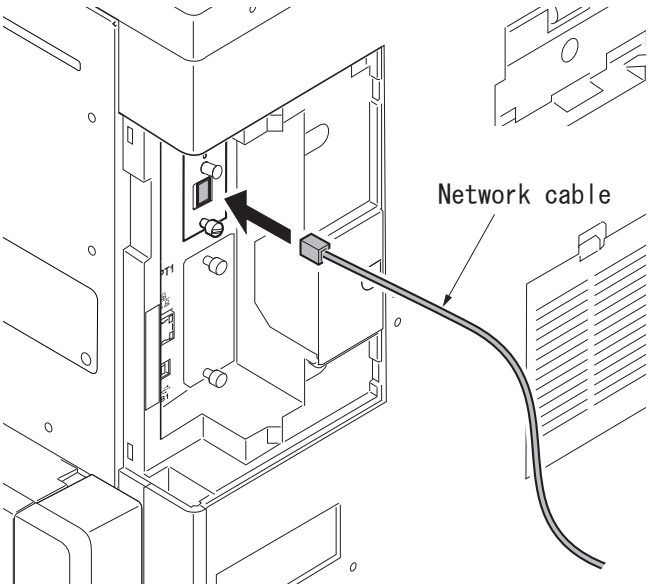


Figure 1-2-124

1-2-9 Installing the Wire-less interface kit (option)

Wire-less interface kit installation requires the following parts:

Parts	Quantity	Part.No.
Wire-less interface kit	1	1505J50UN0 (option)

Procedure

1. Press the power key on the operation panel to off. Make sure that the power indicator and the memory indicator are off before turning off the main power switch. And then unplug the power cable from the wall outlet.
2. Remove the controller cover.

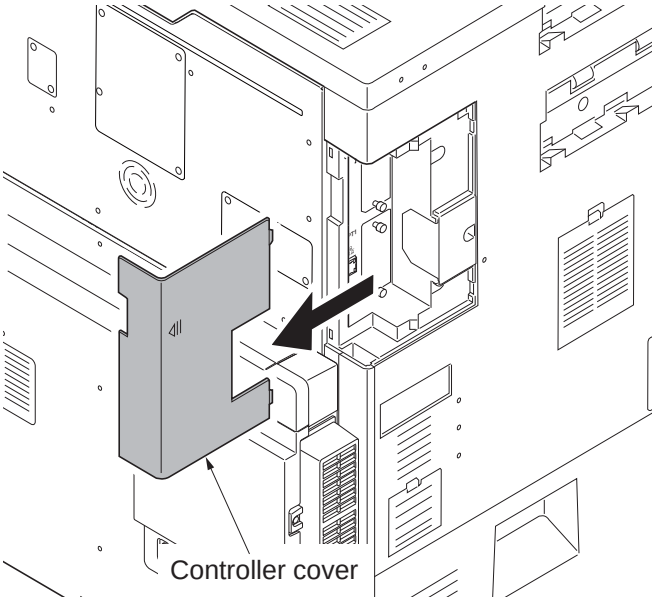


Figure 1-2-125

3. Remove two pins and then remove the slot cover of the OPT2.

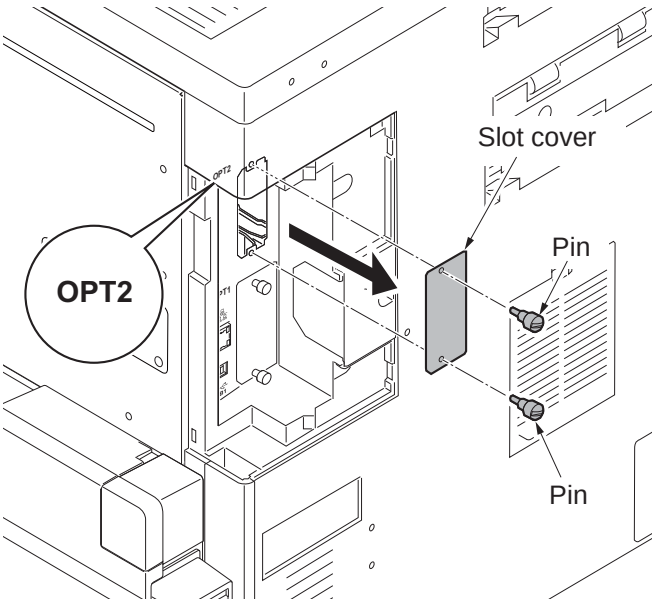


Figure 1-2-126

4. Insert the wire-less interface kit along the groove in OPT2 and secure the board with two pins that have been removed in step 2.

*: Do not directly touch the wire-less interface kit terminal.
Hold the top and bottom of the wire-less interface kit, or the projection of the board to insert the wire-less interface kit.

*: Load the CD-ROM in the PC and run “Quick Network Setup” to set the IP address.

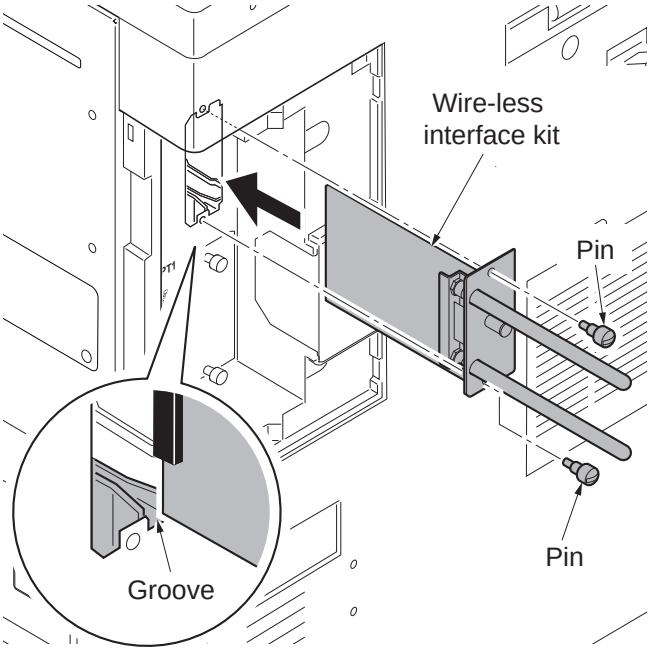


Figure 1-2-127

1-2-10 Installing the IC card reader holder (option)

IC card reader holder installation requires the following parts:

Parts	Quantity	Part.No.
IC card reader holder (E)	1	1709AD0UN1 (option)

Supplied parts of IC card reader holder (1709AD0UN0):

Parts	Quantity	Part.No.
IC card reader holder	1	-
Label	1	-
Bundling band	1	-
Hook and loop fasteners	2	-
Spacer	2	-

Procedure

1. Press the power key on the operation panel to off. Make sure that the power indicator and the memory indicator are off before turning off the main power switch. And then unplug the power cable from the wall outlet.
2. Remove a screw and then remove the right table cover.

*: While holding the cover at its far end, slide it rightwards to remove.

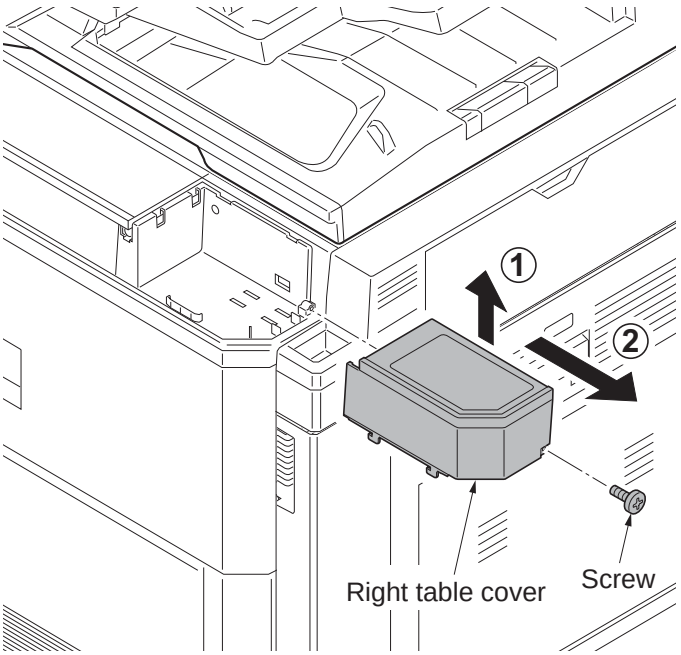


Figure 1-2-128

3. Affix a label on the right table cover aligning it with the positioning mark.
*: Fix it by matching with a smoke of a different color.

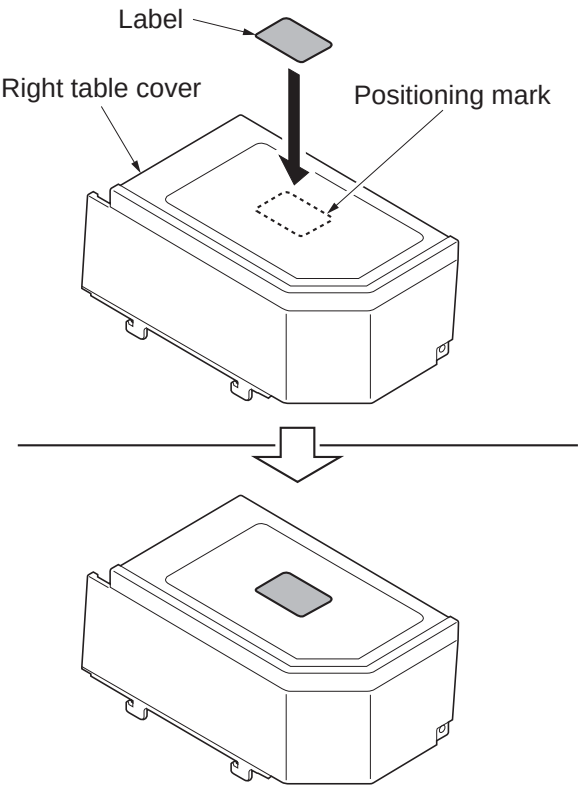


Figure 1-2-129

4. The mounting procedure differs depending type of IC card readers.
Type A:
Thicker and in the same size as its holder
Continue to step 5.
Type B:
Thicker but smaller than its holder
Continue to step 7.
Type C:
Thinner and in the same size as its holder
Continue to step 10.

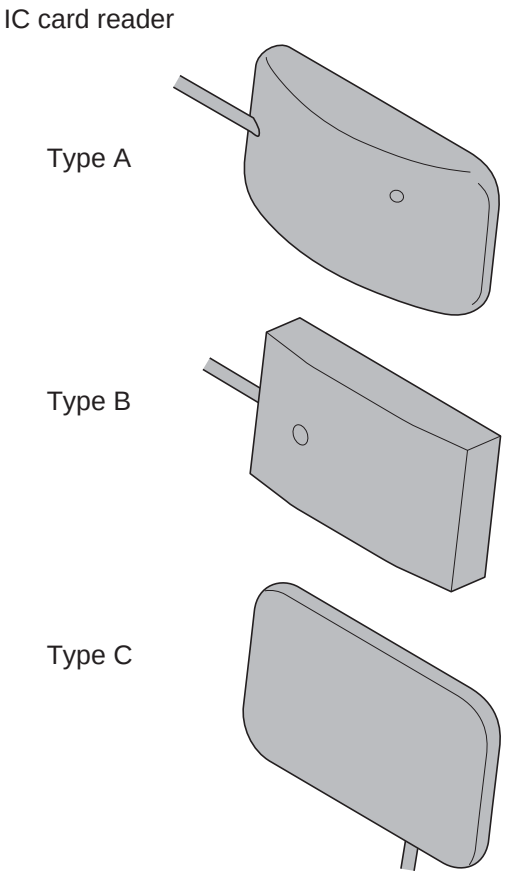
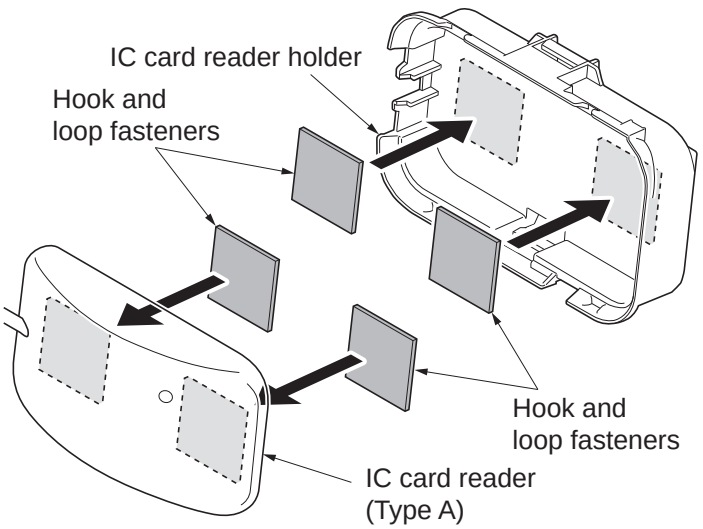


Figure 1-2-130

5. Affix two hook and loop fasteners to the IC card reader and IC card reader holder.



6. Mount the IC card reader to the IC card reader holder.

   Proceed to step 9.

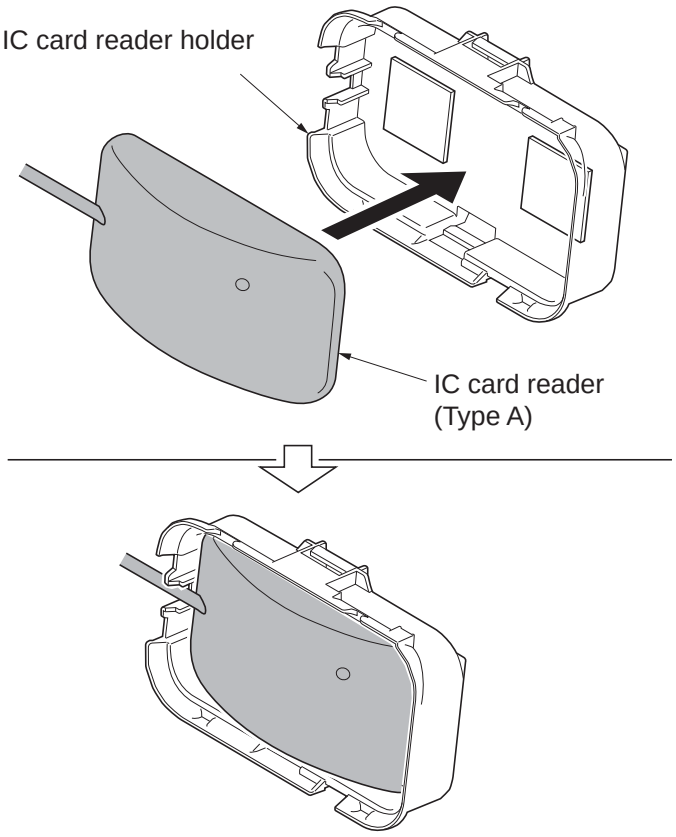
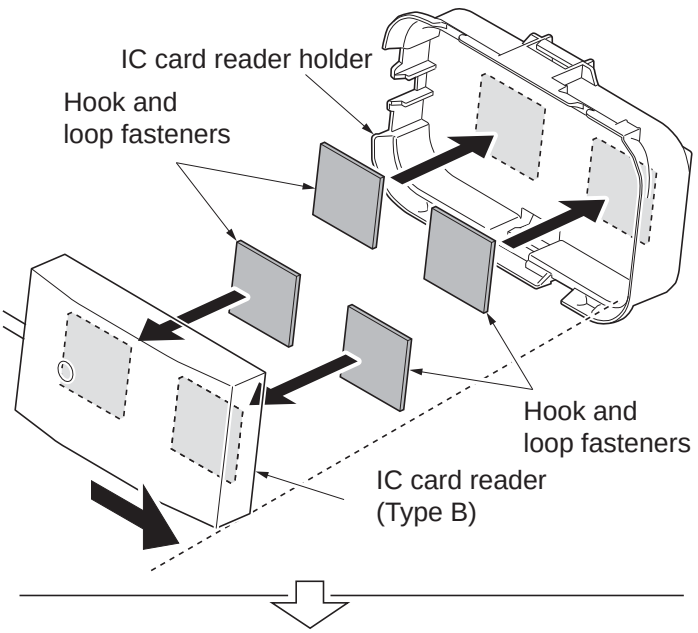


Figure 1-2-131

7. Affix two hook and loop fasteners to the IC card reader and IC card reader holder.
*: Affix a hook and loop fastener onto the IC card reader so that it is mounted on the holder with both being flush with the right side edges.



8. Mount the IC card reader to the IC card reader holder.

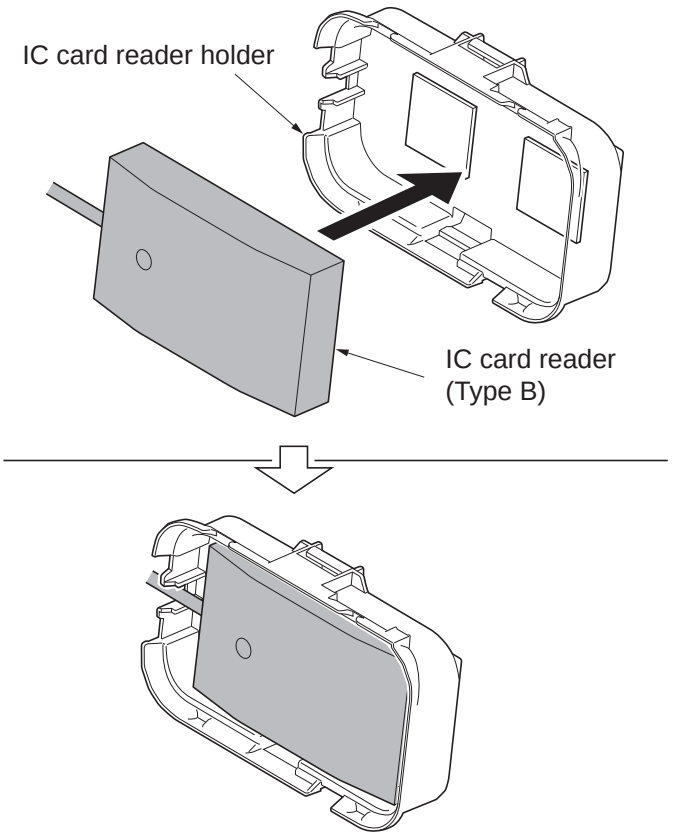


Figure 1-2-132

9. Route the USB cable from the IC card reader through the IC card reader holder ribs, wind around its back and route through another rib.
*: Make sure the cable will have a slack of more than 20 cm.

   Proceed to step 14.

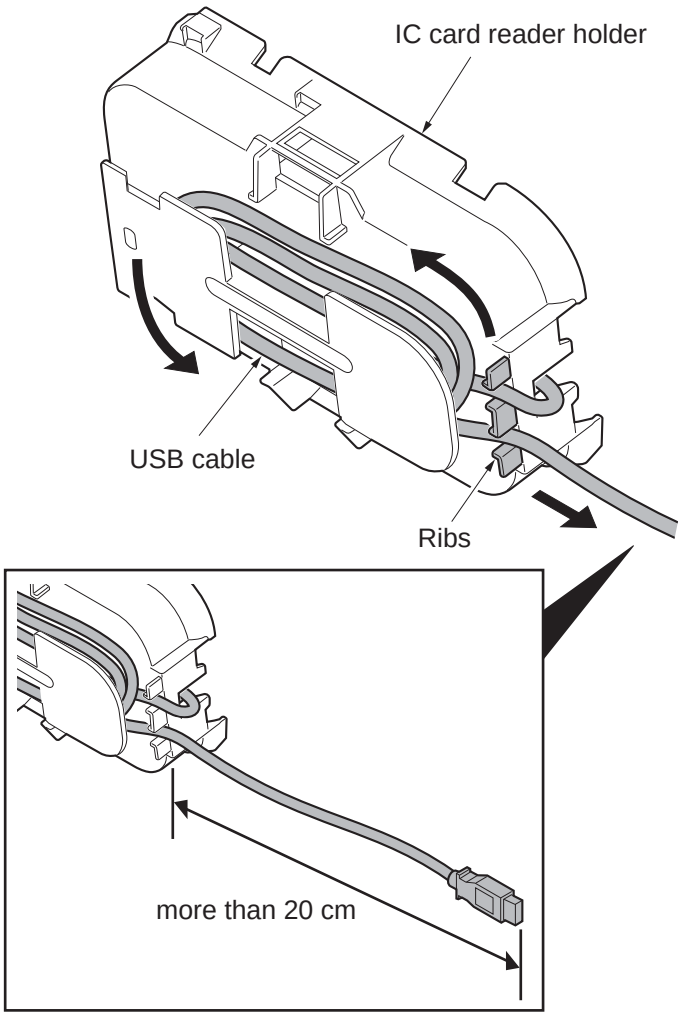
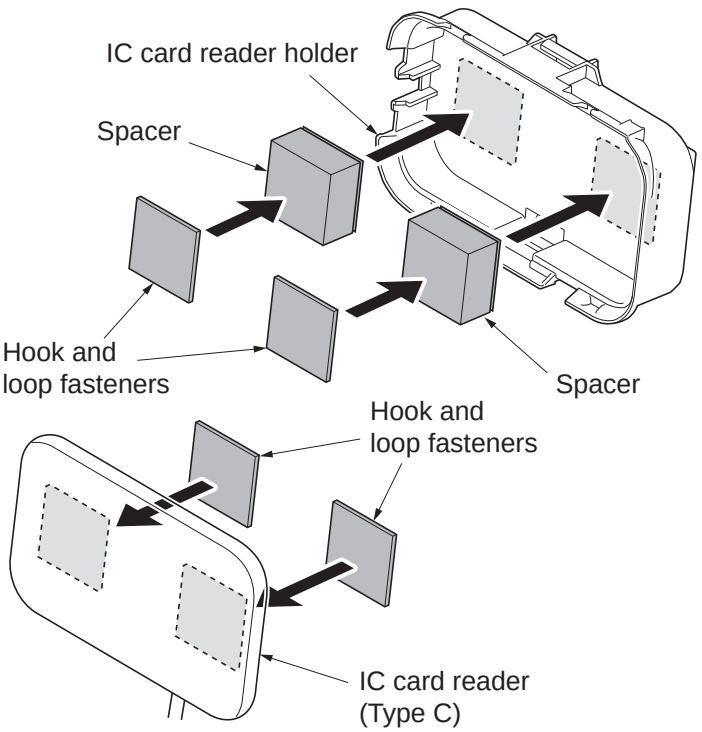


Figure 1-2-133

10. Affix two hook and loop fasteners to the IC card reader.
11. Affix a hook and loop fastener at the reverse side of the spacer where an adhesive tape has been affixed.
    Affix two spacers to the IC card reader.



12. Mount the IC card reader to the IC card reader holder.

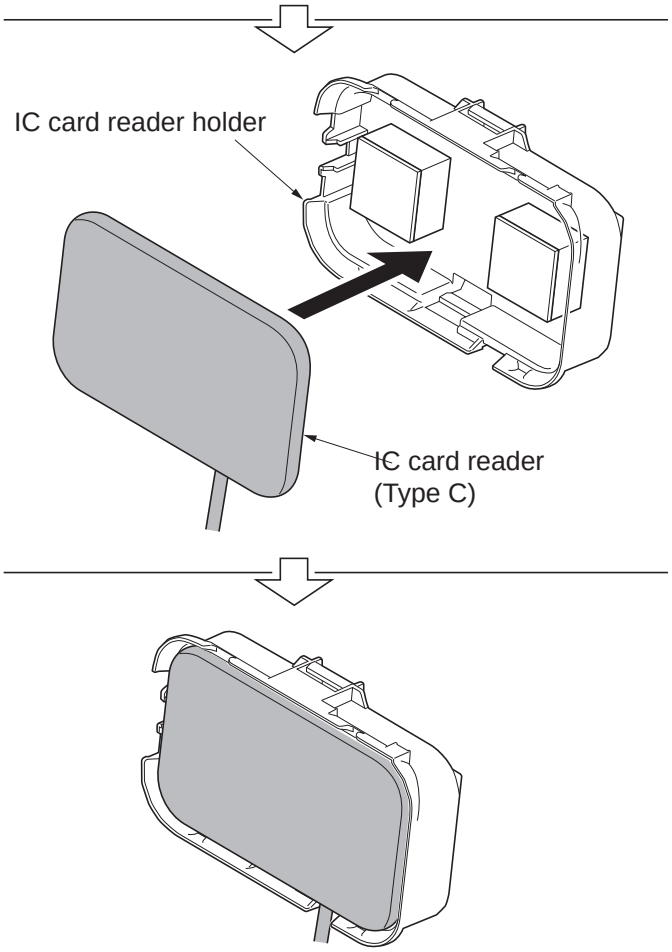


Figure 1-2-134

13. Route the USB cable from the IC card reader through the ribs at the bottom of the IC card reader holder, wind around its back a couple of turns, and route through the rib on the left hand side.

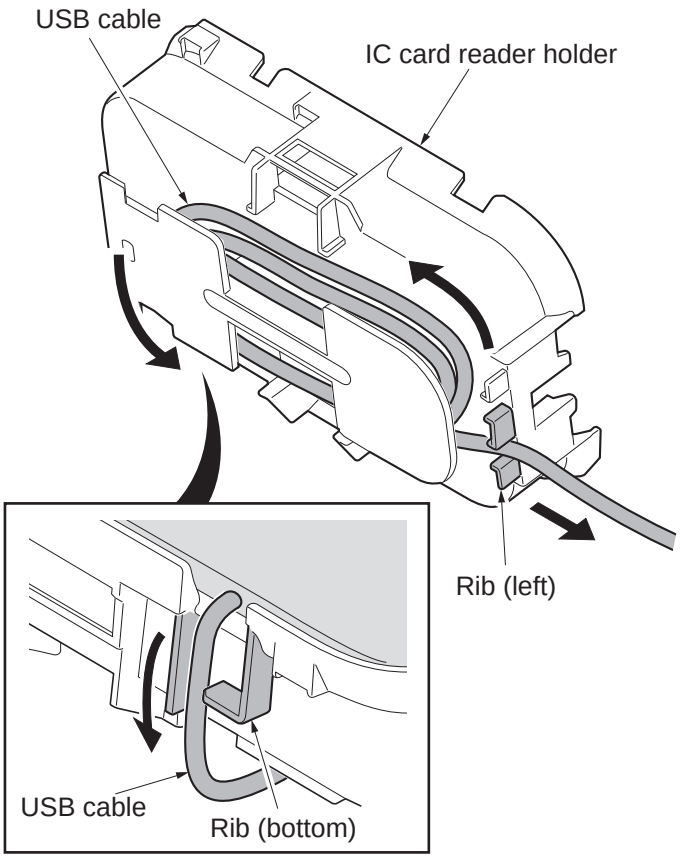


Figure 1-2-135

14. Reverse the right table cover and snap the IC card reader holder into the 5 latches to mount.

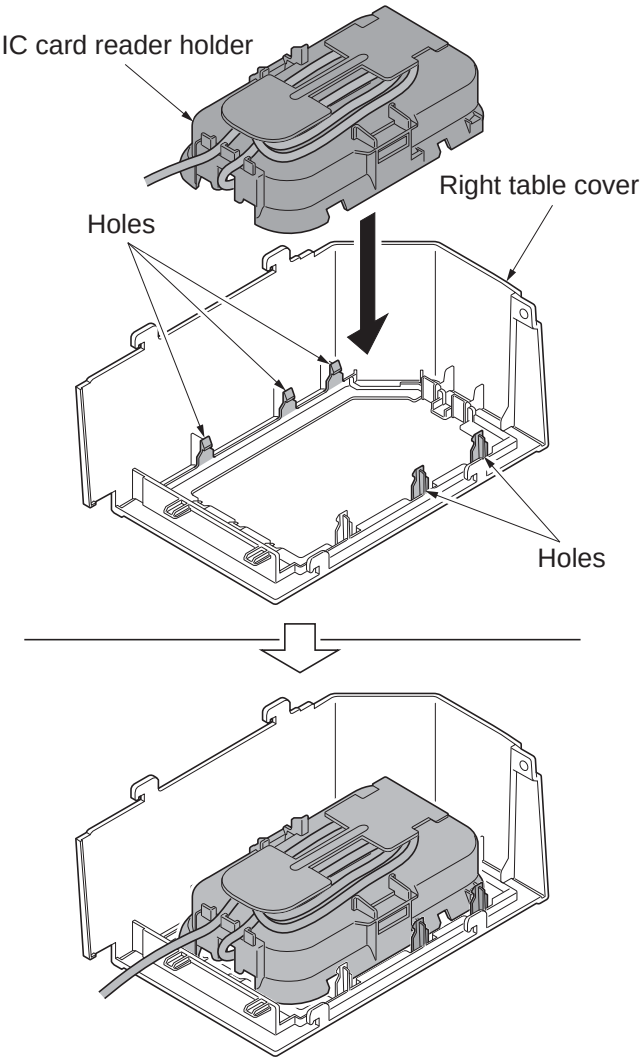


Figure 1-2-136

15. Connect the USB cable with the USB connector on the machine.

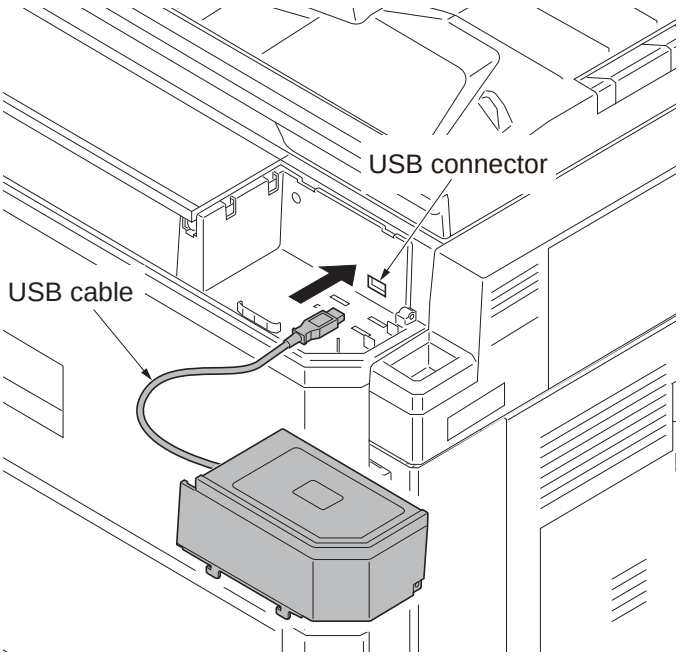


Figure 1-2-137

16. Fix the right table cover by using the screw which was removed in step 2.
*: Use care not to pinch the wire.

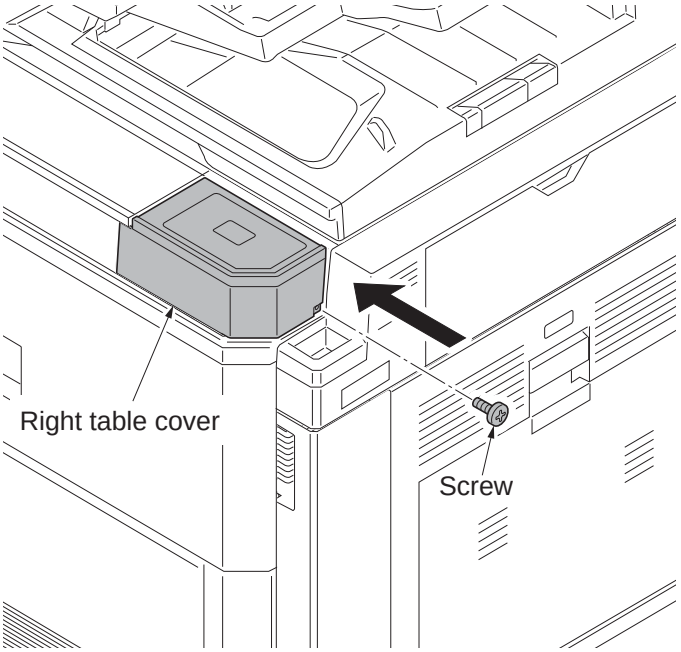


Figure 1-2-138

Enabling IC Card Authentication

Precautions
To install the optional function, you need the License Key. Please access the designated website of your dealer or service representative, and register “Machine No.” indicated on your machine and “Product ID” indicated on the License Certificate supplied with the product to issue the License Key.

1. Turn the main power switch on.
2. Press the System Menu key and then press [System].
   If user login administration is disabled, the user authentication screen appears.
   Enter your login user name and password and then press [Login]. For this, you need to log in with administrator privileges.
3. Press [Next] of Optional Function.
4. Select CARD AUTHENTICATION KIT(B) and press [Activate].
5. The License Key entry screen is displayed.
   Enter the License Key using the numeric keys and press [Official].
6. Confirm the product name CARD AUTHENTICATION KIT(B) and press [Yes].
7. To use a SSFC card, run maintenance mode U222 and set SSFC.

*: When the machine has entered sleep mode with Energy Saver ON, IC cards can not be recognized by the Card reader, since it does not wake from sleep mode. To enable the IC Card Reader in Sleep Mode, refer to the Operation Guide to change the Sleep level to OFF in the Sleep Rules at the Date/ Timer/ Energy Saver section of the System Menu.
*: This setting is not necessary when the optional network interface kit is installed.

1-2-11 Installing the keyboard holder (option)

Keyboard holder installation requires the following parts:

Parts	Quantity	Part.No.
Keyboard holder (C)	1	1709AF0UN2 (option)

Supplied parts of keyboard holder (C) (1709AF0UN2):

Parts	Quantity	Part.No.
Keyboard mounting bracket	1	-
Keyboard base	1	-
Hook and loop fasteners A	2	-
Hook and loop fasteners B	2	-
Right keyboard lock	1	-
Left keyboard lock	1	-
Band	1	-
M4 x 8 tap-tight P screw	2	-
M4 x 25 screw	2	

Procedure

1. Press the power key on the operation panel to off. Make sure that the power indicator and the memory indicator are off before turning off the main power switch. And then unplug the power cable from the wall outlet.
2. Remove a screw and then remove the right table cover.

*: While holding the cover at its far end, slide it rightwards to remove.

*: Secure the M4×25 screw.

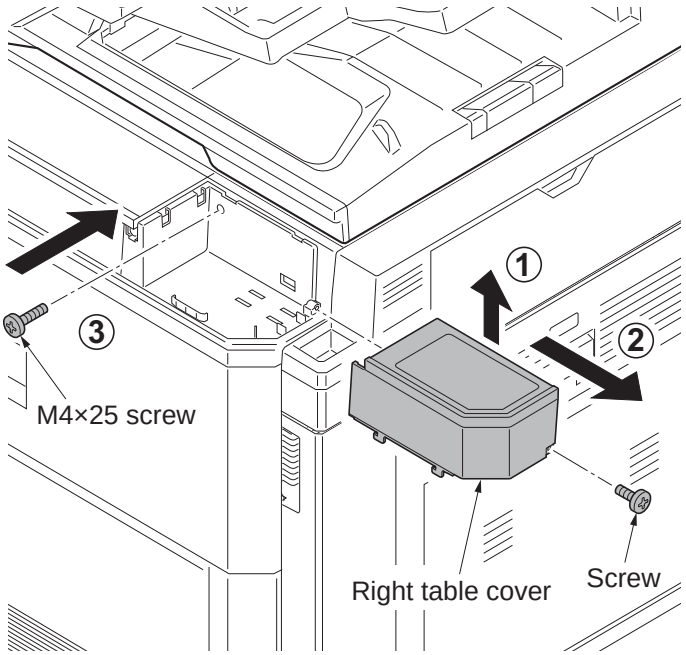


Figure 1-2-139

3. Remove a screw and then remove the left table cover.
*: While holding the cover at its far end, slide it leftwards to remove.
4. Secure the M4×25 screw.
5. Refit the right table cover and left table cover.

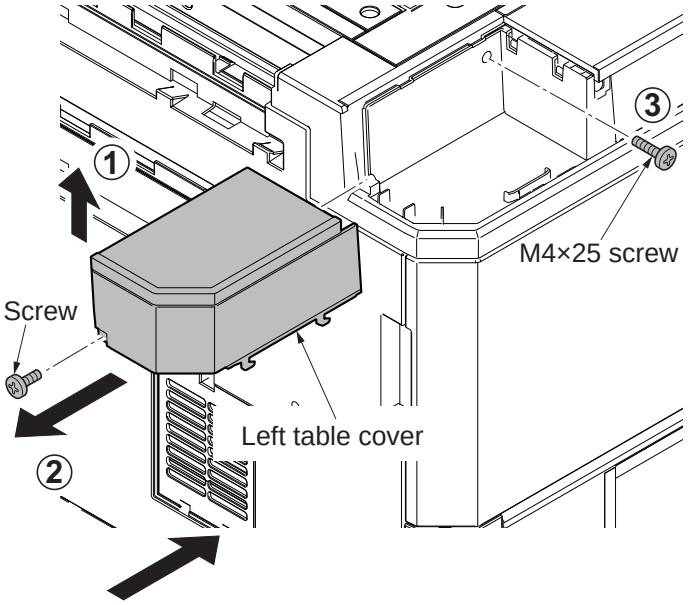


Figure 1-2-140

6. Remove the USB cover.
7. Hold the protrusion by pliers to remove.

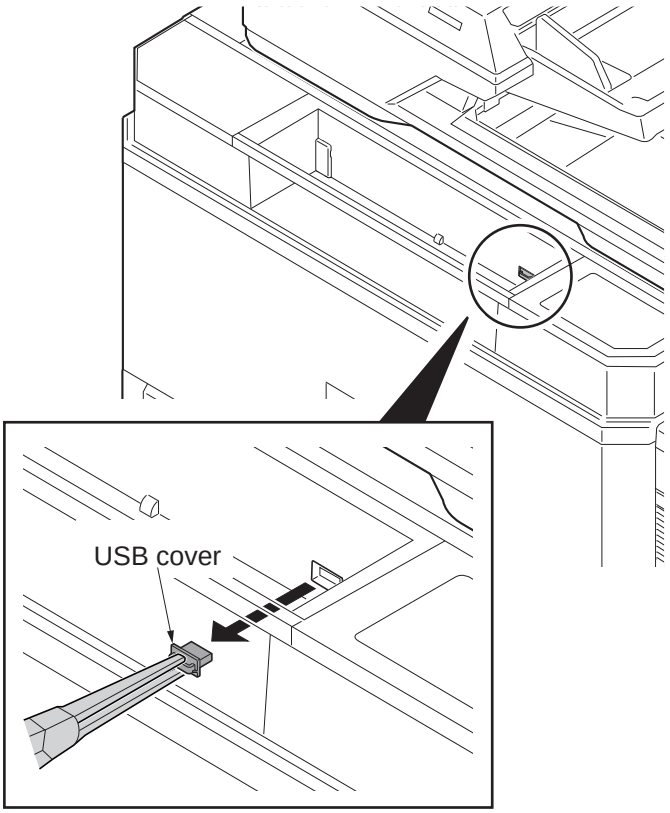


Figure 1-2-141

8. Using a flat-blade screwdriver, lever open the right and left lids to remove.

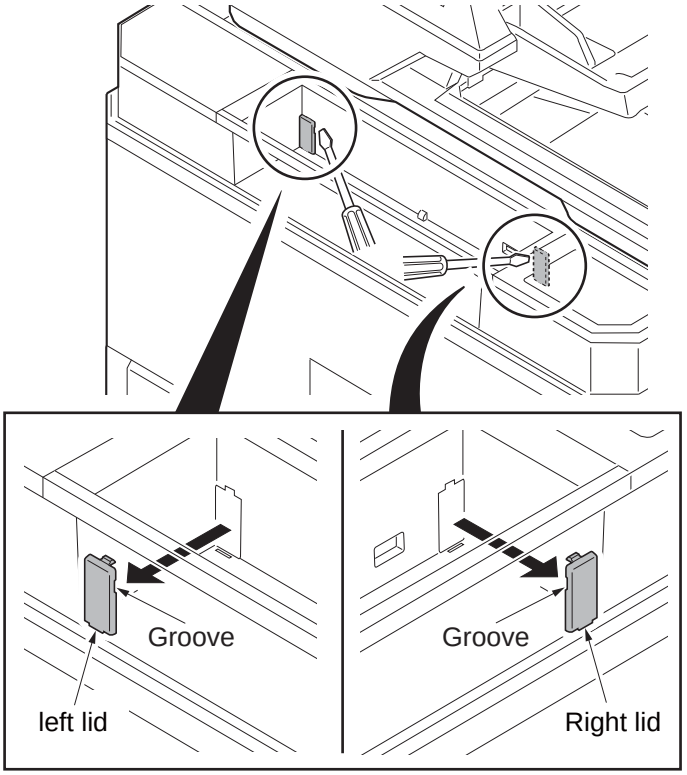


Figure 1-2-142

9. Un mount the keyboard base from the keyboard mounting bracket.

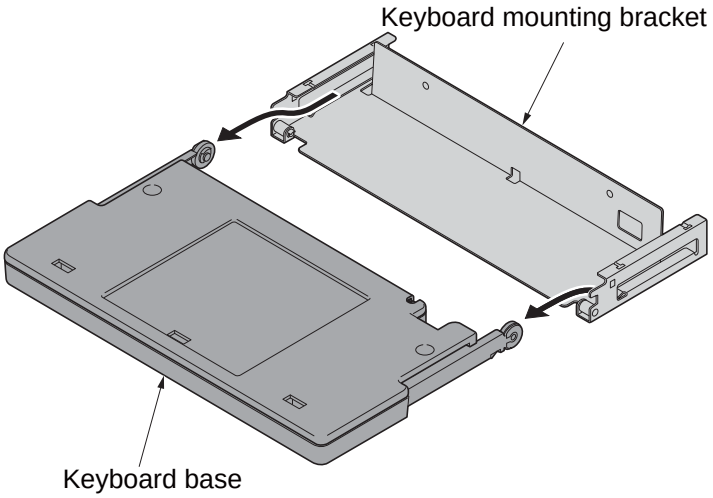


Figure 1-2-143

10. Align the keyboard mounting bracket with the main unit at its positioning boss, secure it using two M4×8 screws.

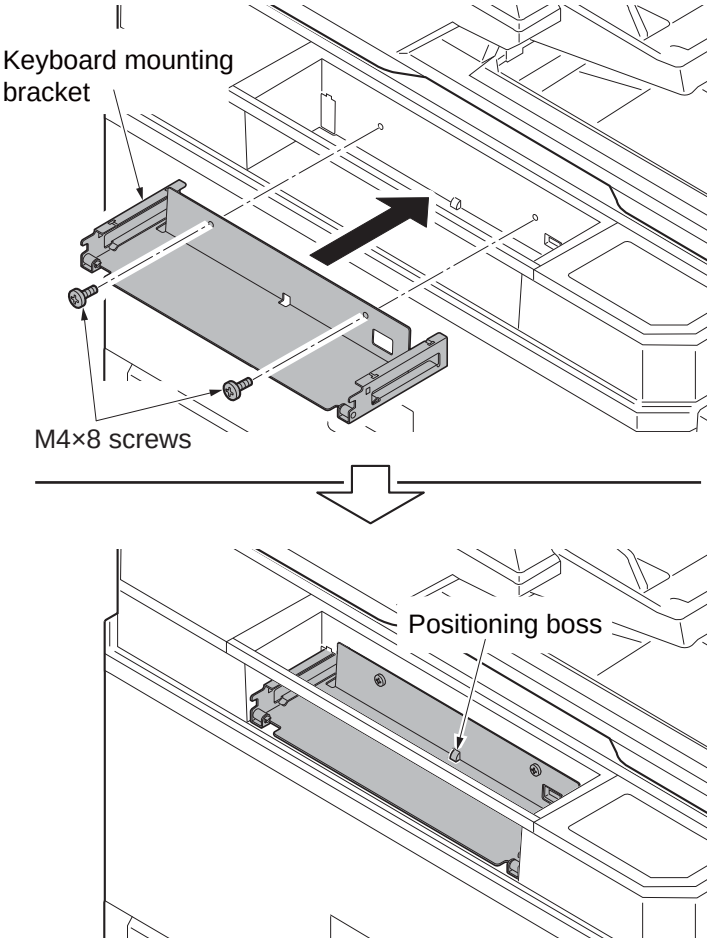


Figure 1-2-144

11. Remove two screws and then remove the keyboard cover from the keyboard base.

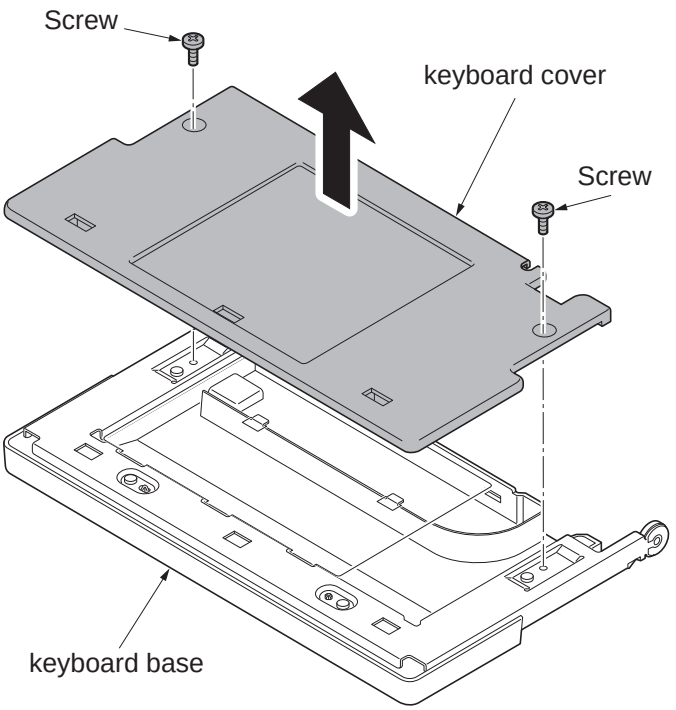


Figure 1-2-145

12. Lift the protrusions of the film off of the hold.
    Unhook at two holes and remove the film from the keyboard base.

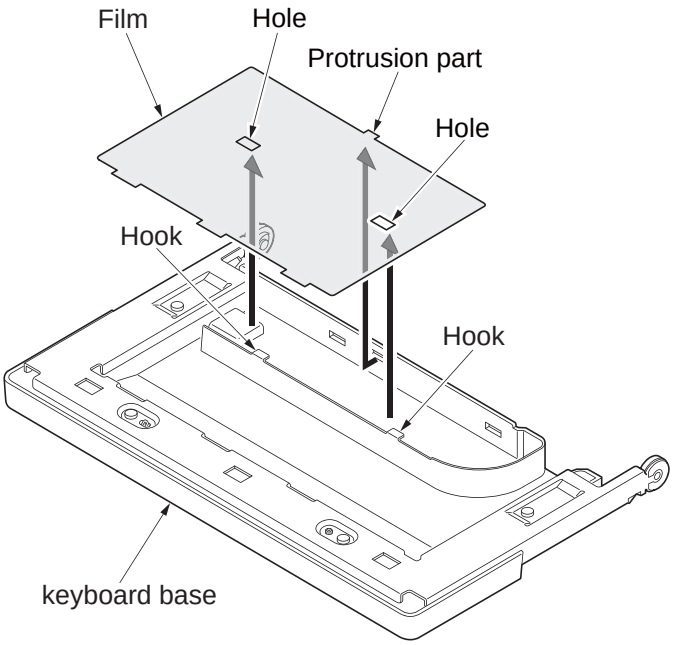


Figure 1-2-146

13. Connect the USB cable with the USB connector on the machine.
    *: Open the document processor and place the keyboard on the platen.

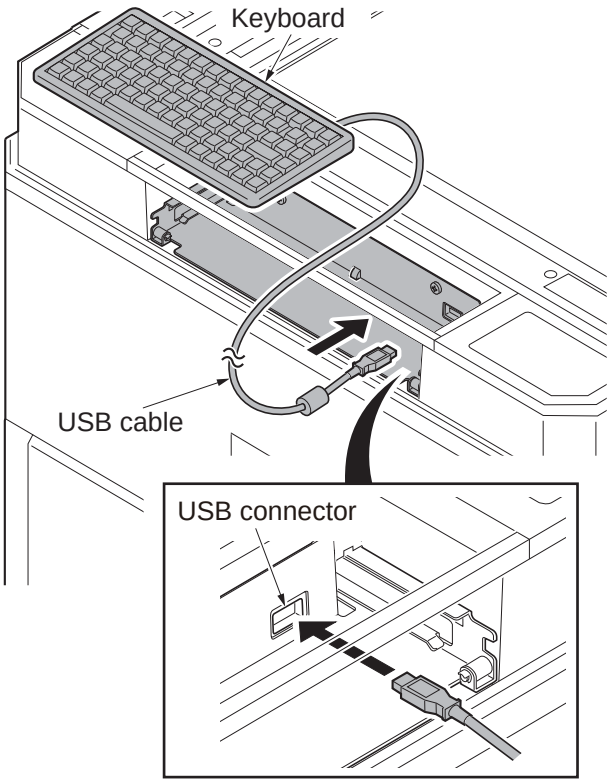


Figure 1-2-147

14. Attach the keyboard base to a keyboard mounting bracket.
    *: Insert the keyboard askew so that the roller on the keyboard base is positioned between the guide of the keyboard mounting bracket and the roller.

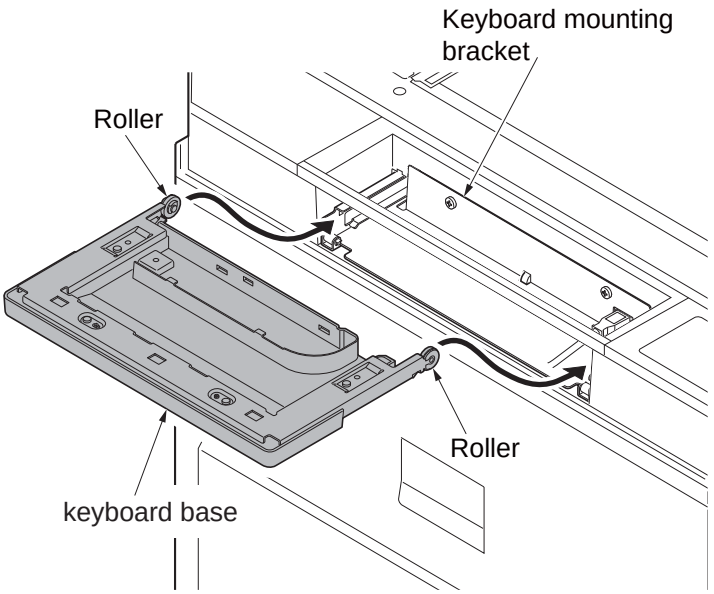


Figure 1-2-148

15. Insert the left and right keyboard locks onto the rails on the keyboard mounting bracket until it clicks in and fix.
    *: Insert until a click is heard.

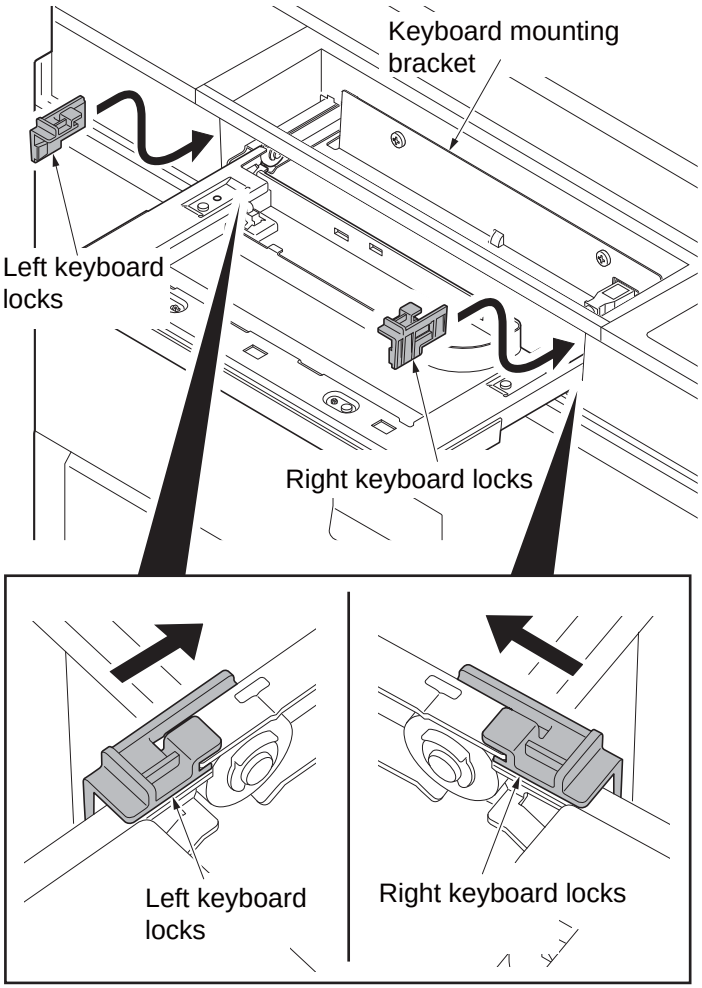


Figure 1-2-149

16. Draw out the keyboard base.
17. With the USB cable strained slightly loose, fix a band to the wire and fix the band to the hole on the keyboard.

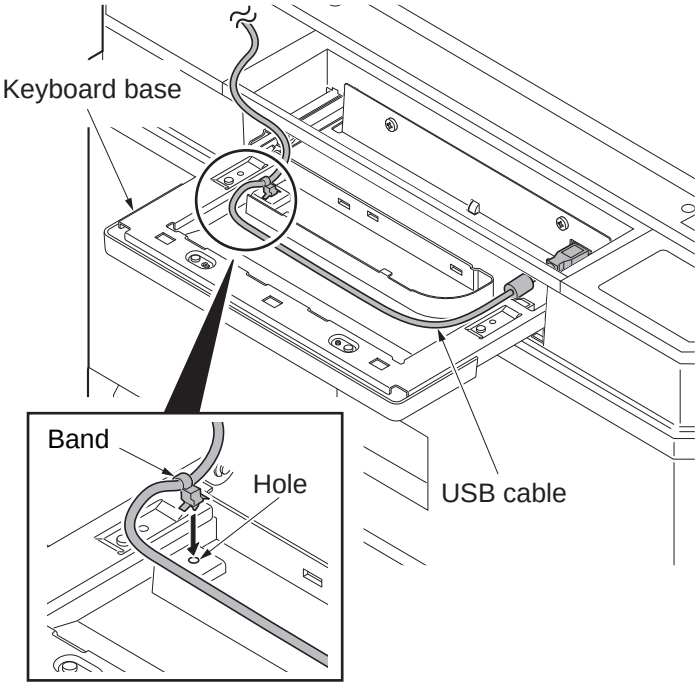


Figure 1-2-150

18. Bundle the remaining portion of the USB wire and recess under the keyboard base.

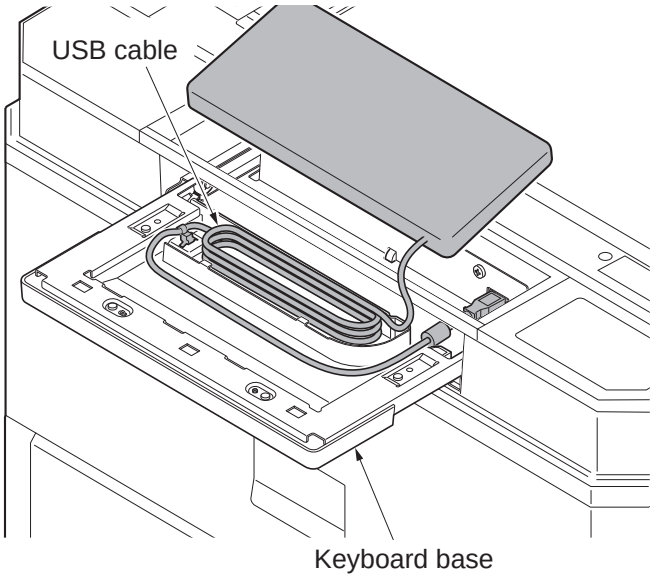


Figure 1-2-151

19. Replace the film which was removed in step 7 to the keyboard base.
    1) Insert the protrusions A (3) in the chase of the keyboard base.
    2) Mate the holes (2) with the hooks of the keyboard base.
    3) Press the protrusion B (1) down to mate with the hole of the keyboard base.

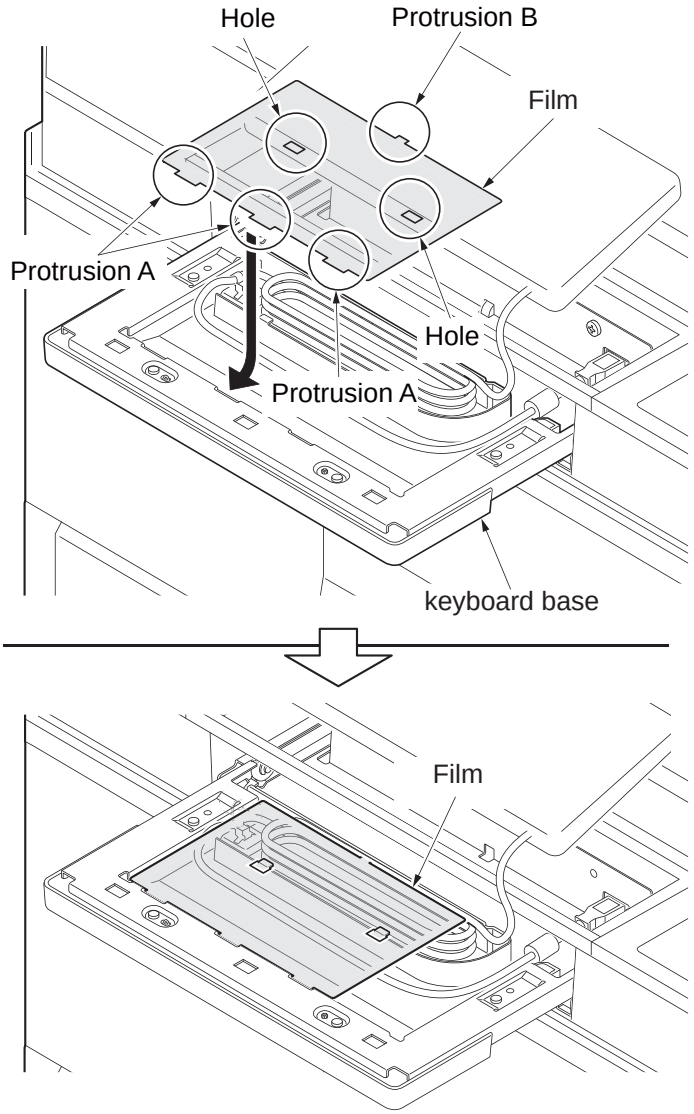


Figure 1-2-152

20. Attach the keyboard cover to a keyboard base with two screws that have been removed in step 6.
    *: Route the keyboard USB wire through the opening in the keyboard cover.

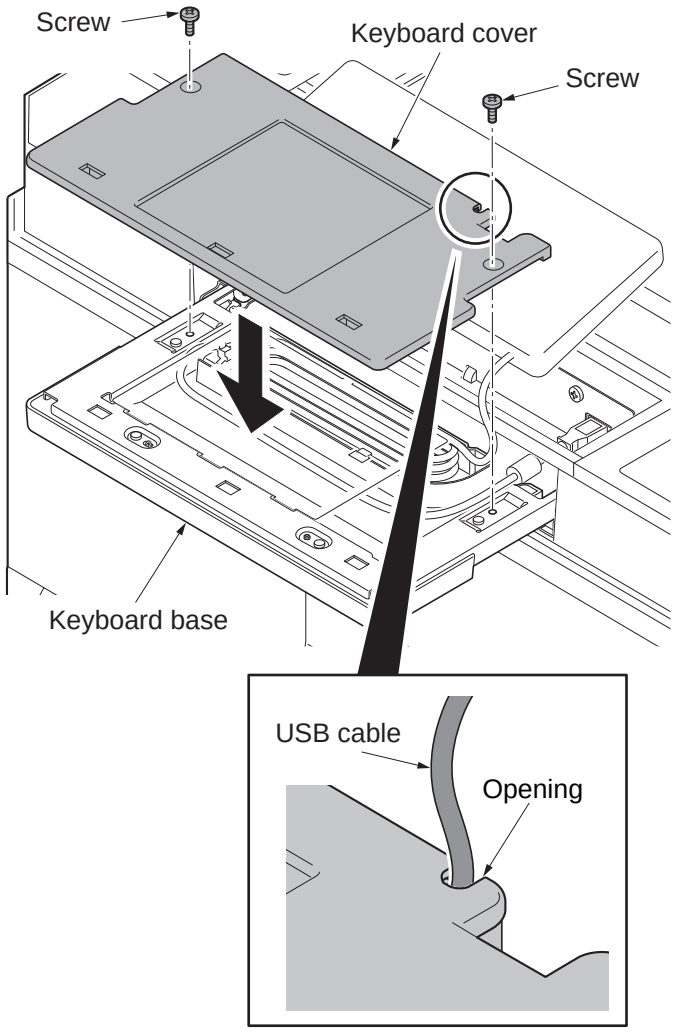


Figure 1-2-153

21. Affix two pieces of hook and loop fasteners on the upper keyboard cover.
22. Affix two pieces of hook and loop fasteners at the reverse side of the keyboard.

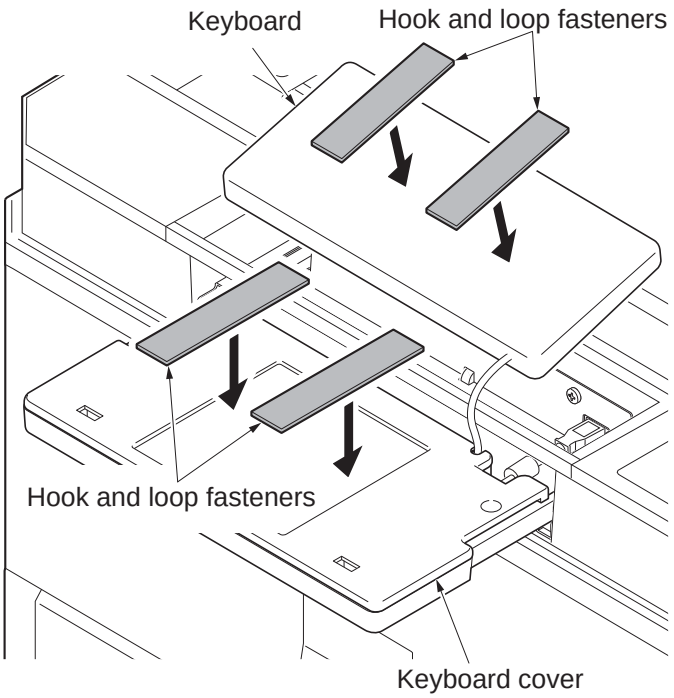


Figure 1-2-154

23. Align the keyboard with the hook and loop fasteners and fix on the keyboard base.

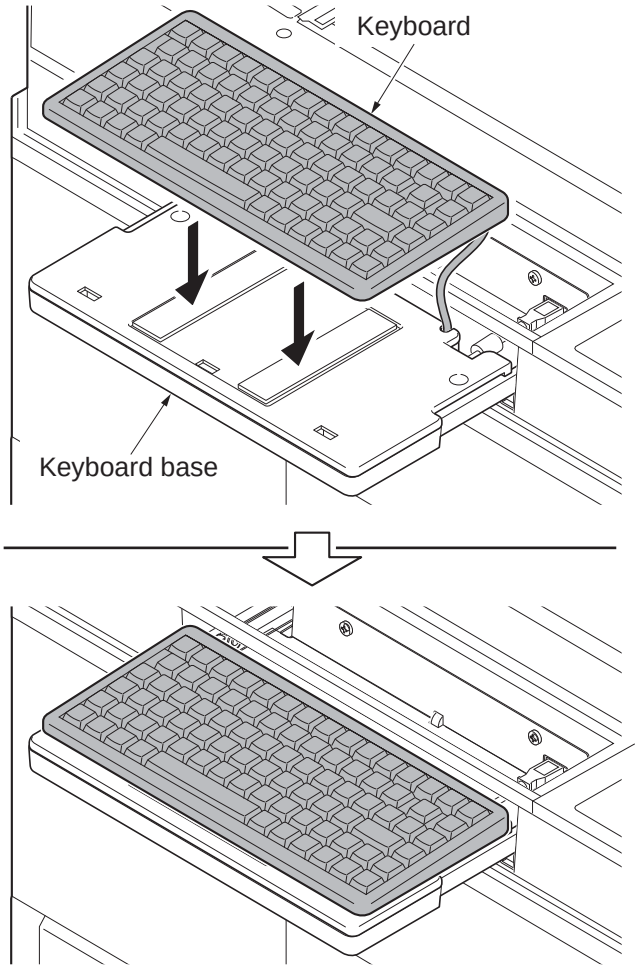


Figure 1-2-155

24. If the USB cable from keyboard runs off of the keyboard, dress it into the keyboard base.
25. Pull the keyboard in and out to confirm that the USB cable won't go off of the connector.

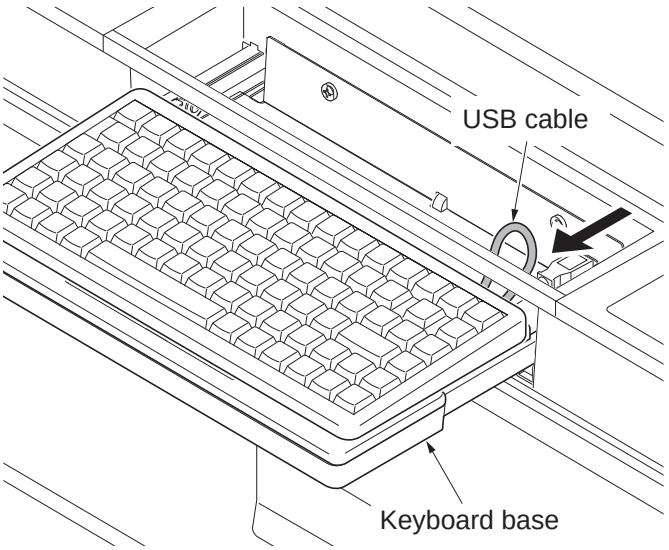


Figure 1-2-156

1-2-12 Installing the Printed Document Guard Kit (option)

Printed Document Guard Kit installation requires the following parts:

Parts	Quantity	Part.No.
Printed Document Guard Kit (B)	1	1503P40UN0

Supplied parts of Printed Document Guard Kit:

Parts	Quantity	Part.No.
Copy guard PWB	1	-
FFC (short)	2	-
FFC (long)*	2	-
Mount plate B*1	1	-
Screws M3 x 6*2	2	-

*1: Not used in this model.
*2: One piece is used in this model.

Procedure

1. Press the power key on the operation panel to off. Make sure that the power indicator and the memory indicator are off before turning off the main power switch. And then unplug the power cable from the wall outlet.

2. Remove nine screws and then remove the rear upper cover.
*: To fix a cover, insert the hook at the left top first by bowing the cover.

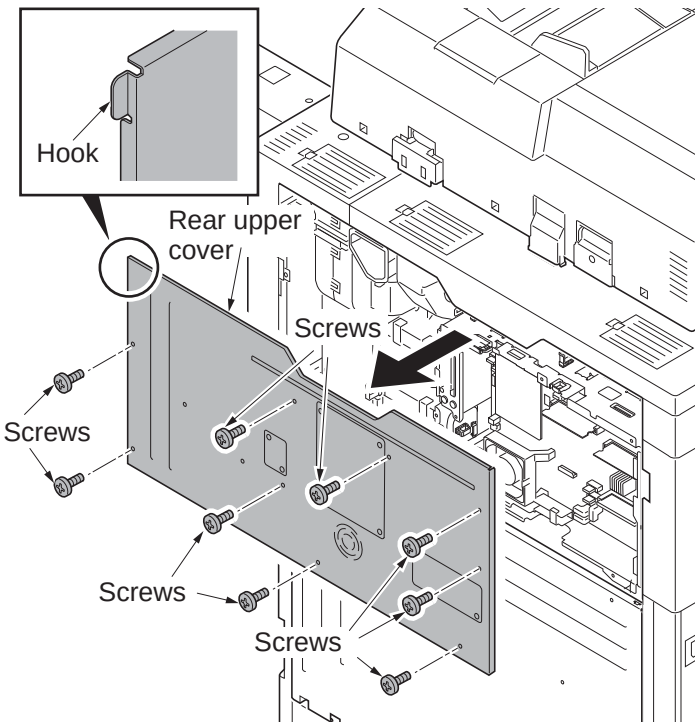


Figure 1-2-157

3. Insert the FFC into the copy guard PWB
   YC2 (serigraphed on MAIN)
   YC1 (serigraphed on DP)

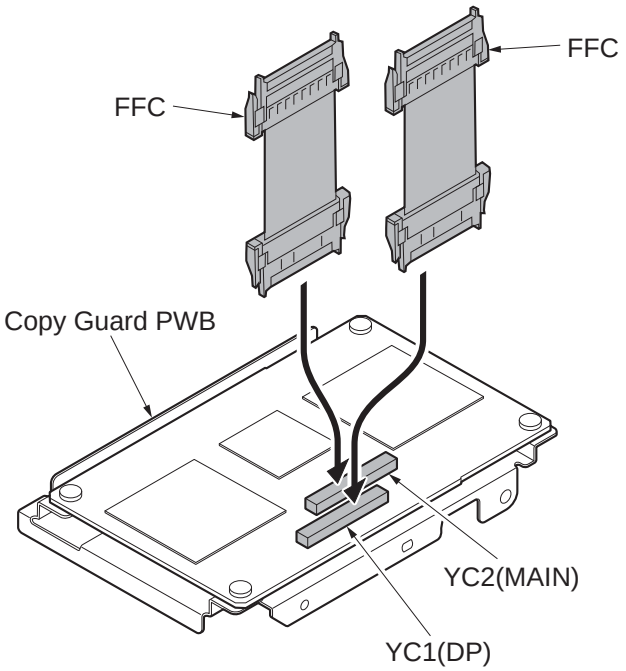


Figure 1-2-158

4. Insert the copy guard PWB to the side of the main PWB and fix with a S Tite screw M4 x 8.

*: Mark the FFC cable by folding.

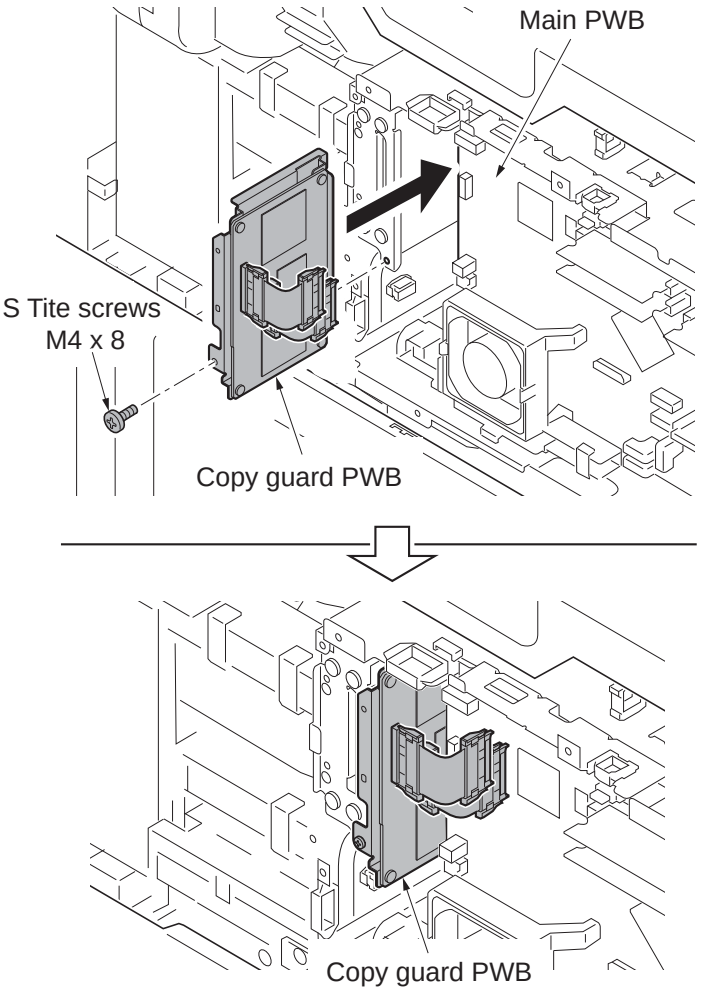
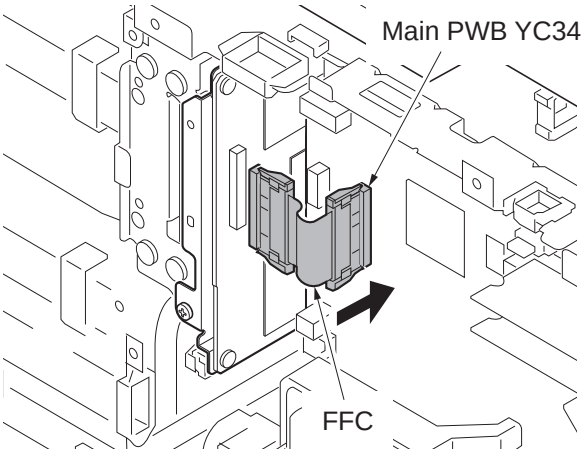


Figure 1-2-159

5. Connect the main PWB and the DP relay PWB with the FFC.

   Main PWB YC34
   DP relay PWB YC35



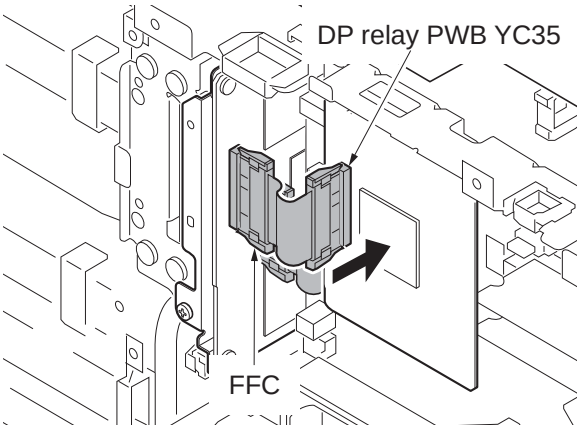


Figure 1-2-160

6. Replace the upper rear cover.
7. Confirm the settings.
   1) Turn the main power switch on.
   2) Press the system menu key, then, System/Network.
   3) The user authentication dialog is shown if user authentication is not enabled.
      Enter the login user name and the login password, then, press Login.
      Use an administrator privilege for login.
   4) Confirm that the Confidential Guard is set to On.

1-2-13 Installing the handset (option for Japan only)

Handset installation requires the following parts:

Parts	Quantity	Part.No.
Handset	1	1909AG9JP0 (option)

Supplied parts of handset (1909AG9JP0):

Parts	Quantity	Part.No.
Handset	1	-
Handset base	1	-
Handset mount	1	-
Protection cover	1	-
Pin	2	-
Telephone wire	1	-
Modular cable	1	-
M4 nut	2	3CY06030

Procedure

1. Press the power key on the operation panel to off. Make sure that the power indicator and the memory indicator are off before turning off the main power switch. And then unplug the power cable from the wall outlet.
2. Remove the controller cover.
3. Remove the screw and then remove the controller lid.

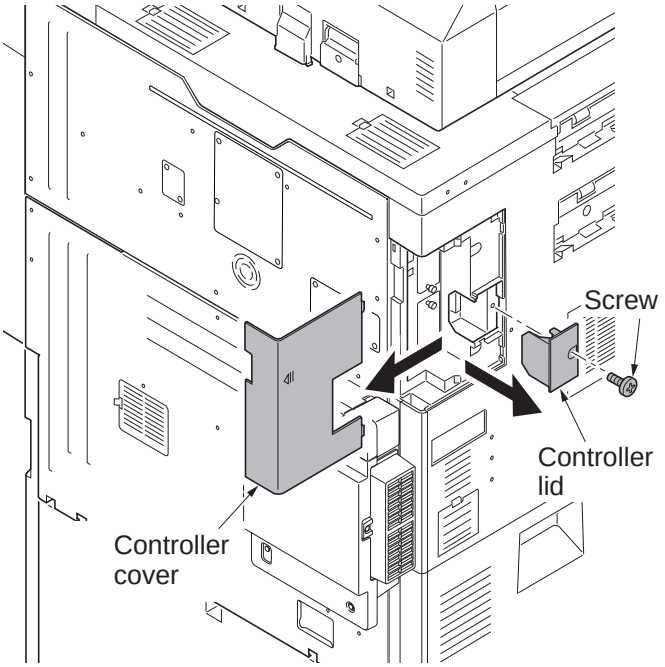


Figure 1-2-161

4. Remove three screws.
5. Unhook six hooks and then remove the left upper cover.

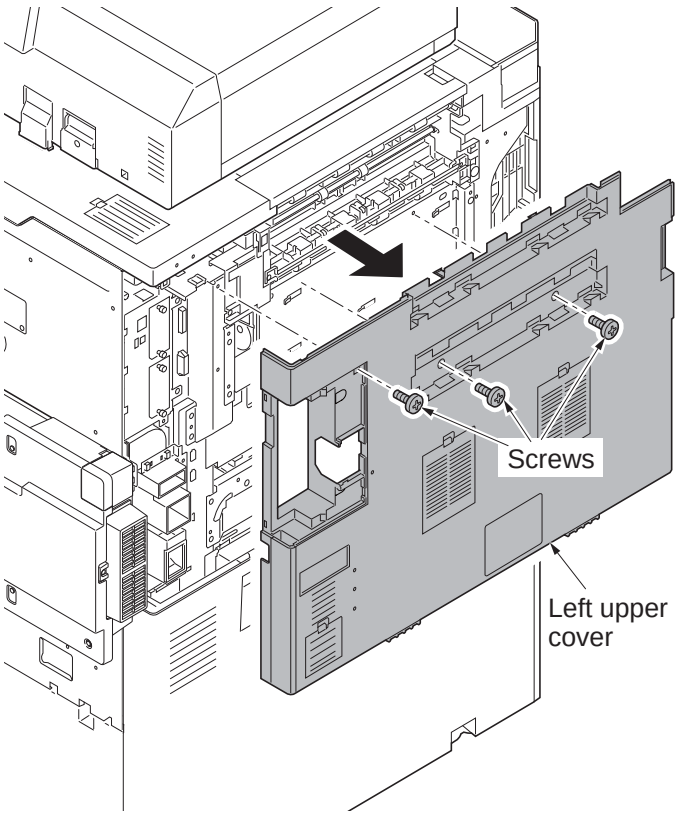


Figure 1-2-162

6. Mount two M4 nuts at the back of the ISU rear cover.
7. Fit the handset mount to the ISU rear cover using two pins.

*: Use the lower screw holes.

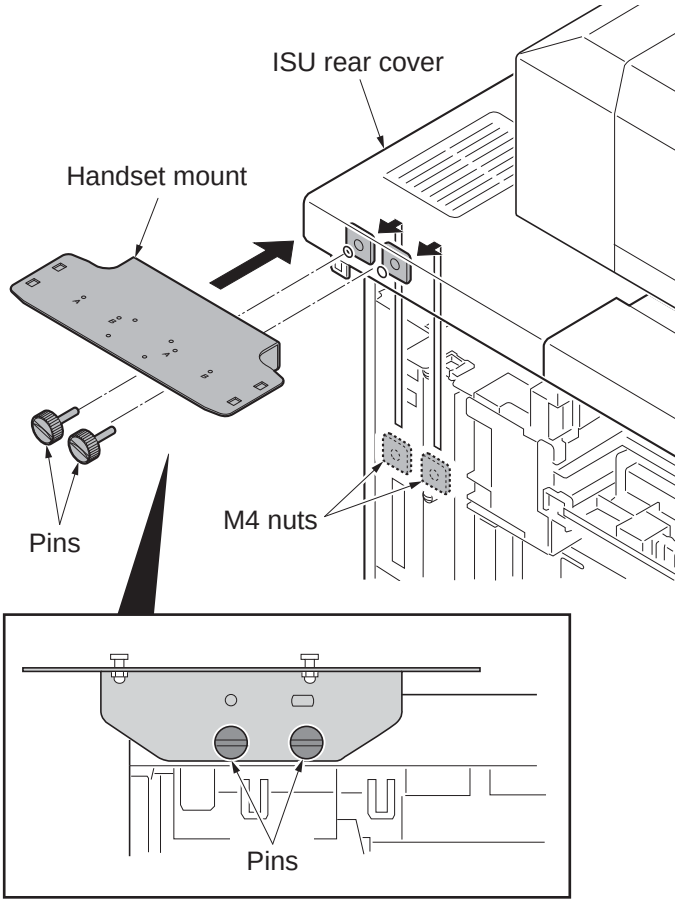


Figure 1-2-163

8. Refit the left upper cover.
9. Refit the toner filter.
10. Refit the controller lid.
11. Confirm that the pin on the handset mount is positioned at mark A.
    If not, remove two nuts and two pins and remount at mark A.

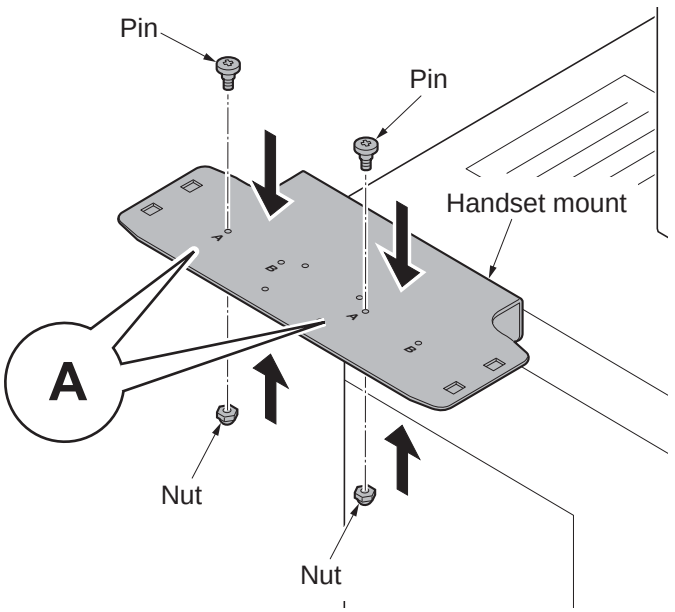


Figure 1-2-164

12. Insert the pins at the insert parts on the back of the handset base, and slide it towards you.

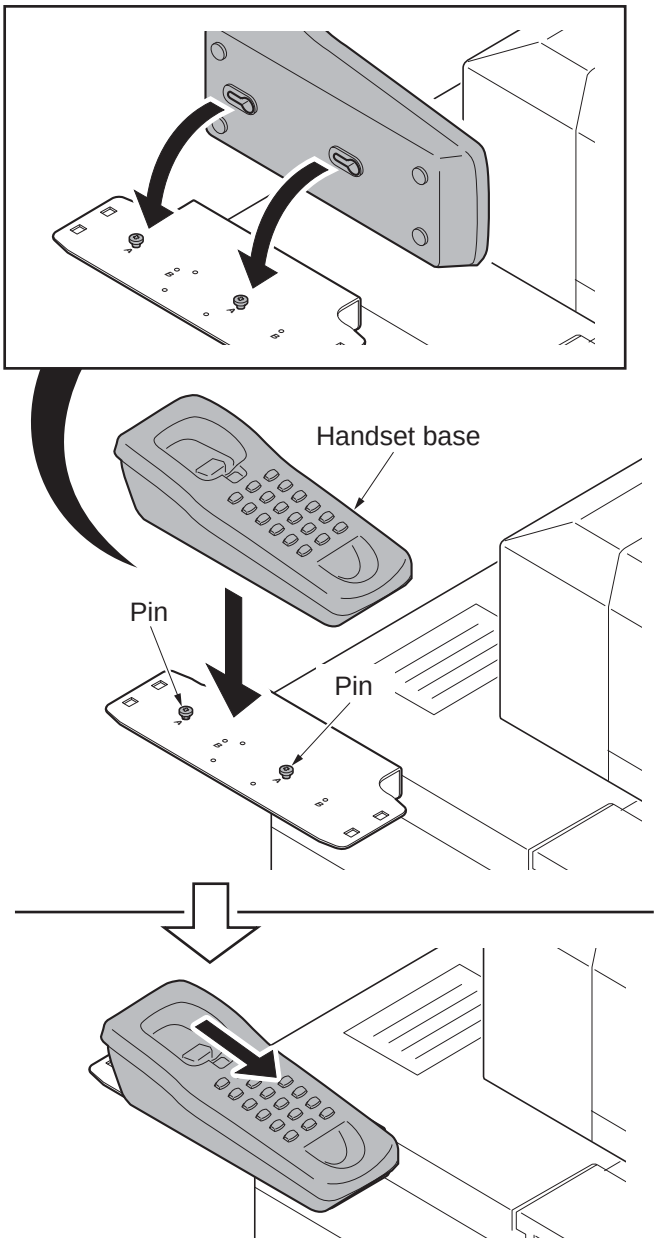


Figure 1-2-165

13. Fit the protection cover to the handset mount.

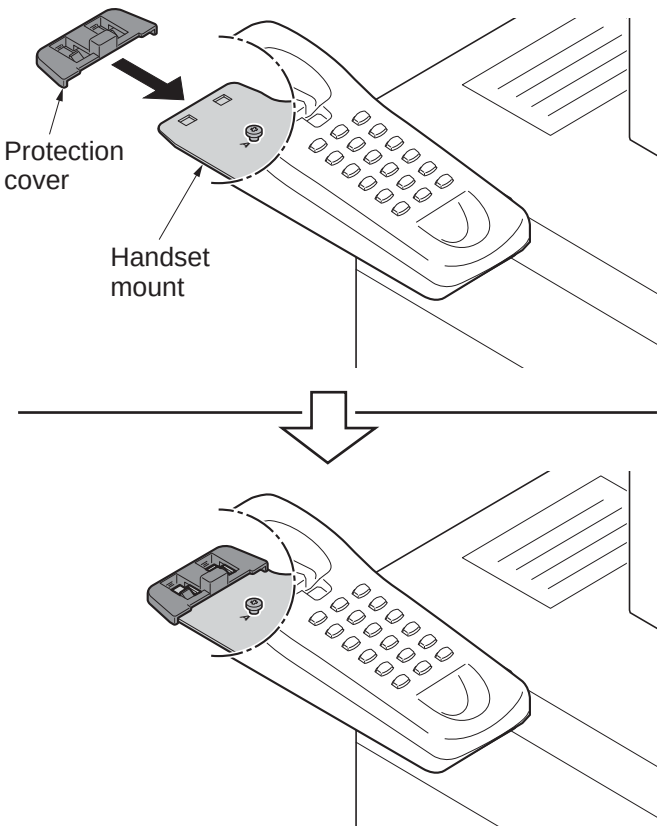


Figure 1-2-166

14. Connect the telephone wire to the handset and the handset base.

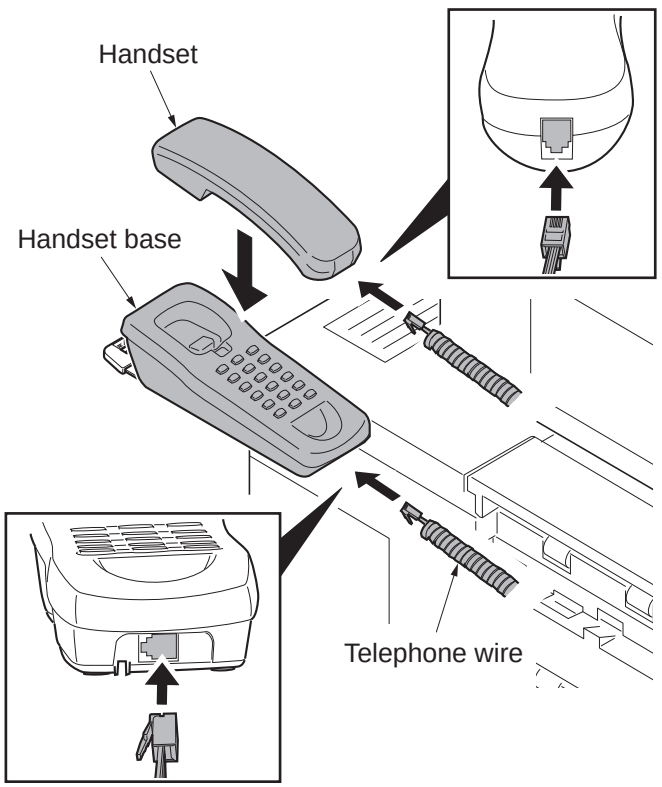


Figure 1-2-167

15. Connect the modular cable to the handset base and the machine.

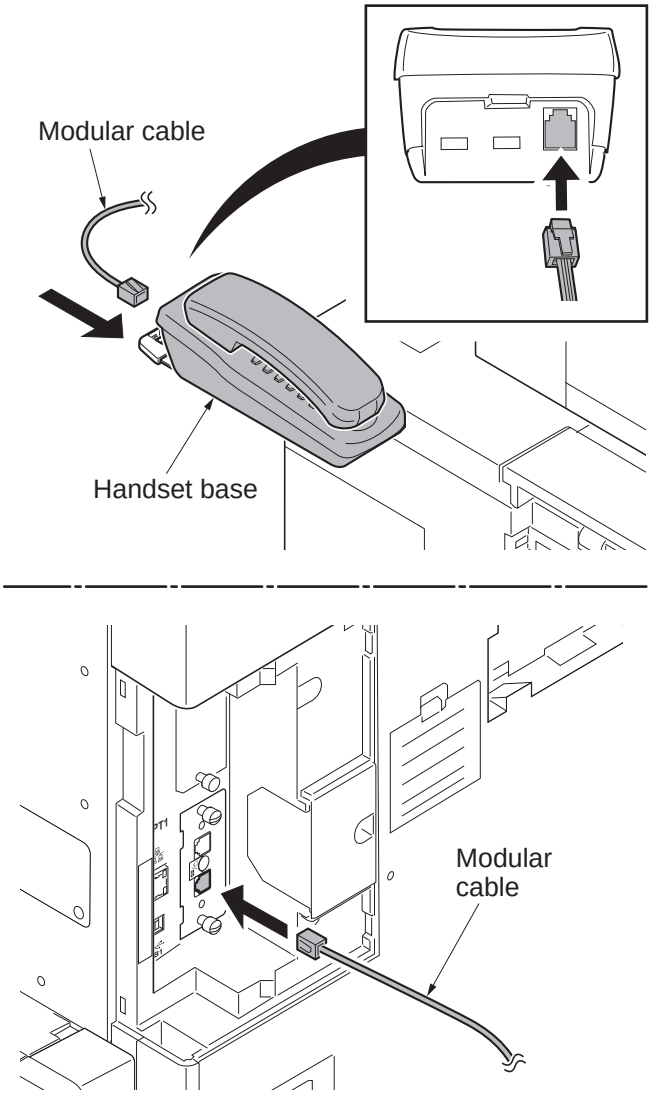


Figure 1-2-168

1-2-14 Optional Applications

Overview of the Applications
The applications listed below are installed on this machine.

Applications	INstall page
Data Security Kit	page 1-2-114
Internet FAX Kit	page 1-2-115
Card Authentication Kit*	page 1-2-119
ThinPrint Option (UG-33)*	page 1-2-120
Emulation Upgrade Kit (UG-34)	page 1-2-121

*: This can be used on a trial basis for a limited time.

Guides (PDF) on the DVD (Product Library)

Operation Guide
Explains how to load paper and perform copy, print and scan operations, and indicates default settings and other information.

FAX Operation Guide
Explains how to use the fax function.

Card Authentication Kit (B) Operation Guide
Explains how to perform authentication using the ID card.

Data Security Kit (E) Operation Guide
Explains how to introduce and use the Data Security kit (E), and how to initialize the system.

Command Center RX User Guide
Explains how to access the machine from a Web browser on your computer to check and change settings.

Printer Driver User Guide
Explains how to install the printer driver and use the printer function.

(1) Data Security Kit

The Data Security Kit overwrites all unnecessary data in the storage area of the hard disk so that it cannot be retrieved.
The Data Security Kit encrypts data before storing it in the hard disk. It guarantees higher security because no data cannot be decoded by ordinary output or operations.

Precautions before Installation

Installing the Data Security Kit will delete all data stored in the hard disk by the customer. Before installation, confirm with the customer if the data can be deleted.
To install the optional function, you need the License Key.
Issue of License Key requires the "Machine No" indicated on your machine, and "product ID."
Be sure to login the machine with the administrator privilege.

Installation Procedure

1. Press the System menu key and then press [System/Network]. If user login administration is disabled, the user authentication screen appears. Enter your login user name and password and then press [Login]. For this, you need to log in with administrator privileges.
2. Press [Next] of Optional Function.
3. The optional function screen is displayed. Select DATA SECURITY KIT(E) and press [Activate].
4. The license key entry screen is displayed. Enter the license key using the numeric keys and press [Official].
5. The confirmation screen appears. Confirm the product name DATA SECURITY KIT(E) and press [Yes]. Follow the onscreen instructions to turn the Main Power Switch off.
6. Turn the Main Power Switch on. The encryption code entry screen is displayed. Ask the customer to change the encryption code. Using the default value of the encryption code (00000000) will not affect the data security reliability. If the customer desires to change the code, lead the customer to follow the steps below.

Press [Encryption].
Press [Backspace] to delete 00000000. Enter the encryption code (8-digit alphanumeric characters) and then press [OK].
Remind the customer not to forget the encryption code entered.

7. Press [OK]. Hard disk formatting begins.
8. When formatting finishes, follow the onscreen instructions to turn the Main Power Switch off and on again.
9. After the opening screen is displayed, confirm that a hard disk icon ( ) is shown in the lower right corner of the screen.

Figure 1-2-169

*: For details, refer to the Data Security Kit (E) Operation Guide.

(2) Internet FAX Kit

Activating the Internet FAX Kit sends and receives faxes via the Internet without using a phone line.
It can only be added when the FAX Kit is installed.

*: To install the optional function, you need the License Key.
Issue of License Key requires the "Machine No" indicated on your machine, and "product ID."

Installation Procedure

1. Press the System menu key and then press [System/Network]. If user login administration is disabled, the user authentication screen appears. Enter your login user name and password and then press [Login]. For this, you need to log in with administrator privileges.
2. Press [Next] of Optional Function.
3. The optional function screen is displayed. Select “INTERNET FAXKIT(A)” and press [Activate].
4. The license key entry screen is displayed. Enter the license key using the numeric keys and press [Official].
5. The confirmation screen appears. Confirm the product name “INTERNET FAXKIT(A)” and press [Yes]. Follow the onscreen instructions to turn the Main Power Switch off.

i-FAX Settings

To send and receive Internet faxes, you must first specify the SMTP server and POP3 server settings.
Specify these settings using Command Center RX on a computer that is connected to this machine via a network.
Refer to the machine’s Operation Guide for information on the network settings.

Accessing Command Center RX

1. Launch your Web browser.
2. In the address or location bar, enter the machine’s IP address or the host name.
Examples: 192.168.48.21/ (for IP address)
MFP001 (if the host name is "MFP001")

Figure 1-2-170

*: When connecting to Command Center RX, a message may appear that reads "There is a problem with the security certificate of this website". To prevent this message from appearing, in "Protocol Settings", set "HTTP" to [On], or install the device certificate of this machine into your Web browser. For details, refer to the machine’s Operation Guide.

3. Enter the user name and password of the administrator, and click Login.
*: Setting Administrator User Name, and Password restricts general users' access to pages other than the Start page. For security purposes, setting the Administrator password is highly recommended. The default Administrator password is factory-set as ‘Admin’.
4. Click ‘Function Settings’ from the navigation bar on the left to view and set values for that particular category.
5. Click ‘FAX / i-FAX’.
The Transmit Settings dialog box will appear.
*: For details, refer to the Command Center RX User Guide.

i-FAX Default Settings
Use this page to enable the internet faxing.
The settings available on the page are shown below.

Item			Description
Common Settings	Transmission	Local FAX Name	Enter the local fax name.
		TTI Selects	On or Off whether to send the TTI (Transmit Terminal Identifier) information to the other party.
		TTI Position	Selects the position of the TTI to be printed on the transmitted documents.
		Dept. Name Usage	Set to On to use the account name as the local FAX name. The account name appears in place of the local FAX name.
		Retry Times	Specify the number of redials from 0 to 14 times.
	Reception	Media Type	Sets the media type for printing the received documents.
		Use MP Tray	Selects whether or not to include the MP (multi purpose) tray for auto media selection when printing received documents. When turned [On], the MP tray will be included as an option for auto media selection, and when turned [Off], only the cassettes will be selected.
		Reduced RX Size	Specifies the printing configuration for printing a document, which is larger than the selected paper size. When [Same Size Override] is selected, the document will be printed on multiple sheets of paper without reducing the text. When [Reduction Override] is selected, the document will be printed on one sheet whenever possible.
		Receive Date/Time	Selects [On] or [Off] whether to print the reception information such as the received date, the received time, the transmitting party's information and the number of transmitted pages on the top of the received documents.
		Duplex Printing	Specifies whether or not to use the Duplex mode.
		2in1 Printing	Enables or disables 2 in1 reception.
FAX Settings			Configure settings for FAX. For details, refer to the Command Center RX User Guide.
i-FAX Settings	TX/RX	i-FAX Protocol*1	Display whether an i-FAX connection is available or not. Configure i-FAX in [i-FAX (SMTP & POP3)] on the Protocol Settings page.
	SMTP	SMTP Server Name*2	Enter the SMTP server name or SMTP server IP address. You can enter up to 64 characters. If you enter the server name, you must specify the IP address of the DNS server. You can enter the DNS server IP address in the TCP/IP settings screen. Refer to the machine's Operation Guide for details.

Item				Description
i-FAX Settings	SMTP	SMTP Port Number		Set the port number used by SMTP. Normally, 25 is used.
		SMTP Server Timeout		Enter the timeout period in seconds.
		Authentication Protocol		Specify whether SMTP authentication will be used or whether [POP before SMTP] will be used. This SMTP authentication is compatible with Microsoft Exchange 2000.
		SMTP POP before SMTP Timeout		If you selected [POP before SMTP] in the authentication setting, specify the timeout period in seconds.
		Connection Test		Tests to confirm that the settings on this page are correct. When the [Test] button is pressed, this machine tries to connect to the SMTP server.
		Domain Restriction		Activate or deactivate to restrict domains. Press the [Domain List] button to configure. Enter a domain name that is permitted or rejected. You can also specify the Email addresses.
	POP3	Check Interval		Displays the interval, in minutes, for connecting to the POP3 server to check for incoming e-mails at specific interval. Specify the interval in the range from 3 minutes to 60 minutes. The default is 15 minutes.
		Run once now		Click [Receive] to immediately connect to the POP3 server and check for incoming E-mail.
		Domain Restriction		Activate or deactivate to restrict domains. Press the [Domain List] button to configure. Enter a domain name that is permitted or rejected. You can also specify the Email addresses.
		POP3 User Settings		—
			E-mail Address*1	Enter the i-FAX address (E-mail address). You can enter up to 64 characters.
			POP3 Server Name*1	If you enter the server name, you must specify the IP address of the DNS server. You can enter the DNS server IP address in the TCP/IP settings screen. Refer to the machine's Operation Guide for details.
			POP3 Port Number	Sets the port number used by POP3. Normally, 110 is used.
			POP3 Server Timeout	Enter the timeout period in seconds.
			Login User Name*1	Enter the login name for the user account. You can enter up to 64 characters.
			Login Password*1	Enter the password for the user account. You can enter up to 64 characters.
			Use APOP	Specify whether to use APOP authentication. To use APOP authentication, select [On] in this setting.

Item				Description
i-FAX Settings	POP3		Test	Runs a test to determine whether the settings specified in this page are correct.
			E-mail Size Limit	Enter the maximum size for E-mails that can be received in kilobytes. You can set up to 32,767 kilobytes. If 0 is entered, the setting does not limit the maximum size.
			Cover Page	Specify whether the E-mail messages are also printed. Select [On] to print faxes with a cover page attached. If the E-mail message includes text, the text is printed on the cover page.
	Transmission	Transmission Type		Allows to choose a method of sending from [Specify for Each Destination], [Via server - On], and [Via server - Off (Direct SMTP)].
		Direct SMTP Sender Address*1		Displays the sender address used for E-mails sent by Direct SMTP from this machine.
		Direct SMTP Port Number		Enter the port number used by Direct SMTP. Normally, 25 is used.
		Direct SMTP Timeout		Sets the timeout time in seconds during which this device retries to connect to the SMTP server.
	Reception	Direct SMTP Port Number		Enter the port number used by Direct SMTP. Normally, 25 is used.
		Direct SMTP Timeout		Sets the timeout time in seconds during which this device retries to connect to the SMTP server.
	E-mail Send Settings	E-mail Size Limit		Enter the maximum size of E-mail that can be sent in Kilobytes. When the value is 0, the limitation for E-mail size is disabled.
		Sender Address*2		Displays the sender address used for E-mails sent from this machine. Set in [E-mail Address] in POP3 User Settings.
		Signature		Displays the signature to be inserted in the end of the Email body. Set on the [E-mail Settings] page.
		Function Default		The default settings can be changed in [Common/Job Default Settings] page.

*: After completing the settings, click [Submit] to save the settings.
*1: When Direct SMTP is used, this must always be set.
*2: When Internet FAX is used, this must always be set.

*: For details, refer to the FAX Operation Guide.

(3) Card Authentication Kit

This prevents the unauthorized copying and/or transmission of documents that contain important confidential or personal information. When a document is printed from a computer, this feature imprints a special pattern on the document. When anyone attempts to copy or send that document on this machine, the machine detects the pattern and protects the information by printing the document in blank and prohibiting transmission.

*: To install the optional function, you need the License Key.
Issue of License Key requires the "Machine No" indicated on your machine, and "product ID."

Installation Procedure

1. Press the System menu key and then press [System/Network]. If user login administration is disabled, the user authentication screen appears. Enter your login user name and password and then press [Login]. For this, you need to log in with administrator privileges.
2. Press [Next] of Optional Function.
3. The optional function screen is displayed. Select “CARD AUTHENTICATIONKIT(B)” and press [Activate].
4. The license key entry screen is displayed. Enter the license key using the numeric keys and press [Official].
5. The confirmation screen appears. Confirm the product name “CARD AUTHENTICATIONKIT(B)” and press [Yes]. Follow the onscreen instructions to turn the Main Power Switch off.

*: To use a SSFC card, run maintenance mode U222 and set SSFC.

Setting User Login

1. Make the settings of Local Authentication in User Login/Job Accounting or User Login on the machine.

*: For User Login setting, refer to Management in the Operation Guide of the machine.
When you enable User Login on the machine, you need to make the setting of user account for the printer driver in order to print by the computer. For details, refer to the Printer Driver User Guide, Device Settings, and Administrator Settings.

Registering/deleting the ID card information

The procedures below are to register or delete the card information of a pre-registered user.
For new registration or change of user information on Local User List, refer to Management in the Operation Guide of the machine.

To register the ID card information

To login using the ID card, you need to register the ID card information in the user information.
Follow the steps below.

1. Press the System Menu key.

*: If Local Authentication has been set in User Login, the ID Card Login screen appears. Refer to Login on the next page or the procedure of Keyboard Login, and login using the ID card registered with administrator privileges or using the login user name.

2. Press [User Login/Job Accounting].

*: If User Login is disabled, the ID Card Login screen appears. Refer to Login on the next page or the procedure of Keyboard Login, and login using the ID card registered with administrator privileges or using the login user name.

3. In User Login Setting, press [Next] → [Local User List], and then [Register/Edit].
4. Select the user for whom you wish to register the ID card information, and press [Detail].
5. Press [Change] in [ID Card information].
6. Hold the ID card to be registered over the card reader.
Completed. appears and the screen returns to the Detail menu.
7. In the Detail menu, press [Register]. The confirmation screen appears.
8. Press [Yes]. The ID card information is now registered.

To register on the computer

The ID Register utility for registering/deleting ID card information on the computer is provided.
You can download the ID Register utility from the vendor's website.

(4) ThinPrint Option

This application allows print data to be printed directly without a print driver.

*: To install the optional function, you need the License Key.
Issue of License Key requires the "Machine No" indicated on your machine, and "product ID."

Installation Procedure

1. Press the System menu key and then press [System/Network]. If user login administration is disabled, the user authentication screen appears. Enter your login user name and password and then press [Login]. For this, you need to log in with administrator privileges.
2. Press [Next] of Optional Function.
3. The optional function screen is displayed. Select "UG-33" and press [Activate].
4. The license key entry screen is displayed. Enter the license key using the numeric keys and press [Official].
5. The confirmation screen appears. Confirm the product name "UG-33" and press [Yes]. Follow the onscreen instructions to turn the Main Power Switch off.

(5) Emulation Upgrade Kit

Enables emulation whereby the machine operates using commands for other printers. Installing this option enables IBM Proprinter, Line Printer, and EPSON LQ-850 emulation.

*: To install the optional function, you need the License Key.
Issue of License Key requires the "Machine No" indicated on your machine, and "product ID."

Installation Procedure

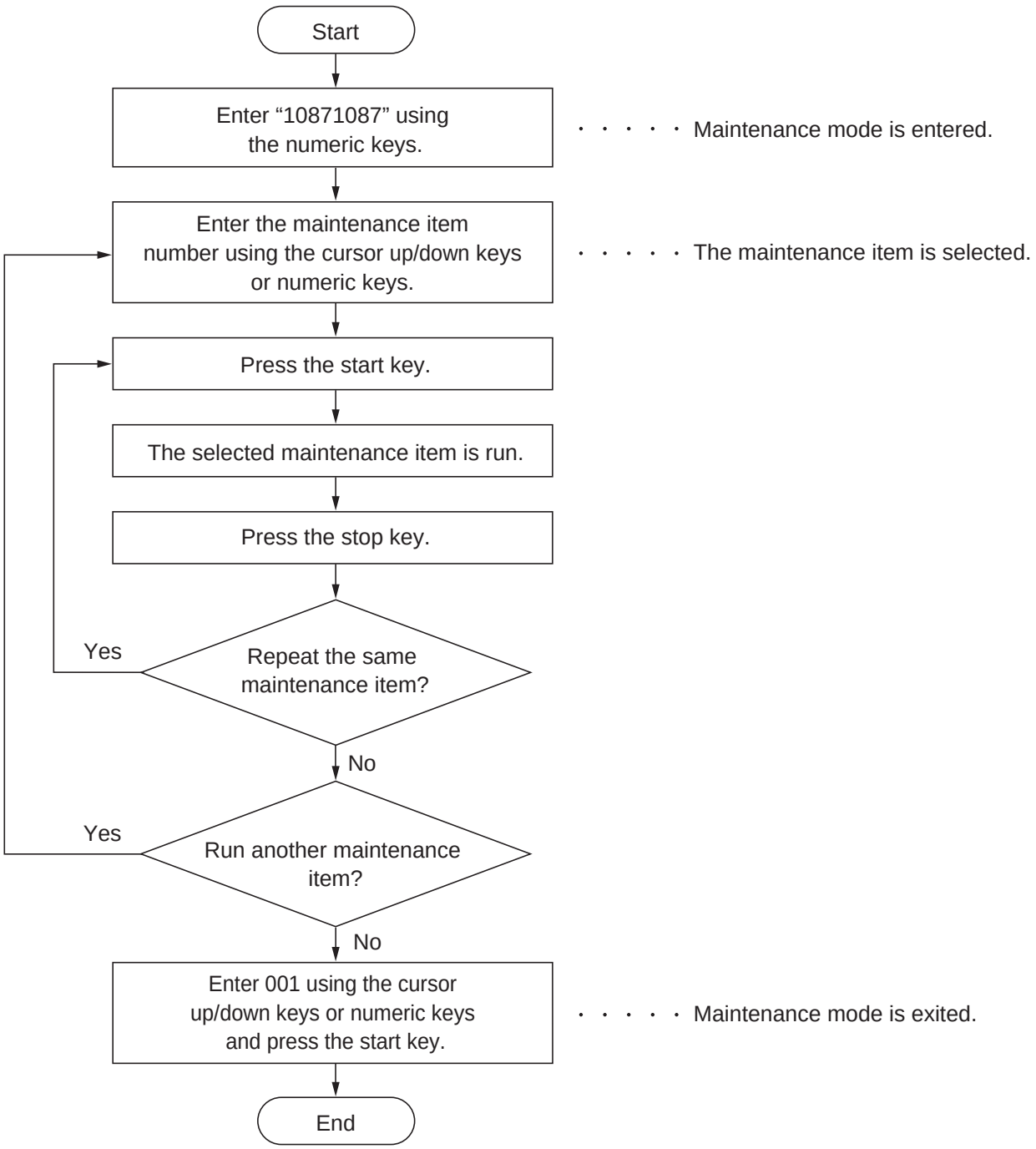
1. Press the System menu key and then press [System/Network]. If user login administration is disabled, the user authentication screen appears. Enter your login user name and password and then press [Login]. For this, you need to log in with administrator privileges.
2. Press [Next] of Optional Function.
3. The optional function screen is displayed. Select “UG-34” and press [Activate].
4. The license key entry screen is displayed. Enter the license key using the numeric keys and press [Official].
5. The confirmation screen appears. Confirm the product name “UG-34” and press [Yes]. Follow the onscreen instructions to turn the Main Power Switch off.

This page is intentionally left blank.

1-3-1 Maintenance mode

The machine is equipped with a maintenance function which can be used to maintain and service the machine.

(1) Executing a maintenance item



(2) Maintenance modes item list

Section	Item No.	Content of maintenance item	Initial setting	
			65ppm	80ppm
General	U000	Output Maintenance Report	-	
	U001	Exiting the maintenance mode	-	
	U002	Setting the factory default data	-	
	U003	Setting the service telephone number	-	
	U004	Setting the machine number	-	
	U010	Setting the maintenance mode ID	-	
	U018	Check Firmware Checksum	-	
	U019	Firmware Version	-	
Initialization	U021	Memory initializing	-	
	U024	HDD formatting	-	
	U025	Firmware Update (Security)	-	
	U026	Pulling Backup Data	-	
Drive, paper feed and paper conveying system	U030	Checking the operation of the motors	-	
	U031	Checking switches and sensors for paper conveying	-	
	U032	Checking the operation of the clutches	-	
	U033	Checking the operation of the solenoids	-	
	U034	Adjusting the print start timing		
		LSU Out Top	0/0/0/0/0/0/0/0/0/0/0	
		LSU Out Left	0/0/0/0/0/0/0/0/0	
	U035	Setting the printing area for folio paper	330/210	
	U037	Checking the operation of the fan motors	-	
	U051	Adjusting the deflection in the paper		
		Paper Loop Amount	-5/-1/-8/-1/ -9/-1/-5/-1/ -8/-1/-9/-1	-5/-3/-13/-3/ -14/-3/-5/-3/ -13/-3/-14/-3
	U052	Setting the fuser motor control		
		Set Loop Sensor	0/0	
		Loop Sensor Control	On/On/On/On/On/On	
		Set Loop Sensor Valid	On	
	U053	Setting the adjustment of the motor speed		
		Motor1	0	
		Motor2	813/32/14	639/25/11

Section	Item No.	Content of maintenance item	Initial setting	
			65ppm	80ppm
Drive, paper feed and paper convey-ing sys-tem	U053	Motor3	54/-26/93/57/ 57/79/54/87/ -8/-8/0/0/0/0	42/-21/72/45/ 45/62/43/69/ -6/-6/0/0/0/0
		Motor1 Half	0	
		Motor2 Half	1626/32/29	1278/25/23
		Motor3 Half	109/-53/186/115/115/ 159/108/174/-8/-8	85/-41/144/90/90/ 124/85/137/ -6/-6
	U059	Setting fan mode		
		Fan Mode	Mode1	
		Cooling Mode	0	
		Interval Cycle	1	
Optical	U061	Checking the operation of the exposure lamp	-	
	U063	Adjusting the shading position	0	
	U065	Adjusting the scanner magnification	0/0	
	U066	Adjusting the scanner leading edge reg-istration	0/0	
	U067	Adjusting the scanner center line	0/0	
	U068	Adjusting the scanning position for origi-nals from the DP	0/0	
	U070	Adjusting the DP magnification	0/0/0	
	U071	Adjusting the DP scanning timing	0/0/0/0	
	U072	Adjusting the DP center line	0/0	
	U073	Checking the scanner operation	-	
	U074	DP input response adjustment	1	
	U087	Setting DP reading position modification operation	125/125/125	
	U089	Outputting a MIP-PG pattern	-	
	U091	Setting the white line correction	112/112/112/75/0	
	U099	Adjusting original size detection	50/50/50/50/50/50/50/50/50	
High voltage	U100	Adjusting main high voltage		
		Adj AC Bias	-	
		Set AC Auto Adj	On	
		Set DC Bias	-	
		Adj DC Bias	0/0	
		Set Low Temp	1	
		Set Charger Freq	8745	9160
		Chk Current	-	

Section	Item No.	Content of maintenance item	Initial setting	
			65ppm	80ppm
High voltage	U106	Setting the voltage for the secondary transfer	-	
		Light/Normal 1st	152/147/141	162/159/151
		Light/Normal 2nd	141/135/125	153/144/132
		Normal2/3 1st	152/147/141	162/159/151
		Normal2/3 2nd	141/135/125	153/144/132
		Heavy1-3 1st Half	121/121/118	126/126/122
		Heavy1-3 2nd Half	115/115/105	119/119/107
		Heavy4/5 1st Half	118/118/110	122/122/112
		Heavy4/5 2nd Half	114/114/105	117/117/106
		OHP	107/107/101	110/110/103
		Bias	164/164/123/108	164/164/131/112
	U110	Checking the drum count	-	
	U111	Checking the drum drive time	-	
	U117	Checking the drum number	-	
	U118	Displaying the drum history	-	
	U119	Setting the drum	-	
	U127	Checking/clearing the transfer count	-	
	U128	Setting transfer high-voltage timing	0/0/0	
Developer	U130	Initial setting for the developer	-	
	U131	Adjusting the toner sensor control voltage		
		Manual	150/150/150/150	
		Mode	Auto	
	U132	Replenishing toner forcibly	-	
	U135	Checking toner motor operation	-	
	U136	Setting toner near end detection	3/3	
	U139	Displaying the temperature and humidity outside the machine	-	
	U140	Displaying developer bias		
		Sleeve DC	84	84
		Sleeve AC	150	150
		Mag DC	199	199
		Mag AC	199	199
		Sleeve Freq	4510/5345	4580/5511
		Sleeve Duty	43	43
		Mag Duty	68	68
		AC Calib		

Section	Item No.	Content of maintenance item	Initial setting	
			65ppm	80ppm
Developer	U140	Magnification	12	
		High Altitude	Mode1	
		Image Preference		
		Copy	0	
		Lead Density	Off	
	U147	Setting for toner applying operation		
		Timing	65/8	80/8
		Mode	Mode1	
		Upper Limit	2.0	
		Minimum	10	
	U148	Setting drum refresh mode		
		Normal	2	
		Dew Condensation	0	
	U155	Checking sensors for toner	-	
	U156	Setting the toner replenishment level		
		Supply	512	512
		Empty	100	100
	U157	Checking the developer drive time	-	
	U158	Checking the developer count	-	
Fuser	U161	Setting the fuser control temperature		
		Warm Up	165/140/30/170/165/ 130/50/150	165/140/30/175/170/ 130/50/155
		Print	165/0	170/0
		Low Powe Mode	Mode0	
		Belt Mode	Off	
		Ready Time Adjust	2	
	U164	Fuser Unit History	-	
	U165	Fuser Unit Number	-	
	U167	Checking the fuser count	-	
	U169	Checking/setting the fuser power source	-	
	U199	Displaying fuser heater temperature	-	
Operation panel and support equip-ment	U200	Turning all LEDs on	-	
	U201	Initializing the touch panel	-	
	U202	Setting the KMAS host monitoring sys-tem	-	
	U203	Checking DP operation	-	

Section	Item No.	Content of maintenance item	Initial setting	
			65ppm	80ppm
Operation panel and support equip-ment	U204	Setting the presence or absence of a key card or key counter	Off/Coin Vender	
	U206	Setting the presence or absence of a coin vender		
		On/Off Config	Off	
		No Coin Action	Off	
		Price	10/10/10/10/100/50/30/50/ 100/50/30/50/100/50/30/50	
		Normal/AD	10/10/10/10/100/50/30/50/ 100/50/30/50/100/50/30/50	
		Print	10/10/10/10/100/50/30/50	
		Apl	10/10/10/10	
		Boot Mode	Copy Service	
		Apl Charge Mode	Off	
	U207	Checking the operation panel keys	-	
	U208	Setting the paper size for the side deck	Letter (Inch)/ A4 (Metric)	
	U209	Set RTC (Real Time Clock) Date	-	
	U221	Setting the USB host lock function	Off	
	U222	Setting the IC card type	Other	
	U223	Operation panel lock	Unlock	
	U224	Panel sheet extension	-	
	U234	Setting punch destination	Inch (Inch)/Europe Metric (Metric)	
	U237	Setting finisher stack quantity	0/0	
	U240	Checking the operation of the finisher	-	
	U241	Checking the operation of the switches of the finisher	-	
	U243	Checking the operation of the DP motors	-	
	U244	Checking the DP switches	-	
	U245	Checking messages	-	
	U246	Setting the finisher		
		Finisher	0/0/0/0/0/0/0/0	
		Booklet	0/0/0/0/0/0/0/0/0	
	U247	Setting the paper feed device	-	
	U249	Finisher operation test	-	
Mode setting	U250	Checking/clearing the maintenance cycle	600000/300000/0/150000/150000/150000/ 150000/150000/150000/150000	
	U251	Checking/clearing the maintenance counter	0/0/0/0/0/0/0/0/0/0	

Section	Item No.	Content of maintenance item	Initial setting	
			65ppm	80ppm
Mode setting	U252	Setting the destination	—	
	U253	Switching between double and single counts	DBL(A3/Ledger)	
	U260	Selecting the timing for copy counting	Eject	
	U265	Setting OEM purchaser code	—	
	U271	Setting the page count	2/3	
	U278	Setting the delivery date	—	
	U285	Setting service status page	On	
	U323	Setting abnormal temperature and humidity warning	On	
	U325	Setting the paper interval	Off/1	
	U326	Setting the black line cleaning indication	On/8	
	U327	Setting the cassette heater control	Off	
	U332	Setting the size conversion factor		
		Rate	1.0	
		Mode	0	
		Level 1	1.0	
		Level 2	2.5	
	U340	Setting the applied mode	190/1	
		Adj Memory	0	
		Adj Max Job	Copy:10 / Printer:50	
	U341	Specific paper feed location setting for printing function	—	
	U343	Switching between duplex/simplex copy mode	Off	
	U345	Setting the value for maintenance due indication	0	
	U346	Selecting Sleep Mode	On	
Image process-ing	U402	Adjusting margins of image printing	4.0/3.0/3.0/3.9	
	U403	Adjusting margins for scanning an original on the contact glass	2.0/2.0/2.0/2.0	
	U404	Adjusting margins for scanning an original from the DP	3.0/2.5/3.0/4.0/ 3.0/2.5/3.0/4.0	
	U407	Adjusting the leading edge registration for memory image printing	0	
	U410	Adjusting the halftone automatically	Table1	
	U411	Adjusting the scanner automatically	—	
	U412	Adjusting the uneven density	—	
	U415	Adjusting the print position automatically	—	

Section	Item No.	Content of maintenance item	Initial setting	
			65ppm	80ppm
Image process-ing	U425	Setting the target	—	
	U460	Adjusting the conveying sensor		
		SMT	0/0 Off	
	U464	Setting the ID correction operation		
		Permission	On	
		Time Interval	0	
		Mode	Normal	
		On/Sleep Out	On	
		AP/NE	On	
		Leaving Time	60	
		Driving Time	300	
		Timing	0	
		Target Value	145/330	145/330
		Calib	—	
	U465	Data reference for ID correction	—	
	U470	Setting the JPEG compression ratio		
		Copy	90/90/90/90	
		Send	30/40/51/70/90/30/40/51/70/90 30/40/51/70/90/30/40/51/70/90 15/25/90/15/25/90/ 15/25/90/15/25/90	
		System	90/90	
	U485	Setting the image processing mode	1/0	
Others	U520	Set TDRS	-	
	U901	Checking copy counts by paper feed locations	-	
	U903	Checking/clearing the paper jam counts	-	
	U904	Checking/clearing the call for service counts	-	
	U905	Checking counts by optional devices	-	
	U906	Resetting partial operation control	-	
	U908	Checking the total counter value	-	
	U910	Clearing the print coverage data	-	
	U911	Checking copy counts by paper sizes	-	
	U917	Setting backup data reading/writing	-	

Section	Item No.	Content of maintenance item	Initial setting	
			65ppm	80ppm
Others	U920	Checking the copy counts	-	
	U927	Clearing the all copy counts and machine life counts (one time only)	-	
	U928	Checking machine life counts	-	
	U930	Checking/clearing the charger roller count	-	
	U933	Set Maintenance Mode Execute Log	-	
	U935	Relay board maintenance	-	
	U942	Setting of deflection for feeding from DP	0/0	
	U952	Maintenance mode workflow	-	
	U964	Checking of log	-	
	U969	Checking of toner area code	-	
	U977	Data capture mode	-	
	U978	Clear Optional Function	-	
	U984	Checking the developer unit number	-	
	U985	Displaying the developer unit history	-	
	U989	HDD Scan disk	-	
	U990	Checking the time for the exposure lamp to light	-	
	U991	Checking the scanner operation count	-	

(3) Contents of the maintenance mode items

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U000</td><td>
Output Maintenance Report

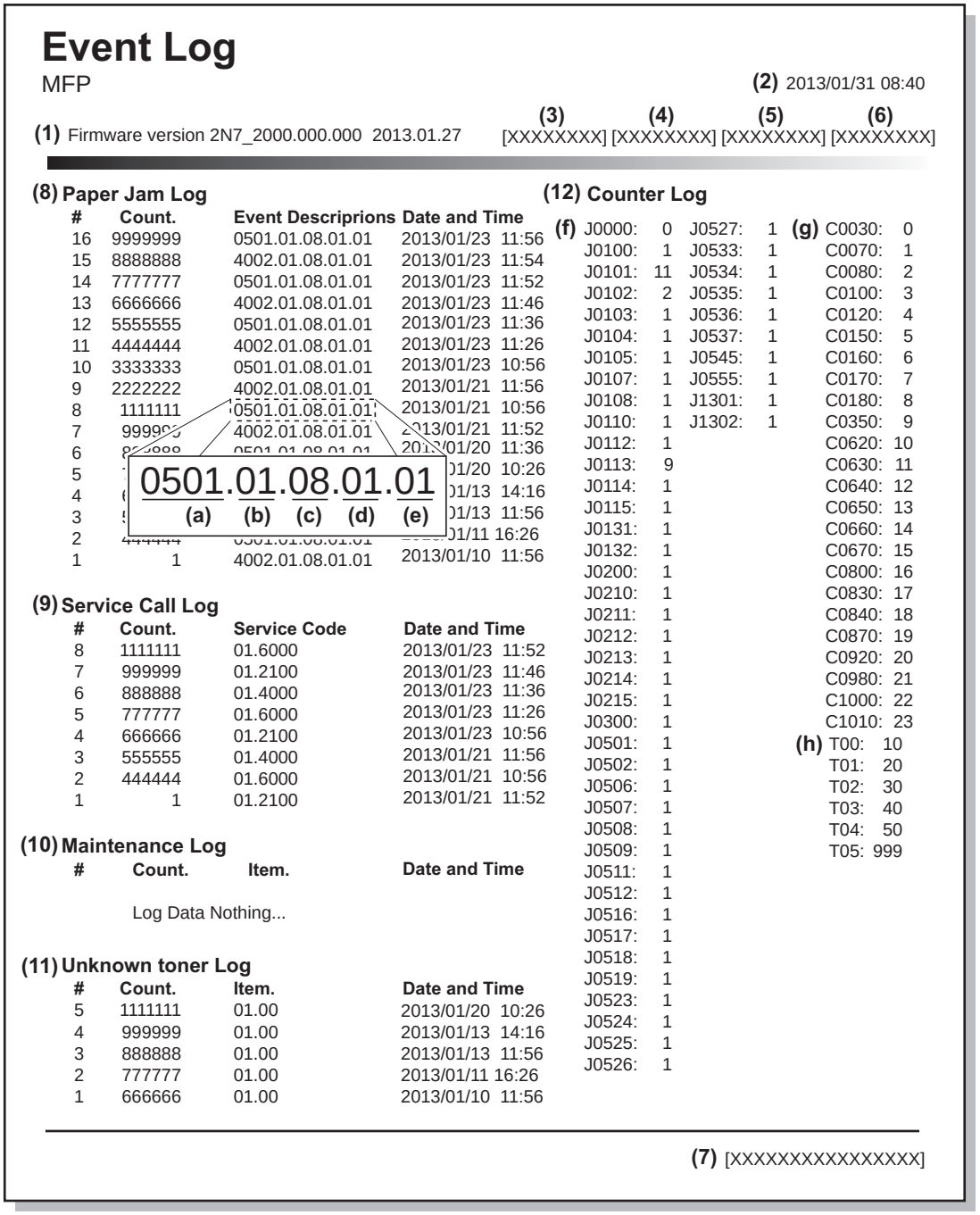
Description
Outputs lists of the current settings of the maintenance items, and paper jam and service call occurrences. Outputs the event log or service status page. Also sends output data to the USB memory.
Purpose
To check the current setting of the maintenance items, or paper jam or service call occurrences. Before initializing or replacing the backup RAM, output a list of the current settings of the maintenance items to reenter the settings after initialization or replacement.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item to be output using the cursor up/down keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Output list</th></tr>
<tr><td>Maintenance</td><td>List of the current settings of the maintenance modes</td></tr>
<tr><td>User Status</td><td>Outputs the user status page</td></tr>
<tr><td>Service Status</td><td>Outputs the service status page</td></tr>
<tr><td>Event</td><td>Outputs the event log</td></tr>
<tr><td>Network Status</td><td>Outputs the network status page</td></tr>
<tr><td>All</td><td>Outputs the all reports</td></tr>
</table>
3. Press the start key. A list is output.
4. Press the start key. The interrupt print mode is entered and a list is output.
When A4/Letter paper is available, a report of this size is output. If not, specify the paper feed location.
The output status is displayed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>---</td><td>List of the current settings of the maintenance modes</td></tr>
<tr><td>Active</td><td>Outputs the user status page</td></tr>
<tr><td>OK</td><td>Outputs the service status page</td></tr>
<tr><td>Error</td><td>Outputs the event log</td></tr>
</table>
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U000</td><td>
Method: Send to the USB memory
1. Press the power key on the operation panel, and after verifying the main power indicator has gone off, switch off the main power switch.
2. Insert USB memory in USB memory slot.
3. Turn the main power switch on.
4. Enter the maintenance item.
5. Press the start key.
6. Select the item to be send.
7. Select [Text] or [HTML].
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Output list</th></tr>
<tr><td>Print</td><td>Outputs the report</td></tr>
<tr><td>USB (Text)</td><td>Sends output data to the USB memory (text type)</td></tr>
<tr><td>USB (HTML)</td><td>Sends output data to the USB memory (HTML type)</td></tr>
</table>
8. Press the start key.
Output will be sent to the USB memory.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

Item No.	Description
U000	**Event log**



Event Log

MFP

(2) 2013/01/31 08:40

(1) Firmware version 2N7_2000.000.000 2013.01.27 (3) [XXXXXXXX] (4) [XXXXXXXX] (5) [XXXXXXXX] (6) [XXXXXXXX]

(8) Paper Jam Log

#	Count.	Event Descriprions	Date and Time
16	9999999	0501.01.08.01.01	2013/01/23 11:56
15	8888888	4002.01.08.01.01	2013/01/23 11:54
14	7777777	0501.01.08.01.01	2013/01/23 11:52
13	6666666	4002.01.08.01.01	2013/01/23 11:46
12	5555555	0501.01.08.01.01	2013/01/23 11:36
11	4444444	4002.01.08.01.01	2013/01/23 11:26
10	3333333	0501.01.08.01.01	2013/01/23 10:56
9	2222222	4002.01.08.01.01	2013/01/21 11:56
8	1111111	0501.01.08.01.01	2013/01/21 10:56
7	999999	4002.01.08.01.01	2013/01/21 11:52
6	888888	0501.01.08.01.01	2013/01/20 11:36
5	777777		01/20 10:26
4	666666		01/13 14:16
3	555555		01/13 11:56
2	444444		01/11 16:26
1	1	4002.01.08.01.01	2013/01/10 11:56

0501.01.08.01.01
(a) (b) (c) (d) (e)

(9) Service Call Log

#	Count.	Service Code	Date and Time
8	1111111	01.6000	2013/01/23 11:52
7	999999	01.2100	2013/01/23 11:46
6	888888	01.4000	2013/01/23 11:36
5	777777	01.6000	2013/01/23 11:26
4	666666	01.2100	2013/01/23 10:56
3	555555	01.4000	2013/01/21 11:56
2	444444	01.6000	2013/01/21 10:56
1	1	01.2100	2013/01/21 11:52

(10) Maintenance Log

#	Count.	Item.	Date and Time

Log Data Nothing...

(11) Unknown toner Log

#	Count.	Item.	Date and Time
5	1111111	01.00	2013/01/20 10:26
4	999999	01.00	2013/01/13 14:16
3	888888	01.00	2013/01/13 11:56
2	777777	01.00	2013/01/11 16:26
1	666666	01.00	2013/01/10 11:56

(12) Counter Log

(f)

J0000:	0	J0527:	1
J0100:	1	J0533:	1
J0101:	11	J0534:	1
J0102:	2	J0535:	1
J0103:	1	J0536:	1
J0104:	1	J0537:	1
J0105:	1	J0545:	1
J0107:	1	J0555:	1
J0108:	1	J1301:	1
J0110:	1	J1302:	1
J0112:	1		
J0113:	9		
J0114:	1		
J0115:	1		
J0131:	1		
J0132:	1		
J0200:	1		
J0210:	1		
J0211:	1		
J0212:	1		
J0213:	1		
J0214:	1		
J0215:	1		
J0300:	1		
J0501:	1		
J0502:	1		
J0506:	1		
J0507:	1		
J0508:	1		
J0509:	1		
J0511:	1		
J0512:	1		
J0516:	1		
J0517:	1		
J0518:	1		
J0519:	1		
J0523:	1		
J0524:	1		
J0525:	1		
J0526:	1		

(g)

C0030:	0
C0070:	1
C0080:	2
C0100:	3
C0120:	4
C0150:	5
C0160:	6
C0170:	7
C0180:	8
C0350:	9
C0620:	10
C0630:	11
C0640:	12
C0650:	13
C0660:	14
C0670:	15
C0800:	16
C0830:	17
C0840:	18
C0870:	19
C0920:	20
C0980:	21
C1000:	22
C1010:	23

(h)

T00:	10
T01:	20
T02:	30
T03:	40
T04:	50
T05:	999

(7) [XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX]

Figure 1-3-1

Detail of event log

No.	Items	Description
(1)	System version	
(2)	System date	
(3)	Engine soft version	
(4)	Engine boot version	

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U000</td><td>Detail of event log
<table>
<tr><th>No.</th><th>Items</th><th colspan="3">Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>(5)</td><td colspan="4">Controller BROM version</td></tr>
<tr><td>(6)</td><td colspan="4">Operation panel mask version</td></tr>
<tr><td>(7)</td><td colspan="4">Machine serial number</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="13">(8)</td><td rowspan="13">Paper Jam Log</td><td>#</td><td>Count.</td><td>Event Descriptions</td></tr>
<tr><td>Remembers 1 to 16 of occurrence. If the occurrence of the previous paper jam is less than 16, all of the paper jams are logged. When the occurrence excesseds 16, the oldest occurrence is removed.</td><td>The total page count at the time of the paper jam.</td><td>Log code (hexadecimal, 5 categories)

(a) Cause of a paper jam
(b) Paper source
(c) Paper size
(d) Paper type
(e) Paper eject</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">(a) Cause of paper jam (Hexadecimal)</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">For details on the case of paper jam, refer to Paper Misfeed Detection. (P.1-4-3)</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">(b) Detail of paper source (Hexadecimal)</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">00: MP tray
01: Cassette 1
02: Cassette 2
03: Cassette 3 (paper feeder/large capacity feeder)
04: Cassette 4 (paper feeder/large capacity feeder)
05: Cassette 5 (side multi tray/side deck)
06: Cassette 6 (side paper feeder/side large capacity feeder)
07: Cassette 7 (side paper feeder/side large capacity feeder)
08 to 09: Reserved</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">(c) Detail of paper size (Hexadecimal)</td></tr>
<tr><td>00: (Not specified)
01: Monarch
02: Business
03: International DL
04: International C5
05: Executive
06: Letter-R
86: Letter-E
07: Legal
08: A4R
88: A4E
09: B5R
89: B5E
0A: A3</td><td>0B: B4
0C: Ledger
0D: A5R
0E: A6
0F: B6
10: Commercial #9
11: Commercial #6
12: ISO B5
13: Custom size
1E: C4
1F: Postcard
20: Reply-paid post-card
21: Oficio II</td><td>22: Special 1
23: Special 2
24: A3 wide
25: Ledger wide
26: Full bleed paper (12 x 8)
27: 8K
28: 16K-R
A8: 16K-E
32: Statement-R
B2: Statement-E
33: Folio
34: Western type 2
35: Western type 4</td></tr>
</table>
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U000</td><td>
<table>
<tr><th>No.</th><th>Items</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>(8) cont.</td><td>Paper Jam Log</td><td>
(d) Detail of paper type (Hexadecimal)
<table>
<tr><td>01: Plain
02: Transparency
03: Preprinted
04: Labels
05: Bond
06: Recycled
07: Vellum
08: Rough
09: Letterhead</td><td>0A: Color
0B: Prepunched
0C: Envelope
0D: Cardstock
0E: Coated
0F: 2nd side
10: Media 16
11: High quality</td><td>15: Custom 1
16: Custom 2
17: Custom 3
18: Custom 4
19: Custom 5
1A: Custom 6
1B: Custom 7
1C: Custom 8</td></tr>
</table>
(e) Detail of paper eject location (Hexadecimal)
01: Face down (FD)
02: Face up (FU)/
4000-sheet finisher left sub tray (FU)
03: 4000-sheet finisher main tray (FD)
05: Job separator tray
06: 4000-sheet finisher right sub tray (FU)
07: 4000-sheet finisher left sub tray (FD)
09: 4000-sheet finisher right sub tray (FD)
0A: Center-folding unit tray
0B: Mailbox tray 1 (FD)
0C: Mailbox tray 1 (FU)
15: Mailbox tray 2 (FD)
16: Mailbox tray 2 (FU)
1F: Mailbox tray 3 (FD)
20: Mailbox tray 3 (FU)
29: Mailbox tray 4 (FD)
2A: Mailbox tray 4 (FU)
33: Mailbox tray 5 (FD)
34: Mailbox tray 5 (FU)
3D: Mailbox tray 6 (FD)
3E: Mailbox tray 6 (FU)
47: Mailbox tray 7 (FD)
48: Mailbox tray 7 (FU)
04/0D/0E: Reserved
<table>
<tr><td>Date and Time</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>Date and time of the occurrence of paper jam.</td><td></td></tr>
</table>
</td></tr>
</table>
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U000</td><td>
<table>
<tr><th>No.</th><th>Items</th><th colspan="3">Description</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">(9)</td><td rowspan="4">Service Call Log</td><td>#</td><td>Count.</td><td>Service Code</td></tr>
<tr><td>Remembers 1 to 8 of occurrence of self diagnostics error. If the occurrence of the previous diagnostics error is less than 8, all of the diagnostics errors are logged.</td><td>The total page count at the time of the self diagnostics error.</td><td>Self diagnostic error code (See page 1-4-60)

0X:YYYY
Where 0X is:
01: Service Call/ System error has occurred
02: after Service Call has occurred, power is turned on and off, and disconnection has been executed

YYYY is a self-diagnostics error code
Example: 01.6000</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Date and Time</td><td rowspan="2"></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Date and time of occurrence of self-diagnostic error.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">(10)</td><td rowspan="4">Maintenance Log</td><td>#</td><td>Count.</td><td>Item</td></tr>
<tr><td>Remembers 1 to 8 of occurrence of replacement. If the occurrence of the previous replacement of toner container is less than 8, all of the occurrences of replacement are logged.</td><td>The total page count at the time of the replacement of the toner container.

* :The toner replacement log is triggered by toner empty.
This record may contain such a reference as the toner container is inserted twice or a used toner container is inserted.</td><td>Code of maintenance replacing item
(1 byte, 2 categories)

First byte (Replacing item)
01: Toner container
Second byte
(Type of replacing item)
00: Black

First byte (Replacing item)
02: Maintenance kit
Second byte
(Type of replacing item)
01: MK-6715A
03: MK-6715C</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Date and Time</td><td rowspan="2"></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Date and time of replacement of the maintenance items.</td></tr>
</table>
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U000</td><td>
<table>
<tr><th>No.</th><th>Items</th><th colspan="3">Description</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">(11)</td><td rowspan="4">Unknown Toner Log</td><td>#</td><td>Count.</td><td>Item</td></tr>
<tr><td>Remembers 1 to 5 of occurrence of unknown toner detection. If the occurrence of the previous unknown toner detection is less than 5, all of the unknown toner detection are logged.</td><td>The total page count at the time of the toner empty error with using an unknown toner container.</td><td>Unknown toner log code
(1 byte, 2 categories)

First byte
01: Toner container (Fixed)
Second byte
00: Black</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Date and Time</td><td rowspan="2"></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Date and time of occurrence of toner container replacement request display.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">(12)</td><td rowspan="2">Counter Log

Comprised of three log counters including paper jams, self diagnostics errors, and replacement of the toner container.</td><td>(f) Paper jam</td><td>(g) Self diagnostic error</td><td>(h) Maintenance item replacing</td></tr>
<tr><td>Indicates the log counter of paper jams depending on location.

Refer to Paper Jam Log.

All instances including those are not occurred are displayed.</td><td>Indicates the log counter of self diagnostics errors depending on cause.

Example:
C6000: 4

Self diagnostics error 6000 has happened four times.</td><td>Indicates the log counter depending on the maintenance item for maintenance.

T: Toner container
00: Black

M: Maintenance kit
01: MK-6715A
02: MK-6715C

Example:
T00: 1
The toner container has been replaced once.

* :The toner replacement log is triggered by toner empty.
This record may contain such a reference as the toner container is inserted twice or a used toner container is inserted.</td></tr>
</table>
</td></tr>
</table>

Item No.	Description
U000	**Service status page (1)**

Service Status Page

MFP

(2) 2012/10/27 12:00

(1) Firmware version 2N7_2000.000.000 2012.10.27 **(3)** [XXXXXXXX] **(4)** [XXXXXXXX] **(5)** [XXXXXXXX]

Controller Information

Memory status

(7) Total Size 2.0 GB

Time

(8) Local Time Zone +01:00 Amsterdam
(9) Date and Time 27/10/2010 12:00
(10) Time Server 10.183.53.13

Installed Options

(11) Document Processor Installed
(12) Paper feeder Cassette (500 x 2)
(13) Side Feeder Cassette (3000)
(14) Finisher 4000-Finisher
(15) Document Guaed (A) Installed
(16) Card Authentication Kit (B) Installed
(17) Internet FAX Kit (A) Installed
(18) Security Kit (E)
Data Security Kit (E) Software Type I
(19) UG-33 Installed
(20) UG-34 Installed
(21) USB Keyboard Connected
(22) USB Keyboard Type US-English
(84) Scan extention kit(A) Installed

Print Coverage

(23) Average(%) / Usage Page(A4/Letter Conversion)
(24) Total
K: 1.10 / 1111111.11
(25) Copy
K: 1.10 / 1111111.11
(26) Printer
K: 1.10 / 1111111.11
(27) FAX
K: 1.10 / 1111111.11
(28) Period (27/10/2010 - 03/11/2010 08:40)
(29) Last Page K/C/M/Y(%) 1.00 / 2.22 / 3.33 / 4.44

(30) FAX Information Slot1/Slot2
(31) Rings (Normal) 3
(32) Rings (FAX/TEL) 3
(33) Rings (TAD) 3
(34) Option DIMM Size 16 MB

(35) FRPO Status
User Top Margin A1+A2/100 0.00
User Left Margin A3+A4/100 0.00

e-MPS error control Y6 0

RP Code
(36) 1234 5678 9012
(37) 5678 9012 3456
(38) 9012 3456 7890
(39) 3456 7890 1234

1

(6) [XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX]

Figure 1-3-2

Item No.	Description
U000	**Service status page (2)**

Service Status Page

MFP 2012/10/27 12:00

Firmware version 2N7_2000.000.000 2012.10.27 [XXXXXXXX] [XXXXXXXX] [XXXXXXXX]

Engine Information

(40) NVRAM Version _1F31225_1F31225
(41) Scanner Version 2N2_1200.001.089
(42) FAX Slot1
FAX BOOT Version 5JT_5000.001.001
FAX APL Version 5JT_5100.001.001
FAX IPL Version 5JT_5200.001.001
(43) MAC Address 00:C0:EE:D0:01:0D

Send Information

(44) Date and Time 10/10/27 15:30
(45) Address mail@bjd.ne.jp

1/2 **(46) (47)**
(48) 100/100
(49) 0/0/0/0
(50) 0000000/0000000/0000000/0000000/0000000/0000000/0000000/0000000/0000000/0000000/
0000000/0000000/0000000/0000000/
F00/U00/0/0/0/0/30/70/abcde/1/0/1/ **(51) (52) (53) (54) (55) (56) (57) (58) (59) (60) (61)**
(62) 0000/0000/0000/0000/0000/0000/0000/0000/0000/0000/
(63) (64) (65)
(66) 0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/
(67) 0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/
(68) 0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/
(69) 0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/
(70) 0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/
(71) 0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/0000000000000000/
(72) 12345678/11223344/00001234abcd567800001234abcd5678/01234567890123456789012345678901/0008/00/07
(73) XXXXXXXX
(74) 00070107FE/0700FE00FE/00FE000100/0000000000/0000000000/0000000000/00000A010A/0A0A0A3200/0000000000/0000000000/
0008000000/080000001D/0096009B00/9B009BFFFB/0082000000/000000001F/0000002C00/0000000000/0000000000/0000000000/
0000000000/0000000000/0000000000/0000000000/0000000000/0000
0/3/ **(75) (76)**
1/1/1/0/1/0 2010/12/15 12:34:56 **(77)**
1/5/ **(78)(79)**
1/1/ **(80)(81)**
0/ **(82)**
ABCDEFGHIJKL/ **(83)**

2 [XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX]

Figure 1-3-3

Item No.	Description
U000	**Detail of service status page**

No.	Description	Supplement
(1)	Firmware version	-
(2)	System date	-
(3)	Engine soft version	-
(4)	Engine boot version	-
(5)	Operation panel mask version	-
(6)	Machine serial number	-
(7)	Total memory size	-
(8)	Local time zone	-
(9)	Report output date	Day/Month/Year hour:minute
(10)	NTP server name	-
(11)	Presence or absence of the document processor	Installed/ Not installed
(12)	Presence or absence of the paper feeder	Paper feeder/ Large capacity feeder/ Not Installed
(13)	Presence or absence of the side feeder	Side deck/ Side multi tray/ Side paper feeder/ Side large capacity feeder/ Not Installed
(14)	Presence or absence of the finisher	4000-sheet finisher/ Not Installed
(15)	Presence or absence of the printed document guard kit	Installed/ Not Installed
(16)	Presence or absence of the IC card authentication kit	Installed/ Not Installed/ Trial
(17)	Presence or absence of the internet fax kit	Installed/ Not Installed
(18)	Presence or absence of the data security kit	Installed/ Not Installed
(19)	Presence or absence of the UG-33	Installed/ Not Installed/ Trial
(20)	Presence or absence of the UG-34	Installed/ Not Installed
(21)	Presence or absence of the USB keyboard	Connected/ Not connected
(22)	USB keyboard setting display	US-English/ US-English with Euro/ German/French
(23)	Page of relation to the A4/Letter	* :Print Coverage provides a close-matching reference of toner consumption and will not match with the actual toner consumption.
(24)	Average coverage for total	Black

Item No.	Description
U000	

No.	Description	Supplement
(25)	Average coverage for copy	Black
(26)	Average coverage for printer	Black
(27)	Average coverage for fax	Black
(28)	Cleared date and output date	-
(29)	Coverage on the final output page	-
(30)	Fax kit information	This item is printed only when the fax kit is installed.
(31)	Number of rings	0 to 15
(32)	Number of rings before automatic switching	0 to 15
(33)	Number of rings before connecting to answering machine	0 to 15
(34)	Optional DIMM size	-
(35)	FRPO setting	-
(36)	RP code	Code the engine software version and the date of update.
(37)	RP code	Code the main software version and the date of update.
(38)	RP code	Code the engine software version and the date of the previous update.
(39)	RP code	Code the main software version and the date of the previous update.
(40)	NV RAM version	_ 1F3 1225 _ 1F3 1225 (a) (b) (c) (d) (e) (f) (a) Consistency of the present software version and the database _ (underscore): OK * (Asterisk): NG (b) Database version (c) The oldest time stamp of database version (d) Consistency of the present software version and the ME firmware version _ (underscore): OK * (Asterisk): NG (e) ME firmware version (f) The oldest time stamp of the ME database version Normal if (a) and (d) are underscored, and (b) and (e) are identical with (c) and (f).

Item No.	Description
U000	

No.	Description	Supplement
(41)	Scanner firmware version	-
(42)	Fax firmware version	This item is printed only when the fax kit is installed.
(43)	Mac address	-
(44)	The last sent date and time	-
(45)	Transmission address	-
(46)	Destination information	-
(47)	Area information	-
(48)	Margin settings	Top margin/Left margin
(49)	L settings	L Top margin integer part/ L Top margin decimal part/ L Left margin integer part/ L Left margin decimal part/
(50)	Life counter (The first line)	Machine life/MP tray/Cassette 1/Cassette 2/ Cassette 3/Cassette 4/Cassette 5/Cassette 6/ Cassette 7/Duplex
	Life counter (The second line)	Drum unit K Transfer belt unit Developer unit K/ Maintenance kit A/ Maintenance kit C
(51)	Panel lock information	0: Off 1: Partial lock 2: Full lock
(52)	USB information	U00: Not installed/ U01: Full speed/ U02: Hi speed
(53)	Paper handling information	0: Paper source unit select/1: Paper source unit
(54)	Black and white printing double count mode	0: All single counts 1: A3, Single count, Less than 420 mm (length) 2: Legal, Single count, 356 mm or less (length) 3: Folio, Single count, Less than 330 mm (length)
(55)	Billing counting timing	-
(56)	Temperature (machine outside)	-
(57)	Relative humidity (machine outside)	-
(58)	Fixed assets number	-
(59)	Job end judgment time-out time	-
(60)	Job end detection mode	-
(61)	Prescribe environment reset	0: Off, 1: On

Item No.	Description
U000	

No.	Description	Supplement
(62)	Media type attributes 1 to 28 (Not used: 18, 19, 20) * : For details on settings, refer to the MDAT command of the “Prescribe Commands Reference Manual”.	Weight settings 0: Light 1: Normal 1 2: Normal 2 3: Normal 3 4: Heavy 1 5: Heavy 2 6: Heavy 3 7: Extra Heavy Fuser settings 0: High 1: Middle 2: Low 3: Vellum Duplex settings 0: Disable 1: Enable
(63)	Calibration information	Black
(64)	Calibration information	-
(65)	Calibration information	-
(66)	Calibration information	-
(67)	Calibration information	-
(68)	Calibration information	-
(69)	Calibration information	-
(70)	Calibration information	-
(71)	Calibration information	-
(72)	RFID information	-
(73)	RFID reader/writer version information	-
(74)	Maintenance information	-
(75)	Altitude	0: Standard 1: High altitude 1 2: High altitude 2
(76)	Charger roller correction	1 to 5
(77)	Data Sanitization information	-
(78)	Toner low setting	0: Enabled 1: Disabled
(79)	Toner low detection level	0 to 100 (%)
(80)	Limiting shifting for one-page document	0: Invalid (No shift limit) 1: Valid (Shift limit)
(81)	Setting confirmation display for banner printing	0: Not shown 1: Shown on every page
(82)	Full-page print mode	0: Normal mode (Fixed)
(83)	Drum serial number	Black
(84)	Presence or absence of the Scan extension kit (A)	Installed/ Not Installed/ Trial

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U000</td><td>
<table>
<tr><th>No.</th><th>Description</th><th>Supplement</th></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>Code conversion
<table>
<tr><td>A</td><td>B</td><td>C</td><td>D</td><td>E</td><td>F</td><td>G</td><td>H</td><td>I</td><td>J</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>2</td><td>3</td><td>4</td><td>5</td><td>6</td><td>7</td><td>8</td><td>9</td></tr>
</table>
</td><td></td></tr>
</table>
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U001</td><td>Exiting the maintenance mode

Description
Exits the maintenance mode and return to the normal copy mode.
Purpose
To exit the maintenance mode.

Method
1. Press the start key. The normal copy mode is entered.</td></tr>
<tr><td>U002</td><td>Setting the factory default data

Description
Restores the machine conditions to the factory default settings.
Purpose
To move the mirror frame of the scanner to the position for transport.
* : The parameter settings within the system menu will also be reset to the factory-set values.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select [Mode1(All)].
3. Press the start key.
The mirror frame of the scanner return to the home position.
4. Turn the main power switch off and on. Allow more than 5 seconds between Off and On.
* : An error code is displayed in case of an initialization error.
When errors occurred, turn main power switch off then on, and execute initialization using maintenance item U002.
* : Reset the following setting by using the system menu.
[FAX] - Transmission - Local FAX Name Entry

Error codes
<table>
<tr><th>Codes</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>0001</td><td>Entity error</td></tr>
<tr><td>0002</td><td>Controller error</td></tr>
<tr><td>0003</td><td>OS error</td></tr>
<tr><td>0020</td><td>Engine error</td></tr>
<tr><td>0040</td><td>Scanner error</td></tr>
</table>
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U003</td><td>
Setting the service telephone number

Description
Sets the telephone number to be displayed when a service call code is detected.
Purpose
To set the telephone number to call service when installing the machine.

Setting
1. Press the start key.
The keys to enter the number are displayed on the touch panel.
2. Enter a telephone number (up to 15 digits).
3. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U004</td><td>
Setting the machine number

Description
Sets or displays the machine number.
Purpose
Performed to assign or confirm the machine ID when the EEPROM on the main PWB has been replaced.

Method
1. Press the start key.
If the machine serial number of engine PWB matches with that of main PWB
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Machine No.</td><td>Displays the machine serial number</td></tr>
</table>
If the machine serial number of engine PWB does not match with that of main PWB
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Machine No.(Main)</td><td>Displays the machine serial number of main</td></tr>
<tr><td>Machine No.(Eng)</td><td>Displays the machine serial number of engine</td></tr>
</table>
Setting
Carry out if the machine serial number does not match.
1. Select [Execute].
2. Press the start key. Writing of serial No. starts.
3. Turn the main power switch off and on. Allow more than 5 seconds between Off and On.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U010</td><td>
Setting the maintenance mode ID

Description
Sets the maintenance mode ID.
Purpose
Modify maintenance mode ID for more security.

Method
1. Press the start key.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>New ID</td><td>Enter a new 8-digit ID</td></tr>
<tr><td>New ID(Reconfirm)</td><td>Enter a new 8-digit ID (to confirm)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Initialize</td><td>Initialize the ID</td></tr>
</table>
Setting
1. Select [New ID].
2. Enter a new 8-digit ID on ten keys (0 – 9, *, #). * and # are mandatory to contain.
3. Select [New ID(Reconfirm)].
4. Enter a new 8-digit ID on ten keys (0 – 9, *, #).
5. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Method: [Initialize]
1. Select [Initialize].
2. Press the start key. ID is initialized.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U018</td><td>
Check Firmware Checksum

Description
Investigate that the firmware has not been modified.
Purpose
Investigate that the firmware has not been modified by re-calculate the checksum.

Method
1. Press the start key.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>EXpected</td><td>Displays the expected checksum.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Result</td><td>Displays the calculated checksum.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Execute</td><td>Perform the self-investigation.</td></tr>
</table>
2. Select [Execute].
3. Press the start key.
Displays the checksum in [Expected] after execution.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U018</td><td>
If the verified result was incorrect, the following are displayed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>f001</td><td>An expected-value file does not exist.</td></tr>
<tr><td>f002</td><td>Reading the expected-value file failed.</td></tr>
<tr><td>f003</td><td>Illegal data in the expected-value file (not 64-byte data)</td></tr>
<tr><td>s001t</td><td>Failure to read the checksum</td></tr>
<tr><td>NG</td><td>The expected value and the checksum do not match.</td></tr>
</table>
Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U019</td><td>
Firmware Version

Description
Displays the part number of the firmware version to each PWB.
Purpose
To check the part number or to decide, if the newest version of firmware is installed.

Method
1. Press the start key. The firmware version are displayed.
2. Change the screen using the cursor up/down keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Main</td><td>Main firmware</td></tr>
<tr><td>MMI</td><td>Main operation firmware</td></tr>
<tr><td>Panel Main</td><td>Operation firmware</td></tr>
<tr><td>Panel Boot</td><td>Operation booting</td></tr>
<tr><td>Browser</td><td>Browser firmware</td></tr>
<tr><td>Engine</td><td>Engine firmware</td></tr>
<tr><td>Engine Boot</td><td>Engine booting</td></tr>
<tr><td>Scanner</td><td>Scanner firmware</td></tr>
<tr><td>Scanner Boot</td><td>Scanner booting</td></tr>
<tr><td>RFID</td><td>RFID firmware</td></tr>
<tr><td>IH CPU</td><td>IH CPU firmware</td></tr>
<tr><td>IH CPU Boot</td><td>IH CPU booting</td></tr>
<tr><td>Motor CPU</td><td>Motor CPU firmware</td></tr>
<tr><td>Motor CPU Boot</td><td>Motor CPU booting</td></tr>
<tr><td>Dictionary</td><td>Dictionary software</td></tr>
<tr><td>Option Language</td><td>Optional language software</td></tr>
<tr><td>OCR</td><td>OCR software</td></tr>
</table>
</td></tr>
</table>

Item No.	Description
U019	

Display	Description
DP	Document processor firmware
DP Boot	Document processor booting
PF1	Paper feeder / Large capacity feeder firmware
PF1 Boot	Paper feeder / Large capacity feeder booting
Side PF	Side multi tray /Side deck firmware
Side PF Boot	Side multi tray /Side deck booting
SMT SSW	Side multi tray multi feed sensor
PF2	Side paper feeder / Side large capacity feeder firmware
PF2 Boot	Side paper feeder / Side large capacity feeder booting
DF	4000-sheet finisher firmware
DF Boot	4000-sheet finisher booting
PH	Punch unit firmware
PH Boot	Punch unit booting
MT	Mailbox firmware
MT Boot	Mailbox booting
BF	Center-folding unit firmware
BF Boot	Center-folding unit booting
Fax APL1	Fax APL 1
Fax Boot1	Fax booting 1
Fax IPL1	Fax IPL 1
Fax APL2	Fax APL 2 (dual Fax)
Fax Boot2	Fax booting 2 (dual Fax)
Fax IPL2	Fax IPL 2 (dual Fax)
Application Name 01-16	Application software

Completion

Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Item No.	Description
U021	**Memory initializing** **Description** Initializes all settings, except those pertinent to the type of machine, namely each counter setting, service call history and mode setting. Also initializes backup RAM according to region specification selected in maintenance item U252 Setting the destination. **Purpose** To return the machine settings to their factory default. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select [Execute]. 3. Press the start key. * : All data other than that for adjustments due to variations between machines is initialized based on the destination setting. 4. Turn the main power switch off and on. Allow more than 5 seconds between Off and On. * : An error code is displayed in case of an initialization error. When errors occurred, turn main power switch off then on, and execute initialization using maintenance item U021. **Error codes** **Codes** / **Description** 0001 Entity error 0002 Controller error 0020 Engine error 0040 Scanner error

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U024</td><td>
HDD formatting

Description
Initializes the hard disk.
Purpose
To initialize the hard disk when replacing the hard disk after shipping.
Caution
In addition, the following settings are also initialized by initializing the hard disk.
System menu (user login administration, job accounting, address book, one-touch keys and document box etc.), shortcuts and panel programs
When fully formatted, the following pre-installed software are removed.
Option language, OCR dictionary software, HyPAS Application (FMU etc.).

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Format</td><td>Execution of HDD format</td></tr>
<tr><td>Composition*</td><td>Change of HDD configuration</td></tr>
</table>

Method: [Format]
1. Select the item.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Full</td><td>Full format</td></tr>
<tr><td>Data</td><td>Data format (the application software are retained)</td></tr>
</table>
2. Press [Execute].
3. Press the start key to initialize the hard disk.
4. Turn the main power switch off and on. Allow more than 5 seconds between Off and On.

Method: [Composition]
1. Select the item.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Single</td><td>1-HDD mode</td></tr>
<tr><td>Multi</td><td>2-HDD mode</td></tr>
</table>
* : If the wearing number of the HDD is different, C640 will be displayed.
2. Press the start key.
3. Turn the main power switch off and on. Allow more than 5 seconds between Off and On.

* : Software removed must be manually re-installed.
Option language, OCR dictionary software: Install using a USB flash device.
Install HyPAS applications (such as FMU) on the application dialog.

* : If an OCT software does not exist, a warning dialog is displayed and OCR is deactivated.
</td></tr>
</table>

Item No.	Description
U025	**Firmware Update (Security)** **Description** Used to execute FW-Update from the USB flash device while Very High is selected in the Security Level settings under the System Menu. **Purpose** Firmware upgrading is initiated by a service person to conduct U025 while a USB flash device is inserted. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Press [Execute]. 3. Press the start key. 4. Firmware upgrading will begin when power is toggled off and on after the message to urge power toggling is displayed. 5. After the firmware upgrade is completed normally, “FW-UPDATE Completed” will be displayed with the firmware version. * : This is not executable when a USB has not been installed.

Item No.	Description
U026	**Pulling Backup Data** **Description** Perform restoring of the backup data.. **Purpose** Restores the setting values that was backed up in the flash memory from the HDD. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Press [Execute]. 3. Press the start key. 4. Turn the main power switch off and on. Allow more than 5 seconds between Off and On. * : NG will be displayed when an error was resulted at completion. * : Saved data: U278 Setting the delivery date U402 Adjusting margins of image printing U952 Maintenance mode workflow

Item No.	Description
U030	**Checking the operation of the motors** **Description** Drives each motor. **Purpose** To check the operation of each motor. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the motor to be operated. 3. Press the start key. The operation starts.

Display	Description
Feed	Paper feed motor (PFM) is turned on
DLP(K)	Developer motor K (DEVM-K) is turned on
Fuser	Fuser motor (FUM) is turned on
SB(CW)	Eject motor (EM) is turned on clockwise
SB(CCW)	Eject motor (EM) is turned on counterclockwise
Job Separator	JS eject motor (JSEM) is turned on
Regist	Registration motor (RM) is turned on
Decal	BR decurler motor (BRDM) is turned on
Decal Guide	BR guide motor (BRGM) is turned on
Bridge1	BR conveying motor 1 (BRCM1) is turned on
Bridge2	BR conveying motor 2 (BRCM2) is turned on
IH Core	IH core motor (IHCM) is turned on
Fuser Release	Fuser release motor (FURM) is turned on
DU1	Duplex motor 1 (DUM1) is turned on
DU2	Duplex motor 2 (DUM2) is turned on
Mid Roller	Middle motor (RM) is turned on
Vibration	Toner vibration motor (TVM) is turned on

4. To stop operation, press the stop key.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Item No.	Description
U031	**Checking switches and sensors for paper conveying** **Description** Displays the on-off status of each paper detection switch or sensor on the paper path. **Purpose** To check if the switches and sensors for paper conveying operate correctly. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Turn each switch or sensor on and off manually to check the status. When the on-status of a switch or sensor is detected, that switch or sensor is displayed in reverse.

Display	Description
MPT Jam	MP feed sensor (MPFS)
Cassette1 Feed	Feed sensor 1 (FS1)
Cassette2 Feed	Feed sensor 2 (FS2)
Feed2(Feed B)	Paper conveying sensor (PCS)
Regist	Registration sensor (RS)
Belt Jam	Loop sensor (LPS)
Exit Feed	Switchback sensor (SBS)
DU1	Duplex sensor 1 (DUS1)
DU2	Duplex sensor 2 (DUS2)
Bridge1 Feed	BR conveying sensor 1 (BRCS1)
Bridge2 Feed	BR conveying sensor 2 (BRCS2)
Bridge Exit	BR eject sensor (BRES)
Exit Paper	Eject full sensor (EFS)
Fuser Feed	Fuser eject sensor (FUES)
Feed1(Mid)	Middle sensor (MS)
Exit Job Separator	JS eject sensor (JSES)

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Item No.	Description
U032	**Checking the operation of the clutches** **Description** Turn each clutch on. **Purpose** To check the operation of each clutch. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the clutch to be operated. 3. Press the start key. The operation starts.

Display	Description
Feed1	Paper feed clutch 1 (PFCL1) is turned on
Feed2	Paper feed clutch 2 (PFCL2) is turned on
Feed	Paper conveying clutch (PCCL) is turned on
Assist1	Assist clutch 1 (ASCL1) is turned on
Assist2*	Assist clutch 2 (ASCL2) is turned on
Motor	Motor is turned on

4. To stop operation, press the stop key.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U033</td><td>
Checking the operation of the solenoids

Description
Turn each solenoid on.
Purpose
To check the operation of each solenoid.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the solenoid to be operated.z
3. Press the start key. The operation starts.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Branch Left</td><td>BR Feedshift solenoid (BRFSSOL) is turned on</td></tr>
<tr><td>Branch Exit</td><td>Feedshift solenoid (FSSOL) is turned on</td></tr>
<tr><td>Job Separator</td><td>JS feedshift solenoid (JSFSSOL) is turned on</td></tr>
<tr><td>ID Clean</td><td>Cleaning solenoid (CLSOL) is turned on</td></tr>
<tr><td>Motor</td><td>Motor is turned on</td></tr>
</table>
4. To stop operation, press the stop key.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U034</td><td>
Adjusting the print start timing

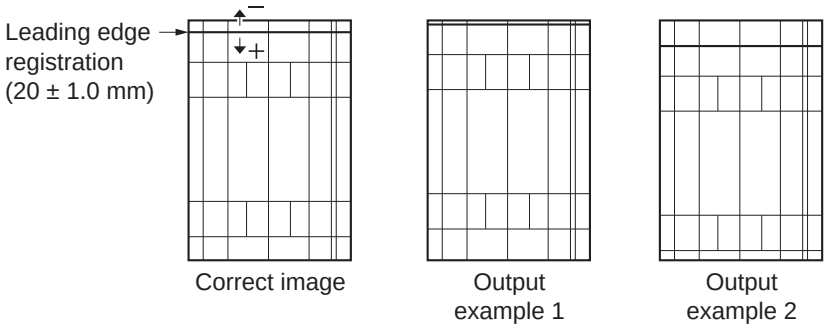
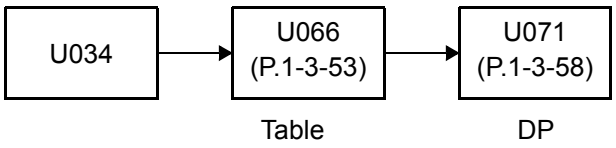
Description
Adjusts the leading edge registration or center line.
Purpose
Make the adjustment if there is a regular error between the leading edges of the copy image and original.
Make the adjustment if there is a regular error between the center lines of the copy image and original.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item to be adjusted.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>LSU Out Top</td><td>Leading edge registration adjustment</td></tr>
<tr><td>LSU Out Left</td><td>Center line adjustment</td></tr>
<tr><td>Mode</td><td>Sets the conveying timing verification mode.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Reset</td><td>Resets the conveying timing verification data.</td></tr>
<tr><td>On Timing</td><td>Verify the conveying timing (sensor on).</td></tr>
<tr><td>Off Timing</td><td>Verify the conveying timing (sensor recovery).</td></tr>
</table>
*: 75 ppm model only.
</td></tr>
</table>

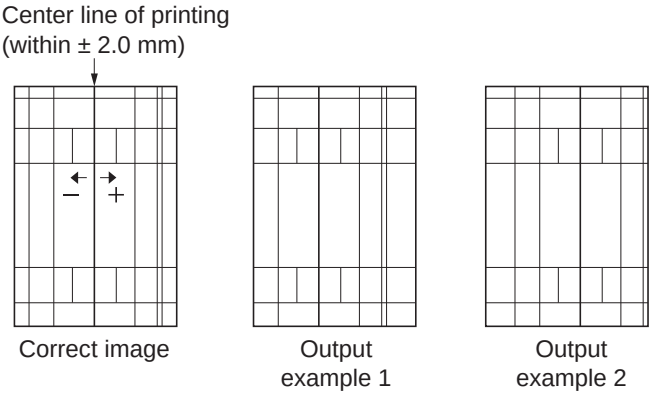
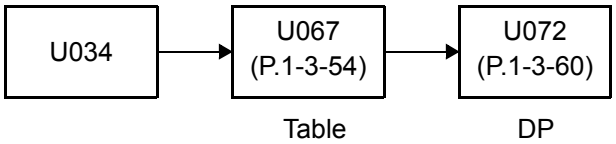
Item No.	Description
U034	**Adjustment: Leading edge registration adjustment** 1. Press the system menu key. 2. Press the start key to output a test pattern. 3. Press the system menu key. 4. Select the item to be adjusted. **[LSU Out Top]**

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
MPT(L)	Paper feed from MP tray	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm
MPT Half(L)	Paper feed from MP tray	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm
Cassette(L)	Paper feed from cassette	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm
Cassette Half(L)	Paper feed from cassette	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm
Duplex(L)	Duplex mode (second)	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm
Duplex Half(L)	Duplex mode (second)	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm
MPT(S)	Paper feed from MP tray	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm
MPT Half(S)	Paper feed from MP tray	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm
Cassette(S)	Paper feed from cassette	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm
Cassette Half(S)	Paper feed from cassette	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm
Duplex(S)	Duplex mode (second)	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm
Duplex Half(S)	Duplex mode (second)	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm

(L): When large size paper is used (218 mm or more in width of paper).
(S): When small size paper is used.

Item No.	Description
U034	5. Change the setting value using the cursor +/- or numeric keys. For output example 1, increase the value. For output example 2, decrease the value.  **Figure 1-3-4** 6. Press the start key. The value is set. **Remark** When changing the setting value of [Large] each item is modified, equal to amount of the value which is changed adds also the value of [Small] each item and is pulled. **Caution** Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode for optimizing reading positions.  **Adjustment: Center line adjustment** 1. Press the system menu key. 2. Press the start key to output a test pattern. 3. Press the system menu key. 4. Select the item to be adjusted. **[LSU Out Left]**

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
MPT	Paper feed from MP tray	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm
Cassette1	Paper feed from cassette 1	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm
Cassette2	Paper feed from cassette 2	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm
Cassette3	Paper feed from optional cassette 3	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm
Cassette4	Paper feed from optional cassette 4	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm
Cassette5	Paper feed from optional cassette 5	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm
Cassette6	Paper feed from optional cassette 6	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm
Cassette7	Paper feed from optional cassette 7	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm
Duplex	Duplex mode (second)	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm

Item No.	Description
U034	5. Change the setting value using the +/- keys or numeric keys. For output example 1, increase the value. For output example 2, decrease the value.  **Figure 1-3-5** 6. Press the start key. The value is set. **Caution** Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode for optimizing reading positions.  **Setting: [Mode]** 1. Select On or Off. | Display | Description | |---|---| | On | Sets the conveying timing verification mode on. | | Off | Sets the conveying timing verification mode off. | 2. Press the start key. **Setting: [Reset]** 1. Select [Execute]. 2. Press the start key. **Setting: [On Timing/ Off Timing]** 1. Select the item. | Display | Description | |---|---| | Value (Plain) | Confirms the measured values of Plain. | | Value (Thick) | Confirms the measured values of Thick. | 2. Press the start key. The value is set. **Completion** Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Item No.	Description
U035	**Setting the printing area for folio paper** **Description** Changes the printing area for copying on folio paper. **Purpose** To prevent cropped images on the trailing edge or left/right side of copy paper by setting the actual printing area for folio paper. **Setting** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be set. 3. Change the setting value using the +/- keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Length	Length	330 to 356 mm	330
Width	Width	200 to 220 mm	210

4. Press the start key. The value is set.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Item No.	Description
U037	**Checking the operation of the fan motors** **Description** Drives each fan motor. **Purpose** To check the operation of each fan motor. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the fan motor to be operated. 3. Press the start key. The operation starts.

Display	Description	Group
Fuser Cooling	Fuser rear fan motor (FURFM) is turned on	B
LSU Cooling	LSU fan motor (LSUFM) is turned on	B
Exit Cooling	Eject front fan motor (EFFM) is turned on	B
Toner	Toner fan motor 1and 2 (TFM1, 2)* is turned on	A
Low Volt	Power source fan motor (PSFM) is turned on	A
Exit Rear Cooling	Eject rear fan motor (EFRM) is turned on	B
IH PWB	IH fan motor (IHFM) is turned on	A
DU	Duplex fan motor (DUFM) is turned on	A
IH Coil	Fuser front fan motor (FUFFM) is turned on	A
Conv Edge	Fuser motor 1and 2 (FUFM1, 2) is turned on	A
Fuser Edge		A
Toner Blow	Assist fan motor (ASFM) is turned on	
GroupA	Fan motors of group A are turned on	
GroupB	Fan motors of group B are turned on	

4. To stop operation, press the stop key.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Item No.	Description
U051	**Adjusting the deflection in the paper** **Description** Adjusts the deflection in the paper at the registration roller. **Purpose** Make the adjustment if the leading edge of the copy image is missing or varies randomly, or if the copy paper is Z-folded. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be adjusted.

Display	Description
Paper Loop Amount	Deflection adjustment

Adjustment

1. Press the system menu key.
2. Place an original and press the start key to make a test copy.
3. Press the system menu key.
4. Select the item to be adjusted.
   [Paper Loop Amount]

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	
			65ppm	80ppm
MPT(L)	Paper feed from MP tray	-30 to 20	-5	-5
MPT Half(L)	Paper feed from MP tray	-30 to 20	-1	-3
Cassette(L)	Paper feed from cassette	-30 to 20	-8	-13
Cassette Half(L)	Paper feed from cassette	-30 to 20	-1	-3
Duplex(L)	Duplex mode (second)	-30 to 20	-9	-14
Duplex Half(L)	Duplex mode (second)	-30 to 20	-1	-3
MPT(S)	Paper feed from MP tray	-30 to 20	-5	-5
MPT Half(S)	Paper feed from MP tray	-30 to 20	-1	-3
Cassette(S)	Paper feed from cassette	-30 to 20	-8	-13
Cassette Half(S)	Paper feed from cassette	-30 to 20	-1	-3
Duplex(S)	Duplex mode (second)	-30 to 20	-9	-14
Duplex Half(S)	Duplex mode (second)	-30 to 20	-1	-3

Change in value per step: 1.0 mm
(L): When large size paper is used (218 mm or more in width of paper).
(S): When small size paper is used.

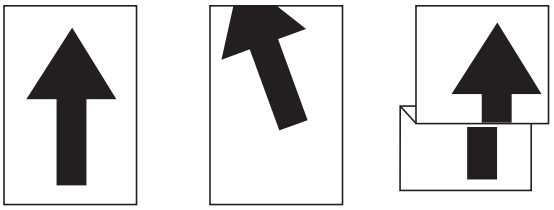
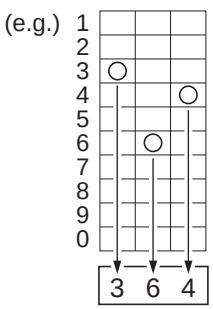
<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U051</td><td>
5. Change the setting value using the +/- keys or numeric keys.
For output example 1, increase the value. For output example 2, decrease the value.
The greater the value, the larger the deflection; the smaller the value, the smaller the deflection.


Figure 1-3-6
6. Press the start key. The value is set.

Completion
Press the stop key. The indication for selecting a maintenance item No. appears.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U052</td><td>
Setting the fuser motor control

Description
Enters the sensor data values described on the supplied sheet provided when the loop sensor is replaced and Perform correction processing for the fuser motor.
Purpose
To perform when replacing the loop sensor or paper conveying unit.
Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Set Loop Sensor</td><td>Enter the data value for loop sensor</td></tr>
<tr><td>Loop Sensor Control</td><td>Set the loop sensor detection control</td></tr>
<tr><td>Set Loop Sensor Valid</td><td>Sets the presence or absence of the loop sensor</td></tr>
<tr><td>Chk Loop Sensor</td><td>Display the data value for loop sensor</td></tr>
</table>
Method: [Set Loop Sensor]
1. Select [Scanning Board1].
2. Enter the sensor data of DATA1 on the sheet supplied with the loop sensor by using the [+] and [–] keys.
3. Select [Scanning Board2].
4. Enter the sensor data of DATA2 on the sheet supplied with the loop sensor by using the [+] and [–] keys.
5. Press the start key. The value is set.
* : When replacing the conveying unit, enter the data specified on the maintenance report.
How to read the sensor data value


</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U052</td><td>
Setting: [Loop Sensor Control]
1. Select the item.
2. Select On or Off.
<table>
<tr><th rowspan="2">Display</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th colspan="2">Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><th>65ppm</th><th>80ppm</th></tr>
<tr><td>No.1</td><td>Determines whether to attempt a correction in the fuser speed in reference to the transfer-separation speed, over the length of paper from the leading edge to 30mm.</td><td>On</td><td>On</td></tr>
<tr><td>No.2</td><td>Determines whether to attempt a correction in the fuser speed in reference to the transfer-separation speed, over the length of paper from the leading edge to 30 to 60 mm</td><td>On</td><td>On</td></tr>
<tr><td>No.3</td><td>Determines whether to attempt a correction in the fuser speed in reference to the transfer-separation speed, over the length of paper from the leading edge to 60 to 90 mm</td><td>On</td><td>On</td></tr>
<tr><td>No.4</td><td>Determines whether to attempt a correction in the fuser speed in reference to the transfer-separation speed, over the length of paper from the leading edge to 90 to 120 mm</td><td>On</td><td>On</td></tr>
<tr><td>No.5</td><td>Determines whether to attempt a correction in the fuser speed in reference to the transfer-separation speed, over the length of paper from the leading edge to 120 to 150 mm</td><td>On</td><td>Off</td></tr>
<tr><td>No.6</td><td>Determines whether to attempt a correction in the fuser speed in reference to the transfer-separation speed, over the length of paper from the leading edge to 150 to 180 mm</td><td>On</td><td>Off</td></tr>
</table>
3. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Setting: [Set Loop Sensor Valid]
1. Select On or Off.
Initial setting: On
2. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Completion
Press the stop key. The indication for selecting a maintenance item No. appears.
</td></tr>
</table>

Item No.	Description
U053	**Setting the adjustment of the motor speed** **Description** Perform fine adjustment of the speeds of the motors. **Purpose** Basically, the setting need not be changed. Modify settings by interlock setting only if faulty images occur. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be adjusted

Display	Description
Motor1	Adjustment of drum motor speeds
Motor2	Adjustment of developer motor, registration motor and transfer motor speeds
Motor3	Adjustment of eject motor, fuser motor, BR decurler motor, BR conveying motor 1/2, paper feed motor, JS eject motor, middle motor and duplex motor 1/2 speeds
Motor1 Half	Adjustment of drum motor speeds in half speed
Motor2 Half	Adjustment of developer motor, registration motor and transfer motor speeds in half speed
Motor3 Half	Adjustment of eject motor, fuser motor, BR decurler motor, BR conveying motor 1/2, paper feed motor, JS eject motor, middle motor and duplex motor 1/2 speeds in half speed

Setting: [Motor1]

1. Select the item to be adjusted.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	
			65ppm	80ppm
Drum(K)	Drum motor (DRM)	-5000 to 5000	0	0

Setting: [Motor2]

1. Select the item to be adjusted.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	
			65ppm	80ppm
Dev(K)	Developer motor (DEVM)	-5000 to 5000	813	639
Regist	Registration motor (RM)	-5000 to 5000	32	25
Sep Belt	Transfer motor (TRM)	-5000 to 5000	14	11

Item No.	Description
U053	**Setting: [Motor3]** 1. Select the item to be adjusted.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	
			65ppm	80ppm
SB	Eject motor (EM)	-5000 to 5000	54	42
Fixing	Fuser motor (FUM)	-5000 to 5000	-26	-21
Bridge1	BR conveying motor 1 (BRCM1)	-5000 to 5000	93	72
Bridge2	BR conveying motor 2 (BRCM2)	-5000 to 5000	57	45
Feed	Paper feed motor (PFM)	-5000 to 5000	57	45
Job Separator	JS eject motor (JSEM)	-5000 to 5000	79	62
Mid Roller*	Middle motor (MM)	-5000 to 5000	54	43
DU1	Duplex motor 1 (DUM1)	-5000 to 5000	87	69
DU2	Duplex motor 2 (DUM2)	-5000 to 5000	-8	-6
Bridge1 DF High	BR conveying motor 1 (BRCM1)	-5000 to 5000	-8	-6
Bridge1 DF Low	BR conveying motor 1 (BRCM1)	-5000 to 5000	0	0
Bridge2 DF High	BR conveying motor 2 (BRCM2)	-5000 to 5000	0	0
Bridge2 DF Low	BR conveying motor 2 (BRCM2)	-5000 to 5000	0	0

Setting: [Motor1 Half]

1. Select the item to be adjusted.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	
Drum(K)	Drum motor (DRM) in half speed	-5000 to 5000	0	0

Setting: [Motor2 Half]

1. Select the item to be adjusted

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	
			65ppm	80ppm
Dev(K)	Developer motor (DEVM) in half speed	-5000 to 5000	1626	1278
Regist	Registration motor (RM) in half speed	-5000 to 5000	32	25
		-5000 to 5000	29	23

Item No.	Description
U053	**Setting: [Motor3 Half]** Select the item to be adjusted.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	
			65ppm	80ppm
SB	Eject motor (EM) in half speed	-5000 to 5000	109	85
Fixing	Fuser motor (FUM) in half speed	-5000 to 5000	-53	-41
Decal	Decal motor (BRDM) in half speed	-5000 to 5000	186	144
Bridge1	BR conveying motor 1 (BRCM1) in half speed	-5000 to 5000	115	90
Bridge2	BR conveying motor 2 (BRCM2) in half speed	-5000 to 5000	115	90
Feed	Paper feed motor (PFM) in half speed	-5000 to 5000	159	124
Job Separator	JS eject motor (JSEM) in half speed	-5000 to 5000	108	85
Mid Roller	Middle motor (MM) in half speed	-5000 to 5000	174	137
DU1	Duplex motor 1 (DUM1) in half speed	-5000 to 5000	-8	-6
DU2	Duplex motor 2 (DUM2) in half speed	-5000 to 5000	-8	-6

Completion

Press the stop key. The indication for selecting a maintenance item No. appears.

Item No.	Description
U059	**Setting fan mode** **Description** Specifies mode for developer fan motors. **Purpose** Handling the lowering density [to suppress thermal stresses owing to the heated toner] **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the mode.

Display	Description
Fan Mode	Sets threshold temperature at which developer fan motors operate.
Cooling Mode	Sets temperature at which the developer fan motors are switched for controlling.
Interval Cycle	Varies the timing cycle for controlling the fan

Setting: [Fan Mode]

1. Select the mode.

Display	Description
Mode1	Setting temperature: Normal
Mode2	Setting temperature: Temperature threshold is raised from mode1 (WUP, temperature at READY: mode1 temperature -7(°C), Temperature at PRINT: mode1 temperature -3(°C).)
Mode3	Setting temperature: Temperature threshold is raised from mode2 (WUP, temperature at READY: mode1 temperature -22(°C), Temperature at PRINT: mode1 temperature -8(°C).)
Auto	Starting with Mode 2 at power up or recovery from sleep mode, and switches to Mode 3 when the thermistor detects a developer temperature BK is equal to or higher than 38°C. The device never reverts from mode 2 from mode 3 while power is on.

Initial setting: Mode1

2. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Setting: [Cooling Mode]

1. Change the setting value using the +/- keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Cooling Mode	Amount of shift from the initial standard temperature	-3 to 3 (°C)	0

A larger value advances the operating timing, and a smaller value slows it.

2. Press the start key. The value is set.

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U059</td><td>
Setting: [Interval Cycle]
1. Change the setting value using the +/- keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>Cnt</td><td>Determines the timing cycle for controlling the fan</td><td>0 to 10</td><td>1</td></tr>
</table>
* : This will halt printing and activates the motor (described below) when the print count has reached the reference value multiplied by 1000 during copying continuously.
Vibration motor (Toner disposal box)
Toner fan motor (Toner disposal box)
Toner assist fan

2. Press the start key. The value is set.

Completion
Press the stop key. The indication for selecting a maintenance item No. appears.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U061</td><td>
Checking the operation of the exposure lamp

Description
Lights the exposure lamp.
Purpose
To check whether the exposure lamp are turned on.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>CCD</td><td>The exposure lamp lights</td></tr>
<tr><td>CIS</td><td>The CIS lights</td></tr>
</table>
3. Press the start key. The lamp lights.
4. To turn the lamp off, press the stop key.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

Item No.	Description
U063	**Adjusting the shading position** **Description** Changes the shading position of the scanner. **Purpose** Used when the white line continue to appear longitudinally on the image after the shading plate is cleaned. This is due to flaws or stains inside the shading plate. To prevent this problem, the shading position should be changed so that shading is possible without being affected by the flaws or stains. **Setting** 1. Press the start key. 2. Change the setting value using the +/- keys or numeric keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
Position	Shading position	0 to 18	0	0.158 mm

* : Increasing the value moves the shading position toward the machine left, and decreasing it moves the position toward the machine right.

3. Press the start key. The value is set.

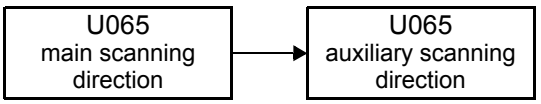
Supplement
While this maintenance item is being executed, copying from an original is available in interrupt copying mode (which is activated by pressing the system menu key).

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Item No.	Description
U065	**Adjusting the scanner magnification**

Description
Adjusts the magnification of the original scanning.
Purpose
Make the adjustment if the magnification in the main scanning direction is incorrect.
Make the adjustment if the magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction is incorrect.

Caution
The magnification adjustment along the main scanning direction could cause black streaks depending on the content of the original document.
Adjust the magnification of the scanner in the following order.



Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Press the system menu key.
3. Place an original and press the start key to make a test copy.
4. Press the system menu key.
5. Select the item to be adjusted.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
Main Scan	Scanner magnification in the main scanning direction	-75 to 75	0	0.02%
Sub Scan	Scanner magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction	-125 to 125	0	0.02%

Adjustment: [Main Scan]
1. Change the setting value using the +/- keys or numeric keys.
   For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value.
   Increasing the setting enlarges the image and decreasing it narrows the image.

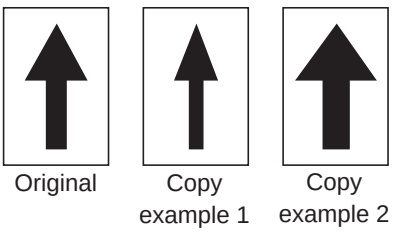


Figure 1-3-7

2. Press the start key. The value is set.

Item No.	Description
U065	**Adjustment: [Sub Scan]** 1. Change the setting value using the +/- keys or numeric keys. For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value. Increasing the value makes the image longer, while decreasing the value makes the image shorter.  **Figure 1-3-8** 2. Press the start key. The value is set. **Completion** Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Item No.	Description
U066	**Adjusting the scanner leading edge registration**

Description
Adjusts the scanner leading edge registration of the original scanning.
Purpose
Make the adjustment if there is a regular error between the leading edges of the copy image and original.

Adjustment
1. Press the start key.
2. Press the system menu key.
3. Place an original and press the start key to make a test copy.
4. Press the system menu key.
5. Select the item to be adjusted.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
Front	Scanner leading edge registration	-30 to 30	0	0.158 mm
Rotate	Scanner leading edge registration (rotate copying)	-30 to 30	0	0.158 mm

6. Change the setting value using the +/- keys or numeric keys.
   For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value.
   Increasing the value moves the image forward and decreasing the value moves the image backward.

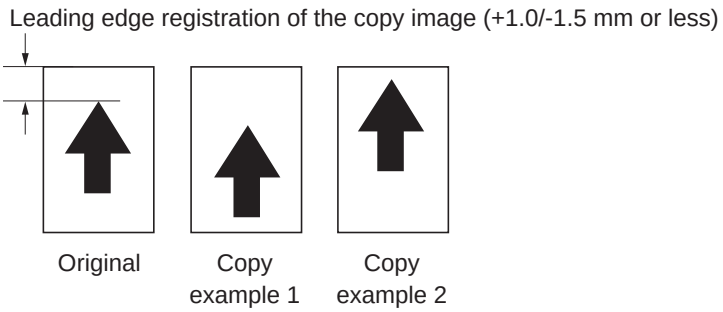
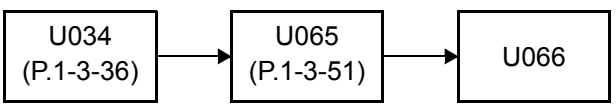


Figure 1-3-9

7. Press the start key. The value is set.

Caution
If the above adjustment does not optimize the leading edge registration, proceed with the following maintenance modes.



Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Item No.	Description
U067	**Adjusting the scanner center line** **Description** Adjusts the scanner center line of the original scanning. **Purpose** Make the adjustment if there is a regular error between the center lines of the copy image and original. **Adjustment** 1. Press the start key. 2. Press the system menu key. 3. Place an original and press the start key to make a test copy. 4. Press the system menu key. 5. Select the item to be adjusted.l

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
Front	Scanner center line	-60 to 60	0	0.085 mm
Rotate	Scanner center line (rotate copying)	-40 to 40	0	0.085 mm

6. Change the setting value using the +/- keys or numeric keys.
   For copy example 1, decrease the value. For copy example 2, increase the value.
   Increasing the value moves the image leftward and decreasing it moves the image rightward.

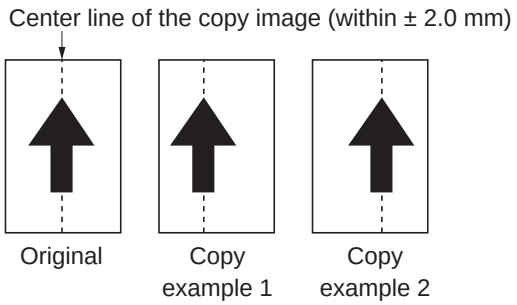
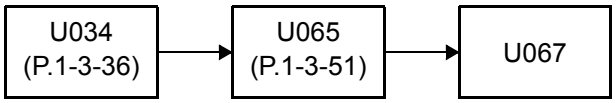


Figure 1-3-10

7. Press the start key. The value is set.

Caution
If the above adjustment does not optimize the center line, proceed with the following maintenance modes.



Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U068</td><td>

Adjusting the scanning position for originals from the DP

Description
Adjusts the position for scanning originals from the DP. Perform the test copy at the four scanning positions after adjusting.
Purpose
Used when the image fogging occurs because the scanning position is not proper when the DP is used. Run U071 to adjust the timing of DP leading edge when the scanning position is changed.

Setting
1. Press the start key.l

<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr>
<tr><td>DP Read</td><td>Starting position adjustment for scanning originals</td><td>-38 to 38</td><td>0</td><td>0.158 mm</td></tr>
<tr><td>Black Line</td><td>Scanning position for the test copy originals</td><td>0 to 3</td><td>0</td><td>-</td></tr>
</table>

2. Select [DP Read].
3. Change the setting using the +/- keys or numeric keys.
   When the setting value is increased, the scanning position moves to the right and it moves to the left when the setting value is decreased.
4. Press the start key. The value is set.
5. Select [Black Line].
6. Change the setting using the +/- keys or numeric keys.
7. Press the start key. The value is set.
8. Set the original (the one which density is known) in the DP and press the system menu key.
9. Press the start key. Test copy is executed.
10. Perform the test copy at each scanning position with the setting value from 0 to 3 and check that no black line appears and the image is normally scanned.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

</td></tr>
</table>

Item No.	Description
U070	**Adjusting the DP magnification** **Description** Adjusts the DP original scanning speed. **Purpose** Make the adjustment if the magnification is incorrect in the auxiliary scanning direction when the DP is used. Make the adjustment if the magnification is incorrect in the main scanning direction when the CIS is used. **Adjustment** 1. Press the start key. 2. Press the system menu key. 3. Place an original on the DP and press the start key to make a test copy. 4. Press the system menu key. 5. Select the item to be adjusted.l

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
Sub Scan(F)	Magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction of CCD (first side)	-125 to 125	0	0.02%
Main Scan(CIS)	Magnification in the main scanning direction of CIS	-100 to 100	0	0.02%
Sub Scan(CIS)	Magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction of CIS	-125 to 125	0	0.02%

Adjustment: [Sub Scan]

1. Change the setting value using the +/- keys or numeric keys.
   For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value.
   Increasing the value makes the image longer, while decreasing the value makes the image shorter.

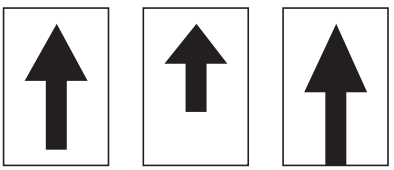
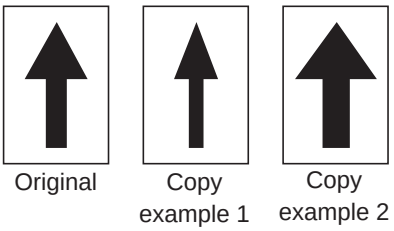
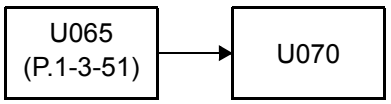


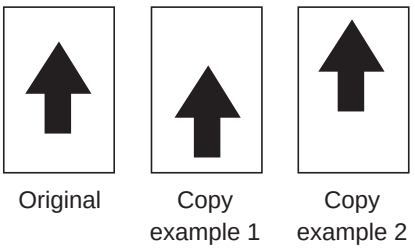
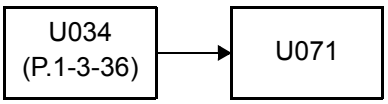
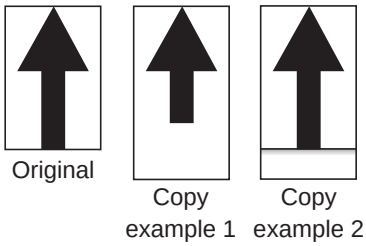
Figure 1-3-11

2. Press the start key. The value is set.

Item No.	Description
U070	**Adjustment: [Main Scan]** 1. Change the setting value using the +/- keys or numeric keys. For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value. Increasing the setting enlarges the image and decreasing it narrows the image.  **Figure 1-3-12** 2. Press the start key. The value is set. **Caution** If the above adjustment does not optimize the magnification, perform the following maintenance modes.  **Completion** Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Item No.	Description
U071	**Adjusting the DP scanning timing** **Description** Adjusts the DP original scanning timing. **Purpose** Make the adjustment if there is a regular error between the leading or trailing edges of the original and the copy image when the DP is used. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Press the system menu key. 3. Place an original on the DP and press the start key to make a test copy. 4. Press the system menu key. 5. Select the item to be adjusted.l

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
Front Head	Leading edge registration of CCD (first side)	-19 to 19	0	0.207 mm
Front Tail	Trailing edge registration of CCD (first side)	-19 to 19	0	0.207 mm
CIS Head	Leading edge registration of CIS	-19 to 19	0	0.207 mm
CIS Tail	Trailing edge registration of CIS	-19 to 19	0	0.207 mm

Item No.	Description
U071	**Adjustment: Leading edge registration** 1. Change the setting value using the +/- keys or numeric keys. For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value. Increasing the value moves the image forward and decreasing the value moves the image backward.  **Figure 1-3-13** 2. Press the start key. The value is set. **Caution** If the above adjustment does not optimize the leading edge registration, proceed with the following maintenance modes.  **Adjustment: Trailing edge registration** 1. Change the setting value using the +/- keys or numeric keys. For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value.  **Figure 1-3-14** 2. Press the start key. The value is set. **Caution** If the first side is adjusted, check the second side and if adjustment is required, carry out the adjustment. **Completion** Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Item No.	Description
U072	**Adjusting the DP center line** **Description** Adjusts the scanning start position for the DP original. **Purpose** Make the adjustment if there is a regular error between the centers of the original and the copy image when the DP is used. **Adjustment** 1. Press the start key. 2. Press the system menu key. 3. Place an original on the DP and press the start key to make a test copy. 4. Press the system menu key. 5. Select the item to be adjusted.l

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
Front	DP center line (first side)	-60 to 60	0	0.085 mm
CIS	CIS center line	-39 to 39	0	0.085 mm

6. Change the setting value using the +/- keys or numeric keys.
   For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value.
   Increasing the value moves the image rightward and decreasing it moves the image leftward.

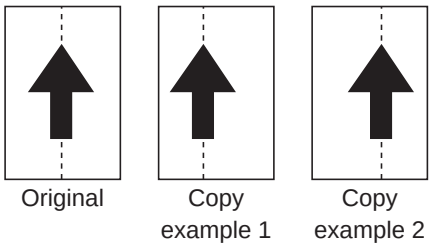
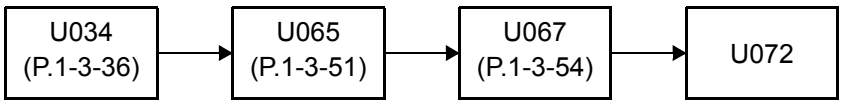


Figure 1-3-15

7. Press the start key. The value is set.

Caution
If the above adjustment does not optimize the center line, proceed with the following maintenance modes.



Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Item No.	Description
U073	**Checking the scanner operation** **Description** Simulates the scanner operation under the arbitrary conditions. **Purpose** To check the scanner operation. This is also done to check the accumulation of dust on the slit glass. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be operated.

Display	Description
Scanner Motor	Scanner operation
Home Position	Home position operation
Dust Check	Dust adhesion check operation with lamp on
DP Reading	DP scanning position operation

Setting: [Scanner Motor]

1. Select [Scanner Motor].
2. Select the item.
3. Change the setting using the +/- keys.

Display	Operating conditions	Setting range	Initial setting
Zoom	Magnification	25 to 400%	100
Size	Original size	See below.	10200
Lamp	On and off of the exposure lamp	0 (off) or 1 (on)	1

Original sizes for each setting in SIZE

Setting	Paper size	Setting	Paper size
5000	A4	5000	A5R
4300	B5	7800	Folio
5100	11" x 8 1/2"	10200	11" x 17"
10000	A3	9000	11" x 15"
8600	B4	8400	8 1/2" x 14"
7100	A4R	6600	8 1/2" x 11"
6100	B5R	5100	5 1/2" x 8 1/2"

4. Press the start key. The setting is set.
5. Select [Execute].
6. Press the start key. Scanning starts under the selected conditions.
7. To stop operation, press the stop key.

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U073</td><td>
Method: [Home Position]
1. Select [Home Position].
2. Press the start key.
The mirror frame of the scanner moves to the home position.

Method: [Dust Check]
1. Select [Dust Check].
2. Press the start key. The exposure lamp lights.
3. To turn the exposure lamp off, press the stop key.

Method: [DP Reading]
1. Select [DP Reading].
2. Press the start key.
The mirror frame of the scanner moves to the reading position.

Completion
Press the stop key when scanning stops. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U074</td><td>
DP input response adjustment

Description
Sets the density correction for scanning originals from the DP.
Purpose
Modify the setting only if a spotted background appears when a bluish original or a document with a background that is slightly colored is scanned from the DP.
Perform adjustment if the page scanned using the table and the page scanned using DP do not match.

Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Change the setting using the +/- or numeric keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>Coefficient</td><td>Compensating original document scanning density</td><td>0 to 3</td><td>1</td></tr>
</table>
Settings 0: No correction / 1: Slight correction / 2: Medium correction / 3: Strong correction
3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Supplement
While this maintenance item is being executed, copying from an original is available in interrupt copying mode (which is activated by pressing the system menu key).

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

Item No.	Description
U087	**Setting DP reading position modification operation** **Description** The presence or absence of dust is determined by comparing the scan data of the original trailing edge and that taken after the original is conveyed past the DP original scanning position. If dust is identified, the DP original scanning position is adjusted for the following originals. Using image correction to reduce black streaks. **Purpose** When using DP, to solve the problem when black lines occurs due to the dust with respect to original reading position. **Caution** The coordinates of position where documents are scanned are modified when [System Menu] [Adjustment/Maintenance] [Correcting Black Line] is set to [Off]. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be set.

Display	Description
CCD	Setting of standard data when dust is detected.
Black Line	Initialization of original reading position.

Setting: [CCD]

1. Select the item to be set.
2. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
R	Lowest density of the R regard as the dust	0 to 255	125
G	Lowest density of the G regard as the dust	0 to 255	125
B	Lowest density of the B regard as the dust	0 to 255	125

* : Decreasing the setting makes the objects with less density recognized as dusts, less dusts becomes detectable.
Increasing the value allows more dusts to be detected and the cleaning prompts to be displayed more often.

3. Press the start key. The value is set.

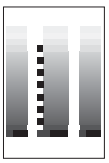
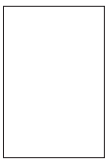
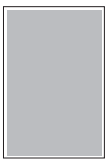
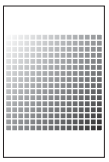
Method: [Black Line]

1. Select [Clear].
2. Press the start key. The setting is cleared.

Completion

Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Item No.	Description
U089	**Outputting a MIP-PG pattern** **Description** Selects and outputs the MIP-PG pattern created in the machine. **Purpose** To check copier status other than scanner when adjusting image printing, using MIP-PG pattern output (with-out scanning). **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the MIP-PG pattern to be output and press the start key.

Display	PG pattern to be output	Purpose
Gray Scale		To check the laser scanner unit engine output characteristics
Mono1 (Output density: 0)		To check the drum quality
Mono4 (Output density: 70)		To check the drum quality
256-Level		To check resolution reproducibility in printing

3. Press the system menu key.
4. Press the start key. A MIP-PG pattern is output.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U091</td><td>

Setting the white line correction

Description
Sets the error detection threshold value for white line correction and displays the count result of abnormal pixels.
Purpose
To perform when replacing the CIS, DP main PWB or CIS roller.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item.

<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Calculation(R)</td><td>Abnormal pixel count result for color R</td></tr>
<tr><td>Calculation(G)</td><td>Abnormal pixel count result for color G</td></tr>
<tr><td>Calculation(B)</td><td>Abnormal pixel count result for color B</td></tr>
<tr><td>Threshold(R)</td><td>Abnormal pixel detection threshold value for color R</td></tr>
<tr><td>Threshold(G)</td><td>Abnormal pixel detection threshold value for color G</td></tr>
<tr><td>Threshold(B)</td><td>Abnormal pixel detection threshold value for color B</td></tr>
<tr><td>Threshold (Abnormal)</td><td>Abnormal pixel threshold value setting</td></tr>
<tr><td>Mode</td><td>Switching between white line correction mode ON/OFF</td></tr>
<tr><td>Execute</td><td>Holding of white reference data</td></tr>
</table>

Method: white line correction
1. Press [Execute].
2. Press the start key. Holding of white reference data is started.
3. The count result of abnormal pixels is displayed.
4. Press the system menu key.
5. Place a gray original on the DP with the gray side down. Load paper in the cassette.
   The paper should be the same size as the original.
6. Press the start key.
   Two test pattern sheets will be printed.(1 st sheet: Approx. 60 mm black band, 2nd sheet: Blank or approx. 60 mm gray band)
7. If vertical black lines appear on the blank (or gray band) page and vertical white lines appear on the black band in the same position, clean the CIS roller and the CIS glass and then repeat white line correction.
   If vertical black lines or vertical white lines appear on both sheets, white line correction has been completed normally. However, the cause of the vertical lines lies in the engine, and thus the engine must be checked.
8. Press the system menu key.
   Mode is set to 1.

</td></tr>
</table>

Item No.	Description
U091	**How to view test copies**

blank sheet	black band	Causes	Corrective measures
No lines	No lines	-	Complete
Black lines	White lines	Dirty CIS roller or CIS glass	Clean CIS roller or CIS glass and then perform U091 again
Black lines	No lines	Engine side	U091 ends, check engine
No lines	White lines	Engine side	U091 ends, check engine

Setting: Threshold value setting

1. Select the item to be set.
2. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Threshold (R)	Displaying of abnormal pixel detection threshold value for color R	0 to 1023	112/
Threshold (G)	Displaying of abnormal pixel detection threshold value for color G	0 to 1023	112/
Threshold (B)	Displaying of abnormal pixel detection threshold value for color B	0 to 1023	112/
Threshold (Abnormal)	Abnormal pixel threshold value setting	0 to 8191	75
Mode	Switching between white line correction mode ON/OFF	0: OFF/ 1: ON/ 2: Test mode	0

* : Normally the Threshold (Com) value should not be changed from 112, the initial setting.
If white lines appear even though the CIS roller and glass are not dirty, raise the set value.
If fine lines in some originals disappear, lower the set value.
Set within the range 50 to 200. (If set outside this range, the image may be affected.)

3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Completion

Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Item No.	Description
U099	**Adjusting original size detection** **Description** Checks the operation of the original size detection and sets the sensing threshold value. **Purpose** Modify the threshold of detection if documents are frequently mal-detected in size after scanning a wholly dark document or a document enclosed with dark objects on edges. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item.

Display	Description
Data1	Displays the width of an Original Area colored original document
B/W Level1	Setting original size detection threshold value
Data2	Displays the width of an Original Area colored original document (when DP is installed)

Method: [Data1/Data2]

1. Place the original and close the original cover or DP
2. The light source illuminates and the CCD sensor determines the width of the document. The original size sensor determines the document is vertical or horizontal. (The document is detected two times when the DP is installed.)

Display	Description
Original Area R	Detected original width size for color R
Original Area G	Detected original width size for color G
Original Area B	Detected original width size for color B
Original Area	Detected original width size
Size SW L	Displays the original size sensor (OSS) ON/OFF (Sensor OFF/ ON: 0/ 1)

Item No.	Description
U099	**Setting: [B/W Level1]** 1. Select an item to be set. 2. Change the setting value using the +/- keys or numeric keys.l

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting*
Original R1	Original threshold value for color R (near side)	0 to 255	50
Original R2	Original threshold value for color R (center)	0 to 255	50
Original R3	Original threshold value for color R (far side)	0 to 255	50
Original G1	Original threshold value for color G (near side)	0 to 255	50
Original G2	Original threshold value for color G (center)	0 to 255	50
Original G3	Original threshold value for color G (far side)	0 to 255	50
Original B1	Original threshold value for color B (near side)	0 to 255	50
Original B2	Original threshold value for color B (center)	0 to 255	50
Original B3	Original threshold value for color B (far side)	0 to 255	50

3. Reducing the value increases the sensitivity of the sensor allowing a document with more density to be detected, however, the document mat could be detected as an original document.
   If the values vary excessively, mal-detection could occur depending on how a document is placed.

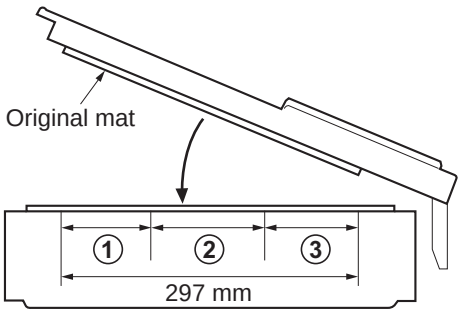


Fig.	Original R/G/B	Original width size range	
①	1	A4R to A3	8.5" to 11"
②	2	B6R to A4R	5.5" to 8.5"
③	3	to B6R	to 5.5"

Figure 1-3-16

4. Press the start key. The value is set.

Completion

Press the stop key. The screen for maintenance item No. is displayed.

Item No.	Description
U100	**Adjusting main high voltage** **Description** Controls the charger roller voltage to optimize the surface potential. **Purpose** To change the setting value to adjust the image if an image failure (background blur, etc.) occurs. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 1. Select an item and press the start key.

Display	Description
Adj AC Bias	Main charger AC bias
Set AC Auto Adj	Setting the AC bias auto adjustment
Set DC Bias	Main charger DC bias
Adj DC Bias	Additional surface potential
Set Low Temp	Pre-charge time at power supply ON
Set Charger Freq	Setting the main charger frequency
Chk Current	Rush current display

Setting: [Adj AC Bias]

1. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys.
   Increasing the setting makes the image lighter; decreasing it makes the image darker.
   The values set vary depending on environments.

Display	Description	Setting range
AC Bias(K)	Main charger AC bias for black	0 to 255

2. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [Set AC Auto Adj]

1. Select On or Off.

Display	Description
On	Turn auto adjustment ON
Off	Turn auto adjustment OFF

   Initial setting: On

2. Press the start key. The setting is set.

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U100</td><td>

Displaying: [Set DC Bias]

1. The current setting is displayed.

Display	Description
DC1 Bias(K)	Main charger DC bias for black (full speed)
DC1 Bias Half(K)	Main charger DC bias for black (half speed)

Setting: [Adj DC Bias]

1. Select the item to be set.
2. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys.
   * : Increasing the setting makes the image lighter; decreasing it makes the image darker.l

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
DC2 Bias(K)	Main charger DC bias for black (full speed)	128 to 127	0
DC2 Bias Half(K)	Main charger DC bias for black (half speed)	128 to 127	0

3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [Set Low Temp]

1. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys.l

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Set Low Temp	Pre-charge time at power supply ON	0 to 6	1

2. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [Set Charger Freq]

1. Select the item to be set.
2. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys.ll

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	
			65ppm	80ppm
Generally	Main charger frequency	7500 to 11280	8745	9160

3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Displaying: [Chk Current]

1. The current setting is displayed.

Display	Description
K	Black rush current

Completion

Press the stop key. The screen for maintenance item No. is displayed.

</td></tr>
</table>

Item No.	Description
U106	**Setting the voltage for the secondary transfer**

Description
Sets the control voltage for the secondary transfer depending on each paper type.
Purpose
To change the setting when any density problems, such as too dark or light, occur.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item to be set.

Display	Description
Light/Normal1	Control voltage for the transfer bias on paper with thickness 52 g/m^2 to 64 g/m^2 and 65 g/m^2 to 75 g/m^2
Normal2/3	Control voltage for the transfer bias on paper with thickness 76 g/m^2 to 105 g/m^2
Heavy1-3	Control voltage for the transfer bias on paper with thickness 106 g/m^2 to 220 g/m^2
Heavy4/5	Control voltage for the transfer bias on paper with thickness 221 g/m^2 to 300 g/m^2
OHP	Control voltage for the transfer bias for transparencies
Bias	Transfer bias value

Setting: [Light/Normal1]
1. Select the item to be set.

Display	Description
1st	Control voltage for the transfer bias for the first side (full speed)
2nd	Control voltage for the transfer bias for the second side (full speed)

2. Select the paper width to be set.
3. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys.

[1st]

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	
			65ppm	80ppm
Width=105	105 mm wide	0 to 255	152	162
Width=210	210 mm wide	0 to 255	147	159
Width=297	297 mm wide	0 to 255	141	151

Item No.	Description
U106	[2nd]

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	
			65ppm	80ppm
Width=105	105 mm wide	0 to 255	141	153
Width=210	210 mm wide	0 to 255	135	144
Width=297	297 mm wide	0 to 255	125	132

4. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [Normal2/3]

1. Select the item to be set.

Display	Description
1st	Control voltage for the transfer bias for the first side (full speed)
2nd	Control voltage for the transfer bias for the second side (full speed)

2. Select the paper width to be set.
3. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys.

[1st]

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	
			65ppm	80ppm
Width=105	105 mm wide	0 to 255	152	162
Width=210	210 mm wide	0 to 255	147	159
Width=297	297 mm wide	0 to 255	141	151

[2nd]

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	
			65ppm	80ppm
Width=105	105 mm wide	0 to 255	141	153
Width=210	210 mm wide	0 to 255	135	144
Width=297	297 mm wide	0 to 255	125	132

4. Press the start key. The value is set.

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U106</td><td>
Setting: [Heavy1-3]
1. Select the item to be set.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>1st Half</td><td>Control voltage for the transfer bias for the first side (half speed)</td></tr>
<tr><td>2nd Half</td><td>Control voltage for the transfer bias for the second side (half speed)</td></tr>
</table>
2. Select the paper width to be set.
3. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys.l
[1st Half]
<table>
<tr><th rowspan="2">Display</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Setting range</th><th colspan="2">Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><th>65ppm</th><th>80ppm</th></tr>
<tr><td>Width=105</td><td>105 mm wide</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>121</td><td>126</td></tr>
<tr><td>Width=210</td><td>210 mm wide</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>121</td><td>126</td></tr>
<tr><td>Width=297</td><td>297 mm wide</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>118</td><td>122</td></tr>
</table>
[2nd Half]
<table>
<tr><th rowspan="2">Display</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Setting range</th><th colspan="2">Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><th>65ppm</th><th>80ppm</th></tr>
<tr><td>Width=105</td><td>105 mm wide</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>115</td><td>119</td></tr>
<tr><td>Width=210</td><td>210 mm wide</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>115</td><td>119</td></tr>
<tr><td>Width=297</td><td>297 mm wide</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>105</td><td>107</td></tr>
</table>
4. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [Heavy4/5]
1. Select the item to be set.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>1st Half</td><td>Control voltage for the transfer bias for the first side (half speed)</td></tr>
<tr><td>2nd Half</td><td>Control voltage for the transfer bias for the second side (half speed)</td></tr>
</table>
2. Select the paper width to be set.
3. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys.l

[1st Half]
<table>
<tr><th rowspan="2">Display</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Setting range</th><th colspan="2">Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><th>65ppm</th><th>80ppm</th></tr>
<tr><td>Width=105</td><td>105 mm wide</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>118</td><td>122</td></tr>
<tr><td>Width=210</td><td>210 mm wide</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>118</td><td>122</td></tr>
<tr><td>Width=297</td><td>297 mm wide</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>110</td><td>112</td></tr>
</table>
</td></tr>
</table>

Item No.	Description
U106	[2nd Half]

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	
			65ppm	80ppm
Width=105	105 mm wide	0 to 255	114	117
Width=210	210 mm wide	0 to 255	114	117
Width=297	297 mm wide	0 to 255	105	106

4. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [OHP]

1. Select the item to be set.
2. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	
			65ppm	80ppm
Width=105	105 mm wide	0 to 255	107	110
Width=210	210 mm wide	0 to 255	107	110
Width=297	297 mm wide	0 to 255	101	103

3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [Bias]

1. Select the item to be set.
2. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	
			65ppm	80ppm
Reverse	Transfer reverse bias (full speed)	0 to 255	164	164
Reverse Half	Transfer reverse bias (half speed)	0 to 255	164	164
Cleaning	Cleaning control value (full speed)	0 to 255	123	131
Cleaning Half	Cleaning control value (half speed)	0 to 255	108	112

3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Supplement

While this maintenance item is being executed, copying from an original is available in interrupt copying mode (which is activated by pressing the system menu key).

Completion

Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U110</td><td>
Checking the drum count

Description
Displays the drum counts for checking.
Purpose
To check the drum status.

Method
1. Press the start key. The current drum counts is displayed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>K</td><td>Drum count value for black</td></tr>
</table>
Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U111</td><td>
Checking the drum drive time

Description
Displays the drum drive time for checking a figure, which is used as a reference when correcting the high voltage based on time.
Purpose
To check the drum status.

Method
1. Press the start key. The drum drive time is displayed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>K</td><td>Drum drive time for black</td></tr>
</table>
Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U117</td><td>
Checking the drum number

Description
Displays the drum number.
Purpose
To check the drum number.

Method
1. Press the start key. The drum number is displayed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>K</td><td>Black drum number</td></tr>
</table>
Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U118</td><td>
Displaying the drum history

Description
Displays the past record of machine number and the drum counter.
Purpose
To check the count value of machine number and the drum counter.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select [K}.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>K</td><td>Drum past record</td></tr>
</table>
The history of a machine number and a drum counter for displayed by three cases.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Machine History1 - 3</td><td>Historical records of the machine number</td></tr>
<tr><td>Cnt History1 - 3</td><td>Historical records of drum counter</td></tr>
</table>
Completion
Press the stop key.
* : The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U119</td><td>
Setting the drum

Description
Sets drum sensitivity.
Purpose
To set the drum after replacing the drum unit or laser scanner unit.
When completed, perform maintenance mode U464, Calibration.
* : The U930 charging roller counter is cleared after execution.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select [Execute].
3. Press the start key. Drum setup is commenced.
4. Turn the main power switch off and on. Allow more than 5 seconds between Off and On.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U122</td><td>
Checking the transfer belt unit number

Description
Displays the number of the transfer belt unit for checking.
Purpose
To check the number of the transfer belt.

Method
1. Press the start key.
The current number of the transfer belt is displayed.

Completion
Press the stop key.
* : The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U127</td><td>
Checking/clearing the transfer count

Description
Displays and clears the counts of the transfer counter.
Purpose
To check the count or drive time after replacement of the transfer belt unit. Also to clear the counts after replacing transfer belt unit.

Method
1. Press the start key. The current counts of the transfer counter is displayed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Belt(Cnt)</td><td>Transfer belt unit count value</td></tr>
<tr><td>Belt(Time)</td><td>Transfer belt unit drive time</td></tr>
<tr><td>Clear</td><td>All transfer count clear</td></tr>
</table>
Clearing
1. Select [Clear].
2. Press the start key. The counter value is cleared.
Clears only the transfer roller. The transfer belt unit is not cleared.

Completion
Press the stop key.
* : The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U128</td><td>
Setting transfer high-voltage timing

Description
Adjusts the ON/OFF timing of transfer high-voltage output.
Purpose
Basically, the setting need not be changed. If any problem such as faulty images or dirt on the back surface occurs, change the setting.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item to set.
3. Change the value using the +/- keys or numeric keys.
<table>
<tr><th rowspan="2">Display</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Setting range</th><th colspan="2">Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><th>65ppm</th><th>80ppm</th></tr>
<tr><td>On Timing 1st</td><td>Transfer ON timing adjustment value (first side)</td><td>-200 to 200</td><td>-13</td><td>-10</td></tr>
<tr><td>Off Timing</td><td>Transfer OFF timing adjustment value</td><td>-200 to 200</td><td>-20</td><td>-21</td></tr>
</table>
* : Increasing the value will deteriorate paper separation as it delays transfer-off timing.
* : Decreasing the value will improve paper separation as it advances transfer-off timing (widening the transfer margins at the trailing edge of paper at ejection).
4. Press the start key. The value is set.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U130</td><td>
Initial setting for the developer

Description
The toner sensor control bias is adjusted so that the sensor output is set as the target value with the initial developer.
Purpose
Automatically executed when the developer unit loaded with the initial developer is replaced.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select [Execute].
3. Press the start key.
Toner installation is started and the control value of the toner sensor is displayed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>K</td><td>Toner sensor control voltage</td></tr>
<tr><td>Execute</td><td>Execute</td></tr>
</table>
Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U131</td><td>

Adjusting the toner sensor control voltage

Description
Adjusts the toner sensor control voltage.
Purpose
If control values are not correctly retrievable due to the EEPROM of the developer unit failure, etc., use manual adjustment and obtain a temporary control value.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item to be set or displayed.

<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Manual</td><td>Toner sensor control voltage manual adjustment</td></tr>
<tr><td>Auto</td><td>Toner sensor control voltage auto adjustment</td></tr>
<tr><td>Mode</td><td>Switching the manual adjustment and auto adjustment</td></tr>
</table>

Setting: [Manual]
1. Select the item to be set.
2. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys.

<table>
<tr><th rowspan="2">Display</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Setting range</th><th colspan="2">Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><th>65ppm</th><th>80ppm</th></tr>
<tr><td>Control(K)</td><td>Toner sensor control voltage</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>125</td><td>133</td></tr>
</table>

3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Displaying: [Auto]
1. The current setting is displayed.

<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Default(K)</td><td>Reference value for toner sensor control voltage</td></tr>
<tr><td>Control(K)</td><td>Toner sensor control voltage after correction</td></tr>
</table>

Setting: [Mode]
1. Select the item to be set.

<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Manual</td><td>Toner sensor control voltage manual adjustment</td></tr>
<tr><td>Auto</td><td>Toner sensor control voltage auto adjustment</td></tr>
</table>

Initial setting: Auto
2. Press the start key. The value is set.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U132</td><td>
Replenishing toner forcibly

Description
Replenishes toner forcibly until the toner sensor output value reaches the toner feed start level.
Purpose
Used when the toner empty is detected frequently.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select [Execute].
3. Press the start key.
* : Toner is replenished until the toner sensor output value reaches the toner feed start level.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Supply(K)</td><td>Toner feed start level</td></tr>
<tr><td>Sensor(K)</td><td>Toner sensor output value</td></tr>
<tr><td>Execute</td><td>Execute</td></tr>
</table>
4. To stop operation, press the stop key.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U135</td><td>
Checking toner motor operation

Description
Drives toner motors.
Purpose
To check the operation of toner motors.

Remarks
When driving the toner motors long time or several times, developer section becomes the toner full and is locked.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select [Toner].
3. Press the start key. The operation starts.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Toner</td><td>Toner motor (TM) is turned on</td></tr>
<tr><td>Hopper</td><td>Toner hopper motor (THM) is turned on</td></tr>
</table>
4. To stop the operation, press the stop key.

Completion
Press the stop key after operation stops. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U136</td><td>
Setting toner near end detection

Description
Sets the level that indicates the number of sheets that can be printed from occurrence of toner near end to toner empty.
Purpose
To change the setting to advance detection of near end if the interval from toner near end to toner empty seems too short.

Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item to be set.
3. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>K</td><td>Setting the level of toner</td><td>0 to 9</td><td>3</td></tr>
</table>
Increasing the setting makes the interval from toner near end to toner empty longer.
Decreasing the setting makes the interval from toner near end to toner empty shorter.
If 0 is set, toner near end will not be detected.
* : Inch model (except for PH model) initial setting: 0

4. Press the start key. The value is set.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

Item No.	Description
U139	**Displaying the temperature and humidity outside the machine** **Description** Displays the detected temperature and humidity outside the machine. **Purpose** To check the temperature and humidity outside the machine. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item.

Display	Description
Ext/Int	Internal/External temperature (°C), External humidity (%)
LSU	Internal temperature around the laser scanner unit (°C)
Developing	Internal temperature around the developer section (°C)

Method: [Ext/Int]

1. The current temperature and humidity are displayed.

Display	Description
External Temp	External temperature (°C)
External Humidity	External humidity (%)
Internal Temp	Internal temperature (°C)

Method: [LSU]

1. The current temperature is displayed.

Display	Description
K	Internal temperature around the laser scanner unit (°C)

Method: [Developing]

1. The current temperature is displayed.

Display	Description
K	Internal temperature around the developer unit (°C)

Completion

Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Item No.	Description
U140	**Displaying developer bias** **Description** Displays and changes various developer bias value. **Purpose** To check or changes the developer bias value. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be set.

Display	Description
Sleeve DC	Developer sleeve roller DC bias
Sleeve AC	Developer sleeve roller AC bias
Mag DC	Developer magnet roller DC bias
Mag AC	Developer magnet roller AC bias
Sleeve Freq	Developer sleeve roller frequency
Sleeve Duty	Developer sleeve roller duty
Mag Duty	Developer magnet roller duty
AC Calib	Executing or setting the AC calibration
Image Preference	Toner density setting
Lead Density	Settings for a countermeasure to a fuser separation failure

Setting: [Sleeve DC]

1. Select the item to be set.
2. Change the setting value using the +/- keys or numeric keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	
			65ppm	80ppm
K	Developer sleeve roller DC bias	0 to 255	84	84

3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [Sleeve AC]

1. Select the item to be set.
2. Change the setting value using the +/- keys or numeric keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	
			65ppm	80ppm
K	Developer sleeve roller AC bias	0 to 255	150	150

3. Press the start key. The value is set.

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U140</td><td>
Setting: [Mag DC]
1. Select the item to be set.
2. Change the setting value using the +/- keys or numeric keys.
<table>
<tr><th rowspan="2">Display</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Setting range</th><th colspan="2">Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><th>65ppm</th><th>80ppm</th></tr>
<tr><td>K</td><td>Developer magnet roller DC bias for black</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>199</td><td>199</td></tr>
</table>
3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [Mag AC]
1. Select the item to be set.
2. Change the setting value using the +/- keys or numeric keys.
<table>
<tr><th rowspan="2">Display</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Setting range</th><th colspan="2">Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><th>65ppm</th><th>80ppm</th></tr>
<tr><td>K</td><td>Developer magnet roller AC bias</td><td>0 to 255</td><td>199</td><td>199</td></tr>
</table>
3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [Sleeve Freq]
1. Select the item to be set.
2. Change the setting value using the +/- keys or numeric keys.
<table>
<tr><th rowspan="2">Display</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Setting range</th><th colspan="2">Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><th>65ppm</th><th>80ppm</th></tr>
<tr><td>Normal</td><td>Developer sleeve roller frequency</td><td>0 to 6200</td><td>4510</td><td>4580</td></tr>
<tr><td>Half</td><td>Developer sleeve roller frequency (half speed)</td><td>0 to 6200</td><td>5345</td><td>5511</td></tr>
</table>
3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [Sleeve Duty]
1. Select the item to be set.
2. Change the setting value using the +/- keys or numeric keys.
<table>
<tr><th rowspan="2">Display</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Setting range</th><th colspan="2">Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><th>65ppm</th><th>80ppm</th></tr>
<tr><td>Normal</td><td>Developer sleeve roller duty</td><td>0 to 99</td><td>43</td><td>43</td></tr>
</table>
3. Press the start key. The value is set.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U140</td><td>
Setting: [Mag Duty]
1. Select the item to be set.
2. Change the setting value using the +/- keys or numeric keys.
<table>
<tr><th rowspan="2">Display</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Setting range</th><th colspan="2">Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><th>65ppm</th><th>80ppm</th></tr>
<tr><td>Normal</td><td>Developer magnet roller duty</td><td>0 to 99</td><td>68</td><td>68</td></tr>
</table>
3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Method: [AC Calib]
1. Select the item.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Calibration</td><td>Executing the AC calibration (Developer AC calibration setting)
Executing timing
1. When the setup at high altitude place.
2. Execute when replacing the developer unit or drum unit
3. Execute at the time of developing leak outbreak
4. When the density of solid image is dropped after the AC calibration.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Magnification</td><td>AC calibration target bias value setting
Executing timing
1. Developing bias setting when developing leak occurs after AC calibration practice</td></tr>
<tr><td>High Altitude</td><td>Mode setting for AC calibration bias control
Executing timing
1. In case the density of solid image levels drop is not improved even if execute AC calibration (setting at high altitude)</td></tr>
</table>
Method: [Calibration]
1. Turn the items to implement to on.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>K</td><td>Change On/Off of Black developer</td></tr>
<tr><td>Type</td><td>High altitude grain mode setting</td></tr>
<tr><td>Execute</td><td>Executing the Calibration</td></tr>
</table>
* : When the density of solid image is dropped, select "Type" and chose "+1". (High altitude grain mode)
2. Select [Execute].
3. Press the start key. AC calibration is executed.
4. Turn the main power switch off and on. Allow more than 5 seconds between Off and On.
* : When an error occurs, an error code is displayed.
Setting: [Type]
1. Change the setting value using the +/- keys or numeric keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>Continue the present setting and execute AC calibration</td></tr>
<tr><td>+1</td><td>High altitude grain mode: Perform AC calibration in a high altitude installation and improve that image density becomes lighter</td></tr>
<tr><td>+2</td><td>Cancel high altitude grain mode setting and execute AC calibration</td></tr>
</table>
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U140</td><td>
2. Select [Execute].
3. Press the start key.

Setting: [Magnification]
1. Select the item to be set.
2. Change the setting value using the +/- keys or numeric keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>K</td><td>Set it at the time of Black developing leak outbreak</td><td>-10 to1 5</td><td>12</td></tr>
</table>
3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Method: [High Altitude]

1. Select Mode1 or Mode2
I
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Mode1</td><td>Execute AC calibration by normal bias control</td></tr>
<tr><td>Mode2</td><td>If print density is low in an installation at high altitude, execute calibration by fixing the bias potential.</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: Mode1
2. Press the start key. The value is set.
3. Turn the main power switch off and on. Allow more than 5 seconds between Off and On.

Method: [Image Preference]
1. Select the Copy.
2. Change the value using the +/- or numeric keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>Copy</td><td>Setting toner density at copying</td><td>-1 to +1</td><td>0</td></tr>
</table>
* : 1: Low 0: Normal +1: Deep

Setting: [Lead Density]
Purpose
Activates settings for the user who frequently uses a document with a solid black printing at the leading edge (Such a document tends to entwine around the fuser roller).

1. Select the item to be set.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>On</td><td>mode is performed</td></tr>
<tr><td>Off</td><td>mode is not performed</td></tr>
</table>
* : Initial setting: Off
2. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U147</td><td>

Setting for toner applying operation

Description
Sets the mode for removing charged toner in the developing unit (T7 control: Toner applying operation). Defines the action that the toner accumulated on the developer blade is sent back in the developer unit (done by the vibration motor).
Purpose
The setting can be changed to reduce the toner applying quantity. Performed to change the occurrence of the control of the vibration motor.
If the charged toner stays inside the developing unit, density decreases.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item to be set.

Display	Description
Timing	Setting timing to transit to toner applying
Mode	Settings for toner applying operation
Upper Limit	Upper limit printing ratio of toner applying quantity with each mode
Minimum	Toner layer width when cleaning mode is selected

Setting: [Timing]
1. Change the setting value using the +/- keys or numeric keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	
			65 ppm	80 ppm
Paper Int	Setting number of pages to transit to toner applying (between pages)	0 to 100	65	80
Job End	Setting number of pages to transit to toner applying (job completed)	0 to 100	8	8

2. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [Mode]
1. Select the mode.

Display	Description
Mode0	Less consumption of toner than a regular toner applying operation
Mode1	Executes toner applying with the regular amount of toner

Initial setting; Mode1
2. Press the start key. The setting is set.

</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U147</td><td>
Setting: [Upper Limit]
1. Change the setting value using the +/- keys or numeric keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>Value</td><td>Upper limit printing ratio of toner applying quantity with each mode (%)</td><td>0 to 2.0</td><td>2.0</td></tr>
</table>
Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [Minimum]
1. Change the setting value using the +/- keys or numeric keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>Value</td><td>Toner layer width when cleaning mode is selected (mm)</td><td>0 to 30</td><td>10</td></tr>
</table>
2. Press the start key. The value is set.

Completion
Press the stop key.
The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U148</td><td>
Setting drum refresh mode

Description
Selects the mode used in drum refreshing
Purpose
Change settings when drum refreshing is too frequently executed.

Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the mode.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>Normal*1</td><td>Automatic drum refreshing setting</td><td>0 to 3</td><td>2</td></tr>
<tr><td>Dew Conden-sation*2</td><td>Dew condensation drum refreshing setting</td><td>0 to 3</td><td>0</td></tr>
</table>
* 1: 0: Off / 1: Short / 2: Standard / 3: Long
*2 : 0:Mode0/ 1:Mode1/ 2:Mode2/ 3:Mode3
Larger the number, more the times of the refresh.
3. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Completion
Press the stop key.
* : The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U155</td><td>

Checking sensors for toner

Description
Displays the toner sensor output value.
Purpose
To check the output value when any image problems occur.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item to be display.

<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Waste Toner</td><td>Control voltage value of the waste toner sensor</td></tr>
<tr><td>Toner</td><td>Control voltage value and replenishment level of toner sensor</td></tr>
</table>

Method: [Waste Toner]
1. Check the status of sensor. The current value is displayed.

<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Full</td><td>Waste toner sensor 1 (WTS1)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Near Full</td><td>Waste toner sensor 2 (WTS2)</td></tr>
</table>

Method: [Toner]
1. Check the status of sensor. The current value is displayed.

<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Sensor(K)</td><td>Toner sensor K output value</td></tr>
<tr><td>Supply(K)</td><td>Toner replenishment level for black</td></tr>
</table>

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U156</td><td>

Setting the toner replenishment level

Description
Sets the toner replenishment level.
Purpose
To change settings according to the original image.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item to be set.

Display	Description
Supply	Setting the toner replenishment level
Empty	Setting the toner empty level

Method: [Supply]
1. Select the item to be set.
2. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.
   Increasing the setting makes the image lighter; decreasing it makes the image darker.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
K	Toner replenishment level	0 to 900	512

3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Method: [Empty]
1. Select the item to be set.
2. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.
   Increasing the setting makes ‘toner empty’ appear later and decreasing it makes ‘toner empty’ appear earlier.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
K	Toner empty level	0 to 1023	100

3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U157</td><td>
Checking the developer drive time

Description
Displays the developer drive time for checking a figure, which is used as a reference when correcting the toner control.
Purpose
To check the developer drive time after replacing the developer unit.

Method
1. Press the start key. The developer drive time is displayed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>K</td><td>Developer drive time</td></tr>
</table>
Completion
Press the stop key.
* : The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U158</td><td>
Checking the developer count

Description
Displays the developer count for checking.
Purpose
To check the developer unit status.

Method
1. Press the start key. The current developer counts is displayed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>K</td><td>Developer count value</td></tr>
</table>
Completion
Press the stop key.
* : The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

Item No.	Description
U161	**Setting the fuser control temperature** **Description** Changes the fuser control temperature. **Purpose** Normally no change is necessary. However, can be used to prevent curling or creasing of paper, or solve a fuser problem on thick paper. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be set.

Display	Description
Warm Up	Control temperature except at printing
Print	Control temperature during printing
Low Power Mode	Heating power reduction control
Belt Mode	Settings against broken fusing belt control
Ready Time Adjust	Setting the Temperature to Activate Aging

Setting: [Warm Up]

1. Select the item to be set.
2. Change the setting value using the +/- keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	
			65ppm	80ppm
Ready (Center)	Control temperature at displaying Ready (Center)	130 to 200 (°C)	165	165
Ready (Edge)	Control temperature at displaying Ready (Edge)	100 to 200 (°C)	140	140
Ready (Press)	Control temperature at displaying Ready (Press)	0 to 200 (°C)	30	30
Drive (Center)	Stable temperature during driving (Center)	130 to 200 (°C)	170	175
Wait (Center)	Stable temperature during halt (Center)	130 to 200 (°C)	165	170
Low Power (Press)	Control temperature at low power consumption (Press)	0 to 200 (°C)	130	130
Full Speed Shift(Center)	Full speed shift temperature (Center)	0 to 200 (°C)	50	50
Pressure (Press)	Pressurizing beginning temperature (Press)	0 to 200 (°C)	150	155

3. Press the start key. The value is set.

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U161</td><td>

Setting: [Print]

1. Select the item to be set.
2. Change the setting value using the +/- keys.

<table>
<tr><th rowspan="2">Display</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Setting range</th><th colspan="2">Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><th>65ppm</th><th>80ppm</th></tr>
<tr><td>Full Speed Print(Center)</td><td>Temperature at maximum print speed (Center)</td><td>130 to 200 (°C)</td><td>165</td><td>170</td></tr>
<tr><td>Duplex Shift (Center)</td><td>Temperature at duplex printing (Center)</td><td>-20 to 20 (°C)</td><td>0</td><td>0</td></tr>
</table>

3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [Low Power Mode]

1. Select the item to be set.

<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Mode0</td><td>Present state control mode (Usually not used)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Mode1</td><td>Fuser control temperature reduction mode (For normal users)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Mode2</td><td>Large volume output mode (For users who repeatedly print approximately 1500 sheets at a time)</td></tr>
</table>

Initial setting: Mode0

2. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Setting: [Belt Mode]

1. Select the item to be set.

<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>On</td><td>Belt mode is performed</td></tr>
<tr><td>Off</td><td>Belt mode is not performed</td></tr>
</table>

* : Initial setting: Off

* : On: The fuser motor should be deactivated after 15 minutes in Ready state so that the fuser belt refrains from revolving.

2. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Setting: [Ready Time Adjust]

1. Change the setting value using the +/- or numeric keys.

<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>Value</td><td>Compensating Values for the Activating Temperature for Low-temperature Aging: (α)</td><td>0 to 2</td><td>2</td></tr>
</table>

2. Press the start key. The setting is set.

* : Reducing the alpha value lowers the temperature at which aging is activated following the quiet mode has been stable.

* : Lowering the alpha value could deteriorate the fuser performance due to aging would not be activated during quiet mode.

</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U161</td><td>
<table>
<tr><td>Temperature to Activate Aging</td><td>Less than 11+α°C</td><td>Less than 16+α°C</td><td>16+α°C or more</td></tr>
<tr><td>Time for Low-temperature Aging</td><td>45 sec</td><td>35 sec</td><td>0 sec</td></tr>
</table>
Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U164</td><td>
Fuser Unit History

Description
Displays the past record of machine number and the fuser counter.
Purpose
To check the count value of machine number and the fuser counter.

Method
1. Press the start key.
The history of a machine number and a fuser counter is displayed by three cases.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Machine History1 - 3</td><td>Historical records of the machine number</td></tr>
<tr><td>Cnt History1 - 3</td><td>Historical records of fuser counter</td></tr>
</table>
Completion
Press the stop key.
The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U165</td><td>
Fuser Unit Number

Description
Displays the fuser unit number.
Purpose
To check the fuser unit number.

Method
1. Press the start key. The fuser unit number is displayed.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U167</td><td>
Checking the fuser count

Description
Displays the fuser count for checking.
Purpose
To check the fuser count or drive time after replacement of the fuser unit.

Method
1. Press the start key. The fuser count is displayed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Cnt</td><td>Fuser unit count value</td></tr>
<tr><td>Release(Time)</td><td>Fuser unit drive time (release)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Press(Time)</td><td>Fuser unit drive time (press)</td></tr>
</table>
Completion
Press the stop key.
* : The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U169</td><td>
Checking/setting the fuser power source

Description
Displays and settings the reference voltage of the fuser IH PWB.
Purpose
To check the reference voltage.
* : When U021 is being executed, set the same voltage with the voltage of the IH control PWB.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item to be set.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Set Fuser</td><td>Destination setting for Fuser</td></tr>
</table>
Setting: [Set Fuser]
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th></tr>
<tr><td>Mode</td><td>Reference voltage</td><td>1 to 4</td></tr>
</table>
1: 100 V specifications 2: 200 V specifications 3: 120 V specifications
4: 110 V specifications
3. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Completion
Press the stop key.
* : The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U199</td><td>
Displaying fuser heater temperature

Description
Displays the detected fuser temperature.
Purpose
To check the fuser temperature.

Method
1. Press the start key. The fuser temperature is displayed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Heat Roller Edge1</td><td>Heat roller edge temperature (°C)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Heat Roller Edge2</td><td>Heat roller edge temperature (°C)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Heat Roller Edge3</td><td>Heat roller edge temperature (°C)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Heat Roller Center</td><td>Heat roller center temperature (°C)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Press Roller Center</td><td>Press roller center temperature (°C)</td></tr>
</table>
Completion
Press the stop key.
* : The screen for selecting a maintenance mode No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U200</td><td>
Turning all LEDs on

Description
Turn all the LEDs on the operation panel on.
Purpose
To check if all the LEDs on the operation panel light.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select [Execute].
3. Press the start key.All the LEDs on the operation panel light.
4. Press the stop key. The LEDs turn off.

Completion
Press the stop key.
* : The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

Item No.	Description
U201	**Initializing the touch panel** **Description** Adjust touch panel detecting positions. **Purpose** When the panel PWB or the operation panel is replaced or if the detecting positions are not aligned, perform this simulation to correct and confirm. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the [Initialize] or [Check].

Display	Description
Initialize	Execute the correction of the touch panel display position.
Check	Confirm the display position of touch panel.

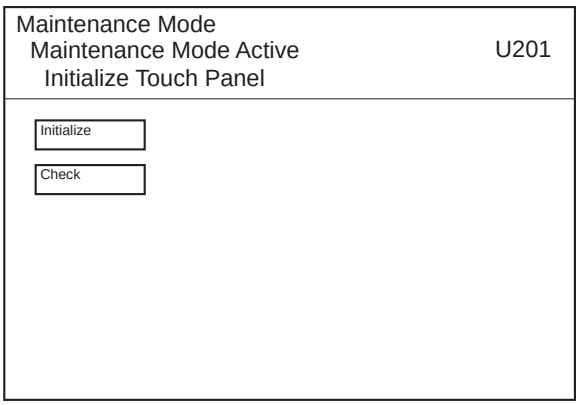


Figure 1-3-17

Method: [Initialize]
1. Press the start key.
2. Tap the center of the + sign.
3. Press the center of the [+] key displayed next.
   * : Press it using a tool with a fine tip.

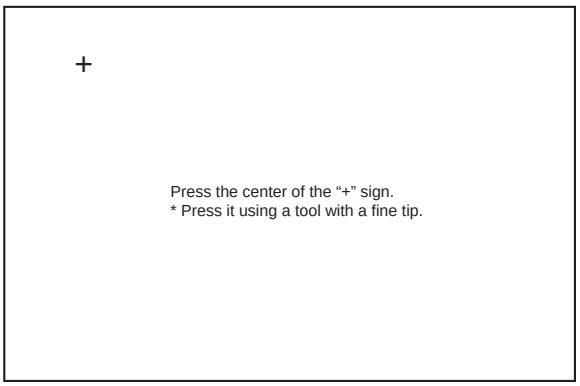


Figure 1-3-18

Item No.	Description
U201	]

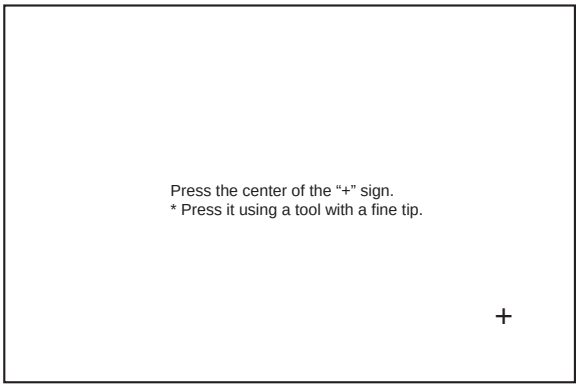


Figure 1-3-19

4. If two “ ◉ ” signs appear, press the both points at the same time.
   * : While pressing down one of " ◉ " sign, press the other " ◉ " sign. Setting values are obtained at the time when two " ◉ " signs are pressed at the same time.
   * : Press with the tip of your fingers (Not your fingernails).

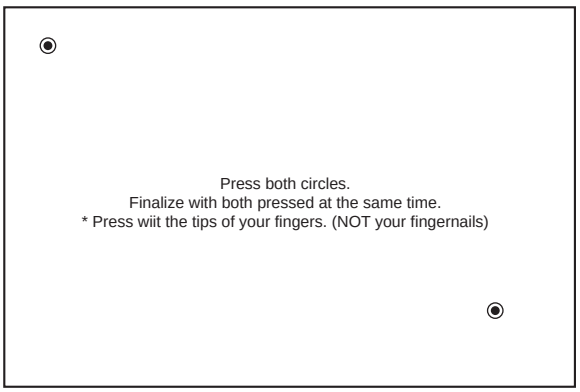


Figure 1-3-20

5. Press the center of two " ◉ " signs displayed next at the same time.

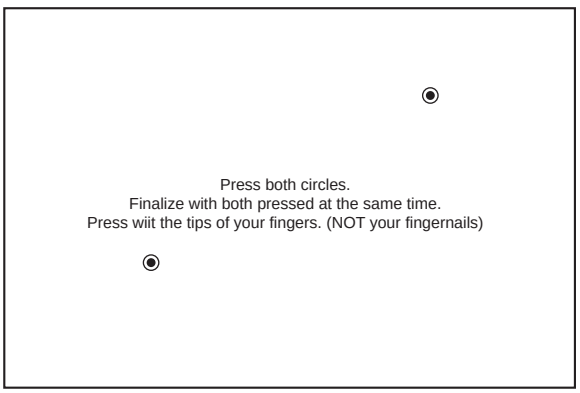


Figure 1-3-21

Item No.	Description
U201	6. Press the center of “+” sign displayed, as step 2 7. Repeat three times.

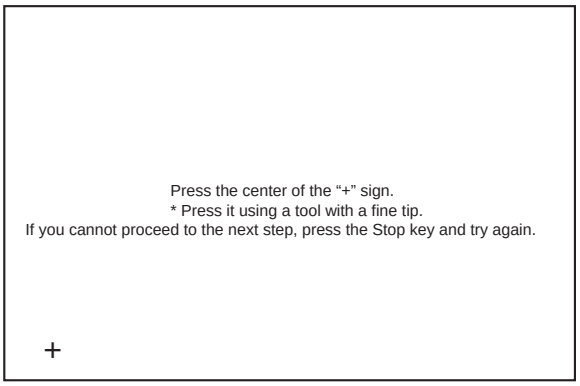


Figure 1-3-22

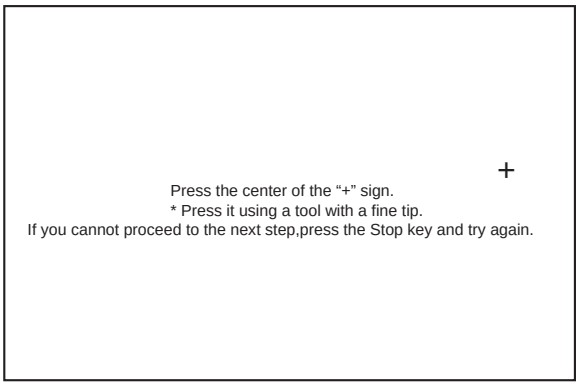


Figure 1-3-23

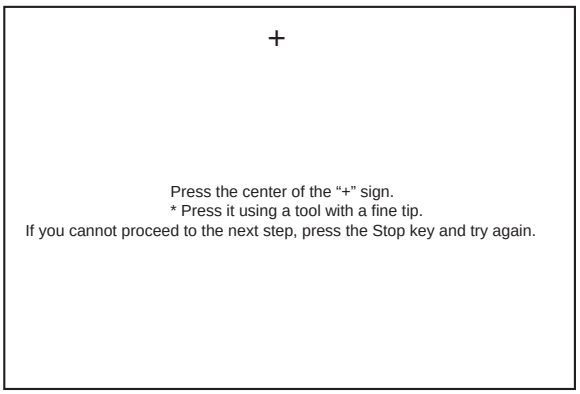


Figure 1-3-24

Item No.	Description
U201	8. After completing the setting, “Initialize Completed.” is displayed and entering Check mode.

Figure 1-3-25

Method: [Check
Single Tap Check

1. Press the start key.
2. Press the center of three “+” signs and confirm the display positions.
   * : Press it using a tool with a fine tip (touch panel pen etc).

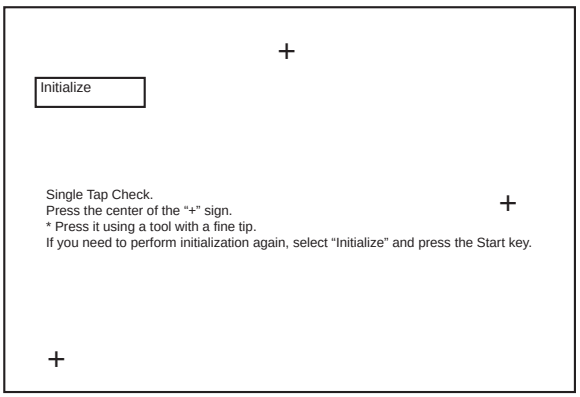


Figure 1-3-26

3. Make sure that the gap from coordinates X and Y is 6 or less, respectively.

   * : If the setting values are not aligned, select “Initialize” and press the Start key to revert to step 1.

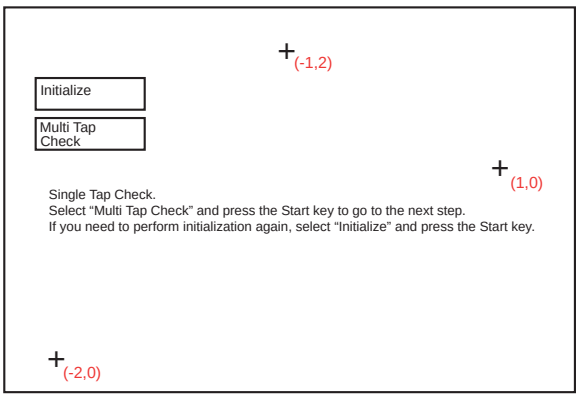
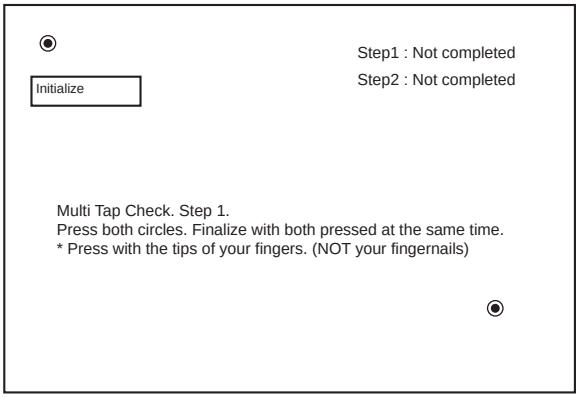
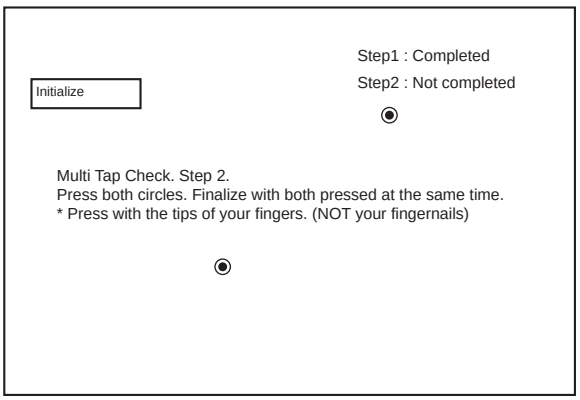
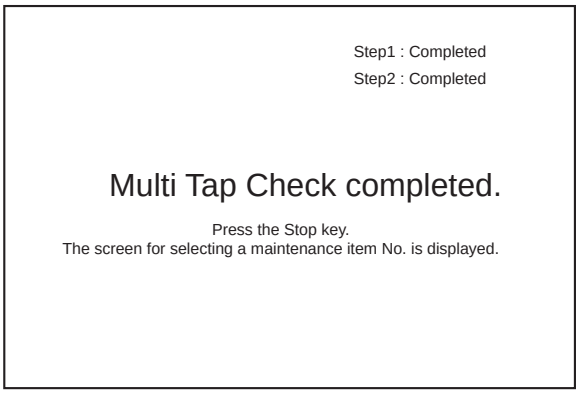
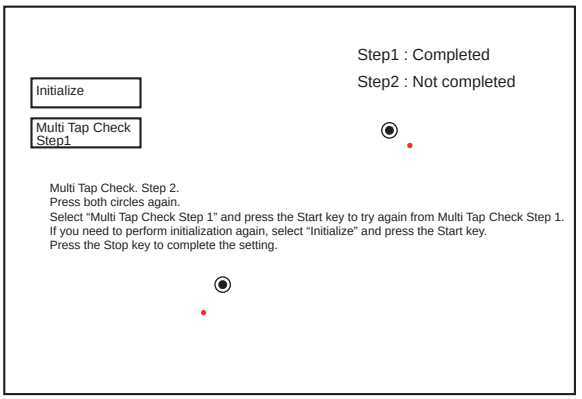


Figure 1-3-27

Item No.	Description
U201	**Multi Tap check** 1. Select “Multi tap check”, and press the start key. 2. Press two “ ◉ ” signs at the same time. (Step1) * : If the detecting values are not within the setting values, pressed detecting positions are displayed by red points.  **Figure 1-3-28** 3. Press two “ ◉ ” signs displayed next at the same time. (Step2) 4. If the detecting values are within the setting values, Step1 and Step2 become “Completed”.  **Figure 1-3-29** 5. If “Multi tap check completed.” is displayed, the checking process is completed successfully.  **Figure 1-3-30**

Item No.	Description
U201	* : If the detecting values are not within the setting values, pressed detecting positions are displayed by red points. And “Multi tap check Step 1" button is displayed. * : Select “Initialize” and press the Start key to revert to “Initialize”. * : Select “Multi tap check Step 1” and press the Start key to revert to “Multi tap check”.  **Figure 1-3-31** **Completion** Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U202</td><td>

Setting the KMAS host monitoring system

Description
Initializes or operates the KMAS host monitoring system.
This is an optional device which is currently supported only by Japanese specification machines, so no setting is necessary.
Purpose
Performed at installation, periodic maintenance, and/or repair.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item.

<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Init/Set TEL No.</td><td>Initialization/Phone Nbr. se</td></tr>
<tr><td>Call Service End</td><td>Outgoing at the end of service activities</td></tr>
</table>

Method: [Init/Set TEL No.]
1. Select the item to be input.

<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>TEL No. 1</td><td>Sales companies</td></tr>
<tr><td>TEL No. 2</td><td>Call center</td></tr>
</table>

2. Input the telephone number using the numeric keys.
3. Press the start key. The setting is set.
4. Select [Initialize].
5. Select [Execute].
6. Press the start key. Communication with the host initiated.
7. The result of communication will be displayed. (Refer to the result.)

Method: [Call Service End]
1. Select [Execute].
2. Press the start key. Communication with the host initiated.
3. The result of communication will be displayed. (Refer to the result.)

Result table

<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>OK</td><td>Communication properly terminated.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="5">NG</td><td>Communication error (Nbr. of calls exceeded)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Communication error (Communication timeout)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Communication error (Communication trial timeout)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Communication error (Other)</td></tr>
<tr><td>KMAS unreachable</td></tr>
</table>

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U203</td><td>
Checking DP operation

Description
Simulates the original conveying operation separately in the DP.
Purpose
To check the DP operation.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Place an original in the DP if running this simulation with paper.
3. Select the speed to be operated.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Normal Speed</td><td>Normal reading (600 dpi)</td></tr>
<tr><td>High Speed</td><td>High-speed reading</td></tr>
</table>
4. Select the item to be operated.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>CCD ADP</td><td>With paper, single-sided original of CCD</td></tr>
<tr><td>CIS</td><td>With paper, double-sided original of CIS</td></tr>
<tr><td>CCD ADP (Non-P)</td><td>Without paper, single-sided original of CCD (continuous operation)</td></tr>
<tr><td>CIS (Non-P)</td><td>Without paper, double-sided original of CIS (continuous operation)</td></tr>
</table>
5. Press the start key. The operation starts.
6. To stop continuous operation, press the stop key.

Completion
Press the stop key.
* : The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U204</td><td>

Setting the presence or absence of a key card or key counter

Description
Sets the presence or absence of the optional key card or key counter.
Purpose
To run this maintenance item if a key card or key counter is installed.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item to be set.

Display	Description
Device	Sets the presence or absence of the key card or key counter
Message	Sets the message when optional equipment is not installed

Setting: [Device]
1. Select the optional counter to be installed.

Display	Description
Key-Card	The key card is installed
Key-Counter	The key counter is installed
Off	Not installed

Initial setting: Off
2. Press the start key. The setting is set.
3. Turn the main power switch off and on. Allow more than 5 seconds between Off and On.

Setting: [Message]
1. Select the [Key Device] or [Coin Vender].

Display	Description
Key Device	Select the prioritized display mode of the login dialog as the key device.
Coin Vender	Select the coin vender as the prioritized display of the login dialog.

* : Initial setting: Coin Vender
2. Press the start key. The setting is set.
3. Turn the main power switch off and on. Allow more than 5 seconds between Off and On.

</td></tr>
</table>

Item No.	Description
U206	**Setting the presence or absence of a coin vender** **Description** Sets the presence or absence of the optional coin vender. This is an optional device which is currently supported only by Japanese specification machines. **Purpose** To run this maintenance item if a coin vender is installed. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be set.

Display	Description
On/Off Config	Sets the presence or absence of the coin vender
No Coin Action	Behavior when change runs out during copying
Price	Charge per copy by size and color
Boot Mode	Setting activation mode
Apl Charge Mode	Extended charge unit

Setting: [On/Off Config]

1. Select On or Off.

Display	Description
On	The coin vender is installed
Off	The coin vender is not installed

Initial setting: Off

2. Press the start key. The setting is set.
3. Turn the main power switch off and on. Allow more than 5 seconds between Off and On.

Setting: [No Coin Action]

1. Select the item.

Display	Description
All Clear	All clear is performed
Auto Clear	Auto clear is performed
Off	Clear is not performed

Initial setting: Off

2. Press the start key. The setting is set.
3. Turn the main power switch off and on. Allow more than 5 seconds between Off and On.

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U206</td><td>
Setting: [Price]
1. Select the item to be set.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Normal</td><td>Charge setting: Normal</td></tr>
<tr><td>AD</td><td>Charge setting: Commercial</td></tr>
<tr><td>Print</td><td>Charge setting: Print</td></tr>
<tr><td>Apl</td><td>Charge setting: Extended</td></tr>
</table>
Setting: [Normal / AD]
1. Select the item to be set.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>B/W</td><td>Black & White</td></tr>
</table>
2. Select the paper size to be set.
3. Change the setting value using the +/- keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>A3-Ledger</td><td>A3/Ledger size</td><td>0 to 300</td><td>10</td></tr>
<tr><td>B4</td><td>B4 size</td><td>0 to 300</td><td>10</td></tr>
<tr><td>Card</td><td>Post card</td><td>0 to 300</td><td>10</td></tr>
<tr><td>Other</td><td>Other</td><td>0 to 300</td><td>10</td></tr>
</table>
In 10-yen increments
Value of 0 allows non-restricted copying. (At a periodic maintenance, etc.)
4. Press the start key. The value is set.
5. Turn the main power switch off and on. Allow more than 5 seconds between Off and On.

Setting: [Print]
1. Select the item.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>B/W</td><td>Black & White</td></tr>
</table>
2. Select the paper size to be set.
</td></tr>
</table>

Item No.	Description
U206	3. Change the setting value using the +/- keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
A3-Ledger	A3/Ledger size	0 to 300	10
B4	B4 size	0 to 300	10
Card	Post card	0 to 300	10
Other	Other	0 to 300	10

In 10-yen increments
Value of 0 allows non-restricted copying. (At a periodic maintenance, etc.)

Setting: [Apl]

1. Select the item to be set.
2. Change the setting value using the +/- keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Apl1	Expanded charging unit 1	0 to 300	10
Apl2	Expanded charging unit 2	0 to 300	10
Apl3	Expanded charging unit 3	0 to 300	10
Apl4	Expanded charging unit 4	0 to 300	10
Apl5	Expanded charging unit 5	0 to 300	10

3. Press the start key. The value is set.
4. Turn the main power switch off and on. Allow more than 5 seconds between Off and On.

Setting: [Boot Mode]

1. Select the item.

Display	Description
Normal	Assign activation to normal mode.
Copy Service	Assign activation to copy service display.

Initial setting: Copy Service

2. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Setting: [Apl Charge Mode]

1. Select the item.

Display	Description
On	The extended charge unit is used.
Off	The extended charge unit is not used.

Initial setting: Off

2. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Completion

Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Item No.	Description
U207	**Checking the operation panel keys** **Description** Checks operation of the operation panel keys. **Purpose** To check operation of all the keys and LEDs on the operation panel. **Method** 1. Press the start key. The screen for executing is displayed. 2. [Count0] is displayed and the left most LED on the operation panel lights. 3. As the keys lined up in the same line as the lit indicator are pressed in the order from the top to the bottom, the figure shown on the touch panel increases in increments of 1. When all the keys in that line are pressed and if there are any LEDs corresponding to the keys in the line on the immediate right, the top LED in that line will light. 4. When all the keys on the operation panel have been pressed, all the LEDs light for up to 10 seconds. **Completion** Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
U208	**Setting the paper size for the side deck** **Description** Sets the size of paper used in side deck. **Purpose** To change the setting when installing the side deck or the size of paper used in the side deck is changed. **Setting** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the paper size (A4, B5 or Letter). Initial setting: Letter (Inch specifications) A4 (Metric specifications) 3. Press the start key. The setting is set. 4. Turn the main power switch off and on. Allow more than 5 seconds between Off and On.

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U209</td><td>
Set RTC (Real Time Clock) Date

Description
Assign a date and time to RTC.
Purpose
Used to assign a date and time to RTC when “Time for Maintenance T” is displayed after C0840 is detected.

Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item to be set.
3. Change the setting value using the +/- keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Year</td><td>Setting the year</td></tr>
<tr><td>Month</td><td>Setting the month</td></tr>
<tr><td>Day</td><td>Setting the day</td></tr>
<tr><td>Hour</td><td>Setting the hour</td></tr>
<tr><td>Minute</td><td>Setting the minute</td></tr>
<tr><td>Second</td><td>Setting the second</td></tr>
</table>
4. Press the start key. The value is set.
* : Perform U906 to clear “Time for Maintenance T" after making setting.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U221</td><td>
Setting the USB host lock function

Description
Specifies ON/OFF the USB host lock function. Setting this to ON causes the machine to be unable to recognize the device connected to the USB host.
Purpose
Set according to the preference of the user.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select [Host Lock].
3. Select On or Off.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>On</td><td>USB host lock function ON</td></tr>
<tr><td>Off</td><td>USB host lock function OFF</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: Off
4. Press the start key. The setting is set.
5. Turn the main power switch off and on. Allow more than 5 seconds between Off and On.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U222</td><td>
Setting the IC card type

Description
Sets the type of IC card.
Purpose
To change the type of IC card.

Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Other</td><td>Sets the type of IC cards to other than SSFC</td></tr>
<tr><td>SSFC</td><td>Sets the type of IC cards to SSFC</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: Other
3. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U223</td><td>
Operation panel lock

Description
Sets the operation panel lock function.
Purpose
This is performed to inhibit operating and canceling the system menu on the operation panel which may be done by others then an administrator.

Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Unlock</td><td>Release the lock of the operation from the system menu</td></tr>
<tr><td>Partial Lock 1</td><td>The system menu entry and input/output related settings are locked</td></tr>
<tr><td>Partial Lock 2</td><td>The system menu entries, input/output related settings, and Job-execution-related settings are locked</td></tr>
<tr><td>Partial Lock 3</td><td>The system menu entries, input/output related settings, Job-execution-related settings, and paper related settings are locked</td></tr>
<tr><td>Lock</td><td>Lock the operation from the system menu and job cancel</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: Unlock

3. Press the start key. The setting is set.
<table>
<tr><th>Item</th><th>Partial Lock 1</th><th>Lock</th></tr>
<tr><td>Entering maintenance mode</td><td>Prohibited</td><td>Prohibited</td></tr>
<tr><td>Entering system menu</td><td>Prohibited</td><td>Prohibited</td></tr>
<tr><td>Transmission/transmission from document boxes</td><td>Prohibited</td><td>Prohibited</td></tr>
<tr><td>Entering addressbook add/edit</td><td>Prohibited</td><td>Prohibited</td></tr>
<tr><td>Entering document box add/edit</td><td>Prohibited</td><td>Prohibited</td></tr>
<tr><td>Pressing stop key</td><td>Permitted</td><td>Prohibited</td></tr>
<tr><td>Pressing status/job cancel</td><td>Permitted</td><td>Prohibited</td></tr>
<tr><td>Disconnecting FAX lines</td><td>Permitted</td><td>Prohibited</td></tr>
</table>
* : The language selection is not displayed if the partial locks 1-2-3-Lock is set.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U224</td><td>

Panel sheet extension

Description
Changes the image data and the message of the opening screen at the machine startup and the image data and the message of the service call screen to user specified data.
Purpose
Set according to the preference of the user.

Setting
1. Write the image data or the message data to the USB memory.
2. Insert USB memory in USB memory slot of the machine.
3. Turn the main power switch on.
4. Enter the maintenance item.
5. Press the start key.
6. Select the [Install] or [UnInstall].

Display	Description
Install	Installs the image data or the message data
UnInstall	Restores the original image data or message data

7. Select the item.

Display	Description	Display area
Opening Img	Startup screen	Entire start display
Call Img	Service call screen	Graphic display area
Home Menu Img	Home Menu screen	Home Menu display area
Call Msg Top	Service call message 1	Message display area (top)
Call Msg Detail	Service call message 2	Message display area (descriptive area)

8. Press the start key. Installation or uninstallation is started.
9. When normally completed, [OK] is displayed.

Supplement 1
File information

Description	File name	Image size (in pixels)	File format
Startup screen	opening_ext_image.png	Length: 480 Width: 800	PNG
Service call screen	callwin_ext_image.png	Length: 200 Width: 180	PNG
Home Menu screen	menu_background.png	Length: 480 Width: 800	PNG
Service call message 1	callwin_ext_mes_top.txt	-	TEXT (Unicode)
Service call message 2	callwin_ext_mes_detail.txt	-	TEXT (Unicode)

</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U224</td><td>
Supplement 2
Displaying start display
The pre-installed graphics file is displayed at power on or recovering from sleeping.
Graphics display on service call display
The pre-installed graphics file is displayed at a service call.
How to change the message
Entering #562 (4 letters) using the numeric keypad during a service call display will let service call messages 1 and 2.
How to reset the message display
Reverting the maintenance mode will automatically reset the message to the previous.

Caution
The graphics file for start display must be opaque. (To avoid the background from overlapping at recovering from sleeping.)
The total size of the files installable is approximately 4 MB.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U234</td><td>
Setting punch destination

Description
Sets the destination of punch unit of 4000-sheet finisher.
Purpose
To be set when installing a different punch unit from the destination of the machine.

Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the destination.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Auto</td><td>Conforms to destination settings.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Japan Metric</td><td>Metric (Japan) specifications</td></tr>
<tr><td>Inch</td><td>Inch (North America) specifications</td></tr>
<tr><td>Europe Metric</td><td>Metric (Europe) specifications</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: Inch (Inch specifications)/ Europe Metric (Metric specifications)
3. Press the start key. The setting is set.
4. Turn the main power switch off and on. Allow more than 5 seconds between Off and On.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U237</td><td>

Setting finisher stack quantity

Description
Sets the number of sheets of each stack on the main tray and on the middle tray in 4000-sheet finisher.
Purpose
To change the setting when a stack malfunction has occurred.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item to be set.

Display	Description
Main Tray	Number of sheets of stack on the main tray
Middle Tray	Number of sheets of stack on the middle tray for staple mode

Setting: [Main Tray]
1. Change the setting using the +/- keys or numeric keys.

Display	Description
0	When stapling paper less than B4 size, paper full is detected when 4,000 sheets are output. When stapling B4 size paper, or larger, paper full is detected when 1500 sheets are output.
1	When stapling 30 sheets or less, paper full is detected after 150 sets or 1500 sheets are output, whichever is faster.. When stapling 31 sheets or more, paper full is detected after 150 sets or 4,000 sheets are output, whichever is faster.

Initial setting: 0
2. Press the start key. The setting is set.
3. Turn the main power switch off and on. Allow more than 5 seconds between Off and On.

Setting: [Middle Tray]
1. Change the setting using the +/- keys or numeric keys.

Display	Description
0	Number of sheets of stack on the middle tray for staple mode: 65 sheets
1	Number of sheets of stack on the middle tray for staple mode: 30 sheets

Initial setting: 0
Number of sheets of stack on the internal tray for non-staple copying: 10 sheets
2. Press the start key. The setting is set.
3. Turn the main power switch off and on. Allow more than 5 seconds between Off and On.

</td></tr>
</table>

Item No.	Description
U240	**Checking the operation of the finisher** **Description** Turn each motor and solenoid of 4000-sheet finisher ON. **Purpose** To check the operation of each motor and solenoid of the 4000-sheet finisher. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be checked.

Display	Description
Motor	Checking the motor of the document finisher
Solenoid	Checking the solenoid of the document finisher
Mail Box	Checking the motor of the mailbox
Booklet	Checking the motor of the center-folding unit

Method: [Motor]
1. Select the item to be operated.
2. Press the start key. The operation starts.

Display	Description
Feed In(H)	DF paper entry motor (DFPEM) is turned on at high speed
Feed In(L)	DF paper entry motor (DFPEM) is turned on at low speed
Middle(H)	DF middle motor (DFMM) is turned on at high speed
Middle(L)	DF middle motor (DFMM) is turned on at low speed
Eject(H)	DF eject motor (DFEM) is turned on at high speed
Eject(L)	DF eject motor (DFEM) is turned on at low speed
Save(H)	DF drum motor (DFDRM) is turned on at high speed
Save(L)	DF drum motor (DFDRM) is turned on at low speed
Tray	DF tray motor (DFTM) is turned on Operating sequences: Ascends after descending to the bottom limit; descends again in one second after the intermediate sensor is detected to be off; ascends again after the intermediate sensor is detected to be on; then halts at the top limit
Staple Move	DF slide motor (DFSLM) is turned on
Staple	DF staple motor (DFSTM) is turned on
Width Test(A3)	DF side registration motor 1, 2 (DFSRM1, 2) is turned on
Width Test(LD)	DF side registration motor 1, 2 (DFSRM1, 2) is turned on
Beat	DF paddle motor (DFPDM) is turned on
Eject Unlock(HP)	DF eject release motor (DFERM) is turned on to home position
Sort Test	DF shift motor 1, 2 (DFSFM1, 2) is turned on
Eject Unlock(30)	DF eject release motor (DFERM) drive position 30-sheet stack

Item No.	Description
U240	

Display	Description
Eject Unlock(50)	DF eject release motor (DFERM) drive position 50-sheet stack
Eject Unlock(Fix)	DF eject release motor (DFERM) fixed drive position
Eject Unlock(Full)	DF eject release motor (DFERM) full-open drive position
Punch	Punch motor (PUM) is turned on
Punch Move	Punch slide motor (PUSLM) is turned on

Method: [Solenoid]

1. Select the item to be operated.
2. Press the start key. The operation starts.

Display	Description
Sub Tray	DF feedshift solenoid (DFFSSOL) is turned on
Save Drum	DF drum solenoid (DFDRSOL) is turned on
Booklet	DF center fold solenoid (DFCFSOL) is turned on
Punch	Punch solenoid (PUSOL) is turned on
Three Fold	CF feedshift solenoid (CFFSSOL) is turned on

Method: [Mail Box]

1. Select the item to be operated.
2. Press the start key. The operation starts.

Display	Description
Conv	MB drive motor (MBDM) is turned on at paper conveying
Branch	MB drive motor (MBDM) is turned on at feedshift operation

Method: [Booklet]

1. Select the item to be operated.
2. Press the start key. The operation starts.

Display	Description
Folding	CF main motor (CFMM) is turned on
Blade	CF blade motor (CFBM) is turned on
Bundle Up	CF adjustment motor 2 (CFADM2) is turned on
Bundle Down	CF adjustment motor 1 (CFADM1) is turned on
Staple	CF staple motor (CFSTM) is turned on
Width Test(A3)	CF side registration motor 1, 2 (CFSRM1, 2) is turned on
Width Test(LD)	CF side registration motor 1, 2 (CFSRM1, 2) is turned on
Feed In	CF paper entry motor (CFPEM) is turned on

Completion

Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Item No.	Description
U241	**Checking the operation of the switches of the finisher** **Description** Displays the status of each switches and sensors of 4000-sheet finisher. **Purpose** To check the operation of each switches and sensors of the 4000-sheet finisher. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be checked.

Display	Description
Finisher	Checking the switch and sensor of the document finisher
Mail Box	Checking the switch and sensor of the mailbox
Booklet	Checking the switch and sensor of the center-folding unit
Punch	Checking the switch and sensor of the punch unit

Method: [Finisher]

1. Turn each switch or sensor on and off manually to check the status.
   When the on-status of a switch or sensor is detected, that switch or sensor is displayed in reverse.

Display	Description
Front Cover	DF front cover switch (DFFCSW)
MPT	DF eject cover switch (DFECSW)
Tray U-Limit	DF tray sensor 1 (DFTS1)
Tray HP2	DF tray sensor 2 (DFTS2)
Tray Middle	DF tray sensor 3 (DFTS3)
Tray L-Limit	DF tray sensor 4 (DFTS4)
Tray L-Limit(BL)	DF tray sensor 5 (DFTS5)
Tray Top	DF tray upper surface sensor (DFTUSS)
HP	DF paper entry sensor (DFPES)
Sub Tray Eject	DF sub eject sensor (DFSES)
Middle Tray Eject	DF middle eject sensor (DFMES)
Drum	DF drum sensor (DFDRS)
Staple HP	DF slide sensor (DFSLS)
Middle Tray	DF middle tray sensor (DFMTS)
Width Front HP	DF side registration sensor 1 (DFSRS1)
Width Tail HP	DF side registration sensor 2 (DFSRS2)
Bundle Eject HP	DF bundle discharge sensor (DFBDS)

Item No.	Description
U241	

Display	Description
Match Paddle	DF adjustment sensor (DFADS)
Lead Paddle	DF paddle sensor (DFPDS)
Shift Front HP	DF shift sensor 1 (DFSFS1)
Shift Tail HP	DF shift sensor 2 (DFSFS2)
Shift Unlock HP	DF shift release sensor (DFSFRS)
Sub Tray Full	DF sub tray full sensor (DFSTFS)
Shift Set	DF shift set sensor (DFSFSS)

Method: [Mail Box]

1. Turn each switch or sensor on and off manually to check the status.
   When the on-status of a switch or sensor is detected, that switch or sensor is displayed in reverse.

Display	Description
Eject	MB eject sensor (MBES)
Cover	MB cover open/close switch (MBCOCSW)
Over Flow1	MB overflow sensor 1 (MBOFS1)
Over Flow2	MB overflow sensor 2 (MBOFS2)
Over Flow3	MB overflow sensor 3 (MBOFS3)
Over Flow4	MB overflow sensor 4 (MBOFS4)
Over Flow5	MB overflow sensor 5 (MBOFS5)
Over Flow6	MB overflow sensor 6 (MBOFS6)
Over Flow7	MB overflow sensor 7 (MBOFS7)
Motor HP	MB paper entry sensor (MBPES)

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U241</td><td>
Method: [Booklet]
1. Turn each switch or sensor on and off manually to check the status.
When the on-status of a switch or sensor is detected, that switch or sensor is displayed in reverse.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>HP</td><td>CF paper entry sensor (CFPES)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Eject</td><td>CF eject sensor (CFES)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Paper</td><td>CF paper sensor (CFPS)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Tray Full</td><td>CF tray full sensor (CFTFS)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bundle Up HP</td><td>CF adjustment sensor 1 (CFADS1)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bundle Down HP</td><td>CF adjustment sensor 2 (CFADS2)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Width Up HP</td><td>CF side registration sensor 1 (CFSRS1)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Width Down HP</td><td>CF side registration sensor 2 (CFSRS2)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Blade HP</td><td>CF blade sensor (CFBLS)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Tray</td><td>CF tray switch (CFTSW)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Set</td><td>CF set switch (CFSSW)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Left Guide</td><td>CF left guide switch (CFLGSW)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Vertical Feed</td><td>CF paper conveying sensor (CFPCS)</td></tr>
</table>
Method: [Punch]
1. Turn each switch or sensor on and off manually to check the status.
When the on-status of a switch or sensor is detected, that switch or sensor is displayed in reverse.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Punch HP</td><td>Punch home position sensor (PUHPS)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Edge Face1</td><td>Punch paper edge sensor (PUPES)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Edge Face2</td><td>Punch paper edge sensor (PUPES)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Edge Face3</td><td>Punch paper edge sensor (PUPES)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Edge Face4</td><td>Punch paper edge sensor (PUPES)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Tank</td><td>Punch tank set switch (PUTSSW)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Tank Full</td><td>Punch tank full sensor (PUTFS)</td></tr>
</table>
Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U243</td><td>
Checking the operation of the DP motors

Description
Turn the motors or solenoids in the DP on.
Purpose
To check the operation of the DP motors and solenoids.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item to be operated.
3. Press the start key. The operation starts.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Feed Motor</td><td>DP original feed motor (DPOFM) is turned on</td></tr>
<tr><td>Conv Motor</td><td>DP original conveying motor (DPOCM) is turned on</td></tr>
<tr><td>Lift Motor</td><td>DP lift motor (DPLM) is turned on</td></tr>
<tr><td>Eject Motor</td><td>DP eject motor (DPEM) is turned on</td></tr>
<tr><td>Regist Motor</td><td>DP registration motor (DPRM) is turned on</td></tr>
<tr><td>DP Fan</td><td>DP fan motor 1 (DPFM1) is turned on</td></tr>
<tr><td>CIS Fan</td><td>DP fan motor 2 (DPFM2) is turned on</td></tr>
</table>
4. To turn each motor off, press the stop key.

Completion
Press the stop key when operation stops. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U244</td><td>
Checking the DP switches

Description
Displays the status of the respective switches and sensors in the DP.
Purpose
To check if respective switches and sensors in the DP operate correctly.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Turn each switch or sensor on and off manually to check the status.
When the on-status of a switch or sensor is detected, that switch or sensor is displayed in reverse.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Feed</td><td>DP feed sensor (DPFS)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Timing</td><td>DP timing sensor (DPTS)</td></tr>
<tr><td>CIS Head</td><td>DP CIS sensor (DPCS)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Set</td><td>DP original sensor (DPOS)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Longitudinal</td><td>DP original length switch (DPOLSW)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Lift U-Limit</td><td>DP lift sensor 1 (DPLS1)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Lift L-Limit</td><td>DP lift sensor 2 (DPLS2)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Cover Open</td><td>DP interlock switch (DPILSW)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Open</td><td>DP open/close switch (DPOCSW)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Eject</td><td>DP eject sensor (DPES)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Slant</td><td>DP slant sensor (DPSS)</td></tr>
</table>
Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U245</td><td>
Checking messages

Description
Displays a list of messages on the touch panel of the operation panel.
Purpose
To check the messages to be displayed.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Change the message using the cursor up/down keys.
When a message number is entered with the numeric keys and then the start key is pressed, the message corresponding the specified number is displayed.
3. Change the language using the +/- keys.

Completion
Press the stop key.
* : The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

Item No.	Description
U246	**Setting the finisher** **Description** Provides various settings for the 4000-sheet finisher, if furnished. **Purpose** **Adjustment of registration stop timing in punch mode** Adjust if skewed paper conveying occurs or if the copy paper is Z-folded in punch mode. **Adjustment of paper stop timing in the punch mode** To adjust this item when the position of a punch hole is different from the specified one. **Adjustment of center position timing in the punch mode** Adjusts the center position of a punch hole in punch mode if the position is not proper. **Adjustment of front/rear side registration home position** Provides optimization when paper jam occurs due to an inferior fitting of the side registration guides to paper. **Adjustment of front/rear shift home position** Performed when adjustment is lost with the ejected paper **Adjusting of front/back stapling home position** Adjusts the stapling position in the staple mode if the position is not proper. **Adjustment of upper/lower side registration home position** Provides optimization when paper jam occurs due to an inferior fitting of the side registration guides to paper. **Adjustment of booklet stapling position** Adjusts the booklet stapling position in the stitching mode if the position is not proper. **Adjustment of center folding position** Adjusts the center folding position in the stitching mode if the position is not proper. **Adjustment of tri- folding position** Adjusts the tri-folding position in the stitching mode if the position is not proper. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to set. **Method: [Finisher]** 1. Select the item to set.

Display	Description
Finisher	Adjustment of 4000-sheet finisher
Booklet	Adjustment of center-folding unit

Display	Description
Punch Regist	Adjustment of registration stop timing in punch mode
Punch Feed	Adjustment of the paper stop timing in punch mode
Punch Width	Adjustment of the center position timing in punch mode
Width Front HP	Adjustment of front side registration home position
Width Tail HP	Adjustment of rear side registration home position
Shift Front HP	Adjustment of front shift home position
Shift Tail HP	Adjustment of rear shift home position
Staple HP	Adjustment of front and back stapling home position

Item No.	Description
U246	**Setting: [Punch Regist]** 1. Select [Punch Regist]. 2. Change the setting value using the +/- keys or numeric keys.

Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
Adjustment of registration stop timing	-20 to 20	0	0.25 mm

If skewed paper conveying occurs (sample 1), increase the setting value. If the copy paper is Z-folded (sample 2), decrease the setting value.

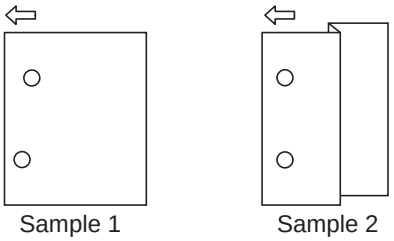


Figure 1-3-32

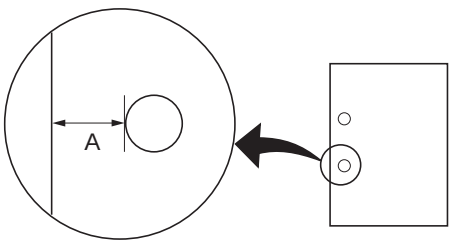
3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [Punch Feed]

1. Select [Punch Feed].
2. Change the setting value using the +/- keys or numeric keys.

Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
Adjustment of the paper stop timing	-10 to 10	0	0.52 mm

If the distance of the position of a punch hole is smaller than the specified value A, increase the setting value. If the distance is larger than the value A, decrease the setting value.



Preset value A: 13 mm (metric)
9.5 mm (inch)

Figure 1-3-33

3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Item No.	Description
U246	**Setting: [Punch Width]** 1. Select [Punch Width]. 2. Change the setting value using the +/- keys or numeric keys.

Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
Adjustment of the punch center position timing	-4 to 4	0	0.52 mm

* : If the punch hole is too close to the front of the machine, increase the setting value. If the punch hole is too close to the rear of the machine, decrease the setting value.

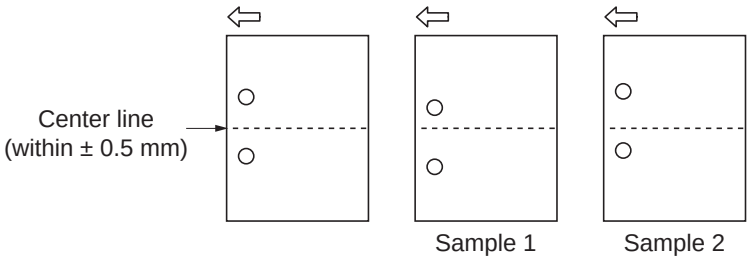


Figure 1-3-34

3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [Width Front HP/Width Tail HP]

1. Select [Width Front HP] or [Width Tail HP].
2. Change the setting value using the +/- keys or numeric keys.

Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
Adjustment of front side registration home position	-15 to 15	0	0.19 mm
Adjustment of rear side registration home position	-15 to 15	0	0.19 mm

3. Press the start key. The value is set.
4. Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
5. Enter maintenance mode U240 and select [Motor], then [Width Test(A3)].
   The width guides of the middle tray will move to A3-size position.
6. Pull the middle tray, insert paper between the guides and check that paper is abut the guides.
7. Repeat the above adjustment until paper is properly in position.

Setting: [Shift Front HP/Shift Tail HP]

1. Select [Shift Front HP] or [Shift Tail HP].
2. Change the setting value using the +/- keys or numeric keys.

Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
Adjustment of front shift home position	-15 to 15	0	0.19 mm
Adjustment of rear shift home position	-15 to 15	0	0.19 mm

3. Press the start key. The value is set.
4. Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
5. Enter maintenance mode U240 and select [Motor], then [Sort Test].
6. Repeat the above adjustment until eject paper is properly in position.

Item No.	Description
U246	**Setting: [Staple HP]** 1. Select [Staple HP]. 2. Change the setting value using the +/- keys or numeric keys.

Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
Adjustment of front and back stapling home position	-15 to 15	0	0.19 mm

* : When staple positions are off toward the front side of the machine (sample 1), increase the setting value. When staple positions are off toward the rear side of the machine (sample 2), decrease the setting value.

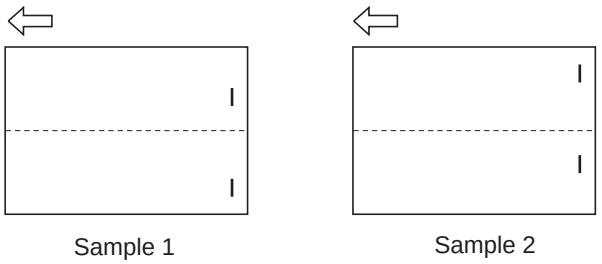


Figure 1-3-35

3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Method: [Booklet]

1. Select the item to set.

Display	Description
Width Up HP	Adjustment of upper side registration home position
Width Down HP	Adjustment of lower side registration home position
Staple Pos1	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A4/Letter size
Staple Pos2	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for B4/Legal size
Staple Pos3	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A3/Ledger/8K size
Booklet Pos1	Adjustment of center folding position for A4/Letter size
Booklet Pos2	Adjustment of center folding position for B4/Legal size
Booklet Pos3	Adjustment of center folding position for A3/Ledger/8K size
Three Fold	Adjustment of tri-folding position

Item No.	Description
U246	**Setting: [Width Up HP/Width Down HP]** 1. Select [Width Up HP] or [Width Down HP]. 2. Change the setting value using the +/- keys or numeric keys.

Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
Adjustment of upper side registration home position	-15 to 15	0	0.34 mm
Adjustment of lower side registration home position	-15 to 15	0	0.34 mm

3. Press the start key. The value is set.
4. Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
5. Enter maintenance mode U240 and select [Booklet], then [Width Test(A3)].
   The width guides of the center-folding unit will move to A3-size position.
6. Pull the center-folding unit, insert paper between the guides and check that paper is abut the guides.
7. Repeat the above adjustment until paper is properly in position.

Setting: [Staple Pos]

1. Select [Staple Pos1], [Staple Pos2] or [Staple Pos3].
2. Change the setting value using the +/- keys or numeric keys.

Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A4/Letter size	-15 to 15	0	0.32 mm
Adjustment of booklet stapling position for B4/Legal size	-15 to 15	0	0.32 mm
Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A3/Ledger/8K size	-15 to 15	0	0.32 mm

* : When staples are placed too far right (sample 1), decrease the preset value. When staples are placed too far left (sample 2), increase the preset value.
Reference value: within ± 2 mm

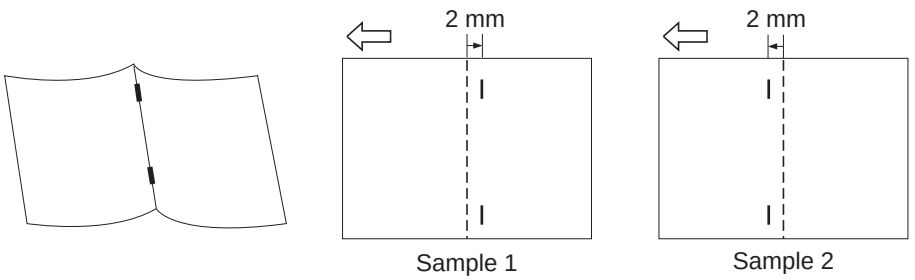


Figure 1-3-36

3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Item No.	Description
U246	**Setting: [Booklet Pos]** 1. Select [Booklet Pos1], [Booklet Pos2] or [Booklet Pos3]. 2. Change the setting value using the +/- keys or numeric keys.

Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
Adjustment of center folding position for A4/Letter size	-15 to 15	0	0.32 mm
Adjustment of center folding position for B4/Legal size	-15 to 15	0	0.32 mm
Adjustment of center folding position for A3/Ledger/ 8K size	-15 to 15	0	0.32 mm

* : When the centerfold position too far right (sample 1), increase the preset value. When the centerfold position too far left (sample 2), decrease the setting value.
Reference value A: A4, Letter: Length of paper × 1/2 ± 2 mm
A3, Ledger, B4: Length of paper × 1/2 ± 3 mm

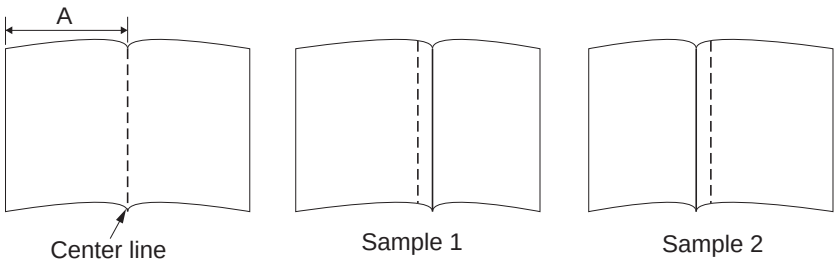


Figure 1-3-37

3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [Three Fold]
1. Select [Three Fold].
2. Change the setting value using the +/- keys or numeric keys.

Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
Adjustment of tri-folding position	-15 to 15	0	0.32 mm

* : When the tri-fold position too far right (sample 1), increase the preset value. When the tri-fold position too far left (sample 2), decrease the setting value.
Reference value A: 7.0 ± 2 mm

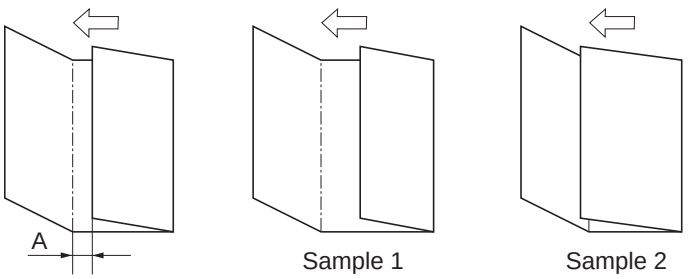


Figure 1-3-38

3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U247</td><td>

Setting the paper feed device

Description
Turn on motor and clutches of paper feeder device.
Purpose
To check the operation of motor and clutches of paper feed device.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the paper feed device.

Display	Description
LCF	Large capacity feeder
Side Deck	Side deck
SMT	Side multi tray
Side 2PF	Side paper feeder
Side LCF	Side large capacity feeder

Method: [LCF/Side LCF]
1. Press [Motor] or [Clutch] and select the item.

Display		Description
Motor	Off	PF paper feed motor (PFPFM) is turned off
	On	PF paper feed motor (PFPFM) is turned on
Clutch	C1 Clutch	PF paper feed clutch 1 (PFPFCL1) is turned on
	C2 Clutch	PF paper feed clutch 2 (PFPFCL2) is turned on
	V Feed Clutch	PF paper conveying clutch 1 (PFPCCL1) is turned on
	H Feed1 Clutch	PF paper conveying clutch 2 (PFPCCL2) is turned on
	H Feed2 Clutch	PF paper conveying clutch 3 (PFPCCL3) is turned on
Execute		Executing the action

2. Select [Execute].
3. Press the start key. The operation starts.
4. To stop operation, press the stop key.

</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U247</td><td>
Method: [Side Deck]
1. Press [Motor] or [Clutch] and select the item.
<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Motor</td><td>Off</td><td>SF paper feed motor (SFPFM) is turned off</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>On</td><td>SF paper feed motor (SFPFM) is turned on</td></tr>
<tr><td>Clutch</td><td>C1 Clutch</td><td>SF paper feed clutch (SFPFCL) is turned on</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>Cassette1 Solenoid</td><td>SF feed solenoid (PFPFSOL) is turned on</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Execute</td><td>Executing the action</td></tr>
</table>
2. Select [Execute].
3. Press the start key. The operation starts.
4. To stop operation, press the stop key.

Method: [SMT]
1. Press [Motor] or [Clutch] and select the item.
<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Motor</td><td>Off</td><td>SM paper feed motor (SMPFM) is turned off</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>On</td><td>SM paper feed motor (SMPFM) is turned on</td></tr>
<tr><td>Clutch</td><td>C1 Clutch</td><td>SM paper feed clutch (SMPFCL) is turned on</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>Feed1 Clutch</td><td>SM paper conveying clutch 1 (SMPCCL1) is turned on</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>Feed2 Clutch</td><td>SM paper conveying clutch 2 (SMPCCL2) is turned on</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>Feed3 Clutch</td><td>SM paper conveying clutch 3 (SMPCCL3) is turned on</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>Separator Solenoid</td><td>SM feedshift solenoid (SMFSSOL) is turned on</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Execute</td><td>Executing the action</td></tr>
</table>
2. Select [Execute].
3. Press the start key. The operation starts.
4. To stop operation, press the stop key.

Method: [Side 2PF]
1. Press [Motor] or [Clutch] and select the item.
<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Motor</td><td>Off</td><td>PF paper feed motor (PFPFM) is turned off</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>On</td><td>PF paper feed motor (PFPFM) is turned on</td></tr>
<tr><td>Clutch</td><td>C1 Clutch</td><td>PF paper feed clutch 1 (PFPFCL1) is turned on</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>C2 Clutch</td><td>PF paper feed clutch 2 (PFPFCL2) is turned on</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>V Feed(H) Clutch</td><td>PF paper conveying clutch 1 (PFPCCL1) is turned on</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>V Feed(L) Clutch</td><td>PF paper conveying clutch 2 (PFPCCL2) is turned on</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Execute</td><td>Executing the action</td></tr>
</table>
2. Select [Execute].
3. Press the start key. The operation starts.
4. To stop operation, press the stop key.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U247</td><td>Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</td></tr>
<tr><td>U249</td><td>Finisher operation test

Description
Perform operating tests on the 4000-sheet finisher.
Purpose
To check the operation of the 4000-sheet finisher.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item.
<table><tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>Punch Position</td><td>Check the stop position of punching</td></tr><tr><td>Booklet Pass</td><td>Check the paper paths to the center-folding unit</td></tr></table>3. Press the start key.
4. Press the system menu key to make a test copy.

Completion
Press the stop key.
* : The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</td></tr>
</table>

Item No.	Description
U250	**Checking/clearing the maintenance cycle** **Description** Changes preset values for maintenance cycle and automatic grayscale adjustment. **Purpose** Provides changing the time when the message to acknowledge to conduct maintenance and automatic grayscale adjustment is periodically displayed. **Setting** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be set. 3. Change the setting using the +- keys or numeric keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
M.Cnt A	Preset values for maintenance cycle (kit A)	0 to 9999999	600000
M.Cnt C	Preset values for maintenance cycle (kit C)	0 to 9999999	300000
M.Cnt HT	Preset values for automatic grayscale adjustment	0 to 9999999	0
Cassette 1	Maintenance counter cassette1	0 to 9999999	150000
Cassette 2	Maintenance counter cassette1	0 to 9999999	150000
Cassette 3	Maintenance counter cassette1	0 to 9999999	150000
Cassette 4	Maintenance counter cassette1	0 to 9999999	150000
Cassette 5	Maintenance counter cassette5	0 to 9999999	150000
Cassette 6	Maintenance counter cassette6	0 to 9999999	150000
Cassette 7	Maintenance counter cassette7	0 to 9999999	150000
Clear	Maintenance counter all clear	0 to 9999999	-

4. Press the start key. The value is set.

Clearing
1. Select [Clear].
2. Press the start key. The setting value is cleared.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

* : Cassette 1 to 7:
When the firmware is upgraded in the field, the standard counter value newly added should be set to 150000.

Item No.	Description
U251	**Checking/clearing the maintenance counter** **Description** Displays and clears or changes the maintenance count and automatic grayscale adjustment count. **Purpose** To verify the maintenance counter count and automatic grayscale count. Also to clear the count during maintenance service. **Setting** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be changed. 3. Change the setting using the +/- keys or numeric keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
M.Cnt A	Count value for maintenance cycle (kit A)	0 to 9999999	0
M.Cnt C	Count value for maintenance cycle (kit C)	0 to 9999999	0
M.Cnt HT	Automatic grayscale adjustment count	0 to 9999999	0
Cassette 1	Maintenance counter cassette1	0 to 9999999	0
Cassette 2	Maintenance counter cassette2	0 to 9999999	0
Cassette 3	Maintenance counter cassette3	0 to 9999999	0
Cassette 4	Maintenance counter cassette4	0 to 9999999	0
Cassette 5	Maintenance counter cassette5	0 to 9999999	0
Cassette 6	Maintenance counter cassette6	0 to 9999999	0
Cassette 7	Maintenance counter cassette7	0 to 9999999	0
Clear	Maintenance counter all clear	0 to 9999999	-

4. Press the start key. The value is set.

Clearing
1. Select [Clear].
2. Press the start key. The setting value is cleared.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

* : When the firmware is upgraded in the field, input the counter value of U901 into the primary feed counter.
If the counter value is larger than 150000, replace the primary feed roller and input “0”.

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U252</td><td>
Setting the destination

Description
Switches the operations and screens of the machine according to the destination.
Purpose
To be executed after initializing the backup RAM, in order to return the setting to the value before replacement or initialization.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the destination.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Inch</td><td>Inch (North America) specifications</td></tr>
<tr><td>Europe Metric</td><td>Metric (Europe) specifications</td></tr>
<tr><td>Asia Pacific</td><td>Metric (Asia Pacific) specifications</td></tr>
<tr><td>Australia</td><td>Australia specifications</td></tr>
<tr><td>China</td><td>China specifications</td></tr>
<tr><td>Korea</td><td>Korea specifications</td></tr>
</table>
3. Press the start key.
4. Turn the main power switch off and on. Allow more than 5 seconds between Off and On.
* : An error code is displayed in case of an initialization error.
When errors occurred, turn main power switch off then on, and execute initialization using maintenance item U252.

Error codes
<table>
<tr><th>Codes</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>0001</td><td>Entity error</td></tr>
<tr><td>0002</td><td>Controller error</td></tr>
<tr><td>0020</td><td>Engine error</td></tr>
<tr><td>0040</td><td>Scanner error</td></tr>
</table>
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U253</td><td>
Switching between double and single counts

Description
Switches the count system for the total counter and other counters.
Purpose
Used to select, according to the preference of the user (copy service provider), if A3/Ledger paper is to be counted as one sheet (single count) or two sheets (double count).

Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item to set.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>B/W</td><td>Count system of black/white mode</td></tr>
</table>
3. Select the count system.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>SGL(All)</td><td>Single count for all size paper</td></tr>
<tr><td>DBL(A3/Ledger)</td><td>Double count for A3/Ledger size or larger</td></tr>
<tr><td>DBL(B4)</td><td>Double count for B4 size or larger</td></tr>
<tr><td>DBL(Folio)</td><td>Double count for Folio size or larger</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: DBL(A3/Ledger)
4. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U260</td><td>
Selecting the timing for copy counting

Description
Changes the copy count timing for the total counter and other counters.
Purpose
To be set according to user request.

Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the copy count timing.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Feed</td><td>When secondary paper feed starts</td></tr>
<tr><td>Eject</td><td>When the paper is ejected</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: Eject
3. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Completion
Press the stop key.
* : The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U265</td><td>
Setting OEM purchaser code

Description
Sets the OEM purchaser code.
Purpose
Sets the code when replacing the main PWB and the like.

Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Change the setting value using the numeric keys.
3. Press the start key. The setting is set.
4. Turn the main power switch off and on. Allow more than 5 seconds between Off and On.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U271</td><td>
Setting the page count

Description
Banner counting
Purpose
To change when modifying counting Banner
* : If U253 is adjusted to double-counting, the value which is multiplied with this value will be the count value.

Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item.
3. Change the setting value using the +/- keys or numeric keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>Banner A</td><td>Counting for Banner A (470.1mm to 915mm/18.51” to 36”)</td><td>2 to 30</td><td>2</td></tr>
<tr><td>Banner B</td><td>Counting for Banner B (915.1mm to 1,220mm/36.01” to 48”)</td><td>2 to 30</td><td>3</td></tr>
</table>
4. Press the start key. The value is set.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U278</td><td>
Setting the delivery date

Description
Enter delivery date in month, day, and year.
Purpose
To operate when installing the machine. Perform this to confirm the delivery date.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select [Today].
3. Press the start key. The delivery date is set.

Clearing
1. Select [Clear].
2. Press the start key. The delivery date is cleared.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U285</td><td>
Setting service status page

Description
Determines displaying the print coverage report on reporting.
Purpose
According to user request, changes the setting.

Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select On or Off.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>On</td><td>Displays the print coverage</td></tr>
<tr><td>Off</td><td>Not to display the print coverage</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: On
3. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Completion
Press the stop key.
* : The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U323</td><td>
Setting abnormal temperature and humidity warning

Description
Specify whether or not a notice is displayed on the operation panel when abnormal temperature and humidity is detected.
Purpose
According to user request, changes the setting.

Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select On or Off.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>On</td><td>Displays the abnormal temperature and humidity warning</td></tr>
<tr><td>Off</td><td>Not to display the abnormal temperature and humidity warning</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: On
3. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Completion
Press the stop key.
* : The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

Item No.	Description
U325	**Setting the paper interval** **Description** Due to the fact that, if toner consumption per driving time drastically lowers, the variation in coloring and low density and gray background become prominent, the print coverage that executes toner ejection according to the low density at a continued vertical printing with the low coverage data must be changed. **Purpose** The settings must be changed when printing an extensive volume with the vertical A4/Letter of low coverage contents or the toner consumption per driving time is extremely low. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to set.

Display	Description
Interval	On-Off control of Inter-paper toner ejection
Mode	Setting mode of Inter-paper toner ejection

Setting: [Interval]

1. Select On or Off.

Display	Description
On	Inter-paper toner ejection is performed
Off	Inter-paper toner ejection is not performed

Initial setting: Off

2. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Setting: [Mode]

1. Change the setting value using the +/- keys or numeric keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Mode	Inter-paper toner ejection mode	1 to 2	1

* : Mode 1 or Mode 2 is effective when Interval is on.
Mode 1: For usages where the original date includes a low toner coverage or gray background is observed (T7 threshold is 3%).
Mode 2: For environments where printing is seldom made but the machine toggles in warm-up mode. (Mostly scanning is used such as in a show room.)
(T7 threshold 3% + simplified refreshing is implemented after the warm-up calibration)

Completion

Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U326</td><td>

Setting the black line cleaning indication

Description
Sets whether to display the cleaning guidance when detecting the black line.
Purpose
Displays the cleaning guidance in order to make the call for service with the black line decrease by the rubbish on the contact glass when scanning from the DP.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item to set.

Display	Description
Black Line Mode	Black line cleaning guidance ON/ OFF setting
Black Line Cnt	Setting counts of the cleaning guidance indication

Setting: [Black Line Mode]
1. Select On or Off.

Display	Description
On	Displays the cleaning guidance
Off	Not to display the cleaning guidance

Initial setting: On
2. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Setting: [Black Line Cnt]
1. Change the setting value using the +/- keys or numeric keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Cnt	Setting counts of the cleaning guidance indication (x 1000 sheets)	0 to 255	8

When setting is 0, the black line cleaning indication is displayed only if the black line is detected.
2. Press the start key. The value is set.

Completion
Press the stop key.
* : The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U327</td><td>
Setting the cassette heater control

Description
Sets the cassette heater control.
Purpose
To change the setting according to the machine installation environment.

Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item to set.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Mode1</td><td>Setting On when the humidity is 65%. (when sleep mode and waiting mode)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Mode2</td><td>Setting On in full-time. (when sleep mode and waiting mode)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Off</td><td>Cassette heater OFF</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: Off
3. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Completion
Press the stop key.
* : The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U332</td><td>
Setting the size conversion factor
Description
Setting a factor to convert a non-standard size paper to A4/Letter. The coefficient set here is used to convert the black ratio in relation to the A4/Letter size and to display the result in user simulation.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item to set.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Rate</td><td>Size coefficient</td></tr>
</table>
Setting: [Rate]
Purpose: To set the coefficient for converting the black ratio for nonstandard sizes in relation to the A4/Letter size.
1. Change the setting using the +/-keys or numeric keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>Rate</td><td>Size coefficient</td><td>0.1 to 3.0</td><td>1.0</td></tr>
</table>
2. Press the start key. The value is set.

Completion
Press the stop key.
The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U340</td><td>

Setting the applied mode

Description
Allocates memory to ensure that there is sufficient memory available for the printer to use as a working area.
Purpose
Modify the memory allocation if insufficient memory for transparency support or XPS direct printing occurs.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item to set.

Display	Description
Adj Memory	Setting the memory allocation
Adj Max Job	Setting the maximum of multiple jobs

Setting: [Adj Memory]
1. Change the setting using the +/- keys or numeric keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Image	Area temporarily used to create output image.	-50 to 50 (MB)	0

* : Set the values below in case print failure occurs with the memory shortage. (recommended value)
Image: +50

1. Press the start key. The value is set.
2. Turn the main power switch off and on. Allow more than 5 seconds between Off and On.

Supplement
The work area for copy is small and it may cause output failure if the values are large.

Setting: [Adj Max Job]
1. Change the setting using the +/-keys or numeric keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Copy	Maximum copy (Scan To Print) Jobs	10 to 50	10
Printer	Maximum printer (Host To Print) Jobs	10 to 50	-

* : The maximum Printer jobs should be (maximum jobs) – (maximum copy jobs).

2. Press the start key. The value is set.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U341</td><td>
Specific paper feed location setting for printing function

Description
Sets a paper feed location specified for printer output (only if a printer kit is installed).
Purpose
To use a paper feed location only for printer output.
A paper feed location specified for printer output cannot be used for copy output.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the paper feed location for the printer.
* : Two or more cassette can be selected.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Cassette1</td><td>Cassette 1</td></tr>
<tr><td>Cassette2</td><td>Cassette 2</td></tr>
<tr><td>Cassette3</td><td>Cassette 3</td></tr>
<tr><td>Cassette4</td><td>Cassette 4</td></tr>
<tr><td>Cassette5</td><td>Cassette 5 (side multi tray/side deck)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Cassette6</td><td>Cassette 6 (side paper feeder/side large capacity feeder)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Cassette7</td><td>Cassette 7 (side paper feeder/side large capacity feeder)</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: Off (Cassette1 to 7)
* : When an optional paper feed device is not installed, the corresponding count is not displayed.
3. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U343</td><td>
Switching between duplex/simplex copy mode

Description
Switches the initial setting between duplex and simplex copy.
Purpose
To be set according to frequency of use: set to the more frequently used mode.

Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select On or Off.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>On</td><td>Duplex copy</td></tr>
<tr><td>Off</td><td>Simplex copy</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: Off
3. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Completion
Press the stop key.
* : The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U345</td><td>
Setting the value for maintenance due indication

Description
Sets when to display a message notifying that the time for maintenance is about to be reached, by setting the number of copies that can be made before the current maintenance cycle ends. When the difference between the number of copies of the maintenance cycle and that of the maintenance count reaches the set value, the message is displayed.
Purpose
To change the time for maintenance due indication.

Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Change the setting using the +/- keys or numeric keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>Cnt</td><td>Time for maintenance due indication
(Remaining number of copies that can be made before the current maintenance cycle ends)</td><td>0 to 9999</td><td>0</td></tr>
</table>
3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Completion
Press the stop key.
* : The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U346</td><td>
Selecting Sleep Mode

Description
Switches configurations for sleep modes.
Purpose
Use this to switch configurations for sleep modes.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item to set.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Disable Auto Sleep Setting</td><td>Setting for disabling the Auto Sleep display</td></tr>
</table>

Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select On or Off.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>On</td><td>Transition to sleep mode is deactivated from the system menu.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Off</td><td>Transition to sleep mode is activated from the system menu.</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: On
3. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Completion
Press the stop key.
* : The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

Item No.	Description
U402	**Adjusting margins of image printing** **Description** Adjusts margins for image printing. **Purpose** Make the adjustment if margins are incorrect. **Adjustment** 1. Press the start key. 2. Press the system menu key. 3. Press the start key to output a test pattern. 4. Press the system menu key. 5. Select the item to be adjusted.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
Lead	Printer leading edge margin	0.0 to 10.0	4.0	0.1 mm
A Margin	Printer left margin	0.0 to 10.0	3.0	0.1 mm
C Margin	Printer right margin	0.0 to 10.0	3.0	0.1 mm
Trail	Printer trailing edge margin	0.0 to 10.0	3.9	0.1 mm

6. Change the setting value using the +/- keys or numeric keys.
   Increasing the value makes the margin wider, and decreasing it makes the margin narrower.

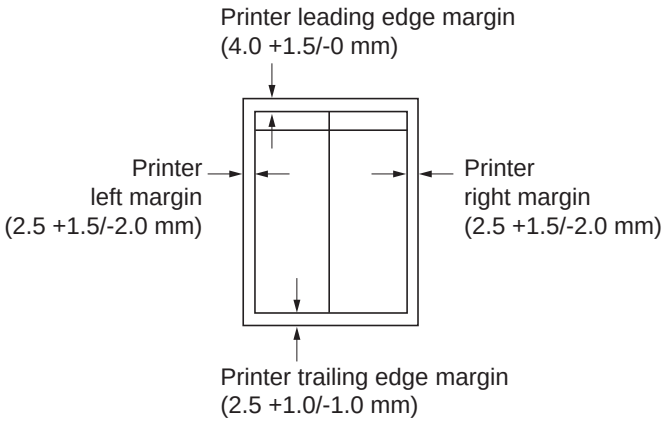
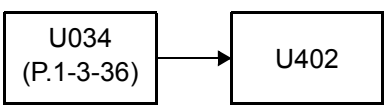


Figure 1-3-39

7. Press the start key. The value is set.

Caution
If the above adjustment does not optimize the margins, perform the following maintenance modes.



Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Item No.	Description
U403	**Adjusting margins for scanning an original on the contact glass**

Description
Adjusts margins for scanning the original on the contact glass.
Purpose
Make the adjustment if margins are incorrect.

Adjustment
1. Press the start key.
2. Press the system menu key.
3. Place an original and press the start key to make a test copy.
4. Press the system menu key.
5. Select the item to be adjusted.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
A Margin	Scanner left margin	0.0 to 10.0	2.0	0.5 mm
B Margin	Scanner leading edge margin	0.0 to 10.0	2.0	0.5 mm
C Margin	Scanner right margin	0.0 to 10.0	2.0	0.5 mm
D Margin	Scanner trailing edge margin	0.0 to 10.0	2.0	0.5 mm

6. Change the setting value using the +/- keys or numeric keys.
   Increasing the value makes the margin wider, and decreasing it makes the margin narrower.

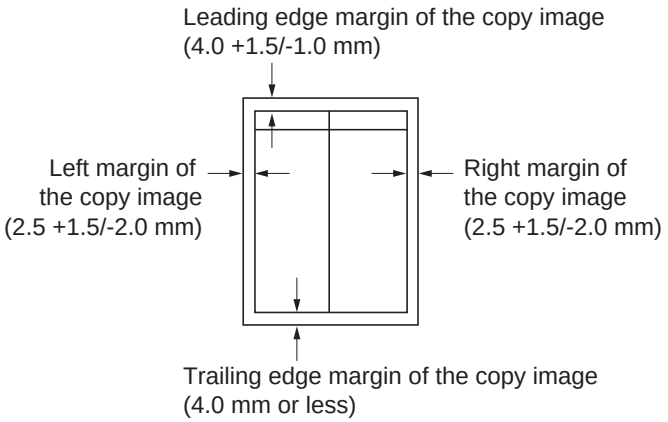
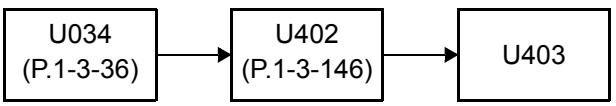


Figure 1-3-40

7. Press the start key. The value is set.

Caution
If the above adjustment does not optimize the margins, perform the following maintenance modes.



Completion
Press the stop key.
* : The indication for selecting a maintenance item No. appears.

Item No.	Description
U404	**Adjusting margins for scanning an original from the DP**

Description
Adjusts margins for scanning the original from the DP.
Purpose
Make the adjustment if margins are incorrect.

Adjustment
1. Press the start key.
2. Press the system menu key.
3. Place an original on the DP and press the start key to make a test copy.
4. Press the system menu key.
5. Select the item to be adjusted.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
A Margin	DP left margin	0.0 to 10.0	3.0	0.5 mm
B Margin	DP leading edge margin	0.0 to 10.0	2.5	0.5 mm
C Margin	DP right margin	0.0 to 10.0	3.0	0.5 mm
D Margin	DP trailing edge margin	0.0 to 10.0	4.0	0.5 mm
A Margin (Back)	DP left margin (second side)	0.0 to 10.0	3.0	0.5 mm
B Margin (Back)*	DP leading edge margin (second side)	0.0 to 10.0	2.5	0.5 mm
C Margin (Back)*	DP right margin (second side)	0.0 to 10.0	3.0	0.5 mm
D Margin (Back)	DP trailing edge margin (second side)	0.0 to 10.0	4.0	0.5 mm

6. Change the setting value using the cursor left/right keys or numeric keys.
   Increasing the value makes the margin wider, and decreasing it makes the margin narrower.

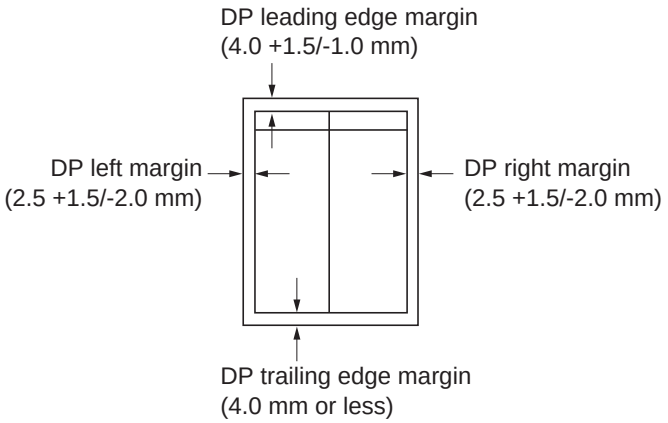
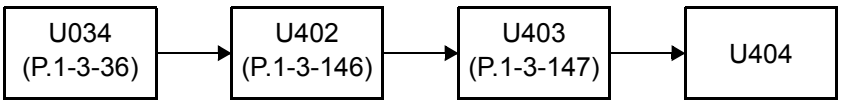


Figure 1-3-41

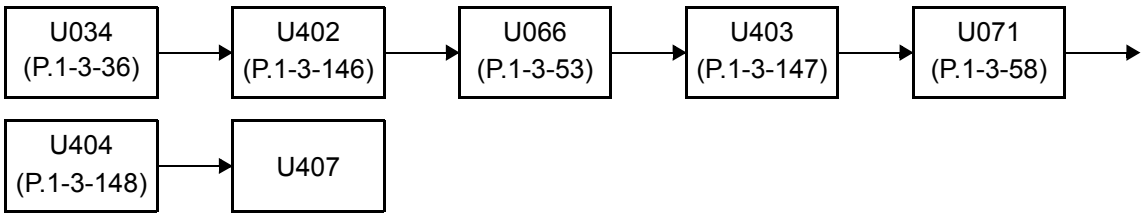
7. Press the start key. The value is set.

Item No.	Description
U404	**Caution** If the above adjustment does not optimize the margins, perform the following maintenance modes.  **Completion** Press the stop key. * : The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Item No.	Description
U407	**Adjusting the leading edge registration for memory image printing**

Description
Adjusts the leading edge registration during memory copying.
Purpose
Make the following adjustment if there is a regular error between the leading edge of the copy image on the front face and that on the reverse face during duplex switchback copying.

Caution
Before making this adjustment, ensure that the following adjustments have been made in maintenance mode



Adjustment
1. Press the start key.
2. Press the system menu key.
3. Place an original and press the start key to make a test copy.
4. Press the system menu key.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
Adj Data	Leading edge registration for memory image printing	-47 to 47	0	0.1 mm

5. Change the setting value using the +/- keys or numeric keys.
   For copy example 1, decrease the value. For copy example 2, increase the value.

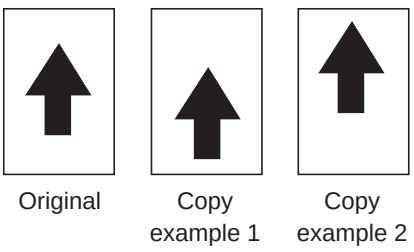


Figure 1-3-42

6. Press the start key. The value is set.

Completion
Press the stop key.
* : The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U410</td><td>

Adjusting the halftone automatically

Description
Carries out processing for the data acquisition that is required in order to perform either automatic adjustment of the halftone or the ID correction operation.
Purpose
Performed when the quality of reproduced halftones has dropped.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item.

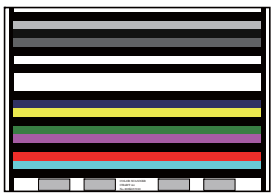
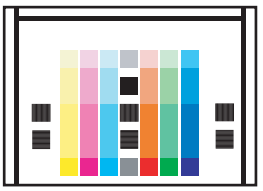
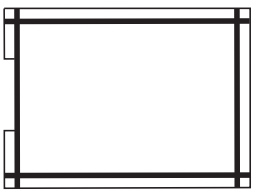
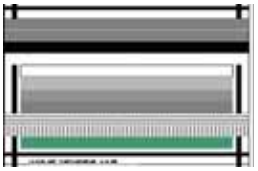
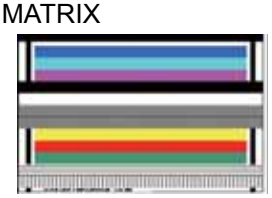
Display	Description
Normal Mode	Executing the automatic adjustment of the halftone (continuous adjustment)

Method: [Normal Mode]
1. Select [Normal Mode].
2. Press the start key. A test patterns 1, 2 and 3 are outputted.
3. Place the output test pattern 1 as the original.
   Place approximately 20 sheets of white paper on the test pattern 1 and set them.
4. Press the start key.
   Adjustment is made (first time).
5. Place the output test pattern 2 as the original.
   Place approximately 20 sheets of white paper on the test pattern 2 and set them.
6. Press the start key.
   Adjustment is made (second time).
7. Place the output test pattern 3 as the original.
   Place approximately 20 sheets of white paper on the test pattern 3 and set them.
8. Press the start key.
   Adjustment is made (third time).
9. When normally completed, [Finish] is displayed.
   If a problem occurs during auto adjustment, error code is displayed.
   Error codes

Codes	Description	Codes	Description
S001	Patch not detected	E001	Engine status error
S002	Original deviation in the main scanning direction	E002	Engine sensor error
		EFFF	Engine other error
S003	Original deviation in the auxiliary scanning direction	C001	Controller error
		C100	Adjustment value error
S004	Original inclination error	C200	Adjustment value error
S005	Original type error	CFFF	Controller other error
SFFF	Scanner other error		

Completion
Press the stop key.
* : The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U411</td><td>
Adjusting the scanner automatically
Description
Uses a specified original and automatically adjusts the following items in the scanner and the DP scanning sections.
Purpose
To perform automatic adjustment of various items in the scanner and the DP scanning sections. Perform adjustments using a new test chart (chart 1) when replacing ISC PWB, LED lamp PWB, ISU, CIS and/or DP main PWB.
* : To automatically adjust the DP, to avoid damaging original documents, using a Chart 2-2 test chart is recommended.Method
Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item.
<table>
<tr><th rowspan="2">Display</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th colspan="2">Original to be used for adjustment</th></tr>
<tr><th>P/N</th><th>Chart image</th></tr>
<tr><td>Table (Chart1)</td><td>Adjusting the scanner color and centering and timing for the leading edge</td><td rowspan="3">7505000005</td><td rowspan="3">Chart 1
  </td></tr>
<tr><td>DP FaceUp (Chart1)</td><td>Adjusting color, centering, and timing for the leading edge of the reading unit (fore side) of the DP</td></tr>
<tr><td>DP FaceDown (Chart1)</td><td>Adjusting color and retrieval of the target data of the reading unit (back side) of the DP (CIS)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Table (Chart2)</td><td>Adjusting the scanner color and centering and timing for the leading edge</td><td>302FZ56990</td><td>Chart 2-1
  </td></tr>
<tr><td>DP FaceUp (Chart2)</td><td>Adjusting the scanner centering and timing for the leading edge</td><td rowspan="2">302AC68243</td><td rowspan="2">Chart 2-2
  </td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">DP FaceDown (Chart2)</td><td>Adjusting retrieval of the target data of the reading unit (back side) of the DP (CIS)</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Adjusting color and retrieval of the target data of the reading unit (back side) of the DP (CIS)</td><td>303JX57010</td><td>GAMMMA
  </td></tr>
<tr><td>303JX57020</td><td>MATRIX
  </td></tr>
</table>
</td></tr>
</table>

Item No.	Description
U411	

Display	Description	Note
Target	Set-up for obtaining the target value	Select Auto to automatically read and enter the target values using the Chart 1 test chart Initial setting: U425
DP Auto Adj	Automatic adjustment of automatic document processor using the chart printed from the machine	Execute this mode when the Chart 2-2 (302AC68243) is not available

Method: [Table (Chart1)
To perform table adjustment using Chart1.

To automatically enter the target value
* : Select this option for normal use.

1. Set a Chart1 original (P/N: 7505000005) on the platen.
2. Enter maintenance item U411.
3. Select [Target].
4. Select [Auto] and press the start key.
5. Select [Table (Chart1)].
6. Select the item.
   * : Select All for normal use.

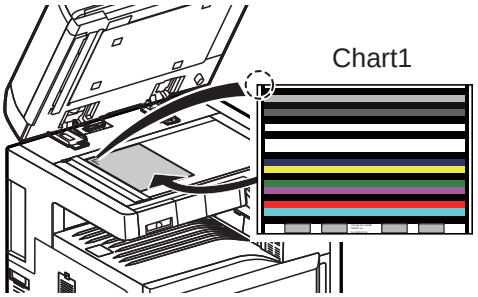


Figure 1-3-43

Display	Description
All	Executing the all scanner adjustment
LED/AGC	Executing the adjustment for LED light quantity/AGC
White	Executing the white reference compensation coefficient
Input	Executing the adjustment for magnification, leading edge timing and center line
C.A.	Executing the adjustment for chromatic aberration filter
MTF	Executing the adjustment for MTF filter
Gamma	Executing the adjustment for input gamma
Matrix	Executing the adjustment for matrix

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U411</td><td>
7. Press the start key. Auto adjustment starts.
* : When automatic adjustment has normally completed, [OK] is displayed. If a problem occurs during auto adjustment, error code is displayed and operation stops. Should this happen, determine the details of the problem and repeat the procedure from the beginning (P.1-3-159).

* : If the target values are not obtainable automatically, manually enter the following target values in the following manner and perform adjustment.
1. Enter the target values which are shown at the bottom of the chart1 original (P/N: 7505000005) executing maintenance item U425.
2. Set a chart1 original on the platen.
3. Enter maintenance item U411.
4. Select [Target].
5. Select [U425] and press the start key.
6. Select [Table (Chart1)].
7. Select the item.
* : Select All for normal use.
8. Press the start key. Auto adjustment starts.

Method: [DP FaceUp (Chart1)]
To perform adjustment on the first side of the DP using Chart 1.
To automatically enter the target value.

1. Set a chart1 original (P/N: 7505000005) on the DP face up.
2. Enter maintenance item U411.
3. Select [Target].
4. Select [Auto] and press the start key.
5. Select [DP FaceUp (Chart1)].
6. Select [Input].

<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Input</td><td>Executing the adjustment for input gamma and matrix</td></tr>
</table>
7. Press the start key. Auto adjustment starts.
* : When automatic adjustment has normally completed, [OK] is displayed. If a problem occurs during auto adjustment, error code is displayed and operation stops. Should this happen, determine the details of the problem and repeat the procedure from the beginning (P.1-3-159).
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U411</td><td>
* : If the target values are not obtainable automatically, manually enter the following target values in the following manner and perform adjustment.
1. Enter the target values which are shown at the bottom of the chart1original (P/N: 7505000005) executing maintenance item U425.
2. Set a specified original on the DP face up.
3. Enter maintenance item U411.
4. Select [Target].
5. Select [U425] and press the start key.
6. Select [DP FaceUp (Chart1)].
7. Select [Input].
8. Press the start key. Auto adjustment starts.

Method: [DP FaceDown (Chart1)]
To perform adjustment on the second side of the DP using Chart 1.
To automatically enter the target value

1. Set a specified original (P/N: 7505000005) on the DP face down.
2. Enter maintenance item U411.
3. Select [Target].
4. Select [Auto] and press the start key.
5. Select [DP FaceDown (Chart1)].
6. Select [All].

<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>All</td><td>Executing the adjustment in the DP scanning section (second side) for magnification, leading edge timing, center line, MTF filter, input gamma and matrix</td></tr>
</table>

7. Press the start key. Auto adjustment starts.
* : When automatic adjustment has normally completed, [OK] is displayed. If a problem occurs during auto adjustment, error code is displayed and operation stops. Should this happen, determine the details of the problem and repeat the procedure from the beginning (P.1-3-159).

* : If the target values are not obtainable automatically, manually enter the following target values in the following manner and perform adjustment.
1. Enter the target values which are shown at the bottom of the specified original (P/N: 7505000005) executing maintenance item U425.
2. Set a specified original on the DP face down.
3. Enter maintenance item U411.
4. Select [Target].
5. Select [U425] and press the start key.
6. Select [DP FaceDown (Chart1)].
7. Select [All].
8. Press the start key. Auto adjustment starts.
</td></tr>
</table>

Item No.	Description
U411	**Method: [Table (Chart2)]**

1. Enter the target values which are shown on the back of the Chart 2-1original (P/N: 302FZ56990) executing maintenance item U425.
2. Set a Chart 2-1original on the platen.
3. Enter maintenance item U411.
4. Select [Target].
5. Select [U425] and press the start key.
6. Select [Table (Chart2)].
7. Select the item.

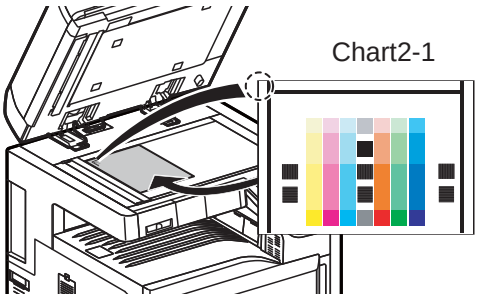
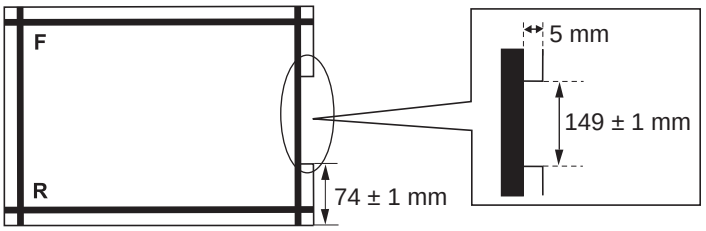


Figure 1-3-44

Display	Description
All	Executing the all scanner adjustment
Input	Executing the adjustment for magnification, leading edge timing and center line
C.A.	Executing the adjustment for chromatic aberration filter
MTF	Executing the adjustment for MTF filter
Gamma	Executing the adjustment for input gamma
Matrix	Executing the adjustment for matrix

8. Press the start key. Auto adjustment starts.
   * : When automatic adjustment has normally completed, [OK] is displayed. If a problem occurs during auto adjustment, error code is displayed and operation stops. Should this happen, determine the details of the problem and repeat the procedure from the beginning (P.1-3-159).

Item No.	Description
U411	**Method: [DP FaceUp (Chart2)]** 1. Set a specified original (P/N: 302AC68243) on the DP. Cut the trailing edge of the original.  **Figure 1-3-45** 2. Enter maintenance item U411. 3. Select [Target]. 4. Select [U425] and press the start key. 5. Select [DP FaceUp (Chart2)]. 6. Select [INPUT]. | Display | Description | |---|---| | Input | Executing the adjustment in the DP scanning section (first side) for magnification, leading edge timing and center line | 7. Press the start key. Auto adjustment starts. * : When automatic adjustment has normally completed, [OK] is displayed. If a problem occurs during auto adjustment, error code is displayed and operation stops. Should this happen, determine the details of the problem and repeat the procedure from the beginning (P.1-3-159). **Method: [DP FaceDown (Chart2)]** 1. Place the specified original for acquiring gamma target data (P/N: 303JX57010) on the platen, and press the start key. 2. Place the specified original for acquiring matrix target data (P/N: 303JX57020) on the platen, and press the start key. When normally completed, [OK] is displayed. 3. Select the item.

Item No.	Description
U411	

Display	Description	Original to be used for adjustment (P/N)
All	Executing the adjustment in the DP scanning section (second side) for magnification, leading edge timing, center line, MTF filter, input gamma and matrix	302AC68243/ 303JX57010/ 303JX57020
Input	Executing the adjustment in the DP scanning section (second side) for magnification, leading edge timing and center line	302AC68243
MTF/Gamma	Executing the adjustment in the DP scanning section (second side) for MTF filter and input gamma	303JX57010
Matrix	Executing the adjustment in the DP scanning section (second side) for matrix	303JX57020

[Input]

1. Select [Input].
2. Set a Chart 2-2 original (P/N: 302AC6824) on the DP face down.
3. Press the start key. Auto adjustment starts.

[MTF/Gamma]

1. Select [MTF/Gamma].
2. Set a Gamma original (P/N: 303JX57010) on the DP face down.
3. Press the start key. Auto adjustment starts.

[Matrix]

1. Select [Matrix].
2. Set a Matrix original (P/N: 303JX57020) on the DP face down.
3. Press the start key. Auto adjustment starts.

When [ALL] is selected, the adjustment of [Input], [MTF/Gamma] and [Matrix] can be executed at once. When adjusting, place the three specified originals on the DP face down, and then press the start key.
Set the original 303JX57020, and then place 303JX57010 and 302AC68243 in order on the top of the original.

* : When automatic adjustment has normally completed, [OK] is displayed. If a problem occurs during auto adjustment, error code is displayed and operation stops. Should this happen, determine the details of the problem and repeat the procedure from the beginning (P.1-3-159).

Item No.	Description
U411	**Method: [DP Auto Adj]** 1. Load A4/ letter paper. 2. Press the start key to output the original for adjustment. 3. Set the output the original for adjustment and press the start key. 4. Set the output the original for adjustment on the DP face up. 5. Press the start key to scan documents. 6. Press the start key. Auto adjustment of first side starts. 7. Set the output the original for adjustment on the DP face down. 8. Press the start key to scan documents. 9. Press the start key. Auto adjustment of second side starts. * : When automatic adjustment has normally completed, [OK] is displayed. If a problem occurs during auto adjustment, error code is displayed and operation stops. Should this happen, determine the details of the problem and repeat the procedure from the beginning.

Error Codes

Codes	Description
01	Black band detection error (scanner auxiliary scanning direction leading edge skew)
02	Black band detection error (scanner main scanning direction far end skew)
03	Black band detection error (scanner main scanning direction near end skew)
03	Black band detection error (scanner auxiliary scanning direction trailing edge skew)
04	Black band is not detected (scanner auxiliary scanning direction leading edge)
05	Black band is not detected (scanner main scanning direction far end)
06	Black band is not detected (scanner main scanning direction near end)
07	Black band is not detected (scanner auxiliary scanning direction trailing edge)
08	Black band is not detected (DP main scanning direction far end)
09	Black band is not detected (DP main scanning direction near end)
0a	Black band is not detected (DP auxiliary scanning direction leading edge)
0b	Black band is not detected (DP auxiliary scanning direction leading edge original check)
0c	Black band is not detected (DP auxiliary scanning direction trailing edge)
0d	White band is not detected (DP auxiliary scanning direction trailing edge)
0e	DMA time out
0f	Auxiliary scanning direction magnification error
10	Auxiliary scanning direction leading edge error
11	Auxiliary scanning direction trailing edge error
12	DP uxiliary scanning direction skew error
13	Maintenance request error
14	Main scanning direction center line error

Item No.	Description
U411	**Error Codes** **Completion** Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Codes	Description
15	DP main scanning direction skew error
16	Main scanning direction magnification error
17	Service call error
18	DP paper misfeed error
19	PWB replacement error
1a	Original error
1b	Input gamma adjustment original error
1c	Matrix adjustment original error
1d	Original for the white reference compensation coefficient error
1e	Lab value searching error
1f	Lab value comparing error
63	Completed to obtain a test RAW

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U412</td><td>

Adjusting the uneven density

Description
Adjusts the uneven developer/transfer density in the drum axis direction by scanning directly the density distribution of test pattern with the scanner and adjusting LSU light quantity.
Purpose
To perform when replacing the drum unit or laser scanner unit.
When completed, perform maintenance mode U464, Calibration.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item.

<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Normal Mode</td><td>Executing the uneven density correction</td></tr>
<tr><td>On/Off Config</td><td>Uneven density correction ON/OFF setting</td></tr>
</table>

Method: [Normal Mode]
1. Select [Default Value].
   A test pattern is outputted with the initial light quantity setting. (1st sheet)
2. Place approximately 20 sheets of white paper on the output test pattern and place as the original.
3. Press the start key. the correction starts.
4. After the correction is completed, and press the start key.
   A test pattern is outputted. (2nd sheet)
   A test pattern is outputted with light quantity setting lower than the 1st test pattern by 20%.
5. Place approximately 20 sheets of white paper on the output test pattern and place as the original.
6. Press the start key. the correction starts.
7. After the correction is completed, and press the start key.
   A test pattern is outputted. (3rd sheet)
8. Place approximately 20 sheets of white paper on the output test pattern and place as the original.
9. Press the start key.
   The correction result is checked. When normally completed, [OK] is displayed.

Retry (1st time)
10. If the correction is not completed normally, [Retry] is displayed.
11. Repeat steps 4 and 9.

Retry (2nd time)
12. If the correction is not completed normally, [Retry] is displayed.
13. Repeat steps 4 and 9.
    If a problem occurs during auto correction, error code is displayed.

</td></tr>
</table>

Item No.	Description
U412	**Error codes**

Codes	Description	Codes	Description
S001	Patch not detected	E001	Engine status error
S002	Original deviation in the main scanning direction	E002	Spotted background error
		E003	Density error
S003	Original deviation in the auxiliary scanning direction	E004	Uneven density error
		EFFF	Engine other error
S004	Original inclination error	C001	Controller error
S005	Original type error	CFFF	Controller other error
SFFF	Scanner other error		

Setting: [On/Off Config]

1. Select On or Off.

Display	Description
On	Uneven density correction is enabled
Off	Uneven density correction is disabled

* : Initial setting: Off

* : ON is automatically set after the correction is complete.

2. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Completion

Press the stop key.

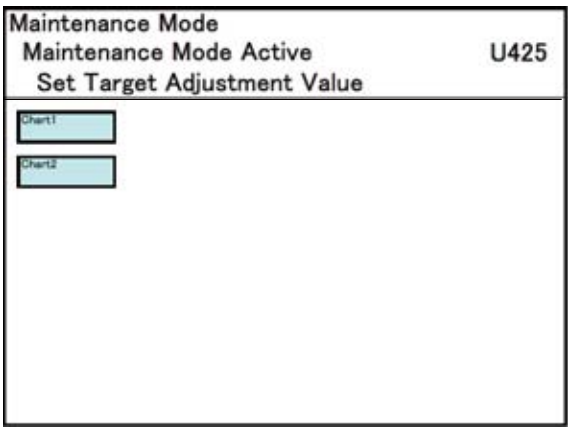
* : The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

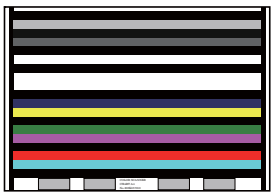
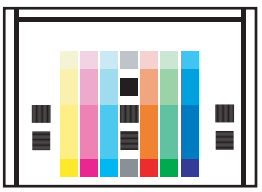
Item No.	Description
U415	**Adjusting the print position automatically** **Description** Automatically adjusts timings at the print engine. Adjustment for leading edge timing, center line and margin. **Purpose** Used to make respective auto adjustments for the print engine. * : Execute this mode when the Chart 2-2 (302AC68243) is not available. **Method** 1. Load A3/ledger paper. Load A4/Letter when the large capacity feeder is used. 2. Press the start key. 3. Select [Execute]. 4. Press the start key. A test pattern is outputted 5. Set the output test pattern as the original. 6. Press the start key. Automatically Perform adjustment from the top to bottom cassettes. 7. When normally completed, [OK] is displayed. If a problem occurs during auto adjustment, error code is displayed.

Error Codes

Codes	Description
S001	Black band is not detected (main scanning direction far end)
S002	Black band is not detected (main scanning direction near end)
S003	Black band is not detected (auxiliary scanning direction leading edge)
S004	Black band is not detected (auxiliary scanning direction trailing edge)
S005	Auxiliary scanning direction skew error (1.5 mm or more)
S006	Main scanning direction skew error (1.5 mm or more)
S007	Original error (detection of reverse original paper)
S008	Original error (page mismatch)
SFFF	Scanner other error
C101	Adjustment value error (main scanning direction magnification)
C102	Adjustment value error (auxiliary scanning direction magnification)
C103	Adjustment value error (leading edge timing)
C104	Adjustment value error (center line)
C105	Adjustment value error (B margin)
C106	Adjustment value error (A margin)
C107	Adjustment value error (C margin)
C108	Adjustment value error (D margin)
CFFF	Controller other error

Completion
Press the stop key.
* : The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Item No.	Description
U425	**Setting the target** **Description** Enters the lab values that is indicated of the chart 1 (P/N: 7505000005) or chart 2 (P/N: 302FZ56990) used for adjustment. **Purpose** Perform data input in order to correct for differences in originals during automatic adjustment. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the chart to be used.  **Figure 1-3-46**

Display	Description	Chart image
Chart1	Chart 1 (P/N: 7505000005)	Chart1 
Chart2	Chart 2 (P/N: 302FZ56990)	Chart2-1 

Method: [Chart1]
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item to be set.

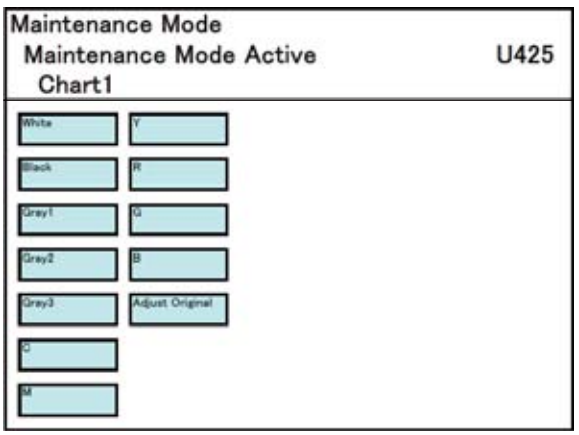


Figure 1-3-47

Item No.	Description
U425	

Display	Description
White	Setting the white patch for the original for adjustment
Black	Setting the black patch for the original for adjustment
Gray1	Setting the Gray1 patch for the original for adjustment
Gray2	Setting the Gray2 patch for the original for adjustment
Gray3	Setting the Gray3 patch for the original for adjustment
C	Setting the cyan patch for the original for adjustment
M	Setting the magenta patch for the original for adjustment
Y	Setting the yellow patch for the original for adjustment
R	Setting the red patch for the original for adjustment
G	Setting the green patch for the original for adjustment
B	Setting the blue patch for the original for adjustment
Adjust Original	Setting the main and auxiliary scanning directions

Setting: [White, Black, Gray1, Gray2, Gray3, C, M, Y, R, G, B]

1. Read the Lab values for the items selected on Chart 1.

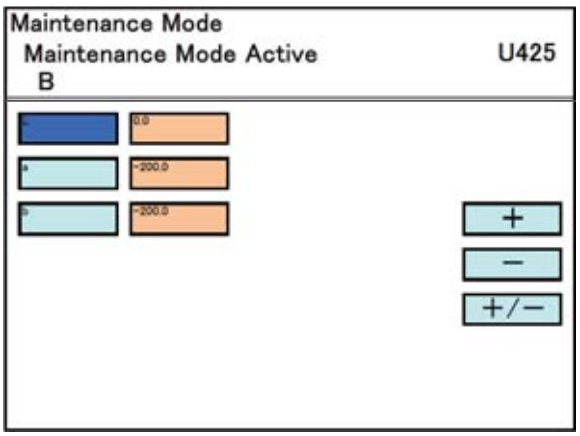


Figure 1-3-48

3. Enters the value that is indicated on the face of the chart using the +/- keys or numeric keys.
4. Press the start key. The value is set.

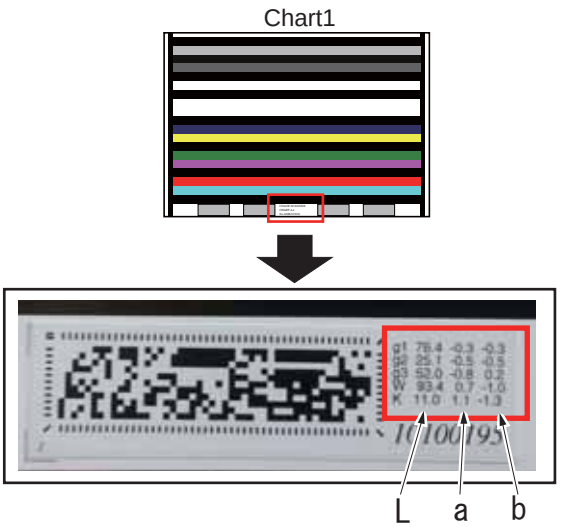


Figure 1-3-49

Item No.	Description
U425	

Display	Description	Setting range
L	Setting the L value	0.0 to 100.0
a	Setting the a value	-200.0 to 200.0
b	Setting the b value	-200.0 to 200.0

Setting: [Adjust Original]

* : This setting is usually unnecessary.

1. Press the start key.

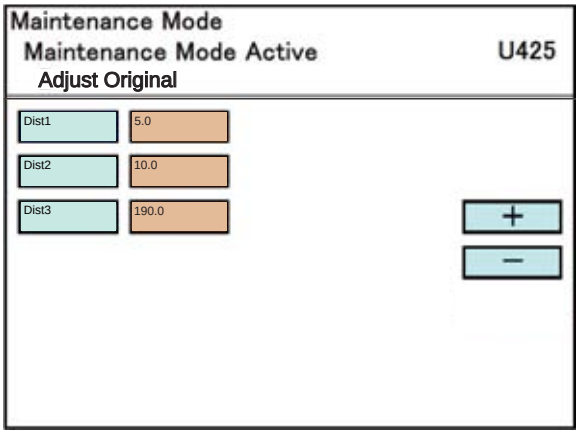
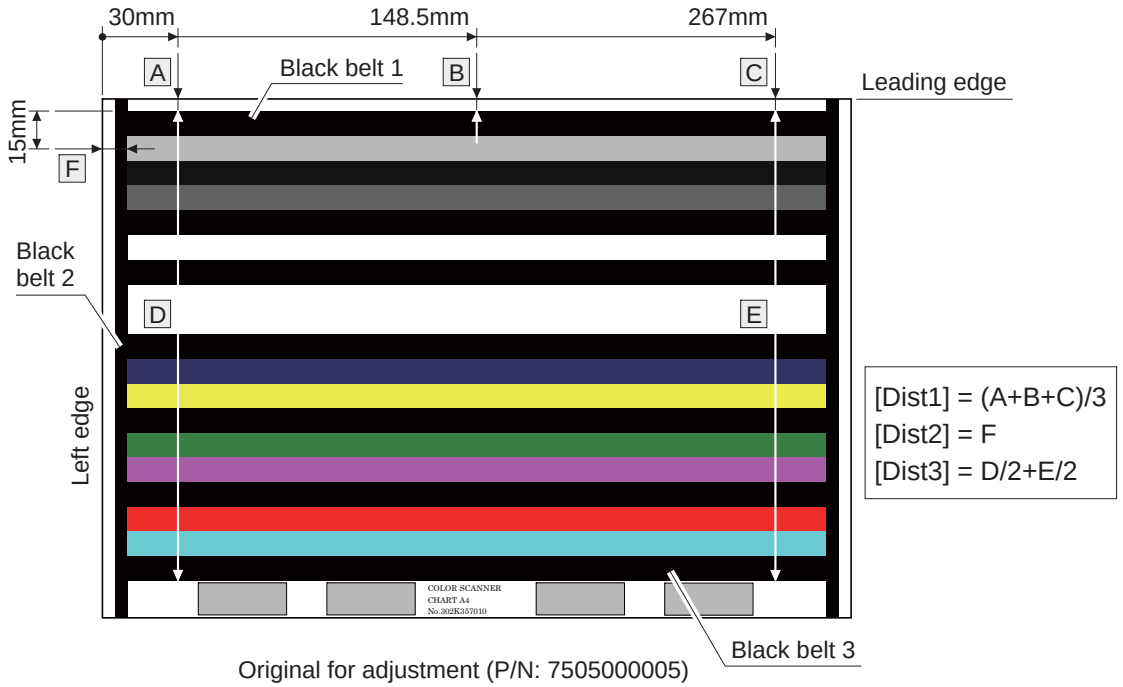


Figure 1-3-50

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
Dist1	Measure the distance from the leading edge to the top of black belt 1 of the original	4.0 to 6.0	5.0	
Dist2	Measure the distance from the left edge to the right edge black belt 2 of the original	9.0 to 11.0	10.0	0.1mm
Dist3	Measure the distance from the top edge of black belt 1 to the bottom of black belt 3 of the original	189.0 to 191.0	190.0	

Item No.	Description
U425	2. Measure the distance from the leading edge to the top of black belt 1 of the original at A, B and C. Measurement procedure 1) Measure the distance from the leading edge to the top of black belt 1 of the original at A (30 mm from the left edge), B (148.5 mm from the left edge) and C (267 mm from the left edge), respectively. 2) Apply the following formula for the values obtained: ((A + B + C) / 3) 3. Enter the values solved using the cursor left/right keys or numeric keys in [Dist1]. 4. Press the start key. The value is set. 5. Measure the distance from the left edge to the right edge black belt 2 of the original at F. Measurement procedure 1) Measure the distance from the left edge to the right edge black belt 2 of the original at F (15 mm from the top edge of black belt 1). 6. Enter the values using the cursor left/right keys or numeric keys in [Dist2]. 7. Press the start key. The value is set. 8. Measure the distance from the top edge of black belt 1 to the bottom of black belt 3 of the original at D and E. 1) Measure the distance from the top edge of black belt 1 to the bottom of black belt 3 of the original at D (30 mm from the left edge) and E (267 mm from the left edge), respectively. 2) Apply the following formula for the values obtained: (D/2 + E/2) 9. Enter the measured value using the cursor left/right keys or numeric keys in [Dist3]. 10. Press the start key. The value is set.  **Figure 1-3-51**

Item No.	Description
U425	**Method: [Chart2]** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item.

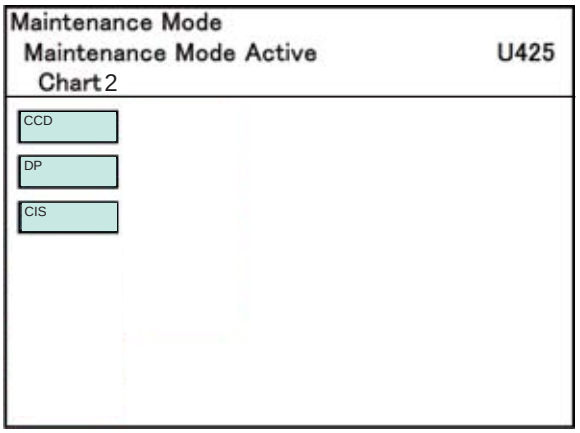


Figure 1-3-52

Display	Description
CCD	Entering the target values of the chart 2-1 (P/N: 302FZ56990) used for adjustment
DP	Entering the measurement value of the chart 2-2 (P/N: 302AC68243) used for adjustment
CIS	Execution is not required

Method: [CCD]
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item to be set.

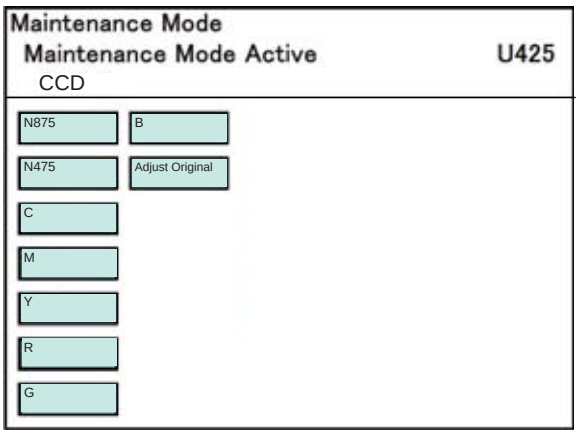


Figure 1-3-53

Item No.	Description
U425	

Display	Description
N875	Setting the N875 patch for the original for adjustment
N475	Setting the N475 patch for the original for adjustment
N125	Setting the N125 patch for the original for adjustment
C	Setting the cyan patch for the original for adjustment
M	Setting the magenta patch for the original for adjustment
Y	Setting the yellow patch for the original for adjustment
R	Setting the red patch for the original for adjustment
G	Setting the green patch for the original for adjustment
B	Setting the blue patch for the original for adjustment
Adjust Original	Setting the main and auxiliary scanning directions

Setting: [N875, N475, N125, C, M, Y, R, G, B]

1. Read the Lab values for the items selected on Chart 2-1 test chart.

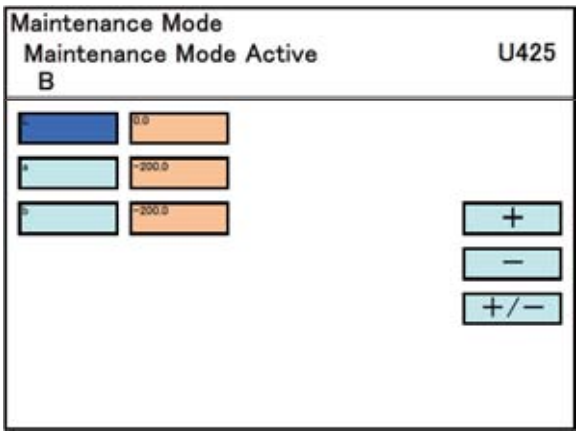


Figure 1-3-54

2. Enters the value that is indicated on the back of the chart using the +/- keys or numeric keys.
3. Press the start key. The value is set.

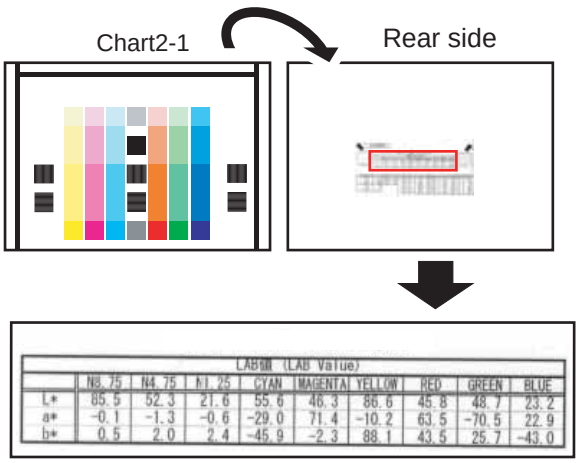


Figure 1-3-55

Item No.	Description
U425	

Display	Description	Setting range
L	Setting the L value	0.0 to 100.0
a	Setting the a value	-200.0 to 200.0
b	Setting the b value	-200.0 to 200.0

Setting: [Adjust Original]

* : This setting is usually unnecessary.

1. Press the start key.

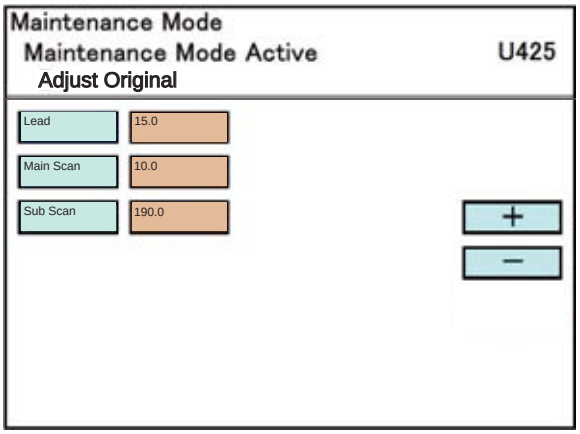
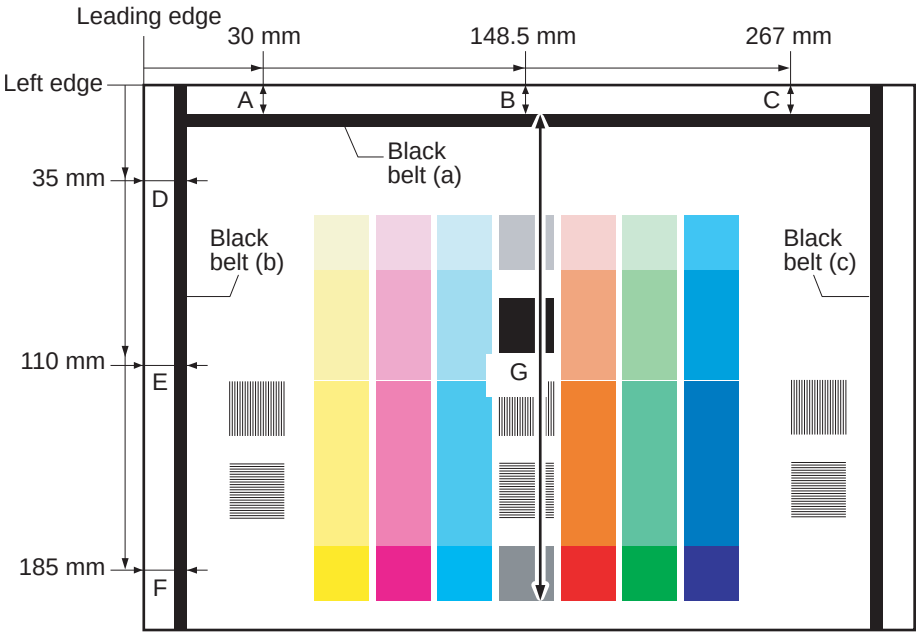


Figure 1-3-56

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
Lead	Measure the distance from the left edge to the black belt (a) of the original	14.0 to 16.0	15.0	0.1mm
Main Scan	Measure the distance from the leading edge to the black belt (b) of the original	9.0 to 11.0	10.0	
Sub Scan	Measure the length from the edge of the black belt (a) to edge of N475 of the original	189.0 to 191.0	190.0	

Item No.	Description
U425	2. Measure the distance from the leading edge to the top of black belt 1 of the original at A, B and C. Measurement procedure 1) Measure the distance from the leading edge to the top of black belt 1 of the original at A (30 mm from the left edge), B (148.5 mm from the left edge) and C (267 mm from the left edge), respectively. 2) Apply the following formula for the values obtained: ((A + B + C) / 3) 3. Enter the values solved using the cursor left/right keys or numeric keys in [Dist1]. 4. Press the start key. The value is set. 5. Measure the distance from the left edge to the right edge black belt 2 of the original at F. Measurement procedure 1) Measure the distance from the left edge to the right edge black belt 2 of the original at F (15 mm from the top edge of black belt 1). 6. Enter the values using the cursor left/right keys or numeric keys in [Dist2]. 7. Press the start key. The value is set. 8. Measure the distance from the top edge of black belt 1 to the bottom of black belt 3 of the original at D and E. 1) Measure the distance from the top edge of black belt 1 to the bottom of black belt 3 of the original at D (30 mm from the left edge) and E (267 mm from the left edge), respectively. 2) Apply the following formula for the values obtained: (D/2 + E/2) 9. Enter the measured value using the cursor left/right keys or numeric keys in [Dist3]. 10. Press the start key. The value is set.



Original for adjustment (P/N: 302FZ56990)

Figure 1-3-57

Item No.	Description
U425	**Setting: [DP]** * : This setting is usually unnecessary. 1. Press the start key. 2. Enters the value that is indicated on the face of the chart using the +/- keys or numeric keys.

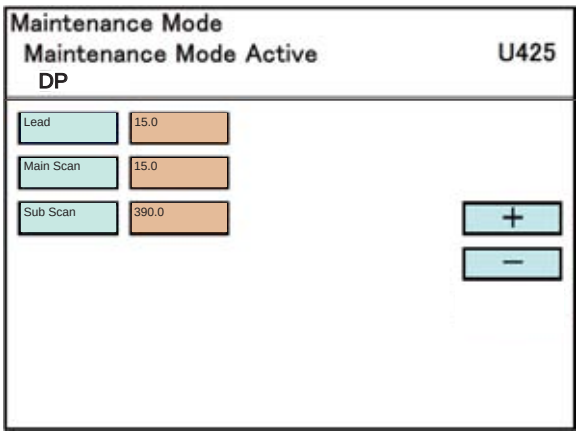
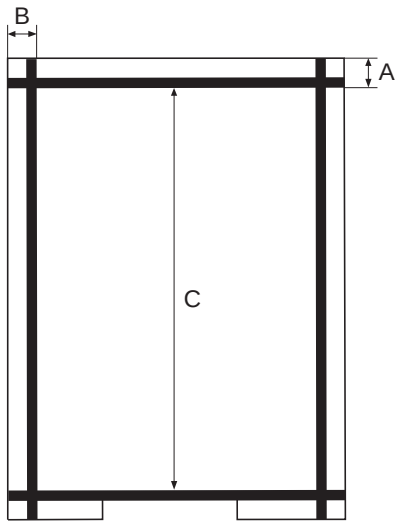


Figure 1-3-58

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step
Lead	Measure the distance from the leading edge to the black belt (inside) of the original	14.0 to 16.0	15.0	0.1mm
Main Scan	Measure the distance from the left edge to the black belt (inside) of the original	14.0 to 16.0	15.0	
Sub Scan	Measure the distance from the black belt of leading edge (inside) to the black belt of trailing edge (inside) of the original	388.0 to 392.0	390.0	

3. Press the start key. The value is set.



Original for adjustment (P/N: 302AC68243)

Figure 1-3-59

Completion

Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Item No.	Description
U460	**Adjusting the conveying sensor** **Description** Compensates the threshold value of the side multi tray's multi feed sensor. **Purpose** If more than one sheet is fed at a time, modify the threshold depending on the environment. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item.

Display	Description
SMT	Settings of multiple feed sensor on the side multi tray

Method: [SMT]
1. Select the item.

Display	Description
Conveying Sensor	Multi feed sensor settings/Calibration
On/Off Config	Paper conveying sensor On/Off settings

Setting: [Conveying Sensor]
1. Select the item.

Display	Description
Sensor(Non-P)	Empty paper sensor display
Sensor	Displaying sensor value when paper is present
Threshold(Single)	Paper feeding threshold settings
Threshold(Multi)	Multi feed threshold settings
Execute	Executing the calibration

Setting: [Threshold(Single)/(Multi)]
1. Select the item.
2. Change the setting value using the +/- keys or numeric keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Threshold(Single)	Paper feeding threshold settings	0 to 254	0
Threshold(Multi)	Multi feed threshold settings	0 to 254	0

3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Method: [Execute]
1. Select [Execute].
2. Press the start key. Calibration is executed.

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U460</td><td>
Setting: [On/Off Config]
1. Select On or Off.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>On</td><td>Paper conveying sensor is enabled</td></tr>
<tr><td>Off</td><td>Paper conveying sensor is disabled</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: On
2. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Completion
Press the stop key.
* : The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U464</td><td>

Setting the ID correction operation

Description
Turn ID correction (calibration) on or off. Also, this allows individual settings for calibration operation.
Purpose
Implements various settings of calibration when poor image quality is caused or to allow various settings of calibration depending on the user preference.
To perform the calibration when replacing the maintenance kit.
Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item to be set.

<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Permission</td><td>Setting to turn calibration on/off</td></tr>
<tr><td>Time Interval</td><td>Setting the interval time of calibration after printing</td></tr>
<tr><td>Mode</td><td>Setting the image adjustment execution mode</td></tr>
<tr><td>On/Sleep Out*</td><td>Setting execution parameters for calibration when powered up or reverted from auto-sleep</td></tr>
<tr><td>AP/NE*</td><td>Paper interval calibration ON/OFF setting at the time of calibration/near end after toner feed</td></tr>
<tr><td>Leaving Time*</td><td>Setting the standard time for judging whether or not to carry out calibration based on the sleep time when the machine recovers from the sleep mode</td></tr>
<tr><td>Driving Time*</td><td>Setting the standard time for judging whether or not to carry out paper interval calibration based on the driving time during printing</td></tr>
<tr><td>Timing*</td><td>Setting the standard time for judging whether or not to carry out calibration based on the continuous print driving time during printing</td></tr>
<tr><td>Target Value</td><td>Setting the sensor target values for toner thick layer calibration and light amount calibration</td></tr>
<tr><td>Calib</td><td>Executing the calibration</td></tr>
</table>

*: Enabled when Mode is set to Custom.

Setting: [Permission]
1. Select On or Off.

<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>On</td><td>Turn calibration ON</td></tr>
<tr><td>Off</td><td>Turn calibration OFF</td></tr>
</table>

* : Initial setting: On

2. Press the start key. The setting is set.

</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U464</td><td>
Setting: [Time Interval]
1. Change the setting value using the +/- keys or numeric keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>Time(sec)</td><td>Setting the interval time of calibration</td><td>0 to 9999 (s)</td><td>0</td></tr>
</table>
2. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [Mode]
1. Select the item.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Short</td><td>Setting the image adjustment execution mode: short</td></tr>
<tr><td>Normal</td><td>Setting the image adjustment execution mode: normal</td></tr>
<tr><td>Long</td><td>Setting the image adjustment execution mode: long</td></tr>
<tr><td>Custom</td><td>Setting the image adjustment execution mode: custom</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: Normal
2. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Setting: [On/Sleep Out]
1. Select On or Off.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>On</td><td>At power-up: Perform calibration if the fusing temperature is less than 50°C/122°F.
Recovering from Auto Sleep: Calibration is performed when 8 hours have passed since the machine has been in sleep</td></tr>
<tr><td>Off</td><td>Not to execute calibration regardless of fuser temperature at power-up or recovery from auto sleep mode</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: On
2. Press the start key. The setting is set.

Setting: [AP/NE]
1. Select On or Off.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>On</td><td>Paper interval calibration at the time of calibration/near end after toner feed is carried out</td></tr>
<tr><td>Off</td><td>Paper interval calibration at the time of calibration/near end after toner feed is not carried out</td></tr>
</table>
* : Initial setting: On
2. Press the start key. The setting is set.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U464</td><td>
Setting: [Leaving Time]
1. Change the setting value using the +/- keys or numeric keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>Time(min)</td><td>Setting the standard time of sleep mode</td><td>0 to 480 (min)</td><td>60</td></tr>
</table>
2. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [Driving Time]
1. Change the setting value using the +/- keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>Time(sec)</td><td>Setting the drive standard time</td><td>300 to 3000 (s)</td><td>300</td></tr>
</table>
2. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [Timing]
1. Change the setting value using the +/- keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>Time(sec)</td><td>Setting the drive standard time of continuous print</td><td>0 to 3600 (s)</td><td>0</td></tr>
</table>
2. Press the start key. The value is set.

Setting: [Target Value]
1. Select the item.
2. Change the setting value using the +/- keys or numeric keys.
<table>
<tr><th rowspan="2">Display</th><th rowspan="2">Description</th><th rowspan="2">Setting range</th><th colspan="2">Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><th>65ppm</th><th>80ppm</th></tr>
<tr><td>Thick-ness(K)</td><td>Toner thick layer calibration</td><td>0 to 1000</td><td>145</td><td>145</td></tr>
<tr><td>Gamma(K)</td><td>Light amount calibration</td><td>0 to 500</td><td>330</td><td>330</td></tr>
</table>
3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Method: [Calib]
1. Select [Execute].
2. Press the start key. Calibration is executed.
* : Duplicates selecting [System Menu] - [Adjustment/Maintenance] - [Calibration]. The same operation as System menu.

Completion
Press the stop key.
* : The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U465</td><td>
Data reference for ID correction

Description
References the data related to ID correction.
Purpose
To check the corresponding data.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item to be reference.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>TCONT</td><td>Developer bias control value after ID correction</td></tr>
<tr><td>Laser Power</td><td>Scaling factor to the value determined in light amount calibration</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bias Calib</td><td>Sensor value for toner thick layer calibration</td></tr>
<tr><td>T7 CTD</td><td>T7 control value</td></tr>
</table>
Displaying: [TCOUNT]
Select [TCOUNT]. The current value is displayed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Before(K)</td><td>Developer bias control value before ID correction</td></tr>
<tr><td>After(K)</td><td>Developer bias control value after ID correction</td></tr>
</table>
Displaying: [Laser Power]
1. Select [Laser Power]. The current value is displayed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>K</td><td>Scaling factor to the value determined in light amount calibration</td></tr>
</table>
Displaying: [Bias Calib]
1. Select [Bias Calib]. The current value is displayed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>K</td><td>Sensor value for toner thick layer calibration</td></tr>
</table>
Displaying: [T7 CTD]
1. Select [T7 CTD]. The current value is displayed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>K</td><td>T7 control value</td></tr>
</table>
Completion
Press the stop key.
* : The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

Item No.	Description
U470	**Setting the JPEG compression ratio** **Description** Sets the compression ratio for JPEG images in each image quality mode. **Purpose** To change the setting in accordance with the image that the user is copying. For example, in order to soften the coarseness of the image when making copies at over 200% magnification, change the level of compression by raising the value. Lowering the value will increase the compression and thereby lower the image quality; Raising the value will increase image quality but lower the image processing speed. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item to be set.

Display	Description
Copy	Compression ratio for copying
Send	Compression ratio for sending
System	Compression ratio for temporary storage in system

Setting: [Copy]

1. Select the item to be set.

Display	Description
Photo	Compression ratio in the photo mode
Text	Compression ratio in the text mode

2. Select the item to be set.
3. Change the setting value using the +/- keys or numeric keys.

Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting
Y	Compression ratio of brightness	1 to 100	90
CbCr	Compression ratio of color differential	1 to 100	90

4. Press the start key. The value is set.

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U470</td><td>
Setting: [Send]
1. Select the item to be set.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Photo</td><td>Compression ratio in the photo mode</td></tr>
<tr><td>Text</td><td>Compression ratio in the text mode</td></tr>
<tr><td>HC-PDF (BG)</td><td>Compression ratio of high compression PDF</td></tr>
<tr><td>HC-PDF (Char)</td><td>Setting the compression rate of the high-compression PDF (text color)</td></tr>
<tr><td>HC-PDF (File Size)</td><td>Setting the compression rate of the high-compression PDF (reduced file size priority)</td></tr>
</table>
2. Select the item to be set.
3. Change the setting value using the +/- keys or numeric keys.
[Photo] or [Text]
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>Y1 to Y5</td><td>Compression ratio of brightness</td><td>1 to 100</td><td>30/40/51/70/90</td></tr>
<tr><td>CbCr1 to CbCr5</td><td>Compression ratio of color differential</td><td>1 to 100</td><td>30/40/51/70/90</td></tr>
</table>
[HC-PDF (BG)]
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>Y3 to Y3</td><td>Compression ratio of brightness</td><td>1 to 100</td><td>15/25/90</td></tr>
<tr><td>CbCr3 to CbCr3</td><td>Compression ratio of color differential</td><td>1 to 100</td><td>15/25/90</td></tr>
</table>
[HC-PDF (Char)]
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>Y3 to Y3</td><td>Compression ratio of brightness</td><td>1 to 100</td><td>15/75/90</td></tr>
<tr><td>CbCr3 to CbCr3</td><td>Compression ratio of color differential</td><td>1 to 100</td><td>15/75/90</td></tr>
</table>
4. [HC-PDF (File Size)]
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>Y3 to Y3</td><td>Compression ratio of brightness</td><td>1 to 100</td><td>15/25/75</td></tr>
<tr><td>CbCr3 to CbCr3</td><td>Compression ratio of color differential</td><td>1 to 100</td><td>15/25/75</td></tr>
</table>
5. Press the start key. The value is set.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U470</td><td>
Setting: [System]
1. Select the item to be set.
2. Change the setting value using the +/- keys or numeric keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>Y</td><td>Compression ratio of brightness</td><td>1 to 100</td><td>90</td></tr>
<tr><td>CbCr</td><td>Compression ratio of color differential</td><td>1 to 100</td><td>90</td></tr>
</table>
3. Press the start key. The value is set.

Supplement
While this maintenance item is being executed, copying from an original is available in interrupt copying mode (which is activated by pressing the system menu key).

Completion
Press the stop key.
* : The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U485</td><td>
Setting the image processing mode

Description
Sets the detection level for scanning printed matter outputted with the confidential document guard function. Also, sets the process PDF images are rotated.
Purpose
To change the detection level when the confidential document guard is not printed well for detection in scanning. Also, changes the process of how PDF images are rotated.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Conf. Doc. Detection</td><td>Confidential document guard detection level</td></tr>
<tr><td>PDF Rotation</td><td>Processing the rotation of PDF images</td></tr>
</table>
Setting: [Conf. Doc. Detection]
1. Change the setting value using +/- keys or numeric keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th></tr>
<tr><td>Conf. Doc. Detection</td><td>Confidential document guard detection level</td><td>1 to 5</td><td>1</td></tr>
</table>
A smaller value raises the detection sensitivity but increases the possibility of false detection.
A larger value lowers the detection sensitivity but decreases the possibility of false detection.
2. Press the start key. The value is set.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U485</td><td>
Setting: [PDF Rotation]
1. Change the setting value using +/- keys or numeric keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>Assigns the image rotation with the internal parameter</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>Assigns the image rotation with the actual image</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td>Assigns the image rotation with the internal parameter (CTM rotation)</td></tr>
</table>
Initial setting: 0
2. Press the start key. The value is set.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U520</td><td>
Set TDRS

Description
Perform TDRS settings and information views.
Purpose
Perform TDRS settings and information views.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Registration</td><td>Transition to the TDRS Manager registering dialog</td></tr>
<tr><td>Information</td><td>Transition to the Device Agent description dialog</td></tr>
<tr><td>On/Off Config</td><td>Transition to the TDRS features dialog</td></tr>
</table>
Setting: [Registration]
1. Select the item.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>TDRS User</td><td>Registering process using user and password</td></tr>
<tr><td>Access Code</td><td>Registering process using an Access Code</td></tr>
</table>
Setting: [Access Code]
1. Select the item.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Regist</td><td>Performing registration to TDRS Manager</td></tr>
<tr><td>TDRS Server</td><td>TDRS Server URL</td></tr>
<tr><td>TDRS User</td><td>TDRS Username</td></tr>
<tr><td>Access Code</td><td>TDRS Access Code</td></tr>
<tr><td>Proxy Server</td><td>TDRS Proxy Server URL</td></tr>
<tr><td>Proxy Port</td><td>TDRS Proxy Port Number</td></tr>
<tr><td>Proxy User</td><td>TDRS Proxy Username</td></tr>
<tr><td>Text</td><td>TDRS Description</td></tr>
</table>
* : The status of Online or Offline will be indicated at the right bottom depending on connection with TDRS Manager.
The Regist button is inoperative if the USB is not installed.
A normal completion will be indicated by Complete in the status of the item that was performed.
An occurrence of an error is indicated by an error number in the status of the item that was performed.
If [User/Processing Registration using a Password] is selected in the previous dialog, the TDRS User will be indicated.
If [Processing Registration using an Access Code] is selected, the Access Code will be indicated.
</td></tr>
</table>

Item No.	Description
U520	**Error Codes**

Codes	Description	Codes	Description
e0001	HDD is unavailable.	t0001	Fatal error.
e0002	USB memory is unavailable.	t0002	Error in processing the network.
e0003	The file to import does not exist in the USB.	t0003	An illegal parameter error.
e0004	Reading from the USB has failed.	t0004	Insufficient resource.
e0005	Unmounting USB has failed.	t0005	Communication error.
e0006	Moving or renaming the file has failed.	t0006	Error in processing communication.
e0007	Opening the file has failed.	t0007	Login error.
e0008	Closing the file has failed.	t0008	External error.
e0009	Error in reading the file.	t0009	Authentication error.
e000A	Copying the file has failed.	t000A	Request error.
e000B	Opening the directory has failed.	t000B	Error due to the server.
e00C	Creating a working directory has failed.	t00C	Error due to the client.
e00D	Deleting a working file has failed.		

Setting: [Information]

1. Select the item.

Display	Description
Agent ID	Agent ID
Agent Type	Agent Type
Model	model name
Serial No	Serial number

Setting: [On/Off Config]

1. Select the item.

Display	Description
On	Enable TDRS
Off	Disable TDRS

Completion

Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U901</td><td>

Checking copy counts by paper feed locations

Description
Displays or clears paper feed counts by paper feed locations.
Perform backup when the counters on the engine PWB and PF main PWB do not match.
Purpose
To check the time to replace consumable parts. Also to clear the counts after replacing the consumable parts.
Backup the counter values after completing changing the PF main PWB and the paper feed unit.

Method
1. Press the start key. The counts by paper feed locations are displayed.

<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>MPT</td><td>MP tray</td></tr>
<tr><td>Cassette1</td><td>Cassette 1</td></tr>
<tr><td>Cassette2</td><td>Cassette 2</td></tr>
<tr><td>Cassette3</td><td>Cassette 3</td></tr>
<tr><td>Cassette4</td><td>Cassette 4</td></tr>
<tr><td>Cassette5</td><td>Cassette 5 (side multi tray/side deck)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Cassette6</td><td>Cassette 6 (side paper feeder/side large capacity feeder)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Cassette7</td><td>Cassette 7 (side paper feeder/side large capacity feeder)</td></tr>
<tr><td>Duplex</td><td>Duplex unit</td></tr>
</table>

* : When an optional paper feed unit is not installed, the corresponding count is not displayed.

Clearing
1. Select the counts to be cleared.
   [Cassette3], [Cassette4], [Cassette5], [Cassette6] and [Cassette7] cannot be cleared.
2. Select the counts for all and press [Clear].
3. Press the start key. The counts is cleared.

Back up
1. Select the paper feed location.
2. Select [Engine] when changing the PF main PWB.
   Backup the [Engine] counter values to [Enhancement].
   Select [Enhancement] when changing the paper feed unit.
   Backup the [Enhancement] counter values to [Engine].
3. Select [Execute].
4. Press the start key. Back up the counter values.
5. Turn the main power switch off and on. Allow more than 5 seconds between Off and On.
   * : The values of cassette 4 counter vary in accordance with the cassette 3 counter.
   The values of cassette 7 counter vary in accordance with the cassette 6 counter.
   Select [None] if the counter values are not backed up.

Completion
Press the stop key.
* : The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U903</td><td>
Checking/clearing the paper jam counts

Description
Displays or clears the jam counts by jam locations.
Purpose
To check the paper jam status. Also to clear the jam counts after replacing consumable parts.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Cnt</td><td>Displays/clears the jam counts</td></tr>
<tr><td>Total Cnt</td><td>Displays the total jam counts</td></tr>
</table>

Method: [Cnt]
1. Select [Cnt]. The count of jam code by type is displayed.
Codes for which the count value is 0 are not displayed.
2. Change the screen using the cursor up/down keys.
3. Select the count value for jam code and press [Clear].
The individual counter cannot be cleared.
4. Press the start key. The counter value is cleared.

Method: [Total Cnt]
1. Select [Total Cnt]. The total number of jam code by type is displayed.
2. Change the screen using the cursor up/down keys.
The total number of jam count cannot be cleared.

How to display the history of paper jams
[Function]
To check the variation in the occurrences of paper jams as a consequence of firmware upgrade.

[Procedure]
1. Retrives versions of system and engine software at the timing of clearing.
2. Displays comparison of the occurrences of paper jams before and after firmware upgrades.
3. Displays the date of clearing.

[Method]
At firmware upgrade
1. Perform clearance of the counter following the above before performing firmware upgrade.
2. Clearing the counter records the date of clearing.
3. Perform firmware upgrade.

At performing service
1. Print a maintenance report using mode U000 and check the variance of occurrence of paper jams after firmware upgrade was done.
</td></tr>
</table>

Item No.	Description
U903	**Detail of history of paper jams**

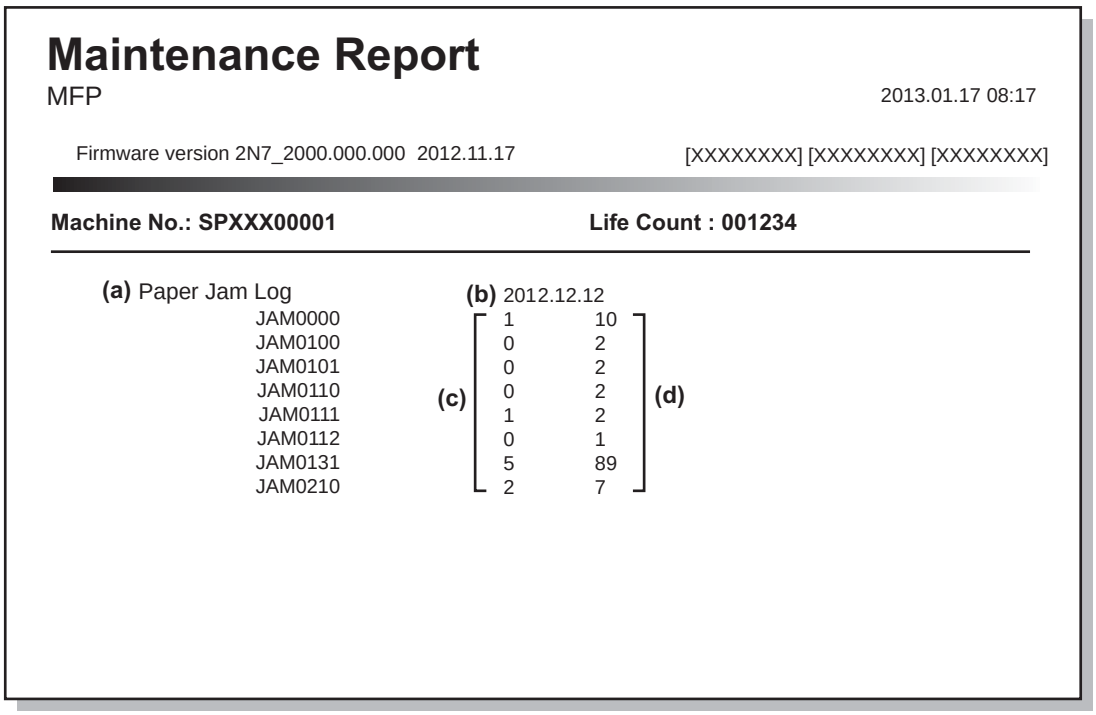


Figure 1-3-60

No.	Description
a	Paper jam numbers
b	Date of clearing counter records
c	Occurrences of paper jams after clearing the paper jam counts
d	Total number of paper jams

Completion

Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U904</td><td>
Checking/clearing the call for service counts

Description
Displays or clears the service call code counts by types.
Purpose
To check the service call code status by types.
Also to clear the service call code counts after replacing consumable parts.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Cnt</td><td>Displays/clears the call for service counts</td></tr>
<tr><td>Total Cnt</td><td>Displays the total call for service counts</td></tr>
</table>

Method: [Cnt]
1. Select [Cnt]. The count for service call detection by type is displayed.
Codes for which the count value is 0 are not displayed.
2. Change the screen using the cursor up/down keys.
3. Select the count value for service call code and press [Clear].
The individual counter cannot be cleared.
4. Press the start key. The counter value is cleared.

Method: [Total Cnt]
1. Select [Total Cnt]. The total number of service call counts by type is displayed.
2. Change the screen using the cursor up/down keys.
The total number of service call count cannot be cleared.

How to display the history of service counts
[Function]
To check the variation in the occurrences of service calls as a consequence of firmware upgrade.

[Procedure]
1. Retrives versions of system and engine software at the timing of clearing.
2. Displays comparison of the occurrences of service calls before and after firmware upgrades.
3. Displays the date of clearing.

[Method]
At firmware upgrade
1. Perform clearance of the counter following the above before performing firmware upgrade.
2. Clearing the counter records the date of clearing.
3. Perform firmware upgrade.

At performing service
1. Print a maintenance report using mode U000 and check the variance of occurrence of service calls after firmware upgrade was done.
</td></tr>
</table>

Item No.	Description
U904	**Detail of history of service counts**

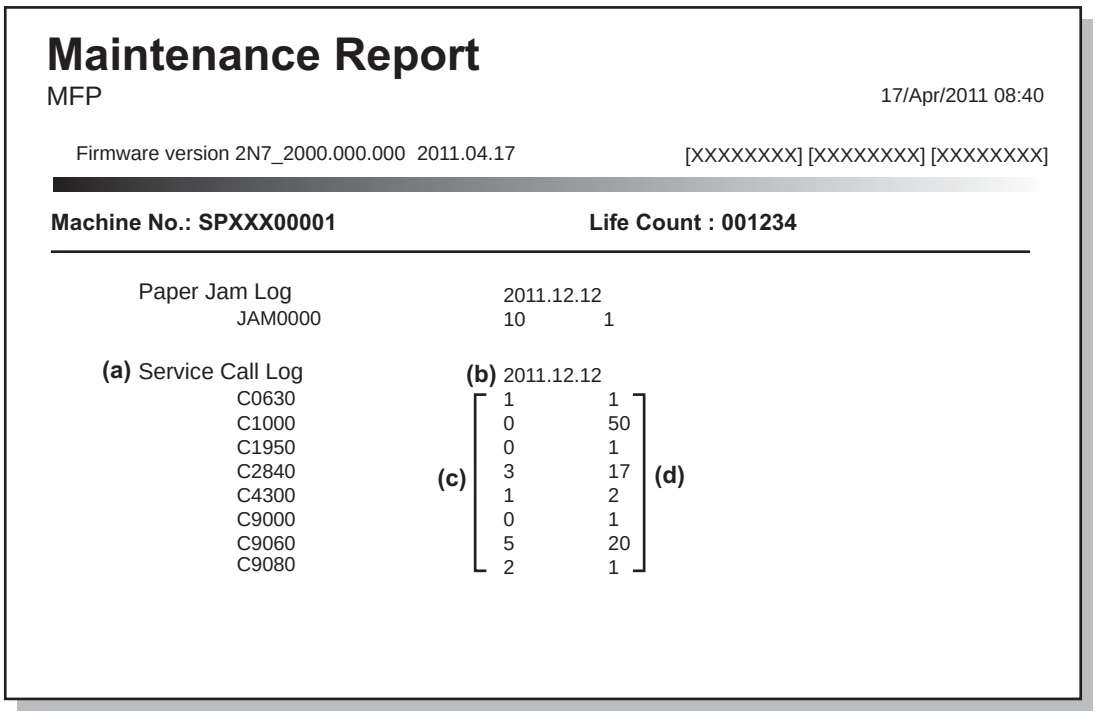


Figure 1-3-61

No	Description
a	Service call numbers
b	Date of clearing counter records
c	Occurrences of service calls after clearing the service call counts
d	Total number of service calls

Completion

Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U905</td><td>
Checking counts by optional devices

Description
Displays the counts of DP, 4000-sheet finisher.
Purpose
To check the use of DP, 4000-sheet finisher.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the device, the count of which is to be checked.
The count of the selected device is displayed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>DP</td><td>Counts of DP</td></tr>
<tr><td>DF</td><td>Counts of 4000-sheet finisher</td></tr>
</table>
Method: [DP]
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>ADP</td><td>No. of single-sided originals that has passed through the DP</td></tr>
<tr><td>RADP</td><td>No. of double-sided originals that has passed through the DP</td></tr>
<tr><td>CIS</td><td>No. of dual scan originals that has passed through the DP</td></tr>
</table>
Method: [DF]
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Sorter</td><td>No. of copies that has passed</td></tr>
<tr><td>Staple</td><td>Frequency the stapler has been activated</td></tr>
<tr><td>Punch</td><td>Frequency the punch has been activated</td></tr>
<tr><td>Stack</td><td>Frequency the main tray eject has been activated</td></tr>
<tr><td>Saddle</td><td>Frequency the saddle eject has been activated</td></tr>
<tr><td>Fold</td><td>Frequency the center folding has been activated</td></tr>
<tr><td>Three Fold*</td><td>Frequency the tri-folding has been activated</td></tr>
</table>
Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

Item No.	Description
U906	**Resetting partial operation control** **Description** Resets the service call code for partial operation control. **Purpose** To be reset after partial operation is performed due to problems in the cassettes or other sections, and the related parts are serviced. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Press [Execute]. 3. Press the start key to reset partial operation control. 4. Turn the main power switch off and on. Allow more than 5 seconds between Off and On.
U908	**Checking the total counter value** **Description** Displays the total counter value. **Purpose** To check the total counter value. **Method** 1. Press the start key. The total count value is displayed. **Completion** Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
U910	**Clearing the print coverage data** **Description** Clears the accumulated data for the print coverage per A4 size paper and its period of time (as shown on the service status report). **Purpose** To clear data as required at times such as during maintenance service. **Method** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select [Execute]. 3. Press the start key. The print coverage data is cleared. **Completion** Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U911</td><td>

Checking copy counts by paper sizes

Description
Displays the paper feed counts by paper sizes.
Purpose
To check the counts after replacing consumable parts.

Method
1. Press the start key. The screen for the paper feed counts by paper size is displayed.

<table>
<tr><th>Display (metric)</th><th>Description</th><th>Display (inch)</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>A3</td><td>Paper feed counts for A3</td><td>Ledger</td><td>Paper feed counts for Ledger</td></tr>
<tr><td>B4</td><td>Paper feed counts for B4</td><td>Legal</td><td>Paper feed counts for Legal</td></tr>
<tr><td>A4</td><td>Paper feed counts for A4</td><td>Letter</td><td>Paper feed counts for Letter</td></tr>
<tr><td>B5</td><td>Paper feed counts for B5</td><td>Statement</td><td rowspan="2">Paper feed counts for Statement</td></tr>
<tr><td>A5</td><td>Paper feed counts for A5</td></tr>
<tr><td>Folio</td><td>Paper feed counts for Folio</td><td>ETC</td><td rowspan="2">Paper feed counts for other size</td></tr>
<tr><td>ETC</td><td>Paper feed counts for other size</td></tr>
</table>

Clearing
1. Select the paper size of counts to be cleared.
2. Press the start key. The counts is cleared.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U917</td><td>
Setting backup data reading/writing

Description
Retrieves the backup data to a USB memory from the machine; or writes the data from the USB memory to the machine.
Purpose
To store and write data when replacing the HDD or main PWB.
Method
1. Press the power key on the operation panel, and after verifying the power indicator has gone off, switch off the main power switch.
2. Insert USB memory in USB memory slot.
3. Turn the main power switch on.
Wait for 10 seconds to allow the machine to recognize the USB memory.
4. Enter maintenance item U917.
5. Select [Import] or [Export].
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Import</td><td>Writing data from the USB memory to the machine</td></tr>
<tr><td>Export</td><td>Retrieving from the machine to a USB memory</td></tr>
</table>
6. Select the item.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Depending data</th></tr>
<tr><td>Address Book</td><td>Address book</td><td>-</td></tr>
<tr><td>Job Account</td><td>Job accounting</td><td>-</td></tr>
<tr><td>One Touch</td><td>Information on one-touch key</td><td>Address Book</td></tr>
<tr><td>User</td><td>User managements</td><td>Job Account</td></tr>
<tr><td>Document Box</td><td>Document box information</td><td>Job Account, User</td></tr>
<tr><td>Shortcut</td><td>Shortcut information</td><td>Job Account, User, Document Box</td></tr>
<tr><td>Fax Forward</td><td>FAX transfer information</td><td>Job Account, User, Document Box</td></tr>
<tr><td>System</td><td>System information</td><td>-</td></tr>
<tr><td>Network</td><td>Network information</td><td>-</td></tr>
<tr><td>Job Setting</td><td>Job Setting information</td><td>-</td></tr>
<tr><td>Printer</td><td>Printer information</td><td>-</td></tr>
<tr><td>Fax Setting</td><td>Fax Setting information</td><td>-</td></tr>
<tr><td>Program</td><td>Program information</td><td>Address Book, Job Account, User, Document Box, Fax Forward, Fax Setting</td></tr>
<tr><td>Panel Setting</td><td>Panel Setting information</td><td>Address Book, Job Account, User, Document Box, Fax Forward, Fax Setting, Program</td></tr>
</table>
* : Since data are dependent with each other, data other than those assigned are also retrieved or written in.
</td></tr>
</table>

Item No.	Description
U917	7. Press the start key. Starts reading or writing. The progress of selected item is displayed in %. When an error occurs, the operation is canceled and an error code is displayed. 8. When normally completed, [Finish] is displayed. * : Turn the main power switch off and on after completing writing when selecting [Import]. **Error Codes** **Completion** Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Codes	Description
e000	Unspecified error
e0001	Parameter error
e0002	Failed to generate a Dummy file
e0003	The target XML file to import does not exist
e0004	The exported file does not exist
e0100 to e01ff	Error in handling the addressbook
e0200 to e02ff	Error in handling One-touch
e0300 to e03ff	Error in handling user management
e0400 to e04ff	Error in handling panel-program data
e0500 to e05ff	Error in handling forwarding Fax data
e0600 to e06ff	Error in handling system configurations
e0700 to e07ff	Error in handling network parameters
e0800 to e08ff	Error in handling job accounting
e0900 to e09ff	Error in handling short-cuts
e0a00 to e0aff	Error in handling job information
e0b00 to e0bff	Error in handling Fax data
e0c00 toe0cff	Error in handling printer data
e0d00 to e0dff	Error in handling panel data
e0e00 to e0eff	Error in handling document boxes
e1000 to e1fff	Error in handling device-related information
e2000 to e2fff	Error in handling SOAP IF
e3000 to e3fff	Error in handling KM-WSDL IF
e4000 to e4fff	A file mandatory for importing is missing (e4002)/Invalid file header (e4008)
e5000 to e5fff	Error in handling rewriting SOAP data

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U920</td><td>

Checking the copy counts

Description
Checks the copy counts.
Purpose
To check the copy counts.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item.

Display	Description
Main Function	Counts of main function
Sub Function	Counts of sub function

[Setting: Main Function]
1. Select the item.
   * : The current counts are displayed.

Display	Description
B/W Copy	Count value of black/white copy
B/W Prn	Count value of black/white print
B/W Fax	Count value of black/white FAX

[Setting: Sub Function]
1. Select the item.
   * : The current counts are displayed.

Display	Description
Simplex	Count value of Simplex copy
Duplex	Count value of Duplex copy
Combine(Off)	Count value of Combine copy (Off)
Combine(2in1)	Count value of Combine copy (2in1)
Combine(4in1)	Count value of Combine copy (4in1)

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U927</td><td>
Clearing the all copy counts and machine life counts (one time only)

Description
Resets all of the counts back to zero.
Supplement
The total account counter and the machine life counter can be cleared only once if all count values are 1000 or less.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select [Execute].
3. Press the start key. All copy counts and machine life counts are cleared.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U928</td><td>
Checking machine life counts

Description
Displays the machine life counts.
Purpose
To check the machine life counts.

Method
1. Press the start key. The current machine life counts is displayed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Cnt</td><td>Machine life counts</td></tr>
</table>
Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U930</td><td>
Checking/clearing the charger roller count

Description
Displays the counts of the charger roller counter for checking or clearing.
Purpose
To check the count after replacement of the charger roller unit. To clear the counter value when replacing the charger roller unit.
Method
1. Press the start key. The current counts of the charger roller count is displayed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>K</td><td>Count value of charger roller</td></tr>
</table>
Clearing
1. Select the counts to be cleared.
2. Select the counts for all and press [Clear].
3. Press the start key. The counts is cleared.

Completion
Press the stop key.
The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U933</td><td>

Set Maintenance Mode Execute Log

Description
Perform individual configuration or log file printing for the date when maintenance mode is entered and exited or for the feature which records the dates when maintenance mode numbers are executed.
Purpose
Logs a history of execution of maintenance modes for an analysis of causes against the problems.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the item.

<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Export</td><td>Exports a maintenance log</td></tr>
<tr><td>Setting</td><td>Configures maintenance logs to output</td></tr>
</table>

Method: [Export]
1. Press the start key.
2. Select [Execute].
3. Press the start key.
   Exports a maintenance log to a USB flash device.
   * : [Execute] is grayed out is a USB memory is not installed.
   * : Displays a OK or NG after execution.

Setting: [Setting]
1. Select the item.
   * : Select the key that includes the number you want to configure as the logs are displayed block by block.
   ([U000-U019],[U020-U029], ... , [U900-U999])
2. Enable or disable the number to configure.

Completion
Press the stop key.
   * : The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U935</td><td>
Relay board maintenance

Description
Sets the mode when call for service (C0060) occurs.
Purpose
Sets the machine status temporarily when call for service (C0060) occurs. However, after the setting, call for service (C0060) occurs again when progress of period.

Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Select Mode using the +/- keys.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Mode0</td><td>Setting mode: OFF</td></tr>
<tr><td>Mode1</td><td>Setting mode: ON (Usable up to three times of use)</td></tr>
</table>
* : Initial setting: Mode0
3. Press the start key. The setting is set.
4. Turn the main power switch off and on. Allow more than 5 seconds between Off and On.

Supplement
After removing the cause of the problem, be sure to change the setting in OFF.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U942</td><td>
Setting of deflection for feeding from DP

Description
Adjusts the deflection generated when the document processor is used.
Purpose
Use this mode if an original non-feed jam, oblique feed or wrinkling of original occurs when the document processor is used.

Setting
1. Press the start key.
2. Press the system menu key.
3. Place an original on the DP and press the start key to make a test copy.
4. Press the system menu key.
5. Select the item to be adjusted.
6. Change the setting value using the +/- keys or numeric keys.l
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th><th>Setting range</th><th>Initial setting</th><th>Change in value per step</th></tr>
<tr><td>Front</td><td>Deflection of single-sided original</td><td>-31 to 31</td><td>0</td><td>0.17 mm</td></tr>
<tr><td>Mix</td><td>Deflection of mixed original</td><td>-31 to 31</td><td>0</td><td>0.17 mm</td></tr>
</table>
* : The greater the value, the larger the deflection; the smaller the value, the smaller the deflection.
If an original non-feed jam or oblique feed occurs, increase the setting value. If wrinkling of original occurs, decrease the value.
7. Press the start key. The value is set.

Completion
Press the stop key.
The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

Item No.	Description
U952	**Maintenance mode workflow** **Description** The maintenance modes configured in the machine or a USB flash device as a workflow must be executed in succession. **Purpose** This allows maintenance mode to be preset as a template. **Setting** 1. Press the start key. 2. Select the item.

Display	Description
Continue	Restarting an abandoned workflow
Execute(USB)	Executes a workflow housed in a USB flash device
Execute	Executes a workflow stored in the machine
Entry(USB)	Exports a workflow housed in a USB flash device to the machine
Entry	Assigns a workflow in the machine manually
Log	Displays a list of workflows recently executed

Method: [Execute]

1. Select [Execute].
2. Select the workflow.
   * : The machine is preset with the following workflow at shipment.

Display	Description
SETUP	U464/ U410/ U000/ U927/ U278
WARRANTY	U089/ U000
MK-A	U119/ U140/ U127/ U464/ U412/ U464/ U410/ U251
MK-C	U464/ U410/ U251
EH SETUP	U034/ U246
Data6	-
Data7	-
Data8	-

3. Press the start key.
   Executes maintenance modes defined in a workflow in succession.

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U952</td><td>
Method: [Entry]
1. Select [Entry].
2. Select the area to store workflow.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Data1 - 8</td><td>The area to store workflows in the machine</td></tr>
</table>
3. Press the +/- keys or numeric keys to assign a maintenance Nbr. into a workflow.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Flow1 - 14</td><td>Assign a maintenance Nbr.</td></tr>
</table>
4. Press the start key. The setting is set.
Press the start key.
Executes maintenance modes defined in a workflow in succession.

Method: [Execute(USB)]
1. Press the power key on the operation panel, and after verifying the main power indicator has gone off, switch off the main power switch.
2. Insert USB memory in USB memory slot.
3. Turn the main power switch on.
4. Enter maintenance item U952.
5. Select [Execute(USB)].
6. Select the workflow.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>WorkFlowData01 - 07</td><td>Workflow data in the USB flash device</td></tr>
</table>
7. Press the start key.
Executes maintenance modes defined in a workflow in succession.

Method: [Entry(USB)]
1. Press the power key on the operation panel, and after verifying the main power indicator has gone off, switch off the main power switch.
2. Insert USB memory in USB memory slot.
3. Turn the main power switch on.
4. Enter maintenance item U952.
5. Select [Entry(USB)].
6. Select the workflow.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>WorkFlowData01 - 07</td><td>Workflow data in the USB flash device</td></tr>
</table>
7. Select the work flow save area.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Data1 - 8</td><td>The area to store workflows in the machine</td></tr>
</table>
8. Select [Execute].
Exports a workflow housed in a USB flash device to the machine.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U952</td><td>
Example
Registration is feasible when a USB flash device that stores the commands and text/maintenance ID (editable) is inserted.
File Format: xxx.mwf

1, SET UP, 464, 469, 410, 000, 927, 278
2, WARRANTY, 089, 000
3, MK-A, 119, 930, 140, 469, 127, 464, 469, 412, 464, 410, 251
4, MK-B, 119, 930, 140, 464, 469, 412, 464, 410, 251
5, MK-C, 167, 464, 469, 410, 251

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U964</td><td>
Checking of log

Description
Sends a log file saved on the HDD to a USB memory.
Purpose
To transfer a log file saved on the HDD to a USB memory as a means of investigating malfunctions.

Method
1. Press the power key on the operation panel, and after verifying the main power indicator has gone off, switch off the main power switch.
2. Insert USB memory in USB memory slot.
3. Turn the main power switch on.
4. Enter maintenance item U964.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Execute</td><td>Executes transferring a log file.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Jam Log</td><td>Switches functions for obtaining logs at a paper jam.</td></tr>
</table>
5. Select [Execute].
6. Press the start key.
Starts sending the log file saved on the HDD to the USB memory.
Processing is displayed for approximately 3 to 5 minutes.
7. When normally completed, [Completed] is displayed.
8. Turn the main power switch off and on. Allow more than 5 seconds between Off and On.
If a problem occurs during auto correction, error code is displayed.

Setting: [Jam Log]
1. It is unnecessary to choose the Jam Log "On" / "Off" setting.
* : Regardless of the setting, the Jam Log is acquired.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U964</td><td>
Supplement
Instructions on how to obtain a log when the operation panel has frozen
Simultaneously press and hold the *, 8, 6, and Clear keys for 3 to 6 seconds to start logging.
The memory indicator keeps lighting during a log is generated and goes off when completed.
* : The logs obtained in this manner can be retrieved in the USB flash device using the maintenance mode.

Error codes
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>No Usb Storage</td><td>USB memory is not inserted</td></tr>
<tr><td>No File</td><td>File is not found</td></tr>
<tr><td>Mount Error</td><td>Failure to delete the existing files in the USB flash device</td></tr>
<tr><td>File Delete Error</td><td>Failure to copy from the HDD to the USB flash device</td></tr>
<tr><td>Copy Error</td><td>File copy error</td></tr>
<tr><td>Unmount Error</td><td>USB memory unmount error</td></tr>
<tr><td>Other Error</td><td>Other error</td></tr>
</table>
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U969</td><td>
Checking of toner area code

Description
Displays the toner area code.
Purpose
To check the toner area code.

Method
1. Press the start key. The toner area code is displayed.

Completion
Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U977</td><td>
Data capture mode

Description
Store the print data sent to the machine into USB memory.
Purpose
In case to occur the error at printing, check the print data sent to the machine.

Method
1. Press the power key on the operation panel, and after verifying the main power indicator has gone off, switch off the main power switch.
2. Insert USB memory in USB memory slot.
3. Turn the main power switch on.
4. Enter maintenance item U977.
5. Select [Execute].
6. Press the start key.
7. Send the print data to the machine.
Once the print data is stored into USB memory, [Finish] will be displayed.

Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Error codes
<table>
<tr><th>Error codes</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>A removable memory has been crushed. A removable memory was removed during processing or is write-protected.</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td>The removable memory is full.</td></tr>
<tr><td>50</td><td>Other error</td></tr>
</table>
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U978</td><td>
Clear Optional Function

Description
Clear the optional function error.
Purpose
Clear the optional function error.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select [Execute].
* : A message that prompts you to turn power off and on will be displayed after completion of the normal operation, deactivating the keys.

Object error: C9940 Confidential document guard uninstalled error
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U984</td><td>
Checking the developer unit number

Description
Displays the developer unit number.
Purpose
To check the developer unit number.

Method
1. Press the start key. The developer unit number is displayed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>K</td><td>Developer unit number</td></tr>
</table>
Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U985</td><td>
Displaying the developer unit history

Description
Displays the past record of machine number and the developer counter.
Purpose
To check the count value of machine number and the developer counter.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select the [K].
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>K</td><td>Developer unit past record</td></tr>
</table>
The history of a machine number and a developer counter is displayed by three cases.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Machine History1 - 3</td><td>Historical records of the machine number</td></tr>
<tr><td>Cnt History1 - 3</td><td>Historical records of developer counter</td></tr>
</table>
Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

<table>
<tr><th>Item No.</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>U989</td><td>
HDD Scan disk

Description
Restores data in the hard disk by scanning the disk.
Purpose
If power is turned off while accessing to the hard disk is performed, the control information in the hard disk drive may be damaged. Use this mode to restore the data.

Method
1. Press the start key.
2. Select [Execute].
3. Press the start key.
4. Turn the main power switch off and on. Allow more than 5 seconds between Off and On.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U990</td><td>
Checking the time for the exposure lamp to light

Description
Displays the accumulated time for the CIS to light.
Purpose
To check duration of use of the CIS.

Method
1. Press the start key.
The accumulated time for the CIS to light is displayed in minutes.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>CIS</td><td>The accumulated time for the CIS to light</td></tr>
</table>
Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>U991</td><td>
Checking the scanner operation count

Description
Displays the scanner operation count.
Purpose
To check the status of use of the scanner.

Method
1. Press the start key. The current operation counts is displayed.
<table>
<tr><th>Display</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Copy Scan</td><td>Scanner operation counts for copying</td></tr>
<tr><td>Fax Scan</td><td>Scanner operation counts for fax</td></tr>
<tr><td>Other Scan</td><td>Scanner operation counts except for copying</td></tr>
</table>
Completion
Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance No. item is displayed.
</td></tr>
</table>

This page is intentionally left blank.

1-4-1 Paper misfeed detection

(1) Paper misfeed indication

When a paper misfeed occurs, the machine immediately stops printing and displays the paper misfeed message on the operation panel. To remove paper misfed in the machine, pull out the cassette, open the paper conveying unit or paper conveying cover.
The positions and the corrective actions are displayed on the touch panel when a paper jam has occurred.

Jam code: Jam code suggesting the cause of jam (see page 1-4-4)
Position code: Code suggesting the place of jam

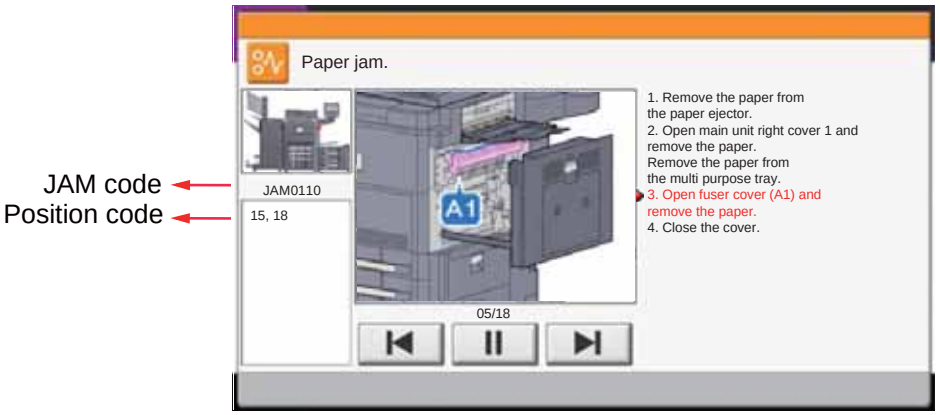


Figure 1-4-1

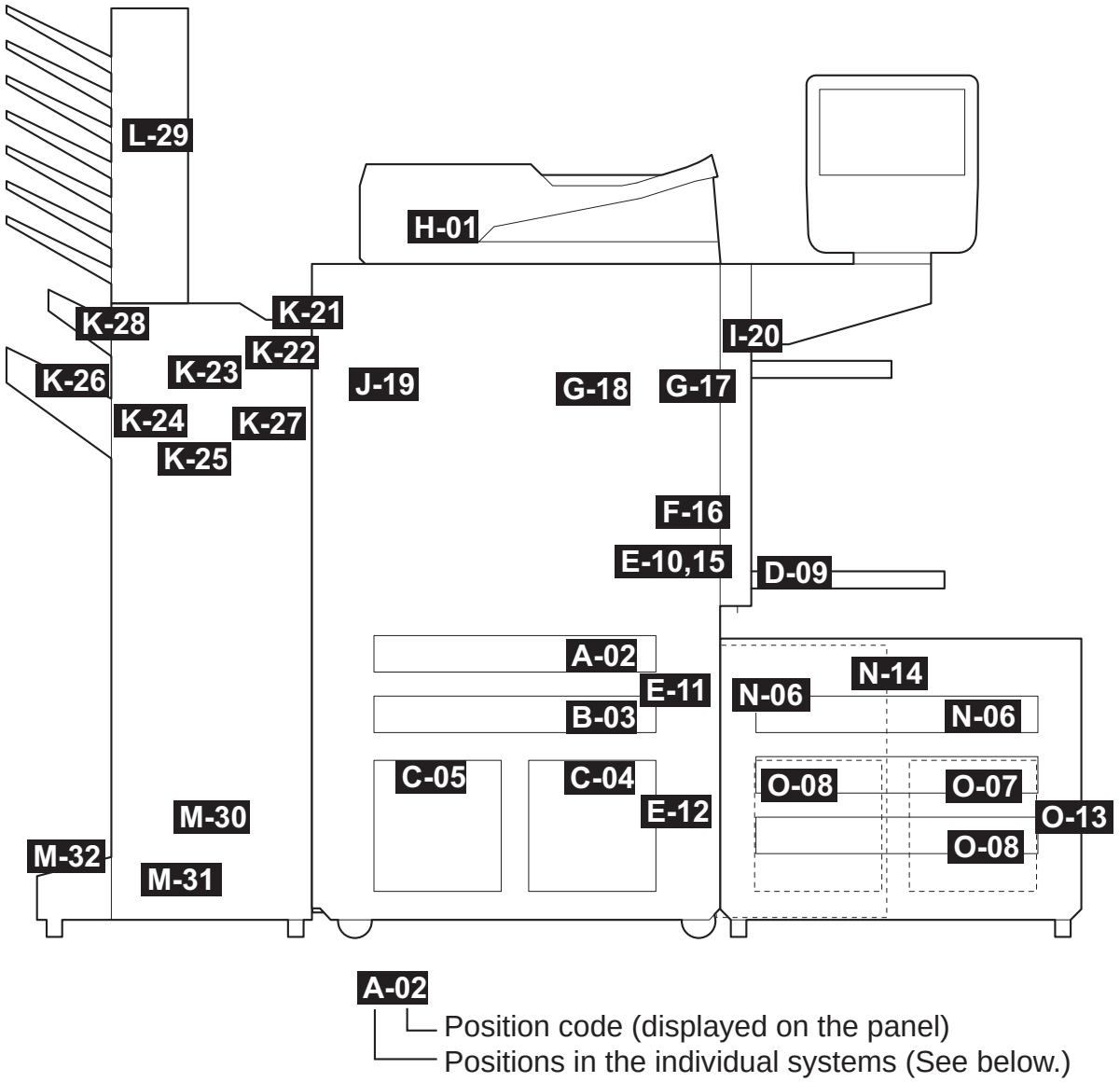


Figure 1-4-2 Paper misfeed indication

A. Misfeed in cassette 1
B. Misfeed in cassette 2
C. Misfeed in cassette 3 or 4
D. Misfeed in the MP tray
E. Misfeed in paper conveying unit, paper conveying cover or PF paper conveying cover
F. Misfeed in the duplex section
G. Misfeed in the fuser section
H. Misfeed in document processor
I. Misfeed in job separator
J. Misfeed in bridge unit
K. Misfeed in document finisher (option)
L. Misfeed in Mail box (option)
M. Misfeed Center-folding unit (option)
N. Misfeed in cassette 5 (option)
O. Misfeed in cassette 6 or 7 (option)

(2) Paper misfeed detection condition

Machine + Option

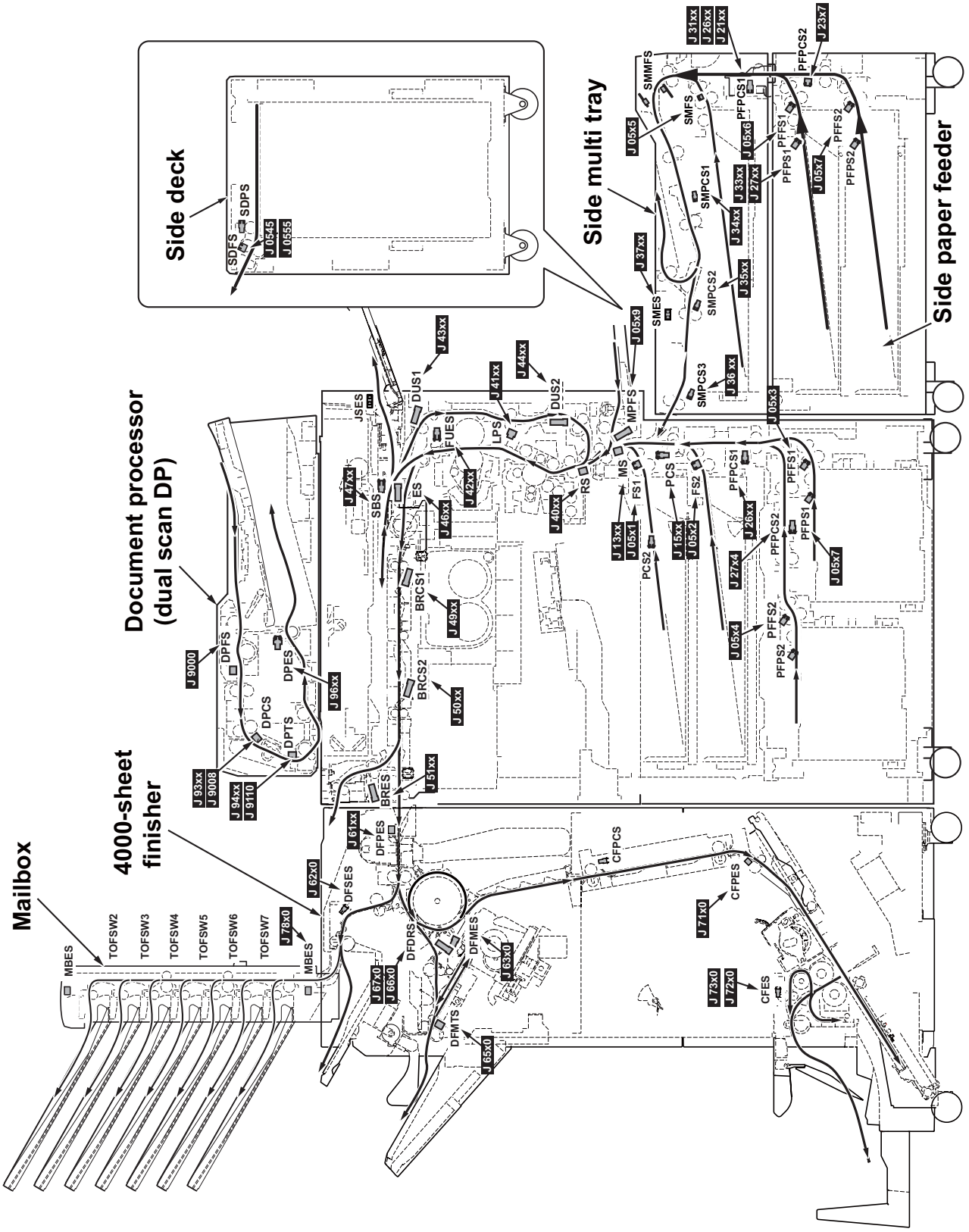


Figure 1-4-3 Paper jam location (Machine + Option)

* : This model does not support the following codes:
0111 /0503 /0504 /0505 /0513 /0514 /0515 /1703 /1704 /1713 /1714 /1904 /1914 /6001 /6021 /6041 / 6101 /6111 /6311 /6401 /6411 /6511 /6811 /6911 /7001 /7951 /9004 /9006 /9007 /9020 /9030 /9200 / 9210 /9500

List of JAM Code

Code	Contents	Conditions	Jam location*
0000	Initial jam	The power is turned on when a sensor in the conveying system is on.	-
0100	Secondary paper feed request time out	Secondary paper feed request given by the controller is unreachable.	-
0101	Waiting for process package to become ready	Process package won't become ready.	-
0102	Waiting for toner package to become ready	Toner package won't become ready.	-
0103	Waiting for the image-sustaining package to become ready	The image-sustaining package won't become ready.	-
0104	Waiting for conveying package to become ready	Conveying package won't become ready.	-
0106	Paper feeding request for duplex printing time out	Paper feeding request for duplex printing given by the controller is unreachable.	-
0107	Waiting for fuser package to become ready	Fuser package won't become ready.	-
0108	Waiting for option package to become ready	Option package won't become ready.	-
0110	Paper conveying unit open	The paper conveying unit is opened during printing.	E
0112	Duplex cover open	The duplex cover is opened during printing.	F
0113	Paper conveying cover open	The paper conveying cover is opened during printing.	E
0114	BR conveying unit open	The BR conveying unit is opened during printing.	J
0115	BR eject cover open	The BR eject cover is opened during printing.	J
0131	MP lift sensor upper limit detection	MP lift sensor 1 (MPLS1) does not turn on within specified time of the MP lift plate rising.	D
0132	Rotary guide detection	Rotary sensor (RTS) does not turn on.	J
0200	Machine sequence error	A sequence error has occurred.	-
0210	PF paper conveying cover open	The PF paper conveying cover is opened during printing.	E
0211	SM paper conveying cover open	The SM paper conveying cover is opened during printing.	N
0212	SM top cover open	The SM top cover is opened during printing.	N
0213	SD cover open	The SD cover is opened during printing.	N
0214	PF paper conveying cover (side) open	The PF paper conveying cover (side) is opened during printing.	O

*: Refer to figure 1-4-1 for paper misfeed indication (see page 1-4-1).

Code	Contents	Conditions	Jam location*
0215	Side multi tray release	The side multi tray is released during printing.	N
0300	Ejection uncompleted	An ejection-completed error has occurred.	-
0501	No paper feed from cassette 1	Feed sensor 1 (FS1) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 1.	A
0502	No paper feed from cassette 2	Feed sensor 2 (FS2) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 2.	B
0506	No paper feed from cassette 6	PF feed sensor 1 (PFFS1) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 6 (side paper feeder).	O
0507	No paper feed from cassette 7	PF feed sensor 2 (PFFS2) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 7 (side paper feeder).	O
0508	No paper feed from duplex section	Registration sensor (RS) does not turn on during paper feed from duplex section.	F
0509	No paper feed from MP tray	MP feed sensor (MPFS) does not turn on during paper feed from MP tray.	D
0511	Multiple sheets in cassette 1	Feed sensor 1 (FS1) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 1.	A
0512	Multiple sheets in cassette 2	Feed sensor 2 (FS2) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 2.	B
0516	Multiple sheets in cassette 6	PF feed sensor 1 (PFFS1) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 6 (side paper feeder).	O
0517	Multiple sheets in cassette 7	PF feed sensor 2 (PFFS2) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 7 (side paper feeder).	O
0518	Multiple sheets in duplex section	Registration sensor (RS) does not turn off during paper feed from duplex section.	F
0519	Multiple sheets in MP tray	MP feed sensor (MPFS) does not turn off during paper feed from MP tray.	D
0523	No paper feed from cassette 3	PF feed sensor 1 (PFFS1) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 3 (large capacity feeder).	C
0524	No paper feed from cassette 4	PF feed sensor 2 (PFFS2) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 4 (large capacity feeder).	C
0525	No paper feed from cassette 5	SM feed sensor (SMFS) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 5 (side multi tray).	N
0526	No paper feed from cassette 6	PF feed sensor 1 (PFFS1) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 6 (side large capacity feeder).	O
0527	No paper feed from cassette 7	PF feed sensor 2 (PFFS2) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 7 (side large capacity feeder).	O
0533	Multiple sheets in cassette 3	PF feed sensor 1 (PFFS1) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 3 (large capacity feeder).	C
0534	Multiple sheets in cassette 4	PF feed sensor 2 (PFFS2) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 4 (large capacity feeder).	C

*: Refer to figure 1-4-1 for paper misfeed indication (see page 1-4-1).

Code	Contents	Conditions	Jam location*
0535	Multiple sheets in cassette 5	SM feed sensor (SMFS) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 5 (side multi tray).	N
0536	Multiple sheets in cassette 6	PF feed sensor 1 (PFFS1) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 6 (side large capacity feeder).	O
0537	Multiple sheets in cassette 7	PF feed sensor 2 (PFFS2) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 7 (side large capacity feeder).	O
0545	No paper feed from side deck	SD feed sensor (SDFS) does not turn on during paper feed from side deck.	N
0555	Multiple sheets in side deck	SD feed sensor (SDFS) does not turn off during paper feed from side deck.	N
1301	Middle sensor non arrival jam	Middle sensor (MS) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 1.	A
1302		Middle sensor (MS) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 2.	B
1303		Middle sensor (MS) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 3 (paper feeder/large capacity feeder).	C
1304		Middle sensor (MS) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 4 (paper feeder/large capacity feeder).	C
1305		Middle sensor (MS) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 5 (side multi tray/side deck).	N
1306		Middle sensor (MS) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 6 (side paper feeder/side large capacity feeder).	O
1307		Middle sensor (MS) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 7 (side paper feeder/side large capacity feeder).	O

*: Refer to figure 1-4-1 for paper misfeed indication (see page 1-4-1).

Code	Contents	Conditions	Jam location*
1311	Middle sensor stay jam	Middle sensor (MS) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 1.	E
1312		Middle sensor (MS) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 2.	E
1313		Middle sensor (MS) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 3 (paper feeder/large capacity feeder).	E
1314		Middle sensor (MS) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 4 (paper feeder/large capacity feeder).	E
1315		Middle sensor (MS) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 5 (side multi tray/side deck).	E
1316		Middle sensor (MS) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 6 (side paper feeder/side large capacity feeder).	E
1317		Middle sensor (MS) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 7 (side paper feeder/side large capacity feeder).	E
1502	Paper conveying sensor non arrival jam	Paper conveying sensor (PCS) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 2.	B
1503		Paper conveying sensor (PCS) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 3 (paper feeder/large capacity feeder).	C
1504		Paper conveying sensor (PCS) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 4 (paper feeder/large capacity feeder).	C
1512	Paper conveying sensor stay jam	Paper conveying sensor (PCS) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 2.	E
1513		Paper conveying sensor (PCS) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 3 (paper feeder/large capacity feeder).	E
1514		Paper conveying sensor (PCS) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 4 (paper feeder/large capacity feeder).	E
2106	PF paper conveying sensor 1 non arrival jam	PF paper conveying sensor 1 (PFPCS1) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 6 (side paper feeder).	O
2107		PF paper conveying sensor 1 (PFPCS1) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 7 (side paper feeder).	O

*: Refer to figure 1-4-1 for paper misfeed indication (see page 1-4-1).

Code	Contents	Conditions	Jam location*
2116	PF paper conveying sensor 1 stay jam	PF paper conveying sensor 1 (PFPCS1) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 6 (side paper feeder).	N
2117		PF paper conveying sensor 1 (PFPCS1) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 7 (side paper feeder).	N
2307	PF paper conveying sensor 2 non arrival jam	PF paper conveying sensor 2 (PFPCS2) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 7 (side paper feeder).	O
2317	PF paper conveying sensor 2 stay jam	PF paper conveying sensor 2 (PFPCS2) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 7 (side paper feeder).	O
2603	PF paper conveying sensor 1 non arrival jam	PF paper conveying sensor 1 (PFPCS1) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 3 (large capacity feeder).	C
2604		PF paper conveying sensor 1 (PFPCS1) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 4 (large capacity feeder).	C
2606		PF paper conveying sensor 1 (PFPCS1) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 6 (side large capacity feeder).	O
2607		PF paper conveying sensor 1 (PFPCS1) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 7 (side large capacity feeder).	O
2613	PF paper conveying sensor 1 stay jam	PF paper conveying sensor 1 (PFPCS1) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 3 (large capacity feeder).	E
2614		PF paper conveying sensor 1 (PFPCS1) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 4 (large capacity feeder).	E
2616		PF paper conveying sensor 1 (PFPCS1) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 6 (side large capacity feeder).	O
2617		PF paper conveying sensor 1 (PFPCS1) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 7 (side large capacity feeder).	O
2704	PF paper conveying sensor 2 non arrival jam	PF paper conveying sensor 2 (PFPCS2) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 4 (large capacity feeder).	C
2707		PF paper conveying sensor 2 (PFPCS2) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 7 (side large capacity feeder).	O

*: Refer to figure 1-4-1 for paper misfeed indication (see page 1-4-1).

Code	Contents	Conditions	Jam location*
2714	PF paper conveying sensor 2 stay jam	PF paper conveying sensor 2 (PFPCS2) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 4 (large capacity feeder).	E
2717		PF paper conveying sensor 2 (PFPCS2) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 7 (side large capacity feeder).	O
3405	SM paper conveying sensor 1 non arrival jam	SM paper conveying sensor 1 (SMPCS1) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 5 (side multi tray).	N
3406		SM paper conveying sensor 1 (SMPCS1) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 6 (side multi tray).	O
3407		SM paper conveying sensor 1 (SMPCS1) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 7 (side multi tray).	O
3415	SM paper conveying sensor 1 stay jam	SM paper conveying sensor 1 (SMPCS1) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 5 (side multi tray).	N
3416		SM paper conveying sensor 1 (SMPCS1) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 6 (side multi tray).	N
3417		SM paper conveying sensor 1 (SMPCS1) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 7 (side multi tray).	N

*: Refer to figure 1-4-1 for paper misfeed indication (see page 1-4-1).

Code	Contents	Conditions	Jam location*
3505	SM paper conveying sensor 2 non arrival jam	SM paper conveying sensor 2 (SMPCS2) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 5 (side multi tray).	N
3506		SM paper conveying sensor 2 (SMPCS2) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 6 (side multi tray).	O
3507		SM paper conveying sensor 2 (SMPCS2) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 7 (side multi tray).	O
3515	SM paper conveying sensor 2 stay jam	SM paper conveying sensor 2 (SMPCS2) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 5 (side multi tray).	N
3516		SM paper conveying sensor 2 (SMPCS2) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 6 (side multi tray).	N
3517		SM paper conveying sensor 2 (SMPCS2) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 7 (side multi tray).	N
3605	SM paper conveying sensor 3 non arrival jam	SM paper conveying sensor 3 (SMPCS3) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 5 (side multi tray).	N
3606		SM paper conveying sensor 3 (SMPCS3) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 6 (side multi tray).	N
3607		SM paper conveying sensor 3 (SMPCS3) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 7 (side multi tray).	N
3615	SM paper conveying sensor 3 stay jam	SM paper conveying sensor 3 (SMPCS3) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 5 (side multi tray).	N
3616		SM paper conveying sensor 3 (SMPCS3) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 6 (side multi tray).	N
3617		SM paper conveying sensor 3 (SMPCS3) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 7 (side multi tray).	N
3705	SM eject sensor non arrival jam	SM eject sensor (SMES) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 5 (side multi tray).	N
3706		SM eject sensor (SMES) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 6 (side multi tray).	O
3707		SM eject sensor (SMES) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 7 (side multi tray).	O

*: Refer to figure 1-4-1 for paper misfeed indication (see page 1-4-1).

Code	Contents	Conditions	Jam location*
3715	SM eject sensor stay jam	SM eject sensor (SMES) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 5 (side multi tray).	N
3716		SM eject sensor (SMES) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 6 (side multi tray).	N
3717		SM eject sensor (SMES) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 7 (side multi tray).	N
4001	Registration sensor non arrival jam	Registration sensor (RS) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 1.	E
4002		Registration sensor (RS) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 2.	E
4003		Registration sensor (RS) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 3 (paper feeder/large capacity feeder).	E
4004		Registration sensor (RS) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 4 (paper feeder/large capacity feeder).	E
4005		Registration sensor (RS) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 5 (side multi tray/side deck).	E
4006		Registration sensor (RS) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 6 (side paper feeder/side large capacity feeder).	E
4007		Registration sensor (RS) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 7 (side paper feeder/side large capacity feeder).	E
4009		Registration sensor (RS) does not turn on during paper feed from MP tray.	E

*: Refer to figure 1-4-1 for paper misfeed indication (see page 1-4-1).

Code	Contents	Conditions	Jam location*
4011	Registration sensor stay jam	Registration sensor (RS) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 1.	E
4012		Registration sensor (RS) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 2.	E
4013		Registration sensor (RS) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 3 (paper feeder/large capacity feeder).	E
4014		Registration sensor (RS) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 4 (paper feeder/large capacity feeder).	E
4015		Registration sensor (RS) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 5 (side multi tray/side deck).	E
4016		Registration sensor (RS) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 6 (side paper feeder/side large capacity feeder).	E
4017		Registration sensor (RS) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 7 (side paper feeder/side large capacity feeder).	E
4019		Registration sensor (RS) does not turn off during paper feed from MP tray.	E
4101	Loop sensor non arrival jam	Loop sensor (LPS) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 1.	E
4102		Loop sensor (LPS) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 2.	E
4103		Loop sensor (LPS) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 3 (paper feeder/large capacity feeder).	E
4104		Loop sensor (LPS) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 4 (paper feeder/large capacity feeder).	E
4105		Loop sensor (LPS) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 5 (side multi tray/side deck).	E
4106		Loop sensor (LPS) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 6 (side paper feeder/side large capacity feeder).	E
4107		Loop sensor (LPS) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 7 (side paper feeder/side large capacity feeder).	E
4108		Loop sensor (LPS) does not turn on during paper feed from duplex section.	E
4109		Loop sensor (LPS) does not turn on during paper feed from MP tray.	E

*: Refer to figure 1-4-1 for paper misfeed indication (see page 1-4-1).

Code	Contents	Conditions	Jam location*
4111	Loop sensor stay jam	Loop sensor (LPS) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 1.	E
4112		Loop sensor (LPS) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 2.	E
4113		Loop sensor (LPS) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 3 (paper feeder/large capacity feeder).	E
4114		Loop sensor (LPS) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 4 (paper feeder/large capacity feeder).	E
4115		Loop sensor (LPS) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 5 (side multi tray/side deck).	E
4116		Loop sensor (LPS) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 6 (side paper feeder/side large capacity feeder).	E
4117		Loop sensor (LPS) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 7 (side paper feeder/side large capacity feeder).	E
4118		Loop sensor (LPS) does not turn off during paper feed from duplex section.	E
4119		Loop sensor (LPS) does not turn off during paper feed from MP tray.	E
4201	Fuser eject sensor non arrival jam	Fuser eject sensor (FUES) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 1.	E
4202		Fuser eject sensor (FUES) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 2.	E
4203		Fuser eject sensor (FUES) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 3 (paper feeder/large capacity feeder).	E
4204		Fuser eject sensor (FUES) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 4 (paper feeder/large capacity feeder).	E
4205		Fuser eject sensor (FUES) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 5 (side multi tray/side deck).	E
4206		Fuser eject sensor (FUES) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 6 (side paper feeder/side large capacity feeder).	E
4207		Fuser eject sensor (FUES) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 7 (side paper feeder/side large capacity feeder).	E
4208		Fuser eject sensor (FUES) does not turn on during paper feed from duplex section.	E
4209		Fuser eject sensor (FUES) does not turn on during paper feed from MP tray.	E

*: Refer to figure 1-4-1 for paper misfeed indication (see page 1-4-1).

Code	Contents	Conditions	Jam location*
4211	Fuser eject sensor stay jam	Fuser eject sensor (FUES) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 1.	G
4212		Fuser eject sensor (FUES) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 2.	G
4213		Fuser eject sensor (FUES) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 3 (paper feeder/large capacity feeder).	G
4214		Fuser eject sensor (FUES) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 4 (paper feeder/large capacity feeder).	G
4215		Fuser eject sensor (FUES) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 5 (side multi tray/side deck).	G
4216		Fuser eject sensor (FUES) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 6 (side paper feeder/side large capacity feeder).	G
4217		Fuser eject sensor (FUES) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 7 (side paper feeder/side large capacity feeder).	G
4218		Fuser eject sensor (FUES) does not turn off during paper feed from duplex section.	G
4219		Fuser eject sensor (FUES) does not turn off during paper feed from MP tray.	G
4301	Duplex sensor 1 non arrival jam	Duplex sensor 1 (DUS1) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 1.	G
4302		Duplex sensor 1 (DUS1) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 2.	G
4303		Duplex sensor 1 (DUS1) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 3 (paper feeder/large capacity feeder).	G
4304		Duplex sensor 1 (DUS1) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 4 (paper feeder/large capacity feeder).	G
4305		Duplex sensor 1 (DUS1) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 5 (side multi tray/side deck).	G
4306		Duplex sensor 1 (DUS1) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 6 (side paper feeder/side large capacity feeder).	G
4307		Duplex sensor 1 (DUS1) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 7 (side paper feeder/side large capacity feeder).	G
4309		Duplex sensor 1 (DUS1) does not turn on during paper feed from MP tray.	G

*: Refer to figure 1-4-1 for paper misfeed indication (see page 1-4-1).

Code	Contents	Conditions	Jam location*
4311	Duplex sensor 1 stay jam	Duplex sensor 1 (DUS1) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 1.	F
4312		Duplex sensor 1 (DUS1) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 2.	F
4313		Duplex sensor 1 (DUS1) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 3 (paper feeder/large capacity feeder).	F
4314		Duplex sensor 1 (DUS1) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 4 (paper feeder/large capacity feeder).	F
4315		Duplex sensor 1 (DUS1) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 5 (side multi tray/side deck).	F
4316		Duplex sensor 1 (DUS1) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 6 (side paper feeder/side large capacity feeder).	F
4317		Duplex sensor 1 (DUS1) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 7 (side paper feeder/side large capacity feeder).	F
4319		Duplex sensor 1 (DUS1) does not turn off during paper feed from MP tray.	F
4401	Duplex sensor 2 non arrival jam	Duplex sensor 2 (DUS2) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 1.	F
4402		Duplex sensor 2 (DUS2) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 2.	F
4403		Duplex sensor 2 (DUS2) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 3 (paper feeder/large capacity feeder).	F
4404		Duplex sensor 2 (DUS2) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 4 (paper feeder/large capacity feeder).	F
4405		Duplex sensor 2 (DUS2) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 5 (side multi tray/side deck).	F
4406		Duplex sensor 2 (DUS2) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 6 (side paper feeder/side large capacity feeder).	F
4407		Duplex sensor 2 (DUS2) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 7 (side paper feeder/side large capacity feeder).	F
4409		Duplex sensor 2 (DUS2) does not turn on during paper feed from MP tray.	F

*: Refer to figure 1-4-1 for paper misfeed indication (see page 1-4-1).

Code	Contents	Conditions	Jam location*
4411	Duplex sensor 2 stay jam	Duplex sensor 2 (DUS2) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 1.	F
4412		Duplex sensor 2 (DUS2) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 2.	F
4413		Duplex sensor 2 (DUS2) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 3 (paper feeder/large capacity feeder).	F
4414		Duplex sensor 2 (DUS2) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 4 (paper feeder/large capacity feeder).	F
4415		Duplex sensor 2 (DUS2) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 5 (side multi tray/side deck).	F
4416		Duplex sensor 2 (DUS2) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 6 (side paper feeder/side large capacity feeder).	F
4417		Duplex sensor 2 (DUS2) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 7 (side paper feeder/side large capacity feeder).	F
4418		Duplex sensor 2 (DUS2) does not turn off during paper feed from duplex section.	F
4419		Duplex sensor 2 (DUS2) does not turn off during paper feed from MP tray.	F

*: Refer to figure 1-4-1 for paper misfeed indication (see page 1-4-1).

Code	Contents	Conditions	Jam location*
4601	Eject full sensor non arrival jam	Eject full sensor (EFS) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 1.	G
4602		Eject full sensor (EFS) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 2.	G
4603		Eject full sensor (EFS) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 3 (paper feeder/large capacity feeder).	G
4604		Eject full sensor (EFS) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 4 (paper feeder/large capacity feeder).	G
4605		Eject full sensor (EFS) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 5 (side multi tray/side deck).	G
4606		Eject full sensor (EFS) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 6 (side paper feeder/side large capacity feeder).	G
4607		Eject full sensor (EFS) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 7 (side paper feeder/side large capacity feeder).	G
4608		Eject full sensor (EFS) does not turn on during paper feed from duplex section.	G
4609		Eject full sensor (EFS) does not turn on during paper feed from MP tray.	G
4611	Eject full sensor stay jam	Eject full sensor (EFS) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 1.	G
4612		Eject full sensor (EFS) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 2.	G
4613		Eject full sensor (EFS) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 3 (paper feeder/large capacity feeder).	G
4614		Eject full sensor (EFS) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 4 (paper feeder/large capacity feeder).	G
4615		Eject full sensor (EFS) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 5 (side multi tray/side deck).	G
4616		Eject full sensor (EFS) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 6 (side paper feeder/side large capacity feeder).	G
4617		Eject full sensor (EFS) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 7 (side paper feeder/side large capacity feeder).	G
4618		Eject full sensor (EFS) does not turn off during paper feed from duplex section.	G
4619		Eject full sensor (EFS) does not turn off during paper feed from MP tray.	G

*: Refer to figure 1-4-1 for paper misfeed indication (see page 1-4-1).

Code	Contents	Conditions	Jam location*
4701	Switchback sensor non arrival jam	Switchback sensor (SBS) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 1.	G
4702		Switchback sensor (SBS) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 2.	G
4703		Switchback sensor (SBS) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 3 (paper feeder/large capacity feeder).	G
4704		Switchback sensor (SBS) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 4 (paper feeder/large capacity feeder).	G
4705		Switchback sensor (SBS) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 5 (side multi tray/side deck).	G
4706		Switchback sensor (SBS) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 6 (side paper feeder/side large capacity feeder).	G
4707		Switchback sensor (SBS) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 7 (side paper feeder/side large capacity feeder).	G
4708		Switchback sensor (SBS) does not turn on during paper feed from duplex section.	G
4709		Switchback sensor (SBS) does not turn on during paper feed from MP tray.	G
4711	Switchback sensor stay jam	Switchback sensor (SBS) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 1.	I
4712		Switchback sensor (SBS) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 2.	I
4713		Switchback sensor (SBS) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 3 (paper feeder/large capacity feeder).	I
4714		Switchback sensor (SBS) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 4 (paper feeder/large capacity feeder).	I
4715		Switchback sensor (SBS) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 5 (side multi tray/side deck).	I
4716		Switchback sensor (SBS) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 6 (side paper feeder/side large capacity feeder).	I
4717		Switchback sensor (SBS) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 7 (side paper feeder/side large capacity feeder).	I
4718		Switchback sensor (SBS) does not turn off during paper feed from duplex section.	I
4719		Switchback sensor (SBS) does not turn off during paper feed from MP tray.	I

*: Refer to figure 1-4-1 for paper misfeed indication (see page 1-4-1).

Code	Contents	Conditions	Jam location*
4901	BR conveying sensor 1 non arrival jam	BR conveying sensor 1 (BRCS1) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 1.	G
4902		BR conveying sensor 1 (BRCS1) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 2.	G
4903		BR conveying sensor 1 (BRCS1) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 3 (paper feeder/large capacity feeder).	G
4904		BR conveying sensor 1 (BRCS1) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 4 (paper feeder/large capacity feeder).	G
4905		BR conveying sensor 1 (BRCS1) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 5 (side multi tray/side deck).	G
4906		BR conveying sensor 1 (BRCS1) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 6 (side paper feeder/side large capacity feeder).	G
4907		BR conveying sensor 1 (BRCS1) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 7 (side paper feeder/side large capacity feeder).	G
4908		BR conveying sensor 1 (BRCS1) does not turn on during paper feed from duplex section.	G
4909		BR conveying sensor 1 (BRCS1) does not turn on during paper feed from MP tray.	G
4911	BR conveying sensor 1 stay jam	BR conveying sensor 1 (BRCS1) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 1.	J
4912		BR conveying sensor 1 (BRCS1) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 2.	J
4913		BR conveying sensor 1 (BRCS1) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 3 (paper feeder/large capacity feeder).	J
4914		BR conveying sensor 1 (BRCS1) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 4 (paper feeder/large capacity feeder).	J
4915		BR conveying sensor 1 (BRCS1) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 5 (side multi tray/side deck).	J
4916		BR conveying sensor 1 (BRCS1) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 6 (side paper feeder/side large capacity feeder).	J
4917		BR conveying sensor 1 (BRCS1) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 7 (side paper feeder/side large capacity feeder).	J

*: Refer to figure 1-4-1 for paper misfeed indication (see page 1-4-1).

Code	Contents	Conditions	Jam location*
4918	BR conveying sensor 1 stay jam	BR conveying sensor 1 (BRCS1) does not turn off during paper feed from duplex section.	J
4919		BR conveying sensor 1 (BRCS1) does not turn off during paper feed from MP tray.	J
5001	BR conveying sensor 2 non arrival jam	BR conveying sensor 2 (BRCS2) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 1.	J
5002		BR conveying sensor 2 (BRCS2) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 2.	J
5003		BR conveying sensor 2 (BRCS2) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 3 (paper feeder/large capacity feeder).	J
5004		BR conveying sensor 2 (BRCS2) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 4 (paper feeder/large capacity feeder).	J
5005		BR conveying sensor 2 (BRCS2) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 5 (side multi tray/side deck).	J
5006		BR conveying sensor 2 (BRCS2) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 6 (side paper feeder/side large capacity feeder).	J
5007		BR conveying sensor 2 (BRCS2) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 7 (side paper feeder/side large capacity feeder).	J
5008		BR conveying sensor 2 (BRCS2) does not turn on during paper feed from duplex section.	J
5009		BR conveying sensor 2 (BRCS2) does not turn on during paper feed from MP tray.	J
5011	BR conveying sensor 2 stay jam	BR conveying sensor 2 (BRCS2) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 1.	J
5012		BR conveying sensor 2 (BRCS2) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 2.	J
5013		BR conveying sensor 2 (BRCS2) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 3 (paper feeder/large capacity feeder).	J
5014		BR conveying sensor 2 (BRCS2) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 4 (paper feeder/large capacity feeder).	J
5015		BR conveying sensor 2 (BRCS2) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 5 (side multi tray/side deck).	J

*: Refer to figure 1-4-1 for paper misfeed indication (see page 1-4-1).

Code	Contents	Conditions	Jam location*
5016	BR conveying sensor 2 stay jam	BR conveying sensor 2 (BRCS2) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 6 (side paper feeder/side large capacity feeder).	J
5017		BR conveying sensor 2 (BRCS2) does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 7 (side paper feeder/side large capacity feeder).	J
5018		BR conveying sensor 2 (BRCS2) does not turn off during paper feed from duplex section.	J
5019		BR conveying sensor 2 (BRCS2) does not turn off during paper feed from MP tray.	J
5101	BR eject sensor non arrival jam	BR eject sensor (BRES) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 1.	J
5102		BR eject sensor (BRES) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 2.	J
5103		BR eject sensor (BRES) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 3 (paper feeder/large capacity feeder).	J
5104		BR eject sensor (BRES) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 4 (paper feeder/large capacity feeder).	J
5105		BR eject sensor (BRES) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 5 (side multi tray/side deck).	J
5106		BR eject sensor (BRES) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 6 (side paper feeder/side large capacity feeder).	J
5107		BR eject sensor (BRES) does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 7 (side paper feeder/side large capacity feeder).	J
5108		BR eject sensor (BRES) does not turn on during paper feed from duplex section.	J
5109		BR eject sensor (BRES) does not turn on during paper feed from MP tray.	J

*: Refer to figure 1-4-1 for paper misfeed indication (see page 1-4-1).

Code	Contents	Conditions	Jam location*
5111	BR eject sensor stay jam	BR eject sensor (BRES) does not tum off during paper feed from cassette 1.	J
5112		BR eject sensor (BRES) does not tum off during paper feed from cassette 2.	J
5113		BR eject sensor (BRES) does not tum off during paper feed from cassette 3 (paper feeder/large capacity feeder).	J
5114		BR eject sensor (BRES) does not tum off during paper feed from cassette 4 (paper feeder/large capacity feeder).	J
5115		BR eject sensor (BRES) does not tum off during paper feed from cassette 5 (side multi tray/side deck).	J
5116		BR eject sensor (BRES) does not tum off during paper feed from cassette 6 (side paper feeder/side large capacity feeder).	J
5117		BR eject sensor (BRES) does not tum off during paper feed from cassette 7 (side paper feeder/side large capacity feeder).	J
5118		BR eject sensor (BRES) does not tum off during paper feed from duplex section.	J
5119		BR eject sensor (BRES) does not tum off during paper feed from MP tray.	J
6000	DF paper entry error	DF paper entry sensor (DFPES) turn on before the eject signal is output from the machine.	K
6020	DF front cover open	DF front upper cover is opened during operation.	K
6050	CF eject cover open	CF eject cover is opened during operation.	M
6060	MB cover open	MB cover is opened during operation.	L
6070	Center folding unit open	Center folding unit is opened during operation.	M
6080	CF left guide open	CF left guide is opened during operation.	M
6100	DF paper entry sensor non arrival jam	DF paper entry sensor (DFPES) does not turned on even if a specified time has elapsed after the machine eject signal was received.	K
6110	DF paper entry sensor stay jam	DF paper entry sensor (DFPES) does not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	K
6200	DF sub eject sensor non arrival jam	DF sub eject sensor (DFSES) does not turn on within specified time of DF paper entry sensor (DFPES) turning on.	K
6210	DF sub eject sensor stay jam	DF sub eject sensor (DFSES) does not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	K
6300	DF middle eject sensor non arrival jam	DF middle eject sensor (DFMES) does not turn on within specified time of DF paper entry sensor (DFPES) turning on.	K

*: Refer to figure 1-4-1 for paper misfeed indication (see page 1-4-1).

Code	Contents	Conditions	Jam location*
6310	DF middle eject sensor stay jam	DF middle eject sensor (DFMES) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	K
6400	DF tray upper surface sensor non arrival jam	DF tray upper surface sensor (DFTUSS) does not turn on within specified time of DF middle eject sensor (DFMES) turning on.	K
6410	DF tray upper surface sensor stay jam	DF tray upper surface sensor (DFTUSS) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	K
6500	DF eject paper sensor non arrival jam	DF eject paper sensor (DFMTS) does not turn on within specified time of DF middle eject sensor (DFMES) turning on.	K
6510	DF eject paper sensor stay jam	DF eject paper sensor (DFMTS) is not tumed off since the bundle discharge starts.	K
6600	DF drum sensor non arrival jam	DF drum sensor (DFDRS) does not turn on within specified time of DF paper entry sensor (DFPES) turning on.	K
6610	DF drum sensor stay jam	DF drum sensor (DFDRS) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	K
6710	Center folding unit stay jam	During paper conveying to center folding unit, DF drum sensor (DFDRS) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	K
6810	DF side registration sensor 1 stay jam	DF side registration sensor 1 (DFSRS1) is not turned off within specified time after driving the DF side registration motor 1 (DFSRM1).	K
6910	DF side registration sensor 2 stay jam	DF side registration sensor 2 (DFSRS2) is not turned off within specified time after driving the DF side registration motor 2 (DFSRM2).	K
7000	DF staple operation error	DF staple sensor (DFSTS) is not turned on within specified time after driving the DF staple motor (DFSTM).	K
7100	CF paper entry sensor non arrival jam	CF paper entry sensor (CFPES) is not turned on even if a specified time has elapsed after the machine eject signal was received.	M
7110	CF paper entry sensor stay jam	CF paper entry sensor (CFPES) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	M
7200	CF eject sensor non arrival jam	CF eject sensor (CFES) is not turned on within specified time since centerfold operation starts.	M
7210	CF eject sensor stay jam	During centerfold operation, CF eject sensor (CFES) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	M
7300	CF eject sensor non arrival jam	CF eject sensor (CFES) is not turned on within specified time since three fold operation starts.	M
7310	CF eject sensor stay jam	During three fold operation, CF eject sensor (CFES) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	M

*: Refer to figure 1-4-1 for paper misfeed indication (see page 1-4-1).

Code	Contents	Conditions	Jam location*
7400	CF side registration sensor 2 non arrival jam	CF side registration sensor 2 (CFSRS2) is not turned on within specified time after driving the CF side registration motor 2 (CFSRM2).	M
7500	CF side registration sensor 1 non arrival jam	CF side registration sensor 1 (CFSRS1) is not turned on within specified time after driving the CF side registration motor 1 (CFSRM1).	M
7600	CF staple operation error	CF staple sensor (CFSTS) is not turned on within specified time after driving the CF staple motor (CFSTM).	M
7700	CF paper conveying sensor non arrival jam	CF paper conveying sensor (CFPCS) is not turned on even if a specified time has elapsed after the machine eject signal was received.	M
7710	CF paper conveying sensor stay jam	CF paper conveying sensor (CFPCS) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	M
7800	MB eject sensor non arrival jam	MB eject sensor (MBES) is not turned on even if a specified time has elapsed after the machine eject signal was received.	L
7810	MB eject sensor stay jam	MB eject sensor (MBES) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	L
7900	Middle paddle error jam	DF paddle sensor (DFPDS) is not turned on within specified time after driving the DF middle motor (DFMM).	K
7950	Paper interval error jam	An illegal inter-page or inter-copy interval has occurred.	K
9000	No original feed jam	DP feed sensor (DPFS) does not turn on within specified time during the first sheet feeding (Retry 5 times).	H
9001	DP original conveying jam	DP timing sensor (DPTS) turn off within the specified time since the sensor turn on.	H
9002	DP sensor stay jam	Sensor in the conveying system is on since original feeding starts.	H
9005	No original feed jam 2	DP lift sensor 1 (DPLS1) does not turn on within specified time of the lift plate rising.	H
9008	No original feed jam 3	DP CIS sensor (DPCS) does not turn on within specified time of the paper feed starting.	H
9009	DP original conveying jam 2	Next feed original became the stand-by states of paper feed while reading the image.	H
9010	Document processor open	Document processor is opened during original feeding.	H
9011	DP top cover open	The DP top cover is opened during original feeding.	H
9110	DP feed sensor stay jam	DP feed sensor (DPFS) does not turn off within specified time of DP timing sensor (DPTS) turning on.	H

*: Refer to figure 1-4-1 for paper misfeed indication (see page 1-4-1).

Code	Contents	Conditions	Jam location*
9300	DP CIS sensor non arrival jam	DP CIS sensor (DPCS) does not turn on within specified time of DP registration sensor (DPFS) turning on.	H
9310	DP CIS sensor stay jam	DP CIS sensor (DPCS) does not turn off within specified time of DP registration sensor (DPFS) turning off.	H
9400	DP timing sensor non arrival jam	DP timing sensor (DPTS) does not turn on within specified time of DP feed sensor (DPFS) turning on.	H
9410	DP timing sensor stay jam	DP timing sensor (DPTS) does not turn off within specified time of DP feed sensor (DPFS) turning off.	H
9600	DP eject sensor non arrival jam	DP eject sensor (DPES) does not turn on within specified time of DP timing sensor (DPTS) turning on.	H
9610	DP eject sensor stay jam	DP eject sensor (DPES) does not turn off within specified time of DP timing sensor (DPTS) turning off.	H

*: Refer to figure 1-4-1 for paper misfeed indication (see page 1-4-1).

1-4-2 Troubleshooting

(1) First check items

If the paper is fed askew, jammed, curled, or leading-edge dog-eared, first perform to check the following items.

Check items	Check description	Corrective measures
Paper	1. Check the paper delivered is dog-eared, skewed, rumpled, loosely fused, or curled.	If a dog-ear has happened, check there are no objects existing in the conveying paths and, if any, fix. If the paper is fed askew or crumpled, perform the following No.2.If an inferior fusing or curling is observed and the fuser temperature is set to a abnormal value, when measured by performing maintenance mode U161, reset to the default. (see page 1-3-92)
	2. Check how paper is loaded in the cassette (deck). Check that the paper has been properly aligned with width adjuster cursor and the rear guide; it has been loaded without skewing; or it is not damaged. (Crumpled paper, main unit/DF jam)	Adjust the cursors to the size of the paper. (If paper is fed askew, perform a skew cancellation adjustment of the width adjuster cursor.) (see page 1-5-140)  
	3. Check how paper is loaded. Check if the cutting edge of the paper bundle inside is cumpled or bent.	If the cutting edge of the paper bundle is crumpled, fan the paper before loading. If the paper is folded, stretch before loading in the cassette
	4. If a large-capacity deck is being used, check how paper is loaded in the deck. Check if the paper inside the deck is placed above the guide.	Reload the paper so that its edges won't be situated above the platform.
	5. Check the paper is damp, wavy, or curled.	1. Load the paper bundle in the cassette upside down. 2. Load the paper bundle after rotating it 180°and reload. 3. Change the paper.
	6. Check if the paper loaded was stored in a continuously humid place.	Instruct the user to store paper in a dry, less humid place. Install a cassette heater and configure using U327. (see page 1-3-141)
	7. Check if the paper conforms to the requirements.	Isolate the cause of the problem by replacing the paper with the recommended paper. (see page 1-1-1)

Check items	Check description	Corrective measures
Paper	8. Check the paper ejected is dog-eared, skewed, rumpled, loosely fused, or curled.	If the maintenance mode U161 shows that the fuser temperature is set to an abnormal value, reset it to the default. (see page 1-3-92)
Settings/ Detection	1. Check if the margin is 4.0+1.5/-1.0mm from the leading edge of paper. 2. Perform U034 to check the reference mark is situated at 20mm ± 1mm from the edge. (Fuser jam) (see page 1-3-36)	If the check line is not situated at 20mm±1mm from the leading edge, adjust the leading margin by U402. (see page 1-3-146)
	3. Check the panel if the paper size is correctly detected and the cassette size is not fixed.(Paper jam caused by continously fed paper, DF Jam J611X) Perform U000 to obtain a Event Log to check if the paper size and the size of the paper loaded are met when jam has occurred and if the size of the original document and the paper size are met. see page 1-3-10)	If the paper size is incorrectly displayed, adjust the positions of the paper set guide cursors in accordance with the paper size, making sure that the paper is not askew to activate the size detector switch.
	4. Check that paper settings are made in accordance with the paper being used. (Jam caused by faulty separation)	Select Original/ Paper settings under common settings in the system menu to set media type and weight of paper.
Coveying unit	Check the main unit vertical conveying unit or the front and back parts and right and left parts of the deck's horizontal conveying unit are slightly strained and closed.	To open, first open the right-side conveying unit and close firmly. (Check the position of the safery switch)

Check items	Check description	Corrective measures
Conveying guide, approaching guide, feed-shift guide	1. Check that the foreign objects including scrips, paper clips, etc., do not exist in the paper conveying paths.	If foreign objects such as scrips, etc., remain in the paper conveying path, remove.
	2. Check that the paper conveying guide and the separation needles are not contaminated with toner, paper dusts, etc.	If dirty, clean the guide, ribs (by a cloth), and the separation needles (by a cleaning brush).If the ribs of the conveying guides were broken or deposited with toner, replace.
	3. Check that the paper conveying guide has no barrs, deformations, or abrasions; and it is properly mounted without being floated.	Clean the conveying guide or the paper approaching guide.Remove any protrusions including barrs.If floated, fix it properly.If deformation or abrasion is observed, replace.
	4. Check that the guide. Check that the guide is smoothly operative when manipulated.	If the guide is inoperative or won't operate smoothly, replace the guide or the unit.
	5. Check that the guide. Perform U033 to check the operation of the solenoid to sight-check or audio-check its action. (see page 1-3-35)	If the guide is inoperative or won't operate smoothly, re-assemble the guide or replace the solenoid or the unit.

Check items	Check description	Corrective measures
Conveying roller, feed roller	1. Check the conveying rollers have no paper dusts, toner, or foreign objects stucked.Check a variation of the external diameter of the roller or abrasion is not observed with the coveying roller.	Clean the conveying rollers or the pulleys. If variation in the external diameter or abrasion is observed, replace.
	2. Turn the cover safety switch on and perform U030 - Motor, U032 - Clutch, and U240 - Finished, check they operate normally. * : At checking the clutch by U032, confirm that the roller won't turn when the motor is turned on. (see page 1-3-32,1-3-34,1-3-116)	If the conveying motor or the clutch is inoperative, replace. If stained, replace the clutch. If the clutch is kept turned on due to a tensioned wire, reroute wires.
	3. Check the conveying roller rotates without overloading. Check the axle holder or the roller shaft are not contaminated. Check that the spring has not fallen off and is mounted so that it is properly applying pressure against the rollers or pulleys.	Clean the roller axle or the axle holder.Re-assemble it while checking the pressure of the spring.
Sensor	1. Check if it does not operate with smoothness due to an abnormal move or dropping off of the actuator of the coveying switch.	Re-assemble the actuator or the return spring.
	2. Check that the surface of the sensor and the recveptor black felt pieces are not contaminated with toner, paper dusts, etc.	If dirty, clean the sensor or the black felt piece.
	3. Perform U031 - Conveying switch and U241 - Finisher switch to check the sensors are normal without flickering, etc. (see page1-3-33, 1-3-118)	If U031has revealed that the sensor is inoperative, replace the switch.

Check items	Check description	Corrective measures
Static	Check if the location is susceptible to build static discharge at the conveying guide during printing.	Re-assemble and re-wire the static discharge sheet at the ejection unit or the metal guide at the tranfer unit so that they are properly grounded.

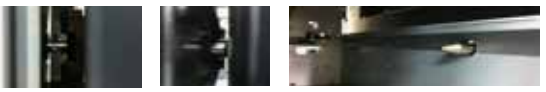
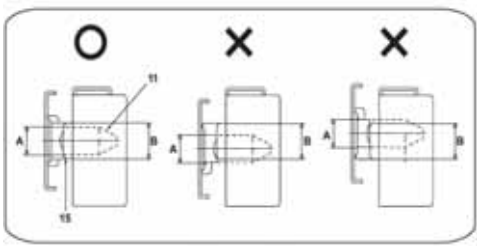
(2) Items and corrective actions relating to the device that will cause paper jam

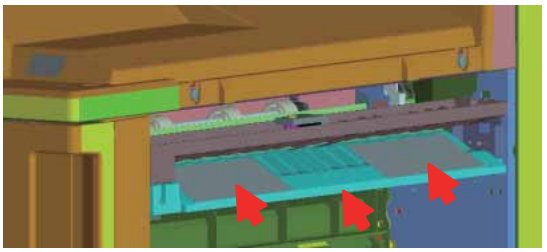
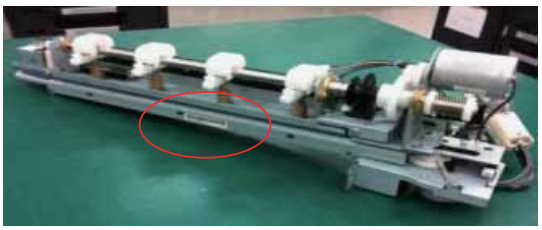
Jam types	Check description	Corrective measures
No-paper-feed jam or the leading edge of paper is curled back at the position of the roller (J0501,J0502, J0503,J0504, J0505, J0506, J0507, J0509, J0523, J0524, J0525, J0526, J0527, J0545)	1. Check if the jammed paper or the printed paper has a tear caused by the roller at its leading edge.	Replace the primary feed roller.(Service life of rubber roller is 150k.) Increase the spring pressure to pinch the separation rollers if the component is undue to its expected life.Replace the spring.
	2. Check abrasion and paper dusts on the feed roller and forward rollers.	Clean the feed roller and the forward roller.Or, if not amended, replace.
	3. Perform U032 to check the forward roller and feed roller are rotating.	If disconnected or or stained, replace the primary feed clutch.
	4. Check if a primary feed roller of a wrong material of rubber is installed.	Distinguished by color: White x 2, black x 1 Check that the feed rollers are installed at (1) Feed Roller (Collar is white.), (2) Retard roller (black), and (3) Pickup Roller (white). 45-ppm/ 55-ppm devices * : If not, install then at the correct positions.
	5. Check that the conveying force of the pickup roller is sufficient.	Increase the conveying force during paper pickup by increasing the spring load of the pickup roller.
	6. Check the film is sufficiently protruded in front of approching the feed roller and the nip.(Too wide a gap against the feed roller.)	Amount of protrusion of film in approaching (Gap: 0.2 - 0.5 mm) must be maintained after adjustment.

Jam types	Check description	Corrective measures
No-paper-feed jam or the leading edge of paper is curled back at the position of the roller (J0501,J0502, J0503,J0504, J0505, J0506, J0507J0509, J0523, J0524, J0525, J0526, J0527, J0545)	7. Check the separation roller is not disturbed as a driving component is in contact with the frame during the separation roller is in motion.	If it gets in contact, replace the primary feed unit.
	8. Depress the release lever to release the pressure of the primary feed rollers to check that the retard holder falls. (The pressure by the retard roller to the feed roller is decreased.)	Modify mounting the retard holder fixing plate.
Multiple-feed Jam (J0511, J0512, J0513, J0514, J0516, J0517, J0519)	1. Check if the cutting edge of the paper bundle is crumpled or the cassette is loaded with multiple times of replenishing paper.	If the cutting edge of the paper bundle is crumpled or the cassette is loaded with multiple times of replenishing paper, load new paper.
	2. Checking paper size. Check that the size of the loaded paper and the paper size chosen on the operator panel are met.	If the paper size does not agree. 1. If the cassette cursors are open against the paper, set it properly. 2. Insert the cassette until the paper size detector switch is turned on. If the size is not detectable while automatic sizing is enabled, replace the size detection switch.
		If the paper size agrees 1. If paper other than complying the requirements such as coated paper, inkjet paper, etc., is used, replace the paper. 2. RE-assemble the pulley retard in the primary feed unit if it is mounted to the oppisite direction. 3. Check if the spring retard has not been fallen off of the mounting position. If the spring retard is not dropped off of the mount position, decrease the spring pressure that is applied to the separation rollers. 4. Replace the primary feed unit.
	3. Check if paper dusts and abrasion are observed on the paper fanning roller and retard roller.	If the paper fanning roller is dirty, clean. If abrasion is observed, replace.

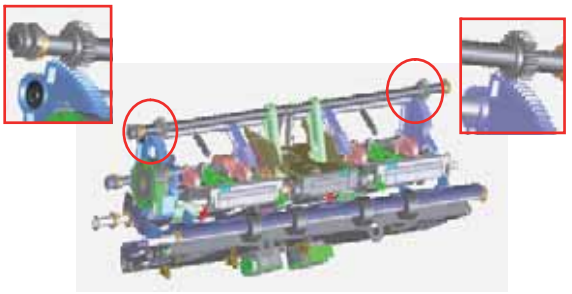
Jam types	Check description	Corrective measures
Multiple-feed Jam (J0511, J0512, J0513, J0514, J0516, J0517, J0519)	4. Select the motor by U032 and check the clutch rotates following the other component when the motor is turned on. (see page 1-3-34)	If the clutch rotates following the other component and its stain is observed, replace the clutch.
Duplex No-original-feed Jam (J0508) Duplex Multiple-feed Jam (J0518)	Perform U031 to check if the duplex sensor 2 is detected. (see page 1-3-33)	If the duplex sensor 2 is not working, replace the duplex sensor 2.
Intermediate/ conveying sensor stay jam (J1313, J1314, J1513, J1514)	1. Check to see if the actuator is operative without hinderance.	If it won't operate without hinderance, re-assemble or replace the actuator's return spring.
	2. Perform U031 to check the operation of the sensor.	If the sensor is inoperative, replace.
	3. Select the motor by U032 and check if the coveying clutch rotates following the other component. (see page 1-3-34)	If stained, replace the clutch.Re-assmeble the clutch so that it is not continuously energized. (Change of wirings, etc.)
	4. Check if the conveying guide is twisted to be mounted.(If the mounting parts of the guide is floated, the actuator won't protrude sufficiently.)	If the bracket is twisted to be mounted, remove the screw fixing the conveying guide and properly mount the bracket in the right position and fix again.
	5. Check no wrinkles are observed at the sluck of paper during paper feeding.	Adjust the cursors to the size of the paper. (If paper is fed askew, perform a skew cancellation adjustment of the width adjuster cursor.) (see page 1-5-140)

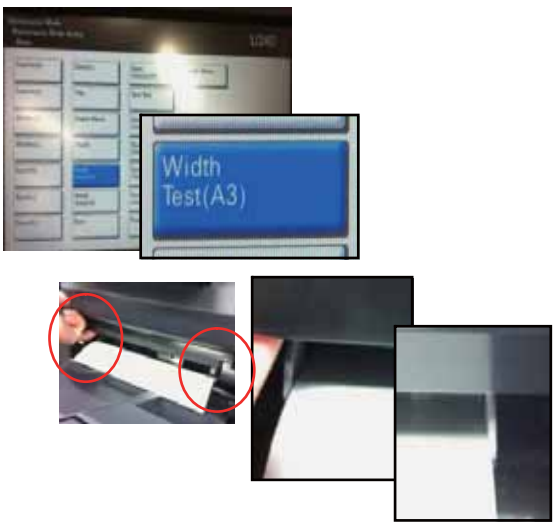
Jam types	Check description	Corrective measures
Conveying sensor non arrival jam (J1503/ J1504) SM conveying sensor 2 stay jam (J3415, J3416, J3417)	1. Check to see if the actuator is operative without hinderance.	Re-assemble or replace the actuator's return spring.
	2. Perform U030 to check the operation of the motor. Check the transmission of the gear drive using U032. * : Check the convey-ing roller rotates and is movable in the direction of thrust without hinderance. (see page 1-3-32)	If the roller won't rotate without hinderance, loosen the screws for adjusting the position (at the gear train bracket) to mount the driving gears, and tighten so that a gap between the gears and frame is eliminated.
Loop sensor non arrival jam (J4101, J4102, J4103, J4104, J4105, J4106, J4107)	1. Check no wrinkles are observed at the sluck of paper during paper feeding.	Adjust the cursors to the size of the paper. (If paper is fed askew, perform a skew cancellation adjustment of the width adjuster cursor.) (see page 1-5-140)
	2. Check that the paper is entirely loaded inside the cassette without being skewed.	Reload paper.
Fuser eject sensor stay jam (J421X) Ejection-full sensor non arrival jam (J460X) Inversion sensor non arrival jam (J470X)	1. If paper jam occurrs at the feedshift guide in the eject unit, check if the guide is operative without hinderance.	If the distance between the housing and the feedshift guide is too small for the guide to move without hinderance, replace the eject unit.
	2. Perform U031 to check if the eject sensor does not show a false detection. (see page 1-3-33)	Replace the defective eject sensor or the eject unit.

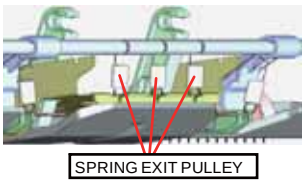
Jam types	Check description	Corrective measures
Duplex sensors 1 and 2, stuck/ non arrival Jam (J43XX, J44XX)	1. Check that the duplex rollers cause slipage in feeding paper.	Clean or replace the duplex roller in the coveying unit.
	2. Perform U031 to check if the duplex sensors 1 and 2 do not show false detections.	Replace the defective duplex sensors 1 and 2 or the coveying unit.
	3. Check if the second side of plain paper is curled at its tail and slacked in the middle making the switch disguised as no existance of paper.	Replace the paper with new paper.Try feeding paper lengthwise.
BR conveying sensor 1/2 non arrival/stay jam (J49XX) Eject sensor non arrival jam (J50XX) Eject sensor stay jam (J51XX) DF paper entry error JAM (J600X)	1. Check contamination of the rollers of the bridge eject unit.	Clean or replace the rollers.
	2. Check contamination or abrasion of the axle holders of the bridge eject unit.	Clean the axle holder or replace with a new axle holder.
	3. Check the location the bridge relay conveying unit is mounted.	Re-mount.
DF conveying sensor non arrival jam (J610X) DF conveying sensor stay jam (J611X)	1. Check it the main unit and the DF are vertically flush with each other.	Perform the height adjustment by referring to the installation instructions.  

Jam types	Check description	Corrective measures
DF conveying sensor non arrival jam (J610X) DF conveying sensor stay jam (J611X)	2. Check if the jammed paper has a dog-ear.	2.If a down-curled sheet is jammed at the DF conveying guide ribs by being dog-eared, replace the DF conveying lower guide. 
	3. Check if dog-ears are caused within the punch unit.	If a welding protrusion on the coveying side causes paper to be trapped, try replacing the punch unit. 
DF intermediate sensor stay jam (J631X) DF main tray ejection stay JAM (J641X) DF eject sensor non arrival jam (J6500) DF eject sensor stay jam (J651X)	1. If there is not the jammed paper which is causing J631, at the paper processing area, check to see if the actuator (DF middle sensor) is operative. 	Re-mount the actuator.

Jam types	Check description	Corrective measures

DF intermediate sensor stay jam (J631X)
DF main tray ejection stay JAM (J641X)
DF eject sensor non arrival jam (J6500)
DF eject sensor stay jam (J651X)
	2. Check the range of the up and down movement of the ejection guide.
	Check if the operating position after feeding in the first sheet is normal.
	(1)If it moves askew (due to the forward and backward shift of phase on the eject guide)
	(2)If the range of motion is too small
	Check if the gap between the ejection roller and the ejection pulleys is approximately 3.5 - 5.5 mm.
	(Check gaps while making paper still in the intermediate process tray.)
		If the gap is not correct, fix balance of the bundle eject unit.
		If (1): Correct the phase shifting with meshing of the front and back gears.
		(Turn on U240 - Motor-EjectUnlock (30) to check the balance of the front and back rollers with the bundle eject unit opened.see page 1-3-116)
		 
		If (2): Adjust the positioning of or replace the Mount PI upper guide.
		 

	3. Execute U240 Motor - Width Test A3/LD to adjust the position of the width adjuster cursor of the process tray. Check if the cursor is located at 0 - +0.5 from the paper edge. Or check if the cursor is abnormally shifted. (The DF and the main unit paper sources) (see page 1-3-116)	If the width adjuster cursor is wrongly positioned, perform U246 Finisher - Width Front HP/Width Tail HP. (see page 1-3-123) 

Jam types	Check description	Corrective measures
DF intermediate sensor stay jam (J631X) DF main tray ejection stay JAM (J641X) DF eject sensor non arrival jam (J6500) DF eject sensor stay jam (J651X)	4.With stapling at one point with about 65 sheets, check for the failure on the bundle when it is delivered in the shape of an arc.  	1. If a wire from the ejection motor is pinched by other component or a connector is loosely connected, correct. If a loss of synchronism is observed with the ejection motor due to lack of torque, replace the motor. 2. If paper slippage occurs due to the lack of pressure by the ejection rollers, check if the pressure sufficient (3 springs, at the center). If a malfunction to encumber the ejection rollers to generate pressure is observed, correct.
	5. With stapling set at 2 points and about 50 sheets, run a test print and check the print bundle delivered for the failure on the direction of ejection and the front and back side, abrupt alignment, and overall alignment.	If the paper is curled, change the direction of loading paper or replace the paper.
	6. Check if a floated staple, buckling, or stapling at a wrong position is occurred.	Configure each of the cassettes for the weight of the paper loaded.replace the paper. Adjust the stapling home position by U246 - Staple HP. (see page 1-3-123)
	7. Check stapling has been properly done if the paper bundle cannot be ejected causing J-6510.	Provide instructions with the following points emphasized. 1. Tap the paper to align its ends and load all the way into the cassette. 2. After settings, let go off of the paper. (Allows automatic ehection after stapling.) 3. Do not remove paper before the paper bundle is ejected once it is stapled.
DF drum sensor non arrival jam (J6600)	Paper is jammed with its leading edge caught by the diversion solenoid 1 in the middle of coveying paths.	Check it the axle of the diverting solenoid 1 is inserted all the way into the lever of the DF diverting solenoid 1, and insert the lever firmly if it is not.

Jam types	Check description	Corrective measures
DF drum sensor stay jam (J6610)	1. Check if the size and orientation of the original document and the paper used match.	If not matched, load the paper in the size and orientation configured for the cassette or the manual feed tray.
	2. Check to see if the actuator (DF drum sensor) is operative without hinderance.	If the return spring has been fallen off of the fixing position, fix it properly.If the actuator won't operate smoothly, replace.
Center-folding unit conveying stay JAM (J6710) Center-folding unit conveying sensor stay JAM (J7710)	If paper is jammed before reaching the center-folding unit, check that the drive train gears are in mesh.	If the drive transmission gears are not in mesh, replace the pivot pin of the CF lock lever and the DF fixing pin.

(3) Paper jam at feeding from cassette 1
Electrical parts that could cause paper jam during paper travelling at the primary feeding (to regist roller)

Timing of detection

Jam code
J0501,J0511,J1301,J1311,J4001,J4011

Measures

Related parts	
Paper feed motor(PFM)	Registration sensor (RS)
Paper feed clutch 1(PFCL1)	Engine PWB (EPWB)
Assist clutch 1 (ACSL1)	Feed PWB 2 (FPWB2)
Middle motor (MM)	Feed PWB 1 (FPWB1)
Registration motor (RM)	
Feed sensor 1 (FS1)	
Middle sensor (MS)	

Checking procedure at the occurrence of J0501	Corrective action at the occurrence of J0501	On/Off control signal output connector (terminal), point of checking connection
1	Items for Initial Checks	see page 1-4-26
2	Feed sensor 1 (FS1): Conduct connectivity check, mounting location check, operation check (U031)	Feed PWB 2 YC8-11
3	Paper feed clutch (PFCL1): Operation check (U032)	Feed PWB 2 YC4-1
4	Paper feed motor: Operation check (U030)	Feed PWB 2 YC2-3(RDY),1(REM)
5	Feed PWB 2: Replace	
6	Engine PWB : Replace	

Checking procedure at the occurrence of J13X	Corrective action at the occurrence of J13X1	On/Off control signal output connector (terminal), point of checking connection
1	Items for Initial Checks	see page 1-4-26
2	Middle sensor (MS): Conduct connectivity check, mounting location check, operation check (U031)	Feed PWB 2 YC8-9
3	Assist clutch 1 (ACSL1): Operation check (U032)	Feed PWB 2 YC10-1
4	Middle motor (MM): Operation check (U030)	Feed PWB 2 YC7-1 to 4
5	Feed PWB 2: Replace	
6	Engine PWB: Replace	

Checking procedure at the occurrence of J40X1	Corrective action at the occurrence of J40X1	On/Off control signal output connector (terminal), point of checking connection
1	Items for Initial Checks	see page 1-4-26
2	Registration sensor (RS): Conduct connectivity check, mounting location check, operation check (U031) and U051 - Slack Margin Settings.	Feed PWB 2 YC7-12
3	Registration motor (RM): Operation check (U030)	Feed PWB 1 YC25-1 to 4
4	Feed PWB 1: Replace	
5	Engine PWB: Replace	

(4) Paper jam at feeding from cassette 2
Electrical parts that could cause paper jam during paper travelling at the primary feeding (to regist roller)

Timing of detection

Jam code
J0502,J0512,J1302,J1312,J1502,J1512,J4002,J4012

Corrective Action

Related parts	
Paper feed motor (PFM)	Engine PWB (EPWB)
Paper feed clutch 2 (PFCL2)	Feed PWB 2 (FPWB2)
Assist clutch 2 (ACSL2)	Feed PWB 1 (FPWB1)
Middle motor (MM)	
Registration motor (RM)	
Vertical conveying clutch (PCCL)	
Feed sensor 2 (FS2)	
Paper conveying sensor (PCS)	
Middle sensor (MS)	
Registration sensor (RS)	

Checking procedure at the occurrence of J05X2	Corrective action at the occurrence of J05X2	On/Off control signal output connector (terminal), point of checking connection
1	Items for Initial Checks	see page 1-4-26
2	Feed sensor 1 (FS1): Conduct connectivity check, mounting location check, operation check (U031)	Feed PWB 2 YC8-23
3	Paper feed clutch (PFCL1): Operation check (U032)	Feed PWB 2 YC4-1
4	Paper feed motor: Operation check (U030)	Feed PWB 2 YC2-3(RDY), 5(REM)
5	Feed PWB 2: Replace	
6	Engine PWB: Replace	

Checking procedure at the occurrence of J13X2	Corrective action at the occurrence of J13X2	On/Off control signal output connector (terminal), point of checking connection
1	Items for Initial Checks	see page 1-4-26
2	Middle sensor (MS): Conduct connectivity check, mounting location, check operation check (U031)	Feed PWB 2 YC8-9
3	Vertical conveying clutch (PCCL): Operation check (U032)	Feed PWB 2 YC5-3
4	Middle motor (MM): Operation check (U030)	Feed PWB 2 YC7-1 to 4
5	Feed PWB 2: Replace	
6	Engine PWB: Replace	

.

Checking procedure at the occurrence of J15X2	Corrective action at the occurrence of J15X2	On/Off control signal output connector (terminal), point of checking connection
1	Items for Initial Checks	see page 1-4-26
2	Conveying sensor (PCS) I/O check and sensor check (U031)	Feed PWB 2 YC6-3
3	Vertical conveying clutch (PCCL): Operation check (U032)	Feed PWB 2 YC5-3
4	Assist clutch 2 (ACSL2):Operation check (U032)	Feed PWB 2 YC12-1
5	Feed PWB 2: Replace	
6	Engine PWB: Replace	

Checking procedure at the occurrence of J40X2	Corrective action at the occurrence of J40X2	On/Off control signal output connector (terminal), point of checking connection
1	Items for Initial Checks	see page 1-4-26
2	Registration sensor (RS): Conduct connectivity check, mounting location check, operation check U031 and U051 - Slack Margin Settings.	Feed PWB 2 YC7-12
3	Registration motor (RM): Operation check (U030)	Feed PWB 1 YC25-1 to 4

Checking procedure at the occurrence of J40X2	Corrective action at the occurrence of J40X2	On/Off control signal output connector (terminal), point of checking connection
4	Feed PWB 1: Replace	
5	Engine PWB: Replace	

(5) Paper jam during manual feeding
Electrical parts that could cause paper jam during paper travelling at the primary feeding (to regist roller)

Timing of detection

Jam code
J0131,J0509,J0519,J4009,J4019

Corrective Action

Related parts	
Paper feed motor (PFM)	Engine PWB (EPWB)
Manual feed clutch (MPPFCL)	Feed PWB 1 (FPWB1)
Middle motor (MM)	Relay PWB (RYPWB) * : In paper conveying unit
Registration motor (RM)	
MP feed sensor (MPFS)	
Registration sensor (RS)	
Manual feed lift motor (MPLM)	
MP lift sensor 1 (MPLS1)	
MP lift sensor 2 (MPLS2)	

Checking procedure at the occurrence of J05X9	Corrective action at the occurrence of J05X9	On/Off control signal output connector (terminal), point of checking connection
1	Items for Initial Checks	see page 1-4-26
2	MP feed sensor (MPFS): Conduct connectivity check, mounting location check, operation check (U031)	Feed PWB 1 YC17-9
3	Manual feed conveying clutch (CL): Operation check (U032)	Feed PWB 2 YC4-1
4	Middle motor (MM): Operation check (U030)	Feed PWB 2 YC7-1 to 4
5	Feed PWB 2: Replace	
6	Engine PWB: Replace	

Checking procedure at the occurrence of J40X9	Corrective action at the occurrence of J40X9	On/Off control signal output connector (terminal), point of checking connection
1	Items for Initial Checks	see page 1-4-26
2	Registration sensor (RS): Conduct connectivity check, mounting location check, operation check (U031)	Feed PWB 2 YC7-12
3	Registration motor (RM): Operation check (U030)	Feed PWB 1 YC25-1 to 4
4	Feed PWB 1: Replace	
5	Engine PWB: Replace	

Checking procedure at the occurrence of J0131	Corrective action at the occurrence of J0131	On/Off control signal output connector (terminal), point of checking connection
1	Items for Initial Checks	see page 1-4-26
2	Manual feed lift base elevation check: 1. Up-and-down movability of the paper lift base of the manual feed tray. 2. Check if the lift lever is in contact with the lift motor cam (re-mount the manual feed table).	-

Checking procedure at the occurrence of J0131	Corrective action at the occurrence of J0131	On/Off control signal output connector (terminal), point of checking connection
3	MP lift sensors 1 and 2: Check for connection and the position of the sensor to be mounted.	Relay PWB (YC3-5, YC3-8) (YC12)
4	MP lift motor: Check if the paper lift base is raised as the motor rotates.	Relay PWB(YC3-11), (YC12)
5	Feed PWB 1: Replace	Feed PWB 1(YC17),(YC1)
6	Engine PWB: Replace	Engine PWB (YC6)

(6) Paper jam at the duplex re-feeding part
Electrical parts that could cause paper jam during paper travelling at the primary feeding (to regist roller)

Timing of detection

Jam code
J0508,J0518

Corrective Action

Related parts	
Duplex motor 2 (DUM2)	Engine PWB (EPWB)
Duplex sensor 2 (DUS2)	Feed PWB 1 (FPWB1)

Checking procedure at the occurrence of J05X8	Corrective action at the occurrence of J05X8	On/Off control signal output connector (terminal), point of checking connection
1	Items for Initial Checks	see page 1-4-26
2	Duplex sensor 2 (DUS2): Conduct connectivity check, mounting location check, operation check (U031)	Feed PWB 1 YC 14-5
3	Duplex motor 2 (DUM2): Operation check (U030)	Feed PWB 1 YC14-14 to 17
5	Feed PWB 1: Replace	
6	Engine PWB: Replace	

(7) Electrical parts that could cause paper jam at the transfer part

Timing of detection

Jam code
J410x,J411x

Corrective Action

Related parts	
Transfer belt drive	Engine PWB (EPWB)
Registration motor (RM)	Feed PWB 1 (FPWB1)
Loop sensor (LPS)	Relay PWB (RYPWB)

Checking procedure at the occurrence of J41XX	Corrective action at the occurrence of J41XX	On/Off control signal output connector (terminal), point of checking connection
1	Items for Initial Checks	see page 1-4-26
2	Loop sensor (LPS): Conduct connectivity check, mounting location check, operation check (U031)	Feed PWB 1 YC23-11
3	Registration motor (RM): Operation check (U030)	Feed PWB 1 YC25-1 to 4
4	Check that the drive from the transfer belt unit.	
5	Check how the conveying unit and the main unit drawer are connected (such as a fallen pin) and, if they are normal, replace the relay PWB.	
6	Feed PWB 1: Replace	
7	Engine PWB: Replace	

(8) Electrical parts that could cause paper jam at the fuser and eject part

Timing of detection

Jam code
J420x,J421x,J460x,J461x,J470x,J471x

Corrective Action

Related parts	
Fuser motor (FUM)	Engine PWB (EPWB)
Eject motor (EM)	Front PWB (FRPWB)
Feedshift solenoid (FSSOL)	
Fuser eject sensor (FUES)	
Eject full sensor (EFS)	
Switchback sensor (SBS)	
JS eject motor (JSEM)	

Checking procedure at the occurrence of J42XX	Corrective action at the occurrence of J42XX	On/Off control signal output connector (terminal), point of checking connection
1	Items for Initial Checks	see page 1-4-26
2	Fuser eject sensor (FUES): Conduct connectivity check, mounting location check, operation check (U031)	Engine PWB YC26-A13
3	feedshift solenoid (FSSOL): feedshift guide check (U033)	Front PWB YC5-19
4	Fuser motor (FUM): Operation check (U030)	Feed PWB 1 YC18-3(RDY), 5(REM)
5	Engine PWB : Replace	

Checking procedure at the occurrence of J46XX	Corrective action at the occurrence of J46XX	On/Off control signal output connector (terminal), point of checking connection
1	Items for Initial Checks	see page 1-4-26
2	Eject full sensor (EFS): Conduct connectivity check, mounting location check, operation check (U031)	Front PWB YC5-16
3	feedshift solenoid (FSSOL): feedshift guide check (U033)	Front PWB YC5-19
4	Eject motor (EM): Operation check (U030)	Front PWB YC5-8 to 11
5	Front PWB (FRPWB): Replace	
6	Engine PWB : Replace	

Checking procedure at the occurrence of J47XX	Corrective action at the occurrence of J47XX	On/Off control signal output connector (terminal), point of checking connection
1	Items for Initial Checks	see page 1-4-26
2	Switchback sensor (SBS): Conduct connectivity check, mounting location check, operation check (U031)	Front PWB YC5-13
3	feedshift solenoid (FSSOL): feedshift guide check (U033)	Front PWB YC5-19
4	Job separator eject motor (JSEM): Operational check (U030)	JS main circuit PWB: YC2-4, 5, 6, 7, YC-1 Feed PWB 1: YC20
5	Engine PWB : Replace	Engine PWB: YC7 Front PWB: YC3

(9) Electrical parts that could cause paper jam at the duplex part

Timing of detection

Jam code
J430x,J431x,J440x,J441x

Corrective Action

Related parts	
Duplex motor 1 (DUM1)	Engine PWB (EPWB)
Duplex motor 2 (DUM2)	Relay PWB (RYPWB) * : In paper conveying unit
Duplex sensor 1 (DUS1)	Relay PWB (RYPWB)
Duplex sensor 2 (DUS2)	Feed PWB 1 (FPWB1) J440X

Checking procedure at the occurrence of J43XX	Corrective action at the occurrence of J43XX	On/Off control signal output connector (terminal), point of checking connection
1	Items for Initial Checks	see page 1-4-26
2	Duplex sensor 1 (DUS1): Conduct connectivity check, mounting location check, operation check (U031)	Feed PWB 1 YC23-1
3	Duplex motor 1 (DUM1): Operation check (U030)	Feed PWB 1 YC23-6 to 9
4	Check how the conveying unit and the main unit drawer are connected and, if they are normal, replace the feed circuit PWB1.	
5	Feed PWB 1(FPWB1): replace	
6	Engine PWB: Replace	
7	Relay PWB (RYPWB): Replace	

Checking procedure at the occurrence of J44XX	Corrective action at the occurrence of J44XX	On/Off control signal output connector (terminal), point of checking connection
1	Items for Initial Checks	see page 1-4-26
2	Duplex sensor 2 (DUS2): Conduct connectivity check, mounting location check, operation check (U031)	Feed PWB 1 YC14-5
3	Duplex motor 2 (DUM2): Operation check (U030)	Feed PWB 1 YC14-14 to 17
4	Check how the conveying unit and the main unit drawer are connected and, if they are normal, replace the feed circuit PWB1.	
5	Feed PWB 1(FPWB1): replace	
6	Engine PWB: Replace	
7	Relay PWB (RYPWB): Replace	

(10) Electrical parts that could cause paper jam at the BR (bridge) part

Timing of detection

Jam code
J490x,J491x,J500x,J501x,J510x,J511x

Corrective Action

Related parts	
BR conveying motor 1 (BRCM1)	BR feedshift solenoid (BRSOL)
BR conveying motor 2 (BRCM2)	Engine PWB (EPWB)
BR conveying sensor 1 (BRCS1)	BR PWB (BRPWB)
BR conveying sensor 2 (BRCS2)	
BR eject sensor (BRES)	

Checking procedure at the occurrence of J49XX	Corrective action at the occurrence of J49XX	On/Off control signal output connector (terminal), point of checking connection
1	Items for Initial Checks	see page 1-4-26
2	BR conveying sensor 1 (BRCS1): Conduct connectivity check, mounting location check, operation check (U031)	BR PWB YC6-2
3	BR conveying motor 1 (BRCM1): Operation check (U030)	BR PWB YC7-1 to 4
4	BR PWB (BRPWB): Replace	
5	Engine PWB: Replace	

Checking procedure at the occurrence of J50XX	Corrective action at the occurrence of J50XX	On/Off control signal output connector (terminal), point of checking connection
1	Items for Initial Checks	see page 1-4-26
2	BR conveying sensor 2 (BRCS2): Conduct connectivity check, mounting location check, operation check (U031)	BR PWB YC4-2
3	BR conveying motor 2 (BRCM2): Operation check (U030)	BR PWB YC7-5 to 8
4	BR PWB (BRPWB): Replace	
5	Engine PWB: Replace	

Checking procedure at the occurrence of J51XX	Corrective action at the occurrence of J51XX	On/Off control signal output connector (terminal), point of checking connection
1	Items for Initial Checks	see page 1-4-26
2	BR eject sensor (BRES): Conduct connectivity check, mounting location check, operation check (U031)	Engine PWB YC20-17
3	BR feedshift solenoid (BRSOL): Check for switching feedshift guide (U033)	Engine PWB YC20-17
4	BR PWB (BRPWB): Replace	
5	Engine PWB: Replace	

(11) Electrical parts that could cause paper jam at the DF paper entry, feedshift and subtray left eject part

Timing of detection

Jam code
J610x,J611x,J620x,J621x,J630x,J631x

Corrective Action

Related parts	
DF paper entry motor (DFPEM)	DF feedshift solenoid 3 (DFFSSOL)
DF middle motor (DFMM)	DP main PWB (DFMPWB)
DF eject motor (DFEM)	
BR conveying motor 1 (BRCM1)	
BR conveying motor 2 (BRCM2)	
DF paper entry sensor (DFPES)	
DF middle sensor (DFMES)	
DF sub eject sensor (DFSES)	

Checking procedure at the occurrence of J61XX	Corrective action at the occurrence of J61XX	On/Off control signal output connector (terminal), point of checking connection
1	Items for Initial Checks	see page 1-4-26
2	DF paper entry sensor (DFPES): Conduct connectivity check, mounting location check, operation check (U241:Finisher HP)	DF main PWB YC21-9
3	DF feedshift solenoid 3 (DFFSSOL): Check to see the feedshift guide 3 is switchable (U240: Solenoid - Sub tray)	DF main PWB YC18-12,13
4	DF paper entry motor (DFPEM): Operation check (U240: Motor → Feed In (H), Feed In (L))	DF main PWB YC12-13 to 16
5	BR conveying motor 1 (BRCM1), BR conveying motor 2 (BRCM2): Operation check (U030: Bridge1, Bridge2)	
6	DF main PWB(DFMPWB): Replace	

Checking procedure at the occurrence of J62XX	Corrective action at the occurrence of J62XX	On/Off control signal output connector (terminal), point of checking connection
1	Items for Initial Checks	see page 1-4-26
2	DF sub eject sensor (DFSES): Conduct connectivity check, mounting location check, operation check (U241)	DF main PWB YC21-3
3	DF feedshift solenoid 3 (DFFSSOL): Check to see the feedshift guide 3 is switchable (U240)	DF main PWB YC18-12,13
4	DF paper entry motor (DFPEM): Operation check (U240)	DF main PWB YC12-13 to 16
5	DF eject motor (DFEM): Operation check (U240)	DF main PWB YC12-5 to 8
6	DF main PWB (DFMPWB): Replace	

Checking procedure at the occurrence of J63XX	Corrective action at the occurrence of J63XX	On/Off control signal output connector (terminal), point of checking connection
1	Items for Initial Checks	see page 1-4-26
2	DF middle sensor (DFMES): Conduct connectivity check, mounting location check, operation check (U241)	DF main PWB YC20-6
3	DF feedshift solenoid 3 (DFFSSOL): Check to see the feedshift guide 3 is switchable (U240)	DF main PWB YC18-12,13
4	DF paper entry motor (DFPEM): Operation check (U240)	DF main PWB YC12-13 to 16
5	DF middle motor (DFMM): Operation check (U240)	DF main PWB YC10-5 to 8
6	DF main PWB(DFMPWB): Replace	

(12) Electrical parts that could cause paper jam at the DF process part

Timing of detection

Jam code
J6500,J651x,J6600,J6610

Corrective Action

Related parts	
DF middle motor (DFMM)	DF main PWB(DFMPWB)
DF drum motor (DFDRM)	
DF bundle eject sensor (DFBDS)	
DF drum sensor (DFDRS)	
DF feedshift solenoid 1 (DFDRSOL)	

Checking procedure at the occurrence of J65XX	Corrective action at the occurrence of J65XX	On/Off control signal output connector (terminal), point of checking connection
1	Items for Initial Checks	see page 1-4-26
2	DF middle sensor (DFMES): Conduct connectivity check, mounting location check, operation check (U241)	DF main PWB YC20-6
3	DF bundle eject sensor (DFBDS): Conduct connectivity check, mounting location check, operation check (U241)	DF main PWB YC22-27
4	DF middle motor (DFMM): Operation check (U240)	DF main PWB YC12-9 to 12
5	DF main PWB(DFMPWB): Replace	

Checking procedure at the occurrence of J66XX	Corrective action at the occurrence of J66XX	On/Off control signal output connector (terminal), point of checking connection
1	Items for Initial Checks	see page 1-4-26
2	DF drum sensor (DFDRS): Conduct connectivity check, mounting location check, operation check (U241)	DF main PWB YC20-3
3	DF feedshift solenoid 1 (DFDRSOL): Check to see the feedshift guide 1 is switchable (U240)	DF main PWB YC18-12,13

Checking procedure at the occurrence of J66XX	Corrective action at the occurrence of J66XX	On/Off control signal output connector (terminal), point of checking connection
4	DF drum motor (DFDRM): Operation check (U240)	DF main PWB YC18-1 to 4
5	DF main PWB(DFMPWB): Replace	

(13) Electrical parts that could cause paper jam at the DF eject tray part

Timing of detection

Jam code
J640x,J641x

Corrective Action

Related parts	
DF eject motor (DFEM)	DF main PWB(DFMPWB)
DF tray motor (DFTM)	
DF middle sensor (DFMES)	
DF tray upper sensor 1 and 2 (DFTUSS 1,2)	

Checking procedure at the occurrence of J64XX	Corrective action at the occurrence of J64XX	On/Off control signal output connector (terminal), point of checking connection
1	Items for Initial Checks	see page 1-4-26
2	DF middle sensor (DFMES): Conduct connectivity check, mounting location check, operation check (U241)	DF main PWB YC20-6
3	DF tray upper sensor 1 and 2 (DFTUSS1, 2): Conduct connectivity check, mounting location check, operation check (U241)	DF main PWB YC21-19(DFTUSS1), YC13-3(DFTUSS2)
4	DF eject motor (DFEM): Operational check (U240)	DF main PWB YC12-5 to 8
5	DF tray motor (DFTM): Operation check (U240)	DF main PWB YC19-4
6	DF main PWB(DFMPWB): Replace	

(14) Electrical parts that could cause paper jam at the CF conveying part

Timing of detection

Jam code
J6710,J7700,J7710

Corrective Action

Related parts	
DF drum motor (DFDRM)	DF main PWB(DFMPWB)
CF paper entry motor (CFPEM)	CF PWB (CFPWB)
DF drum sensor (DFDRS)	
CF conveying sensor (CFPCS)	

Checking procedure at the occurrence of J671X	Corrective action at the occurrence of J671X	On/Off control signal output connector (terminal), point of checking connection
1	Items for Initial Checks	see page 1-4-26
2	DF drum sensor (DFDRS): Conduct connectivity check, mounting location check, operation check (U241)	DF main PWB YC20-3
3	DF drum motor (DFDRM): Operation check (U240)	DF main PWB YC18-1 to 4
4	CF paper entry motor (CFPEM): Check if the gears can chain the drive.	CF PWB YC18-1 to 4
5	DF main PWB(DFMPWB): Replace	
6	CF PWB (CFPWB): Replace	

Checking procedure at the occurrence of J77X0	Corrective action at the occurrence of J77X0	On/Off control signal output connector (terminal), point of checking connection
1	Items for Initial Checks	see page 1-4-26
2	CF conveying sensor (CFPCS): Conduct connectivity check, mounting location check, operation check (U241)	CF PWB YC20-15
3	CF paper entry motor (CFPEM): Check if the gears can chain the drive.	CF PWB YC18-1 to 4
4	DF main PWB(DFMPWB): Replace	
5	CF PWB (CFPWB): Replace	

1-4-3 Self-diagnostic function

(1) Self-diagnostic function

1. This machine is equipped with self-diagnostic function. When a problem is detected, the machine stops printing and display the dialog to retrieve the relevant information in a log. (Self-diagnostic dialog)
   * : Be sure not to turn power off until the dialog has gone off.
   * : The logs retrieved can be downloaded in a flash memory device using U964 mode. (See page 1-3-201)

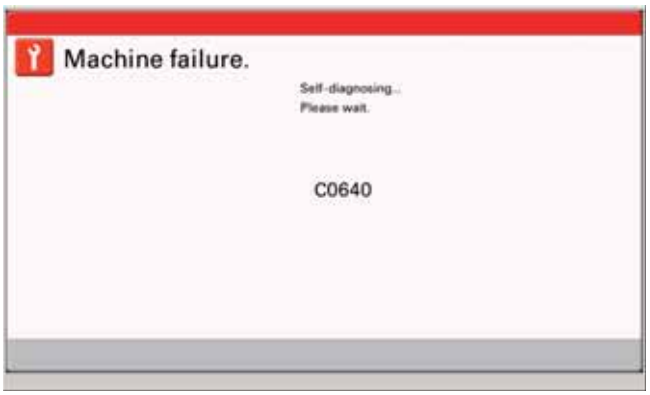


Figure 1-4-4

2. And then display an error message on the operation panel. An error message consists of a message prompting a contact to service personnel and a four-digit error code indicating the type of the error.

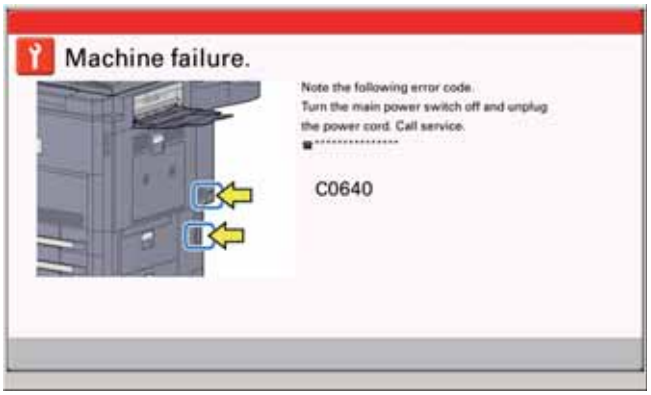


Figure 1-4-5

(2) Self diagnostic codes

If the part causing the problem was not supplied, use the unit including the part for replacement

Caution:

Before attempting to check the power supply, fuser unit, and the IH controller PWB, be sure to turn the power switch off and unplug the machine from power. Allow at least 5 seconds before starting to conduct service until the capacitors on the circuit boards have been completely discharged.

To reset a service call regarding the Maintenance T display and the DP, performing U906 Disconnection at Defect is required. (See page 1-3-191)

.

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
0030	**FAX control PWB system error** Processing with the fax software was disabled due to a software problem.	FAX control PWB	1. Turn the main power swtch off and after 5 seconds, re-mount the FAX controller PWB, then turn power on. 2. Reinstall the fax software. 3. Replace the FAX control PWB.
0060	**Engine PWB mismatch** Unmatching engine and engine sub boards. Defective engine subboard	Engine PWB	1. Turn the main power swtch off and after 5 seconds, then turn power on. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).
0070	**FAX control PWB incompatible detection error** Abnormal detection of FAX control PWB incompatibility In the initial communication with the FAX control PWB, any normal communication command is not transmitted.	FAX control PWB (The FAX PWB installed will not be the one designed for the machine.)	1. Install the FAX system designed for the model. 2. Reinstall the fax software.
0100	**Backup memory device error**	EEPROM (main PWB)	1. Turn the main power swtch off and after 5 seconds, then turn power on. 2. Check that the EEPROM on the main circuit PWB is peroperly installed on the main circuit PWB and, if not, re-install it. 3. Replace the main PWB (see page 1-5-74).
0120	**MAC address data error** For data in which the MAC address is invalid.	EEPROM (main PWB)	1. Turn the main power swtch off and after 5 seconds, then turn power on. 2. Check the MAC address on the network status page. 3. If it is blank, obtain an EEPROM with its MAC address written from the service support and install. 4. Replace the main PWB (see page 1-5-74).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
0150	**Backup memory read/write error (engine PWB)** No response is issued from the device in reading/writing for 5 ms or more and this problem is repeated 5 times successively. Mismatch of reading data from 2 locations occurs 8 times successively. Mismatch between writing data and reading data occurs 8 times successively.	EEPROM (engine PWB)	1. Turn the main power swtch off and after 5 seconds, then turn power on. 2. Check that the EEPROM is peroperly installed on the engine PWB and re-install it. 3. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83). 4. Check the EEPROM and if the data are currupted, contact the service support.
0160	**Backup memory data error (engine PWB)** Reading data from EEPROM is abnormal.	EEPROM	1. Turn the main power swtch off and after 5 seconds, then turn power on. 2. Execute U021 - memory initializing.(see page 1-3-28) 3. If the EEPROM data are currupted, contact the service support.
0170	**Billing counting error** The values on the main circuit PWB and on the engine do not match for any of charging counter, life counter, and scanner counter.	EEPROM	1. Check that the EEPROMs installed in the main PWB and the engine PWB are correct and, if not, use the correct EEPROM for the model. 2. If the EEPROM data are currupted, contact the service support.
		Main PWB	Replace the main PWB (see page 1-5-74).
		Engine PWB	Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).
0180	**Machine number mismatch** Machine number of main and engine does not match.	Data damage of EEPROM.	1. Confirm the machine data for the main and engine units by using U004 (see page 1-3-10). 2. If the serial number data of different models is alternately displayed, install the correct EEPROM in the PWB of the wrong serial number data. 3. Contact the Service Support.
0350	**Panel PWB communication error (electronic volume I2C communication error)** NACK is received during I2C communication -> retried 5 times -> rebooting command sent -> retried 5 times If NACK is still received.	Operation PWB	1. Turn the main power swtch off and after 5 seconds, then turn power on. 2. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Operation PWB (YC10) and Main PWB (YC6) 3. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring.
		Main PWB	Replace the main PWB (see page 1-5-74).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
0620	**FAX image DIMM error** 1. The Fax image DIMM has not been installed. 2. Fax image DIMM access error.	FAX image DIMM	1. Install the FAX image DIMM supplied in the FAX system onto the main PWB. 2. Firmly install the FAX image DIMM again onto the main board. 3. Check the FAX image DIMM terminals and remove any foreign objects that may be adhered to it. 4. Replace with a new FAX image DIMM.
		Main PWB.	Replace the main PWB (see page 1-5-74).
0630	**DMA error** DMA transmission of image data does not complete within the specified period of time.	DP CIS	1. Reconnect the CIS signal line. 2. Confirm that the CIS connector terminals are firmly connected. Insert the connector all the way in. 3. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring.
		DP main PWB Main PWB	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. Wiring that connects the CIS and the DP controller PWB. Wiring that connects the DP main PWB and the main PWB. 3. Replace the DP main PWB. 4. Replace the main PWB (see page 1-5-74).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
0640	**Hard disk error** The hard disk cannot be accessed.	HDD	1. If an abnormal noise is heard from the HDD, replace the HDD. 2. Check the SATA wiring between the HDD and the main circuit PWB for loose connection, disconnection and damages, and that it is connected into the correct terminal. Main PWB: YC1,YC27 3. Replace the SATA cable. 4. Execute U024 to initialize (FULL) the HDD (see page 1-3-29). 5. If an error is detected after executing U024, replace the HDD.
		HDD number difference	1. Confirm whether the HDD number is correct in U024_Composition and change it if different (see page 1-3-29). HDD 1piece: Single HDD 2pieces: Multi
		Lack of HDD capacity	1. Confirm the total capacity of the HDD if it is more than 320GB. Change the HDD or add it in case of lacking in capacity.
		Main PWB	Replace the main PWB (see page 1-5-74).
0650	**FAX image DIMM check error** A fax image DIMM which was used with another machine is installed.	FAX DIMM.	1. Confirm that a used FAX image DIMM was used instead of the FAX image DIMM contained in the FAX system. 2. If a DIMM that was used with other unit has been installed, execute maintenance mode U671 - Recovery FAX DIMM. 3. Check whether the Fax DIMM is properly inserted into the socket on the main PWB. 4. Replace with a new FAX image DIMM.
		Main PWB	Replace the main PWB (see page 1-5-74).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
0660	**Hard disk encryption key error**	EEPROM	1. Execute U004 if this occurs after the EEPROM has been changed.
		HDD	1. If an abnormal noise is heard from the HDD, replace the HDD. 2. Check the SATA wiring between the HDD and the main circuit PWB for loose connection, disconnection and damages, and that it is connected into the correct terminal. Main PWB: YC1,YC27 3. Replace the SATA cable. 4. Execute U024 to initialize (FULL) the HDD (see page 1-3-29). 5. If an error is detected after executing U024, replace the HDD.
		Main PWB	Replace the main PWB (see page 1-5-74).
0670	**Hard disk overwriting erasure error**	HDD	1. If an abnormal noise is heard from the HDD, replace the HDD. 2. Check the SATA wiring between the HDD and the main circuit PWB for loose connection, disconnection and damages, and that it is connected into the correct terminal. Main PWB: YC1,YC27 3. Replace the SATA cable. 4. Execute U024 to initialize (FULL) the HDD (see page 1-3-29). 5. If an error is detected after executing U024, replace the HDD.
		Main PWB	Replace the main PWB (see page 1-5-74).
0800	**Image processing error** JAM010X is detected twice.	Main PWB	Replace the main PWB (see page 1-5-74).
0830	**FAX control PWB flash program area checksum error** A checksum error occurred with the program of the FAX control PWB.	FAX software	1. Reinstall the fax software.
		FAX control PWB	1. Execute initializing by U600.(Refer to the FAX service manual) 2. Replace the FAX control PWB.

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
0840	**Faults of RTC** ("Time for maintenance T" is displayed) [Check at power up] The RTC setting has reverted to a previous state. The machine has not been powered for 5 years (compared to the settings stored periodically in the EEPROM). The RTC setting is older than 00:01 on January 1, 2000. [Checked periodically (in 5-minute interval) after powered up] The RTC setting has reverted to a state older than the last time it was checked. 10 minutes have been passed since the previous check. After C840 is detected, the machine enters in disconnection mode after the main power switch has been switched on and off and indicates 'Maintenance T.'	Battery (main PWB)	1. Make sure that the back-up batteries on the main PWB are not short-circuited. 2. Reset Maintenance T by executing U906 (see page 1-3-191). 3. If the same C call is displayed when power is switched on and off, replace the back up battery. 4. If communication error (due to a noise, etc.) is present with the RTC on the main circuit PWB, check the PWB is properly grounded.
		Main PWB	Replace the main PWB (see page 1-5-74).
0870	**PCFAX control PWB to main PWB high capacity data transfer error** High-capacity data transfer between the FAX control PWB and the main PWB of the machine was not normally performed even if the data transfer was retried the specified times.	FAX control PWB	1. Turn the main power swtch off and after 5 seconds, re-mount the FAX controller PWB, then turn power on. 2. Replace the FAX control PWB.
		HDD	Execute U024 to initialize the HDD (see page 1-3-29).
		Main PWB	Replace the main PWB (see page 1-5-74).
0920	**Fax file system error** The backup data is not retained for file system abnormality of flash memory of the FAX control PWB.	FAX control PWB	1. Execute initializing by U600 (Refer to the FAX service manual). 2. Replace the FAX control PWB.
0980	**24 V power down detect** If a 24V power disconnection signal is observed and a 12V power disconnection signal is observed simultaneously for one second.	Power source PWB	1. Check the +24V output is given at YC12-1 to 3 of the power circuit PWB. 2. Replace the power source PWB (see page 1-5-87)

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
1000	**MP lift motor error** If the MP lift sensor 1 (upper limit detect) or 2 (bottom detect) is not detectable to be turned on while the MP lift motor is ascending or descending.	Manual feed lift base elevating mechanism	1. Check that the paper lift base of the manual feed tray can smoothly ascend and descent, if not, repair or replace. 2. Check that the lift lever is located so that it can ascend or descend by the lift motor cam and that it not damaged and, if necessary, re-install or replace the manual feed table.
		MP lift motor	1. Check that the paper elevator has been ascended. 2. Check the drive gear can rotate or they are not unusually loaded and, if necessary, replace. 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. MP lift motor and Relay PWB (YC3) Relay PWB (YC12) and Feed PWB1 (YC17) Feed PWB1 (YC1) and Engine PWB (YC6) 4. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 5. Replace the MP lift motor.
		MP lift sensor1 MP lift sensor2	1. Check that the sensor is correctly positioned. 2. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. MP lift sensor1,2 and Relay PWB (YC3) Relay PWB (YC12) and Feed PWB1(YC17) Feed PWB1 (YC1) and Engine PWB (YC6) 3. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 4. Replace the MP lift sensor1 or MP lift sensor2.
		Feed PWB 2	Replace the Feed PWB 2.
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
1010	**Lift motor 1 error** After cassette 1 is inserted, lift sensor 1 does not turn on within 12 s. This error is detected 4 times successively. The lock signal of the motor is detected continuously for 1 s. This error is detected 4 times successively.	Cassette lift base elevating mechanism	Check that the cassette base can be manipulated smoothly, if not, repair or replace.
		Lift motor 1	1. Check that the cassette base has been ascended. 2. Check the drive gear can rotate or they are not unusually loaded and, if necessary, replace. 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Lift motor 1 and Feed PWB 2 (YC3) Feed PWB 2 (YC1) and Engine PWB (YC4) 4. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 5. Replace the lift motor 1.
		Lift sensor 1	1. Check that the sensor is correctly positioned. 2. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Lift sensor 1 and Feed PWB 2 (YC8) Feed PWB 2 (YC1) and Engine PWB (YC4) 3. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 4. Replace the lift sensor1.
		Feed PWB 2	Replace the Feed PWB 2.
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
1020	**Lift motor 2 error** After cassette 2 is inserted, lift sensor 2 does not turn on within 12 s. This error is detected 4 times successively. The lock signal of the motor is detected continuously for 1 s. This error is detected 4 times successively.	Cassette lift base elevating mechanism	Check that the cassette base can be manipulated smoothly, if not, repair or replace.
		Lift motor 2	1. Check that the cassette base has been ascended. 2. Check the drive gear can rotate or they are not unusually loaded and, if necessary, replace. 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Lift motor 2 and Feed PWB 2 (YC3) Feed PWB 2 (YC1) and Engine PWB (YC4) 4. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 5. Replace the lift motor 2.
		Lift sensor 2	1. Check that the sensor is correctly positioned. 2. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Lift sensor 2 and Feed PWB 2 (YC8) Feed PWB 2 (YC1) and Engine PWB (YC4) 3. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 4. Replace the lift sensor2.
		Feed PWB 2	Replace the Feed PWB 2.
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
1050	**SM lift motor error (side multi tray)** After cassette 5 is inserted, SM lift sensor does not turn on within 12 s. This error is detected 5 times successively. (Time to detect is 2 seconds at the second time and later.) During driving the motor, the lift overcurrent protective monitor signal is detected for 1 s or more 5 times successively. However, the first 1 s after motor is turned on is excluded from detection.	Cassette lift base elevating mechanism	Check that the cassette base can be manipulated smoothly, if not, repair or replace.
		SM Lift motor	1. Check that the cassette base has been ascended. 2. Check the drive gear can rotate or they are not unusually loaded and, if necessary, replace. 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. SM Lift motor and SM main PWB (YC5) 4. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 5. Replace the SM Lift motor.
		SM Lift sensor	1. Check that the sensor is correctly positioned. 2. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. SM Lift sensor and SM main PWB (YC7) 3. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 4. Replace the SM Lift sensor.
		SM main PWB	Replace the SM main PWB (Refer to the service manual for the paper feeder).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
1060	**PF lift motor 1 error (side paper feeder)** After cassette 6 is inserted, PF lift sensor 1 does not turn on within 12 s. This error is detected 5 times successively. (Time to detect is 2 seconds at the second time and later.) During driving the motor, the lift overcurrent protective monitor signal is detected for 1 s or more 5 times successively. However, the first 1 s after motor is turned on is excluded from detection. *:The lift over-current protection monitor signal has been detected for 200ms or longer where LFC is installed.	Cassette lift base elevating mechanism	Check that the cassette base can be manipulated smoothly, if not, repair or replace.
		PF Lift motor 1	1. Check that the cassette base has been ascended. 2. Check the drive gear can rotate or they are not unusually loaded and, if necessary, replace. 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. PF Lift motor 1 and PF main PWB (YC7) 4. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 5. Replace the lift motor 1.
		PF Lift sensor 1	1. Check that the sensor is correctly positioned. 2. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. PF Lift sensor1 and PF main PWB (YC5) 3. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 4. Replace the lift sensor 1.
		PF main PWB	Replace the PF main PWB (Refer to the service manual for the paper feeder).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
1070	**PF lift motor 2 error (side paper feeder)** After cassette 7 is inserted, PF lift sensor 2 does not turn on within 12 s. This error is detected 5 times successively. (Time to detect is 2 seconds at the second time and later.) During driving the motor, the lift overcurrent protective monitor signal is detected for 1 s or more 5 times successively. However, the first 1 s after motor is turned on is excluded from detection. *:The lift over-current protection monitor signal has been detected for 200ms or longer where LFC is installed.	Cassette lift base elevating mechanism	Check that the cassette base can be manipulated smoothly, if not, repair or replace.
		PF Lift motor2	1. Check that the cassette base has been ascended. 2. Check the drive gear can rotate or they are not unusually loaded and, if necessary, replace. 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. PF Lift motor 2 and PF main PWB (YC7) 4. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 5. Replace the PF Lift motor2.
		PF Lift sensor2	1. Check that the sensor is correctly positioned. 2. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. PF Lift sensor 2 and PF main PWB (YC4) 3. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 4. PFReplace the lift sensor2.
		PF main PWB	Replace the PF main PWB (Refer to the service manual for the paper feeder).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
1100	**PF lift motor 1 error (large capacity feeder)** After cassette 3 is inserted, PF lift sensor 1 does not turn on within 23 s. This error is detected 5 times successively. (Time to detect is 2 seconds at the second time and later.) During driving the motor, the lift overcurrent protective monitor signal is detected for 200 ms or more 5 times successively. However, the first 1 s after PF lift motor 1 is turned on is excluded from detection.	Paper feeder lift base elevating mechanism	Check that the cassette base can be manipulated smoothly, if not, repair or replace.
		PF Lift motor1	1. Check that the cassette base has been ascended. 2. Check the drive gear can rotate or they are not unusually loaded and, if necessary, replace. 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. PF Lift motor 1 and PF main PWB (YC7) 4. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 5. Replace the PF lift motor1.
		PF Lift sensor1	1. Check that the sensor is correctly positioned. 2. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. PF Lift sensor 1 and PF main PWB (YC5) 3. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 4. Replace the PF lift sensor1.
		PF main PWB	Replace the PF main PWB (Refer to the service manual for the paper feeder).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
1110	**PF lift motor 2 error (large capacity feeder)** After cassette 4 is inserted, PF lift sensor 2 does not turn on within 23 s. This error is detected 5 times successively. (Time to detect is 2 seconds at the second time and later.) During driving the motor, the lift overcurrent protective monitor signal is detected for 200 ms or more 5 times successively. However, the first 1 s after PF lift motor 2 is turned on is excluded from detection.	Paper feeder lift base elevating mechanism	Check that the cassette base can be manipulated smoothly, if not, repair or replace.
		PF Lift motor 2	1. Check that the cassette base has been ascended. 2. Check the drive gear can rotate or they are not unusually loaded and, if necessary, replace. 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. PF Lift motor 2 and PF main PWB (YC7) 4. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 5. Replace the PF Lift motor2.
		PF Lift sensor2	1. Check that the sensor is correctly positioned. 2. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. PF Lift sensor 2 and PF main PWB (YC4) 3. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 4. Replace the PF Lift sensor 2.
		PF main PWB	Replace the PF main PWB (Refer to the service manual for the paper feeder).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
1140	**SD lift motor error (side deck)** After cassette 5 is inserted, SD lift sensor does not turn on within 30 s. The lock signal of the motor is detected continuously for 200 ms.	Paper feeder lift base elevating mechanism	Check that the cassette base can be manipulated smoothly, if not, repair or replace.
		SD Lift motor	1. Check that the cassette base has been ascended. 2. Check the drive gear can rotate or they are not unusually loaded and, if necessary, replace. 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. SD Lift motor and SD main PWB (YC8) 4. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 5. Replace the SD Lift motor.
		SD Lift sensor	1. Check that the sensor is correctly positioned. 2. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. SD Lift sensor and SD main PWB (YC5) 3. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 4. Replace the SD Lift sensor.
		SD main PWB	Replace the SD main PWB (Refer to the service manual for the paper feeder).
1250	**SM multi feed sensor communication error (side multi tray)** A communication error is detected 3 times in succession.	Side multi tray	Check the wiring connection status with the main unit and, if necessary, try connecting it again.
		SM main PWB	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. SM main PWB (YC1) and Engine PWB (YC19) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. Replace the SM main PWB (Refer to the service manual for the paper feeder).
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
1350	**SM multi feed sensor error (side multi tray)** The SM multi feed sensor has detected multi feeding 5 times successively.	SM multi feed sensor	1. Check that the sensor is correctly positioned. 2. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. SM multi feed sensor and SM main PWB (YC11) 3. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 4. Replace the SM multi feed sensor.
		SM main PWB	Replace the PF main PWB (Refer to the service manual for the paper feeder).
1400	**Rotary guide motor error** The guide sensor is not detected to be on at the home position detection with the rotary guide for three times in a row.	Rotary guide motor	1. Check the rotary guide and drive gear can rotate or they are not unusually loaded and, if necessary, replace. 2. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Rotary guide motor and BR PWB (YC5) 3. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 4. Replace the rotary guide motor.
		BR PWB	Replace the BR PWB.
1410	**Rotary de-curler error** If the de-curler won't turn On/ Off despite it has been activated for 400 steps during waiting for the de-curler sensor to be On/Off three times in a row (3 times in succession).	Rotary de-curler motor	1. Check the rotary de-curler and drive gear can rotate or they are not unusually loaded and, if necessary, replace. 2. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Rotary de-curler motor and BR PWB (YC5) 3. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 4. Replace the rotary de-curler motor.
		BR PWB	Replace the BR PWB.

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
1450	**SM multi feed sensor backup error (side multi tray)** When writing the data, read and write data does not match 3 times in succession. Deleting a block has failed three times in a row. Writing won't complete in 200 ms after writing has commenced.	SM multi feed sensor	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. SM multi feed sensor and SM main PWB (YC11) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. Replace the SM multi feed sensor.
		SM main PWB	Replace the PF main PWB (Refer to the service manual for the paper feeder).
1710	**Side multi tray incompatible detection error** The side multi tray has been installed with a device to which it is incompatible.	The side multi tray is installed with a device to which it is incompatible.	Install the side multi-tray with the target model.
1800	**Paper feeder communication error** A communication error from paper feeder is detected 10 times in succession.	Paper feeder	Check the wiring connection status with the main unit and, if necessary, try connecting it again.
		PF main PWB	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. PF main PWB (YC13) and Engine PWB (YC19) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. Replace the PF main PWB (Refer to the service manual for the paper feeder).
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
1810	**Side multi tray communication error** A communication error from side multi tray is detected 10 times in succession.	Side multi tray	Check the wiring connection status with the main unit and, if necessary, try connecting it again.
		SM main PWB	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. SM main PWB (YC1) and Engine PWB (YC19) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. Replace the SM main PWB (Refer to the service manual for the paper feeder).
		Engine PWB	Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).
		SM main PWB	Replace the SM main PWB (Refer to the service manual for the paper feeder).
1820	**Side paper feeder communication error** A communication error from paper feeder is detected 10 times in succession.	Side paper feeder	Check the wiring connection status with the main unit and, if necessary, try connecting it again.
		SM main PWB	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. SM main PWB (YC1) and Engine PWB (YC19) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. Replace the SM main PWB (Refer to the service manual for the paper feeder).
		PF main PWB	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. PF main PWB (YC13) and SM main PWB (YC4) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. Replace the PF main PWB (Refer to the service manual for the paper feeder).
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
1900	**Paper feeder EEPROM error** When writing the data, read and write data does not match 3 times in succession.	PF main PWB (EEPROM)	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. 2. Replace the PF main PWB (Refer to the service manual for the paper feeder).
1910	**Side multi tray EEPROM error** When writing the data, read and write data does not match 3 times in succession.	SM main PWB (EEPROM)	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. 2. Replace the SM main PWB (Refer to the service manual for the paper feeder).
1920	**Side paper feeder EEPROM error** When writing the data, read and write data does not match 3 times in succession.	PF main PWB	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. 2. Replace the PF main PWB (Refer to the service manual for the paper feeder).
2101	**Developer motor error** After developer motor is driven, the ready signal does not turn to L within 2 s. After developer motor is stabilized, the ready signal is at the H level for 1 s continuously.	Developer unit	1. Check that the developer waste lock has been released and, if not, release the lock (see page 1-2-25). 2. Check that the gears and spiral screw of the developer unit are not damaged. 3. Confirm that the developer roller can rotate. 4. If it won't rotate, replace the developer unit (see page 1-5-56).
		Developer motor	1. To check the motor operation, execute DLP(K) by U030 (see page 1-3-32). 2. Check the drive gear can rotate or they are not unusually loaded and, if necessary, replace. 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Developer motor and Feed PWB 1 (YC8) Feed PWB 1 (YC2) and Engine PWB (YC5) 4. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 5. Replace the Developer motor.
		Engine PWB.	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
2201	**drum motor steady-state error** After drum motor is stabilized, the ready signal is at the H level for 1 s continuously.	Drum unit	1. Confirm that the drum or the drum screw can rotate. 2. If it won't rotate, replace the drum unit. (see page 1-5-57)
		Drum motor	1. Check the drive gear can rotate or they are not unusually loaded and, if necessary, replace. 2. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. drum motor and Feed PWB 1 (YC9) Feed PWB 1 (YC2) and Engine PWB (YC5) 3. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 4. Replace the drum motor (see page 1-5-102).
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).
2211	**Drum motor startup error** Drum motor is not stabilized within 2 s since the motor is activated.	Drum unit	1. Check the drive gear can rotate or they are not unusually loaded and, if necessary, replace. 2. Confirm that the drum or the drum screw can rotate. 3. If it won't rotate, replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-57).
		drum motor	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. drum motor and Feed PWB 1 (YC9) Feed PWB 1 (YC2) and Engine PWB (YC5) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. Replace the drum motor (see page 1-5-102).
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
2300	**Fuser motor error** After fuser motor is driven, the ready signal does not turn to L within 2 s. After fuser motor is stabilized, the ready signal is at the H level for 1 s continuously.	Fuser motor	1. To check the motor operation, execute U030 Fuser (Fuser motor) (see page 1-3-32). 2. Check the drive gear can rotate or they are not unusually loaded and, if necessary, replace. 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Fuser motor and Feed PWB 1(YC18) Feed PWB 1(YC1) and Engine PWB (YC6) 4. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 5. Replace the fuser motor (see page 1-5-105).
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).
		Feed PWB 1	Replace the Feed PWB 1.
		Fuser unit	Replace the fuser unit (see page 1-5-67).
2500	**Paper feed motor error** After paper feed motor is driven, the ready signal does not turn to L within 2 s. After paper feed motor is stabilized, the ready signal is at the H level for 1 s continuously.	Paper feed motor	1. To check the motor operation execute U030 Feed (paper feed motor) (see page 1-3-32). 2. Check the paper feed roller and drive gear can rotate or they are not unusually loaded and, if necessary, replace. 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Paper feed motor and Feed PWB 2(YC2) Feed PWB 2(YC1) and Engine PWB (YC4) 4. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 5. Replace the paper feed motor.
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
2550	**Transfer motor error** After Transfer motor is driven, the ready signal does not turn to L within 2 s. After Transfer motor is stabilized, the ready signal is at the H level for 1 s continuously.	Transfer motor	1. Check the drive gear can rotate or they are not unusually loaded and, if necessary, replace. 2. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Transfer motor and Relay PWB(YC6) Relay PWB(YC5) and Feed PWB 1 (YC13) Feed PWB 1 (YC2) and Engine PWB (YC5) 3. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 4. Replace the Transfer motor.
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).
2600	**PF paper feed motor error (large capacity feeder)** After PF paper feed motor is driven, the ready signal does not turn to L within 2 s.	PF paper feed motor	1. To check the feed unit operation, execute U247 LCF- Motor ON (see page 1-3-129). 2. Check the paper feed roller and drive gear can rotate or they are not unusually loaded and, if necessary, replace. 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. PF paper feed motor and PF main PWB (YC16) 4. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 5. Replace the paper feed motor.
		PF main PWB	Replace the PF main PWB (Refer to the service manual for the paper feeder).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
2610	**PF paper feed motor error (paper feeder)** After PF paper feed motor is driven, the ready signal does not turn to L within 2 s.	PF paper feed motor	1. To check the feed unit operation, execute U247 2PF - Motor ON (see page 1-3-129). 2. Check the paper feed roller and drive gear can rotate or they are not unusually loaded and, if necessary, replace. 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. PF paper feed motor and PF main PWB (YC16) 4. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 5. Replace the paper feed motor.
		PF main PWB	Replace the PF main PWB (Refer to the service manual for the paper feeder).
2640	**SD paper feed motor error (side deck)** After SD paper feed motor is driven, the ready signal does not turn to L within 2 s.	SD paper feed motor	1. To check the feed unit operation, execute U247 Side deck- Motor ON (see page 1-3-129). 2. Check the paper feed roller and drive gear can rotate or they are not unusually loaded and, if necessary, replace. 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. SD paper feed motor and SD main PWB (YC16) 4. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 5. Replace the SD paper feed motor.
		SD main PWB	Replace the SD main PWB (Refer to the service manual for the paper feeder).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
2650	**SM paper feed motor error (side multi tray)** After SM paper feed motor is driven, the ready signal does not turn to L within 2 s.	SM paper feed motor	1. To check the feed unit operation, execute U247 SMT- Motor ON (see page 1-3-129). 2. Check the paper feed roller and drive gear can rotate or they are not unusually loaded and, if necessary, replace. 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. SM paper feed motor and SM main PWB (YC5) 4. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 5. Replace the SM paper feed motor.
		SM main PWB	Replace the SM main PWB (Refer to the service manual for the paper feeder).
2660	**PF paper feed motor error (side large capacity feeder)** After PF paper feed motor is driven, the ready signal does not turn to L within 2 s.	PF paper feed motor	1. To check the feed unit operation, execute U247 Side LCF - Motor ON (see page 1-3-129). 2. Check the paper feed roller and drive gear can rotate or they are not unusually loaded and, if necessary, replace. 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. PF paper feed motor and PF main PWB (YC16) 4. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 5. Replace the PF paper feed motor.
		PF main PWB	Replace the PF main PWB (Refer to the service manual for the paper feeder).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
2670	**PF paper feed motor error (side paper feeder)** After PF paper feed motor is driven, the ready signal does not turn to L within 2 s.	PF paper feed motor	1. Execute Side 2PF - Motor ON of U247 feed unit operation check (see page 1-3-129). 2. Check the paper feed roller and drive gear can rotate or they are not unusually loaded and, if necessary, replace. 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. PF paper feed motor and PF main PWB (YC16) 4. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 5. Replace the PF paper feed motor.
		PF main PWB	Replace the PF main PWB (Refer to the service manual for the paper feeder).
3100	**Scanner carriage error** The home position is not correct when the power is turned on, at the end of a reading process of the table and document processor.	The scanner mirror frame is being locked after setup.	Check whether the scanner mirror frame has been unlocked and unlock if necessary (see page 1-2-25).
		Scanner motor	1. To check the scanner motor, execute U073 (see page 1-3-61). 2. Move the scanner by the hand to check whether it is unusually difficult to move. 3. Check that the optical wire rope is not disengaged and engage the wire. 4. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Scanner motor and ISC PWB (YC5) ISC PWB (YC3) and Main PWB (YC11) 5. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 6. Replace the scanner motor.
		Home position sensor	1. Check that the sensor is correctly positioned. 2. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Home position sensor and ISC PWB (YC8) 3. Replace the home position sensor.
		ISC PWB	Replace the ISC PWB and execute U411 (see page 1-3-152).
		Main PWB	Replace the main PWB (see page 1-5-74).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
3210	**CIS lamp error** When input value at the time of CIS illumination does not exceed the threshold value between 5 s.	CIS	1. Execute U906 Separating Operation Release (see page 1-3-191). 2. Execute CCD of U061 lamp check (see page 1-3-49). 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. CIS and DPSHD PWB (YC2) DPSHD PWB (YC3) and DP relay PWB (YC2) 4. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 5. Replace the CIS and execute U091 and U411 (see page 1-3-65,1-3-152).
		DPSHD PWB	Replace the DPSHD PWB.
		DP relay PWB	Replace the DP relay PWB.
3220	**CCD lamp activation error** The threshold is calculated for colors at initialization and the pixel which does not exceed that value is greater than 1000.	CIS	1. Execute U906 Separating Operation Release (see page 1-3-191). 2. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. LED lamp PWB and ISC PWB (YC6) CCD PWB (YC2) and ISC PWB (YC9) ISC PWB (YC3) and Main PWB (YC11) 3. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 4. If the LED lamp won't light, replace the LED PWB and execut U411 (see page 1-3-152).
		ISC PWB	Replace the ISC PWB and execute U411 (see page 1-3-152).
		Main PWB	Replace the main PWB (see page 1-5-74).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
3300	**Optical system (AGC) error** One of the gains is FF or 00 during the CCD lamp AGC is being processed.	LED lamp PWB	1. To check the lamp, execute U061 CCD (see page 1-3-49). 2. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. LED lamp PWB and ISC PWB (YC6) CCD PWB (YC2) and ISC PWB (YC9) ISC PWB (YC3) and Main PWB (YC11) 3. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 4. If the LED lamp won't light, replace the LED PWB and execut U411 (see page 1-3-152).
		CCD PWB	Replace the ISU and execute U411 (see page 1-3-152).
		ISC PWB	Replace the ISC PWB and execute U411 (see page 1-3-152).
		Main PWB	Replace the main PWB (see page 1-5-74).
3310	**CIS AGC error** After AGC, correct input is not obtained at CIS.	CIS	1. Execute U906 Separating Operation Release (see page 1-3-191). 2. To check the lamp, execute U061 CCD (see page 1-3-49). 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DP CIS and DPSHD PWB (YC2) DPSHD PWB (YC3) and DP relay PWB (YC2) 4. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 5. Replace the CIS and execute U091 and U411 (see page 1-3-65,1-3-152).
		DPSHD PWB	Replace the DPSHD PWB.
3500	**Communication error between scanner and ASIC** An error code is detected.	ISC PWB	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. ISC PWB (YC3) and Main PWB (YC11) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. Replace the ISC PWB and execute U411 (see page 1-3-152).
		Main PWB	Replace the main PWB (see page 1-5-74).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
3600	**Scanner sequence error**	ISC PWB	1. Execute U021 memory initializing (see page 1-3-28). 2. Replace the ISC PWB and execute U411 (see page 1-3-152).
3700	**Scanner device error**	CCD (ISU)	Since the ISU is mounted with a CCD of different type, install the ISU that matches with the model.
3800	**AFE error** When writing the data, read and write data does not match 3 times in succession. No response is received in 100 ms from AEF.	ISC PWB	1. Confirm that the FFC wiring connector is not distorted and connect the FFC wiring all the way in. CCD PWB (YC2) and ISC PWB (YC9) 2. If the FFC wiring is disconnected, replace the FFC wiring. 3. Replace the ISC PWB and execute U411 (see page 1-3-152).
		CCD PWB	Replace the ISU and execute U411 (see page 1-3-152).
3900	**Backup memory read/write error (ISC PWB)** Read and write data does not match.	Backup memory (ISC PWB)	1. Turn the main power switch off and after 5 seconds, turn it on. 2. Replace the ISC PWB and execute U411 (see page 1-3-152).
4001	**Polygon motor synchronization error** After polygon motor is driven, the ready signal does not turn to L within 30 s. The polygon motor speed won't stabilize within 10 s.	Polygon motor (LSU)	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Polygon motor and Engine PWB (YC15) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. Replace the laser scanner unit (see page 1-5-49).
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
4011	**Polygon motor steady-state error** After Polygon motor is stabilized, the ready signal is at the H level for 15 s continuously.	Polygon motor (LSU)	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Polygon motor and Engine PWB (YC15) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. Replace the laser scanner unit (see page 1-5-44).
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).
4101	**BD initialization error K** After Polygon motor is driven, the BD signal is not detected for 1 s.	PD PWB K (LSU)	1. Confirm that the FFC wiring connector is not distorted and connect the FFC wiring all the way in. Laser scanner unit and LSU relay PWB (YC3) LSU relay PWB (YC2) and Engine PWB (YC11) 2. If the FFC wiring is disconnected, replace the FFC wiring. 3. Replace the laser scanner unit (see page 1-5-49).
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).
4201	**BD steady-state error K** The BD signal is not detected.	PD PWB K (LSU)	1. Confirm that the FFC wiring connector is not distorted and connect the FFC wiring all the way in. Laser scanner unit and LSU relay PWB (YC3) LSU relay PWB (YC2) and Engine PWB (YC11) 2. If the FFC wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the FFC wiring. 3. Replace the laser scanner unit (see page 1-5-49).
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
5101	**Main high-voltage error K** Measure the inflowing current when Vpp is varied in 3 steps and verify if the difference of the currents of 0 and step 2 is less than 42 (51 if lower high-voltage board).	Drum unit	1. Confirm that the drum or the drum screw can rotate. 2. If it won't rotate, replace the drum unit. 3. Check that the discharger lamp is properly connected.
		Charger roller unit	1. Check that the high-voltage contacts are not distorted or adhered with foreign objects. 2. Reinstall the chrager roller unit.Or, replace the charger roller unit (see page 1-5-59).
		High voltage PWB	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. High voltage PWB (YC2) and Engine PWB (YC16) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. Replace the High voltage PWB (see page 1-5-90).
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
6000	**Broken fuser heater wire** Fuser thermistor 1 does not reach 100° C/212 °F even after 30 s during warming up. The detected temperature of fuser thermistor 1 does not reach the specified temperature (ready indication temperature) for 420 s in warming up after reached to 100° C/212 °F.	Fuser unit	1. Check that no paper jam is present. 2. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Fuser unit and Engine PWB (YC26) 3. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 4. eplace the Fuser unit eplace the Fuser unit (see page 1-5-67). (Deteriorated sensitivity due to the toner adhered to the center thermistor.)
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).
		Power source PWB	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Power source PWB (YC3) and fuser heater PWB (YC3) Fuser heater PWB (YC2) and feed PWB 1 (YC27) Feed PWB 1 (YC1) and Engine PWB (YC6)
		Fuser heater	1. Replace the fuser unit (see page 1-5-67).
6020	**Abnormally high fuser thermistor 1 temperature** Fuser thermistor 1 detects a temperature higher than 240°C/464°F for 1 s.	Fuser unit	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Fuser unit and Engine PWB (YC26) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. Replace the Fuser unit (see page 1-5-67).
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
6030	**Broken fuser thermistor 1 wire** Input from fuser center thermistor 1 is 1010 or more (A/D value) continuously for 1 s. Verify if A/D read in the differential output won't change by 4 or more when it was turned on for 10 seconds in a low-temperature environment.	Fuser unit	1. Check that no paper jam is present. 2. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Fuser unit and Engine PWB (YC26) 3. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 4. eplace the Fuser unit (see page 1-5-67). (Deteriorated sensitivity due to the toner adhered to the center thermistor.)
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).
		Fuser thermistor 1	1. eplace the Fuser unit (see page 1-5-67).
		Fuser thermostat (triggered)	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Fuser unit and fuser heater PWB (YC1) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. eplace the Fuser unit (see page 1-5-67).
6040	**Fuser heater error** Input from fuser center thermistor 1 is abnormal value continuously for 1 s.	Fuser unit	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Fuser unit and Engine PWB (YC26) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring.
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).
		Center thermistor 1	1. eplace the Fuser unit (see page 1-5-67).
		Fuser thermostat (triggered)	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Fuser unit and fuser heater PWB (YC1) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. eplace the Fuser unit (see page 1-5-67).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
6050	**Abnormally low fuser thermistor 1 temperature** Fuser thermistor 1 detects a temperature lower than 100°C/212°F for 1 s after warming up, during ready or during print.	Power source	1. Check that the operating voltage falls within +/-10%. 2. Check no voltage drop is caused. The heater is deactivated at 70V or lower. 3. Relocate the AC outlet that supplies power.
		Fuser unit	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Fuser unit and Engine PWB (YC26) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. eplace the Fuser unit (see page 1-5-67).
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 1. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).
		Fuser thermistor 1	1. eplace the Fuser unit (see page 1-5-67).
		Fuser thermostat (triggered)	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Fuser unit and fuser heater PWB (YC1) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. eplace the Fuser unit (see page 1-5-67).
6100	**Broken fuser heater wire** Fuser thermistor 5 won't reach the reference temperature in 480 s after shifting to low power mode.	Fuser unit	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Fuser unit and Engine PWB (YC26) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. eplace the Fuser unit (see page 1-5-67).
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
6120	**Abnormally high fuser press thermistor 5 temperature** Fuser press thermistor 5 detects a temperature higher than 190°C/ 374°F for 1 s.	Fuser unit	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Fuser unit and Engine PWB (YC26) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. eplace the Fuser unit (see page 1-5-67).
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).
6130	**Broken fuser press thermistor 5 wire** The input from the fuser press thermistor 5 has been less than 30°C/ 86°F (A/D: greater thann992) for 60 seconds continuously.	Fuser unit	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Fuser unit and Engine PWB (YC26) Fuser IH PWB(YC4) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. eplace the Fuser unit (see page 1-5-67).
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).
		Fuser IH PWB	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Fuser IH PWB(YC4) and Engine PWB (YC26) 2. Replace the fuser IH PWB (see page 1-5-95).
		Fuser IH unit	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Fuser IH unit and Fuser IH PWB (YC9 and 10) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. Replace the fuser IH unit (see page 1-5-69).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
6150	**Abnormally low fuser press thermistor 5 temperature** Fuser press thermistor 5 detects a temperature lower than 30°C/ 86°F for 1 s after warming up.	Fuser unit	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Fuser unit and Engine PWB (YC26) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. eplace the Fuser unit (see page 1-5-67).
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).
		Fuser IH PWB	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Fuser IH PWB(YC4) and Engine PWB (YC26) 2. Replace the fuser IH PWB (see page 1-5-95).
		Fuser IH unit	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Fuser IH unit and Fuser IH PWB (YC9 and 10) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. Replace the fuser IH unit (see page 1-5-69).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
6200	**Broken fuser edge heater wire** Fuser thermistor 2 does not reach 100° C/212 °F even after 60 s during warming up. The detected temperature of fuser thermistor 2 does not reach the specified temperature (ready indication temperature) for 420 s in warming up after reached to 100° C/212 °F.	Fuser unit	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Fuser unit and Engine PWB (YC26) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. eplace the Fuser unit (see page 1-5-67).
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).
		Fuser center thermistor 1	1. eplace the Fuser unit (see page 1-5-67).
6220	**Abnormally high fuser edge thermistor temperature** Fuser thermistor 2 detects a temperature higher than 240°C/464°F for 1 s.	Fuser unit	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Fuser unit and Engine PWB (YC26) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. eplace the Fuser unit (see page 1-5-67).
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).
6230	**Broken fuser edge thermistor wire** The Input signal from the fuser thermistor 2 is 992 or more (A/D value) continuously for 1 s when the temperature at the fuser thermistor 1 is higher than 100°C/212°F. Fuser thermistor 2 detects a lower then 50°C/122°F for 15s during warming up.	Fuser unit	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Fuser unit and Engine PWB (YC26) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. eplace the Fuser unit (see page 1-5-67).
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
6250	**Abnormally low fuser edge thermistor temperature** Fuser thermistor 2 detects a temperature lower than 100°C/212°F for 1 s during ready or print.	Fuser unit	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. 2. Fuser unit and Engine PWB (YC26) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. eplace the Fuser unit (see page 1-5-67).
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).
6320	**Abnormally high fuser middle thermistor 3 temperature** Fuser middle thermistor 3 detects a temperature higher than 215°C/419°F for 1 s.	Fuser unit	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Fuser unit and Engine PWB (YC26) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. eplace the Fuser unit (see page 1-5-67).
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).
6330	**Broken fuser center thermistor 3 wire** Fuser center thermistor 3 detects a temperature lower than 20°C/ 68°F continuously for 1 s	Fuser unit	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Fuser unit and Engine PWB (YC26) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. eplace the Fuser unit (see page 1-5-67).
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).
		Fuser IH PWB	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Fuser IH PWB(YC4) and Engine PWB (YC26) 2. Replace the fuser IH PWB (see page 1-5-95).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
6520	**Abnormally high fuser thermistor 4 temperature** Fuser thermistor 4 detects a temperature higher than 215°C/ 419°F for 1 s.	Fuser unit	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Fuser unit and Engine PWB (YC26) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. eplace the Fuser unit (see page 1-5-67).
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).
		Fuser IH unit	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Fuser IH unit and Fuser IH PWB (YC9 and 10) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. Replace the fuser IH unit (see page 1-5-69).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
6530	**Broken fuser thermistor 4 wire** Fuser thermistor 4 detects a temperature lower than 20°C/ 68°F continuously for 1 s	Fuser unit	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Fuser unit and Engine PWB (YC26) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. eplace the Fuser unit (see page 1-5-67).
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).
		Fuser IH PWB	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Fuser IH PWB(YC4) and Engine PWB (YC26) 2. Replace the fuser IH PWB (see page 1-5-95).
		Fuser IH unit	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Fuser IH unit and Fuser IH PWB (YC9 and 10) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. Replace the fuser IH unit (see page 1-5-69).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
6600	**Fuser belt rotation error** A belt rotating pulse is not received for 1 s. (Engine CPU)	Fuser motor	1. To check the motor operation, execute U030 Fuser (see page 1-3-32). 2. Check that the drive gear can rotate and not heavily loaded and, if necessary, apply grease to the axle holder and gears. 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Fuser motor and Feed PWB (YC18) and Engine PWB (YC6) 4. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 5. Replace the fuser motor (see page 1-5-105).
		Fuser belt sensor	1. Check that the sensor is correctly positioned. 2. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Fuser unit and Engine PWB (YC26) 3. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 4. eplace the Fuser unit (see page 1-5-67).
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
6610	**Fuser release sensor error** When the fuser release motor is driven, the fuser release sensor does not turn on/off for 5 s.	Fuser release motor	1. To check the motor operation, execute U030 Fuser Release (see page 1-3-32). 2. Check that the drive gear can be rotated and the separation is possible. 3. If the motor won't rotate, confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Fuser unit and Engine PWB (YC26) 4. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 5. Replace the Fuser unit (see page 1-5-67).
		Fuser release sensor	1. Check that the sensor is correctly positioned. 2. Check that the sensor is not contaminated or damaged.
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).
6620	**IH core motor error** When the IH core motor is driven, the IH core sensor does not turn off for 5 s.	IH core motor	1. To check the motor operation, execute U030 Fuser Release (see page 1-3-32). 2. Check that the drive gear can be rotated and the separation is possible. 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. IH core motor and front PWB (YC10) Front PWB (YC3) and engine PWB (YC7) 4. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 5. Replace the Fuser unit (see page 1-5-67).
		IH core sensor	1. Check that the sensor is correctly positioned. 2. Check that the sensor is not contaminated or damaged.
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
6710	**Fuser IH PWB CPU reset error** Watch doc timer has been overflowed.	Fuser IH PWB	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Fuser IH PWB(YC4) and Engine PWB (YC26) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. Replace the fuser IH PWB (see page 1-5-95).
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
6720	**Fuser IH belt rotation error** While driving, the pulse count is less than 3 for 2 seconds during the input to the rotation pulse signal is 200 msec.	Fuser motor	1. To check the motor operation, execute U030 Fuser (see page 1-3-32). 2. Check that the drive gear can rotate and not heavily loaded and, if necessary, apply grease to the axle holder and gears. 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Fuser motor and Feed PWB (YC18) and Engine PWB (YC6) 4. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 5. Replace the fuser motor (see page 1-5-105).
		Fuser belt sensor	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Fuser unit and Engine PWB (YC26) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. Replace the Fuser unit (see page 1-5-67).
		Fuser IH PWB	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Fuser IH PWB(YC4) and Engine PWB (YC26) 2. Replace the fuser IH PWB (see page 1-5-95).
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
6730	**Abnormally high fuser IH PWB temperature 1 (IGBT1)** The input detect temperature is higher than 115°C/ 221 °F.	Fuser IH PWB	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Fuser IH PWB (YC4) and Engine PWB (YC26) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. Replace the fuser IH PWB (see page 1-5-95).
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).
6740	**Abnormally high fuser IH PWB temperature 2 (IGBT2)** The input detect temperature is higher than 115°C/ 221 °F.	Fuser IH PWB	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Fuser IH PWB (YC4) and Engine PWB (YC26) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. Replace the fuser IH PWB (see page 1-5-95).
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
6750	**Fuser IH output over-current error** The output current of IH CPU is higher than 110 A for 10 ms in succession.	Fuser IH PWB	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Fuser IH PWB(YC4) and Engine PWB (YC26) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. Replace the fuser IH PWB (see page 1-5-95).
		Fuser IH unit	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Fuser IH unit and Fuser IH PWB (YC9 and 10) Fuser IH PWB(YC4) and Engine PWB (YC26) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. Replace the fuser IH unit (see page 1-5-69).
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).
6760	**Fuser IH input over-current error** The input current of IH CPU is higher than 20A (100V/120V), 10A (200V) for 100 ms in succession.	Fuser IH PWB	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Fuser IH PWB(YC4) and Engine PWB (YC26) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. Replace the fuser IH PWB (see page 1-5-95).
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
6770	**Fuser IH low electric power error** Less than 0.6 times of the pre-set power is detected for 120 ms in succession after the IH heater remote has turned on.	Fuser unit	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Fuser unit and Fuser IH PWB (YC6) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. Replace the Fuser IH unit (see page 1-5-69).
		Fuser IH PWB	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Fuser IH PWB(YC4) and Engine PWB (YC26) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. Replace the Fuser IH PWB (see page 1-5-95).
		Fuser IH unit	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Fuser IH unit and Fuser IH PWB (YC9 and 10) Fuser IH PWB(YC4) and Engine PWB (YC26) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. Replace the fuser IH unit (see page 1-5-69).
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
6910	**Engine software ready error** The device won't engage in ready state in 60 minutes after warming-up has began. (A previous timeout process has not been cancelled.)	Engine PWB	1. Turn the main power switch off and after 5 seconds, turn it on. 2. Reinstall the engine software. 3. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).
6920	**Fuser front fan motor error** When the fuser front fan motor is driven, alarm signal is detected for 5 s continuously.	Fuser front fan motor	1. To check the fan motor operation, execute U037 IH Coil (see page 1-3-41). 2. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Fuser front fan motor and Front PWB (YC4) Front PWB (YC3) and Engine PWB (YC7) 3. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 4. Replace the fuser front fan motor.
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).
6930	**Fuser rear fan motor error** When the fuser rear fan motor is driven, alarm signal is detected for 5 s continuously.	Fuser rear fan motor	1. To check the fan motor operation, execute U037 Fuser Cooling (see page 1-3-41). 2. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Fuser rear fan motor and Engine PWB (YC26) 3. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 4. Replace the fuser rear fan motor.
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
6940	**IH PWB cooling fan motor error** When the IH fan motor is driven, the alarm signal is detected for 5 s continuously.	IH fan motor	1. To check the fan motor operation, execute U037 IH PWB (see page 1-3-41). 2. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. IH fan motor and Feed PWB 1(YC11) Feed PWB 1(YC2) and Engine PWB (YC5) 3. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 4. Replace the IH fan motor.
		Feed PWB 1	Replace the Feed PWB1.
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
6950	**Fuser IH PWB communication error** No response is received in 30 ms since a command is sent to IHCPU. A checksum error is detected 10 times in succession.	Power source PWB	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Power source PWB (YC9) and Feed PWB 1(YC4) Power source PWB (YC3) and Fuser IH PWB (YC1) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. If the +24V output is not given by the power source PWB (YC9), replace the power source PWB.
		Feed PWB 1	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Power source PWB (YC3) and Fuser IH PWB (YC1) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. If the +24V output is not given by the feed PWB1 (YC27), replace the feed PWB1.
		Fuser IH PWB	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Fuser IH PWB(YC4) and Engine PWB (YC26) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. Replace the Fuser IH PWB (see page 1-5-95).
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).
6960	**Current PWB error** The power current is greater than 1A for 5 seconds continuously despite that 500W was indicated as the fuser power during power-up. * : 220-240 V model only	Current PWB	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Current PWB(YC17) and Feed PWB2 (YC13) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. Replace the Current PWB.

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
6980	**Fuser EEPROM error** No response is issued from the device in reading/writing for 5 ms or more and this problem is repeated five times successively. Mismatch of reading data from two locations occurs 8 times successively. Mismatch between writing data and reading data occurs 8 times successively.	Fuser unit	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Fuser unit and Engine PWB (YC26) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. Replace the Fuser unit (see page 1-5-67).
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).
6990	**Fuser power supply incompatibility** Information won't match between the engine backup and the fuser IH PWB.	Differences in settings after initialization	When this has happened after initialization using U021, make settings identical with the voltages on the IH PWB using U169 (see page 1-3-28,1-3-95).
		Fuser IH PWB	Replace with a fuser IH PWB specifically designed with the standard voltage (see page 1-5-95).
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
7001	**Toner motor error** During the toner motor is driven, an event in which a locking was detected for 5 times in 200 ms intervals has occurred in 30 sets.	Toner container	1. Check that the spiral screw of the toner container can be rotated by the hand. 2. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
		Toner motor	1. Draw out the toner container and execute U135 to check the toner motor operation (see page 1-3-80). 2. Check the drive gear can rotate or they are not unusually loaded and, if necessary, replace. 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Toner motor and Engine PWB (YC27) 4. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 5. Replace the Toner motor.
		Screw sensor	1. Check that the sensor is correctly positioned. 2. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Screw sensor and Front PWB (YC5) Front PWB (YC2) and Engine PWB (YC7) 3. Replace the Screw sensor.
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
7101	**Toner sensor error** Sensor output value of 60 or less or 944 or more continued for 3 s.	Failure of locking the developer waste slot at setup.	If an abnormal noise is heard, check that the developer ejection outlet is released and, if not, release the outlet (see page 1-2-25).
		Toner sensor	1. Check the toner sensor output by U155 (see page 1-3-89). 2. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Toner sensor and Front PWB (YC7) Front PWB (YC2) and Engine PWB (YC8) 3. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 4. Check that the gears of the Developer unit are not damaged and the spiral can rotate. 5. Replace the Developer unit (see page 1-5-56).
		Toner motor	1. Draw out the toner container and execute U135 to check the toner motor operation (see page 1-3-80). 2. Check the drive gear can rotate or they are not unusually loaded and, if necessary, replace. 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Toner motor and Engine PWB (YC27) 4. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 5. Replace the Toner motor.
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
7200	**Broken outer temperature sensor 2 wire** The sensor input sampling is greater than 230.	Outer temperature sensor 2	1. Confirm Ext/Int is displayed by U139 temperature and humidity (see page 1-3-82). 2. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Outer temperature sensor 2 and Front PWB (YC8) Front PWB (YC2) and Engine PWB (YC8) 3. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 4. Replace the outer temperature sensor 2.
		Front PWB	Replace the front PWB.
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).
7210	**Short-circuited outer temperature sensor** The sensor input sampling is less than 69.	Outer temperature sensor 2	1. Confirm Ext/Int is displayed by U139 temperature and humidity (see page 1-3-82). 2. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Outer temperature sensor 2 and Front PWB (YC8) Front PWB (YC2) and Engine PWB (YC10) 3. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 4. Replace the outer temperature sensor 2.
		Front PWB	Replace the front PWB
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
7221	**Broken LSU thermistor wire** The sensor input sampling is greater than 230.	LSU thermistor	1. Confirm LSU is displayed by U139 temperature and humidity (see page 1-3-82). 2. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Laser scanner unit and LSU relay PWB (YC3) LSU relay PWB (YC2) and Engine PWB (YC11) 3. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 4. Replace the laser scanner unit (see page 1-5-44).
		LSU relay PWB	REPLACE the LSU relay PWB.
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).
7231	**Short-circuited LSU thermistor** The sensor input sampling is less than 69.	LSU thermistor	1. Confirm LSU is displayed by U139 temperature and humidity (see page 1-3-82). 2. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Laser scanner unit and LSU relay PWB (YC3) LSU relay PWB (YC2) and Engine PWB (YC11) 3. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 4. Replace the laser scanner unit (see page 1-5-49).
		LSU relay PWB	Replace the LSU relay PWB.
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
7241	**Broken developer thermistor wire** The sensor input sampling is greater than 230.	Developer thermistor	1. Confirm Developing is displayed by U139 temperature and humidity (see page 1-3-82). 2. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Developer unit and Front PWB (YC7) Front PWB (YC2) and Engine PWB (YC8) 3. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 4. Replace the Developer unit (see page 1-5-56).
		Front PWB	Replace the front PWB
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).
7251	**Short-circuited developer thermistor** The sensor input sampling is less than 69.	Developer thermistor	1. Confirm Developing is displayed by U139 temperature and humidity (see page 1-3-82). 2. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Developer unit and Front PWB (YC7) Front PWB (YC2) and Engine PWB (YC8) 3. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 4. Replace the Developer unit (see page 1-5-56).
		Front PWB	Replace the front PWB
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
7301	**Toner hopper motor error** During the Toner hopper motor is driven, an event in which a locking was detected for 5 times in 200 ms intervals has occurred in 30 sets.	Toner hopper motor	1. If the motor won't rotate, confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Toner hopper motor and Front PWB (YC5) Front PWB (YC3) and Engine PWB (YC7) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. Replace the toner hopper motor.
		Screw sensor	1. Check that the sensor is correctly positioned. 2. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Screw sensor and Front PWB (YC5) Front PWB (YC2) and Engine PWB (YC7) 3. Replace the Screw sensor.
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).
7401	**Developer unit type mis-match error** Improper adaptation of the machine and developer unit is detected.	Different type of the developer unit is installed.	Install the developer unit of the correct type.
		Developer unit	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Developer unit and Front PWB (YC7) Front PWB (YC2) and Engine PWB (YC8) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring.
7411	**Drum unit type mismatch error** Improper adaptation of the machine and developer unit is detected.	Different type of the drum unit is installed.	Install the drum unit of the correct type.
		Drum unit	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Drum unit and Front PWB (YC6) Front PWB (YC2) and Engine PWB (YC8) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring.

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
7460	**Developer shutter error** Power is turned on while the developer shutter is locked.	The developer shutter has been locked.	Release the developer shutter (see page 1-2-25).
		Developer shutter sensor	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Developer shutter sensor and Front PWB (YC4) Front PWB (YC3) and Engine PWB (YC7) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring.
7470	**Failure of the fan motor that avoids internal contamination** The toner fan motor signal has been detected as unconnected at power up.	Toner disposal box	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Toner disposal box and Feed PWB 1 (YC14) Feed PWB 1 (YC1) and Engine PWB (YC6) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. Replace the Toner disposal box.
		Feed PWB 1	Replace the Feed PWB 1.
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
7601	**ID sensor 1 error [Front]** Dark potential error FrontDarkP and FrontDarkS are greater than 0.80V. Light potential error FrontBrightS is smaller than FrontDarkS. FrontBrightP is smaller than [FrontDarkP + 0.5V].	ID sensor1	1. Execute U464 Calib for setting ID compensation operation and check the displayed values by U465 Boas Calib for ID compensation reference (see page 1-3-175). 2. Clean the ID sensor on its surface. 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. ID sensor 1 (front) and relay PWB (YC10) Relay PWB (YC1) and Feed PWB 1 (YC14) Feed PWB 1 (YC1) and Engine PWB (YC6) 4. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring.
		Feed PWB 1	Replace the Feed PWB 1.
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).
7602	**ID sensor 2 error [Rear]** Dark potential error RearDarkP and RearDarkS are greater than 0.80V. Light potential error RearBrightS is smaller than RearDarkS. RearBrightP is smaller than [RearDarkP + 0.5V].	ID sensor 2	1. Execute U464 Calib for setting ID compensation operation and check the displayed values by U465 Boas Calib for ID compensation reference (see page 1-3-175). 2. Clean the ID sensor on its surface. 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. ID sensor2 (rear) and relay PWB (YC10) Relay PWB (YC1) and Feed PWB 1 (YC14) Feed PWB 1 (YC1) and Engine PWB (YC6) 4. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring.
		Feed PWB 1	Replace the Feed PWB 1.
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
7800	**Broken outer temperature sensor wire** The device did not respond for more than 5 ms during reading, in 5 times.	Outer temperature sensor	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Outer temperature sensor and Front PWB (YC8) Front PWB (YC2) and Engine PWB (YC8) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. Replace the Outer temperature sensor.
		Front PWB	Replace the front PWB
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).
7901	**Drum EEPROM error** No response is issued from the device in reading/writing for 5 ms or more and this problem is repeated five times successively. Mismatch of reading data from two locations occurs 8 times successively. Mismatch between writing data and reading data occurs 8 times successively.	DR PWB	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DR PWB and Front PWB (YC6) Front PWB (YC2) and Engine PWB (YC8) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. Replace the Drum unit (see page 1-5-57).
		Front PWB	Replace the front PWB
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).
7911	**Developer unit EEPROM error** No response is issued from the device in reading/writing for 5 ms or more and this problem is repeated five times successively. Mismatch of reading data from two locations occurs 8 times successively. Mismatch between writing data and reading data occurs 8 times successively.	Developer unit	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Developer unit and Front PWB (YC7) Front PWB (YC2) and Engine PWB (YC8) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. Replace the Developer unit (see page 1-5-56).
		Front PWB	Replace the front PWB
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
7941	**Laser scanner unit EEPROM error** Mismatch of reading data from two locations occurs 8 times successively. Mismatch between writing data and reading data occurs 8 times successively.	APC PWB	1. Confirm that the FFC wiring connector is not distorted and connect the FFC wiring all the way in. APC PWB and LSU relay PWB (YC3) LSU relay PWB (YC2) and Engine PWB (YC11) 2. If the FFC wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the FFC wiring. 3. Replace the laser scanner unit (see page 1-5-44).
		LSU relay PWB	Replace the LSU relay PWB.
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).
8000	**Finisher incompatible detection error** The finisher has been installed with a device to which it is incompatible.	The finisher is installed with a device to which itis incompatible.	The finisher must be installed with the devices to which it is compatible.

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
8010	**Punch motor error 1** When the punch motor is driven, punch home position sensor does not turn on within 200 ms.	Punch motor	1. Execute U240 Motor - Punch to check the finisher operation (see page 1-3-116). 2. Manipulate the punch up and down to check it can smoothly move up and down. 3. Check that the drive from the motor reaches the punch cam. 4. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Punch motor and Punch PWB (YC4) 5. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 6. Replace the punch motor.
		Punch home position sensor	1. Execute U241 Punch - Punch HP to check the finisher switch (see page 1-3-118). 2. Check that the sensor and its mounting bracket are correctly positioned. 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Punch home position sensor and Punch PWB (YC8) 4. Replace the Punch home position sensor.
		Punch PWB	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Punch PWB (YC1) and DF main PWB (YC7) 2. Replace the punch PWB.
		DF main PWB	Replace the DF main PWB (Refer to the service manual for the document finisher).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
8020	**Punch motor error 2** Home position is not obtained in 3 s after home position is initialized or in standby.	Punch motor	1. Execute U240 Motor - Punch to check the finisher operation (see page 1-3-116). 2. Manipulate the punch up and down to check it can smoothly move up and down. 3. Check that the drive from the motor reaches the punch cam. 4. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Punch motor and Punch PWB (YC4) 5. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 6. Replace the punch motor.
		Punch PWB	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Punch PWB (YC1) and DF main PWB (YC7) 2. Replace the punch PWB.
		DF main PWB	Replace the DF main PWB (Refer to the service manual for the document finisher).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
8030	**Punch motor error 3** Home position does not turn from On to Off in 50 ms after home position has been initialized.	Punch motor	1. Execute U240 Motor - Punch to check the finisher operation (see page 1-3-116). 2. Manipulate the punch up and down to check it can smoothly move up and down. 3. Check that the drive from the motor reaches the punch cam. 4. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Punch motor and Punch PWB (YC4) 5. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 6. Replace the punch motor.
		Punch PWB	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Punch PWB (YC1) and DF main PWB (YC7) 2. Replace the punch PWB.
		DF main PWB	Replace the DF main PWB (Refer to the service manual for the document finisher).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
8090	**DF paddle motor error** When the DF paddle motor is driven, DF paddle sensor does not turn on within 1 s.	DF paddle motor	1. Execute U240 Motor - Beat to check the finisher operation (see page 1-3-116). 2. Check that the paddle can rotate. 3. Check that the drive from the motor reaches the paddle. 4. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF paddle motor and DF main PWB (YC15) 5. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 6. Replace the DF paddle motor.
		DF paddle sensor	1. Execute U241 Finisher - Bundle Eject HP to check the finisher switch (see page 1-3-118). 2. Check that the sensor and its mounting bracket are correctly positioned. 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF paddle sensor and DF main PWB (YC22) 4. Replace the DF paddle sensor.
		DF main PWB	Replace the DF main PWB (Refer to the service manual for the document finisher).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
8100	**DF eject release motor error** When the DF eject release motor is driven, DF bundle discharge sensor does not turn on within 1 s.	DF eject release motor DF bundle discharge unit sensor	1. Execute U240 Motor - Eject Unlock (Full) to check the finisher operation (see page 1-3-116). 2. Check that the eject guide of the process tray is opened and, if not, correct the guide. 3. Check that the drive from the motor reaches the eject guide. 4. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF bundle discharge unit sensor and DF main PWB (YC22) 5. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 6. Replace the DF eject release motor.
		DF bundle discharge unit sensor	1. Execute U241 Finisher - Bundle Eject HP to check the finisher switch (see page 1-3-118). 2. Check that the sensor and its mounting bracket are correctly positioned. 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF bundle discharge unit sensor and DF main PWB (YC22) 4. Replace the DF bundle eject unit sensor.
		DF main PWB	Replace the DF main PWB (Refer to the service manual for the document finisher).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
8110	**DF shift motor 1 error** DF shift sensor 1 won't turn on when it has travelled 160 mm after DF shift motor 1 is driven.	DF shift motor 1 [front]	1. Execute U240 Motor - Sort Test to check the finisher operation (see page 1-3-116). 2. Manipulate the front shift guide back and forth to check it is smoothly operable. 3. Check that the drive from the motor reaches the front shift guide. 4. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF shift motor 1[front] and DF main PWB (YC14) 5. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 6. Replace the DF shift motor 1 [front].
		DF shift sensor 1 [front]	1. Execute U241 Finisher - Shift Front HP to check the finisher switch (see page 1-3-118). 2. Check that the sensor and its mounting bracket are correctly positioned. 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF shift sensor 1[front] and DF main PWB (YC23) 4. Replace the DF shift sensor 1 [front].
		DF main PWB	Replace the DF main PWB (Refer to the service manual for the document finisher).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
8120	**DF shift motor 2 error** DF shift sensor 2 won't turn on when it has travelled 160 mm after DF shift motor 2 is driven.	DF shift motor 2 [rear]	1. Execute U240 Motor - Sort Test to check the finisher operation (see page 1-3-116). 2. Manipulate the rear shift guide back and forth to check it is smoothly operable. 3. Check that the drive from the motor reaches the rear shift guide. 4. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF shift motor 2 [rear] and DF main PWB (YC14) 5. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 6. Replace the DF shift motor 2 [rear].
		DF shift sensor 2 [rear]	1. Execute U241 Finisher - Shift Tail HP to check the finisher switch (see page 1-3-118). 2. Check that the sensor and its mounting bracket are correctly positioned. 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF shift sensor 2 [rear] and DF main PWB (YC23) 4. Replace the DF shift set sensor2 [rear].
		DF main PWB	Replace the DF main PWB (Refer to the service manual for the document finisher).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
8130	**DF shift release motor error** When the DF shift release motor is driven, DF shift release sensor does not turn on within 1 s.	DF shift release motor	1. Check that cancelling the maintenance mode after executing U240 Motor - Sort for the finisher operation check lets the rear and forth cursors return to the home position (see page 1-3-116). 2. Manipulate the front and rear shift guide to check it is smoothly operable. 3. Check that the drive from the motor reaches the shift guide front and rear. 4. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF shift release motor and DF main PWB (YC14) 5. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 6. Replace the DF shift release motor.
		DF shift release sensor	1. Execute U241 Finisher - Shift Unlock HP to check the finisher switch (see page 1-3-118). 2. Check that the sensor and its mounting bracket are correctly positioned. 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF shift release sensor and DF main PWB (YC23) 4. Replace the DF shift release sensor.
		DF main PWB	Replace the DF main PWB (Refer to the service manual for the document finisher).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
8140	**DF tray motor error 1** When the main tray has ascended, DF tray sensor 1 or DF tray upper surface sensor does not turn on within 20 s.	DF tray motor	1. Execute U240 Motor - Tray to check the finisher operation (see page 1-3-116). 2. Manipulate the main tray up and down to check it is smoothly operable. 3. Check that the drive from the motor reaches the main tray. 4. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF tray motor and DF Main PWB(YC16) 5. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 6. Replace the DF tray motor.
		DF tray sensor 1 DF tray upper surface sensor	1. Execute U241 Finisher - Tray U-Limit, Tray Top to check the finisher switch (see page 1-3-118). 2. Check that the sensor and its mounting bracket are correctly positioned. 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF tray sensor 1 and DF Main PWB(YC22) DF tray upper surface sensor and DF Main PWB(YC21,YC13) 4. Replace the DF tray sensor 1 or DF tray upper surface sensor.
		DF main PWB	Replace the DF main PWB (Refer to the service manual for the document finisher).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
8150	**DF tray motor error 2** When the main tray has descended, DF tray sensor 1 or DF tray upper surface sensor does not turn off within 5 s.	DF tray motor	1. Execute U240 Motor - Tray to check the finisher operation (see page 1-3-116). 2. Manipulate the main tray up and down to check it is smoothly operable. 3. Check that the drive from the motor reaches the main tray. 4. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF tray motor and DF main PWB (YC16) 5. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 6. Replace the DF tray motor.
		DF tray sensor 1 DF tray upper surface sensor	1. Execute U241 Finisher - Tray U-Limit, Tray Top to check the finisher switch (see page 1-3-118). 2. Check that the sensor and its mounting bracket are correctly positioned. 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF tray sensor 1 and DF main PWB (YC22) DF tray upper surface sensor and DF main PWB (YC21,YC13) 4. Replace the DF tray sensor 1 or DF tray upper surface sensor.
		DF main PWB	Replace the DF main PWB (Refer to the service manual for the document finisher).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
8160	**DF tray motor error 3** When the main tray has descended, DF tray sensor 4 does not turn on within 20 s.	DF tray motor	1. Execute U240 Motor - Tray to check the finisher operation (see page 1-3-116). 2. Manipulate the main tray up and down to check it is smoothly operable. 3. Check that the drive from the motor reaches the main tray. 4. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF tray motor and DF main PWB (YC16) 5. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 6. Replace the DF tray motor.
		DF tray sensor 4	1. Execute U241 Finisher - Tray Middle to check the finisher switch (see page 1-3-118). 2. Check that the sensor and its mounting bracket are correctly positioned. 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF tray sensor 4 and DF main PWB (YC23) 4. Replace the DF tray sensor 4.
		DF main PWB	Replace the DF main PWB (Refer to the service manual for the document finisher).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
8170	**DF side registration motor 1 error 1** When initial operation, DF side registration sensor 1 does not turn on within 3 s.	DF side registration motor 1	1. Execute U240 Motor - Width Test to check the finisher operation (see page 1-3-116). 2. Manipulate the front side registration guide to check it is smoothly operable. 3. Check that the drive from the motor reaches the front side registration guide. 4. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF side registration motor 1 and DF main PWB (YC15) 5. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 6. Replace the DF side registration motor 1.
		DF side registration sensor 1	1. Execute U241 Finisher - Width Front to check the finisher switch (see page 1-3-118). 2. Check that the sensor and its mounting bracket are correctly positioned. 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF side registration sensor 1. and DF main PWB (YC22) 4. Replace the DF side registration sensor 1.
		DF main PWB	Replace the DF main PWB (Refer to the service manual for the document finisher).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
8180	**DF side registration motor 1 error 2** JAM6810 (jam in front of width alignment) is detected twice.	DF side registration motor 1	1. Execute U240 Motor - Width Test to check the finisher operation (see page 1-3-116). 2. Manipulate the front side registration guide back and forth to check it is smoothly operable. 3. Check that the drive from the motor reaches the front side registration guide. 4. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF side registration motor 1 and DF main PWB (YC15) 5. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 6. Replace the DF side registration motor 1.
		DF side registration sensor 1.	1. Execute U241 Finisher - Width Front to check the finisher switch (see page 1-3-118). 2. Check that the sensor and its mounting bracket are correctly positioned. 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF side registration sensor 1. and DF main PWB (YC22) 4. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 5. Replace the DF side registration sensor 1.
		DF main PWB	Replace the DF main PWB (Refer to the service manual for the document finisher).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
8190	**DF side registration motor 2 error 1** When initial operation, DF side registration sensor 2 does not turn on within 3 s.	DF side registration motor 2	1. Execute U240 Motor - Width Test to check the finisher operation (see page 1-3-116). 2. Manipulate the rear side registration guide back and forth to check it is smoothly operable. 3. Check that the drive from the motor reaches the rear side registration guide. 4. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF side registration motor 2 and DF main PWB (YC15) 5. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 6. Replace the DF side registration motor 2.
		DF side registration sensor 2	1. Execute U241 Finisher - Width tail HP to check the finisher switch (see page 1-3-118). 2. Check that the sensor and its mounting bracket are correctly positioned. 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF side registration sensor 2 and DF main PWB (YC22) 4. Replace the DF side registration sensor 2.
		DF main PWB	Replace the DF main PWB (Refer to the service manual for the document finisher).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
8200	**DF side registration motor 2 error 2** JAM6910 (jam in rear of width alignment) is detected twice.	DF side registration motor 2	1. Execute U240 Motor - Width Test to check the finisher operation (see page 1-3-116). 2. Manipulate the rear side registration guide back and forth to check it is smoothly operable. 3. Check that the drive from the motor reaches the rear side registration guide. 4. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF side registration motor 2 and DF main PWB (YC15) 5. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 6. Replace the DF side registration motor 2.
		DF side registration sensor 2	1. Execute U241 Finisher - Width tail HP to check the finisher switch (see page 1-3-118). 2. Check that the sensor and its mounting bracket are correctly positioned. 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF side registration sensor 2 and DF main PWB (YC22) 4. Replace the DF side registration sensor 2.
		DF main PWB	Replace the DF main PWB (Refer to the service manual for the document finisher).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
8210	**DF slide motor error** When initial operation, DF staple sensor does not turn on within 3 s.	DF slide motor	1. Execute U240 Motor - Staple Move to check the finisher operation (see page 1-3-116). 2. Manipulate the staple unit back and forth to check it is smoothly operable. 3. Check that the drive from the motor reaches the staple unit. 4. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF slide motor and DF main PWB (YC12) 5. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 6. Replace the DF slide motor.
		DF staple sensor	1. Execute U241 Finisher - Width Staple HP to check the finisher switch (see page 1-3-118). 2. Check that the sensor and its mounting bracket are correctly positioned. 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF staple sensor and DF main PWB (YC22) 4. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 5. Replace the DF staple sensor.
		DF main PWB	Replace the DF main PWB (Refer to the service manual for the document finisher).
8230	**DF staple motor error 1** Staple JAM (DF) has been detected twice in a row. (The second JAM detection condition fullfilled with the home position did not detected in 600 ms after the motor was driven.)	DF staple motor	1. Remove the staple unit and check that stapling is possible without a jam. 2. Confirm that the FFC wiring connector is not distorted and connect the FFC wiring all the way in. Staple unit and DF main PWB (YC17) 3. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 4. Replace the staple unit. (Refer to the service manual for the document finisher).
		DF staple sensor	Replace the staple unit.
		DF main PWB	Replace the DF main PWB (Refer to the service manual for the document finisher).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
8240	**DF staple motor error 2** Staple JAM (DF) has been detected twice in a row. (The second JAM detection condition fullfilled with a lock detection signal maintained 1 V for 500 ms continuously, while the stapler motor was driven.)	DF staple motor	1. Remove the staple unit and check that stapling is possible without a jam. 2. Confirm that the FFC wiring connector is not distorted and connect the FFC wiring all the way in. Staple unit and DF main PWB (YC17) 3. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 4. Replace the staple unit. (Refer to the service manual for the document finisher).
		DF main PWB	Replace the DF main PWB (Refer to the service manual for the document finisher).
8260	**DF middle motor home position error** DF paddle sensor is not turned on within 1s after driving the DF middle motor.	DF middle motor	1. Execute U240 Motor - Middle(H)(L) (see page 1-3-116). 2. Check that the drive from the motor reaches the paddle. 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF middle motor and DF main PWB (YC12) 4. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 5. Replace the DF middle motor.
		DF paddle sensor	1. Execute U241 Finisher - Lead Paddle to check the finisher switch (see page 1-3-118). 2. Check that the sensor and its mounting bracket are correctly positioned. 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF paddle sensor and DF main PWB (YC22) 4. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 5. Replace the DF paddle sensor.
		DF main PWB	Replace the DF main PWB (Refer to the service manual for the document finisher).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
8300	**CF unit communication error** Communication with the center-folding unit is not possible.	CF unit set switch	1. Execute U241 Booklet - Set to check the finisher switch (see page 1-3-118). 2. Check that the switch and its mounting bracket are correctly positioned. 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. CF main PWB (YC7) and DF main PWB (YC9) 4. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 5. Replace the CF unit set switch.
		CF main PWB	Replace the CF main PWB
		DF main PWB	Replace the DF main PWB (Refer to the service manual for the document finisher).
8310	**CF side registration motor 2 error** When initial operation, CF side registration sensor 2 does not turn on within 1 s.	CF side registration motor 2	1. Execute U240 Booklet - Width Test to check finisher operation check (see page 1-3-116). 2. Manipulate the side registration upper guide back and forth to check it can smoothly move back and forth. 3. Check that the drive from the motor reaches the side registration upper guide. 4. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. CF side registration motor 2 and CF main PWB (YC10) 5. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 6. Replace the CF side registration motor.
		CF side registration sensor 2	1. Execute U241 Booklet - Width Up HP to check the finisher switch (see page 1-3-116). 2. Check that the sensor and its mounting bracket are correctly positioned. 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. CF side registration sensor 2 and CF main PWB (YC20) 4. Replace the CF side registration sensor 2.
		CF main PWB	Replace the CF main PWB

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
8320	**CF adjustment motor error** When initial operation, CF adjustment sensor does not turn on within 2.5 s.	CF adjustment motor1,2	1. Execute U240 Booklet - Bundle Up / Down to check the finisher operation (see page 1-3-116). 2. Manipulate the fold moving belt up and down to check it is smoothly operable. 3. Check that the drive from the motor reaches the fold moving belt. (Check if the belt is bent.) 4. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. CF adjustment motor 1,2 and CF main PWB (YC10) 5. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 6. Replace the CF adjustment motor1,2.
		CF adjustment sensor1,2	1. Execute U241 Booklet - bundle Up / Down HP to check the finisher switch (see page 1-3-118). 2. Check that the sensor and its mounting bracket are correctly positioned. 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. CF adjustment sensor 1,2 and CF main PWB (YC20) 4. Replace the CF adjustment sensor1,2.
		CF main PWB	Replace the CF main PWB.

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
8330	**CF blade motor error** When initial operation, CF blade sensor does not turn on within 1500 ms.	CF blade motor	1. Execute U240 Booklet - Blade to check the finisher operation (see page 1-3-116). 2. Manipulate the fold blade up and down to check it is smoothly operable. 3. Check that the drive from the motor reaches the fold blade. 4. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. CF blade motor and CF main PWB (YC15) 5. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 6. Replace the CF blade motor.
		CF blade sensor	1. Execute U241 Booklet - Blade HP to check the finisher switch (see page 1-3-118). 2. Check that the sensor and its mounting bracket are correctly positioned. 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. CF blade sensor and CF main PWB (YC20) 4. Replace the CF blade sensor.
		CF main PWB	Replace the CF main PWB
8340	**CF staple motor error 1** Staple JAM (center-folding unit) has been detected twice in a row. (The second JAM detection condition fullfilled with the home position did not detected in 600 ms after the motor was driven.)	CF staple motor	1. Execute U240 Booklet - Staple to check the finisher operation (see page 1-3-116). 2. Manipulate the staple up and down check it is smoothly operable. 3. Check that the drive from the motor reaches the staple unit. 4. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. CF staple unit and CF main PWB (YC13) 5. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 6. Replace the CF staple motor.
		CF staple sensor	Replace the CF staple unit.
		CF main PWB	Replace the CF main PWB.

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
8350	**CF side registration motor 1 error** When initial operation, CF side registration sensor 1 does not turn on within 1 s.	CF side registration motor 1	1. Execute U240 Booklet - Width Test to check the finisher operation (see page 1-3-116). 2. Manipulate the side registration lower guide back and forth to check it can smoothly operable. 3. Check that the drive from the motor reaches the side registration lower guide. 4. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. CF side registration motor 1 and CF main PWB (YC10) 5. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 6. Replace the CF side registration motor 1.
		CF side registration sensor 1	1. Execute U241 Booklet - Width Down HP to check the finisher switch (see page 1-3-118). 2. Check that the sensor and its mounting bracket are correctly positioned. 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. CF side registration sensor 1 and CF main PWB (YC20) 4. Replace the CF side registration sensor 1.
		CF main PWB	Replace the CF main PWB

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
8360	**CF main motor error** During driving the motor, the lock signal is detected for 1 s continuously.	CF main motor	1. Execute U240 Booklet - Folding to check the finisher operation (see page 1-3-116). 2. Manipulate the conveying roller to check it can smoothly rotate. 3. Check that the drive from the motor reaches the conveying roller. 4. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. CF main motor and CF main PWB (YC16) 5. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 6. Replace the CF main motor.
		CF main PWB	Replace the CF main PWB

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
8410	**Punch slide motor error 1** The punch slide sensor won't turn On when home position has been moved by 30 mm.	Punch slide motor	1. Execute U240 Booklet - Punch Move to check the finisher operation (see page 1-3-116). 2. Manipulate the punch slide part of the punch unit back and forth to check it can smoothly move. 3. Check that the drive from the motor reaches punch part. 4. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Punch slide motor and Punch PWB (YC3) 5. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 6. Replace the punch slide motor.
		Punch slide sensor	1. Execute U241 Punch - Punch HP to check the finisher switch (see page 1-3-118). 2. Check that the sensor and its mounting bracket are correctly positioned. 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Punch slide sensor and Punch PWB (YC6) 4. Replace the punch slide sensor.
		Punch PWB	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Punch PWB (YC1) and DF main PWB (YC7) 2. Replace the punch PWB.
		DF main PWB	Replace the DF main PWB

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
8420	**Punch slide motor error 2** In detection of paper edges, the paper edge cannot be detected in 30 mm move.	Punch slide motor	1. Execute U240 Booklet - Punch Move to check the finisher operation (see page 1-3-116). 2. Manipulate the punch slide part of the punch unit back and forth to check it can smoothly move. 3. Check that the drive from the motor reaches punch part. 4. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Punch slide motor and Punch PWB (YC3) 5. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 6. Replace the punch slide motor.
		Punch paper edge sensor 1,2	1. Execute U241 Punch - Edge Face 1,2,3,4 to check the finisher switch (see page 1-3-118). 2. Check that the sensor and its mounting bracket are correctly positioned. 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Punch paper edge sensor 1,2 and Punch PWB (YC5,YC7) 4. Replace the punch paper edge sensor 1,2.
		Punch PWB	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Punch PWB (YC1) and DF main PWB (YC7) 2. Replace the Punch PWB.
		DF main PWB	Replace the DF main PWB

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
8430	**Punch unit communication error** Communication with the punch unit is not possible.	Punch PWB	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Punch PWB (YC1) and DF main PWB (YC7) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. Replace the Punch PWB.
		DF main PWB	Replace the DF main PWB
8500	**Mailbox communication error** Communication failed to be established after the mailbox was hooked up.	MB main PWB	1. Turn the main power switch off and after 5 seconds, turn it on. 2. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. MB main PWB (YC3) and DF main PWB (YC6) 3. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 4. Replace the MB main PWB
		DF main PWB	Replace the DF main PWB
8510	**MB conveying motor error 1** When initial operation, MB home position sensor does not turn on within 5 s.	MB conveying motor	1. If the transfer roller won't rotate smoothly, repair its mechanism. 2. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. MB conveying motor and MB main PWB (YC5) 3. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 4. Replace the MB conveying motor.
		MB home position sensor	1. Execute U241 Mail Box - Motor HP to check the finisher switch (see page 1-3-118). 2. Check that the sensor and its mounting bracket are correctly positioned. 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. MB home position sensor and MB main PWB (YC2) 4. Replace the MB home position sensor.
		MB main PWB	Replace the MB main PWB

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
8520	**MB conveying motor error 2** When standby operation, MB home position sensor does not turn off within 1 s.	MB conveying motor	1. Execute Mail Box - Conv of U240 finisher operation check (see page 1-3-116). 2. Manipulate the conveying roller of the mailbox to check it can smoothly rotate. 3. Check that the drive from the motor reaches the conveying roller. 4. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. MB conveying motor and MB main PWB (YC5) 5. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 6. Replace the MB conveying motor.
		MB home position sensor	1. Execute U241 Mail Box - Motor HP to check the finisher switch (see page 1-3-118). 2. Check that the sensor and its mounting bracket are correctly positioned. 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. MB home position sensor and MB main PWB (YC2) 4. Replace the MB home position sensor.
		MB main PWB	Replace the MB main PWB
8800	**Document finisher main program error** Document finisher main program error at power up.	DF main PWB	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF main PWB (YC4) and Engine PWB (YC18) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. Replace the DF main PWB
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
8900	**Document finisher backup error** Read and write data does not match 3 times in succession.	DF main PWB	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DF main PWB (YC4) and Engine PWB (YC18) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. Replace the DF main PWB
8930	**Center-folding unit backup error** Read and write data does not match 3 times in succession.	CF main PWB	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. CF main PWB (YC7) and DF main PWB (YC9) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. Install the EEPROM properly. 4. Replace the CF main PWB
9000	**Document processor communication error** Communication with the document processor is not possible.	DP main PWB	1. Check that the versions of the main unit firmware and the DP firmware are identical. 2. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DP main PWB(YC1) and ISC PWB(YC12) ISC PWB (YC3) and Main PWB (YC11) 3. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 4. Replace the DP main PWB
		ISC PWB	Replace the ISC PWB.
9010	**Coin vender communication error** A communication error from coin vender is detected 10 times in succession.	U206 setting	Set maintenance mode U206 to off when a coin vender is not installed (see page 1-3-106).
		Coin vender control PWB	1. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. Coin vender control PWB and Engine PWB (YC23) 2. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 3. Replace the Coin vender control PWB.
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
9040	**DP lift motor going up error** When the DP lift motor is driven, DP lift sensor 1 does not turn on within 1500 pulse. (Three recovery times.) The above has been detected 5 times. * : The number of detection should be weighted with one for the rise at job start and two for the irregular rise during transporting. The accumulated number must be cleared at completion of a normal rise. The default threshold is 5.	DP lift motor	1. Execute U906 Separating Operation Release (see page 1-3-191). 2. Execute U243 Lift Motor to check the DP motor operation (see page 1-3-121). 3. Check that the original document lift guide can move upwards. 4. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DP lift motor and DP main PWB (YC5) 5. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 6. Replace the DP lift motor.
		DP lift sensor 1	1. Execute U244 Lift L-Limit to check DP switch (see page 1-3-122). 2. Check that the sensor and its mounting bracket are correctly positioned. 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DP lift sensor 1 and DP main PWB (YC4) 4. Replace the DP lift sensor 1.
		DP main PWB	Replace the DP main PWB

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
9050	**DP lift motor going down error** When the DP lift motor is driven, DP lift sensor 2 does not turn on within 1500 pulse. (Three recovery times.) The above has been detected 1 times.	DP lift motor	1. Execute U906 Separating Operation Release (see page 1-3-191). 2. Execute U243 Lift Motor to check the DP motor operation (see page 1-3-121). 3. Check that the original document lift guide can move downwards. 4. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DP lift motor and DP main PWB (YC5) If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 5. Replace the DP lift motor.
		DP lift sensor 2	1. Execute U244 Lift L-Limit to check DP switch (see page 1-3-122). 2. Confirm that the DP lift sensor 2 has been firmly fitted. 3. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DP lift sensor 2 and DP main PWB (YC2) 4. Replace the DP lift sensor2.
		DP main PWB	Replace the DP main PWB
9060	**DP EEPROM error** Mismatch of reading data from two locations occurs 3 times successively. Mismatch between writing data and reading data occurs 3 times successively.	DP main PWB	1. Execute U906 Separating Operation Release (see page 1-3-191). 2. Confirm that the EEPROM has been properly installed. 3. Replace the DP main PWB
		Device damage of EEPROM	Contact the Service Support.
9070	**Communication error between DP and SHD** A communication error is detected.	DP SHD PWB	1. Execute U906 Separating Operation Release (see page 1-3-191). 2. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. DP SHD PWB (YC1) and DP main PWB (YC10) 3. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 4. Replace the DP SHD PWB.

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
9080	**LED fault detection** A block is existent below a peak which was obtained by activating the LEDs in the four CIS blocks at power on, which is less than 80hex.	DP CIS	1. Execute CIS automatic original document alignment by U411 (see page 1-3-152). 2. Confirm that the wiring connector is firmly connected and, if necessary, connect the connector all the way in. CIS and DP SHD PWB (YC2) DP SHD PWB (YC1) and DP main PWB (YC10) 3. If the wiring is disconnected, shorted or grounded, replace the wiring. 4. Replace the CIS and execute U411.
		DP SHD PWB	Replace the DP SHD PWB.
9100	**Coin vender control PWB error** Communication error has been detected at the coin mec of the coin vender control PWB.	Coin vender control PWB	Replace the coin mec.
9110	**Coin vender rejector error** Communication error has been detected in connection with the coin mec and the rejector.	Rejector	1. Check that the rejector is firmly installed and, if not, install firmly. 2. Replace the rejector.
9120	**Sensor error in coin vender change (Yen 10)** Change is empty despite change is enough.	Coin jam in the change tube	Check visually and remedy.
		Contact in the connector	Check the connection of the empty change sensor.
		Change empty sensor	Replace the coin mec.
		Coin vender control PWB	Replace the coin mec.
9130	**Sensor error in coin vender change (Yen 50)** Change is empty despite change is enough.	Coin jam in the change tube	Check visually and remedy.
		Contact in the connector	Check the connection of the empty change sensor.
		Change empty sensor	Replace the coin mec.
		Coin vender control PWB	Replace the coin mec.

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
9140	**Sensor error in coin vender change (Yen 100)** Change is empty despite change is enough.	Coin jam in the change tube	Check visually and remedy.
		Contact in the connector	Check the connection of the empty change sensor.
		Change empty sensor	Replace the coin mec.
		Coin vender control PWB	Replace the coin mec.
9150	**Sensor error in coin vender change (Yen 500)** Change is empty despite change is enough.	Change tube	Check no exchange jam is observed at the outlet and, if necessary, repair it.
		Contact in the connector	Check the connection of the empty change sensor.
		Change empty sensor	Replace the coin mec.
		Coin vender control PWB	Replace the coin mec.
9160	**Coin vender pay-out error** Coin is paid out despite the pay-out motor is determined not active.	Pay-out motor	Replace the coin mec.
9170	**Coin vender pay-out sensor error** Coin is paid out despite the pay-out motor is determined not active.	Pay-out area	Check no exchange jam is observed at the outlet and, if necessary, repair it.
		Pay-out motor	Replace the coin mec.
		Pay-out sensor	Replace the coin mec.

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
9500	**ISC PWB error A**	Main PWB ISC PWB	1. Reinsert the connector if its connection is loose. Main PWB (YC25) and ISC PWB (YC4) 2. Replace the main PWB (see page 1-5-74). 3. Replace the ISC PWB 4. Contact the Service Support.
9510	**ISC PWB error B**	Main PWB DP SHD PWB	1. Reinsert the connector if its connection is loose. DP relay PWB (YC2) and DP SHD PWB (YC3) 2. Replace the main PWB (see page 1-5-74). 3. Replace the DP SHD PWB. 4. Contact the Service Support.
9520	**ISC PWB error C**	Main PWB ISC PWB	1. Reinsert the connector if its connection is loose. Main PWB (YC25) and ISC PWB (YC4) 2. Replace the main PWB (see page 1-5-74). 3. Replace the ISC main PWB 4. Contact the Service Support.
9940	**Confidential document guard uninstalled error** The confidential document guard PWB is removed while the confidential document guard PWB is valid.	Confidential document guard PWB	1. Check that the confidential document guard PWB is firmly installed and, if not, install firmly. 2. Replace the confidential document guard PW.
9950	**ISC PWB error C** FPGA configuration error CPU version information error This is caused when the PWB of a double-side scanning DP is connected, the confidential guard PWB is inserted, and the harness is not correctly connected	Confidential document guard PWB	1. Replace the confidential document guard PW. 2. Replace the main PWB (see page 1-5-74).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
F000	**Communication error between Main PWB and Operation PWB**	Main PWB	1. Turn the main power swtch off and after 5 seconds, then turn power on. 2. Check that the wirings and connetors between the main PWB and the operation PWB and between the main PWB and the HDD are normal. Main PWB (YC12,YC17,YC30) and Operation PWB (YC1,YC2,YC3) 3. Check that the DDR memories in the main PWB are well conducted and, if not, replace. 4. Execute U024 to initialize (FULL) the HDD (see page 1-3-29). 5. Execute U021initialize memory. (see page 1-3-28) 6. Replace the Main PWB. 7. Copy the log File saved in the HDD by U964 in USB memory and contact the service support (see page 1-3-202).
		Operation PWB	Replace the operation PWB (see page 1-5-91).
F010	**Main PWB checksum error**	Main PWB	1. Turn the main power swtch off and after 5 seconds, then turn power on. 2. If not corrected, replace the main PWB (see page 1-5-74).
F020 **F021** **F022** **F023**	**System memory error** Error occurs at start-up read/ write check of DIMM	Main PWB	1. Turn the main power swtch off and after 5 seconds, then turn power on. 2. If not corrected, replace the main PWB (see page 1-5-74).

Code	Contents	Related parts	Check procedures/ corrective measures
F040	**Communication error between Main PWB and Print engine**	Main PWB	1. Turn the main power swtch off and after 5 seconds, then turn power on. 2. Repair or replace the wire from the engine PWB, that may be grounded. (Check short-circuit between 5V and 3.3V.) 3. Check that the FFC wire connecting between the Main PWB (YC3) and the engine PWB (YC46) is normal and, if necessary, re-insert.Or, replace the FFC wire. 4. If not corrected, replace the main PWB (see page 1-5-74).
		Engine PWB	1. Check the engine software and upgrade to the latest, if necessary. 2. Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).
		HDD	Replace the HDD (see page 1-5-136).
F041	**Communication error between Main PWB and Scanner engine**	Main PWB	1. Turn the main power swtch off and after 5 seconds, then turn power on. 2. Check that the wires between the main PWB and the ISC PWB are normal. 3. If not corrected, replace the main PWB (see page 1-5-74).
		ISC PWB	Replace the ISC PWB.
F050	**Print engine ROM check-sum error**	Engine software	Install the latest engine software.
		Engine PWB	1. Turn the main power swtch off and after 5 seconds, then turn power on. 2. Confirm that the EEPROM has been properly installed. 3. If not corrected, Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-83).
F051	**Scanner engine ROM checksum error**	Scanner software	Install the latest scanner software.
		ISC PWB	1. Turn the main power swtch off and after 5 seconds, then turn power on. 2. Confirm that the EEPROM has been properly installed. 3. If not corrected, Replace the ISC PWB.
F278	**Power supply in drive sys-tem error**	The main power switch was turned off before the power switch is pressed. Shutdown due to a power failure	Turn the main power swtch off and after 5 seconds, then turn power on. (Before turning power off, verify that the power key has been pressed and the power indicator has gone off, then switch the main power switch.)

(3) System Error (Fxxxx) Outline

The document is subscribed to describe the outline of the factors of the Fxxx errors that are not described in the
service manual. Please utilize it to refer to checking the factors.
Please utilize it as the measures when the system is not recovered after power off/on
or it frequently occurs.
It may be from the hardware factor while the error (Fxxx) is indicated.
Please initially check the following.

Check the DDR2 memory and neighboring parts:
Check the contact of YS1 or YS2 with the memory. Replace the memory if the error repeats.
Check the HDD if the error repeats after replacing the main board.
Take care, however, of handling the data when formatting or replacing the HDD.
Check the HDD: Replace the HDD if the error repeats after formatting the HDD.

No.	Content	Check procedure & check point	Team	Remark 1	Remark 2
-	Lock-up at Welcome display (The display unchages after 60 seconds or more)	1) Check connection of the harness (Panel to Main board), (Main board to HDD) and connectors and check function. 2) Check contact of the DDR memory by detaching and reattaching. and check function. replace it if available and check function. 3) Format the HDD and check function. (U024 FULL formatting) 4) Execute the U021Memory initializing to initialize the controller backup memory and check function. 5) Replace the panel board and check function. 6) Replace the main board and check function. 7) Retrieve the USBLOG and contact the Service Administrative Division.	PSO/GUI	*User data and installed software is deleted if executing the U024. Reinstallation is required.	
F000	CF000 appears in 60 seconds after the Welcome display continues Panel−Main board communication error Panel core−Main core communication error	1) Check connection of the harness (Panel to Main board), (Main board to HDD) and connectors and check function. 2) Check contact of the DDR memory by detaching and reattaching. and check function. replace it if available and check function. 3) Format the HDD and check function. (U024 FULL formatting) 4) Execute the U021 Memory initializing to initialize the controller backup memory and check function. 5) Replace the main board and check function. 6) Replace the Panel board and check function. 7) Retrieve the USBLOG and contact the Service Administrative Division.	PSO/GUI/OS/BMC		[Main-Panel Interface] Main board:YC12 Panel board:YC10
F12X	An error is detected at the Scan control section	1) Check connection of the harness (Scan/DP - Main board) and connectors and check function. 2) Format the HDD and check function. (U024 FULL formatting) 3) Execute the U021 Memory initializing to initialize the controller backup memory and check function. 4) Replace the Scan/DP board and check function. 5) Replace the main board and check function. 6) Retrieve the USBLOG and contact the Service Administrative Division.	Scanner/InputRIP		[Main-Scan Interface] Main board: YC11,YC25 ISC board: YC3,YC4 [Main-DP relay Interface] (Check if the boards are firmly connected via the board-to-board connector.) Main board:YC10 DP relay board:YC22
F13X	An error is detected at the Panel control section	1) Check connection of the harness (Panel - Main board) and connectors and check function. 2) Format the HDD and check function. (U024 FULL formatting) 3) Execute the U021 Memory initializing to initialize the controller backup memory and check function. 4) Replace the panel board and check function. 5) Replace the main board and check function. 6) Retrieve the USBLOG and contact the Service Administrative Division.	PSO/GUI		[Main-Panel Interface] Main board:YC6,YC12 Panel board:YC10,YC17
F14X	An error is detected at the FAX control section	1) Check connection of the harness (FAX - Main board) and connectors and check function. 2) Format the HDD and check function. (U024 FULL formatting) 3) Execute the U021 Memory initializing to initialize the controller backup memory and check function. 4) Execute the U671 Clear FAX back up data (FAX DIMM clear) and check function. (Take cae of the received data since it is cleared) 5) Replace the FAX_DIMM and check function. 6) Replace the FAX board and check function. 7) Replace the main board and check function. 8) Retrieve the USBLOG and contact the Service Administrative Division.	Job/Fax/Service		[Main-KUIO Interface] Main board:YC8,YC9 KUIO board:YC3,YC4
F15X	An error is detected at the authentication device control section	1) Check connection of the harness (Authentication device - Main board) and connectors and check function. 2) Format the HDD and check function. (U024 FULL formatting) 3) Execute the U021 Memory initializing to initialize the controller backup memory and check function. 4) Replace the main board and check function. 5) Replace the HDD and check function. 6) Retrieve the USBLOG and contact the Service Administrative Division.	SSM/PRCM/RPG/DCM/ESM/Entity	Authentication device: Card Reader, etc.	[Main Interface] Main board: YC21,YC22,YC26
F17X	An error is detected at the print data control section	1) Format the HDD and check function. (U024 FULL formatting) 2) Execute the U021 Memory initializing to initialize the controller backup memory and check function. 3) Replace the main board and check function. 4) Replace the HDD and check function. 5) Retrieve the USBLOG and contact the Service Administrative Division.	OS/BMC		-
F18X	An error is detected at the Video control secion	1) Check connection of the harness (Engine - Main board) and connectors and check function. 2) Format the HDD and check function. (U024 FULL formatting) 3) Execute the U021 Memory initializing to initialize the controller backup memory and check function. 4) Replace the engine board and check function. 5) Replace the main board and check function. 6) Retrieve the USBLOG and contact the Service Administrative Division.	PrintSys/GICL		[Main⇔ENGINE Interface] Main board:YC43 Engine board:YC46 or YC50
F1CX	An error is detected at the File System management section	1) Format the HDD and check function. (U024 FULL formatting) 2) Execute the U021 Memory initializing to initialize the controller backup memory and check function. 3) Replace the main board and check function. 4) Replace the HDD and check function. 5) Retrieve the USBLOG and contact the Service Administrative Division.	OS/BMC	*The F1C4 error appears with the HDD security kit at work.	-
F1DX	An error is detected at the Image memory management section	1) Format the HDD and check function. (U024 FULL formatting) 2) Execute the U021 Memory initializing to initialize the controller backup memory and check function. 3) Replace the main board and check function. 4) Replace the HDD and check function. 5) Retrieve the USBLOG and contact the Service Administrative Division.	OS/BMC	*The F1D4 error is RAM allocation error. 1Check it with the U340 2Initialize the setting valued with the U021	-

No.	Content	Check procedure & check point	Team	Remark 1	Remark 2
F21X F22X F23X	An error is detected at the Image processing section	1) Check contact of the DDR memory and check function. 2) Format the HDD and check function. (U024 FULL formatting) 3) Execute the U021 Memory initializing to initialize the controller backup memory and check function. 4) Replace the main board and check function. 5) Replace the HDD and check function. 6) Retrieve the USBLOG and contact the Service Administrative Division.	PrintSys/GICL		[DDR2 memory contact check] Main board:YS1 or YS3 A certain part of the memory be faulty. The frequency of faiure occurrence is dependent on the frequency of access to the faulty bit. The ASIC may be faulty if the memory is not sensitive.
F24X	An error is detected at the System management section	1) Check contact of the DDR memory and check function. 2) Format the HDD and check function. (U024 FULL formatting) 3) Execute the U021 Memory initializing to initialize the controller backup memory and check function. 4) Replace the main board and check function. 5) Replace the HDD and check function. 6) Retrieve the USBLOG and contact the Service Administrative Division.	SSM/PRCM/RPG/DCM/ESM/Entity	*The F248 eror is printer process error. if it repeats with a certain print data, retrieve the capture data and USBLOG.	[DDR2 memory contact check] Main board:YS1 or YS3 A certain part of the memory be faulty. The frequency of failure occurrence is dependent on the frequency of access to the faulty bit. The ASIC may be faulty if the memory is not sensitive.
F25X	An error is detected at the Network management section	1) Format the HDD and check function. (U024 FULL formatting) 2) Execute the U021 Memory initializing to initialize the controller backup memory and check function. 3) Replace the main board and check function. 4) Retrieve the USBLOG and contact the Service Administratuve Division. (or retrieve the packet capture data depending on the reult of analysis)	Network	*This may be owing to the users network environment.	-
F26X F27X F28X F29X F2AX	An error is detected at the System management section	1) Format the HDD and check function. (U024 FULL formatting) 2) Execute the U021 Memory initializing to initialize the controller backup memory and check function. 3) Replace the main board and check function. 4) Replace the HDD and check function. 5) Retrieve the USBLOG and contact the Service Administrative Division.	SSM/PRCM/RPG/DCM/ESM/Entity/KSF		-
F33X	An error is detected at the Scan management section	1) Check connection of the harness (Scan/DP board - main board) and connectors and check function. 2) Format the HDD and check function. (U024 FULL formatting) 3) Execute the U021 Memory initializing to initialize the controller backup memory and check function. 4) Replace the Scan/DP board and check function. 5) Replace the main board and check function. 6) Retrieve the USBLOG and contact the Service Administrative Division.	Scanner/InputRIP		Main board: YC11,YC25 ISC board: YC3,YC4 [Main-DP relay Interface] (Check if the boards are firmly connected via the board-to-board connector.) Main board:YC10 DP relay board:YC22
F34X	An error is detected at the Panel management section	1) Format the HDD and check function. (U024 FULL formatting) 2) Execute the U021 Memory initializing to initialize the controller backup memory and check function. 3) Replace the main board and check function. 4) Retrieve the USBLOG and contact the Service Administrative Division.	PSO/GUI		[Main-Panel Interface] Main board:YC6,YC12 Panel board:YC10,YC17
F35X	An error is detected at the Print control section	1) Format the HDD and check function. (U024 FULL formatting) 2) Execute the U021 Memory initializing to initialize the controller backup memory and check function. 3) Replace the main board and check function. 4) Replace the HDD and check function. 5) Retrieve the USBLOG and contact the Service Administrative Division.	PrintSys/GICL		-
F36X	An error is detected at the Print management section	1) Format the HDD and check function. (U024 FULL formatting) 2) Execute the U021 Memory initializing to initialize the controller backup memory and check function. 3) Replace the main board and check function. 4) Replace the HDD and check function. 5) Retrieve the USBLOG and contact the Service Administrative Division.	OS/BMC		-
F37X	An error is detected at the FAX management section	1) Format the HDD and check function. (U024 FULL formatting) 2) Execute the U021 Memory initializing to initialize the controller backup memory and check function. 3) Execute the U671 Clear FAX back up data (FAX DIMM clear) and check function. (Take cae of the received data since it is cleared) 4) Replace the FAX_DIMM and check function. 5) Replace the main board and check function. 6) Replace the HDD and check function. 7) Retrieve the USBLOG and contact the Service Administrative Division.	Job/Fax/Service		[FAX DIMM contact check] Main board: YC5
F38X	An error is detected at the Authentication/permit management section	1) Format the HDD and check function. (U024 FULL formatting) 2) Execute the U021 Memory initializing to initialize the controller backup memory and check function. 3) Replace the main board and check function. 4) Replace the HDD and check function. 5) Retrieve the USBLOG and contact the Service Administrative Division.	SSM/PRCM/RPG/DCM/ESM/Entity		-
F3AX F3BX F3CX F3DX F3EX F3FX F40X F41X F42X F43X F44X F45X	An error is detected at the Entity management section	1) Format the HDD and check function. (U024 FULL formatting) 2) Execute the U021 Memory initializing to initialize the controller backup memory and check function. 3) Replace the main board and check function. 4) Replace the HDD and check function. 5) Retrieve the USBLOG and contact the Service Administrative Division.	SSM/PRCM/RPG/DCM/ESM/Entity		-

No.	Content	Check procedure & check point	Team	Remark 1	Remark 2
F46X	An error is detected at the Print image process section	1) Replace the main board and check function. 2) Retrieve the USBLOG (or retrieve the print capture data by case)	PrintRIP/ Color	*The F46F is printer process error. if it repeats with a certain print data, retrieve the capture data and USBLOG.	-
F47X F48X F49X	An error is detected at the Image edit process control section	1) Format the HDD and check function. (U024 FULL formatting) 2) Execute the U021 Memory initializing to initialize the controller backup memory and check function. 3) Replace the main board and check function. 4) Replace the HDD and check function. 5) Retrieve the USBLOG and contact the Service Administrative Division.	Job/Fax/ Service/InputRIP		-
F4AX F4CX	An error is detected at the Print image process section	1) Format the HDD and check function. (U024 FULL formatting) 2) Execute the U021 Memory initializing to initialize the controller backup memory and check function. 3) Replace the main board and check function. 4) Replace the HDD and check function. 5) Retrieve the USBLOG and contact the Service Administrative Division.	PrintSys/ GICL		-
F4DX F4EX	An error is detected at the Entity control section	1) Format the HDD and check function. (U024 FULL formatting) 2) Execute the U021 Memory initializing to initialize the controller backup memory and check function. 3) Replace the main board and check function. 4) Replace the HDD and check function. 5) Retrieve the USBLOG and contact the Service Administrative Division.	SSM/PRCM/RPG/DCM/ESM/ Entity		-
F4FX	An error is detected at the Job control section	1) Format the HDD and check function. (U024 FULL formatting) 2) Execute the U021 Memory initializing to initialize the controller backup memory and check function. 3) Replace the main board and check function. 4) Replace the HDD and check function. 5) Retrieve the USBLOG and contact the Service Administrative Division.	Job/Fax/ Service		-
F50X	An error is detected at the FAX control section	1) Format the HDD and check function. (U024 FULL formatting) 2) Execute the U021 Memory initializing to initialize the controller backup memory and check function. 3) Replace the main board and check function. 4) Replace the HDD and check function. 5) Retrieve the USBLOG and contact the Service Administrative Division.	Job/Fax/ Service		-
F51X F52X F53X F55X F56X F57X	An error is detected at the Job execution section	1) Format the HDD and check function. (U024 FULL formatting) 2) Execute the U021 Memory initializing to initialize the controller backup memory and check function. 3) Replace the main board and check function. 4) Replace the HDD and check function. 5) Retrieve the USBLOG and contact the Service Administrative Division.	Job/Fax/ Service		-
F58X F59X F5AX F5BX F5CX F5DX F5EX	An error is detected at the Service management section	1) Format the HDD and check function. (U024 FULL formatting) 2) Execute the U021 Memory initializing to initialize the controller backup memory and check function. 3) Replace the main board and check function. 4) Replace the HDD and check function. 5) Retrieve the USBLOG and contact the Service Administrative Division.	Job/Fax/ Service		-
F5FX	An error is detected at the Service execution section	1) Format the HDD and check function. (U024 FULL formatting) 2) Execute the U021 Memory initializing to initialize the controller backup memory and check function. 3) Replace the main board and check function. 4) Replace the HDD and check function. 5) Retrieve the USBLOG and contact the Service Administrative Division.	Job/Fax/ Service		-
F60X	An error is detected at the Maintenance mode management section	1) Format the HDD and check function. (U024 FULL formatting) 2) Execute the U021 Memory initializing to initialize the controller backup memory and check function. 3) Replace the main board and check function. 4) Replace the HDD and check function. 5) Retrieve the USBLOG and contact the Service Administrative Division.	SSM/PRCM/RPG/DCM/ESM/ Entity		-
F61X	An error is detected at the Report compiling section	1) Format the HDD and check function. (U024 FULL formatting) 2) Execute the U021 Memory initializing to initialize the controller backup memory and check function. 3) Replace the main board and check function. 4) Replace the HDD and check function. 5) Retrieve the USBLOG and contact the Service Administrative Division.	SSM/PRCM/RPG/DCM/ESM/ Entity		-
F62X	An error is detected at the Service execution section	1) Format the HDD and check function. (U024 FULL formatting) 2) Execute the U021 Memory initializing to initialize the controller backup memory and check function. 3) Replace the main board and check function. 4) Replace the HDD and check function. 5) Retrieve the USBLOG and contact the Service Administrative Division.	Job/Fax/ Service		-
F63X	An error is detected at the Device control section	1) Format the HDD and check function. (U024 FULL formatting) 2) Execute the U021 Memory initializing to initialize the controller backup memory and check function. 3) Replace the main board and check function. 4) Replace the HDD and check function. 5) Retrieve the USBLOG and contact the Service Administrative Division.	OS/BMC		-

No.	Content	Check procedure & check point	Team	Remark 1	Remark 2
F64X F65X F66X F67X	An error is detected at the Print image process section	1) Format the HDD and check function. (U024 FULL formatting) 2) Execute the U021 Memory initializing to initialize the controller backup memory and check function. 3) Replace the main board and check function. 4) Replace the HDD and check function. 5) Retrieve the USBLOG and contact the Service Administrative Division.	PrintRIP/ Color		-
F68X	An error is detected at the Storage device control section	1) Format the HDD and check function. (U024 FULL formatting) 2) Execute the U021 Memory initializing to initialize the controller backup memory and check function. 3) Replace the main board and check function. 4) Replace the HDD and check function. 5) Retrieve the USBLOG and contact the Service Administrative Division.	OS/BMC	*F684 is Overwrite error with the HDD security kit	Please replace the FAX DIMM at the time of F684 occurrence when the Fax system is installed. Because FAX DIMM is an object of the data overwrite removal.
F69X F6AX F6BX F6CX	An error is detected at the HyPAS control section	1) Format the HDD and check function. (U024 FULL formatting) 2) Execute the U021 Memory initializing to initialize the controller backup memory and check function. 3) Replace the main board and check function. 4) Replace the HDD and check function. 5) Retrieve the USBLOG and contact the Service Administrative Division.	Driver/Util ity/KSF		
F6DX F6EX F6FX F70X F71X F72X F73X F74X F75X	An error is detected at the External Server management section	1) Check the external server and check function. 2) Chekc the connection to the external server and check function. 3) Check the network settings and check function. 4) Replace the bridge board and check function. 5) Replace the main board and check function. 6) Retrieve the USBLOG and contact the Service Administrative Division.	ConcordF W	*FieryOption related	[Main-FIERYBB Interface] Main board: YC33 FIERYBB board: YC2

1-4-4 Image formation problems

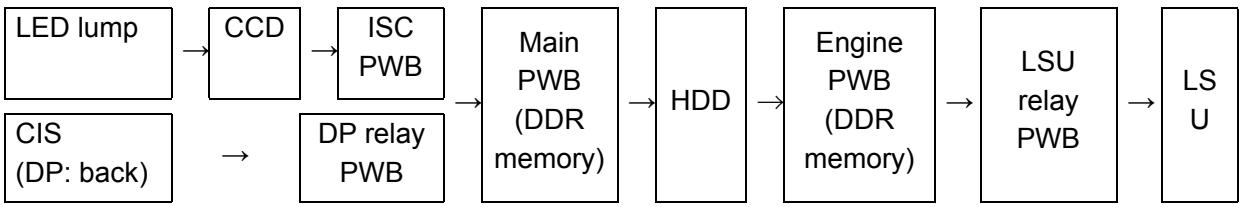
Isolate the component an image defect has occurred from.
<A guide to isolate the component of the cause.>
Run U089 to print a test page and check whether an image defect happens.
YES: Main unit as the cause of defect
NO: Scanner as the cause of defect
Perform enlarged or reduced copying and verify if the defective images are enlarged or reduced, accordingly.
YES: Scanner as the cause of defect

1. Scanner as the cause of defect:
If the defect occurs with copying or sending, refer to P.1-4-161.
(Defects caused by a reading error that occurs at the original (glass) LED lamp to CCD (DP: CIS).)

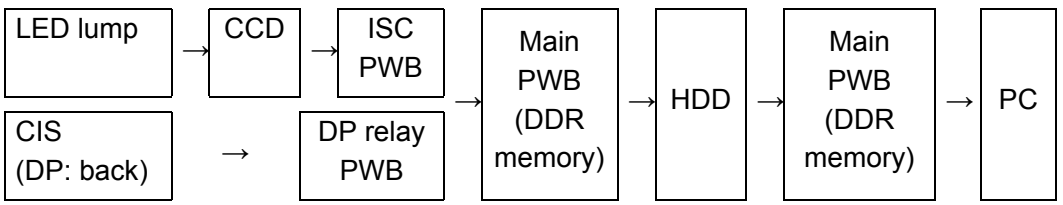
Isolate the problem at the location that the originals are scanned.
a. Single side DP (read by Main CCD)
b. On the contact glass (read by Main CCD)
c. Back side DP (For DP mounted with CIS)

2. Main unit as the cause of defect: refer to P. 1-4-161.
(A defect of image forming occurs from the rendering process that involves charging, drum, LSU, developer, and primary transferring.)

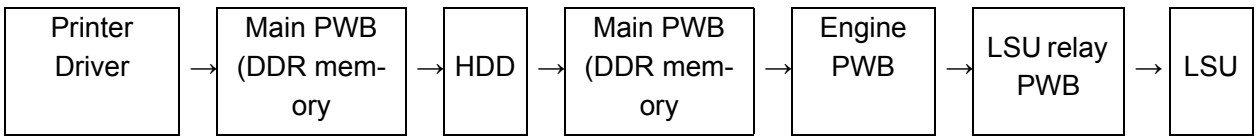
<Flow of image data>
Copying :



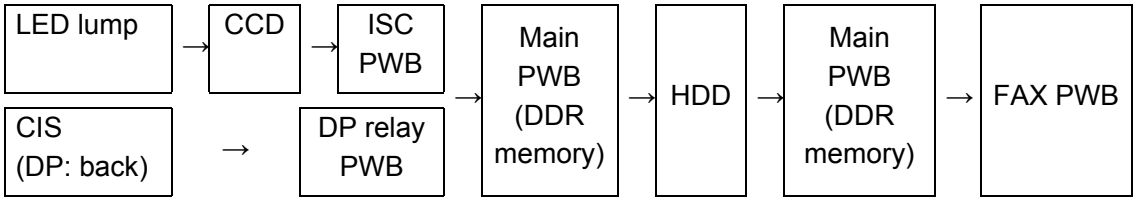
Sending :



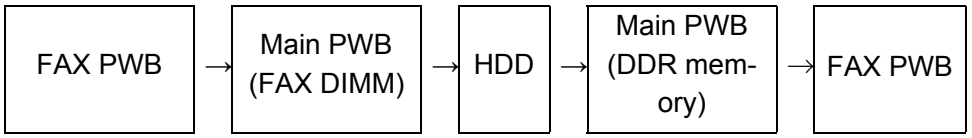
Printing data from PC :



FAX (send) :

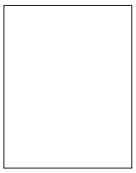


FAX receive :



1-4-5 Poor image (due to DP and scanner reading)

(1) No image appears (entirely white).

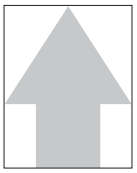


See page1-4-162

(2) No image appears (entirely black).

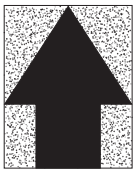
See page1-4-165

(3) Image is too light.



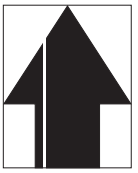
See page1-4-167

(4) The background is colored.



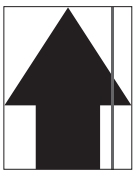
See page1-4-170

(5) White streaks are printed vertically.



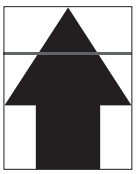
See page1-4-173

(6) Black streaks appear longitudinally.



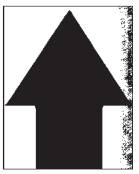
See page1-4-175

(7) Streaks are printed horizontally.



See page1-4-178

(8) One side of the print image is darker or brighter than the other.

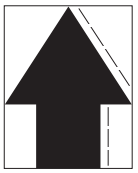


See page1-4-181

(9) Black dots appear on the image.

See page1-4-184

(10) Image is blurred.



See page1-4-186

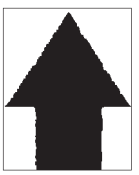
(11) The leading edge of the image is consistently misaligned with the original.

See page1-4-188

(12) Part of image is missing.

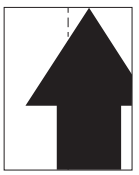
See page1-4-190

(13) Image is out of focus.



See page1-4-193

(14) Image center does not align with the original center.

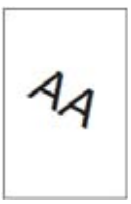


See page1-4-195

(15) Moires

See page1-4-196

(16) Skewed image

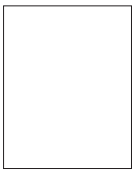


See page1-4-198

(17) Abnormal image

See page1-4-200

(1) No image appears (entirely white).

Print example


1. Table scanning

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Contact glass assy	Check the location the contact glass is mounted.	Re-mount the contact glass if it is hanged off.
2	FFC cable CCD	Check the FFC cable between the CCD sensor and ISC PWB is properly connected. Or, verify conduction of the wire.	Reinsert the connector if it its connection is loose. Or, if conduction is lot, replace the wire.
3	Home position sensor	Check the location the home position sensor is mounted.	Re-mount the home position sensor if it is hanged off.
4	Scanner wire drum	Check that the scanner drive gear is loosely mounted.	If the scanner wire drum is loosely mounted, secure the screws.
5	Scanner drive gear	Check that the scanner drive gear is loosely mounted.	If the scanner drive gear loosely mounted, secure the screw.
6	CCD PWB	The CCD PWB is defective.	Replace the ISU and perform U411. (see page 1-3-152)
7	ISC PWB	The ISC PWB is defective.	Replace the ISC PWB and perform U411. (see page 1-3-152)
8	Main PWB	The main PWB is defective.	Replace the main PWB.(see page 1-5-74)

2. DP-scanning first (front) page

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Original document	Verify the sides of the original document.	If the sides of the original document are reversed, place the original document properly.
2	Contact glass assy	Check the location the contact glass is mounted.	Re-mount the contact glass if it is hanged off.
3	FFC cable CCD	Check the FFC cable between the CCD sensor and ISC PWB is properly connected. Or, verify conduction of the wire.	Reinsert the connector if its connection is loose. Or, if conduction is lot, replace the wire.
4	Home position sensor	Check the location the home position sensor is mounted.	Re-mount the home position sensor if it is hanged off.
5	Scanner wire drum	Check that the scanner wire drum is loosely mounted.	If the scanner wire drum is loosely mounted, secure the screws.
6	Scanner drive gear	Check that the scanner drive gear is loosely mounted.	If the scanner drive gear loosely mounted, secure the screw.
7	CCD PWB	The CCD PWB is defective.	Replace the ISU and perform U411. (see page 1-3-152)
8	ISC PWB	The ISC PWB is defective.	Replace the ISC PWB and perform U411. (see page 1-3-152)
9	Main PWB	The main PWB is defective.	Replace the main PWB.(see page 1-5-74)

3. DP-scanning second (back) page

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Original document	Verify the sides of the original document.	If the sides of the original document are reversed, place the original document properly.
2	White-reference roller (Counter the CIS)	Check that the white-reference roller is smoothly operative.	If the white-reference roller does not rotate smoothly, re-install.
3	White-reference roller (Counter the CIS)	Check if the white reference roller is contaminated on its surface or damaged.	If the white-reference roller is dirty, clean. Or, if the roller is damaged, replace.
4	DP_CIS unit	Check the location the CIS unit is mounted.	Re-mount the CIS unit if it is hanged off.
5	DP_SHD PWB	Check the CIS and the SHD PWB is properly connected.	Reinsert the connector if the PWB was loosely inserted.If not cured, replace the PWB.
6	DP_CIS	CIS is defective.	Replace the CIS and perform U091 and U411. (see page 1-3-65,1-3-152)
7	Main PWB	The main PWB is defective.	Replace the main PWB.(see page 1-5-74)

(2) No image appears (entirely black).

Print example


1. Table scanning

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	FFC cable CCD	Check the FFC cable between the CCD sensor and ISC PWB is properly connected. Or, verify conduction of the wire.	Reinsert the connector if its connection is loose. Or, if conduction is lot, replace the wire.
2	SATA cable ISC	Check the SATA cable between the ISC PWB and main PWB is properly connected. Or, verify conduction of the wire.	Reinsert the connector if its connection is loose. Or, if conduction is lot, replace the wire.
3	CCD PWB	The CCD PWB is defective.	Replace the ISU and perform U411. (see page 1-3-152)
4	ISC PWB	The ISC PWB is defective.	Replace the ISC PWB and perform U411. (see page 1-3-152)
5	Main PWB	The main PWB is defective.	Replace the main PWB.(see page 1-5-74)

2. DP-scanning first (front) page

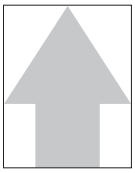
	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Scanning position of the DP	Confirm the value using maintenance mode U068, DP Read.	If a large value is observed in maintenance mode U068, DP Read, perform adjustment.(see page 1-3-55)
2	FFC cable CCD	Check the FFC cable between the CCD sensor and ISC PWB is properly connected. Or, verify conduction of the wire.	Reinsert the connector if its connection is loose. Or, if conduction is lot, replace the wire.
3	SATA cable ISC	Check the SATA cable between the ISC PWB and main PWB is properly connected. Or, verify conduction of the wire.	Reinsert the connector if its connection is loose. Or, if conduction is lot, replace the wire.
4	CCD PWB	The CCD PWB is defective.	Replace the ISU and perform U411. (see page 1-3-152)
5	ISC PWB	The ISC PWB is defective.	replace the ISC PWB and perform U411. (see page 1-3-152)

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
6	Main PWB	The main PWB is defective.	Replace the main PWB.(see page 1-5-74)

3. DP-scanning second (back) page

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	DP_CIS unit	Check the location the CIS unit is mounted.	Re-mount the CIS unit if it is hanged off.
2	DP_SHD PWB	Check the CIS and the SHD PWB is properly connected.	Reinsert the connector if the PWB was loosely inserted.If not cured, replace the PWB.
3	DP_CIS	CIS is defective.	Replace the CIS and perform U091 and U411. (see page 1-3-65,1-3-152)
4	Main PWB	The main PWB is defective.	Replace the main PWB.(see page 1-5-74)

(3) Image is too light.

Print example


1. Table scanning

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	The settings of the adjustment of density	Check the settings of the adjustment of density.	1. Deactivate EcoPrint if it is activated. Or, if the density is too low, chosse an image quality that suits the original docuemt in type. 2. Increase density. 3. Perform the background color adjustment using the system menu.
2	Settings of anti-offset	Check the settings of anti-offset.	If anti-offset is set to on, set it to off.
3	Adjustment of the scanner	Check the automatic adjustment of the scanner.	Perform maintenance mode U411, table(Chart1)_All. (see page 1-3-152)
4	Contact glass	Check whether the contact glass is dirty.	If the contact glass is dirty, clean the contact glass, and the bottom part of the shading plate.
5	Home position sensor	Check the location the home position sensor is mounted.	Re-mount the home position sensor if it is hanged off.
6	FFC cable CCD	Check the FFC cable between the CCD sensor and ISC PWB is properly connected. Or, verify conduction of the wire.	Reinsert the connector if its connection is loose. Or, if conduction is lot, replace the wire.
7	FFC cable LED	Check the FFC cable between the LED PWB and ISC PWB is properly connected. Or, verify conduction of the wire.	Reinsert the connector if its connection is loose. Or, if conduction is lot, replace the wire.
8	Lamp unit	Check the location the lamp unit is mounted.	Re-mount the lamp unit if it is hanged off.
9	LED PWB	Check that the LED is lit.	If the LED is not lit, replace the LED PWB and perform U411.
10	ISC PWB	The ISC PWB is defective.	Replace the ISC PWB and perform U411. (see page 1-3-152)
11	CCD PWB	The CCD PWB is defective.	Replace the ISU and perform U411. (see page 1-3-152)

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
12	Main PWB	The main PWB is defective.	Replace the main PWB.(see page 1-5-74)

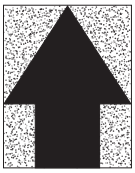
2. DP-scanning first (front) page

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	The settings of the adjustment of density	Check the settings of the adjustment of density.	1. Deactivate EcoPrint if it is activated. Or, if the density is too low, chosse an image quality that suits the original docuemt in type. 2. Increase density. 3. Perform the background color adjustment using the system menu.
2	Settings of anti-offset	Check the settings of anti-offset.	If anti-offset is set to on, set it to off.
3	Adjustment of the scanner	Check the automatic adjustment of the scanner.	Perform maintenance mode U411, DP FaceUp(Chart1)_Input(see page 1-3-152)
4	Contact glass	Check whether the contact glass is dirty.	If the contact glass is dirty, clean the contact glass, and the bottom part of the shading plate.
5	Home position sensor	Check the location the home position sensor is mounted.	Re-mount the home position sensor if it is hanged off.
6	Scanning position of the DP	Check whether the scanning position of the DP is wrong.	If the scanning position of the DP is shifted, perform maintenance mode U068, DP Read.(see page 1-3-55)
7	FFC cable CCD	Check the FFC cable between the CCD sensor and ISC PWB is properly connected. Or, verify conduction of the wire.	Reinsert the connector if its connection is loose. Or, if conduction is lot, replace the wire.
8	FFC cable LED	Check the FFC cable between the LED PWB and ISC PWB is properly connected. Or, verify conduction of the wire.	Reinsert the connector if its connection is loose. Or, if conduction is lot, replace the wire.
9	Lamp unit	Check the location the lamp unit is mounted.	Re-mount the lamp unit if it is hanged off.
10	LED PWB	Check that the LED is lit.	If the LED is not lit, replace the LED PWB and perform U411.
11	ISC PWB	The ISC PWB is defective.	Replace the ISC PWB and perform U411. (see page 1-3-152)
12	CCD PWB	The CCD PWB is defective.	Replace the ISU and perform U411. (see page 1-3-152)
13	Main PWB	The main PWB is defective.	Replace the main PWB.(see page 1-5-74)

3. DP-scanning second (back) page

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	The settings of the adjustment of density	Check the settings of the adjustment of density.	1. Deactivate EcoPrint if it is activated. Or, if the density is too low, chosse an image quality that suits the original docuemt in type. 2. Increase density. 3. Perform the background color adjustment using the system menu.
2	Settings of anti-offset	Check the settings of anti-offset.	If anti-offset is set to on, set it to off.
3	Adjustment of the scanner	Check the automatic adjustment of the scanner.	Perform maintenance mode U411, DP FaceDown(Chart1)_All (see page 1-3-152)
4	White-reference roller (Counter the CIS)	Check that the white-reference roller is smoothly operative.	If the white-reference roller does not rotate smoothly, re-install.
5	White-reference roller (Counter the CIS)	Check if the white reference roller is contaminated on its surface or damaged.	If the white-reference roller is dirty, clean. Or, if the roller is damaged, replace.
6	DP_CIS unit	Check the location the CIS unit is mounted.	Re-mount the CIS unit if it is hanged off.
7	DP_SHD PWB	Check the CIS and the SHD PWB is properly connected.	Reinsert the connector if the PWB was loosely inserted.If not cured, replace the PWB.
8	DP_CIS	CIS is defective.	Replace the CIS and perform U091 and U411. (see page 1-3-65,1-3-152)
9	Main PWB	The main PWB is defective.	Replace the main PWB.(see page 1-5-74)

(4) The background is colored.

Print example


1. Table scanning

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Original document	1. Check if the background density of the original document is too dense. 2. Check if the original document is floated during scanning.	1. If the background density of the original document is too dense, perform automatic background adjustment.Or, adjust density with background adjustment. 2. If the original document is floated during scanning, press down the original document.
2	Adjustment of the scanner	Check the automatic adjustment of the scanner.	Perform maintenance mode U411, table(Chart1)_All. (see page 1-3-152)
3	Contact glass	Check whether the contact glass is dirty.	If the contact glass is dirty, clean the contact glass, and the bottom part of the shading plate.
4	Contact glass assy	Check the location the contact glass is mounted.	Re-mount the contact glass if is hanged off.
5	Home position sensor	Check the location the home position sensor is mounted.	Re-mount the home position sensor if it is hanged off.
6	FFC cable CCD	Check the FFC cable between the CCD sensor and ISC PWB is properly connected. Or, verify conduction of the wire.	Reinsert the connector if its connection is loose. Or, if conduction is lot, replace the wire.
7	FFC cable LED	Check the FFC cable between the LED PWB and ISC PWB is properly connected. Or, verify conduction of the wire.	Reinsert the connector if it its connection is loose. Or, if conduction is lot, replace the wire.
8	Lamp unit	Check the location the lamp unit is mounted.	Re-mount the lamp unit if it is hanged off.
9	LED PWB	Check that the LED is lit.	If the LED is not lit, replace the LED PWB and perform U411.
10	ISC PWB	The ISC PWB is defective.	Replace the ISC PWB and perform U411. (see page 1-3-152)
11	CCD PWB	The CCD PWB is defective.	Replace the ISU and perform U411. (see page 1-3-152)

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
12	Main PWB	The main PWB is defective.	Replace the main PWB.(see page 1-5-74)

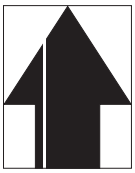
2. DP-scanning first (front) page

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Original document	1. Check if the background density of the original document is too dense. 2. Check if the original document is floated during scanning.	1. If the background density of the original document is too dense, perform automatic background adjustment.Or, adjust density with background adjustment. 2. Adjust the location the DP is mounted.
2	Adjustment of the scanner	Check the automatic adjustment of the scanner.	Perform maintenance mode U411, DP FaceDown(Chart1)_All. (see page 1-3-152)
3	Contact glass	Check whether the contact glass is dirty.	If the contact glass is dirty, clean the contact glass, and the bottom part of the shading plate.
4	Contact glass assy	Check the location the contact glass is mounted.	Re-mount the contact glass if it is hanged off.
5	Home position sensor	Check the location the Home position sensor is mounted.	Re-mount the Home position sensor if it is hanged off.
6	Installing DP	Check whether the DP frame is distorted or the hinges are damaged.	Replace the DP.
7	FFC cable CCD	Check the FFC cable between the CCD sensor and ISC PWB is properly connected. Or, verify conduction of the wire.	Reinsert the connector if it its connection is loose. Or, if conduction is lot, replace the wire.
8	FFC cable LED	Check the FFC cable between the LED PWB and ISC PWB is properly connected. Or, verify conduction of the wire.	Reinsert the connector if it its connection is loose. Or, if conduction is lot, replace the wire.
9	Lamp unit	Check the location the lamp unit is mounted.	Re-mount the lamp unit if it is hanged off.
10	LED PWB	Check that the LED is lit.	If the LED is not lit, replace the LED PWB and perform U411.
11	ISC PWB	The ISC PWB is defective.	Replace the ISC PWB and perform U411. (see page 1-3-152)
12	CCD PWB	The CCD PWB is defective.	Replace the ISU and perform U411. (see page 1-3-152)
13	Main PWB	The main PWB is defective.	Replace the main PWB.(see page 1-5-74)

3. DP-scanning second (back) page

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Original document	1. Check if the background density of the original document is too dense. 2. Check if the original document is floated during scanning.	1. If the background density of the original document is too dense, perform automatic background adjustment.Or, adjust density with background adjustment. 2. Adjust the location the CIS unit is mounted.
2	Adjustment of the scanner	Check the automatic adjustment of the scanner.	Perform maintenance mode U411, DP FaceUp(Chart1)_All. (see page 1-3-152)
3	White-reference roller (Counter the CIS)	Check that the white-reference roller is smoothly operative.	If the white-reference roller does not rotate smoothly, re-install.
4	White-reference roller (Counter the CIS)	Check if the white reference roller is contaminated on its surface or damaged.	If the white-reference roller is dirty, clean. Or, if the roller is damaged, replace.
5	DP_CIS unit	Check the location the CIS unit is mounted.	Re-mount the CIS unit if it is hanged off.
6	DP_SHD PWB	Check the CIS and the SHD PWB is properly connected.	Reinsert the connector if the PWB was loosely inserted.If not cured, replace the PWB.
7	DP_CIS	CIS is defective.	Replace the CIS and perform U091 and U411. (see page 1-3-65,1-3-152)
8	Main PWB	The main PWB is defective.	Replace the main PWB.(see page 1-5-74)

(5) White streaks are printed vertically.

Print example


1. Table scanning

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Original document	Check whether the original document is dirty.	If the original document is dirty, replace.
2	Contact glass	Check whether the contact glass is dirty.	If the contact glass is dirty, clean the contact glass, and the bottom part of the shading plate.
3	Mirror	Check whether the mirrors are dirty.	If the mirrors are dirty, clean the three mirrors.
4	Lamp unit	Check that the lamp unit is contaminated with dusts.	If dusts are observed on the lamp unit, remove the dusts in the light paths.
5	Lamp unit	Check whether the LED cover is hanged off.	Re-mount the LED cover if it is hanged off.
6	ISU	Check whether the lens cover is hanged off.	Re-mount the lens cover if it is hanged off.
7	Shading plate	Check whether the shading plate is dirty.	If the shading plate is dirty, perform maintenance mode U063 to modify the shading position. If it does not cure, replace the contact glass assembly. (see page 1-3-50)
8	ISC PWB	The ISC PWB is defective.	Replace the ISC PWB and perform U411. (see page 1-3-152)
9	CCD PWB	The CCD PWB is defective.	Replace the ISU and perform U411. (see page 1-3-152)
10	Main PWB	The main PWB is defective.	Replace the main PWB.(see page 1-5-74)

2. DP-scanning first (front) page

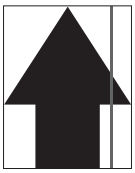
	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Original document	Check whether the original document is dirty.	If the original document is dirty, replace.
2	Contact glass	Check whether the contact glass is dirty.	If the contact glass is dirty, clean the contact glass, and the bottom part of the shading plate.

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
3	Mirror	Check whether the mirrors are dirty.	If the mirrors are dirty, clean the three mirrors.
4	Lamp unit	Check that the lamp unit is contaminated with dusts.	If dusts are observed on the lamp unit, remove the dusts in the light paths.
5	Lamp unit	Check whether the LED cover is hanged off.	Re-mount the LED cover if it is hanged off.
6	ISU	Check whether the lens cover is hanged off.	Re-mount the lens cover if it is hanged off.
7	Shading plate	Check whether the shading plate is dirty.	If the shading plate is dirty, perform maintenance mode U063 to modify the shading position. If it does not cure, replace the contact glass assembly. (see page 1-3-50)
8	ISC PWB	The ISC PWB is defective.	Replace the ISC PWB and perform U411. (see page 1-3-152)
9	CCD PWB	The CCD PWB is defective.	Replace the ISU and perform U411. (see page 1-3-152)
10	Main PWB	The main PWB is defective.	Replace the main PWB.(see page 1-5-74)

3. DP-scanning second (back) page

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	White-reference roller (Counter the CIS)	Check if the white reference roller is contaminated on its surface or damaged.	If the white-reference roller is dirty, clean. Or, if the roller is damaged, replace.
2	DP_CIS glass	Check whether the CIS glass is contaminated.	If the CIS glass is contaminated, clean the CIS glass and conveying guide. If it has a scuff, replace.
3	White streaks compensation settings	Check the white streaks compensation settings.	Check the white streaks compensation settings.
4	DP_CIS unit	Check the location the CIS unit is mounted.	Re-mount the CIS unit if it is hanged off.
5	DP_SHD PWB	Check the CIS and the SHD PWB is properly connected.	Reinsert the connector if the PWB was loosely inserted.If not cured, replace the PWB.
6	DP_CIS	CIS is defective.	Replace the CIS and perform U091 and U411. (see page 1-3-65,1-3-152)
7	Main PWB	The main PWB is defective.	Replace the main PWB.(see page 1-5-74)

(6) Black streaks appear longitudinally.

Print example


1. Table scanning

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Original document	Check whether the original document is dirty.	If the original document is dirty, replace.
2	Original document	Check if the size of the original document and its reference size match.	If the size of the original document and its reference size do not match, set the correct document size or activate border erasure.
3	Contact glass assy	Check the location the contact glass is mounted.	Re-mount the contact glass if it is hanged off.
4	Adjustment of the scanner	Check whether the outer areas of the original document have streaks or lines.	1. Perform maintenance mode U067, Front.(see page 1-3-54) 2. Perform maintenance mode U411, table (Chart1)_Input. (see page 1-3-152)
5	Contact glass	Check whether the outer areas of the original document have streaks or lines.	If the contact glass is dirty, clean.
6	mirror	Check whether the mirrors are dirty.	If the mirrors are dirty, clean the three mirrors.
7	Lamp unit	Check that the lamp unit is contaminated with dusts.	If dusts are observed on the lamp unit, remove the dusts in the light paths.
8	CCD sensor	Check that the CCD sensor glass is contaminated with dusts.	If dusts are observed on the CCD sensor glass,remove the dusts by an air blower.
9	Shading plate	Check whether the shading plate is dirty.	If the shading plate is dirty, perform maintenance mode U063 to modify the shading position. If it does not cure, replace the contact glass assembly. (see page 1-3-50)
10	ISC PWB	The ISC PWB is defective.	Replace the ISC PWB and perform U411. (see page 1-3-152)
11	CCD PWB	The CCD PWB is defective.	Replace the ISU and perform U411. (see page 1-3-152)
12	Main PWB	The main PWB is defective.	Replace the main PWB.(see page 1-5-74)

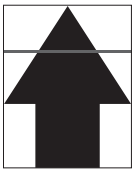
2. DP-scanning first (front) page

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Original document	Check whether the original document is dirty.	If the original document is dirty, replace.
2	Original document	Check if the size of the original document and its reference size match.	If the size of the original document and its reference size do not match, set the correct document size or activate border erasure.
3	Scanning position of the DP	Check whether the scanning position of the DP is wrong.	If the scanning position of the DP is shifted, perform maintenance mode U068, DP Read. (see page 1-3-55)
4	Adjustment of the scanner	Check whether the outer areas of the original document have streaks or lines.	1. Perform maintenance mode U072, Front. (see page 1-3-60) 2. Perform maintenance mode U411, DP Auto Adj. 3. Perform maintenance mode U411, DP FaceUp(Chart2)_Input. (see page 1-3-152)
5	Slit glass, Contact glass	Check whether the slit glass and contact glass are dirty.	If the slit glass and contact glass are dirty, clean the contact glass, the slit glass, the bottom part of the shading plate, and the conveying guide.
6	Mirror	Check whether the mirrors are dirty.	If the mirrors are dirty, clean the three mirrors.
7	Lamp unit	Check that the lamp unit is contaminated with dusts.	If dusts are observed on the lamp unit, remove the dusts in the light paths.
8	CCD sensor	Check the dust on the CCD sensor glass.	Check whether the CCD sensor glass is stuck with dusts, and if necessary, remove the dusts by an air blower.
9	Shading plate	Check whether the shading plate is dirty.	If the shading plate is dirty, perform maintenance mode U063 to modify the shading position. If it does not cure, replace the contact glass assembly. (see page 1-3-50)
10	ISC PWB	The ISC PWB is defective.	Replace the ISC PWB and perform U411. (see page 1-3-152)
11	CCD PWB	The CCD PWB is defective.	Replace the ISU and perform U411. (see page 1-3-152)
12	Main PWB	The main PWB is defective.	Replace the main PWB.(see page 1-5-74)

3. DP-scanning second (back) page

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Adjustment of the scanner	Check if the outer areas of the original document have streaks or lines.	1. Perform maintenance mode U072, CIS. (see page 1-3-60) 2. Perform maintenance mode U411, DP Auto Adj. 3. Perform maintenance mode U411, DP FaceDown(Chart1)_All. (see page 1-3-152)
2	DP_CIS glass	Check whether the CIS glass of the DP is contaminated.	If the CIS glass of the DP is contaminated, clean. Or, if it has scuffs, replace.
3	DP guide plate	Check whether the DP guide plate is dirty.	If the guide plate is dirty, clean the guide plate and the conveying guide.
4	DP regist pulley	The DP regist pulley is contaminated.	Clean the DP regist pulley.
5	White-reference roller (Counter the CIS)	Check if the white reference roller is contaminated on its surface or damaged.	If the white-reference roller is dirty, clean. Or, if the roller is damaged, replace.
6	White streaks compensation settings	Check the white streaks compensation settings.	If the white streaks compensation is insufficient, perform maintenance mode U091.(see page 1-3-65)
7	DP_CIS unit	Check the location the CIS unit is mounted.	Re-mount the CIS unit if it is hanged off.
8	DP_SHD PWB	Check the CIS and the SHD PWB is properly connected.	Reinsert the connector if the PWB was loosely inserted.If not cured, replace the PWB.
9	DP_CIS	CIS is defective.	Replace the CIS and perform U091 and U411. (see page 1-3-65,1-3-152)
10	Main PWB	The main PWB is defective.	Replace the main PWB.(see page 1-5-74)

(7) Streaks are printed horizontally.

Print example


1. Table scanning

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Original document	Check whether the original document is dirty.	If the original document is dirty, replace.
2	Contact glass	Check whether the contact glass is dirty.	If the contact glass is dirty, clean the contact glass, and the bottom part of the shading plate.
3	Ajusting scanner	Check that the image at the back of the size indicator has been rendered.	1. If the image at the back of the size indicator, has been rendered perform maintenance mode U066, Front. (see page 1-3-53) 2. Perform maintenance mode U411, Table(Chart1)_Input.(see page 1-3-152)
4	FFC cable CCD	Check the FFC cable between the CCD sensor and ISC PWB is properly connected. Or, verify conduction of the wire.	Reinsert the connector if its connection is loose. Or, if conduction is lot, replace the wire.
5	FFC cable LED	Check the FFC cable between the LED PWB and ISC PWB is properly connected. Or, verify conduction of the wire.	Reinsert the connector if its connection is loose. Or, if conduction is lot, replace the wire.
6	SATA cable ISC	Check the SATA cable between the ISC PWB and main PWB is properly connected. Or, verify conduction of the wire.	Reinsert the connector if its connection is loose. Or, if conduction is lot, replace the wire.
7	LED PWB	Check that the LED is lit.	If the LED is not lit, replace the LED PWB and perform U411.
8	ISC PWB	The ISC PWB is defective.	Replace the ISC PWB and perform U411. (see page 1-3-152)
9	Main PWB	The main PWB is defective.	Replace the main PWB.(see page 1-5-74)

2. DP-scanning first (front) page

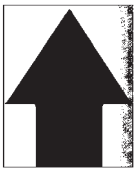
	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Original document	Check whether the original document is dirty.	If the original document is dirty, replace.
2	Contact glass	Check whether the contact glass is dirty.	If the contact glass is dirty, clean the contact glass, and the bottom part of the shading plate.
3	FFC cable CCD	Check the FFC cable between the CCD sensor and ISC PWB is properly connected. Or, verify conduction of the wire.	Reinsert the connector if its connection is loose. Or, if conduction is lot, replace the wire.
4	FFC cable LED	Check the FFC cable between the LED PWB and ISC PWB is properly connected. Or, verify conduction of the wire.	Reinsert the connector if its connection is loose. Or, if conduction is lot, replace the wire.
5	SATA cable ISC	Check the SATA cable between the ISC PWB and main PWB is properly connected. Or, verify conduction of the wire.	Reinsert the connector if its connection is loose. Or, if conduction is lot, replace the wire.
6	LED PWB	Check that the LED is lit.	If the LED is not lit, replace the LED PWB and perform U411.
7	ISC PWB	The ISC PWB is defective.	Replace the ISC PWB and perform U411. (see page 1-3-152)
8	Main PWB	The main PWB is defective.	Replace the main PWB.(see page 1-5-74)

3. DP-scanning second (back) page

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Original document	Check whether the original document is dirty.	If the original document is dirty, replace.
2	DP_CIS glass	Check whether the CIS glass of the DP is contaminated.	If the CIS glass of the DP is contaminated, clean. Or, if it has scuffs, replace.
3	DP_CIS unit	Check the location the CIS unit is mounted.	Re-mount the CIS unit if it is hanged off.
4	DP_SHD PWB	Check the CIS and the SHD PWB is properly connected.	Reinsert the connector if the PWB was loosely inserted.If not cured, replace the PWB.
5	DP_SATA cable	Check the FFC cable between the SHD PWB and ISC PWB is properly connected. Or, verify conduction of the wire.	Reinsert the connector if its connection is loose. Or, if conduction is lot, replace the wire.
6	DP_CIS	CIS is defective.	Replace the CIS and perform U091 and U411. (see page 1-3-65,1-3-152)

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
7	Main PWB	The main PWB is defective.	Replace the main PWB.(see page 1-5-74)

(8) One side of the print image is darker or brighter than the other.

Print example


1. Table scanning

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Original document	Check whether the original document is dirty.	If the original document is dirty, replace.
2	Original document	Check if the original document has creases or foldings or wrinkles.	If the original document has foldings or creases, remove them.
3	Position of the mat of the platen	Check whether the position of the mat of the DP or theplaten is wrong.	If the position of the mat of the DP or the platen is shifted, re-mount.
4	Contact glass	Check whether the contact glass is dirty.	If the contact glass is dirty, clean the contact glass, and the bottom part of the shading plate.
5	Contact glass assy	Check the location the contact glass is mounted.	If the light guide panel has been fallen off of the mounting position, fix it properly.
6	Lamp unit	Check the position at which the light guide panel is mounted.	If the contact part of the lamp unit and the rail is distorted, replace the lamp unit.
7	Mirror	Check whether the mirrors are dirty.	If the mirrors are dirty, clean the three mirrors.
8	ISU	Check the location the ISU unit is mounted.	Insert a spacer between the scanner unit and the ISU to change the height. (see page 1-5-44)
9	LED PWB	Check that the LED is lit.	If the LED is not lit, replace the LED PWB and perform U411.(see page 1-3-152)
10	LED Assy	Check the mounting position of the refelector board or if it is distorted.	If the LED assy is hanged off of the mounting position of the reflector or it is deformed, replace the LED assy.
11	Lamp unit	Check that the contact part of the lamp unit and the rail is distorted.	If the contact part of the lamp unit and the rail is distorted, replace the lamp unit.
12	Mirror unit	Check the location the mirror is mounted.	Re-mount the mirror if it is hanged off. Or, if the mirror is damaged, replace.

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
13	Mirror unit	Check that the contact part of the mirror unit and the rail is distorted.	If the contact part of the mirror unit and the rail is distorted, replace the mirror unit.
14	ISC PWB	The ISC PWB is defective.	Replace the ISC PWB and perform U411. (see page 1-3-152)
15	CCD PWB	The CCD PWB is defective.	Replace the ISU and perform U411. (see page 1-3-152)
16	Main PWB	The main PWB is defective.	Replace the main PWB.(see page 1-5-74)

2. DP-scanning first (front) page

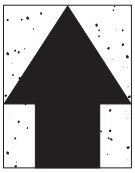
	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Original document	Check whether the original document is dirty.	If the original document is dirty, replace.
2	Original document	Check if the original document has creases or foldings or wrinkles.	If the original document has foldings or creases, remove them.
3	DP scanning guide	Check that the scanning guide is smoothly operative.	If the scanning guide does not rotate smoothly, re-install.
4	Contact glass	Check whether the contact glass is dirty.	If the contact glass is dirty, clean the contact glass, and the bottom part of the shading plate.
5	Contact glass assy	Check the location the contact glass is mounted.	Re-mount the contact glass if it is hanged off.
6	LED PWB	Check that the LED is lit.	If the LED is not lit, replace the LED PWB and perform U411.
7	ISC PWB	The ISC PWB is defective.	Replace the ISC PWB and perform U411. (see page 1-3-152)
8	CCD PWB	The CCD PWB is defective.	Replace the ISU PWB and perform U411. (see page 1-3-152)
9	Main PWB	The main PWB is defective.	Replace the main PWB.(see page 1-5-74)

3. DP-scanning second (back) page

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Original document	Check whether the original document is dirty.	If the original document is dirty, replace.
2	Original document	Check if the original document has creases or foldings or wrinkles.	If the original document has foldings or creases, remove them.

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
3	White-reference roller (Counter the CIS)	Check that the white-reference roller is smoothly operative.	If the white-reference roller does not rotate smoothly, re-install.
4	DP_CIS	CIS is defective.	Replace the CIS and perform U091 and U411. (see page 1-3-65,1-3-152)
5	Main PWB	The main PWB is defective.	Replace the main PWB.(see page 1-5-74)

(9) Black dots appear on the image.

Print example


1. Table scanning

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Original document	Check whether the original document is dirty.	If the original document is dirty, replace.
2	Contact glass	Check whether the contact glass is dirty.	If the contact glass is dirty, clean the contact glass, and the bottom part of the shading plate.
3	FFC cable CCD	Check the FFC cable between the CCD sensor and ISC PWB is properly connected. Or, verify conduction of the wire.	Reinsert the connector if its connection is loose. Or, if conduction is lot, replace the wire.
4	SATA cable ISC	Check the SATA cable between the ISC PWB and main PWB is properly connected. Or, verify conduction of the wire.	Reinsert the connector if its connection is loose. Or, if conduction is lot, replace the wire.
5	Main PWB	The main PWB is defective.	Replace the main PWB.(see page 1-5-74)

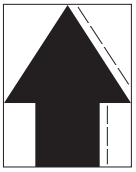
2. DP-scanning first (front) page

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Original document	Check whether the original document is dirty.	If the original document is dirty, replace.
2	Contact glass	Check whether the contact glass is dirty.	If the contact glass is dirty, clean the contact glass, and the bottom part of the shading plate.
3	FFC cable CCD	Check the FFC cable between the CCD sensor and ISC PWB is properly connected. Or, verify conduction of the wire.	Reinsert the connector if its connection is loose. Or, if conduction is lot, replace the wire.
4	SATA cable ISC	Check the SATA cable between the ISC PWB and main PWB is properly connected. Or, verify conduction of the wire.	Reinsert the connector if its connection is loose. Or, if conduction is lot, replace the wire.
5	Main PWB	The main PWB is defective.	Replace the main PWB.(see page 1-5-74)

3. DP-scanning second (back) page

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Original document	Check whether the original document is dirty.	If the original document is dirty, replace.
2	DP_SHD PWB	Check the CIS and the SHD PWB is properly connected.	Reinsert the connector if the PWB was loosely inserted.If not cured, replace the PWB.
3	DP_SATA cable	Check the FFC cable between the SHD PWB and I/F PWB is properly connected. Or, verify conduction of the wire.	Reinsert the connector if its connection is loose. Or, if conduction is lot, replace the wire.
4	DP_CIS	CIS is defective.	Replace the CIS and perform U091 and U411. (see page 1-3-65,1-3-152)
5	Main PWB	The main PWB is defective.	Replace the main PWB.(see page 1-5-74)

(10) Image is blurred.

Print example


1. Table scanning

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Rail	Check that the carriage is smoothly operative.	If the carriage does not travel smoothly, remove foreign objects on the front and back optical rails.
2	Lamp unit	Check that the carriage is smoothly operative.	If the carriage does not travel smoothly because the lamp unit contacts with the frame, rectify.
3	Scanner wire drum	Confirm that a foreign object exists between the wire rope and the scanner wire drum.	If a foreign object exists, remove.
4	Mirror unit	Check that a foreign object exists in the grooves of the pulley.	If a foreign object exists in the grooves of the pulleys, remove.
5	Pulley	Check that a foreign object exists in the grooves of the pulleys other than above.	If a foreign object exists in the grooves of the pulleys, remove.
6	Wire rope	Confirm that the wire rope has a foreign object sticked or has a scuff.	If a foreign object exists on the wire rope, remove the foreign object. Or, if it is damaged, replace.

2. DP-scanning first (front) page

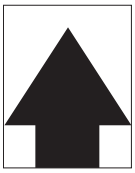
	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	DP conveying pulley	Check that the conveying pulley is smoothly operative.	If the conveying pulley does not rotate smoothly, re-asslemble the conveying roller and springs.
2	Adjustment height of the hinge portions of the DP	Check the height of the front and back portions of the DP.	If the front and back side of the DP is not leveled, adjust the hinge on the left side.
3	Install DP	Check how DP is mounted on the main unit.	If mounting to the main unit is improper, check positioning and secure the screws.
4	DP hinge	Check that the DP hinge is operative in both ascending and descending directions and kept open.	If the DP is not operative smoothly or is not held stably open, replace the hinges.

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
5	DP document mat	Check the location the document mat of the DP is mounted.	Re-mount the document mat of the DP if it is hanged off.
6	Original document	Check that the leading edge of the original document is dog-eared.	If the leading edge of the original documet is dog-eared, straighten.
7	Scanning guide	Check if the scanning guide is distorted.	If the scanning guide deformed, replace.
8	Scopper guide	Check that the scopper guide is smoothly operative.	If the scopper guide does not rotate smoothly, re-install.
9	Conveying roller (before and after of scanning)	Check whether the conveying roller is dirty.	If the conveying roller is dirty, clean.
10	Drive belt	Check if the drive belt is jumping gear teeth.	If the drive belt is jumping gear teeth, re-mount the belt tensioner.

3. DP-scanning second (back) page

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	DP conveying pul-ley	Check that the conveying pulley is smoothly operative.	If the conveying pulley does not rotate smoothly, re-asslemble the conveying roller and springs.
2	Install DP	Check how DP is mounted on the main unit.	If mounting to the main unit is improper, check positioning and secure the screws.
3	DP hinge	Check that the DP hinge is operative in both ascending and descending directions and kept open.	If the DP is not operative smoothly or is not held stably open, replace the hinges.
4	DP document mat	Check the location the document mat of the DP is mounted.	Re-mount the document mat of the DP if it is hanged off.
5	Original document	Check that the leading edge of the original document is dog-eared.	If the leading edge of the original documet is dog-eared, straighten.
6	Scanning roller	Check if the scanning roller is floated.	If the scanning roller is floated, re-assemble.
7	Conveying roller (before and after of scanning)	Check whether the conveying roller is dirty.	If the conveying roller is dirty, clean.
8	Scanning glass	Check if the scanning glass is floated.	If the scanning glass is floated, re-assemble.
9	Drive belt	Check if the drive belt is jumping gear teeth.	If the drive belt is jumping gear teeth, re-mount the belt tensioner.

(11) The leading edge of the image is consistently misaligned with the original.

Print example


1. Table scanning

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Original document	Check if the original document is loaded correctly on the contact glass.	If the original document is not properly placed on the contact glass, place it correctly.
2	Secures the lamp unit	Confirm the direction of the bracket that secures the wire rope and the lamp unit.	If the bracket that fixes the wire rope and the lamp unit is misaligned, align the bracket properly.
3	Adjustment of the scanner	Check the scanning adjustment of the scanner.	1. Perform maintenance mode U066, Front. (see page 1-3-53) 2. Perform maintenance mode U411, table(Chart1)_Input. (see page 1-3-152)
4	Home position sensor	Check the location the home position sensor is mounted.	Re-mount the home position sensor if it is hanged off.
5	Drive belt	Check if the tension of the drive belt is insufficient.	If the tension of the drive belt is insufficient, tense the belt.
6	Scanner wire drum	Check if the optical wire drum is loosely fixed.	If the optical wire drum is loosely fixed, secure the screws.
7	Scanner drive gear	Check that the scanner drive gear is loosely mounted.	If the scanner drive gear loosely mounted, secure the screw.

2. DP-scanning first (front) page

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Adjustment of the scanner	Check the scanning adjustment of DP scanning.	1. Perform maintenance mode U071, CIS Head. (see page 1-3-58) 2. Perform maintenance mode U411, DP Auto Adj. (only a dual scan DP installed) 3. Perform maintenance mode U411, FaceUp(Chart2)_Input. (see page 1-3-152)
2	Original conveying roller	Check if the conveyer roller is contaminated or worn.	If the conveying roller is dirty, clean the conveying roller and its axles.If the roller is worn out, replace.

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
3	DP drive motor	Check whether the DP drive motor is fluctuated in rotation.	If the DP motor is fluctuated in rotation, apply grease with the drive gear. If no improvement is observed, replace the motor.

3. DP-scanning second (back) page

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Adjustment of the scanner	Check the scanning adjustment of DP scanning.	1. Perform maintenance mode U071, CIS Head. (see page 1-3-58) 2. Perform maintenance mode U411, DP Auto Adj. 3. Perform maintenance mode U411, FaceDown(Chart1)_All. (see page 1-3-152)

(12) Part of image is missing.

Print example


1. Table scanning

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Original document	Check if the original document is loaded correctly on the contact glass.	If the original document is not properly placed on the contact glass, place it correctly.
2	Original document	1. Check that the size of the original document and the paper size match on the panel. 2. Check that the copying position has been automatically rotated.	1. If the sizes of the original document and the paper size do not match, manually set the proper paper size for the original document. 2. Check the paper size automatic detection switch and replace if faulty. 3. If the copying position is automatically rotated, deactivate automatic image
3	Settings of Border removal	Check the value of border removal.	If a large value is given to bordere erasure, change it to a smaller value.
4	Contact glass	Check whether the contact glass is dirty.	If the contact glass is dirty, clean the contact glass, and the bottom part of the shading plate.
5	Contact glass assy	Check the location the contact glass is mounted.	Re-mount the contact glass if it is hanged off.
6	FFC cable CCD	Check the FFC cable between the CCD sensor and ISC PWB is properly connected. Or, verify conduction of the wire.	Reinsert the connector if its connection is loose. Or, if conduction is lot, replace the wire.
7	SATA cable ISC	Check the SATA cable between the ISC PWB and main PWB is properly connected. Or, verify conduction of the wire.	Reinsert the connector if its connection is loose. Or, if conduction is lot, replace the wire.
8	Lamp unit	Check the location the lamp unit is mounted.	Re-mount the lamp unit if it is hanged off.
9	ISC PWB	The ISC PWB is defective.	Replace the ISC PWB and perform U411. (see page 1-3-152)
10	CCD PWB	The CCD PWB is defective.	Replace the ISU and perform U411. (see page 1-3-152)
11	Main PWB	The main PWB is defective.	Replace the main PWB.(see page 1-5-74)

2. DP-scanning first (front) page

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Original document	Check if the original document is loaded correctly in the DP.	If the original document is not properly placed in the DP, place it correctly.
2	Original document	1. Check that the size of the original document and the paper size match on the panel. 2. Check that the copying position has been automatically rotated.	1. If the sizes of the original document and the paper size do not match, manually set the proper paper size for the original document. 2. Check the paper size automatic detection switch and replace if faulty. 3. If the copying position is automatically rotated, deactivate automatic image rotation by the system menu.
3	Settings of Border removal	Check the value of border removal.	If a large value is given to bordere erasure, change it to a smaller value.
4	Contact glass	Check whether the contact glass is dirty.	If the contact glass is dirty, clean the contact glass, and the bottom part of the shading plate.
5	FFC cable CCD	Check the FFC cable between the CCD sensor and ISC PWB is properly connected. Or, verify conduction of the wire.	Reinsert the connector if its connection is loose. Or, if conduction is lot, replace the wire.
6	SATA cable ISC	Check the SATA cable between the ISC PWB and main PWB is properly connected. Or, verify conduction of the wire.	Reinsert the connector if its connection is loose. Or, if conduction is lot, replace the wire.
7	ISC PWB	The ISC PWB is defective.	Replace the ISC PWB and perform U411. (see page 1-3-152)
8	CCD PWB	The CCD PWB is defective.	Replace the ISU and perform U411. (see page 1-3-152)
9	Main PWB	The main PWB is defective.	Replace the main PWB.(see page 1-5-74)

3. DP-scanning second (back) page

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Original document	Check if the original document is loaded correctly in the DP.	If the original document is not properly placed in the DP, place it correctly.
2	Original document	Check the size of the original document and its reference size.	If the size of the original document and its reference size do not match, manually set the document size.
3	Settings of Border removal	Check the value of border removal.	If a large value is given to bordere erasure, change it to a smaller value.

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
4	DP_SATA cable	Check the FFC cable between the SHD PWB and I/F PWB is properly connected. Or, verify conduction of the wire.	Reinsert the connector if it its connection is loose. Or, if conduction is lot, replace the wire.
5	DP_SHD PWB	Check the CIS and the SHD PWB is properly connected.	Reinsert the connector if the PWB was loosely inserted.If not cured, replace the PWB.
6	DP_CIS	CIS is defective.	Replace the CIS and perform U091 and U411. (see page 1-3-65,1-3-152)
7	Main PWB	The main PWB is defective.	Replace the main PWB.(see page 1-5-74)

(13) Image is out of focus.

Print example


1. Table scanning and DP-scanning first (front) page

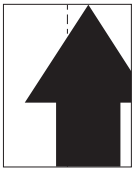
	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Original document	Check whether the original document is wavy.	If the original document is wavy, straighten.Or, replace the original document.
2	Contact glass	Check whether the contact glass is dew condensed.	If the contact glass is dew condensed, remove the dew.
3	Mirror	Check whether the mirror is dew condensed.	If the mirrors are dew-condensed, remove the dew.
4	Lens	Check whether the lens is dew condensed.	If the lens is dew condensed, remove the dew.
5	CCD sensor	Check whether the CCD sensor glass is dew condensed.	If the CCD sensor glass is dew condensed, remove the dew.
6	Adjustment of the scanner	Check the automatic adjustment of the scanner.	Perform maintenance mode U411, table(Chart1)_All. (see page 1-3-152)
7	ISU	Confirm the position of the lens and the CCD sensor.	If the lenses and the CCD sensor are misaligned, replace the ISU and perform U411.
8	ISC PWB	The ISC PWB is defective.	Replace the ISC PWB and perform U411. (see page 1-3-152)
9	Main PWB	The main PWB is defective.	Replace the main PWB.(see page 1-5-74)

2. DP-scanning second (back) page

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	DP_CIS glass	Check whether the CIS glass is dew condensed.	If the CIS glass is dew condensed, remove the dew.
2	DP_CIS glass	Check whether the CIS glass is contaminated.	If the CIS glass is contaminated, clean the CIS glass. If it has a scuff, replace.
3	White-reference roller (Counter the CIS)	Check that the white-reference roller is smoothly operative.	If the white-reference roller does not rotate smoothly, re-install.

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
4	Adjustment of the scanner	Check the automatic adjustment of the scanner.	Perform maintenance mode U411, DP FaceDown(Chart1)_All. (see page 1-3-152)
5	DP_CIS unit	Check the location the CIS unit is mounted.	Re-mount the CIS unit if it is hanged off.
6	DP_CIS	CIS is defective.	Replace the CIS and perform U091 and U411. (see page 1-3-65,1-3-152)

(14) Image center does not align with the original center.

Print example


1. Table scanning

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Original document	Check if the original document is loaded correctly on the contact glass.	If the original document is not properly placed on the contact glass, place it correctly.
2	Contact glass assy	Check the location the contact glass is mounted.	Re-mount the contact glass if it is hanged off.
3	Adjustment of the scanner	Check the scanning adjustment of the scanner.	1. Perform maintenance mode U067, Front.(see page 1-3-54) 2. Perform maintenance mode U411, Table(Chart1)_Input. (see page 1-3-152)

2. DP-scanning first (front) page

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Original document	Check if the original document is loaded correctly in the DP.	If the original document is not properly placed in the DP, place it correctly.
2	Adjustment of the scanner	Check the scanning adjustment of DP scanning.	1. Perform maintenance mode U072, Front. 2. Perform maintenance mode U411, DP Auto Adj. (If a duplex scanning DP is installed.) 3. Perform maintenance mode U411, DP FaceUp(Chart2)_Input. (see page 1-3-152)

3. DP-scanning second (back) page

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Original document	Check if the original document is loaded correctly in the DP.	If the original document is not properly placed in the DP, place it correctly.

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
2	Adjustment of the scanner	Check the scanning adjustment of DP scanning.	1. Perform maintenance mode U072, CIS . (see page 1-3-66) 2. Perform maintenance mode U411, DP Auto Adj. 3. Perform maintenance mode U411, DP FaceDown (Chart1)_All. (see page 1-3-152)

(15) Moires

Print example


1. Table scanning

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Settings of print quality mode	Confirm whether the moire varies depending on print quality mode.	Switch print quality mode if the moire varies depending on print quality mode. 1. Execute printing in text or print mode. 2. Reduce the sharpness (to minus).
2	Original document	Check if moire is observed along the direction of scanning of the original document.	If moire is observed, place the original document after rotating it 90-degree.
3	Scaling factor	Happens with the zoom ratio of 100%.	Reduce the real-size ratio of the main scan direction by U065.
4	Adjustment of the scanner	Check the automatic adjustment of the scanner.	Perform maintenance mode U411, Table(Chart1)_All. (see page 1-3-152)

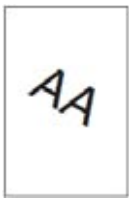
2. DP-scanning first (front) page

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Settings of print quality mode	Confirm whether the moire varies depending on print quality mode.	Switch print quality mode if the moire varies depending on print quality mode. 1. Execute printing in text or print mode. 2. Reduce the sharpness (to minus).
2	Adjustment of the scanner	Check the automatic adjustment of the scanner.	Perform maintenance mode U411, Table(Chart1)_All. (see page 1-3-152)

3. DP-scanning second (back) page

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Settings of print quality mode	Confirm whether the moire varies depending on print quality mode.	Switch print quality mode if the moire varies depending on print quality mode. 1. Execute printing in text or print mode. 2. Reduce the sharpness (to minus).
2	Adjustment of the scanner	Check the automatic adjustment of the scanner.	Perform maintenance mode U411, DP FaceDown(Chart1)_All. (see page 1-3-152)

(16) Skewed image

Print example


1. Table scanning

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Original document	Check if the original document is fed askew.	If the original document is not placed askew on the contact glass, place it correctly.
2	Adjustment of height of main unit and scanner unit	Check the scanner unit is quite level.	If the scanner unit is not quite level, perform the height adjustment of the entirer scanner unit.
3	Lamp unit	Check the location the lamp unit is mounted.	Re-mount the lamp unit if it is hanged off.

2. DP-scanning first (front) page

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Original document	Check if the original document has creases or foldings or wrinkles.	If the original document has foldings or creases, remove them.
2	DP paper feed	Check if the original document is fed askew.	If the original document is fed askew, set the width guides correctly.
3	Lamp unit	Check the location the lamp unit is mounted.	Re-mount the lamp unit if it is hanged off.
4	DP feed roller	Check whether the feed roller is dirty.	If the feed roller is dirty, clean.Or, if not cured, replace the feed roller.
5	DP regist roller	Check whether the DP regist roller is dirty.	If the DP regist roller is dirty, clean.
6	DP regist pulley	Check that the DP regist pulley is smoothly operative.	If the DP regist pulley does not rotate smoothly, re-install.
7	Adjustment amount of slack of the original documen	Check the amount of slack of the original document when it reaches at the regist.	If the amount of the slack of the original document roller improper is perform maintenance mode U942, DP slack settings.(see page 1-3-198)
8	Original document setting	Check that the cursor fits with the original document.	Align the cursor to fit with the original document, if necessary.

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
9	Adjustment positions of the hinge	Check the front and back adjustment positions of the right hinge.	If the front and back adjustment positions of the right hinge are improper, perform adjustment.

3. DP-scanning second (back) page

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Original document	Check if the original document has creases or foldings or wrinkles.	If the original document has foldings or creases, remove them.
2	DP feed roller	Check whether the DP feed roller is dirty.	If the DP feed roller is dirty, clean.
3	DP regist roller	Check whether the DP regist roller is dirty.	If the DP regist roller is dirty, clean.
4	DP regist pulley	Check that the DP regist pulley is smoothly operative.	If the DP regist pulley does not rotate smoothly, re-install.
5	Adjustment amount of slack of the original documen	Check the amount of slack of the original document when it reaches at the regist.	If the amount of the slack of the original document roller improper is perform maintenance mode U942, DP slack settings.(see page 1-3-198)
6	Original document setting	Check that the cursor fits with the original document.	Align the cursor to fit with the original document, if necessary.
7	Install the CIS	Check whether CIS is loosely mounted.	Re-mount the CIS unit if it is hanged off.

(17) Abnormal image

Print example


1. Table scanning

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	FFC cable CCD	Check the FFC cable between the CCD sensor and ISC PWB is properly connected. Or, verify conduction of the wire.	Reinsert the connector if its connection is loose. Or, if conduction is lot, replace the wire.
2	SATA cable ISC	Check the SATA cable between the ISC PWB and main PWB is properly connected. Or, verify conduction of the wire.	Reinsert the connector if its connection is loose. Or, if conduction is lot, replace the wire.
3	HDD	Check the wires to the HDD in conduction. Check the connector for connection. Check the connector pins for distortion.	1. Reinsert the connector if its connection is loose. 2. Check the wires and connetctors, and replace if faulty. 3. Replace the HDD or the SATA wire.
4	ISC PWB	The ISC PWB is defective.	Replace the ISC PWB and perform U411. (see page 1-3-152)
5	CCD PWB	The CCD PWB is defective.	Replace the ISU and perform U411. (see page 1-3-152)
6	Main PWB	The main PWB is defective.	Replace the main PWB.(see page 1-5-74)

2. DP-scanning first (front) page

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	FFC cable CCD	Check the FFC cable between the CCD sensor and ISC PWB is properly connected. Or, verify conduction of the wire.	Reinsert the connector if its connection is loose. Or, if conduction is lot, replace the wire.
2	SATA cable ISC	Check the SATA cable between the ISC PWB and main PWB is properly connected. Or, verify conduction of the wire.	Reinsert the connector if its connection is loose. Or, if conduction is lot, replace the wire.

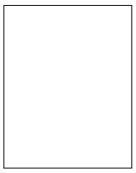
	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
3	HDD	Check the wires to the HDD in conduction. Check the connector for connection. Check the connector pins for distortion.	1. Reinsert the connector if its connection is loose. 2. Check the wires and connetctors, and replace if faulty. 3. Replace the HDD or the SATA wire.
4	ISC PWB	The ISC PWB is defective.	Replace the ISC PWB and perform U411. (see page 1-3-152)
5	CCD PWB	The CCD PWB is defective.	Replace the ISU and perform U411. (see page 1-3-152)
6	Main PWB	The main PWB is defective.	Replace the main PWB.(see page 1-5-74)

3. DP-scanning second (back) page

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	DP_SHD PWB	Check the CIS and the SHD PWB is properly connected.	Reinsert the connector if the PWB was loosely inserted.If not cured, replace the PWB.
2	DP_SATA cable	Check the FFC cable between the SHD PWB and I/F PWB is properly connected. Or, verify conduction of the wire.	Reinsert the connector if its connection is loose. Or, if conduction is lot, replace the wire.
3	DP_CIS	CIS is defective.	Replace the CIS and perform U091 and U411. (see page 1-3-65,1-3-152)
4	Main PWB	The main PWB is defective.	Replace the main PWB.(see page 1-5-74)

1-4-6 Poor image (Image rendering problems: printer engine

(1) No image appears (entirely white).

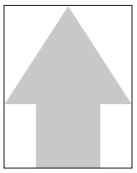


See page1-4-204

(2) No image appears (entirely black).

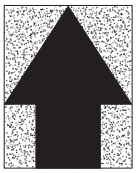
See page1-4-205

(3) Image is too light.



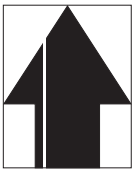
See page1-4-206

(4) The background is colored.



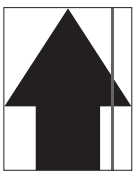
See page1-4-209

(5) White streaks are printed vertically.



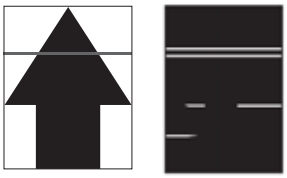
See page1-4-211

(6) Black streaks appear longitudinally.



See page1-4-212

(7) Black or white streaks appear horizontally.



See page1-4-213

(8) Uneven density longitudinally.

See page1-4-214

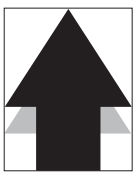
(9) Uneven density horizontally.

See page1-4-215

(10) Black dots appear on the image.

See page1-4-216

(11) Offset occurs.

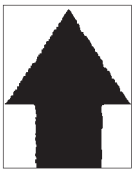


See page1-4-217

(12) Image is partly missing.

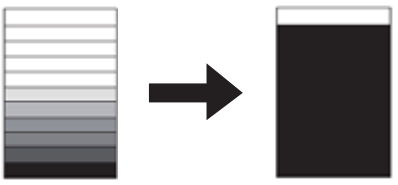
See page1-4-218

(13) Image is out of focus.



See page1-4-219

(14) Poor grayscale reproducibility.

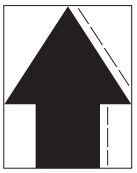


See page1-4-219

(15)Unevenly repeating horizontal streaks in the printed objects. Spots in the printed objects.

See page1-4-220

(16) Image is blurred (Shifted transferring).



See page1-4-221

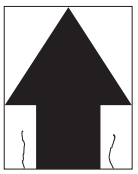
(17) The leading edge of the image is consistently misaligned with the original.

See page1-4-222

(18) The leading edge of the image is sporadically misaligned with the original.

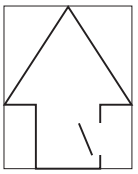
See page1-4-223

(19) Paper is wrinkled.



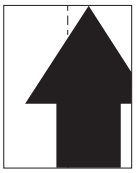
See page1-4-223

(20) Fusing is loose.



See page1-4-224

(21) Image center does not align with the original center.



See page1-4-225

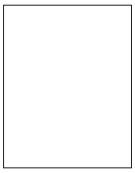
(22) Dirty paper edges with toner.

See page1-4-225

(23) Dirty reverse side of paper.

See page1-4-226

(1) No image appears (entirely white).

Print example	Cause of trouble
	1. No or defective developing bias output. 2. Failure of the rotation of the developing roller. 3. Defective transfer. 4. Laser is not dispersed from the laser scanner unit (LSU). 5. The drum does not rotate.

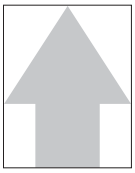
	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Developing unit	Executing U089 to generate PGs and check the following:	
		Check whether the developer drive gear is damaged.	If the gear is damaged, replace the developer unit.
		Check the developing roller is rotated by hand.	If the developer unit is in fault, replace the developer unit. (see page 1-5-56)
		Check contamination and deformation on the terminals of developer unit or the high-voltage PWB1.	If the connecting terminals are dirty, clean. If the connecting terminals are deformed, correct for a proper conduction.
2	High-voltage PWB	Check the connection of the connectors and the high-voltage PWB. Or, verify conduction of the wires.	Reinsert the connector if it its connection is loose. Replace the cable if it has no conduction. High voltage PWB (YC 1) and engine PWB (YC17): Developer High voltage PWB (YC 2) and engine PWB (YC16): Transfer
		Check if developing bias value at its default by U140.	1. If the value obtains by U140 does not conform to the default value, reset it to the default. (see page 1-3-83) 2. Replace the high-voltage PWB.
3	Transfer belt unit	Check if the right side conveying unit is closed.	If the conveying unit has not been closed, check how the conveying guide is locked and open the conveying guide once, then close.
4	Laser scanner unit (LSU)	Check the connection of the connectors. Or, verify conduction of the wires.	1. Reinsert the FFC wire if it its connection is loose. Replace the cable if it has no conduction. 2. Replace the LSU (see page 1-5-49)
5	Engine PWB	A control signal is not derived from the engine PWB.	Replace the enging PWB. (see page 1-5-83)

(2) No image appears (entirely black).

Print example	Cause of trouble
	1. No main charging. 2. The laser from the LSU is activated simultaneously.

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Charging roller	Check whether the charging roller is properly mounted.	If the charging roller is not fixed properly, fix the roller properly.
		Check whether the connecting terminals of the charging roller and high-voltage PWB are deformed.	If the connecting terminals are deformed, correct for a proper conduction.
2	High-voltage PWB	Check the connection of the connectors. Or, verify conduction of the wires.	Reinsert the connector if its connection is loose. Replace the cable if it has no conduction. High voltage PWB (YC 2) and engine PWB (YC16): Charger
		Main charging current supplied by the high-voltage PWB is faulty.	Replace the high-voltage PWB. (see page 1-5-90)
3	Laser scanner unit (LSU)	Switching on and off the laser diode on the LSU PWB is out of control.	Replace the LSU. (see page 1-5-49)
4	Engine PWB	The engine PWB is detective.	Replace the engine PWB.(see page 1-5-83)
5	Main PWB	The main PWB is defective.	Replace the main PWB.(see page 1-5-74)

(3) Image is too light.

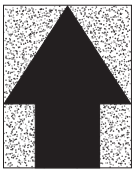
Print example	Cause of trouble
	1. Variance in environments (dew formation). 2. Toner is under supplied, or deteriorated in quality.(Under charged) 3. The volatage of the developing bias is too low. 4. The volatage of the transfer current is too low. 5. The power of LSU laser is too low. 6. The surface potential of the drum is too high. 7. The contact pressure at the trasnfer belt and the drum is too low.

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Paper	Check that the paper has moisture absorbed. Check that the paper has stored in a humid place.	1. If the paper is damp, replace.Choose a dry place to store paper. 2. If necessary, install a cassette heater. (see page 1-2-72)
2	Drum unit	Check that the drum has dew condensation.	If a dew condensation is observed, perform drum refreshing. (System Menu >Adjustment / Maintenance)
		1. Check if the discharging lamp is dirty. 2. Check whether it is lit.	1. If the discharging lamp is dirty, clean. 2. If not cured, or it does not light, replace the drum unit. (Perform U119)(see page 1-3-76)

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
3	Developer unit	Executing U089 to generate PGs and check the following : (see page 1-3-64)	
		1. Confirm the value from U155. (see page 1-3-89)	If the value is less than 542, perform U132 to forcibly replenish toner. (see page 1-3-80)
			Replace the developer unit if the output is kept too low.
		2. Check if the device executed a low-density printing for a prolonged period.	1. If the device was executing a low-density printing for a prolonged period, perform developing refreshing. (System Menu >Adjustment / Maintenance) 2. If developer refreshing does not correct the problem, perform the following Execute maintenance modes U464 Calibration and U410 Grayscale Adjustment. (see page 1-3-175,1-3-151)
		3. Check if the connecting terminals for developer bias are deformed.	If the connecting terminals are deformed, correct for a proper conduction.
		Check the value of U140 MagDC. (see page 1-3-83)	If the MagDC value is in excess of the upper limit by U140, perform U464 to set the Thickness Target Value from 0 to +30. Execute maintenance modes U464 Calibration.(see page 1-3-175)
4	Toner container	Shake the toner container up and down approx. 10 times, and check the following: 1. Check remaining toner by the indicator. 2. Check whether the toner supply inlet is open.	If the message prompting toner replenishing is shown, the toner inlet is not open, replace the toner container.
5	Toner supply motor	Execute U135 to check the revolution of the toner supply motor. (see page 1-3-80)	If the toner Conduct supply motor does not rotate, replace.

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
6	High-voltage PWB	Check the value of the U100. Check the value of the U140.	1. If the value obtained by U100 or U140 does not conform to the default value, reset it to the default. (see page 1-3-69,1-3-82) 2. Replace the high-voltage PWB.
7	Transfer belt unit	1. Check whether the connecting terminals. 2. Check the value of the U106. (see page 1-3-71)	1. If the connecting terminals are deformed, correct for a proper conduction. 2. If the value obtained after U106 does not conform to the default value, reset it to the default. 3. Replace transfer belt unit.
		1. Check if the contact between the transfer belt and drum is correct.	Re-mount the transfer belt unit.
8	LSU	1. The laser diode on the LSU APC PWB is out of control. 2. Check whether the internal mirrors are contaminated.	Replace the LSU. (Perform U119) (see page 1-3-76)
9	Engine PWB	The engine PWB is defective.	Replace the enging PWB. (see page 1-5-83)

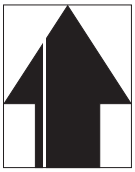
(4) The background is colored.

Print example	要因
	1. Toner is deteriorated in quality (under-charged). 2. Toner is over-supplied. 3. Developing bias is too high. 4. The layer of toner is too thick on the developing roller (too much toner). 5. The surface potential of the drum is too low (under low temperature environment).

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Developer unit	Executing U089 to generate PGs and check the following: (see page 1-3-64)	
		1. Check whether the device was being continuously operated with high density, under a hot environment.	If the device was being continuously operated with high density under a hot environment, perform developing refreshing. (System Menu >Adjustment / Maintenance)
		2. Check the value of the U140 developer bias. (see page 1-3-83)	If the density ID is too low at calibration, execute maintenance modes U464 Calibration and U410 Grascale Adjustment. (see page 1-3-175,1-3-151)
		3. Check contamination and deformation on the connecting terminals for developer bias.	If the connecting terminals for developer bias are dirty, clean.If the connecting terminals are deformed, correct for a proper conduction.
		4. Check the toner sensor output by U155. (see page 1-3-89)	If the toner sensor output obtained by U155 is 100 or less, replace the developer unit. (see page 1-5-56)
2	Toner supply motor	Check the toner supply motor is continuously rotating.Check wires for short-circuiting.	If the harnesses are short-circuited and the toner motor is continuously rotating, replace the toner supply motor.

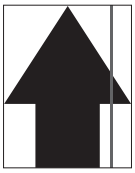
	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
3	Drum unit	1. Conduct U139 to check the internal temperature. (see page 1-3-82)	If the internal temperature is 16-degree C or less, continue printing until the temperature reaches 16-dgree C or higher.
		2. Check the value of the U100 main high voltage. (see page 1-3-69)	Fix the inner unit properly. (see page 1-5-53)
		3. Check that the ground terminal is not contaminated or the conductive grease is not applied with the connecting terminals.	If the connecting terminals are dirty, clean. If the amount of the grease applied is too small, apply conductive grease to the bearing on the receiver side of the drum drive axle. Replace the drum unit. (Perform U119)
		4. Check if the charging roller is dirty.	If the charging roller is dirty, clean.Or replace it. (Perform U930)(see page 1-3-196)
4	Transfer belt unit	1. Check if the belt is bleached on its surface. 2. Check the value of U140 MagDC after conducting calibration. 3. Check if the ground tab of the transfer belt unit is deformed.	1. If the connecting terminals are deformed, correct for a proper conduction. 2. If the value obtained by U106 does not conform to the default value, reset it to the default. 3. Increase the U140 MagDC value if the U140 MagDC value has not reached at its maximum even though the belt is bleached on its surface. 4. If the MagDC increased to its maximum won't cure, replace the transfer belt unit. (see page 1-5-65)
5	High-voltage PWB	The developing bias and charging current supplied by the high-voltage PWB is faulty.	Replace the high-voltage PWB. (see page 1-5-90)
6	Engine PWB	Defective the engine PWB	Replace the enging PWB. (see page 1-5-83)

(5) White streaks are printed vertically.

Print example	Cause of trouble
	1. Dirty LSU slit glass. 2. Foreign objects inside the developer unit. 3. Internal contamination 4. Dirty drum inside.

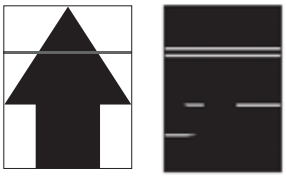
	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Developer unit	Executing U089 to generate PGs. (see page 1-3-64)	Replace the developer unit. (see page 1-5-56)
2	Light path between the LSU and the drum	Check if there are dusts, dirt, or toner obstructing the light paths.	If a foreign object exists on the frame or the sealings between the developer unit and the drum unit, remove.
3	Drum unit	Check if the charging roller is dirty.	If the charging roller is dirty,clean. Or replace it. (Perform U930) (see page 1-5-59)
		Check if the discharging lamp is dirty.	If the discharging lamp is dirty,clean.
4	LSU	Check if the LSU slit glass is dirty.	If the LSU slit glass is dirty, perform laser scanner cleaning.
5	Transfer belt unit	Check whether a white streak occurs at the same position as the smear on the transfer belt.	Clean the transfer belt if it is dirty. Replace the transfer belt unit. (see page 1-5-65)

(6) Black streaks appear longitudinally.

Print example	Cause of trouble
	1. Dirty charging roller 2. Flawed or dirty drum unit 3. Damaged or paper dust bitten cleaning blade

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Separation brush	Check if the separation brush is dirty with paper dusts and waste toner.	If the separation brush is dirty, clean it using a brush.
2	Drum unit	Check if drum is dirty on its surface.	Execute drum refreshing. (System Menu >Adjustment / Maintenance)
		1. Check if the drum has scratches. 2. Check whether the edge of the cleaning blade is damaged. 3. Check whether it is abraded or paper dusts are accumulated. 4. Check whether toner is accumulated in the cleaning section.	Replace the drum unit. (see page 1-5-57)
3	Charging roller unit	Check if there is no toner streaks on the surface of the charging roller.	If the charging roller has streaks on its surface, clean the charging roller. Replace the charging roller, if necessary. (Perform U930) (see page 1-3-196)
4	Fuser unit	Check if the paper separation puddle is contaminated with toner.	If the paper separation puddle is dirty, clean the paper separation puddle.
		Check the device is adjusted for a correct paper weight that matches the paper in use.	If the settings for paper weight and the paper being used do not match, make a proper configuration.
5	Eject guide	The Rib is contaminated with toner.	If it is duty,clean.

(7) Black or white streaks appear horizontally.

Print example	Cause of trouble
	1. Dirty developer unit or terminals 2. Flawed or dirty drum unit Improper grounding 3. Dirty transfer roller terminals

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Developer unit	1. Check the print image on paper has a problem at an interval equivalent to the circumference of the developing roller. 2. Check that the developing roller is dirty at its ends or at the developing bias tab.	1. If the ends of the developing roller and the connecting terminals for developer bias are dirty, clean. 2. Replace the developer unit. (see page 1-5-56)
2	Drum unit	1. Check the print image on paper has a problem at an interval equivalent to the circumference of the drum .	Execute drum refreshing. (System Menu >Adjustment / Maintenance)
		2. Check if the drum has scratches.	Replace the drum unit. (Perform U119) (see page 1-5-57)
		3. Check the grounding tab of the drum or the drum drive shaft.	1. Check how the inner unit is mounted, and correct, if necessary. 2. Replace the drum unit. (Perform U119) (see page 1-5-57)
3	Transfer belt unit	Check the print image that implies dirt, deformation, or scratches on the transfer belt, which will be appearing at an interval equal to its circumference .	If the print image has a problem, clean the transfer belt by a soft cloth.
		Check contamination and deformation on the terminals .	1. If the connecting terminals are deformed, correct for a proper conduction 2. Replace transfer belt unit.(see page 1-5-65)
4	Fuser unit	Check the print image on paper has a problem at an interval equivalent to the circumference of the fuser roller.	If the print image has a problem, clean the fuser roller.
5	High-voltage PWB	The bias voltage output supplied by the high-voltage PWB is not even.	Replace the high-voltage PWB. (see page 1-5-90)

(8) Uneven density longitudinally.

Print example	Cause of trouble
	1. Dirty LSU inside 2. The transfer belt is not pressed against the drum properly. 3. Drum condensation.

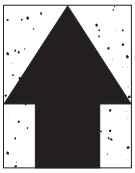
	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Transfer belt unit	Check that the transfer belt unit is properly fit.	1. If it is not fixed properly, fix it properly. 2. If the conveying unit has not been closed, check how the conveying guide is locked and open the conveying guide once, then close. 3. Replace the transfer belt unit. (see page 1-5-65)
2	Drum unit	1. Check toner is evenly layered on its surface. 2. Check whether the device has been operated under a highly humid environment.	1. Execute drum refreshing. 2. Selects the Dew Mode by U148 Drum Referesh Mode. (see page 1-3-88) 3. Install a cassette heater. 4. Replace the drum unit. (Perform U119) (see page 1-5-57)
3	Developer unit	Check that toner is evenly layered on the developing roller.	Replace the developer unit. (see page 1-5-56)
4	LSU	The emission of laser dispersed from the LSU is not even. (Mirror is dropped off inside.)	Replace the LSU.(Perform U119)

(9) Uneven density horizontally.

Print example	Cause of trouble
	1. Defective laser scanner unit. 2. Improper charging roller rotation 3. Improper contact on the developer unit terminals

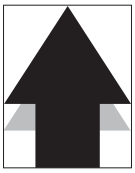
	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	LSU	Check the emission of laser is even.	Replace the LSU. (see page 1-5-49)
2	Charging roller	Check if the charing roller is improperly mounted.	1. Fix the charging roller properly. 2. Replace the charging roller. (Perform U930) (see page 1-5-59)
3	Developer unit	Check If the connecting terminals of the developing bias is contaminated by toner.	1. If the connecting terminals is dirty. 2. Replace the developer unit. (Perform U140) (see page 1-5-56)
4	Transfer belt unit.	Check if the transfer belt is contaminated on its surface or damaged.	1. Replace the transfer belt unit.
		Check if the cleaning bias connector or the connecting terminals of high voltage are dirty or deformed.	1. If the connector or terminals are dirty, clean.If the connecting terminals are deformed, correct for a proper conduction. 2. Replace the high-voltage PWB.
5	Fuser unit	Check that the roller, its driving unit, or the fusing pressure release mechanism is deformed, abraded, or damaged.	If the roller, its driving unit, or the fusing pressure release mechanism is deformed, abraded, or damaged, replace the fuser unit.

(10) Black dots appear on the image.

Print example	Cause of trouble
	1. Dirty charging roller 2. Flawed or dirty drum unit 3. Damaged or paper dust bitten cleaning blade

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Drum unit	Check the print image on paper has a problem at an interval equivalent to the circumference of the drum (126mm).	If the drum has scratches, replace the drum unit. (see page 1-5-57)
2	Charging roller	Check the print image on paper has a problem at an interval equivalent to the circumference of the charging roller (38mm).	A problem is observed at a constant interval of the charging roller (38 mm), replace the charging roller.(U930) (see page 1-3-196)
3	Developer unit	1. Check if that the developing bias is leaked.	Execute AC calibration by U140. (see page 1-3-83)
		2. Check the print image on paper has a problem at an interval equivalent to the circumference of the developing roller (39mm).	1. If the print image on paper has a problem at an interval equivalent to the circumference of the developer roller, clean the developer unit. 2. Replace the developer unit. (see page 1-5-36)
4	Transfer belt unit	Check if the transfer belt is contaminated on its surface or damaged.	Replace the transfer belt unit.
		Check the cleaning bias connector or the connecting terminals of high voltage are not dirty or deformed.	1. If the connector or terminals are dirty, clean.If the connecting terminals are deformed, correct for a proper conduction. 2. Replace the high-voltage circuit PWB.
5	Fuser unit	Check the print image on paper has a problem at an interval equivalent to the circumference of the fuser roller.	1. If the print image has a problem, clean the fuser roller. 2. If cleaning does not help improve the symptom, replace the fuser unit.

(11) Offset occurs.

Print example	Cause of trouble
	1. Flawed or dirty drum unit 2. Developing bias leakage.

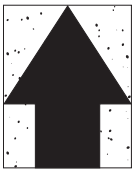
	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Paper	Check that the type of the paper used falls within the range of specifications. Check the settings of the type and weight of the paper.	1. If the type of the paper being used falls outside the requirements, replace and use a suitable type of paper. 2. If the settings made for the paper being used is inadequate, configure the settings according to the paper being used.
2	Drum unit	Check the print image on paper has a problem at an interval equivalent to the circumference of the drum (126mm).	If the print image on paper has a problem at an interval equivalent to the circumference of the drum, replace the drum unit. (see page 1-5-57
3	Developer unit	Check if offsets are observed at an constant interval of 39 mm, which is equivalent to the circumference of the developing roller.	If offsets are observed at an constant interval of 39 mm, which is equivalent to the circumference of the developing roller, replace the developer unit. (Waste toner is not properly sweeped from the developing roller.) (see page 1-5-56)
4	Fuser unit	Check the print image on paper has a problem at an interval equivalent to the circumference of the fuser roller.	If the fuser unit roller is dirty, replace the unit.
5	Fusing temperature setting	Check the fusing temperature value by U161. (see page 1-3-92)	If the fusing temperature value by U161 is not its default, reset it to the default.

(12) Image is partly missing.

Print example	Cause of trouble
	1. Flawed or dirty drum unit.

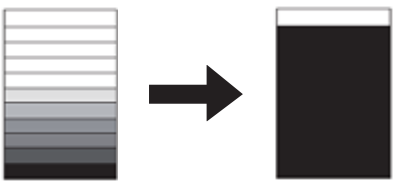
	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Paper	1. Check that the paper has moisture absorbed. 2. Check that the paper has stored in a humid place.	1. If the paper is damp, replace.Choose a dry place to store paper. 2. If necessary, install a cassette heater. (see page 1-2-72)
2	Drum unit	Check the print image on paper has a problem at an interval equivalent to the circumference of the drum (126mm)	If the print image on paper has a problem at an interval equivalent to the circumference of the drum, exexcute drum refreshing (System Menu > Adjustment/Maintenance).
3	Fusing temperature set-ting	Check the value of the U161. (see page 1-3-92)	1. Choose a paper weight appropriate for the weight of the paper actually being used, if the fusing temperature was set low using U161. 2. Perform U161 for an appropriate fusing temperature.

(13) Image is out of focus.

Print example	Cause of trouble
	1. Drum condensation. 2. Dirty LSU slit glass.

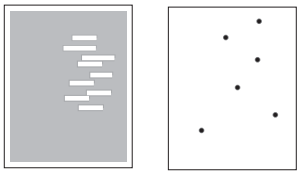
	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Paper	1. Check that the paper has moisture absorbed. 2. Check that the paper has stored in a humid place.	1. If the paper is damp, replace.Choose a dry place to store paper. 2. If necessary, install a cassette heater. (see page 1-2-72)
2	Drum unit	Check that the surface of the drum has dew condensation.	Execute Drum refreshing. System Menu > Adjustment/Maintenance
3	LSU	Check whether the LSU slit glass is contaminated in its entirety.	1. If the LSU slit glass is dirty, execute Laser scanner cleaning. 2. Replace the LSU. (Perform U119) (see page 1-5-49)

(14) Poor grayscale reproducibility.

Print example	Cause of trouble
	1. Poor image adjustment.

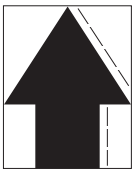
	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Image adjustment	Check if image adjustment is insufficient.	Execute U464 Calibration and U410 Grayscale Adjustment. (see page 1-3-175,1-3-151)

(15) Unevenly repeating horizontal streaks in the printed objects. Spots in the printed objects.

Print example	Cause of trouble
	1. Installation at a high altitude. 2. Using the paper with high surface resistance.

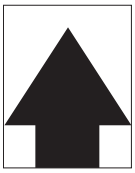
	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Developer unit	The device is installed in an altitude higher than 1500 m sea level.	If the device is installed in an altitude greater than 1500 m sea level, perform the following. 1. Press maintenance mode U140 and execute “AC Calib” and “Calibration” . 2. Execute maintenance mode U140 and select “AC Calib”, later “Maginification” in order to lower the setting value. (Initial setting K:12).(see page 1-3-83)
2	Paper	Check if paper is of high surface resistance.	Change the paper to another.

(16) Image is blurred (Shifted transferring).

Print example	Cause of trouble
	1. The paper used does not conform to the requirement. 2. Imbalanced fuser unit pressures.

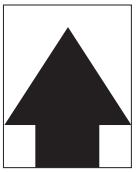
	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Paper	1. Check that the type of the paper used falls within the range of specifications. 2. Check the settings of the type and weight of the paper.	1. If the type of the paper being used falls outside the requirements, replace and use a suitable type of paper. 2. If the settings made for the paper being used is inadequate, configure the settings according to the paper being used.
2	Fuser unit	1. Check the fuser pressure balance. 2. Check if the fuser paper-inserting guide is deformed.	1. If the pressures at the front and rear are unbalanced, replace the fuser unit. (see page 1-5-67) 2. If the fuser unit is deformed, replace. (see page 1-5-67)
3	Paper conveying motor	Check to see if the driving mechanism for paper conveying is operative without a hinderance.	If the drive does not operate normally, apply grease.
4	Paper conveying guide	The paper conveying guide is deformed.	If the paper conveying guide is deformed, replace the paper conveying guide.

(17) The leading edge of the image is consistently misaligned with the original.

Print example	Cause of trouble
	1. Improperly adjusted leading edge timing. 2. Improper amount of slack of the original document in front of the registration.

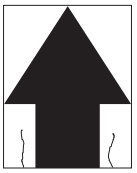
	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Regist roller	1. Check whether the leading-edge timing is adequately adjusted.	If theadjustment is not sufficient, execute U034 to adjust the leading edge timing. (see page 1-3-36)
		2. Check whether the amount of slack of the original document when it reaches at the DP regist is adequate.	If the amount of the slack in front of the regist roller is insufficient, execute U051 to optimize the slack. (see page 1-3-42)

(18) The leading edge of the image is sporadically misaligned with the original.

Print example


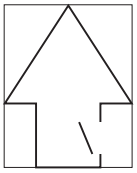
	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Paper feed clutch, Middle clutch, Registration clutch, Duplex clutch	Check that the clutches are properly fit.IOr, check they are operative without a hinderance. (35 ppm model)	1. If it is not fixed properly, fix it properly. 2. If it does not operate without a hinderance, replace the clutch.
2	Paper feed clutch, Middle motor, Registration motor, Duplex motor	Check that the clutches and motors are properly fit.Or, check they are operative without a hinderance. (45 ppm/ 55 ppm model)	1. If it is not fixed properly, fix it properly. 2. If it does not operate without a hinderance, replace the clutch or motor.

(19) Paper is wrinkled.

Print example


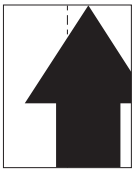
	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Paper-width guides	Check the paper-width guides are flush with the paper.	If the width adjuster cursors are not flush with paper, set them correctly.
2	Paper	1. Check if paper is curled or wavy. 2. Check if paper is stored in a humid place.	1. If the paper is curled or wavy, replace. 2. Choose a dry place to store paper.
3	Regist roller	The pressures at the front and back springs are unbalanced.	Replace the spring with the one having a correct pressure.
4	Fuser unit	The pressuring spring of the fuser unit is defective.	Replace the fuser unit. (see page 1-5-67)

(20) Fusing is loose.

Print example


	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Paper	1. Check that the type of the paper used falls within the range of specifications. 2. Check the settings of the type and weight of the paper.	1. If the type of the paper being used falls outside the requirements, replace and use a suitable type of paper. 2. If the settings made for the paper being used is inadequate, configure the settings according to the paper being used.
2	Paper weight setting	Check If the weight of the paper is correctly set.	If the weight of the paper is not correctly set, choose the correct weight that matches the paper being used.
3	Fuser unit	Check the fuser pressure setting.	Replace the fuser unit. (see page 1-5-67)
4	Fusing temperature setting	Check the value of the U161. (see page 1-3-92)	1. Choose a paper weight appropriate for the weight of the paper actually being used, if the fusing temperature was set low using U161. 2. Perform U161 for an appropriate fusing temperature.

(21) Image center does not align with the original center.

Print example


	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Paper setting	Check if paper is set correctly.	Reload paper if the paper was not loaded correctly.
2	Image position adjustment	Execute U034 to check the center alignment during writing images.	Perform adjustment if the value of U034 Center Line Adjustment is inadequate. (see page 1-3-36)

(22) Dirty paper edges with toner.

Print example	Cause of trouble
	1. Toner scattering due to an internal temperature increase.(Developer unit)

	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Conveying guide	Check if the conveying guide is dirty with toner.	If the conveying guide is dirty with toner, clean the developer unit and the cooling ducts.
2	Internal temperature increase (Developer unit)	Check the device has been used for printing a large amount of data or for printing in duplex mode with a high density.	If the device has been used for printing a large amout of data or for printing in duplex mode with a high density, clean the developer unit.

(23) Dirty reverse side of paper.

Print example


	Defective part	Check description	Corrective Action
1	Conveying guide	Check if the conveying guide is dirty with toner.	If the conveying guide is dirty with toner, clean the conveying guide, the developer unit and the cooling ducts.
2	Fuser pressure roller	Check that a foreign object is stuck on the fuser pressure roller.	1. If a foreign object exists, clean the fuser pressure roller. 2. If the paper and the paper weight setting do not match, choose the proper paper weight setting.
3	Transfer belt unit	Check if the transfer belt is dirty with toner on its surface.	1. Clean the transfer belt. 2. Reset U106 Bias settings to its default.

1-4-7 Electric problems

If the part causing the problem was not supplied, use the unit including the part for replacement.
Troubleshooting to each failure must be in the order of the numbered symptoms.

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(1) The machine does not operate when the main power switch is turned on.	1. No electricity at the power outlet.	Measure the input voltage.
	2. The power cord is not plugged in properly.	Check the contact between the power plug and the outlet.
	3. Broken power cord.	Check for continuity. If none, replace the cord.
	4. Defective main power switch.	Check for continuity across the contacts. If none, replace the main power switch.
	5. Defective power source PWB.	Replace the power source PWB (see page 1-5-87).
(2) MP lift motor does not operate.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. MP lift motor and relay PWB (YC3) Relay PWB (YC12) and feed PWB 1 (YC17) Feed PWB 1 (YC1) and engine PWB (YC6)
	2. Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushes and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
	3. Defective motor.	Replace the MP lift motor.
	4. Defective PWB.	Replace the relay PWB, feed PWB 1 or engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-83).
(3) Scanner motor does not operate.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. Scanner motor and ISC PWB (YC5) ISC PWB (YC3) and main PWB (YC11)
	2. Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushes and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
	3. Defective motor.	Replace the scanner motor.
	4. Defective PWB.	Replace the ISC PWB or main PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-74).
(4) Registration motor does not operate.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. Registration motor and feed PWB 1 (YC25) Feed PWB 1 (YC2) and engine PWB (YC5)
	2. Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushes and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
	3. Defective motor.	Replace the registration motor.
	4. Defective PWB.	Replace the feed PWB 1 or engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-83).

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(5) Middle motor does not operate.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. Middle motor and feed PWB 2 (YC7) Feed PWB 2 (YC1) and engine PWB (YC4)
	2. Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushes and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
	3. Defective motor.	Replace the middle motor.
	4. Defective PWB.	Replace the feed PWB 2 or engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-83).
(6) Eject motor does not operate.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. Eject motor and front PWB (YC4) Front PWB (YC3) and engine PWB (YC7)
	2. Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushes and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
	3. Defective motor.	Replace the eject motor.
	4. Defective PWB.	Replace the front PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-83).
(7) Duplex motor 1 does not operate.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. Duplex motor 1 and relay PWB (YC16) Relay PWB (YC13) and feed PWB 1 (YC23) Feed PWB 1 (YC2) and engine PWB (YC5)
	2. Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushes and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
	3. Defective motor.	Replace the duplex motor 1.
	4. Defective PWB.	Replace the relay PWB, feed PWB 1 or engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-83).
(8) Duplex motor 2 does not operate.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. Duplex motor 2 and relay PWB (YC7) Relay PWB (YC1) and feed PWB 1 (YC14) Feed PWB 1 (YC1) and engine PWB (YC6)
	2. Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushes and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
	3. Defective motor.	Replace the duplex motor 2.
	4. Defective PWB.	Replace the relay PWB, feed PWB 1 or engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-83).

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(9) BR conveying motor 1 does not operate.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. BR conveying motor 1 and BR main PWB (YC7) BR main PWB (YC3) and engine PWB (YC20)
	2. Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushes and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
	3. Defective motor.	Replace the BR conveying motor 1.
	4. Defective PWB.	Replace the BR main PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-83).
(10) BR conveying motor 2 does not operate.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. BR conveying motor 2 and BR main PWB (YC7) BR main PWB (YC3) and engine PWB (YC20)
	2. Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushes and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
	3. Defective motor.	Replace the BR conveying motor 2.
	4. Defective PWB.	Replace the BR main PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-83).
(11) JS eject motor does not operate.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. JS eject motor and JS main PWB (YC2) JS main PWB (YC1)and feed PWB 1 (YC20) Feed PWB 1 (YC1) and engine PWB (YC6)
	2. Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushes and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
	3. Defective motor.	Replace the JS eject motor.
	4. Defective PWB.	Replace the JS main PWB, feed PWB 1 or engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-83).
(12) Toner fan motor does not operate.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. Toner fan motor and engine PWB (YC19)
	2. Defective motor.	Replace the toner fan motor.
	3. Defective PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-83).

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(13) Developer fan motor 1, 2 does not operate.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. Developer fan motor 1, 2 and front PWB (YC5) Front PWB (YC3) and engine PWB (YC7)
	2. Defective motor.	Replace the developer fan motor 1 or 2.
	3. Defective PWB.	Replace the front PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-83).
(14) Exhaust fan motor 1, 2, 3 does not operate.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. Exhaust fan motor 1, 2, 3 and engine PWB (YC19)
	2. Defective motor.	Replace the exhaust fan motor 1, 2 or 3.
	3. Defective PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-83).
(15) LSU fan motor does not operate.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. LSU fan motor and front PWB (YC8) Front PWB (YC2) and engine PWB (YC8)
	2. Defective motor.	Replace the LSU fan motor.
	3. Defective PWB.	Replace the front PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-83).
(16) Fuser fan motor 1, 2 does not operate.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. Fuser fan motor 1, 2 and relay PWB (YC16) Relay PWB (YC13) and feed PWB 1 (YC23) Feed PWB 1 (YC2) and engine PWB (YC5)
	2. Defective motor.	Replace the fuser fan motor 1 or 2.
	3. Defective PWB.	Replace the relay PWB, feed PWB 1 or engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-83).
(17) Eject fan motor 1, 2 does not operate.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. Relay PWB (YC13) and feed PWB 1 (YC23) Feed PWB 1 (YC2) and engine PWB (YC5)
	2. Defective motor.	Replace the eject fan motor 1 or 2.
	3. Defective PWB.	Replace the relay PWB, feed PWB 1 or engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-83).
(18) Eject front fan motor does not operate.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. Eject front fan motor and front PWB (YC11) Front PWB (YC2) and engine PWB (YC8)
	2. Defective motor.	Replace the eject front fan motor.
	3. Defective PWB.	Replace the front PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-83).

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(19) Eject rear fan motor does not operate.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. Eject rear fan motor and feed PWB 1 (YC19) Feed PWB 1 (YC1) and engine PWB (YC6)
	2. Defective motor.	Replace the eject rear fan motor.
	3. Defective PWB.	Replace the feed PWB 1 or engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-83).
(20) Duplex fan motor does not operate.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. Duplex fan motor and relay PWB (YC8) Relay PWB (YC1) and engine PWB (YC14)
	2. Defective motor.	Replace the duplex fan motor.
	3. Defective PWB.	Replace the relay PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-83).
(21) Power source fan motor does not operate.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. Power source fan motor and engine PWB (YC22)
	2. Defective motor.	Replace the power source fan motor.
	3. Defective PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-83).
(22) Controller fan motor does not operate.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. Controller fan motor and main PWB (YC23)
	2. Defective motor.	Replace the controller fan motor.
	3. Defective PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-74).
(23) Bridge fan motor does not operate.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. Bridge fan motor and engine PWB (YC26)
	2. Defective motor.	Replace the bridge fan motor.
	3. Defective PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-83).
(24) Paper feed clutch 1, 2 does not operate.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. Paper feed clutch 1, 2 and feed PWB 2 (YC4) Feed PWB 2 (YC1) and engine PWB (YC4)
	2. Defective clutch.	Replace the paper feed clutch 1 or 2.
	3. Defective PWB.	Replace the feed PWB 2 or engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-83).

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(25) Assist clutch 1, 2 does not operate.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. Assist clutch 1 and feed PWB 2 (YC10) Assist clutch 2 and feed PWB 2 (YC12) Feed PWB 2 (YC1) and engine PWB (YC4)
	2. Defective clutch.	Replace the assist clutch 1 or 2.
	3. Defective PWB.	Replace the feed PWB 2 or engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-83).
(26) Paper conveying clutch does not operate.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. Paper conveying clutch and feed PWB 2 (YC5) Feed PWB 2 (YC1) and engine PWB (YC4)
	2. Defective clutch.	Replace the paper conveying clutch.
	3. Defective PWB.	Replace the feed PWB 2 or engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-83).
(27) MP paper feed clutch does not operate.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. MP paper feed clutch and relay PWB (YC3) Relay PWB (YC12) and feed PWB 1 (YC17) Feed PWB 1 (YC1) and engine PWB (YC6)
	2. Defective clutch.	Replace the MP paper feed clutch.
	3. Defective PWB.	Replace the relay PWB, feed PWB 1 or engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-83).
(28) PF paper feed clutch 1, 2 does not operate.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. PF paper feed clutch 1, 2 and PF main PWB (YC15)
	2. Defective clutch.	Replace the PF paper feed clutch 1 or 2.
	3. Defective PWB.	Replace the PF main PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-100).
(29) PF paper conveying clutch 1, 2, 3 does not operate.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. PF paper conveying clutch 1 and PF main PWB (YC5) PF paper conveying clutch 2, 3 and PF main PWB (YC15)
	2. Defective clutch.	Replace the PF paper conveying clutch 1, 2 or 3.
	3. Defective PWB.	Replace the PF main PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-100).
(30) Feedshift solenoid does not operate.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. Feedshift and front PWB (YC5) Front PWB (YC3) and engine PWB (YC7)
	2. Defective solenoid.	Replace the feedshift solenoid 1 or 2.
	3. Defective PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-83).

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(31) Cleaning solenoid does not operate.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. Cleaning solenoid and relay PWB (YC4) Relay PWB (YC12) and feed PWB 1 (YC17) Feed PWB 1 (YC2) and engine PWB (YC5)
	2. Defective solenoid.	Replace the cleaning solenoid.
	3. Defective PWB.	Replace the relay PWB, feed PWB 1 or engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-83).
(32) BR feedshift solenoid does not operate.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. BR feedshift solenoid and engine PWB (YC20)
	2. Defective solenoid.	Replace the BR feedshift solenoid.
	3. Defective PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-83).
(33) JS feedshift solenoid does not operate.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. JS feedshift solenoid and JS main PWB (YC2) JS main PWB (YC1) and feed PWB 1 (YC20) Feed PWB 1 (YC1) and engine PWB (YC6)
	2. Defective solenoid.	Replace the JS feedshift solenoid.
	3. Defective PWB.	Replace the JS main PWB, feed PWB 1 or engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-83).
(34) The message requesting paper to be loaded is shown when paper is present on the cassette 1, 2.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. Paper sensor 1, 2 and feed PWB 2 (YC8) Feed PWB 2 (YC1) and engine PWB (YC4)
	2. Deformed actuator.	Check visually and replace if necessary.
	3. Defective sensor.	Replace the paper sensor 1 or 2.
	4. Defective PWB.	Replace the feed PWB 2 or engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-83).
(35) The message requesting paper to be loaded is shown when paper is present on the cassette 3, 4.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. PF paper feed sensor 1 and PF main PWB (YC5) PF paper feed sensor 2 and PF main PWB (YC4)
	2. Deformed actuator.	Check visually and replace if necessary.
	3. Defective sensor.	Replace the PFpaper feed sensor 1 or 2.
	4. Defective PWB.	Replace the PF main PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-100).

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(36) The message requesting paper to be loaded is shown when paper is present on the MP tray.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. MP paper sensor and relay PWB (YC3) Relay PWB (YC12) and feed PWB 1 (YC17) Feed PWB 1 (YC1)and engine PWB (YC6)
	2. Deformed actuator.	Check visually and replace if necessary.
	3. Defective sensor.	Replace the MP paper sensor.
	4. Defective PWB.	Replace the feed PWB 1 or engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-83).
(37) The size of paper on the cassette 1, 2 is not displayed correctly.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. Paper length switch 1, 2 and feed PWB 2 (YC3) Paper width switch 1, 2 and feed PWB 2 (YC3) Feed PWB 2 (YC1) and engine PWB (YC4)
	2. Defective switch.	Replace the paper length switch 1, 2 or paper width switch 1, 2.
	3. Defective PWB.	Replace the feed PWB 2 or engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-83).
(38) The size of paper on the cassette 3, 4 is not displayed correctly.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. PF size detection switch 1 and PF main PWB (YC3) PF size detection switch 2 and PF main PWB (YC6)
	2. Defective switch.	Replace the PF size detection switch 1, 2.
	3. Defective PWB.	Replace the PF main PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-100).
(39) The size of paper on the MP tray is not displayed correctly.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. MP paper length switch and relay PWB (YC2) MP paper width switch and relay PWB (YC2) Relay PWB (YC12) and feed PWB 1 (YC17) Feed PWB 1 (YC1)and engine PWB (YC6)
	2. Defective switch.	Replace the MP paper length switch or MP paper width switch.
	3. Defective PWB.	Replace the relay PWB, feed PWB 1 or engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-83).

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(40) A paper jam in the paper feed, paper conveying, feed-shift or eject sections is indicated when the main power switch is turned on.	1. A piece of paper torn from paper is caught around feed sensor 1, 2, MP feed sensor, middle sensor, paper conveying sensor, registration sensor, loop sensor, fuser eject sensor, duplex sensor 1, 2, eject sensor, switchback sensor, PF feed sensor 1, 2, PF paper conveying sensor 1, 2, 3, BR conveying sensor 1, 2, BR eject sensor or JS eject sensor.	Check visually and remove it, if any.
	2. Defective sensor.	Replace the feed sensor 1, 2, MP feed sensor, middle sensor, paper conveying sensor, registration sensor, loop sensor, fuser eject sensor, duplex sensor 1, 2, eject sensor, switchback sensor, PF feed sensor 1, 2, PF paper conveying sensor 1, 2, 3, BR conveying sensor 1, 2, BR eject sensor or JS eject sensor.
(41) A message indicating cover open is displayed when the front upper cover is closed.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. Front cover switch and front PWB (YC8) Front PWB (YC2) and engine PWB (YC8)
	2. Defective switch.	Replace the front cover switch.
(42) A message indicating unit open is displayed when the paper conveying unit is closed.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. Paper conveying unit switch and feed PWB 1 (YC15) Feed PWB 1 (YC4) and power source PWB (YC12)
	2. Defective switch.	Replace the paper conveying unit switch.
(43) A message indicating cover open is displayed when the duplex cover is closed.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. Duplex cover switch and relay PWB (YC7) Relay PWB (YC1) and feed PWB 1 (YC14) Feed PWB 1 (YC1)and engine PWB (YC6)
	2. Defective switch.	Replace the duplex cover switch.
(44) A message indicating cover open is displayed when the paper conveying cover is closed.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. Paper conveying cover switch and feed PWB 2 (YC6) Feed PWB 2 (YC1) and power source PWB (YC4)
	2. Defective switch.	Replace the paper conveying cover switch.

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(45) A message indicating unit open is displayed when the PF paper conveying unit is closed.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. PF paper conveying unit switch and PF main PWB (YC14)
	2. Defective switch.	Replace the PF paper conveying unit switch.
(46) A message indicating cover open is displayed when the PF paper conveying cover is closed.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. PF paper conveying cover switch and PF main PWB (YC5)
	2. Defective switch.	Replace the PF paper conveying cover switch.
(47) A message indicating unit open is displayed when the bridge conveying unit is closed.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. BR conveying unit switch and BR main PWB (YC6) BR main PWB (YC3) and engine PWB (YC20)
	2. Defective switch.	Replace the BR conveying unit switch.
(48) A message indicating cover open is displayed when the bridge eject cover is closed.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. BR eject cover switch and engine PWB (YC20)
	2. Defective switch.	Replace the BR eject cover switch.
(49) DP feed motor does not operate.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. DP feed motor and DP main PWB (YC5)
	2. Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushes and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
	3. Defective motor.	Replace the DP feed motor.
	4. Defective PWB.	Replace the DP main PWB and check for correct operation.
(50) DP registration motor does not operate.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. DP registration motor and DP main PWB (YC5)
	2. Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushes and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
	3. Defective motor.	Replace the DP registration motor.
	4. Defective PWB.	Replace the DP main PWB and check for correct operation.

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(51) DP conveying motor does not operate.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. DP conveying motor and DP main PWB (YC14)
	2. Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushes and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
	3. Defective motor.	Replace the DP conveying motor.
	4. Defective PWB.	Replace the DP main PWB and check for correct operation.
(52) DP eject motor does not operate.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. DP eject motor and DP main PWB (YC14)
	2. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushes and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
	3. Defective motor.	Replace the DP eject motor.
	4. Defective PWB.	Replace the DP main PWB and check for correct operation.
(53) DP fan motor 1 does not operate.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. DP fan motor 1 and DP main PWB (YC7)
	2. Defective fan motor.	Replace the DP fan motor 1.
	3. Defective PWB.	Replace the DP main PWB and check for correct operation.
(54) DP fan motor 2 does not operate.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. DP fan motor 2 and DP main PWB (YC8)
	2. Defective fan motor.	Replace the DP fan motor 2.
	3. Defective PWB.	Replace the DP main PWB and check for correct operation.
(55) An original jams when the main power switch is turned on.	1. A piece of paper torn from an original is caught around the DP feed sensor, DP CIS sensor, DP timing sensor, DP eject sensor.	Check visually and remove it, if any.
	2. Defective sensor.	Replace the DP feed sensor, DP CIS sensor, DP timing sensor or DP eject sensor.

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(56) The LED lamp does not turn on when an original is present on the DP.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. DP original sensor and DP main PWB (YC2) DP LED PWB and DP main PWB (YC4_B)
	2. Defective sensor.	Replace the DP original sensor.
	3. Defective PWB.	Replace the DP LED PWB or DP main PWB and check for correct operation.
(57) The size of the original on the DP is not displayed correctly.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. DP original width switch and DP main PWB (YC2) DP original length switch and DP main PWB (YC2)
	2. Defective switch.	Replace the DP original width switch or DP original length switch.
	3. Defective PWB.	Replace the DP main PWB and check for correct operation.
(58) A message indicating the cover is open is displayed when the DP top cover is closed.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. DP interlock switch and DP main PWB (YC6)
	2. Defective switch.	Replace the DP interlock switch.
(59) The table is scanned when DP is closed and the original is set.	1. Defective connector cable or poor contact in the connector.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, replace the cable. DP open/close switch and DP main PWB (YC4_B)
	2. Defective DP shutting.	Check the hinges and DP reading guide.
	3. Defective switch.	Replace the DP open/close switch.
	4. Defective PWB.	Replace the DP main PWB and check for correct operation.

1-4-8 Mechanical problems

If the part causing the problem was not supplied, use the unit including the part for replacement.

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(1) No primary paper feed.	Check if the surfaces of the following rollers are dirty with paper powder. Forwarding pulley Paper feed pulley MP paper feed pulley PF forwarding pulley PF paper feed pulley	Clean with isopropyl alcohol.
	Check if the following rollers is deformed. Forwarding pulley Paper feed pulley MP paper feed pulley PF forwarding pulley PF paper feed pulley	Check visually and replace any deformed (see page 1-5-21, 1-5-24, 1-5-26,1-5-32).
	Defective paper feed clutch 1, 2, MP paper feed clutch or PF paper feed clutch 1, 2 installation.	Check visually and remedy if necessary.
(2) No secondary paper feed.	Check if the surfaces of the following rollers are dirty with paper powder. Right registration roller Left registration roller	Clean with isopropyl alcohol.
	Defective registration motor installation.	Check visually and remedy if necessary.
(3) Skewed paper feed.	Paper width guide in a cassette installed incorrectly.	Check the paper width guide visually and remedy or replace if necessary.
(4) Multiple sheets of paper are fed.	Check if the paper is excessively curled.	Change the paper.
	Paper is loaded incorrectly.	Load the paper correctly.
	Check if the separation pulley is worn.	Replace the separation pulley if it is worn (see page 1-5-21, 1-5-24, 1-5-26).
(5) Paper jams.	Check if the paper is excessively curled.	Change the paper.
	Check if the contact between the right and left registration rollers is correct.	Check visually and remedy if necessary.
	Check if the heat roller or press roller is extremely dirty or deformed.	Check visually and replace the fuser unit (see page 1-5-67).
	Check if the contact between the PF feed roller 1, 2 and PF feed pulleys is correct.	Check visually and remedy if necessary.
(6) Toner drops on the paper conveying path.	Check if the drum unit or developer unit is extremely dirty.	Clean the drum unit or developer unit.

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(7) Abnormal noise is heard.	Check if the rollers, pulleys and gears operate smoothly.	Grease the bushes and gears.
	Check if the following clutches are installed correctly. Paper feed clutch 1, 2 Assist clutch 1, 2 Paper conveying clutch MP paper feed clutch PF paper feed clutch 1, 2 PF paper conveying clutch 1, 2, 3	Check visually and remedy if necessary.
(8) No primary original feed.	Check if the surfaces of the following pulleys are dirty with paper powder. DP forwarding pulley DP feed belt	Clean with isopropyl alcohol.
	Check if the following pulleys is deformed. DP forwarding pulley DP original feed belt	Check visually and replace any deformed (see page 1-5-115).
(9) Multiple sheets of original are fed.	Original is not correctly set.	Set the original correctly.
	Check if the DP separation pulley is worn.	Replace the DP separation pulley if it is worn (see page 1-5-119).
(10) Originals jam.	Originals being used do not conform with the specifications.	Use only originals conforming to the specifications.
	Check if the surfaces of the following pulleys are dirty with paper powder. DP forwarding pulley DP feed belt	Clean with isopropyl alcohol.
	Check if the contact between the DP registration roller and DP registration pulley is correct.	Check visually and remedy if necessary.
	Check if the contact between the DP upper conveying roller and DP conveying pulley is correct.	Check visually and remedy if necessary.
	Check if the contact between the DP left conveying roller and DP conveying pulley is correct.	Check visually and remedy if necessary.
	Check if the contact between the DP right conveying roller and DP conveying pulley is correct.	Check visually and remedy if necessary.
	Check if the contact between the DP eject roller and DP eject pulley is correct.	Check visually and remedy if necessary.

1-4-9 Send error code

This section describes the scanning errors and descriptions, preventive actions, as well as corrective actions.
Error codes not described here could fall within software errors.
If such an error is encountered, turn power off then on, and advise the service representative.

(1) Scan to SMB error codes

Code	Contents	Check procedures/corrective measures
1101	Host destined does not exist on the network.	1. Confirm destined host. 2. Confirm device's network parameters. 3. Confirm the network parameters the device is connected.
1102	Login to the host has failed.	1. Confirm user name and password. 2. Confirm the network parameters the device is connected. 3. Check the host if the folder is properly shared.
1103	Destined host, folder, and/or file names are invalid.	1. Check illegal characters are not contained within these names. 2. Check the name of the folder and files conform with the naming syntax. 3. Confirm destined host and folder.
1105	SMB protocol is not enabled.	1. Confirm device's SMB protocols.
2101	Login to the host has failed.	1. Confirm destined host. 2. Confirm that the LAN cable is properly connected to the device. 3. Check the SMB port number. 4. Confirm device's network parameters. 5. Confirm the network parameters the device is connected.
2201	Writing scanned data has failed.	1. Check the scanning file name. 2. Confirm device's network parameters. 3. Confirm the network parameters the device is connected.
2203	No response from the host during a certain period of time.	1. Confirm the network parameters the device is connected. 2. Confirm that the LAN cable is properly connected to the device.

(2) Scan to FTP error codes

Code	Contents	Check procedures/corrective measures
1101	FTP server does not exist on the network.	1. Check the FTP server name. 2. Confirm device's network parameters. 3. Confirm the network parameters the device is connected.
1102	Login to the FTP server has failed.	1. Confirm user name and password. 2. Check the FTP server name.
1103	Destined folder is invalid.	1. Check illegal characters are not contained within these names. 2. Check the FTP server name.
1105	FTP protocol is not enabled.	1. Confirm device's FTP protocols.
1131	Initializing TLS has failed.	1. Confirm device's security parameters.
1132	TLS negotiation has failed.	1. Confirm device's security parameters. 2. Check the FTP server name.
2101	Access to the FTP server has failed.	1. Check the FTP server name. 2. Confirm that the LAN cable is properly connected to the device. 3. Check the FTP port number. 4. Confirm device's network parameters. 5. Confirm the network parameters the device is connected. 6. Check the FTP server name.
2102	Access to the FTP server has failed. (Connection timeout)	1. Check the FTP server name. 2. Check the FTP port number. 3. Confirm device's network parameters. 4. Confirm the network parameters the device is connected. 5. Check the FTP server name.
2103	The server cannot establish communication.	1. Check the FTP server name. 2. Check the FTP port number. 3. Confirm device's network parameters. 4. Confirm the network parameters the device is connected. 5. Check the FTP server name.
2201	Connection with the FTP server has failed.	1. Confirm device's network parameters. 2. Confirm the network parameters the device is connected. 3. Confirm destined folder. 4. Check the FTP server name.
2202	Connection with the FTP server has failed. (Timeout)	1. Confirm device's network parameters. 2. Confirm the network parameters the device is connected.
2203	No response from the server during a certain period of time.	1. Confirm device's network parameters. 2. Confirm the network parameters the device is connected.

Code	Contents	Check procedures/corrective measures
2231	Connection with the FTP server has failed. (FTPS communication)	1. Confirm device's network parameters. 2. Confirm the network parameters the device is connected.
3101	FTP server responded with an error.	1. Confirm device's network parameters. 2. Confirm the network parameters the device is connected. 3. Check the FTP server.

(3) Scan to E-mail error codes

Code	Contents	Check procedures/corrective measures
1101	SMTP/POP3 server does not exist on the network.	1. Check the SMTP/POP3 server name. 2. Confirm device's network parameters. 3. Confirm the network parameters the device is connected.
1102	Login to the SMTP/POP3 server has failed.	1. Confirm user name and password. 2. Check the SMTP/POP3 server.
1104	The domain the destined address belongs is prohibited by scanning restriction.	1. Confirm device's SMTP parameters.
1105	SMTP protocol is not enabled.	1. Confirm device's SMTP protocols.
1106	Sender’s address is not specified.	1. Confirm device's SMTP protocols.
2101	Connection to the SMTP/POP3 server has failed.	1. Check the SMTP/POP3 server name. 2. Confirm that the LAN cable is properly connected to the device. 3. Check the SMTP/POP3 port number. 4. Confirm device's network parameters. 5. Confirm the network parameters the device is connected. 6. Check the SMTP/POP3 server.
2102	Connection to the SMTP/POP3 server has failed. (Connection timeout)	1. Check the SMTP/POP3 server name. 2. Check the SMTP/POP3 port number. 3. Confirm device's network parameters. 4. Confirm the network parameters the device is connected. 5. Check the SMTP/POP3 server.
2103	The server cannot establish communication.	1. Check the SMTP/POP3 server name. 2. Check the SMTP/POP3 port number. 3. Confirm device's network parameters. 4. Confirm the network parameters the device is connected. 5. Check the SMTP/POP3 server.
2201	Connection to the SMTP/POP3 server has failed.	1. Confirm device's network parameters. 2. Confirm the network parameters the device is connected.

Code	Contents	Check procedures/corrective measures
2202	Connection to the SMTP/POP3 server has failed. (Timeout)	1. Confirm device's network parameters. 2. Confirm the network parameters the device is connected.
2204	The size of scanning exceeded its limit.	1. Confirm device's network parameters.
3101	SMTP/POP3 server responded with an error.	1. Confirm device's network parameters. 2. Confirm the network parameters the device is connected. 3. Check the SMTP/POP3 server.
3102	Error: Server Response.	1. Check the SMTP/POP3 server. 2. Wait a minute and trye again.
3201	No SMTP authentication is found.	1. Check the SMTP server. The device supports SMTP authentication services including CRAM-MD5, DIGEST-MD5, PLAIN and LOGIN.
4803	Failed to establish the SSL session.	1. Verify the self certificate of the device. 2. Check the server certificate of the SMTP/POP3 server. 3. Check the SMTP/POP3 configuration of the device and the SMTP/POP3 server.

1-4-10 Error codes

(1) Error code

Error codes are listed on the communication reports, activity report, etc. The codes consist of an error code indication U followed by a 5-digit number. (Error codes for V34 communication errors start with an E indication, followed by five digits.)
The upper three of the five digits indicate general classification of the error and its cause, while the lower two indicate the detailed classification. Items for which detailed classification is not necessary have 00 as the last two digits.

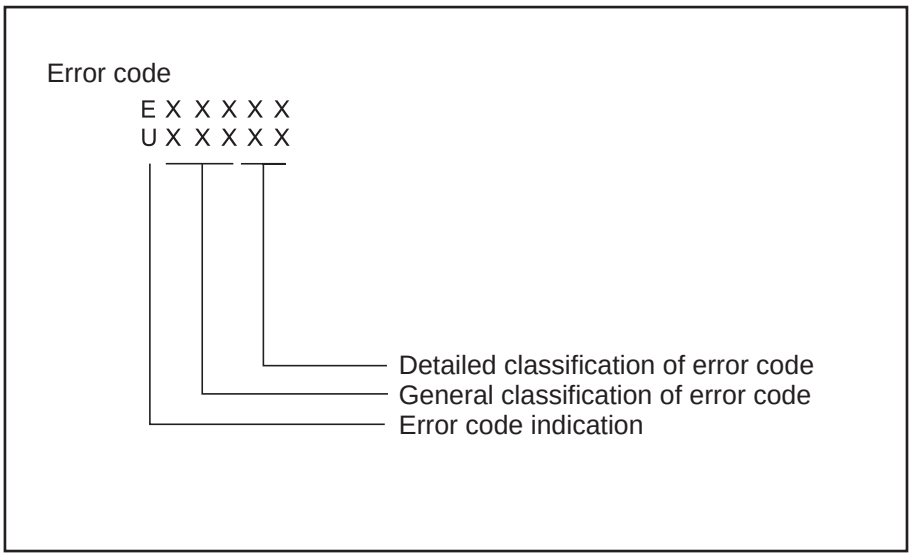


Figure 1-4-6

(2) Table of general classification

Error code	Description
U00000/E00000	No response or busy after the set number of redials.
U00100/E00100	Transmission was interrupted by a press of the stop/clear key.
U00200/E00200	Reception was interrupted by a press of the stop/clear key.
U00300/E00300	Recording paper on the destination unit has run out during transmission.
U004XX/E004XX	A connection was made but interrupted during handshake with the receiver unit (refer to P.1-4-248 U004XX error code table).
U006XX/E006XX	Communication was interrupted because of a machine problem (refer to P.1-4-248 U006XX error code table).
U00700/E00700	Communication was interrupted because of a problem in the destination unit.
U008XX/E008XX	A page transmission error occurred in G3 mode (refer to P.1-4-248 U008XX error code table).
U009XX/E009XX	A page reception error occurred in G3 mode (refer to P.1-4-248 U009XX error code table).
U010XX/E010XX	Transmission in G3 mode was interrupted by a signal error (refer to P.1-4-249 U010XX error code table).
U011XX/E011XX	Reception in G3 mode was interrupted by a signal error (refer to P.1-4-250 U011XX error code table).
U01400/E01400	An invalid one-touch key was specified during communication.
U01500/E01500	A communication error occurred when calling in V.8 mode.
U01600/E01600	A communication error occurred when called in V.8 mode.
U017XX/E017XX	A communication error occurred before starting T.30 protocol during transmission in V.34 mode (refer to P.1-4-251 U017XX error code table).
U018XX/E018XX	A communication error occurred before starting T.30 protocol during reception in V.34 mode (refer to P.1-4-251 U018XX error code table).
U03000/E03000	No document was present in the destination unit when polling reception started.
U03200/E03200	In interoffice subaddress-based bulletin board reception, data was not stored in the box specified by the destination unit.
U03300/E03300	In polling reception from a unit of our make, operation was interrupted due to a mismatch in permit ID or telephone number. Or, in interoffice subaddress-based bulletin board reception, operation was interrupted due to a mismatch in permit ID or telephone number.
U03400/E03400	Polling reception was interrupted because of a mismatch in individual numbers (destination unit is either of our make or by another manufacturer).
U03500/E03500	In interoffice subaddress-based bulletin board reception, the specified Subaddress confidential box number was not registered in the destination unit.
U03600/E03600	An interoffice subaddress-based bulletin board reception was interrupted because of a mismatch in the specified subaddress confidential box number.
U03700/E03700	Interoffice subaddress-based bulletin board reception failed because the destination unit had no subaddress-based bulletin board transmission capability, or data was not stored in any subaddress confidential box in the destination unit.

Error code	Description
U04000/E04000	In interoffice subaddress-based transmission mode, the specified subaddress box number was not registered in the destination unit.
U04100/E04100	Subaddress-based transmission failed because the destination unit had no subaddress-based reception capability.
U04200/E04200	In encrypted transmission, the specified encryption box was not registered in the destination unit.
U04300/E04300	Encrypted transmission failed because the destination unit had no encrypted communication capability.
U04400/E04400	Encrypted transmission was interrupted because encryption keys did not agree.
U04500/E04500	Encrypted reception was interrupted because of a mismatch in encryption keys.
U05100/E05100	Password check transmission or restricted transmission was interrupted because the permit ID's did not agree with.
U05200/E05200	Password check reception or restricted reception was interrupted because the permit ID's did not match, the rejected FAX number's did match, or the destination receiver did not return its phone number.
U05300/E05300	The password check reception or the restricted reception was interrupted because the permitted numbers did not match, the rejected numbers did match, or the machine in question did not acknowledge its phone number.
U14000/E14000	Memory overflowed during confidential reception. Or, in subaddress-based confidential reception, memory overflowed.
U14100/E14100	In interoffice subaddress-based transmission, memory overflowed in the destination unit.
U19000/E19000	Memory overflowed during memory reception.
U19100/E19100	Memory overflowed in the destination unit during transmission.
U19300/E19300	Transmission failed because an error occurred during JBIG encoding.

(2-1) U004XX error code table: Interrupted phase B

Error code	Description
U00430/E00430	Polling request was received but interrupted because of a mismatch in permit number. Or, subaddress-based bulletin board transmission request was received but interrupted because of a mismatch in permit ID in the transmitting unit.
U00431/E00431	An subaddress-based bulletin board transmission was interrupted because the specified subaddress confidential box was not registered.
U00432/E00432	An subaddress-based bulletin board transmission was interrupted because of a mismatch in Subaddress confidential box numbers.
U00433/E00433	Subaddress-based bulletin board transmission request was received but data was not present in the subaddress confidential box.
U00440/E00440	Subaddress-based confidential reception was interrupted because the specified subaddress box was not registered.
U00450/E00450	The destination transmitter disconnected because the permit ID's did not agree with while the destination transmitter is in password-check transmission or restricted transmission.
U00460/E00460	Encrypted reception was interrupted because the specified encryption box number was not registered.
U00462/E00462	Encrypted reception was interrupted because the encryption key for the specified encryption box was not registered.

(2-2) U006XX error code table: Problems with the unit

Error code	Description
U00601/E00601	Document jam or the document length exceeds the maximum.
U00613/E00613	Image writing section problem
U00656/E00656	Data was not transmitted to a modem error.
U00690/E00690	System error.

(2-3) U008XX error code table: Page transmission error

Error code	Description
U00800/E00800	A page transmission error occurred because of reception of a RTN or PIN signal.
U00811/E00811	A page transmission error reoccurred after retry of transmission in the ECM mode.

(2-4) U009XX error code table: Page reception error

Error code	Description
U00900/E00900	An RTN or PIN signal was transmitted because of a page reception error.
U00910/E00910	A page reception error remained after retry of transmission in the ECM mode.

(2-5) U010XX error code table: G3 transmission

Error code	Description
U01000/E01000	An FTT signal was received for a set number of times after TCF signal transmission at 2400 bps. Or, an RTN signal was received in response to a Q signal (excluding EOP) after transmission at 2400 bps.
U01001/E01001	Function of the unit differs from that indicated by a DIS signal.
U01016/E01016	An MCF signal was received but no DIS signal was received after transmission of an EOM signal, and T1 timeout was detected.
U01019/E01019	No relevant signal was received after transmission of a CNC signal, and the preset number of command retransfers was exceeded (between units of our make).
U01020/E01020	No relevant signal was received after transmission of a CTC signal, and the preset number of command retransfers was exceeded (ECM).
U01021/E01021	No relevant signal was received after transmission of an EOR.Q signal, and the preset number of command retransfers was exceeded (ECM).
U01022/E01022	No relevant signal was received after transmission of an RR signal, and the preset number of command retransfers was exceeded (ECM).
U01028/E01028	T5 time-out was detected during ECM transmission (ECM).
U01052/E01052	A DCN signal was received after transmission of an RR signal (ECM).
U01080/E01080	A PIP signal was received after transmission of a PPS.NULL signal.
U01092/E01092	During transmission in V.34 mode, communication was interrupted because of an impossible combination of the symbol speed and communication speed.
U01093/E01093	A DCN or other inappropriate signal was received during phase B of transmission.
U01094/E01094	The preset number of command retransfers for DCS/NSS signals was exceeded during phase B of transmission.
U01095/E01095	No relevant signal was received after transmission of a PPS (Q) signal during phase D of transmission, and the preset number of command transfers was exceeded.
U01096/E01096	A DCN signal or invalid command was received during phase D of transmission.
U01097/E01097	The preset number of command retransfers was exceeded after transmission of an RR signal or no response.

(2-6) U011XX error code table: G3 reception

Error code	Description
U01100/E01100	Function of the unit differs from that indicated by a DCS signal.
U01101/E01101	Function of the unit (excl. communication mode select) differs from that indicated by an NSS signal.
U01102/E01102	A DTC (NSC) signal was received when no transmission data was in the unit.
U01110/E01110	No response after transmission of a DIS signal.
U01111/E01111	No response after transmission of a DTC (NSC) signal.
U01113/E01113	No response after transmission of an FTT signal.
U01125/E01125	No response after transmission of a CNS signal (between units of our make).
U01129/E01129	No response after transmission of an SPA signal (short protocol).
U01141/E01141	A DCN signal was received after transmission of a DTC signal.
U01143/E01143	A DCN signal was received after transmission of an FTT signal.
U01155/E01155	A DCN signal was received after transmission of an SPA signal (short protocol).
U01160/E01160	During message reception, transmission time exceeded the maximum transmission time per line.
U01162/E01162	Reception was aborted due to a modem malfunction during message reception.
U01191/E01191	Communication was interrupted because an error occurred during an image data reception sequence in the V.34 mode.
U01193/E01193	There was no response, or a DCN signal or invalid command was received, during phase C/D of reception.
U01194/E01194	A DCN signal was received during phase B of reception.
U01195/E01195	No message was received during phase C of reception.
U01196/E01196	Error line control was exceeded and a decoding error occurred for the message being received.

(2-7) U017XX error code table: V.34 transmission

Error code	Description
U01700/E01700	A communication error occurred in phase 2 (line probing).
U01720/E01720	A communication error occurred in phase 4 (modem parameter exchange).
U01721/E01721	Operation was interrupted due to the absence of a common communication speed between units.

U01700/E01700: A communication error that occurs at the transmitting unit in the period after transmission of INFO0 before entering phase 3 (primary channel equivalent device training). For example, INFO0/A/Abar (B/Bbar, for polling transmission)/INFOh was not detected.

U01720/E01720: A communication error that occurs at the transmitting unit in the period after initiating the control channel before entering the T.30 process. For example, PPh/ALT/MPh/E was not detected.

U01721/E01721: In the absence of a common communication speed between units (including when an impossible combination of communication speed and symbol speed occurs) after MPh exchange; 1) a DCN signal was received from the destination unit, and the line was cut; or 2) a DIS (NSF, CSI) signal was received from the destination unit and, in response to the signal, the unit transmitted a DCN signal, and the line was cut.

(2-8) U018XX error code table: V.34 reception

Error code	Description
U01800/E01800	A communication error occurred in phase 2 (line probing).
U01810/E01810	A communication error occurred in phase 3 (primary channel equivalent device training).
U01820/E01820	A communication error occurred in phase 4 (modem parameter exchange).
U01821/E01821	Operation was interrupted due to the absence of a common communication speed between units.

U01800/E01800: A communication error that occurs at the receiver unit in the period after transmission of INFO0 before entering phase 3 (primary channel equivalent device training). For example, INFO0/B/Bbar (A/Abar, for polling reception)/probing tone was not detected.

U01810/E01810: A communication error that occurs at the receiver unit in phase 3 (primary channel equivalent device training). For example, S/Sbar/PP/TRN was not detected.

U01820/E01820: A communication error that occurs at the receiver unit in the period after initiating the control channel before entering the T.30 process. For example, PPh/ALT/MPh/E was not detected.

U01821/E01821: In the absence of a common communication speed between units (including when an impossible combination of communication speed and symbol speed occurs) after MPh exchange, a DCN signal was transmitted to the destination unit and the line was cut.

This page is intentionally left blank.

1-5-1 Precautions for assembly and disassembly

(1) Precautions

Before starting disassembly, press the Power key on the operation panel to off. Make sure that the Power lamp is off before turning off the main power switch. And then unplug the power cable from the wall outlet.
When the fax kit is installed, be sure to disconnect the modular cable before starting disassembly.
When handling PWBs (printed wiring boards), do not touch parts with bare hands.
The PWBs are susceptible to static charge.
Do not touch any PWB containing ICs with bare hands or any object prone to static charge.
When removing the hook of the connector, be sure to release the hook.
Take care not to get the cables caught.
To reassemble the parts, use the original screws. If the types and the sizes of screws are not known, refer to the PARTS LIST.

(2) Drum

Note the following when handling or storing the drum.
When removing the drum unit, never expose the drum surface to strong direct light.
Keep the drum at an ambient temperature between -20°C/-4°F and 40°C/104°F and at a relative humidity not higher than 85% RH. Avoid abrupt changes in temperature and humidity.
Avoid exposure to any substance which is harmful to or may affect the quality of the drum.
Do not touch the drum surface with any object. Should it be touched by hands or stained with oil, clean it.

(3) Toner

Store the toner container in a cool, dark place.
Avoid direct light and high humidity.

(4) How to tell a genuine Kyocera toner container

As a means of brand protection, the Kyocera toner container utilizes an optical security technology to enable visual validation. A validation viewer is required to accomplish this.

Hold the validation viewer over the left side part of the brand protection seal on the toner container. Through each window of the validation viewer, the left side part of the seal should be seen as follows:

A black-colored band when seen through the left side window (●)

A shiny or gold-colored band when seen through the right side window (☼)

The above will reveal that the toner container is a genuine Kyocera branded toner container, otherwise, it is a counterfeit.

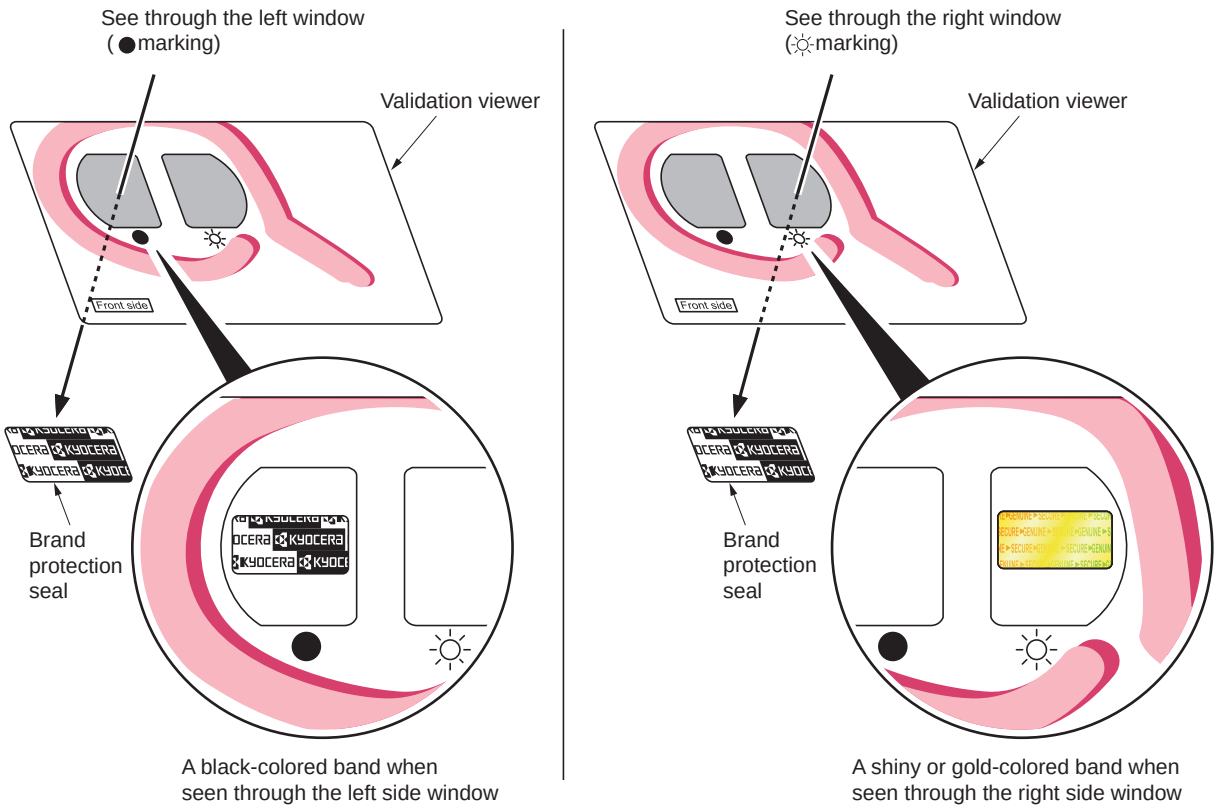


Figure 1-5-1

The brand protection seal has an incision as shown below to prohibit reuse.

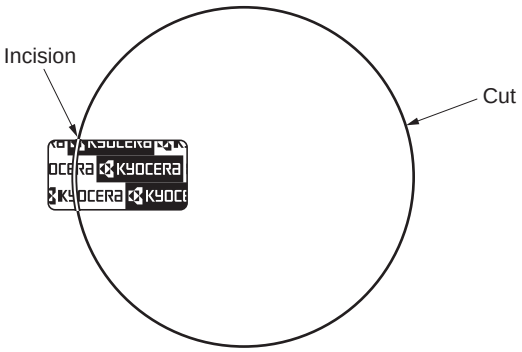


Figure 1-5-2

1-5-2 Outer covers

(1) Detaching and refitting the rear upper cover and the rear lower cover

Procedure

1. Remove nine screws and then remove the rear upper cover.

*: To fix a cover, insert the hook at the left top first by bowing the cover.

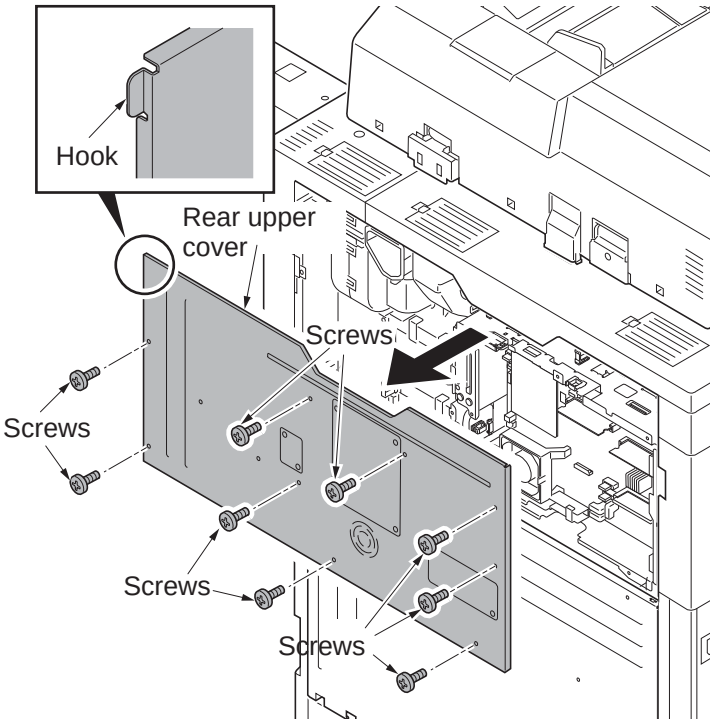


Figure 1-5-3

2. Remove the toner disposal box (see page 1-5-134).
3. Remove nine screws.
4. Release two hanging parts and then remove the rear lower cover.

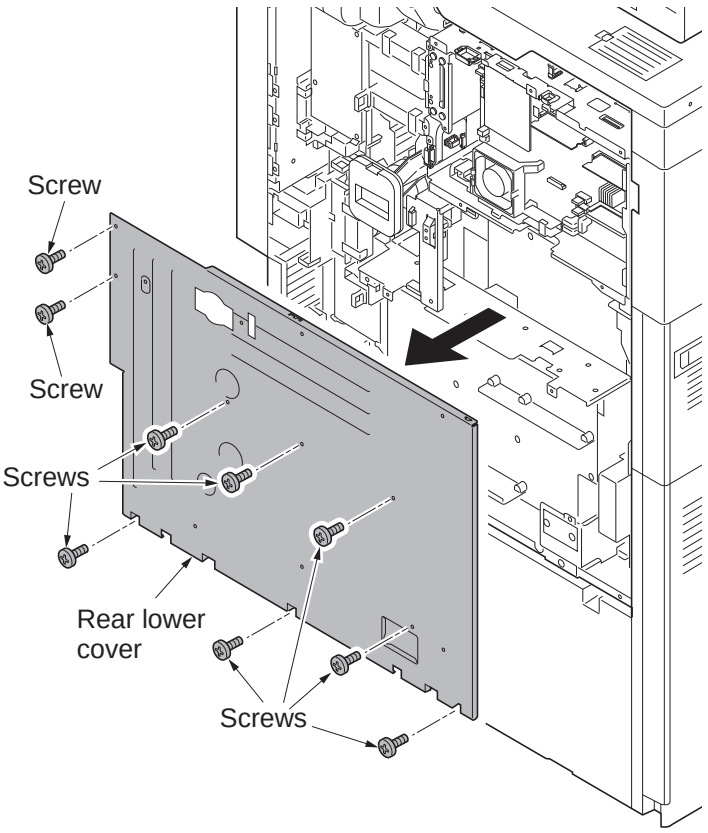


Figure 1-5-4

(2) Detaching and refitting the paper conveying cover and PF paper conveying cover

Procedure

1. Pull the cassette 1 to 4 out completely.
2. Pull the paper conveying unit out.
3. Open the paper conveying cover.
4. Remove the strap and then remove the paper conveying cover.

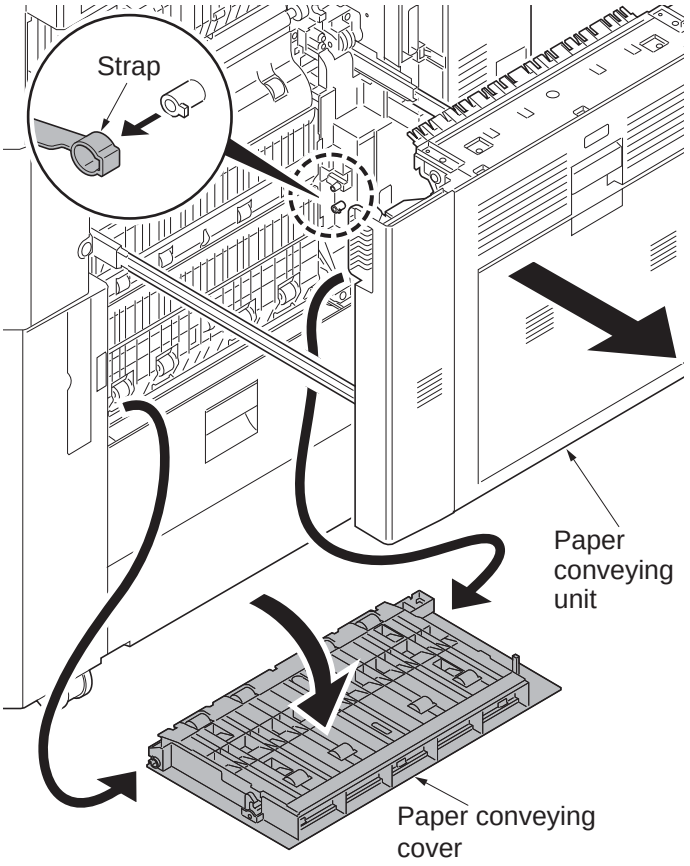


Figure 1-5-5

5. Open the PF paper conveying cover.
6. Remove the strap and then remove the PF paper conveying cover.

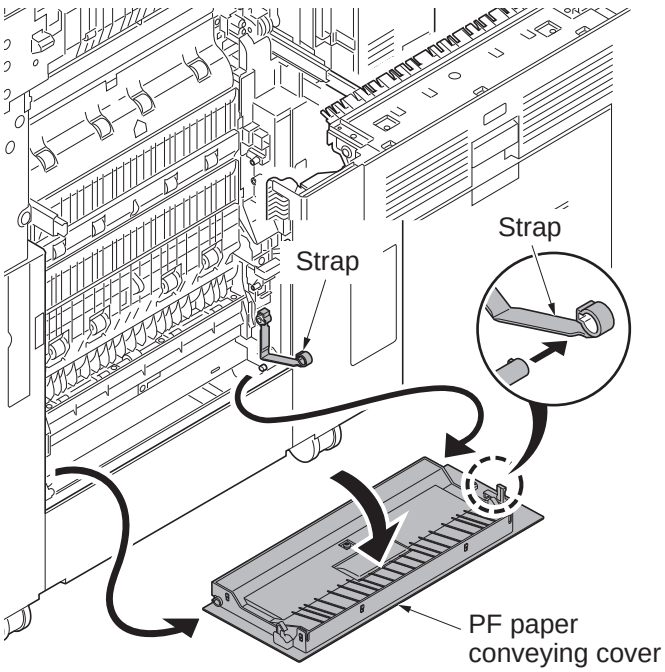


Figure 1-5-6

(3) Detaching and refitting the right lower rear cover

Procedure

1. Remove the rear upper cover and the rear lower cover (see page 1-5-3).
2. Pull the paper conveying unit out.
3. Unhook two hooks using a flat blade screwdriver and then remove the interface cover
4. Remove five screws of the right lower rear cover.
5. Remove the right lower rear cover.

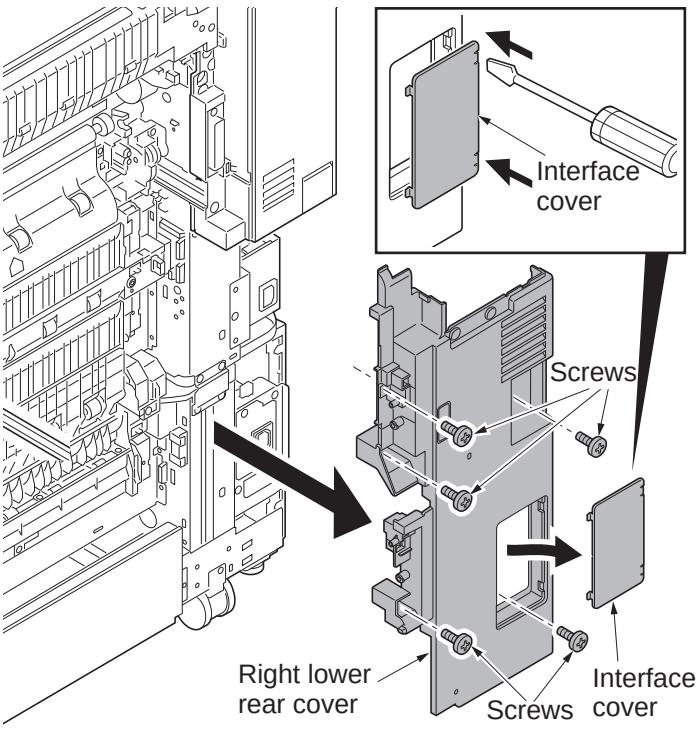


Figure 1-5-7

(4) Detaching and refitting the right lower front cover

Procedure

1. Pull the paper conveying unit out.
2. Open the handle cover.
3. Remove four screws.
4. Unhook the hook at the bottom of the right-bottom front cover, unhook the three hooks at the machine front side while opening it from the near side, and remove the right-bottom front cover. Unhook the hook and then remove the right lower front cover.

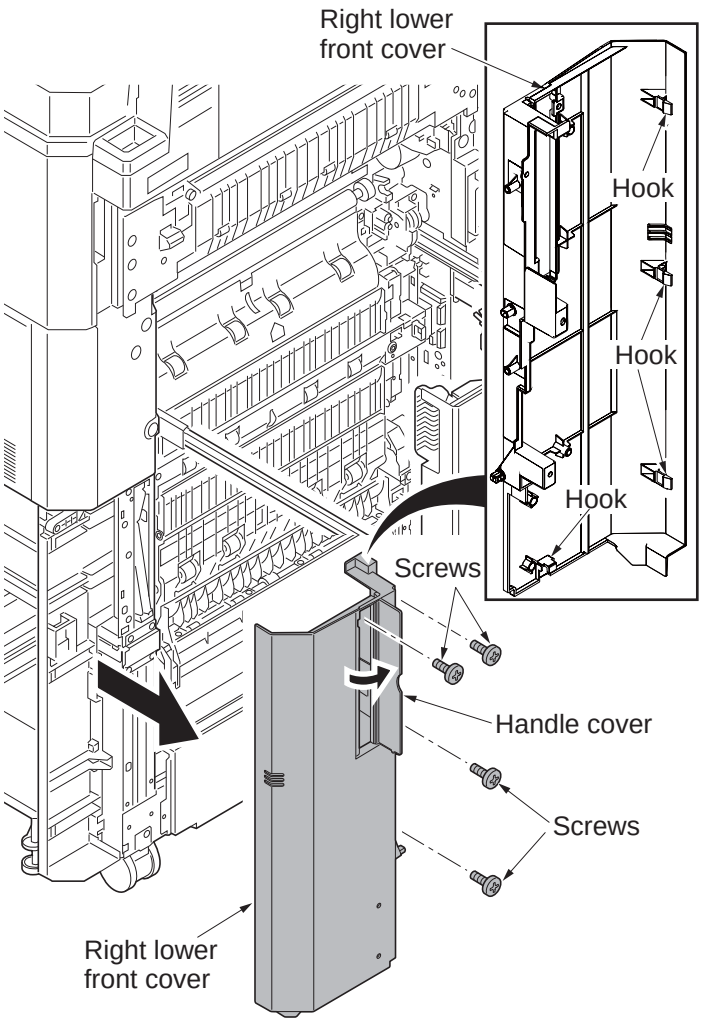


Figure 1-5-8

(5) Detaching and refitting the right cover and DU cover assembly

Procedure

1. Pull the paper conveying unit out.
2. Open the MP tray.
3. Remove four screws.

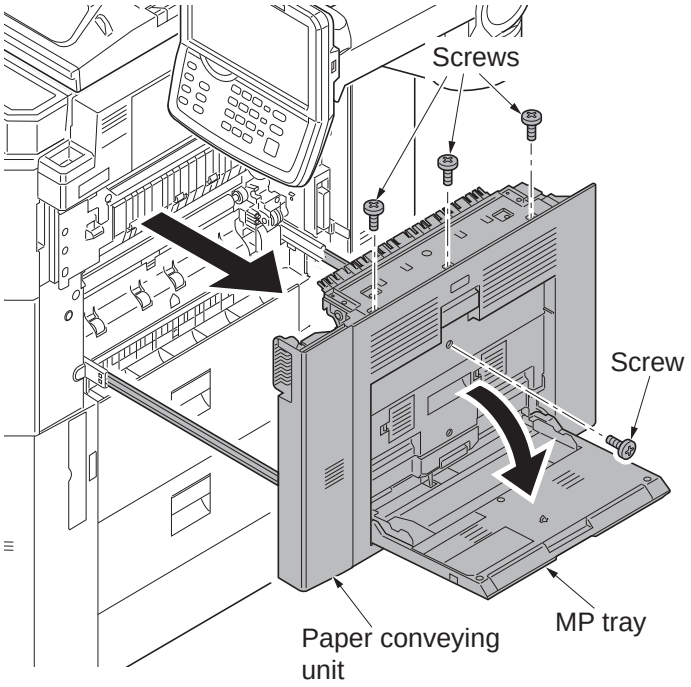


Figure 1-5-9

4. Unhook eight hooks and then remove the right cover and DU cover assembly.

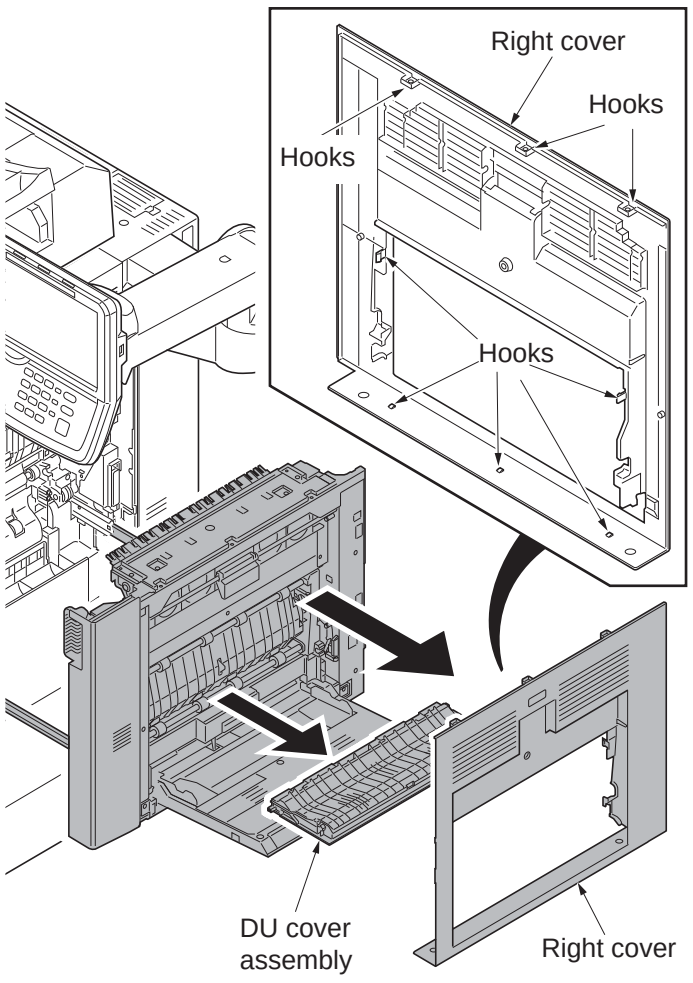


Figure 1-5-10

(6) Detaching and refitting the right front cover

Procedure

1. Pull the paper conveying unit out.
2. Remove three screws.
3. Unhook three hooks and then remove the right front cover.

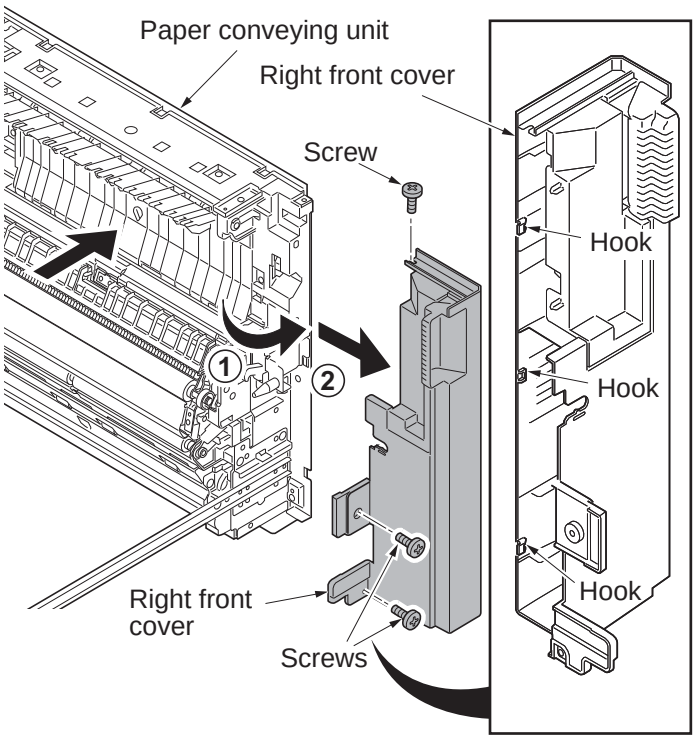


Figure 1-5-11

(7) Detaching and refitting the conveying rear middle cover

Procedure

1. Pull the paper conveying unit out.
2. Remove three screws and then remove the conveying rear middle cover.

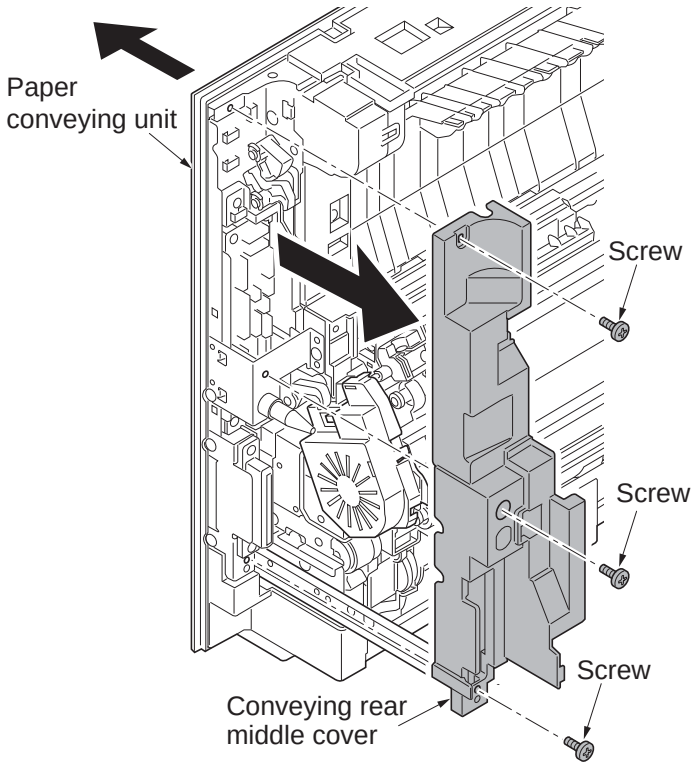


Figure 1-5-12

(8) Detaching and refitting the ISU right cover and right upper cover

Procedure

1. Remove two screws and then remove the ISU right cover.
2. Remove the clip holder A.
3. Remove the screw and then remove the clip holder B.
4. Unhook three hooks and then remove the right upper cover.

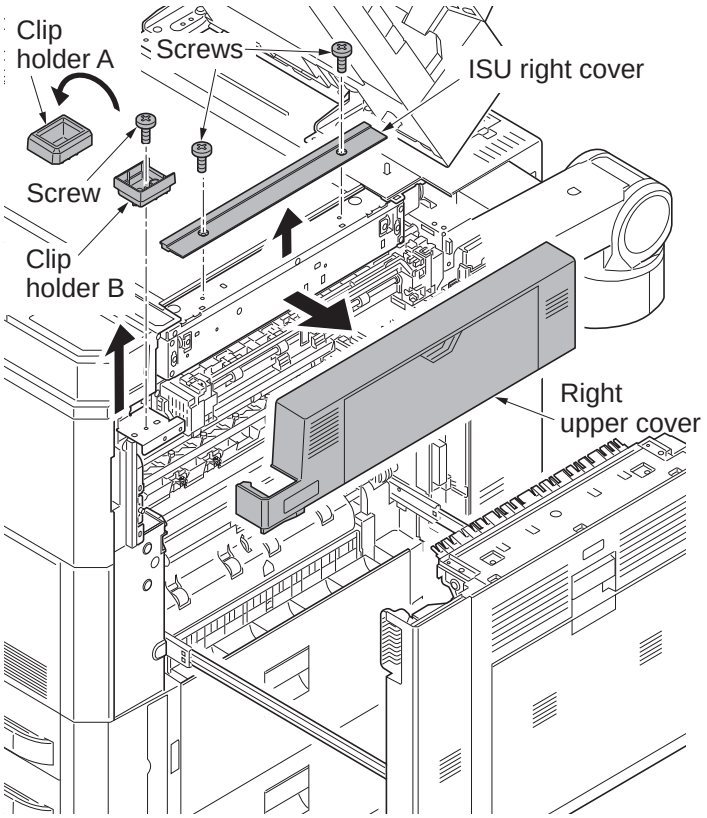


Figure 1-5-13

5. Remove the screw.
6. Unhook three hooks and then remove the right middle cover.

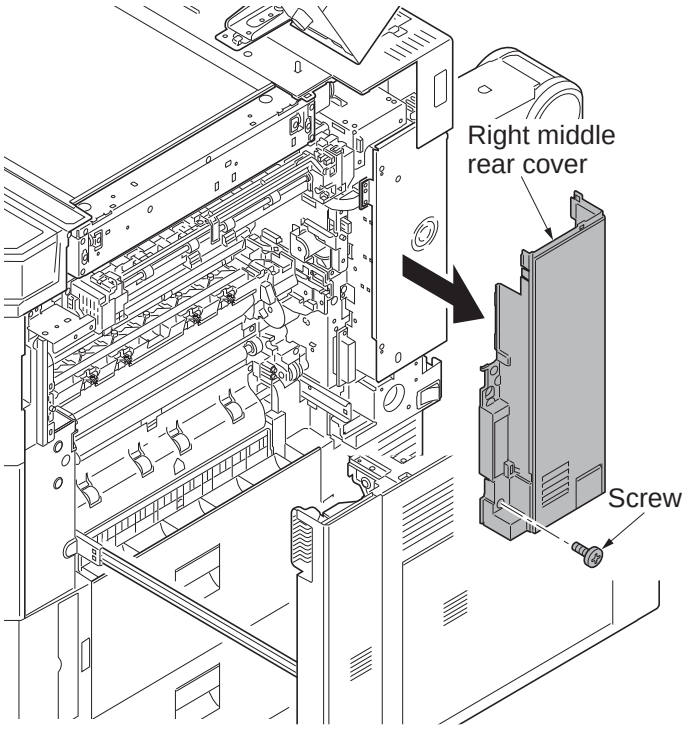


Figure 1-5-14

(9) Detaching and refitting the fuser IH PWB cover and IH electric wire cover

Procedure

1. Remove the right middle cover (see page 1-5-9).
2. Remove four screws and the remove the fuser IH PWB cover.
3. Remove the IH electric wire cover.

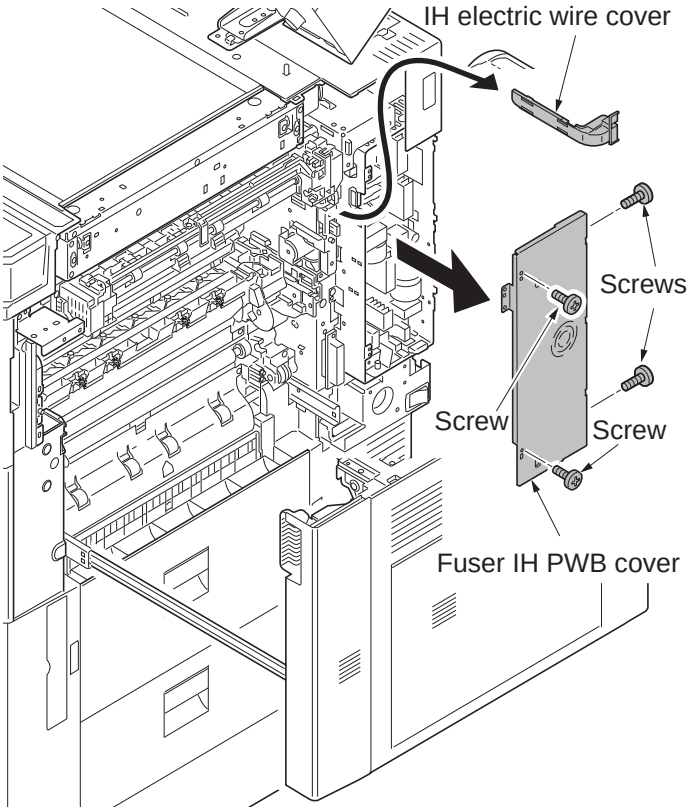


Figure 1-5-15

(10)Detaching and refitting the left upper cover

Procedure.

1. Remove the controller cover.
2. Remove the screw and then remove the controller lid.

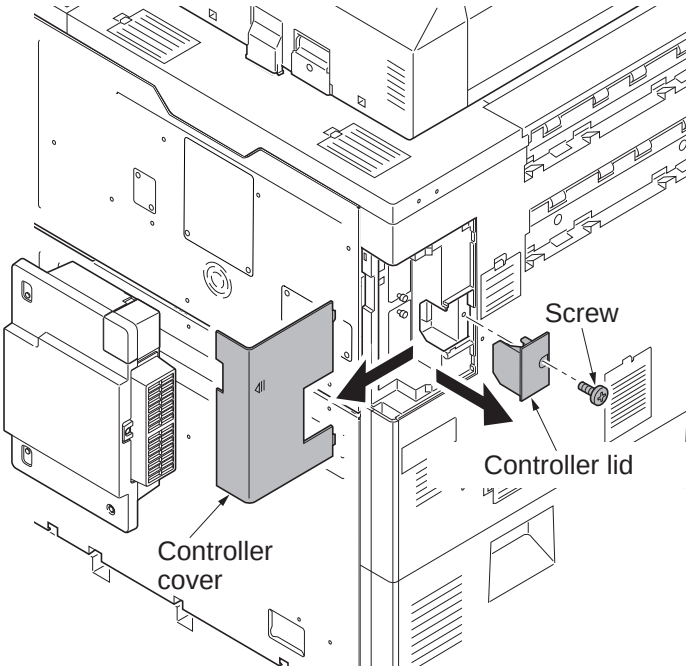


Figure 1-5-16

3. Remove three screws.
4. Unhook six hooks and then remove the left upper cover.

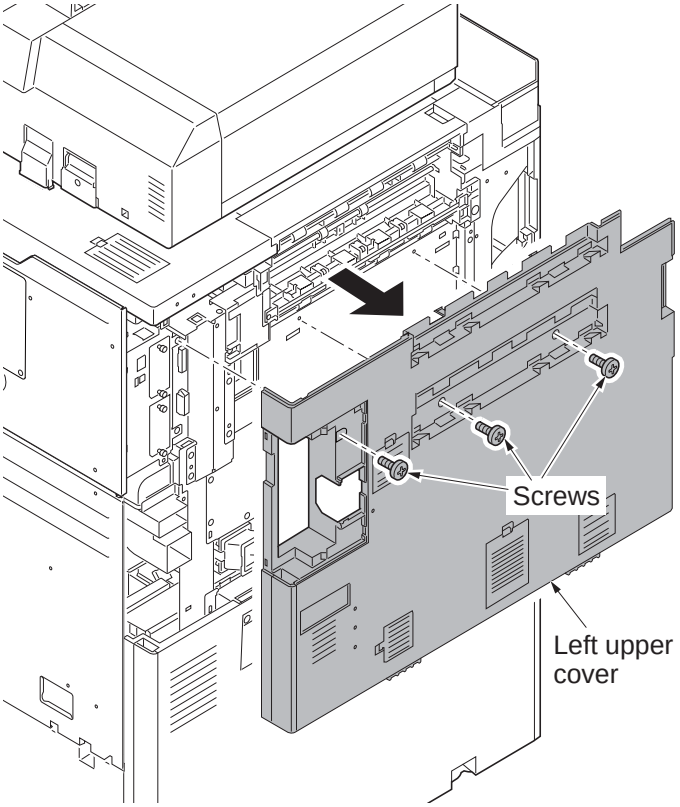


Figure 1-5-17

(11)Detaching and refitting the ISU front cover, ISU right cover and ISU rear cover

Procedure

1. Remove the document processor.
2. Remove two screws and then remove the ISU front cover.
3. Remove two screws and then remove the ISU right cover.

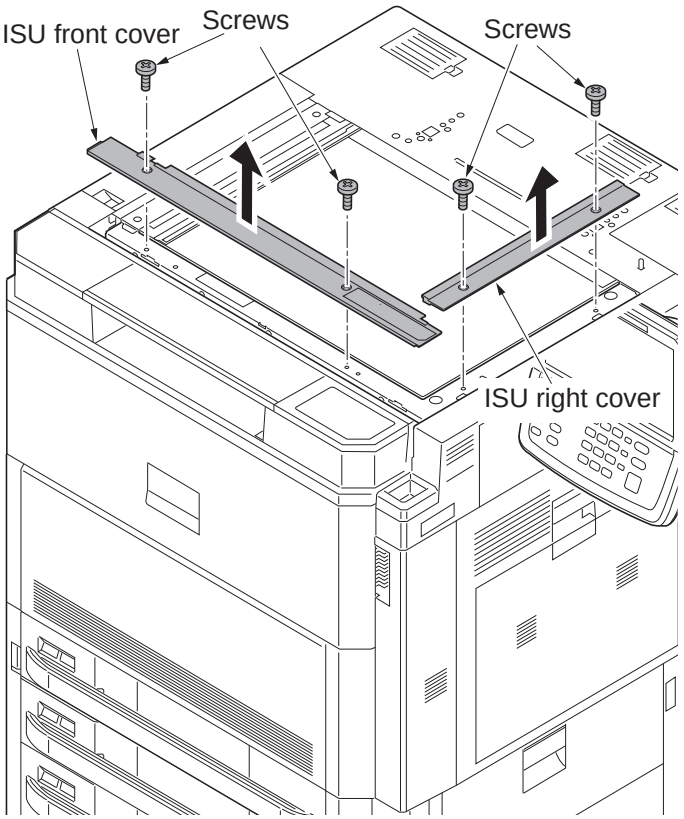


Figure 1-5-18

4. Remove the screw and then operation mount cover C
5. Open the bridge eject cover.
6. Remove two screws and then remove the ISU rear cover.

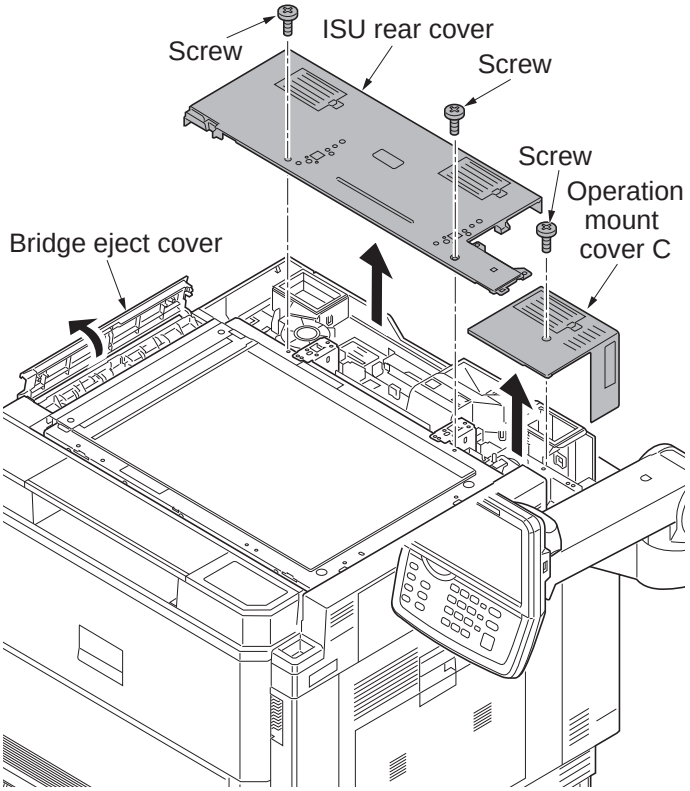


Figure 1-5-19

(12)Detaching and refitting the PF rear cover

Procedure

1. Remove three screws and then remove the PF rear cover.

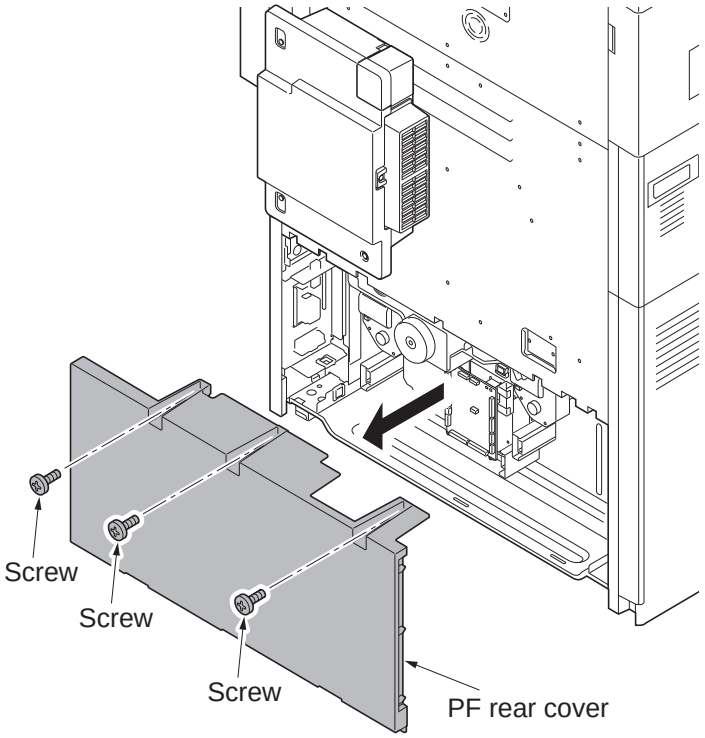


Figure 1-5-20

(13)Detaching and refitting the DP front cover and DP front left cover

Procedure

1. Open the DP top cover.
2. Remove four screws from the upper side and reverse side of DP.
3. Pull forwards and then remove the DP front left cover and DP front cover.

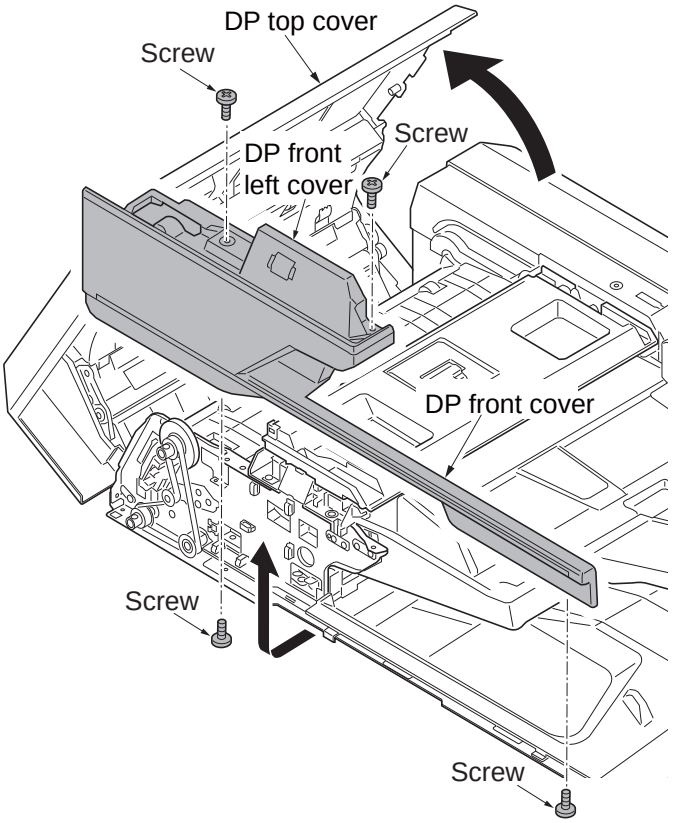


Figure 1-5-21

(14)Detaching and refitting the DP front cover and DP front left cover

Procedure

1. Open the DP top cover.
2. Remove the strap from the DP top cover.
3. Remove four screws and then remove the DP rear cover.

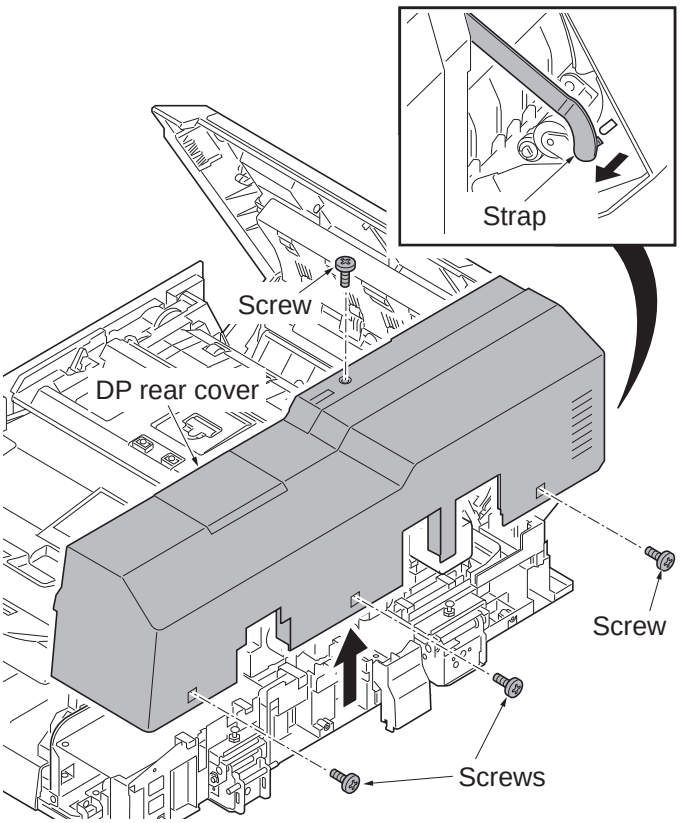


Figure 1-5-22

1-5-3 Paper feed section

(1) Detaching and refitting the primary paper feed unit and PF primary paper feed unit

Procedure

1. Pull the cassette 1 to 4 out completely.
2. Pull the paper conveying unit out.
3. Open the paper conveying cover.
4. Remove the strap and then remove the paper conveying cover.

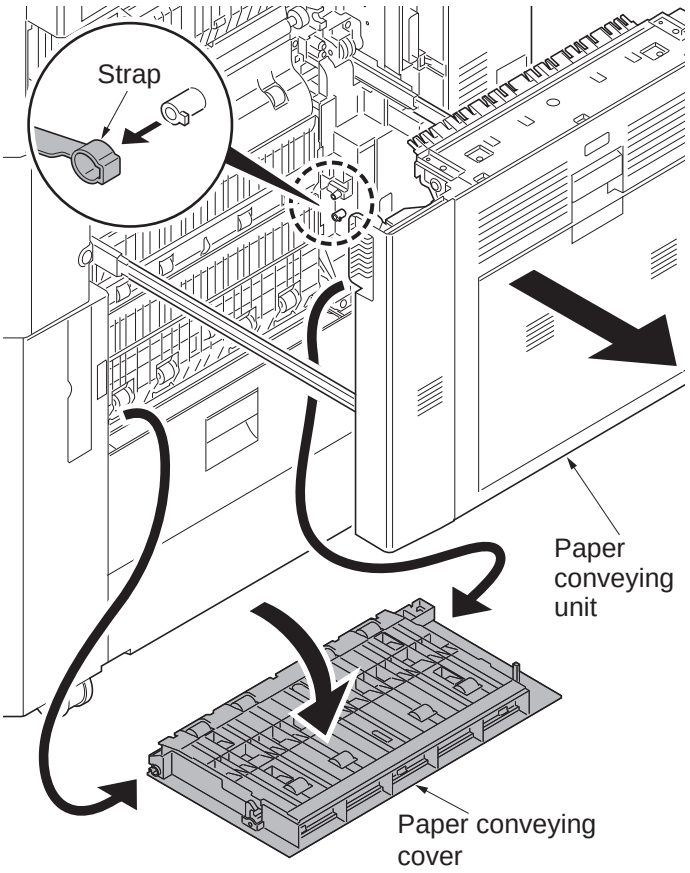


Figure 1-5-23

5. Open the PF paper conveying cover.
6. Remove the strap and then remove the PF paper conveying cover.

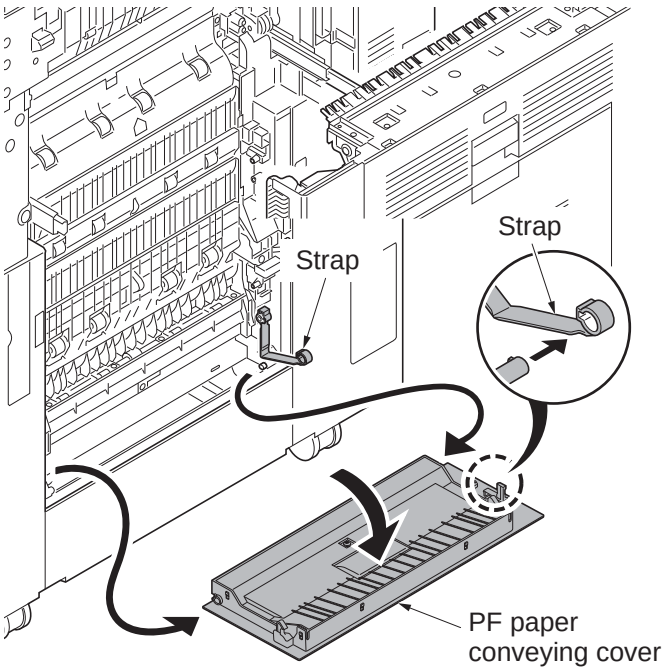


Figure 1-5-24

7. Remove the rear upper cover and the rear lower cover (see page 1-5-3).
8. Unhook two hooks using a flat blade screwdriver and then remove the interface cover
9. Remove five screws of the right lower rear cover.
10. Remove the right lower rear cover.

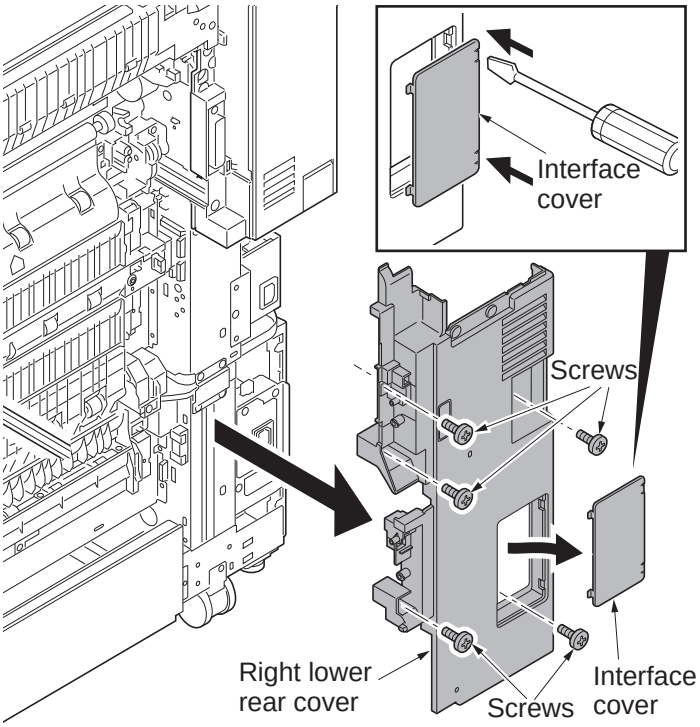


Figure 1-5-25

11. Open the handle cover.
12. Remove four screws.
13. Unhook the hook and then remove the right lower front cover.

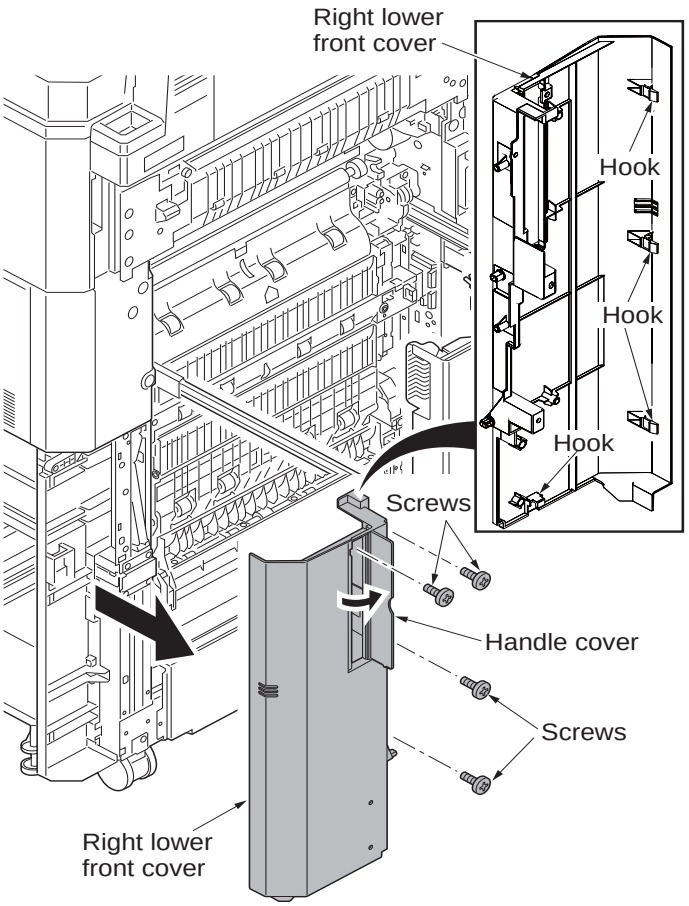


Figure 1-5-26

14. Release two wire saddles.
15. Remove two connectors.

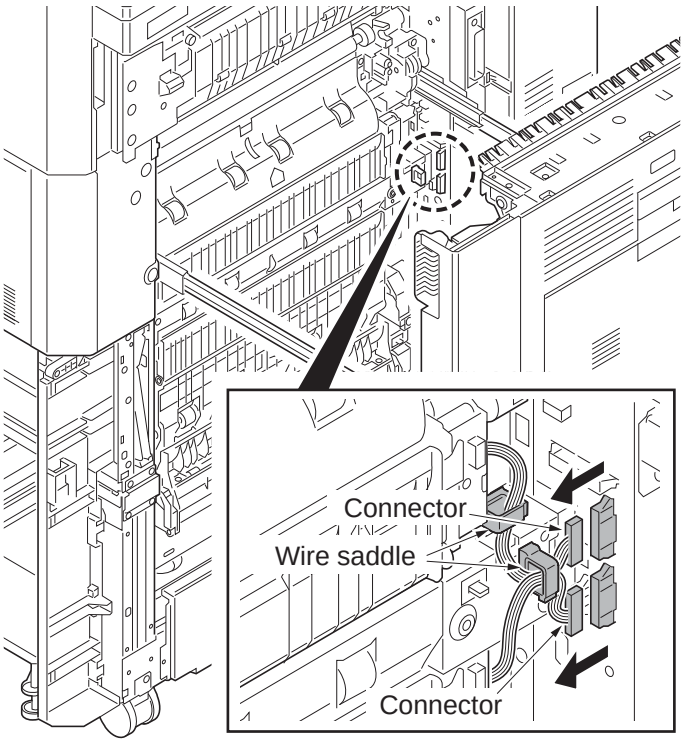


Figure 1-5-27

Remove the primary paper feed unit

16. Remove two screws each from primary paper feed unit.
17. Remove the primary paper feed unit.

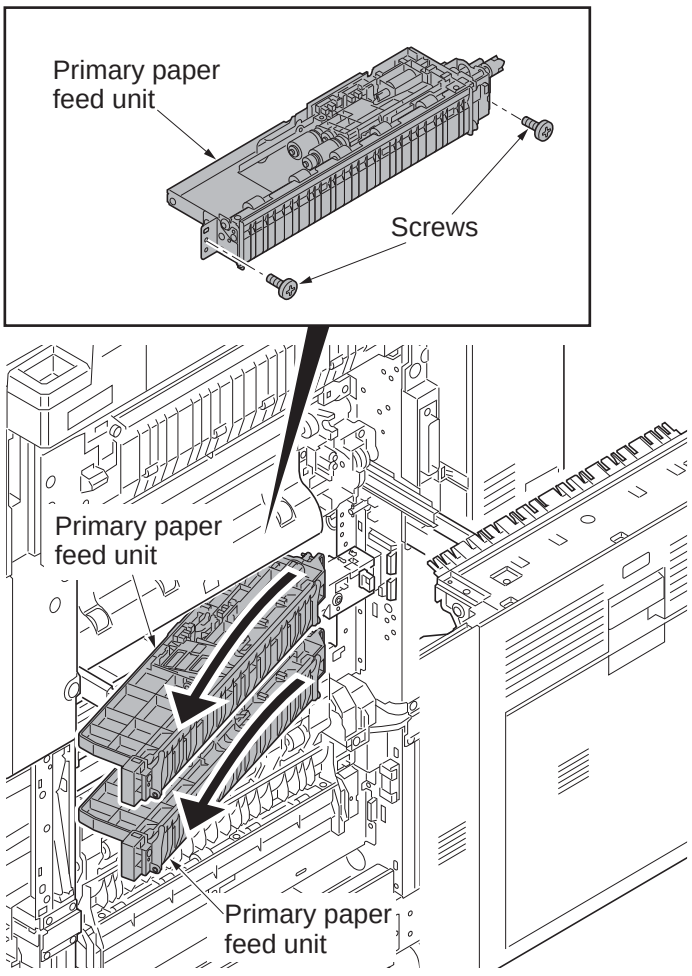


Figure 1-5-28

18. Check or replace the primary paper feed unit and refit all the removed parts.
    *: When refit the primary paper feed unit, you must confirm the inserted pin to the driving coupler.

19. When the primary paper feed unit is replaced, perform maintenance mode U903 (clearing the jam counter) (see page 1-3-186).

    Run “Maintenance counter – cassette – cassette counter clear” with U251 (Maintenance counter set/clear) (see page 1-3-133).

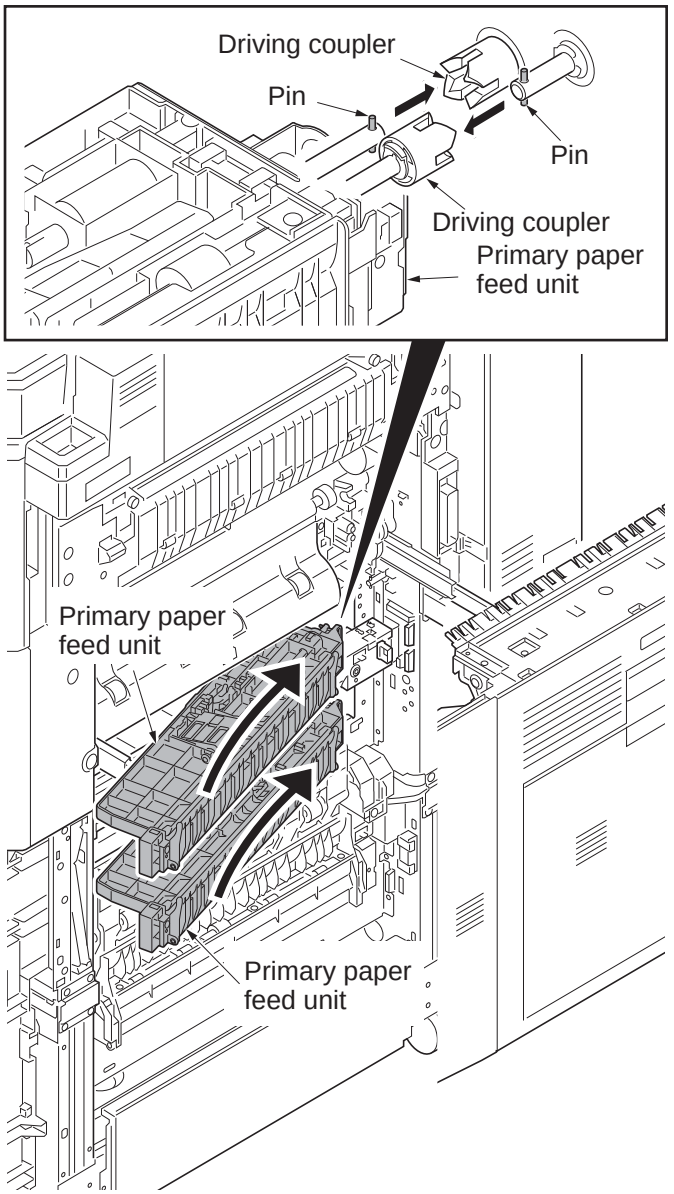


Figure 1-5-29

Remove the PF primary paper feed unit

20. Remove the wire holder.
21. Remove the connector.

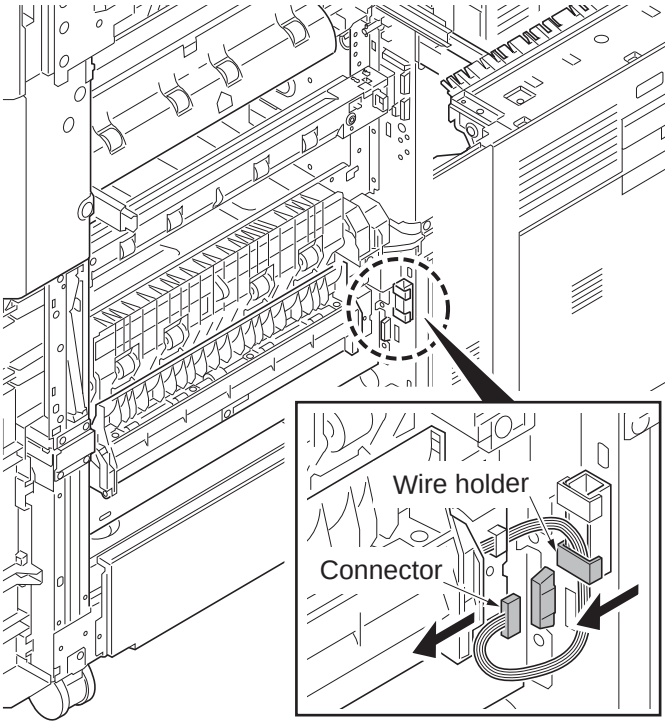


Figure 1-5-30

22. Remove two screws from PF primary paper feed unit.
23. Remove the PF primary paper feed unit.

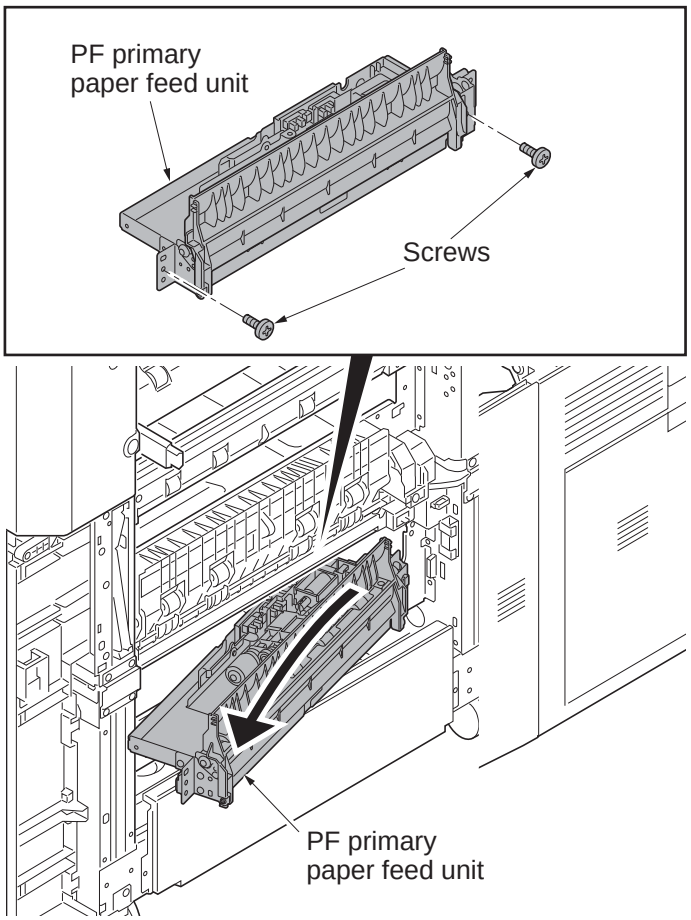


Figure 1-5-31

24. Check or replace the PF primary paper feed unit and refit all the removed parts.
    *: When refit the PF primary paper feed unit, you must confirm the inserted pin to the driving coupler.
25. When the PF primary paper feed unit is replaced, perform maintenance mode U903 (clearing the jam counter) (see page 1-3-186).

    Run “Maintenance counter – cassette – cassette counter clear” with U251 (Maintenance counter set/clear) (see page 1-3-133).

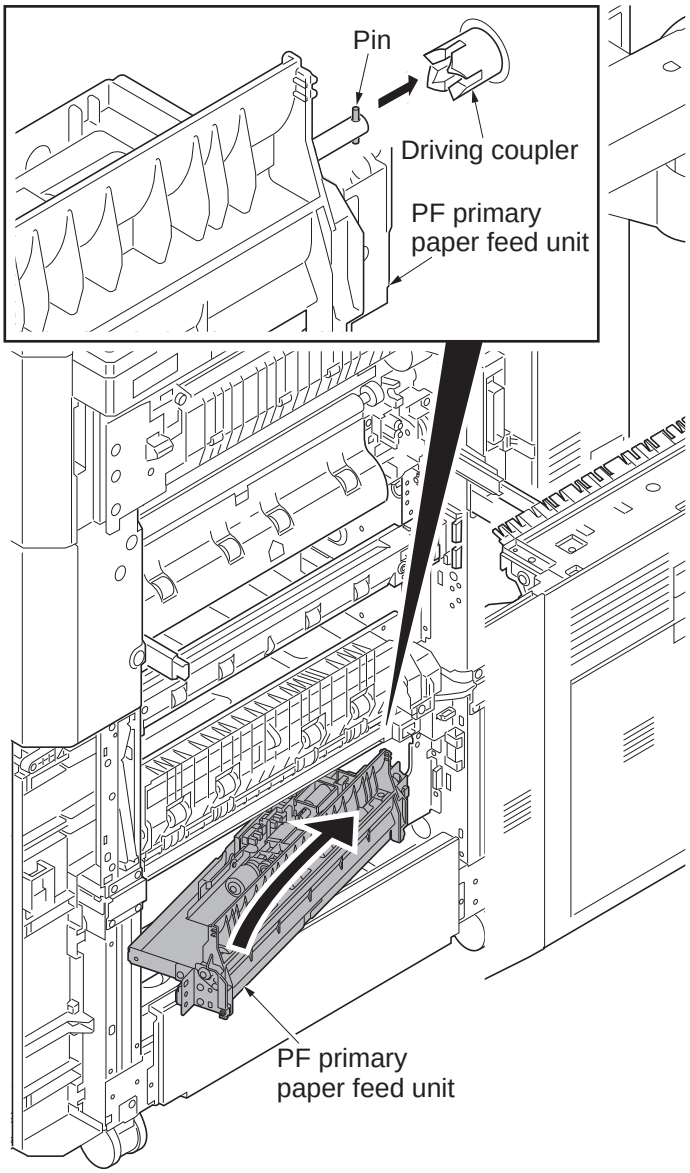


Figure 1-5-32

(2) Detaching and refitting the forwarding pulley, paper feed pulley, separation pulley.

Procedure

1. Pull the cassette 1 completely.
2. Pull up the cassette.

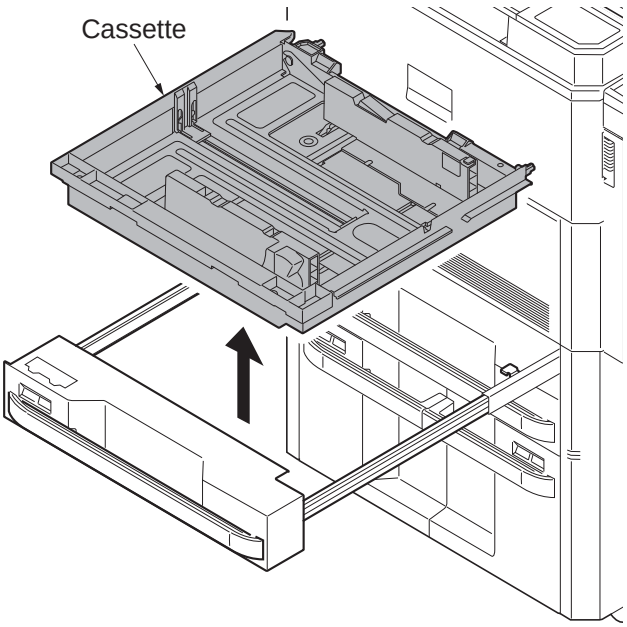


Figure 1-5-33

3. Remove the cassette 2 in the same manner as above.

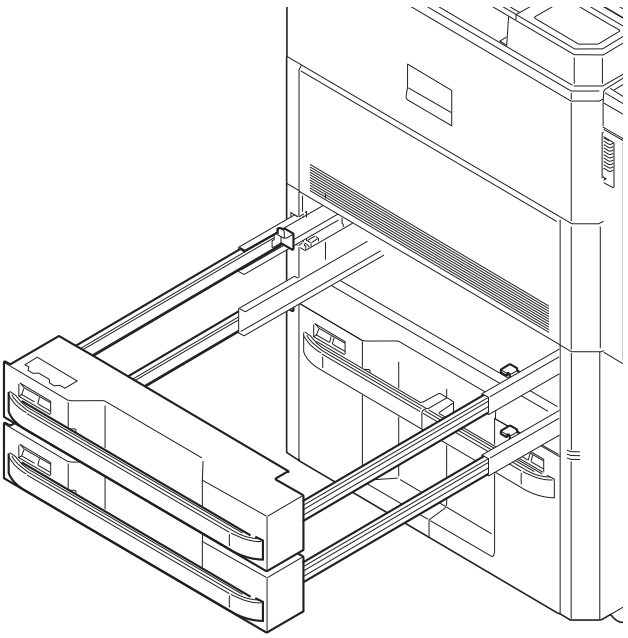


Figure 1-5-34

4. Unhook the hook and remove the forwarding pulley from the axle.
5. Unhook the hook and remove the feed pulley from the axle.

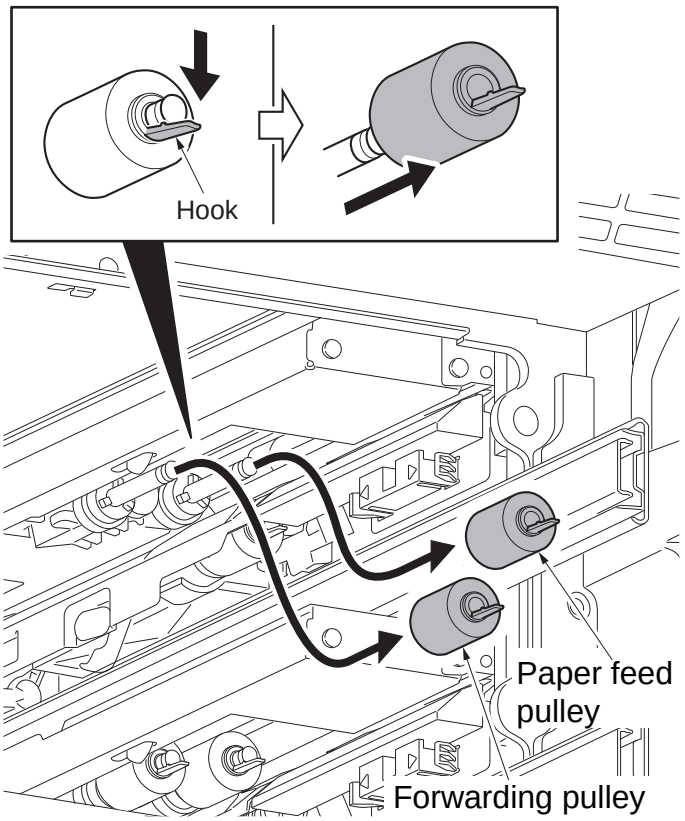


Figure 1-5-35

6. Unhook the two hooks and then remove the cover.

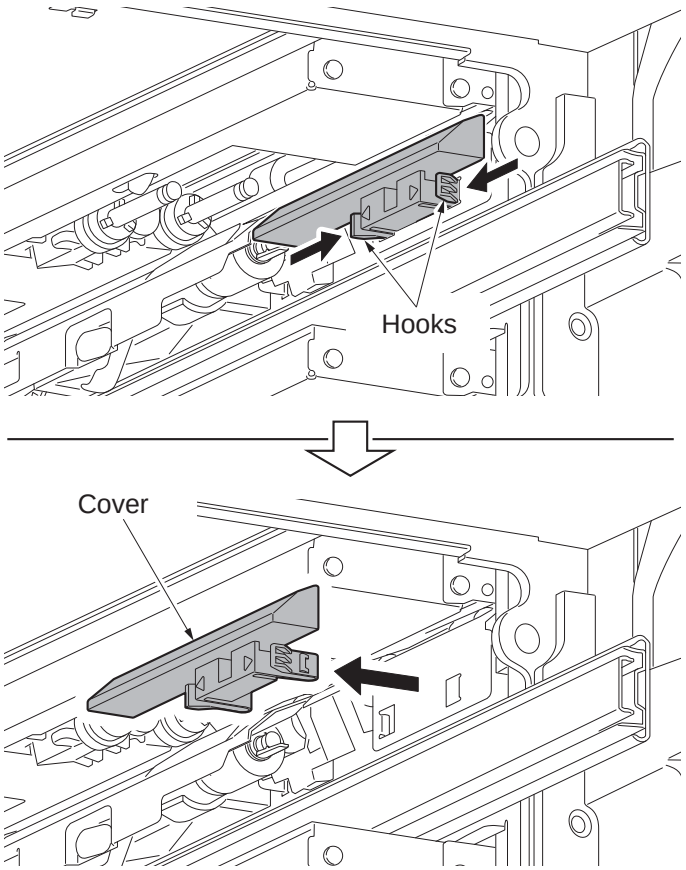


Figure 1-5-36

7. Unhook the hook and remove the separation pulley from the axle.
*: Confirm that the nipping between the feed roller and separation roller is released.
8. Clean or replace the forwarding pulley, paper feed pulley and separation pulley.
9. Refit the forwarding pulley, paper feed pulley and separation pulley to the primary paper feed unit.
*: Make sure that the collars are properly installed by checking its color.
Forwarding pulley (Collar is white.)
Paper feed pulley (Collar is white.)
Separation pulley (Collar is black.)
10. When the forwarding pulley, paper feed pulley or separation pulley is replaced, perform maintenance mode U903 (clearing the jam counter) (see page 1-3-186).
Execute Maintenance Counter - Cassette - Counter Clear of U251 (Maintenance counter limits/clear) (see page 1-3-133).

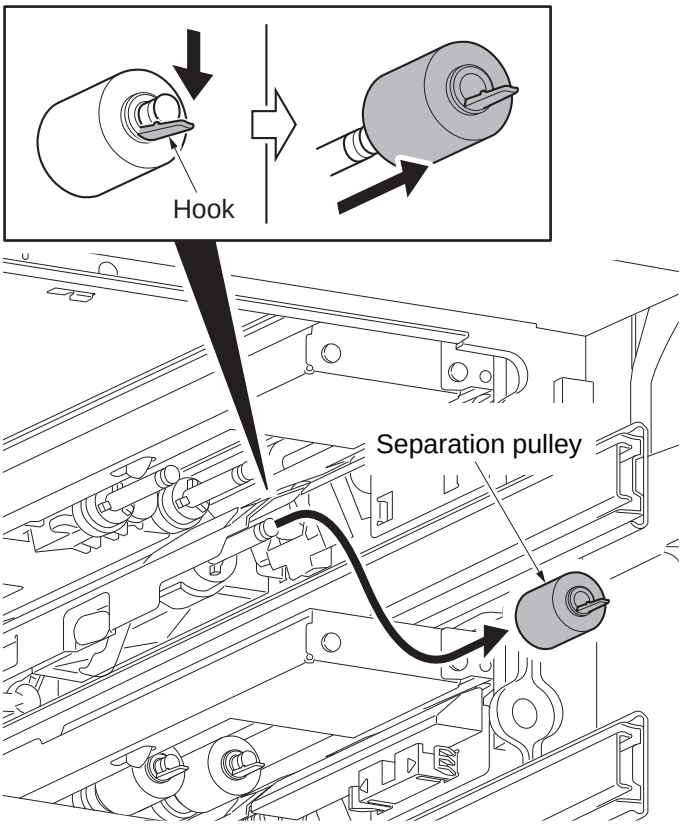


Figure 1-5-37

(3) Detaching and refitting the PF forwarding pulley (right), PF paper feed pulley (right) and PF separation pulley (right).

Procedure

1. Pull the cassette 3 completely.
2. Remove the four screws and then remove the cassette 3.

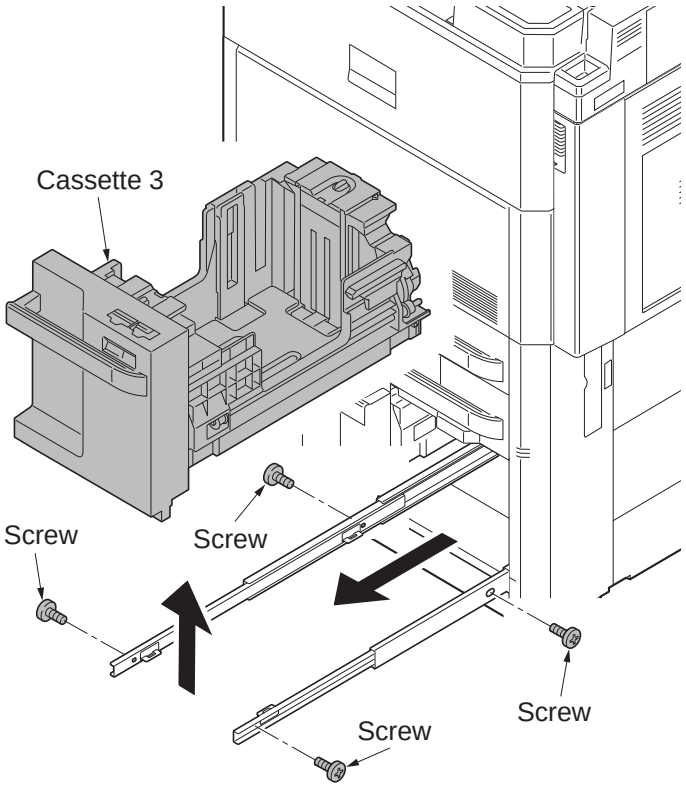


Figure 1-5-38

3. Unhook the hook and remove the forwarding pulley (right) from the axle.
4. Unhook the hook and remove the feed pulley (right) from the axle.

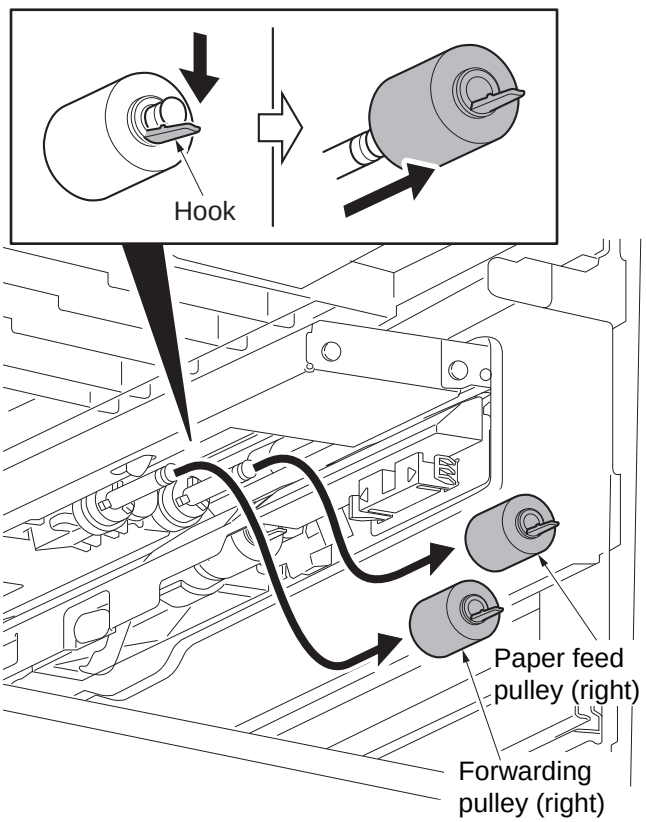


Figure 1-5-39

5. Unhook the two hooks and then remove the cover.

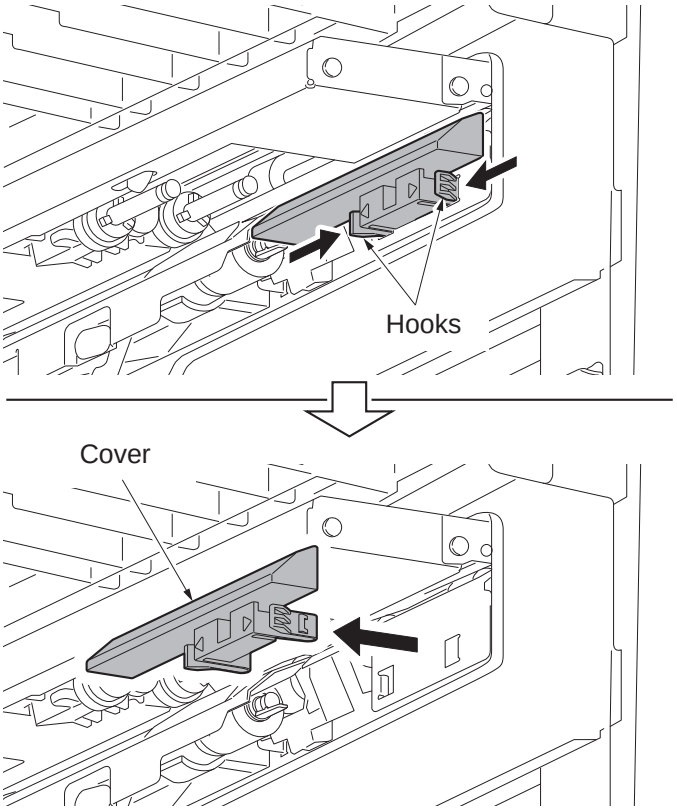


Figure 1-5-40

6. Unhook the hook and remove the separation pulley (right) from the axle.

*: Confirm that the nipping between the feed roller and separation roller is released.

7. Clean or replace the forwarding pulley (right), paper feed pulley (right) and separation pulley (right).
8. Refit the forwarding pulley (right), paper feed pulley (right) and separation pulley (right) to the primary paper feed unit.

*: Make sure that the collars are properly installed by checking its color.
Forwarding pulley (right) (Collar is white.)
Paper feed pulley (right) (Collar is white.)
Separation pulley (right) (Collar is black.)

9. When the forwarding pulley (right), paper feed pulley (right) or separation pulley (right) is replaced, perform maintenance mode U903 (clearing the jam counter) (see page 1-3-186).

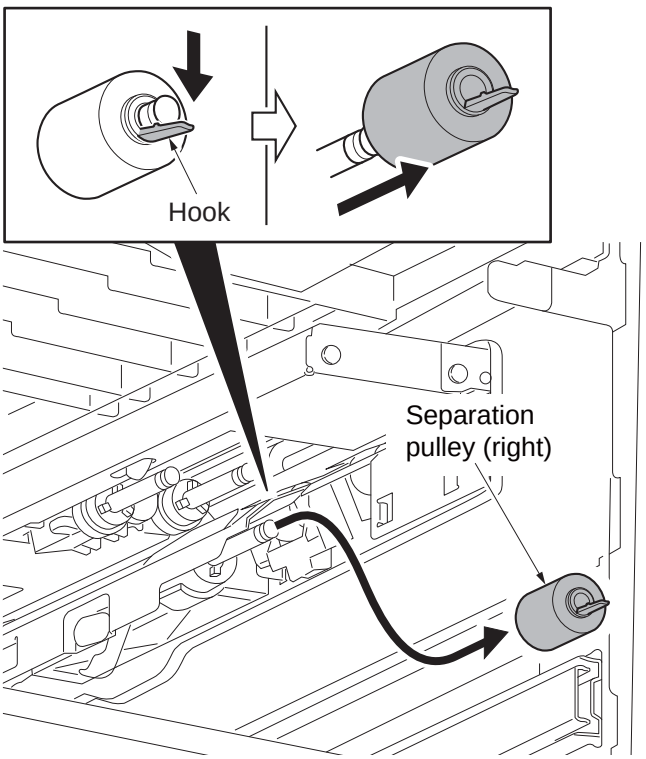


Figure 1-5-41

Execute Maintenance Counter - Cassette - Counter Clear of U251 (Maintenance counter limits/clear) (see page 1-3-133).

(4) Detaching and refitting the PF forwarding pulley (left), PF paper feed pulley (left) and PF separation pulley (left).

Procedure

1. Remove the cassette 2 and the cassette cover (see page 1-5-21).
2. Pull out cassette3 and 4 completely.
3. Pull the PF paper conveying unit.
4. Remove the screw and remove the stopper.
5. Remove the PF paper conveying unit.

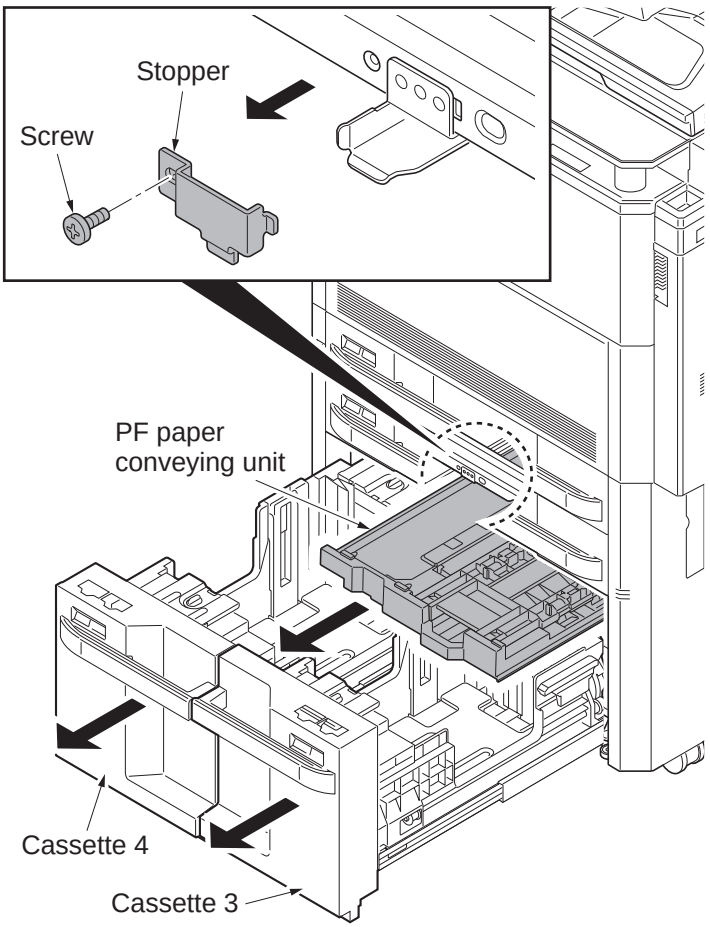


Figure 1-5-42

6. Turn the PF paper conveying unit inside out.
7. Remove the screw and then remove the cover.

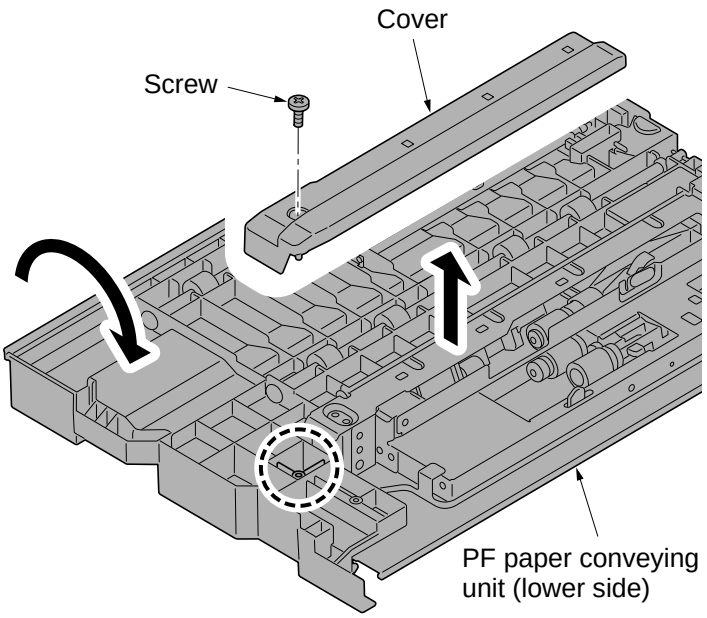


Figure 1-5-43

8. Unhook the hook and remove the forwarding pulley (left) from the axle.
9. Remove the hook and remove the feed pulley (left) from the axle.

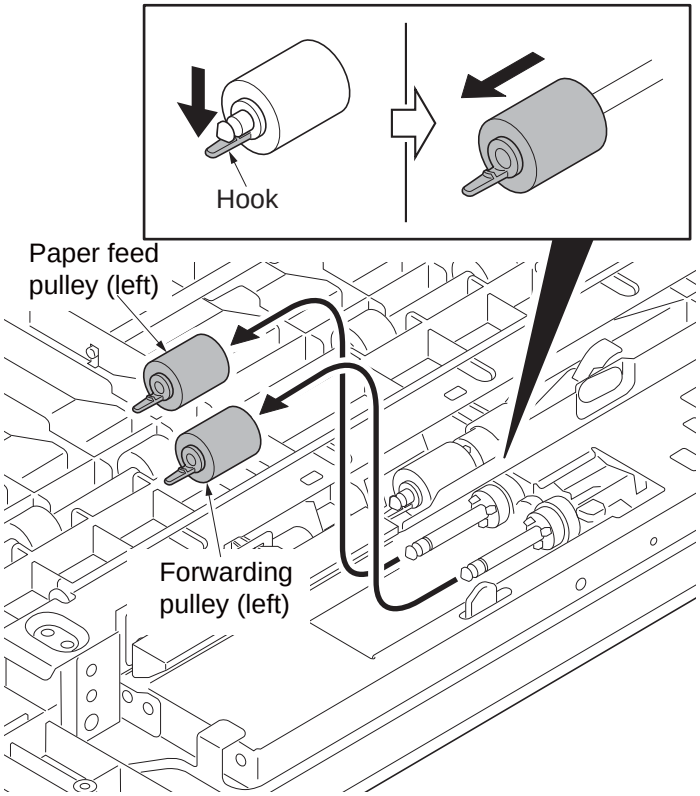
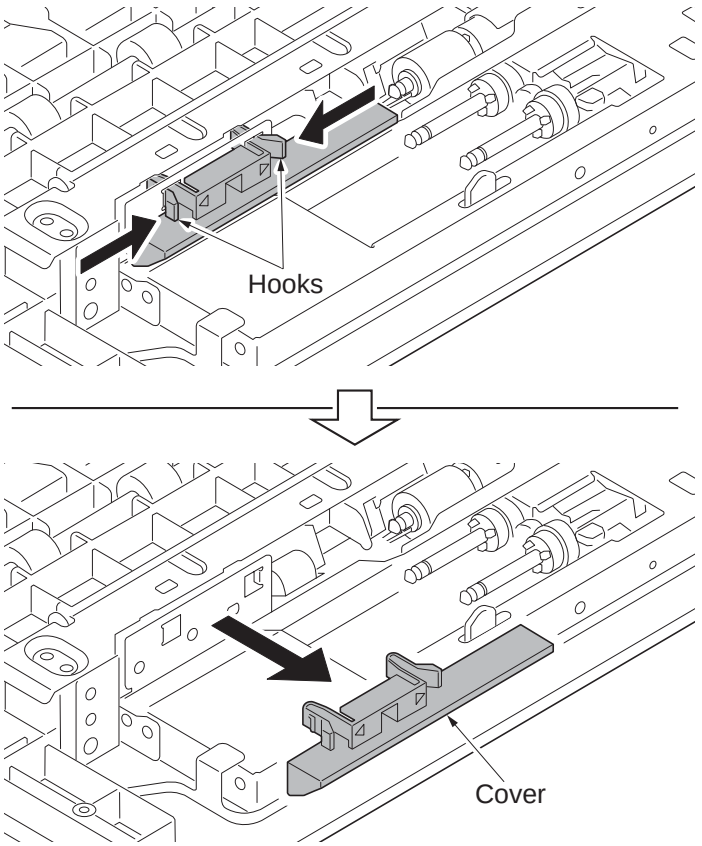


Figure 1-5-44

10. Unhook the two hooks and then remove the cover.



11. Unhook the hook and remove the separation pulley (left) from the axle.
12. Clean or replace the forwarding pulley (left), paper feed pulley (left) and separation pulley (left).
13. Refit the forwarding pulley (left), paper feed pulley (left) and separation pulley (left) to the primary paper feed unit.
    *: Make sure that the collars are properly installed by checking its color.
    Forwarding pulley (left) (Collar is white.)
    Paper feed pulley (left) (Collar is white.)
    Separation pulley (left) (Collar is black.)
14. When the forwarding pulley (left), paper feed pulley (left) or separation pulley (left) is replaced, perform maintenance mode U903 (clearing the jam counter) (see page 1-3-186).
    Execute Maintenance Counter - Cassette - Counter Clear of U251 (Maintenance counter limits/clear) (see page 1-3-133).

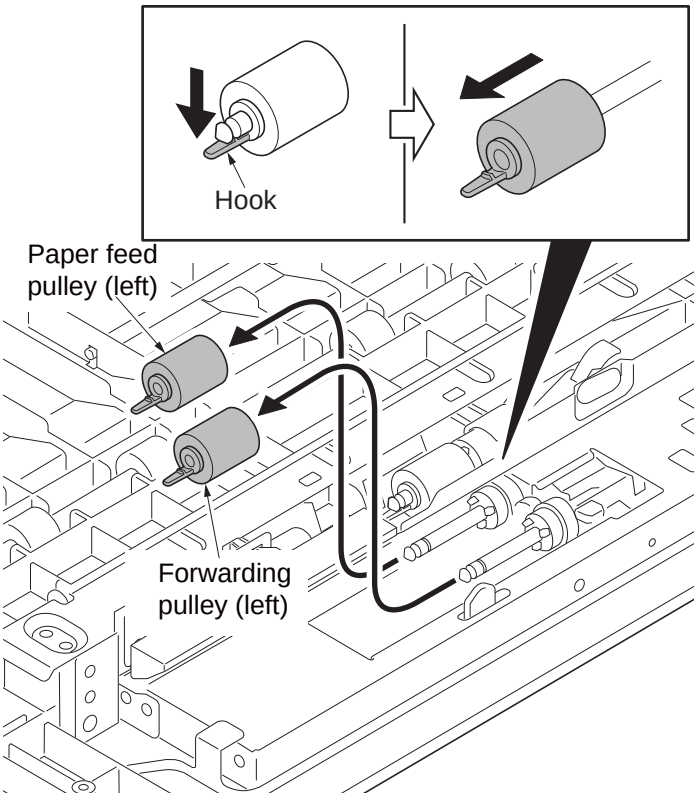


Figure 1-5-45

(5) Detaching and refitting the MP tray paper feed unit

Procedure

1. Pull the paper conveying unit out.
2. Open the MP tray.
3. Remove four screws.

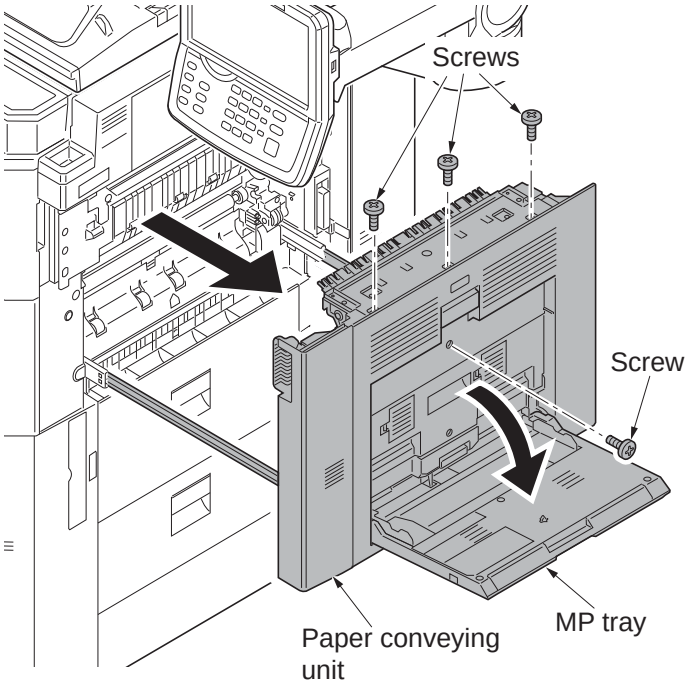


Figure 1-5-46

4. Unhook eight hooks and then remove the right cover and DU cover assembly.

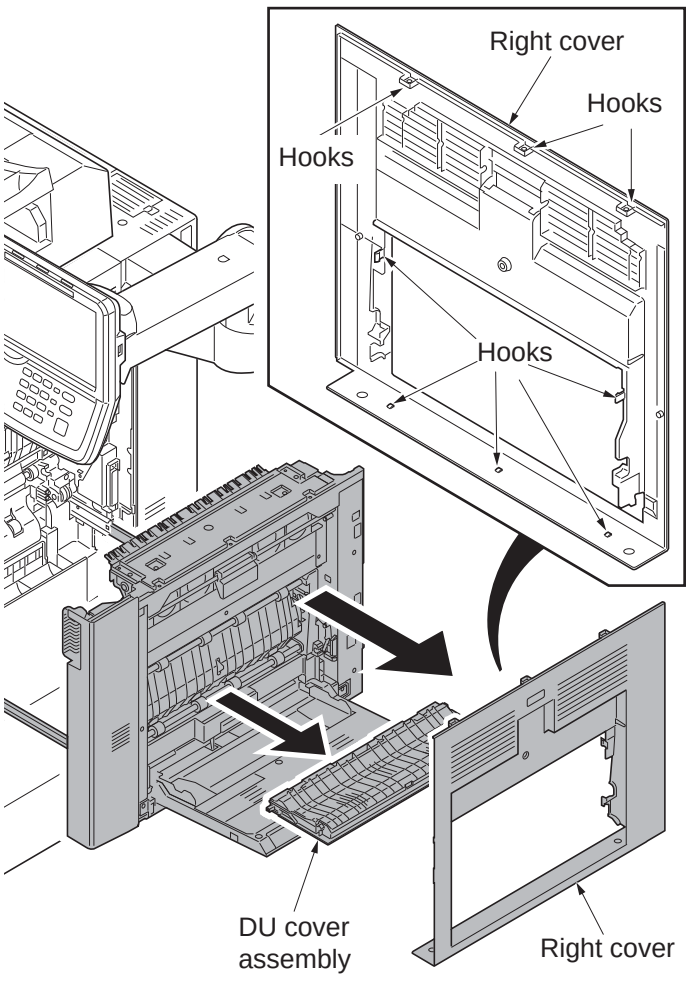


Figure 1-5-47

5. Remove two connectors.
6. Release the wire saddle.
7. Remove the wire saddle.

*: To refit the wire saddle, be sure to fit in the positioning hole that was previously used.

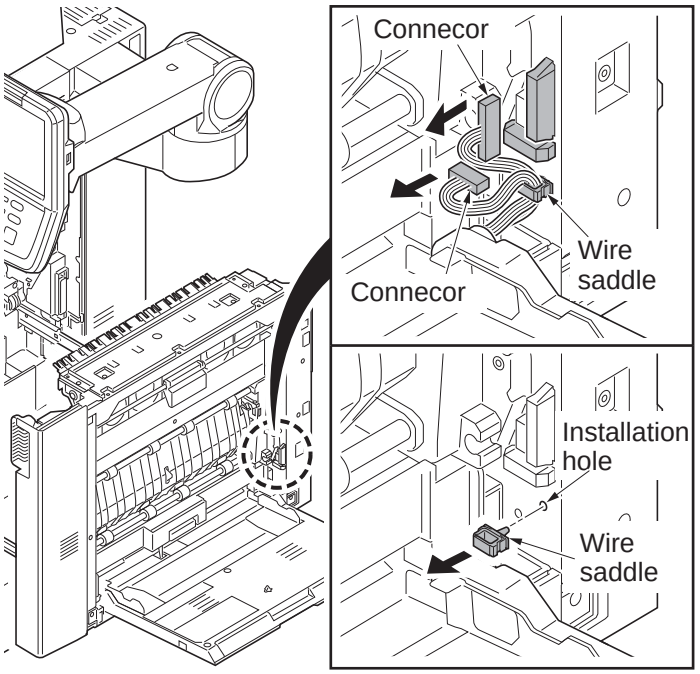


Figure 1-5-48

8. Remove the MP tray.

*: When refitting the MP tray, insert it in the MP tray paper feed unit side by turning the lift arm.

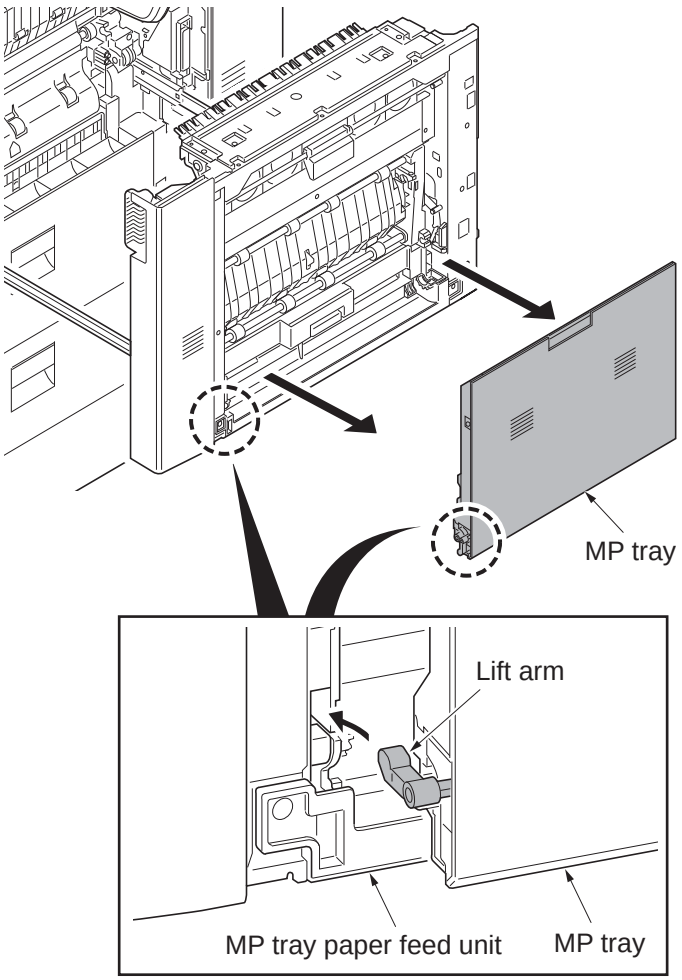
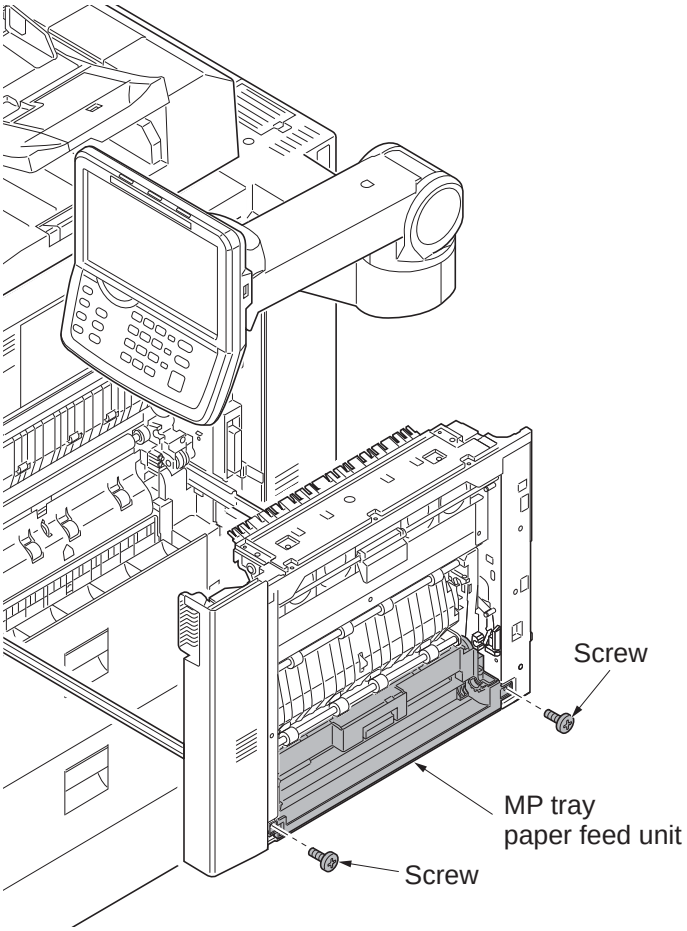


Figure 1-5-49

9. Remove two screws.
10. Remove the MP tray paper feed unit.



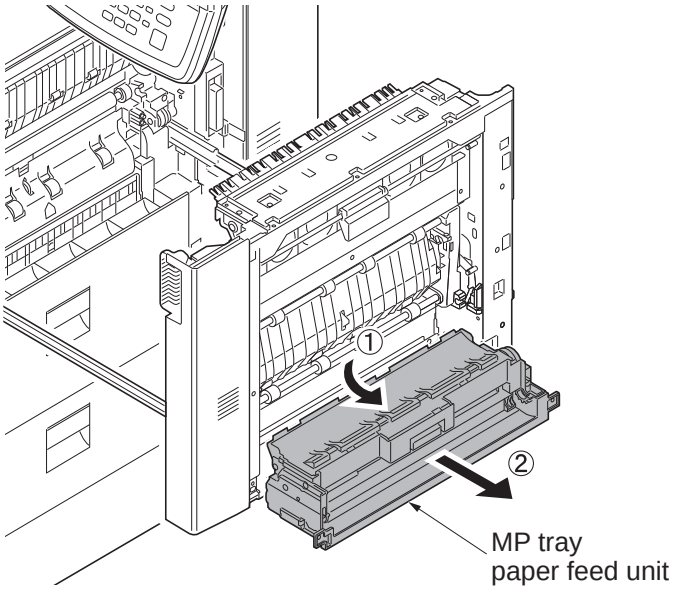


Figure 1-5-50

(6) Detaching and refitting the MP forwarding pulley, MP paper feed pulley and MP separation pulley

Procedure

1. Remove the MP tray paper feed unit (see page 1-5-29).

Detaching forwarding pulley and paper feed pulley

2. Unhook three hooks and then remove the Du lower guide.

*: Remove the DU lower guide easy by bending the top base that the hook is hooking because the hook of the DU lower guide lacks flexibility.

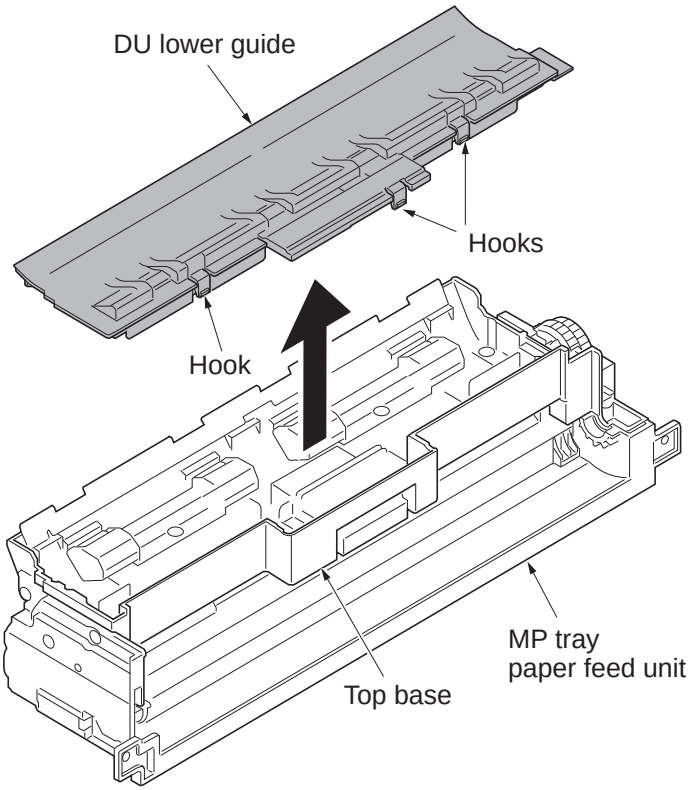


Figure 1-5-51

3. Remove the stop ring A and then slide the driving joint.
4. Slide the bush A.
5. Remove the stop ring B and then remove the bush B.

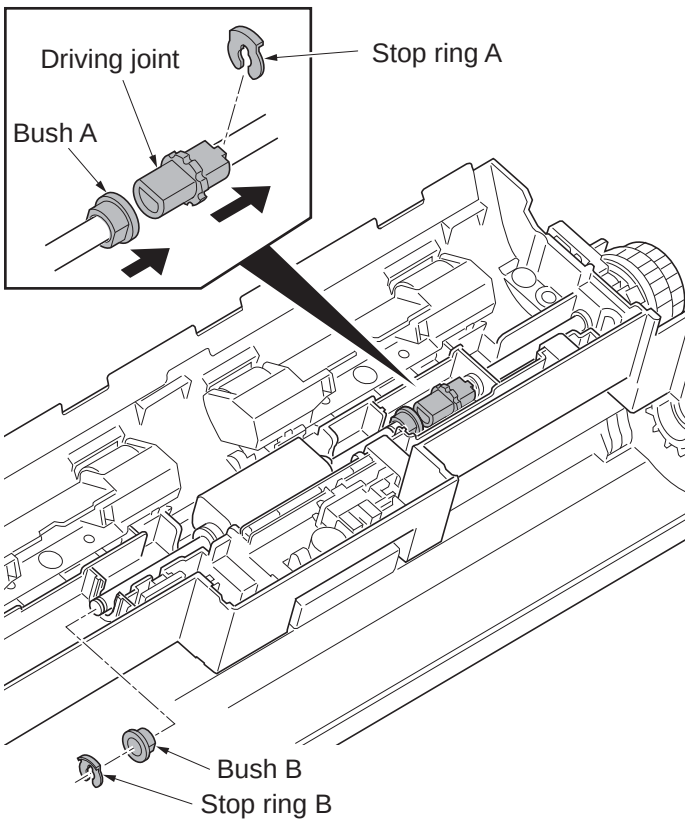


Figure 1-5-52

6. Unhook the hook of the feed holder assembly.
7. Remove the spring and the feed holder assembly from the top base.

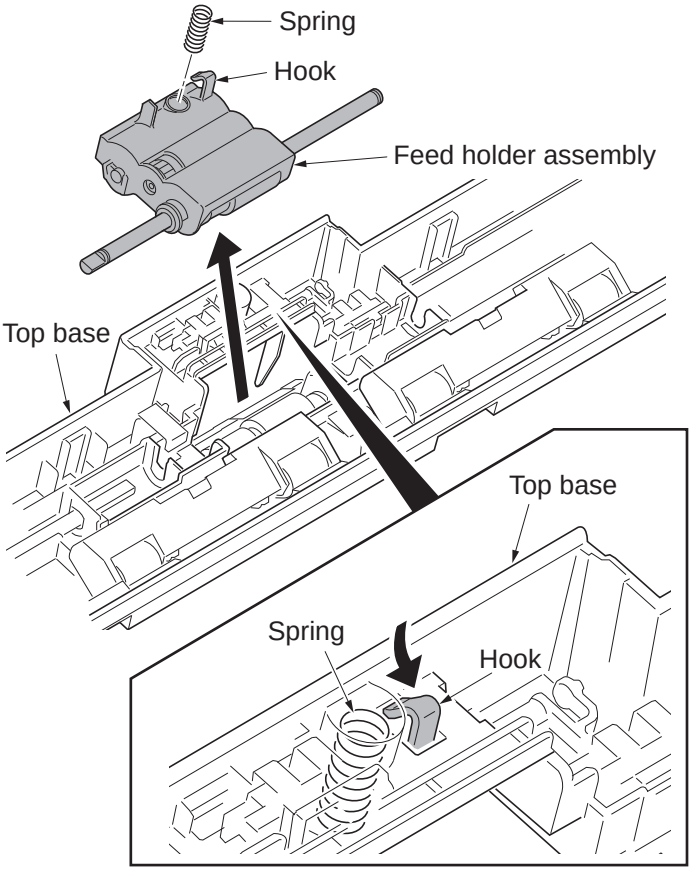


Figure 1-5-53

8. Remove one stop ring.
9. Pull the feed MPF shaft out.
10. Remove two bushes, one way gear Z30R and MP paper feed pulley.

*: To refit the one-way gear Z30R, mount the gear in the correct direction as shown.

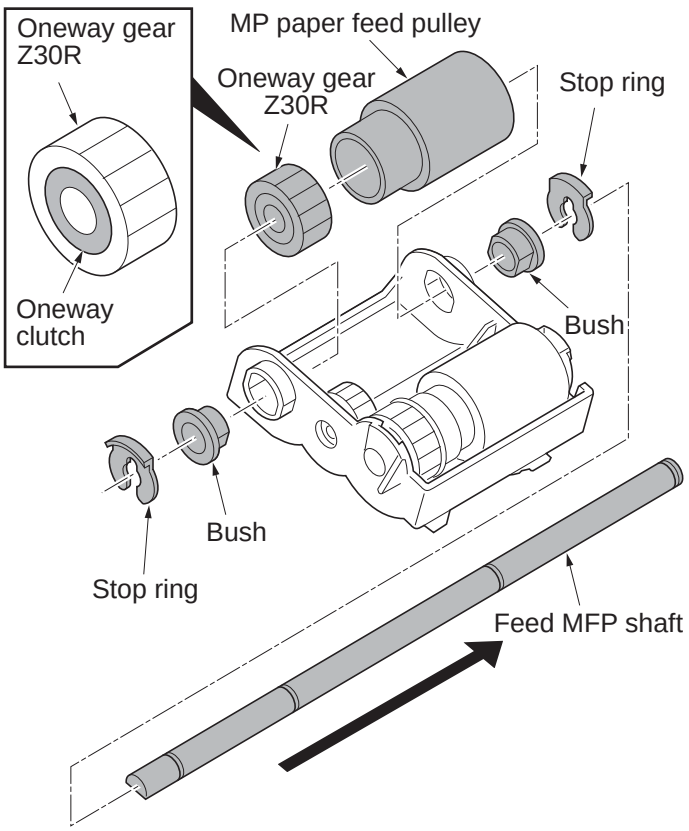


Figure 1-5-54

11. Remove the pickup MPF shaft from the axis holes of feed MPF holder.
12. Pull the pickup gear Z30R and MP forwarding pulley out from the pickup MFP shaft.

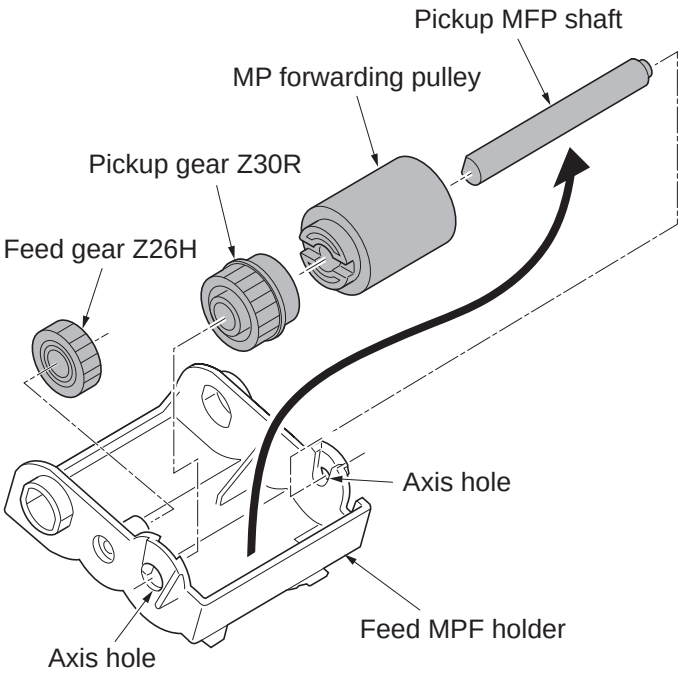


Figure 1-5-55

Detaching the MP separation pulley

13. Unhook two hooks and then remove the middle guide.

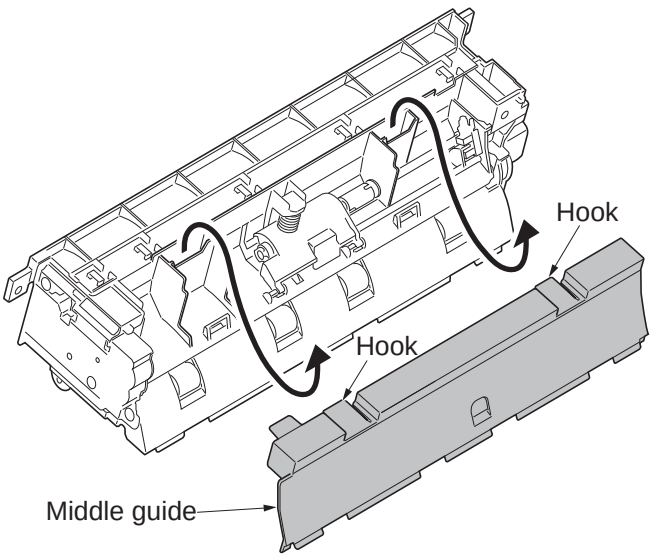


Figure 1-5-56

14. Remove the spring.
15. Release the uniting of joint by sliding the retard holder assembly.

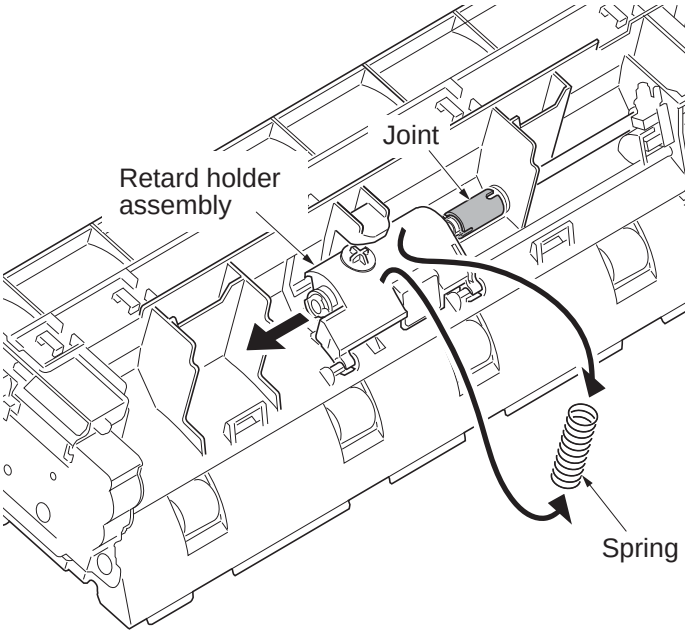


Figure 1-5-57

16. Remove the retard holder assembly by turning it as shown.

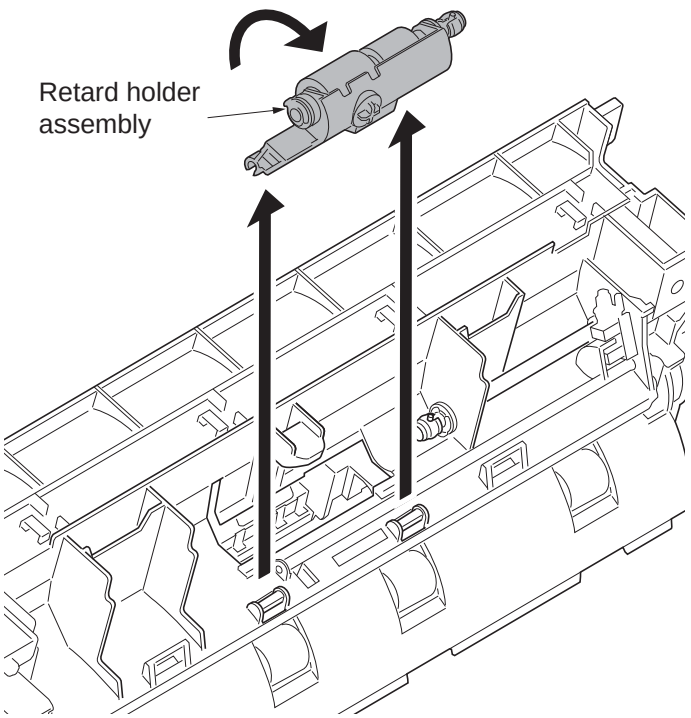


Figure 1-5-58

17. Remove two stop rings.
18. Remove two bushes.
19. Pull the retard MPF shaft out and then remove the torque limiter and the MP separation pulley.
20. Clean or replace the MP forwarding pulley, MP paper feed pulley and MP separation pulley.
21. Refit the MP forwarding pulley, MP paper feed pulley and MP separation pulley to the MP tray paper feed unit.
22. When the MP forwarding pulley, MP paper feed pulley or MP separation pulley is replaced, perform maintenance mode U903 (clearing the jam counter) (see page 1-3-186).

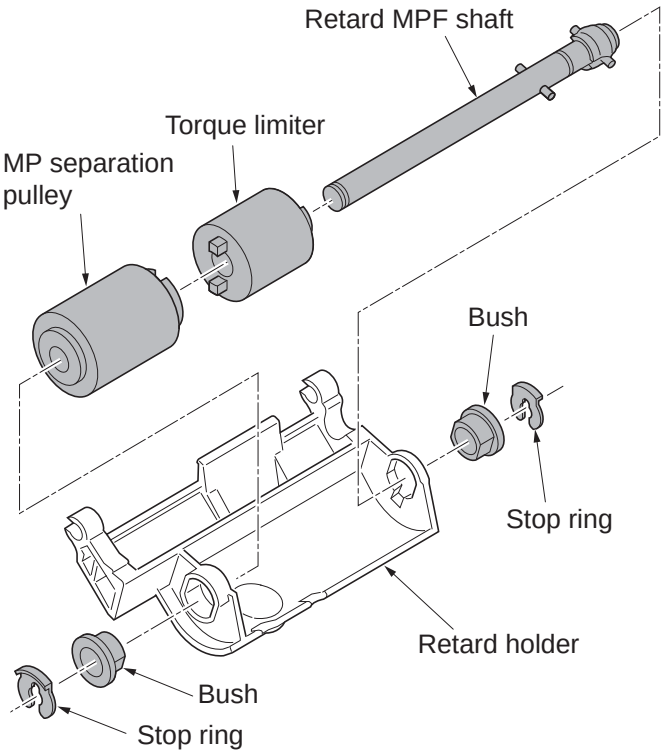


Figure 1-5-59

1-5-4 Optical section

(1) Detaching and refitting the exposure lamp

Notes on handling the LED mount assembly
Do not touch the diffusion seat and the light guiding plate.
Use air blow when you clean the diffusion seat, the light guiding plate, and reflector.
Do not clean it using a cleaning cloth that adheres the fiber easily.

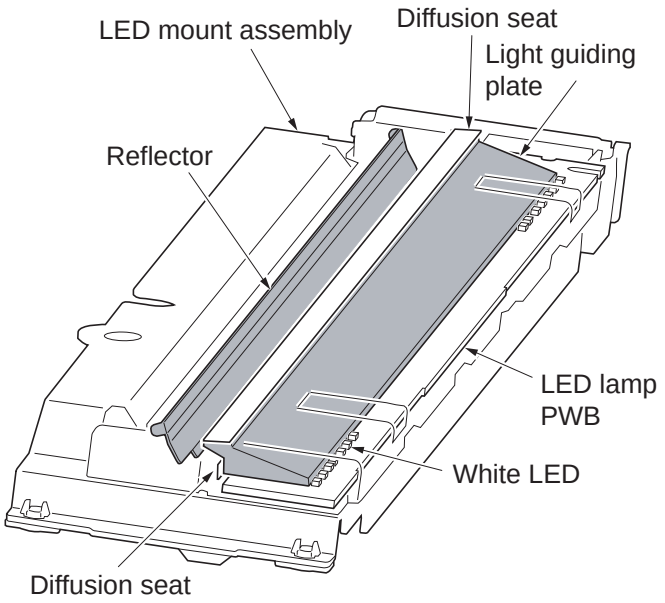


Figure 1-5-60

Procedure

1. Remove the document processor.
2. Remove two screws and then remove the ISU front cover.
3. Remove two screws and then remove the ISU right cover.

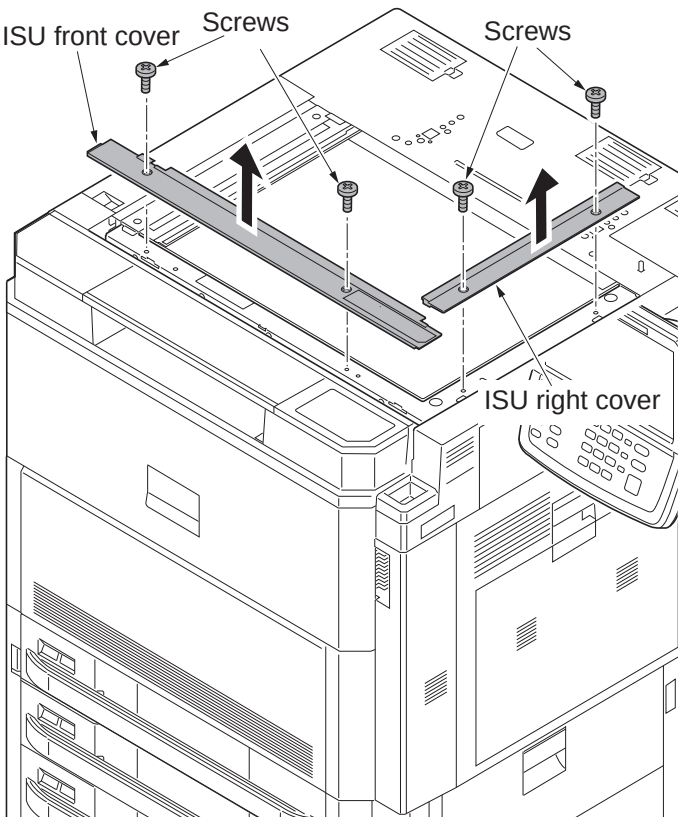


Figure 1-5-61

4. Remove the screw and then operation mount cover C
5. Open the bridge eject cover.
6. Remove two screws and then remove the ISU rear cover.

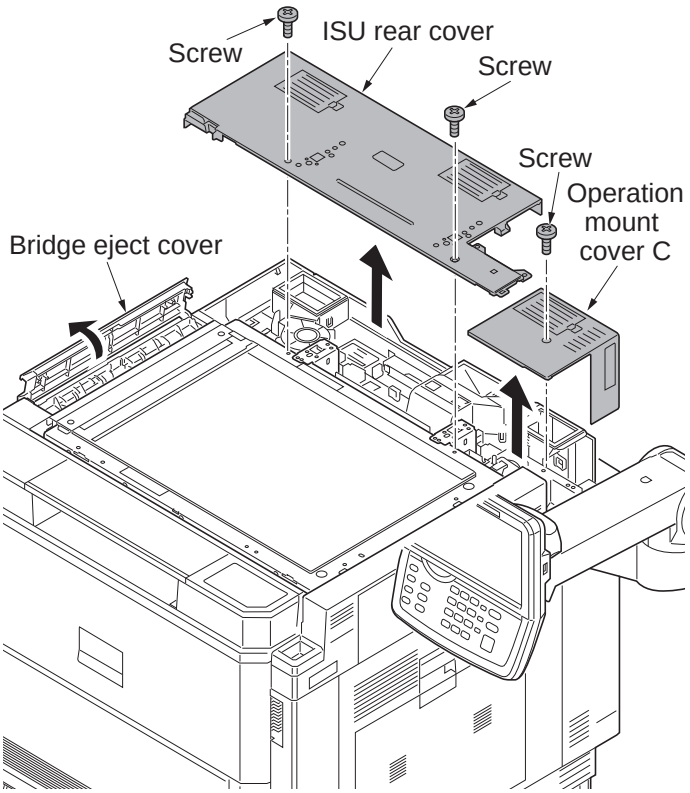


Figure 1-5-62

7. Remove the platen.
8. Peels two films off.

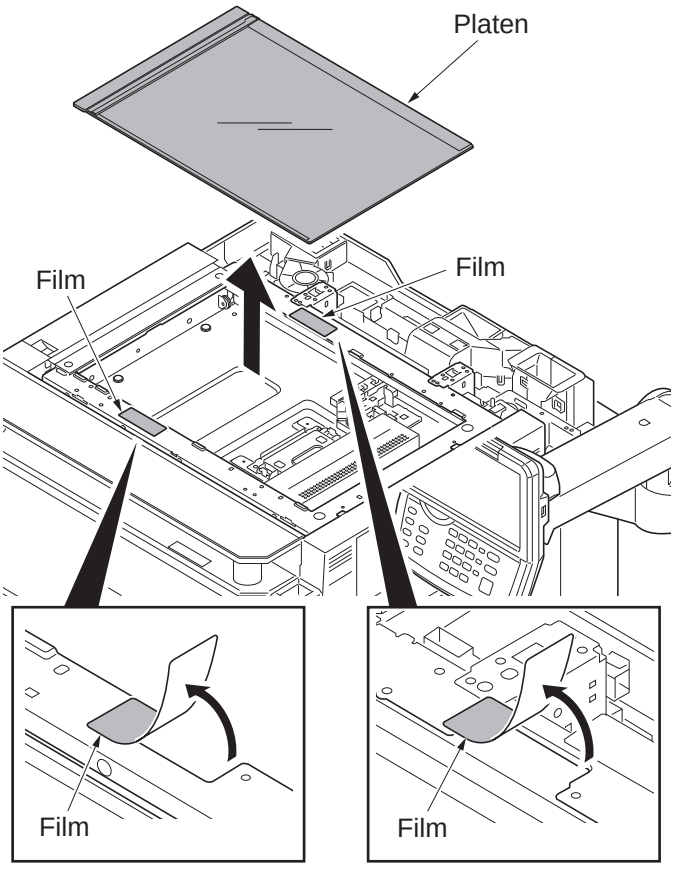


Figure 1-5-63

9. Move the LED mount assembly to the cutting lack part.
10. Unhook the hook and remove the FFC cover from LED mount assembly.
11. Remove the FFC from the FFC connector.
12. Unhook two hooks and remove the FFC guide from the LED mount assembly.

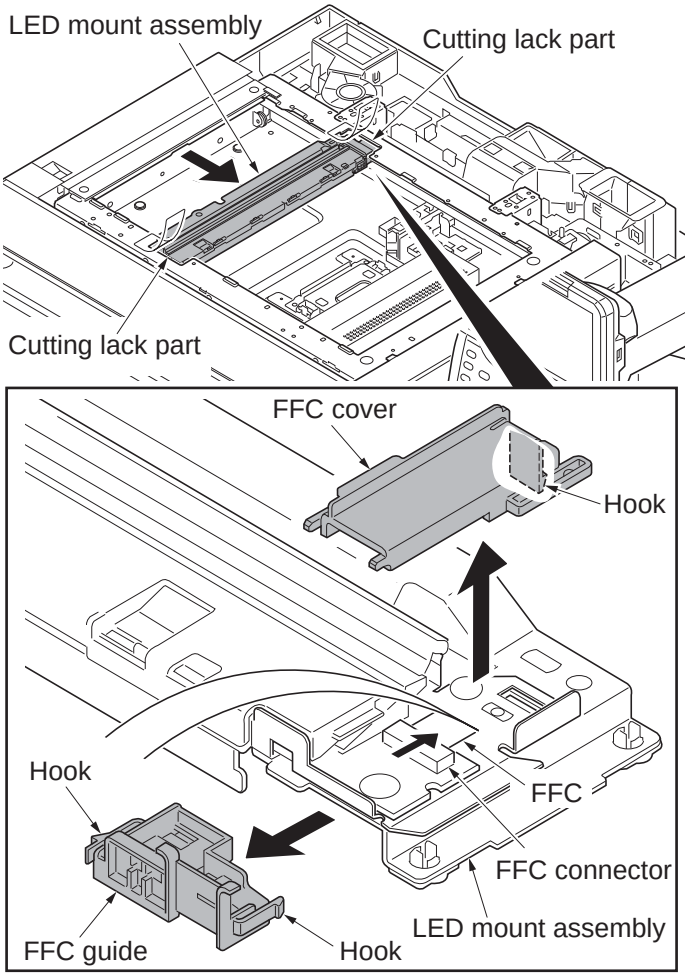


Figure 1-5-64

13. Remove two screws and then remove the LED mount assembly.
14. Check or replace the LED mount assembly and refit all the removed parts.

*: When cleaning the reflector, the light guiding plate and the diffusion sheet of the LED mount assembly, clean it by air blow. Not to leave the hair dust.

15. When the LED mount assembly is replaced, perform maintenance mode U411 (Adjusting the scanner automatically) (see page 1-3-152).

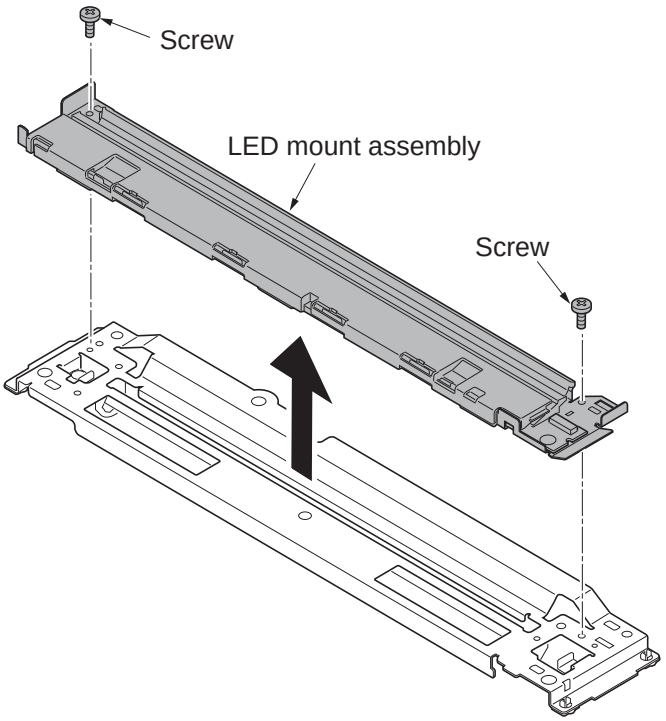


Figure 1-5-65

(2) Detaching and refitting the scanner wires

NOTE
When fitting the wires, be sure to use those specified below.
Machine front: (P/N: 302H717381), gray
Machine rear: (P/N: 302H717391), black

Fitting requires the following tools
Two frame securing tools (P/N 302FZ17100)
Two scanner wire stoppers (P/N 3596811)

Procedure

1. Remove the exposure lamp (see page 1-5-37).
2. Remove each screw and then remove front and rear wire holder plates from mirror 1 frame.
3. Remove the mirror 1 frame.

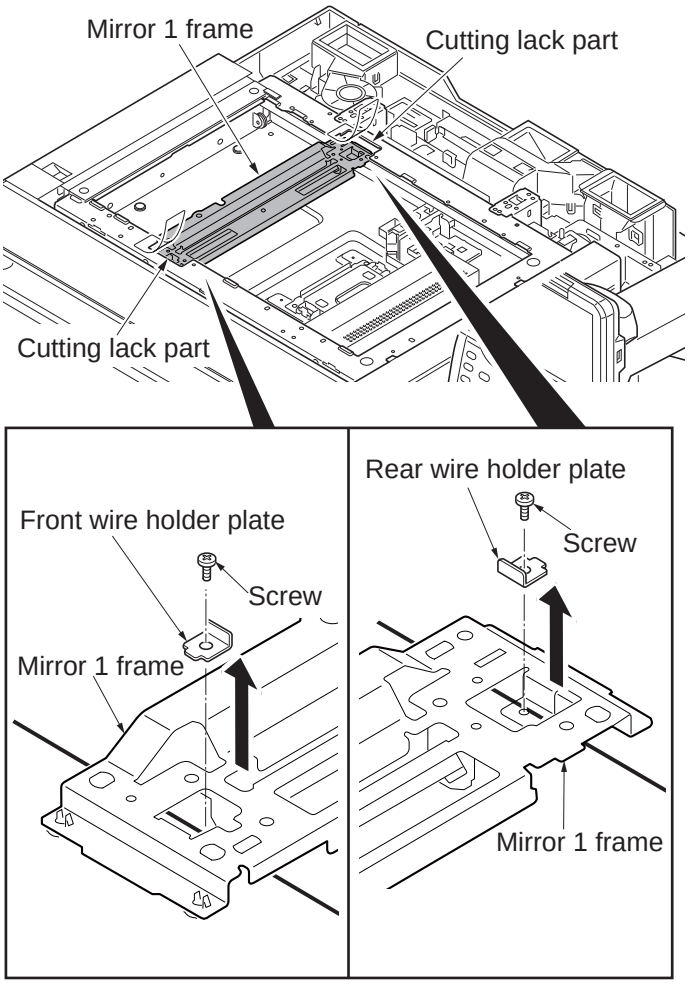


Figure 1-5-66

4. Remove the round terminals from the scanner wire springs on scanner unit left side.
5. Remove the scanner wire.

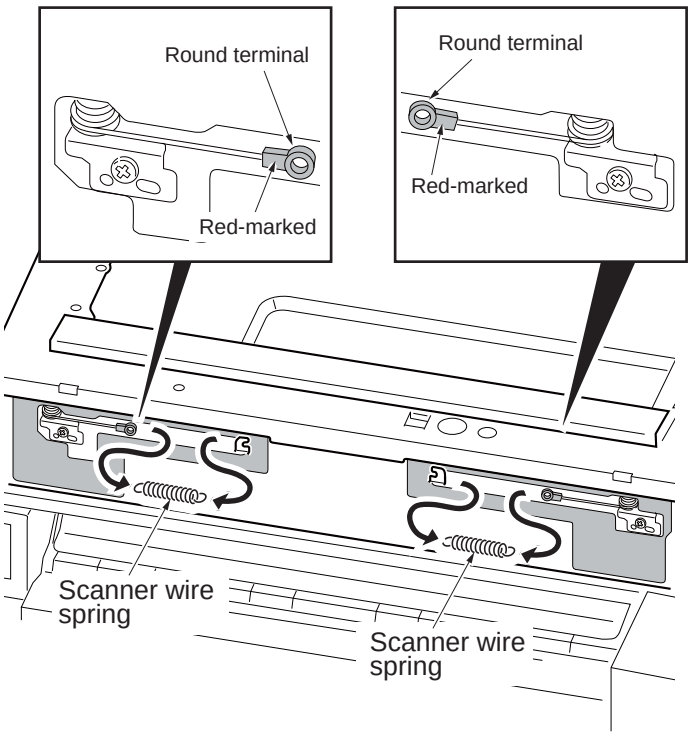


Figure 1-5-67

Fitting the scanner wires

6. Remove two screws each from scanner wire drum. .....(1)
7. Insert the locating ball on the scanner wire into the hole in the scanner wire drum.....(2)
8. Wind the scanner wires three turns inward and five turns outward.
   With the locating ball as the reference point,
   wind the shorter end of each of the wires outward. .....(3)(4)
9. Secure the scanner wires using the scanner wire stoppers.....(5)

10. Move the mirror 2 frame as shown in the figure and insert two frame securing tools into the positioning holes at the front and rear of the machine center to fix the mirror 2 frame in position.

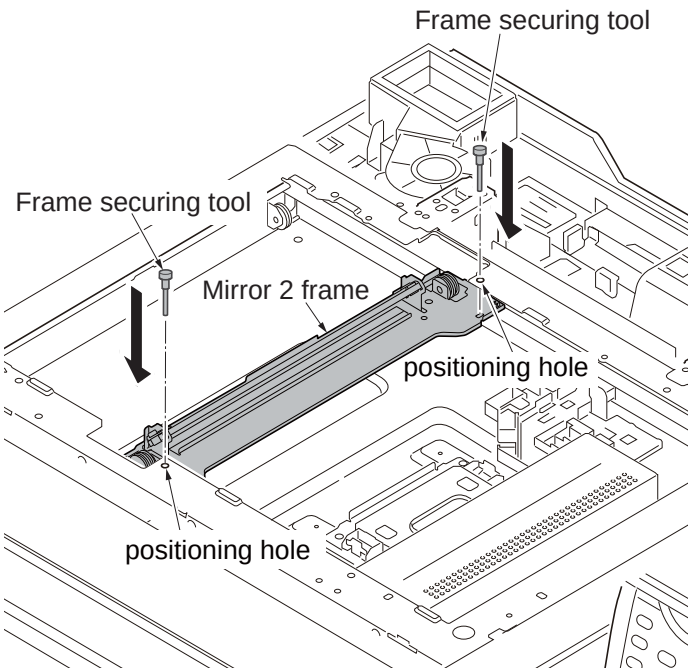


Figure 1-5-68

11. Wind the inner scanner wires around the grooves in the pulleys at the right of the scanner unit from below to above.....(6)
12. Wind the outer scanner wires around the outside grooves in the pulleys of the mirror frame 2 from above to below.....(7)
    *: Align the scanner wires along the outside of the positioning pins.
13. Hook the round terminals to the catches inside the scanner unit. .....(8)
14. Wind the inner scanner wires around the grooves in the pulleys at the left of the scanner unit from below to above.....(9)
    *: Align the scanner wires along the lower side of the mirror frame 2.
15. Wind the scanner wires around the inside grooves in the pulleys of the mirror frame 2 from below to above.....(10)
16. Wind the scanner wires around the grooves in the pulleys at the left of the scanner unit. .....(11)
17. Hook the round terminals to the scanner wire springs.....(12)
18. Apply the procedures 11 through 17 to another scanner wires.

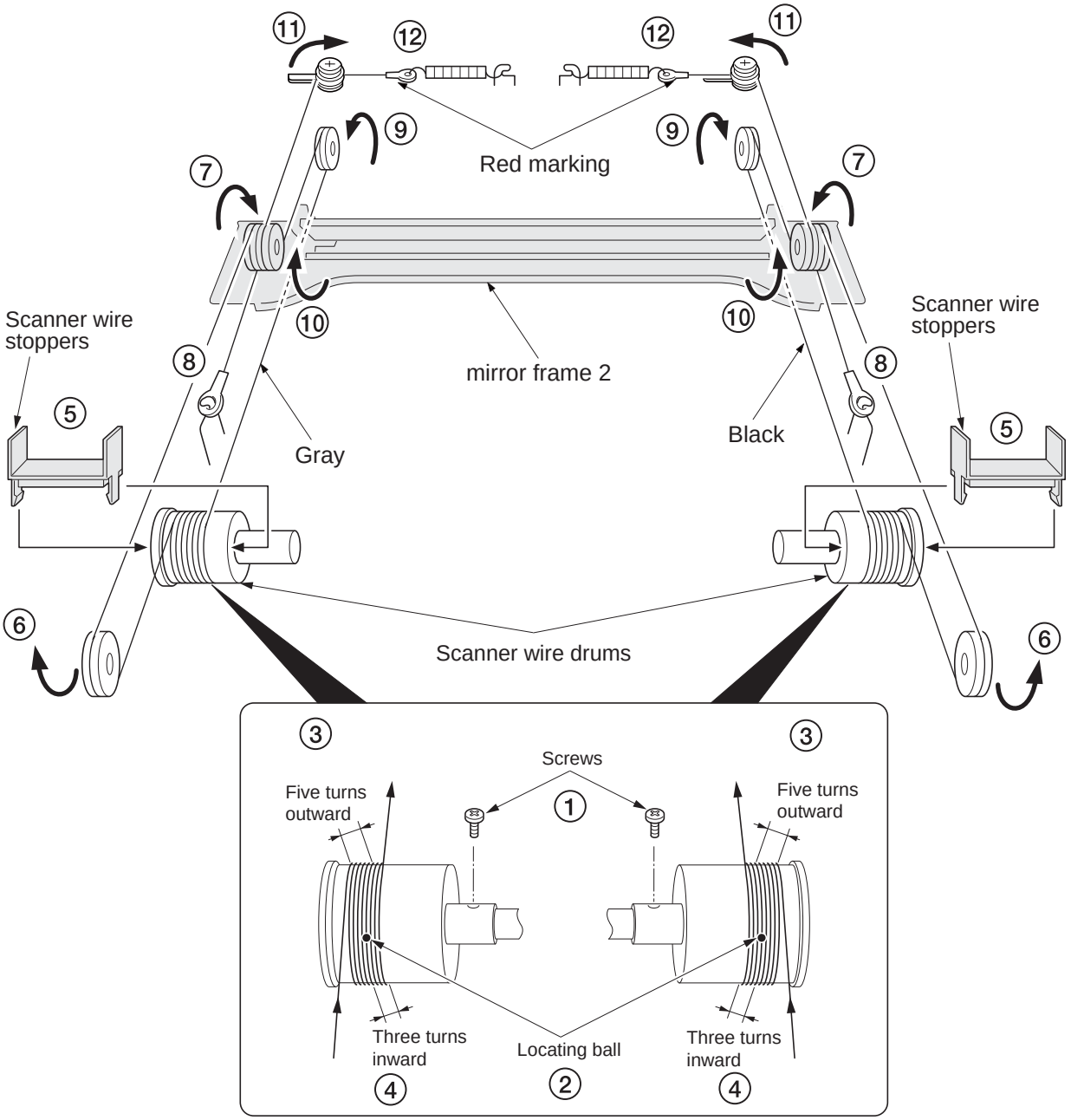
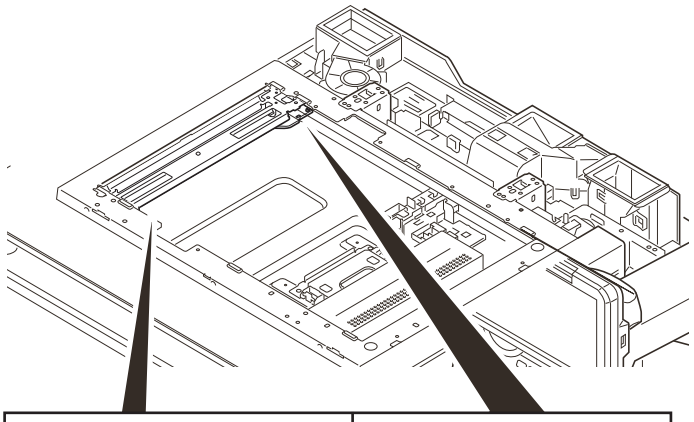
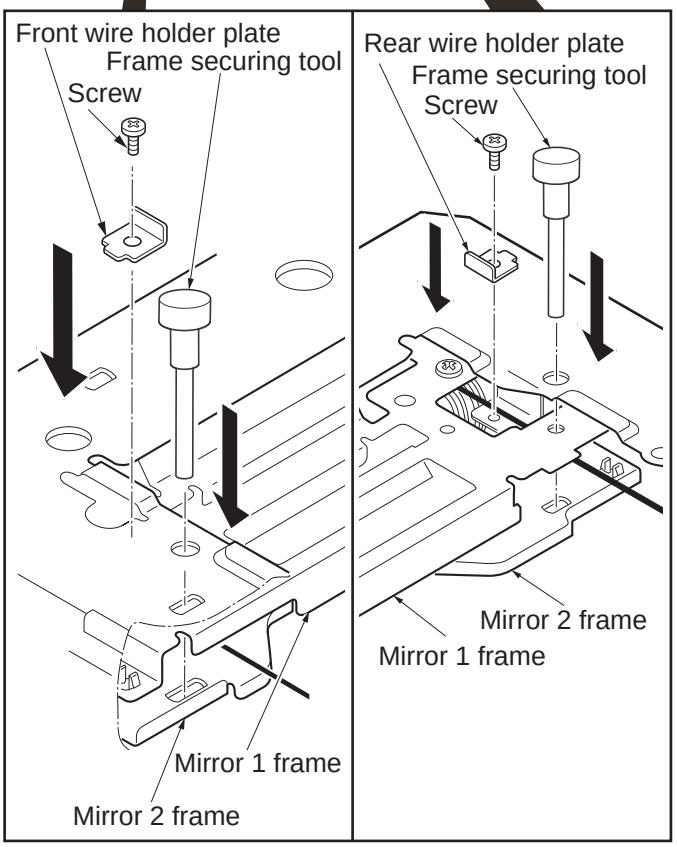


Figure 1-5-69

19. Refit the scanner wire drum with two screws.
20. Remove the two scanner wire stoppers and frame securing tools.
21. Focusing on the locating ball of the wire drum, align the scanner wires to the inside.
22. Move the mirror 2 frame from side to side to correctly locate the wires in position.
23. Refit the mirror 1 frame.
24. Move the mirror 1 and 2 frames to the machine left, and insert the two frame securing tools into the positioning holes at the front and rear of the scanner unit to secure the frames in position.
25. Hold the wires and fix each front and rear wire holder plate to mirror 1 frame with the screw.
26. Remove the two frame securing tools.
27. Refit the exposure lamp.





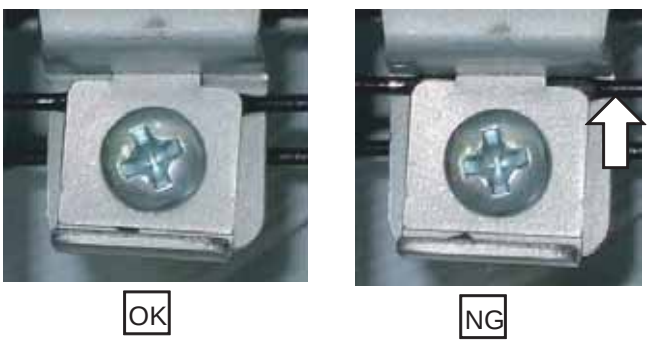


Figure 1-5-70

(3) Detaching and refitting the ISU

Procedure

Detaching the ISU

1. Worn the electrostatic prevention band for the destruction prevention of the CCD board by static electricity.
2. Remove the platen (see page 1-5-37).
3. Remove six screws and then remove the lens cover.

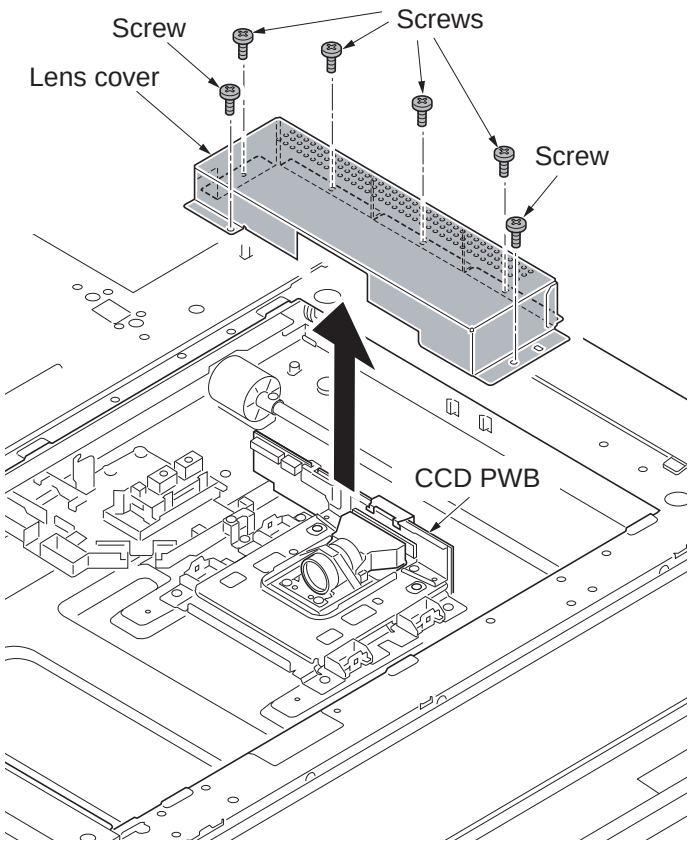


Figure 1-5-71

4. Remove the connector.
5. Remove the FFC from the FFC connector with a lock.

*: When removing the FFC from the FFC connector with a lock, remove the FFC after released by lifting down the lock lever (see page 1-5-76).

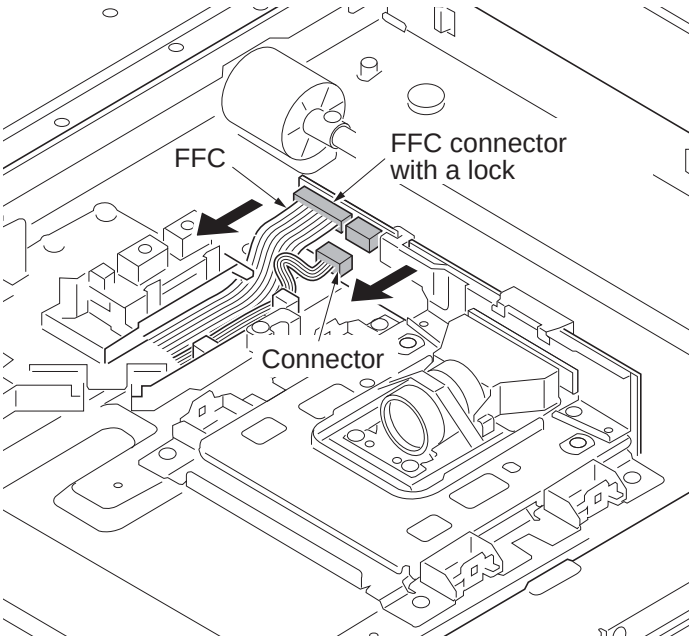


Figure 1-5-72

6. Remove four screws and then remove the ISU.

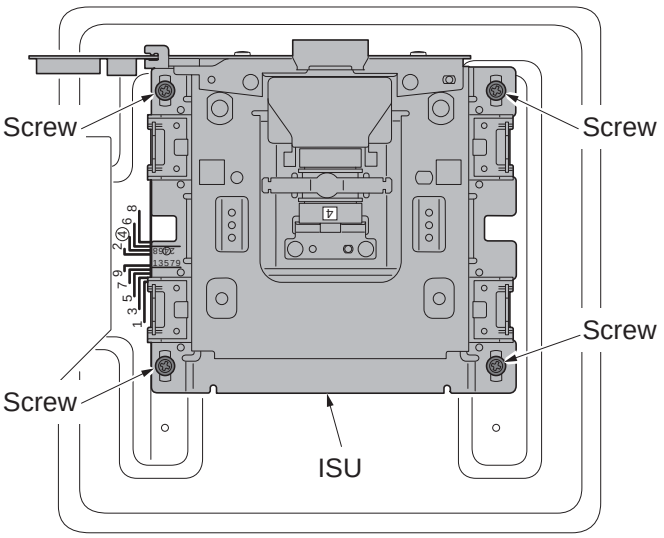


Figure 1-5-73

Refitting the ISU

1. Install the FFT.
*: The FFT should be inserted while holding the position (A) shown in the illustration (A).

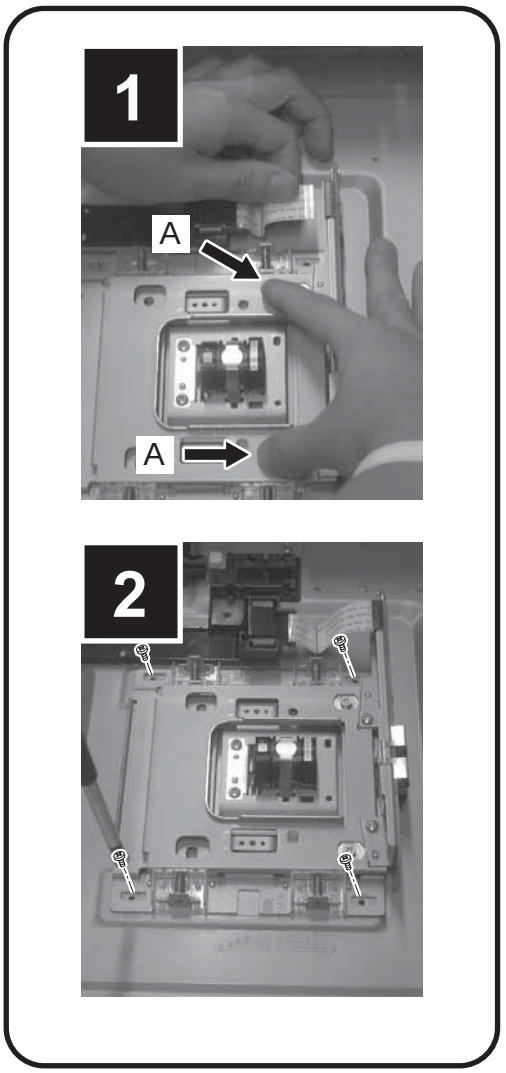


Figure 1-5-74

2. Decide the fix position of ISU by the following.
   The right and left of machine:
   Verify the number prefixed by a (a) mark.
   Match the line (c) of ISU to the positioning line (b) of same number on frame side.
   Line (c) is the one which is marked with the appropriate number.

   The rear and front of machine:
   Match the edge (e) of ISU to the positioning line (d) on frame side.
3. Fix the ISU as before with four screws.
4. Refit all the removed parts.
5. When replacing the new ISU, Perform maintenance mode U411 (Adjusting the scanner automatically)
   (see page 1-3-152).

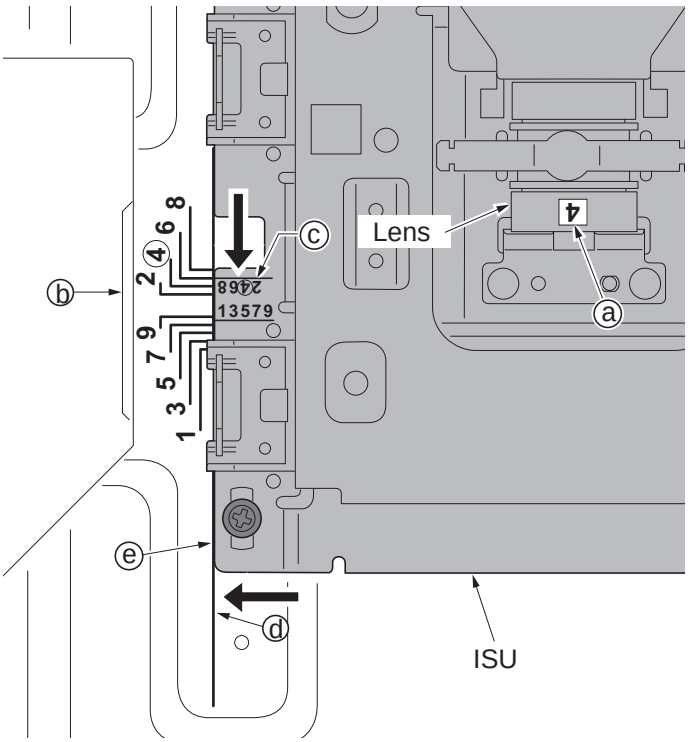


Figure 1-5-75

Refitting the ISU

4. Check the image
   After replacing the CCD unit, check the copy image. According to the condition, execute the procedures below.

   1. In case of no problem on the image, go to “9.Image Adjustment”
   2. In case a part of the image is whitish from the leading edge or the background image appears like the illustration “a”, go to “5. The CCD unit Height Adjustment 1”.
   3. In case white vertical lines appear on the image like the illustration “b”, go to “7. The CCD unit Height Adjustment 2”.

   *: The CCD unit height adjustment is necessary for above 2 and 3 because an optical axis shifts and the light path is not secured.

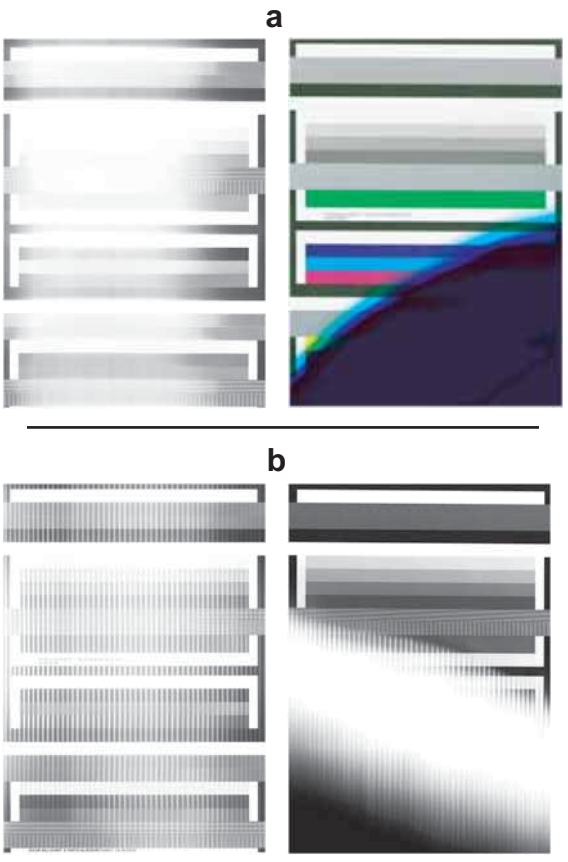


Figure 1-5-76

5. The CCD unit Height Adjustment 1

In case a part of the image is whitish from the leading edge or the background image appears like the illustration “a”.

The replacement ISU comes complete with a large spacer (B) and a small spacer (C).

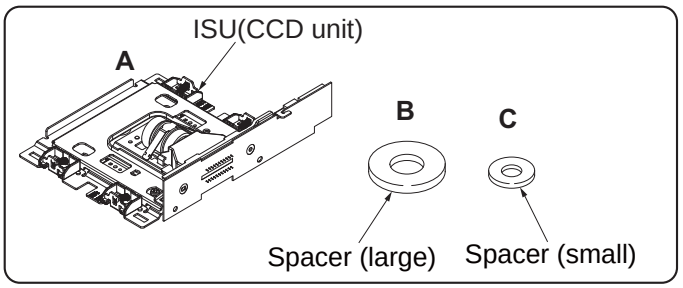


Figure 1-5-77

1. Set the spacer (large) (B) into the outside screw holes at the CCD sensor side.
2. Check the image.

3. In case of no problem on the image, go to “9. Image Adjustment”.
4. In case of the problem on the image, go to “6. Re-adjustment 1”.

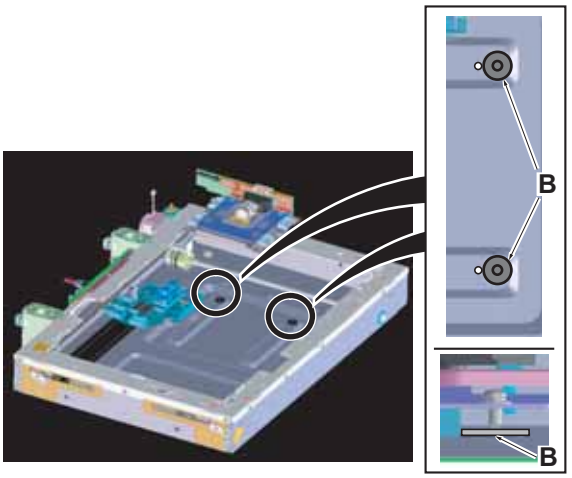


Figure 1-5-78

6. Re-adjustment 1

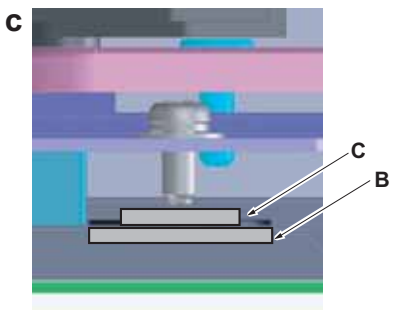
1. In case the whitish or background image still appears.

c: Insert the additional spacer (small) (C)

2. In case the white vertical lines appear.

d: Remove the spacer (large) (B) and insert the spacer (small) (C).

Check the image and go to “9. Image Adjustment”.



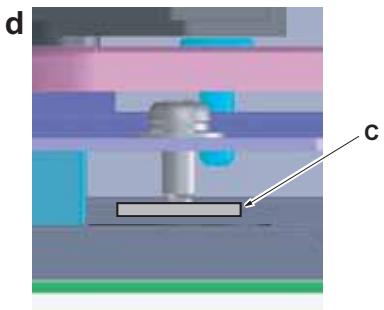


Figure 1-5-79

7. The CCD unit Height Adjustment 2

In case of white vertical lines appear like the illustration “b” on page 1.

1. Set the spacer (large) (B) into the inside screw holes at the lens side.
2. Check the image.
   In case of no problem on the image, go to “9. Image Adjustment”.
   In case of the problem on the image, go to “8. Re-adjustment 2”.

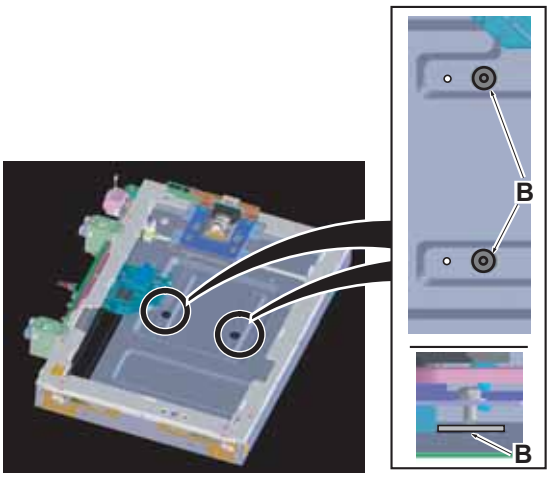


Figure 1-5-80

8. Re-adjustment 2

1. In case the white vertical lines still appear.
   c: Insert the additional spacer (small) (C)
   In case the whitish or background image appears.
   d: Remove the spacer (large) (B) and insert the spacer (small) (C).
2. Check the image and go to “9. Image Adjustment”.

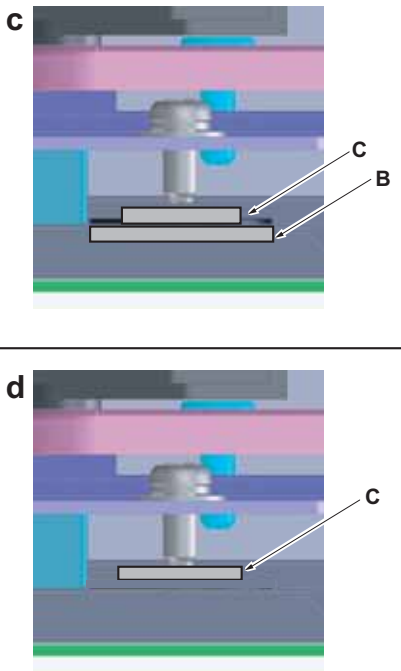


Figure 1-5-81

9. Image Adjustment

Execute the U411 Auto Adjustment (see page 1-3-152).
Set a new auto adjustment chart (part no. 7505000005) on the contact glass.
Execute the U411- Target – Auto – Table (chart1) - ALL.

10. Refit all the removed parts.

(4) Detaching and refitting the LSU

Procedure

1. Remove the inner unit (see page 1-5-53).
2. Remove two screws that secure the two straps on the front upper cover.
3. Slide the front upper cover to left and then remove the cover from pins.

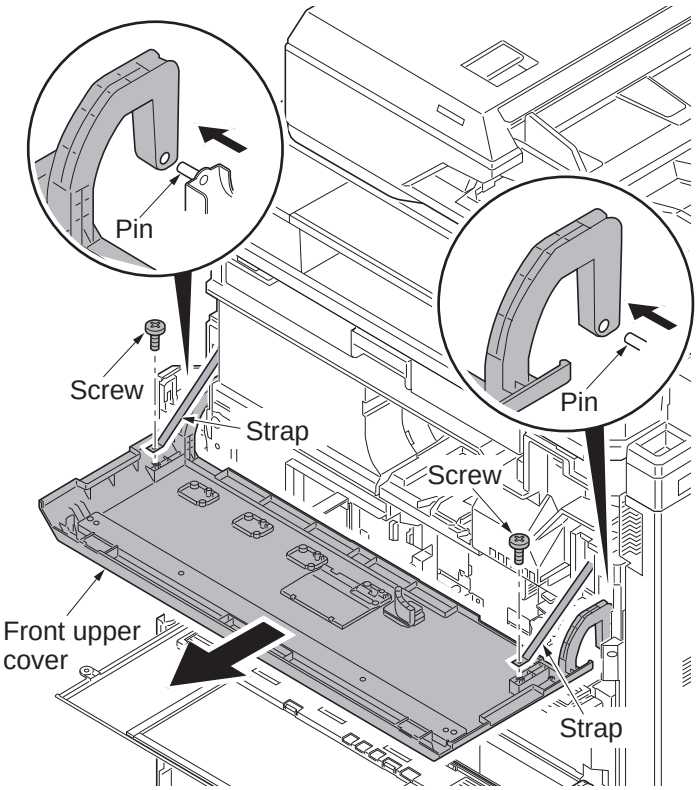


Figure 1-5-82

4. Remove four screws and then remove the inner lower cover.

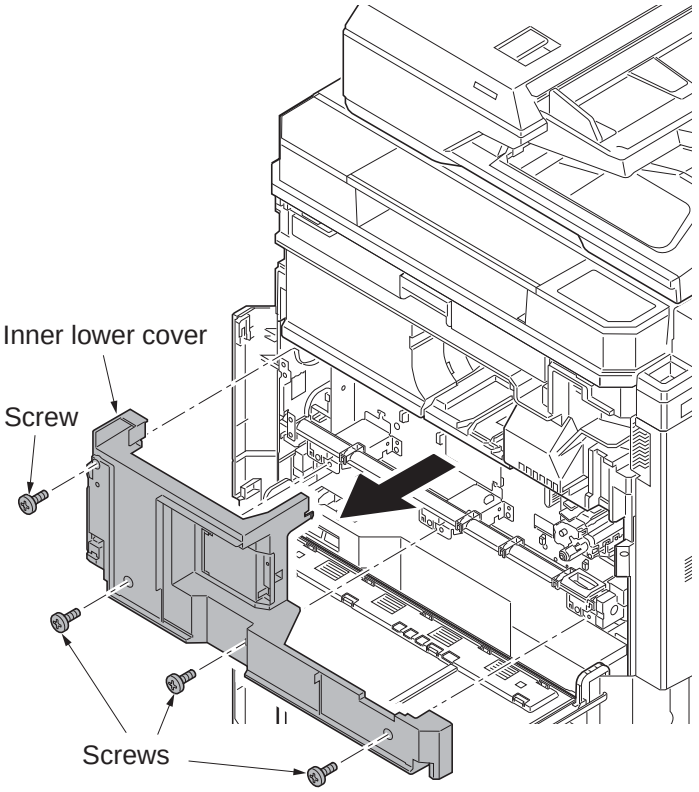


Figure 1-5-83

5. Pull the bridge conveying unit out.
6. Remove the screw.
7. Slide the bridge conveying unit and then remove the unit from the hooks of the slide rails.

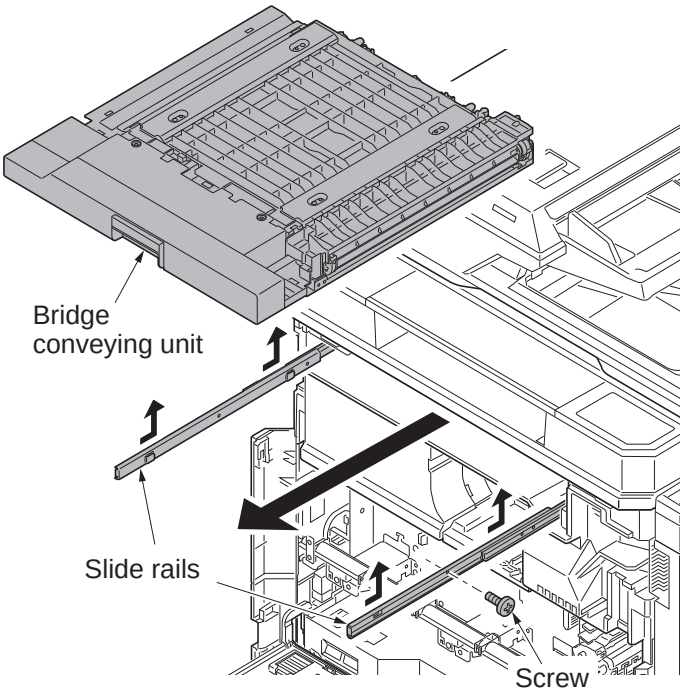


Figure 1-5-84

8. Remove five screws.
9. Remove two magnet catches.
10. Unhook two hooks and then remove the inner upper cover.

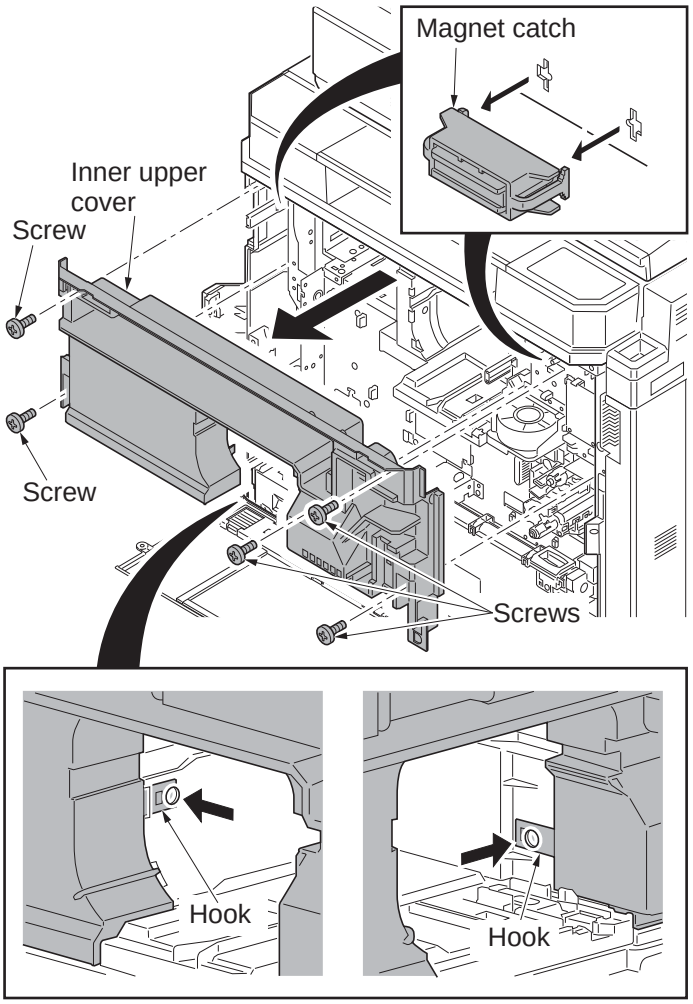


Figure 1-5-85

11. Remove two screws of the container guide.
12. Pull the container guide out and remove the guide.

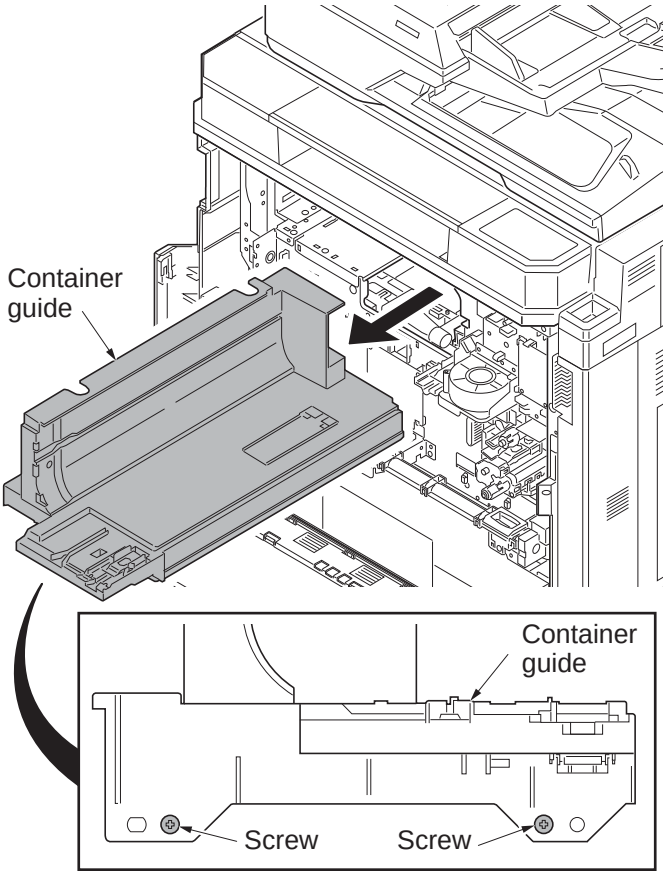


Figure 1-5-86

13. Remove the FFC from the FFC connector with a lock (YC3,YC4) of the LSU relay PWB.
    *: When removing the FFC from the FFC connector with a lock, remove the FFC after released by lifting up the lock lever.
14. Remove 5-pin relay connector at rear side of the LSU.

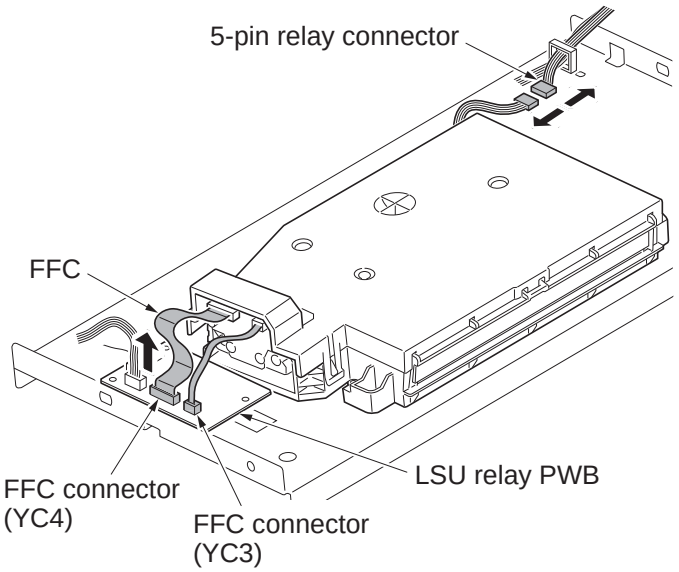


Figure 1-5-87

15. Remove four screws (A to D) and then remove the LSU.
16. Check or replace the LSU and refit all the removed parts.
    *: To re-mount the LSU, secure the screws in the order of A – B – C- D.

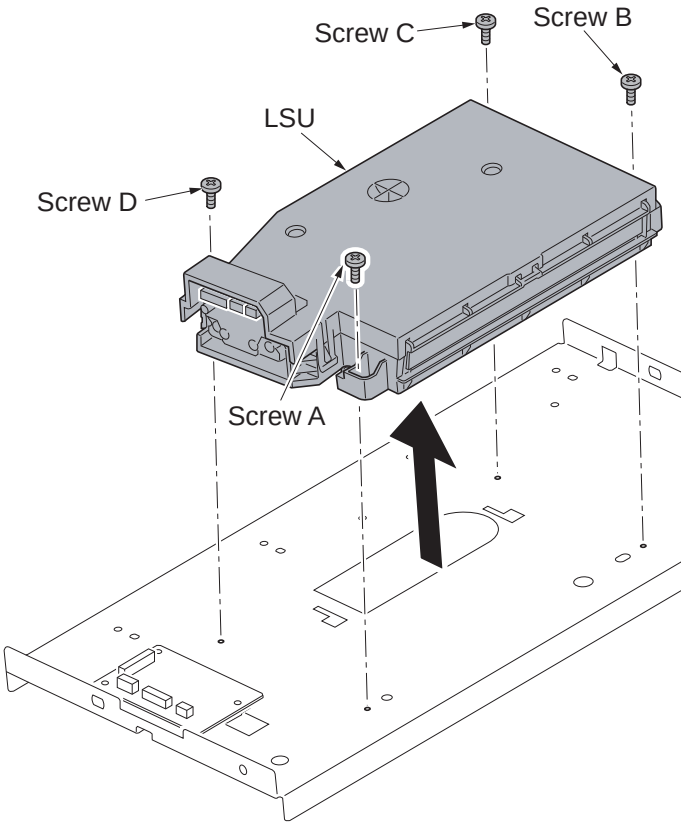


Figure 1-5-88

17. When replacing the new LSU, proceed as follows:
    1)Perform maintenance mode U930 (checking/ clearing the charger roller count) and checking the counter value (see page 1-3-196).
    2)Perform maintenance mode U119 (Setting the drum) (see page 1-3-76).
    3)Perform maintenance mode U930 (checking/clearing the charger roller count) and input the counter value (see page 1-3-196).
    4)Perform maintenance mode U464 (Calibration) (see page 1-3-175).
    5)Perform maintenance mode U412 (Adjusting the uneven density) (see page 1-3-161).
    6)Perform maintenance mode U464 (Calibration) (see page 1-3-175).
    7)Perform maintenance mode U410 (Adjusting the halftone automatically) (see page 1-3-151).

1-5-5 Image formation section

(1) Detaching and refitting the inner unit

Procedure

1. Open the front upper cover.
2. Remove toner container.
3. Close the front upper cover.

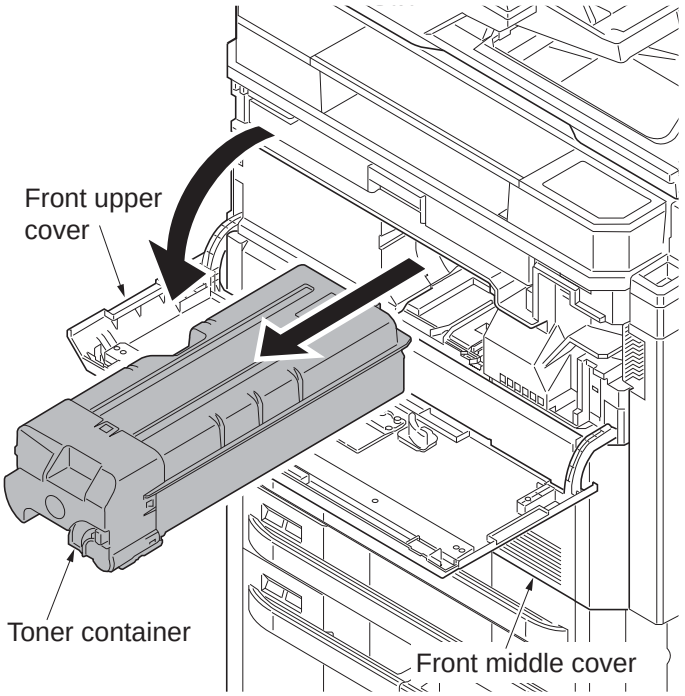


Figure 1-5-89

4. Open the waste toner box cover.

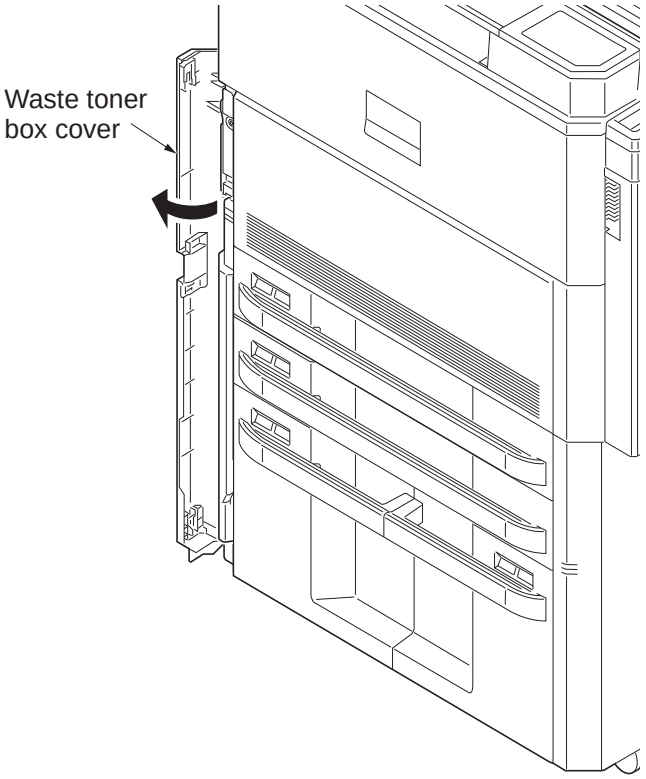


Figure 1-5-90

5. Pull the paper conveying unit out.
6. Remove two screws and then open the front middle cover.
7. Lock the developer waste exit that has been released (see page 1-2-25).
8. Remove the screw and then open the connector cover.
9. Remove the connector.
10. Release the wire saddle.

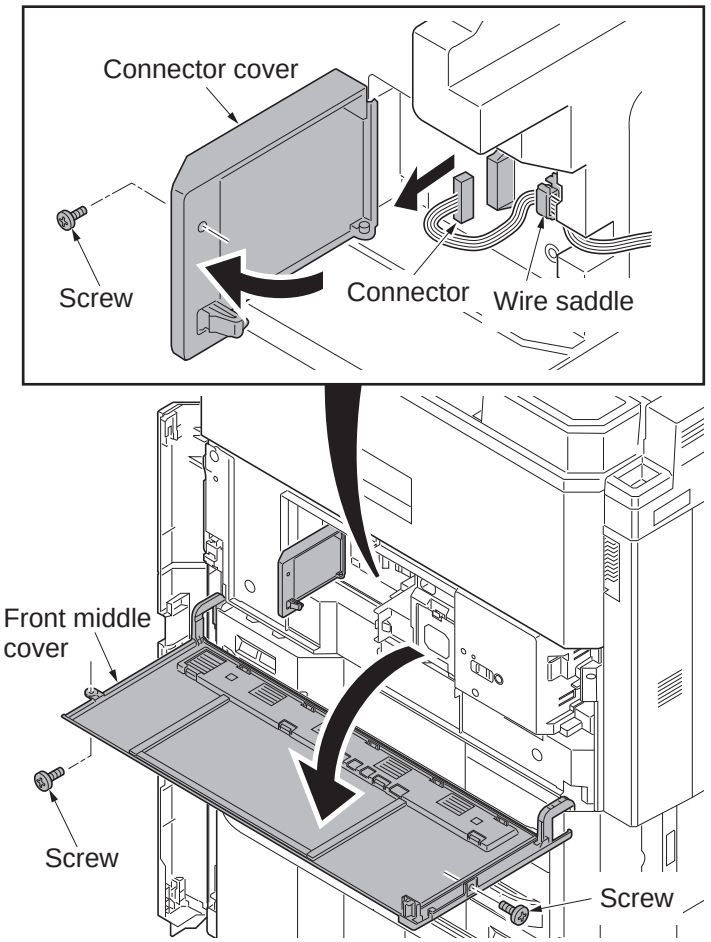


Figure 1-5-91

11. Remove four fixed screws of inner unit.

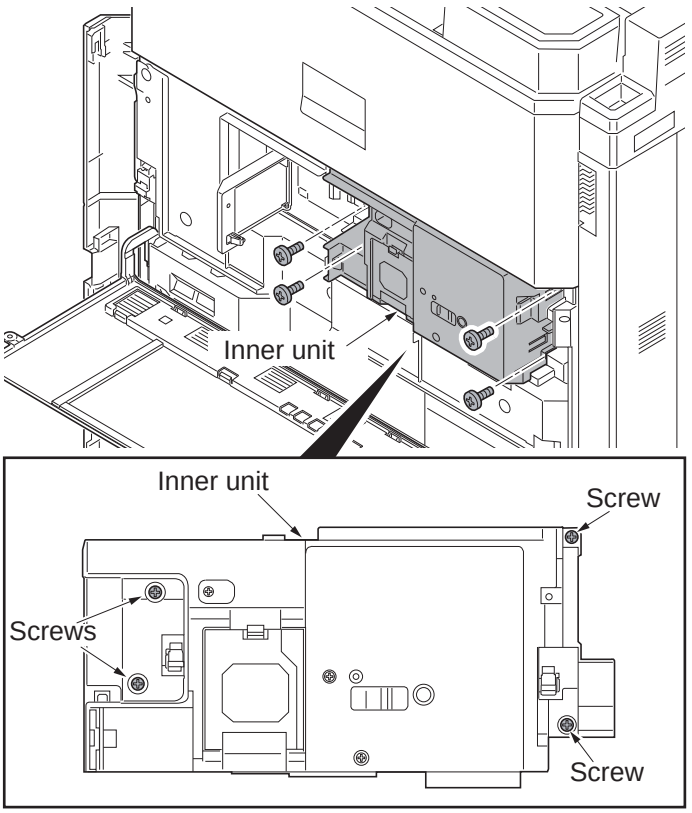


Figure 1-5-92

12. Release the lock by pushing the fixed levers at the right and left of inner unit.
13. Remove the inner unit.
14. Close the toner supply shutter of the inner unit.
    *: Be sure to unlock the lock to the developer eject duct after installing the inner unit.

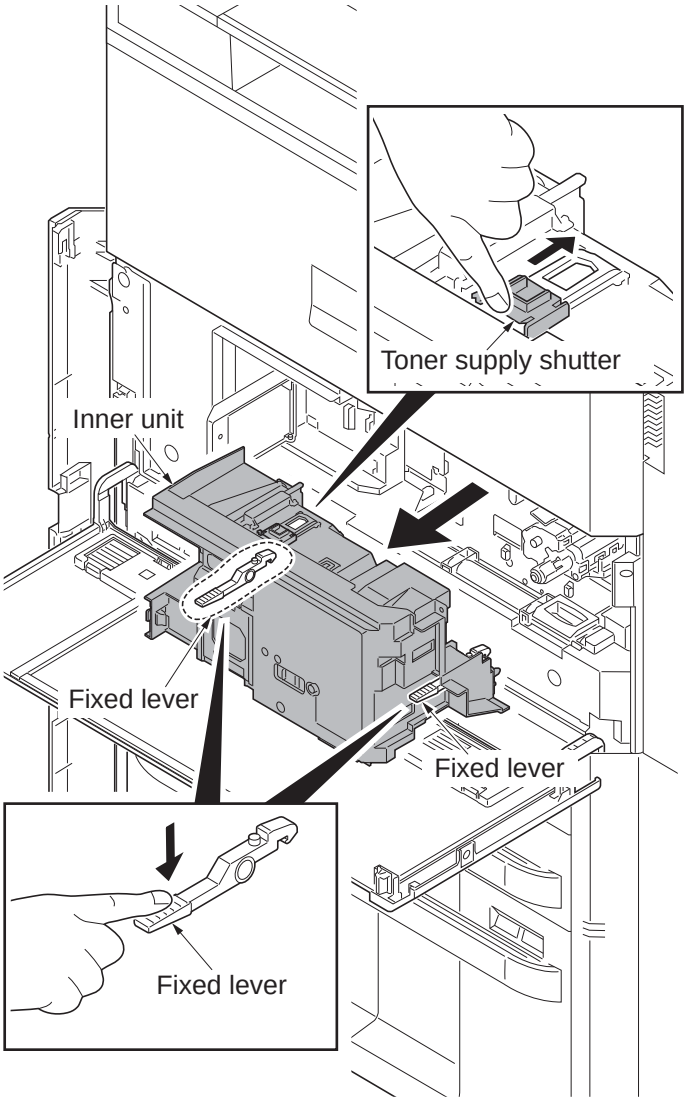


Figure 1-5-93

(2) Detaching and refitting the developer unit

Procedure

1. Remove the inner unit (see page 1-5-53).
2. Close the toner supply shutter.
3. Remove the connector.
4. Turn down the DLP rail lever.

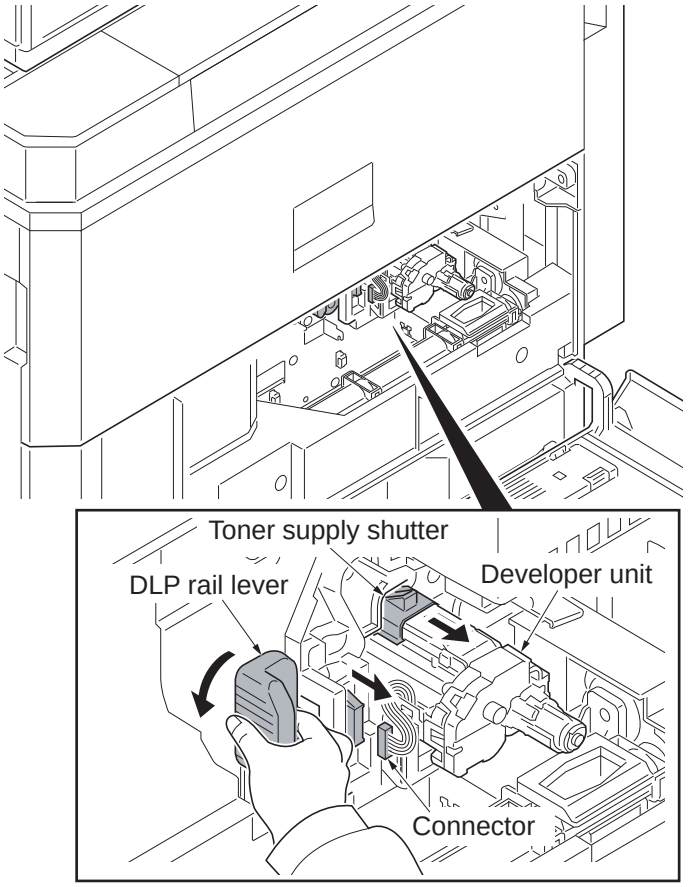


Figure 1-5-94

5. Release the lock lever at lower side of the developer unit and then pull out the developer unit.
6. Check or replace the developer unit and refit all the removed parts.

7. When replacing the new developer unit, proceed as follows:
   1) Perform maintenance mode U140 (AC calibration) (see page 1-3-83).
   2)Perform maintenance mode U464 (Calibration) (see page 1-3-175).
   3)Perform maintenance mode U410 (Adjusting the halftone automatically) (see page 1-3-151).

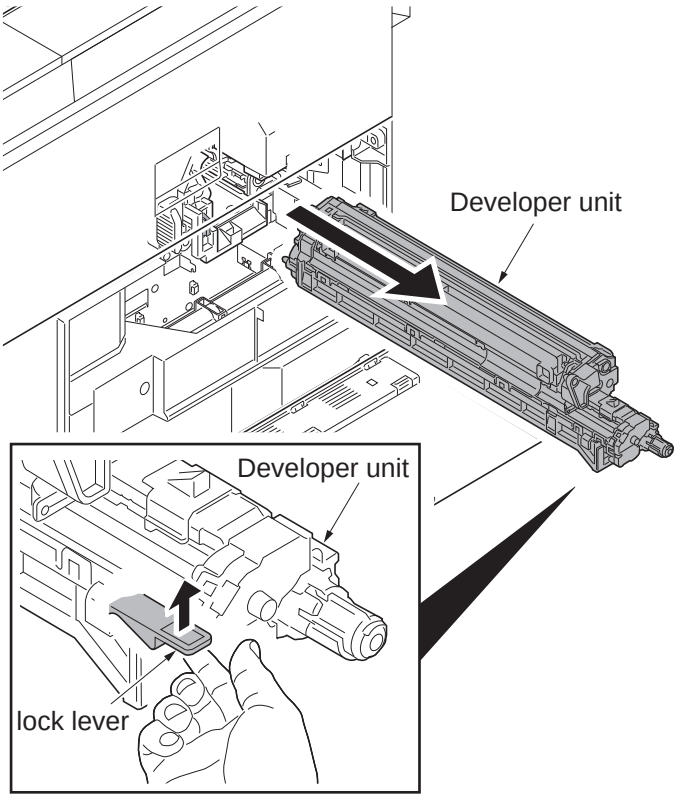


Figure 1-5-95

*: When a new development unit is installed, the developing roller protective sheet must be removed.

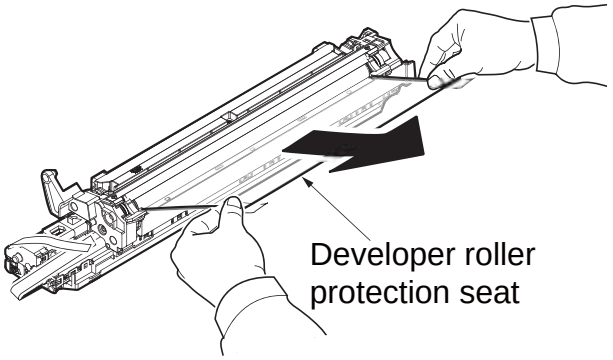


Figure 1-5-96

(3) Detaching and refitting the drum unit

Procedure

1. Remove the inner unit (see page 1-5-53).
2. Remove the developer unit (see page 1-5-56).
3. Pull the paper conveying unit out.
4. Remove the connector.
5. Remove the screw.

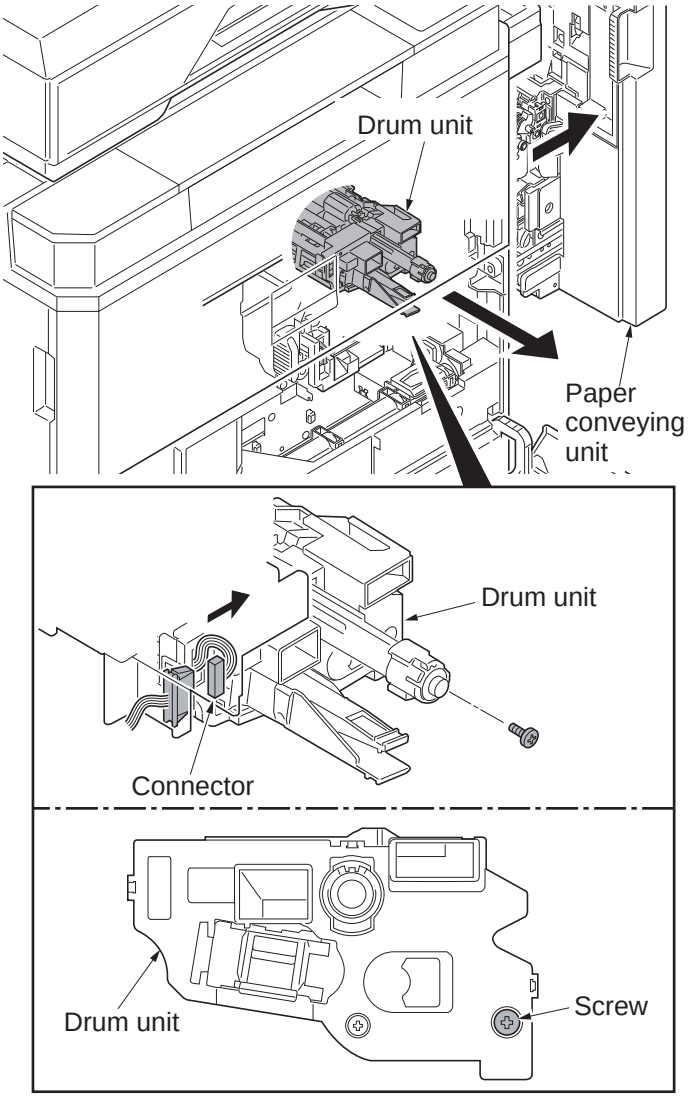


Figure 1-5-97

6. Pull out the drum unit.
7. Check or replace the drum unit and refit all the removed parts.

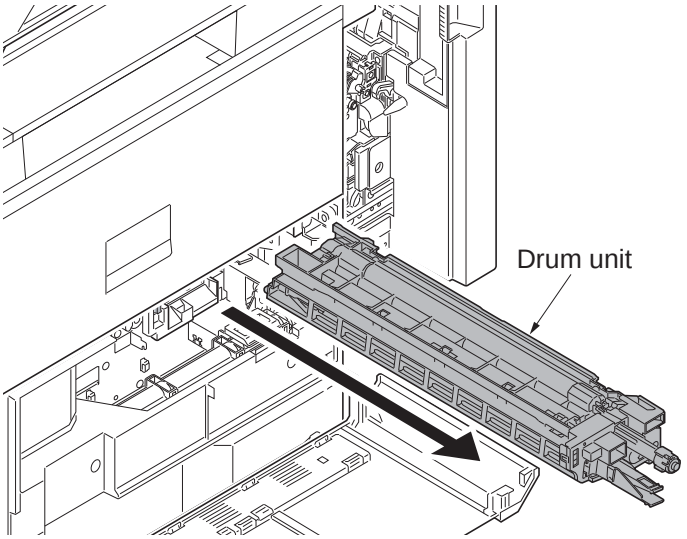


Figure 1-5-98

8. When replacing the new drum unit, proceed as follows:
   1) Perform maintenance mode U119 (drum setup) (see page 1-3-76).
   2) Perform maintenance mode U140 (AC calibration) (see page 1-3-83).
   3)Perform maintenance mode U464 (Calibration) (see page 1-3-175).
   4)Perform maintenance mode U412 (Adjusting the uneven density) (see page 1-3-161).
   5)Perform maintenance mode U464 (Calibration) (see page 1-3-175).
   6)Perform maintenance mode U410 (Adjusting the halftone automatically) (see page 1-3-151).

(4) Detaching and refitting the charger roller unit

Procedure

1. Remove the inner unit (see page 1-5-53).
2. Pull out the charger roller unit by picking and releasing the MC lock lever.
3. Check or replace the charger roller unit and refit all the removed parts.

*: When refitting the charger roller unit, that must hook the hook certain by operating the MC lock lever after inserting the charger roller unit until bumping.

4. When replacing the new charger roller unit, proceed as follows:
   Perform maintenance mode U930 (clearing the charger roller count) (see page 1-3-196).

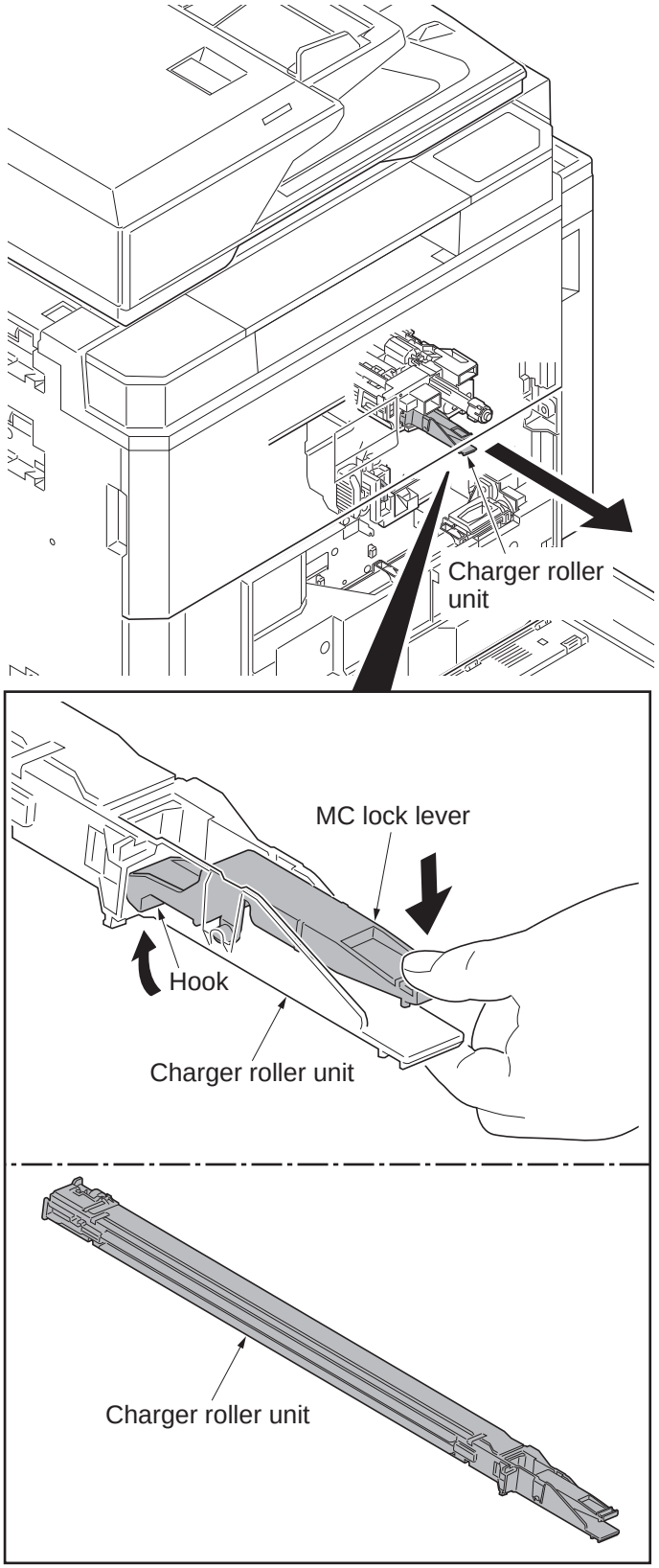


Figure 1-5-99

(5) Detaching and refitting the drum cover

Procedure

1. Pull out the paper conveying unit.

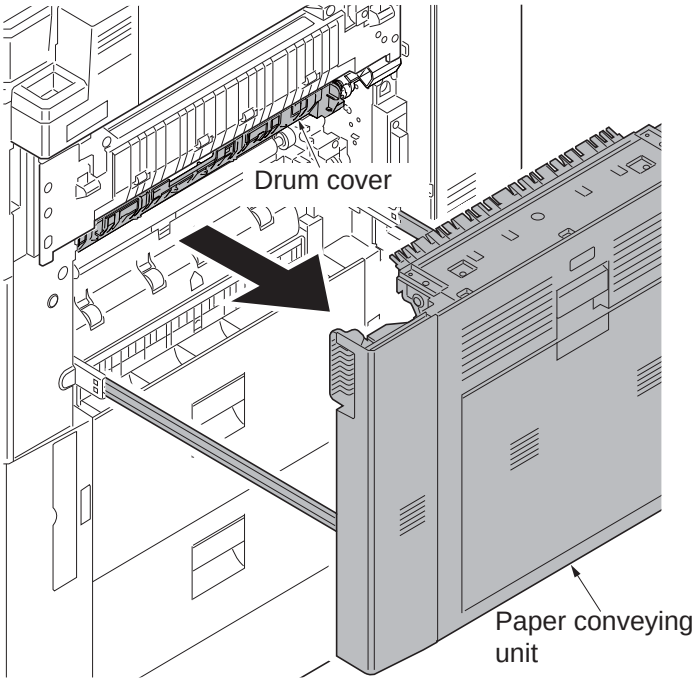


Figure 1-5-100

2. Turn the fixing pin at the front of the drum cover 90 degrees upwards.
3. Remove the drum cover fixing pin towards the far end

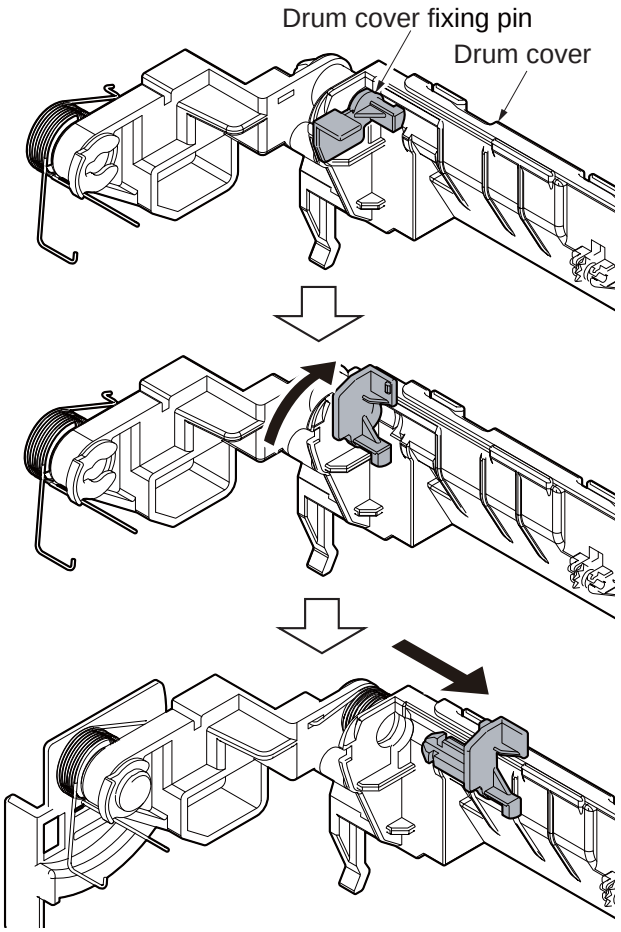


Figure 1-5-101

4. Remove the fixing pin on the drum cover from the cutout at the front drum cover arm by turning the drum cover upwards.

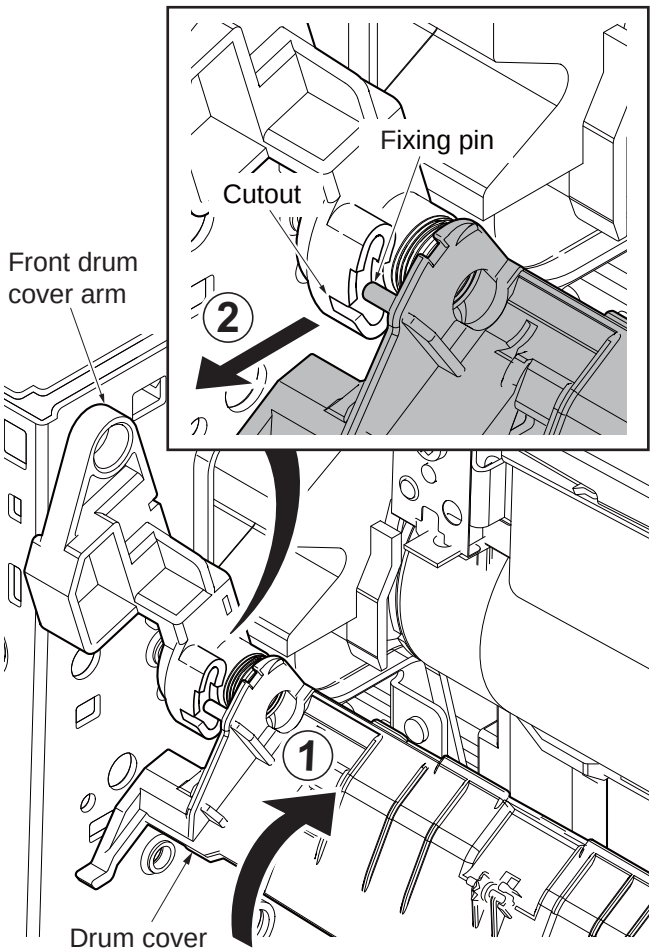


Figure 1-5-102

5. Pull the drum cover towards you to remove it from the rear drum cover arm.
6. Clean the drum cover and clamp all the parts back in place.

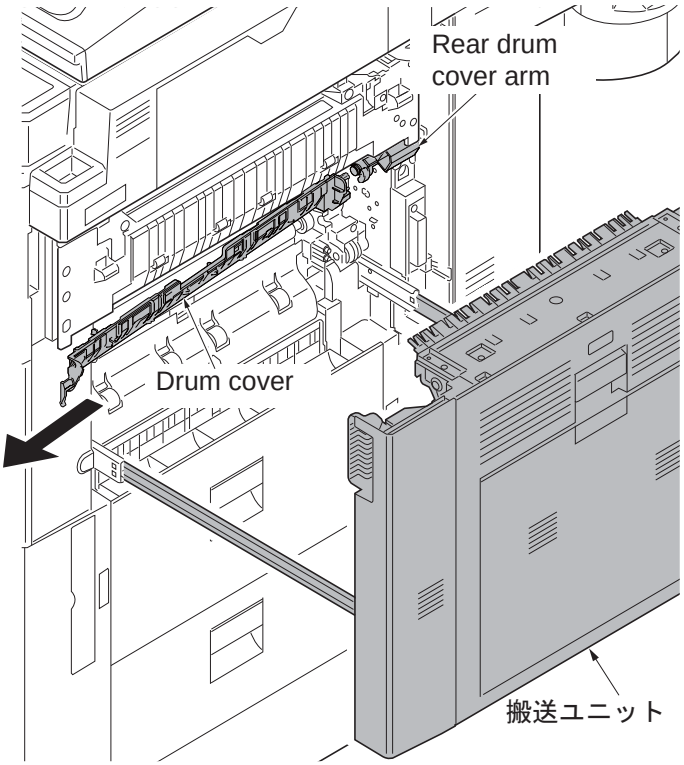


Figure 1-5-103

Clamping the drum cover

1. Insert the axle at the end of the drum cover into the hole at the rear drum cover arm.
   * : Be sure to insert the fixing pin into the guiding chase at the back of the drum cover.
2. In the same manner, insert the fixing pin at the front through the opening at the front drum cover arm into the guiding chase, fixing it using the drum cover fixing pin.
   * : After fixing, confirm that the drum cover fixing pin won't drop by pulling it straight backwards.

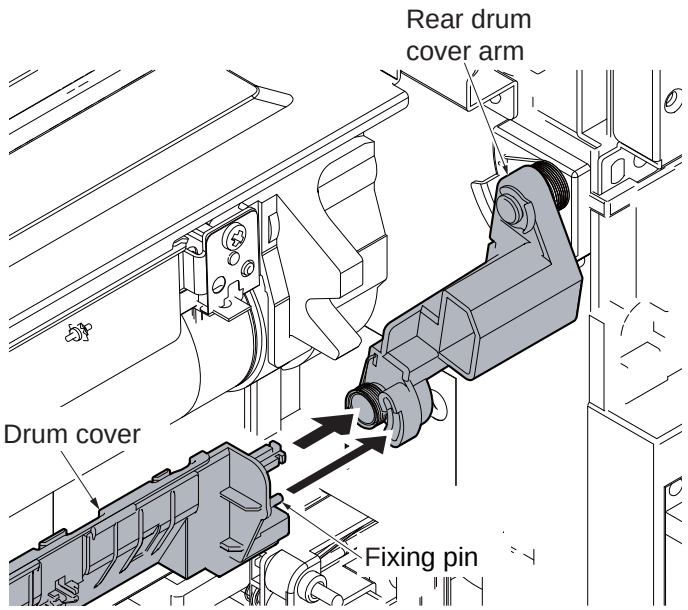


Figure 1-5-104

3. Hook the springs at the front and back of the drum cover arm onto the inside of the drum cover ribs.

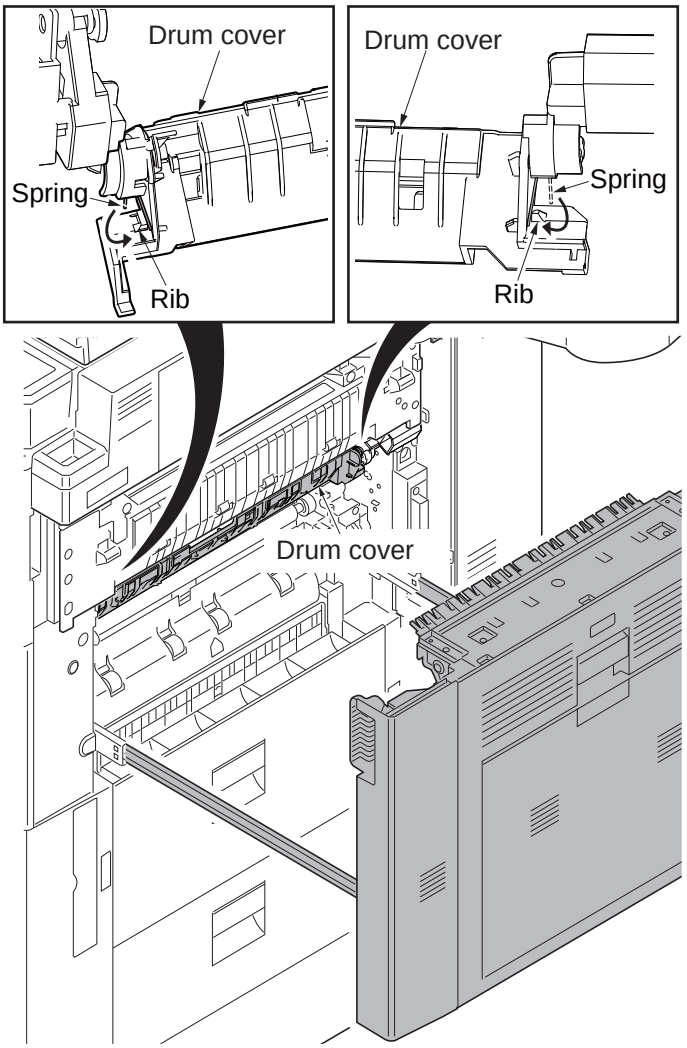


Figure 1-5-105

1-5-6 Transfer section

(1) Detaching and refitting the paper conveying unit

Procedure

1. Pull the paper conveying unit out.
2. Remove three screws.
3. Unhook three hooks and then remove the right front cover.

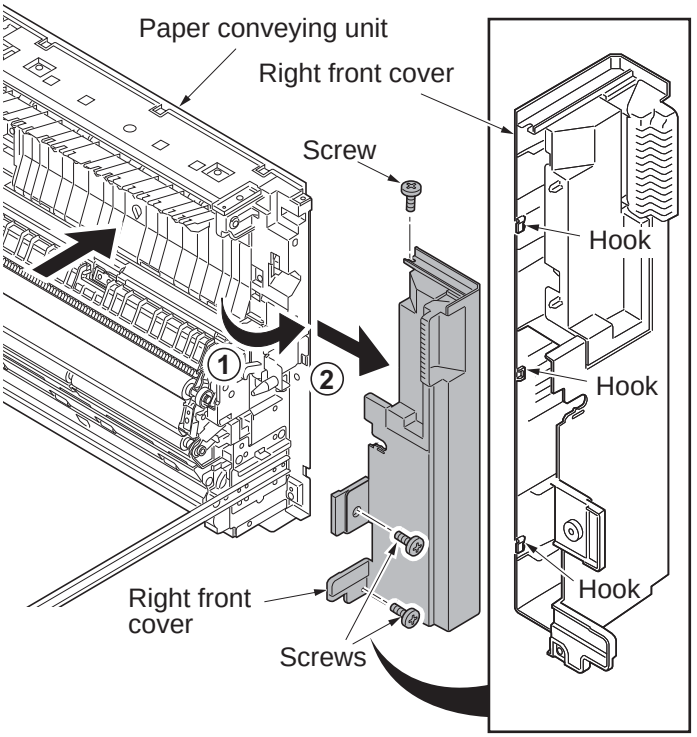


Figure 1-5-106

4. Unhook two hooks and then remove the conveying inner cover from the paper conveying unit.

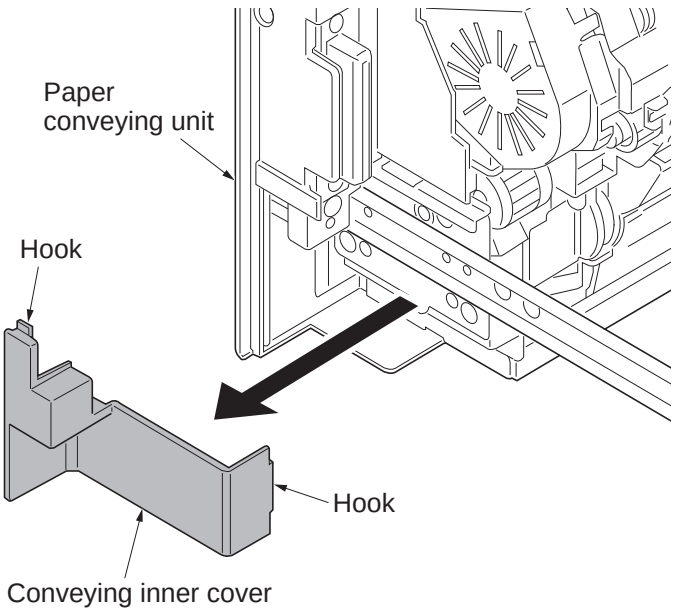


Figure 1-5-107

5. Remove four screws.
6. Remove the paper conveying unit by lifting upward.

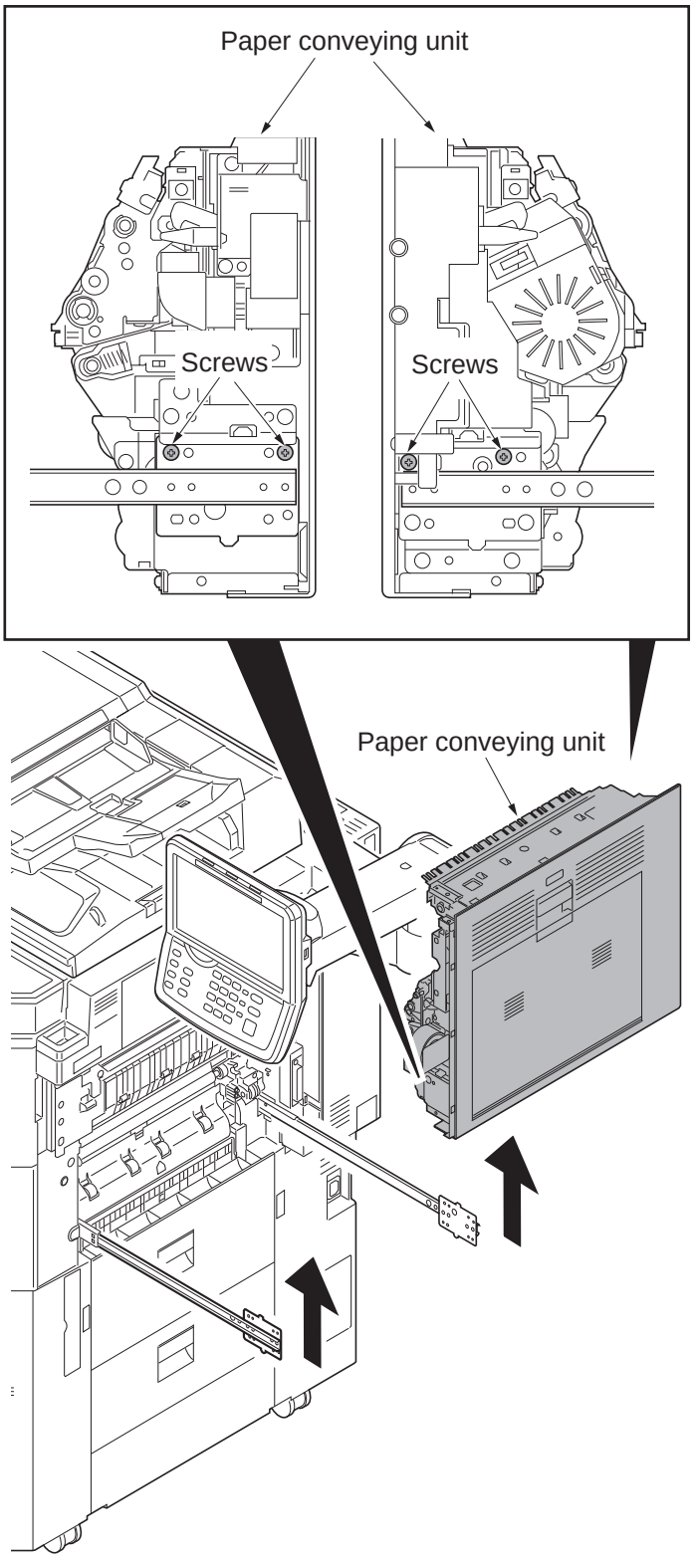


Figure 1-5-108

(2) Detaching and refitting the transfer belt unit

Procedure

1. Pull the paper conveying unit out.
2. Remove three screws and then remove the conveying rear middle cover.
3. Remove the connector.

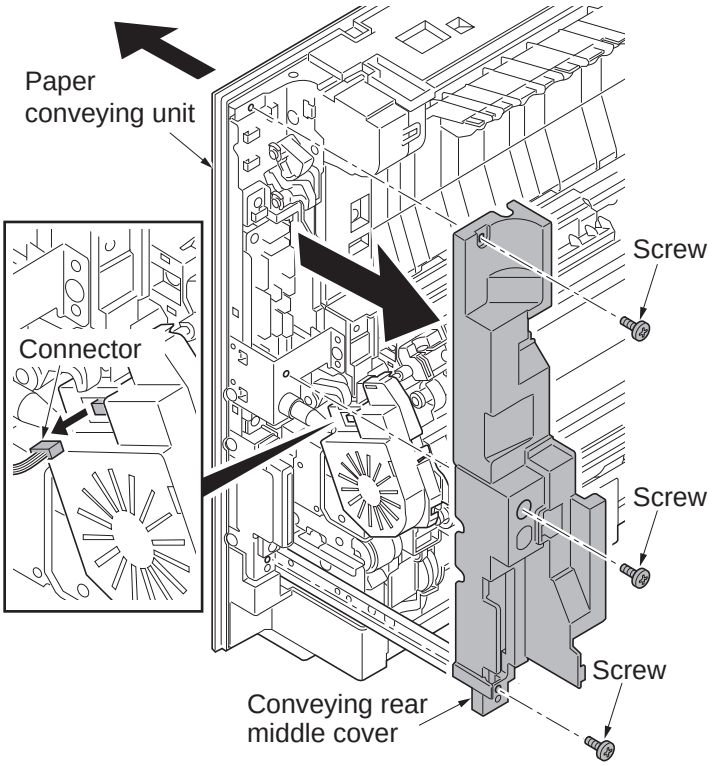


Figure 1-5-109

4. Unhook the two hooks by the tip of a screwdriver though the hole and then remove the front and rear transfer holders.

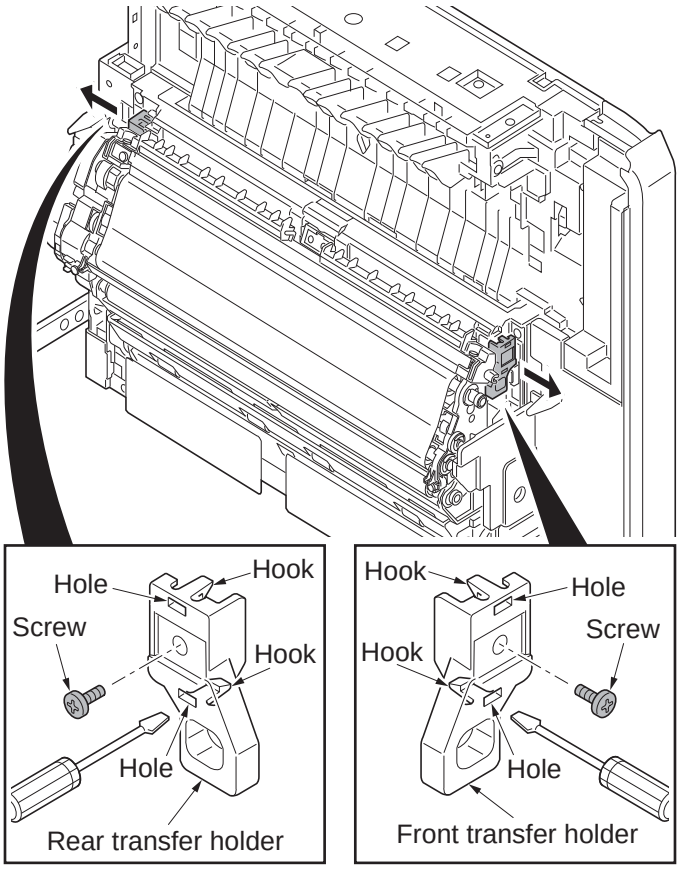


Figure 1-5-110

5. Remove the transfer belt unit.
6. Check or replace the transfer belt unit and refit all the removed parts.

*: When refitting the transfer belt unit, observe the precautions in the following:
Insert the protrusion at the bottom of the transfer belt unit into the square hole on the conveying base.
Mount the transfer belt unit so that its axle holders at both ends confront with the four tension springs on the conveyer base.

7. When replacing the new transfer belt unit, proceed as follows:
   1) Perform maintenance mode U127 (clearing the transfer counter) (see page 1-3-77).
   2)Perform maintenance mode U464 (Calibration) (see page 1-3-175).
   3)Perform maintenance mode U410 (Adjusting the halftone automatically) (see page 1-3-151).

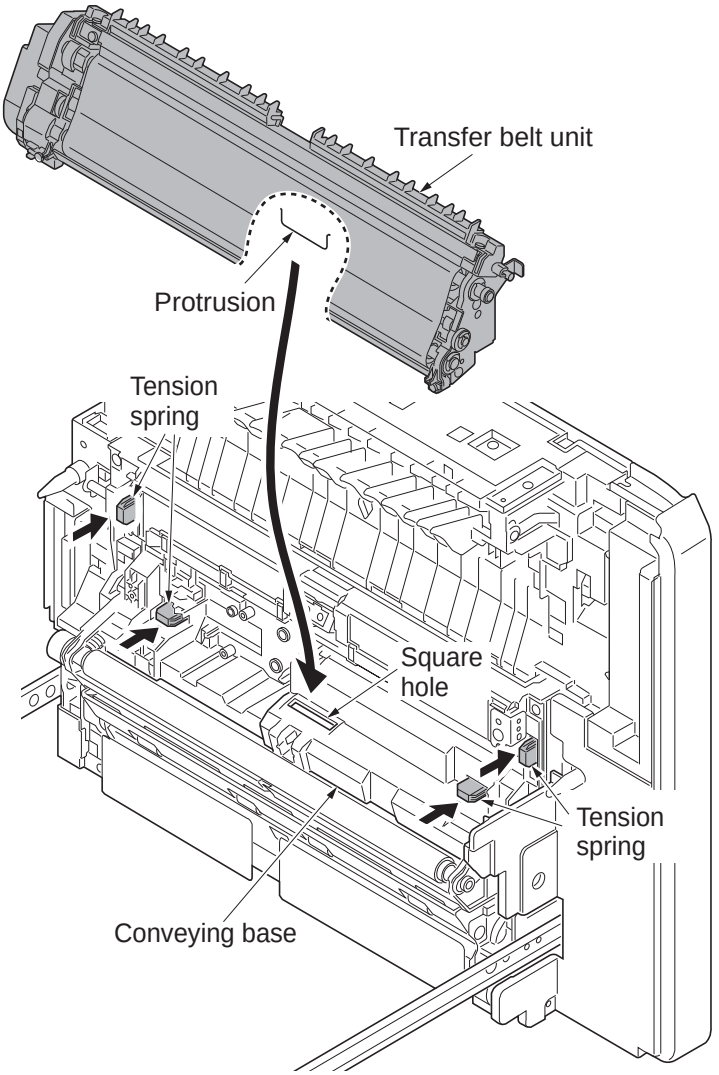


Figure 1-5-111

1-5-7 Fuser section

(1) Detaching and refitting the fuser unit

Procedure

1. Pull the paper conveying unit out.
2. Remove the screw and then the fuser wire cover.
3. Remove two connectors

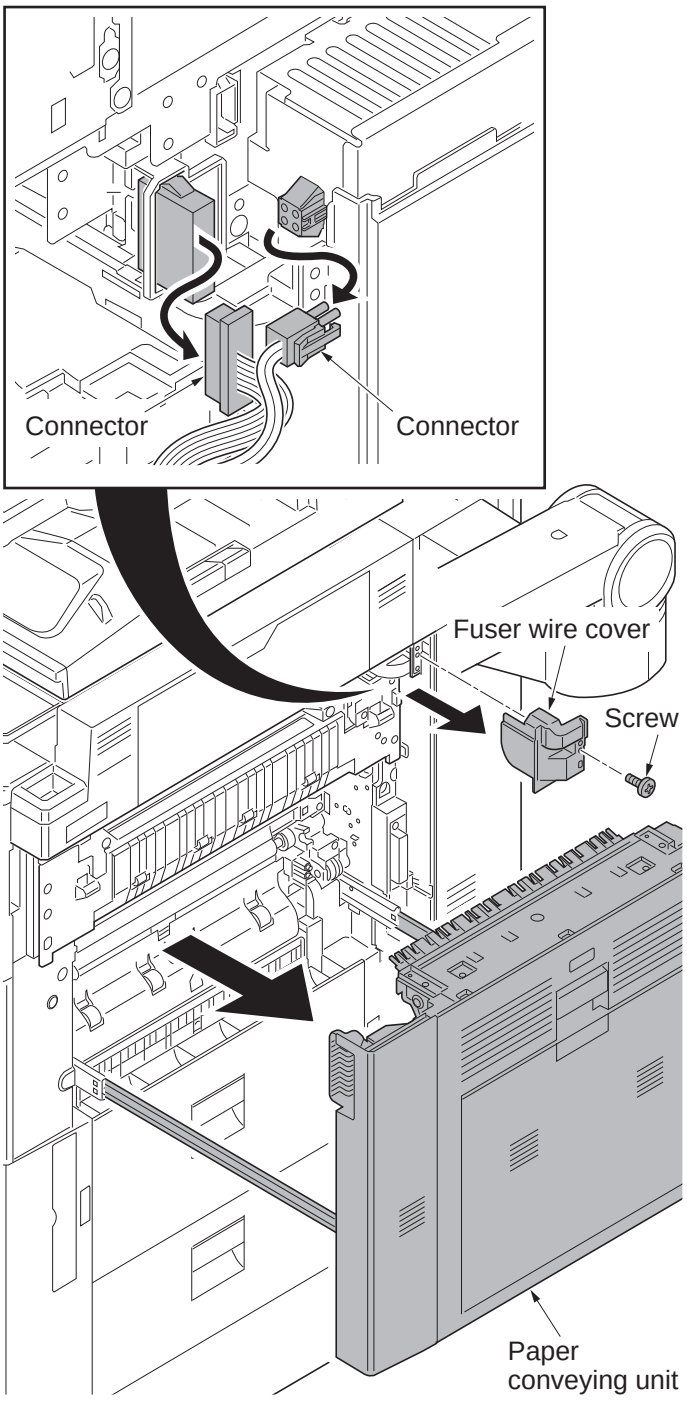


Figure 1-5-112

4. Remove four screws (M4 × 12) and then remove the fuser unit.
5. Check or replace the fuser unit and refit all the removed parts.

6. When replacing the new fuser unit, proceed as follows:

   1)Perform maintenance mode U464 (Calibration) (see page 1-3-175).
   2)Perform maintenance mode U410 (Adjusting the halftone automatically) (see page 1-3-151).

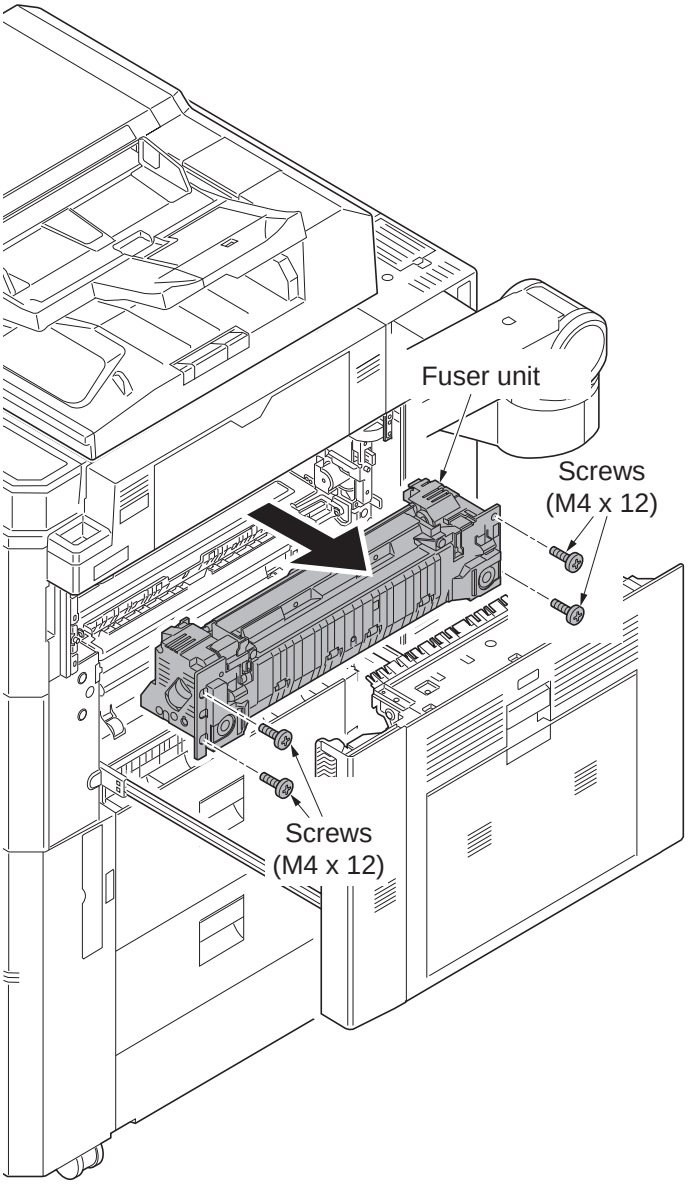


Figure 1-5-113

(2) Detaching and refitting fuser IH unit

Procedure

1. Remove the rear upper cover and the rear lower cover (see page 1-5-3).
2. Remove the fuser unit (see page 1-5-67).
3. Remove the right upper cover (see page 1-5-9).
4. Remove the right middle rear cover (see page 1-5-9).
5. Remove four screws and then remove the fuser IH PWB cover (see page 1-5-10).
6. Remove the IH wire cover (see page 1-5-10).
7. Remove three wire holders.
8. Release two wire saddles.
9. Remove two connectors from the fuser IH PWB according to the following notes.

*: Confirm the power plug is removed from the outlet without fail when you remove the connector because a high current is supplied to fuser IH unit by this connector.

*: Confirm the connected connector was surely locked when you connect this connector again.

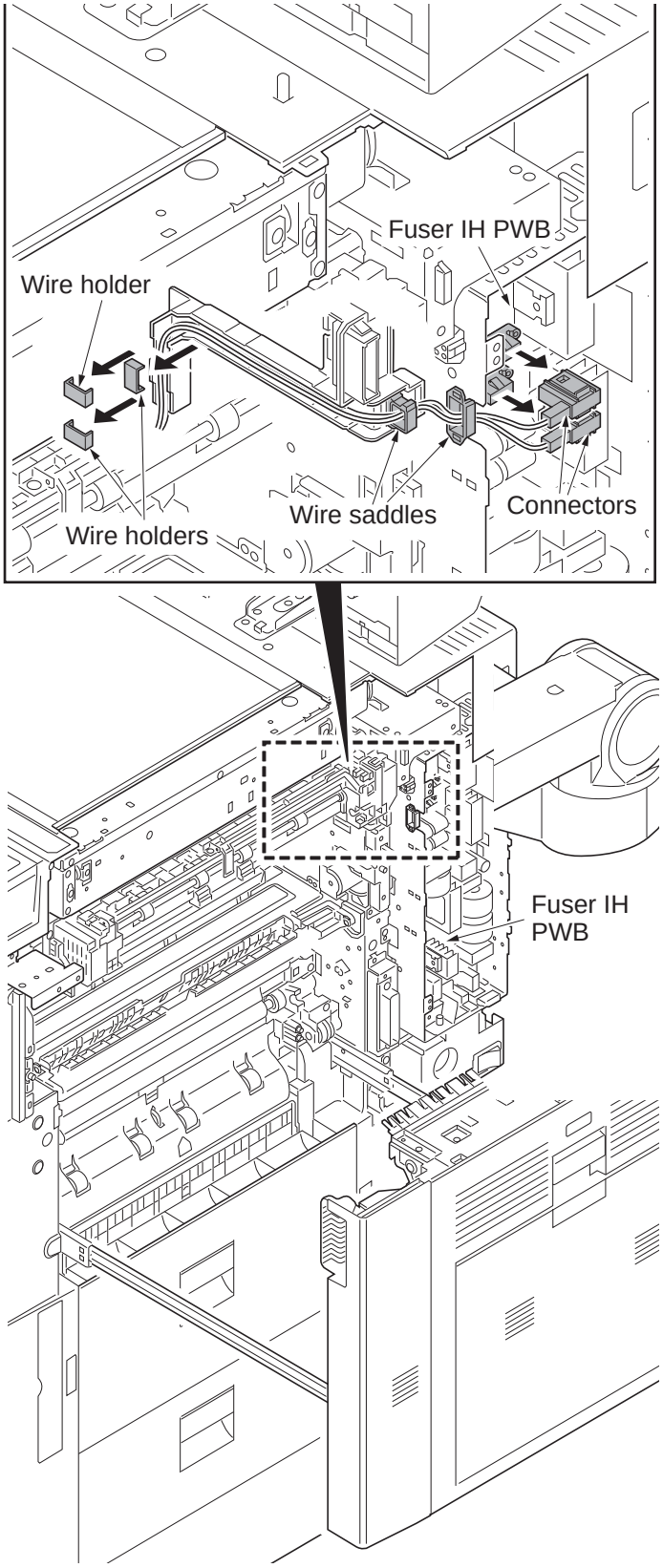


Figure 1-5-114

10. Remove two connectors.
11. Release the wire saddle. Remove the screw and the remove the ground terminal.
12. Remove two pins and then remove the fuser IH unit.

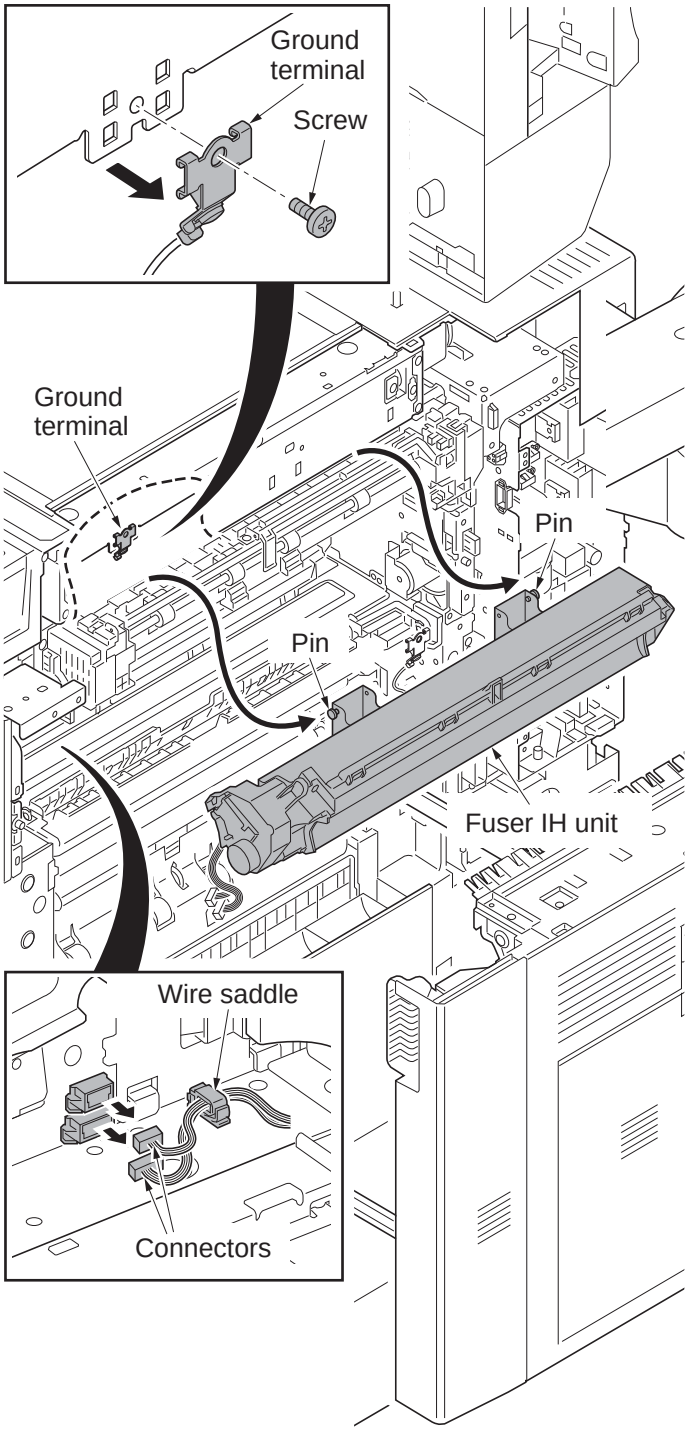


Figure 1-5-115

1-5-8 Feedshift/ switchback sections

(1) Detaching and refitting job separator

Procedure

1. Remove the fuser unit (see page 1-5-67).
2. Remove the right upper cover (see page 1-5-9).
3. Remove the connector.
4. Remove two screws and the remove the job separator.

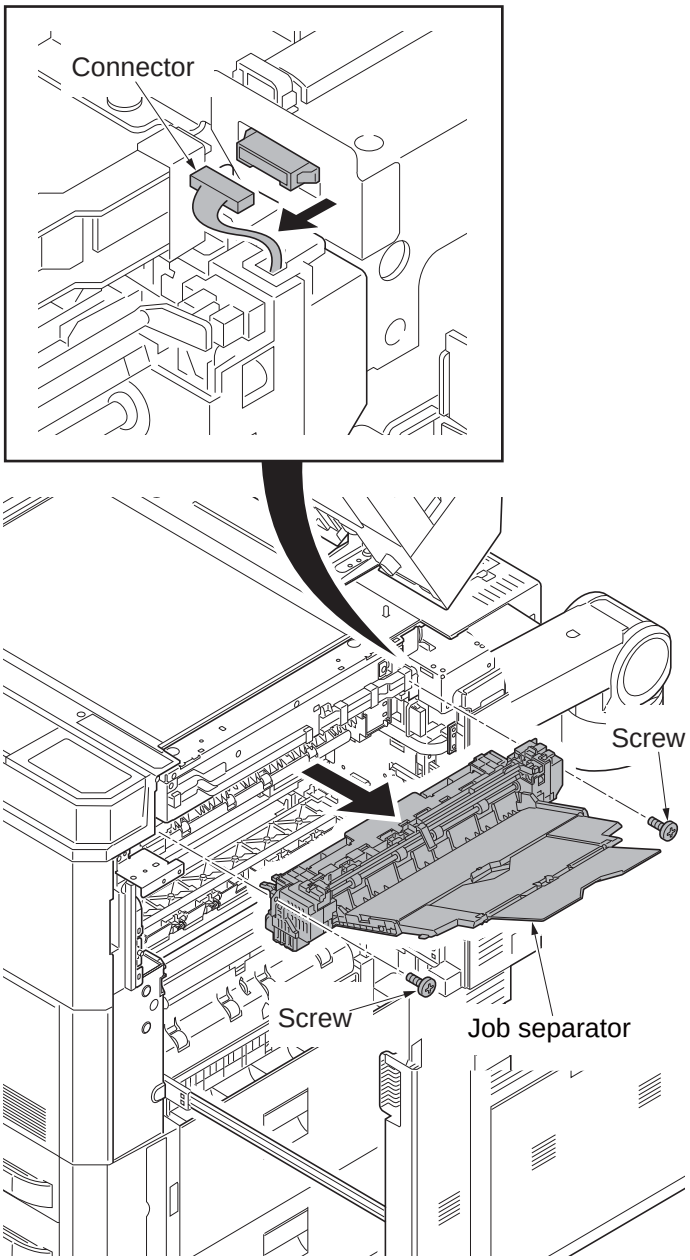


Figure 1-5-116

(2) Detaching and refitting eject unit

Procedure

1. Remove the job separator (see page 1-5-71).

2. Remove the screw and then remove the arm hinge cover A and B.

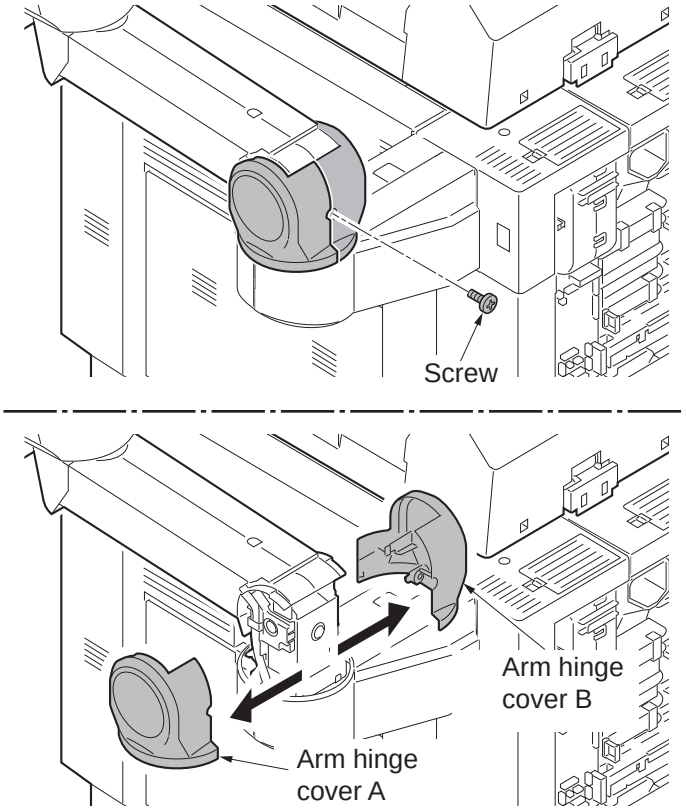


Figure 1-5-117

3. Remove the screw and then remove the operation mount cover B.

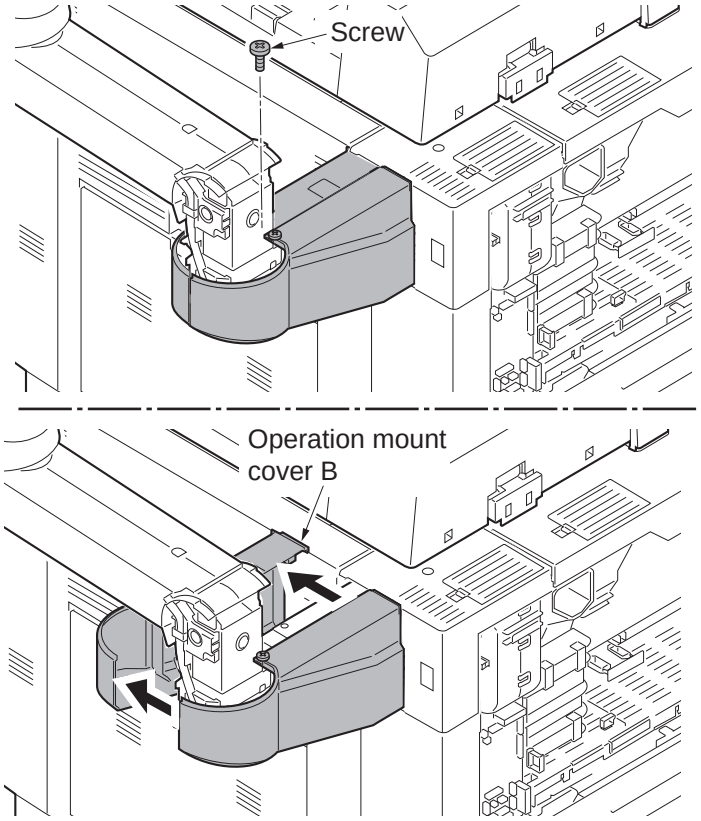


Figure 1-5-118

4. Remove the connector.
5. Remove two screws and the remove the eject unit.

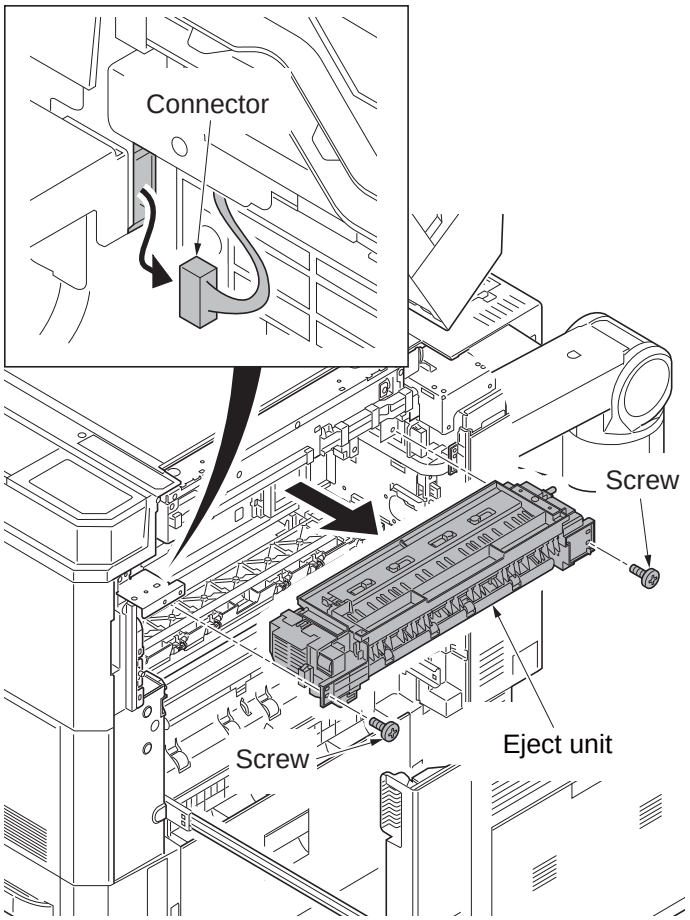


Figure 1-5-119

1-5-9 PWBs

(1) Detaching and refitting the main PWB

Procedure

1. Remove the rear upper cover (see page 1-5-3).
2. Remove the controller cover.
3. Remove the screw and then remove the controller lid.

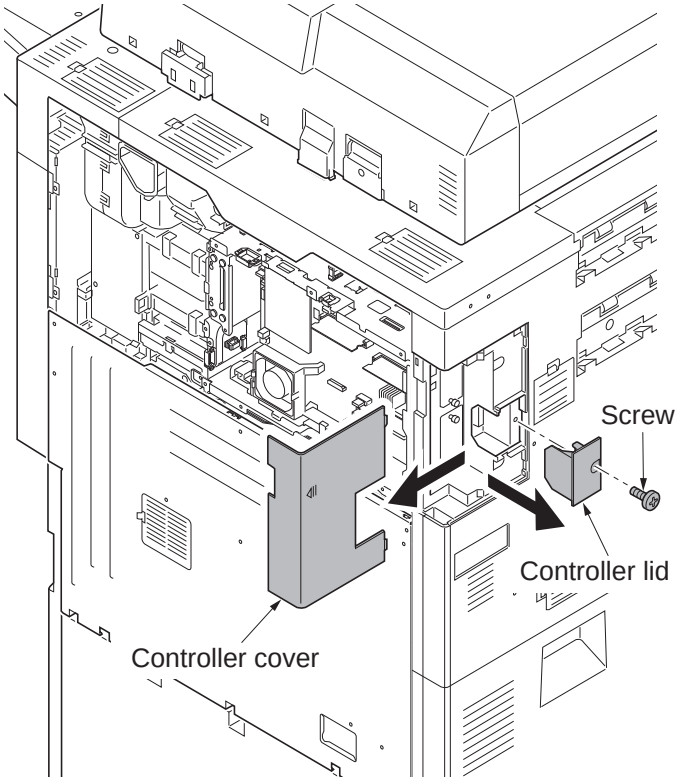


Figure 1-5-120

4. Release seven wire saddles on the controller box.
5. Remove the wire holder.

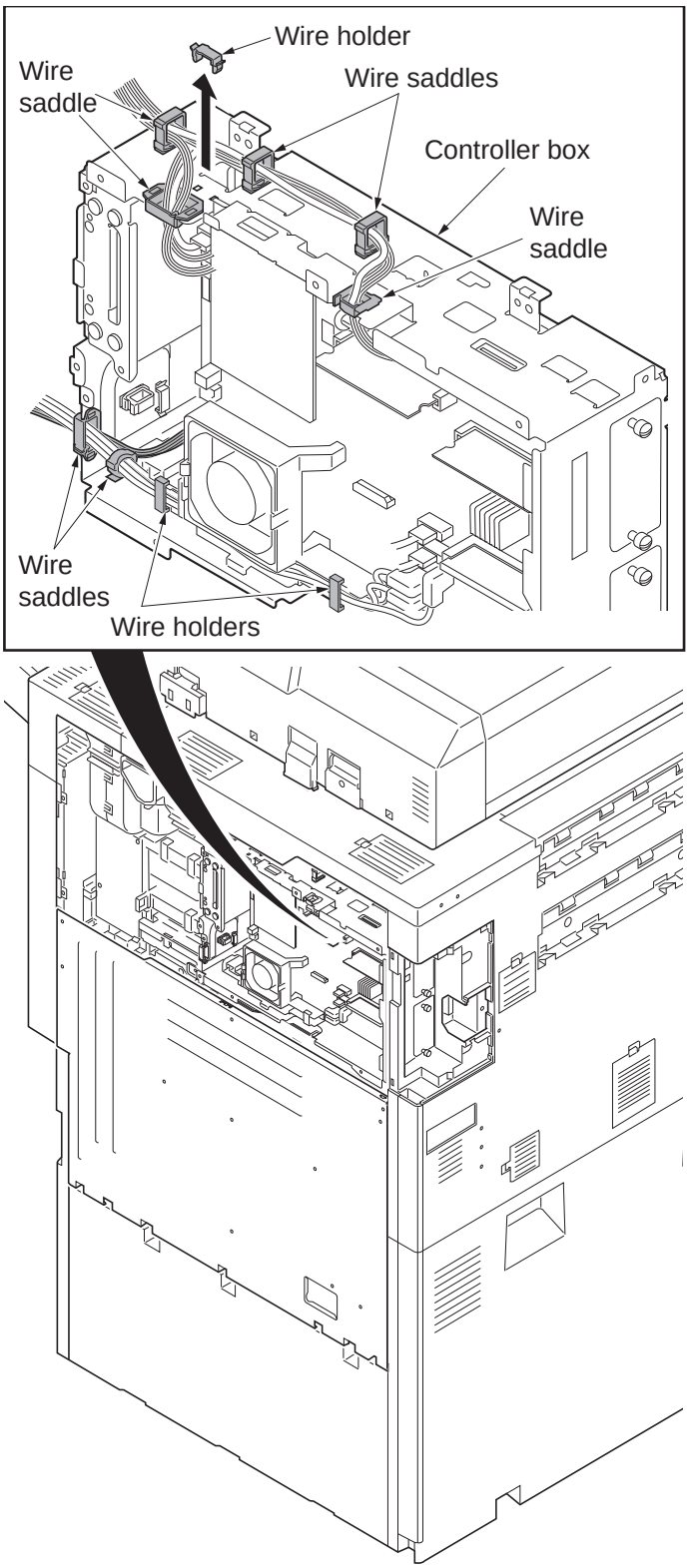


Figure 1-5-121

6. Remove the connector from the DP relay PWB,
7. Remove the following connectors that connected to the main PWB from the outside of the control box.
   YC25
   YC11
   YC30
   YC24
   YC3 (FFC connector with a lock)
   YC17 (BK)
   YC21 (WH)
   YC12
   YC18

*: Before removing the connector type FFC YC43, unlock the lock by pressing the lock levers at both ends.

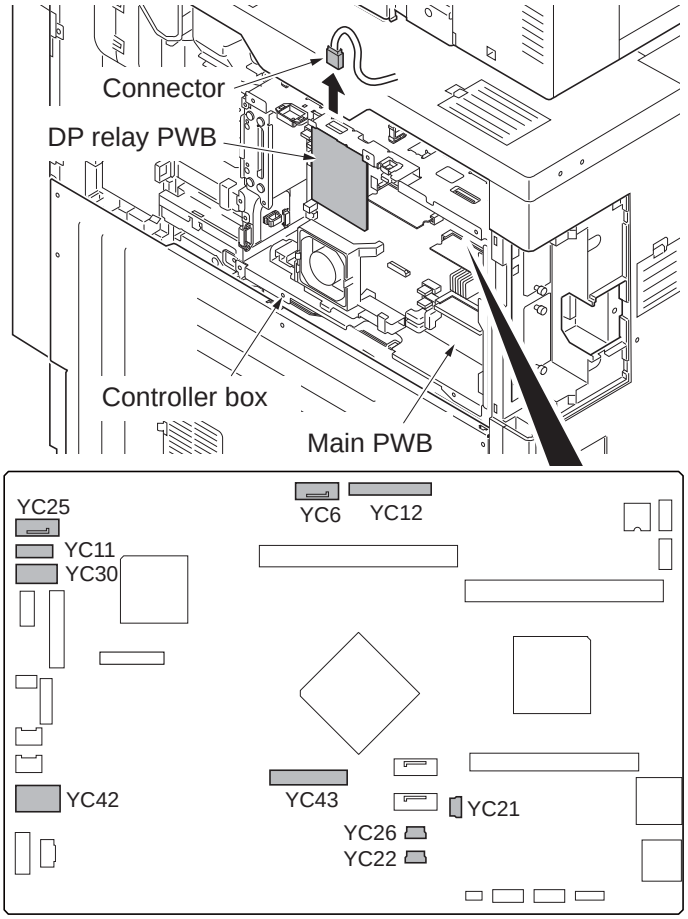


Figure 1-5-122

8. Remove five screws.
9. Unhook two hooks and then remove the controller box.

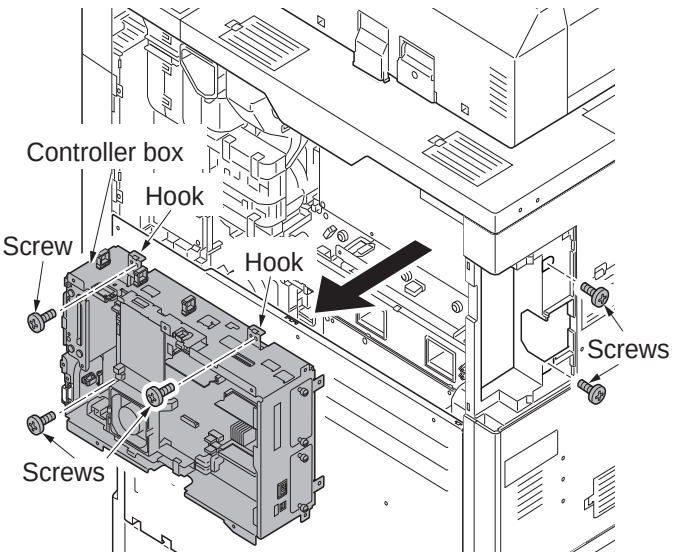
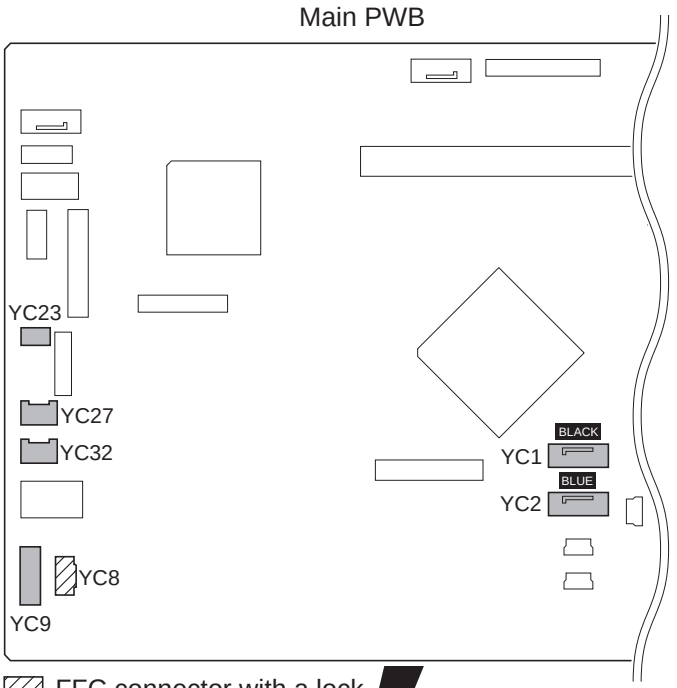
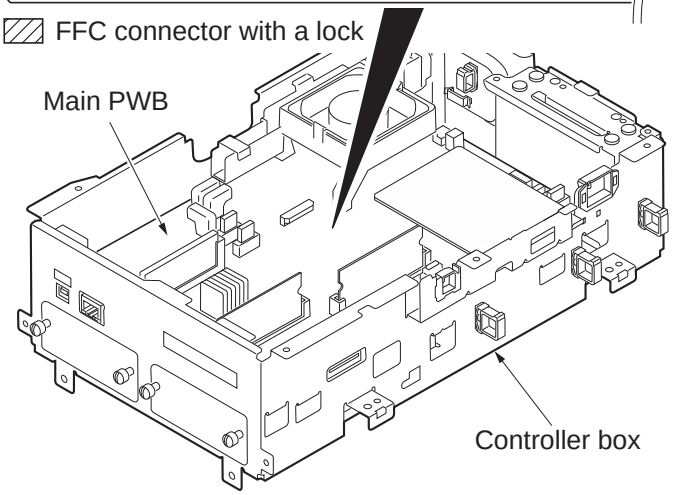


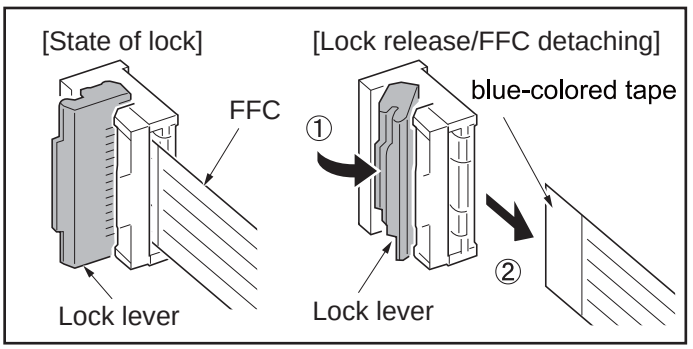
Figure 1-5-123

10. Remove the following connectors that connected to the main PWB.
    YC23
    YC27
    YC32
    YC8 (FFC connector with a lock)
    YC9
    YC1 [BLACK] (with a lock)
    YC2 [BLUE] (with a lock)

    *: When removing the FFC from the FFC connector with a lock, remove the FFC after released by lifting down the lock lever.







11. Release the wire saddle.
12. Remove two screws.
13. Remove the fan motor holder.

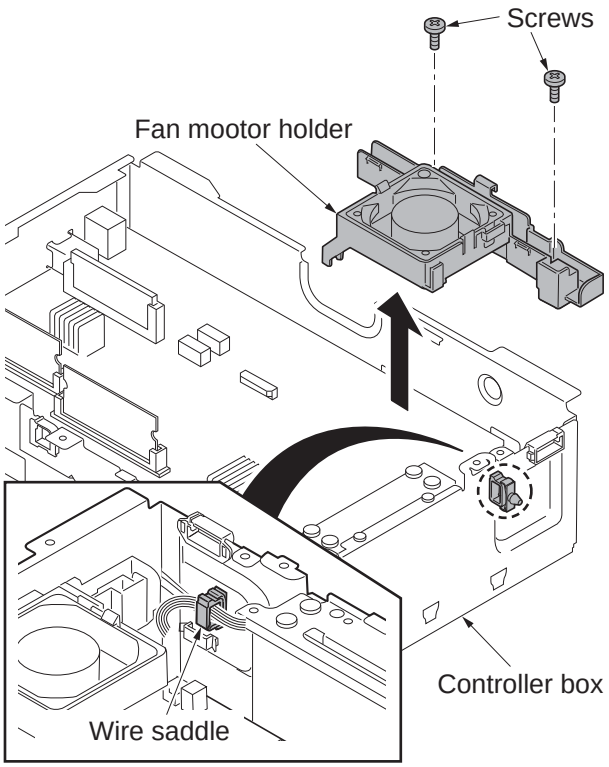


Figure 1-5-125

14. Remove two screws and then remove the DP relay PWB.
15. Remove seven screws from the main PWB.

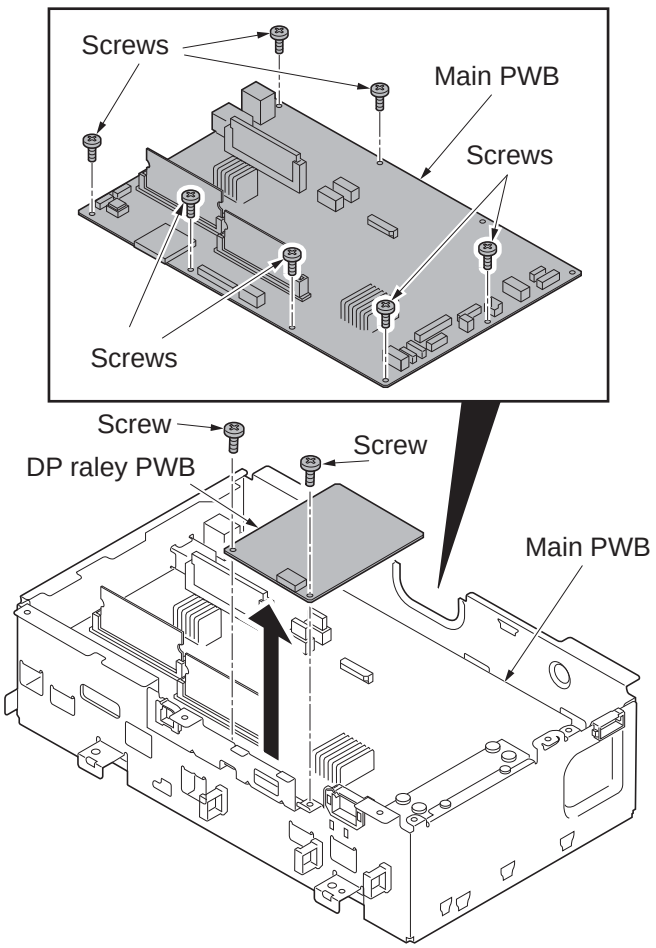


Figure 1-5-126

16. Remove the main PWB by releasing the projection of ground plate in the network connector.
17. Check or replace the main PWB and refit all the removed parts.

*: When replacing the main PWB, remove the following devices from the main PWB and then reattach it to the new main PWB (see page 1-5-80).

EEPROM (YC14)
Memory DDR (YS1, YS3)

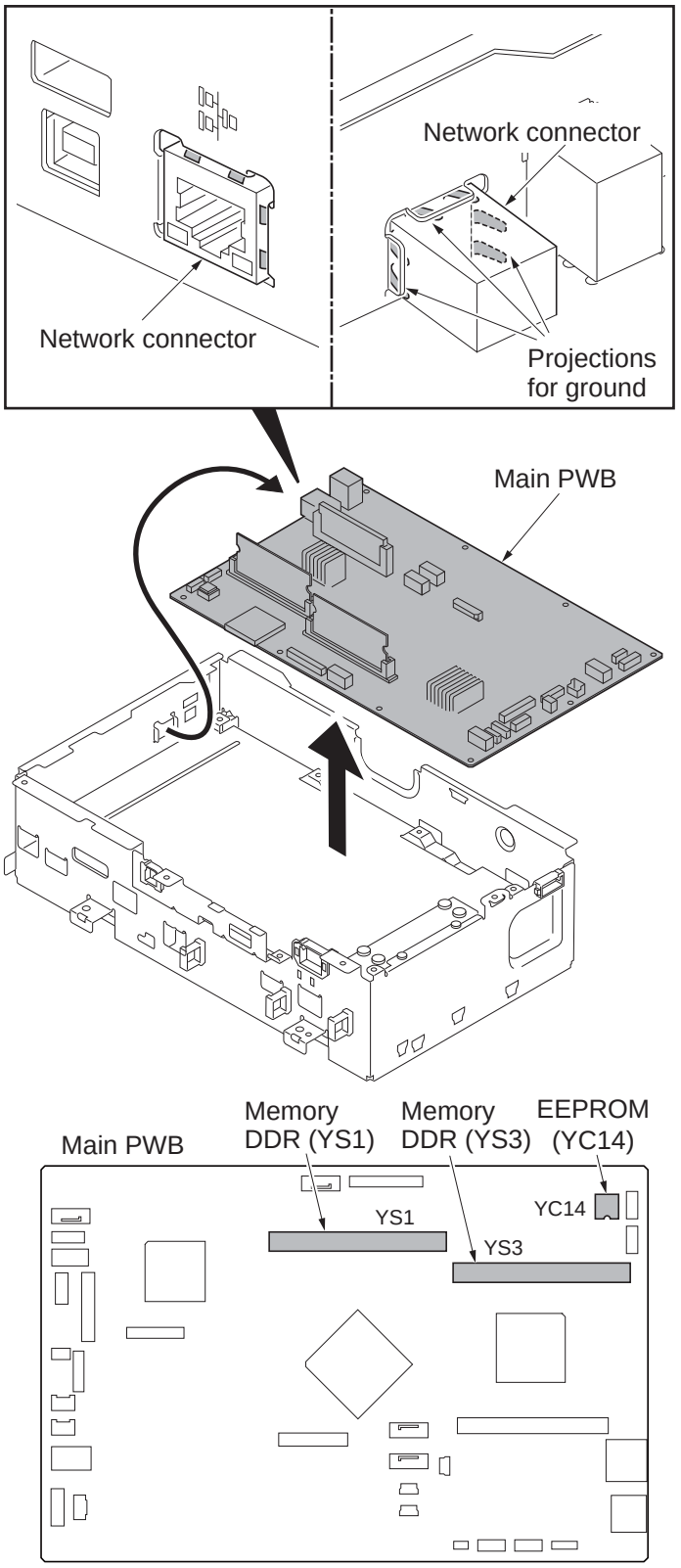


Figure 1-5-127

(2) Remarks on main PWB replacement

When replacing the main PWB, remove the EEPROM (YC14) and DIMM (YS1,YS3) from the main PWB that has been removed and then reattach it to the new main PWB.

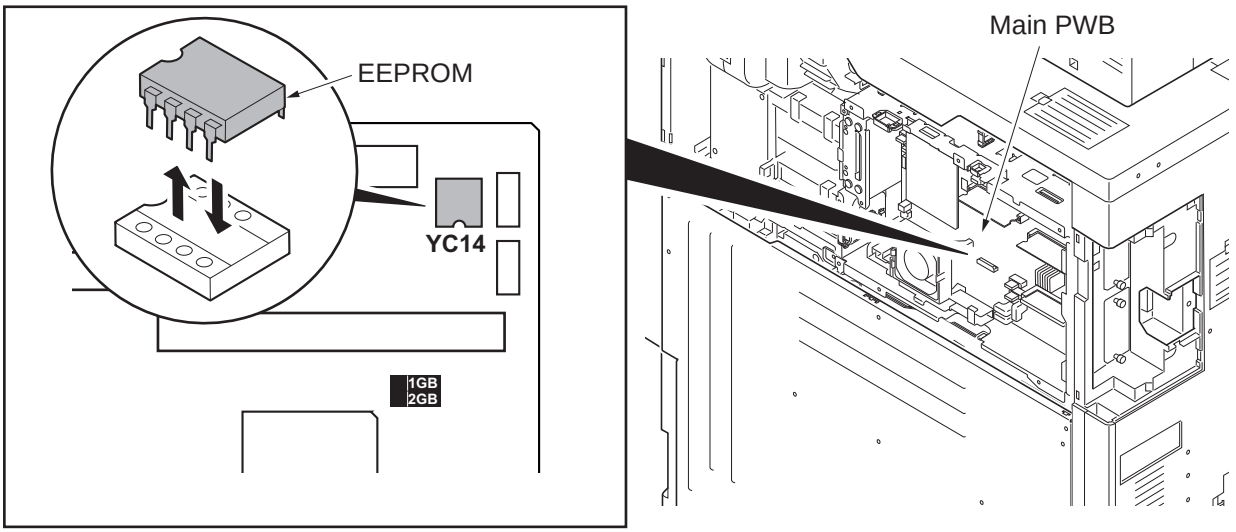


Figure 1-5-128

When refitting DIMM, Refit them to the original positions.

* : YS1:1GB YS3:1GB

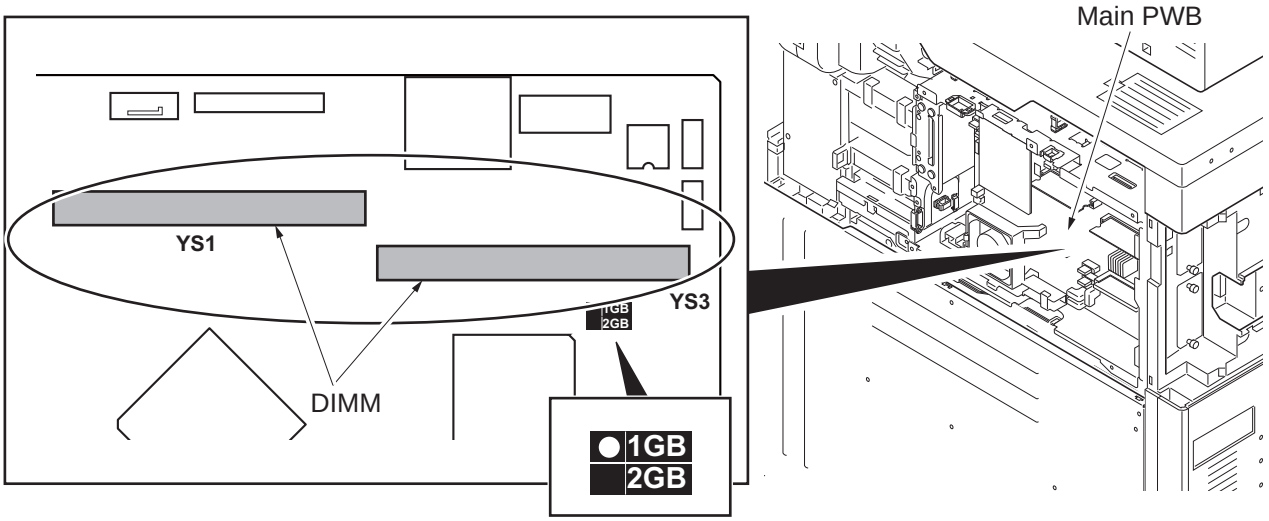


Figure 1-5-129

If the main PWB was replaced with a service supplied part, perform the following.

1. Insert the USB flash device in which an upgrade pack of the latest firmware or the Main/MMI/Browser and Language BR (excluding Dictionary) were copied, into the slot on the machine and turn power on. (see page 1-6-1).
2. After the main-circuit PWB has been replaced, perform U026 to restore backed-up data.

*: Do not replace the main-circuit PWB and the HDD at the same time.
(Otherwise, the settings retained by U026 in the HDD will not become restorable.)

*: Referring to the U000 maintenance report printed previously, enter the following values.
U278 Setting the delivery date
U402 Adjusting margins of image printing
U952 Maintenance mode workflow
*:Since the U952 settings are not printed on the maintenance report, perform U952 to register settings again.

3. Reset machine settings.(Resets system menu settings modified at setup to their defaults.)
   If backup data is saved with the U917 maintenance mode, execute import of the backup data with the U917.
   Main items for settings
   [Date/Timer] - Date/Time settings
   [Date/Timer] - Timer settings (Sleep timer)
   [User/Job accounting] - Defaults for user authentication and job accounting only.
   Resettings are not required as the data are stored in hard disk.

Procedure to be followed after the EEPROM on the main PWB has been replaced

1. Run U004 – model number entry.
   The C0130 (mismatching model number) is displayed when the device is powered up after its EEPROM has been replaced. Restore the counter values and serial number that are stored in the engine EEPROM.
2. Referring to the maintenance report that was printed using U000 at setup, set the following maintenance modes:
   1) U252 - Setting the destination
   2) U265 - Setting OEM purchaser code
3. Reconfigure settings if the U250 maintenance counter preset value has been changed from the initial settings.
4. Run the following maintenance mode for image adjustment:
   1) U410 – Adjusting the halftone automatically

When connecting the hard disk cables (YC1, YC2) to the PWB, match “BLACK” and “BLUE” marked on the PWB with the connector colors.

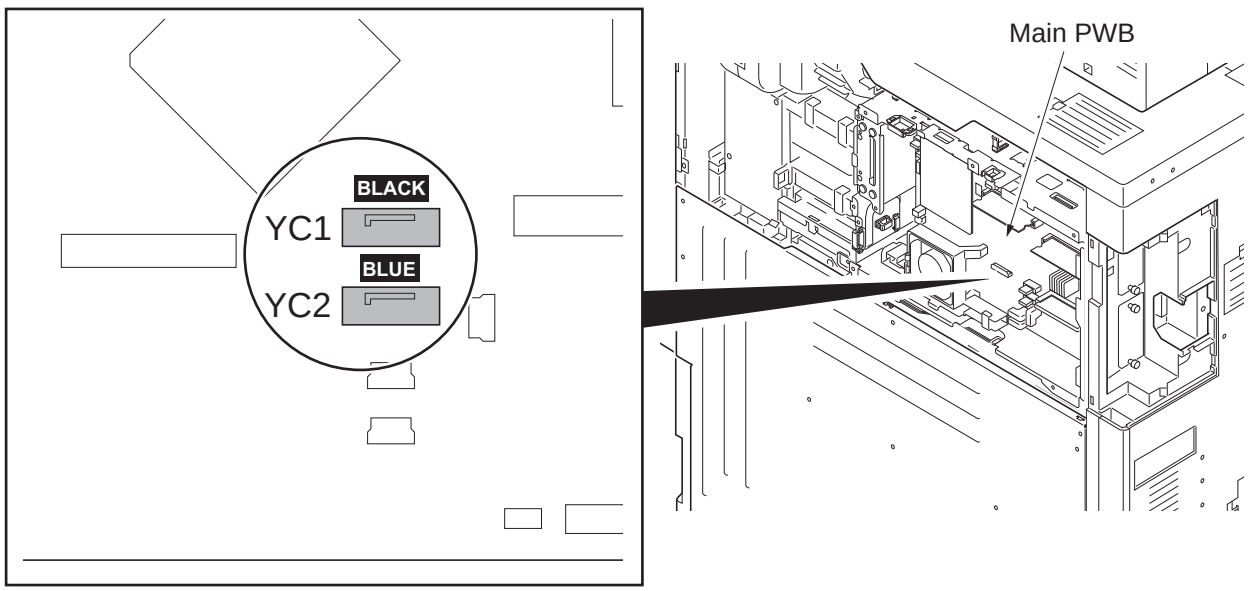


Figure 1-5-130

When connecting the USB cables (YC21, YC22, YC26) to the PWB, connect to the connectors which the cable length match.
(Connecting to any connector is satisfactory.)

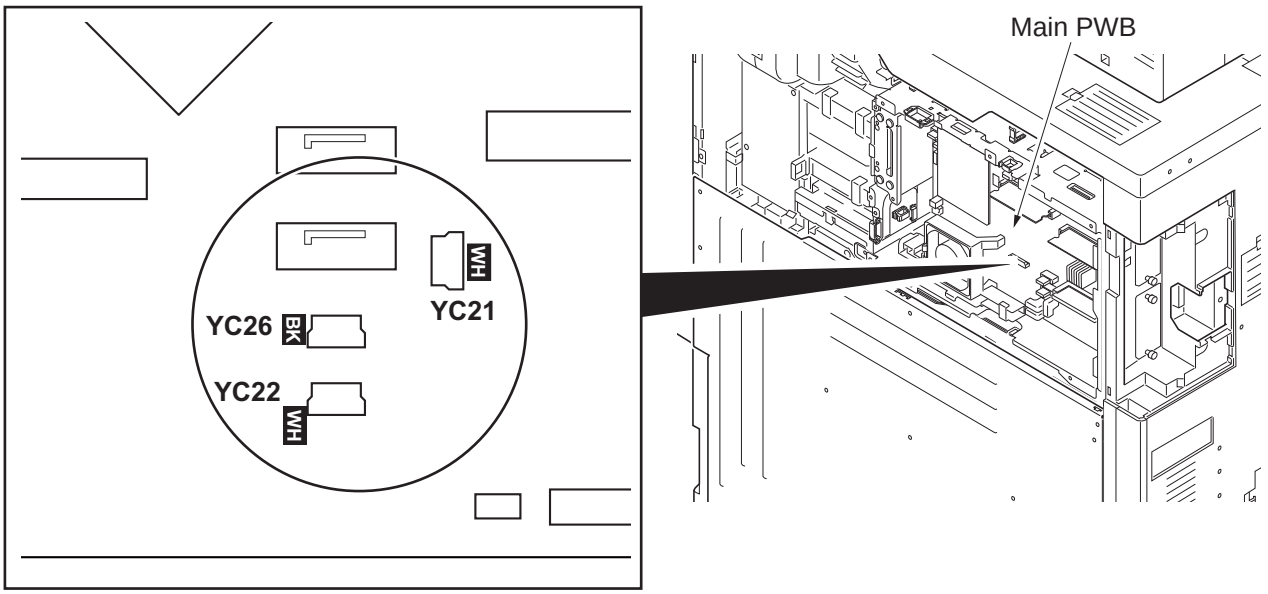


Figure 1-5-131

(3) Detaching and refitting the engine PWB

Procedure

1. Remove the controller box (see page 1-5-74).
2. Remove twenty connectors of following from the engine PWB.
   YC1, YC2, YC7, YC8, YC9, YC13, YC15, YC,16, YC17,YC18, YC19, YC20, YC22, YC26, YC27
   YC4(Connector type FFC), YC5(Connector type FFC)
   YC6(Connector type FFC),
   YC11(Connector type FFC),
   YC50 (FFC connector with a lock)

*: To remove the FFC from the locked connector YC50, unlock the connector by pressing the lock lever at the triangular mark.

*: Before removing the connector type FFCs of YC4, YC5, YC6 and YC11, unlock the lock by pressing the lock lever in its center.

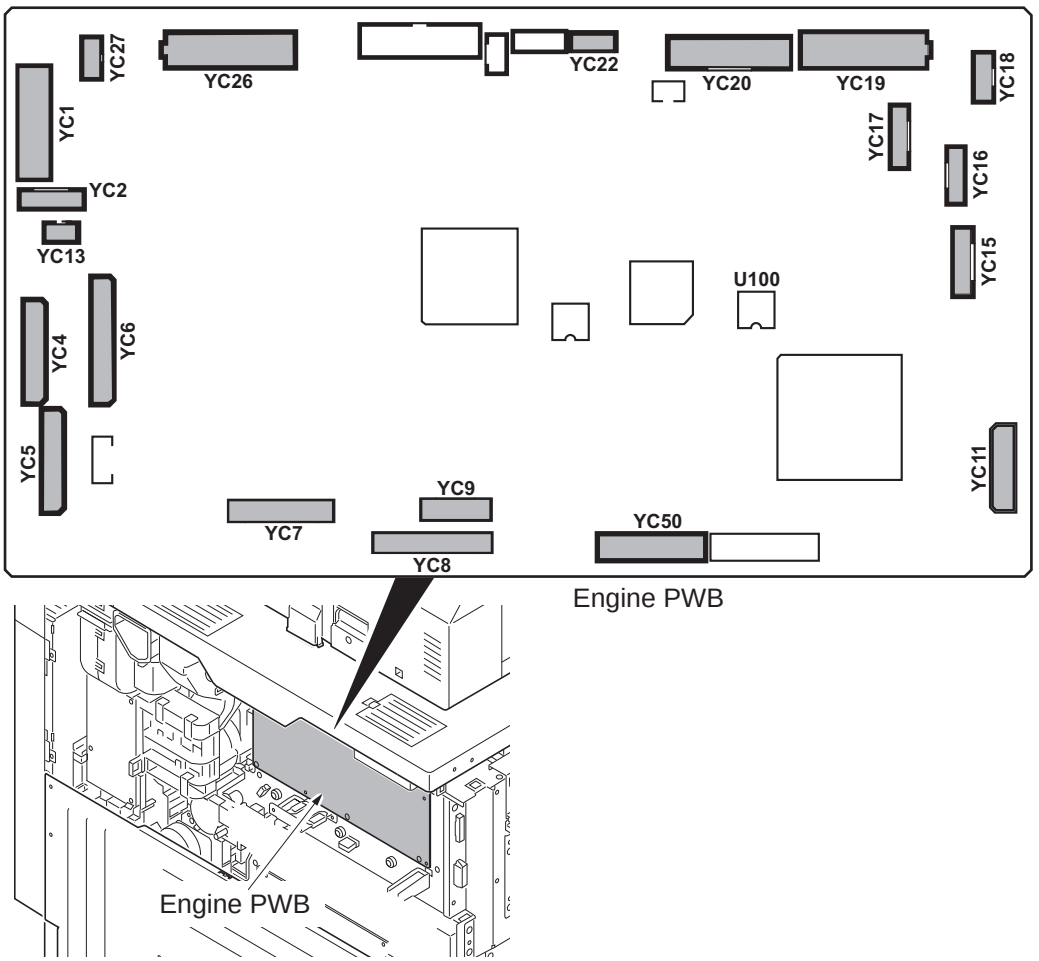


Figure 1-5-132

3. Remove six screws.
4. Remove the engine PWB.
5. Check or replace the engine PWB and refit all the removed parts.

*: When replacing the engine PWB, remove the EEPROM (U100) from the engine PWB and then reattach it to the new engine PWB.

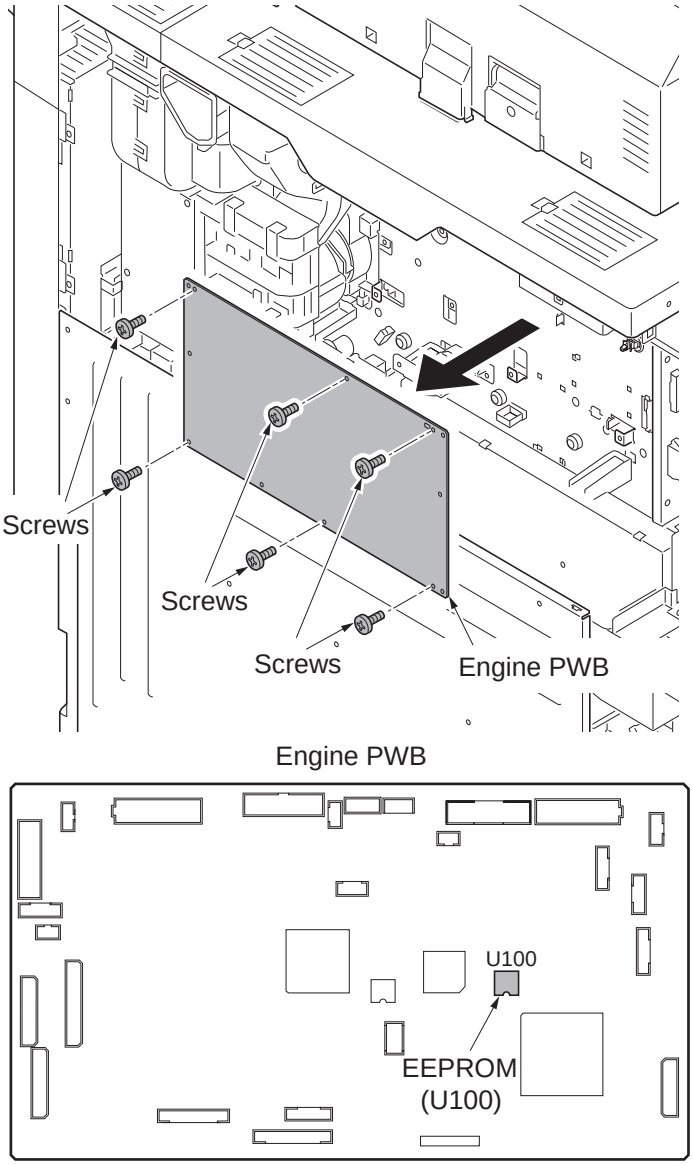
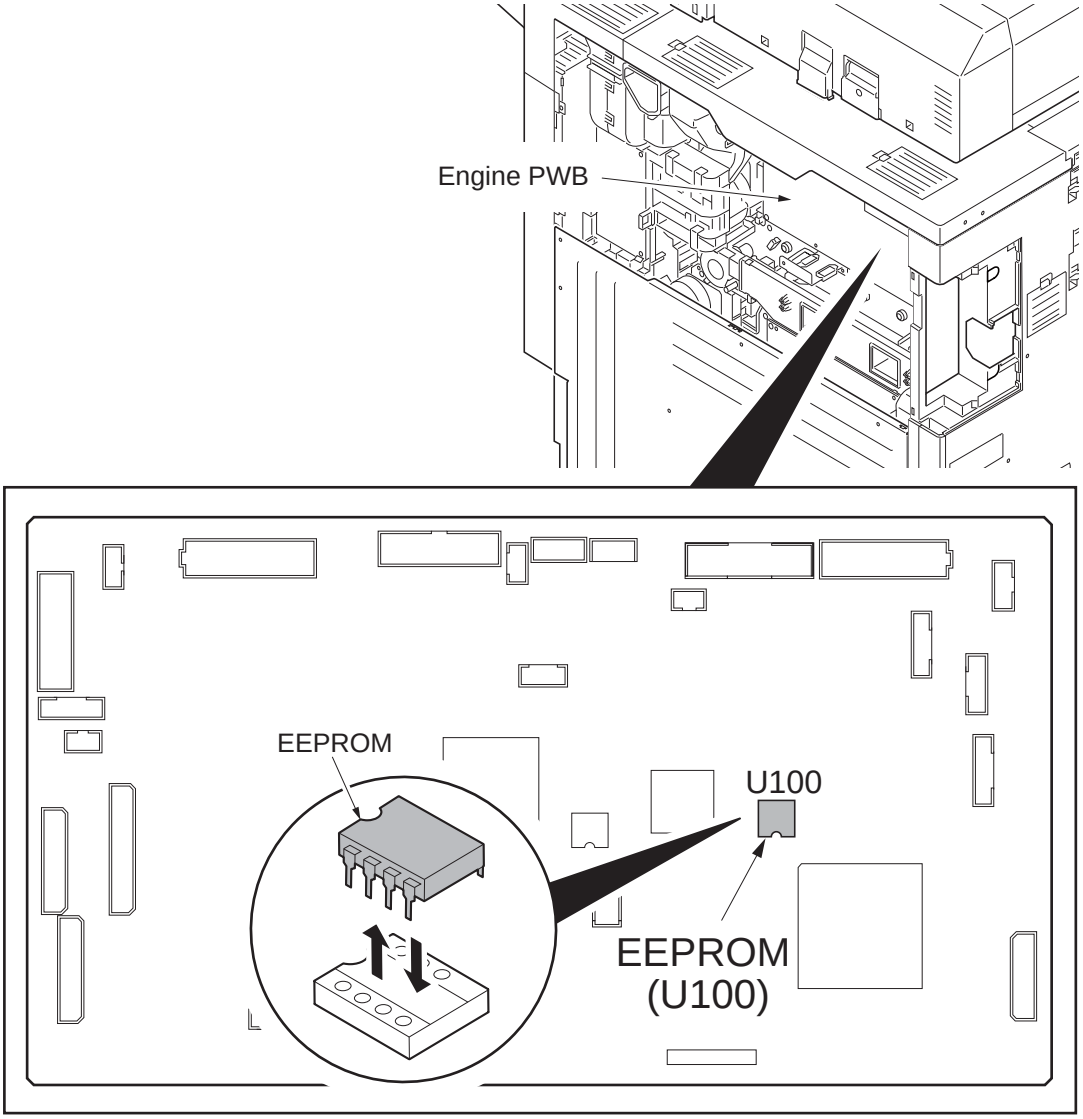


Figure 1-5-133

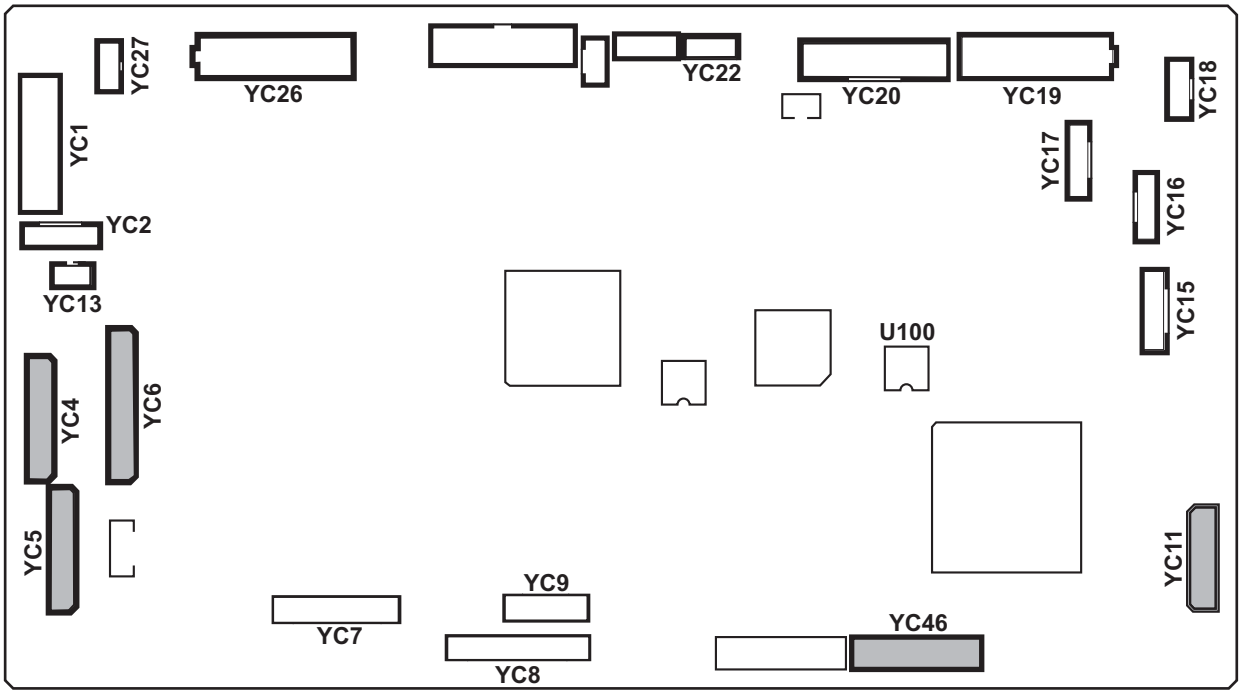
(4) Remarks on engine PWB replacement

When replacing the engine PWB, remove the EEPROM (U100) from the engine PWB that has been removed and then reattach it to the new engine PWB.



(5) Error symptom at an erroneous insertion of the engine PWB FFC

If an FFC is inserted improperly, the following symptom could be observed:



Engine PWB

Figure 1-5-134

Engine PWB	Connect PWB	Occurrence
YC6	FEED1	[The cover is open](right cover1) [Machine failure] (C2300)
YC5	FEED1	[Machine failure] (C2211) [Paper jam] (JAM4101_15)
YC4	FEED2	[The cover is open] (right cover1) [Machine failure] (C2500) [Paper jam] (JAM0000_02,03,10,15)
YC11	LSU	[System error] (C4101) [Machine failure] (C4101)
YC50	Main	[System error] (F040)

(6) Detaching and refitting the power source PWB

Procedure

1. Remove the rear lower cover (see page 1-5-3).
2. Remove 2-pin relay connector and 6-pin relay connector.
3. Release the wire saddle.

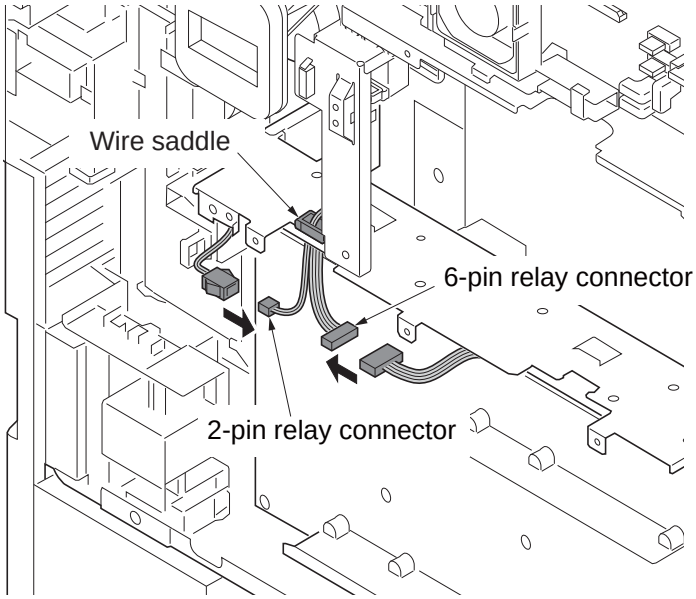


Figure 1-5-135

4. Remove two screws and the connector mount.

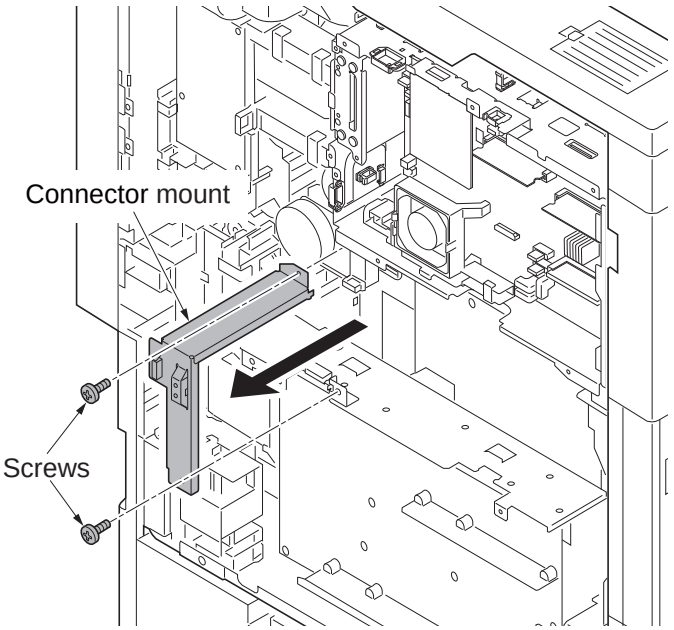


Figure 1-5-136

5. Remove the connector.
6. Release two wire saddles.

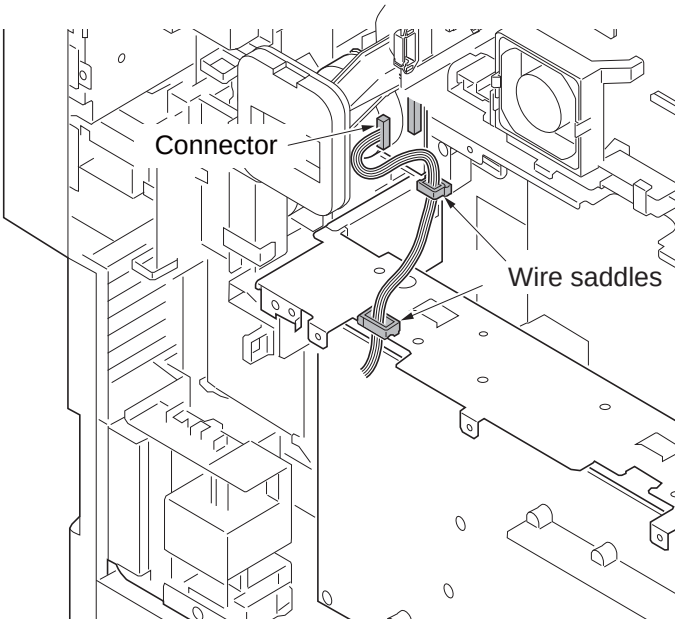


Figure 1-5-137

7. Release six wire saddles.
8. Remove the following eleven connectors and three tabs from the power source PWB.
   YC1
   YC3
   YC4
   TB1
   TB2
   TB5
   YC8
   YC9
   YC10
   YC11
   YC12
   YC13
   YC14
   YC16
   YC17
9. Remove 2-pin relay connector.

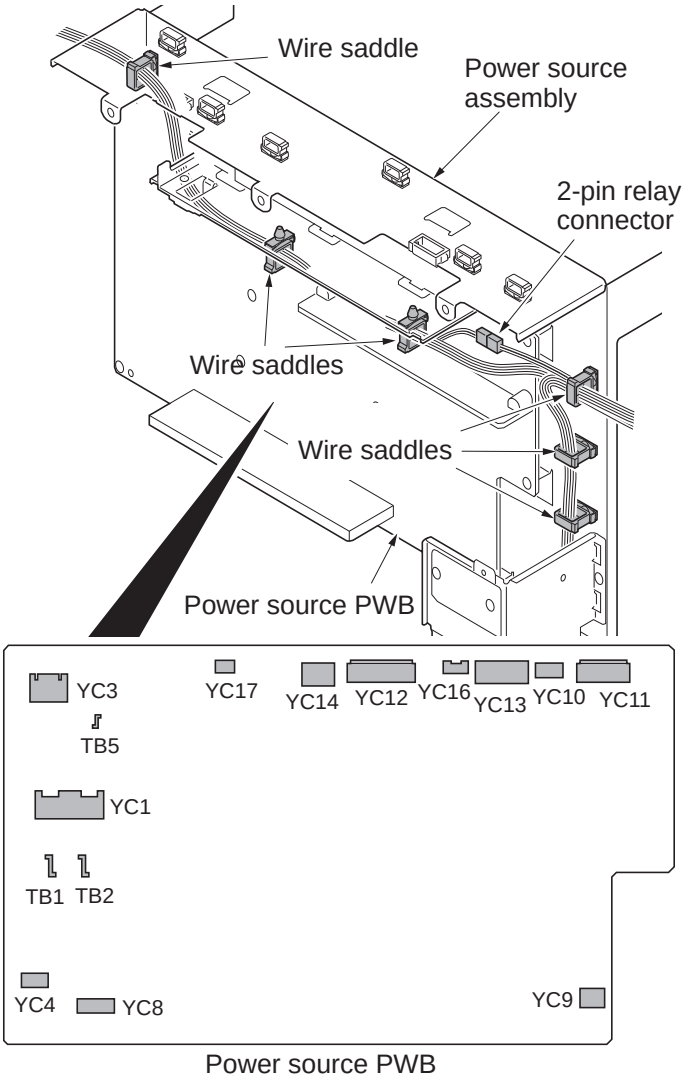


Figure 1-5-138

10. Remove two screws.
11. Remove the power source assembly.

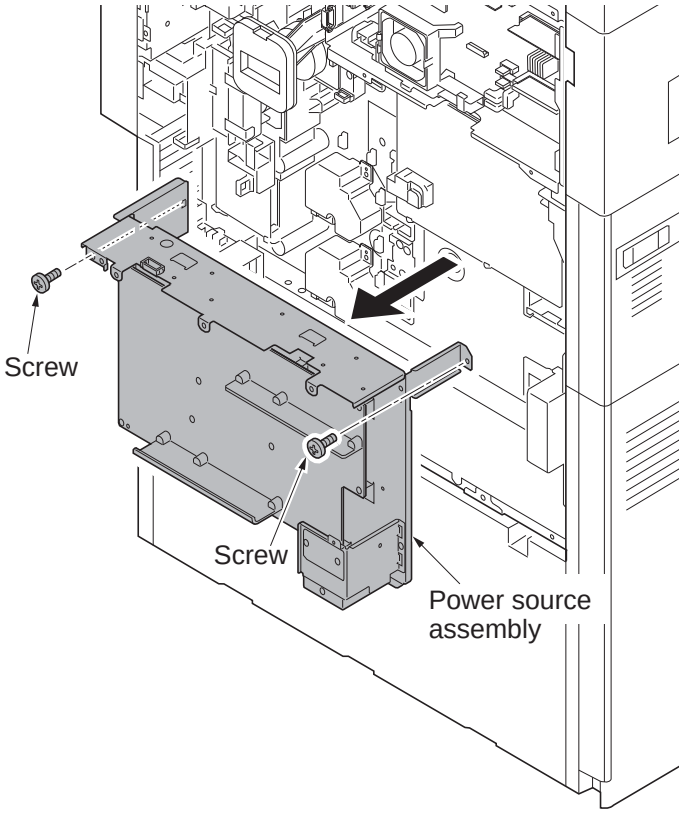


Figure 1-5-139

12. Remove eight screws.
13. Unhook the board support and then remove the power source PWB.
14. Check or replace the power source PWB and refit all the removed parts.

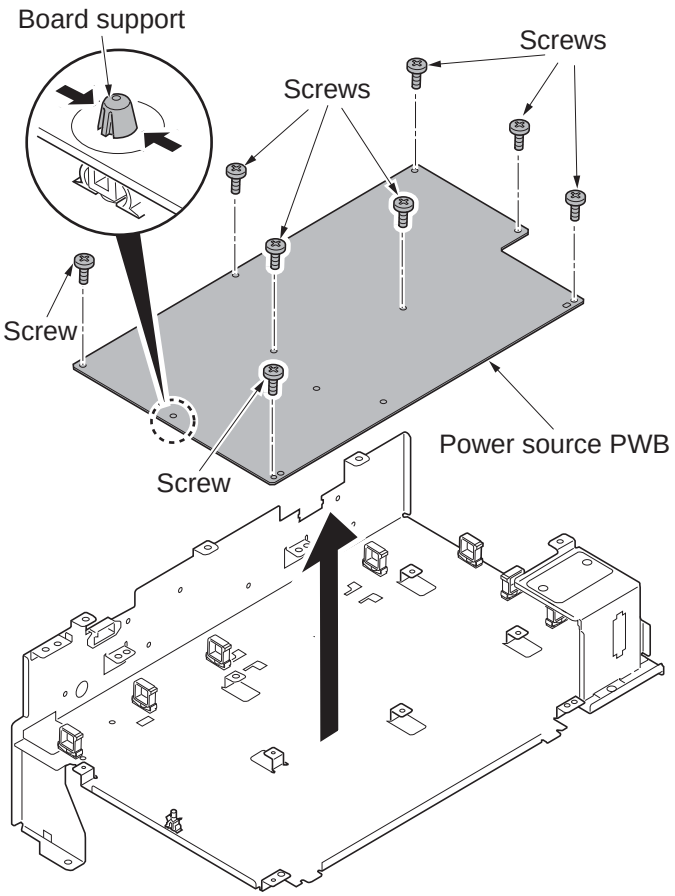


Figure 1-5-140

(7) Detaching and refitting the high voltage PWB

Procedure

1. Remove the power source PWB (see page 1-5-87).
2. Remove five connectors and four tabs from high voltage PWB.

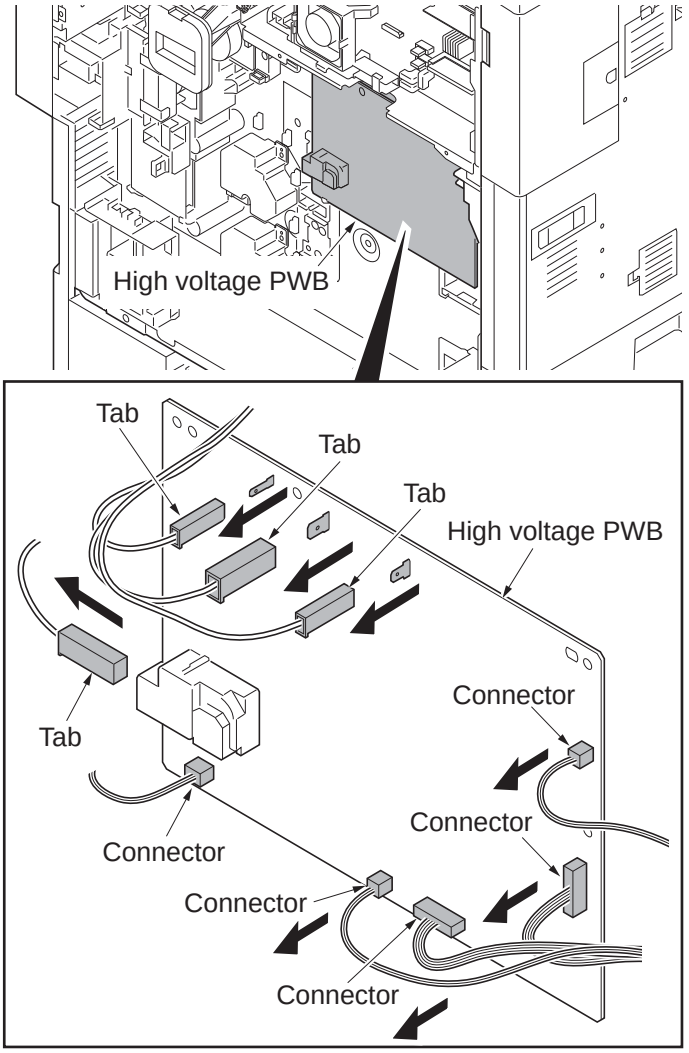


Figure 1-5-141

3. Remove four screws.
4. Unhook two hooks of PWB spacer and then remove the high voltage PWB.
5. Check or replace the high voltage PWB and refit all the removed parts.

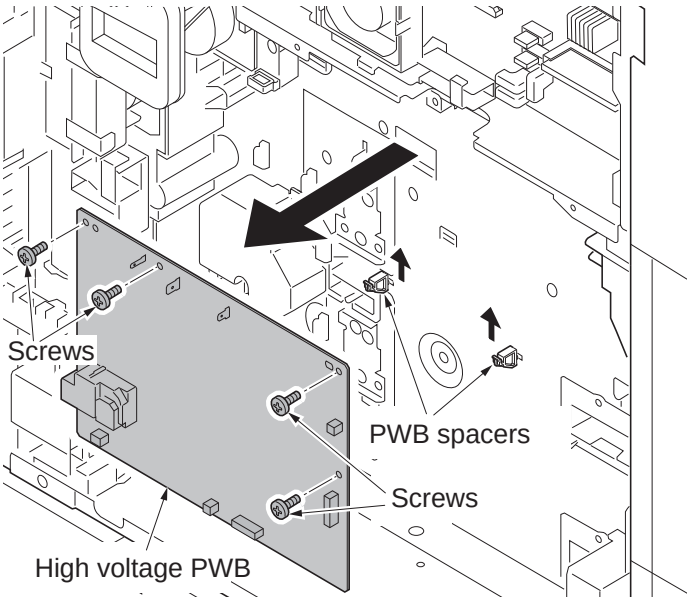


Figure 1-5-142

(8) Detaching and refitting the operation PWB

Procedure

1. Unhook two hooks and then remove the operation hinge cover A.

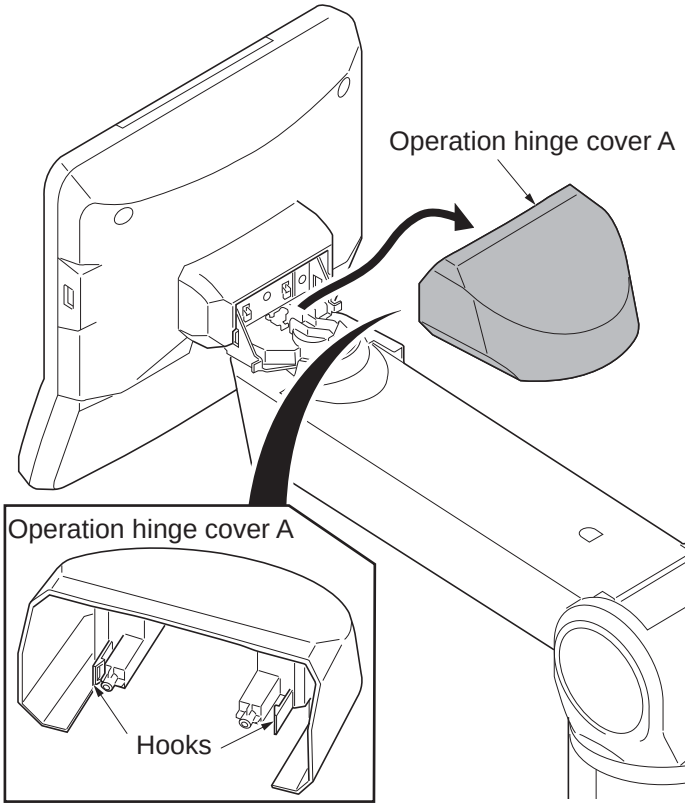


Figure 1-5-143

2. Remove two screws of the operation rear lid.
3. Unhook four hooks and then remove the operation rear lid.

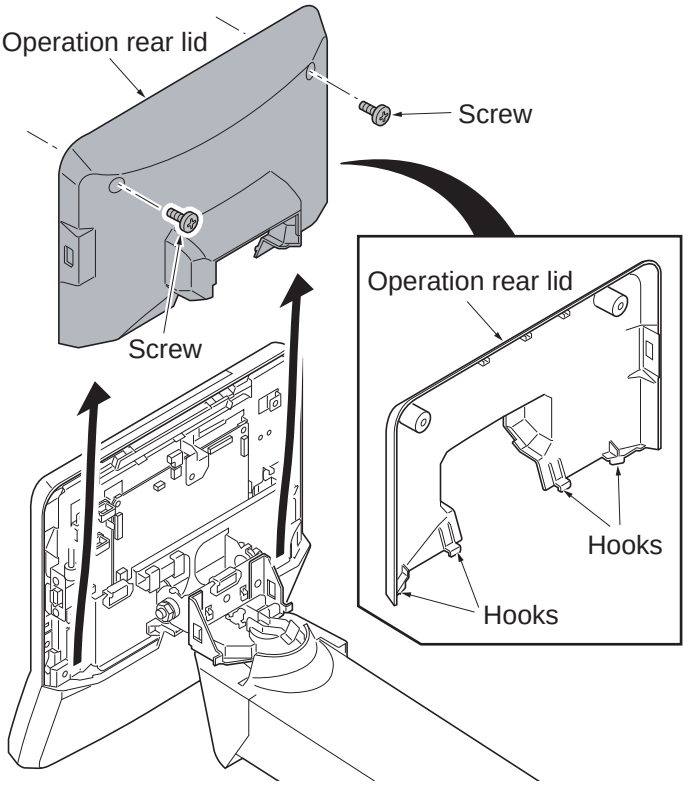


Figure 1-5-144

4. Remove the lock spring from the USB connector.
5. Remove two screws and then remove the USB wire (connector).
6. Release three wire saddles.
7. Remove the wire holder.
8. Remove three connectors.

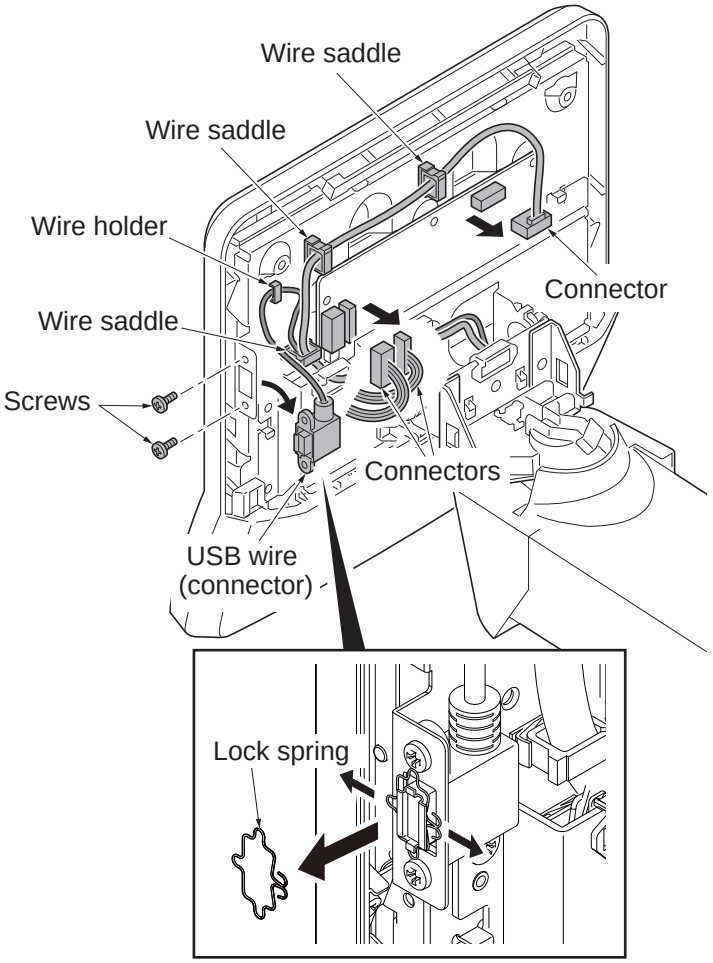


Figure 1-5-145

9. Remove four screws and then remove the operation unit.

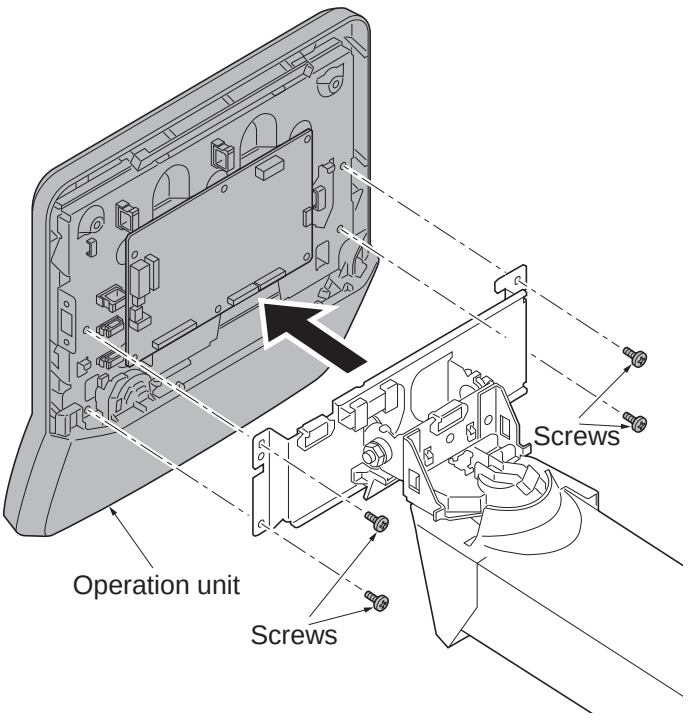


Figure 1-5-146

10. Remove three connectors and four FFCs from the operation PWB.
    *: To remove the FFC from the locked connector A, unlock the connector by raising the lock lever.
    *: To remove the FFC from the locked connector B, unlock the connector by sliding the stopper.

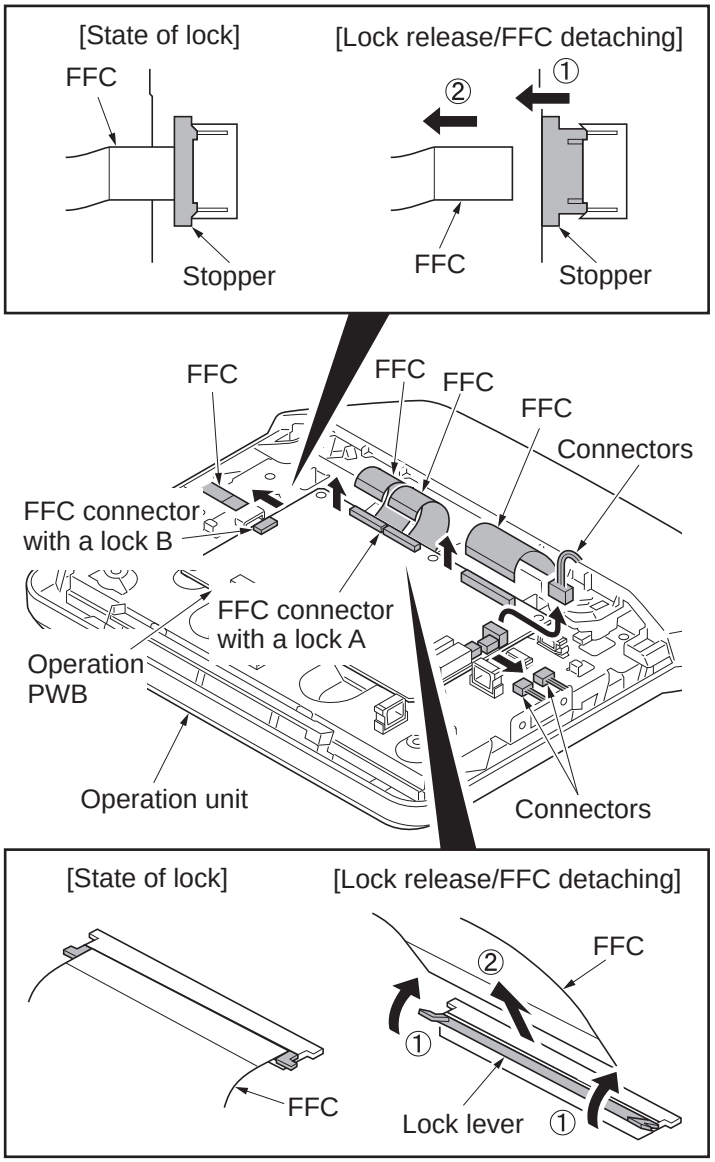


Figure 1-5-147

11. Remove six screws and then remove the operation PWB.
12. Check or replace the operation PWB and refit all the removed parts.

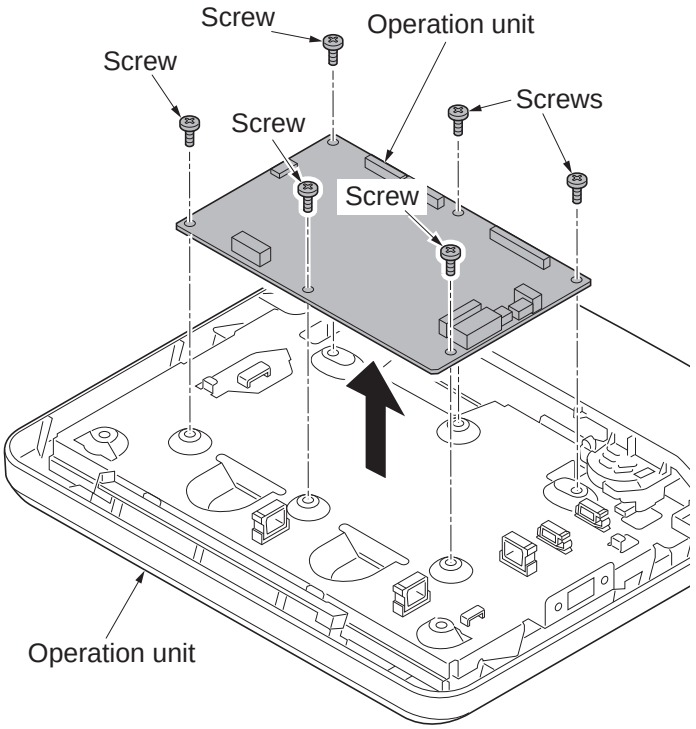


Figure 1-5-148

(9) Detaching and refitting the fuser IH PWB

Procedure

1. Remove nine screws and then remove the rear upper cover.

*: To fix a cover, insert the hook at the left top first by bowing the cover.

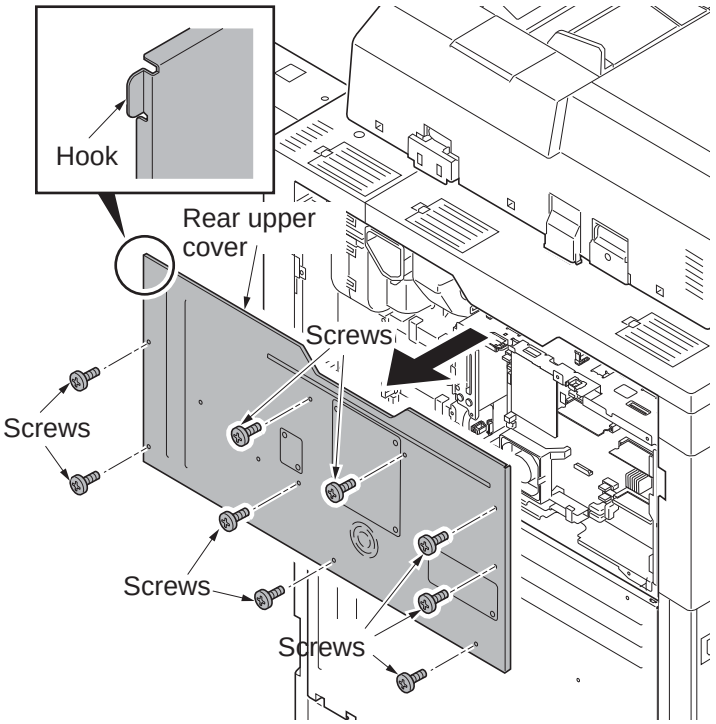


Figure 1-5-149

2. Remove the toner disposal box (see page 1-5-134).
3. Remove nine screws.
4. Release two hanging parts and then remove the rear lower cover.
5. Remove the fuser unit (see page 1-5-67).

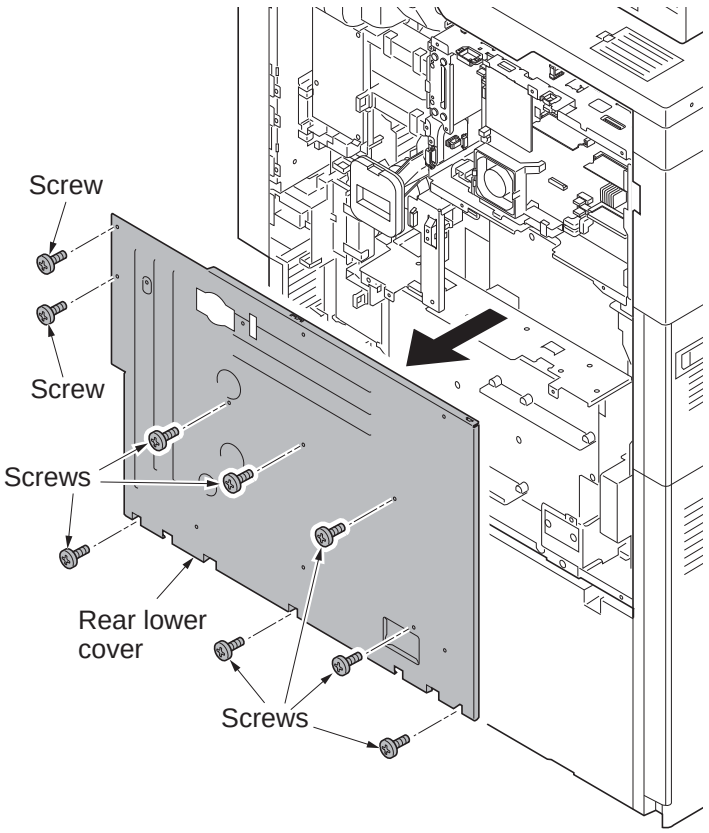


Figure 1-5-150

6. Remove two screws and then remove the ISU right cover.
7. Remove the clip holder A.
8. Remove the screw and then remove the clip holder B.
9. Unhook three hooks and then remove the right upper cover.

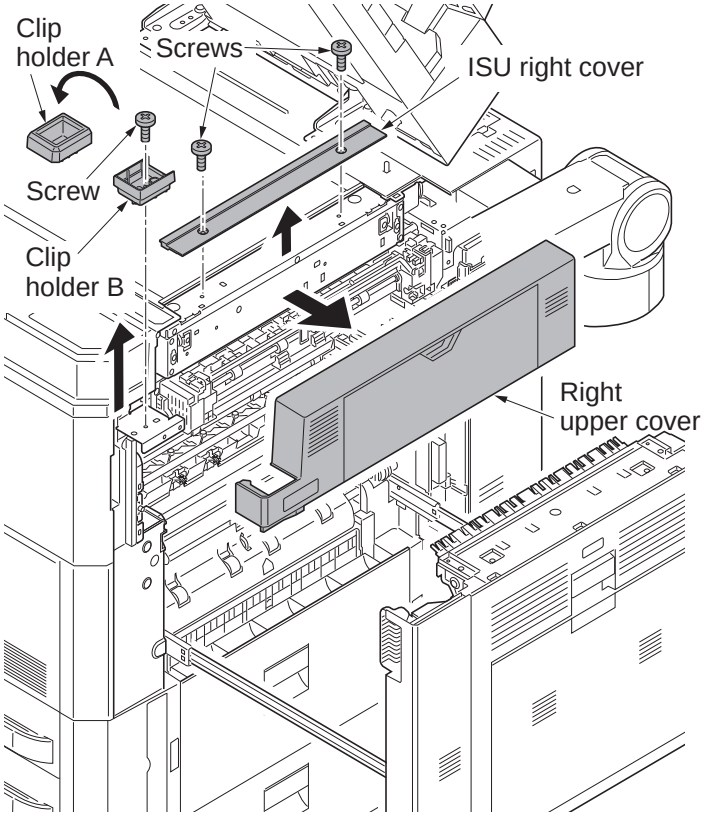


Figure 1-5-151

10. Remove the screw.
11. Unhook two hooks and then remove the right middle rear cover.

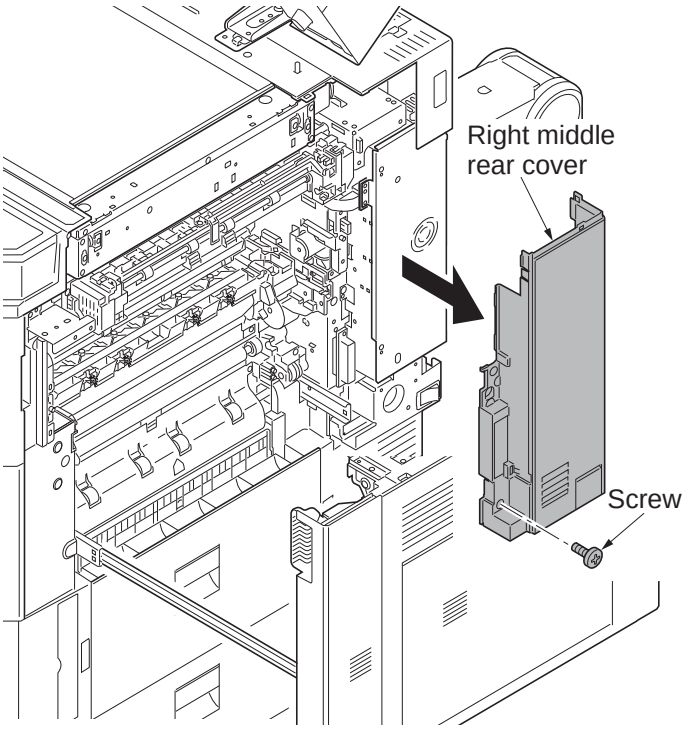


Figure 1-5-152

12. Remove four screws and the remove the fuser IH PWB cover.
13. Remove the IH wire cover.

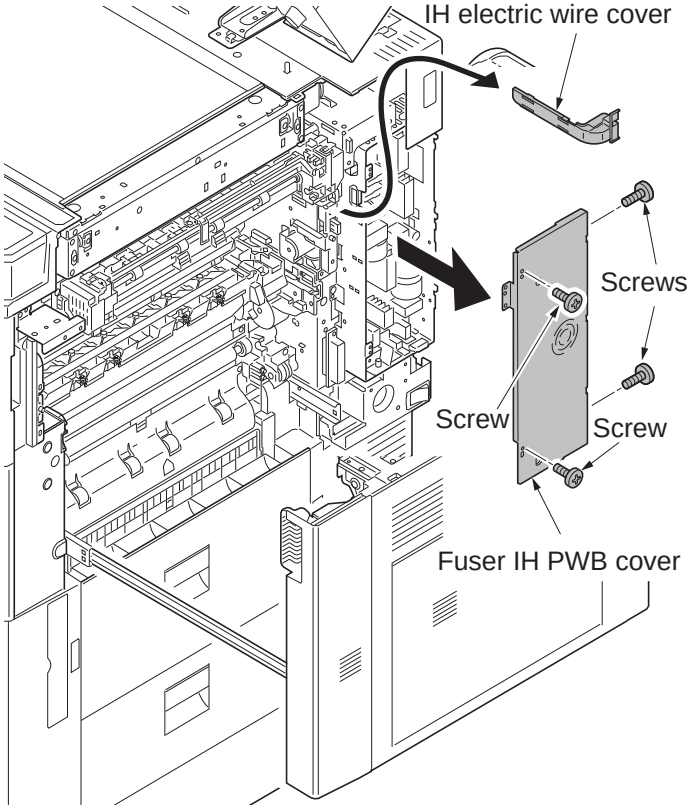


Figure 1-5-153

14. Release two wire saddles.
15. Remove four connectors from the fuser IH PWB.

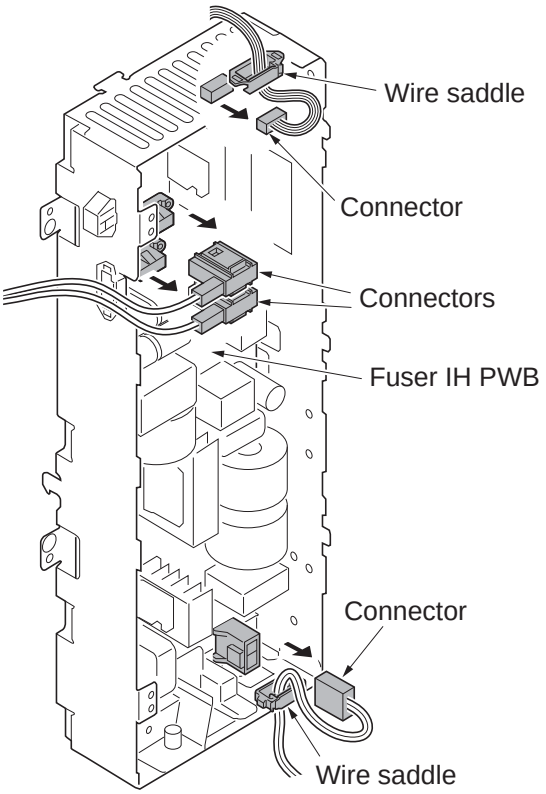


Figure 1-5-154

16. Remove two wire holders.
17. Remove the connector (YC27) from feed PWB 1.

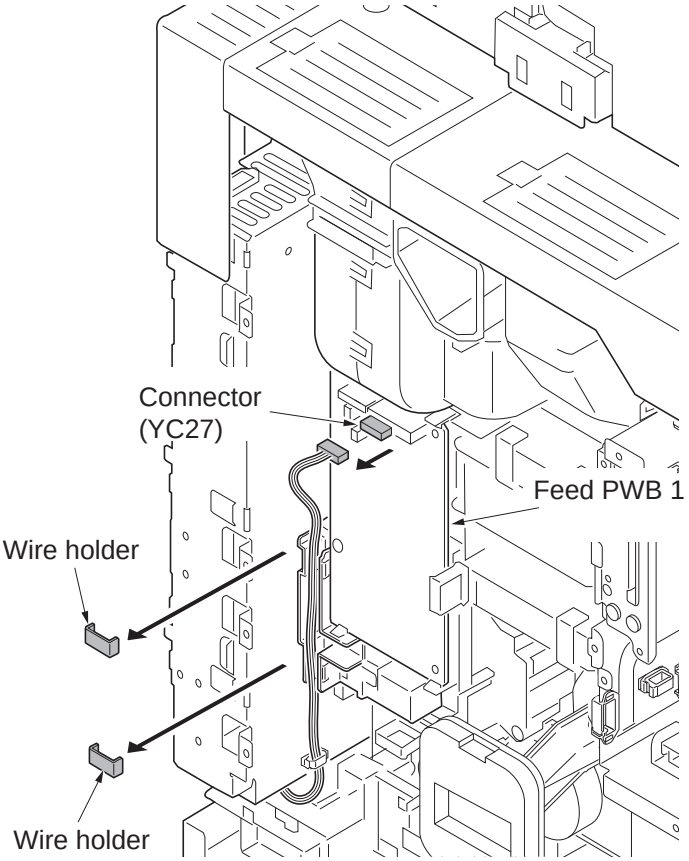


Figure 1-5-155

18. Remove three screws.
19. Unhook two hooks and then remove IH box assembly.

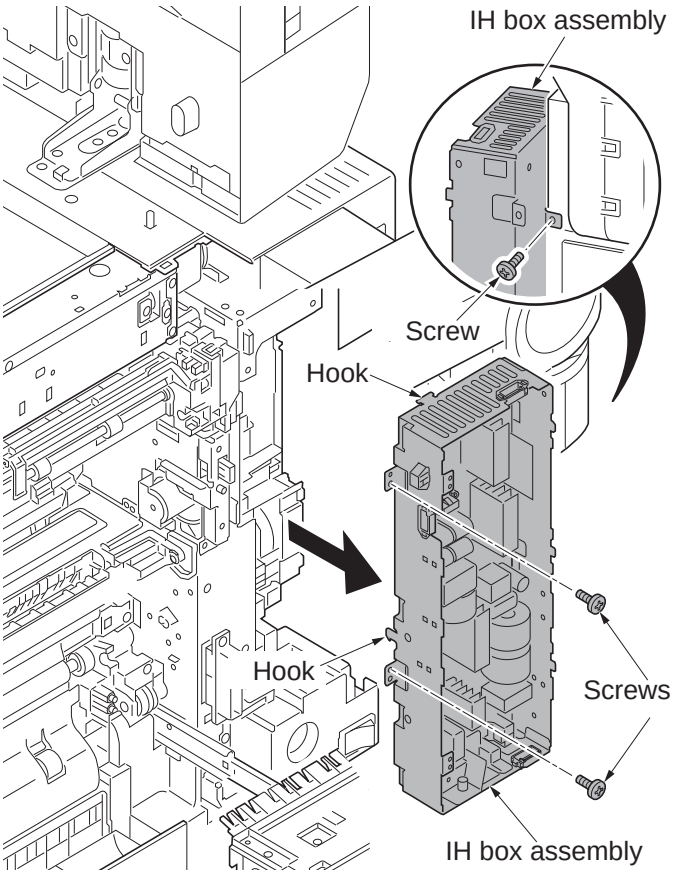


Figure 1-5-156

20. Remove two connectors.
21. Remove the screw, and then remove the duct.

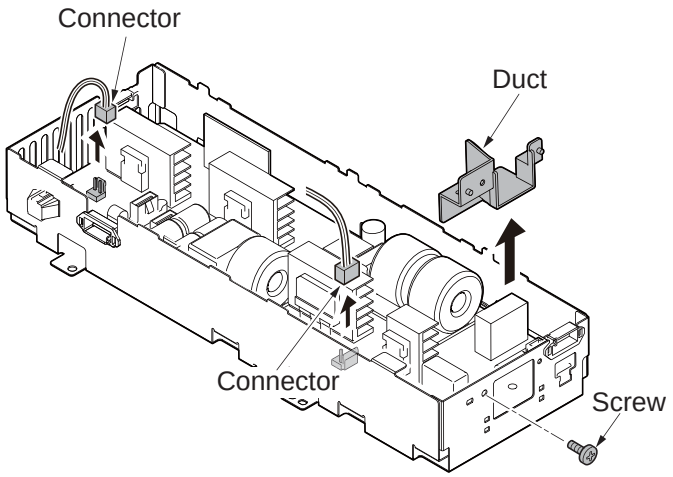


Figure 1-5-157

22. Remove eight screws.
23. Unhook the hook of the board support and then remove fuser IH PWB.
24. Check or replace the fuser IH PWB and refit all the removed parts.

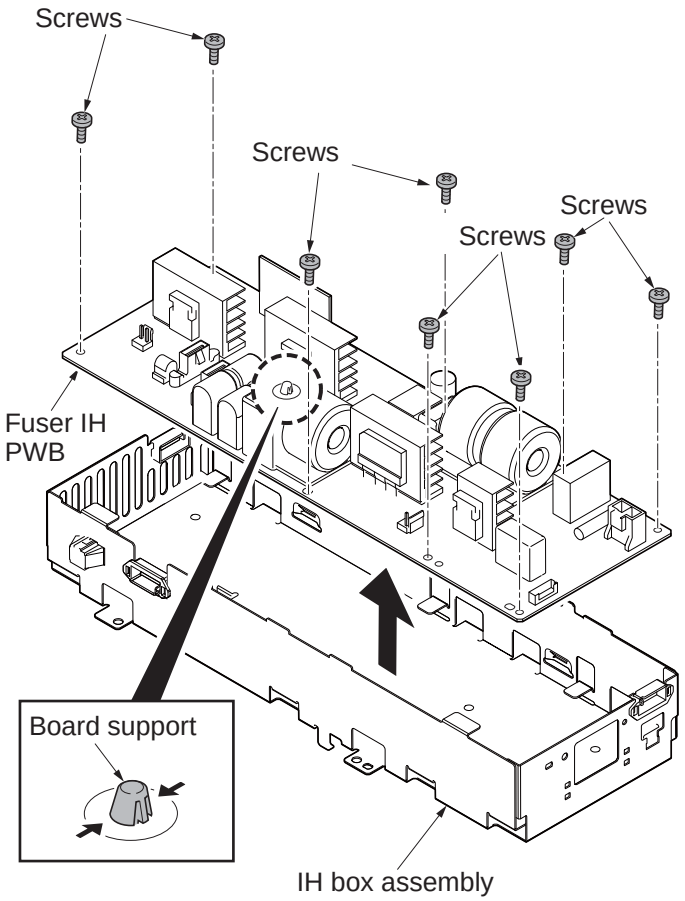


Figure 1-5-158

(10)Detaching and refitting the PF main PWB

Procedure

1. Remove three screws and then remove the PF rear cover.

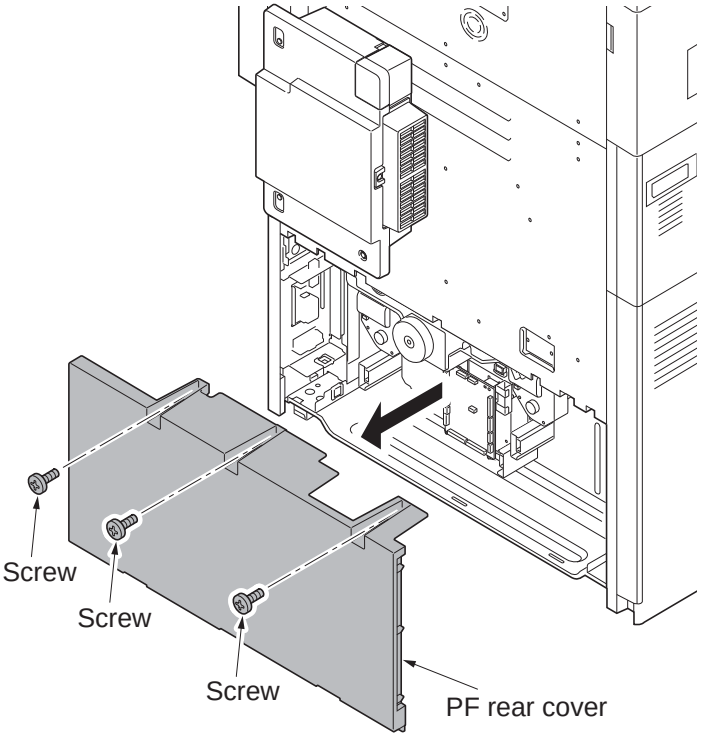


Figure 1-5-159

2. Remove all connectors from the PF main PWB.

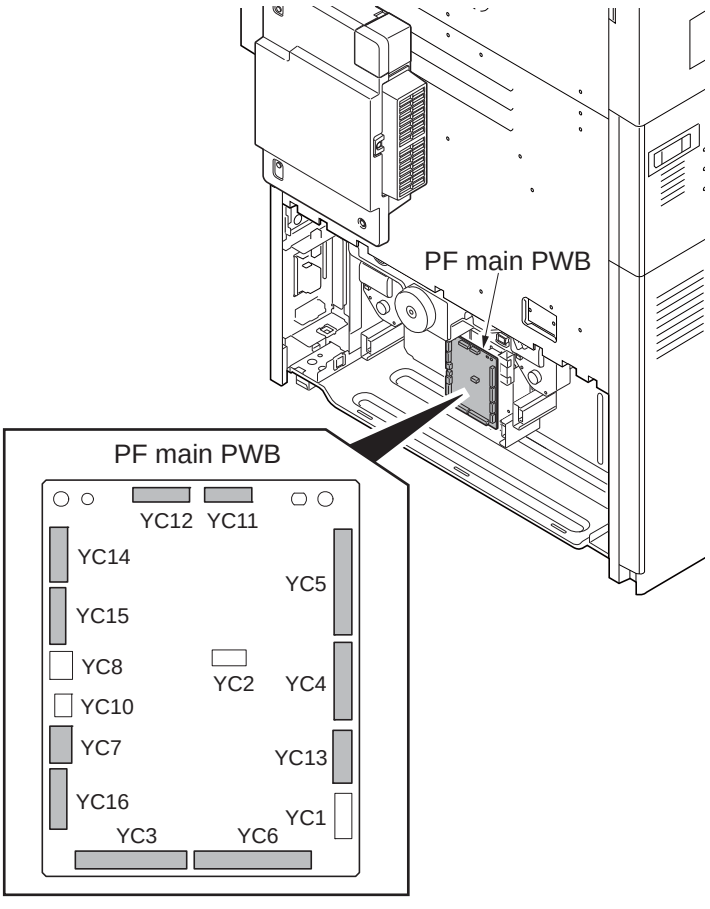


Figure 1-5-160

3. Remove two screws and then remove the PF main PWB from two holder.
4. Check or replace the PF main PWB and refit all the removed parts.
5. Enter maintenance mode U901 after power up and port the counters on the engine board to the PF board (see page 1-3-185).

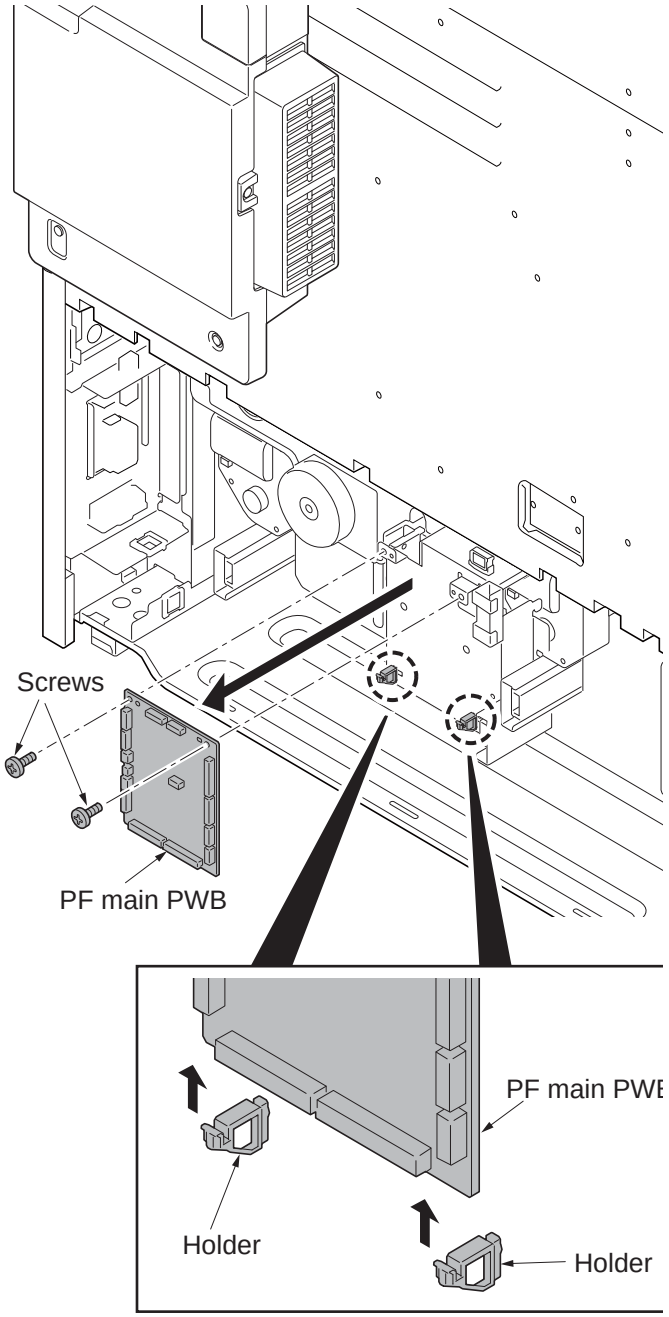


Figure 1-5-161

1-5-10 Drive section

(1) Detaching and refitting the drum drive unit

Procedure

1. Remove the developer unit (see page 1-5-56).
2. Remove the drum unit (see page 1-5-57).
3. Remove the rear upper cover and the rear lower cover (see page 1-5-3).
4. Remove the feed PWB 1 assembly (see page 1-5-105).
5. Remove the connector.
6. Release the wire saddle.

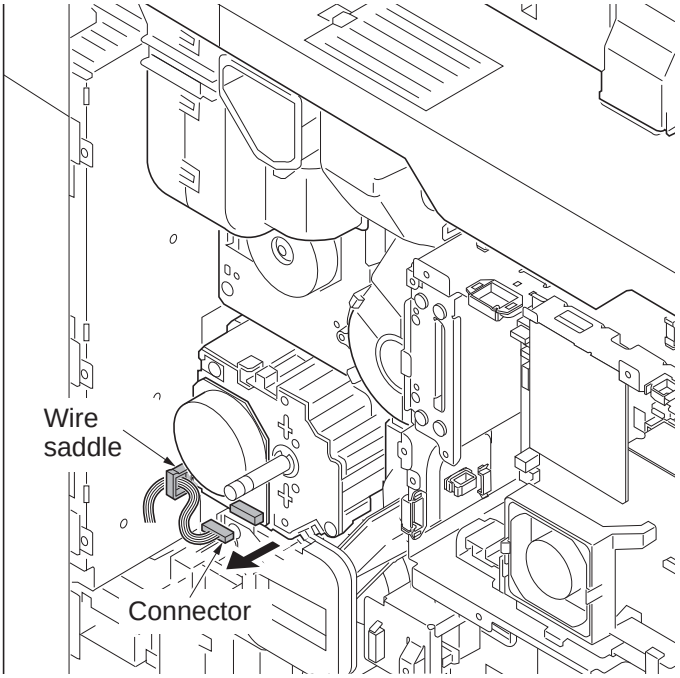


Figure 1-5-162

7. Remove three screws.
8. Remove the drum drive unit.

*: Do not have a shaft part alone when you carry drum drive unit. (Have the housing.)

*: Put support on the tip of the shaft so that the shaft may become the horizontal when you put drum drive unit on the table etc.

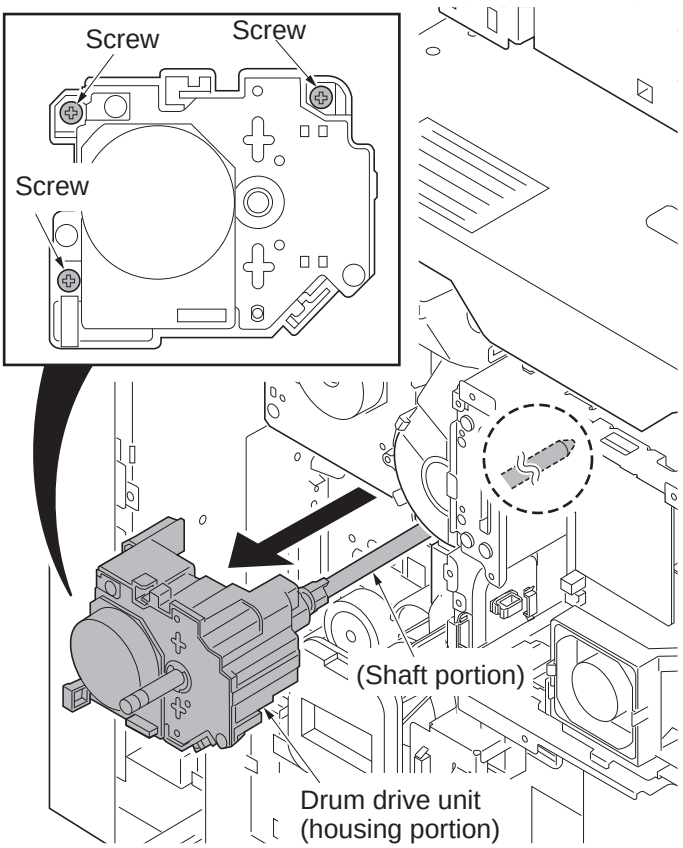


Figure 1-5-163

Detaching the drum motor

1. Remove the rear upper cover (see page 1-5-3).
2. Remove the toner disposal box (see page 1-5-134).
3. Remove the rear lower cover (see page 1-5-3).
4. Remove the connector.
5. Release the wire saddle.

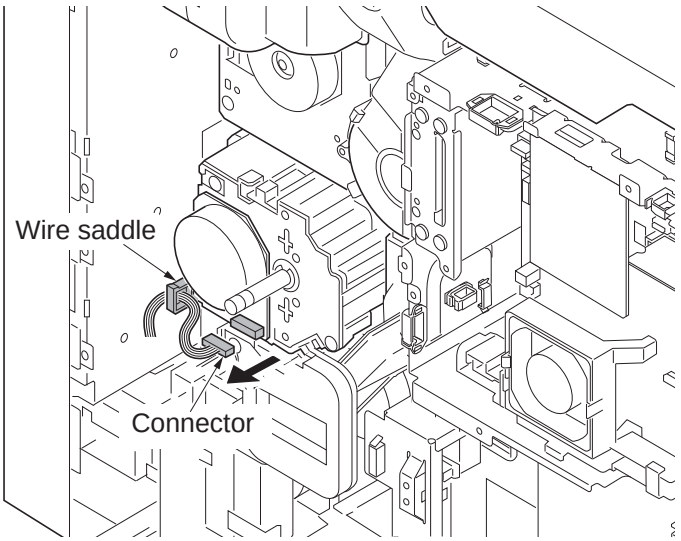


Figure 1-5-164

6. Remove three screws.
7. Remove the drum drive unit.

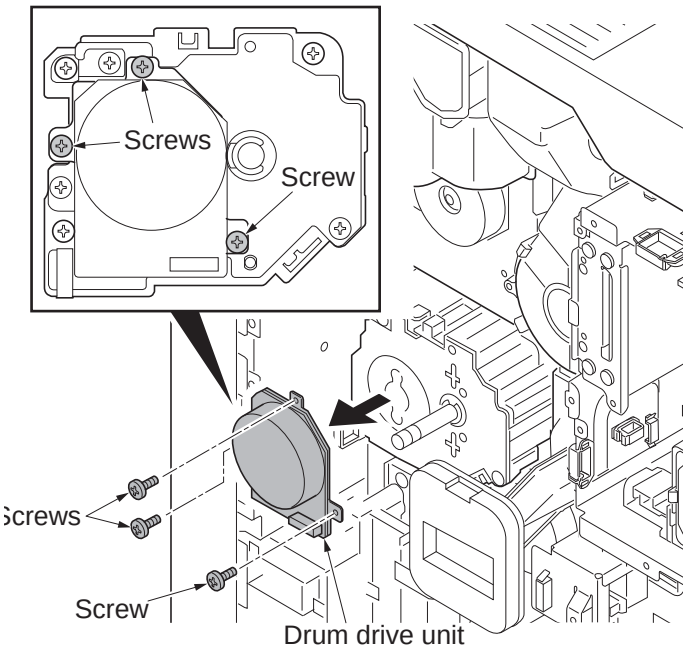


Figure 1-5-165

8. Remove two screws.
9. Remove the drive mounting bracket.

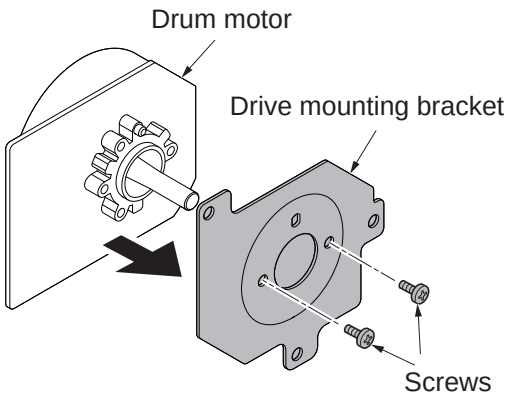


Figure 1-5-166

(2) Detaching and refitting the developer drive unit

Procedure

1. Remove the rear upper cover and the rear lower cover (see page 1-5-3).
2. Unhook four hooks and then remove the duct.

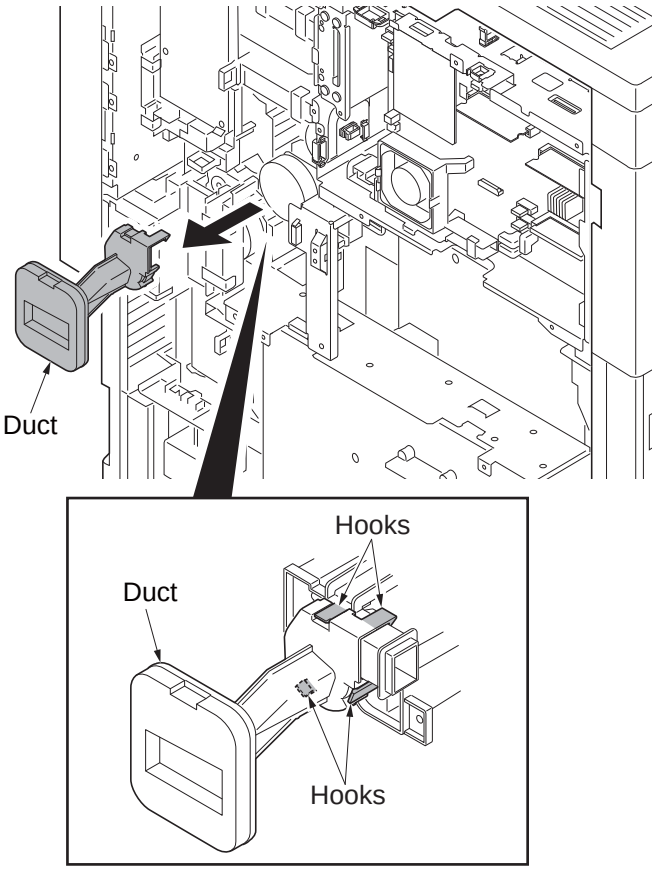


Figure 1-5-167

3. Remove the connector.
4. Release the wire saddle.
5. Remove two screws and then remove the developer drive unit.
6. Check or replace the developer drive unit and refit all the removed parts.

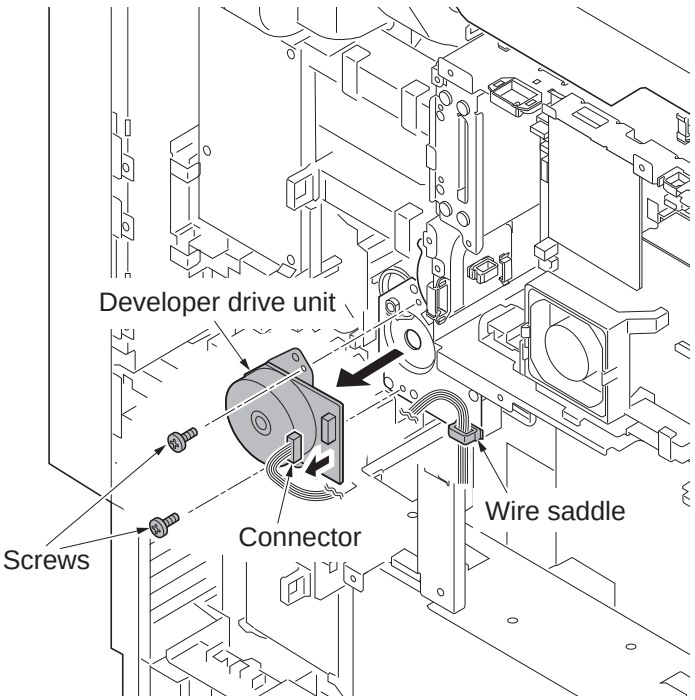


Figure 1-5-169

(3) Detaching and refitting the fuser drive unit and feed drive unit

Procedure

Detaching the fuser drive unit

1. Remove the rear upper cover and the rear lower cover (see page 1-5-3).
2. Remove five wire holders of feed PWB 1 assembly.
3. Release two wire saddles.

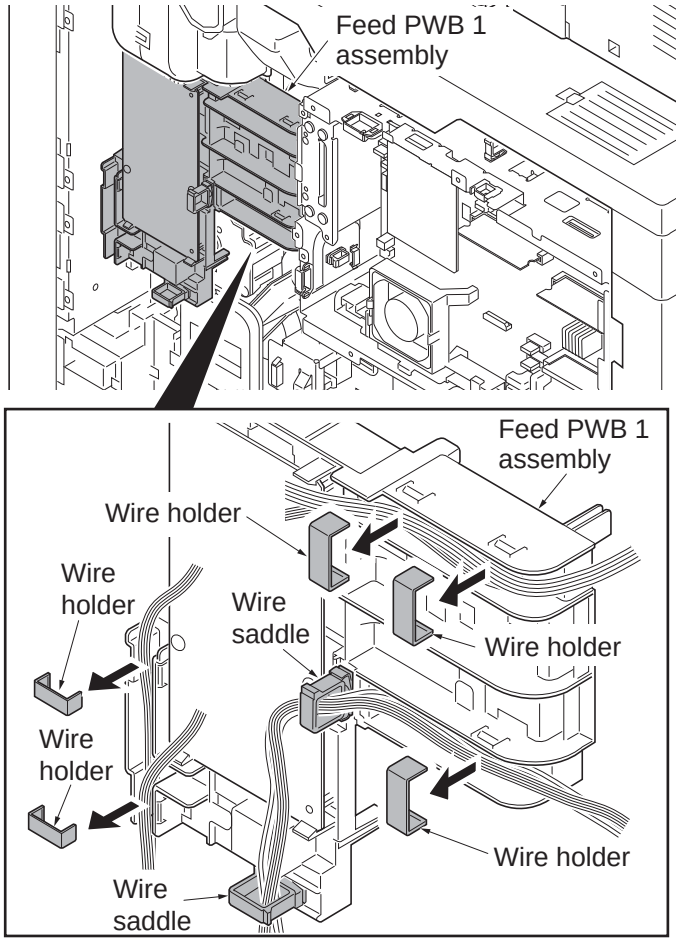


Figure 1-5-170

4. Remove the following twenty one connectors from the feed PWB 1.
   YC18, YC19
   YC20, YC27
   YC26, YC3
   YC17, YC14
   YC16
   YC13, YC12
   YC23, YC25
   YC15, YC11
   YC5, YC4
   YC1 (Connector type FFC)
   YC2 (Connector type FFC)
   YC8,YC9

*: Before removing the connector type FFCs of YC1 and YC2, unlock the lock by pressing the lock lever in its center.

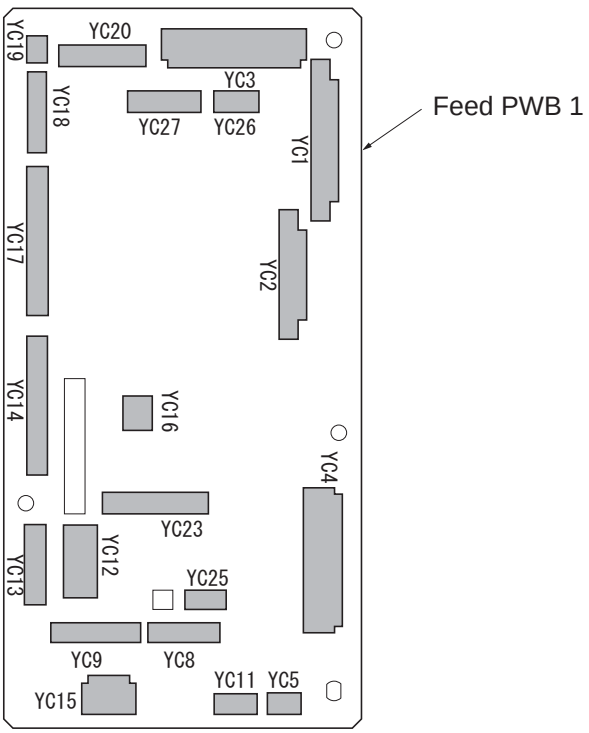


Figure 1-5-171

5. Remove the FFC from the Connector type FFC (YC4) on the engine PWB. Remove the FFC from the FFC connector with a lock (YC1) on the feed PWB 2.

*: When removing the FFC from the FFC connector with a lock, remove the FFC after released by lifting down the lock lever (see page 1-5-76).

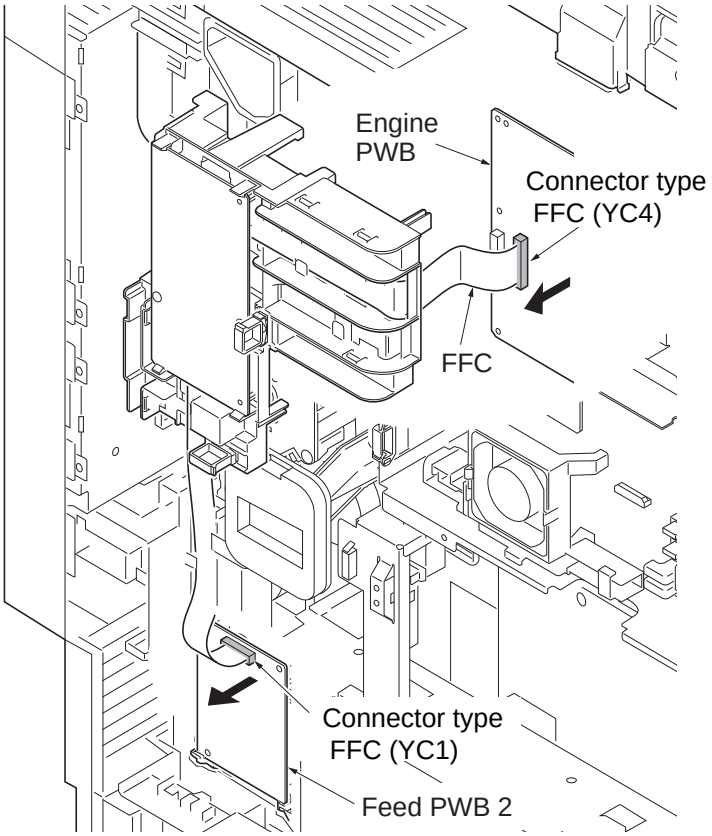


Figure 1-5-172

6. Remove three screws.
7. Remove the feed PWB 1 assembly.

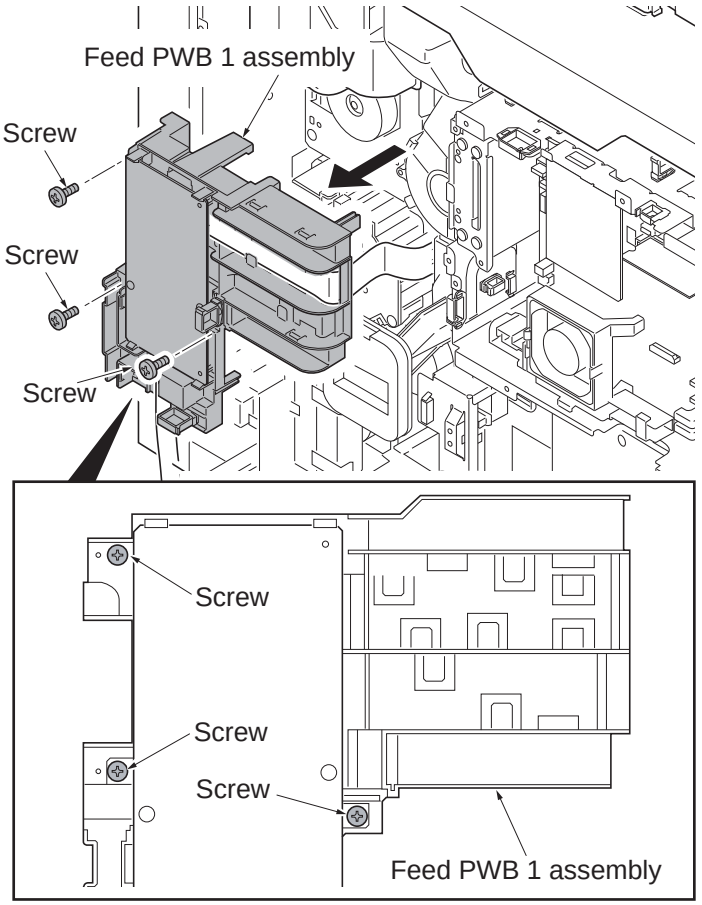


Figure 1-5-173

8. Remove the connector.
9. Remove three screws.
10. Remove the fuser drive unit.

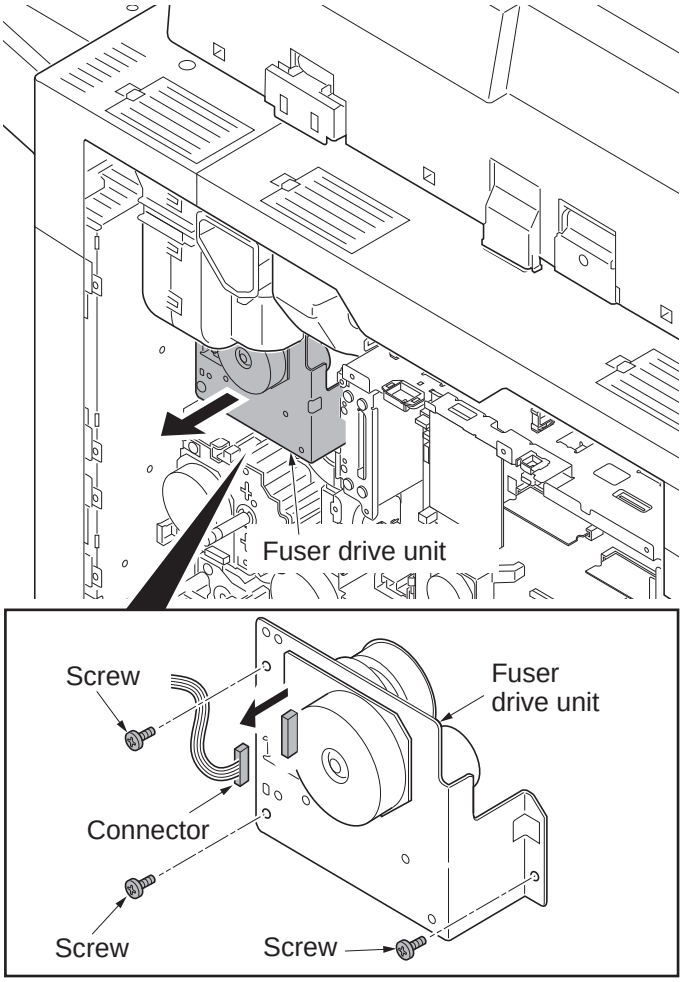


Figure 1-5-174

Detaching the feed drive unit

11. Remove three wire holders from the feed 2 FFC guide.

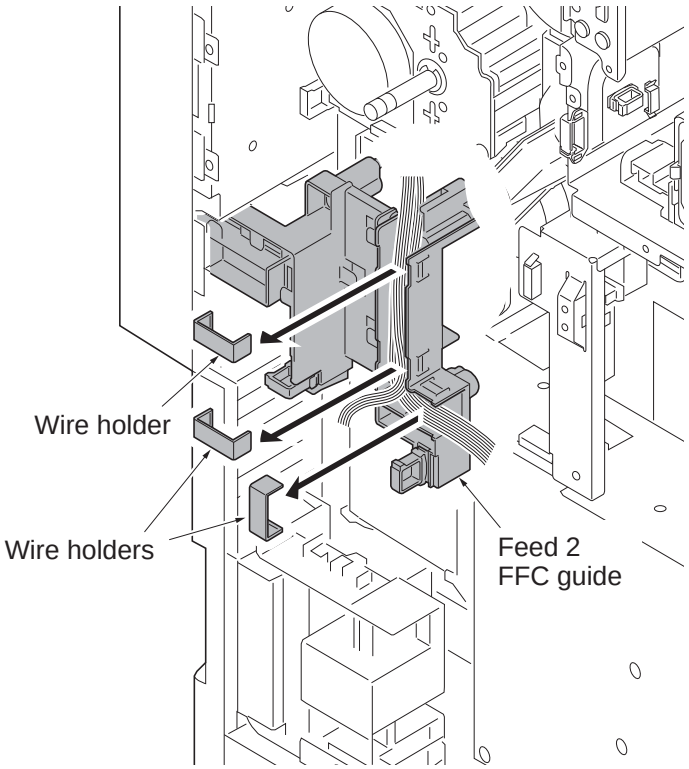


Figure 1-5-175

12. Remove two screws and then remove the feed 2 FFC guide.

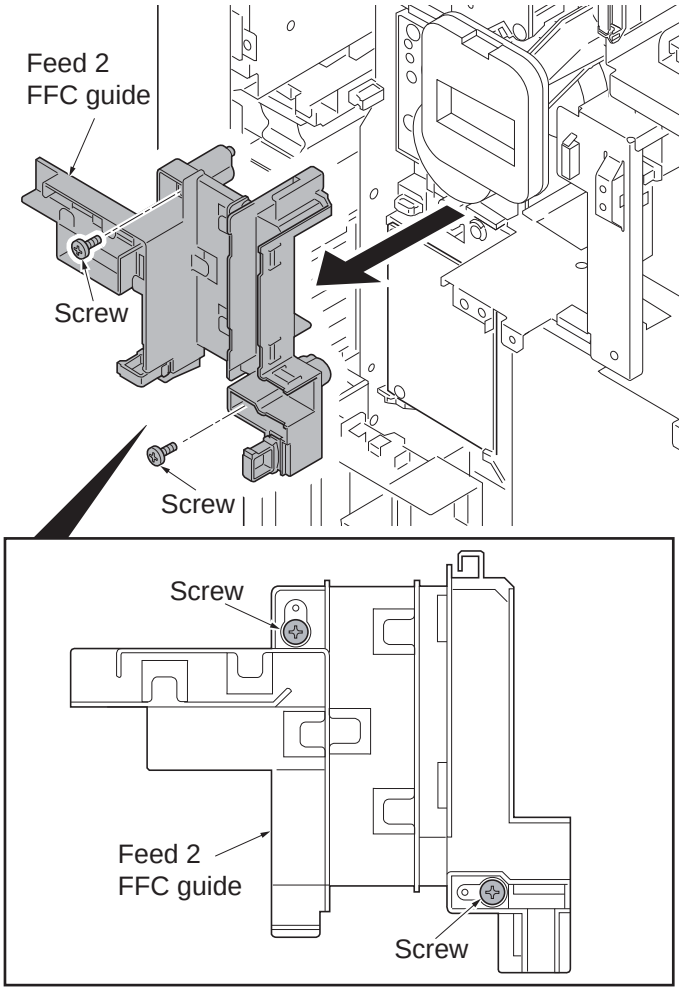


Figure 1-5-176

13. Remove the following five connectors from the feed PWB 2.
    YC7
    YC8
    YC3
    YC5
    YC6

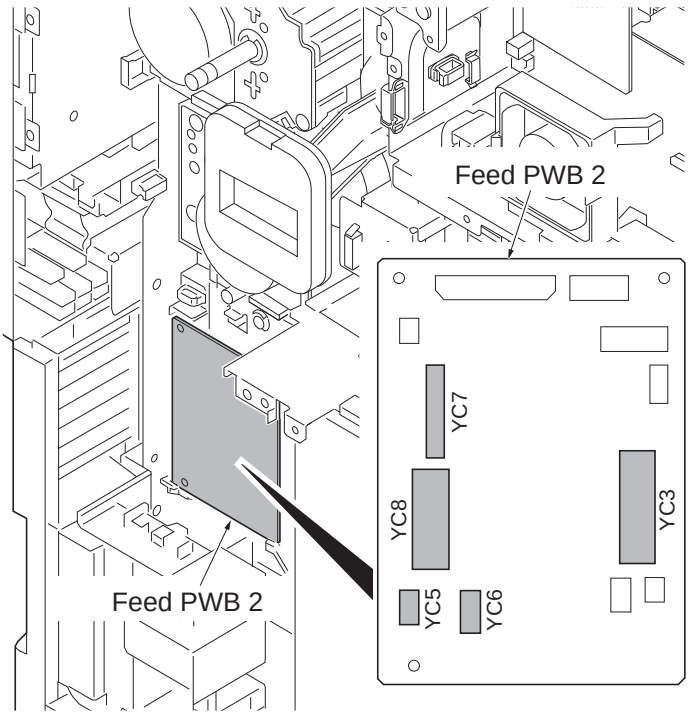


Figure 1-5-177

14. Remove the rear lower cover (see page 1-5-3).
15. Remove the right lower rear cover (see page 1-5-5).
16. Remove two screws and then remove the inlet unit.

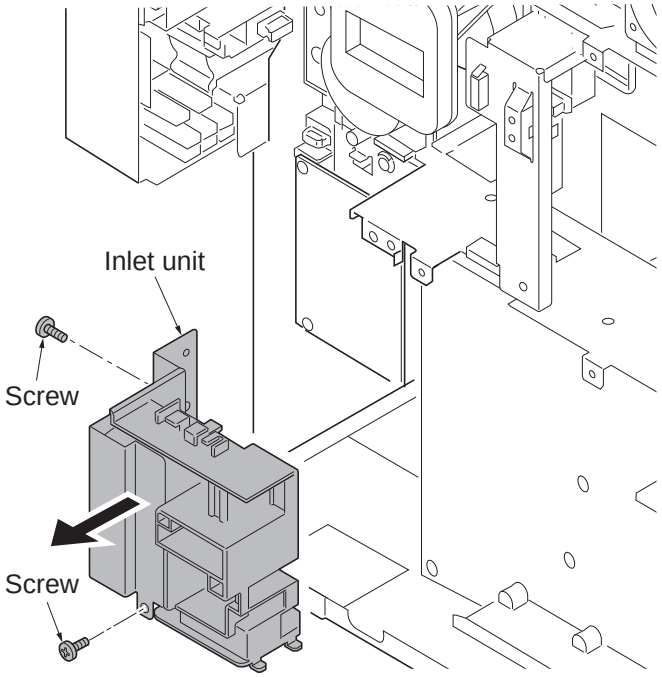


Figure 1-5-178

17. Remove three screws.
18. Remove the feed drive unit.

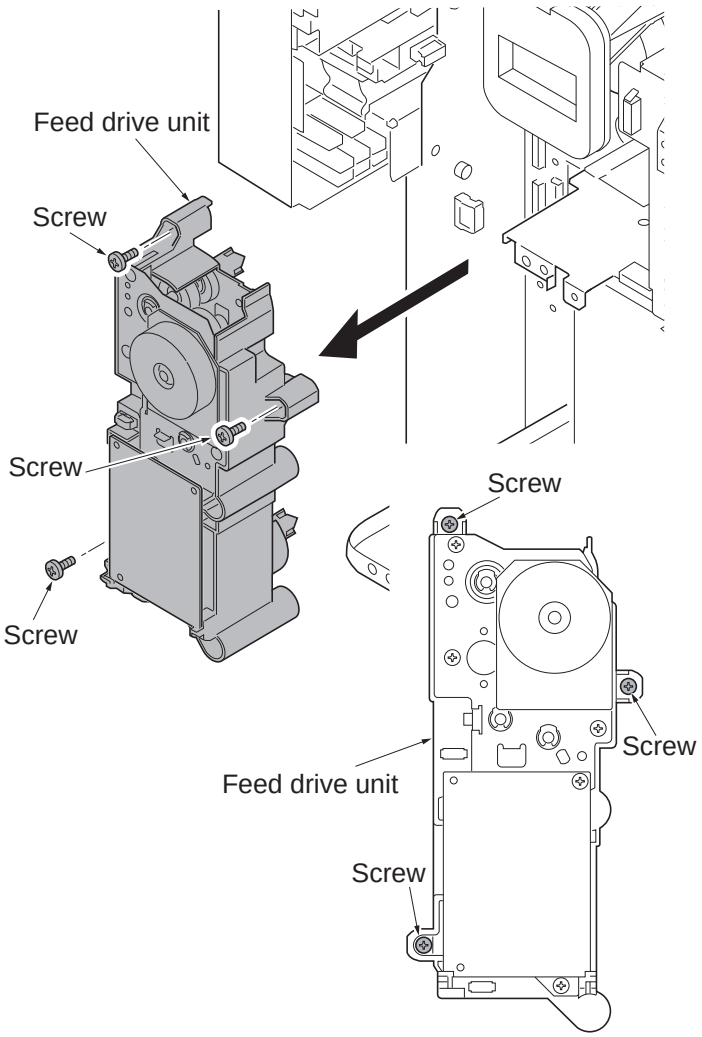


Figure 1-5-179

19. Check or replace the feed drive unit and refit all the removed parts.
    *: Connect the connector (yellow) to the connector of paper feed clutch 1 on stamp [YELLOW] side as before, when removing the connector of the paper feed clutch as the check of the feed drive unit etc.

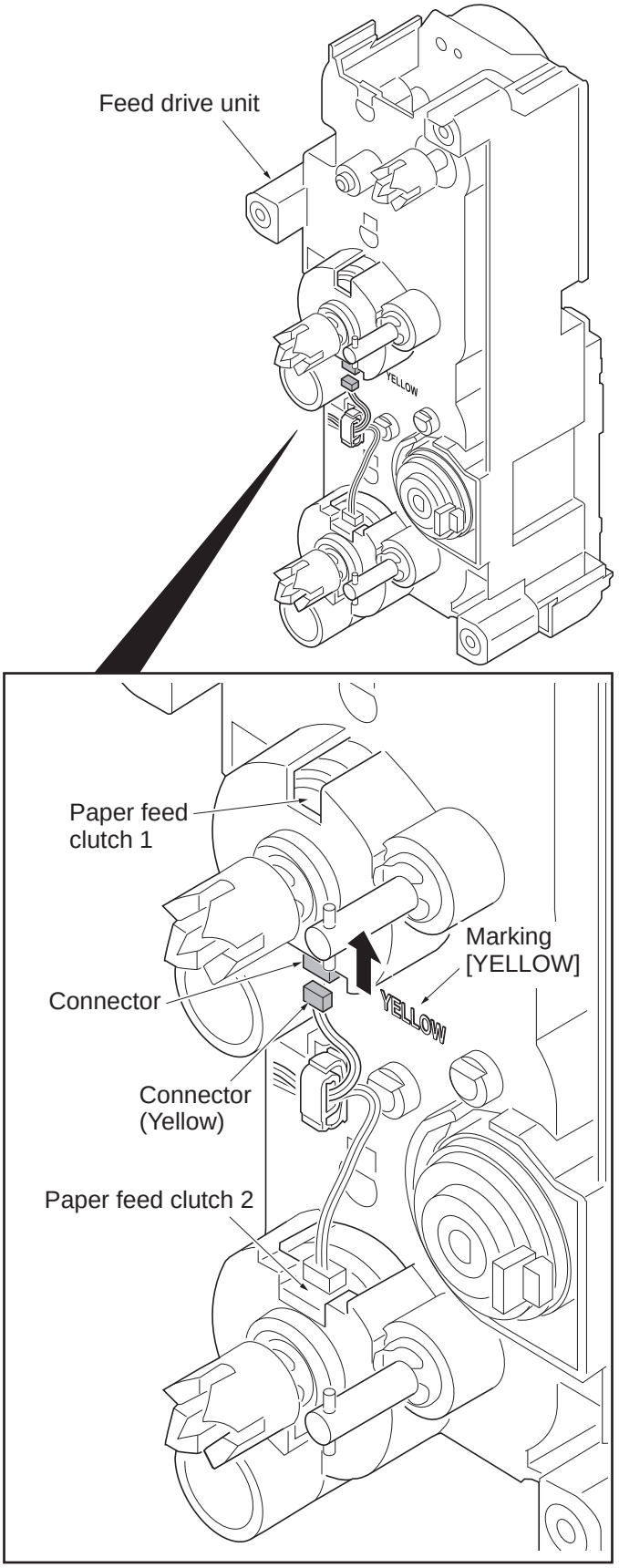


Figure 1-5-180

(4) Detaching and refitting the PF drive unit

Procedure

1. Remove the PF rear cover (see page 1-5-100).
2. Remove the connector of AC wire from the paper feeder.

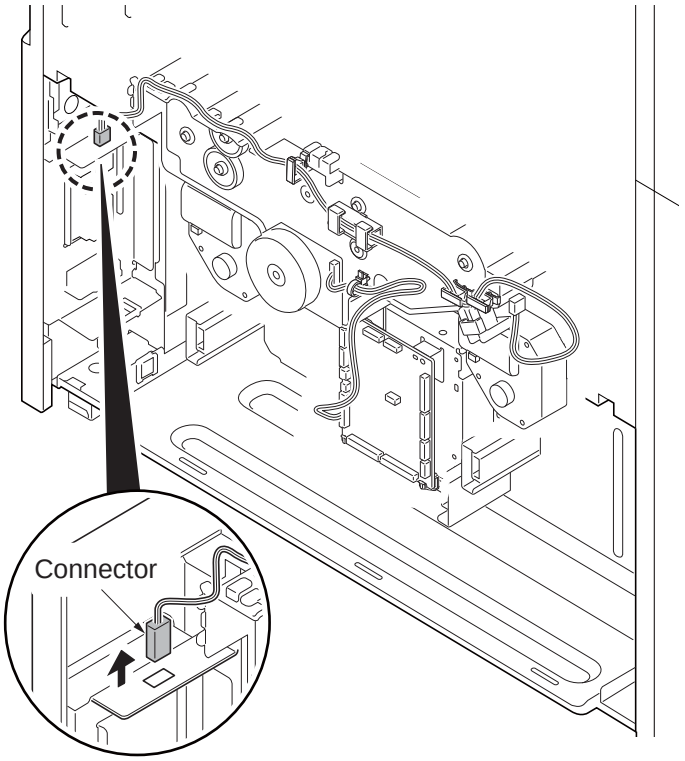


Figure 1-5-181

3. Remove three wire holders.
4. Release three wire saddles and then remove the wire.

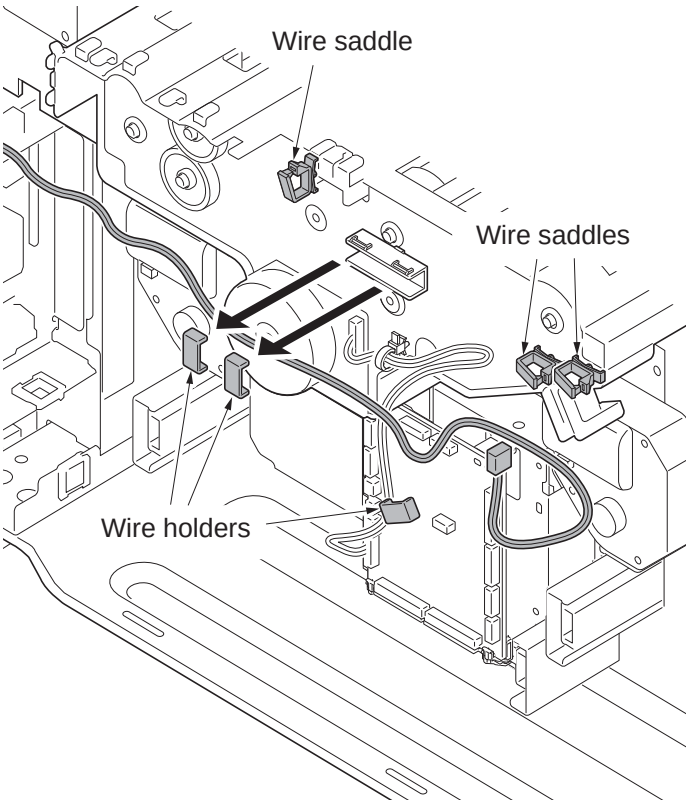


Figure 1-5-182

5. Remove the connector and the band of PF paper feed motor.
6. Remove the connector (YC15) from the PF main PWB and then release the wire from two wire saddles.

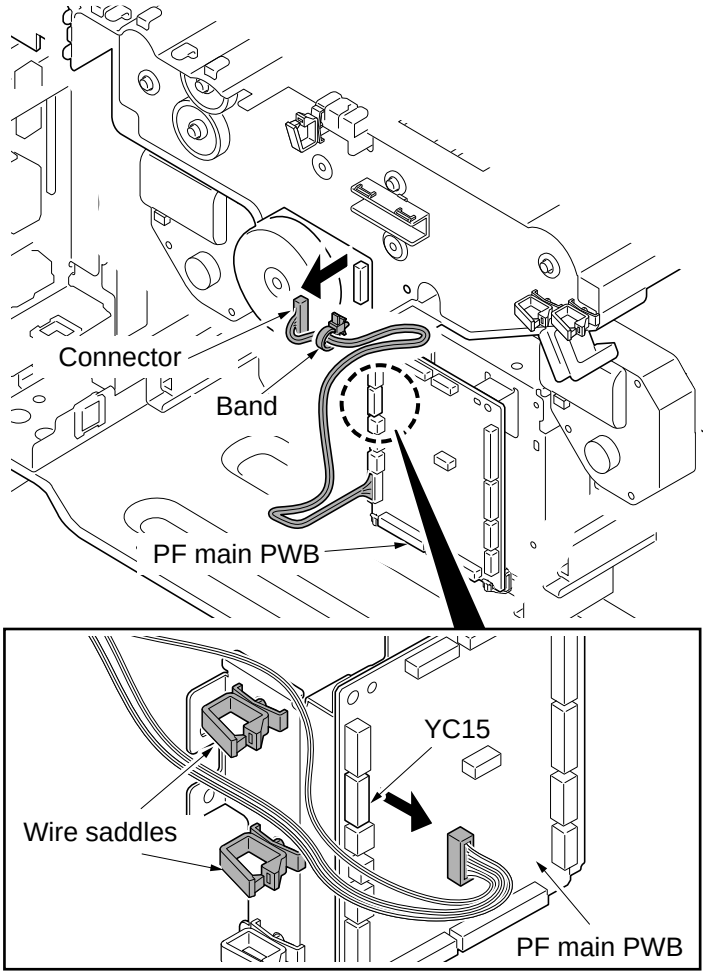


Figure 1-5-183

7. Remove four screws and then remove the PF drive unit.
8. Check or replace the PF drive unit and refit all the removed parts.

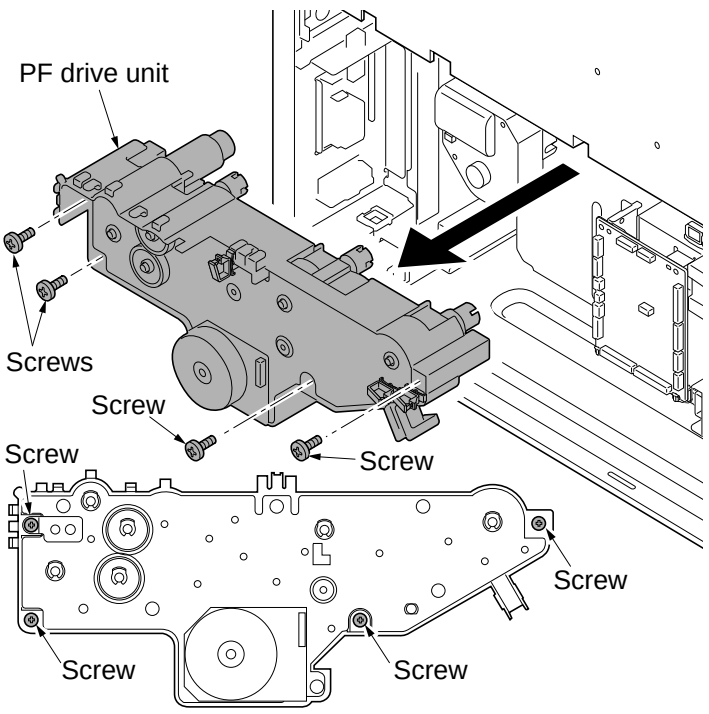


Figure 1-5-184

(5) Detaching and refitting the lift motor 1 and 2

Procedure

1. Remove the rear lower cover (see page 1-5-3).
2. Remove the power source assembly (see page 1-5-87).
3. Remove the connector each.
4. Remove two screws each and then remove the lift motor 1 and 2.
5. Check or replace the lift motor and refit all the removed parts.

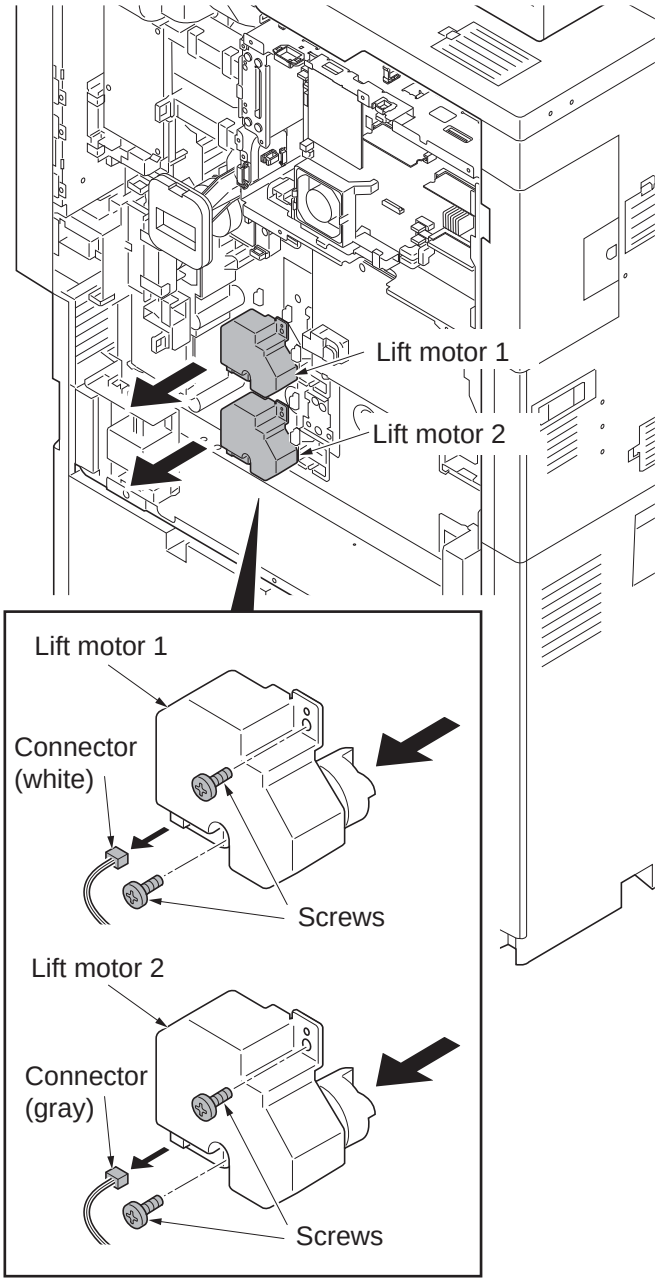


Figure 1-5-185

(6) Detaching and refitting the PF lift motor 1 and 2

Procedure

1. Remove the PF rear cover (see page 1-5-100).
2. Remove the connector each.
3. Remove three screws each and then remove the PF lift motor 1 and 2.
4. Check or replace the PF lift motor and refit all the removed parts.

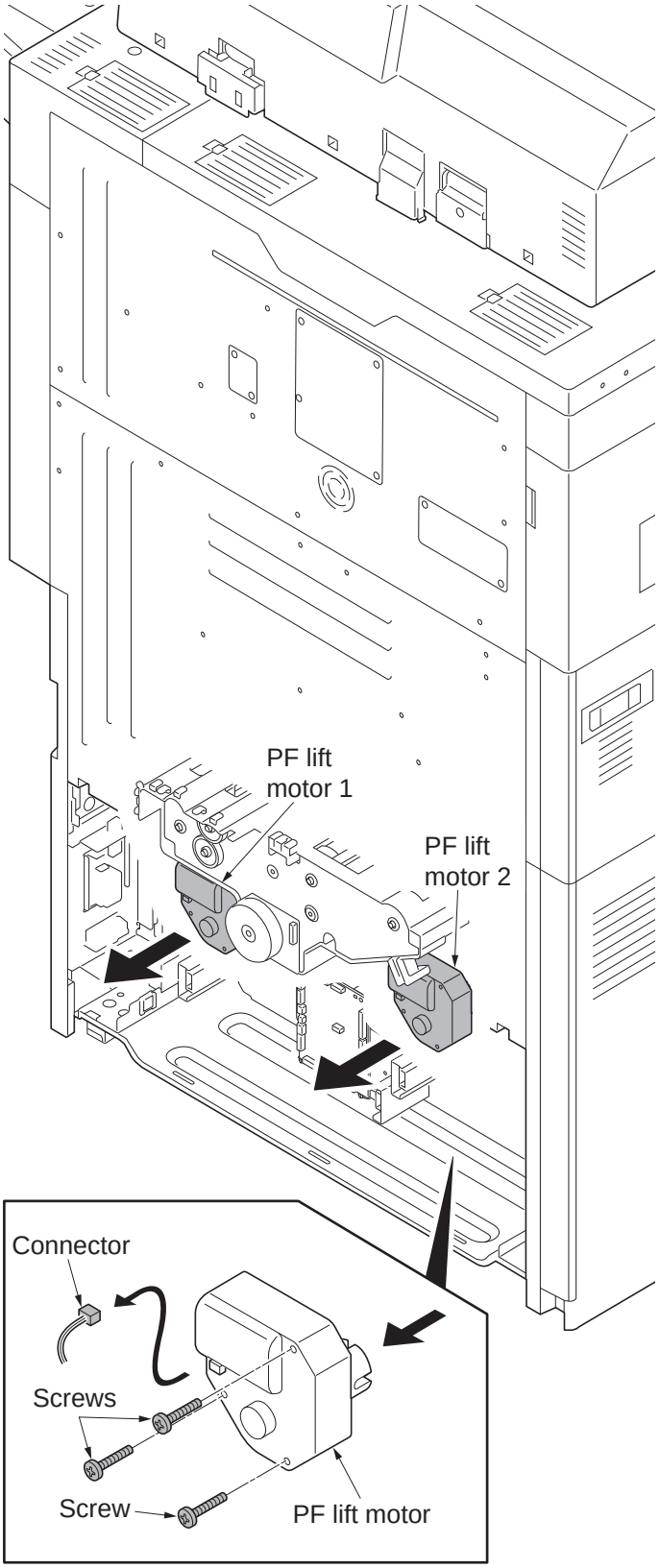


Figure 1-5-186

1-5-11 DP

(1) Detaching and refitting the DP original feed belt and DP forwarding pulley

Procedure

1. Open the DP top cover.
2. Remove two screws from the DP original feed guide.

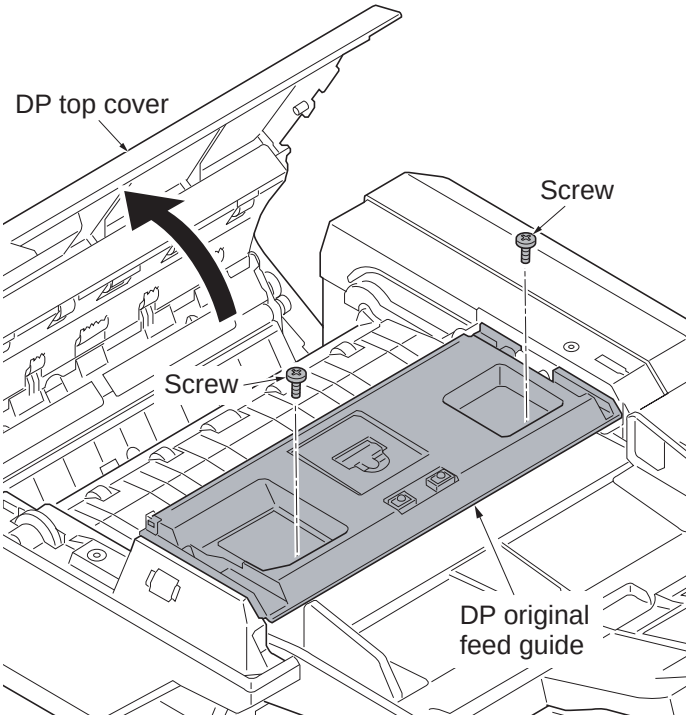


Figure 1-5-187

3. Turn upward and then remove the DP original feed guide.

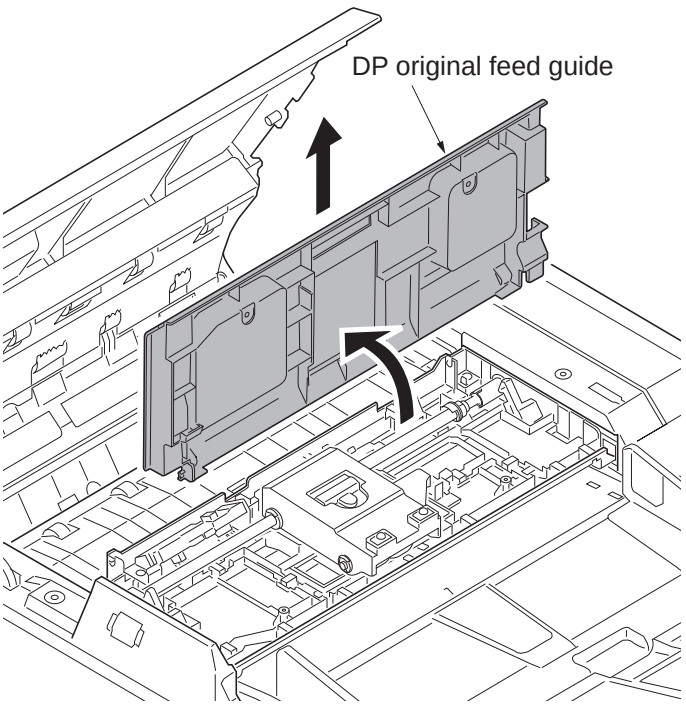


Figure 1-5-188

4. Turn the DP original feed unit upward.

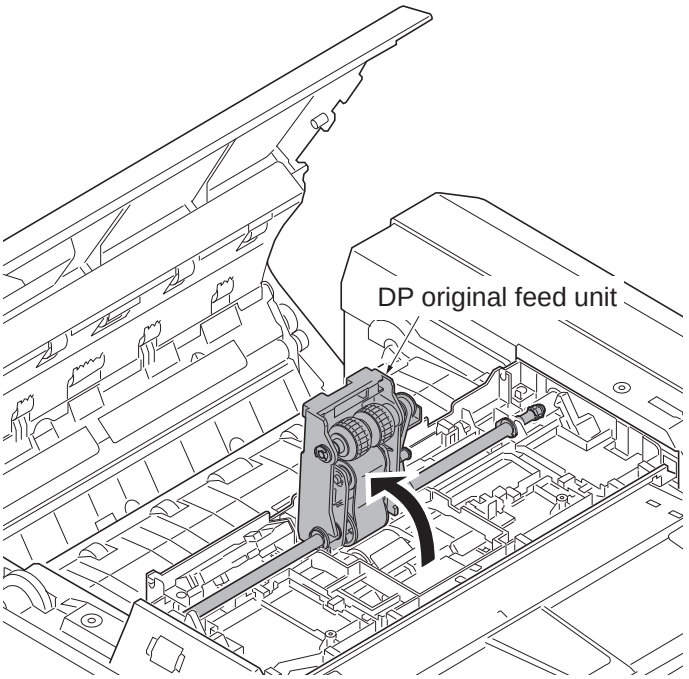


Figure 1-5-189

5. Remove the stop ring from front side of the DP original feed belt shaft A.
6. Pull forwards and then remove the DP original feed unit from the DP.

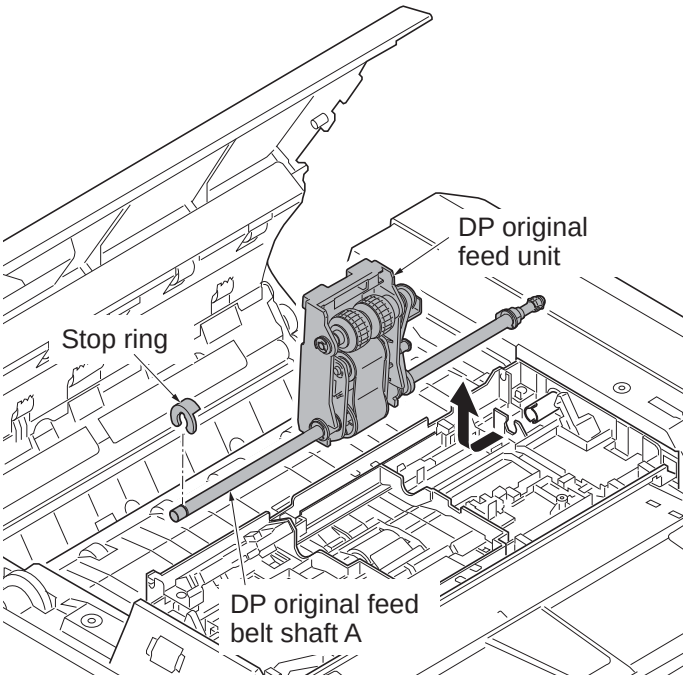


Figure 1-5-190

7. Remove the stop ring from the DP original feed belt shaft A.
8. Remove the stop ring and pulley from the DP original feed unit.
9. Slide the DP feed holder and then remove the DP original feed belt unit from the DP original feed unit.

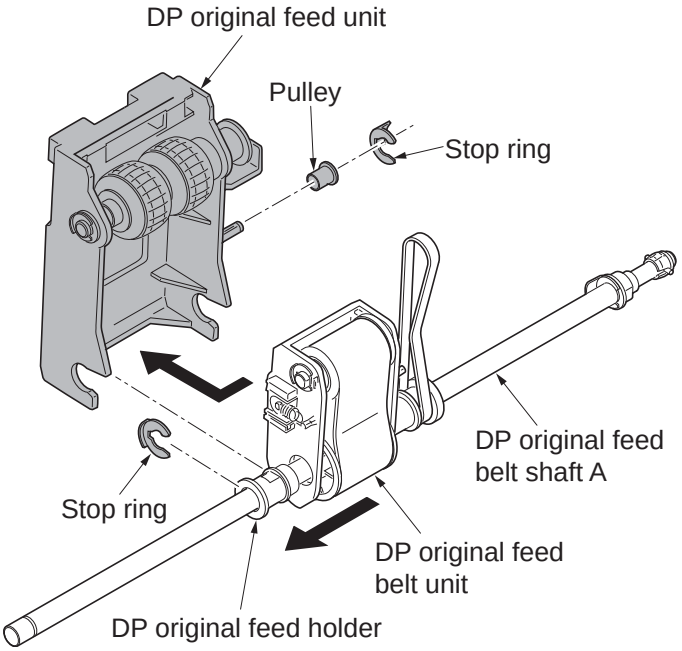


Figure 1-5-191

10. Remove the DP original feed holder A from the DP original feed belt shaft A.
11. Pull out the DP original feed belt shaft A from the DP original feed belt unit and then remove the DP original feed collar A.

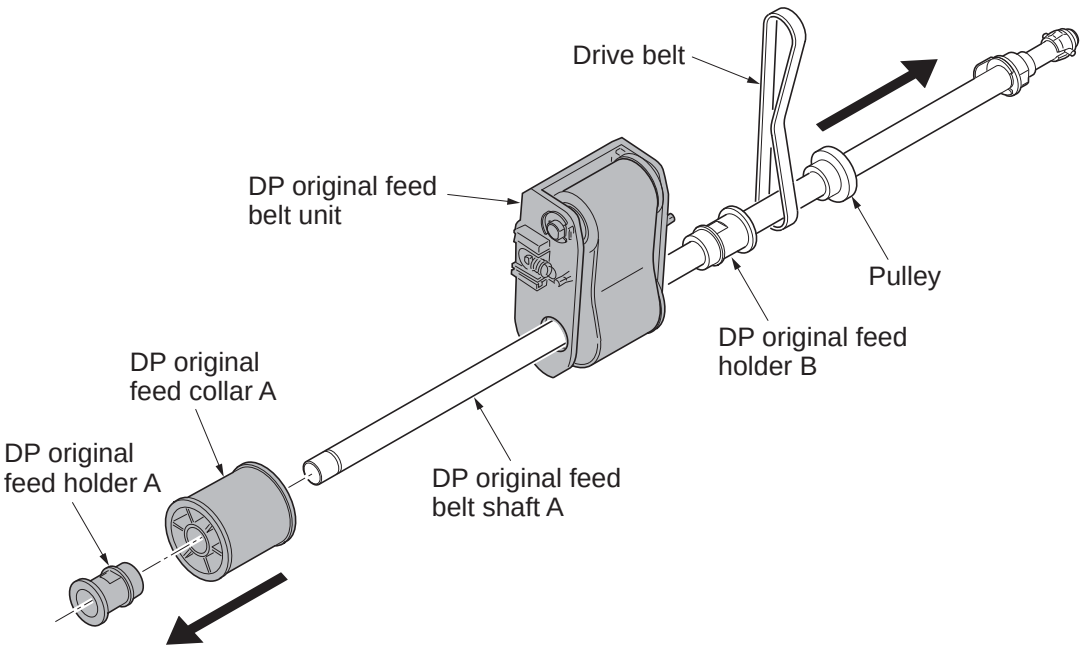


Figure 1-5-192

12. Remove the stop ring from the DP original feed belt shaft B.
13. Pull out the DP original feed belt shaft B from the DP original feed belt unit.
14. Remove the DP feed collar B and DP original feed belt from the DP original feed belt shaft B.

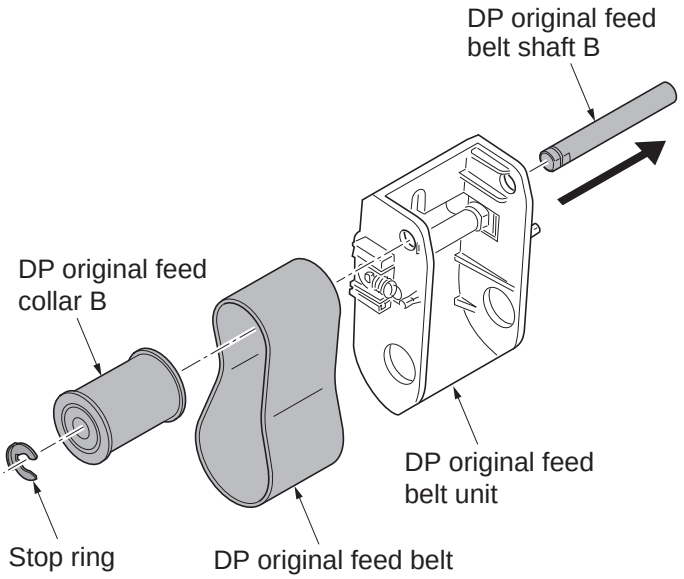


Figure 1-5-193

15. Remove the stop ring from the DP forwarding pulley shaft.
16. Pull out the DP forwarding pulley shaft from the DP original feed unit and then remove the DP forwarding pulley.
17. Check or replace the DP original feed belt and DP forwarding pulley and refit all the removed parts.

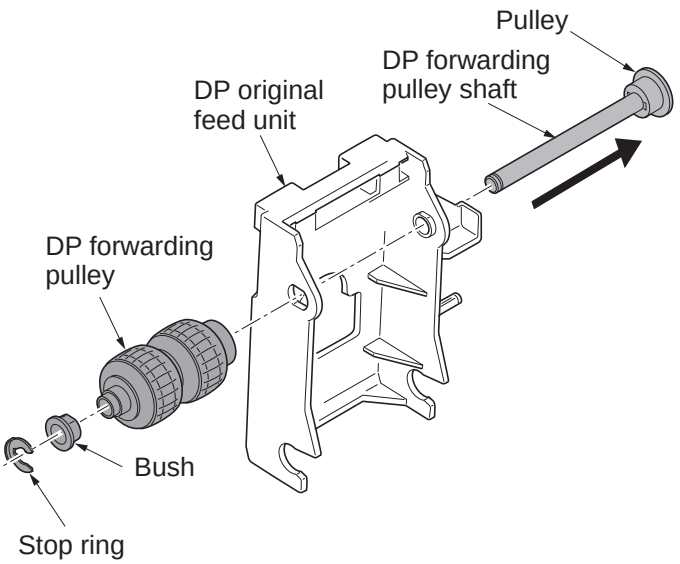


Figure 1-5-194

(2) Detaching and refitting the DP separation pulley

Procedure

1. Open the DP top cover.
2. Remove the DP original feed guide and DP original feed unit. (See page 1-5-115)
3. Unhook the hook and then remove the DP separation pulley cover.

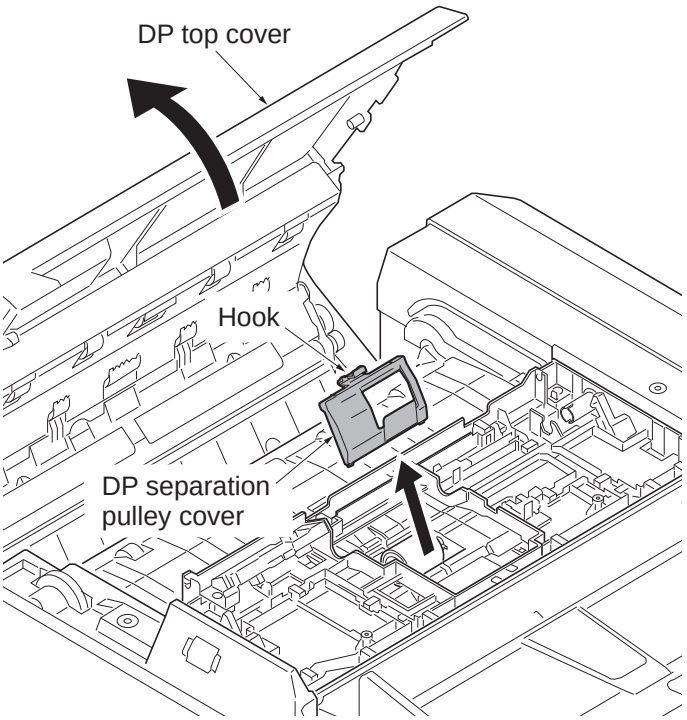


Figure 1-5-195

4. Remove the stop ring and then remove the DP separation pulley and torque limiter.
5. Check or replace the DP separation pulley and refit all the removed parts.

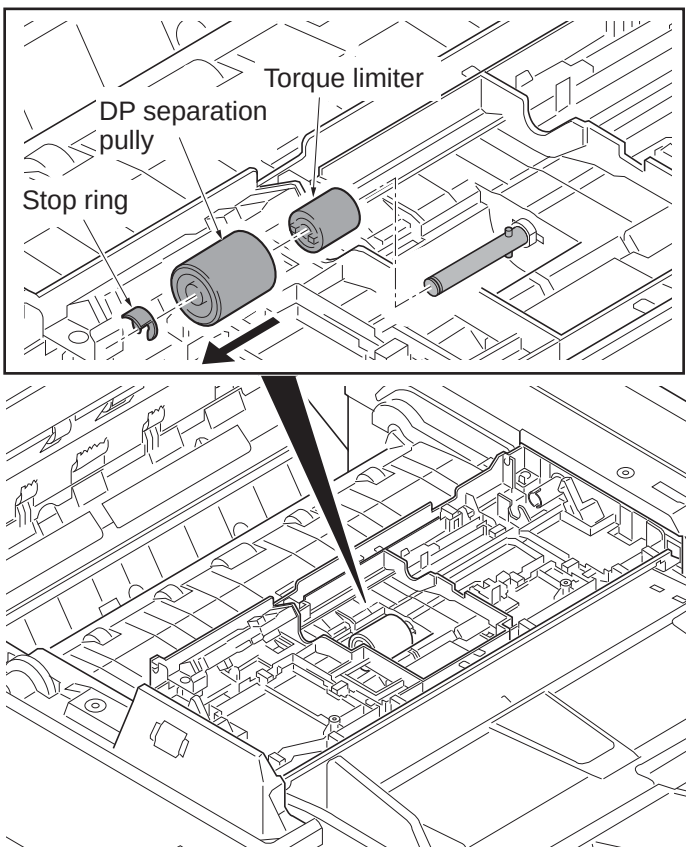


Figure 1-5-196

(3) Detaching and refitting the CIS

Procedure

1. Open the DP top cover.
2. Remove four screws from the upper side and reverse side of DP.
3. Pull forwards and then remove the DP front left cover and DP front cover.

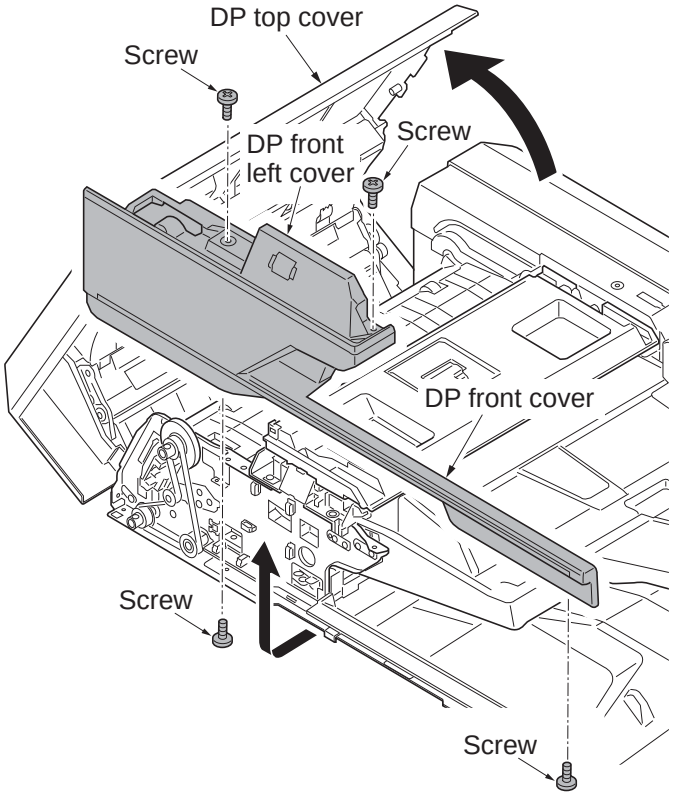


Figure 1-5-197

4. Remove the strap from the DP top cover.
5. Remove four screws and then remove the DP rear cover.

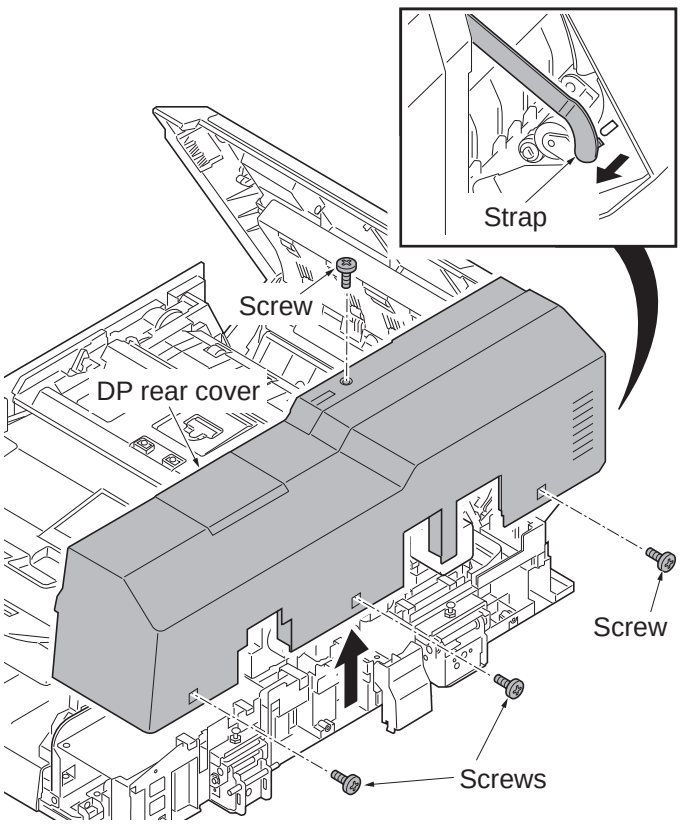


Figure 1-5-198

6. Remove two screws from the rear side of machine and then remove the CIS unit upwards.

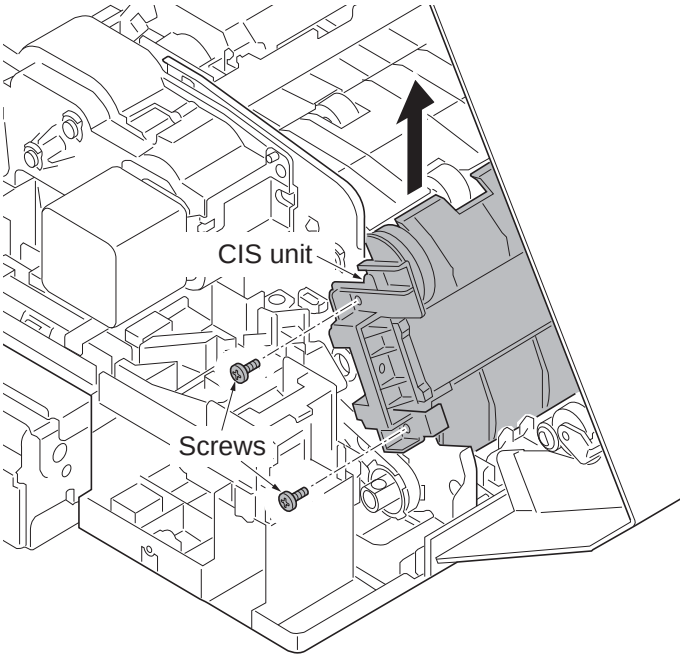


Figure 1-5-199

7. Remove three connectors from the CIS PWB.

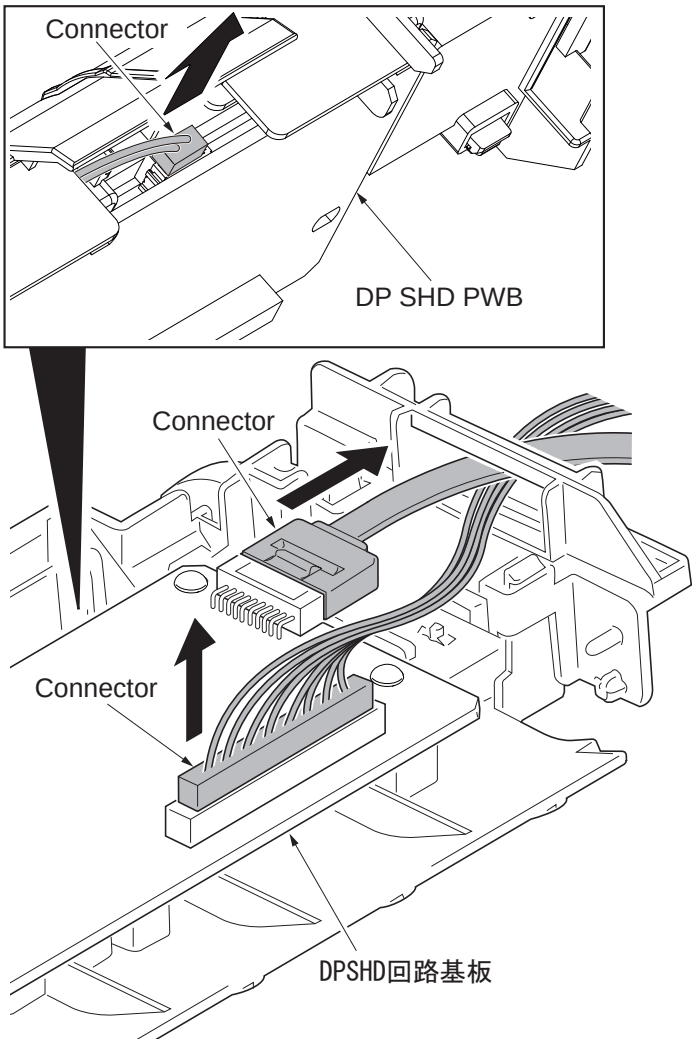


Figure 1-5-200

8. Remove the CIS front holder and CIS rear holder and then remove the CIS slit glass and CIS upwards.

*: Keep the CIS sensor away from dusts and smears as it is exposed to the air when the CIS slit glass has been removed.
The sensor action will be deteriorated if dusts and smears are adhered to it.

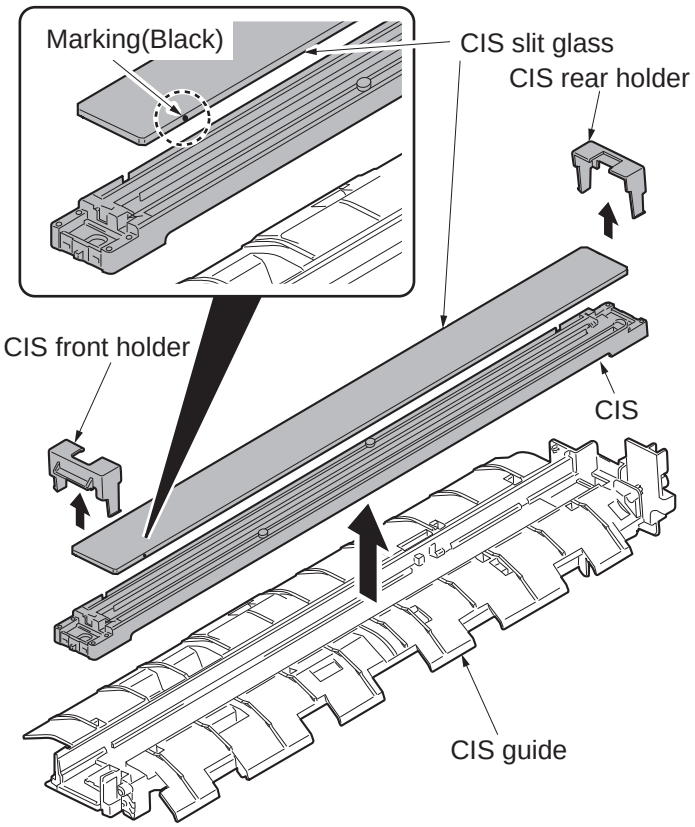


Figure 1-5-201

9. Remove six pins by using a flat screwdriver and then remove the DPSHD PWB.
10. Replace the CIS and refit all the removed parts.
*: Observe the front and back side of the CIS slit glass when the glass is replaced.
*: Note the marking in the figure.
The sensor action will be deteriorated if the slit glass is mounted upside down.

11. When the CIS is replaced with a new one, carry out the following procedure.
12. Clean the CIS roller and contact glass (CIS).
13. Perform maintenance mode U091 (setting the white line correction) (see page 1-3-65).

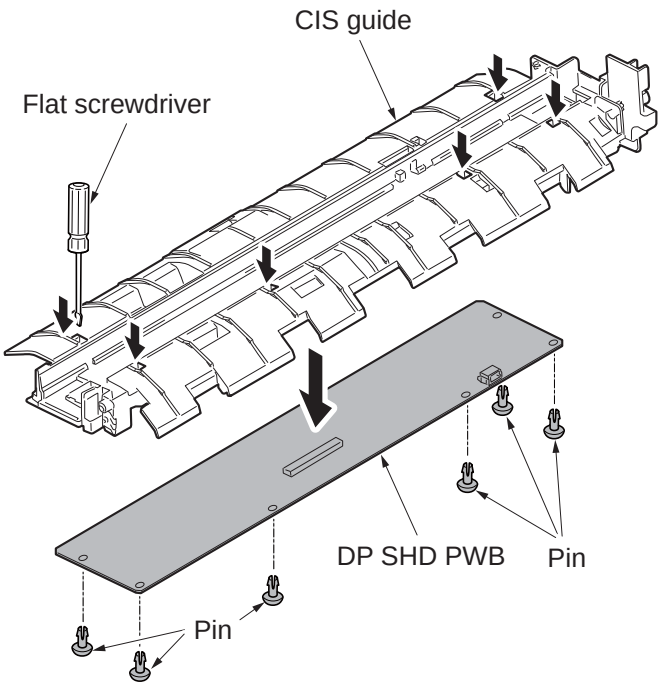


Figure 1-5-202

14. Make a test copy of a gray document.
If problems such as white lines appear on the test copy, repeat the procedure from steps 15 and 16 onwards until the white lines no longer appear.
15. Perform maintenance mode U411 (Adjusting the scanner automatically) (see page 1-3-152).

(4) Adjusting the angle of leading edge

Perform the following adjustment if the leading edge of the copy image is laterally skewed.

Procedure

1. Place an original on the DP and press the start key to make a test copy.
2. If the gap of leading edge exceeds the reference value, perform the following adjustment.
   Reference value
   For simplex copying: Within ±3.0 mm
   For duplex copying: Within ±4.0 mm

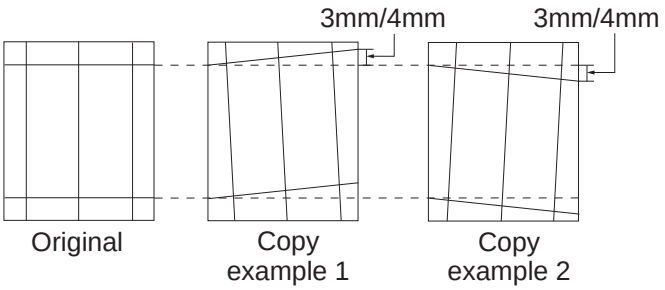


Figure 1-5-203

3. Loosen two screws of right and left fixing fittings.

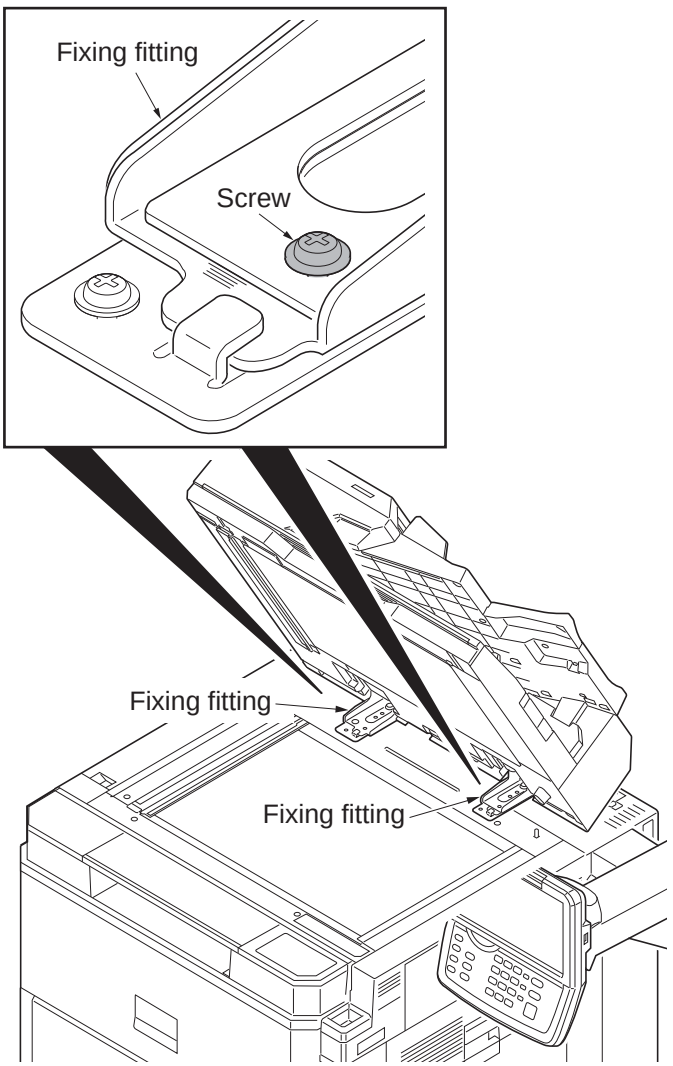


Figure 1-5-204

4. Remove the right hinge cover.
5. Turn adjusting screw at the rear side of the right hinge to adjust the DP position.
   For copy example 1:
   Turn the adjusting screw counterclockwise and move the DP to the inner side.
   For copy example 2:
   Turn the adjusting screw clockwise and move the DP to the front side.
   Amount of change per scale: Approx. 1 mm
6. Make a test copy.
7. Repeat the steps above until the gap of the leading edge falls within the reference values.
8. After adjustment is completed, retighten two screws that have been loosened in step 3.

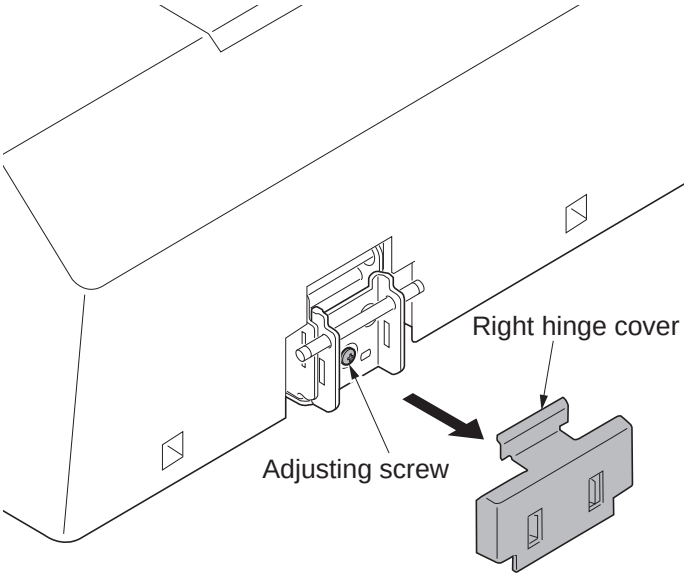


Figure 1-5-205

9. Remove the original mat.
10. Place original mat with its Velcro upward over the contact glass.
    *: Align original mat corner that has 90 degrees of angle with the inner left corner of the original instruction panel.
11. Close DP and attach original mat onto it with Velcros.

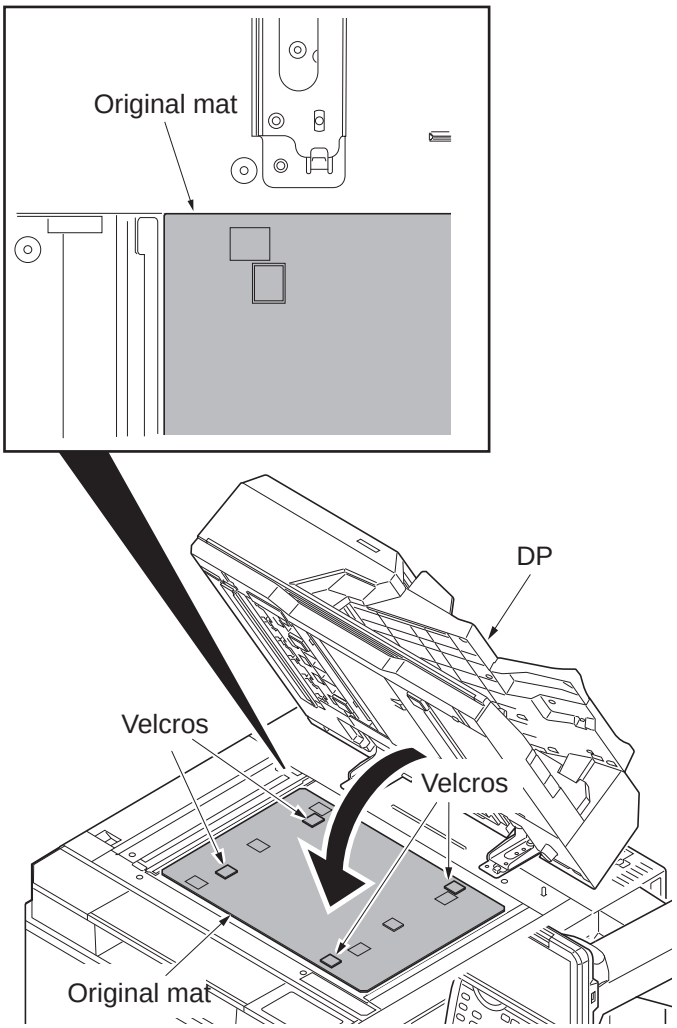


Figure 1-5-206

(5) Adjusting the angle of trailing edge

Perform the following adjustment if the trailing edge of the copy image is laterally skewed.

Procedure

1. Place an original on the DP and press the start key to make a test copy.
2. If the gap of trailing edge exceeds the reference value, perform the following adjustment.
   Reference value
   For simplex copying: Within ±3.0 mm
   For duplex copying: Within ±4.0 mm

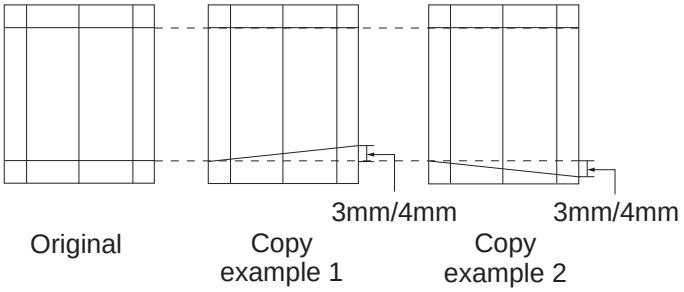


Figure 1-5-207

3. Open the DP top cover.
4. Remove the right hinge cover.
5. Remove the screw and then remove the left hinge cover

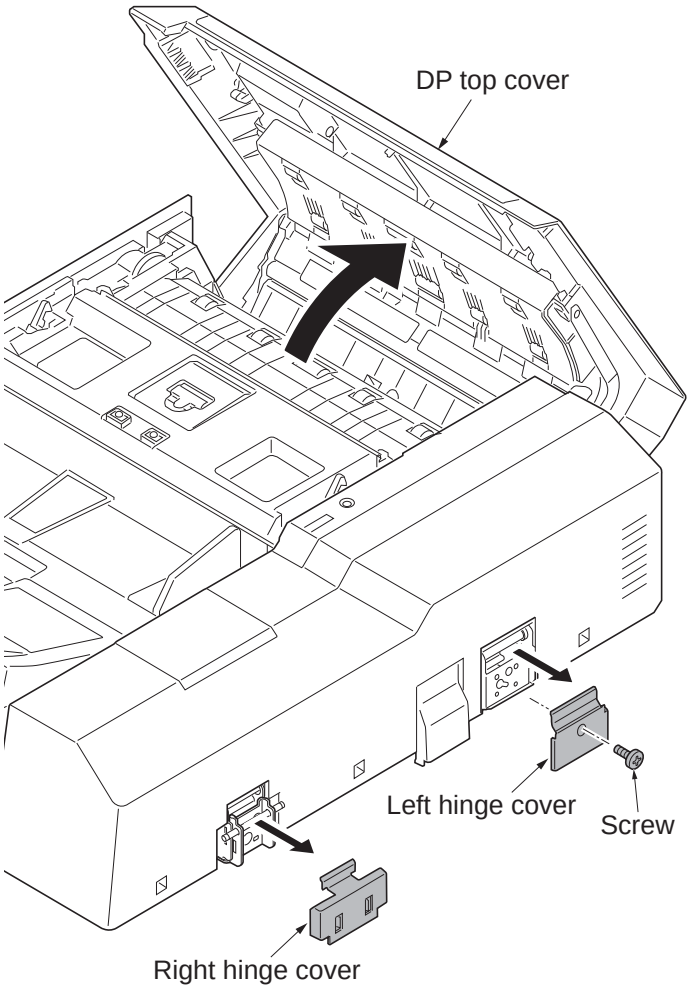


Figure 1-5-208

6. Remove the strap from the DP top cover.
7. Remove four screws and then remove the DP rear cover.

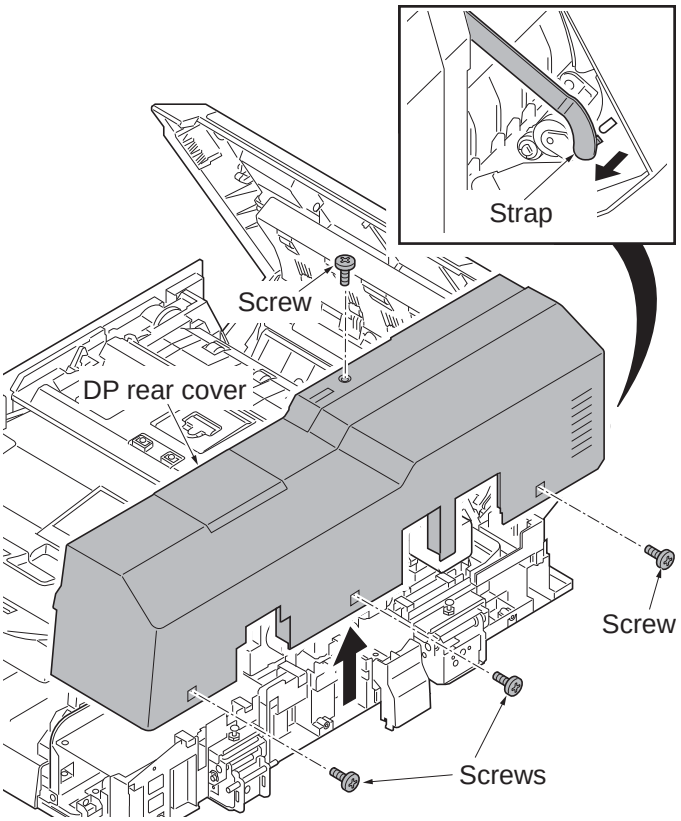


Figure 1-5-209

8. Adjust the height of DP.
   Loosen the nut.
   For copy example 1:
   Loosen the adjusting screw.
   For copy example 2:
   Tighten the adjusting screw.
   Amount of change per scale:
   Approx. 0.5 mm
   Retighten the nut.
9. Refit the DP rear cover.
10. Refit the right hinge cover and left hinge cover.

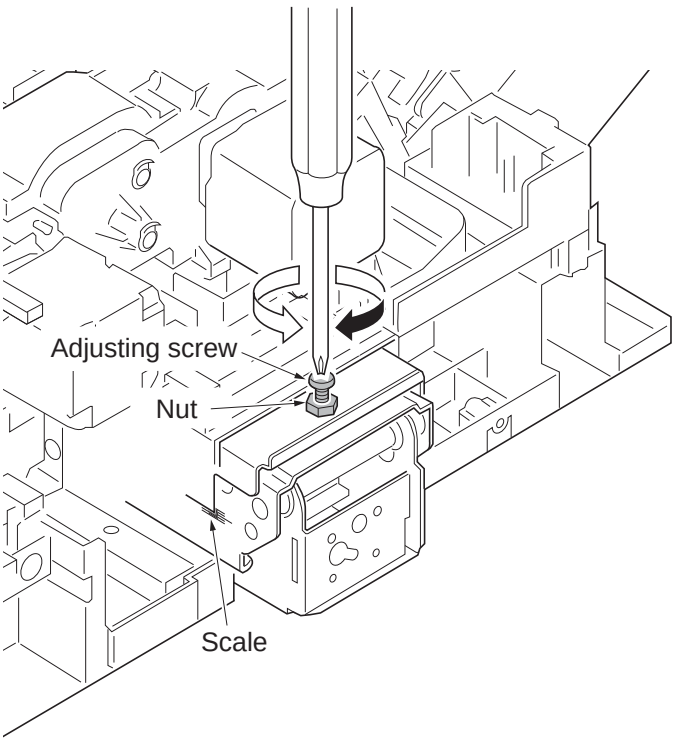


Figure 1-5-210

11. Open the DP.
12. Remove the original mat.
13. Place original mat with its Velcro upward over the contact glass.
    *: Align original mat corner that has 90 degrees of angle with the inner left corner of the original instruction panel.
14. Close DP and attach original mat onto it with Velcros.

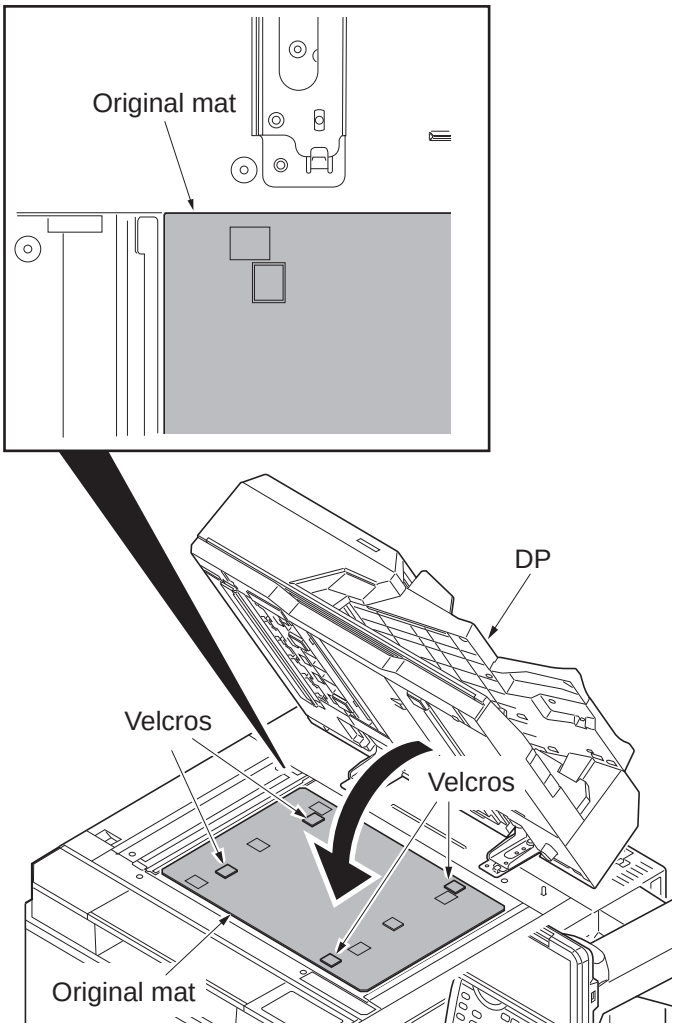


Figure 1-5-211

15. Make a test copy again.
16. Repeat steps 1 to 13 above until the gap of the trailing edge falls within the reference values.

(6) Adjusting the hinge

Perform this adjustment when the DP trails down when it is open.

Procedure

1. Open the DP.
2. Rotate the adjusting screws at the front of the left hinge using a flat screwdriver so that the DP won't trail down.
3. Close the document processor when adjustment was done.

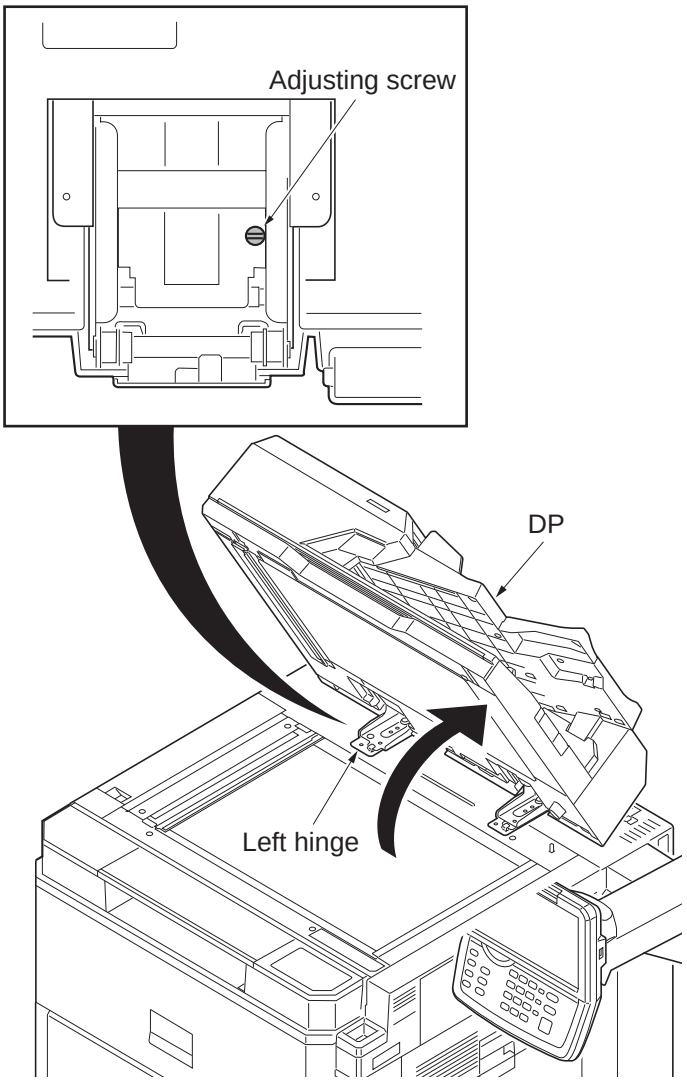


Figure 1-5-212

1-5-12 Others

(1) Detaching the eject filters

Procedure

1. Unhook the hook each and remove three eject filter units.
2. Remove the eject filter from the eject cover.
3. Clean or replace the eject filter and refit the filter.

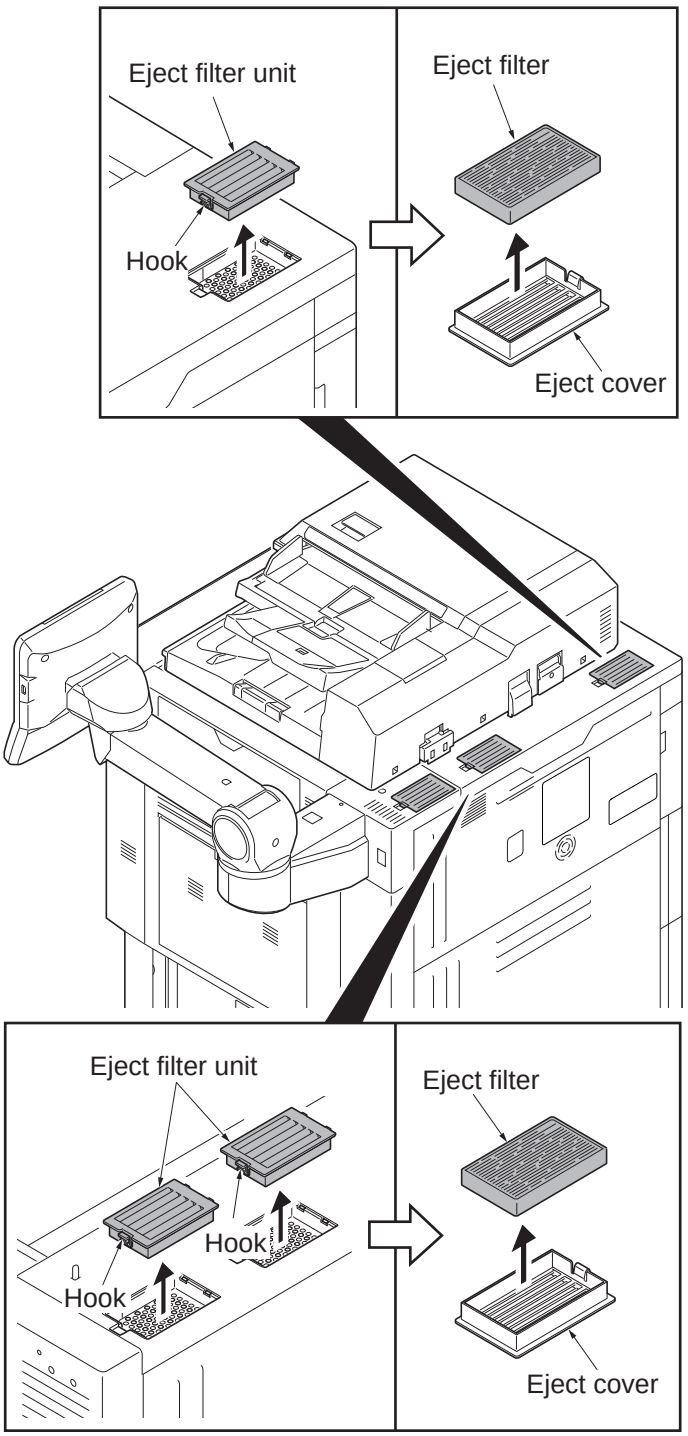


Figure 1-5-213

(2) Detaching and refitting the left filters

Procedure

1. Remove two left filter covers by releasing the lever.
2. Remove left filter.
3. Clean or replace the left filter and refit the filter.

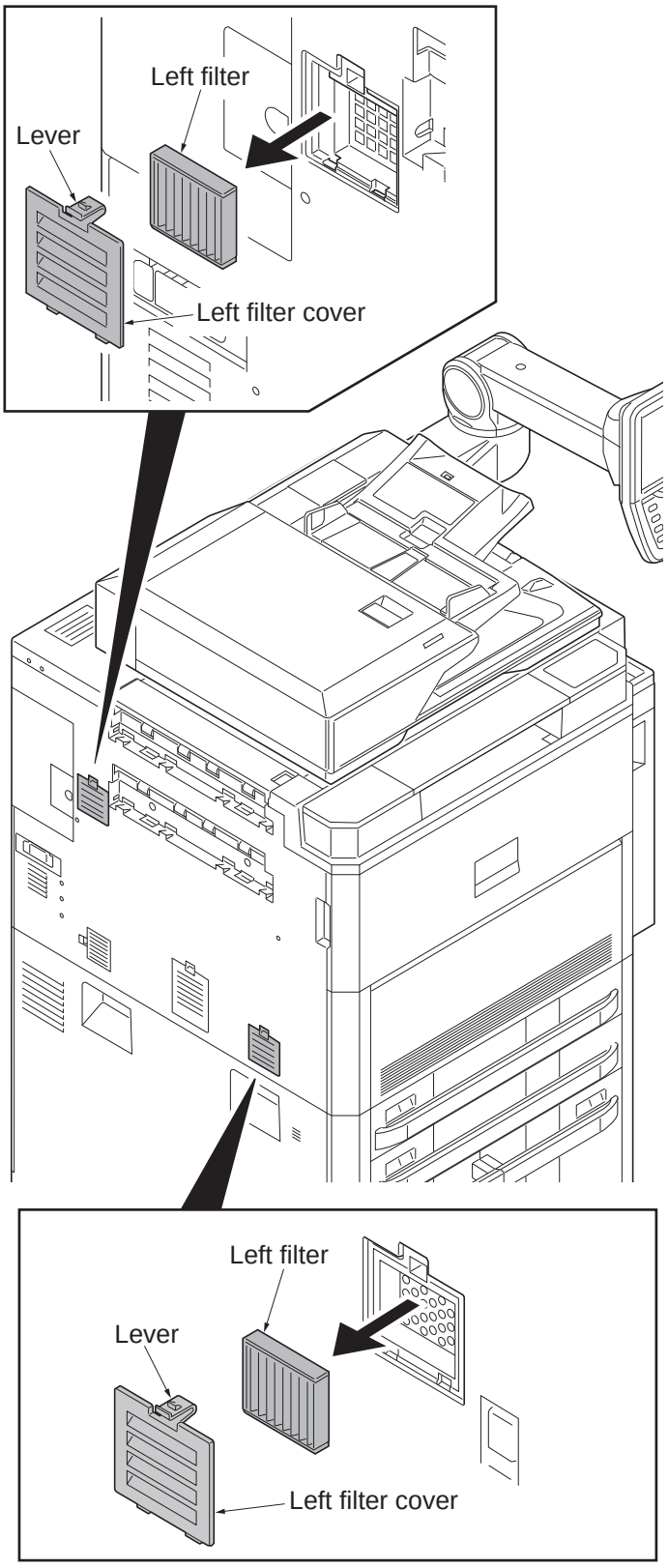


Figure 1-5-214

(3) Detaching and refitting the drum filter and developer filter

Procedure

1. Open the front middle cover (see page 1-5-53).
2. Remove the drum filter and developer filter by releasing the lever.
3. Clean the drum filter and developer filter and refit the filter.

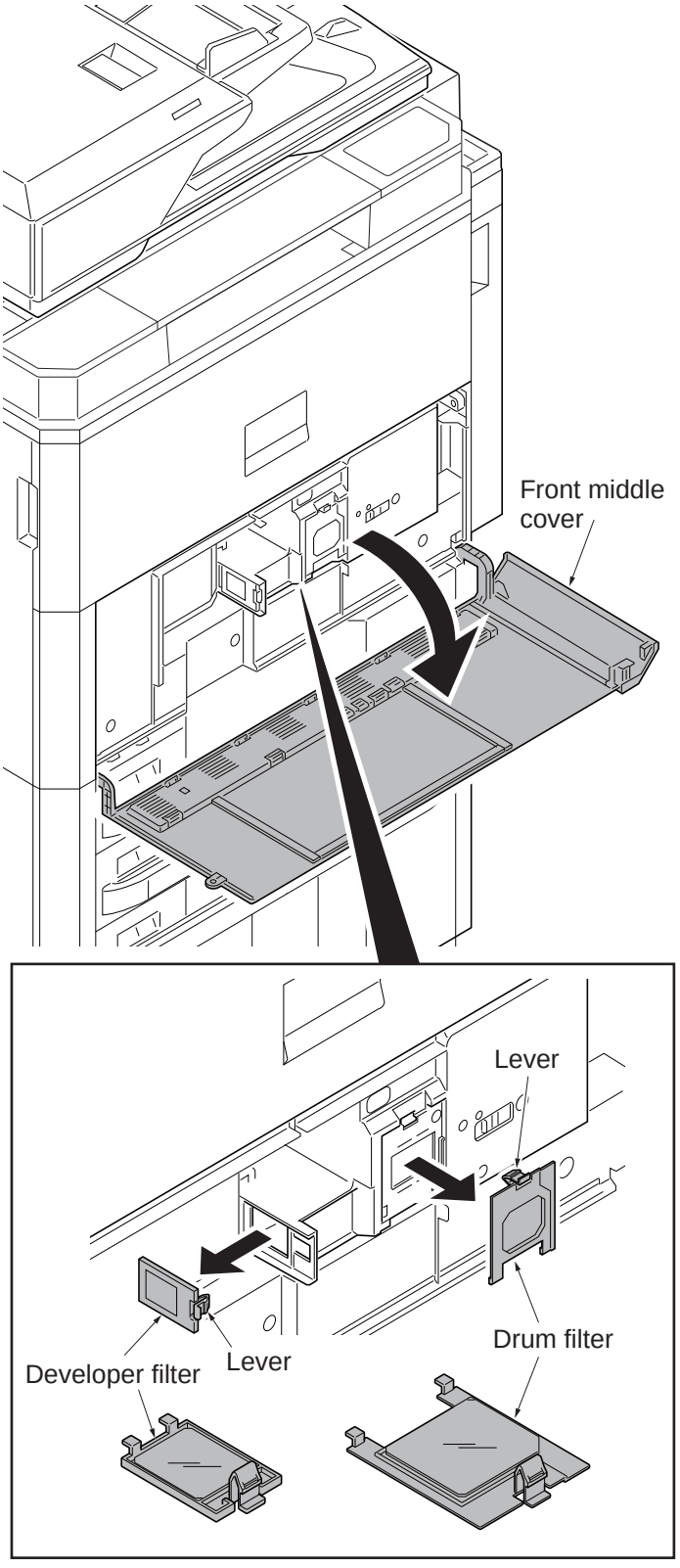


Figure 1-5-215

(4) Detaching and refitting the belt filter

Procedure

1. Remove the belt filter by releasing the lever.
2. Clean the belt filter and refit the filter.

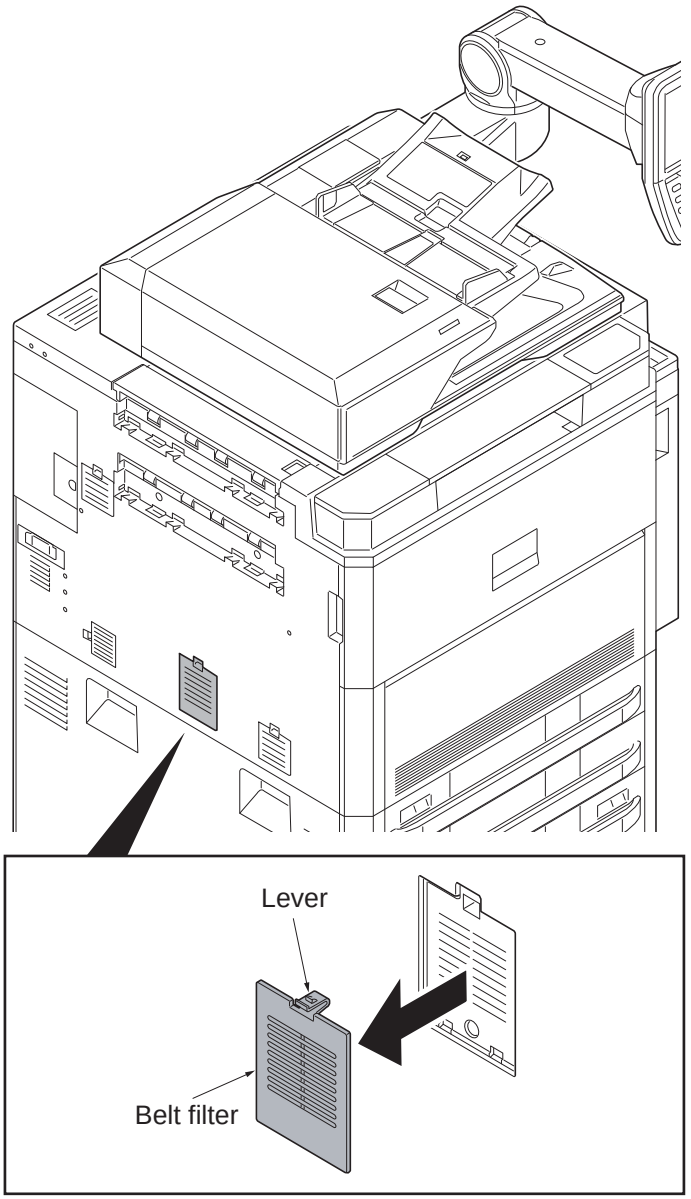


Figure 1-5-216

(5) Detaching and refitting the LSU filter

Procedure

1. Remove the LSU filter by releasing the lever.
2. Clean the LSU filter and refit the filter.

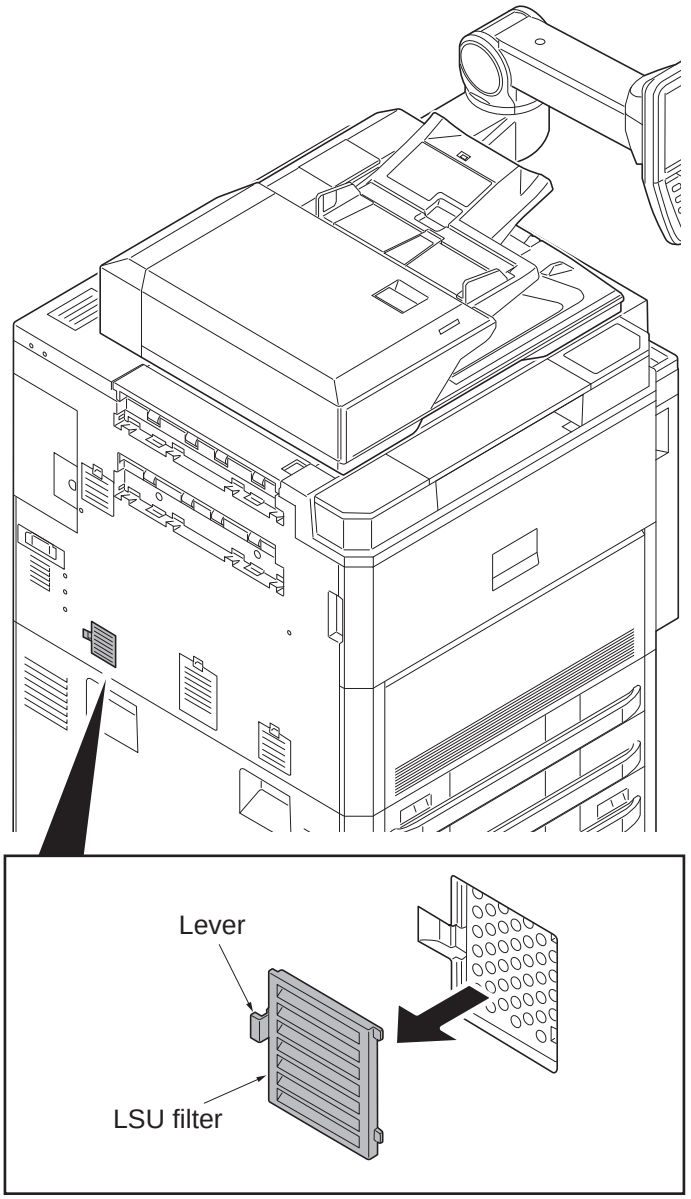


Figure 1-5-217

(6) Detaching and refitting the toner disposal box

Procedure

1. Cover the area under the toner disposal box to prevent contamination due to the scattered toner.
2. Remove the screw and then remove the cable cover.
3. Remove the connector.

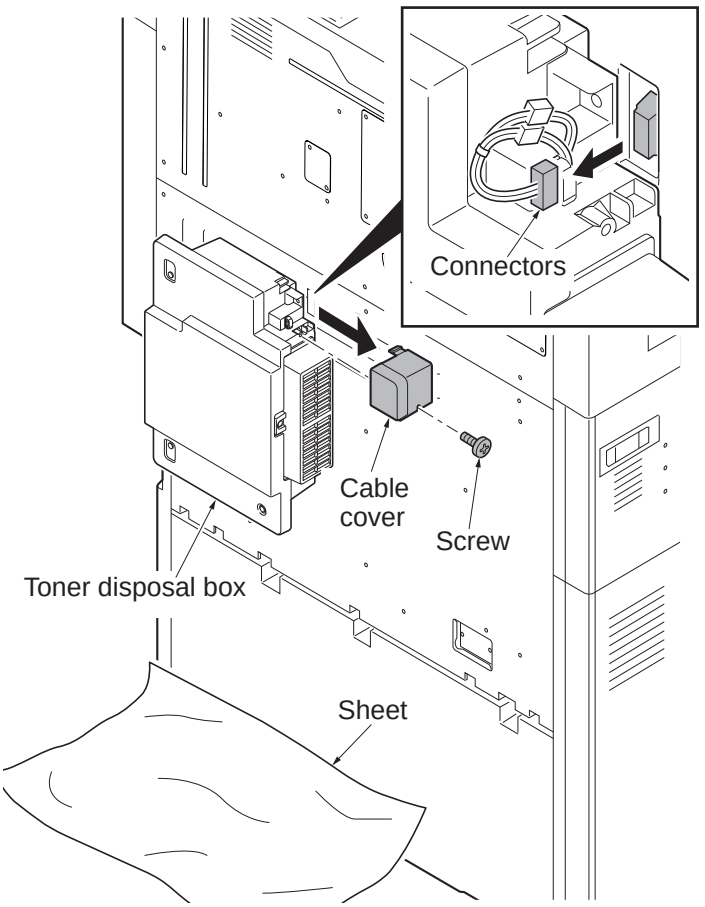


Figure 1-5-218

4. Remove three screws and then remove the toner disposal box.

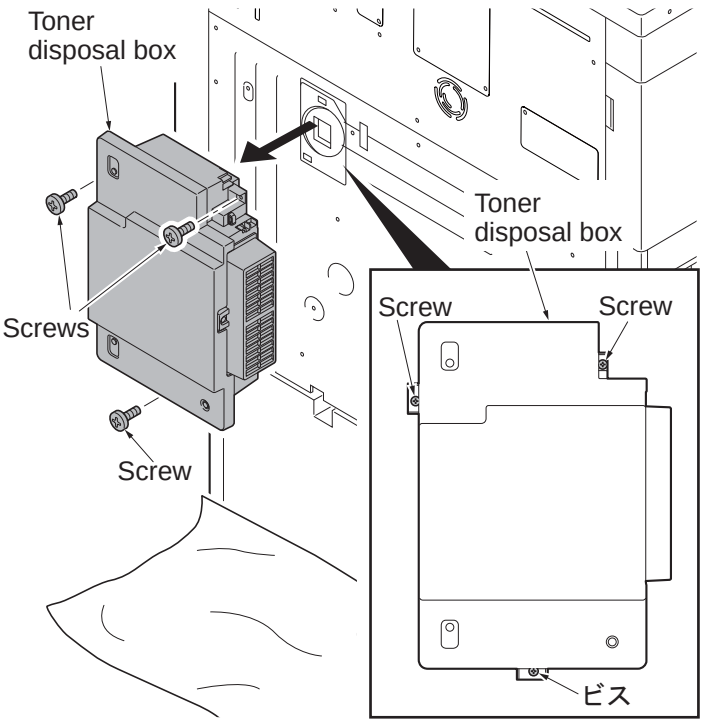


Figure 1-5-219

5. To replace the toner disposal box, perform the following procedure:
6. Insert the sponge at the toner cap sheet into the opening of the toner disposal box that was removed.

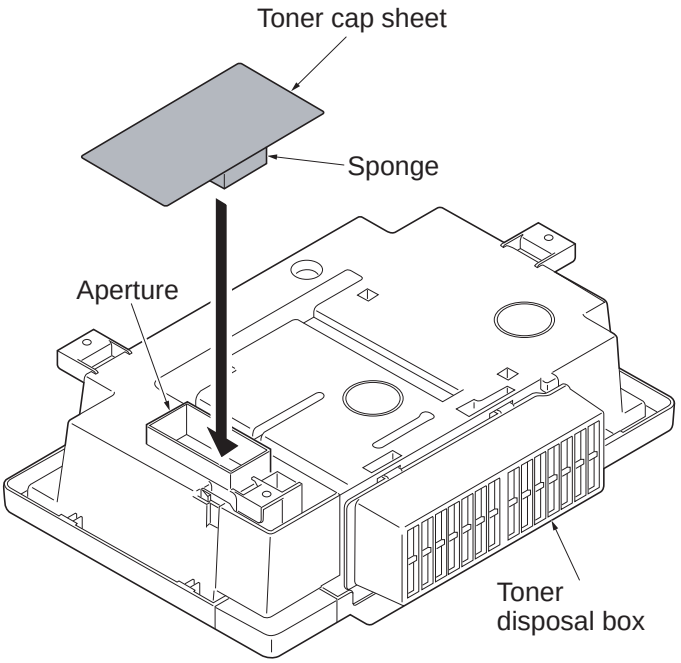


Figure 1-5-220

7. Peel the protective pad from the toner cap sheet.
8. Affix the toner cap sheet over the toner disposal box.
9. Refit the new toner disposal box to the machine.
10. Refit all the removed parts.

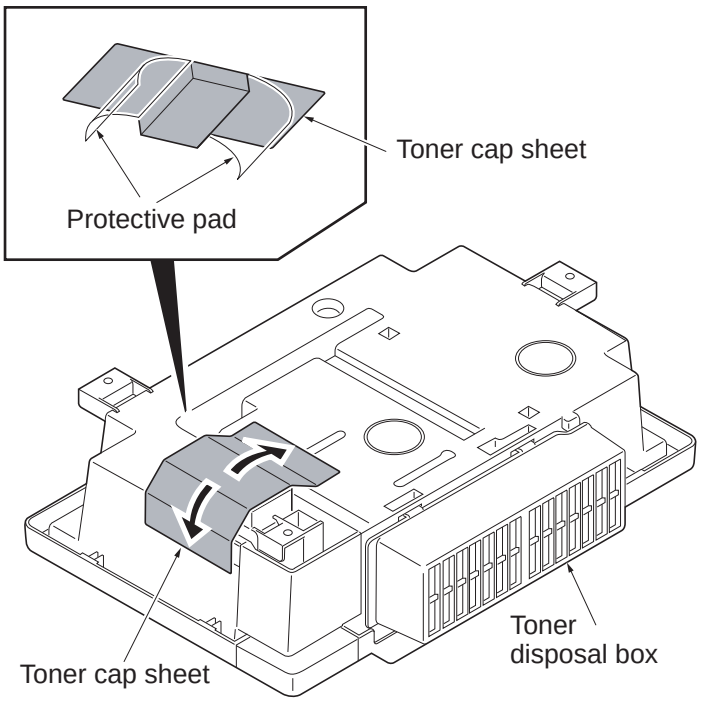


Figure 1-5-221

(7) Detaching and refitting the hard disk unit

Procedure

1. Perform maintenance mode U917 (backup data reading) (see page 1-3-193).
2. Remove the rear upper cover (see page 1-5-3).
3. Release the wire saddle.
4. Remove two screws.

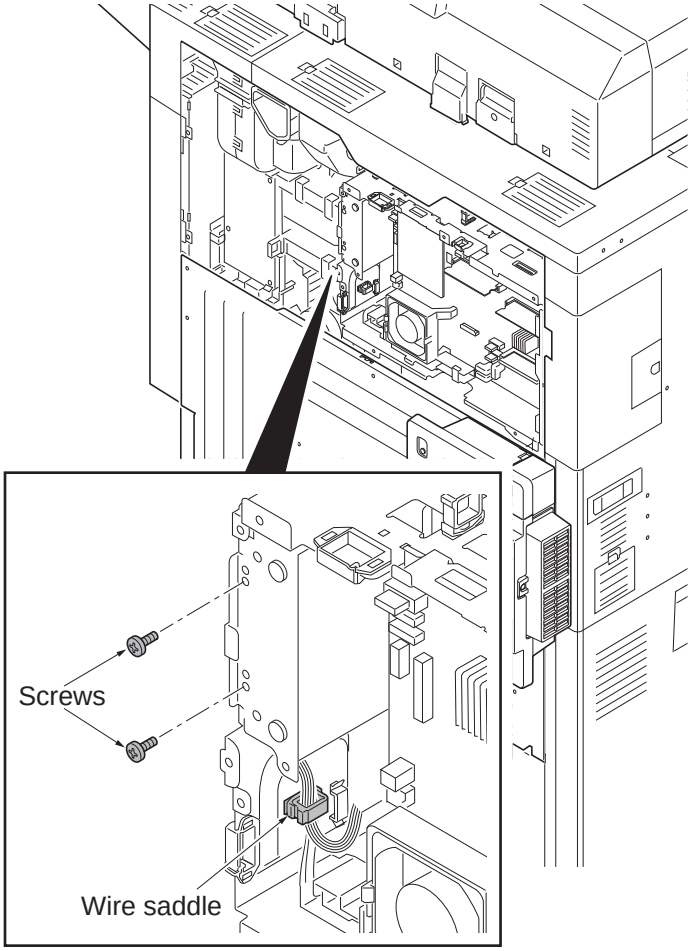


Figure 1-5-222

5. Unhook two hooks and pull out the HDD bracket a little.

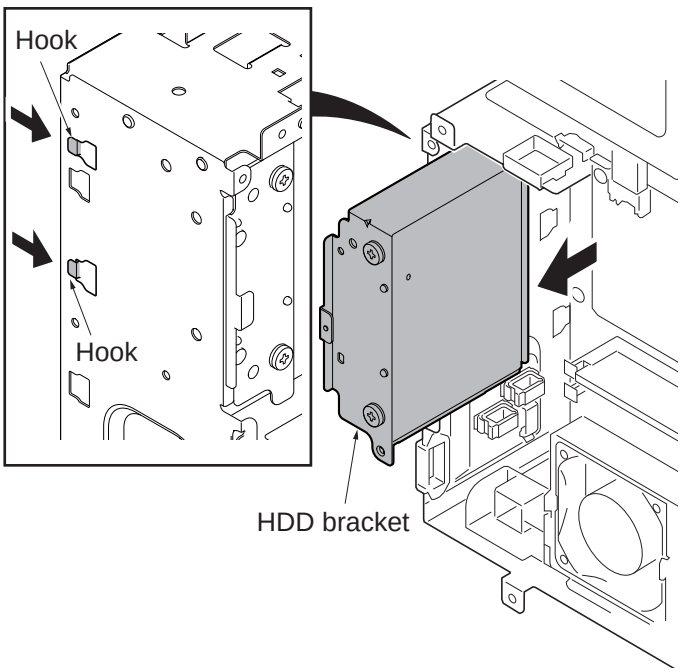


Figure 1-5-223

6. Remove two connectors from the hard disk unit while pushing the lock lever.

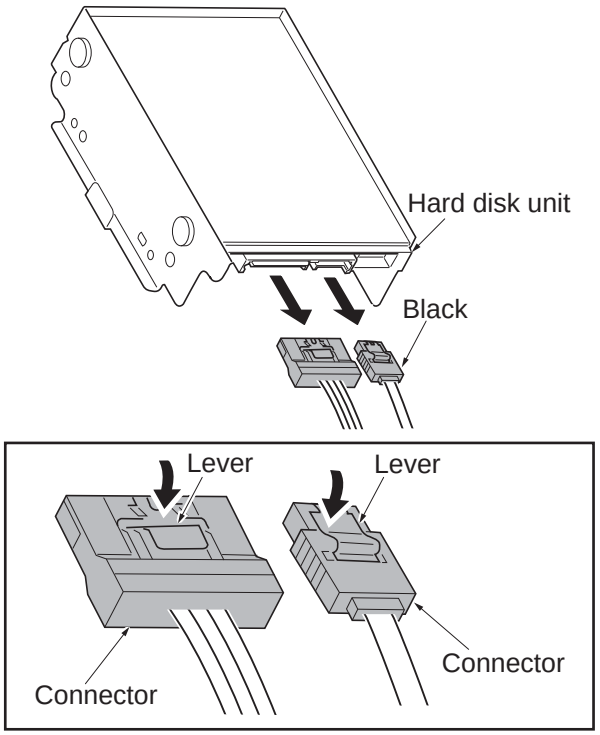


Figure 1-5-224

7. Remove four pins and then remove the hard disk unit from the HDD bracket.
8. Replace the hard disk unit and refit all the removed parts.

*: Handle the HDD so as not to drop or get it in touch with hard objects as it is susceptible to vibrations and impacts especially along the direction of disc rotation. Be careful not to apply shocks while securing the screws.

9. Perform maintenance mode U024 (HDD formatting) -Format - Full (see page 1-3-29).

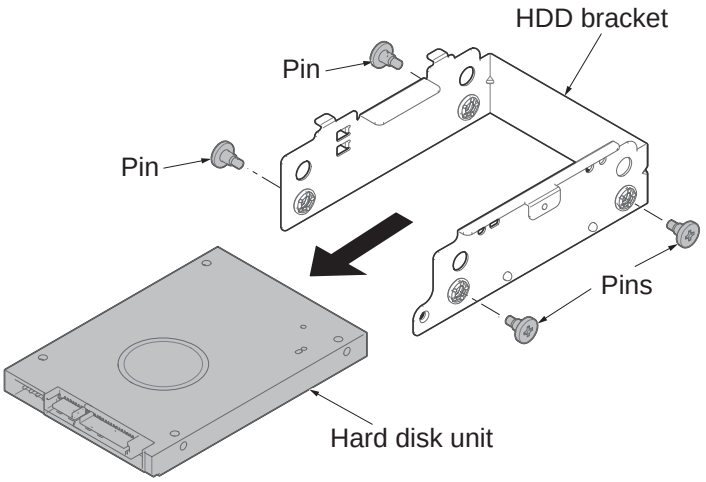


Figure 1-5-225

10. Install the firmwares by the following procedure.
    1)Connects to the machine the USB memory that preserved Software LANGUAGE BR (Opt Font, Opt Msg, opt Eweb) and option language.
    The firmware is installed by switching the main power switch to ON/OFF.
    Install the OCR dictionary software in the same manner.
    2)Connects to the machine the USB memory that preserved FMU application. Installs the firmware from the application screen of the system menu (Refer to operation guide).
    *: Confirm a kind of Hypas application displayed with an application screen before HDD exchange, and install it again.
    3)Reinstall the OCR dictionary software from a USB flash device by toggling power on and off.
11. If backup data is saved with the U917 maintenance mode, execute import of the backup data with the U917 (see page 1-3-193).

(8) Direction of installing the principal fan motors

When detaching or refitting the fan motors, be careful of the airflow direction (intake or exhaust).

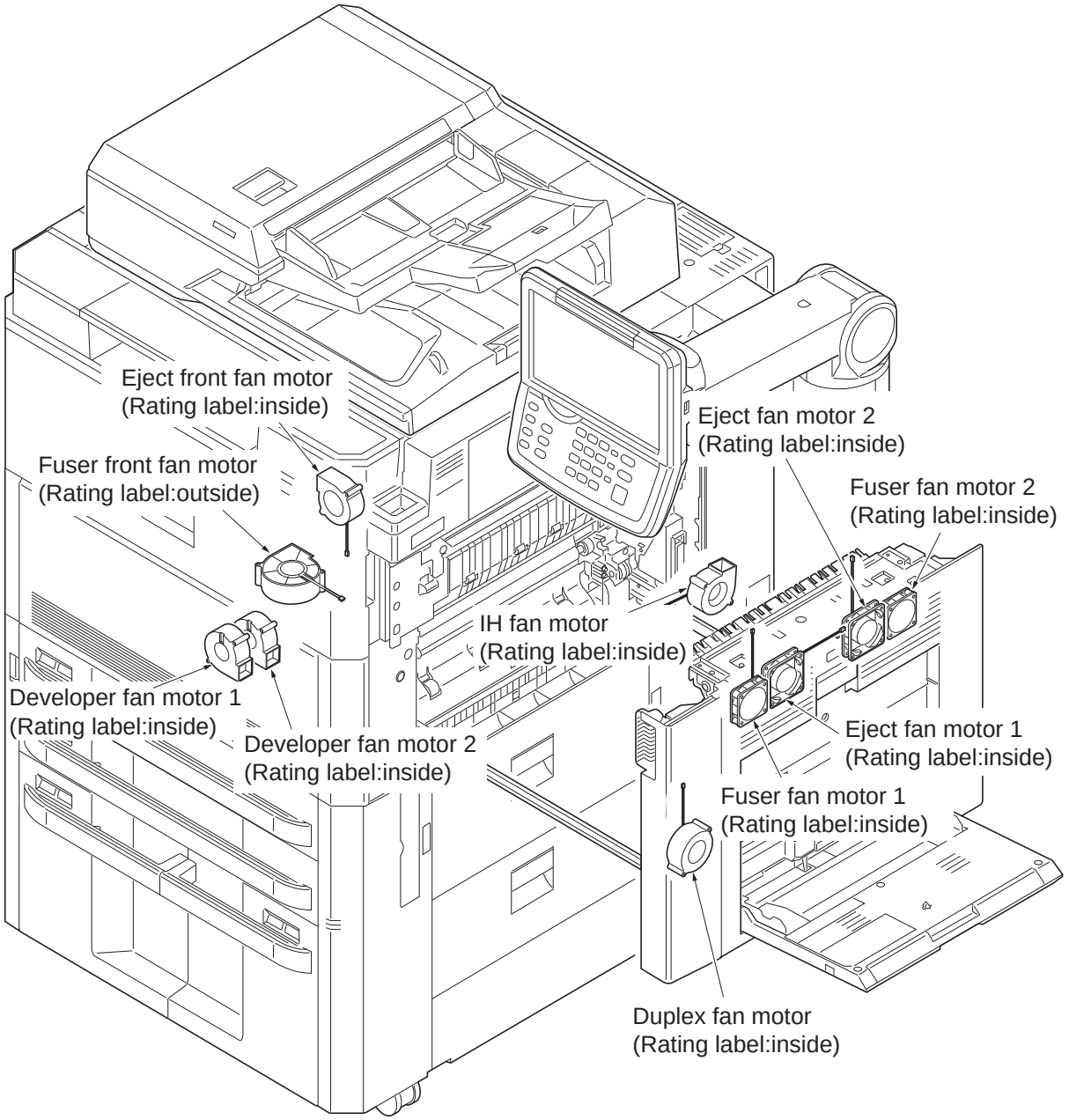


Figure 1-5-226

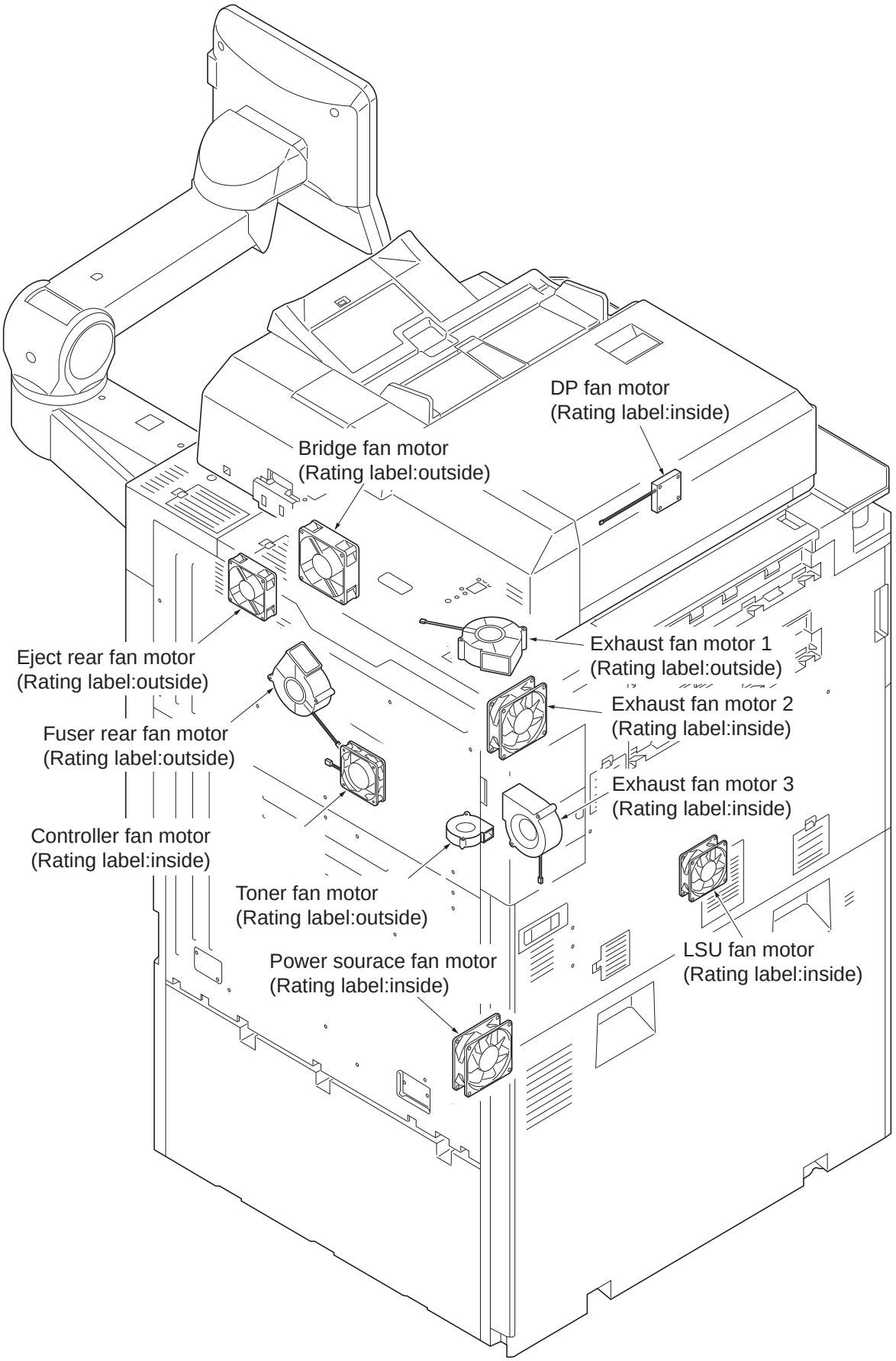


Figure 1-5-227

(9) Skewed paper feeding check/adjustment

At the paper feed source which a sheet of wrinkled paper has caused, check how the paper is fed askew.
Run U051 to reduce the curvature of paper at the regist roller and measure how the paper is fed askew.

1. Print a maintenance report and note the U051 value (see page 1-3-43).
2. Reduce the value by 10 for the paper source in question.
3. Press the system menu button to print a test chart.

Check the skew value (balance of left and right, B-A).
Less than 1mm: OK
1mm or more:
Correct the skew by using the paper angle adjusting mechanism (in cassette) that modifies the angle of the paper width guides.

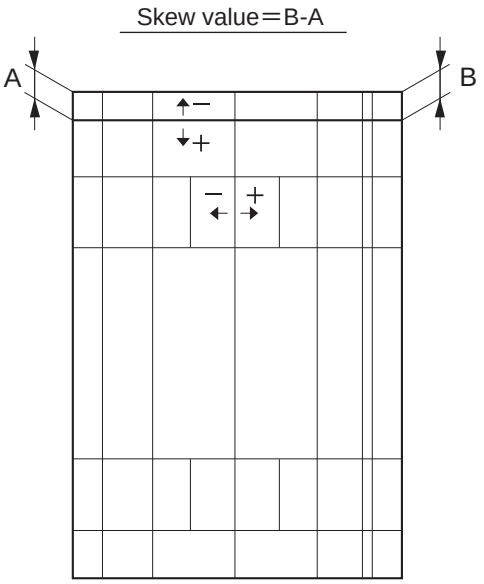


Figure 1-5-228

Procedure

1. Unsecure the fixing screws (screw 1 to 4) and adjust the angle of the paper width guide by the skew feed adjustment screw.
   If the B-A is negative, rotate clockwise.
   If the B-A is positive, rotate counter-clockwise.
2. Tighten the four screw.
   *: Secure the screws in the order of screws 1, 2, 3, then 4.
3. Run U051 and reset the curvature the regist roller.

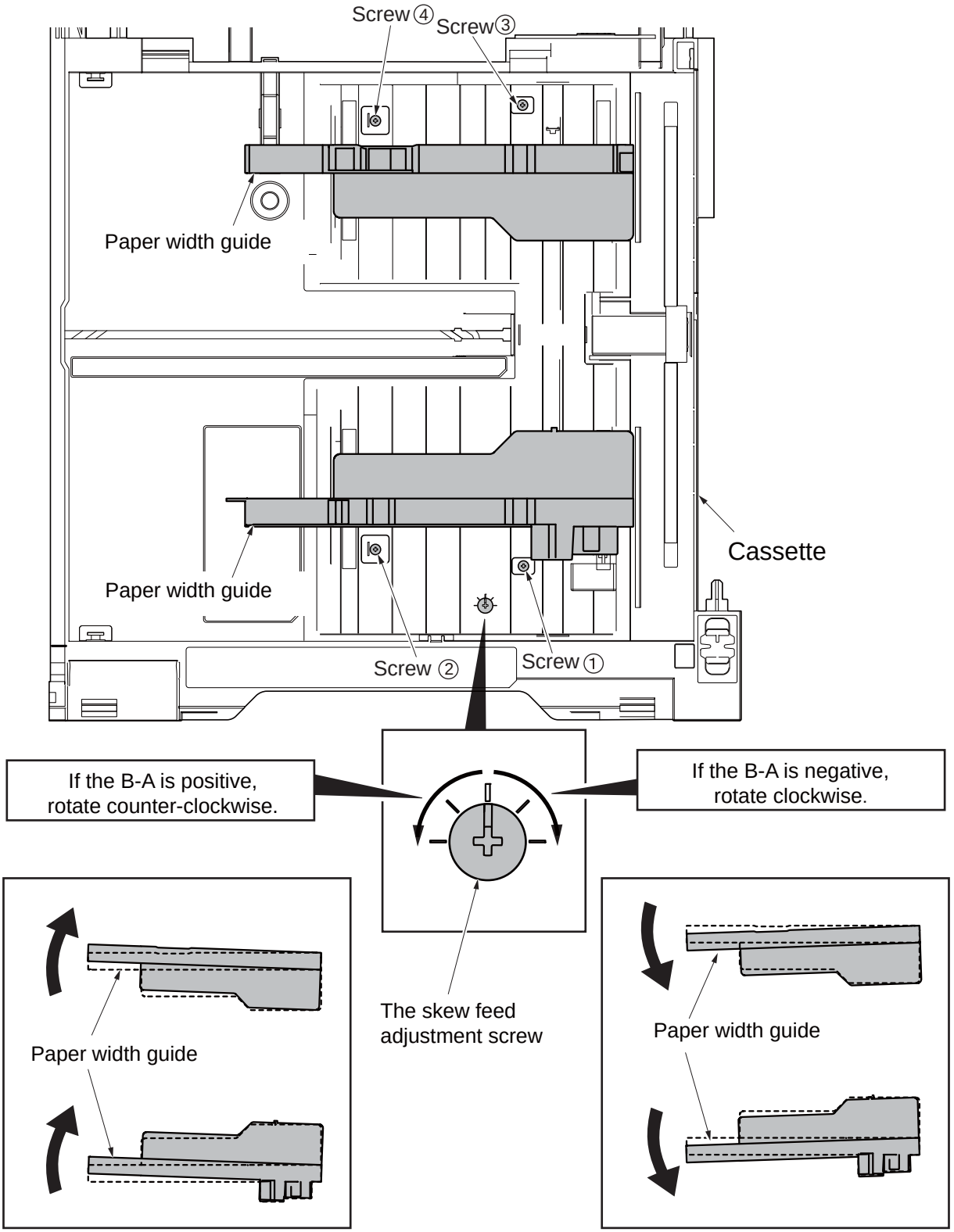


Figure 1-5-229

This page is intentionally left blank.

1-6-1 Upgrading the firmware

Follow the procedure below to upgrade the firmware of main PWB, operation PWB, engine PWB, ISC PWB, fuser IH PWB, motor control PWB, optional language and optional devices.

* : Firmware upgrade must be preceded by an authentication using U025 if the security level is set to Very High.

Preparation

Extract the file that has the download firmware and put them in the USB flash device.

Procedure

1. Perform maintenance item U000 (maintenance report output) and check U019 firmware version.
2. Press the power key on the operation panel, and after verifying the power indicator has gone off, switch off the main power switch.
3. Insert the USB flash device in which the firmware has been written into a notch hole of the machine.
4. Turn the main power switch on. Upgrading firmware starts (blinking the memory LED).
   Caution:
   Never turn off the power switch or remove the USB flash device during upgrading.
5. [FW-UPDATE] is displayed on the touch panel when upgrading is complete.
6. Switch off the main power switch.
7. Wait for several seconds and then remove the USB flash device from the machine.
8. Turn the main power switch on.
9. Perform maintenance item U000 (maintenance report output) and check that U019 firmware version has been upgraded.

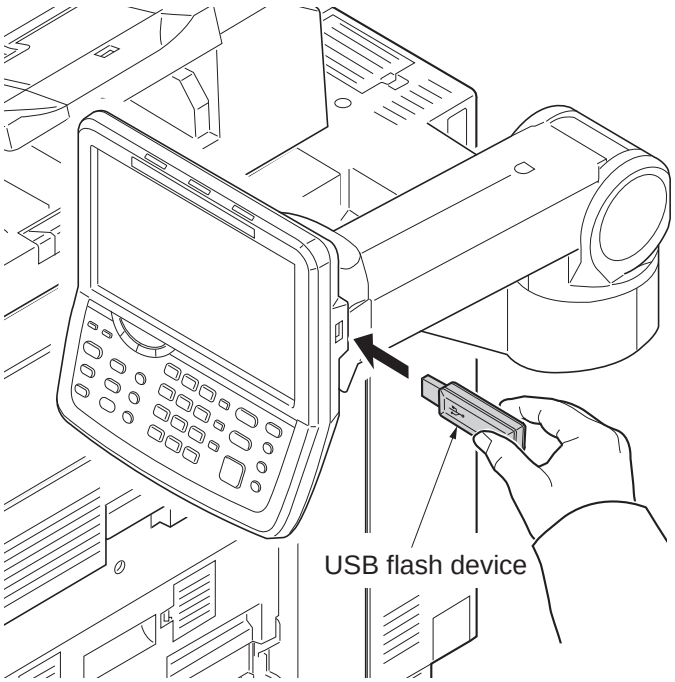


Figure 1-6-1

Safe-UPDATE

If the device is accidentally switched off or the USB memory is disconnected and upgrading is incomplete, perform the following.

If the power is accidentally switched off, turn the power on without removing the USB memory and perform the above steps 4 through 9.

If the USB memory is disconnected, reinsert it, then turn the power on and perform the above steps 4 through 9.

In any case, complete the steps to the end.

Emergency-UPDATE

If Safe Update is processed to the end, the firmware update is complete. In case the message below is indicated, update the firmware after recovery with the steps below.

FW-Update
Error FFFF

Note that this is unoperable when the device is operating normally.

Preparation

The USB flash device must be formatted in FAT or FAT32 in advance.
Extract the main firmware to download from the file.
Rename the file which was extracted from the archive. [DL_CTRL.2N7] to [KM_EMRG.2N7]
Copy the all extracted files to the root of the USB flash device.

Procedure

1. Turn the main power switch off.
2. Insert the USB flash device in which the firmware was copied into the USB flash device slot at the left of the machine.
3. Turn the main power switch on.
4. Rewriting of the PWB software will start for restoration.
   (The LCD, memory LED, and attention LED on the operation panel will be showing the progress.)
   Caution:
   Never turn off the power switch or remove the USB flash device during upgrading.
5. The operation panel LCD will show “Completed” when rewriting has been finished.
   * : In case rewriting has been failed, “Error XXXX" (XXXX means an error code) will be shown.
6. Turn the main power switch off.
7. Wait for several seconds and then remove the USB flash device from the machine.
8. Insert the USB flash device in which an upgrade pack of the latest firmware or the Main/MMI/Browser and LANGUAGE BR (excluding Dictionary) were copied, into the slot on the machine and turn power on. (see page P.1-6-1).

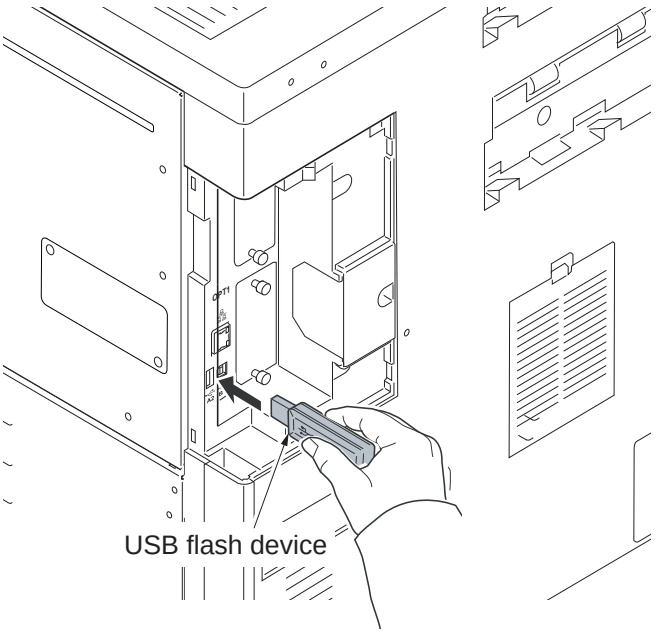


Figure 1-6-2

2-1-1 Paper feed/conveying sections

Paper feed/conveying section consists of the paper feed unit that feeds paper from the cassette and the MP tray paper feed unit that feeds paper from the MP tray, and the paper conveying section that conveys the fed paper to the transfer/separation section.

(1) Cassette paper feed section

Cassette paper feed section consists of the paper holder with the cassette operation plate activated by lift motor 1 and 2, and the pulleys, such as the forwarding pulley, the paper feed pulley and the separation pulley, for extracting and conveying the paper. Paper is fed out of the cassette by the rotation of the forwarding pulley, paper feed pulley and separation pulley.

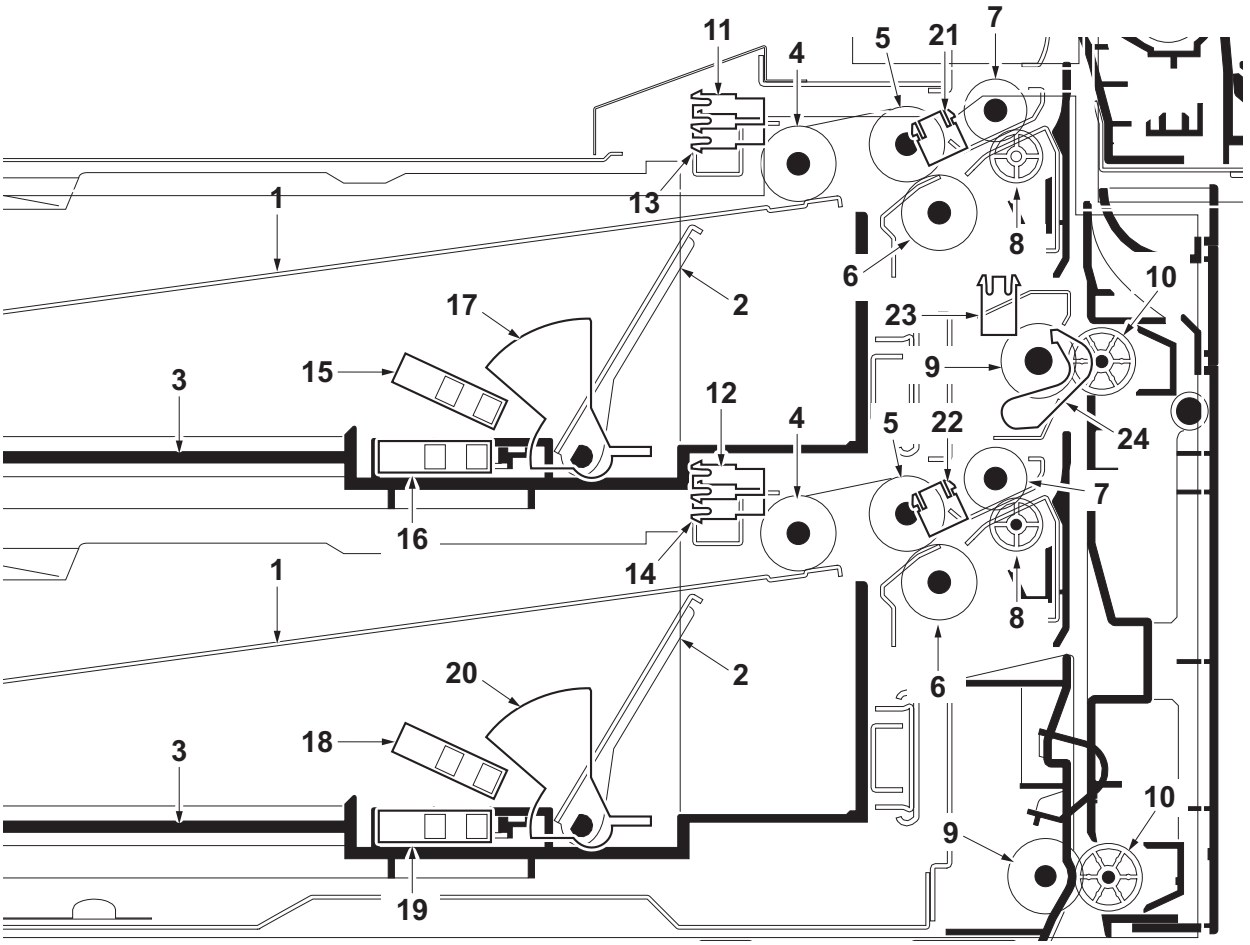


Figure 2-1-1 Cassette paper feed section

1. Cassette base
2. Cassette operation plate
3. Cassette
4. Forwarding pulleys
5. Paper feed pulleys
6. Separation pulleys
7. Assist rollers
8. Assist pulleys
9. Paper conveying roller
10. Paper conveying pulley
11. Paper sensor 1 (PS1)
12. Paper sensor 2 (PS2)
13. Lift sensor 1 (LS1)
14. Lift sensor 2 (LS2)
15. Paper gauge sensor 1 (U) (PGS1(U))
16. Paper gauge sensor 1 (L) (PGS1(L))
17. Actuator (Paper gauge sensor 1)
18. Paper gauge sensor 2 (U) (PGS2(U))
19. Paper gauge sensor 2 (L) (PGS2(L))
20. Actuator (Paper gauge sensor 2)
21. Feed sensor 1 (FS1)
22. Feed sensor 2 (FS2)
23. Paper conveying sensor (PCS)
24. Actuator (Paper conveying sensor)

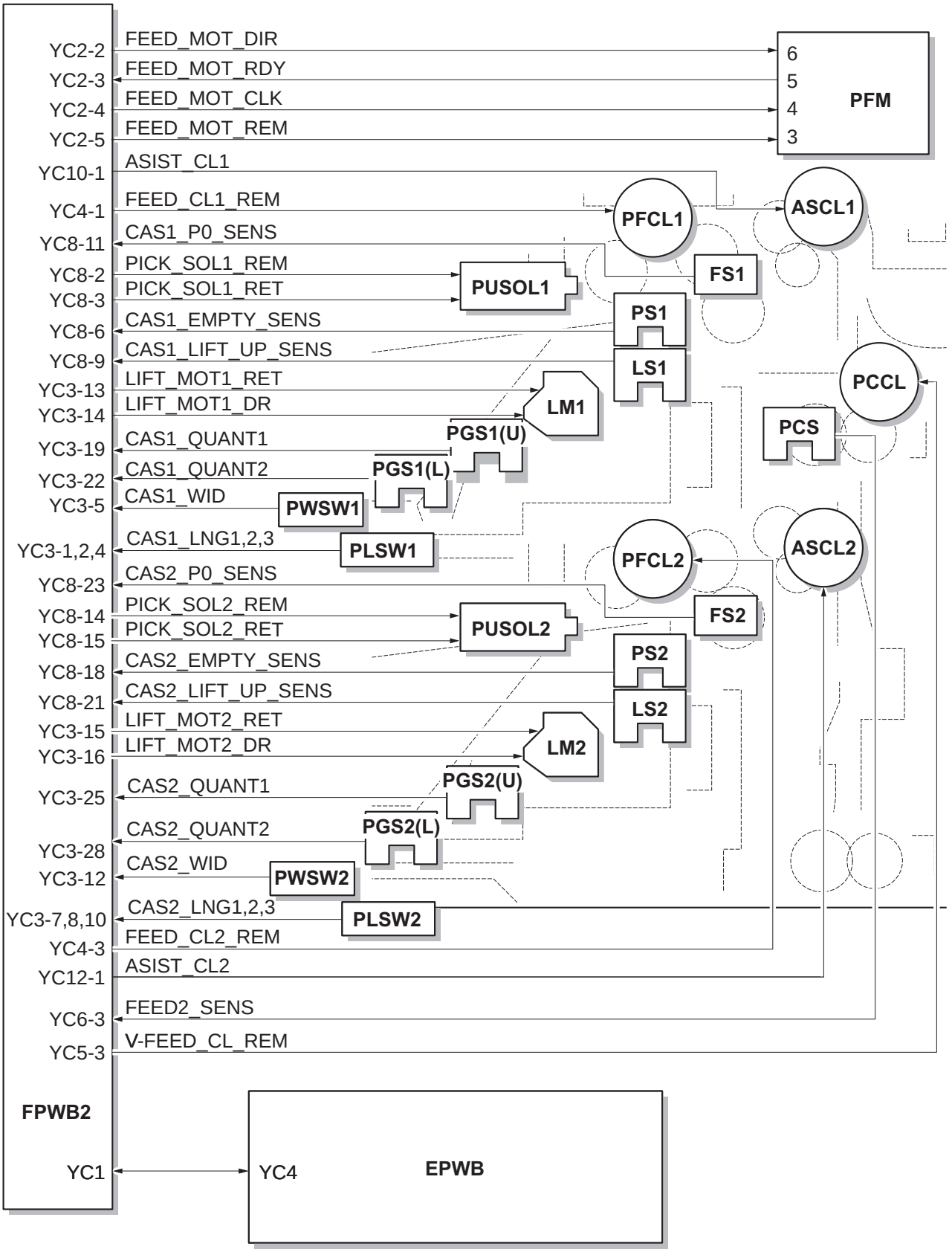


Figure 2-1-2 Cassette paper feed section block diagram

(2) Large capacity feeder

The paper feeder is comprised of the right- and left-hand cassettes and their feeding units, and the paper feeding section for the left-hand cassette.
The paper loaded on the lifting plate in the right-hand cassette is picked up to the PF forwarding pulley, PF feeding pulley, and PF separator pulley, one by one; then the PF feed roller 1 drives the paper into the device.
The paper fed by the left-hand cassette is separated in the similar manner and guided by the driving roller into the device.

Right cassette section

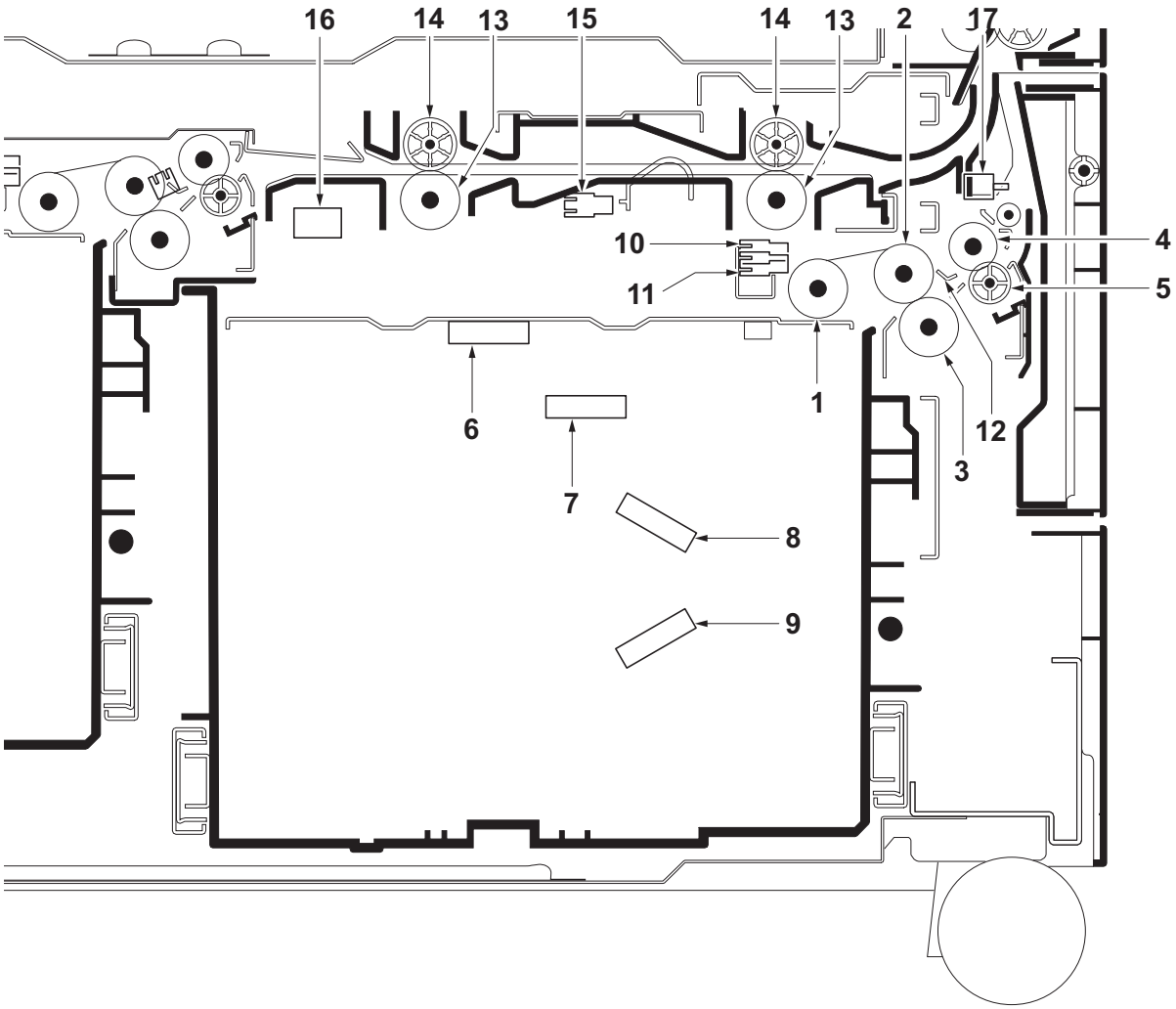


Figure 2-1-3 Right cassette section

1. PF forwarding pulley
2. PF paper feed pulley
3. PF separation pulley
4. PF feed roller 1
5. PF feed pulley
6. PF size detection switch 1 (PFSDSW1)
7. PF cassette detection switch 1 (PFCDSW1)
8. PF paper gauge sensor 1 upper (PFPGS1(U))
9. PF paper gauge sensor 1 lower (PFPGS1(L))
10. PF paper sensor 1 (PFPS1)
11. PF lift sensor 1 (PFLS1)
12. PF feed sensor 1 (PFFS1)
13. PF paper conveying roller
14. PF paper conveying pulley
15. PF paper conveying sensor 2 (PFPCS2)
16. PF paper conveying unit switch (PFPCUSW)
17. PF paper conveying cover switch (PFPCCSW)

Left cassette section

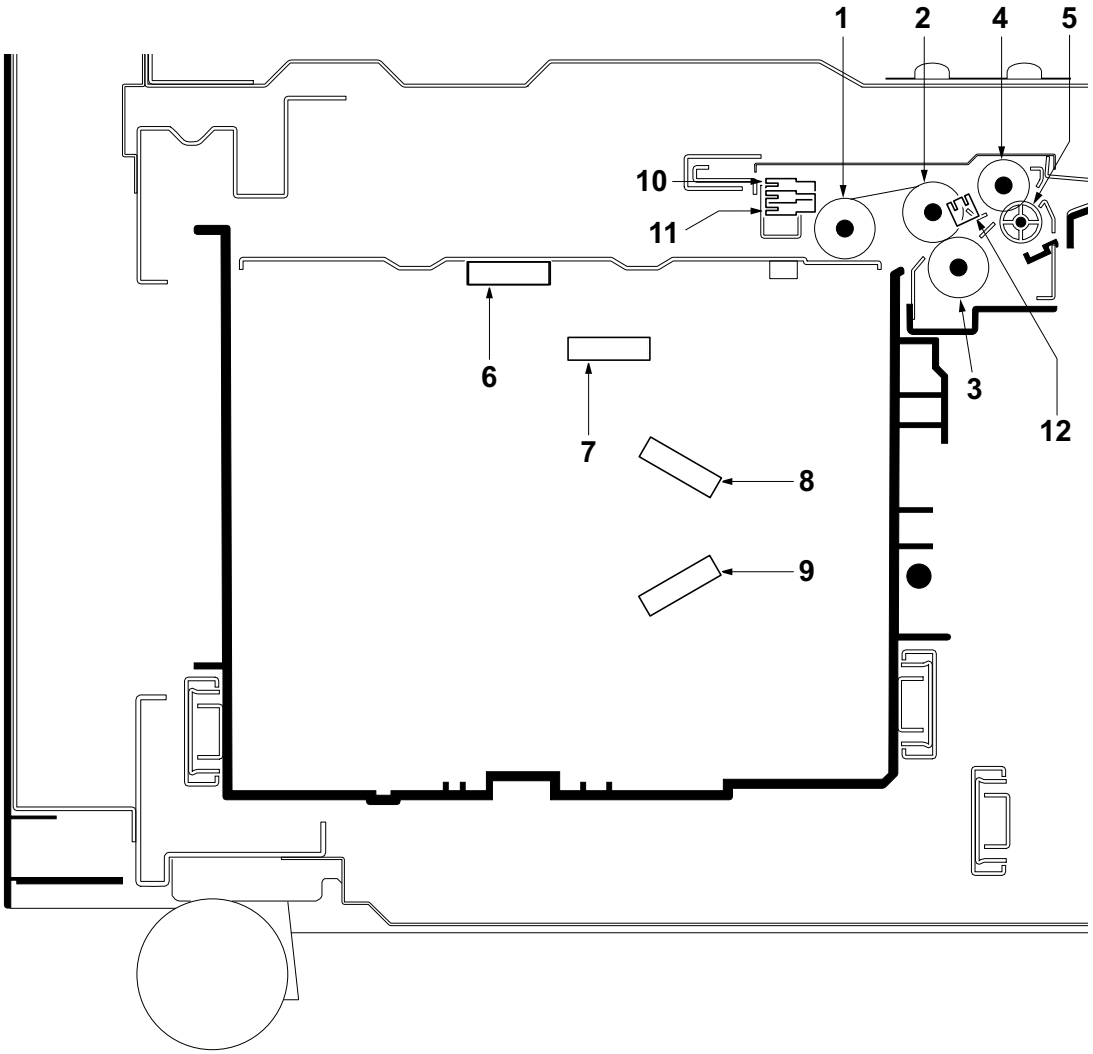


Figure 2-1-4 Left cassette section

1. PF forwarding pulley 2
2. PF paper feed pulley 2
3. PF separation pulley 2
4. PF feed roller 2
5. PF feed pulley
6. PF size detection switch 2 (PFSDSW2)
7. PF cassette detection switch 2 (PFCDSW2)
8. PF paper gauge sensor 2 upper (PFPGS2(U))
9. PF paper gauge sensor 2 lower (PFPGS2(L))
10. PF paper sensor 2 (PFPS2)
11. PF lift sensor 2 (PFLS2)
12. PF feed sensor 2 (PFFS2)

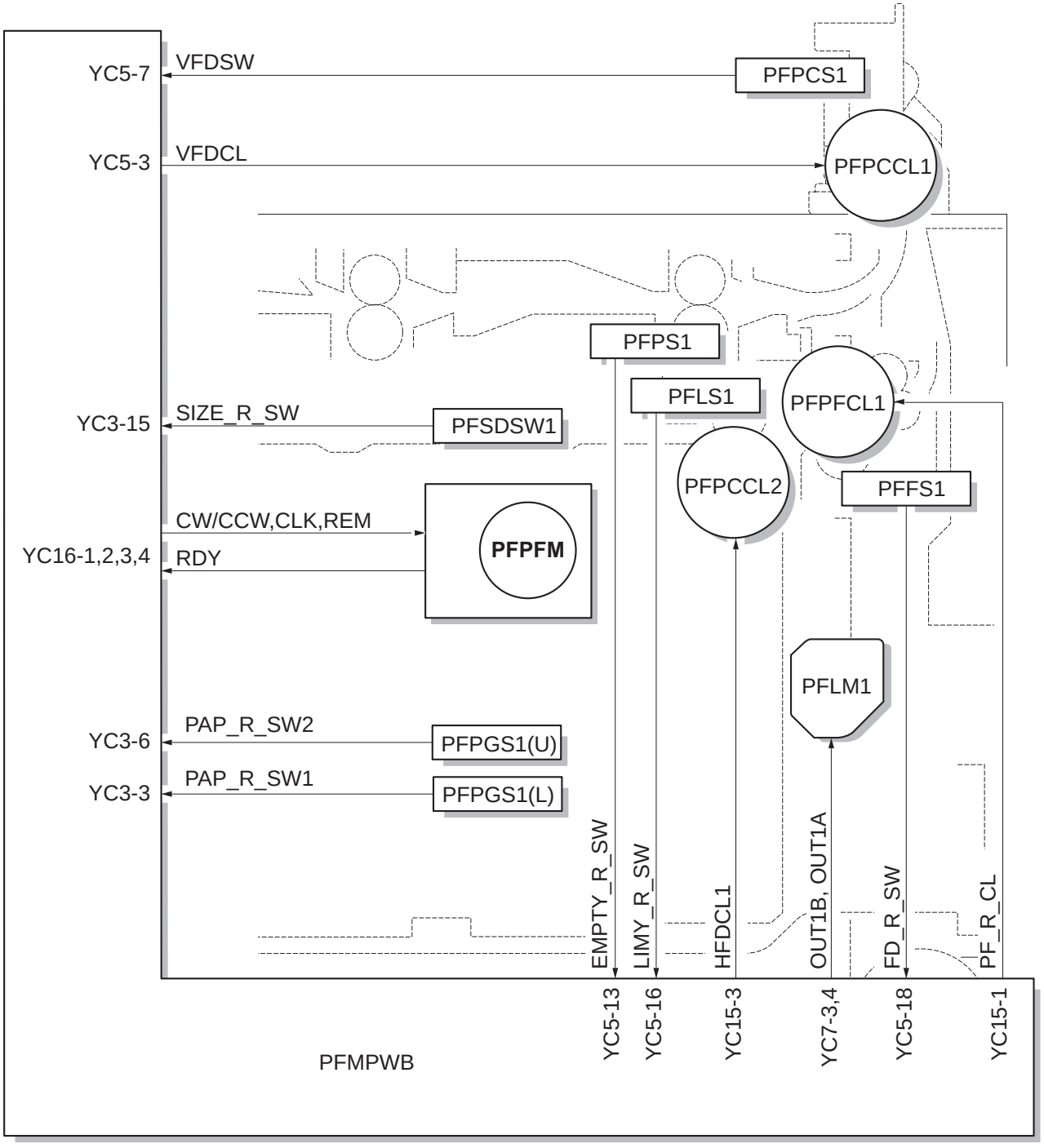


Figure 2-1-5 Right cassette paper feed section block diagram

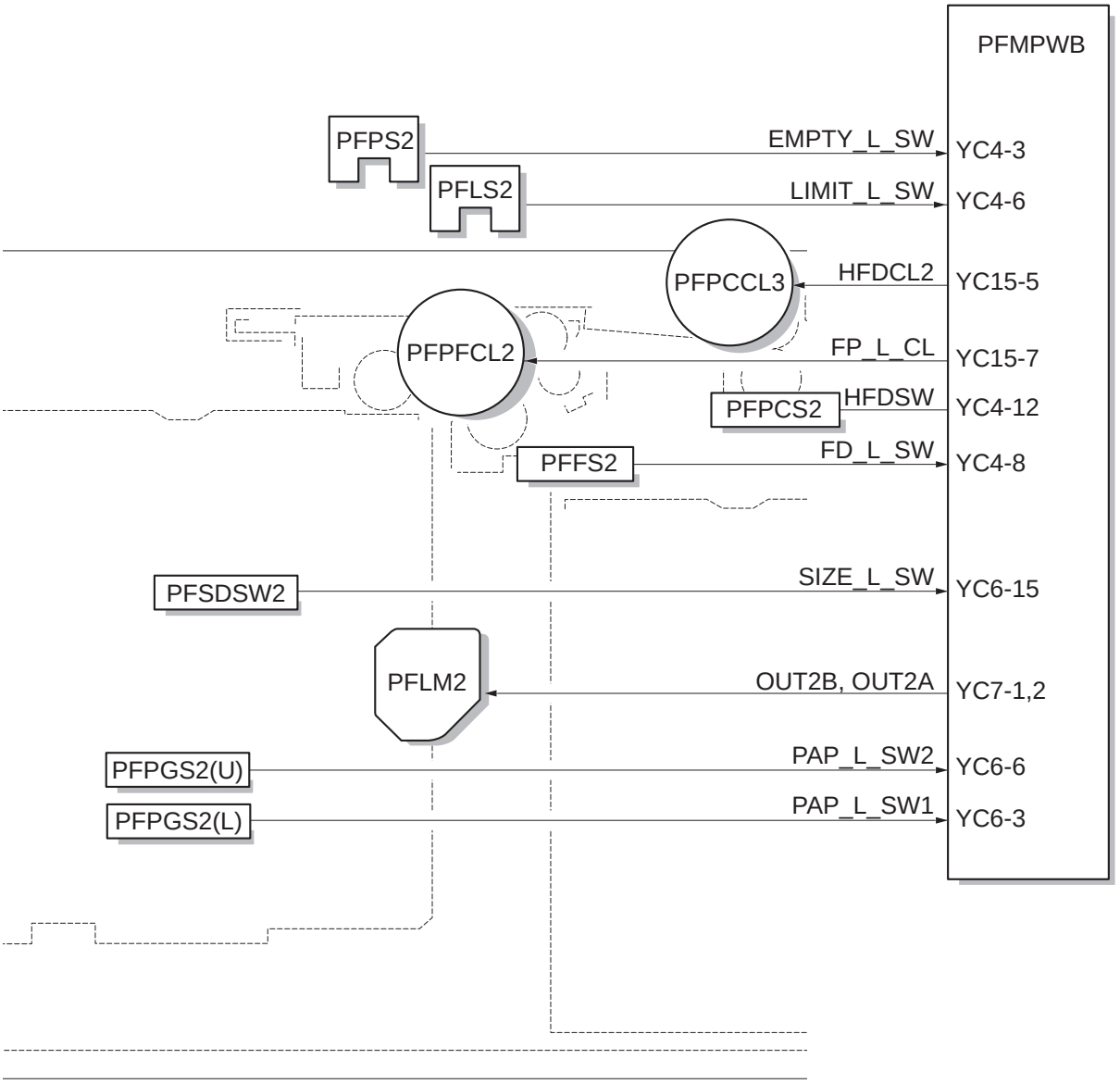


Figure 2-1-6 Left cassette paper feed section block diagram

(3) MP tray paper feed section

Paper is fed out of the MP tray by the rotation of the MP forwarding pulley, MP paper feed pulley and MP separation pulley. The MP separation pulley prevents multiple sheets from being fed at one time by the torque limiter.

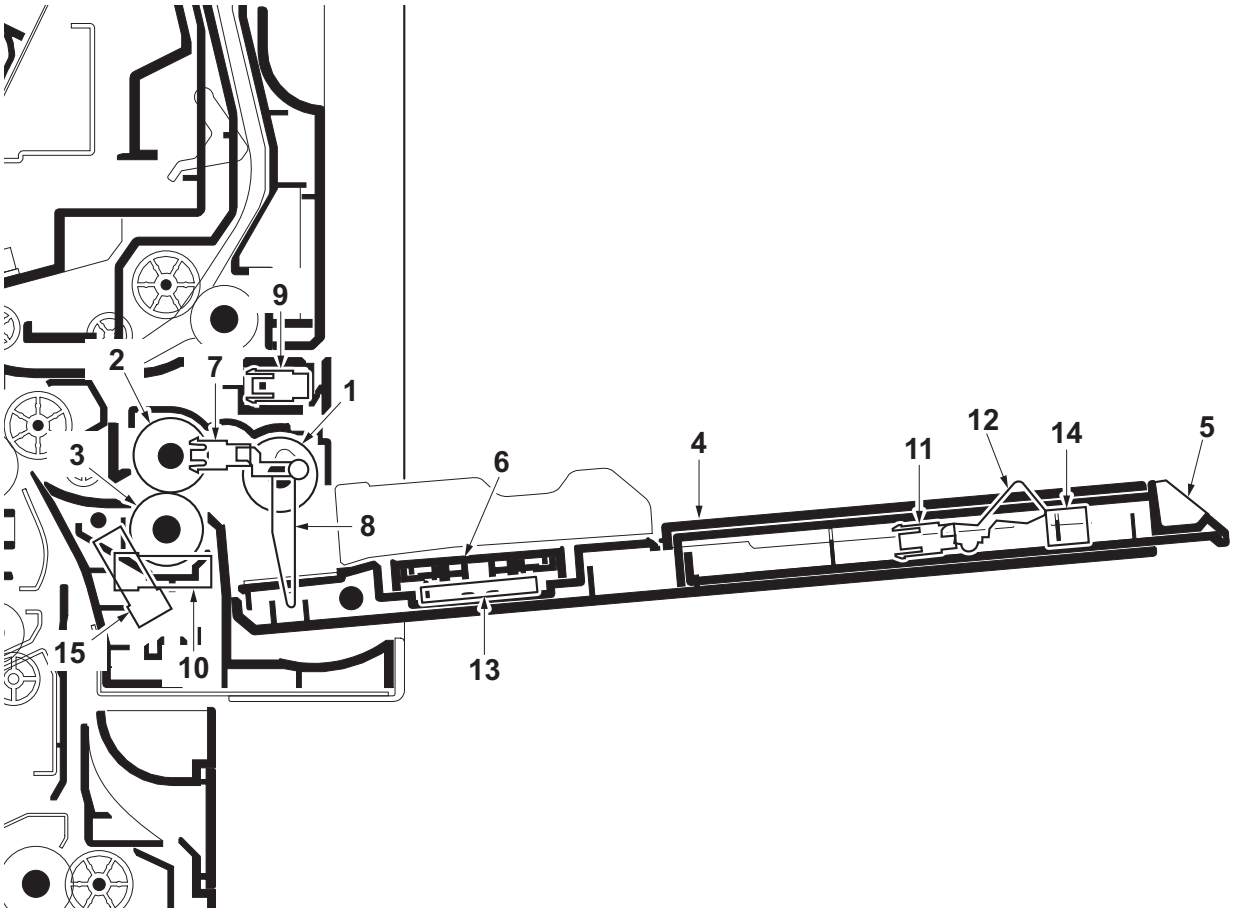


Figure 2-1-7 MP tray paper feed section

1. MP forwarding pulley
2. MP paper feed pulley
3. MP separate pulley
4. MP table
5. MP support Tray
6. MP paper sensor (MPPS)
7. Actuator (MP paper sensor)
8. MP lift sensor 1 (MPLS1)
9. MP lift sensor 2 (MPLS2)
10. MP paper length switch (MPPLSW)
11. Actuator (MP paper length switch)
12. MP paper width switch (MPPWSW)
13. MP tray switch (MPTSW)
14. MP feed sensor (MPFS)

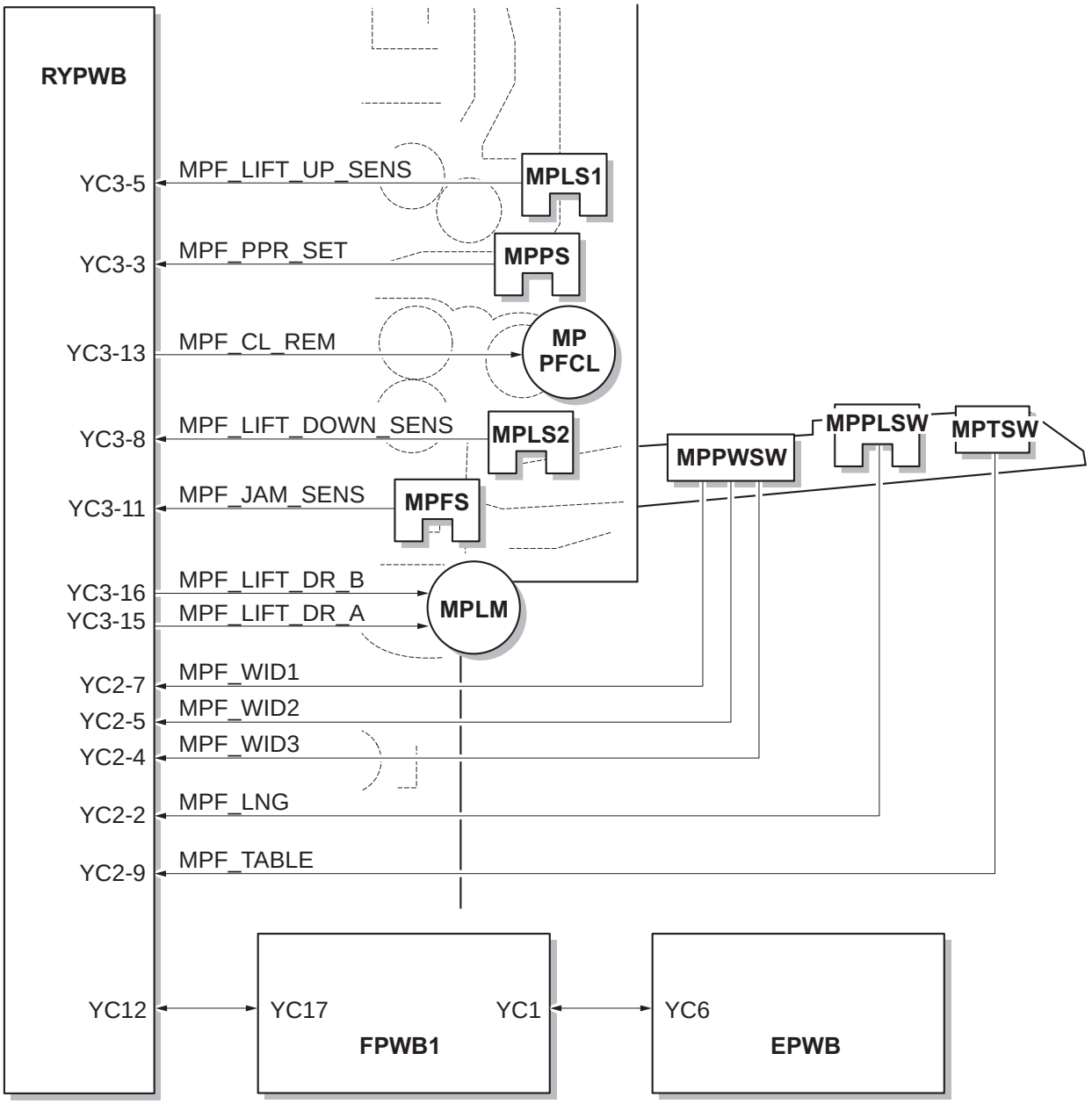


Figure 2-1-8 MP tray paper feed section block diagram

(4) Paper conveying section

The paper conveying section conveys paper to the transfer/separation section as paper feeding from the cassette or MP tray, or as paper refeeding for duplex printing. Paper by feeding is conveyed by the middle roller to the position where the registration sensor (RS) is turned on, and then sent to the transfer/separation section by the right registration roller and left registration roller.

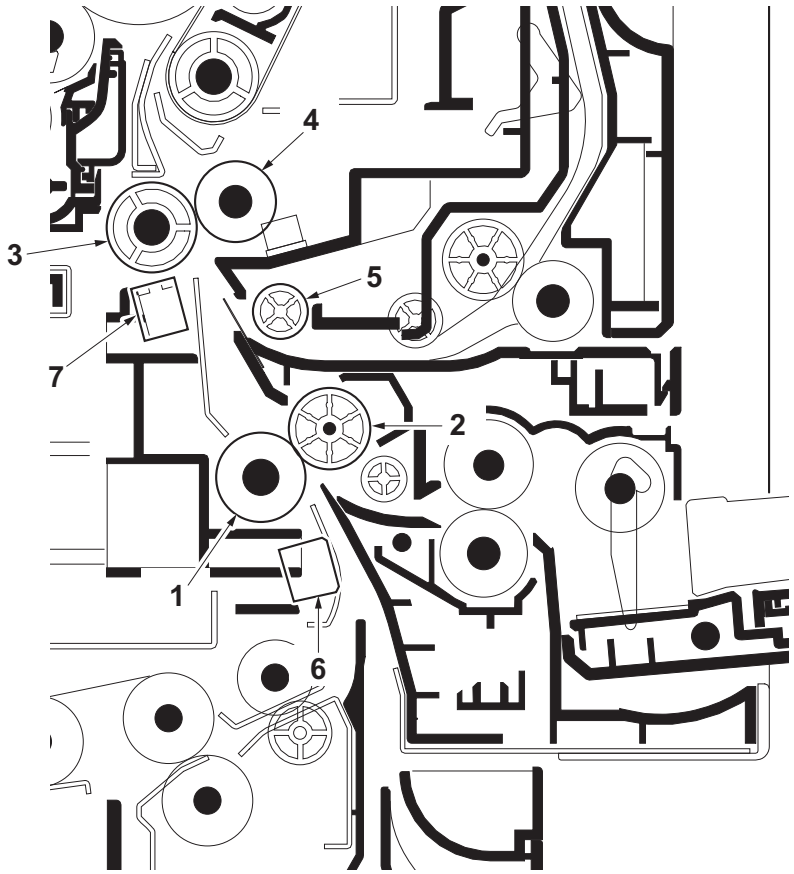


Figure 2-1-9 Paper conveying section

1. Middle roller
2. Middle pulley
3. Left registration roller
4. Right registration roller
5. Paper conveying pulley
6. Middle sensor (MS)
7. Registration sensor (RS)

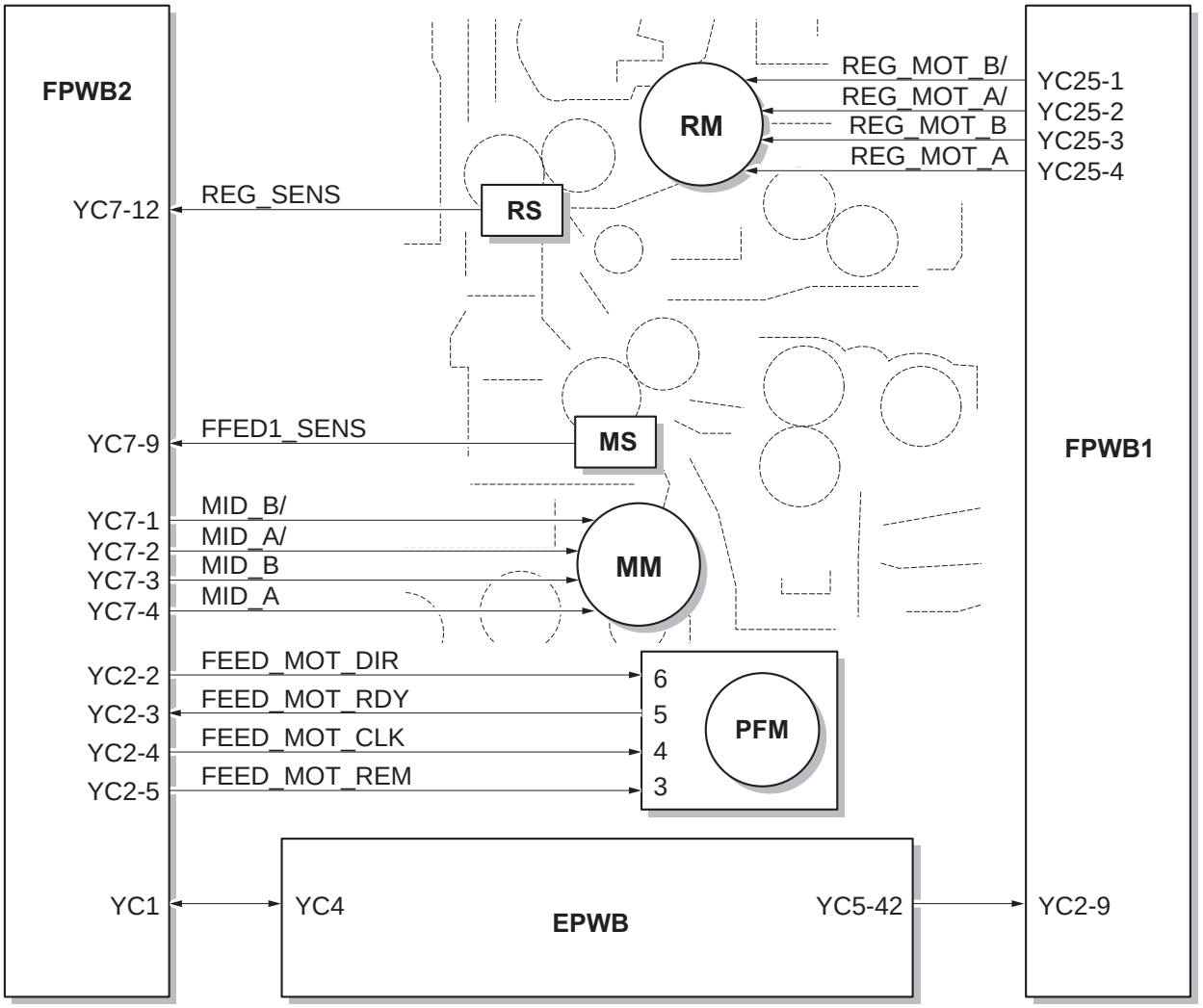


Figure 2-1-10 Paper conveying section block diagram

2-1-2 Drum section

The drum section consists of the charger roller unit, drum and cleaning section. The drum is electrically charged uniformly by means of a charger roller to form a latent image on the surface. The cleaning section consists of the cleaning blade and the cleaning roller which remove residual toner from the drum surface after transfer. The cleaning lamp (CL) consists of LEDs and removes residual charge on the drum before main charging.

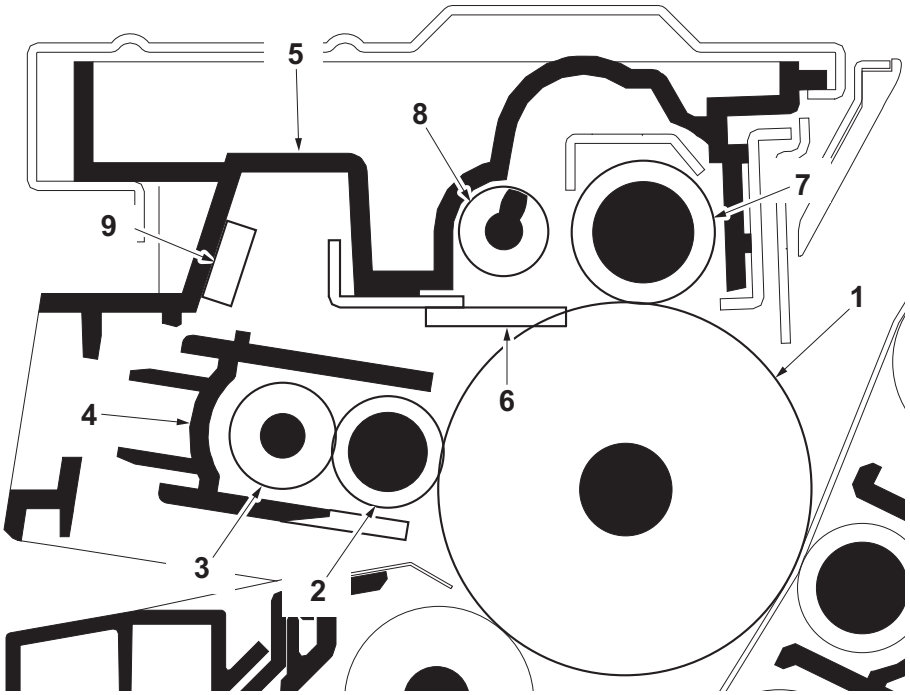


Figure 2-1-11 Drum section

1. Drum
2. Charger roller
3. Charger cleaning roller
4. Charger case
5. Drum frame
6. Cleaning blade
7. Cleaning roller
8. Drum screw
9. Cleaning lamp (CL)

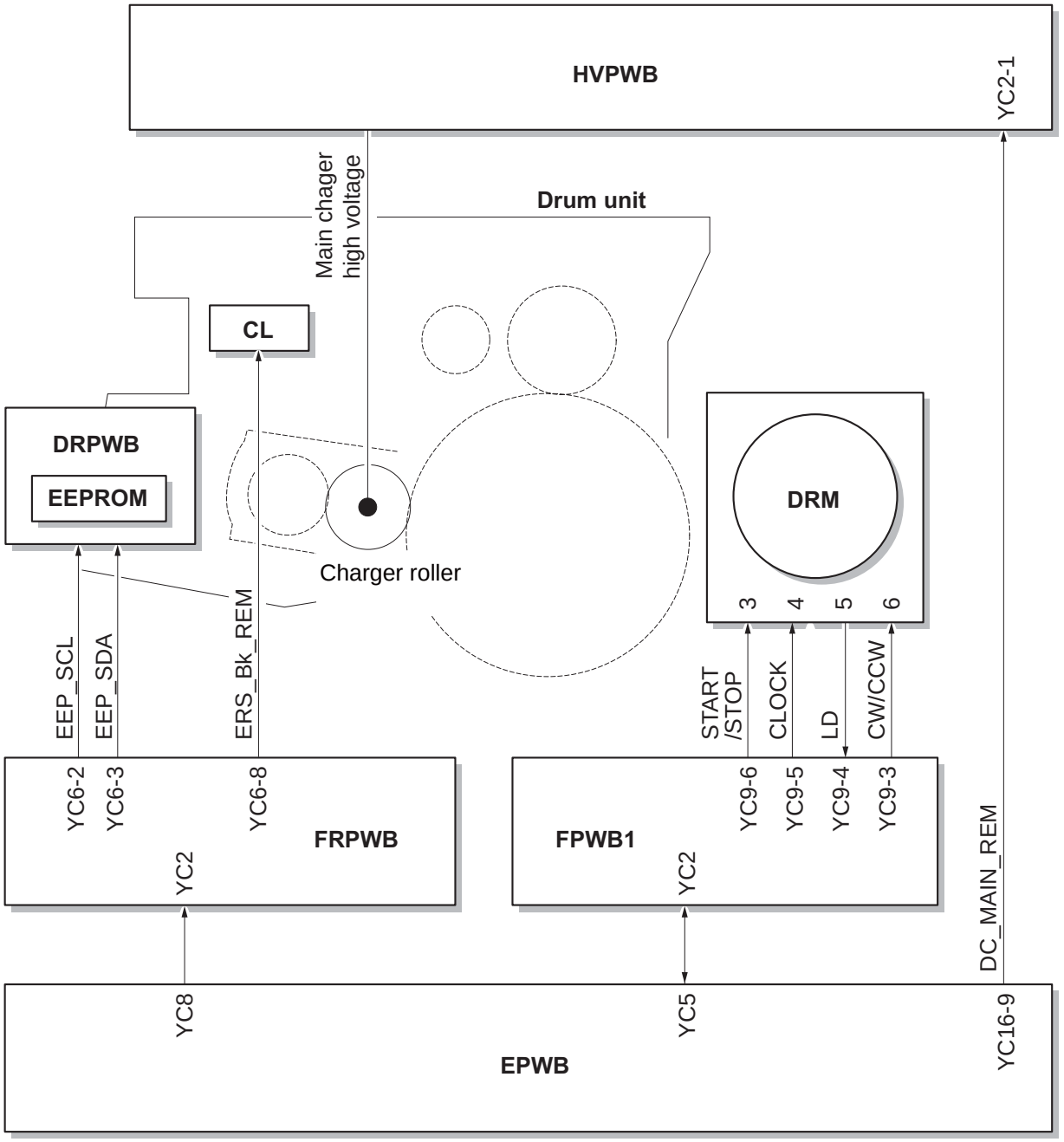


Figure 2-1-12 Drum section block diagram

2-1-3 Developer section

The developer unit consists of the sleeve roller that forms the magnetic brush, the magnet roller, the developer blade and the developer screws that agitate the toner. Also, the toner sensor (TS) checks whether or not toner remains in the developer unit.

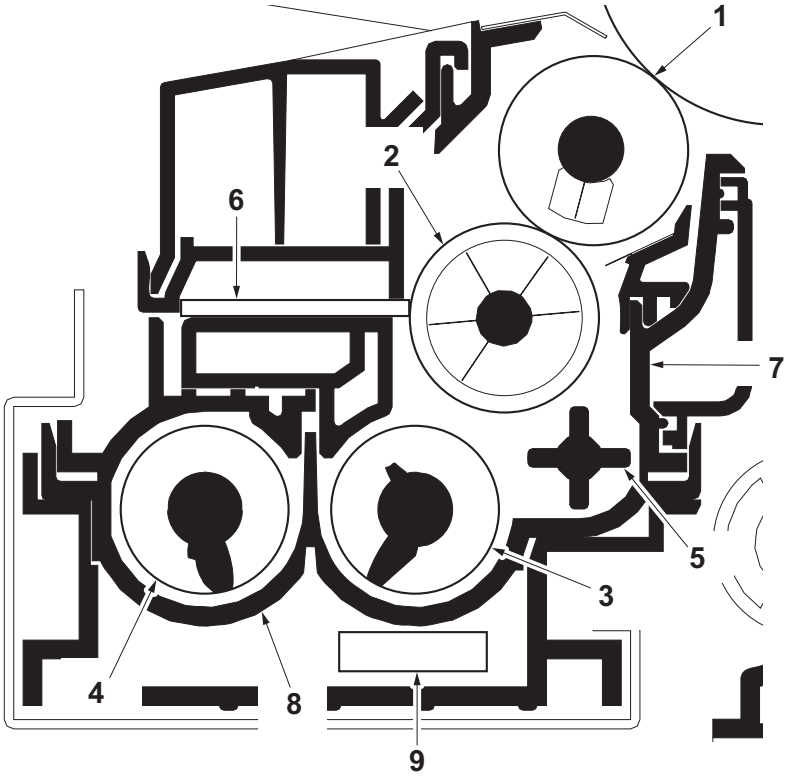


Figure 2-1-13 Developer section

1. Sleeve roller
2. Magnet roller
3. Developer screw A
4. Developer screw B
5. Developer paddle
6. Developer blade
7. Developer case
8. Developer cover
9. Toner sensor (TS)

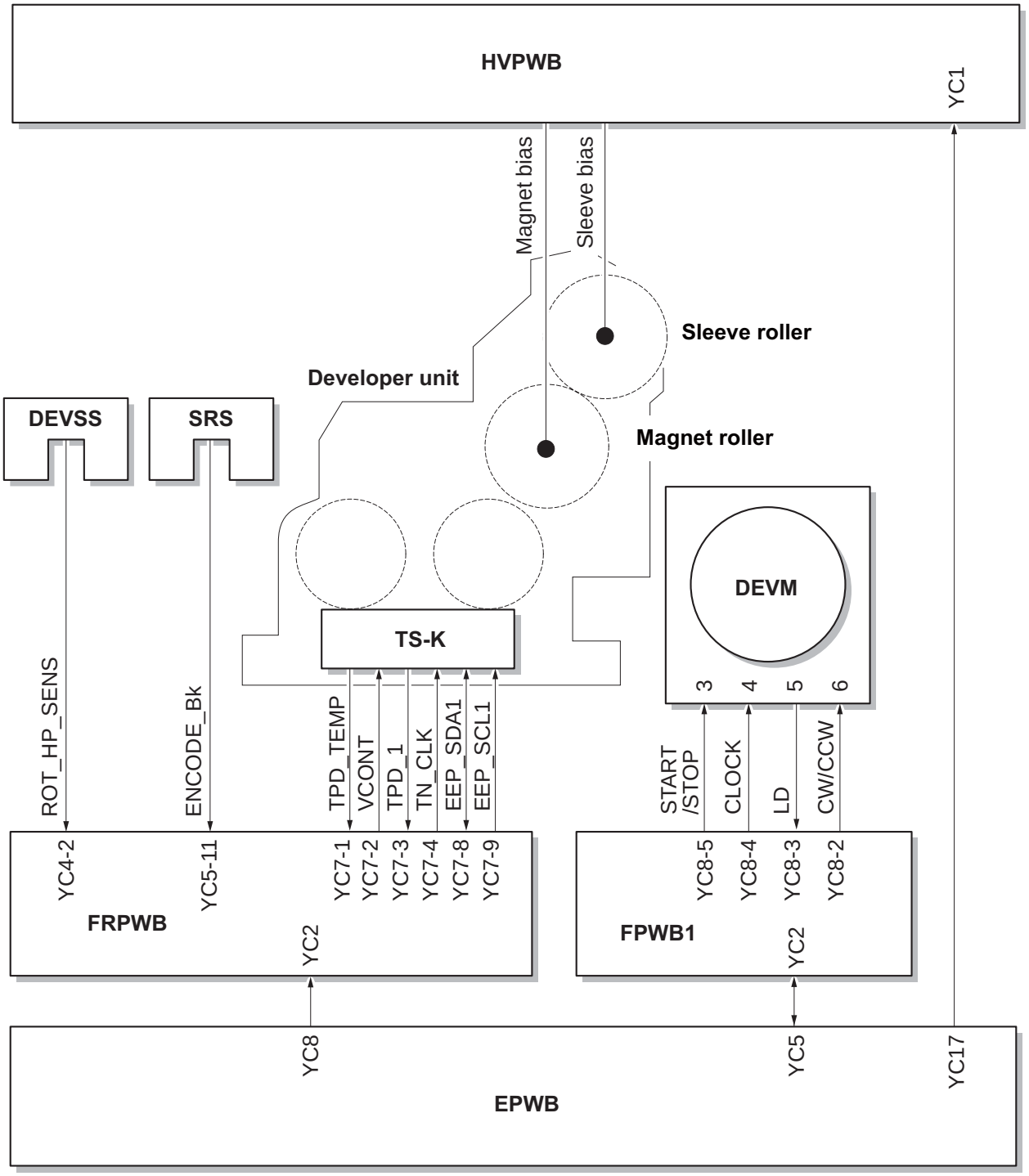


Figure 2-1-14 Developer section block diagram

2-1-4 Optical section

The optical section consists of the image scanner section for scanning and the laser scanner section for printing.

(1) Image scanner section

The original image is illuminated by the LED lamp and scanned by the CCD image sensor in the CCD PWB (CCDPWB) via the three mirrors and ISU lens, the reflected light being converted to an electrical signal. The mirror frame A and B travel to scan on the optical rails on the front and rear of the machine to scan from side to side. The speed of the mirror frame B is half the speed of the mirror frame A.

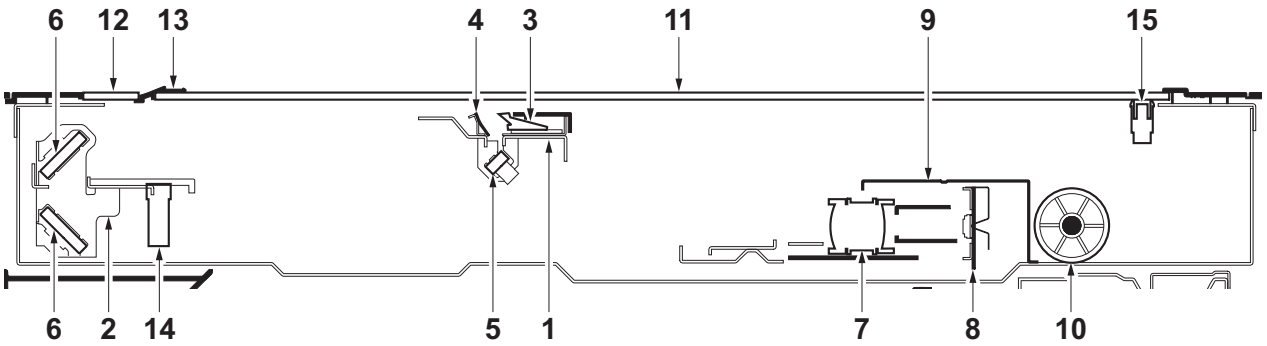


Figure 2-1-15 Image scanner section

1. Mirror frame A
2. Mirror frame B
3. LED mount
4. Scanner reflector
5. Mirror A
6. Mirror B
7. ISU lens
8. CCD PWB (CCDPWB)
9. ISU cover
10. Scanner wire drum
11. Contact glass
12. Slit glass
13. Original size indicator plate
14. Home position sensor (HPS)
15. Original detection switch (ODSW)

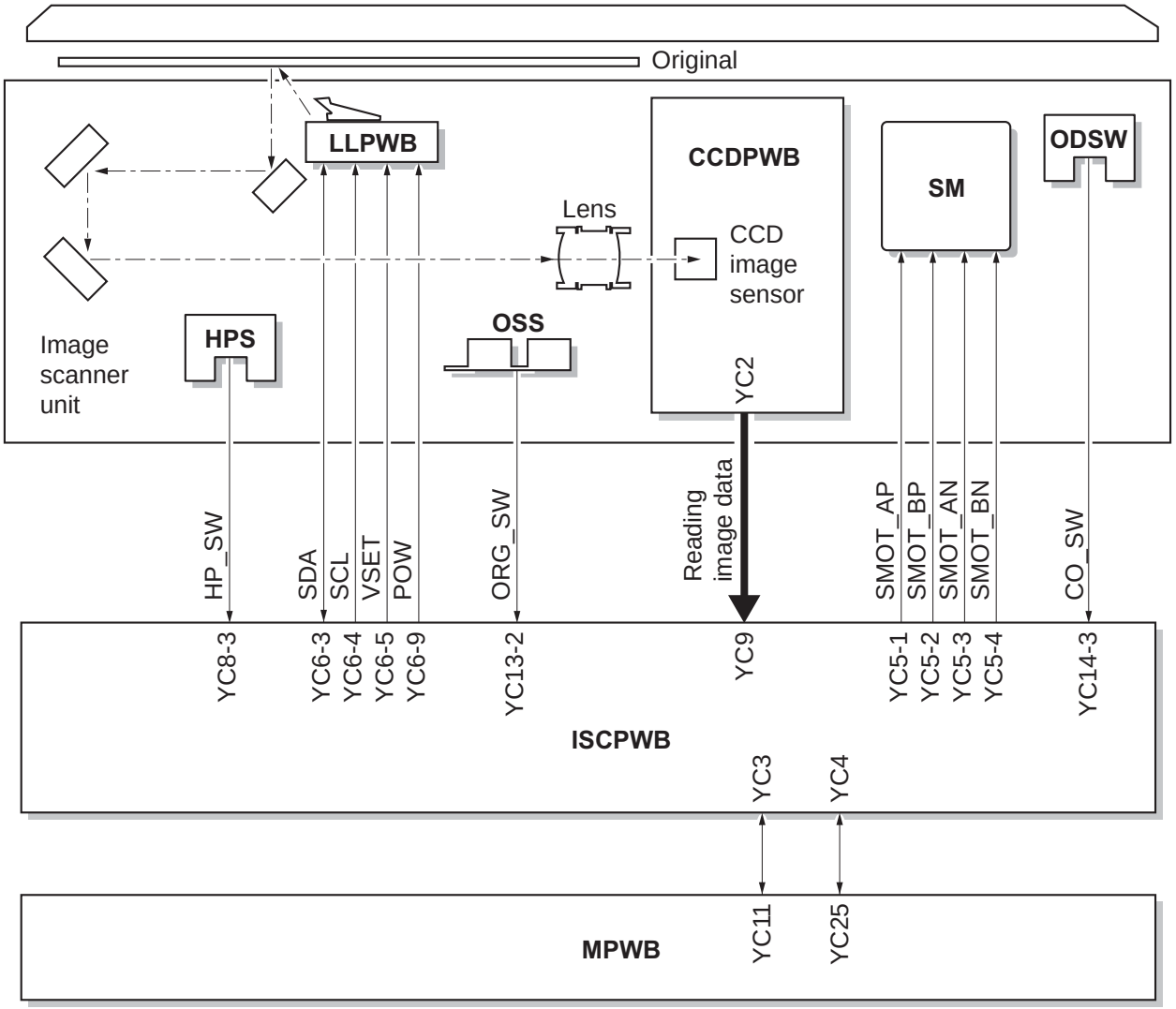


Figure 2-1-16 Image scanner section block diagram

(2) Laser scanner section

The charged surface of the drum is then scanned by the laser beam from the laser scanner unit. The laser beam is dispersed as the polygon motor (PM) revolves to reflect the laser beam over the drum. Various lenses are housed in the laser scanner unit, adjust the diameter of the laser beam, and focalize it at the drum surface.

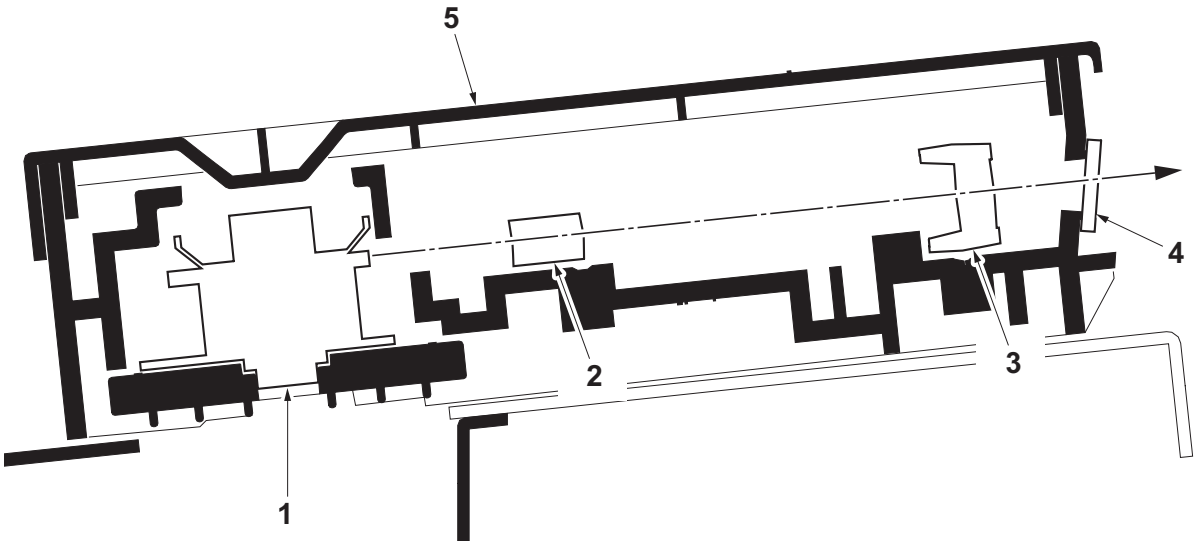


Figure 2-1-17 Laser scanner section

1. Polygon motor (PM)
2. f-θ lens A
3. f-θ lens B
4. LSU dust shield glass
5. LSU cover

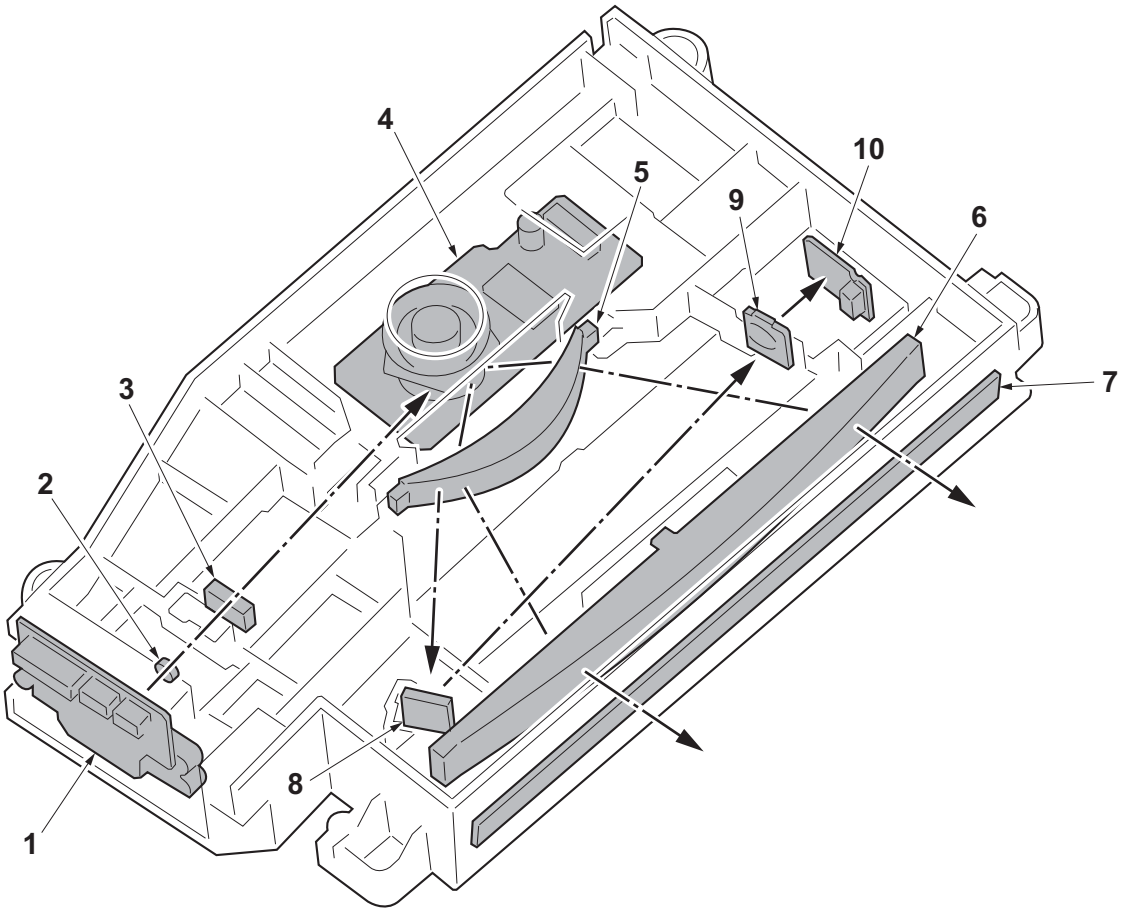


Figure 2-1-18 Image scanner unit

1. APC PWB (APCPWB)
2. Collimate lens
3. Cylindrical lens
4. Polygon motor (PM)
5. f-θ lens A
6. f-θ lens B
7. LSU dust shield glass
8. Mirror lens
9. PD lens
10. PD PWB (PDPWB)

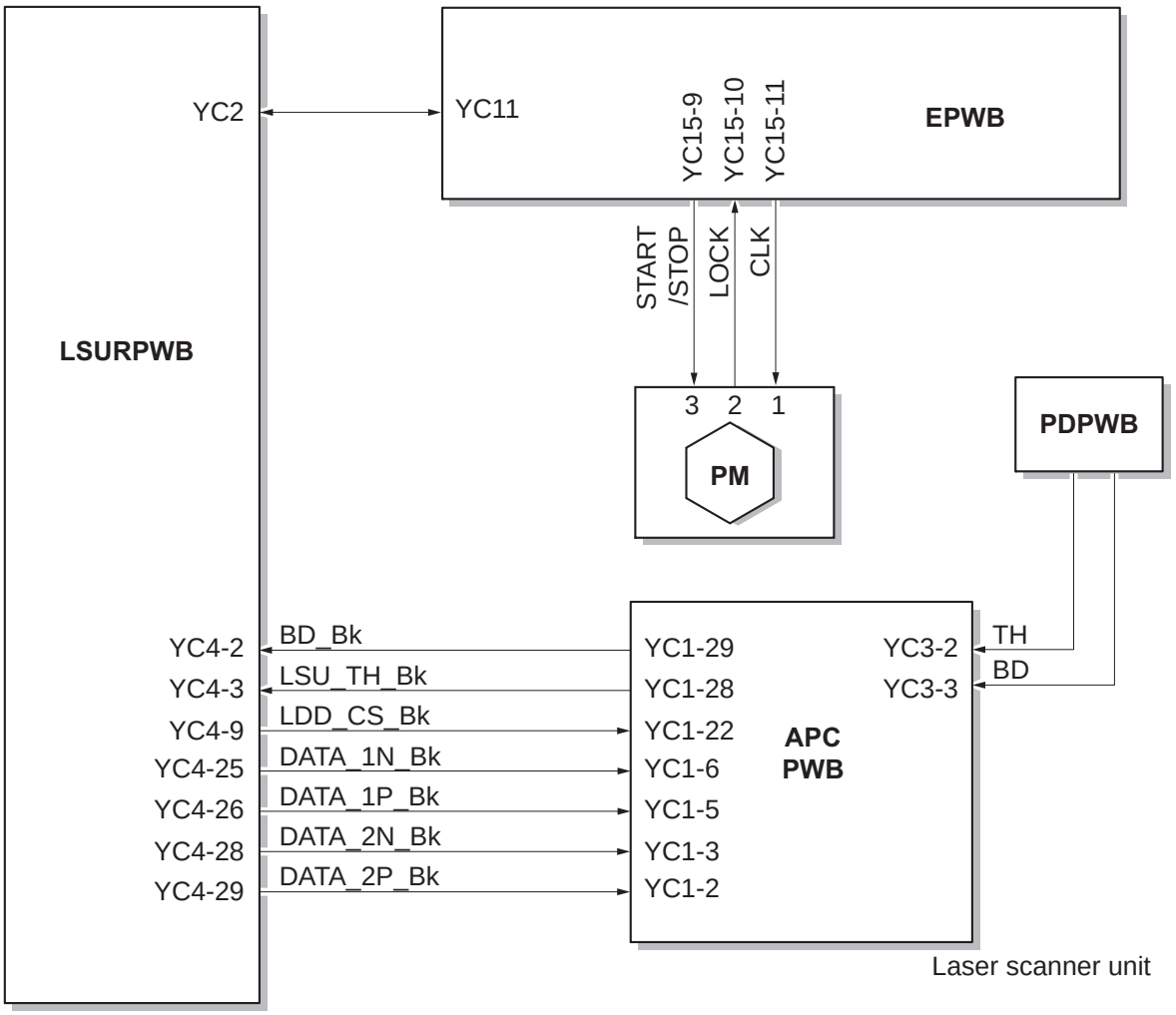


Figure 2-1-19 Laser scanner section block diagram

2-1-5 Transfer/Separation sections

(1) Transfer belt unit section

The transfer belt unit section consists of the transfer belt, transfer roller and the charge erasing brush. To the transfer roller, DC bias is applied from the high voltage PWB (HVPWB). The toner image formed on the drum is transferred to the paper by the potential difference and the paper is discharged with the Charge erasing brush.
Also with the ID sensors (IDS), the toner density on the transfer belt is measured.

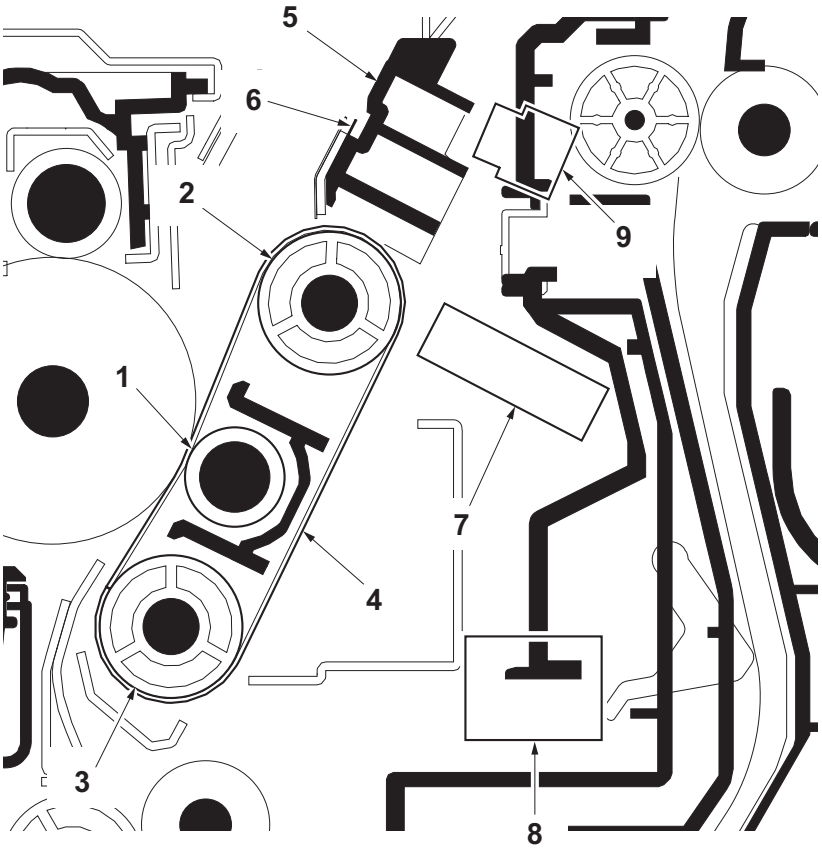


Figure 2-1-20 Transfer belt unit section

1. Transfer roller
2. Idle roller
3. Drive roller
4. Transfer belt
5. Transfer rear guide
6. Charge erasing brush
7. ID sensor (IDS)
8. Cleaning solenoid (CLSOL)
9. Loop sensor (LPS)

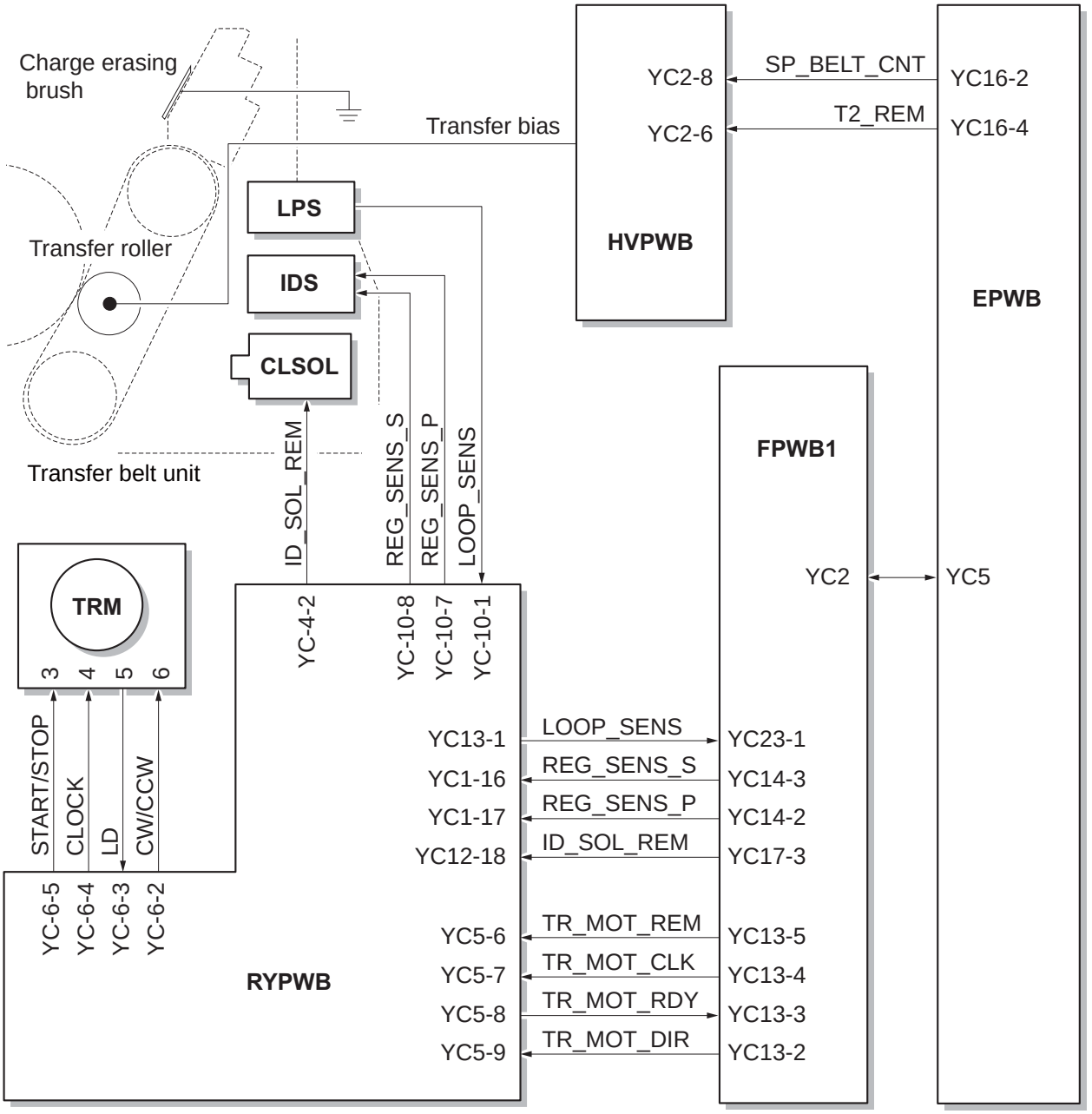


Figure 2-1-21 Transfer belt unit section block diagram

2-1-6 Fuser section

The paper sent from the transfer/separation section is interleaved between the fuser roller and the press roller. The fuser roller is heated by the IH (FIH), the press roller is heated by the fuser heater (FH), and the toner is fused by heat and pressure and fixed onto the paper because the press roller is pressed by the fuser press spring. The surface temperature of fuser roller and press roller are detected by the fuser thermistor (FTH) and controlled by the engine PWB (EPWB).

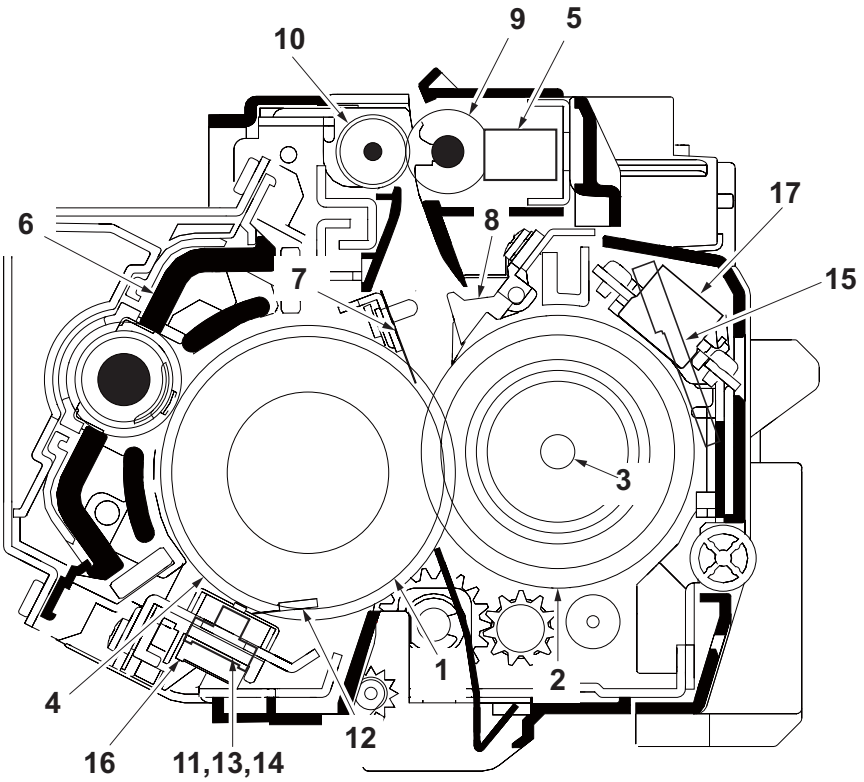


Figure 2-1-22 Fuser section

1. Fuser roller
2. Press roller
3. Fuser heater (FH)
4. Fuser belt
5. Fuser eject sensor (FUES)
6. Fuser IH
7. Separators1
8. Separators2
9. Fuser eject pulley
10. Fuser eject roller
11. Fuser thermistor 1 (FTH1)
12. Fuser thermistor 2 (FTH2)
13. Fuser thermistor 3 (FTH3)
14. Fuser thermistor 4 (FTH4)
15. Fuser thermistor 5 (FTH5)
16. Fuser thermostat 1 (FTS1)
17. Fuser thermostat 2 (FTS2)

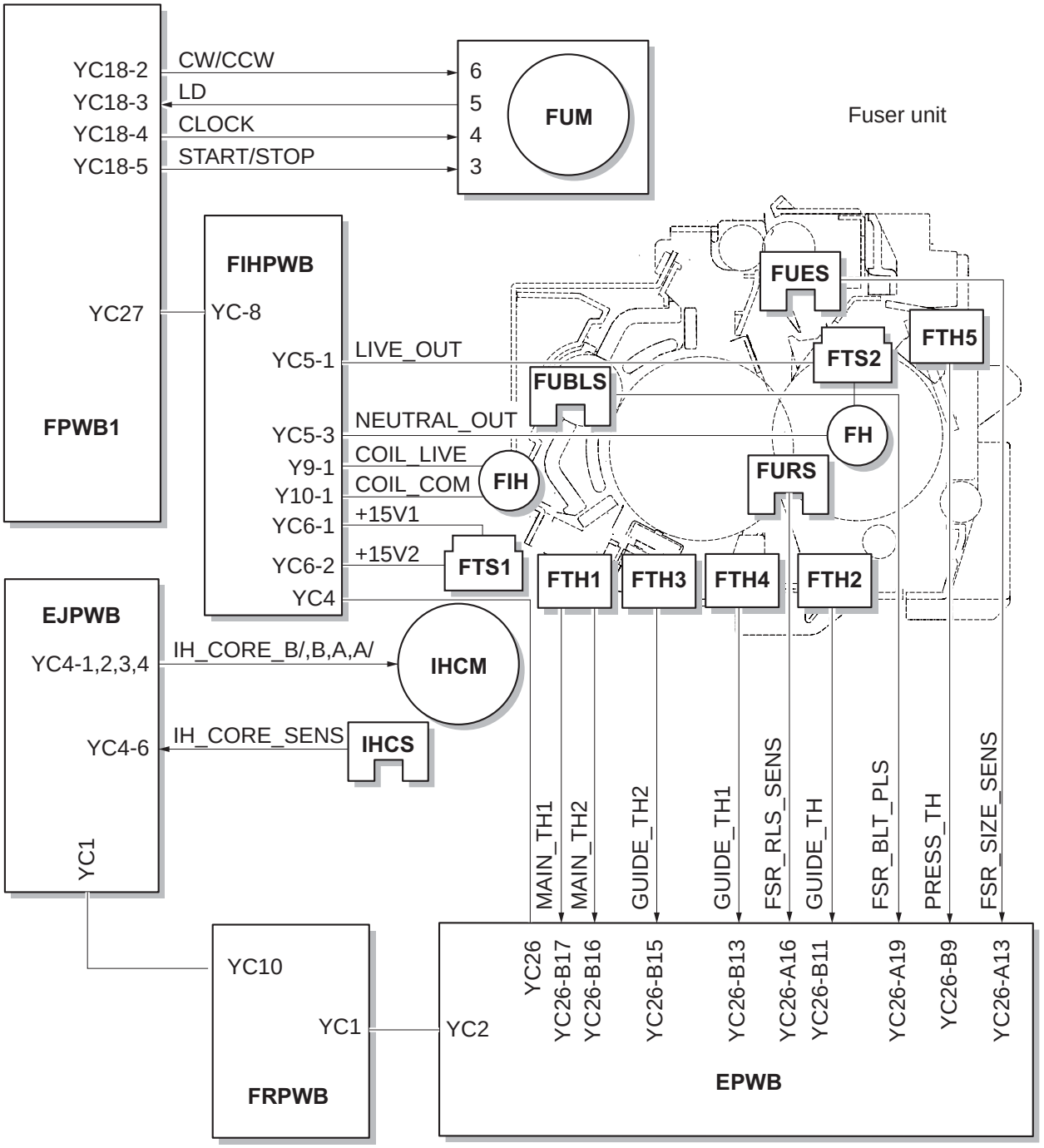


Figure 2-1-23 Fuser section block diagram

2-1-7 Feedshift/switchback sections

The paper feedshift/switchback sections consists of the conveying path which sends the paper that has passed the fuser section to the bridge section, duplex conveying section or job separator.

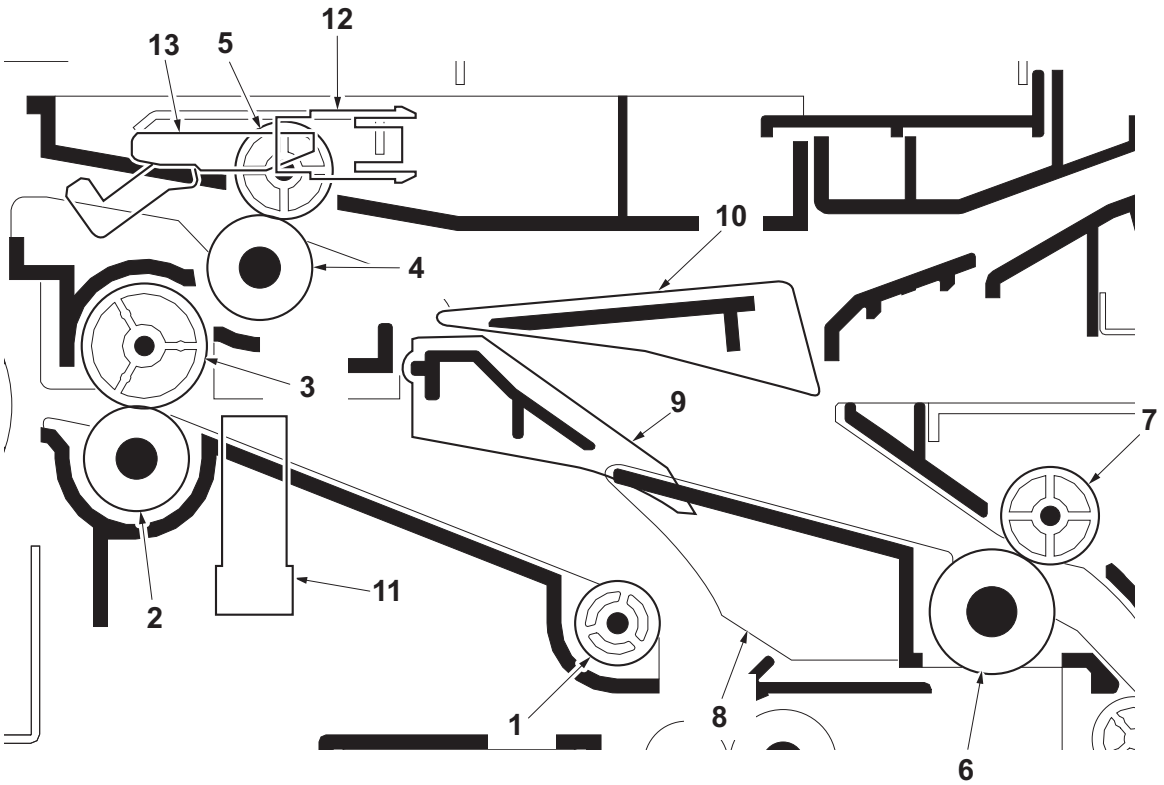


Figure 2-1-24 Feed shift/switchback section

1. Middle pulley
2. Eject roller
3. Eject pulley
4. Eject roller B
5. Eject pulley B
6. Upper duplex roller
7. Duplex pulley
8. Lower duplex roller
9. Lower change guide
10. Upper change guide
11. Eject sensor (ES)
12. Switchback sensor (SBS)
13. Actuator (switchback sensor)

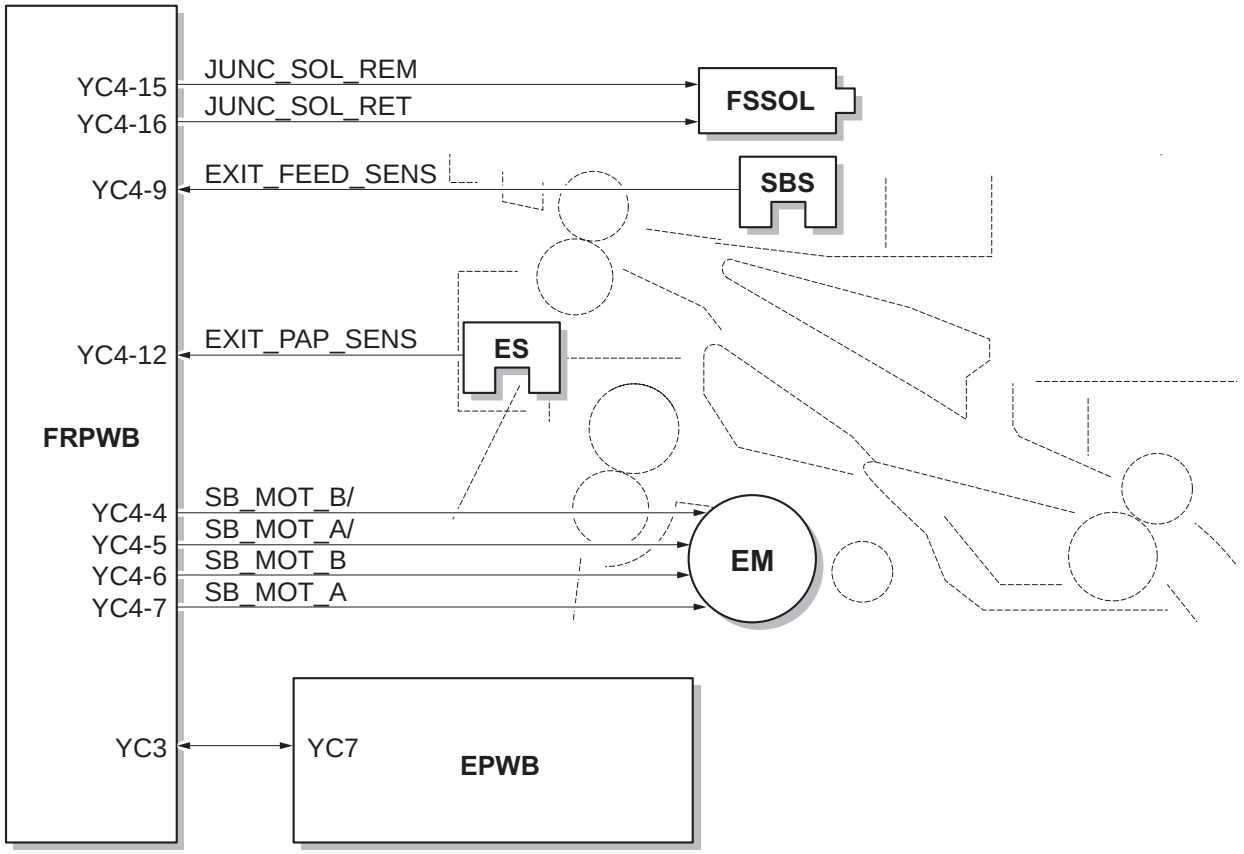


Figure 2-1-25 Feed shift/switchback section block diagram

2-1-8 Bridge section

Bridge section activates the convey roller to deliver the paper, which was sent by the feedshift/switchback section, to the ejection unit after de-curling the paper using the decurler.

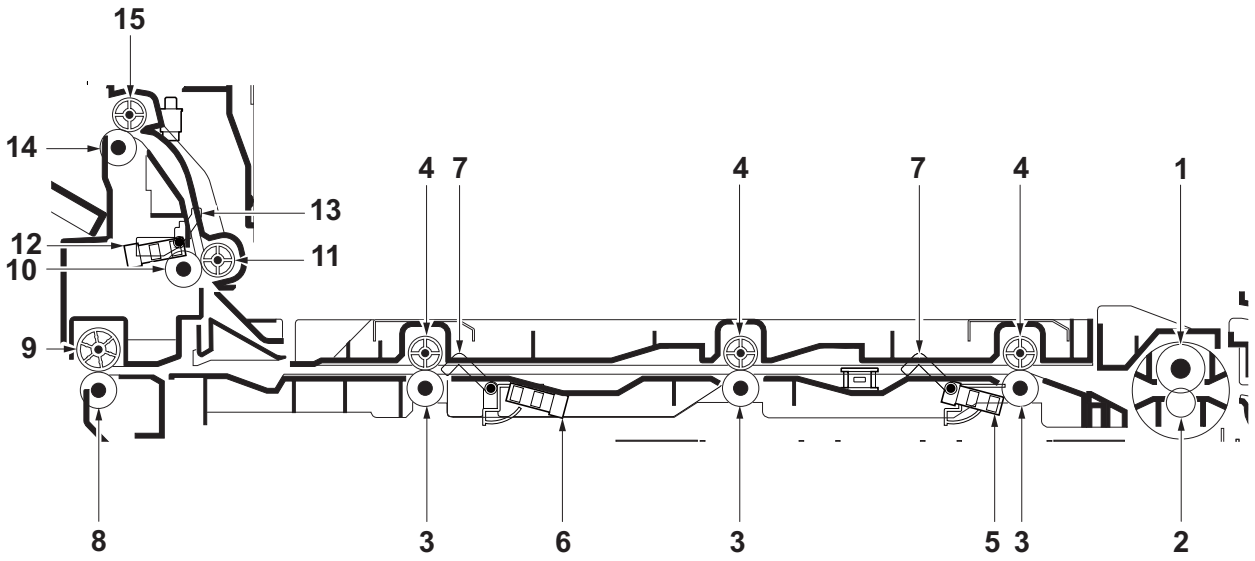


Figure 2-1-26 Bridge section

1. BR press roller 1
2. BR press roller 2
3. BR conveying roller
4. BR conveying pulley
5. BR conveying sensor1 (BRCS1)
6. BR conveying sensor2 (BRCS2)
7. Actuator(BR conveying sensor)
8. BR eject roller 1
9. BR eject pulley 1
10. BR feedshift roller
11. BR feedshift pulley
12. BR eject sensor (BRES)
13. Actuator(BR eject sensor)
14. BR eject roller 2
15. BR eject pulley 2

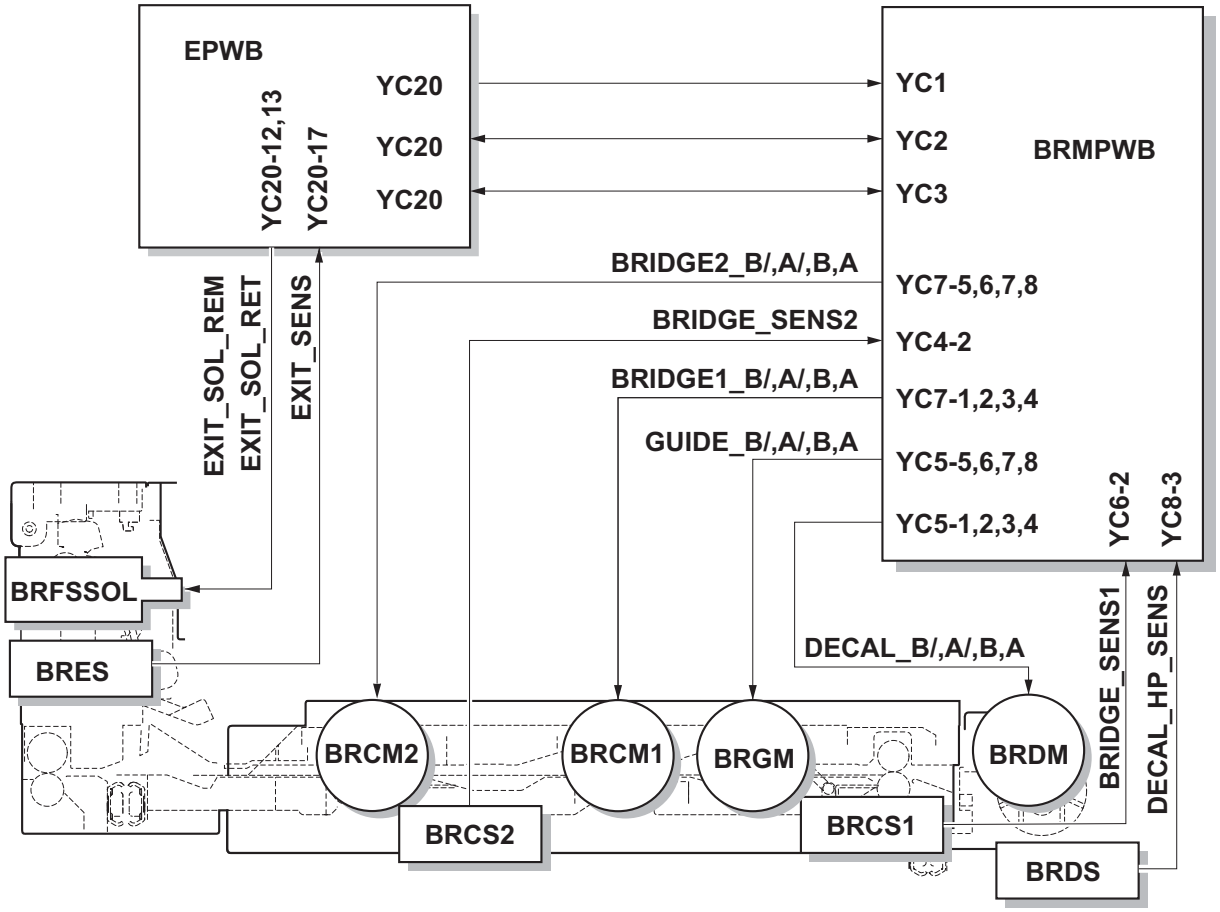


Figure 2-1-27 Bridge section block diagram

2-1-9 Job separator section

The job separator switches the paper path to eject printed paper to the right tray.

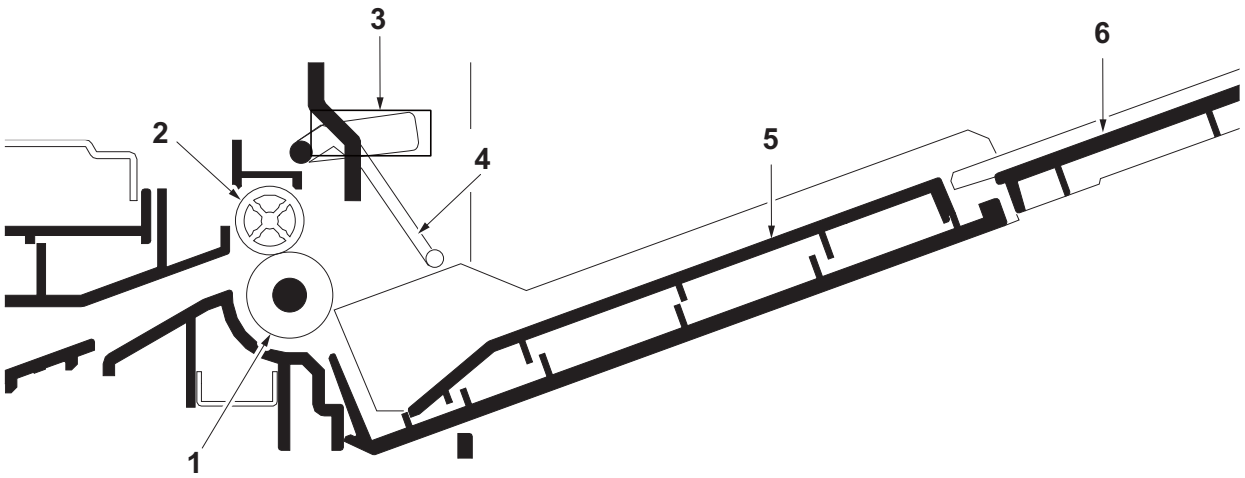


Figure 2-1-28 Job separator section

1. JS eject roller
2. JS eject pulleys
3. JS eject sensor (JSES)
4. Actuator (JS eject sensor)
5. Right tray
6. Tray extension

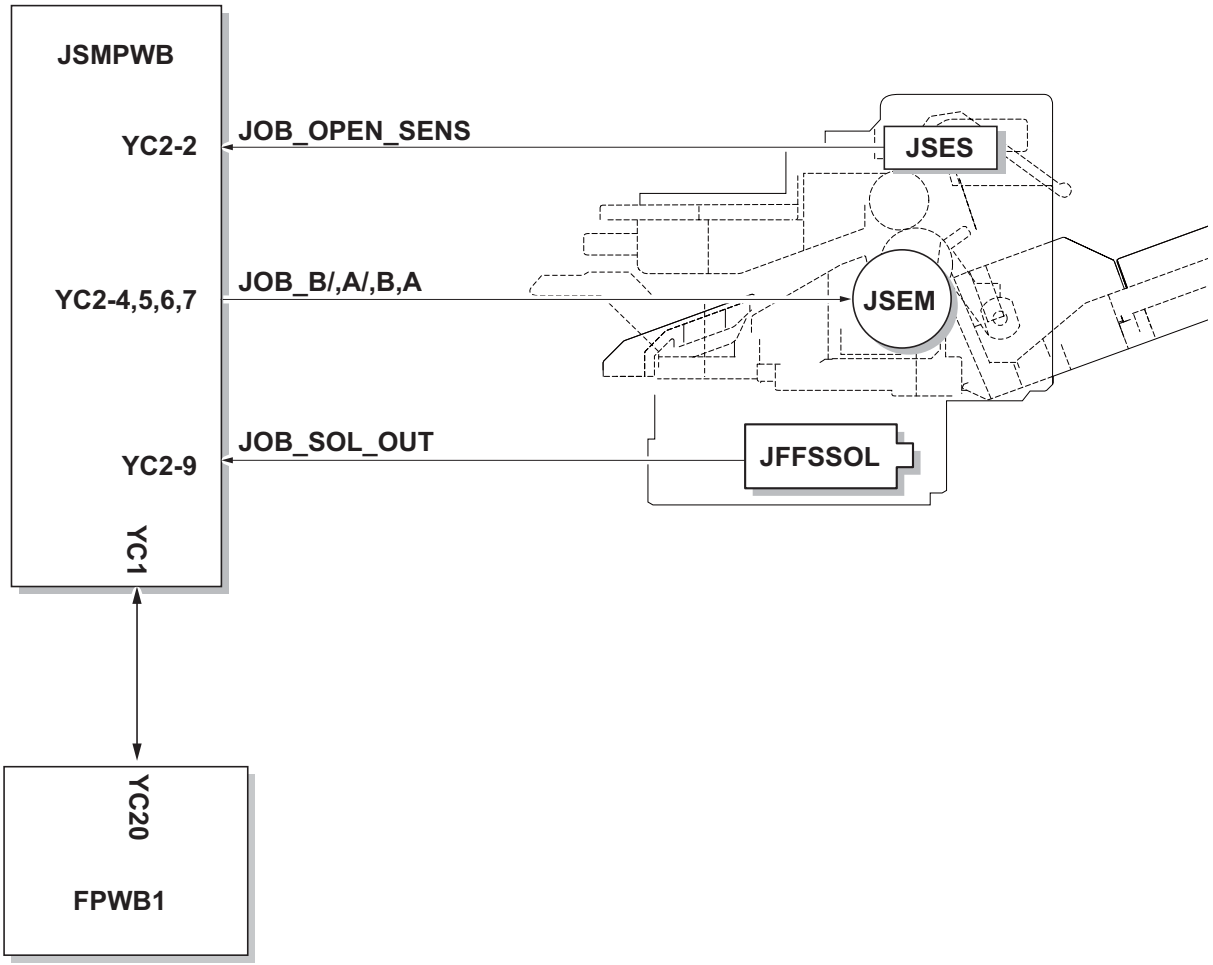


Figure 2-1-29 Job separator section block diagram

2-1-10 Duplex conveying section

The duplex conveying section consists of conveying path which sends the paper sent from the feedshift/ switchback section to the paper feed/conveying section when duplex printing.

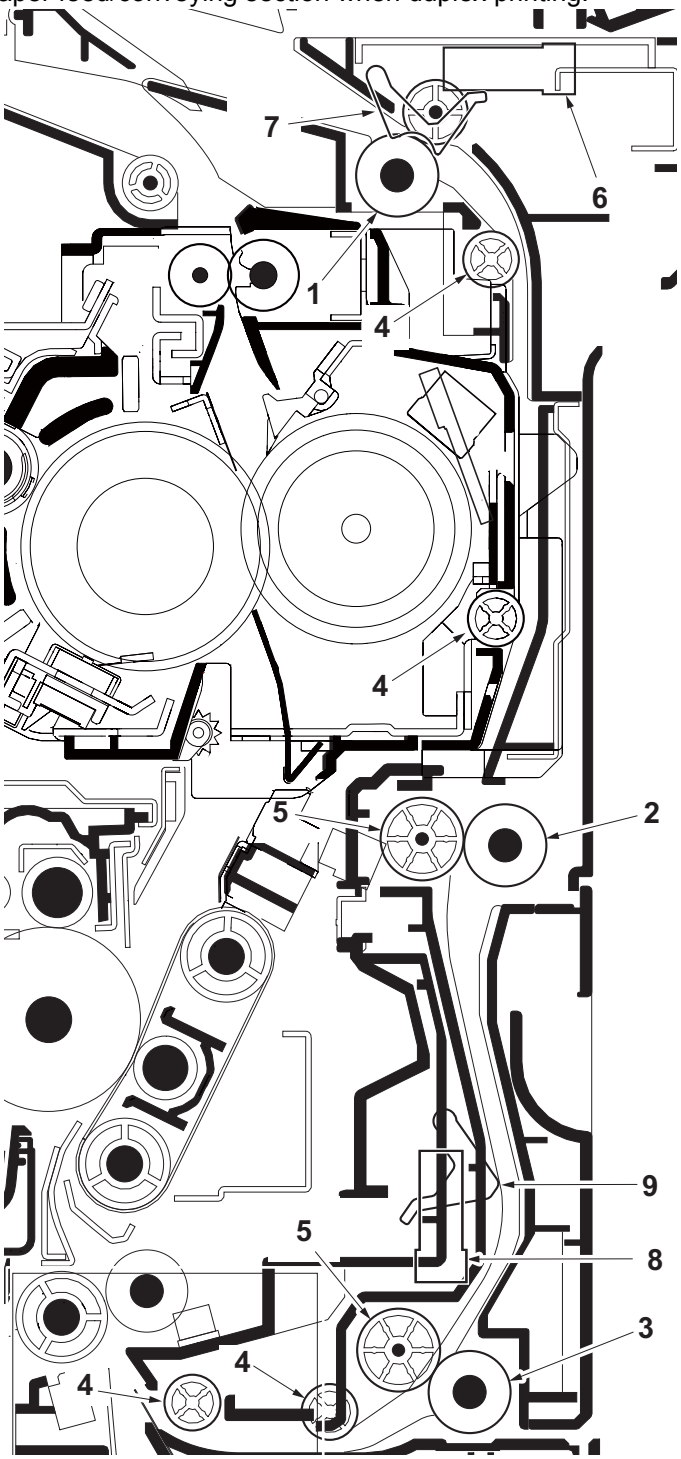


Figure 2-1-30 Duplex conveying section

1. Upper duplex roller
2. Middle duplex roller
3. Lower duplex roller
4. Duplex pulleys A
5. Duplex pulleys B
6. Duplex sensor 1 (DUS1)
7. Actuator (duplex sensor 1)
8. Duplex sensor 2 (DUS2)
9. Actuator (duplex sensor 2)

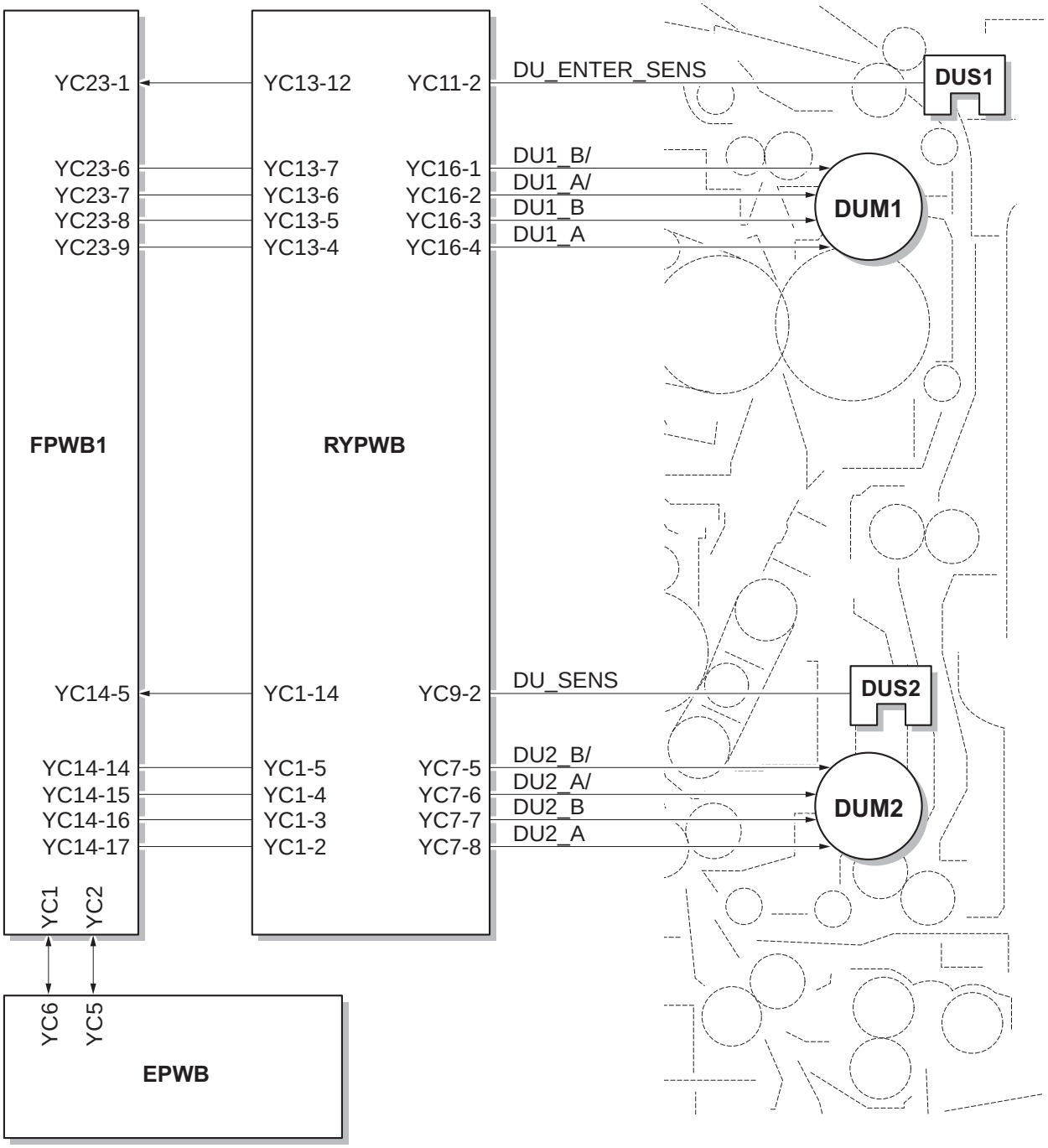


Figure 2-1-31 Duplex conveying section block diagram

2-1-11 Document processor

(1) Original feed section

The original feed section consists of the parts shown in figure. An original placed on the original table is conveyed to the original conveying section. Original is fed by the rotation of the DP forwarding pulley and DP original feed belt. The DP separation pulley prevents multiple sheets from being fed at one time, via the torque limiter.

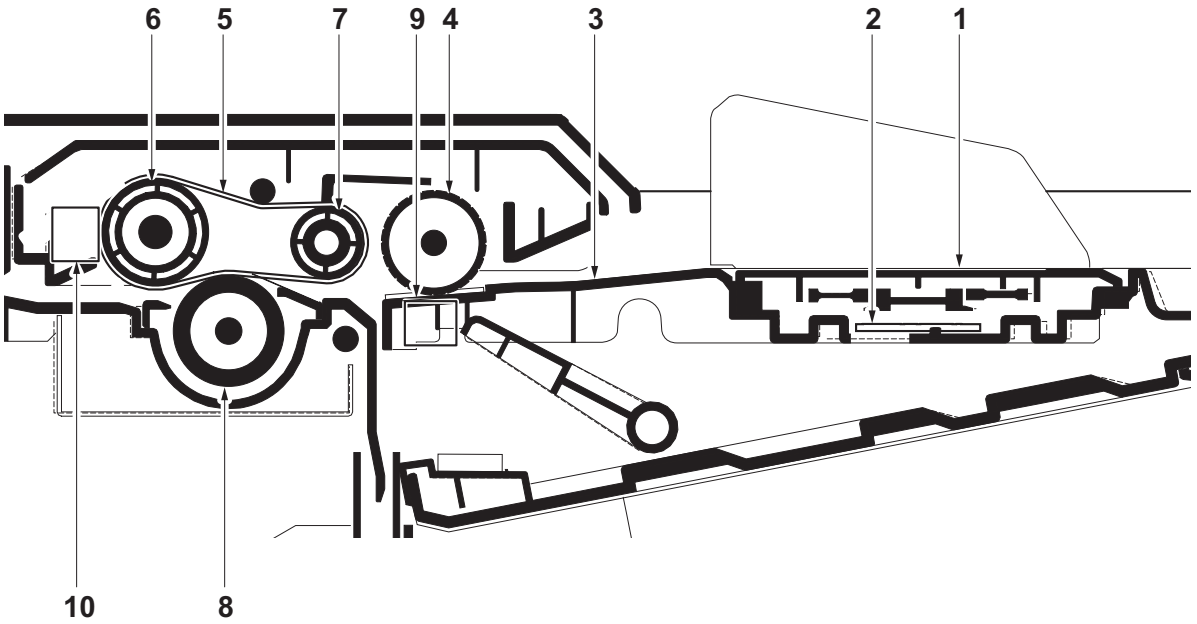


Figure 2-1-32 Original feed section

1. Original tray
2. DP original width switch (DPOWSW)
3. Original lift guide
4. DP forwarding pulley
5. DP feed belt
6. DP feed collar A
7. DP feed collar B
8. DP separation pulley
9. DP original sensor (DPOS)
10. DP feed sensor (DPFS)

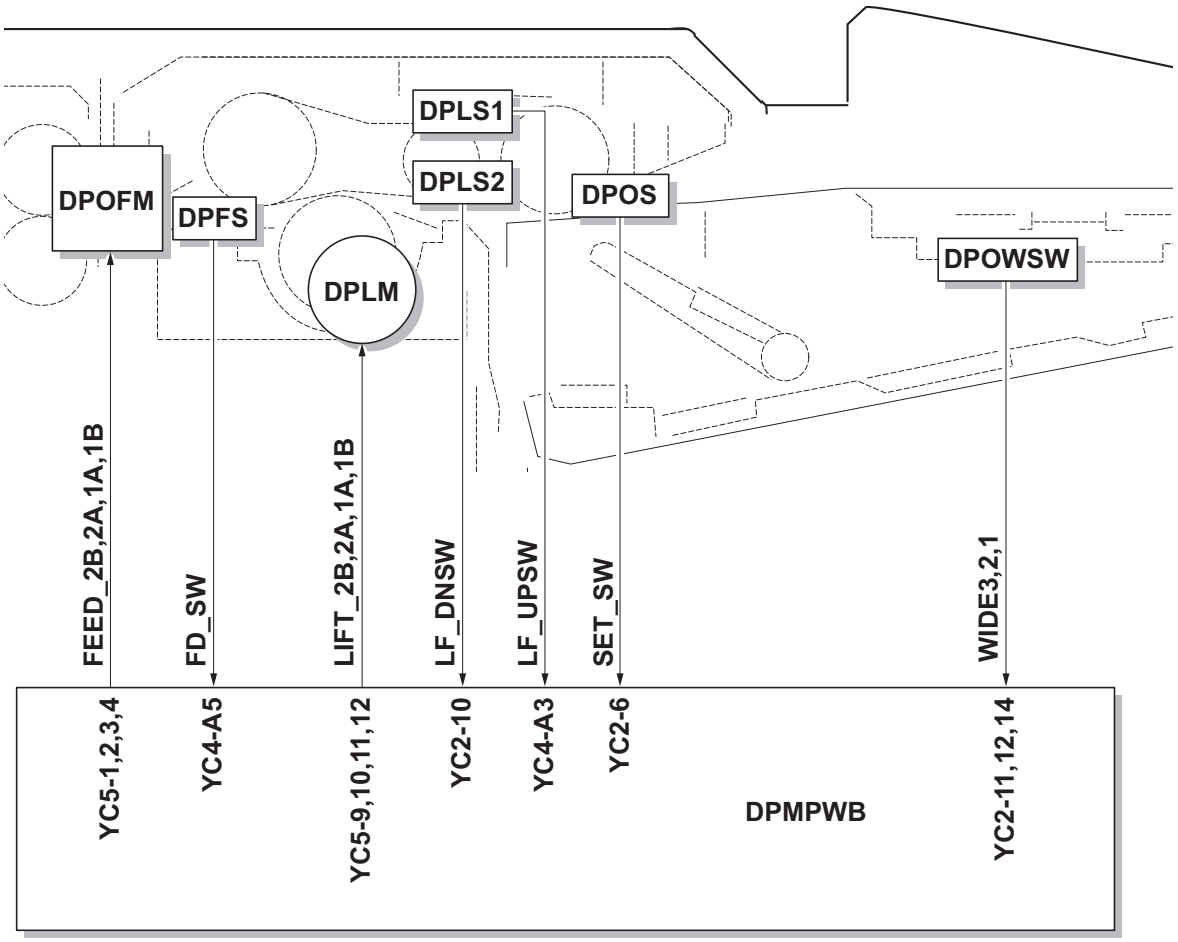


Figure 2-1-33 Original feed section block diagram

(2) Original conveying section

The original conveying section consists of the parts shown in figure. A conveyed original is scanned by the optical section (CCD) of machine when it passes through the slit glass of machine.
An original of which scanning is complete is ejected to the original eject table by the eject roller.

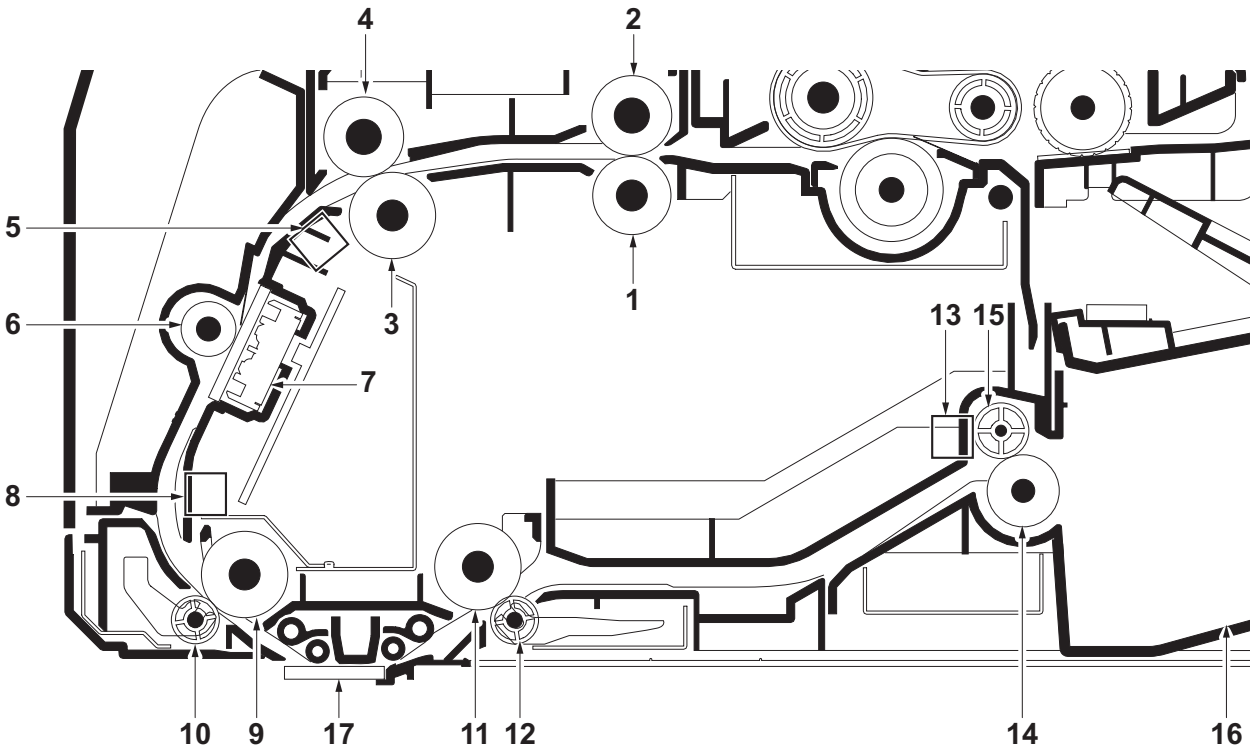


Figure 2-1-34 Original conveying section

(1)DP registration roller
(2)DP registration pulley
(3)DP upper conveying roller
(4)DP conveying pulley
(5)DP CIS sensor (DPCS)
(6)DP CIS roller
(7)CIS
(8)DP timing sensor (DPTS)
(9)DP left conveying roller
(10)DP conveying pulley
(11)DP right conveying roller
(12)DP conveying pulley
(13)DP eject sensor (DPES)
(14)DP eject roller
(15)DP eject pulley
(16))Original eject table
(17)Slit glass (machine main body)

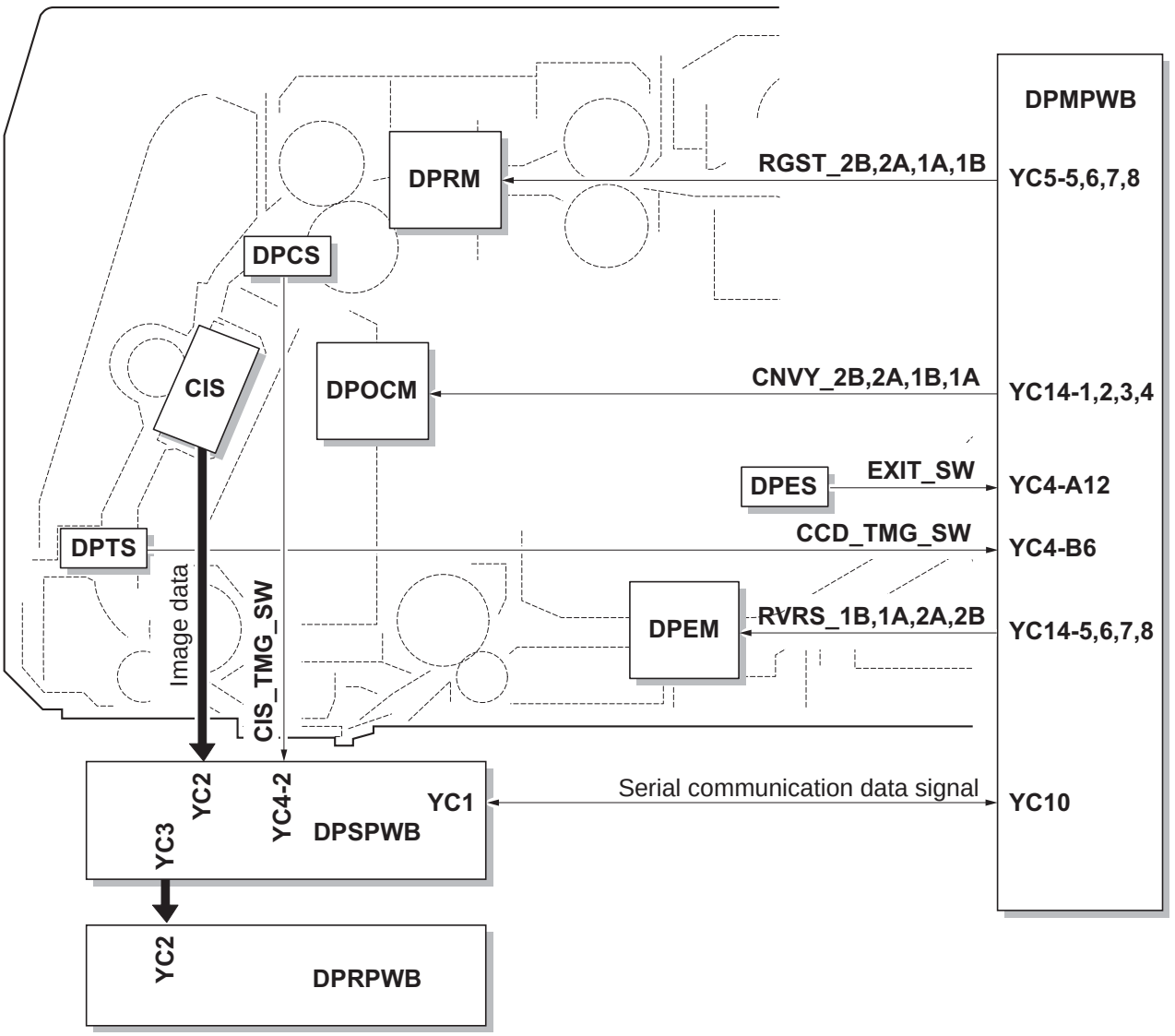


Figure 2-1-35 Original conveying section block diagram

This page is intentionally left blank.

2-2-1 Electrical parts layout

(1) PWBs

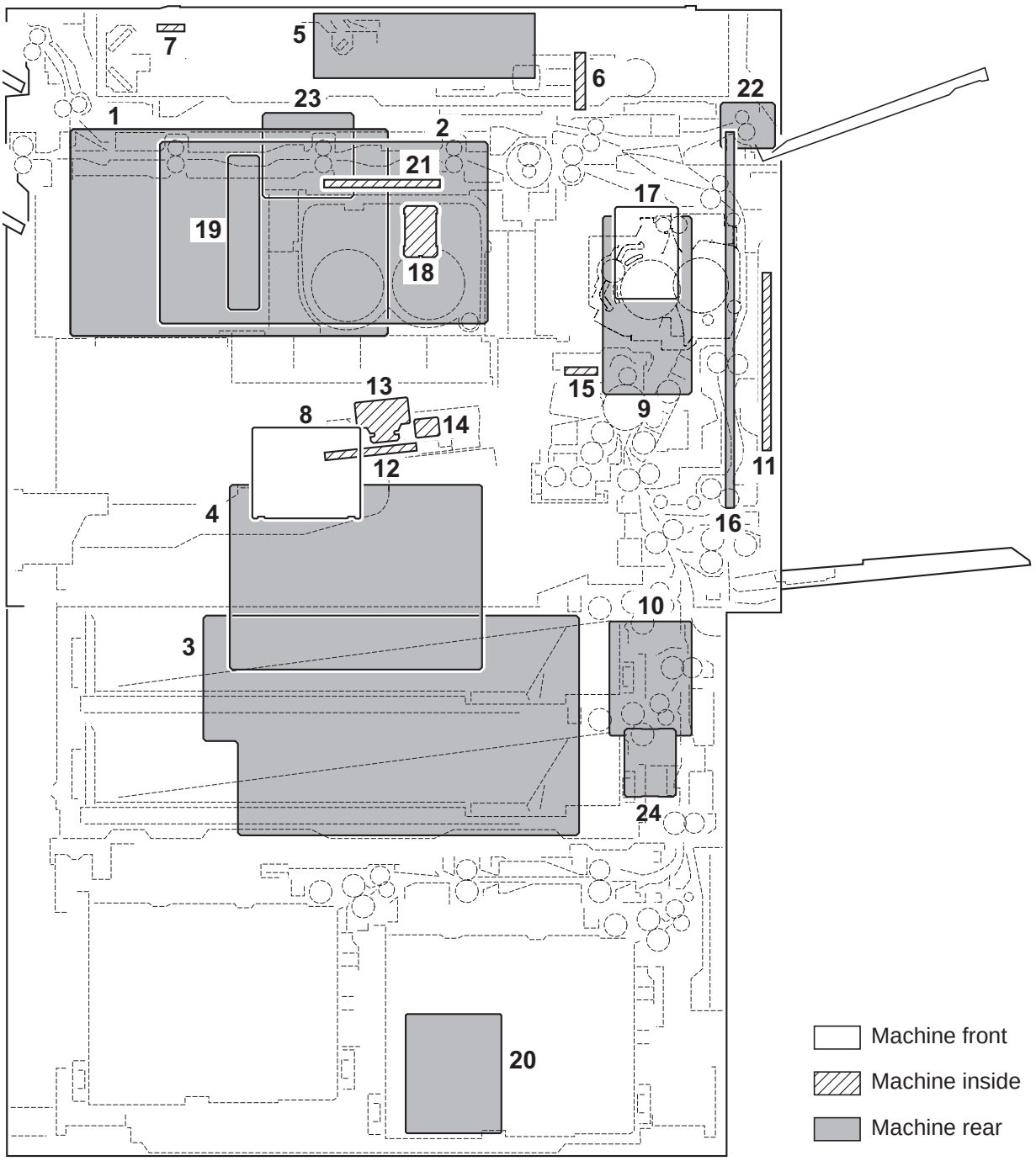


Figure 2-2-1 PWBs

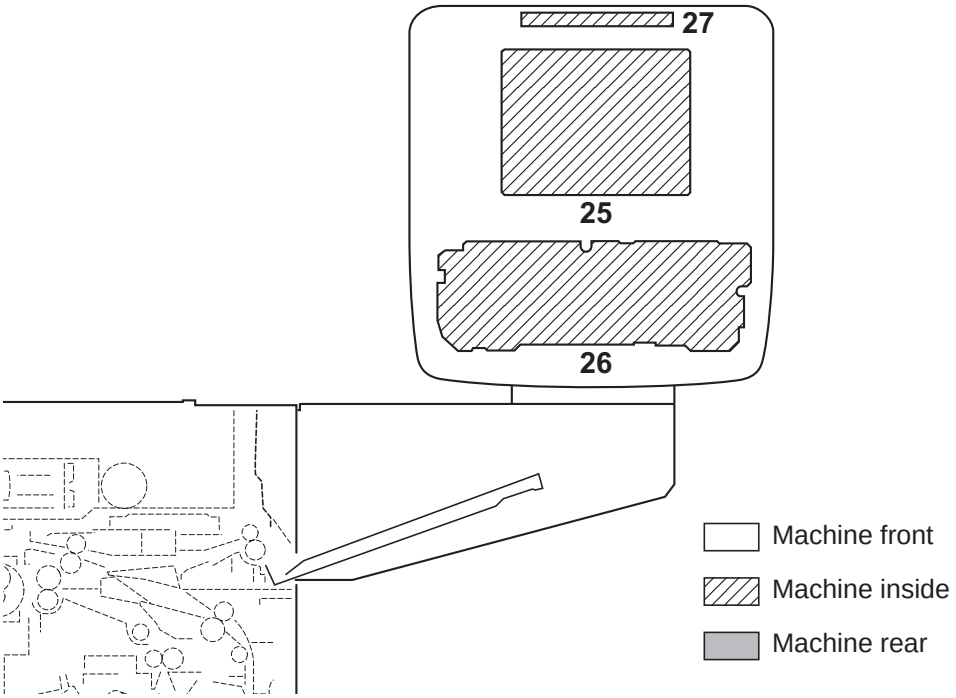


Figure 2-2-2 PWBs (operation section)

1. Main PWB (MPWB) ..... Controls the software such as the print data processing and provides the interface with computers.
2. Engine PWB (EPWB)..... Controls printer hardware such as high voltage/bias output control, paper conveying system control, and fuser temperature control, etc.
3. Power source PWB (PSPWB) ..... After full-wave rectification of AC power source input, switching for converting to 24 V DC and 12 V DC for output.
4. High voltage PWB (HVPWB) ..... Generates main charging, developer bias, transfer bias and separation bias.
5. ISC PWB (ISCPWB) ..... Controls the scanner section.
6. CCD PWB (CCDPWB)..... Reads the image of originals.
7. LED lamp PWB (LLPWB) ..... Exposes originals.
8. Front PWB (FRPWB)..... Consists of wiring relay circuit between engine PWB and drum units, developer units, eject unit.
9. Feed PWB 1 (FPWB1)..... Consists of wiring relay circuit between engine PWB and drive section, relay PWB.
10. Feed PWB 2 (FPWB2)..... Consists of wiring relay circuit between engine PWB and paper conveying section, drive section.
11. Relay PWB (RPWB) ..... Consists of wiring relay circuit between feed PWB 1 and paper conveying unit.
12. LSU relay PWB (LSURPWB)..... Consists of wiring relay circuit between engine PWB and laser scanner unit.
13. APC PWB (APCPWB) ..... Generates and controls the laser beam.
14. PD PWB (PDPWB) ..... Controls horizontal synchronizing timing of laser beam.
15. Drum PWB(DRPWB) ..... Drum individual information in EEPROM storage.
16. Fuser IH PWB (FIHPWB)..... Controls the fuser IH and fuser heater.
17. Eject PWB (EJPWB)..... Consists of wiring relay circuit between front PWB and fuser IH section.

18. RFID PWB (RFPWB)..... Reads the container information.
19. Interface PWB (IFPWB)..... Consists of wiring relay circuits between main PWB and Fax control PWB.
20. PF main PWB (PFMPWB)..... Controls electrical parts of the large capacity feeder.
21. BR main PWB (BRMPWB)..... Controls electrical parts of the bridge section.
22. JS main PWB (JSMPWB)..... Controls electrical parts of the job separator.
23. DP relay PWB (DPRPWB)..... Relay of image data.
24. Current PWB (CRPWB)*..... Converts the AC current input to the analog signal and delivers.
25. Operation PWB 1 (OPWB1)..... Controls touch panel and LCD indication.
26. Operation PWB 2 (OPWB2)..... Consists of the LED indicators and key switches.
27. Operation PWB 3 (OPWB3)..... Consists of the LED indicators.

*: 220 to 240 V specifications only.

List of correspondences of PWB names

No.	Name used in service manual	Part No.	Name used in parts list
1	Main PWB (MPWB)	302N794110 302N794120	120 V Specification Model: PARTS PWB MAIN ASSY SP 230 V Specification Model: PARTS PWB MAIN ASSY SP EU
2	Engine PWB (EPWB)	302N794100	PARTS PWB ENGINE ASSY SP
3	Power source PWB (PSPWB)	302LF94260	PARTS UNIT LOW VOLTAGE SP
4	High voltage PWB (HVPWB)	302LF94260	PARTS UNIT HIGH VOLTAGE MAIN SP
5	ISC PWB (ISCPWB)	302N494201	PARTS PWB ISC ASSY SP
6	CCD PWB (CCDPWB)		-
7	LED lamp PWB (LLPWB)		-
8	Front PWB (FRPWB)	302LF94210	PARTS PWB FRONT MONO ASSY SP
9	Feed PWB 1 (FPWB1)	302N494160	PARTS PWB FEED 1 ASSY SP
10	Feed PWB 2 (FPWB2)	302N494170	PARTS PWB FEED 2 ASSY SP
11	Relay PWB (RPWB)	302K994201	PARTS PWB JUNCTION ASSY SP
12	LSU relay PWB (LSURPWB)	302N994080	PARTS PWB LSU JUNC MONO ASSY SP
13	APC PWB (APCPWB)		-
14	PD PWB (PDPWB)		-
15	Drum PWB (DRPWB)		-
16	Fuser IH PWB (FIHPWB)	302N794030 302N794040	120 V Specification Model: PARTS IH BOX ASSY J SP 230 V Specification Model: PARTS IH BOX ASSY E SP
17	Eject PWB (EJPWB)	302LF94230	PARTS PWB EXIT ASSY SP
18	RFID PWB (RFPWB)	302K394070	PARTS PWB RFID ASSY SP
19	Interface PWB (IFPWB)	302K994270	PARTS PWB KUIO ASSY SP
20	PF main PWB (PFMPWB)	303NF94060	PARTS PWB FRONT DECK ASSY SP
21	BR main PWB (BRMPWB)	302K994830	PARTS PWB BRIDGE ASSY SP
22	JS main PWB (JSMPWB)	302K994600	PARTS PWB JOB SEPA ASSY SP
23	DP relay PWB (DPRPWB)	303P294010	PARTS PWB DPIF ASSY SP
24	Current PWB (CRPWB)*	302LF94230	PARTS PWB CURRENT AVE ASSY SP
25	Operation PWB 1 (OPWB1)	302N294150	PARTS PWB PANEL MAIN ASSY J SP
26	Operation PWB 2 (OPWB2)	302N294160	PARTS PWB OPERATION ASSY SP
27	Operation PWB 3 (OPWB3)	302N294170	PARTS PWB OPERATION LED ASSY SP

*: 220 to 240 V specifications only.

(2) Switches and sensors

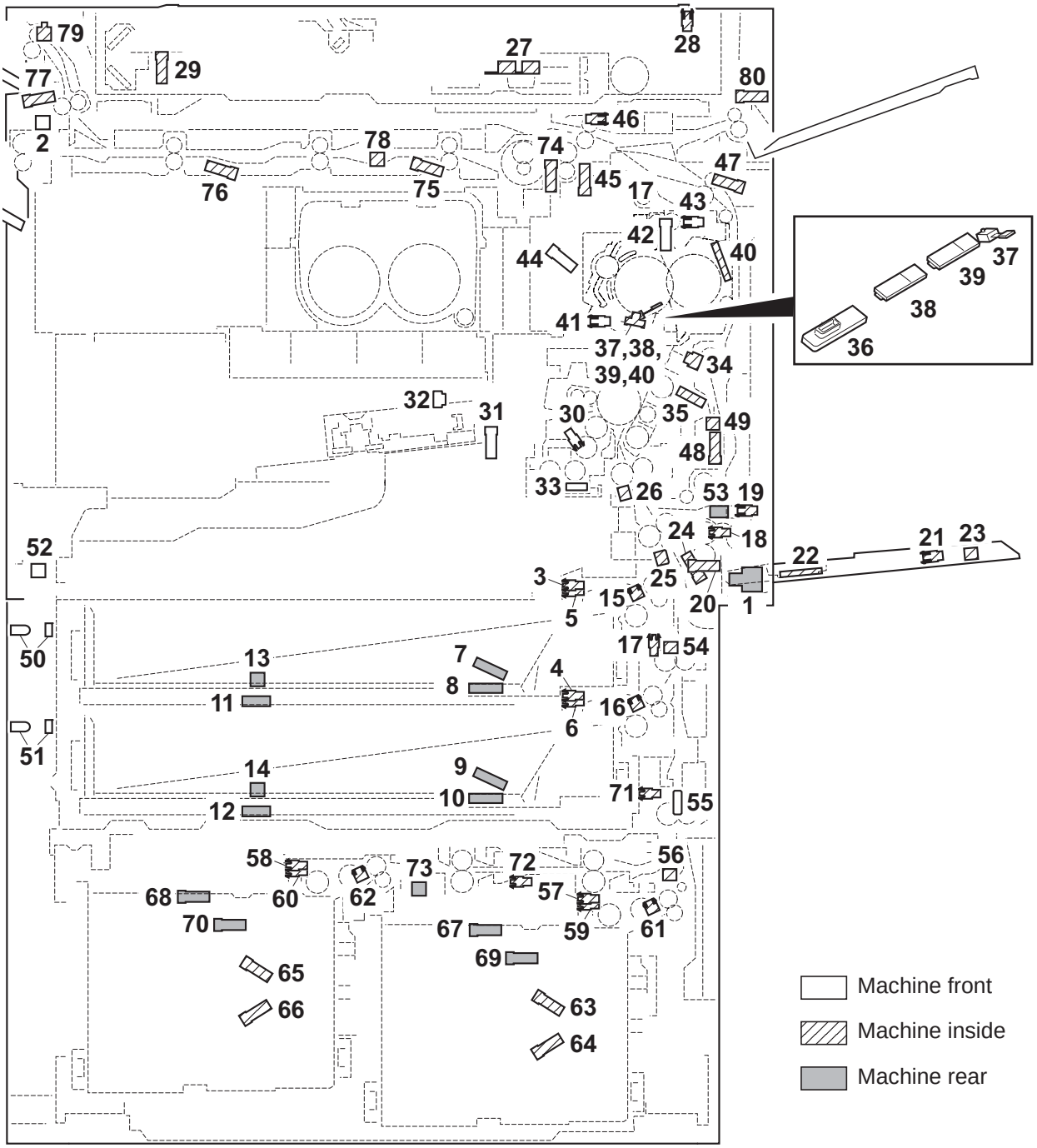


Figure 2-2-3 Switches and sensors

1. Main power switch (MSW) ..... Turns ON/OFF the AC power source.
2. Front cover switch (FRCSW) ..... Detects the opening and closing of the front cover.
3. Paper sensor 1 (PS1) ..... Detects the presence of paper (cassette 1).
4. Paper sensor 2 (PS2) ..... Detects the presence of paper (cassette 2).
5. Lift sensor 1 (LS1)..... Detects activation of upper limit of the bottom plate (cassette 1).
6. Lift sensor 2 (LS2)..... Detects activation of upper limit of the bottom plate (cassette 2).
7. Paper gauge sensor 1 (U) (PGS1(U))... Detects the paper gauge (cassette 1).
8. Paper gauge sensor 1 (L) (PGS1(L))... Detects the paper gauge (cassette 1).
9. Paper gauge sensor 2 (U) (PGS2(U))... Detects the paper gauge (cassette 2).

10. Paper gauge sensor 2 (L) (PGS2(L)).... Detects the paper gauge (cassette 2).
11. Paper length switch 1 (PLSW1)..... Detects the length of paper (cassette 1).
12. Paper length switch 2 (PLSW2)..... Detects the length of paper (cassette 2).
13. Paper width switch 1 (PWSW1)..... Detects the width of paper (cassette 1).
14. Paper width switch 2 (PWSW2)..... Detects the width of paper (cassette 2).
15. Feed sensor 1 (FS1)..... Detects a paper misfeed in the paper feed section (cassette 1).
16. Feed sensor 2 (FS2)..... Detects a paper misfeed in the paper feed section (cassette 2).
17. Paper conveying sensor (PCS)..... Detects a paper misfeed in the vertical conveying section.
18. MP paper sensor (MPPS)..... Detects the presence of paper (MP tray).
19. MP lift sensor 1 (MPLS1)..... Detects activation of upper limit of the MP plate.
20. MP lift sensor 2 (MPLS2)..... Detects activation of lower limit of the MP plate.
21. MP paper length switch (MPPLSW)..... Detects the length of paper (MP tray).
22. MP paper width switch (MPPWSW)..... Detects the width of paper (MP tray).
23. MP tray switch (MPTSW)..... Detects the MP tray extension is extend.
24. MP feed sensor (MPFS) ..... Detects a paper misfeed in the MP paper feed section.
25. Middle sensor (MS)..... Detects a paper misfeed in the paper conveying section.
26. Registration sensor (RS)..... Controls the secondary paper feed start timing.
27. Original size sensor (OSS) ..... Detects the size of the original.
28. Original detection switch (ODSW) ..... Detects the opening/closing of the document processor.
29. Home position sensor (HPS) ..... Detects the optical system in the home position.
30. Screw sensor (SRS) ..... Controls the toner replenishing for the toner container.
31. Developer shutter sensor (DEVSS) ..... Detects the opening and closing of the developer shutter.
32. Toner hopper sensor (THS) ..... Detects the quantity of toner in a toner hopper.
33. Toner sensor (TS) ..... Detects the toner density in the developer unit.
34. Loop sensor (LPS)..... Detects a paper misfeed. Controls the fuser motor by detecting deflection in the paper.
35. ID sensor (IDS) ..... Measures image density for calibration.
36. Fuser thermistor 1 (FTH1) ..... Detects the heat roller (fuser belt) temperature. (center)
37. Fuser thermistor 2 (FTH2) ..... Detects the heat roller (fuser belt) temperature. (edge)
38. Fuser thermistor 3 (FTH3) ..... Detects the heat roller (fuser belt) temperature. (A4)
39. Fuser thermistor 4 (FTH4) ..... Detects the heat roller (fuser belt) temperature. (A3)
40. Fuser thermistor 5 (FTH5) ..... Detects the press roller temperature.
41. Fuser belt sensor (FUBLS) ..... Detects positioning of fuser belt rotation.
42. Fuser release sensor (FURS)..... Detects fuser pressure release setting (envelope mode).
43. Fuser eject sensor (FUES) ..... Detects a paper misfeed in the fuser section.
44. IH core sensor (IHCS)..... Detects position of the IH center core.
45. Eject sensor (ES)..... Detects a paper misfeed in the feedshift section.
46. Switchback sensor (SBS) ..... Detects a paper misfeed in the switchback section.
47. Duplex sensor 1 (DUS1)..... Detects a paper misfeed in the duplex section.
48. Duplex sensor 2 (DUS2)..... Detects a paper misfeed in the duplex section.
49. Duplex cover switch (DUCSW)..... Detects the opening and closing of the duplex cover.
50. Waste toner sensor 1 (WTS1)..... Detects when the waste toner box is full.
51. Waste toner sensor 2 (WTS2)..... Detects when the waste toner box is near end.
52. Waste toner detection switch (WTDSW)..... Detects the waste toner box is installed.
53. Paper conveying unit switch (PCUSW) ..... Detects the opening and closing of the paper conveying unit.
54. Paper conveying cover switch (DUCSW) ..... Detects the opening and closing of the paper conveying cover.
55. Outer temperature sensor (OTEMS)..... Detects the outside temperature and humidity.
56. PF paper conveying cover switch (PFPCCSW)..... Detects the opening and closing of the PF paper conveying cover.

57. PF paper sensor 1 (PFPS1)..... Detects the presence of paper (cassette 3).
58. PF paper sensor 2 (PFPS2)..... Detects the presence of paper (cassette 4).
59. PF lift sensor 1 (PFLS1)..... Detects activation of upper limit of the bottom plate (cassette 3).
60. PF lift sensor 2 (PFLS2)..... Detects activation of upper limit of the bottom plate (cassette 4).
61. PF feed sensor 1 (PFFS1)..... Detect paper jams of paper feed section (cassette 3).
62. PF feed sensor 2 (PFFS2)..... Detect paper jams of paper feed section (cassette 4).
63. PF paper gauge sensor 1 upper (PFPGS1(U))..... Detects the paper gauge (cassette 3).
64. PF paper gauge sensor 1 lower (PFPGS1(L))..... Detects the paper gauge (cassette 3).
65. PF paper gauge sensor 2 upper (PFPGS2(U))..... Detects the paper gauge (cassette 4).
66. PF paper gauge sensor 2 lower (PFPGS2(L))..... Detects the paper gauge (cassette 4).
67. PF paper size detection switch 1 (PFSDSW1)..... Detects the size of paper (cassette 3).
68. PF paper size detection switch 2 (PFSDSW2)..... Detects the size of paper (cassette 4).
69. PF cassette detection switch 1 (PFCDSW1)..... Detects the presence of cassette 3.
70. PF cassette detection switch 2 (PFCDSW2)..... Detects the presence of cassette 4.
71. PF paper conveying sensor 1 (PFPCS1)..... Detects a paper misfeed in the paper vertical conveying section.
72. PF paper conveying sensor 2 (PFPCS2)..... Detects a paper misfeed in the paper horizontal conveying section.
73. PF paper conveying unit switch (PFPCUSW)..... Detects the presence of PF paper conveying unit.
74. BR decurler sensor (BRDS)..... Detects positioning of decurler rotation.
75. BR conveying sensor 1 (BRCS1)..... Detects a paper misfeed in the bridge section.
76. BR conveying sensor 2 (BRCS2)..... Detects a paper misfeed in the bridge section
77. BR eject sensor (BRES)..... Detects a paper misfeed in the bridge eject section
78. BR conveying unit switch (BRCUSW)..... Detects presence of the bridge conveying unit.
79. BR eject cover switch (BRECSW)..... Detects opening/closing of the bridge eject cover.
80. JS eject sensor (JSES)..... Detects a paper misfeed in the job separator section.

(3) Motors

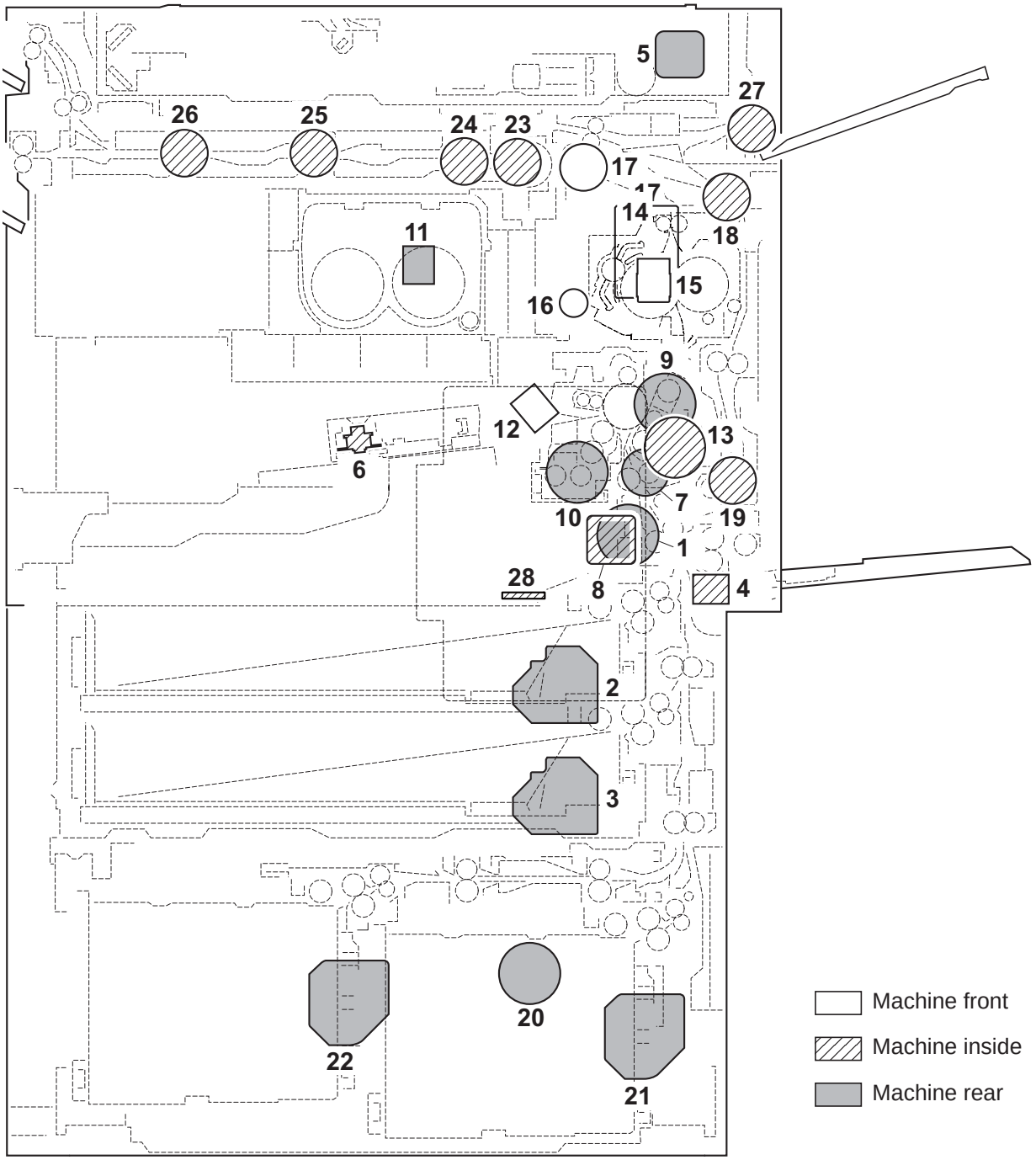


Figure 2-2-4 Motors

1. Paper feed motor (PFM) ..... Drives the paper feed section.
2. Lift motor 1 (LM1)..... Operates the bottom plate (cassette 1).
3. Lift motor 2 (LM2)..... Operates the bottom plate (cassette 2).
4. MP lift motor (MPLM) ..... Operates the MP plate.
5. Scanner motor (SM)..... Drives the optical system.
6. Polygon motor (PM) ..... Drives the polygon mirror.
7. Registration motor (RM)* ..... Drives the registration section.
8. Middle motor (MM)* ..... Drives the paper conveying section.
9. Drum motor (DRM) ..... Drives the drum unit.

10. Developer motor (DEVM)..... Drives the developer unit.
11. Toner motor (TM) ..... Drives the toner container.
12. Toner hopper motor (THM) ..... Replenishes toner to the developer unit.
13. Transfer motor (TRM) ..... Drives the transfer section.
14. Fuser motor (FUM) ..... Drives the fuser section.
15. Fuser release motor (FURM) ..... Drives fuser pressure release.
16. IH core motor (IHCM)..... Drives the fuser IH section.
17. Eject motor (EM) ..... Drives the feedshift/switchback sections.
18. Duplex motor 1 (DUM1) ..... Drives the duplex section.
19. Duplex motor 2 (DUM2) ..... Drives the duplex section.
20. PF paper feed motor (PFPFM) ..... Drives the paper feed section of the large capacity feeder.
21. PF lift motor 1 (PFLM1)..... Operates the bottom plate (cassette 3).
22. PF lift motor 2 (PFLM2)..... Operates the bottom plate (cassette 4).
23. BR decurler motor (BRDM)..... Drives the decurler (press roller).
24. BR guide motor (BRGM)..... Drives the rotary decurler.
25. BR conveying motor 1 (BRCM1)..... Drives the paper conveying section.
26. BR conveying motor 2 (BRCM2)..... Drives the paper conveying section.
27. JS eject motor (JSEM)..... Drives the job separator.
28. Toner vibration motor (TVM) ..... Vibration of the filter inside the waste toner box.

(4) Fan motors

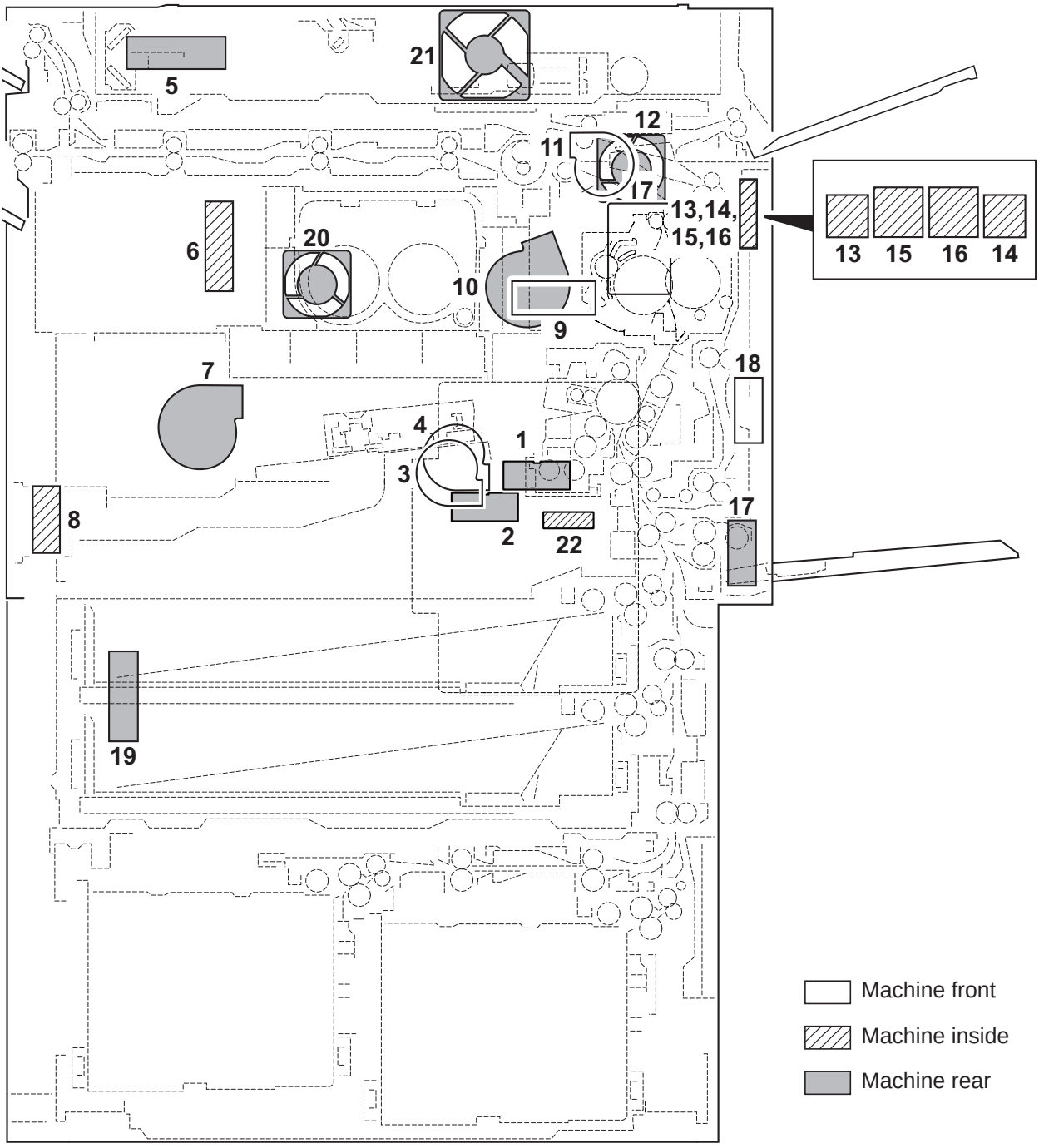


Figure 2-2-5 Motors

1. Toner fan motor 1 (TFM1)..... Retrieval of toner that was scattered.
2. Toner fan motor 2 (TFM2)..... Retrieval of toner that was scattered.
3. Developer fan motor 1 (DEVFM1) ..... Cools the developer section.
4. Developer fan motor 2 (DEVFM2) ..... Cools the developer section.
5. Exhaust fan motor 1 (EXFM1) ..... Cools the machine inside.
6. Exhaust fan motor 2 (EXFM2) ..... Cools the machine inside.
7. Exhaust fan motor 3 (EXFM3) ..... Cools the machine inside.
8. LSU fan motor (LSUFM) ..... Cools the laser scanner unit section.
9. Fuser front fan motor (FUFFM)..... Cools the fuser section (front side).

10. Fuser rear fan motor (FURFM) ..... Cools the fuser section (rear side).
11. Eject front fan motor (EFFM) ..... Cools the feedshift/switchback sections (front side).
12. Eject rear fan motor (ERFM)..... Cools the feedshift/switchback sections (rear side).
13. Eject fan motor 1 (EFM1)..... Cools the feedshift/switchback sections.
14. Eject fan motor 2 (EFM2)..... Cools the feedshift/switchback sections.
15. Fuser fan motor 1 (FUFM1) ..... Cools the fuser section.
16. Fuser fan motor 2 (FUFM2) ..... Cools the fuser section.
17. IH fan motor (IHFM)..... Cools the fuser IH PWB.
18. Duplex fan motor (DUFM)..... Cools the duplex section.
19. Power source fan motor (PSFM) ..... Cools the power source section.
20. Controller fan motor (CONFM)..... Cools the controller section.
21. Bridge fan motor (BRFM)..... Cools the bridge section.
22. Assist fan motor (ASFM)..... Suction of toner inside the development duct.

(5) Others

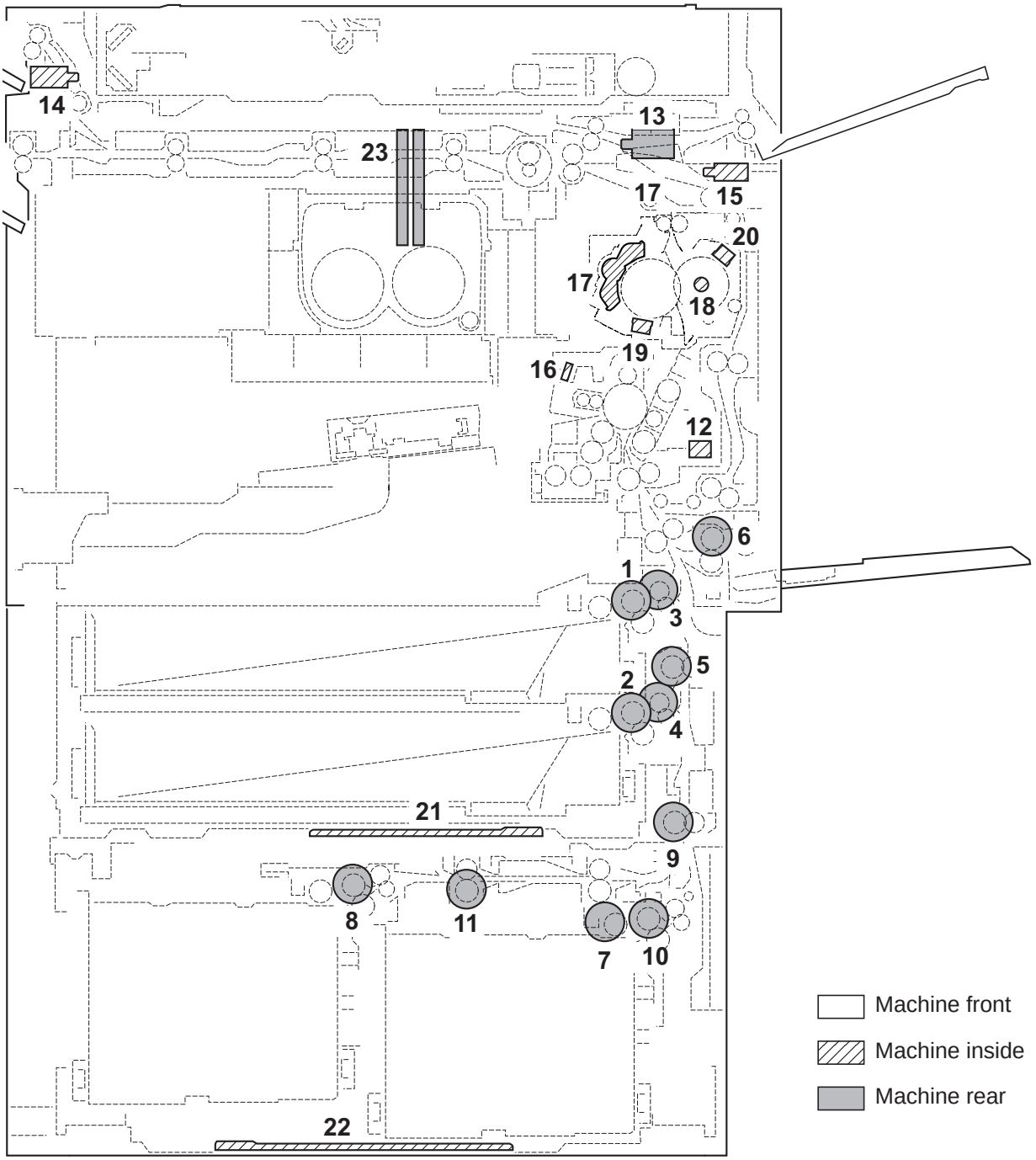


Figure 2-2-6 Others

1. Paper feed clutch 1 (PFCL1) ..... Primary paper feed from cassette 1.
2. Paper feed clutch 2 (PFCL2) ..... Primary paper feed from cassette 2.
3. Assist clutch 1 (ASCL1) ..... Controls the drive of the assist roller (cassette 1).
4. Assist clutch 2 (ASCL2) ..... Controls the drive of the assist roller (cassette 2).
5. Paper conveying clutch (PCCL)..... Controls the drive of vertical conveying section.
6. MP paper feed clutch (MPPFCL) ..... Controls primary paper feed from the MP tray.
7. PF paper feed clutch 1 (PFPFCL1)..... Primary paper feed from cassette 3.
8. PF paper feed clutch 2 (PFPFCL2)..... Primary paper feed from cassette 4.

9. PF paper conveying clutch 1 (PFPCCL1)..... Controls the drive of the vertical conveying section.
10. PF paper conveying clutch 2 (PFPCCL2)..... Controls the drive of the horizontal conveying section.
11. PF paper conveying clutch 3 (PFPCCL3)..... Controls the drive of the horizontal conveying section.
12. Cleaning solenoid (CLSOL) ..... Controls the ID sensor cleaning.
13. Feedshift solenoid (FSSOL)..... Operates the feedshift guide.
14. BR feedshift solenoid (BRFSSOL)..... Operates the feedshift guide.
15. JS feedshift solenoid (JSFSSOL) ..... Operates the feedshift guide.
16. Cleaning lamp (CL) ..... Eliminates the residual electrostatic charge on the drum.
17. Fuser IH (FIH) ..... Heats the heat roller (fuser belt).
18. Fuser heater (FH) ..... Heats the press roller.
19. Fuser thermostat 1 (FTS1)..... Prevents overheating of the heat roller.
20. Fuser thermostat 2 (FTS2)..... Prevents overheating of the press roller.
21. Cassette heater (CH) ..... Dehumidifies paper in cassette 1 and 2 (option).
22. Cassette heater (CH) ..... Dehumidifies paper in cassette 3 and 4 (option).
23. Hard disk (HDD)..... Storages the image data and information of job accounting mode.

(6) PWBs (document processor)

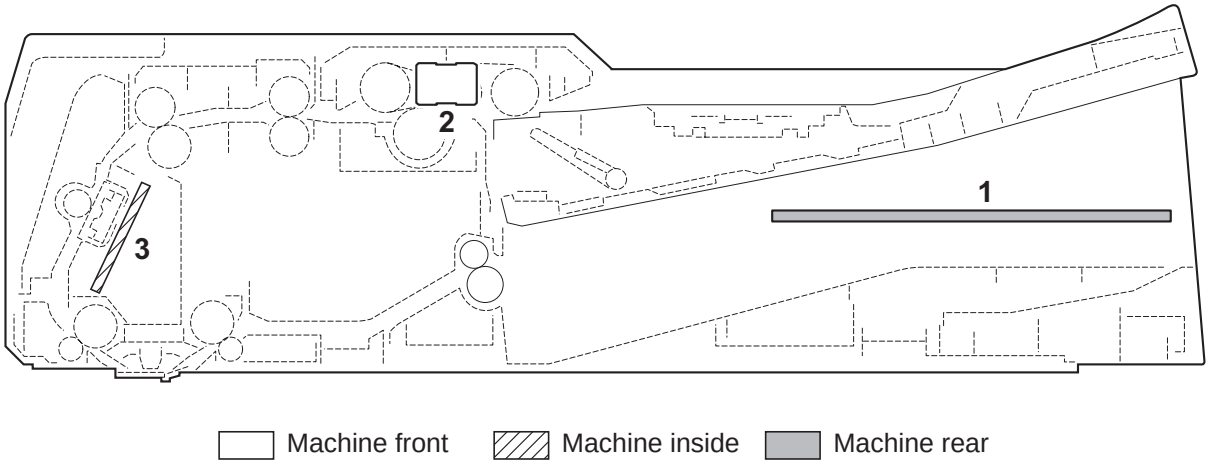


Figure 2-2-7 PWBs (document processor)

1. DP main PWB (DPMPWB) ..... Controls electrical components of the document processor.
2. DP LED PWB (DPLPWB) ..... Indicates presence of originals or an original jam.
3. DP SHD PWB (DPSPWB) ..... Controls the image processing.

(7) Switches and sensors (document processor)

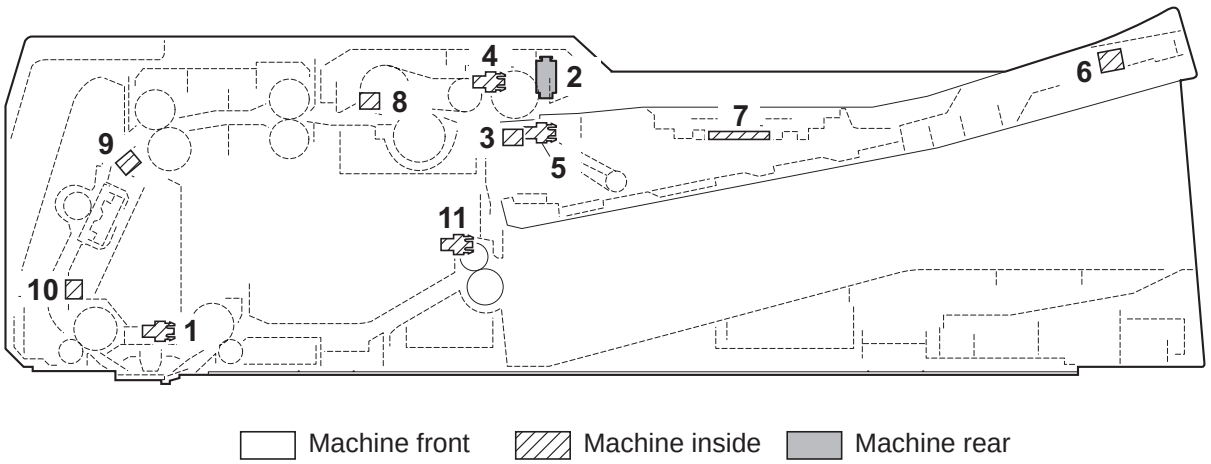


Figure 2-2-8 Switches and sensors (document processor)

1. DP open/close switch (DPOCSW)..... Detects the opening/closing of the document processor.
2. DP interlock switch (DPILSW) ..... Breaks the safety circuit when the DP top cover is opened; resets original misfeed detection.
3. DP original sensor (DPOS)..... Detects the presence of an original.
4. DP lift sensor1 (DPLS1)..... Detects the original tray reaching the upper limit.
5. DP lift sensor2 (DPLS2)..... Detects the original tray reaching the lower limit.
6. DP original length switch (DPOLSW).... Detects the length of the original.
7. DP original width switch (DPOWSW).... Detects the width of the original.
8. DP feed sensor (DPFS) ..... Detects primary original feed end timing.
9. DP CIS sensor (DPCS)..... Detects the original scanning timing.
10. DP timing sensor (DPTS)..... Detects the original scanning timing.
11. DP eject sensor (DPES) ..... Detects an original misfeed in the original eject section.

(8) Motors (document processor)

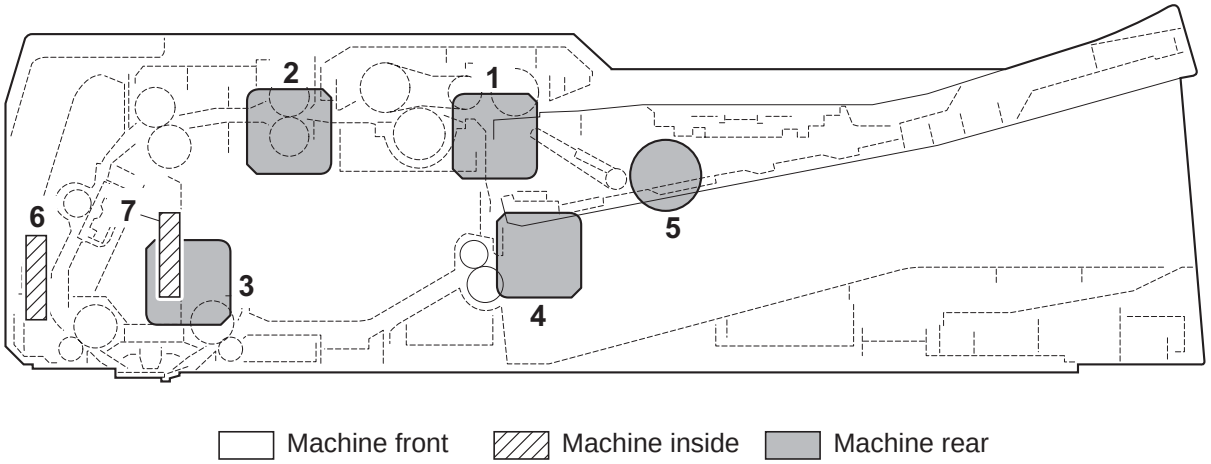


Figure 2-2-9 Motors (document processor)

1. DP original feed motor (DPOFM)..... Drives the original feeding section.
2. DP ragistration motor (DPRM)..... Drives the DP registration roller.
3. DP conveying motor (DPOCM)..... Drives the original conveying section.
4. DP eject motor (DPEM) ..... Drives the DP eject roller.
5. DP lift motor (DPLM)..... Operates the original lift guide.
6. DP fan motor1 (DPFM1) ..... Cools the drive section.
7. DP fan motor2 (DPFM2) ..... Cools the CIS.

2-3-1 Main PWB

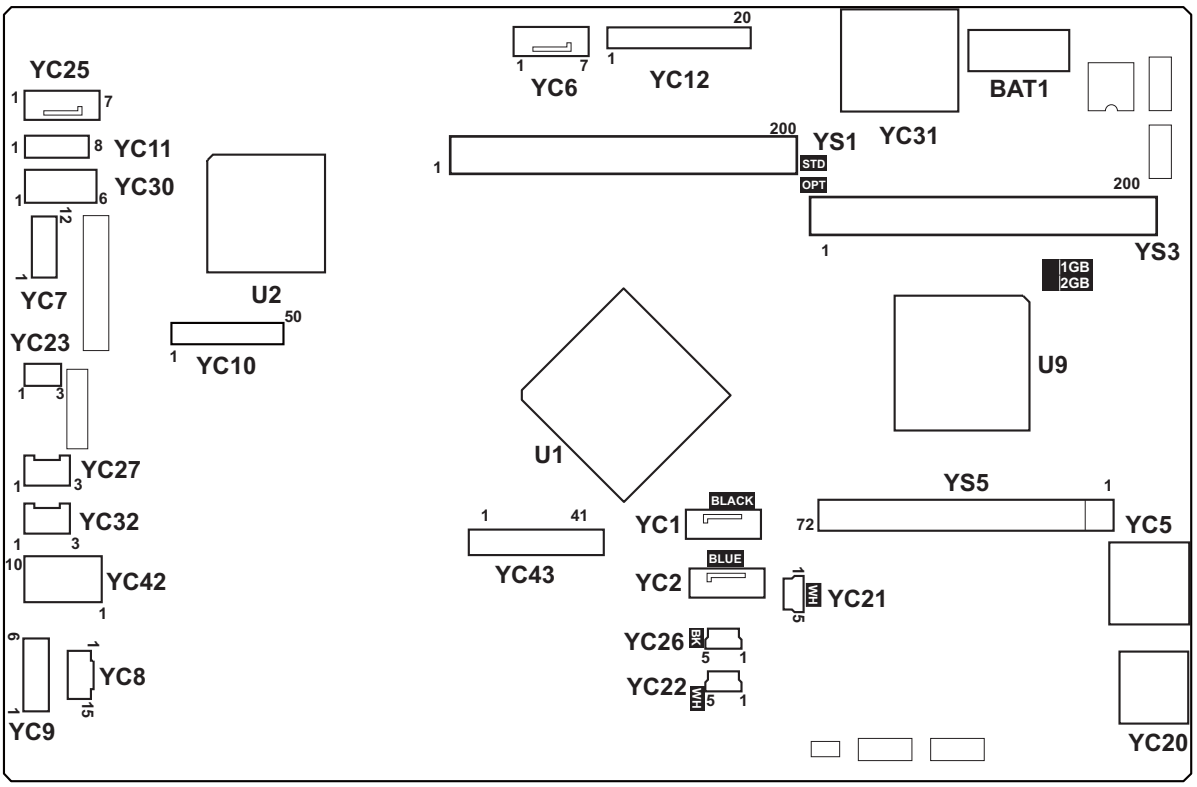


Figure 2-3-1 Main PWB silk-screen diagram

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC1	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to hard disk 1	2	TXP	O	-	HDD1 data signal
	3	TXN	O	-	HDD1 data signal
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	RXN	I	-	HDD1 data signal
	6	RXP	I	-	HDD1 data signal
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
YC2	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to hard disk 2	2	TXP	O	-	HDD2 data signal
	3	TXN	O	-	HDD2 data signal
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	RXN	I	-	HDD2 data signal
	6	RXP	I	-	HDD2 data signal
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
YC5	1	TD1+	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Transmission data
Connected to ethernet	2	TD1-	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Transmission data
	3	TD2+	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Transmission data
	4	TD2-	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Transmission data
	5	CT1	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output
	6	CT2	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output
	7	TD3+	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Transmission data
	8	TD3-	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Transmission data
	9	TD4+	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Transmission data
	10	TD4-	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Transmission data
	11	GRLED_A1	O	0/3.3 V DC	LED emitter signal
	12	GRLED_K1	O	0/3.3 V DC	LED emitter signal
	13	YWLED_A2	O	0/3.3 V DC	LED emitter signal
	14	YWLED_K2	O	0/3.3 V DC	LED emitter signal
YC6	1	GND	-	-	-
Connected to operation panel PWB1	2	LCD_OFF	O	0/3.3 V DC	Control signal
	3	LOCKN	O	0/3.3 V DC	Lock signal
	4	GND	-	-	-
	5	TX0N	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Transmission data signal
	6	TX0P	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Transmission data signal
	7	GND	-	-	-

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC7	1	KMDET	I	0/3.3 V DC	KMAS set signal
Connected to KMAS	2	NC	-	-	Not used
	3	KMDREQ	I	0/3.3 V DC	KMAS control signal
	4	KMACK	O	0/3.3 V DC	KMAS control signal
	5	KMRXD	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	KMAS received data signal
	6	SGND	-	-	Ground
	7	KMTXD	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	KMAS transmission data signal
	8	SGND	-	-	Ground
	9	SGND	-	-	Ground
	10	SGND	-	-	Not used
	11	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to KMAS
	12	+5V	-	-	Not used
YC8	1	VBUS1	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to IFPWB
Connected to interface PWB	2	USB_DN1	I/O	-	USB data signal
	3	USB_DP1	I/O	-	USB data signal
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	AUDIO1	I	Analog	Audio signal
	6	WAKEUP1	O	0/3.3 V DC	Control signal
	7	RESET1	I	0/3.3 V DC	Reset signal
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
	9	VBUS0	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to IFPWB
	10	USB_DN0	I/O	-	USB data signal
	11	USB_DP0	I/O	-	USB data signal
	12	GND	-	-	Ground
	13	AUDIO0	I	Analog	Audio signal
	14	WAKEUP0	O	0/3.3 V DC	Control signal
	15	RESET0	I	0/3.3 V DC	Reset signal
YC9	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to interface PWB	2	5V_CUT0	I	0/3.3 V DC	5 V DC cut signal
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to IFPWB
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	5V_CUT1	I	0/3.3 V DC	5 V DC cut signal

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC10	1	DP_CONECTN	I	0/3.3 V DC	DPRPWB Control signal
Connected to DP relay PWB	2	DP_SYSCLKOUT	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DPRPWB clock signal
	3	PCIEN3_DP2A	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	PCIEP3_DP2A	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
	8	PCIEN_REFCLK_D	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DPRPWB clock signal
	9	GND	-	-	Ground
	10	PCIEP_REFCLK_D	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DPRPWB clock signal
	11	PCIEN3_A2DP	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	12	GND	-	-	Ground
	13	PCIEP3_A2DP	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	14	GND	-	-	Ground
	15	GND	-	-	Ground
	16	URAN_RSTN	O	0/3.3 V DC	DPRPWB Control signal
	17	PCIEN2_DP2A	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	18	+3.3V3	-	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to DPRPWB
	19	PCIEP2_DP2A	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	20	+3.3V3	-	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to DPRPWB
	21	GND	-	-	Ground
	22	+3.3V3	-	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to DPRPWB
	23	PCIEN2_A2DP	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	24	+3.3V3	-	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to DPRPWB
	25	PCIEP2_A2DP	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	26	+3.3V3	-	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to DPRPWB
	27	GND	-	-	Ground
	28	+3.3V3	-	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to DPRPWB
	29	PCIEN1_DP2A	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	30	+3.3V3	-	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to DPRPWB
	31	PCIEP1_DP2A	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	32	+3.3V3	-	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to DPRPWB
	33	GND	-	-	Ground
	34	+3.3V3	-	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to DPRPWB

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC10	35	PCIEN1_A2DP	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
Connected to DP relay PWB	36	GND	-	-	Ground
	37	PCIEP1_A2DP	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	38	GND	-	-	Ground
	39	GND	-	-	Ground
	40	GND	-	-	Ground
	41	PCIEN0_DP2A	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	42	GND	-	-	Ground
	43	PCIEN0_DP2A	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	44	GND	-	-	Ground
	45	GND	-	-	Ground
	46	PCIEN0_A2DP	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	47	GND	-	-	Ground
	48	PCIEP0_A2DP	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	49	PCIE3_SWRST_A2	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DPRPWB clock signal
	50	GND	-	-	Ground
YC11	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to ISC PWB	2	SC_IRN	O	0/3.3 V DC	Scanner interrupt signal
	3	SC_DIR	O	0/3.3 V DC	Scanner communication direction signal
	4	SC_HLDN	O	0/3.3 V DC	Scanner hold signal
	5	SC_BSY	O	0/3.3 V DC	Scanner busy signal
	6	SC_SI	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	7	SC_SO	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	8	SC_CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scanner clock signal
YC12	1	HUMAN_SENS_FAR	-	-	Not used
Connected to operation PWB 1	2	JOB_LED	O	0/3.3 V DC	JOB LED control signal
	3	5V0	O	5 V DC	5 V D C power to OPWB1
	4	HUMAN_SENS_NEAR	-	-	Not used
	5	ANY_KEY	I	0/3.3 V DC	ANY KEY return signal
	6	C2P_SCK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Panel clock signal
	7	P2C_SBSY	I	0/3.3 V DC	Panel busy signal
	8	P2C_SDIR	I	0/3.3 V DC	Panel communication direction signal

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC12	9	C2P_SDAT	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
Connected to operation PWB 1	10	P2C_SDAT	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	11	GND	-	-	Ground
	12	PANEL RESET	O	0/3.3 V DC	Reset signal
	13	BEEP_POWERON	O	0/3.3 V DC	Sleep return signal
	14	LED_MEMORY_N	O	0/3.3 V DC	Memory LED control signal
	15	LED_ATTENTION_N	O	0/3.3 V DC	Attention LED control signal
	16	LED_PROCESSING_N	O	0/3.3 V DC	Processing LED control signal
	17	AUDIO	O	Analog	Audio output signal
	18	INT_POWERKEY_N	I	0/3.3 V DC	Power key: On/Off
	19	GND	-	-	Ground
	20	LIGHTOFF_POWERON	O	0/3.3 V DC	Sleep return signal
YC20	A1	VBUS_A	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
Connected to USB	A2	D-_A	I/O	-	USB data signal
	A3	D+_A	I/O	-	USB data signal
	A4	GND_A	-	-	Ground
	B1	VBUS_B	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
	B2	D-_B	I/O	-	USB data signal
	B3	D+_B	I/O	-	USB data signal
	B4	GND_B	-	-	Ground
YC21	1	VBUS	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
Connected to USB host	2	DATA -	I/O	-	USB data signal
	3	DATA +	I/O	-	USB data signal
	4	NC	-	-	Not used
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
YC22	1	VBUS	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
Connected to key board	2	DATA-	I/O	-	USB data signal
	3	DATA+	I/O	-	USB data signal
	4	ID	-	-	Not used
	5	GND	-	-	Ground

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC23	1	SPEED CON-TROL	O	0/3.3 V DC	CONFM: On/Off
Connected to controller fan motor	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
YC25	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to ISC PWB	2	HTPDN	I	0/3.3 V DC	Control signal
	3	LOCKN	I	0/3.3 V DC	Lock signal
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	RX0N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Received data signal
	6	RX0P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Received data signal
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
YC26	1	VBUS	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power output
Connected to card reader	2	DATA-	I/O	-	USB data signal
	3	DATA+	I/O	-	USB data signal
	4	ID	-	-	Not used
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
YC27	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to hard disk 1	2	+5V_HDD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to HDD1
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
YC30	1	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power from OPWB1
Connected to operation PWB 1	2	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power from OPWB1
	3	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power from OPWB1
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
YC31	1	CD/DAT3	I/O	0/3.3 V DC	Control signal
Connected to SD card	2	CMD	I/O	0/3.3 V DC	Control signal
	3	VSS	-	-	Ground
	4	VDD	-	0/3.3 V DC	Control signal
	5	CLK	-	0/3.3 V DC	Control signal
	6	VSS	-	-	Ground
	7	DAT0	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal
	8	DAT1	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal
	9	DAT2	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data bus signal
	10	CD	I	0/3.3 V DC	Control signal
	11	COMMON	-	0/3.3 V DC	Control signal
	12	WP	I	0/3.3 V DC	Control signal

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC32	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to hard disk 2	2	+5V_HDD	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to HDD2
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
YC42	1	5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power from PSPWB
Connected to power source PWB	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power from PSPWB
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power from PSPWB
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power from PSPWB
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
	9	5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power from PSPWB
	10	GND	-	-	Ground
YC43	1	SLEEP_INT	I	0/3.3 V DC	Sleep notice signal
Connected to engine PWB	2	EGSCLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Engine clock signal
	3	EGSI	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	4	EGSDIR	O	0/3.3 V DC	Engine communication direction signal
	5	EGSBSY	O	0/3.3 V DC	Enngine busy signal
	6	EGSO	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	7	EGIRN	O	0/3.3 V DC	Engine interrupt signal
	8	JS_LED	O	0/3.3 V DC	Jobseparetor LED signal
	9	ENG_OFF	-	-	Not used
	10	HOLD_ENG	O	0/3.3 V DC	Engine hold signal
	11	SLEEP	O	0/3.3 V DC	Sleep signal
	12	HSYNDD_P	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	13	HSYNDD_N	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	14	HSYNCC_P	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	15	HSYNCC_N	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	16	HSYNCB_P	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	17	HSYNCB_N	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	18	HSYNCA_P	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	19	HSYNCA_N	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	20	VSYNCD_P	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	21	VSYNCD_N	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	22	VSYNCC_P	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC43	23	VSYNCC_N	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
Connected to engine PWB	24	VSYNCB_P	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	25	VSYNCB_N	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	26	VSYNCA_P	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	27	VSYNCA_N	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	28	GND	-	-	Ground
	29	TCLKP	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Clock signal
	30	TCLKN	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Clock signal
	31	GND	-	-	Ground
	32	TCP	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	33	TCN	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	34	GND	-	-	Ground
	35	TBP	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	36	TBN	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	37	GND	-	-	Ground
	38	TAP	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	39	TAN	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	40	GND	-	-	Ground

2-3-2 Engine PWB

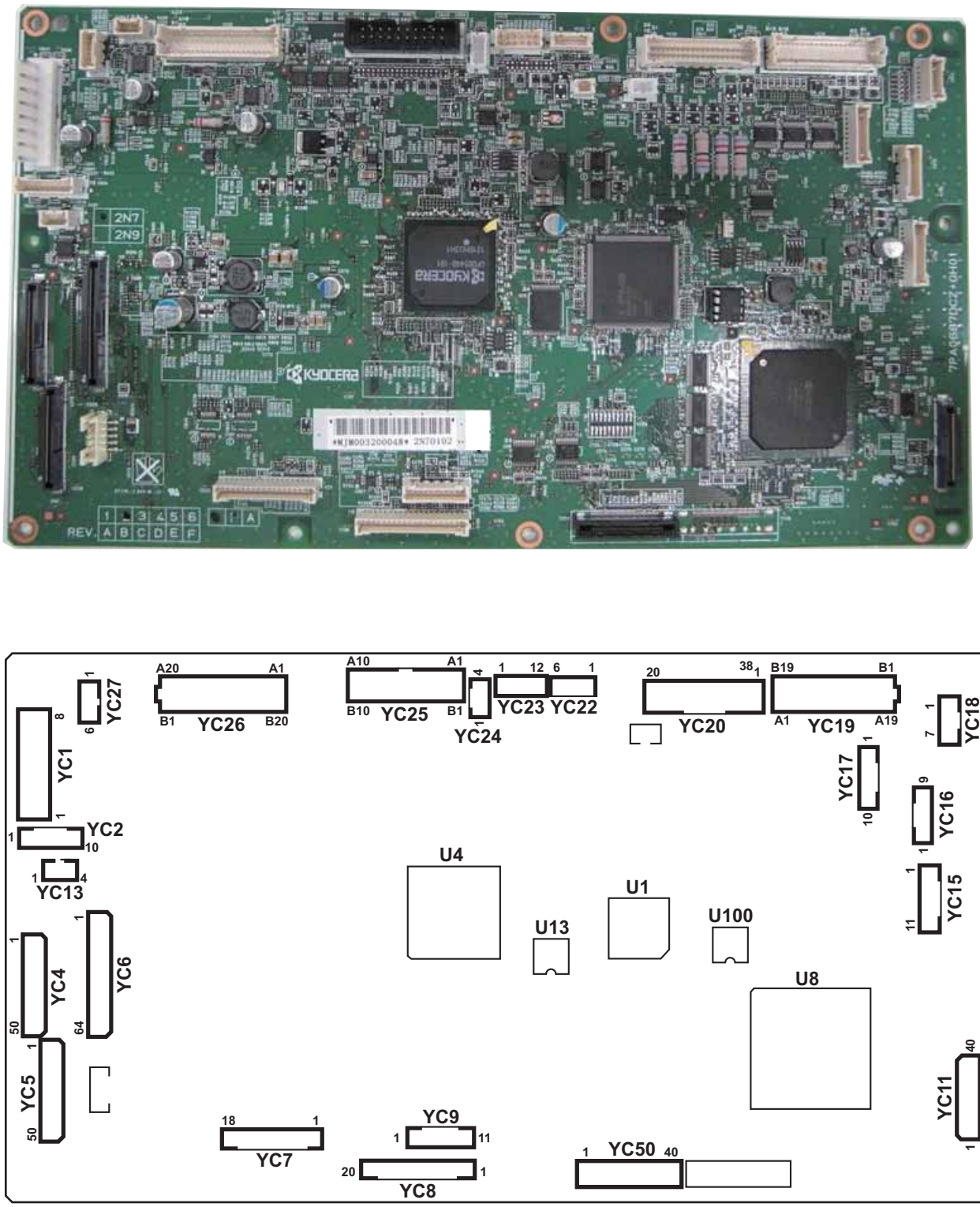


Figure 2-3-2 Engine PWB silk-screen diagram

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC1	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to feed PWB 1	2	+5V2	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to FPWB1
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	5V0	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power from FPWB1
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	+24V1	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power from FPWB1
	8	+24V1	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power from FPWB1
YC2	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to front PWB	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	+24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to FRPWB
	7	+24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to FRPWB
	8	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to FRPWB
	9	+3.3V2	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to FRPWB
	10	+3.3V1	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to FRPWB
YC4	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to feed PWB 2	2	FEED_MOT_REM	O	0/3.3 V DC	PFM: On/Off
	3	FEED_MOT_CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	PFM clock signal
	4	FEED_MOT_RDY	I	0/3.3 V DC	PFM ready signal
	5	FEED_MOT_DIR	O	0/3.3 V DC	PFM drive switch signal
	6	FEED_CL1_REM	O	0/24 V DC	PFCL1: On/Off
	7	FEED_CL2_REM	O	0/24 V DC	PFCL2: On/Off
	8	ASIST_CL2	O	0/24 V DC	ASCL2: On/Off
	9	LIFT_MOT2_REM	O	0/3.3 V DC	LM2: On/Off
	10	GND	-	-	Ground
	11	LIFT_MOT1_REM1	O	0/3.3 V DC	LM1: On/Off
	12	CAS2_WID	I	0/3.3 V DC	PWSW2: On/Off
	13	CAS2_LNG3	I	0/3.3 V DC	PLSW2: On/Off
	14	CAS2_LNG2	I	0/3.3 V DC	PLSW2: On/Off
	15	CAS2_LNG1	I	0/3.3 V DC	PLSW2: On/Off
	16	CAS1_WID	I	0/3.3 V DC	PWSW1: On/Off
	17	CAS1_LNG3	I	0/3.3 V DC	PLSW1: On/Off

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC4	18	CAS1_LNG2	I	0/3.3 V DC	PLSW1: On/Off
Connected to feed PWB 2	19	CAS1_LNG1	I	0/3.3 V DC	PLSW1: On/Off
	20	GND	-	-	Ground
	21	CAS2_QUANT2	I	0/3.3 V DC	PGS2(L): On/Off
	22	CAS2_QUANT1	I	0/3.3 V DC	PGS2(U): On/Off
	23	CAS1_QUANT2	I	0/3.3 V DC	PGS1(L): On/Off
	24	CAS1_QUANT1	I	0/3.3 V DC	PGS1(U): On/Off
	25	LIFT_MOT1_LOCK	I	0/3.3 V DC	LM1 lock signal
	26	LIFT_MOT2_LOCK	I	0/3.3 V DC	LM2 lock signal
	27	CURRENT_SIG	I	0/3.3 V DC	Current signal
	28	V-FEED_CL	O	0/24 V DC	PCCL: On/Off
	29	COVER_OPEN	I	0/3.3 V DC	PCCSW: On/Off
	30	FEED2_SENS	I	0/3.3 V DC	PFPCS1: On/Off
	31	CAS1_P0	I	0/3.3 V DC	FS1: On/Off
	32	CAS1_LIFT_UP	I	0/3.3 V DC	LS1: On/Off
	33	GND	-	-	Ground
	34	CAS1_EMPTY	I	0/3.3 V DC	PS1: On/Off
	35	PICK_SOL1_RET	-	-	Not used
	36	PICK_SOL1_REM	-	-	Not used
	37	CAS2_P0	I	0/3.3 V DC	FS2: On/Off
	38	CAS2_LIFT_UP	I	0/3.3 V DC	LS2: On/Off
	39	CAS2_EMPTY	I	0/3.3 V DC	PS2: On/Off
	40	PICK_SOL2_RET	-	-	Not used
	41	PICK_SOL2_REM	-	-	Not used
	42	GND	-	-	Ground
	43	REG_SENS	I	0/3.3 V DC	RS: On/Off
	44	FEED1_SENS	I	0/3.3 V DC	PCS: On/Off
	45	BEND_SENS	-	-	Not used
	46	MID_MOT_PH	O	0/3.3 V DC	MM control signal
	47	MID_MOT_REM(ROL_CL)	O	0/3.3 V DC	MM/MCL: On/Off
	48	MID_MOT_CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	MM clock signal
	49	MID_MOT_PD	O	0/3.3 V DC	MM control signal
	50	ASIST_CL1	O	0/24 V DC	ASCL1: On/Off

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC5	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to feed PWB 1	2	M_TEMP	-	-	Not used
	3	LOOP_SENS	I	0/3.3 V DC	LPS: On/Off
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	EDGE_FAN_H	O	0/24 V DC	FUFM: On/Off
	6	DU1_MOT_PD	O	0/3.3 V DC	DUM1 control signal
	7	DU1_MOT_CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DUM1 clock signal
	8	DU1_MOT_REM(CL_H)	O	0/3.3 V DC	DUM1: On/Off
	9	GND	-	-	Ground
	10	EXIT_FAN	O	0/24 V DC	EFM: On/Off
	11	DU_ENTER_SENS	I	0/3.3 V DC	DUS1: On/Off
	12	TCON_SET	-	-	Not used
	13	GND	-	-	Ground
	14	TRANS_MOT_REM	O	0/3.3 V DC	TRCM: On/Off
	15	TRANS_MOT_CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	TRCM clock signal
	16	TRANS_MOT_RDY	I	0/3.3 V DC	TRCM ready signal
	17	TRANS_MOT_DIR	O	0/3.3 V DC	TRCM drive switch signal
	18	TRANS_MOT_BRK	O	0/3.3 V DC	TRCM break signal
	19	GND	-	-	Ground
	20	DRM_MOT_BK_REM	-	-	Not used
	21	DRM_MOT_BK_RDY	-	-	Not used
	22	DRM_MOT_BK_DIR	-	-	Not used
	23	DRM_MOT_BK_BRK	-	-	Not used
	24	GND	-	-	Ground
	25	DLP_MOT_BK_REM	-	-	Not used
	26	DLP_MOT_BK_CLK	-	-	Not used
	27	DLP_MOT_BK_RDY	-	-	Not used
	28	DLP_MOT_BK_DIR	-	-	Not used
	29	GND	-	-	Ground

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC5	30	DRM_MOT_CLR_REM	-	-	Not used
Connected to feed PWB 1	31	DRM_MOT_BK_CLR_CLK	-	-	Not used
	32	DRM_MOT_CLR_RDY	-	-	Not used
	33	DRM_MOT_CLR_DIR	-	-	Not used
	34	GND	-	-	Ground
	35	DLP_MOT_CLR_REM	-	-	Not used
	36	DLP_MOT_CLR_CLK	-	-	Not used
	37	DLP_MOT_CLR_RDY	-	-	Not used
	38	DLP_MOT_CLR_DIR	-	-	Not used
	39	GND	-	-	Ground
	40	REG_MOT_PD	O	0/3.3 V DC	RM control signal
	41	REG_MOT_CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	RM clock signal
	42	REG_MOT_REM(CL)	O	0/3.3 V DC	RM: On/Off
	43	GND	-	-	Ground
	44	IH_PWB_FAN_L	O	0/24 V DC	IHFM: On/Off
	45	IH_PWB_FAN_H	O	0/24 V DC	IHFM: On/Off
	46	IH_PWB_FAN_ALM	I	0/3.3 V DC	IHFM alarm signal
	47	POWER_OFF_24V1	O	0/3.3 V DC	Power off signal
	48	DRM_HEAT	-	-	Not used
	49	GND	-	-	Ground
	50	GND	-	-	Ground

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC6	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to feed PWB 1	2	JOB_SET	I	0/3.3 V DC	Job separator set signal
	3	JOB_MOT_REM	O	0/3.3 V DC	JSEM: On/Off
	4	JOB_MOT_CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	JSEM clock signal
	5	JOB_MOT_DIR	O	0/3.3 V DC	JSEM drive switch signal
	6	JOB_OPEN_SENS	I	0/3.3 V DC	JSOCS: On/Off
	7	JOB_SOL_REM	O	0/24 V DC	JSFSSOL: On/Off
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
	9	MAIN_HEAT_REM	-	-	Not used
	10	PRESS_REM	O	0/3.3 V DC	Fuser heater remote signal
	11	ZEROC	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Zero-cross signal
	12	FSR_RELAY	O	0/3.3 V DC	Fuser relay signal
	13	PRESS_REM	-	-	Not used
	14	EXIT_REAR_FAN_L	O	0/24 V DC	ERFM: On/Off
	15	EXIT_REAR_FAN_H	O	0/24 V DC	ERFM: On/Off
	16	GND	-	-	Ground
	17	GND	-	-	Ground
	18	FSR_MOT_REM	O	0/3.3 V DC	FUM: On/Off
	19	FSR_MOT_CLK		0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	FUM clock signal
	20	FSR_MOT_RDY	O	0/3.3 V DC	FUM ready signal
	21	FSR_MOT_DIR	O	0/3.3 V DC	FUM drive switch signal
	22	FSR_MOT_BARKE	O	0/3.3 V DC	FUM brake signal
	23	GND	-	-	Ground
	24	MPF_TABLE	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPTSW: On/Off
	25	MPF_WID1	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPPWSW: On/Off
	26	MPF_WID2	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPPWSW: On/Off
	27	MPF_WID3	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPPWSW: On/Off
	28	MPF_LNG	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPPLSW: On/Off
	29	GND	-	-	Ground
	30	MPF_PPR	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPPS: On/Off
	31	MPF_UP	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPLS1: On/Off
	32	MPF_DOWN	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPLS2: On/Off
	33	MPF_JAM	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPFS: On/Off
	34	MPF_CL	O	0/24 V DC	MPPFCL: On/Off

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC6	35	MPF_LIFT2	O	0/24 V DC	MPLM: On/Off
Connected to feed PWB 1	36	MPF_LIFT1	O	0/24 V DC	MPLM: On/Off
	37	GND	-	-	Ground
	38	GND	-	-	Ground
	39	GND	-	-	Ground
	40	GND	-	-	Ground
	41	GND	-	-	Ground
	42	INTER_LOCK	I	DC0V/24V	PCUSW: On/Off
	43	DU2_MOT_PD	O	0/3.3 V DC	DUM2 control signal
	44	DU2_MOT_CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DUM2 clock signal
	45	DU2_MOT_REM	O	0/3.3 V DC	DUM2/DUCL2: On/Off
	46	GND	-	-	Ground
	47	DU_OPEN	I	0/3.3 V DC	DUCSW: On/Off
	48	DU_FAN	-	-	Not used
	49	PRESS_RLS_MOT_REM1	O	0/24 V DC	TRRM: On/Off
	50	PRESS_RLS_MOT_REM2	O	0/24 V DC	TRRM: On/Off
	51	PRESS_RLS_SENS	I	0/3.3 V DC	TRRS: On/Off
	52	DU_SENS	I	0/3.3 V DC	DUS2: On/Off
	53	DISP_BOX_DET	I	0/3.3 V DC	Toner disposal box set signal
	54	GND	-	-	Ground
	55	CLN_SOL_RET	O	0/24 V DC	CLSOL: On/Off (RET)
	56	CLN_SOL_REM	O	0/24 V DC	CLSOL: On/Off (ACT)
	57	REG_SENS_R_S(BK)	I	Analog	IDS2 detection signal
	58	REG_SENS_R_P(BK)	I	Analog	IDS2 detection signal
	59	REG_R_LED	O	Analog	IDS2 control signal
	60	GND	-	-	Ground
	61	REG_SENS_F_S	I	Analog	IDS1 detection signal
	62	REG_SENS_F_P	I	Analog	IDS1 detection signal
	63	REG_F_LED	O	Analog	IDS1 control signal
	64	GND	-	-	Ground

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC7	1	INTER_LOCK	-	-	Not used
Connected to front PWB	2	ROT_HP_SENS	I	0/3.3 V DC	DEVSS: On/Off
	3	DLP_FAN_L	O	0/24 V DC	DEVFM: On/Off
	4	DLP_FAN_H	O	0/24 V DC	DEVFM: On/Off
	5	THOP_MOT_DIR	O	0/3.3 V DC	THM drive switch signal
	6	THOP_MOT_REM	O	0/3.3 V DC	THM: On/Off
	7	THOP_Bk	I	0/3.3 V DC	THS: On/Off
	8	ENCODE_ Bk	I	0/3.3 V DC	SRS: On/Off
	9	SB_MOT_PH	O	0/3.3 V DC	EM control signal
	10	SB_MOT_CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	EM clock signal
	11	SB_MOT_PD	O	0/3.3 V DC	EM control signal
	12	SB_MOT_DIR	O	0/3.3 V DC	EM drive switch signal
	13	SB_MOT_REM	O	0/3.3 V DC	EM: On/Off
	14	EXIT_FEED_SENS	I	0/3.3 V DC	SBS: On/Off
	15	EXIT_PAPER_SENS	I	0/3.3 V DC	ES: On/Off
	16	GND	-	-	Ground
	17	JUNC_SOL_REM	O	0/24 V DC	FSSOL: On/Off (ACT)
	18	JUNC_SOL_RET	O	0/24 V DC	FSSOL: On/Off (RET)
YC8	1	WTNR_SET	I	0/3.3 V DC	WTDSW: On/Off
Connected to front PWB	2	WTNR_FULL_VCONT	O	0/3.3 V DC	WTS1 control signal
	3	WTNR_FULL	I	Analog	WTS1 detection signal
	4	WTNR_NEAR_VCONT	O	0/3.3 V DC	WTS2 control signal
	5	WTNR_NEAR	I	Analog	WTS2 detection signal
	6	WTNR_LED	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	WTS1 LED emitter signal
	7	I2C_SDA	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	EEPROM clock signal
	8	I2C_SCL	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	EEPROM data signal
	9	FRONT_OPEN	I	0/3.3 V DC	FRCSW: On/Off
	10	LSU_FAN	O	0/24 V DC	LSUFM: On/Off
	11	TPD_TEMP_Bk	I	Analog	Developer thermistor detection signal
	12	DLP_VCONT_Bk_1	O	0/3.3 V DC	DEVPWB control signal
	13	TPD_Bk_1	I	Analog	DEVPWB detection signal
	14	TN_CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Clock signal
	15	GND	-	-	Ground

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC8	16	EEP_SCL1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	EEPROM clock signal
Connected to front PWB	17	EEP_SDA1	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	EEPROM data signal
	18	ERS_Bk_REM	O	0/24 V DC	CL: On/Off
	19	CONTAIN_FAN_REM	-	-	Not used
	20	EXIT_FAN_REM	O	0/24 V DC	EFFM: On/Off
YC9	1	IH_CORE_MOT_REM	O	0/24 V DC	IHCM: On/Off
Connected to front PWB	2	IH_CORE_MOT_CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	IHCM clock signal
	3	IH_CORE_SENS	I	0/3.3 V DC	IHCS: On/Off
	4	IH_COIL_FAN_ALM	I	0/3.3 V DC	FUFFM alarm signal
	5	IH_COIL_FAN_L	O	0/24 V DC	FUFFM: On/Off
	6	IH_COIL_FAN_H	O	0/24 V DC	FUFFM: On/Off
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
	8	ROT_MOT_PD	-	-	Not used
	9	ROT_MOT_DIR	-	-	Not used
	10	ROT_MOT_CLK	-	-	Not used
	11	ROT_MOT_REM	-	-	Not used
YC11	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to LSU relay PWB	2	DATA_2PBk(LVDS)	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data signal (P)
	3	DATA_2NBk(LVDS)	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data signal (N)
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	DATA_1PBk(LVDS)	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data signal (P)
	6	DATA_1NBk(LVDS)	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data signal (N)
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
	8	GAIN_FIX_Bk	O	0/3.3 V DC	APCPWB control signal
	9	GND	-	-	Ground
	10	SDCLK_Bk	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	APCPWB clock signal
	11	GND	-	-	Ground
	12	PARA_SIG_P4_Bk	O	0/3.3 V DC	APCPWB control signal
	13	PARA_SIG_P3_Bk	O	0/3.3 V DC	APCPWB control signal
	14	PARA_SIG_P2_Bk	O	0/3.3 V DC	APCPWB control signal
	15	PARA_SIG_P1_Bk	O	0/3.3 V DC	APCPWB control signal
	16	PARA_SIG_P0_Bk	O	0/3.3 V DC	APCPWB control signal
	17	INT_ST_1_Bk	O	0/3.3 V DC	APCPWB control signal

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC11	18	INT_ST_2_Bk	O	0/3.3 V DC	APCPWB control signal
Connected to LSU relay PWB	19	CUALM_BK	I	0/3.3 V DC	APCPWB alarm signal
	20	MSET_N	O	0/3.3 V DC	Control signal
	21	IDD_CS 1 Bk	O	0/3.3 V DC	APCPWB control signal
	22	IDD_CS 2 Bk	O	0/3.3 V DC	APCPWB control signal
	23	PALA_SIG_P3_2Bk	O	0/3.3 V DC	APCPWB control signal
	24	LSU_TH_Bk	I	Analog	LSU thermistor detection signal
	25	BD_Bk	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Horizontal synchronization signal
	26	GND	-	-	Ground
	27	DATA_4P_Bk(LVDS)	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data signal (P)
	28	DATA_4N_Bk(LVDS)	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data signal (N)
	29	GND	-	-	Ground
	30	DATA_3P_Bk(LVDS)	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data signal (P)
	31	DATA_3N_Bk(LVDS)	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data signal (N)
	32	GND	-	-	Ground
	33	EEPROM_CS_1_Bk	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	APCPWB EEPROM data signal
	34	EEPROM_CS_2_Bk	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	APCPWB EEPROM data signal
	35	GND	-	-	Ground
	36	SCLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Clock signal
	37	GND	-	-	Ground
	38	SDO	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	39	GND	-	-	Ground
	40	SDI	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
YC13	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to feed PWB 1	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	3.3V3	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to FPWB1
	4	3.3V2	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to FPWB1

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC15	1	5V2_AN	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to LSURPWB
Connected to LSU relay PWB and polygon motor	2	5V2_AN	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to LSURPWB
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	+3.3V2	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to LSURPWB
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	+24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to LSURPWB
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
	9	START/STOP	O	0/24 V DC	PM: On/Off
	10	LOCK	I	0/3.3 V DC	PM lock signal
	11	CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	PM clock signal
YC16	1	SGND	-	-	Ground
Connected to high voltage PWB	2	T_INV_CNT	O	Analog	Transfer bias control voltage
	3	T_CNT	O	Analog	Transfer bias control voltage
	4	T_REM	O	0/3.3 V DC	Transfer bias: On/Off
	5	MAIN_IDC	O	PWM	DC charger roller control signal
	6	DC_MAIN_CNT	O	PWM	DC charger roller control signal
	7	AC_MAIN_CNT	O	PWM	AC charger roller control signal
	8	AC_MAIN_CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	AC charger roller clock signal
	9	DC_MAIN_REM	O	0/3.3 V DC	DC main charger: On/Off
YC17	1	SGND	-	-	Ground
Connected to high voltage PWB	2	DC_MAG_REM	O	0/3.3 V DC	DC main charger: On/Off
	3	DC_MAG_CNT	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DC magnet bias control voltage
	4	DC_SLV_CNT	O	PWM	DC sleeve bias control voltage
	5	AC_SLV_CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	AC sleeve bias clock signal
	6	AC_SLV_CNT	O	PWM	AC sleeve bias control voltage
	7	DISCHARGE	I	PWM	Main charger control signal
	8	AC_MAG_CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	ACC magnet bias clock signal
	9	AC_MAG_CNT	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	AC magnet bias control voltage
	10	DC_REC_CNT	O	PWM	DC bias control voltage

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC18	1	DF_CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DFMPWB clock signal
Connected to 4000-sheet finisher	2	DF_SDO	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DFMPWB serial communication data signal
	3	DF_SEL	O	0/3.3 V DC	DFMPWB select signal
	4	DF_SDI	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DFMPWB serial communication data signal
	5	DF_RDY	I	0/3.3 V DC	DFMPWB ready signal
	6	DF_DET	I	0/3.3 V DC	DFMPWB detection signal
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
YC19	A1	PF_CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	PFMPWB clock signal
Connected to paper feeder/ large capacity feeder, toner fan motor1,2, exhaust fan motor, and assist fan motor	A2	PF_SDO	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	PFMPWB serial communication data signal
	A3	PF_SEL	O	0/3.3 V DC	PFMPWB select signal
	A4	PF_SDI	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	PFMPWB serial communication data signal
	A5	PF_RDY	I	0/3.3 V DC	PFMPWB ready signal
	A6	PF_PAUSE	O	0/3.3 V DC	PFMPWB pause signal
	A7	PF_CAS1_OPEN	I	0/3.3 V DC	PFMPWB control signal
	A8	PF_CAS2_OPEN	I	0/3.3 V DC	PFMPWB control signal
	A9	+3.3V4	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to PFMPWB
	A10	GND	-	-	Ground
	A11	GND	-	-	Ground
	A12	TN_FAN1	O	0/24 V DC	TFM1,2: On/Off
	A13	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to TFM1,2
	A14	TN_FAN2	O	0/24 V DC	EXFM1: On/Off
	A15	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to EXFM1
	A16	LVU_FAN1	-	-	Not used
	A17	+24V1	-	-	Not used
	A18	LVU_FAN2	-	-	Not used
	A19	+24V1	-	-	Not used
	B1	SIDE_CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	PFMPWB clock signal (side)
	B2	SIDE_SDO	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	PFMPWB serial communication data signal (side)
	B3	SIDE_SEL	O	0/3.3 V DC	PFMPWB select signal (side)
	B4	SIDE_SDI	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	PFMPWB serial communication data signal (side)
	B5	SIDE_RDY	I	0/3.3 V DC	PFMPWB ready signal (side)
	B6	SIDE_PAUSE	O	0/3.3 V DC	PFMPWB pause signal (side)

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC19	B7	TANDEM_CAS1OPEN	I	0/3.3 V DC	PFMPWB control signal (side)
Connected to paper feeder/ large capacity feeder, toner fan motor, exhaust fan motor, and assist fan motor	B8	TANDEM_CAS2OPEN	I	0/3.3 V DC	PFMPWB control signal (side)
	B9	SIDE_MULTI_OPEN	O	0/3.3 V DC	PFMPWB control signal (side)
	B10	+3.3V4	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to PFMPWB (side)
	B11	GND	-	-	Ground
	B12	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to ASFM
	B13	BELT_FAN1	O	0/24 V DC	ASFM: On/Off
	B14	+24V1	-	-	Not used
	B15	BELT_FAN2	-	-	Not used
	B16	DLP_FAN1	O	0/24 V DC	EXFM2: On/Off
	B17	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to EXFM2
	B18	DLP_FAN2	O	0/24 V DC	EXFM3: On/Off
	B19	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to EXFM3
YC20	1	DECAL_HP_SENS	I	0/3.3 V DC	BRDS: On/Off
Connected to bridge unit	2	GUIDE_REM	O	0/3.3 V DC	BRGM: On/Off
	3	GUIDE_CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	BRGM clock signal
	4	GUIDE_PD	O	0/3.3 V DC	BRGM control signal
	5	GUIDE_DIR	O	0/3.3 V DC	BRGM drive switch signal
	6	DECAL_REM	O	0/3.3 V DC	BRDM: On/Off
	7	DECAL_PH	O	0/3.3 V DC	BRDM control signal
	8	DECAL_CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	BRDM clock signal
	9	DECAL_PD	O	0/3.3 V DC	BRDM control signal
	10	DECAL_DIR	O	0/3.3 V DC	BRDM drive switch signal
	11	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to BRFSSOL
	12	EXIT_SOL_REM	O	0/24 V DC	BRFSSOL: On/Off (ACT)
	13	EXIT_SOL_RET	O	0/24 V DC	BRFSSOL: On/Off (RET)
	14	GND	-	-	Ground
	15	EXIT_COV_OPEN	I	0/3.3 V DC	BRECSW: On/Off
	16	GND	-	-	Ground
	17	EXIT_SENS	I	0/3.3 V DC	BRES: On/Off
	18	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to BRES
	19	N.C	-	-	Not used
	20	BRIDGE2 REM	O	0/3.3 V DC	BRCM2: On/Off

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC20	21	BRIDGE2 PH	O	0/3.3 V DC	BRCM2 control signal
Connected to bridge unit	22	BRIDGE2 CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	BRCM2 clock signal
	23	BRIDGE2 PD	O	0/3.3 V DC	BRCM2 control signal
	24	BRIDGE2 DIR	O	0/3.3 V DC	BRCM2 drive switch signal
	25	BRIDGE1 REM	O	0/3.3 V DC	BRCM2: On/Off
	26	BRIDGE1 PH	O	0/3.3 V DC	BRCM1 control signal
	27	BRIDGE1 CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	BRCM1 clock signal
	28	BRIDGE1 PD	O	0/3.3 V DC	BRCM1 control signal
	29	BRIDGE1 DIR	O	0/3.3 V DC	BRCM1 drive switch signal
	30	BRIDGE_SENS 2	I	0/3.3 V DC	BRCS2: On/Off
	31	BRIDGE_OPEN	I	0/3.3 V DC	BRCUSW: On/Off
	32	BRIDGE_SENS 1	I	0/3.3 V DC	BRCS1: On/Off
	33	GND	-	-	Ground
	34	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to BRPWB
	35	GND	-	-	Ground
	36	GND	-	-	Ground
	37	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to BRPWB
	38	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to BRPWB
YC22	1	LVU_FAN	O	0/24 V DC	PSFM: On/Off
Connected to power source fan motor	2	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to PSFM
YC23	1	+24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to coin vender
Connected to coin vender	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	COIN_EN	I	0/3.3 V DC	Coin vender enable signal
	5	FGND	-	-	Ground
	6	FEED_COUNT	O	0/3.3 V DC	Coin vender control signal
	7	EJECT_COUNT	O	0/3.3 V DC	Coin vender control signal
	8	COPYING_SIG	O	0/3.3 V DC	Coin vender control signal
	9	TXD_COIN	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	10	GND	-	-	Ground
	11	RXD_COIN	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	12	GND	-	-	Ground

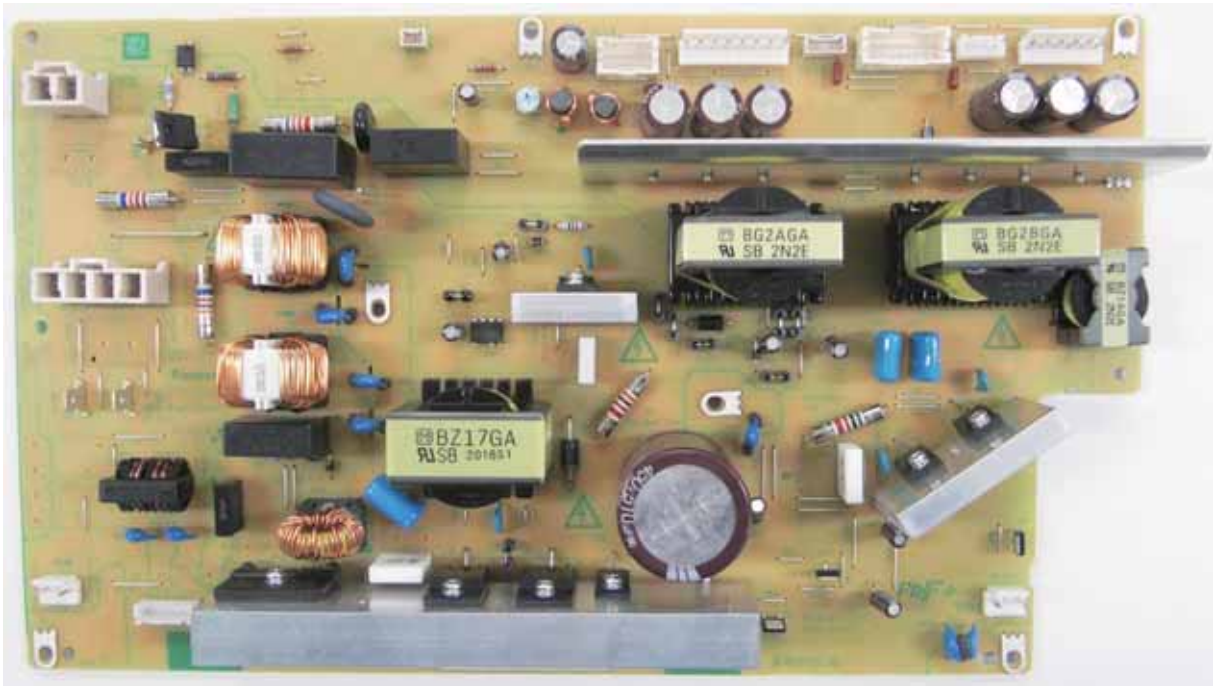
Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC24	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to key counter	2	DC1_SET	I	0/3.3 V DC	Key counter set signal
	3	DC1_COUNT	O	0/3.3 V DC	Key counter count signal
	4	+24V 1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to key card
YC25	A1	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to key card
Connected to key card	A2	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to key card
	A3	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to key card
	A4	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to key card
	A5	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to key card
	A6	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to key card
	A7	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to key card
	A8	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to key card
	A9	COPY_ENABLE	I	0/3.3 V DC	Key card enable signal
	A10	+24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to key card
	B1	KEY7	O	0/3.3 V DC	Key card control signal
	B2	KEY6	O	0/3.3 V DC	Key card control signal
	B3	KEY5	O	0/3.3 V DC	Key card control signal
	B4	KEY4	O	0/3.3 V DC	Key card control signal
	B5	KEY3	O	0/3.3 V DC	Key card control signal
	B6	KEY2	O	0/3.3 V DC	Key card control signal
	B7	KEY1	O	0/3.3 V DC	Key card control signal
	B8	KEY0	O	0/3.3 V DC	Key card control signal
	B9	GND	-	-	Ground
	B10	COUNT	O	0/3.3 V DC	Key card count signal
YC26	A1	EDGE_FAN	O	0/12 V DC	FUEFM1: On/Off
Connected to fuser unit and fuser IH unit	A2	+12V2	O	12 V DC	12 V DC power to FUEFM1
	A3	EDGE_FAN	O	0/12 V DC	FUEFM2: On/Off
	A4	+12V2	O	12 V DC	12 V DC power to FUEFM2
	A5	MINICELFAN_REM	-	-	Not used
	A6	12V	-	-	Not used
	A7	FSR_FAN_ALM	I	0/3.3 V DC	FURFM alarm signal
	A8	FSR_FAN	O	0/24 V DC	FURFM: On/Off
	A9	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to FURFM
	A10	FSR_RLS_DR_CCW	O	0/24 V DC	FURM: On/Off (CCW)
	A11	FSR_RLS_DR_CW	O	0/24 V DC	FURM: On/Off (CW)

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC26	A12	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to fuser unit	A13	FSR_SIZE_SENS	I	0/3.3 V DC	FUES: On/Off
	A14	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to FUES
	A15	GND	-	-	Ground
	A16	FSR_RLS_SENS	I	0/3.3 V DC	FURS: On/Off
	A17	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to FURS
	A18	GND	-	-	Ground
	A19	FSR_BLT_PLS	I	0/3.3 V DC	FUBLS: On/Off
	A20	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to FUBLS
	B1	PRESS_HEART_REM	-	-	Not used
	B2	IH_RXD	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	B3	IH_TXD	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	B4	ROTATION	O	0/3.3 V DC	FIH control signal
	B5	IH_HEAT_REM	O	0/3.3 V DC	FIH: On/Off
	B6	+3.3V2	O	3.3 V DC	5 V DC power to FIH
	B7	GND	-	-	Ground
	B8	GND	-	-	Ground
	B9	PRESS_TH	I	Analog	FTH5 detection signal
	B10	GND	-	-	Ground
	B11	EDGE_TH	I	Analog	FTH2 detection signal
	B12	GND	-	-	Ground
	B13	GUIDE_TH1	I	Analog	FTH4 detection signal
	B14	GND	-	-	Ground
	B15	GUIDE_TH2	I	Analog	FTH3 detection signal
	B16	MAIN_TH2	I	Analog	FTH1 detection signal
	B17	MAIN_TH1	I	Analog	FTH1 detection signal
	B18	GND	-	-	Ground
	B19	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to BRFM
	B20	BRIDGE_FAN	O	0/24 V DC	BRFM: On/Off
YC27	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to RFID PWB and toner motor	2	EEP_SDA2	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	EEPROM data signal
	3	EEP_SCL2	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	EEPROM clock signal
	4	3.3V2	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to RFPWB
	5	TMOT_BK_+	O	0/24 V DC	TM: On/Off
	6	TMOT_BK_-	O	0/24 V DC	TM: On/Off

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC50	1	SLEEP_INT	O	0/3.3 V DC	Sleep notice signal
Connected to main PWB	2	G6_EG_SCLK	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Engine clock signal
	3	G6_EG_SI	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	4	G6_EG_SDIR	I	0/3.3 V DC	Engine communication direction signal
	5	G6_EG_SBSY	I	0/3.3 V DC	Engine busy signal
	6	G6_EG_SO	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	7	G6_EG_IRN	I	0/3.3 V DC	Engine interrupt signal
	8	JS_LED	O	0/3.3 V DC	Jobseparetor LED signal
	9	ENG_OFF	-	-	Not used
	10	HLD_ENG	I	0/3.3 V DC	Engine hold signal
	11	SLEEP_ENG	I	0/3.3 V DC	Sleep signal
	12	HSYNC_DP	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	13	HSYNC_DN	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	14	HSYNC_CP	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	15	HSYNC_CN	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	16	HSYNC_BP	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	17	HSYNC_BN	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	18	HSYNC_AP	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	19	HSYNC_AN	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	20	VSYND_DP	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	21	VSYND_DN	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	22	VSYNC_CP	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	23	VSYNC_CN	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	24	VSYNC_BP	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	25	VSYNC_BN	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	26	VSYNC_AP	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	27	VSYNC_AN	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	28	GND	-	-	Ground
	29	RCLKp	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Clock signal
	30	RCLKn	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Clock signal
	31	GND	-	-	Ground
	32	RCp	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	33	RCn	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	34	GND	-	-	Ground
	35	RBp	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC50	36	RBn	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
Connected to main PWB	37	GND	-	-	Ground
	38	RAp	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	39	RAn	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image control signal
	40	GND	-	-	Ground
	41	GND	-	-	Ground
YC54	1	3.3V2	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to TVM
Connected to toner vibration motor	2	TN_VIB	O	0/3.3 V DC	TVM: On/Off
YC55	1	3.3V2	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to FUPWB
Connected to fuser unit	2	I2C_SCL	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Clock signal
	3	I2C_SDA	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Data signal
	4	GND	-	-	Not used

2-3-3 Power source PWB



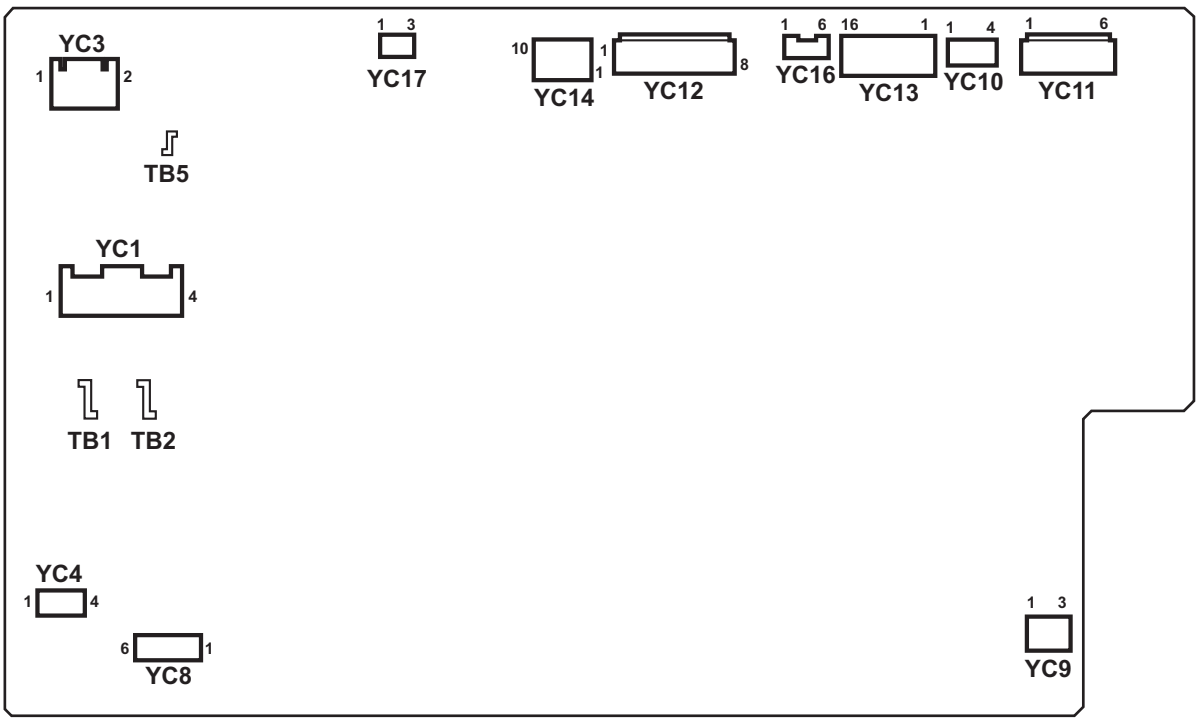


Figure 2-3-3 Power source PWB silk-screen diagram

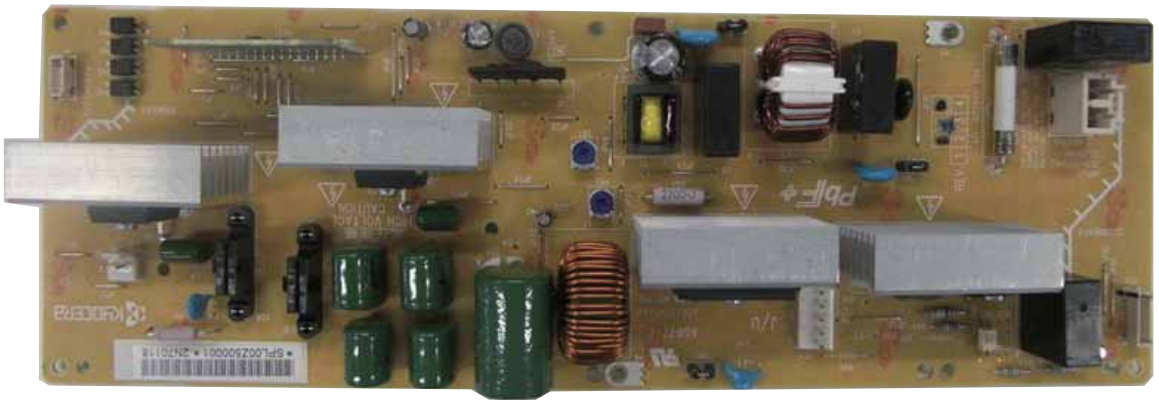
Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
TB	1	LIVE	I	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power input
Connected to AC inlet and main power switch	2	NEUTRAL	I	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power input
	5	DH_LIVE	I	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power input
YC1	1	LIVE_IN	I	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power output from MSW
Connected to main power switch	2	LIVE_OUT	O	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power output to MSW
	3	NEUTRAL_OUT	O	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power output to MSW
	4	NEUTRAL_IN	I	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power output from MSW
YC3	1	LIVE	O	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power output to FIHPWB
Connected to fuser IH PWB	2	NEUTRAL	O	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power output to FIHPWB
YC8	1	DH_LIVE	O	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power output to CH
Connected to cassette heater	2	DH_LIVE	-	-	Not used
	3	NC	-	-	Not used
	4	NC	-	-	Not used
	5	DH_NEUTRAL	O	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power output to CH
	6	DH_NEUTRAL	-	-	Not used
YC9	1	DH_LIVE	O	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power output to PFCH
Connected to large capac-ity feeder	3	DH_NEUTRAL	O	120 V AC 220-240 V AC	AC power output to PFCH
YC12	1	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to FPWB1
Connected to feed PWB 1	2	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to FPWB1
	3	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to FPWB1
	4	5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to FPWB1
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
	8	GND	-	-	Ground

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC13	1	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to large capacity feeder
Connected to large capacity feeder, 4000-sheet finisher and ISC PWB	2	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to large capacity feeder
	3	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to 4000-sheet finisher
	4	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to 4000-sheet finisher
	5	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to ISCPWB
	6	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to ISCPWB
	7	+24V1	-	-	Not used
	8	+24V1	-	-	Not used
	9	GND	-	-	Ground
	10	GND	-	-	Ground
	11	GND	-	-	Ground
	12	GND	-	-	Ground
	13	GND	-	-	Ground
	14	GND	-	-	Ground
	15	GND	-	-	Ground
	16	GND	-	-	Ground
YC14	1	5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to MPWB
Connected to main PWB	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to MPWB
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to MPWB
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to MPWB
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
	9	5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to MPWB
	10	GND	-	-	Ground
YC16	1	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to HVPWB1
Connected to high voltage PWB 1	2	+24V1	-	-	Not used
	3	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to HVPWB1
	4	PGND	-	-	Ground
	5	PGND	-	-	Not used
	6	PGND	-	-	Ground

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC17	1	POWER_OFF_24V1	I	0/3.3 V DC	Sleep mode signal: On/Off
Connected to feed PWB 1	2	DRUM_HEAT_REM	I	0/3.3 V DC	FH: On/Off
	3	GND	-	-	Ground

2-3-4 IH PWB

(1) 120V model



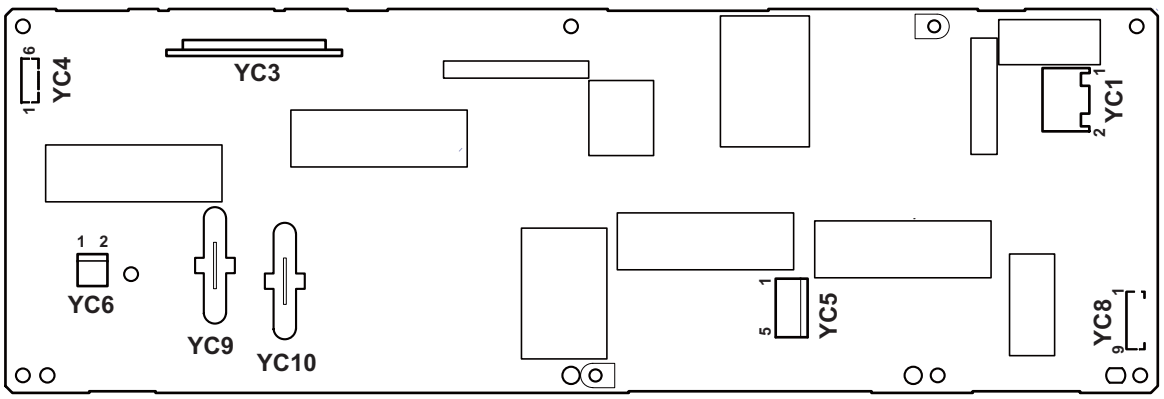
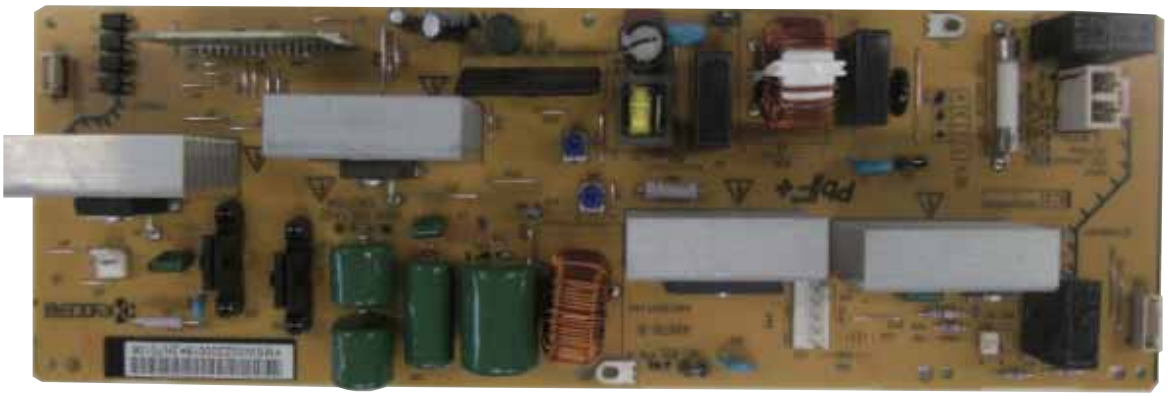


Figure 2-3-4 IH PWB silk-screen diagram

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC1	1	AC_LIVE	I	120 V AC	120V AC power input
Connected to Inlet2	2	AC_NEUTRAL	I	120 V AC	120V AC power input
YC4	1	SGAND	-	-	Ground
Connected to engine PWB	2	Vcc	I	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power from EPWB
	3	IH_REM	I	0/3.3 V DC	FIH: On/Off
	4	ROTATION	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	FIH control signal
	5	RXD	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	6	TXD	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
YC5	1	LIVE_OUT	O	120 V AC	AC power output to FTS2
Connected to fuser heater and fuser-thermostat 2	2		-	-	Not used
	3	NEUTRAL_OUT	O	120 V AC	AC power output to FH
	4				
	5	NEUTRAL_OUT	-	-	Not used
YC6	1	+15V1	O	15 V DC	15V DC power to FTS1
Connected to fuser thermo-stat 1	2	+15V2	I	15 V DC	15V DC power from FTS1
YC8	1	FSR_RELAY_24V	I	0/3.3 V DC	Fuser relay signal
Connected to feed PWB 1	2	+24V1	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power from feed PWB 1
	3	FSR_RELAY	I	0/3.3 V DC	Fuser relay signal
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	ZEROC	-	-	Not used
	7	+24V2	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power from feed PWB 1
	8	PRESS_REM	I	0/3.3 V DC	Fuser heater remote signal
YC9	1	VS	O	70 V to 185 V AC	Resonant circuit output to the IH coil
Connected to Fuser IH					
YC10	1	COIL_COM	O	70 V to 185 V AC	Resonant circuit output to the IH coil
Connected to Fuser IH					

(2) 220-240V model



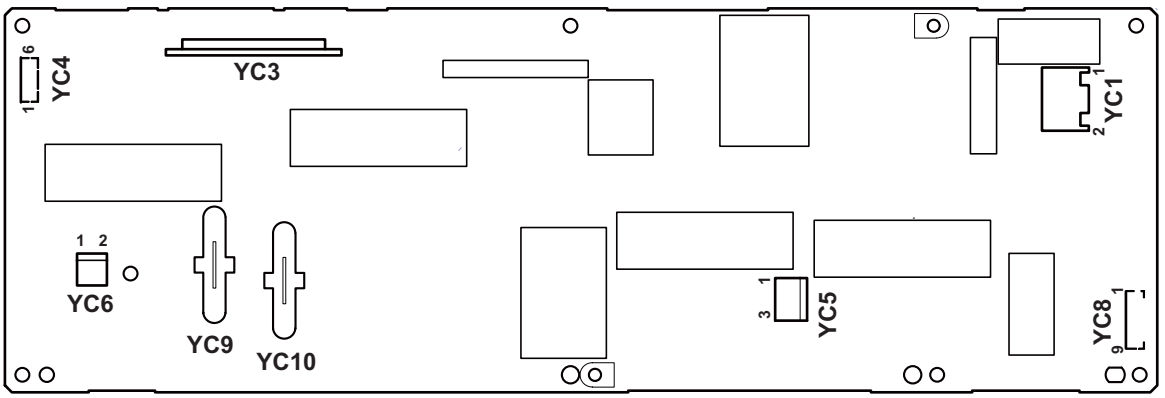


Figure 2-3-5 IH PWB silk-screen diagram

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC1	1	LIVE	I	220-240 V AC	220-240 V AC power input
Connected to Power source PWB	2	NEUTRAL	I	220-240 V AC	220-240 V AC power input
YC4	1	SGAND	-	-	Ground
Connected to engine PWB	2	Vcc	I	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power from EPWB
	3	IH_REM	I	0/3.3 V DC	FIH: On/Off
	4	ROTATION	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	FIH control signal
	5	RXD	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	6	TXD	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
YC5	1	LIVE_OUT	O	220-240 V AC	AC power output to FTS2
Connected to fuser heater and fuser-thermostat 2	2		-	-	Not used
	3	NEUTRAL_OUT	O	220-240 V AC	AC power output to FH
	4				
	5	NEUTRAL_OUT	-	-	Not used
YC6	1	+15V1	O	15 V DC	15V DC power to FTS1
Connected to fuser thermo-stat 1	2	+15V2	I	15 V DC	15V DC power from FTS1
YC8	1	FSR_RELAY_24V	I	0/3.3 V DC	Fuser relay signal
Connected to feed PWB 1	2	+24V1	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power from feed PWB 1
	3	FSR_RELAY	I	0/3.3 V DC	Fuser relay signal
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	ZEROC	-	-	Not used
	7	+24V2	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power from feed PWB 1
	8	PRESS_REM	I	0/3.3 V DC	Fuser heater remote signal
YC9	1	VS	O	138 V to 370 V AC	Resonant circuit output to the IH coil
Connected to Fuser IH					
YC10	1	COIL_COM	O	138 V to 370 V AC	Resonant circuit output to the IH coil
Connected to Fuser IH					

2-3-5 ISC PWB

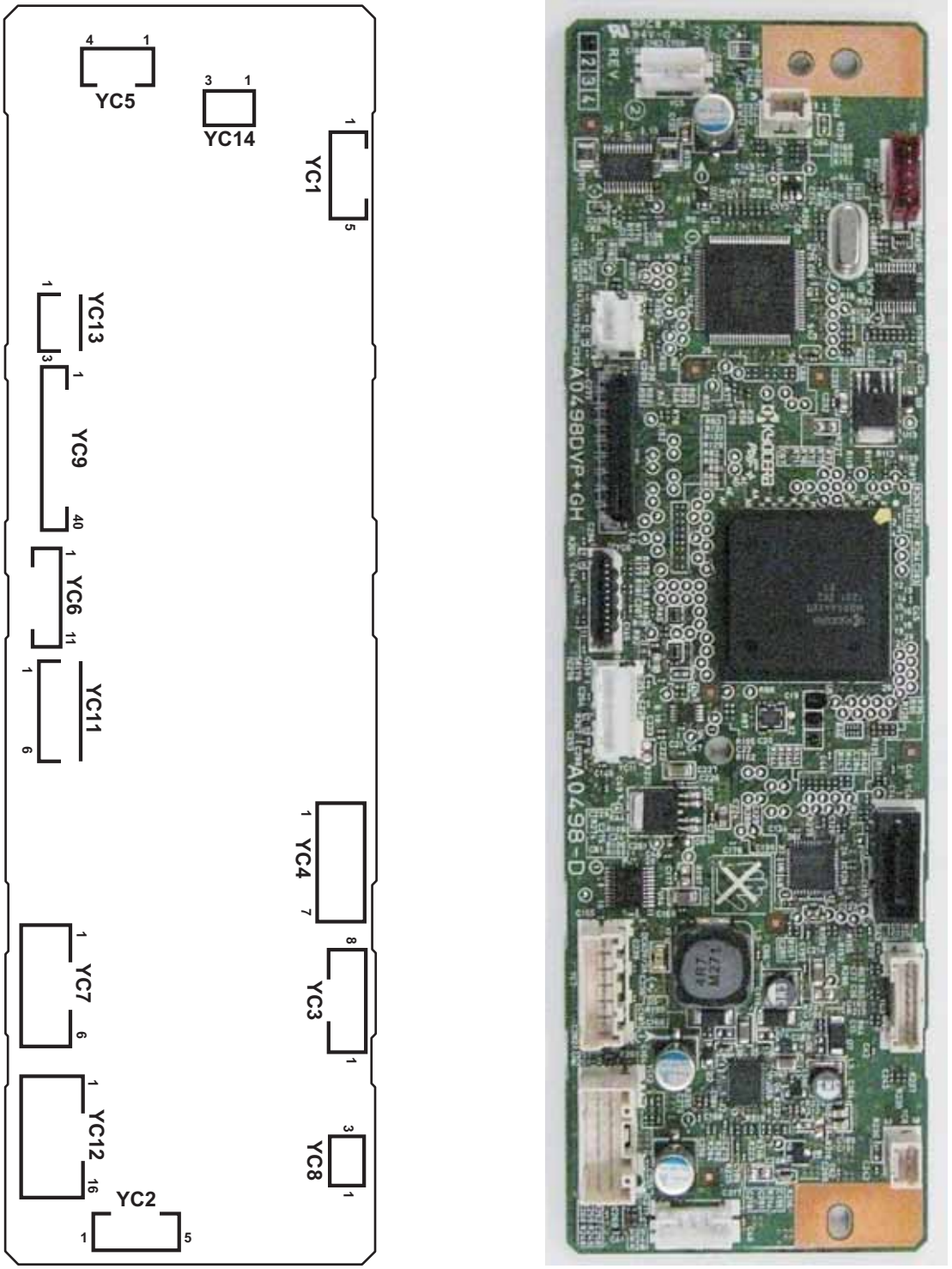


Figure 2-3-6 ISC PWB silk-screen diagram

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC3	1	SC_CLK	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scanner clock signal
Connected to main PWB	2	SC_SO	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	3	SC_SI	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	4	SC_BSY	I	0/3.3 V DC	Scanner busy signal
	5	SC_HLDN	I	0/3.3 V DC	Scanner hold signal
	6	SC_DIR	I	0/3.3 V DC	Scanner communication direction signal
	7	SC_IRN	I	0/3.3 V DC	Scanner interrupt signal
	8	GND(SPARE)	-	-	Ground
YC4	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to main PWB	2	HTPDN	O	0/3.3 V DC	Control signal
	3	LOCKN	O	0/3.3 V DC	Lock signal
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	TX0N	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Transmission data signal
	6	TX0P	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Transmission data signal
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
YC5	1	SMOT_AP	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	SM drive control signal
Connected to scanner motor	2	SMOT_BP	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	SM drive control signal
	3	SMOT_AN	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	SM drive control signal
	4	SMOT_BN	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	SM drive control signal
YC6	1	+5V1	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to LLPWB
Connected to LED lamp PWB	2	FAIL	I	0/3.3 V DC	Error signal
	3	SDA	I/O	0/3.3 V DC	Data signal
	4	SCL	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Clock signal
	5	VSET	O	Analog	Analog voltage
	6	SGND	-	-	Ground
	7	PGND	-	-	Ground
	8	PWM	O	0/3.3 V DC	PWM signal
	9	POW	O	0/3.3 V DC	LED driver: On/Off
	10	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to LLPWB
	11	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to LLPWB
YC7	1	+24V1	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power from PSPWB
Connected to power source PWB	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	+24V2	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power from PSPWB
	6	+24V2	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power from PSPWB

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC8	1	+3.3V	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to HPS
Connected to home position sensor	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	HP_SW	I	0/3.3 V DC	HPS: On/Off
YC9	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to CCD PWB	2	CCDCLK1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Clock signal
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	CCDCLK2	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Clock signal
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	CP	O	0/3.3 V DC	Clamp signal
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
	8	RS	O	0/3.3 V DC	Reset signal
	9	VSG	O	0/3.3 V DC	Control signal
	10	TG	O	0/3.3 V DC	Control signal
	11	SH	O	0/3.3 V DC	Shift gate signal
	12	AFE_SI	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	13	AFE_EN	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Enable signal
	14	AFE_SO	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	15	AFECLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Clock signal
	16	GND	-	-	Ground
	17	DSI_CIS_1N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	18	DSI_CIS_1P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	19	GND	-	-	Ground
	20	DSI_CIS_2N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	21	DSI_CIS_2P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	22	GND	-	-	Ground
	23	DSI_CIS_3N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	24	DSI_CIS_3P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	25	GND	-	-	Ground
	26	DSI_CIS_4N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	27	DSI_CIS_4P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	28	GND	-	-	Ground
	29	DSI_CIS_5N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	30	DSI_CIS_5P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Image data signal
	31	GND	-	-	Ground
	32	DSI_CISCKN	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Clock signal
	33	DSI_CISCKP	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Clock signal

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC9	34	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to CCD PWB	35	CCDSEL	O	0/3.3 V DC	Select signal
	36	GND	-	-	Ground
	37	AFE_MCLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Clock signal
	38	GND(AFE_SHD)	-	-	Ground
	39	CLPIN	O	0/3.3 V DC	Clamp signal
	40	GND(AFE_SHP)	-	-	Ground
YC11	1	+5.1V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to CCDPWB
Connected to CCD PWB	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	+10V	O	DC10V	10 V DC power to CCDPWB
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	+3.3V	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to CCDPWB
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
YC12	1	GND(SPARE)	-	-	Ground
Connected to DP main PWB	2	DP_TMG	I	0/3.3 V DC	DPTS: On/Off
	3	DP_RDY	I	0/3.3 V DC	ready signal
	4	DP_SEL	O	0/3.3 V DC	Select signal
	5	DP_CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Clock signal
	6	DP_SO	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	7	DP_SI	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	8	DP_OPEN	I	0/3.3 V DC	DPOCSW: On/Off
	9	Reserve	-	-	Not used
	10	GND	-	-	Ground
	11	GND	-	-	Ground
	12	GND	-	-	Ground
	13	Reserve	-	-	Not used
	14	24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to DPMPWB
	15	24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to DPMPWB
	16	24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to DPMPWB
YC13	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to original size sensor	2	ORG_SW	I	0/3.3 V DC	OSS: On/Off
	3	+5.1V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to OSS

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC14	1	+3.3V	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to ODSW
Connected to original detection switch	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	CO_SW	I	0/3.3 V DC	ODSW: On/Off

2-3-6 Operation PWB 1

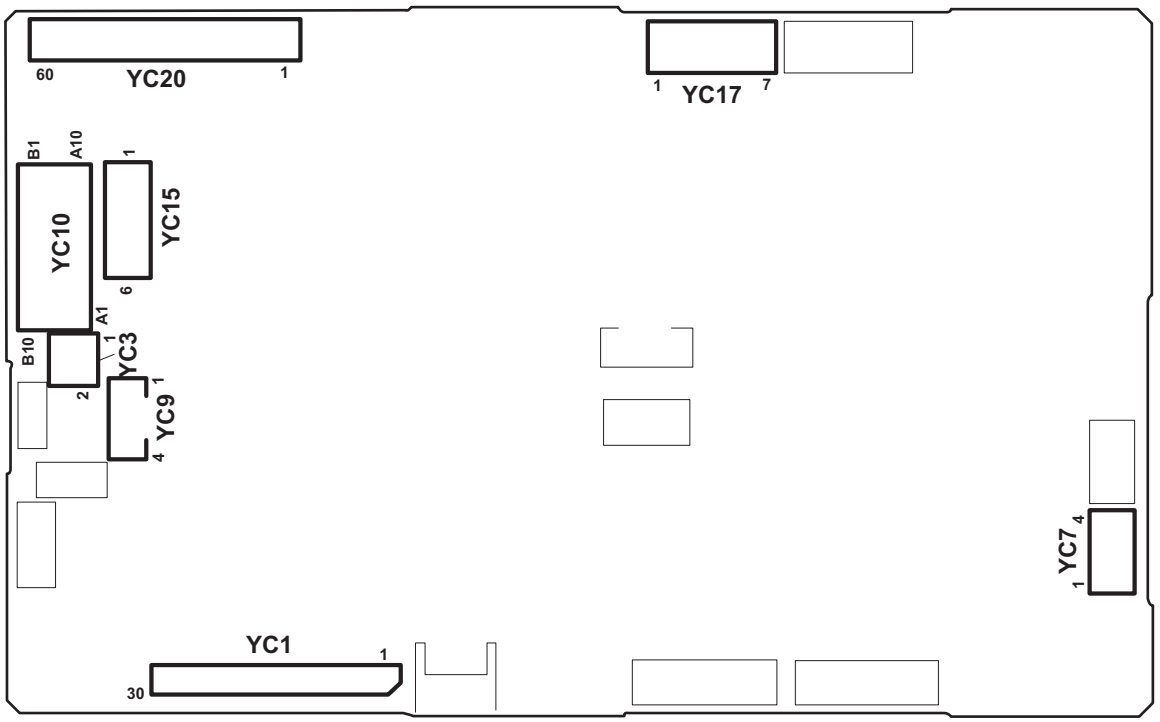


Figure 2-3-7 Operation PWB 1 silk-screen diagram

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC1	1	5V0	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to OPWB2
Connected to operation PWB2	2	NC	-	-	Not used
	3	INT_POWERKEY_N	I	0/3.3 V DC	Power key: On/Off
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	KEY6	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 6
	6	NC	-	-	Not used
	7	LED3	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel LED display drive signal 3
	8	NC	-	-	Not used
	9	KEY5	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 5
	10	KEY4	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 4
	11	SCAN4	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 4
	12	SCAN2	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 2
	13	GND	-	-	Ground
	14	SCAN3	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 3
	15	SCAN1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 1
	16	NC	-	-	Not used
	17	LED0	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel LED display drive signal 0
	18	LED1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel LED display drive signal 1
	19	LED2	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel LED display drive signal 2
	20	NC	-	-	Not used
	21	KEY0	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 0
	22	KEY1	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 1
	23	KEY2	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 2
	24	SCAN0	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Scan signal 0
	25	KEY3	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Operation panel key scan return signal 3
	26	GND	-	-	Ground
	27	ATTENTION	O	0/3.3 V DC	Attention LED control signal

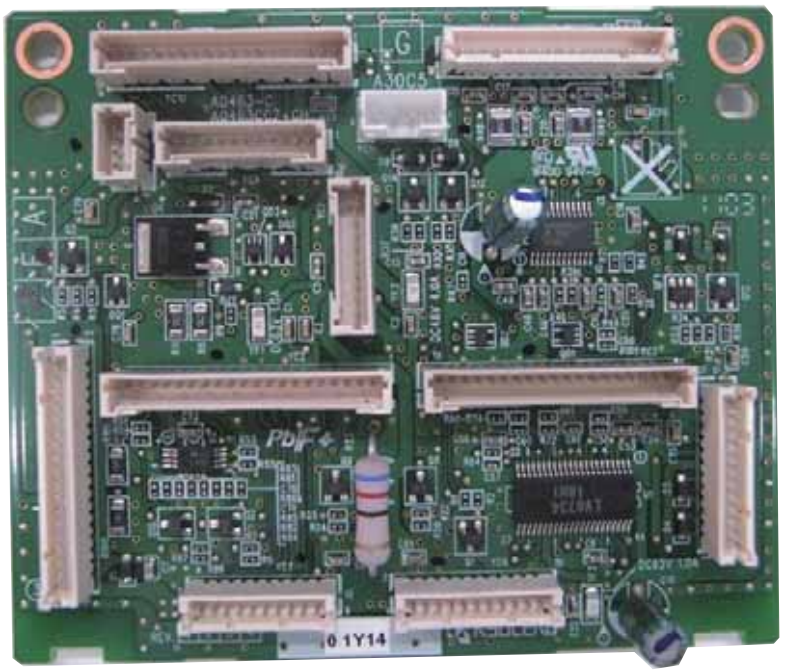
Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC1	28	MEMORY	O	0/3.3 V DC	Memory LED control signal
Connected to operation PWB2	29	PROCESSING	O	0/3.3 V DC	Processing LED control signal
	30	JOB_LED	O	0/3.3 V DC	JOBLED control signal
YC3	1	VO2	O	Analog	Speaker sound signal (+)
Connected to speaker	2	VO1	O	Analog	Speaker sound signal (-)
YC6	1	LED_A	O	0/3.3 V DC	LED control signal
Connected to LCD	2	LED_C	I	0/3.3 V DC	LED control signal
YC8	1	BOT Y-	I	Analog	Touch panel Y- position signal
Connected to touch panel	2	LEFT X+	I	Analog	Touch panel X+ position signal
	3	TOP Y+	I	Analog	Touch panel Y+ position signal
	4	RIGHT X-	I	Analog	Touch panel X- position signal
YC10	A1	LIGHTOFF_POWERON	I	0/3.3 V DC	LCD power On/ Off signal
Connected to main PWB	A2	GND	-	-	Ground
	A3	INT_POWERKEY	O	0/3.3 V DC	Power key: On/Off
	A4	AUDIO	I	Analog	Audio output signal
	A5	LED_PROCESSING	I	0/3.3 V DC	Processing LED control signal
	A6	LED_ATTENTION	I	0/3.3 V DC	Attention LED control signal
	A7	LED_MEMORY	I	0/3.3 V DC	Memory LED control signal
	A8	BEEP_POWERON	I	0/3.3 V DC	Acknowledging beep restoration signal
	A9	PANEL RESET	I	0/3.3 V DC	Reset signal
	A10	GND	-	-	Ground
	B1	P2C_SDAT	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	B2	C2P_SDAT	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	B3	P2C_SDIR	O	0/3.3 V DC	Panel communication direction signal
	B4	P2C_SBSY	O	0/3.3 V DC	Panel busy signal
	B5	C2P_SCK	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Panel clock signal
	B6	ANY_KEY	O	0/3.3 V DC	ANY KEY return signal
	B7	HUMAN_SENS_NEAR	-	-	Not used
	B8	5V0	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power from MPWB
	B9	JOB_LED	I	0/3.3 V DC	JOB LED control signal
	B10	HUMAN_SENS_FAR	-	-	Not used

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC11	1	5V6	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to OPWB3
Connected to operation PWB3	2	ATTENTION_LED	O	0/3.3 V DC	Attention LED control signal
	3	MEMORY_LED	O	0/3.3 V DC	Memory LED control signal
	4	PROCESSING_LED	O	0/3.3 V DC	Processing LED control signal
YC15	1	+5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power from MPWB
Connected to main PWB	2	+5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power from MPWB
	3	+5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power from MPWB
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
YC18	1	POL	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
Connected to LCD	2	STVD	I/O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	3	OE	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	4	CKG	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	LCD clock signal
	5	STVU	I/O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	EDGSL	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	8	3.3V2	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to LCD
	9	V9	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	10	VM	O	Analog	LCD control signal
	11	V2	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	12	VH	O	Analog	LCD control signal
	13	V6	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	14	UD	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	15	VCOM	O	Analog	LCD control signal
	16	GND	-	-	Ground
	17	VLS	O	Analog	LCD control signal
	18	V14	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	19	V11	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	20	V8	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	21	V5	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	22	V3	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	23	GND	-	-	Ground
	24	RO5	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	25	RO4	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC18	26	RO3	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
Connected to LCD	27	RO2	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	28	RO1	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	29	RO0	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	30	GND	-	-	Ground
YC19	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to LCD	2	GO5	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	3	GO4	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	4	GO3	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	5	GO2	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	6	GO1	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	7	GO0	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	8	DIO2	I/O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	9	REV	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	10	GND	-	-	Ground
	11	CKS	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	LCD clock signal
	12	3.3V2	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to LCD
	13	DIO1	I/O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	14	LD	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	15	BO5	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	16	BO4	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	17	BO3	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	18	BO2	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	19	BO1	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	20	BO0	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	21	SHL	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	22	V1	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	23	V4	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	24	V7	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	25	V10	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	26	V12	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	27	V13	O	0/3.3 V DC	LCD control signal
	28	VLS	O	Analog	LCD control signal
	29	GND	-	-	Ground
	30	VCOM	O	Analog	LCD control signal

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC22	1	GND	-	-	-
Connected to main PWB	2	LCD_OFF	I	0/3.3 V DC	Control signal
	3	LOCKN	I	0/3.3 V DC	Lock signal
	4	GND	-	-	-
	5	RX0N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Received data signal
	6	RX0P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Received data signal
	7	GND	-	-	-

2-3-7 Front PWB



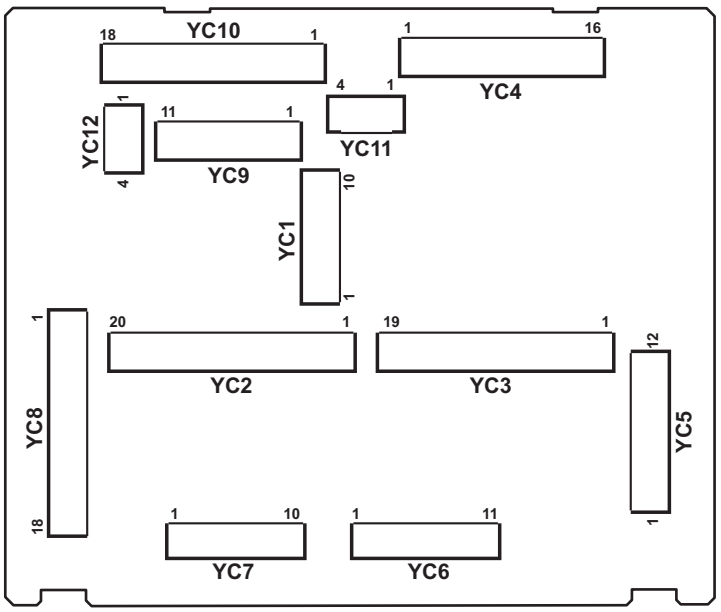


Figure 2-3-8 Front PWB silk-screen diagram

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC1	1	+3.3V1	I	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power from EPWB
Connected to engine PWB	2	+3.3V2	I	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power from EPWB
	3	+5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power from EPWB
	4	+24V	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power from EPWB
	5	+24V	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power from EPWB
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
	9	GND	-	-	Ground
	10	GND	-	-	Ground
YC2	1	EXIT_FAN_REM	I	0/24 V DC	EFFM: On/Off
Connected to engine PWB	2	CONTAIN_FAN_REM	-	-	Not used
	3	ERS_Bk_REM	I	0/24 V DC	CL: On/Off
	4	EEP_SDA1	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	EEPROM data signal
	5	EEP_SCL1	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	EEPROM clock signal
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	TN_CLK	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Clock signal
	8	TPD_Bk_1	O	Analog	DEVPWB detection signal
	9	DLP_VCONT_Bk_1	I	0/3.3 V DC	DEVPWB control signal
	10	TPD_TEMP_Bk	O	Analog	Developer thermistor detection signal
	11	LSU_FAN	I	0/24 V DC	LSUFM: On/Off
	12	FRONT_OPEN	O	0/3.3 V DC	FRCSW: On/Off
	13	I2C_SCL	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	EEPROM clock signal
	14	I2C_SDA	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	EEPROM data signal
	15	WTNR_LED	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	WTS1 LED emitter signal
	16	WTNR_NEAR	O	Analog	WTS2 detection signal
	17	WTNR_NEAR_VCONT	I	0/3.3 V DC	WTS2 control signal
	18	WTNR_FULL	O	Analog	WTS1 detection signal
	19	WTNR_FULL_VCONT	I	0/3.3 V DC	WTS1 control signal
	20	WTNR_SET	O	Analog	WTS2 detection signal

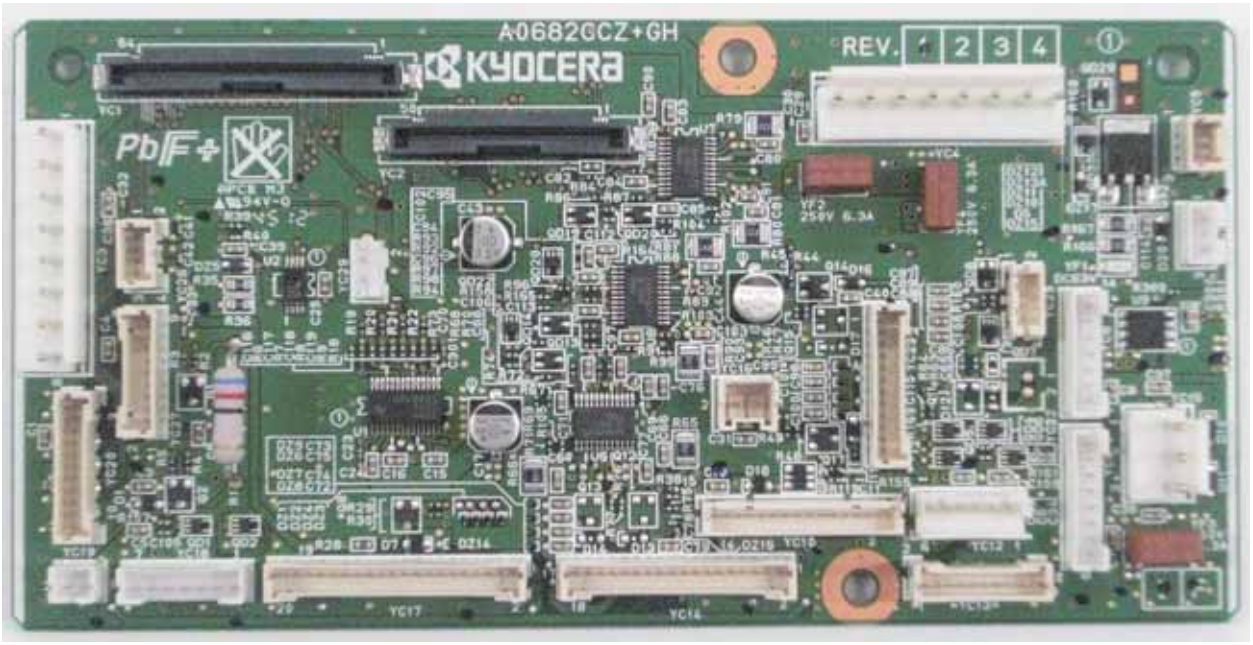
Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC3	1	JUNC_SOL_RET	I	0/24 V DC	FSSOL: On/Off (RET)
Connected to engine PWB	2	JUNC_SOL_REM	I	0/24 V DC	FSSOL: On/Off (ACT)
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	EXIT_PAPER_SENS	O	0/3.3 V DC	ES: On/Off
	5	EXIT_FEED_SENS	O	0/3.3 V DC	SBS: On/Off
	6	SB_MOT_REM	I	0/3.3 V DC	EM: On/Off
	7	SB_MOT_DIR	I	0/3.3 V DC	EM drive switch signal
	8	SB_MOT_PD	I	0/3.3 V DC	EM control signal
	9	SB_MOT_CLK	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	EM clock signal
	10	SB_MOT_PH	I	0/3.3 V DC	EM control signal
	11	ENCODE_ Bk	O	0/3.3 V DC	SRS: On/Off
	12	THOP_Bk	O	0/3.3 V DC	THS: On/Off
	13	THOP_MOT_REM	I	0/3.3 V DC	THM: On/Off
	14	THOP_MOT_DIR	I	0/3.3 V DC	THM drive switch signal
	15	DLP_FAN_H	I	0/24 V DC	DEVFM: On/Off
	16	DLP_FAN_L	I	0/24 V DC	DEVFM: On/Off
	17	ROT_HP_SENS	O	0/3.3 V DC	DEVSS: On/Off
	18	INTER_LOCK	-	-	Not used
	19	NC	-	-	Not used
YC4	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to eject unit	2	ROT_HP_SENS	I	0/3.3 V DC	DEVSS: On/Off
	3	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to DEVSS
	4	SB_CORE B/	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	EM drive control signal
	5	SB_CORE A/	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	EM drive control signal
	6	SB_CORE B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	EM drive control signal
	7	SB_CORE A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	EM drive control signal
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
	9	EXIT_FEED_SENS	I	0/3.3 V DC	SBS: On/Off
	10	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to SBS
	11	GND	-	-	Ground
	12	EXIT_PAPER_SENS	I	0/3.3 V DC	ES: On/Off
	13	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to ES
	14	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to FSSOL
	15	JUNC_SOL_REM	O	0/24 V DC	FSSOL: On/Off (REM)
	16	JUNC_SOL_RET	O	0/24 V DC	FSSOL: On/Off (RET)

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC5	1	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to DEVFM1
Connected to inner unit	2	DRUM_AIR_FAN	O	0/24 V DC	DEVFM1: On/Off
	3	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to DEVFM2
	4	DRUM_DLP_FAN	O	0/24 V DC	DEVFM2: On/Off
	5	THOP_MOT_BK	O	0/24 V DC	THM: On/Off
	6	+24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to THM
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
	8	THOP_Bk	I	0/3.3 V DC	THS: On/Off
	9	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to THS
	10	GND	-	-	Ground
	11	ENCODE_Bk	I	0/3.3 V DC	SRS: On/Off
	12	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to SRS
YC6	1	3.3V2	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to DRPWB
Connected to drum unit	2	EEP_SCL1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	EEPROM clock signal
	3	EEP_SDA1	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	EEPROM data signal
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	DRM_ADR0_Bk	-	-	Not used
	6	DRM_ADR1_Bk	-	-	Not used
	7	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to CL
	8	ERS_Bk_REM	O	0/24 V DC	CL: On/Off
		24V	-	-	Not used
		ERS_REM_PRE	-	-	Not used
	8	NC	-	-	Not used
YC7	1	TPD_TEMP_BK	I	Analog	Developer thermistor detection signal
Connected to developer unit	2	DLP_VCONT_BK_1	O	0/3.3 V DC	DEVPWB control signal
	3	TPD_BK_1	I	Analog	DEVPWB detection signal
	4	TN_CLK_BK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Clock signal
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	DLP_ADR1_BK	-	-	Not used
	7	DLP_ADR0_BK	-	-	Not used
	8	EEP_SDA1	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	EEPROM data signal
	9	EEP_SCL1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	EEPROM clock signal
	10	3.3V2	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to DEVPWB

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC8	1	WTNR_SET	I	Analog	WTS2 detection signal
Connected to outer temperature sensor, front cover switch, LSU fan motor, waste toner sensor1,2 and waste toner detection switch	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to WTS1
	4	WTNR_FULL	I	Analog	WTS1 detection signal
	5	WTNR_LED	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	WTS1 LED emitter signal
	6	5V_LED	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to WTS1
	7	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to WTS2
	8	WTNR_NEAR	-	-	Not used
	9	WTNR_LED	-	-	Not used
	10	5V_LED	-	-	Not used
	11	3.3V1	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to OTEM
	12	I2C_SDA	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	EEPROM data signal
	13	GND	-	-	Ground
	14	I2C_SCL	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	EEPROM clock signal
	15	FRONT_OPEN	O	0/3.3 V DC	FRCSW: On/Off
	16	GND	-	-	Ground
	17	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to LSUFM
	18	LSU_FAN	O	DC0V/243V	LSUFM: On/Off
YC9	1	ROT_MOT_REM	-	-	Not used
Connected to engine PWB	2	ROT_MOT_CLK	-	-	Not used
	3	ROT_MOT_DIR	-	-	Not used
	4	ROT_MOT_PD	-	-	Not used
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	IH_COIL_FAN_H	I	0/24 V DC	FUFFM: On/Off
	7	IH_COIL_FAN_L	I	0/24 V DC	FUFFM: On/Off
	8	IH_COIL_FAN_ALM	O	0/3.3 V DC	FUFFM alarm signal
	9	IH_CORE_SENS	O	0/3.3 V DC	IHCS: On/Off
	10	IH_CORE_MOT_CLK	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	IHCM clock signal
	11	IH_CORE_MOT_REM	I	0/3.3 V DC	IHCM: On/Off

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC10	1	5V	-	-	Not used
Connected to eject PWB	2	LED	-	-	Not used
	3	5V	-	-	Not used
	4	LED	-	-	Not used
	5	ROT_MOT_REM	-	-	Not used
	6	ROT_MOT_CLK	-	-	Not used
	7	ROT_MOT_DIR	-	-	Not used
	8	ROT_MOT_PD	-	-	Not used
	9	GND	-	-	Ground
	10	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to EJPWB
	11	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to EJPWB
	12	IH_COIL_FAN	O	0/24 V DC	FUFFM: On/Off
	13	GND	-	-	Ground
	14	GND	-	-	Ground
	15	IH_COIL_FAN_ALM	I	0/3.3 V DC	FUFFM alarm signal
	16	IH_CORE_SENS	I	0/3.3 V DC	IHCS: On/Off
	17	IH_CORE_MOT_CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	IHCM clock signal
	18	IH_CORE_MOT_REM	O	0/3.3 V DC	IHCM: On/Off
YC11	1	EXIT FAN	O	0/24 V DC	EFFM: On/Off
Connected to eject front fan motor	2	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to EFFM
	3	24V	-	-	Not used
	4	CONTAINER_FAN	-	-	Not used

2-3-8 Feed PWB 1



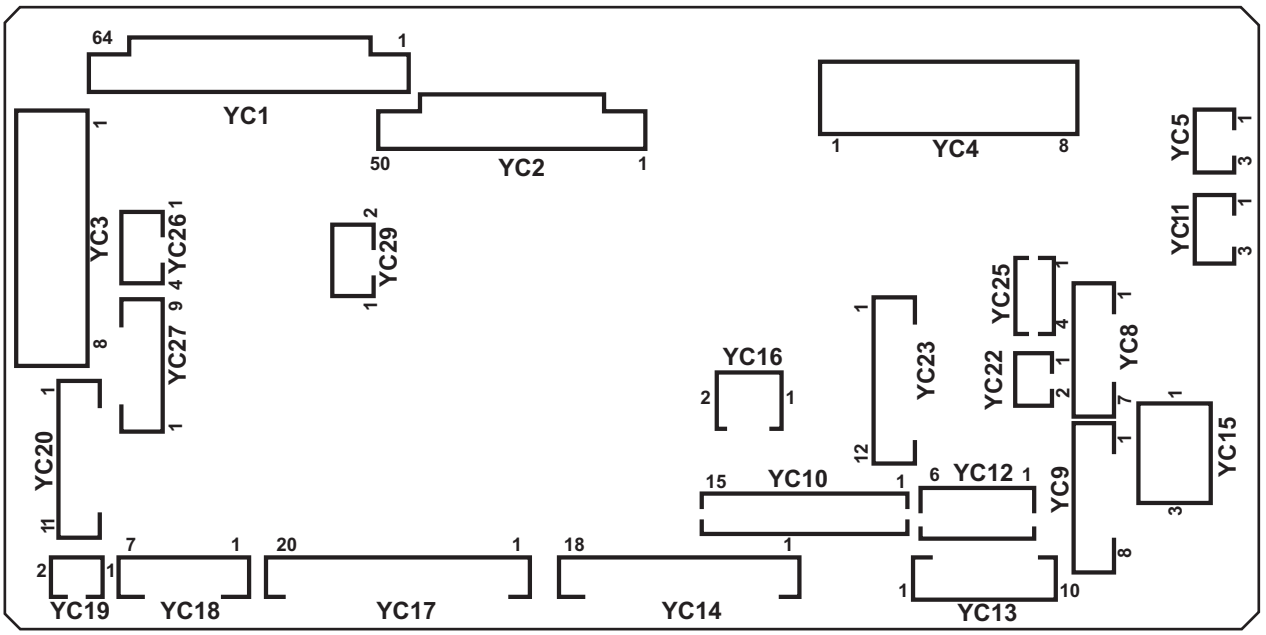


Figure 2-3-9 Feed PWB 1 silk-screen diagram

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC1	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to engine PWB	2	REG_F_LED	I	Analog	IDS1 control signal
	3	REG_SENS_F_P	O	Analog	IDS1 detection signal
	4	REG_SENS_F_S	O	Analog	IDS1 detection signal
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	REG_R_LED	I	Analog	IDS2 control signal
	7	REG_SENS_RP(BK)	O	Analog	IDS2 detection signal
	8	REG_SENS_RS(BK)	O	Analog	IDS2 detection signal
	9	CLN_SOL_REM	I	0/24 V DC	CLSOL: On/Off (ACT)
	10	CLN_SOL_RET	I	0/24 V DC	CLSOL: On/Off (RET)
	11	GND	-	-	Ground
	12	BELT_JAM_SENS	-	-	Not used
	13	DU_SENS	O	0/3.3 V DC	DUS2: On/Off
	14	PRESS_RLS_SENS	O	0/3.3 V DC	TRRS: On/Off
	15	PRESS_RLS_MOT_REM2	I	0/24 V DC	TRRM: On/Off
	16	PRESS_RLS_MOT_REM1	I	0/24 V DC	TRRM: On/Off
	17	DU_FAN	-	-	Not used
	18	DU_OPEN	O	0/3.3 V DC	DUCSW: On/Off
	19	GND	-	-	Ground
	20	DU2_REM(CL_LOW)	I	0/3.3 V DC	DUM2/DUCL2: On/Off
	21	DU2_CLK	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DUM2 clock signal
	22	DU2_PD	I	0/3.3 V DC	DUM2 control signal
	23	INTER_LOCK	O	0/24 V DC	PCUSW: On/Off
	24	GND	-	-	Ground
	25	GND	-	-	Ground
	26	GND	-	-	Ground
	27	GND	-	-	Ground
	28	GND	-	-	Ground
	29	MPF_LIFT1	I	0/24 V DC	MPLM: On/Off
	30	MPF_LIFT2	I	0/24 V DC	MPLM: On/Off
	31	MPF_CL	I	0/24 V DC	MPPFCL: On/Off

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC1	32	MPF_JAM	O	0/3.3 V DC	MPFS: On/Off
Connected to engine PWB	33	MPF_LIFT_DOWN	O	0/3.3 V DC	MPLS2: On/Off
	34	MPF_LIFT_UP	O	0/3.3 V DC	MPLS1: On/Off
	35	MPF_PPR_SET	O	0/3.3 V DC	MPPS: On/Off
	36	GND	-	-	Ground
	37	MPF_LNG	O	0/3.3 V DC	MPPLSW: On/Off
	38	MPF_WID3	O	0/3.3 V DC	MPPWSW: On/Off
	39	MPF_WID2	O	0/3.3 V DC	MPPWSW: On/Off
	40	MPF_WID1	O	0/3.3 V DC	MPPWSW: On/Off
	41	MPF_TABLE	O	0/3.3 V DC	MPTSW: On/Off
	42	GND	-	-	Ground
	43	FSR_MOT_BRK	I	0/3.3 V DC	FUM break signal
	44	FSR_MOT_DIR	I	0/3.3 V DC	FUM drive switch signal
	45	FSR_MOT_RDY	O	0/3.3 V DC	FUM ready signal
	46	FSR_MOT_CLK	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	FUM clock signal
	47	FSR_MOT_REM	I	0/3.3 V DC	FUM: On/Off
	48	GND	-	-	Not used
	49	GND	-	-	Ground
	50	EXIT_REAR_FAN_H	I	0/24 V DC	ERFM: On/Off
	51	EXIT_REAR_FAN_L	I	0/24 V DC	ERFM: On/Off
	52	PRESS_REM	-	-	Not used
	53	FSR_RELAY	I	0/3.3 V DC	Fuser relay signal
	54	ZEROC	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Zero-cross signal
	55	PRESS_REM	I	0/3.3 V DC	Fuser heater remote signal
	56	MAIN_HEAT_REM	-	-	Not used
	57	GND	-	-	Ground
	58	JOB_SOL_REM	I	0/24 V DC	JSFSSOL: On/Off
	59	JOB_OPEN_SENS	O	0/3.3 V DC	JSOCS: On/Off
	60	JOB_MOT_DIR	I	0/3.3 V DC	JSEM drive switch signal
	61	JOB_MOT_CLK	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	JSEM clock signal
	62	JOB_MOT_REM	I	0/3.3 V DC	JSEM: On/Off
	63	JOB_SET	O	0/3.3 V DC	Job separator set signal
	64	GND	-	-	Ground

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC2	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to engine PWB	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	DRM_HEAT	-	-	Not used
	4	POWER_OFF_24V 1	I	0/3.3 V DC	Power off signal
	5	M_TEMP	-	-	Not used
	6	REG_F_LED	-	-	Not used
	7	REG_SENS_F_P	-	-	Not used
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
	9	REG_SENS_F_S	-	-	Not used
	10	REG_R_LED	-	-	Not used
	11	REG_SENS_R_P	-	-	Not used
	12	REG_SENS_R_S	-	-	Not used
	13	CLN_SOL_REM	I	0/24 V DC	CLSOL: On/Off (ACT)
	14	CLN_SOL_RET	I	0/24 V DC	CLSOL: On/Off (RET)
	15	GND	-	-	Ground
	16	REG_MOT_REM(CL)	I	0/3.3 V DC	RM/RCL: On/Off
	17	REG_MOT_CLK	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	RM clock signal
	18	REG_MOT_PD	I	0/3.3 V DC	RM control signal
	19	IH_PWB_FAN_ALM	O	0/3.3 V DC	HFM alarm signal
	20	IH_PWB_FAN_H	I	0/24 V DC	HFM: On/Off
	21	IH_PWB_FAN_L	I	0/24 V DC	HFM: On/Off
	22	DLP_MOT_CLR_DIR	-	-	Not used
	23	DLP_MOT_CLR_RDY	-	-	Not used
	24	DLP_MOT_CLR_CLK	-	-	Not used
	25	DLP_MOT_CLR_REM	-	-	Not used
	26	GND	-	-	Ground
	27	DRM_MOT_CLR_DIR	-	-	Not used
	28	DRM_MOT_CLR_RDY	-	-	Not used
	29	DRM_MOT_CLR_CLK	-	-	Not used

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC2	30	DRM_MOT_CLR_REM	-	-	Not used
Connected to engine PWB	31	DLP_MOT_BK_DIR	I	0/3.3 V DC	DEVM drive switch signal
	32	DLP_MOT_BK_RDY	O	0/3.3 V DC	DEVM ready signal
	33	DLP_MOT_BK_CLK	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DEVM clock signal
	34	DLP_MOT_BK_REM	I	0/3.3 V DC	DEVM: On/Off
	35	DRM_MOT_BK_BRK	I	0/3.3 V DC	DRM break signal
	36	DRM_MOT_BK_DIR	I	0/3.3 V DC	DRM drive switch signal
	37	DRM_MOT_BK_RDY	O	0/3.3 V DC	DRM ready signal
	38	DRM_MOT_BK_CLK	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DRM clock signal
	39	DRM_MOT_BK_REM	I	0/3.3 V DC	DRM: On/Off
	40	GND	-	-	Ground
	41	TRANS_MOT_BRK	I	0/3.3 V DC	TCM break signal
	42	TRANS_MOT_DIR	I	0/3.3 V DC	TCM drive switch signal
	43	TRANS_MOT_RDY	O	0/3.3 V DC	TCM ready signal
	44	TRANS_MOT_CLK	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	TCM clock signal
	45	TRANS_MOT_REM	I	0/3.3 V DC	TCM: On/Off
	46	TCON_SET	-	-	Not used
	47	DU_ENTER_SENS	O	0/3.3 V DC	DUS1: On/Off
	48	EXIT_FAN	I	0/24 V DC	EFM: On/Off
	49	DU_MOT_REM	I	0/3.3 V DC	DUM1/DUCL1: On/Off
	50	GND	-	-	Ground
YC3	1	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to EPWB
Connected to engine PWB	2	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to EPWB
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	5V0	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to EPWB
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	+5V2	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power from EPWB
	8	GND	-	-	Ground

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC4	1	+24V1	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power from PSPWB
Connected to power source PWB	2	+24V1	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power from PSPWB
	3	+24V1	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power from PSPWB
	4	5V0	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power from PSPWB
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
YC5	1	POWER_OFF	O	0/3.3 V DC	Sleep mode signal: On/Off
Connected to power source PWB	2	DRM_HEAT_REM	O	0/3.3 V DC	FH: On/Off
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
YC8	1	NC	-	-	Not used
Connected to developer motor	2	DLP_MOT_Bk_DIR	O	0/3.3 V DC	DEVM drive switch signal
	3	DLP_MOT_Bk_RDY	I	0/3.3 V DC	DEVM ready signal
	4	DLP_MOT_Bk_CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DEVM clock signal
	5	DLP_MOT_Bk_REM	O	0/24 V DC	DEVM: On/Off
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to DEVM
YC9	1	NC	-	-	Not used
Connected to drum motor	2	DRM_MOT_Bk_BRK	O	0/3.3 V DC	DRM break signal
	3	DRM_MOT_Bk_DIR	O	0/3.3 V DC	DRM drive switch signal
	4	DRM_MOT_Bk_RDY	I	0/3.3 V DC	DRM ready signal
	5	DRM_MOT_Bk_CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	DRM clock signal
	6	DRM_MOT_Bk_REM	O	0/24 V DC	DRM: On/Off
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
	8	24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to DRM

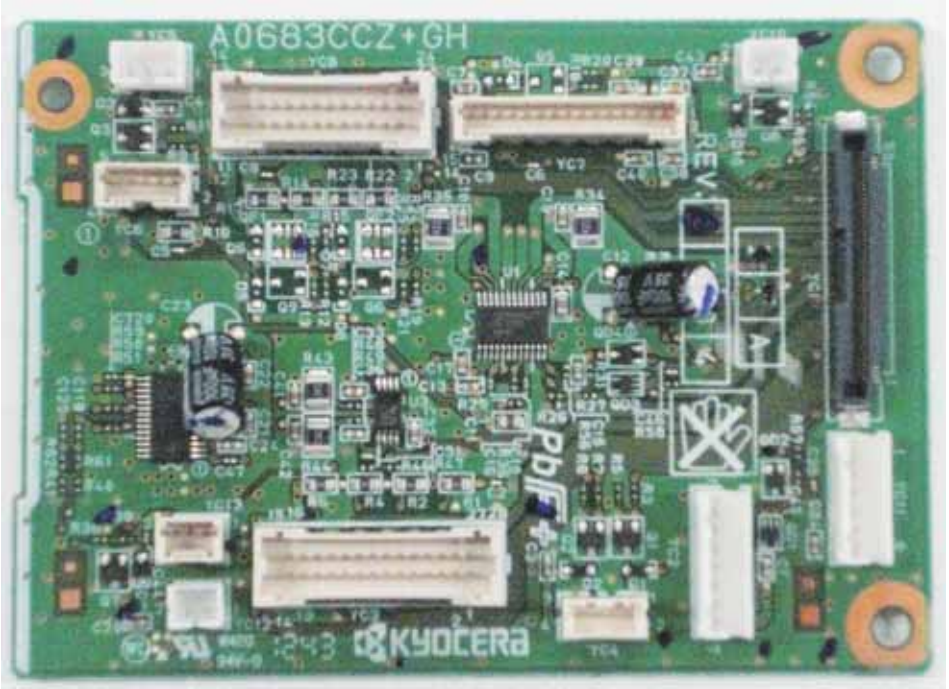
Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC11	1	IH_PWB_FAN	O	0/24 V DC	IHFM: On/Off
Connected to IH fan motor	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	IH_PWB_ALM	I	0/3.3 V DC	IHFM alarm signal
YC12	1	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to FPWB2
Connected to feed PWB 2	2	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to FPWB2
	3	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to FPWB2
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
YC13	1	TRANS_MOT_BRK	O	0/3.3 V DC	TRM break signal
Connected to relay PWB	2	TRANS_MOT_DIR	O	0/3.3 V DC	TRM drive switch signal
	3	TRANS_MOT_RDY	I	0/3.3 V DC	TRM ready signal
	4	TRANS_MOT_CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	TRM clock signal
	5	TRANS_MOT_REM	O	0/24 V DC	TRM: On/Off
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to TRM
	8	GND	-	-	Not used
	9	24V2	-	-	Not used
	10	TANK_SET	-	-	Not used
YC14	1	REG_BK_LED	O	Analog	IDS control signal
Connected to relay PWB	2	REG_BK_SENS1_P	I	Analog	IDS detection signal
	3	REG_BK_SENS1_S	I	Analog	IDS detection signal
	4	BELT_JAM_SENS	-	-	Not used
	5	DU_SENS	I	0/3.3 V DC	DUS2: On/Off
	6	PRESS_RLS_SENS	-	-	Not used
	7	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to RYPWB
	8	PRESS_MOT_REM1	-	-	Not used
	9	PRESS_MOT_REM2	-	-	Not used
	10	24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to RYPWB
	11	DU_FAN	O	0/24 V DC	DUFM: On/Off
	12	DU_CL_LOWER_REM	O	0/24 V DC	DUCL2: On/Off

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC14	13	DU_OPEN_SW	I	0/3.3 V DC	DUCSW: On/Off
Connected to relay PWB	14	DU2_B/	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	DUM2 drive control signal
	15	DU2_A/	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	DUM2 drive control signal
	16	DU2_B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	DUM2 drive control signal
	17	DU2_A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	DUM2 drive control signal
	18	GND	-	-	Ground
YC15	1	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to PCUSW
Connected to paper conveying unit switch	2	N.C	-	-	Not used
	3	+24V2	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power from PCUSW
YC16	1	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to HVPWB
Connected to high voltage PWB	2	GND	-	-	Ground
YC17	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to relay PWB	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	CL_SOL_REM	I	0/24 V DC	CLSOL: On/Off
	4	24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V dc power to RYPWB
	5	MPF_LIFT_MOT_B	O	0/24 V DC	MPLM: On/Off
	6	MPF_LIFT_MOT_A	O	0/24 V DC	MPLM: On/Off
	7	24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V dc power to RYPWB
	8	MPF_CL_REM	O	0/24 V DC	MPPFCL: On/Off
	9	MPF_JAM_SENS	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPFS: On/Off
	10	MPF_LIFT_DOWN_SENS	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPLS2: On/Off
	11	MPF_LIFT_UP_SENS	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPLS1: On/Off
	12	MPF_PPR_SET	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPPS: On/Off
	13	LED_3.3V3	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to RYPWB
	14	MPF_LNG	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPPLSW: On/Off
	15	MPF_WID3	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPPWSW: On/Off
	16	MPF_WID2	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPPWSW: On/Off
	17	MPF_WID1	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPPWSW: On/Off
	18	MPF_TABLE	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPTSW: On/Off
	19	GND	-	-	Ground
	20	GND	-	-	Ground

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC18	1	FSR_MOT_BRK	O	0/3.3 V DC	FUM break signal
Connected to fuser motor	2	FSR_MOT_DIR	O	0/3.3 V DC	FUM drive switch signal
	3	FSR_MOT_RDY	I	0/3.3 V DC	FUM ready signal
	4	FSR_MOT_CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	FUM clock signal
	5	FSR_MOT_REM	O	0/24 V DC	FUM: On/Off
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to FUM
YC19	1	EXIT_REAR_FAN	O	0/24 V DC	ERFM: On/Off
Connected to eject rear fan motor	2	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to ERFM
YC20	1	JOB_SET	I	0/3.3 V DC	Job separator set signal
Connected to job separator	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	JOB_MOT_REM	O	0/24 V DC	JSEM: On/Off
	5	24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to JSMPWB
	6	JOB_MOT_CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	JSEM clock signal
	7	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to JSMPWB
	8	JOB_MOT_DIR	O	0/3.3 V DC	JSEM drive switch signal
	9	JOB_OPEN_SENS	I	0/3.3 V DC	JSES: On/Off
	10	JOB_SOL_REM	O	0/24 V DC	JSFSSOL: On/Off
	11	NC	-	-	Not used
YC23	1	DU_ENTER_SENS	I	0/3.3 V DC	DUS1: On/Off
Connected to relay PWB	2	EXIT_FAN	O	0/24 V DC	EFM: On/Off
	3	24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to RYPWB
	4	DU_CL_UPPER_REM	O	0/24 V DC	DUCL1: On/Off
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	DU1_B/	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	DUM1 drive control signal
	7	DU1_A/	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	DUM1 drive control signal
	8	DU1_B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	DUM1 drive control signal
	9	DU1_A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	DUM1 drive control signal
	10	EDGE_FAN_REM	O	0/24 V DC	FUFM: On/Off
	11	LOOP_SENS	I	0/3.3 V DC	LPS: On/Off
	12	3.3V2	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to RYPWB

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC25	1	REG_MOT_B/	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	RM drive control signal
Connected to registration motor	2	REG_MOT_A/	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	RM drive control signal
	3	REG_MOT_B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	RM drive control signal
	4	REG_MOT_A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	RM drive control signal
YC26	1	3.3V2	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to EPWB
Connected to engine PWB	2	3.3V3	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to EPWB
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
YC27	1	MAIN_HEAT_REM	-	-	Not used
Connected to fuser IH PWB	2	PRESS_REM	O	24 V DC	Fuser heater remote signal
	3	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to FIHPWB
	4	ZEROC	-	-	Not used
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	FSR_RELAY	O	0/3.3 V DC	Fuser relay signal
	8	+24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to FIHPWB
	9	FSR_RELAY_24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to FIHPWB

2-3-9 Feed PWB 2



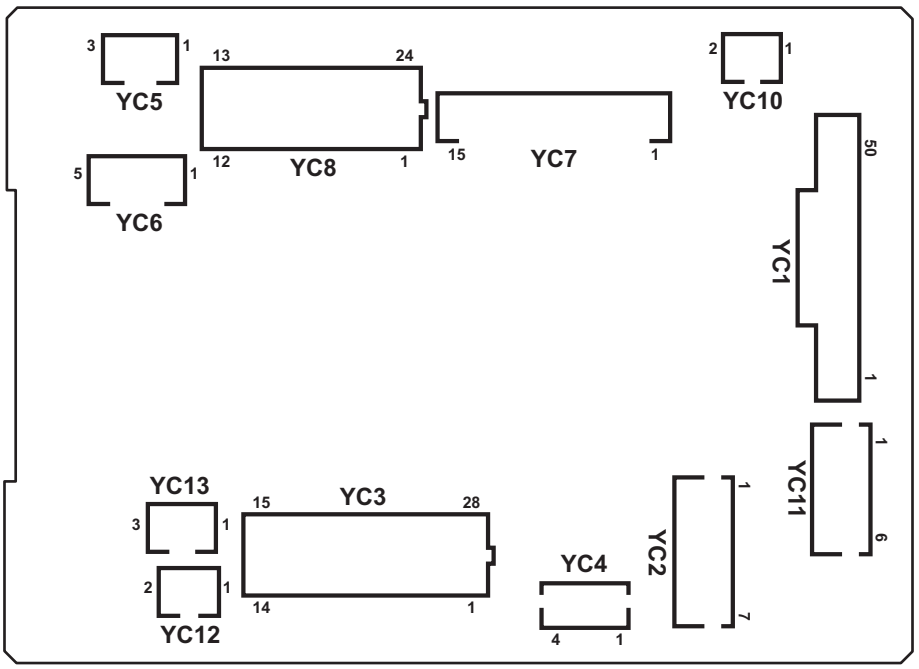


Figure 2-3-10 Feed PWB 2 silk-screen diagram

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC1	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to engine PWB	2	FEED_MOT_REM	I	0/3.3 V DC	PFM: On/Off
	3	FEED_MOT_CLK	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	PFM clock signal
	4	FEED_MOT_RDY	O	0/3.3 V DC	PFM ready signal
	5	FEED_MOT_DIR	I	0/3.3 V DC	PFM drive switch signal
	6	FEED_CL1_REM	I	0/24 V DC	PFCL1: On/Off
	7	FEED_CL2_REM	I	0/24 V DC	PFCL2: On/Off
	8	ASIST_CL2	I	0/24 V DC	ASCL2: On/Off
	9	LIFT_MOT2_REM	I	0/24 V DC	LM2: On/Off
	10	GND	-	-	Ground
	11	LIFT_MOT1_REM 1	I	0/24 V DC	LM1: On/Off
	12	CAS2_WID	O	0/3.3 V DC	PWSW2: On/Off
	13	CAS2_LNG3	O	0/3.3 V DC	PLSW2: On/Off
	14	CAS2_LNG2	O	0/3.3 V DC	PLSW2: On/Off
	15	CAS2_LNG1	O	0/3.3 V DC	PLSW2: On/Off
	16	CAS1_WID	O	0/3.3 V DC	PWSW1: On/Off
	17	CAS1_LNG3	O	0/3.3 V DC	PLSW1: On/Off
	18	CAS1_LNG2	O	0/3.3 V DC	PLSW1: On/Off
	19	CAS1_LNG1	O	0/3.3 V DC	PLSW1: On/Off
	20	GND	-	-	Ground
	21	CAS2_QUANT2	O	0/3.3 V DC	PGS2(L): On/Off
	22	CAS2_QUANT1	O	0/3.3 V DC	PGS2(U): On/Off
	23	CAS1_QUANT2	O	0/3.3 V DC	PGS1(L): On/Off
	24	CAS1_QUANT1	O	0/3.3 V DC	PGS1(U): On/Off
	25	LIFT_MOT1_LOCK	O	0/3.3 V DC	LM1 lock signal
	26	LIFT_MOT2_LOCK	O	0/3.3 V DC	LM2 lock signal
	27	CURRENT_SIG	-	-	Not used
	28	V-FEED_CL	I	0/24 V DC	PCCL: On/Off
	29	COVER_OPEN	O	0/3.3 V DC	RLCSW: On/Off
	30	FEED2_SENS	O	0/3.3 V DC	PFPCS1: On/Off
	31	CAS1_P0	O	0/3.3 V DC	FS1: On/Off
	32	CAS1_LIFT_UP	O	0/3.3 V DC	LS1: On/Off
	33	GND	-	-	Ground
	34	CAS1_EMPTY	O	0/3.3 V DC	PS1: On/Off

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC1	35	PICK_SOL1_RET	-	-	Not used
Connected to engine PWB	36	PICK_SOL1_REM	-	-	Not used
	37	CAS2_P0	O	0/3.3 V DC	FS2: On/Off
	38	CAS2_LIFT_UP	O	0/3.3 V DC	LS2: On/Off
	39	CAS2_EMPTY	O	0/3.3 V DC	PS2: On/Off
	40	PICK_SOL2_RET	-	-	Not used
	41	PICK_SOL2_REM	-	-	Not used
	42	GND	-	-	Ground
	43	REG_SENS	O	0/3.3 V DC	RS: On/Off
	44	FEED1_SENS	O	0/3.3 V DC	PCS: On/Off
	45	BEND_SENS	-	-	Not used
	46	MID_MOT_PH	I	0/3.3 V DC	MM control signal
	47	MID_MOT_REM(ROL_CL)	I	0/3.3 V DC	MM/MCL: On/Off
	48	MID_MOT_CLK	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	MM clock signal
	49	MID_MOT_PD	I	0/3.3 V DC	MM control signal
	50	ASIST_CL1	I	0/24 V DC	ASCL1: On/Off
YC2	1	FEED_MOT_GAIN	-	-	Not used
Connected to paper feed motor	2	FEED_MOT_DIR	O	0/3.3 V DC	PFM drive switch signal
	3	FEED_MOT_RDY	I	0/3.3 V DC	PFM ready signal
	4	FEED_MOT_CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	PFM clock signal
	5	FEED_MOT_REM	O	0/24 V DC	PFM: On/Off
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to PFM
YC3	1	CAS1_LNG1	I	0/3.3 V DC	PLSW1: On/Off
Connected to paper length switch 1/2, paper width switch 1/2, lift motor 1/2, paper gauge sensor 1(U)/(L) and paper gauge sensor 2(U)/(L)	2	CAS1_LNG2	I	0/3.3 V DC	PLSW1: On/Off
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	CAS1_LNG3	I	0/3.3 V DC	PLSW1: On/Off
	5	CAS1_WID	I	0/3.3 V DC	PWSW1: On/Off
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	CAS2_LNG1	I	0/3.3 V DC	PLSW2: On/Off
	8	CAS2_LNG2	I	0/3.3 V DC	PLSW2: On/Off
	9	GND	-	-	Ground
	10	CAS2_LNG3	I	0/3.3 V DC	PLSW2: On/Off
	11	CAS2_WID	I	0/3.3 V DC	PWSW2: On/Off
	12	GND	-	-	Ground

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC3	13	LIFT_MOT1_RET	O	0/24 V DC	LM1: On/Off
Connected to paper length switch 1/2, paper width switch 1/2, lift motor 1/2, paper gauge sensor 1(U)/(L) and paper gauge sensor 2(U)/(L)	14	LIFT_MOT1_DR	O	0/24 V DC	LM1: On/Off
	15	LIFT_MOT2_RET	O	0/24 V DC	LM2: On/Off
	16	LIFT_MOT2_DR	O	0/24 V DC	LM2: On/Off
	17	LED_5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to PGS1(U)
	18	GND	-	-	Ground
	19	CAS1_QUANT1	I	0/3.3 V DC	PGS1(U): On/Off
	20	LED_5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to PGS1(L)
	21	GND	-	-	Ground
	22	CAS1_QUANT2	I	0/3.3 V DC	PGS1(L): On/Off
	23	LED_5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to PGS2(U)
	24	GND	-	-	Ground
	25	CAS2_QUANT1	I	0/3.3 V DC	PGS2(U): On/Off
	26	LED_5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to PGS2(L)
	27	GND	-	-	Ground
	28	CAS2_QUANT2	I	0/3.3 V DC	PGS2(L): On/Off
YC4	1	FEED_CL1_REM	O	0/24 V DC	PFCL1: On/Off
Connected to paper feed clutch 1/2	2	24V2	O	24 V DC	PFCL124 V DC power to PFCL1
	3	FEED_CL2_REM	O	0/24 V DC	PFCL2: On/Off
	4	24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to PFCL2
YC5	1	NC	-	-	Not used
Connected to paper conveying clutch	2	24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to PCCL
	3	V-FEED_CL_REM	O	0/24 V DC	PCCL: On/Off
YC6	1	LED_5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to PCS
Connected to paper conveying sensor and paper conveying cover switch	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	FEED2_SENS	I	0/3.3 V DC	PCS: On/Off
	4	COVER_OPEN	I	0/3.3 V DC	PCCSW: On/Off
	5	GND	-	-	Ground

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC7	1	MID_B/	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	MM drive control signal
Connected to middle motor, middle sensor and registration sensor	2	MID_A/	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	MM drive control signal
	3	MID_B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	MM drive control signal
	4	MID_A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	MM drive control signal
	5	BEND_SENS	-	-	Not used
	6	GND	-	-	Not used
	7	5V	-	-	Not used
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
	9	FEED1_SENS	I	0/3.3 V DC	MS: On/Off
	10	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to MS
	11	GND	-	-	Ground
	12	REG_SENS	I	0/3.3 V DC	RS: On/Off
	13	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to RS
	14	MID_CL_REM	O	0/24 V DC	MCL: On/Off
	15	24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to MCL
YC8	1	24V2	-	-	Not used
Connected to primary paper feed unit	2	PICK_SOL1_REM	-	-	Not used
	3	PICK_SOL1_RET	-	-	Not used
	4	LED_5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to PS1
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	CAS1_EMPTY_SENS	I	0/3.3 V DC	PS1: On/Off
	7	LED_5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to LS1
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
	9	CAS1_LIFT_UP_SENS	I	0/3.3 V DC	LS1: On/Off
	10	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to FS1
	11	CAS1_P0_SENS	I	0/3.3 V DC	FS1: On/Off
	12	GND	-	-	Ground
	13	24V2	-	-	Not used
	14	PICK_SOL2_REM	-	-	Not used
	15	PICK_SOL2_RET	-	-	Not used
	16	LED_5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to PS2
	17	GND	-	-	Ground
	18	CAS2_EMPTY_SENS	I	0/3.3 V DC	PS2: On/Off
	19	LED_5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to LS2

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC8	20	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to primary paper feed unit	21	CAS2_LIFT_UP_SENS	I	0/3.3 V DC	LS2: On/Off
	22	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to FS2
	23	CAS2_P0_SENS	I	0/3.3 V DC	FS2: On/Off
	24	GND	-	-	Ground
YC10	1	ASIST_CL1	O	0/24 V DC	ASCL1: On/Off
Connected to assist clutch 1	2	24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to ASCL1
YC11	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to feed PWB 1	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	+5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power from FPWB1
	5	+24V2	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power from FPWB1
	6	+24V2	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power from FPWB1
YC12	1	ASIST_CL2	O	0/24 V DC	ASCL2: On/Off
Connected to assist clutch 2	2	24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to ASCL2

2-3-10 Relay PWB

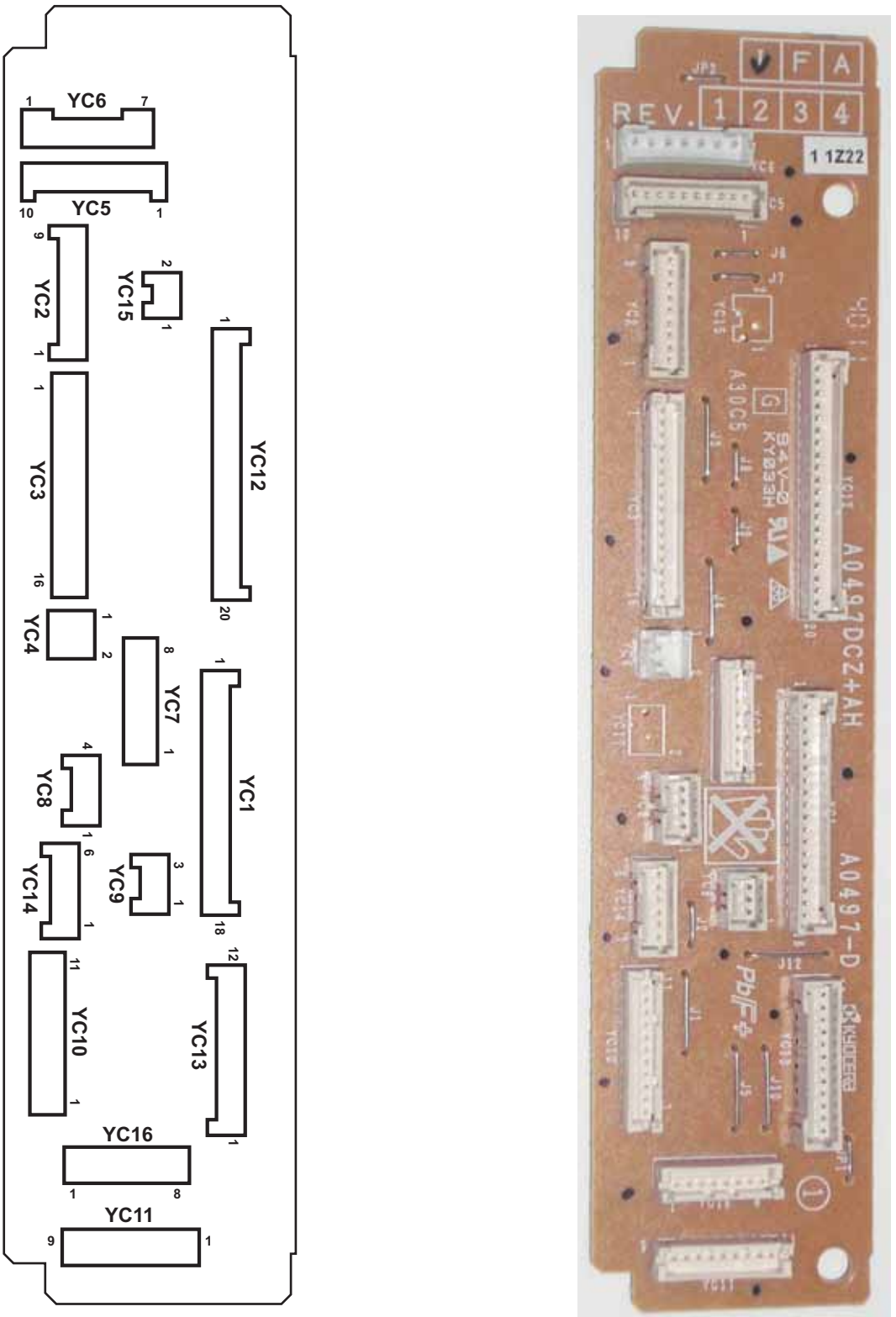


Figure 2-3-11 Relay PWB silk-screen diagram

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC1	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to feed PWB 1	2	DU2_A	I	0/24 V DC (pulse)	DUM2 drive control signal
	3	DU2_B	I	0/24 V DC (pulse)	DUM2 drive control signal
	4	DU2_A/	I	0/24 V DC (pulse)	DUM2 drive control signal
	5	DU2_B/	I	0/24 V DC (pulse)	DUM2 drive control signal
	6	DU_OPEN_SW	O	0/3.3 V DC	DUCSW: On/Off
	7	DU_CL_LOWER_REM	I	0/24 V DC	DUCL2: On/Off
	8	DU_FAN	I	0/24 V DC	DUFM: On/Off
	9	24V2	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power from FPWB1
	10	PRESS_MOT_REM2	-	-	Not used
	11	PRESS_MOT_REM1	-	-	Not used
	12	5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power from FPWB1
	13	PRESS_RLS_SENS	-	-	Not used
	14	DU_SENS	O	0/3.3 V DC	DUS2: On/Off
	15	BELT_JAM_SENS	-	-	Not used
	16	REG_BK_SENS1_S	O	Analog	IDS detection signal
	17	REG_BK_SENS1_P	O	Analog	IDS detection signal
	18	REG_BK_LED	I	Analog	IDS control signal
YC2	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to MP tray unit	2	MPF_LNG	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPPLSW: On/Off
	3	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to MPPLSW
	4	MPF_WID3	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPPWSW: On/Off
	5	MPF_WID2	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPPWSW: On/Off
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	MPF_WID1	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPPWSW: On/Off
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
	9	MPF_TABLE	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPTSW: On/Off

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC3	1	LED_3.3V3	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to MPPLSW
Connected to MP tray unit	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	MPF_PPR_SET	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPPS: On/Off
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	MPF_LIFT_UP_SENS	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPLS1: On/Off
	6	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to MPLS1
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
	8	MPF_LIFT_DOWN_SENS	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPLS2: On/Off
	9	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to MPLS1
	10	GND	-	-	Ground
	11	MPF_JAM_SENS	I	0/3.3 V DC	MPFS: On/Off
	12	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to MPFS
	13	MPF_CL_REM	O	0/24 V DC	MPPFCL: On/Off
	14	24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to MPPFCL
	15	MPF_LIFT_DR_A	O	0/24 V DC	MPLM: On/Off
	16	MPF_LIFT_DR_B	O	0/24 V DC	MPLM: On/Off
YC4	1	24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to CLSOL
Connected to cleaning solenoid	2	ID_SOL_REM	O	0/24 V DC	CLSOL: On/Off
YC5	1	TANK_SET	-	-	Not used
Connected to feed PWB 1	2	24V2	-	-	Not used
	3	GND	-	-	Not used
	4	24V2	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power from FPWB1
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	TRANS_MOT_REM	I	0/24 V DC	TRM: On/Off
	7	TRANS_MOT_CLK	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	TRM clock signal
	8	TRANS_MOT_RDY	O	0/3.3 V DC	TRM ready signal
	9	TRANS_MOT_DIR	I	0/3.3 V DC	TRM drive switch signal
	10	TRANS_MOT_BRK	I	0/3.3 V DC	TRM break signal

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC6	1	24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to TRM
Connected to transfer motor	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	TRANS_MOT_REM	O	0/24 V DC	TRM: On/Off
	4	TRANS_MOT_CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	TRM clock signal
	5	TRANS_MOT_RDY	I	0/3.3 V DC	TRM ready signal
	6	TRANS_MOT_DIR	O	0/3.3 V DC	TRM drive switch signal
	7	TRANS_MOT_BRK	O	0/3.3 V DC	TRM break signal
YC7	1	24V2	-	-	Not used
Connected to duplex cover switch and duplex motor 2	2	DU_CL2_REM	-	-	Not used
	3	DU_OPEN	I	0/3.3 V DC	DUCSW: On/Off
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	DU2_B/	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	DUM2 drive control signal
	6	DU2_A/	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	DUM2 drive control signal
	7	DU2_B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	DUM2 drive control signal
	8	DU2_A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	DUM2 drive control signal
YC8	1	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to DUFM
Connected to duplex fan motor	2	DU_FAN_REM	I	0/3.3 V DC	DUFM: On/Off
YC9	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to duplex sensor 2	2	DU_SENS	I	0/3.3 V DC	DUS2: On/Off
	3	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to DUS2
YC10	1	LOOP_SENS	I	0/3.3 V DC	LPS: On/Off
Connected to loop sensor and ID sensor	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to LPS
	4	3.3V	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to IDS
	5	REG_BK_LED	O	Analog	IDS control signal
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	REG_BK_SENS1_P	I	Analog	IDS detection signal
	8	REG_BK_SENS1_S	I	Analog	IDS detection signal
	9	GND	-	-	Not used
	10	BELT_JAM_SENS	-	-	Not used
	11	5V	-	-	Not used

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC11	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to duplex sensor 1 and eject fan motor	2	DU_ENTER_SENS	I	0/3.3 V DC	DUS1: On/Off
	3	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to DUS1
	4	EXIT_FAN_REM	O	0/24 V DC	EFM1: On/Off
	5	24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to EFM1
	6	EXIT_FAN_REM	O	0/24 V DC	EFM2: On/Off
	7	24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to EFM2
	8	24V2	-	-	Not used
	9	DU_CL_UPPER_REM	-	-	Not used
YC12	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to feed PWB 1	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	MPF_TABLE	O	0/3.3 V DC	MPTSW: On/Off
	4	MPF_WID1	O	0/3.3 V DC	MPPWSW: On/Off
	5	MPF_WID2	O	0/3.3 V DC	MPPWSW: On/Off
	6	MPF_WID3	O	0/3.3 V DC	MPPWSW: On/Off
	7	MPF_LNG	O	0/3.3 V DC	MPPLSW: On/Off
	8	LED_3.3V3	I	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power from FPWB1
	9	MPF_PPR_SET	O	0/3.3 V DC	MPPS: On/Off
	10	MPF_LIFT_UP_SENS	O	0/3.3 V DC	MPLS1: On/Off
	11	MPF_LIFT_DOWN_SENS	O	0/3.3 V DC	MPLS2: On/Off
	12	MPF_JAM_SENS	O	0/3.3 V DC	MPFS: On/Off
	13	MPF_CL_REM	I	0/24 V DC	MPPFCL: On/Off
	14	24V2	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power from FPWB1
	15	MPF_LIFT_MOT_A	I	0/24 V DC	MPLM: On/Off
	16	MPF_LIFT_MOT_B	I	0/24 V DC	MPLM: On/Off
	17	24V2	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power from FPWB1
	18	CLN_SOL_REM	I	0/24 V DC	CLSOL: On/Off
	19	GND	-	-	Ground
	20	GND	-	-	Ground

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC13	1	3.3V2	I	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power from RYPWB
Connected to feed PWB 1	2	LOOP_SENS	O	0/3.3 V DC	LPS: On/Off
	3	EDGE_FAN_REM	I	0/24 V DC	FUFM: On/Off
	4	DU1_A	I	0/24 V DC (pulse)	DUM1 drive control signal
	5	DU1_B	I	0/24 V DC (pulse)	DUM1 drive control signal
	6	DU1_A/	I	0/24 V DC (pulse)	DUM1 drive control signal
	7	DU1_B/	I	0/24 V DC (pulse)	DUM1 drive control signal
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
	9	DU_CL_UPPER_REM	I	0/24 V DC	DUCL1: On/Off
	10	24V2	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power from FPWB1
	11	EXIT_FAN	I	0/24 V DC	EFM: On/Off
	12	DU_ENTER_SENS	O	0/3.3 V DC	DUS1: On/Off
YC16	1	DU1_B/	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	DUM1 drive control signal
Connected to duplex motor 1 and Fuser fan motor 1,2	2	DU1_A/	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	DUM1 drive control signal
	3	DU1_B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	DUM1 drive control signal
	4	DU1_A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	DUM1 drive control signal
	5	EDGE_FAN_REM	O	0/24 V DC	FUFM1: On/Off
	6	24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to FUFM1
	7	EDGE_FAN_REM	O	0/24 V DC	FUFM2: On/Off
	8	24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to FUFM2

2-3-11 LSU relay PWB

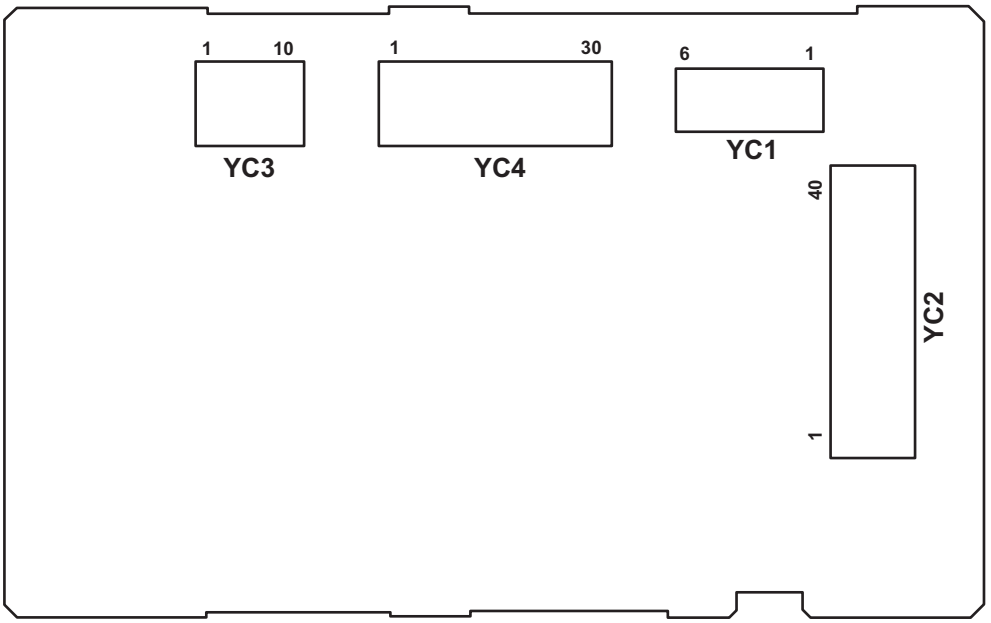


Figure 2-3-12 LSU relay PWB silk-screen diagram

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC1	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to engine PWB	2	+3.3V2	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power from EPWB
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	+5V AN	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power from EPWB
	6	+5V AN	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power from EPWB
YC2	1	SDI	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
Connected to engine PWB	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	SDO	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	SCLK	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Clock signal
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	EEPROM_CS_2_Bk	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	APCPWB EEPROM data signal
	8	EEPROM_CS_1_Bk	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	APCPWB EEPROM data signal
	9	GND	-	-	Ground
	10	DATA_3N_Bk(LVDS)	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data signal (N)
	11	DATA_3P_Bk(LVDS)	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data signal (P)
	12	GND	-	-	Ground
	13	DATA_4N_Bk(LVDS)	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data signal (N)
	14	DATA_4P_Bk(LVDS)	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data signal (P)
	15	GND	-	-	Ground
	16	BD_Bk	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Horizontal synchronization signal
	17	LSU_TH_Bk	O	Analog	LSU thermistor detection signal
	18	PALA_SIG_P3_2Bk	I	0/3.3 V DC	APCPWB control signal
	19	IDD_CS 2 Bk	I	0/3.3 V DC	APCPWB control signal
	20	IDD_CS 1 Bk	I	0/3.3 V DC	APCPWB control signal
	21	MSET_N	I	0/3.3 V DC	Control signal
	22	CUALM_BK	O	0/3.3 V DC	APCPWB alarm signal
	23	INT_ST_2_Bk	I	0/3.3 V DC	APCPWB control signal
	24	INT_ST_1_Bk	I	0/3.3 V DC	APCPWB control signal
	25	PALA_SIG_P0_Bk	I	0/3.3 V DC	APCPWB control signal
	26	PALA_SIG_P1_Bk	I	0/3.3 V DC	APCPWB control signal
	27	PALA_SIG_P2_Bk	I	0/3.3 V DC	APCPWB control signal

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC2	28	PALA_SIG_P3_Bk	I	0/3.3 V DC	APCPWB control signal
Connected to engine PWB	29	PALA_SIG_P4_Bk	I	0/3.3 V DC	APCPWB control signal
	30	GND	-	-	Ground
	31	SDCLK_Bk	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	APCPWB clock signal
	32	GND	-	-	Ground
	33	GAIN_FIX_Bk	I	0/3.3 V DC	APCPWB control signal
	34	GND	-	-	Ground
	35	DATA_1NBk(LVDS)	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data signal (N)
	36	DATA_1PBk(LVDS)	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data signal (P)
	37	GND	-	-	Ground
	38	DATA_2NBk(LVDS)	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data signal (N)
	39	DATA_2PBk(LVDS)	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data signal (P)
	40	GND	-	-	Ground
YC3	1	SDI2	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
Connected to APC PWB	2	SDO2	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	3	CLK2	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	APCPWB clock signal
	4	EEPROM_CS_2_0	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	APCPWB EEPROM data signal
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	DATA_3NBk(LVDS)	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data signal (N)
	7	DATA_3PBk(LVDS)	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data signal (P)
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
	9	DATA_4NBk(LVDS)	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data signal (N)
	10	DATA_4PBk(LVDS)	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data signal (P)

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC4	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to APC PWB	2	BD Bk	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Horizontal synchronization signal
	3	LSU_TH Bk	I	Analog	LSU thermistor detection signal
	4	PALA_SIG P3_2Bk	-	-	Not used
	5	LDD_CS 2 Bk	-	-	Not used
	6	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to APCPWB
	7	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to APCPWB
	8	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to APCPWB
	9	LDD_CS 1 Bk	O	0/3.3 V DC	APCPWB control signal
	10	SDI1	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	11	SDO1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	12	CLK1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	APCPWB clock signal
	13	EEPROM CS 1 Bk	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	APCPWB EEPROM data signal
	14	MSET_N	O	0/3.3 V DC	APCPWB control signal
	15	CUALM Bk	I	0/3.3 V DC	APCPWB alarm signal
	16	INT_ST 2 Bk	O	0/3.3 V DC	APCPWB control signal
	17	INT_ST 1 Bk	O	0/3.3 V DC	APCPWB control signal
	18	PALA_SIG P0 Bk	O	0/3.3 V DC	APCPWB control signal
	19	PALA_SIG P1 Bk	O	0/3.3 V DC	APCPWB control signal
	20	PALA_SIG P2 Bk	O	0/3.3 V DC	APCPWB control signal
	21	PALA_SIG P3 Bk	O	0/3.3 V DC	APCPWB control signal
	22	PALA_SIG P4 Bk	O	0/3.3 V DC	APCPWB control signal
	23	SDCLK Bk	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	APCPWB clock signal
	24	GAIN FIX Bk	O	0/3.3 V DC	APCPWB control signal
	25	DATA_1NBk(LVDS)	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data signal (N)
	26	DATA_1PBk(LVDS)	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data signal (P)
	27	GND	-	-	Ground
	28	DATA_2NBk(LVDS)	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data signal (N)
	29	DATA_2PBk(LVDS)	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data signal (P)
	30	GND	-	-	Ground

2-3-12 PF main PWB

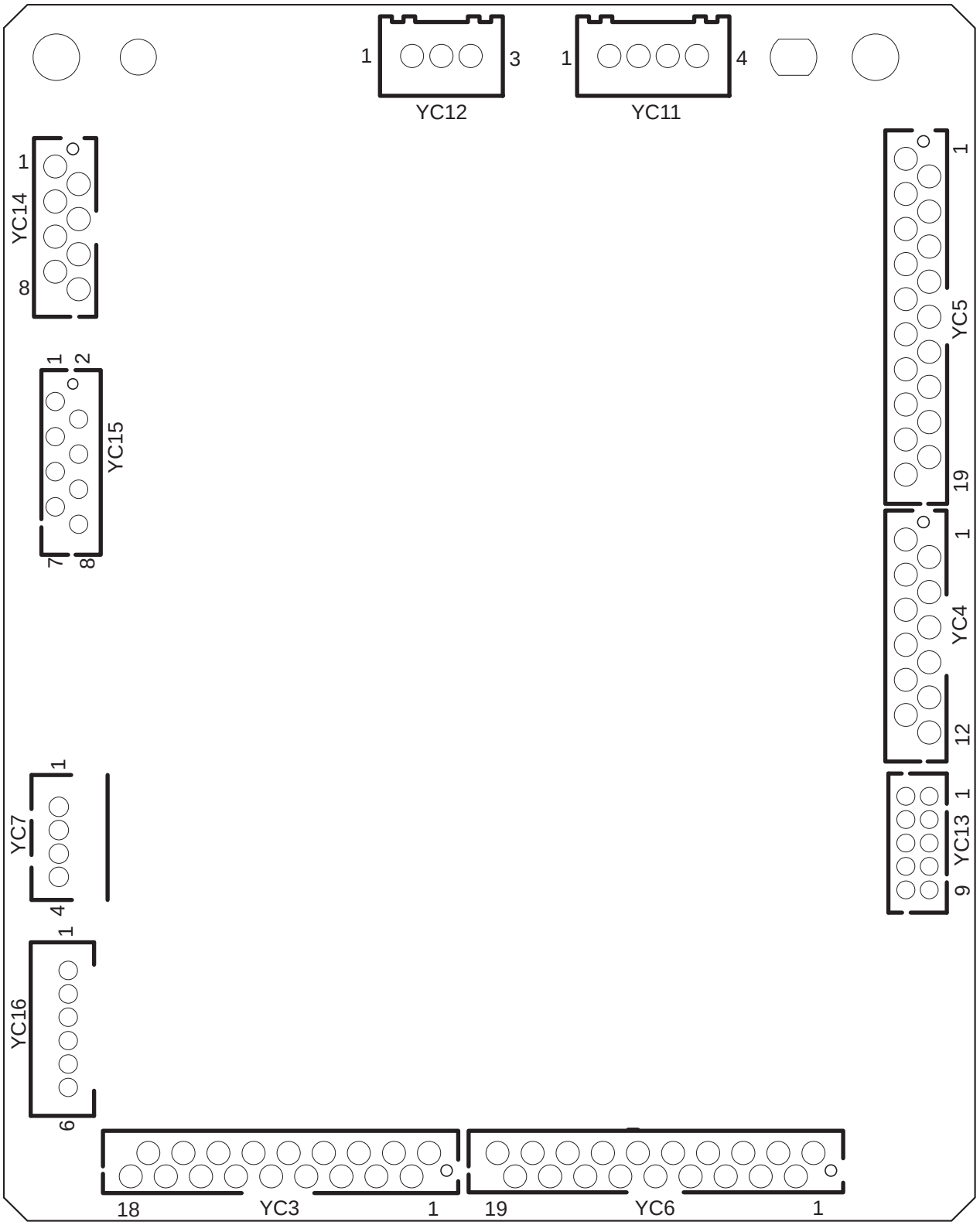


Figure 2-3-13 PF main PWB silk-screen diagram

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC3	1	PAP_R_SW1_PW	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to PFPGS1(L)
Connected to the PF paper gauge sensor 1 lower, PF paper gauge sensor 1 upper, PF size detection switch 1, PF cassette detection switch 1	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	PAP_R_SW1	I	0/3.3 V DC	PFPGS1(L): On/Off
	4	PAP_R_SW2_PW	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to PFPGS1(U)
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	PAP_R_SW2	I	0/3.3 V DC	PFPGS1(U): On/Off
	7	NC	-	-	Not used
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
	9	NC	-	-	Not used
	10	NC	-	-	Not used
	11	GND	-	-	Ground
	12	NC	-	-	Not used
	13	SIZE_R_SW_PW	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to PFSDSW1
	14	GND	-	-	Ground
	15	SIZE_R_SW	I	0/3.3 V DC	PFSDSW1: On/Off
	16	DEK_R_SW1_PW	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to PFCDSW1
	17	GND	-	-	Ground
	18	DEK_R_SW4	I	0/3.3 V DC	PFCDSW1: On/Off
YC4	1	EMPTY_L_SW_PW	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to PFPS2
Connected to the PF paper sensor 2, PF lift sensor 2, PF feed sensor 2, PF paper conveying sensor 2	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	EMPTY_L_SW	I	0/3.3 V DC	PFPS2: On/Off
	4	LIMIT_L_SW_PW	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to PFLS2
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	LIMIT_L_SW	I	0/3.3 V DC	PFLS2: On/Off
	7	3.3V3	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to PFFS2
	8	FD_L_SW	I	0/3.3 V DC	PFFS2: On/Off
	9	GND	-	-	Ground
	10	VFDSW_PW	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to PFPCS2
	11	GND	-	-	Ground
	12	VFDSW	I	0/3.3 V DC	PFPCS2: On/Off

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC5	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the PF paper conveying cover switch, PF paper conveying sensor 1, PF paper conveying clutch 1, PF paper sensor 1, PF lift sensor 1, PF feed sensor 1	2	R_COVER_SW	I	0/3.3 V DC	PFPCCSW: On/Off
	3	VFDCL	O	0/24 V DC	PFPCCL1: On/Off
	4	24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to PFPCCL1
	5	VFDSW_PW	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to PFPCS1
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	VFDSW	I	0/3.3 V DC	PFPCS1: On/Off
	8	24V	-	-	Not used
	9	PF_R_SOL_ACT	-	-	Not used
	10	PF_R_SOL_KEP	-	-	Not used
	11	EMPTY_R_SW_PW	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to PFPS1
	12	GND	-	-	Ground
	13	EMPTY_R_SW	I	0/3.3 V DC	PFPS1: On/Off
	14	LIMIT_R_SW_PW	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to PFLS1
	15	GND	-	-	Ground
	16	LIMIT_R_SW	I	0/3.3 V DC	PFLS1: On/Off
	17	3.3V1	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to PFFS1
	18	FD_R_SW	I	0/3.3 V DC	PFFS1: On/Off
	19	GND	-	-	Ground
YC6	1	PAP_L_SW1_PW	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to PFPGS2(L)
Connected to the PF paper gauge sensor 2 lower, PF paper gauge sensor 2 upper, PF size detection switch 2, PF cassette detection switch 2	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	PAP_L_SW1	I	0/3.3 V DC	PFPGS2(L): On/Off
	4	PAP_L_SW2_PW	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to PFPGS2(U)
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	PAP_L_SW2	I	0/3.3 V DC	PFPGS2(U): On/Off
	7	NC	-	-	Not used
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
	9	NC	-	-	Not used
	10	NC	-	-	Not used
	11	GND	-	-	Ground
	12	NC	-	-	Not used
	13	SIZE_L_SW_PW	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to PFSDSW1
	14	GND	-	-	Ground

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC6	15	SIZE_L_SW	I	0/3.3 V DC	PFSDSW1: On/Off
Connected to the PF paper gauge sensor 2 upper, PF paper gauge sensor 2 lower, PF size detection switch 2, PF cassette detection switch 2	16	DEK_L_SW_PW	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to PFCDSW1
	17	GND	-	-	Ground
	18	DEK_L_SW	I	0/3.3 V DC	PFCDSW1: On/Off
	19	NC	-	-	Not used
YC7	1	OUT2B	O	0/24 V DC(pulse)	PFLM2 drive control signal
Connected to the PF lift motor 2, PF lift motor 1	2	OUT2A	O	0/24 V DC(pulse)	PFLM2 drive control signal
	3	OUT1B	O	0/24 V DC(pulse)	PFLM1 drive control signal
	4	OUT1A	O	0/24 V DC(pulse)	PFLM1 drive control signal
YC11	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the engine PWB	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	24V1	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power input from machine
	4	24V1	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power input from machine
YC12	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the side feeder	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to side deck and side multi tray
YC13	1	ENG_SDO	O	0/3.3 V DC(pulse)	Serial communication data signal
Connected to the engine PWB	2	ENG_SDI	I	0/3.3 V DC(pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	3	ENG_CLK	I	0/3.3 V DC(pulse)	Clock signal
	4	ENG_SEL	I	0/3.3 V DC	Select signal
	5	ENG_RDY	O	0/3.3 V DC	Ready signal
	6	ENG_PAU	I	0/3.3 V DC	Posed signal
	7	DEK_OPN1	O	0/3.3 V DC	Cassette 4 open/close signal output
	8	DEK_OPN2	O	0/3.3 V DC	Cassette 3 open/close signal input
	9	+3.3V2	I	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power input from machine
	10	GND	-	-	Ground

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC14	1	HCUSW	I	0/3.3 V DC	PFPCUSW: On/Off
Connected to the PF paper conveying unit switch, PF pickup solenoid 2	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	24V3	-	-	Not used
	4	RESOL_ACT	-	-	Not used
	5	RESOL_KEP	-	-	Not used
	6	24V3	-	-	Not used
	7	PF_L_SOL_ACT	-	-	Not used
	8	PF_L_SOL_KEP	-	-	Not used
YC15	1	RF_R_CL	O	0/24 V DC	PFPFCL1: On/Off
Connected to the PF paper feed clutch 1,PF paper conveying clutch 2, PF paper con-veying clutch 3, PF paper feed clutch 2	2	24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to PFPFCL1
	3	HFDCL1	O	0/24 V DC	PFPCCL2: On/Off
	4	24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to PFPCCL2
	5	HFDCL2	O	0/24 V DC	PFPCCL3: On/Off
	6	24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to PFPCCL3
	7	PF_L_CL	O	0/24 V DC	PFPFCL2: On/Off
	8	24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to PFPFCL2
YC16	1	CW/CCW	O	0/24 V DC	PFPFM Normal rotation/reversing signal
Connected to the PF paper feed motor	2	RDY	I	0/24 V DC	PFPFM ready signal
	3	CLK	O	0/24 V DC(pulse)	PFPFM clock signal
	4	REM	O	0/24 V DC	PFPFM remote signal
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	24V1	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to PFPFM

2-3-13 DP main PWB

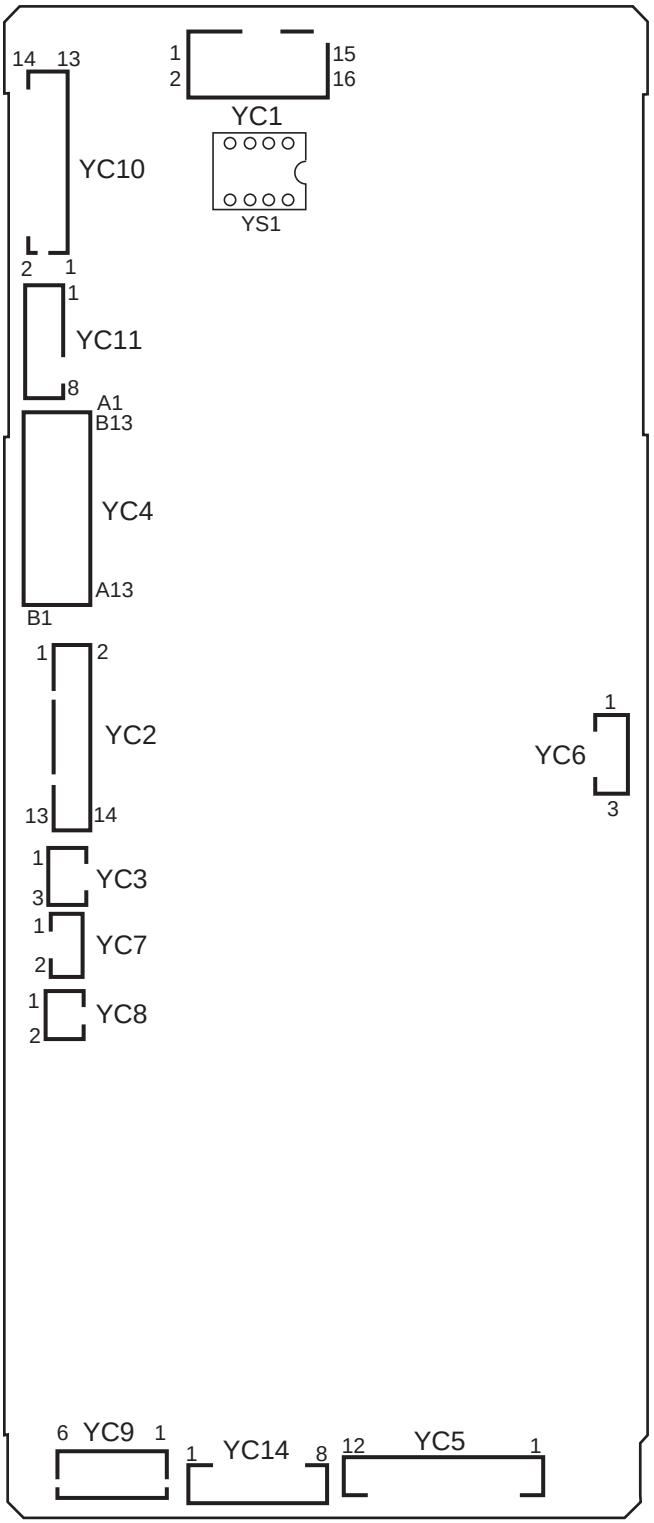


Figure 2-3-14 DP main PWB silk-screen diagram

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC1	1	FG	-	-	Ground
Connected to ISC PWB	2	ENG_PAGEST	O	3.3 V DC	Page set signal
	3	ENG_RDY	O	3.3 V DC	Ready signal
	4	ENG_SEL	I	3.3 V DC	Select signal
	5	ENG_CLK	I	0/3.3 V DC(pulse)	Clock signal
	6	ENG_SI	I	0/3.3 V DC(pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	7	ENG_SO	O	0/3.3 V DC(pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	8	DP_OPEN	O	3.3 V DC	DPOCSW: On/Off
	9	NC(GND)	-	-	Not used
	10	GND	-	-	Ground
	11	GND	-	-	Ground
	12	GND	-	-	Ground
	13	NC(GND)	-	-	Not used
	14	24V	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power input from ISCPWB
	15	24V	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power input from ISCPWB
	16	24V	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power input from ISCPWB
YC2	1	3.3V	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to DPOLSW
Connected to DP original length switch, DP original sensor, DP lift sensor 2, DP original width switch	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	LNG_SW	I	0/3.3 V DC	DPOLSW: On/Off
	4	LNG_CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC(pulse)	Clock signal
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	SET_SW	I	0/3.3 V DC	DPOS: On/Off
	7	3.3V	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to DPOS
	8	ANODE	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to DPLS2
	9	GND	-	-	Ground
	10	LF_DNSW	I	0/3.3 V DC	DPLS2: On/Off
	11	WIDE3	I	0/3.3 V DC	DPOWS: On/Off
	12	WIDE2	I	0/3.3 V DC	DPOWS: On/Off
	13	GND	-	-	Ground
	14	WIDE1	I	0/3.3 V DC	DPOWS: On/Off

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC4_A	A1	ANODE	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to DPLS1
Connected to DP lift sensor 1, DP feed sensor, DP eject sensor	A2	GND	-	-	Ground
	A3	LF_UPSW	I	0/3.3 V DC	DPLS1: On/Off
	A4	GND	-	-	Ground
	A5	FD_SW	I	0/3.3 V DC	DPFS: On/Off
	A6	3.3V	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to DPFS
	A7	NC	-	-	Not used
	A8	NC	-	-	Not used
	A9	NC	-	-	Not used
	A10	ANODE	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to DPES
	A11	GND	-	-	Ground
	A12	EXIT_SW(M)	I	0/3.3 V DC	DPES: On/Off
	A13	NC	-	-	Not used
YC4_B	B1	NC	-	-	Not used
Connected to DPLED PWB, DP timing sensor, DP open/close switch	B2	LED_PW	O	5.6 V DC	5.6 V DC power output to LEDPWB
	B3	LED_REM	O	0/5.6 V DC	LED control signal
	B4	NC(GND)	-	-	Not used
	B5	GND	-	-	Ground
	B6	CCD_TMG_SW	I	0/3.3 V DC	DPTS: On/Off
	B7	3.3V	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to DPTS
	B8	ANODE	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power output to DPOCSW
	B9	GND	-	-	Ground
	B10	DP_OPEN	I	0/3.3 V DC	DPOCSW: On/Off
	B11	ANODE	-	-	Not used
	B12	GND	-	-	Not used
	B13	SKEW_SW	-	-	Not used

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC5	1	FEED3_OUT2B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	DPOFM drive control signal
Connected to DP feed motor, DP registration motor, DP lift motor	2	FEED1_OUT2A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	DPOFM drive control signal
	3	FEED2_OUT1A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	DPOFM drive control signal
	4	FEED4_OUT1B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	DPOFM drive control signal
	5	RGST3_OUT2B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	DPRM drive control signal
	6	RGST1_OUT2A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	DPRM drive control signal
	7	RGST2_OUT1A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	DPRM drive control signal
	8	RGST4_OUT1B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	DPRM drive control signal
	9	LIFT3_OUT2B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	DPLM drive control signal
	10	LIFT1_OUT2A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	DPLM drive control signal
	11	LIFT2_OUT1A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	DPLM drive control signal
	12	LIFT4_OUT1B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	DPLM drive control signal
YC6	1	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to DPILSW
Connected to DP interlock switch	2	NC	-	-	Not used
	3	R24V	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power input from DPILSW
YC7	1	R24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to DPFM1
Connected to DP fan motor 1	2	FAN_REM1	O	0/24 V DC	DPFM1: On/Off
YC8	1	R24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to DPFM2
Connected to DP fan motor 2	2	FAN_REM2	O	0/24 V DC	DPFM2: On/Off
YC10	1	CIS_TMG_SW	I	0/3.3 V DC	DPCS: On/Off
Connected to SHD PWB	2	SHD_CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC(pulse)	Clock signal
	3	SHD_SO	O	0/3.3 V DC(pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	4	SHD_SEL	O	0/3.3 V DC	Select signal
	5	SHD_PAGEST	O	0/3.3 V DC	Pageset signal
	6	RESETN	O	0/3.3 V DC	Reset signal
	7	SHD_OVMON	I	0/3.3 V DC	OVMON signal
	8	SHD_SI	I	0/3.3 V DC(pulse)	Serial communication data signal
	9	SHD_RDY	I	0/3.3 V DC	Ready signal
	10	NC	-	-	Not used
	11	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to SHDPWB
	12	24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output to SHDRWB
	13	GND	-	-	Ground
	14	GND	-	-	Ground

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC11	1	SS_SCL	-	-	Not used
	2	SS_SDA	-	-	Not used
	3	SS_1P	-	-	Not used
	4	SS_2P	-	-	Not used
	5	GND	-	-	Not used
	6	3.3V1	-	-	Not used
	7	GND	-	-	Not used
	8	24V1	-	-	Not used
YC14	1	CNVY4_OUT2B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	DPOCM drive control signal
DP convey-ing motor, DP eject motor	2	CNVY3_OUT2A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	DPOCM drive control signal
	3	CNVY2_OUT1B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	DPOCM drive control signal
	4	CNVY1_OUT1A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	DPOCM drive control signal
	5	RVRS4_OUT1B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	DPEM drive control signal
	6	RVRS2_OUT1A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	DPEM drive control signal
	7	RVRS1_OUT2A	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	DPEM drive control signal
	8	RVRS3_OUT2B	O	0/24 V DC (pulse)	DPEM drive control signal

2-3-14 BR PWB

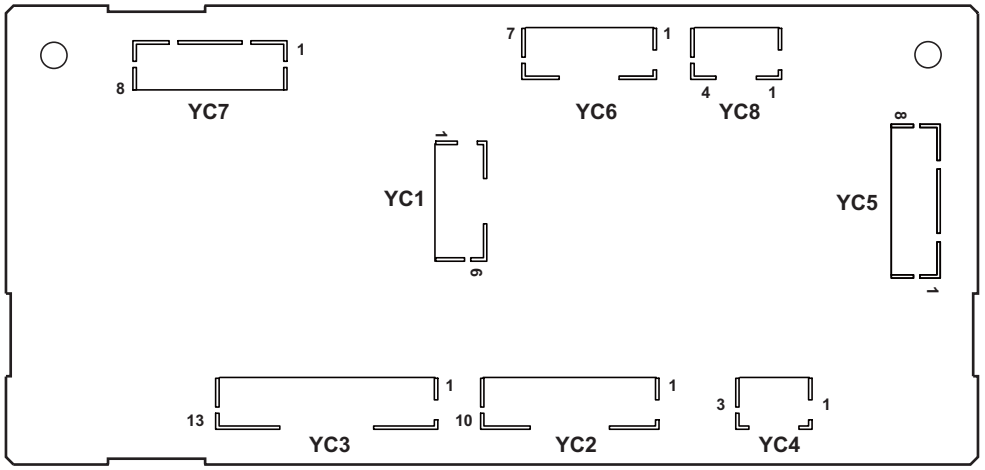


Figure 2-3-15 BR PWB silk-screen diagram

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC1	1	+24V	I	24V DC	24 V DC power input from machine
Connected to the engine PWB	2	+24V	I	24V DC	24 V DC power input from machine
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	+5V	I	5V DC	5 V DC power input from machine
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
YC2	1	DECAL_DIR	O	0/3.3V DC	BRDM drive change signal
Connected to the engine PWB	2	DECAL_PD	O	0/3.3V DC	BRDM control signal
	3	DECAL_CLK	O	0/3.3V DC(pulse)	BRDM clock signal
	4	DECAL_MODE	O	0/3.3V DC	BRDM control signal
	5	DECAL_REM	O	0/3.3V DC	BRDM: On/Off
	6	GUIDE_DIR	O	0/3.3V DC	BRGM drive change signal
	7	GUIDE_PD	O	0/3.3V DC	BRGM control signal
	8	GUIDE_CLK	O	0/3.3V DC(pulse)	BRGM clock signal
	9	GUIDE_REM	O	0/3.3V DC	BRGM: On/Off
	10	DECAL_HP_SENS	I	0/3.3V DC	BRDS: On/Off

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC3	1	BRIDGE_SENS 1	O	0/5V DC	BRCS1: On/Off
Connected to the engine PWB	2	BRIDGE OPEN	O	0/5V DC	BRCUSW: On/Off
	3	BRIDGE_SENS 2	O	0/5V DC	BRCS2: On/Off
	4	BRIDGE1 DIR	I	0/5V DC	BRCM1 control signal
	5	BRIDGE1 PD	I	0/5V DC	BRCM1 control signal
	6	BRIDGE1 CLK	I	0/5V DC(pulse)	BRCM1 clock signal
	7	BRIDGE1 MODE	I	0/5V DC	BRCM1 mode signal
	8	BRIDGE1 REM	I	0/5V DC	BRCM1: On/Off
	9	BRIDGE2 DIR	I	0/5V DC	BRCM2 control signal
	10	BRIDGE2 PD	I	0/5V DC	BRCM2 control signal
	11	BRIDGE2 CLK	I	0/5V DC(pulse)	BRCM2 clock signal
	12	BRIDGE2 MODE	I	0/5V DC	BRCM2 mode signal
	13	BRIDGE2 REM	I	0/5V DC	BRCM2: On/Off
YC4	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the BR conveying sensor 2	2	BRIDGE_SENS 2	I	0/5V DC	BRCM2: On/Off
	3	+5V	O	5V DC	5 V DC power output to BRCS2
YC6	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the BR conveying sensor 2 and BR cover switch	2	BRIDGE_SENS 1	I	0/5V DC	BRCS1: On/Off
	3	+5V	O	5V DC	5 V DC power output to BRCS1
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	BRIDGE_OPEN	I	0/5V DC	BRCUSW: On/Off
	6	+5V	O	5V DC	5 V DC power output to BRCUSW
	7	NC	-	-	Not used
YC7	1	BRIDGE1_B/	O	0/24V DC(pulse)	BRCM1 control signal
Connected to the BR conveying motor1,2	2	BRIDGE1_A/	O	0/24V DC(pulse)	BRCM1 control signal
	3	BRIDGE1_B	O	0/24V DC(pulse)	BRCM1 control signal
	4	BRIDGE1_A	O	0/24V DC(pulse)	BRCM1 control signal
	5	BRIDGE2_B/	O	0/24V DC(pulse)	BRCM2 control signal
	6	BRIDGE2_A/	O	0/24V DC(pulse)	BRCM2 control signal
	7	BRIDGE2_B	O	0/24V DC(pulse)	BRCM2 control signal
	8	BRIDGE2_A	O	0/24V DC(pulse)	BRCM2 control signal
YC8	1	NC	-	-	Not used
Connected to the BR decaler sensor	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	DECAL_HP_SENS	I	0/5V DC	BRDS: On/Off
	4	5V	O	5V DC	5 V DC power output to BRDS

2-4-1 Appendixes

(1) List of maintenance parts

Maintenance part name		Part No.	Alternative part No.
Name used in service manual	**Name used in parts list**		
Paper feed pulley	PULLEY FEED	302N406030	2N406030
Separation pulley	PULLEY RETARD	302N406040	2N406040
Forwarding pulley	PULLEY FEED	302N406030	2N406030
Left registration roller	PARTS ROLLER REGIST L SP	302K994450	2K994450
Regist cleaner L	PARTS CLEANER REGIST ASSY SP	302LF94160	2LF94160
Right registration roller	ROLLER REGIST R	302K994440	2K994440
Regist cleaner R	UNDER CLEANER REGIST	2BL07950	-
Middle roller	PARTS ROLLER MIDDLE L SP	302LC94550	2LC94550
Paper conveying roller	PARTS ROLLER FEED LOW SP	302K994430	2K994430
Assist roller	PARTS ROLLER ASSIST SP	302K994420	2K994420
Transfer belt unit	PARTS BELT ASSY SP	302LF94060	2LF94060
MP paper feed pulley	PULLEY PAPER FEED	2AR07220	-
MP forwarding pulley	PULLEY SEPARATION	2AR07230	-
Contact glass for Metric	PARTS CONTACT-GLASS ASSY(C) SP	302K994040	2K994040
for Inch	PARTS CONTACT-GLASS ASSY(I) SP	302K994030	2K994030
LED mount	PARTS MOUNT LED ASSY SP	302N493040	2N493040
Original size sensor	SENSOR ORIGINAL	302H044110	2H044110

Maintenance part name		Part No.	Alternative part No.
Name used in service manual	Name used in parts list		
ISU	PARTS IMAGE SCANNER L SP	302N693020	2N693020
Lower duplex roller	PARTS ROLLER DU LOW SP	302K994470	2K994470
Middle duplex roller	PARTS ROLLER DU MID SP	302K994480	2K994480
Upper duplex roller	PARTS ROLLER DU UP SP	302K994491	2K994491
Eject roller B	PARTS ROLLER EXIT B SP	302K994A40	2K994A40
Eject roller	PARTS ROLLER EXIT SP	302K994910	2K994910
BR conveying roller	PARTS ROLLER RELAY MIDDLE B SP	302LF94430	2LF94430
BR eject roller 1	PARTS ROLLER RELAY EXIT LOWER B SP	302LF94440	2LF94440
BR feedshift roller	PARTS ROLLER RELAY EXIT MIDDLE SP	302LF94030	2LF94030
JS eject roller	PARTS ROLLER EXIT RIGHT SP	303NM94010	3NM94010
Drum filter	PARTS FILTER DRUM SP	302LF94310	2LF94310
Developer filter	PARTS FILTER DLP SP	302LF94320	2LF94320
Belt filter	PARTS FILTER BELT UNIT(V) SP	302LC94130	2LC94130
LSU filter	PARTS FILTER FAN ASSY(Z) SP	302LF94300	2LF94300
Toner disposal box	PARTS DISPOSAL UNIT(M) SP	302N294120	2N294120
Toner filter	FILTER LEFT SIDE	302LC33370	2LC33370
Left filter	FILTER LEFT SIDE	302LC33370	2LC33370
Eject filter	FILTER TOP	302N433010	2N433010

(2) Maintenance kits

Maintenance part name		Parts No.	Alternative part No.
Name used in service	**Name used in parts list**		
MK-6715A/Maintenance kit (600,000 pages)	MK-6715A/MAINTENANCE KIT	1702N70UN0	072N70UN
Drum unit	DK-6706	-	-
Developer unit	DV-6706	-	-
Transfer belt unit	PARTS BELT ASSY SP	-	-
120 V specifications			
MK-6715C/Maintenance kit (300,000 pages)	MK-6715C/MAINTENANCE KIT	1702N77US0	072N77US
Fuser unit	FK-6701	-	-
Toner disposal box	PARTS DISPOSAL UNIT(M2) SP		
Eject filter	FILTER TOP	-	-
Toner filter / Left filter	FILTER LEFT SIDE	-	-
220 to 240 V specifications			
MK-6715C/Maintenance kit (300,000 pages)	MK-6715C/MAINTENANCE KIT	1702N78NL0	072N78NL
Fuser unit	FK-6702	-	-
Toner disposal box	PARTS DISPOSAL UNIT(M2) SP		
Eject filter	FILTER TOP	-	-
Left filter	FILTER LEFT SIDE	-	-

(3) Periodic maintenance procedures

CH: Check, CL: Clean, AD: Adjust, LU: Lubrication, RE: Replace

Section	Maintenance part/location	User call	Periodic maintenance (x1000 counts)				Points and cautions	Page
			300	600	900	1200		
Test copy and test print	Perform at the maximum copy size	CH AD	CH AD	CH AD	CH AD	CH AD	Test copy	

Section	Maintenance part/location	User call	Periodic maintenance (x1000 counts)				Points and cautions	Page
			300	600	900	1200		
Inner Cleaning	Toner disposal box	CH RE	RE	RE	RE	RE	Replace: MK-6715C	P.1-5-134
	Cleaning the toner collection duct	CH CL	CH CL	CH CL	CH CL	CH CL	Vacuum.	P.2-4-10
	Cleaning the inner air duct Cleaning the back of the paper conveying plate	CH CL	CH CL	CH CL	CH CL	CH CL	Vacuum.	P.2-4-10

Section	Maintenance part/location	User call	Periodic maintenance (x1000 counts)				Points and cautions	Page
			300	600	900	1200		
Developer section	Cleaning the duct at the back of the developer unit	CH CL	CH CL	CH CL	CH CL	CH CL	Vacuum.	P.2-4-11
	Developer unit	CH CL	CH CL	RE	CH CL	RE	Replace: MK-6715A	P.1-5-56

Section	Maintenance part/location	User call	Periodic maintenance (x1000 counts)				Points and cautions	Page
			300	600	900	1200		
Drum section	Drum unit	CH RE	CH CL	RE	CH CL	RE	Replace: MK-6715A Clean toner from the top and both sides of the unit	P.1-5-57
	Cleaning the inner unit	CH CL	CH CL	CH CL	CH CL	CH CL	Vacuum.	P.1-5-53
	Cleaning the drum cover	CH CL	CH CL	CH CL	CH CL	CH CL	Vacuum.	P.2-4-14

Section	Maintenance part/location	User call	Periodic maintenance (x1000 counts)				Points and cautions	Page
			300	600	900	1200		
Transfer section	Transfer belt unit	CH CL	CH CL	RE	CH CL	RE	Replace: MK-6715A	P.1-5-65

Section	Maintenance part/location	User call	Periodic maintenance (x1000 counts)				Points and cautions	Page
			300	600	900	1200		
Fuser section	Fuser unit	CH RE	RE	RE	RE	RE	Replace: MK-6715C	P.1-5-67

Section	Maintenance part/location	User call	Periodic maintenance (x1000 counts)				Points and cautions	Page
			150/ 300	450/ 600	750/ 900	1050/ 1200		
Paper feed , convey-ing sec-tion	Paper feed pulley	CH CL	CH RE	CH RE	CH RE	CH RE	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth. CH: performing U901 and check feeding count: Tar-get to replace at 150K.	P.1-5-21 P.1-5-24 P.1-5-26
	Separation pulley	CH CL	CH RE	CH RE	CH RE	CH RE	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth. CH: performing U901 and check feeding count: Tar-get to replace at 150K.	P.1-5-21 P.1-5-24 P.1-5-26

Section	Maintenance part/location	User call	Periodic maintenance (x1000 counts)				Points and cautions	Page
			150/ 300	450/ 600	750/ 900	1050/ 1200		
Paper feed , conveying section	Forwarding pulley	CH CL	CH RE	CH RE	CH RE	CH RE	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth. CH: performing U901 and check feeding count: Target to replace at 150K.	P.1-5-21 P.1-5-24 P.1-5-26
	Left registration roller	CL	- /CL	- /CL	- /CL	- /CL	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Regist cleaner L	CL	- /CL	- /CL	- /CL	- /CL	Vacuum.	P.2-4-13
	Right registration roller	CL	- /CL	- /CL	- /CL	- /CL	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Regist cleaner R	CL	- /CL	- /CL	- /CL	- /CL	Vacuum.	P.2-4-13
	Middle roller	CL	- /CL	- /CL	- /CL	- /CL	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Paper conveying roller	CL	- /CL	- /CL	- /CL	- /CL	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Assist roller	CL	- /CL	- /CL	- /CL	- /CL	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	MP paper feed pulley	CH CL	CH RE	CH RE	CH RE	CH RE	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth. CH:performing U901 and check feeding count: Target to replace at 150K.	P.1-5-32
	MP forwarding pulley	CH CL	CH RE	CH RE	CH RE	CH RE	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth. CH:performing U901 and check feeding count: Target to replace at 150K.	P.1-5-32
	Guides	CH CL	CH CL	CH CL	CH CL	CH CL	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	P.1-5-67
	Cleaning the separator	CL	- /CL	- /CL	- /CL	- /CL	Cleaning brush	P.2-4-12

Section	Maintenance part/location	User call	Periodic maintenance (x1000 counts)				Points and cautions	Page
			300	600	900	1200		
Eject, Duplex section	Lower duplex roller	CL	CL	CL	CL	CL	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Middle duplex roller	CL	CL	CL	CL	CL	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Upper duplex roller	CL	CL	CL	CL	CL	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Eject roller B	CL	CL	CL	CL	CL	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Eject roller	CL	CL	CL	CL	CL	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	BR conveying roller	CL	CL	CL	CL	CL	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	BR eject roller 1	CL	CL	CL	CL	CL	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	BR feedshift roller	CL	CL	CL	CL	CL	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	JS eject roller	CL	CL	CL	CL	CL	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Lower change guide Upper change guide	CL	CL	CL	CL	CL	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	

Section	Maintenance part/location	User call	Periodic maintenance (x1000 counts)				Points and cautions	Page
			300	600	900	1200		
Scanner Optical section	Contact glass	CL	CL	CL	CL	CL	DP slit glass: CL dry cloth or alcohol wet cloth is strictly prohibited. When installing DP, CL with dry cloth.Contact glass for original: CL alcohol or dry cloth.(Face Side) Only when unusual image (line or stain) appear, wipe the back side with dry cloth after cleaning with alcohol only. (Back side)	
	Mirror A/ B	CL	-	-	-	-	Clean: air blow after dry cloth only when unusual image (line) arises.	
	ISU lens	CL	-	-	-	-	Clean: air blow after dry cloth only when unusual image (line) arises.	
	LED mount	CH RE	-	-	-	-	Replace if there are image problems.	
	RAIL ISU R/F	CH LU	-	-	-	-	Apply grease if abnormal sound and jitter image appears Optical rail grease PG-671 (P/N:60170000)	

Section	Maintenance part/location	User call	Periodic maintenance (x1000 counts)				Points and cautions	Page
			300	600	900	1200		
Outer, Cover	Outer Covers, Tray	CH CL	CL	CL	CL	CL	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	

Section	Maintenance part/location	User call	Periodic maintenance (x1000 counts)				Points and cautions	Page
			300	600	900	1200		
Driving, Other	Drum filter	CL	CL	CL	CL	CL	Vacuum.	P.1-5-131
	Developer filter	CL	CL	CL	CL	CL	Vacuum. 4pcs	P.1-5-131
	Belt filter	CL	CL	CL	CL	CL	Vacuum.	P.1-5-132
	LSU filter	CL	CL	CL	CL	CL	Vacuum. 2pcs	P.1-5-133
	Left filter	CH RE	RE	RE	RE	RE	Replace: MK-8715C 2pcs	P.1-5-130
	Eject filter	CH RE	RE	RE	RE	RE	Replace: MK-8715C 3pcs	P.1-5-129
	Each Clutches	CH RE	CH	CH	CH	CH	Check the image registration and paper feed conveying condition on paper feed conveying	
	Sensors	CH RE	CH	CH	CH	CH	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth. (lighting part and light reception part.)	
	Image quality	CH AD	CH AD	CH AD	CH AD	CH AD	U464 (Calibration) U410 (Adjusting the half-tone automatically)	P.1-3-175 P.1-3-151

* : Please do not use spray containing flamable gas for air-blow or air-brush purposes.

(4) Image adjustment after replacing the maintenance kit

Perform the following maintenance mode after replacing the maintenance kit (MK-6715A/MK-6715C): Executable using preset-settings of the U952 maintenance mode workflow.

Maintenance kits	Maintenance mode
MK-A	U119/ U140/ U127/ U464/ U412/ U464/ U410/ U251
MK-C	U464/ U410/ U251

* : When the forwarding pulley, paper feed pulley or separation pulley is replaced, perform maintenance mode U903 (clearing the jam counter) (see page P.1-3-186).
Execute Maintenance Counter - Cassette - Counter Clear of U251 (Maintenance counter limits/clear) (see page P.1-3-133).

(5) Inner Cleaning

1. Cleaning the toner collection duct

Procedure

1. Remove the toner disposal box (see page P.1-5-134).
2. Insert the vacuum cleaner inlet from the opening at the back side of the rear cover, vacuum toner for 1 minutes.

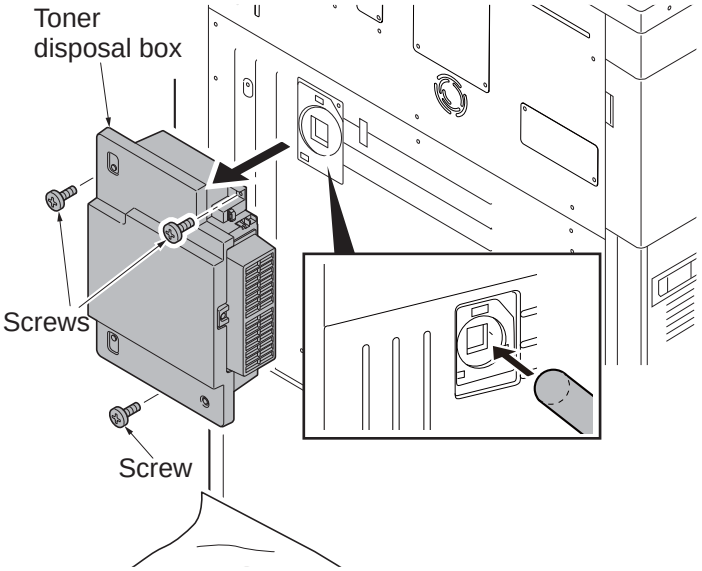


Figure 2-4-1

2. Cleaning the inner air duct and the paper conveying plate
   * : When a toner contamination is observed at the end of the paper conveying plate.

Procedure

1. Remove the developer unit and the drum unit (see page P.1-5-56,P.1-5-57).
2. Pull out the paper conveying unit.
3. Clean the side of the paper conveying plate, which paper runs through.

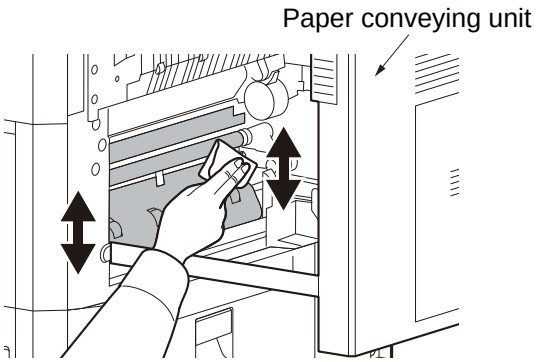


Figure 2-4-2

4. Remove the two screws holding the paper conveying plate.
5. Clean the back of the paper conveying plate.
   * : Use a dry, soft cloth for cleaning.
6. Check that the toner outlet, to which the cooling duct is joined in the developer unit, is not clogged with toner.
7. Remove toner accumulated in the duct by a vacuum cleaner via the toner outlet.
8. Refit all the removed parts.

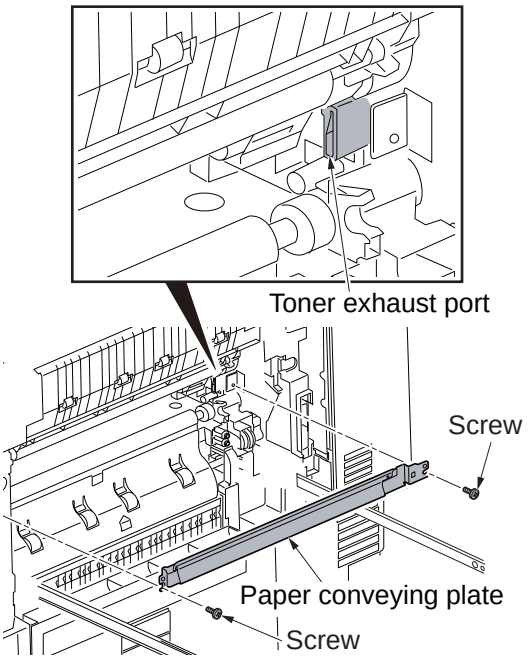


Figure 2-4-3

3. Cleaning the duct at the back of the developer unit
   * : 300K Maintenance. Not required when a developer unit is replaced.

Procedure

1. Remove the developer unit (see page P.1-5-56).
2. Remove toner inside the cooling ducts using a vacuum cleaner.

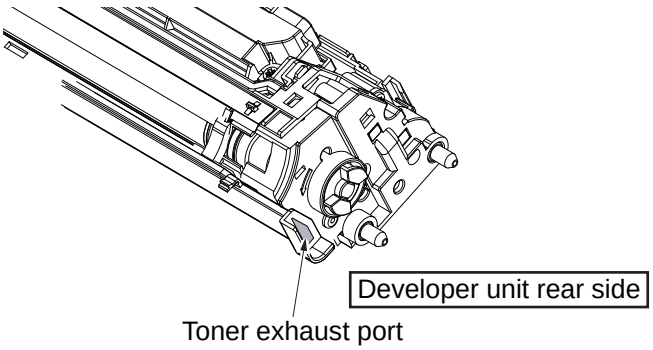


Figure 2-4-4

3. Cleaning the toner reservoir at the toner receiver in the developer unit.

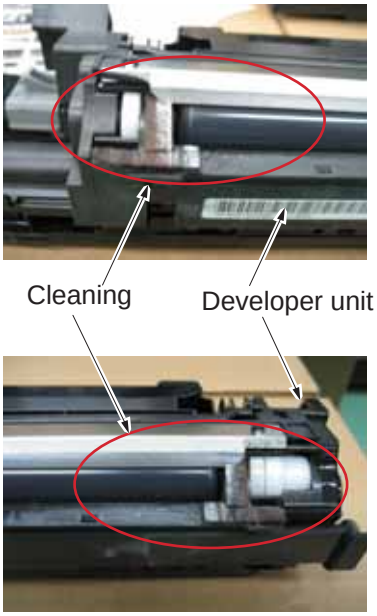


Figure 2-4-5

4. Cleaning the separator

Procedure

1. Remove the cleaning brush (blue colored) from the cleaning cloth compartment.
2. As shown in the figure, clean dirt from the separator by moving the brush from side to side along the separator.

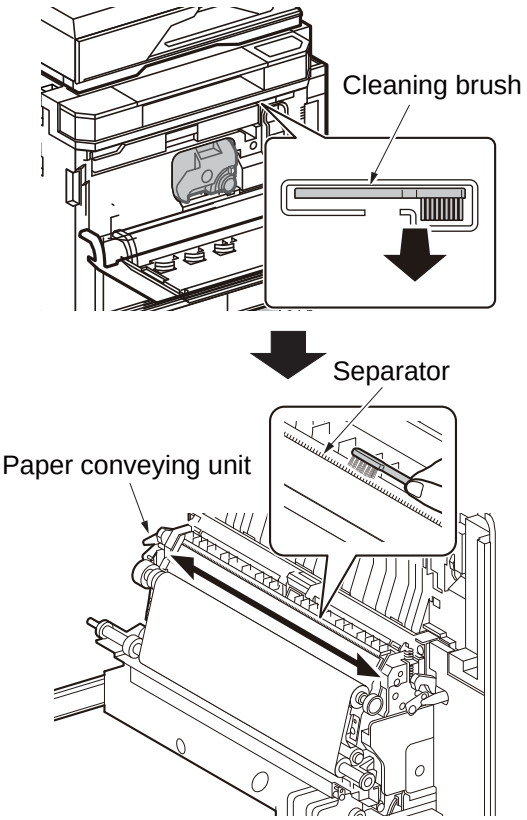


Figure 2-4-6

5. Cleaning the right regist cleaner

Procedure

1. Remove the transfer belt unit (see page P.1-5-65).
2. Clean the regist cleaner R.

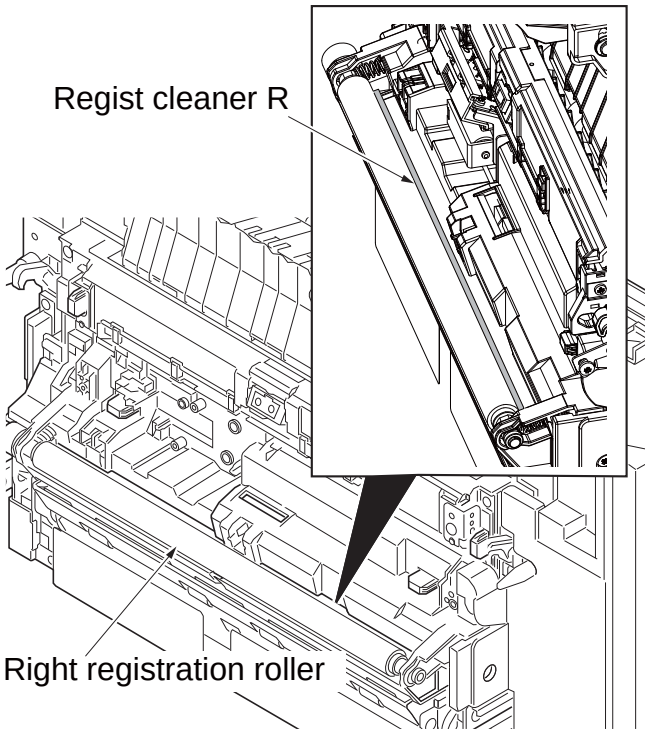


Figure 2-4-7

6. Cleaning the left regist cleaner

Procedure

1. Remove the developer unit. (see page P.1-5-56).
2. Remove the drum unit. (see page P.1-5-57).
3. Clean the cleaner unit by pulling out the regist cleaner L.

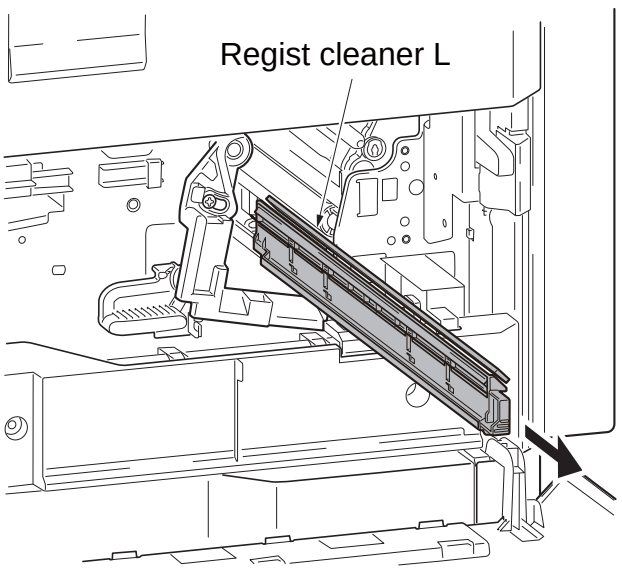
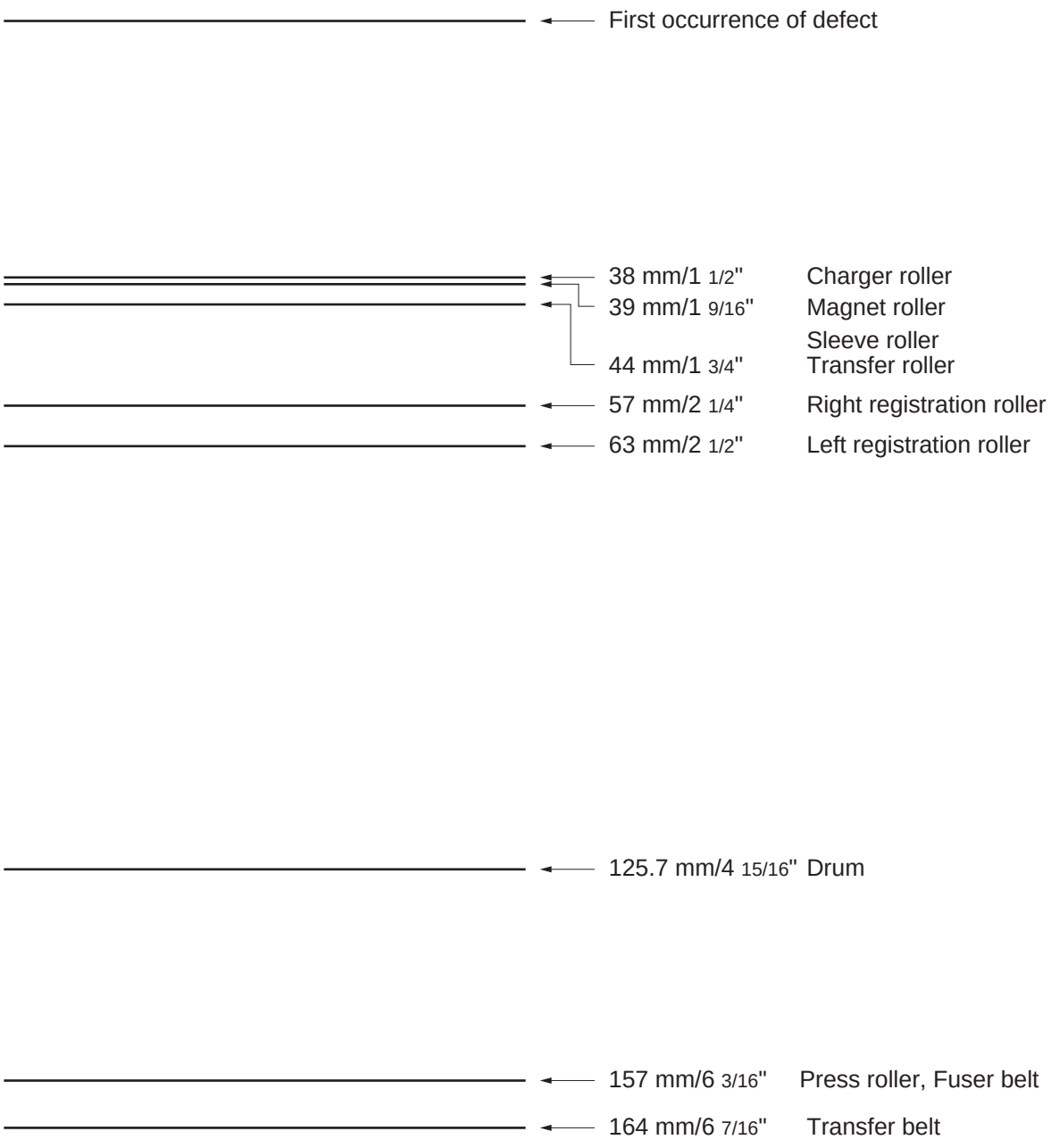


Figure 2-4-8

(6) Repetitive defects gauge



* : The repetitive marks interval may vary depending on operating conditions.

(7) Firmware environment commands

The printer maintains a number of printing parameters in its memory. There parameters may be changed permanently with the FRPO (Firmware RePrOgram) commands.
This section provides information on how to use the FRPO command and its parameters using examples.

Using FRPO commands for reprogramming firmware

The current settings of the FRPO parameters are listed as optional values on the service status page.

Note: Before changing any FRPO parameter, print out a service status page, so you will know the parameter values before the changes are made. To return FRPO parameters to their factory default values, send the FRPO INIT (FRPO-INITialize) command.(!R! FRPO INIT; EXIT;)

The FRPO command is sent to the printer in the following sequence:
!R! FRPO parameter, value; EXIT;
Example: Changing emulation mode to PCL6
!R! FRPO P1, 6; EXIT;

FRPO parameters

Item	FRPO	Setting values	Factory setting
Top margin	A1	Integer value in inches	0
	A2	Fraction value in 1/100 inches	0
Left margin	A3	Integer value in inches	0
	A4	Fraction value in 1/100 inches	0
Page length	A5	Integer value in inches	17
	A6	Fraction value in 1/100 inches	30
Page width	A7	Integer value in inches	17
	A8	Fraction value in 1/100 inches	30
Default pattern resolution	B8	0: 300 dpi 1: 600 dpi	0
Page orientation	C1	0: Portrait 1: Landscape	0
Default font No. *	C2	Middle two digits of power-up font	0
	C3	Last two digits of power-up font	0
	C5	First two digits of power-up font	0
PCL font switch	C8	0: HP compatibility mode 32: Conventional compatibility mode	0
Print density control parameter	D4	1: Pale 2: Relatively pale 3: Normal 4: Relevantly dark 6: Dark	4
Total host buffer size	H8	0 to 99 in units of the size defined by FRPO S5	5
Form feed time-out value	H9	Value in units of 5 seconds (1 to 99)	6 (30 s)

Item	FRPO	Setting values	Factory setting
KIR mode	N0	0: Off 2: On	2
Duplex mode	N4	0: Off 1: Long edge binding 2: Short edge binding	0
Sleep timer time-out time	N5	Value in units of 1 minute (1 to 240)	60
Ecoprint level	N6	0: Off 2: On	0
Default emulation mode	P1	6: PCL 6 9: KPDL	120V: 9 220-240V: 6
Carriage-return action	P2	0: Ignores 1: Carriage-return 2: Carriage-return + linefeed	1
Linefeed action	P3	0: Ignores 1: Linefeed 2: Linefeed + carriage-return	1
Automatic emulation switching	P4	0: AES disabled 1: AES enabled	120V: 1 220-240V: 0
Alternative emulation (For KPDL3)	P5	Same as the P1 values except that 9 is ignored.	6
Automatic emulation switching trigger	P7	0: Page eject commands 1: None 2: Page eject and prescribe EXIT commands 3: Prescribe EXIT commands 4: Formfeed (^L) commands 6: Pescribe EXIT and formfeed commands 10: Page eject commands; if AES fails, resolves to KPDL	120V: 11 220-240V: 10
Command recognition character	P9	ASCII code of 33 to 126	82 (R)
Default stacker	R0	1 (inner tray)	1

Item	FRPO	Setting values	Factory setting
Default paper size	R2	0: Size of the default paper cassette (See R4.) 1: Monarch (3-7/8 × 7-1/2 inches) 2: Business (4-1/8 × 9-1/2 inches) 3: International DL (11 × 22 cm) 4: International C5 (16.2 × 22.9 cm) 5: Executive (7-1/4 × 10-1/2 inches) 6: US Letter (8-1/2 × 11 inches) 7: US Legal (8-1/2 × 14 inches) 8: A4 (21.0 × 29.7 cm) 9: JIS B5 (18.2 × 25.7 cm) 10: A3 (29.7 ´ 42 cm) 11: B4 (25.7 ´ 36.4 cm) 12: US Ledger (11 ´ 17 inches) 13: ISO A5 14: A6 (10.5 × 14.8 cm) 15: JIS B6 (12.8 × 18.2 cm) 16: Commercial #9 (3-7/8 × 8-7/8 inches) 17: Commercial #6 (3-5/8 × 6-1/2 inches) 18: ISO B5 (17.6 × 25 cm) 19: Custom (11.7 × 17.7 inches) 20:B4toA4 21:A3toA4 22:A4toA4[98%] 23:STKtoA4 24:STKtoB4 30: C4 (22.9 ´ 32.4 cm) 31: Hagaki (10 × 14.8 cm) 32: Ofuku-hagaki (14.8 × 20 cm) 33: Officio II 38:12 × 18 39: 8K 40: 16K 42: 8.5 × 13.5 inches 50: Statement 51: Folio 52: Youkei 2 53: Youkei 4	0
Default cassette	R4	0: MP tray 1: Cassette 1 2: Cassette 2 3: Cassette 3 4: Cassette 4 5: Cassette 5 6: Cassette 6 7: Cassette 7	1
Sorter full action	S3	0: Stop operation with detecting tray-full 1: Switching to the eject-able destinations when bin becomes tray full	0

Item	FRPO	Setting values	Factory setting
A4/letter equation	S4	0: Off 1: On	1
Host buffer size	S5	0: 10 KB 1: 100 KB 2: 1024 KB	1
Wide A4	T6	0: Off 1: On	0
Line spacing *	U0	Lines per inch (integer value)	6
	U1	Lines per inch (decimal value)	0
Character spacing *	U2	Characters per inch (integer value)	10
	U3	Characters per inch (decimal value)	0
Country code	U6	0: US-ASCII 1: France 2: Germany 3: UK 4: Denmark 5: Sweden 6: Italy 7: Spain 8: Japan 9: US Legal 10: IBM PC-850 (Multilingual) 11: IBM PC-860 (Portuguese) 12: IBM PC-863 (Canadian French) 13: IBM PC-865 (Norwegian) 14: Norway 15: Denmark 2 16: Spain 2 17: Latin America 50 - 99: HP PCL symbol set coding	41
Code set at power up in daisywheel emulation	U7	0: Same as the default emulation mode (P1) 1: IBM 6: PCL 7 - 99: HP PCL symbol set coding	53
Font pitch for fixedpitch scalable font *	U8	Default font pitch (integer value)	10
	U9	Default font pitch (decimal value)	0
Font height for the default scalable font *	V0	Integer value in 100 points: 0 to 9	0
	V1	Integer value in points: 0 to 99	12
	V2	decimal value in 1/100 points: 0, 25, 50, 75	0
Default scalable font *	V3	Name of typeface of up to 32 characters, enclosed with single or double quotation marks	Courier

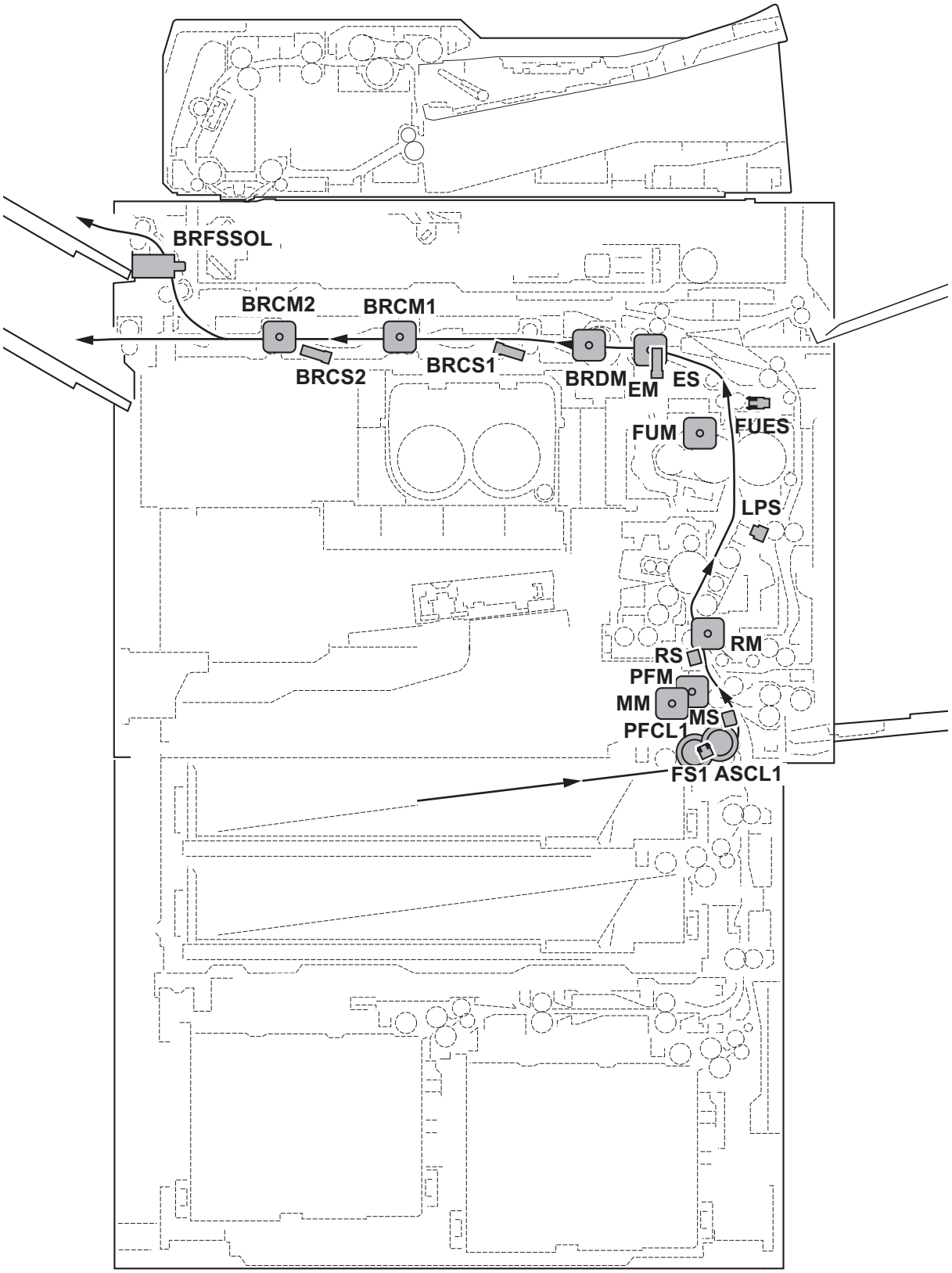
Item	FRPO	Setting values	Factory setting
Default weight (courier and letter Gothic)	V9	0: Courier = darkness Letter Gothic = darkness 1: Courier = regular Letter Gothic = darkness 4: Courier = darkness Letter Gothic = regular 5: Courier = regular Letter Gothic = regular	5
Paper type for the MP tray	X0	1: Plain 2: Transparency 3: Preprinted 4: Label 5: Bond 6: Recycle 7: Vellum 9: Letterhead 10: Color 11: Prepunched 12: Envelope 13: Cardstock 14: Coated 16: Thick 17: High quality 21 to 28: Custom1 to 8	1
Paper type for cassettes 1 and 2	X1 X2	1: Plain 3: Preprinted 5: Bond 6: Recycled 7: Vellum 9: Letterhead 10: Color 11: Prepunched 16: Thick 17: High quality 21 to 28: Custom1 to 8	1
Paper type for optional cassettes 3 to 7	X3 X4 X5	1: Plain 3: Preprinted 5: Bond 6: Recycled 9: Letterhead 10: Color 11: Prepunched 17: High quality 21 to 28: Custom1 to 8	1
PCL paper source	X9	0: Paper selection depending on an escape sequence compatible with HP-LJ5Si. 2: Paper selection depending on an escape sequence compatible with HP-LJ8000.	0

Item	FRPO	Setting values	Factory setting
Automatic continue for 'Press GO'	Y0	0: Off 1: On	0
Automatic continue timer	Y1	Value in units of 5 seconds (1 to 99)	6 (30 s)
Error message for device error	Y3	0: Not detect 127: Detect	127
Duplex operation for specified paper type (Prepunched, Preprintedand Letterhead)	Y4	0: Off 1: On	0
Default operation for PDF direct printing	Y5	0: Enlarges or reduces the image to fit in the current paper size. Loads paper from the current paper cassette. 1: Through the image. Loads paper which is the same size as the image. 2: Enlarges or reduces the image to fit in the current paper size. Loads Letter, A4 size paper depending on the image size. 3: Through the image. Loads Letter, A4 size paper depending on the image size. 8: Through the image. Loads paper from the current paper cassette. 9: Through the image. Loads Letter, A4 size paper depending on the image size. 10: Enlarges or reduces the image to fit in the current paper size. Loads Letter, A4 size paper depending on the image size.	0
e-MPS error	Y6	0: Does not print the error report and display the error message. 1: Prints the error report. 2: Displays the error message. 3: Prints the error report and displays the error message.	3

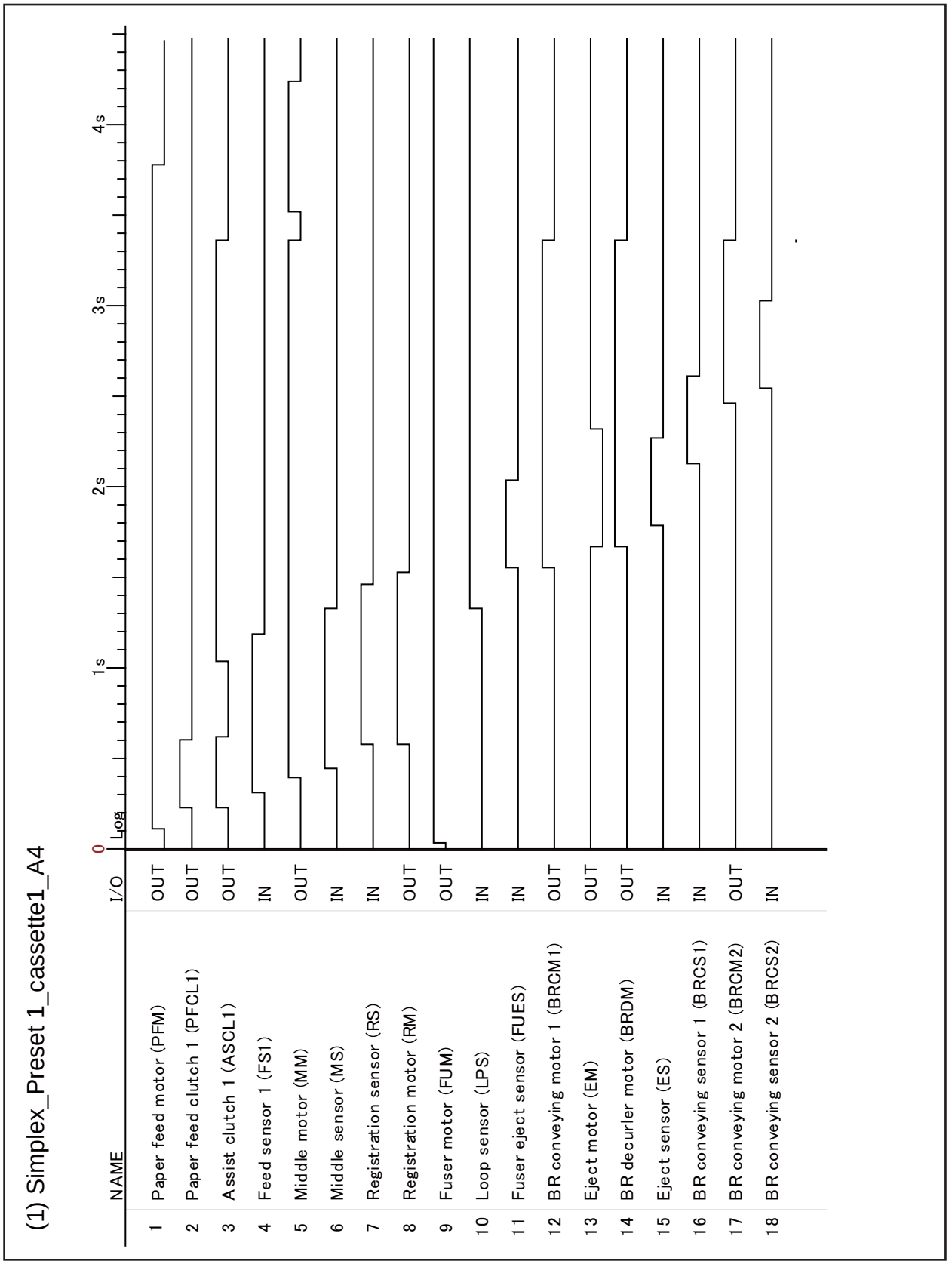
*: Ignored in some emulation modes.

(8) Timing chart

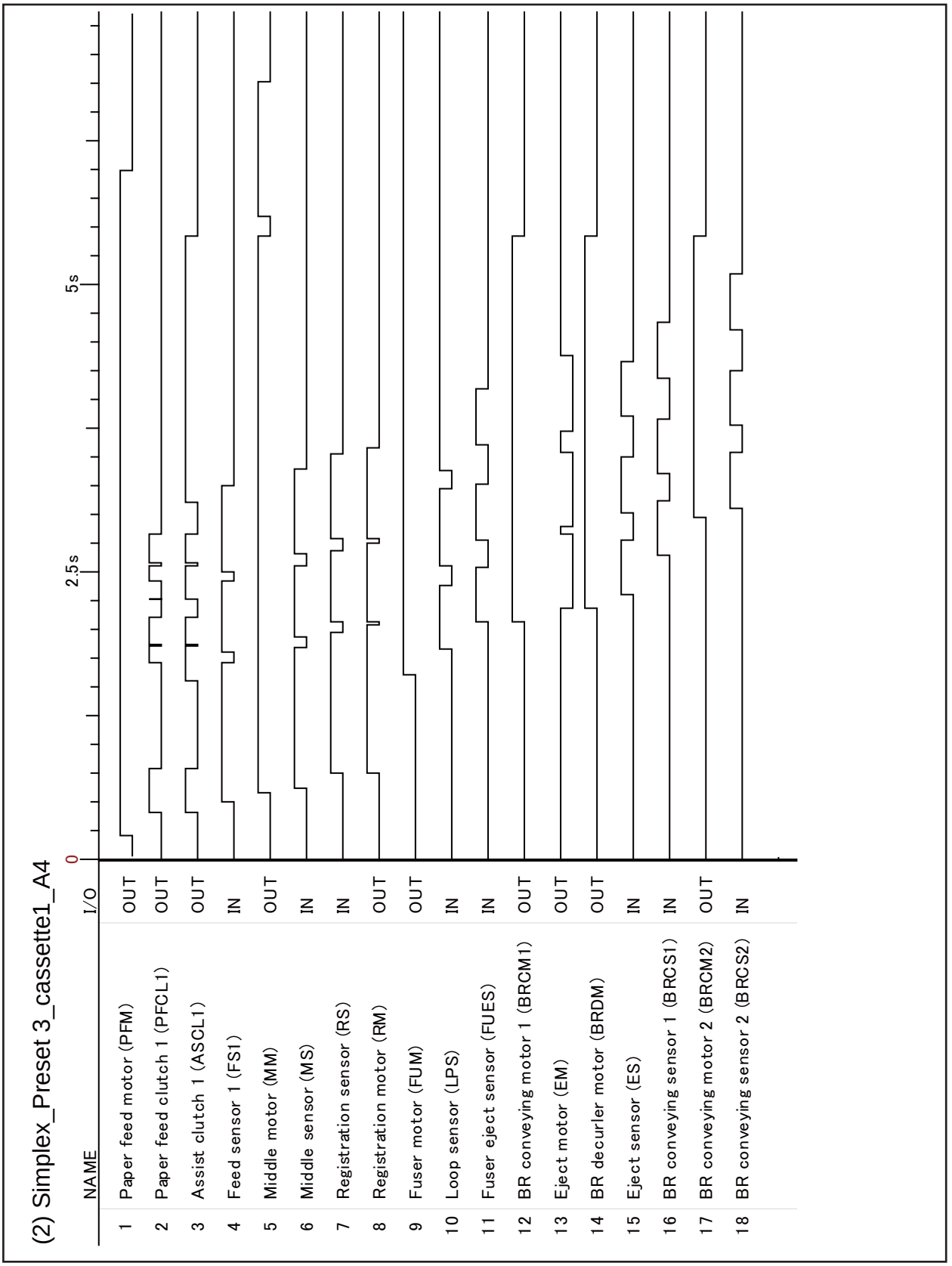
1. Cassette1 paper feeding, Paper size A4, Simplex, Preset 1
2. Cassette1 paper feeding, Paper size A4, Simplex, Preset 3



(1) Simplex_Preset 1_cassette1_A4

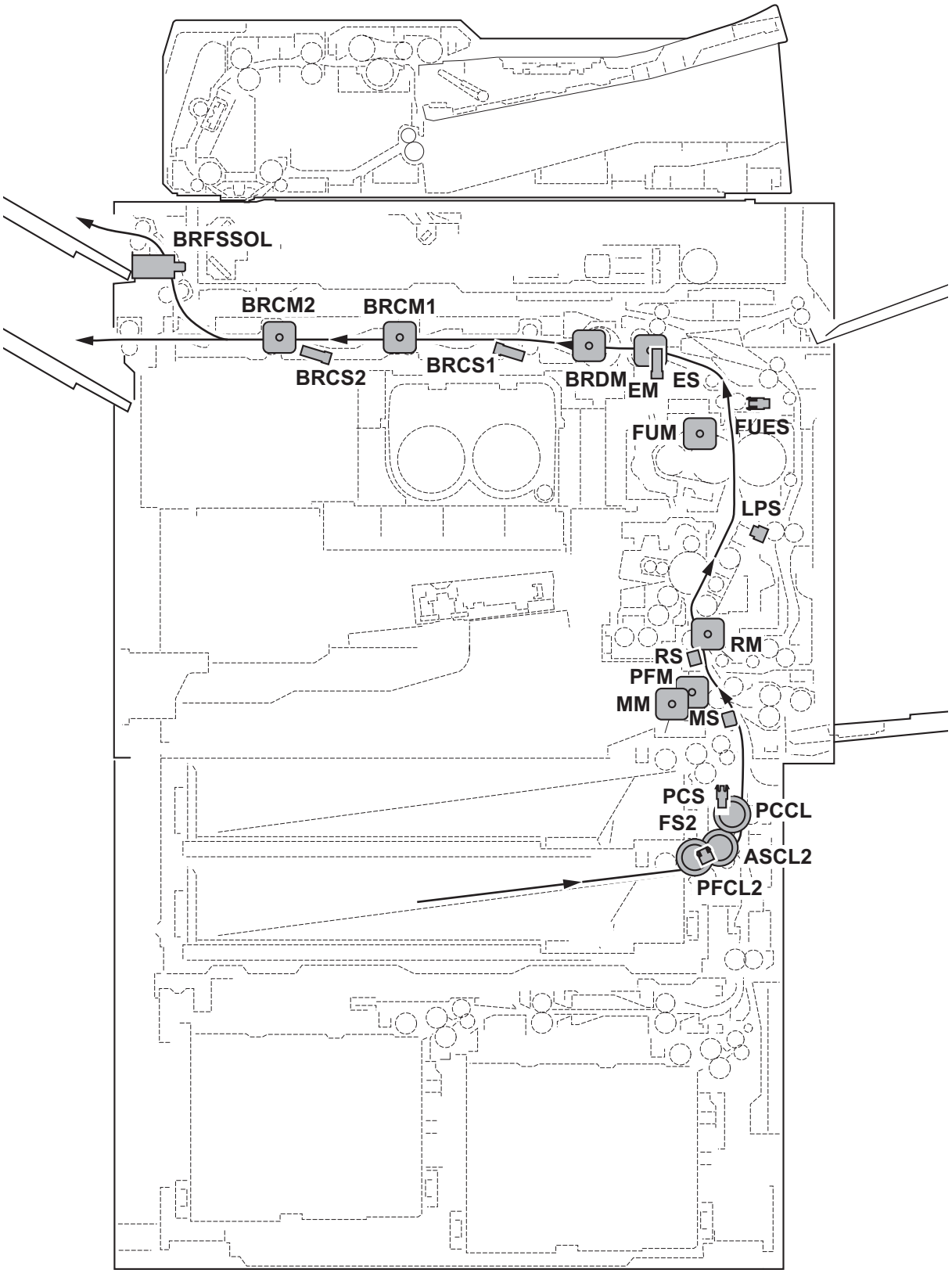


(2) Simplex_Preset 3_cassette1_A4

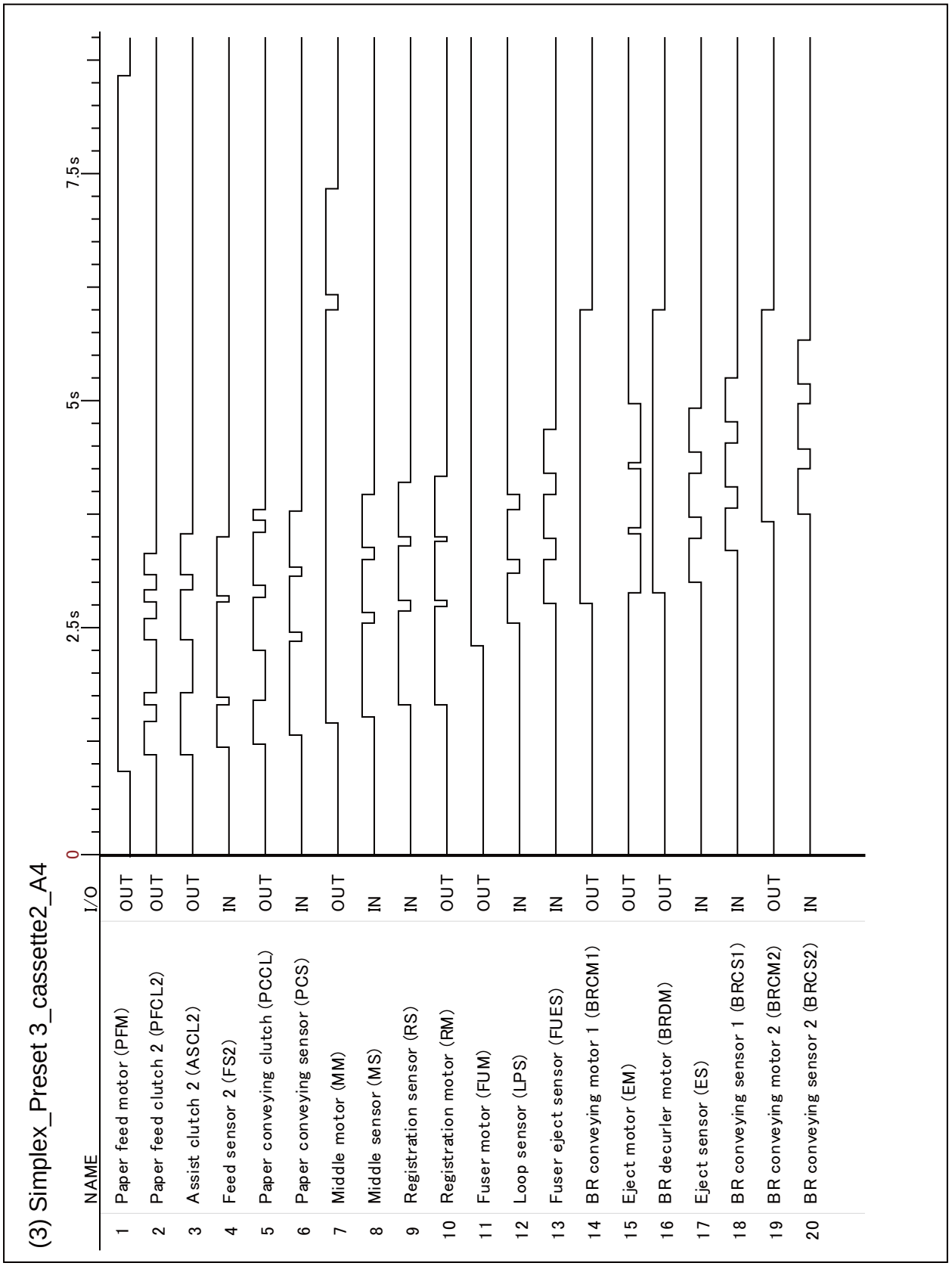


	NAME	I/O
1	Paper feed motor (PFM)	OUT
2	Paper feed clutch 1 (PFCL1)	OUT
3	Assist clutch 1 (ASCL1)	OUT
4	Feed sensor 1 (FS1)	IN
5	Middle motor (MM)	OUT
6	Middle sensor (MS)	IN
7	Registration sensor (RS)	IN
8	Registration motor (RM)	OUT
9	Fuser motor (FUM)	OUT
10	Loop sensor (LPS)	IN
11	Fuser eject sensor (FUES)	IN
12	BR conveying motor 1 (BRCM1)	OUT
13	Eject motor (EM)	OUT
14	BR decurler motor (BRDM)	OUT
15	Eject sensor (ES)	IN
16	BR conveying sensor 1 (BRCS1)	IN
17	BR conveying motor 2 (BRCM2)	OUT
18	BR conveying sensor 2 (BRCS2)	IN

3. Cassette2 paper feeding, Paper size A4, Simplex, Preset 3

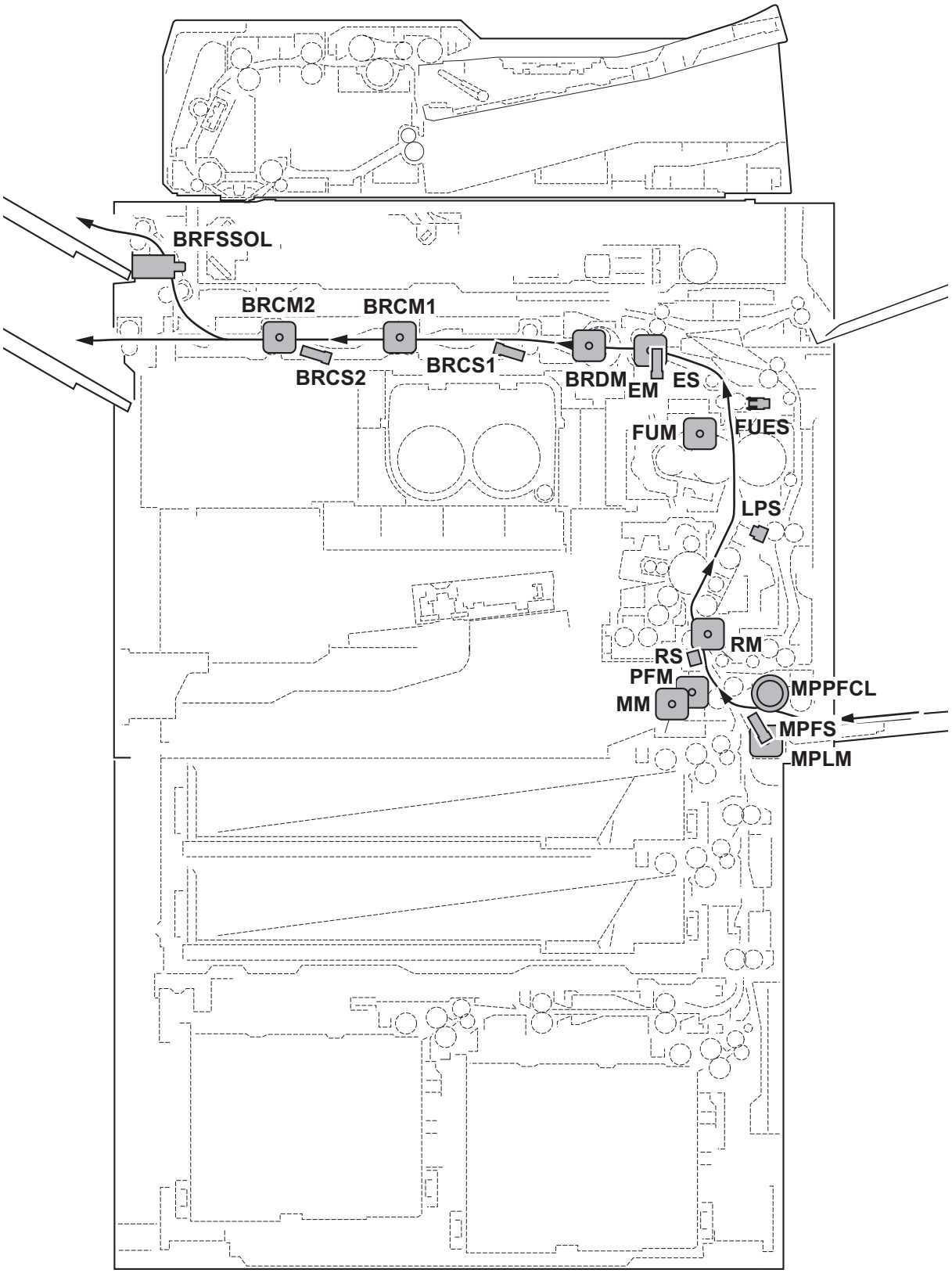


(3) Simplex_Preset 3_cassette2_A4

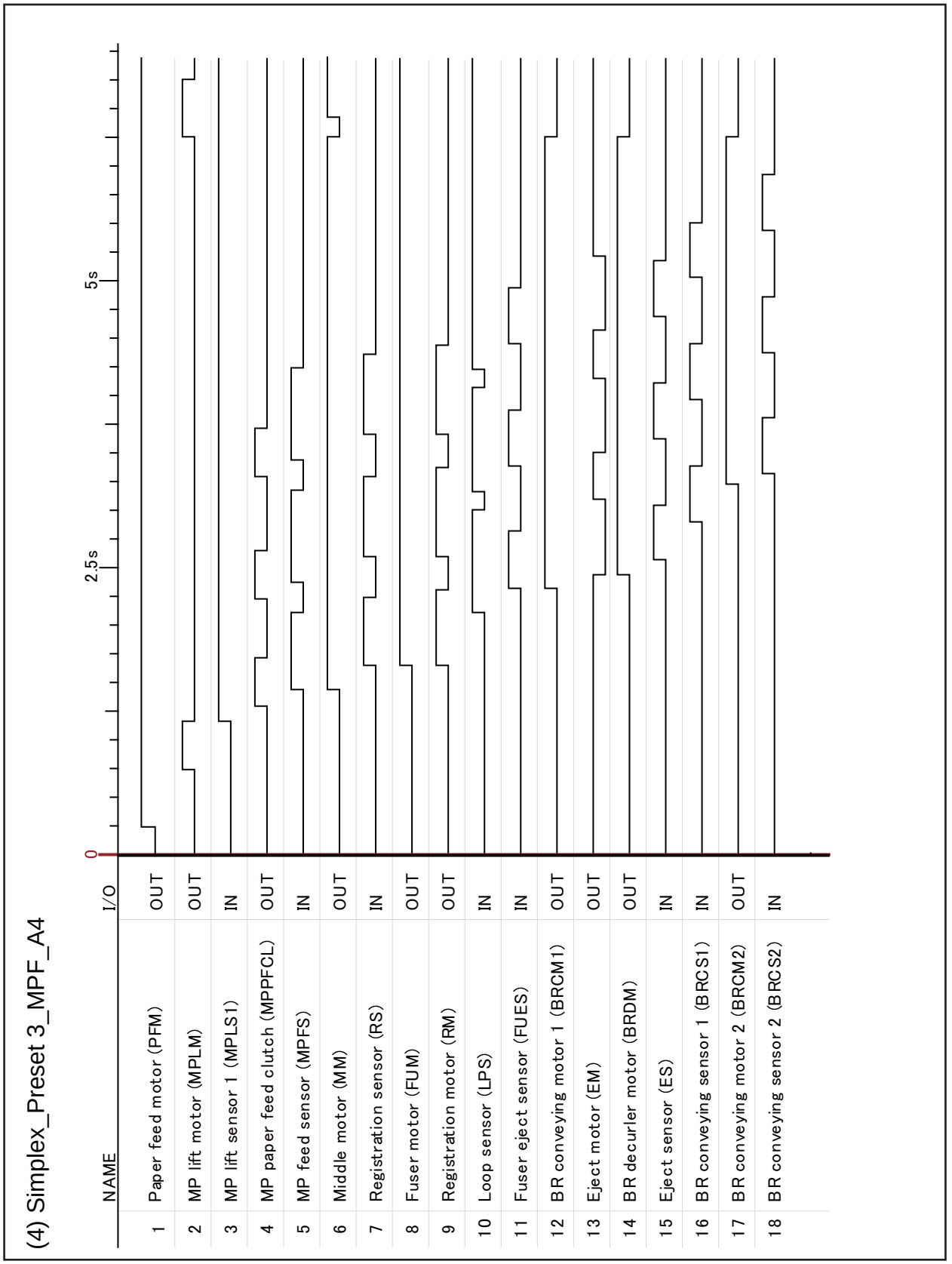


	NAME	I/O
1	Paper feed motor (PFM)	OUT
2	Paper feed clutch 2 (PFCL2)	OUT
3	Assist clutch 2 (ASCL2)	OUT
4	Feed sensor 2 (FS2)	IN
5	Paper conveying clutch (PCCL)	OUT
6	Paper conveying sensor (PCS)	IN
7	Middle motor (MM)	OUT
8	Middle sensor (MS)	IN
9	Registration sensor (RS)	IN
10	Registration motor (RM)	OUT
11	Fuser motor (FUM)	OUT
12	Loop sensor (LPS)	IN
13	Fuser eject sensor (FUES)	IN
14	BR conveying motor 1 (BRCM1)	OUT
15	Eject motor (EM)	OUT
16	BR decurler motor (BRDM)	OUT
17	Eject sensor (ES)	IN
18	BR conveying sensor 1 (BRCS1)	IN
19	BR conveying motor 2 (BRCM2)	OUT
20	BR conveying sensor 2 (BRCS2)	IN

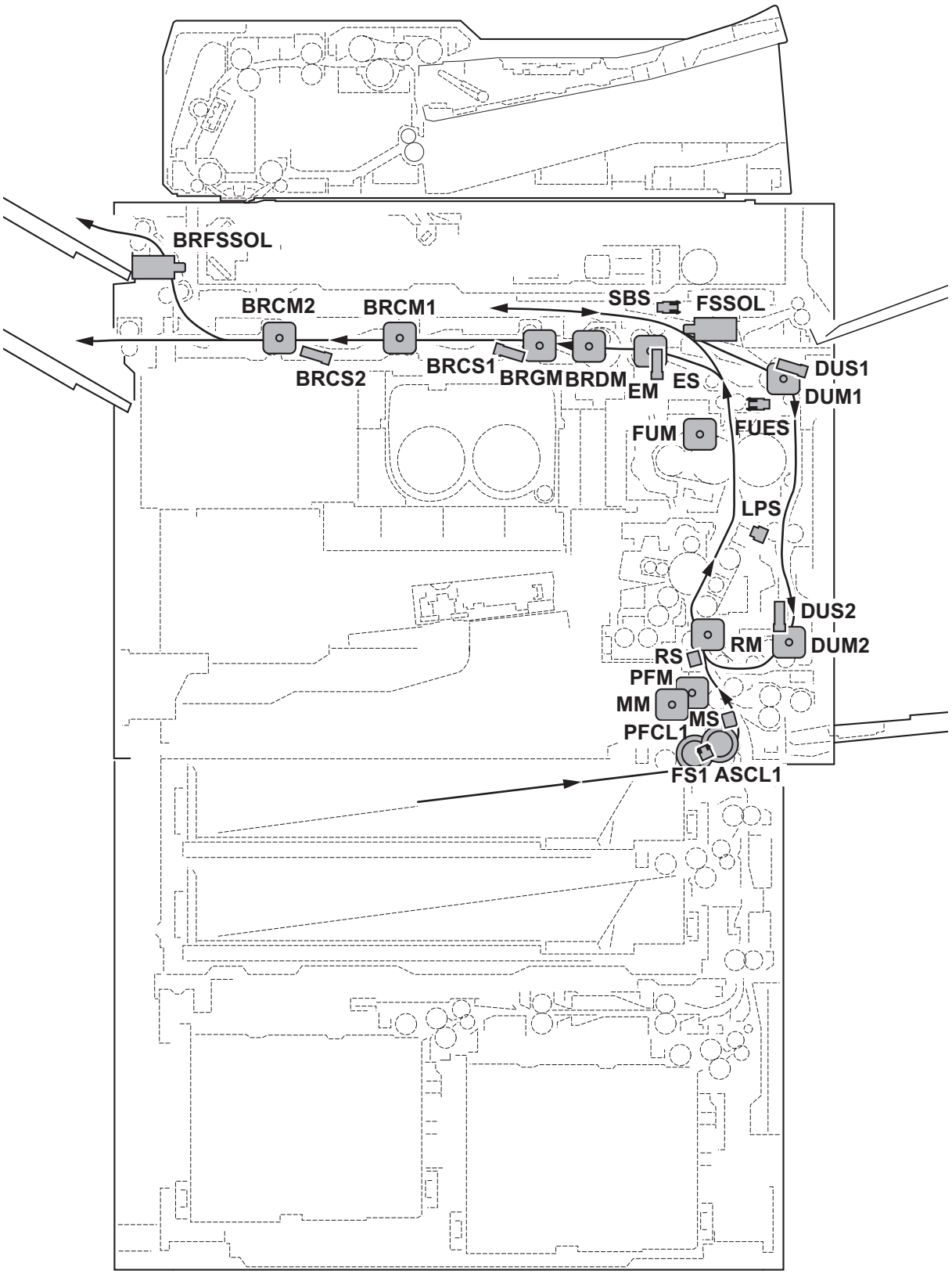
4. MPF paper feeding, Paper size A4, Simplex, Preset 1

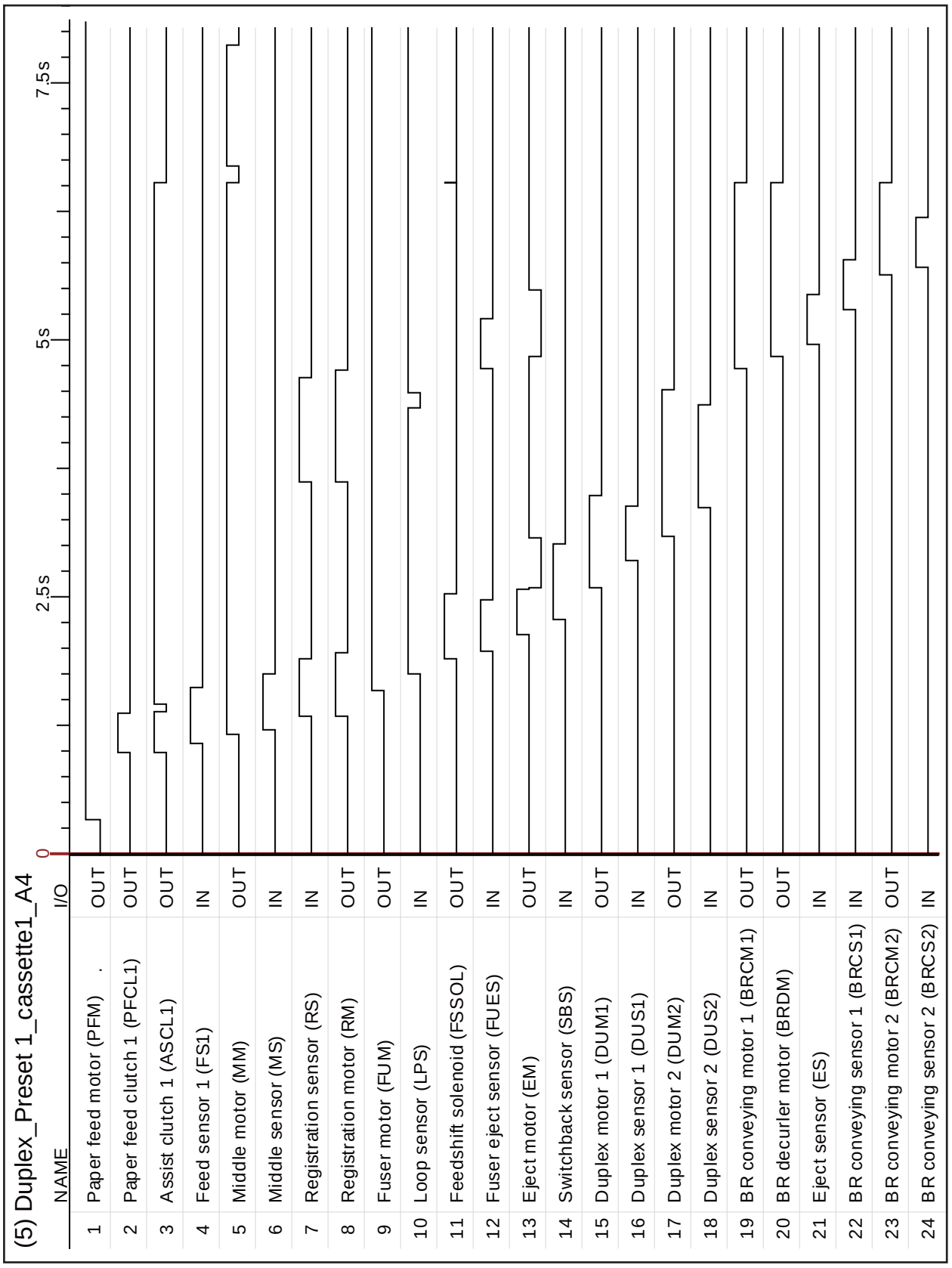


(4) Simplex_Preset 3_MPF_A4

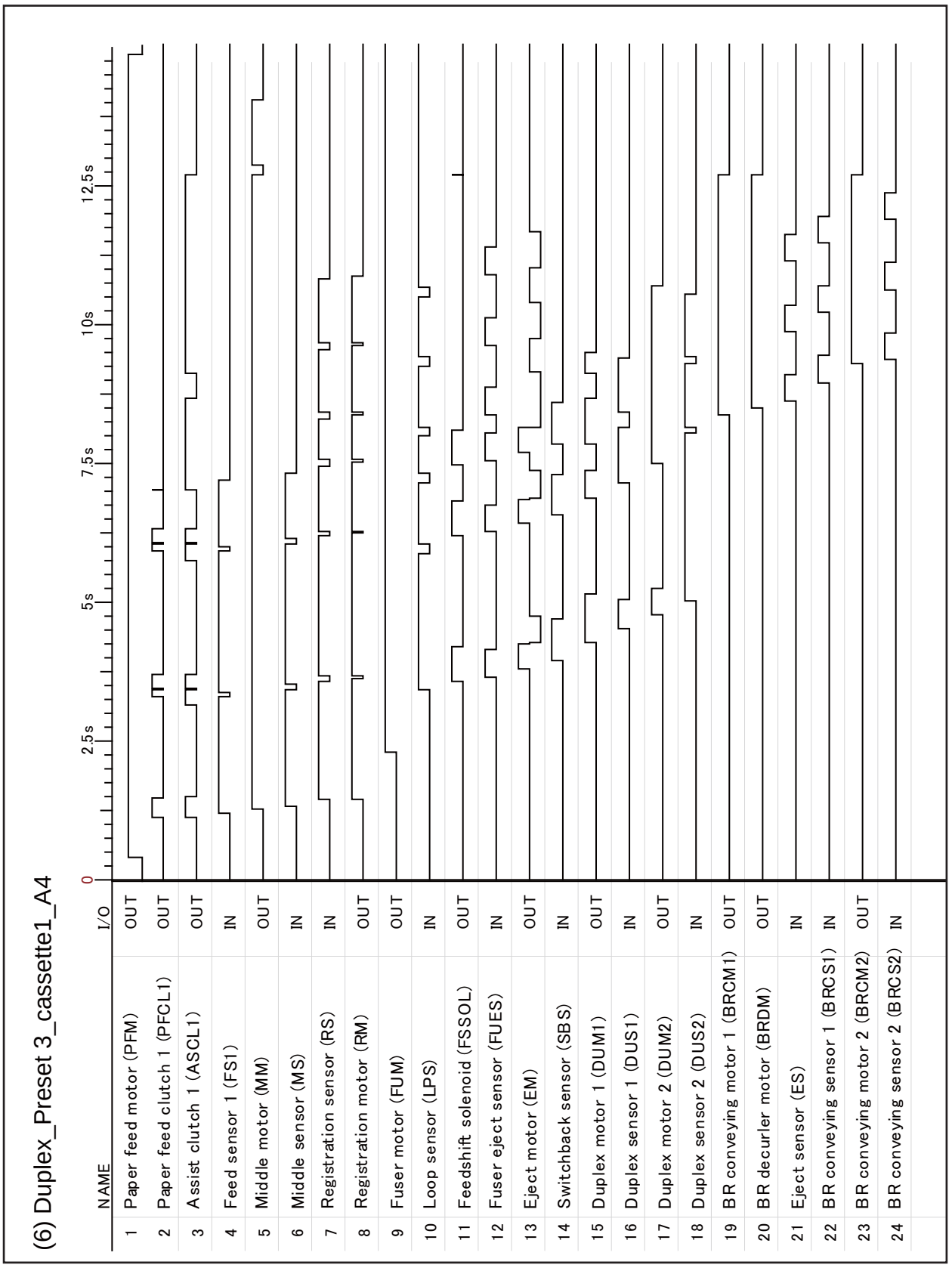


5. Cassette1 paper feeding, Paper size A4, Duplex, Preset 1
6. Cassette1 paper feeding, Paper size A4, Duplex, Preset 3



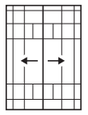
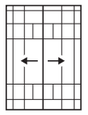
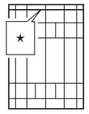
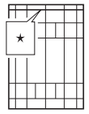
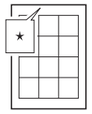
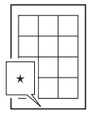
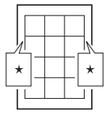
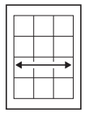
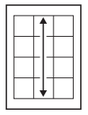

(5) Duplex_Preset 1_cassette1_A4
NAME
I/O
0
2.5s
5s
7.5s
1 Paper feed motor (PFM) OUT
2 Paper feed clutch 1 (PFCL1) OUT
3 Assist clutch 1 (ASCL1) OUT
4 Feed sensor 1 (FS1) IN
5 Middle motor (MM) OUT
6 Middle sensor (MS) IN
7 Registration sensor (RS) IN
8 Registration motor (RM) OUT
9 Fuser motor (FUM) OUT
10 Loop sensor (LPS) IN
11 Feedshift solenoid (FSSOL) OUT
12 Fuser eject sensor (FUES) IN
13 Eject motor (EM) OUT
14 Switchback sensor (SBS) IN
15 Duplex motor 1 (DUM1) OUT
16 Duplex sensor 1 (DUS1) IN
17 Duplex motor 2 (DUM2) OUT
18 Duplex sensor 2 (DUS2) IN
19 BR conveying motor 1 (BRCM1) OUT
20 BR decurler motor (BRDM) OUT
21 Eject sensor (ES) IN
22 BR conveying sensor 1 (BRCS1) IN
23 BR conveying motor 2 (BRCM2) OUT
24 BR conveying sensor 2 (BRCS2) IN

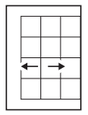
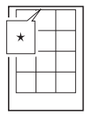
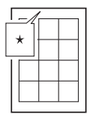
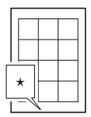
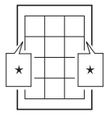
(6) Duplex_Preset 3_cassette1_A4



	NAME	I/O
1	Paper feed motor (PFM)	OUT
2	Paper feed clutch 1 (PFCL1)	OUT
3	Assist clutch 1 (ASCL1)	OUT
4	Feed sensor 1 (FS1)	IN
5	Middle motor (MM)	OUT
6	Middle sensor (MS)	IN
7	Registration sensor (RS)	IN
8	Registration motor (RM)	OUT
9	Fuser motor (FUM)	OUT
10	Loop sensor (LPS)	IN
11	Feedshift solenoid (FSSOL)	OUT
12	Fuser eject sensor (FUES)	IN
13	Eject motor (EM)	OUT
14	Switchback sensor (SBS)	IN
15	Duplex motor 1 (DUM1)	OUT
16	Duplex sensor 1 (DUS1)	IN
17	Duplex motor 2 (DUM2)	OUT
18	Duplex sensor 2 (DUS2)	IN
19	BR conveying motor 1 (BRCM1)	OUT
20	BR decurler motor (BRDM)	OUT
21	Eject sensor (ES)	IN
22	BR conveying sensor 1 (BRCS1)	IN
23	BR conveying motor 2 (BRCM2)	OUT
24	BR conveying sensor 2 (BRCS2)	IN

(9) Chart of image adjustment procedures

Adjusting order	Item	Image	Description	Maintenance mode		Original	Page	Remarks
				Item No.	Mode			
1	Adjusting the center line of the MP tray (printing adjustment)		Adjusting the LSU print start timing	U034	LSU Out Left	U034 test pattern	P.1-3-36	To make an adjustment for duplex copying, select Duplex.
2	Adjusting the center line of the cassettes (printing adjustment)		Adjusting the LSU print start timing	U034	LSU Out Left	U034 test pattern	P.1-3-36	
3	Adjusting the leading edge registration of the MP tray (printing adjustment)		Registration motor turning on timing (secondary paper feed start timing)	U034	LSU Out Top	U034 test pattern	P.1-3-36	To make an adjustment for duplex copying, select Duplex.
4	Adjusting the leading edge registration of the cassette (printing adjustment)		Registration motor turning on timing (secondary paper feed start timing)	U034	LSU Out Top	U034 test pattern	P.1-3-36	
5	Adjusting the leading edge margin (printing adjustment)		LSU illumination start timing	U402	Lead	U402 test pattern	P.1-3-146	
6	Adjusting the trailing edge margin (printing adjustment)		LSU illumination end timing	U402	Trail	U402 test pattern	P.1-3-146	
7	Adjusting the left and right margins (printing adjustment)		LSU illumination start/end timing	U402	A Margin C Margin	U402 test pattern	P.1-3-146	
8	Adjusting magnification of the scanner in the main scanning direction (scanning adjustment)		Data processing	U065 U070	Main Scan Main Scan	Test chart	P.1-3-51 P.1-3-56	U065: For copying an original placed on the platen. U070: For copying originals from the DP.
9	Adjusting magnification of the scanner in the auxiliary scanning direction (scanning adjustment)		Original scanning speed	U065 U070	Sub Scan Sub Scan	Test chart	P.1-3-51 P.1-3-56	U065: For copying an original placed on the platen. U070: For copying originals from the DP.

Adjusting order	Item	Image	Description	Maintenance mode		Original	Page	Remarks
				Item No.	Mode			
10	Adjusting the center line (scanning adjustment)		Adjusting the original scan data (image adjustment)	U067 U072	Front Rotate Front Back	Test chart	P.1-3-54 P.1-3-60	U067: For copying an original placed on the platen. To make an adjustment for rotate copying, select Rotate. U072: For copying originals from the DP. To make an adjustment for duplex copying, select Back.
11	Adjusting the leading edge registration (scanning adjustment)		Original scan start timing	U066 U071	Front Rotate Front Head Back Head	Test chart	P.1-3-53 P.1-3-58	U066: For copying an original placed on the platen. To make an adjustment for trailing edge registration, select Rotate. U071: For copying originals from the DP. To make an adjustment for duplex copying, select Back Head.
12	Adjusting the leading edge margin (scanning adjustment)		Adjusting the original scan data (image adjustment)	U403 U404	B Margin B Margin	Test chart	P.1-3-147 P.1-3-148	U403: For copying an original placed on the contact glass U404: For copying originals from the DP.
13	Adjusting the trailing edge margin (scanning adjustment)		Adjusting the original scan data (image adjustment)	U403 U404	D Margin D Margin	Test chart	P.1-3-147 P.1-3-148	U403: For copying an original placed on the contact glass U404: For copying originals from the DP.
14	Adjusting the left and right margins (scanning adjustment)		Adjusting the original scan data (image adjustment)	U403 U404	A Margin C Margin A Margin C Margin	Test chart	P.1-3-147 P.1-3-148	U403: For copying an original placed on the contact glass U404: For copying originals from the DP.

When maintenance item U411 (Automatic adjustment in the scanner) is run using the specified original (P/N 7505000005), the following adjustments are automatically made:
Adjusting the scanner auxiliary scanning direction magnification (U065)
Adjusting the scanner leading edge registration (U066)
Adjusting the scanner center line (U067)
Adjusting the DP magnification (U070)
Adjusting the DP leading edge registration (U071)
Adjusting the DP center line (U072)

When maintenance item U411 (Automatic adjustment in the scanner) is run using the specified original (P/N 302AC68243), the following adjustments are automatically made:
Adjusting the DP magnification (U070)
Adjusting the DP leading edge registration (U071)
Adjusting the DP center line (U072)

When maintenance item U411 (Automatic adjustment in the scanner) is run using the chart printed from the machine, the following adjustments are automatically made:
Adjusting the DP magnification (U070)
Adjusting the DP leading edge registration (U071)
Adjusting the DP center line (U072)
Adjusting the DP magnification (U070)
Adjusting the DP leading edge registration (U071)
Adjusting the DP center line (U072)

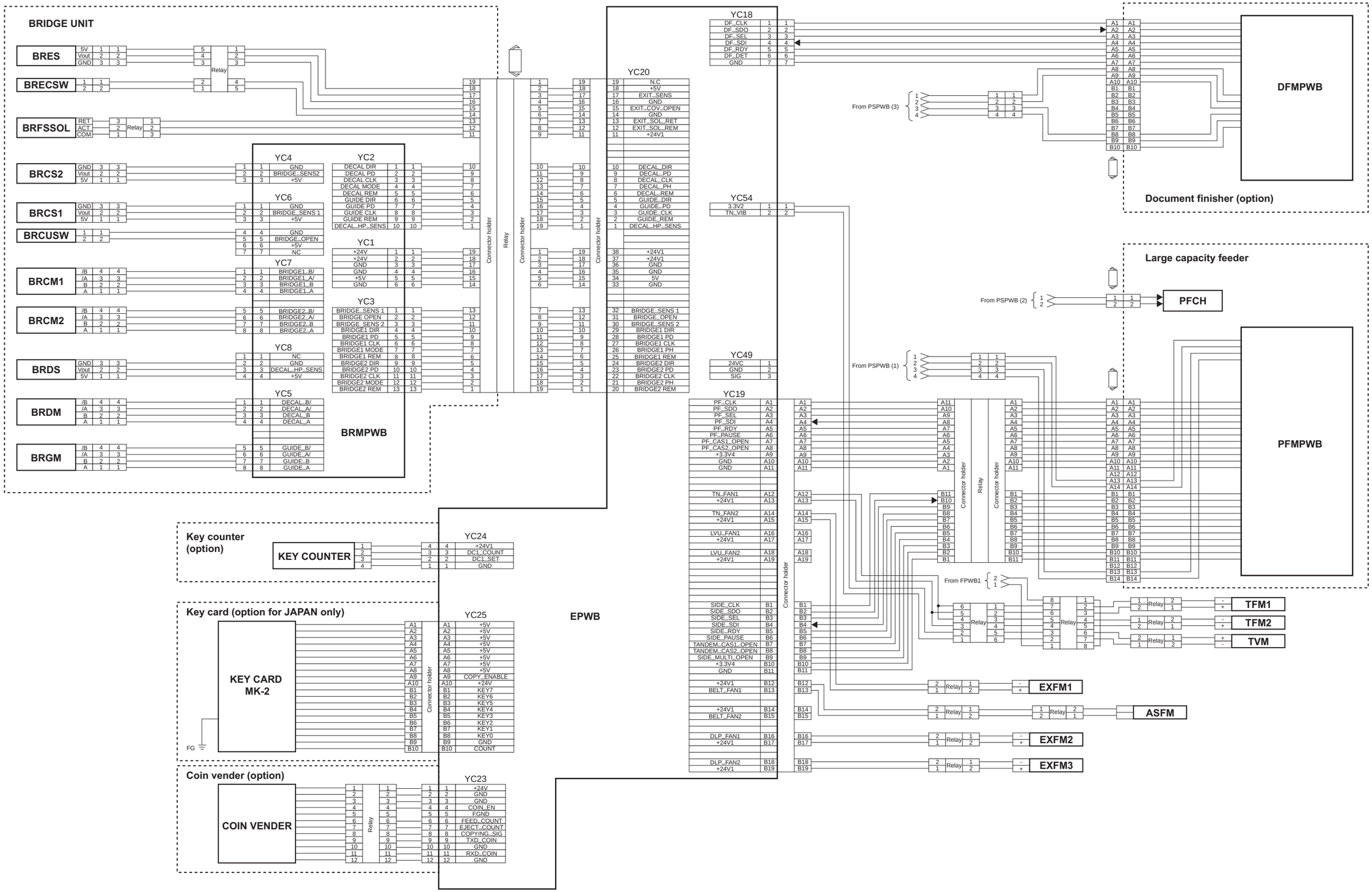
When maintenance item U415 (Adjusting the print position automatically) is run, the following adjustments are automatically made:
Adjusting the printer leading edge registration (U034)
Adjusting the printer center line (U034)
Adjusting the printer margin (U402)

Image quality

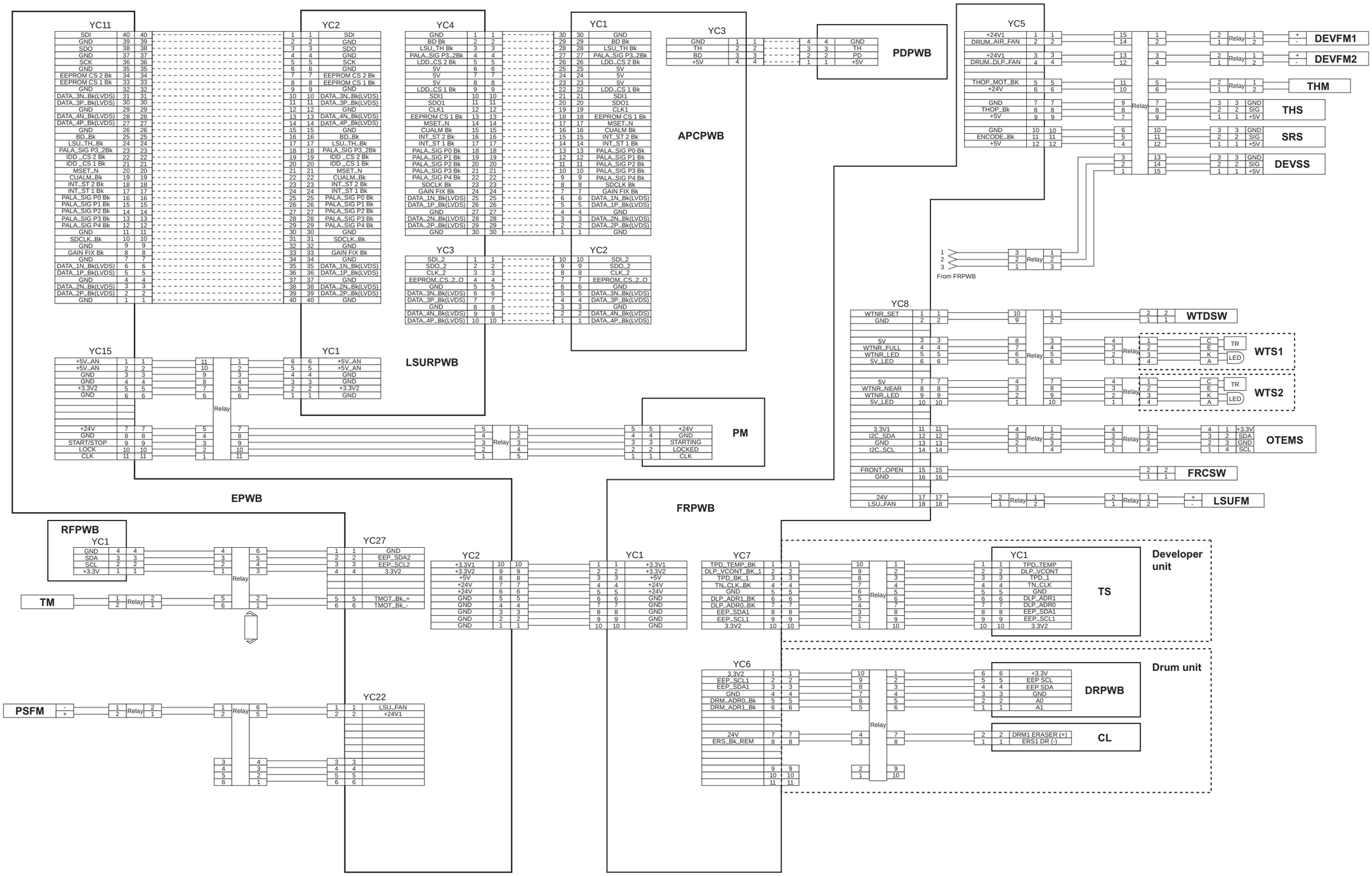
Item	Specifications	Item	Specifications
100% magnification	Machine: ± 0.8 %	Leading edge registration	Cassette: +1.0/-1.5 mm
	Using DP: ± 1.5 %		MP tray: +1.0/-1.5 mm
Enlargement/ reduction	Machine: ± 1.0 %		Duplex: +1.0/-1.5 mm
	Using DP: ± 1.5 %	Skewed paper feed (left-right difference)	Cassette: 1.5 mm or less
Lateral squareness	Machine: ± 1.5 mm/375 mm		MP tray: 1.5 mm or less
	Using DP: ± 3.0 mm/375 mm		Duplex: 2.0 mm or less
		Lateral image shifting	Cassette: ± 2.0 mm
			MP tray: ± 2.0 mm
			Duplex: ± 3.0 mm

(10) Wiring diagram

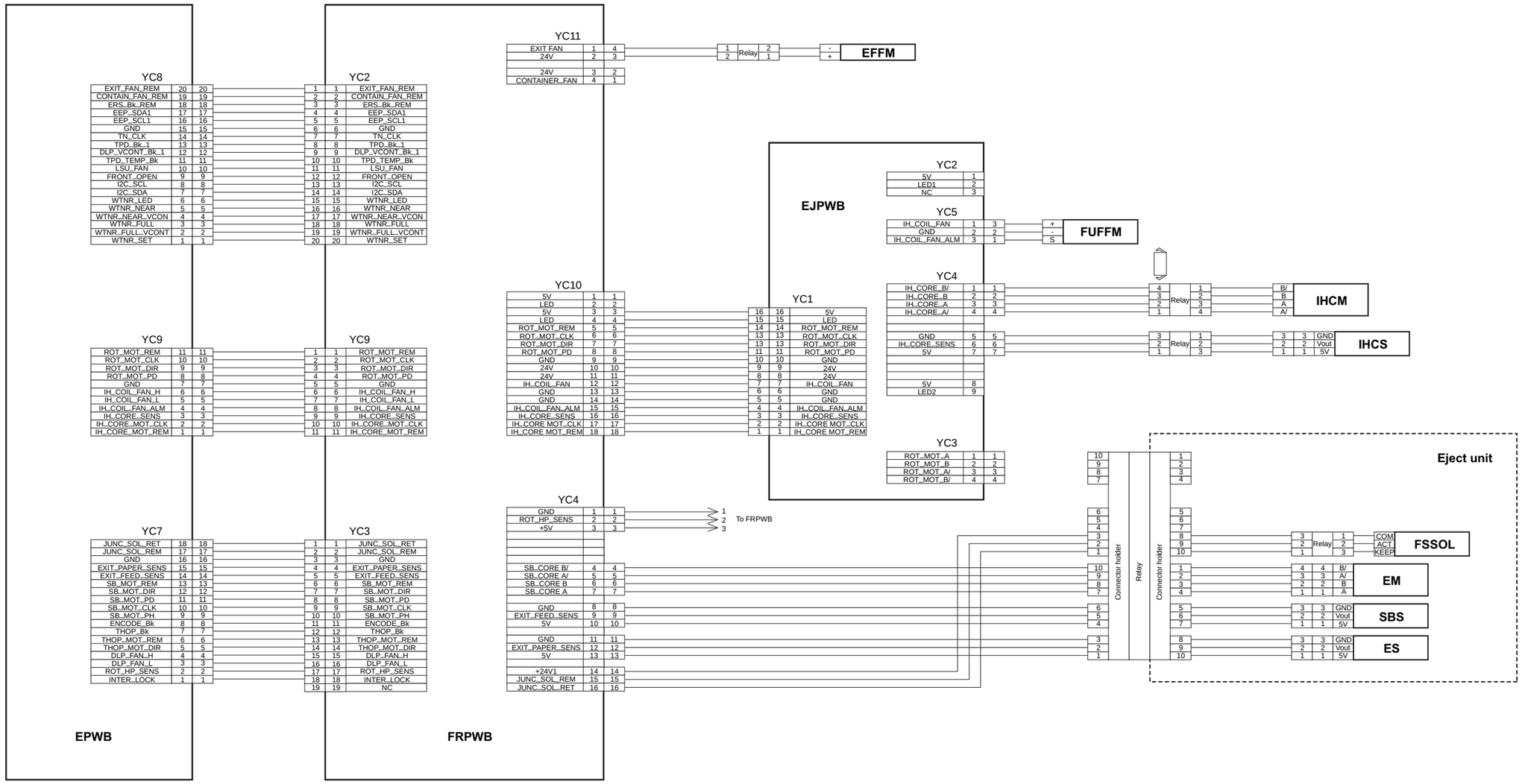
No.1



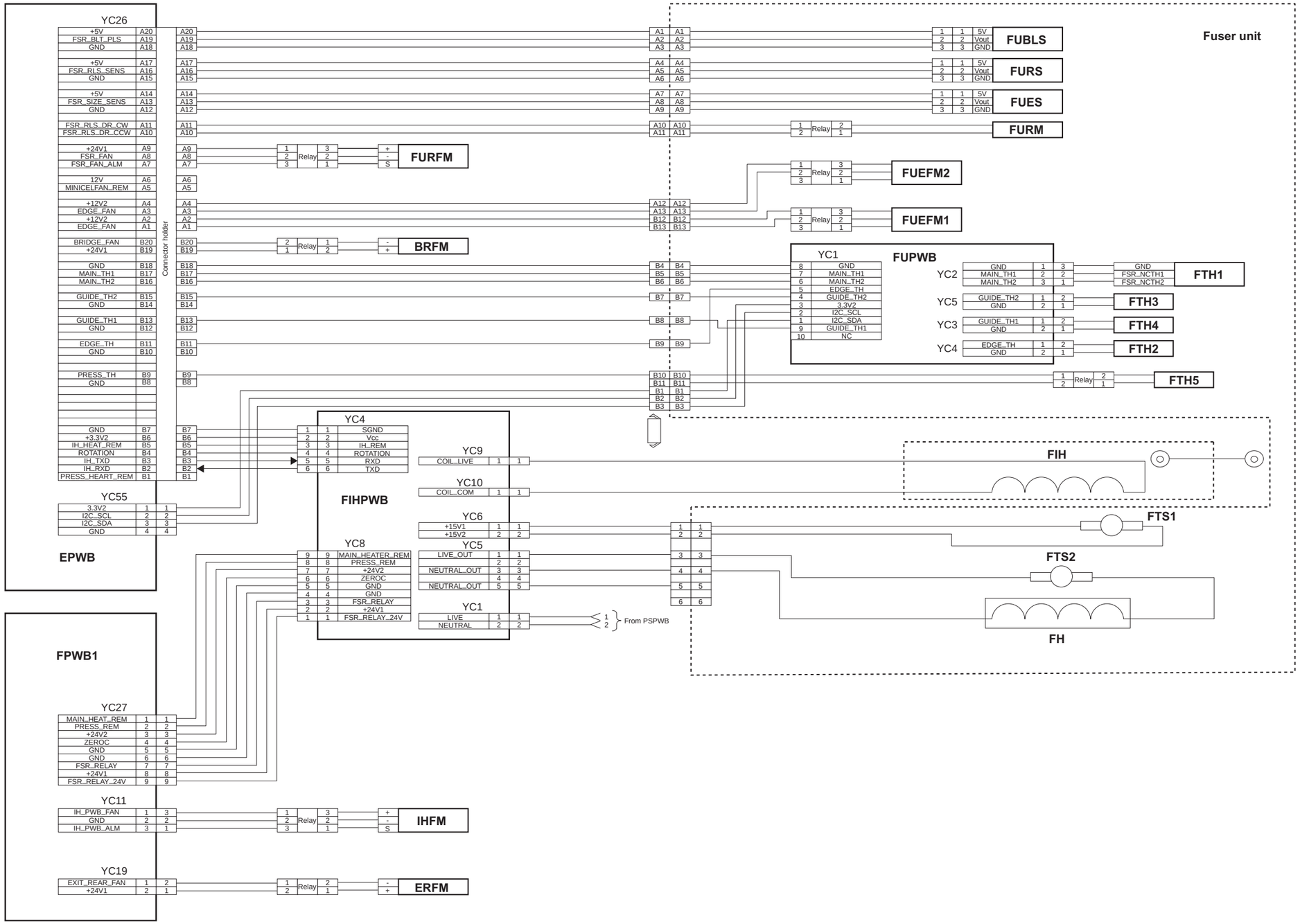
No.2


YC11
YC2
YC4
YC1
YC3
YC5
PDPWB
APCPWB
YC3
YC2
YC15
YC1
LSURPWB
PM
YC8
WTDSW
WTS1
WTS2
OTEMS
FRCSW
LSUFM
DEVFM1
DEVFM2
THM
THS
SRS
DEVSS
From FRPWB
EPWB
FRPWB
RFPWB
YC1
YC27
TM
YC2
YC1
YC22
PSFM
YC7
YC1
TS
Developer unit
YC6
DRPWB
CL
Drum unit

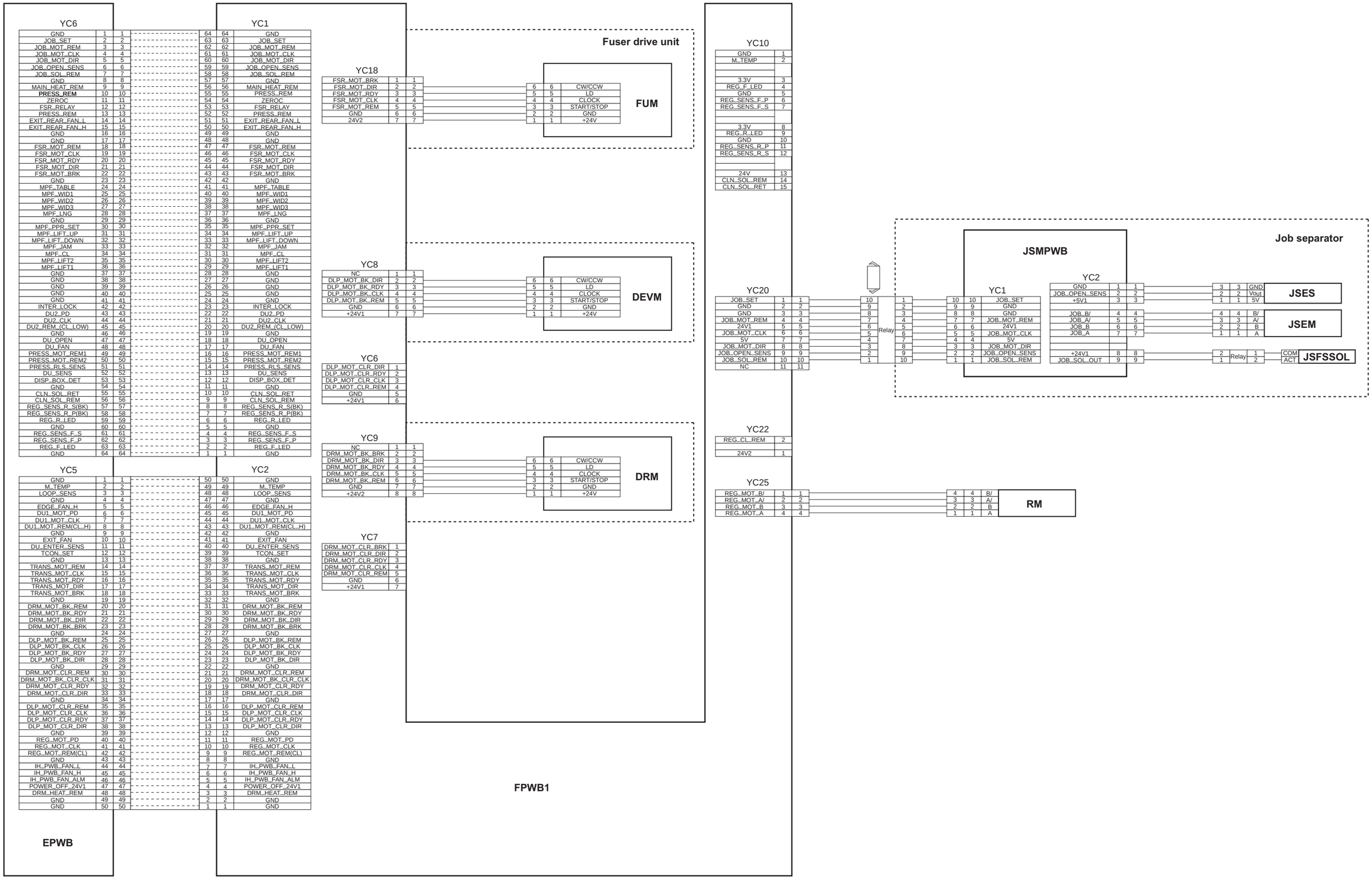
No.3


EPWB
FRPWB
EJPWB
YC8
YC2
YC9
YC9
YC7
YC3
YC10
YC1
YC11
EFFM
YC2
YC5
FUFFM
YC4
IHCM
IHCS
YC3
YC4
To FRPWB
Eject unit
Connector holder
Relay
Connector holder
FSSOL
EM
SBS
ES

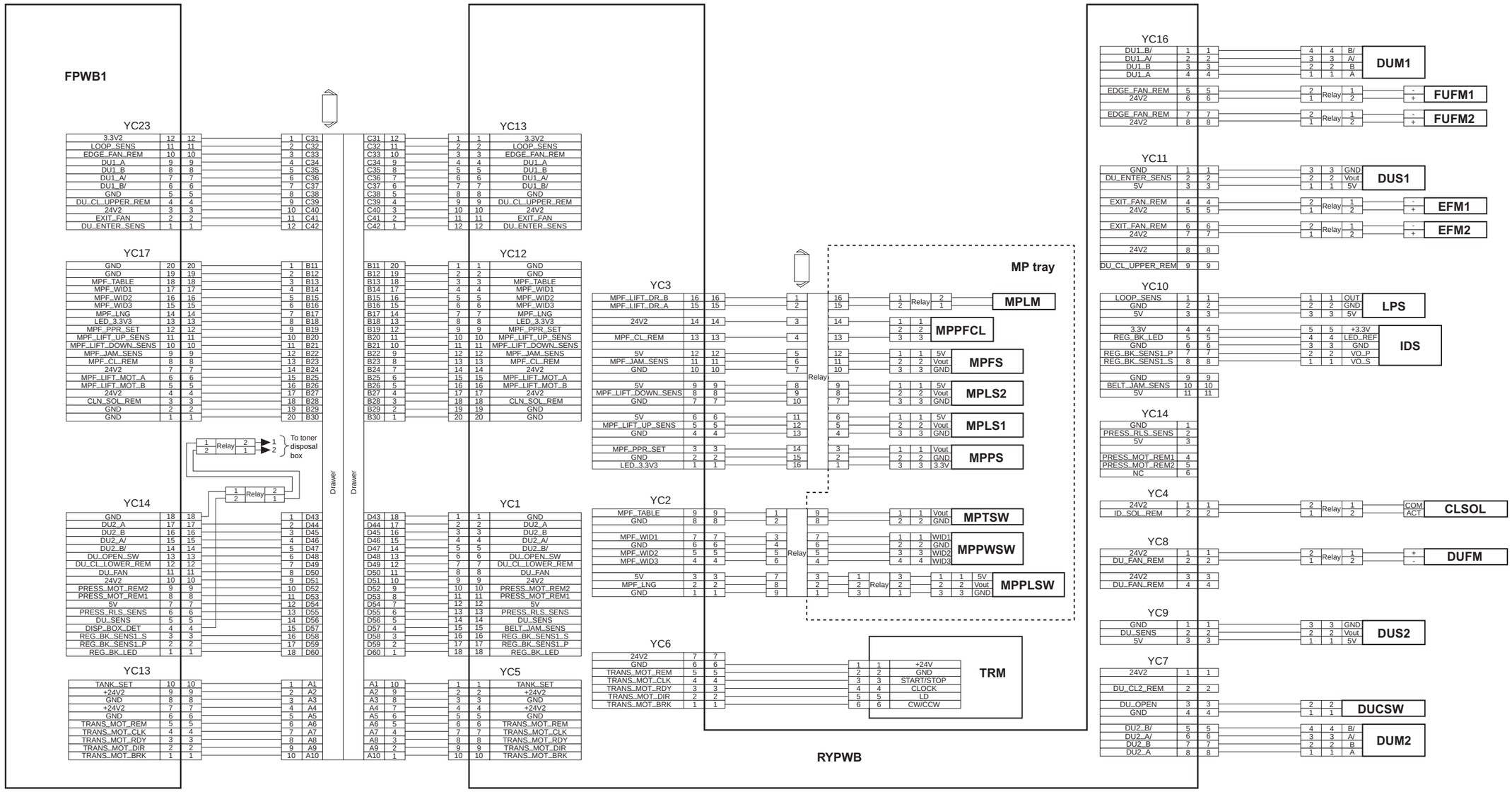
No.4


YC26
+5V A20
FSR_BLT_PLS A19
GND A18
+5V A17
FSR_RLS_SENS A16
GND A15
+5V A14
FSR_SIZE_SENS A13
GND A12
FSR_RLS_DR_CW A11
FSR_RLS_DR_CCW A10
+24V1 A9
FSR_FAN A8
FSR_FAN_ALM A7
12V A6
MINICELFAN_REM A5
+12V2 A4
EDGE_FAN A3
+12V2 A2
EDGE_FAN A1
BRIDGE_FAN B20
+24V1 B19
GND B18
MAIN_TH1 B17
MAIN_TH2 B16
GUIDE_TH2 B15
GND B14
GUIDE_TH1 B13
GND B12
EDGE_TH B11
GND B10
PRESS_TH B9
GND B8
GND B7
+3.3V2 B6
IH_HEAT_REM B5
ROTATION B4
IH_TXD B3
IH_RXD B2
PRESS_HEART_REM B1
Connector holder
Relay
FURFM
BRFM
YC4
SGND
Vcc
IH_REM
ROTATION
RXD
TXD
FIHPWB
YC55
3.3V2
I2C_SCL
I2C_SDA
GND
EPWB
YC8
MAIN_HEATER_REM
PRESS_REM
+24V2
ZEROC
GND
GND
FSR_RELAY
+24V1
FSR_RELAY_24V
FPWB1
YC27
MAIN_HEAT_REM
PRESS_REM
+24V2
ZEROC
GND
GND
FSR_RELAY
+24V1
FSR_RELAY_24V
YC11
IH_PWB_FAN
GND
IH_PWB_ALM
IHFM
YC19
EXIT_REAR_FAN
+24V1
ERFM
YC9
COIL_LIVE
YC10
COIL_COM
YC6
+15V1
+15V2
YC5
LIVE_OUT
NEUTRAL_OUT
NEUTRAL_OUT
YC1
LIVE
NEUTRAL
From PSPWB
Fuser unit
FUBLS
FURS
FUES
FURM
FUEFM2
FUEFM1
YC1
FUPWB
GND
MAIN_TH1
MAIN_TH2
EDGE_TH
GUIDE_TH2
3.3V2
I2C_SCL
I2C_SDA
GUIDE_TH1
NC
YC2
YC5
YC3
YC4
FTH1
FTH3
FTH4
FTH2
FTH5
FIH
FTS1
FTS2
FH

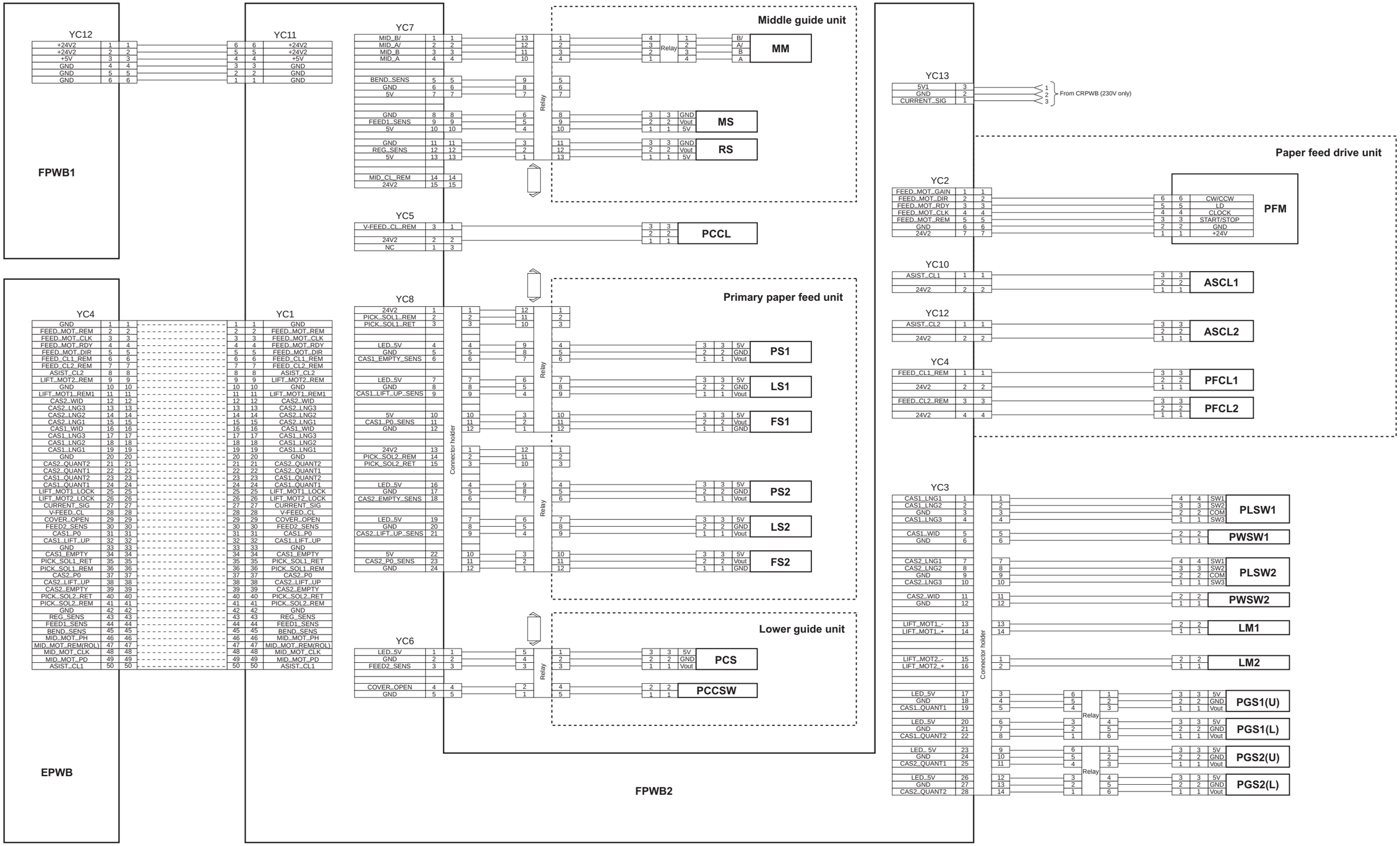
No.5


YC6
GND 1 1 64 64 GND
JOB_SET 2 2 63 63 JOB_SET
JOB_MOT_REM 3 3 62 62 JOB_MOT_REM
JOB_MOT_CLK 4 4 61 61 JOB_MOT_CLK
JOB_MOT_DIR 5 5 60 60 JOB_MOT_DIR
JOB_OPEN_SENS 6 6 59 59 JOB_OPEN_SENS
JOB_SOL_REM 7 7 58 58 JOB_SOL_REM
GND 8 8 57 57 GND
MAIN_HEAT_REM 9 9 56 56 MAIN_HEAT_REM
PRESS_REM 10 10 55 55 PRESS_REM
ZEROC 11 11 54 54 ZEROC
FSR_RELAY 12 12 53 53 FSR_RELAY
PRESS_REM 13 13 52 52 PRESS_REM
EXIT_REAR_FAN_L 14 14 51 51 EXIT_REAR_FAN_L
EXIT_REAR_FAN_H 15 15 50 50 EXIT_REAR_FAN_H
GND 16 16 49 49 GND
GND 17 17 48 48 GND
FSR_MOT_REM 18 18 47 47 FSR_MOT_REM
FSR_MOT_CLK 19 19 46 46 FSR_MOT_CLK
FSR_MOT_RDY 20 20 45 45 FSR_MOT_RDY
FSR_MOT_DIR 21 21 44 44 FSR_MOT_DIR
FSR_MOT_BRK 22 22 43 43 FSR_MOT_BRK
GND 23 23 42 42 GND
MPF_TABLE 24 24 41 41 MPF_TABLE
MPF_WID1 25 25 40 40 MPF_WID1
MPF_WID2 26 26 39 39 MPF_WID2
MPF_WID3 27 27 38 38 MPF_WID3
MPF_LNG 28 28 37 37 MPF_LNG
GND 29 29 36 36 GND
MPF_PPR_SET 30 30 35 35 MPF_PPR_SET
MPF_LIFT_UP 31 31 34 34 MPF_LIFT_UP
MPF_LIFT_DOWN 32 32 33 33 MPF_LIFT_DOWN
MPF_JAM 33 33 32 32 MPF_JAM
MPF_CL 34 34 31 31 MPF_CL
MPF_LIFT2 35 35 30 30 MPF_LIFT2
MPF_LIFT1 36 36 29 29 MPF_LIFT1
GND 37 37 28 28 GND
GND 38 38 27 27 GND
GND 39 39 26 26 GND
GND 40 40 25 25 GND
GND 41 41 24 24 GND
INTER_LOCK 42 42 23 23 INTER_LOCK
DU2_PD 43 43 22 22 DU2_PD
DU2_CLK 44 44 21 21 DU2_CLK
DU2_REM_(CL_LOW) 45 45 20 20 DU2_REM_(CL_LOW)
GND 46 46 19 19 GND
DU_OPEN 47 47 18 18 DU_OPEN
DU_FAN 48 48 17 17 DU_FAN
PRESS_MOT_REM1 49 49 16 16 PRESS_MOT_REM1
PRESS_MOT_REM2 50 50 15 15 PRESS_MOT_REM2
PRESS_RLS_SENS 51 51 14 14 PRESS_RLS_SENS
DU_SENS 52 52 13 13 DU_SENS
DISP_BOX_DET 53 53 12 12 DISP_BOX_DET
GND 54 54 11 11 GND
CLN_SOL_RET 55 55 10 10 CLN_SOL_RET
CLN_SOL_REM 56 56 9 9 CLN_SOL_REM
REG_SENS_R_S(BK) 57 57 8 8 REG_SENS_R_S(BK)
REG_SENS_R_P(BK) 58 58 7 7 REG_SENS_R_P(BK)
REG_R_LED 59 59 6 6 REG_R_LED
GND 60 60 5 5 GND
REG_SENS_F_S 61 61 4 4 REG_SENS_F_S
REG_SENS_F_P 62 62 3 3 REG_SENS_F_P
REG_F_LED 63 63 2 2 REG_F_LED
GND 64 64 1 1 GND
YC1
YC5
GND 1 1 50 50 GND
M_TEMP 2 2 49 49 M_TEMP
LOOP_SENS 3 3 48 48 LOOP_SENS
GND 4 4 47 47 GND
EDGE_FAN_H 5 5 46 46 EDGE_FAN_H
DU1_MOT_PD 6 6 45 45 DU1_MOT_PD
DU1_MOT_CLK 7 7 44 44 DU1_MOT_CLK
DU1_MOT_REM(CL_H) 8 8 43 43 DU1_MOT_REM(CL_H)
GND 9 9 42 42 GND
EXIT_FAN 10 10 41 41 EXIT_FAN
DU_ENTER_SENS 11 11 40 40 DU_ENTER_SENS
TCON_SET 12 12 39 39 TCON_SET
GND 13 13 38 38 GND
TRANS_MOT_REM 14 14 37 37 TRANS_MOT_REM
TRANS_MOT_CLK 15 15 36 36 TRANS_MOT_CLK
TRANS_MOT_RDY 16 16 35 35 TRANS_MOT_RDY
TRANS_MOT_DIR 17 17 34 34 TRANS_MOT_DIR
TRANS_MOT_BRK 18 18 33 33 TRANS_MOT_BRK
GND 19 19 32 32 GND
DRM_MOT_BK_REM 20 20 31 31 DRM_MOT_BK_REM
DRM_MOT_BK_RDY 21 21 30 30 DRM_MOT_BK_RDY
DRM_MOT_BK_DIR 22 22 29 29 DRM_MOT_BK_DIR
DRM_MOT_BK_BRK 23 23 28 28 DRM_MOT_BK_BRK
GND 24 24 27 27 GND
DLP_MOT_BK_REM 25 25 26 26 DLP_MOT_BK_REM
DLP_MOT_BK_CLK 26 26 25 25 DLP_MOT_BK_CLK
DLP_MOT_BK_RDY 27 27 24 24 DLP_MOT_BK_RDY
DLP_MOT_BK_DIR 28 28 23 23 DLP_MOT_BK_DIR
GND 29 29 22 22 GND
DRM_MOT_CLR_REM 30 30 21 21 DRM_MOT_CLR_REM
DRM_MOT_BK_CLR_CLK 31 31 20 20 DRM_MOT_BK_CLR_CLK
DRM_MOT_CLR_RDY 32 32 19 19 DRM_MOT_CLR_RDY
DRM_MOT_CLR_DIR 33 33 18 18 DRM_MOT_CLR_DIR
GND 34 34 17 17 GND
DLP_MOT_CLR_REM 35 35 16 16 DLP_MOT_CLR_REM
DLP_MOT_CLR_CLK 36 36 15 15 DLP_MOT_CLR_CLK
DLP_MOT_CLR_RDY 37 37 14 14 DLP_MOT_CLR_RDY
DLP_MOT_CLR_DIR 38 38 13 13 DLP_MOT_CLR_DIR
GND 39 39 12 12 GND
REG_MOT_PD 40 40 11 11 REG_MOT_PD
REG_MOT_CLK 41 41 10 10 REG_MOT_CLK
REG_MOT_REM(CL) 42 42 9 9 REG_MOT_REM(CL)
GND 43 43 8 8 GND
IH_PWB_FAN_L 44 44 7 7 IH_PWB_FAN_L
IH_PWB_FAN_H 45 45 6 6 IH_PWB_FAN_H
IH_PWB_FAN_ALM 46 46 5 5 IH_PWB_FAN_ALM
POWER_OFF_24V1 47 47 4 4 POWER_OFF_24V1
DRM_HEAT_REM 48 48 3 3 DRM_HEAT_REM
GND 49 49 2 2 GND
GND 50 50 1 1 GND
YC2
EPWB
Fuser drive unit
YC18
FSR_MOT_BRK 1 1
FSR_MOT_DIR 2 2
FSR_MOT_RDY 3 3
FSR_MOT_CLK 4 4
FSR_MOT_REM 5 5
GND 6 6
24V2 7 7
6 6 CW/CCW
5 5 LD
4 4 CLOCK
3 3 START/STOP
2 2 GND
1 1 +24V
FUM
YC8
NC 1 1
DLP_MOT_BK_DIR 2 2
DLP_MOT_BK_RDY 3 3
DLP_MOT_BK_CLK 4 4
DLP_MOT_BK_REM 5 5
GND 6 6
+24V1 7 7
6 6 CW/CCW
5 5 LD
4 4 CLOCK
3 3 START/STOP
2 2 GND
1 1 +24V
DEVM
YC6
DLP_MOT_CLR_DIR 1
DLP_MOT_CLR_RDY 2
DLP_MOT_CLR_CLK 3
DLP_MOT_CLR_REM 4
GND 5
+24V1 6
YC9
NC 1 1
DRM_MOT_BK_BRK 2 2
DRM_MOT_BK_DIR 3 3
DRM_MOT_BK_RDY 4 4
DRM_MOT_BK_CLK 5 5
DRM_MOT_BK_REM 6 6
GND 7 7
+24V2 8 8
6 6 CW/CCW
5 5 LD
4 4 CLOCK
3 3 START/STOP
2 2 GND
1 1 +24V
DRM
YC7
DRM_MOT_CLR_BRK 1
DRM_MOT_CLR_DIR 2
DRM_MOT_CLR_RDY 3
DRM_MOT_CLR_CLK 4
DRM_MOT_CLR_REM 5
GND 6
+24V1 7
FPWB1
YC10
GND 1
M_TEMP 2
3.3V 3
REG_F_LED 4
GND 5
REG_SENS_F_P 6
REG_SENS_F_S 7
3.3V 8
REG_R_LED 9
GND 10
REG_SENS_R_P 11
REG_SENS_R_S 12
24V 13
CLN_SOL_REM 14
CLN_SOL_RET 15
YC20
JOB_SET 1 1
GND 2 2
GND 3 3
JOB_MOT_REM 4 4
24V1 5 5
JOB_MOT_CLK 6 6
5V 7 7
JOB_MOT_DIR 8 8
JOB_OPEN_SENS 9 9
JOB_SOL_REM 10 10
NC 11 11
Relay
10 1
9 2
8 3
7 4
6 5
5 6
4 7
3 8
2 9
1 10
JSMPWB
YC1
10 10 JOB_SET
9 9 GND
8 8 GND
7 7 JOB_MOT_REM
6 6 24V1
5 5 JOB_MOT_CLK
4 4 5V
3 3 JOB_MOT_DIR
2 2 JOB_OPEN_SENS
1 1 JOB_SOL_REM
YC2
GND 1 1
JOB_OPEN_SENS 2 2
+5V1 3 3
JOB_B/ 4 4
JOB_A/ 5 5
JOB_B 6 6
JOB_A 7 7
+24V1 8 8
JOB_SOL_OUT 9 9
Job separator
3 3 GND
2 2 Vout
1 1 5V
JSES
4 4 B/
3 3 A/
2 2 B
1 1 A
JSEM
2 1 Relay 1 2
COM
ACT
JSFSSOL
YC22
REG_CL_REM 2
24V2 1
YC25
REG_MOT_B/ 1 1
REG_MOT_A/ 2 2
REG_MOT_B 3 3
REG_MOT_A 4 4
4 4 B/
3 3 A/
2 2 B
1 1 A
RM

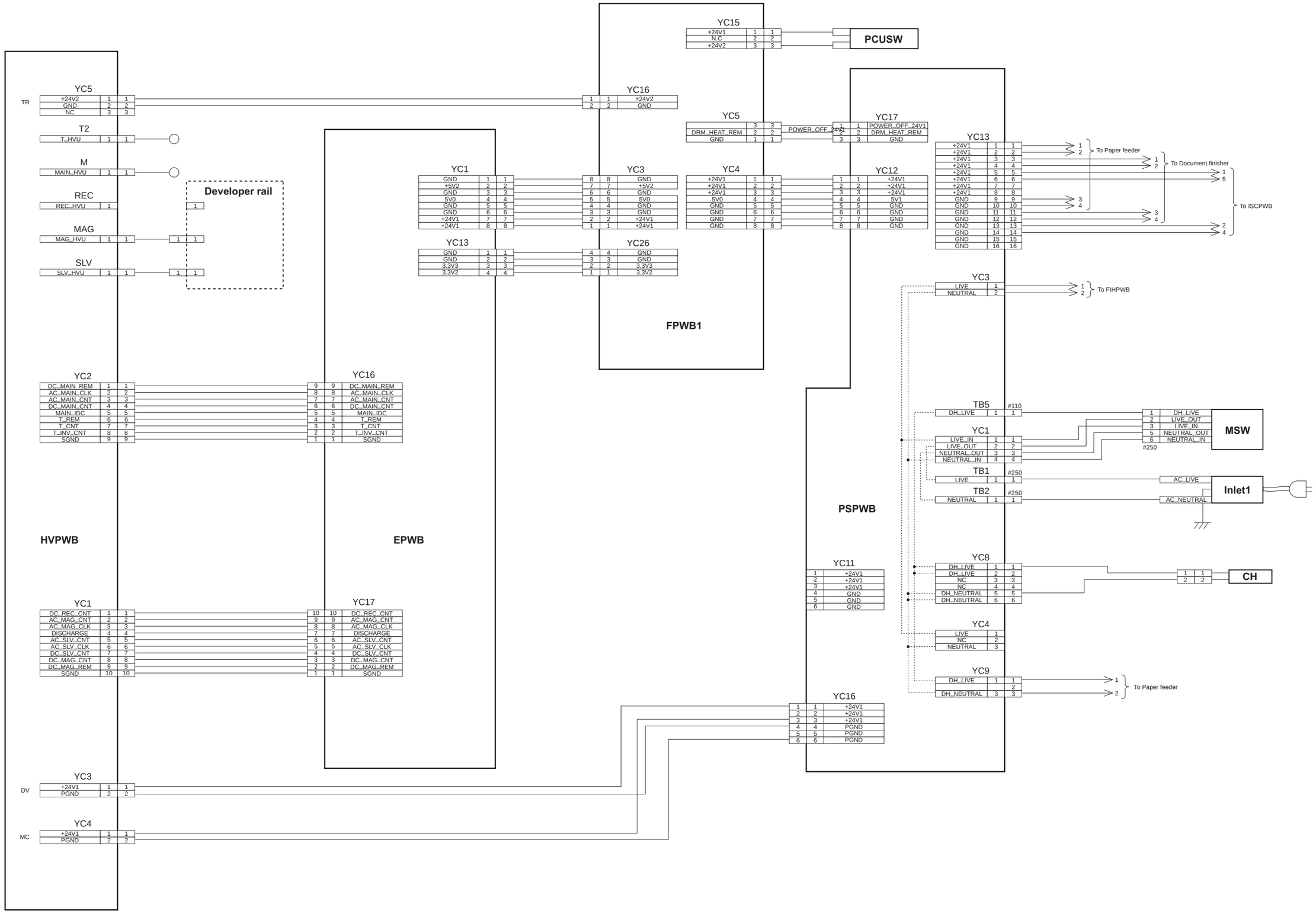
No.6


FPWB1
YC23
3.3V2 12 12
LOOP_SENS 11 11
EDGE_FAN_REM 10 10
DU1_A 9 9
DU1_B 8 8
DU1_A/ 7 7
DU1_B/ 6 6
GND 5 5
DU_CL_UPPER_REM 4 4
24V2 3 3
EXIT_FAN 2 2
DU_ENTER_SENS 1 1
1 C31
2 C32
3 C33
4 C34
5 C35
6 C36
7 C37
8 C38
9 C39
10 C40
11 C41
12 C42
C31 12
C32 11
C33 10
C34 9
C35 8
C36 7
C37 6
C38 5
C39 4
C40 3
C41 2
C42 1
YC13
1 1 3.3V2
2 2 LOOP_SENS
3 3 EDGE_FAN_REM
4 4 DU1_A
5 5 DU1_B
6 6 DU1_A/
7 7 DU1_B/
8 8 GND
9 9 DU_CL_UPPER_REM
10 10 24V2
11 11 EXIT_FAN
12 12 DU_ENTER_SENS
YC17
GND 20 20
GND 19 19
MPF_TABLE 18 18
MPF_WID1 17 17
MPF_WID2 16 16
MPF_WID3 15 15
MPF_LNG 14 14
LED_3.3V3 13 13
MPF_PPR_SET 12 12
MPF_LIFT_UP_SENS 11 11
MPF_LIFT_DOWN_SENS 10 10
MPF_JAM_SENS 9 9
MPF_CL_REM 8 8
24V2 7 7
MPF_LIFT_MOT_A 6 6
MPF_LIFT_MOT_B 5 5
24V2 4 4
CLN_SOL_REM 3 3
GND 2 2
GND 1 1
1 B11
2 B12
3 B13
4 B14
5 B15
6 B16
7 B17
8 B18
9 B19
10 B20
11 B21
12 B22
13 B23
14 B24
15 B25
16 B26
17 B27
18 B28
19 B29
20 B30
B11 20
B12 19
B13 18
B14 17
B15 16
B16 15
B17 14
B18 13
B19 12
B20 11
B21 10
B22 9
B23 8
B24 7
B25 6
B26 5
B27 4
B28 3
B29 2
B30 1
YC12
1 1 GND
2 2 GND
3 3 MPF_TABLE
4 4 MPF_WID1
5 5 MPF_WID2
6 6 MPF_WID3
7 7 MPF_LNG
8 8 LED_3.3V3
9 9 MPF_PPR_SET
10 10 MPF_LIFT_UP_SENS
11 11 MPF_LIFT_DOWN_SENS
12 12 MPF_JAM_SENS
13 13 MPF_CL_REM
14 14 24V2
15 15 MPF_LIFT_MOT_A
16 16 MPF_LIFT_MOT_B
17 17 24V2
18 18 CLN_SOL_REM
19 19 GND
20 20 GND
1 2 Relay 2 1
To toner disposal box
1 2 Relay 2 1
Drawer
Drawer
YC14
GND 18 18
DU2_A 17 17
DU2_B 16 16
DU2_A/ 15 15
DU2_B/ 14 14
DU_OPEN_SW 13 13
DU_CL_LOWER_REM 12 12
DU_FAN 11 11
24V2 10 10
PRESS_MOT_REM2 9 9
PRESS_MOT_REM1 8 8
5V 7 7
PRESS_RLS_SENS 6 6
DU_SENS 5 5
DISP_BOX_DET 4 4
REG_BK_SENS1_S 3 3
REG_BK_SENS1_P 2 2
REG_BK_LED 1 1
1 D43
2 D44
3 D45
4 D46
5 D47
6 D48
7 D49
8 D50
9 D51
10 D52
11 D53
12 D54
13 D55
14 D56
15 D57
16 D58
17 D59
18 D60
D43 18
D44 17
D45 16
D46 15
D47 14
D48 13
D49 12
D50 11
D51 10
D52 9
D53 8
D54 7
D55 6
D56 5
D57 4
D58 3
D59 2
D60 1
YC1
1 1 GND
2 2 DU2_A
3 3 DU2_B
4 4 DU2_A/
5 5 DU2_B/
6 6 DU_OPEN_SW
7 7 DU_CL_LOWER_REM
8 8 DU_FAN
9 9 24V2
10 10 PRESS_MOT_REM2
11 11 PRESS_MOT_REM1
12 12 5V
13 13 PRESS_RLS_SENS
14 14 DU_SENS
15 15 BELT_JAM_SENS
16 16 REG_BK_SENS1_S
17 17 REG_BK_SENS1_P
18 18 REG_BK_LED
YC13
TANK_SET 10 10
+24V2 9 9
GND 8 8
+24V2 7 7
GND 6 6
TRANS_MOT_REM 5 5
TRANS_MOT_CLK 4 4
TRANS_MOT_RDY 3 3
TRANS_MOT_DIR 2 2
TRANS_MOT_BRK 1 1
1 A1
2 A2
3 A3
4 A4
5 A5
6 A6
7 A7
8 A8
9 A9
10 A10
A1 10
A2 9
A3 8
A4 7
A5 6
A6 5
A7 4
A8 3
A9 2
A10 1
YC5
1 1 TANK_SET
2 2 +24V2
3 3 GND
4 4 +24V2
5 5 GND
6 6 TRANS_MOT_REM
7 7 TRANS_MOT_CLK
8 8 TRANS_MOT_RDY
9 9 TRANS_MOT_DIR
10 10 TRANS_MOT_BRK
YC3
MPF_LIFT_DR_B 16 16
MPF_LIFT_DR_A 15 15
24V2 14 14
MPF_CL_REM 13 13
5V 12 12
MPF_JAM_SENS 11 11
GND 10 10
5V 9 9
MPF_LIFT_DOWN_SENS 8 8
GND 7 7
5V 6 6
MPF_LIFT_UP_SENS 5 5
GND 4 4
MPF_PPR_SET 3 3
GND 2 2
LED_3.3V3 1 1
1 16
2 15
3 14
4 13
5 12
6 11
7 10
8 9
9 8
10 7
11 6
12 5
13 4
14 3
15 2
16 1
Relay
1 2 Relay 2 1
1 1 5V
2 2 Vout
3 3 GND
MPFS
1 1 Vout
2 2 GND
3 3 3.3V
MPLS2
MPLS1
MPPS
MP tray
MPLM
MPPFCL
YC2
MPF_TABLE 9 9
GND 8 8
MPF_WID1 7 7
GND 6 6
MPF_WID2 5 5
MPF_WID3 4 4
5V 3 3
MPF_LNG 2 2
GND 1 1
1 9
2 8
3 7
4 6
5 5
6 4
7 3
8 2
9 1
Relay
1 1 Vout
2 2 GND
MPTSW
1 1 WID1
2 2 GND
3 3 WID2
4 4 WID3
MPPWSW
1 1 5V
2 2 Vout
3 3 GND
MPPLSW
YC6
24V2 7 7
GND 6 6
TRANS_MOT_REM 5 5
TRANS_MOT_CLK 4 4
TRANS_MOT_RDY 3 3
TRANS_MOT_DIR 2 2
TRANS_MOT_BRK 1 1
1 1 +24V
2 2 GND
3 3 START/STOP
4 4 CLOCK
5 5 LD
6 6 CW/CCW
TRM
RYPWB
YC16
DU1_B/ 1 1
DU1_A/ 2 2
DU1_B 3 3
DU1_A 4 4
4 4 B/
3 3 A/
2 2 B
1 1 A
DUM1
EDGE_FAN_REM 5 5
24V2 6 6
2 1 Relay 1 2
- FUFM1 +
EDGE_FAN_REM 7 7
24V2 8 8
2 1 Relay 1 2
- FUFM2 +
YC11
GND 1 1
DU_ENTER_SENS 2 2
5V 3 3
3 3 GND
2 2 Vout
1 1 5V
DUS1
EXIT_FAN_REM 4 4
24V2 5 5
2 1 Relay 1 2
- EFM1 +
EXIT_FAN_REM 6 6
24V2 7 7
2 1 Relay 1 2
- EFM2 +
24V2 8 8
DU_CL_UPPER_REM 9 9
YC10
LOOP_SENS 1 1
GND 2 2
5V 3 3
1 1 OUT
2 2 GND
3 3 5V
LPS
3.3V 4 4
REG_BK_LED 5 5
GND 6 6
REG_BK_SENS1_P 7 7
REG_BK_SENS1_S 8 8
5 5 +3.3V
4 4 LED_REF
3 3 GND
2 2 VO_P
1 1 VO_S
IDS
GND 9 9
BELT_JAM_SENS 10 10
5V 11 11
YC14
GND 1
PRESS_RLS_SENS 2
5V 3
PRESS_MOT_REM1 4
PRESS_MOT_REM2 5
NC 6
YC4
24V2 1 1
ID_SOL_REM 2 2
2 1 Relay 1 2
COM CLSOL ACT
YC8
24V2 1 1
DU_FAN_REM 2 2
2 1 Relay 1 2
+ DUFM -
24V2 3 3
DU_FAN_REM 4 4
YC9
GND 1 1
DU_SENS 2 2
5V 3 3
3 3 GND
2 2 Vout
1 1 5V
DUS2
YC7
24V2 1 1
DU_CL2_REM 2 2
DU_OPEN 3 3
GND 4 4
2 2
1 1
DUCSW
DU2_B/ 5 5
DU2_A/ 6 6
DU2_B 7 7
DU2_A 8 8
4 4 B/
3 3 A/
2 2 B
1 1 A
DUM2

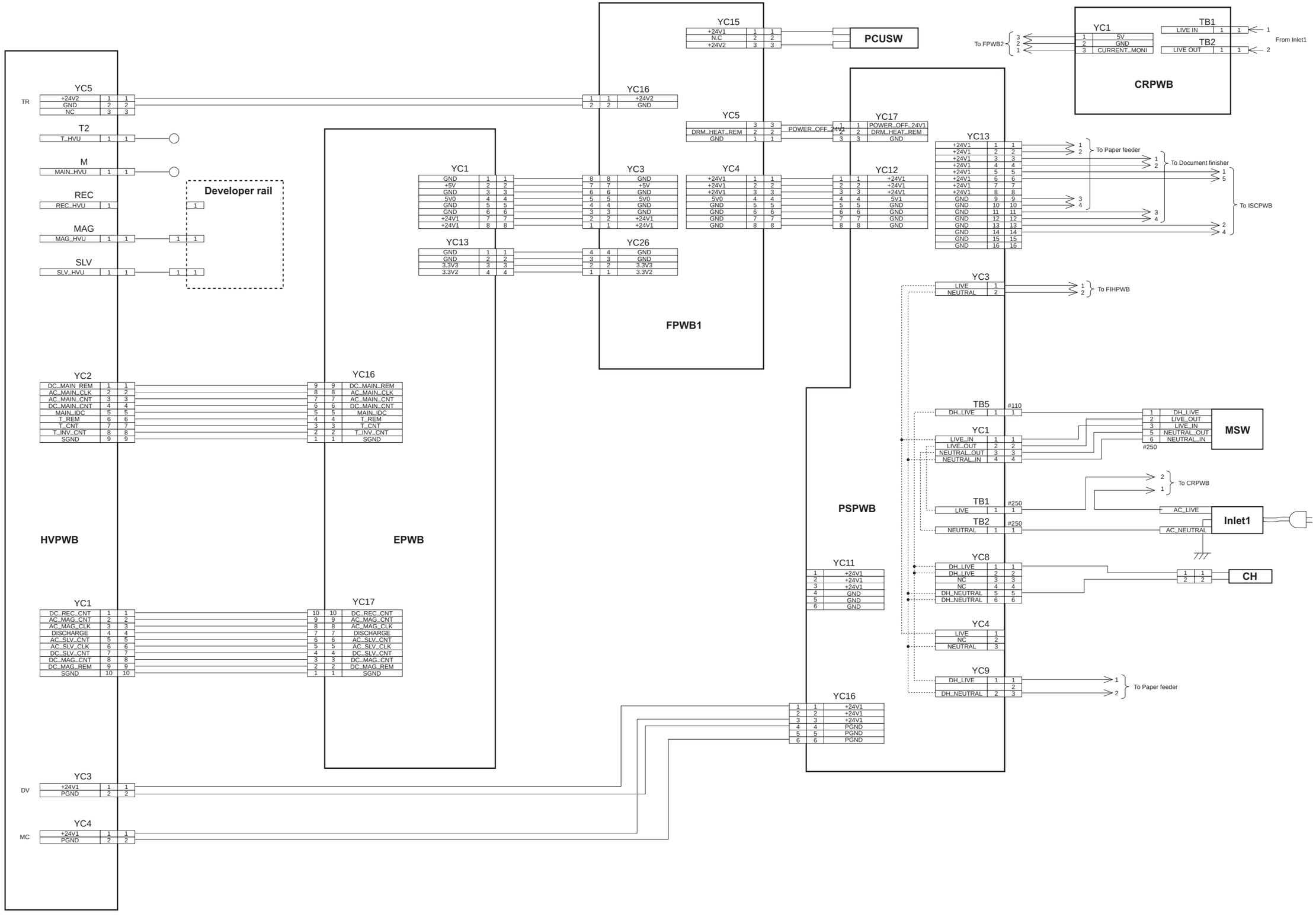
No.7


FPWB1
YC12
+24V2 1 1
+24V2 2 2
+5V 3 3
GND 4 4
GND 5 5
GND 6 6
YC11
6 6 +24V2
5 5 +24V2
4 4 +5V
3 3 GND
2 2 GND
1 1 GND
YC7
MID_B/ 1 1
MID_A/ 2 2
MID_B 3 3
MID_A 4 4
BEND_SENS 5 5
GND 6 6
5V 7 7
GND 8 8
FEED1_SENS 9 9
5V 10 10
GND 11 11
REG_SENS 12 12
5V 13 13
MID_CL_REM 14 14
24V2 15 15
Relay
13 1 2 B/ 4 Relay 1 B/
12 2 3 A/ 3 2 A/
11 3 4 B 2 3 B
10 4 1 4 A
9 5
8 6
7 7
6 8
5 9
4 10
3 11
2 12
1 13
3 3 GND
2 2 Vout
1 1 5V
MM
MS
RS
Middle guide unit
YC5
V-FEED_CL_REM 3 1
24V2 2 2
NC 1 3
3 3
2 2
1 1
PCCL
YC4
GND 1 1
FEED_MOT_REM 2 2
FEED_MOT_CLK 3 3
FEED_MOT_RDY 4 4
FEED_MOT_DIR 5 5
FEED_CL1_REM 6 6
FEED_CL2_REM 7 7
ASIST_CL2 8 8
LIFT_MOT2_REM 9 9
GND 10 10
LIFT_MOT1_REM1 11 11
CAS2_WID 12 12
CAS2_LNG3 13 13
CAS2_LNG2 14 14
CAS2_LNG1 15 15
CAS1_WID 16 16
CAS1_LNG3 17 17
CAS1_LNG2 18 18
CAS1_LNG1 19 19
GND 20 20
CAS2_QUANT2 21 21
CAS2_QUANT1 22 22
CAS1_QUANT2 23 23
CAS1_QUANT1 24 24
LIFT_MOT1_LOCK 25 25
LIFT_MOT2_LOCK 26 26
CURRENT_SIG 27 27
V-FEED_CL 28 28
COVER_OPEN 29 29
FEED2_SENS 30 30
CAS1_P0 31 31
CAS1_LIFT_UP 32 32
GND 33 33
CAS1_EMPTY 34 34
PICK_SOL1_RET 35 35
PICK_SOL1_REM 36 36
CAS2_P0 37 37
CAS2_LIFT_UP 38 38
CAS2_EMPTY 39 39
PICK_SOL2_RET 40 40
PICK_SOL2_REM 41 41
GND 42 42
REG_SENS 43 43
FEED1_SENS 44 44
BEND_SENS 45 45
MID_MOT_PH 46 46
MID_MOT_REM(ROL) 47 47
MID_MOT_CLK 48 48
MID_MOT_PD 49 49
ASIST_CL1 50 50
YC1
1 1 GND
2 2 FEED_MOT_REM
3 3 FEED_MOT_CLK
4 4 FEED_MOT_RDY
5 5 FEED_MOT_DIR
6 6 FEED_CL1_REM
7 7 FEED_CL2_REM
8 8 ASIST_CL2
9 9 LIFT_MOT2_REM
10 10 GND
11 11 LIFT_MOT1_REM1
12 12 CAS2_WID
13 13 CAS2_LNG3
14 14 CAS2_LNG2
15 15 CAS2_LNG1
16 16 CAS1_WID
17 17 CAS1_LNG3
18 18 CAS1_LNG2
19 19 CAS1_LNG1
20 20 GND
21 21 CAS2_QUANT2
22 22 CAS2_QUANT1
23 23 CAS1_QUANT2
24 24 CAS1_QUANT1
25 25 LIFT_MOT1_LOCK
26 26 LIFT_MOT2_LOCK
27 27 CURRENT_SIG
28 28 V-FEED_CL
29 29 COVER_OPEN
30 30 FEED2_SENS
31 31 CAS1_P0
32 32 CAS1_LIFT_UP
33 33 GND
34 34 CAS1_EMPTY
35 35 PICK_SOL1_RET
36 36 PICK_SOL1_REM
37 37 CAS2_P0
38 38 CAS2_LIFT_UP
39 39 CAS2_EMPTY
40 40 PICK_SOL2_RET
41 41 PICK_SOL2_REM
42 42 GND
43 43 REG_SENS
44 44 FEED1_SENS
45 45 BEND_SENS
46 46 MID_MOT_PH
47 47 MID_MOT_REM(ROL)
48 48 MID_MOT_CLK
49 49 MID_MOT_PD
50 50 ASIST_CL1
EPWB
YC8
24V2 1 1
PICK_SOL1_REM 2 2
PICK_SOL1_RET 3 3
LED_5V 4 4
GND 5 5
CAS1_EMPTY_SENS 6 6
LED_5V 7 7
GND 8 8
CAS1_LIFT_UP_SENS 9 9
5V 10 10
CAS1_P0_SENS 11 11
GND 12 12
24V2 13 1
PICK_SOL2_REM 14 2
PICK_SOL2_RET 15 3
LED_5V 16 4
GND 17 5
CAS2_EMPTY_SENS 18 6
LED_5V 19 7
GND 20 8
CAS2_LIFT_UP_SENS 21 9
5V 22 10
CAS2_P0_SENS 23 11
GND 24 12
Connector holder
Relay
12 1 2 3 5V
11 2 2 2 GND
10 3 1 1 Vout
9 4
8 5
7 6
6 7
5 8
4 9
3 10
2 11
1 12
PS1
LS1
FS1
PS2
LS2
FS2
Primary paper feed unit
YC6
LED_5V 1 1
GND 2 2
FEED2_SENS 3 3
COVER_OPEN 4 4
GND 5 5
5 1
4 2
3 3
2 4
1 5
PCS
PCCSW
Lower guide unit
FPWB2
YC13
5V1 3
GND 2
CURRENT_SIG 1
From CRPWB (230V only)
YC2
FEED_MOT_GAIN 1 1
FEED_MOT_DIR 2 2
FEED_MOT_RDY 3 3
FEED_MOT_CLK 4 4
FEED_MOT_REM 5 5
GND 6 6
24V2 7 7
6 6 CW/CCW
5 5 LD
4 4 CLOCK
3 3 START/STOP
2 2 GND
1 1 +24V
PFM
YC10
ASIST_CL1 1 1
24V2 2 2
ASCL1
YC12
ASIST_CL2 1 1
24V2 2 2
ASCL2
YC4
FEED_CL1_REM 1 1
24V2 2 2
FEED_CL2_REM 3 3
24V2 4 4
PFCL1
PFCL2
Paper feed drive unit
YC3
CAS1_LNG1 1
CAS1_LNG2 2
GND 3
CAS1_LNG3 4
CAS1_WID 5
GND 6
CAS2_LNG1 7
CAS2_LNG2 8
GND 9
CAS2_LNG3 10
CAS2_WID 11
GND 12
LIFT_MOT1_- 13
LIFT_MOT1_+ 14
LIFT_MOT2_- 15
LIFT_MOT2_+ 16
LED_5V 17
GND 18
CAS1_QUANT1 19
LED_5V 20
GND 21
CAS1_QUANT2 22
LED_ 5V 23
GND 24
CAS2_QUANT1 25
LED_5V 26
GND 27
CAS2_QUANT2 28
Connector holder
1 1
2 2
3 3
4 4
5 5
6 6
7 7
8 8
9 9
10 10
11 11
12 12
13 13
14 14
15 15
16 16
17 3
18 4
19 5
20 6
21 7
22 8
23 9
24 10
25 11
26 12
27 13
28 14
Relay
6 1 3 3 5V
5 2 2 2 GND
4 3 1 1 Vout
3 4
2 5
1 6
4 4 SW1
3 3 SW2
2 2 COM
1 1 SW3
PLSW1
PWSW1
PLSW2
PWSW2
LM1
LM2
PGS1(U)
PGS1(L)
PGS2(U)
PGS2(L)

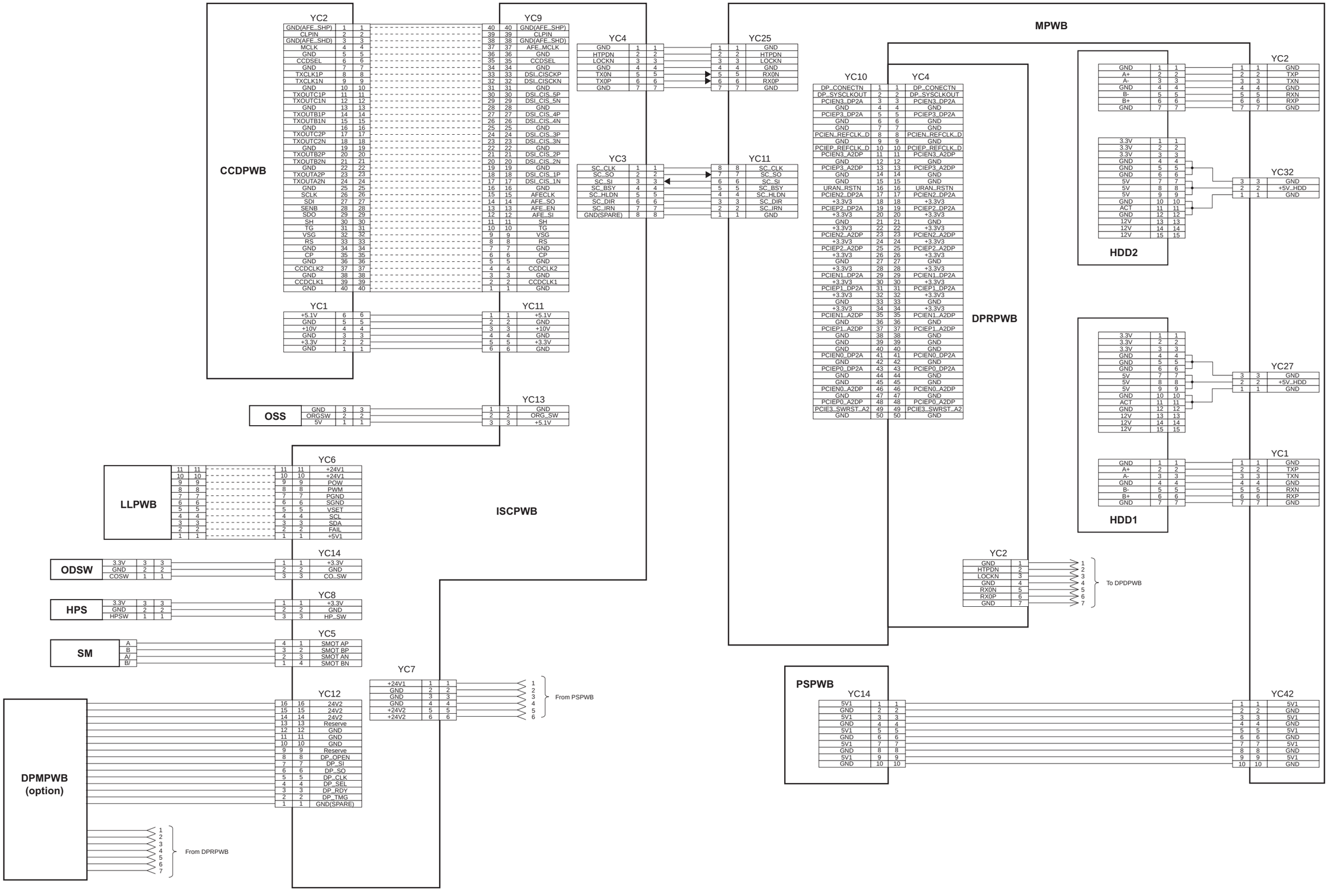
No.8 (120V model)



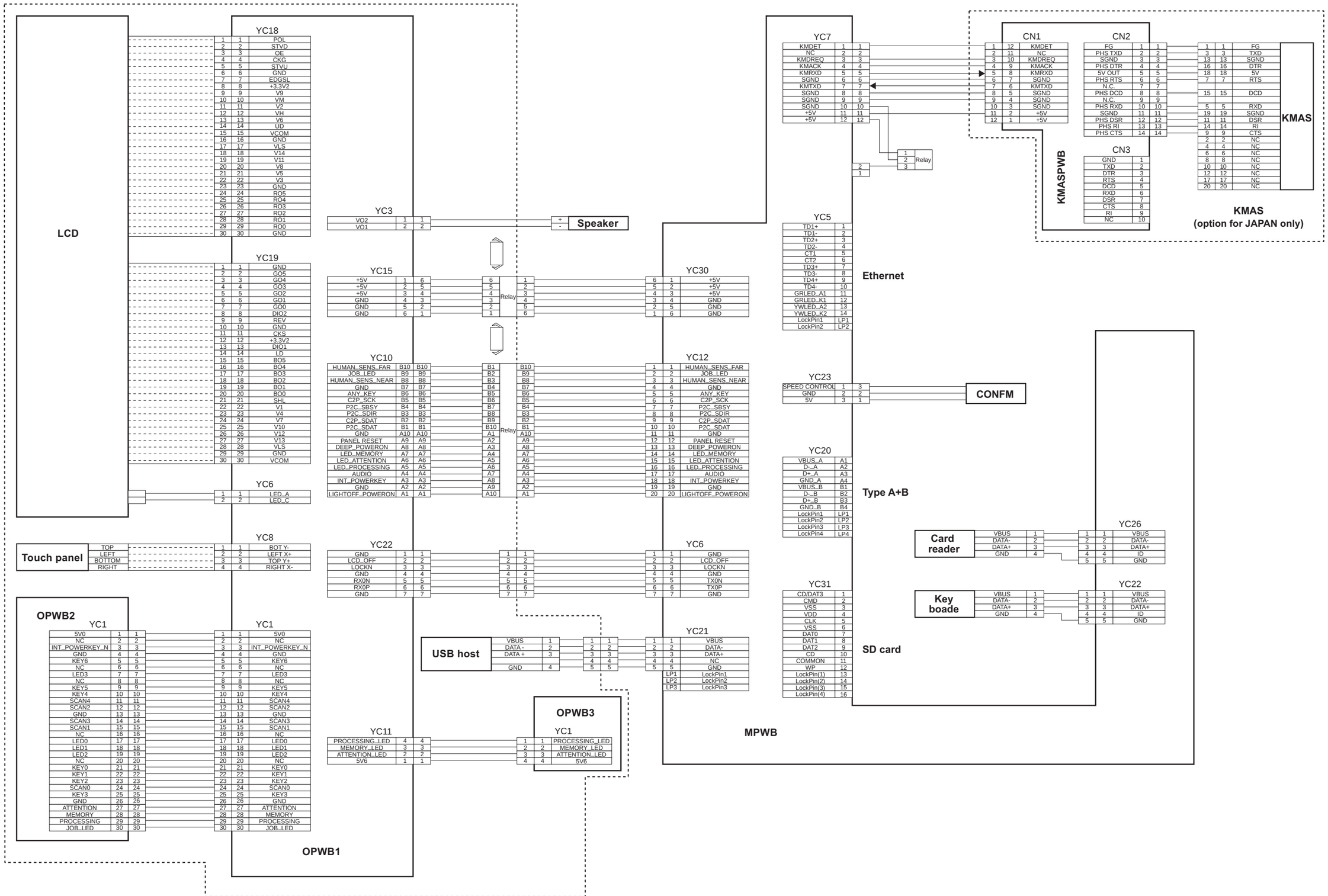
No.8 (230V model)



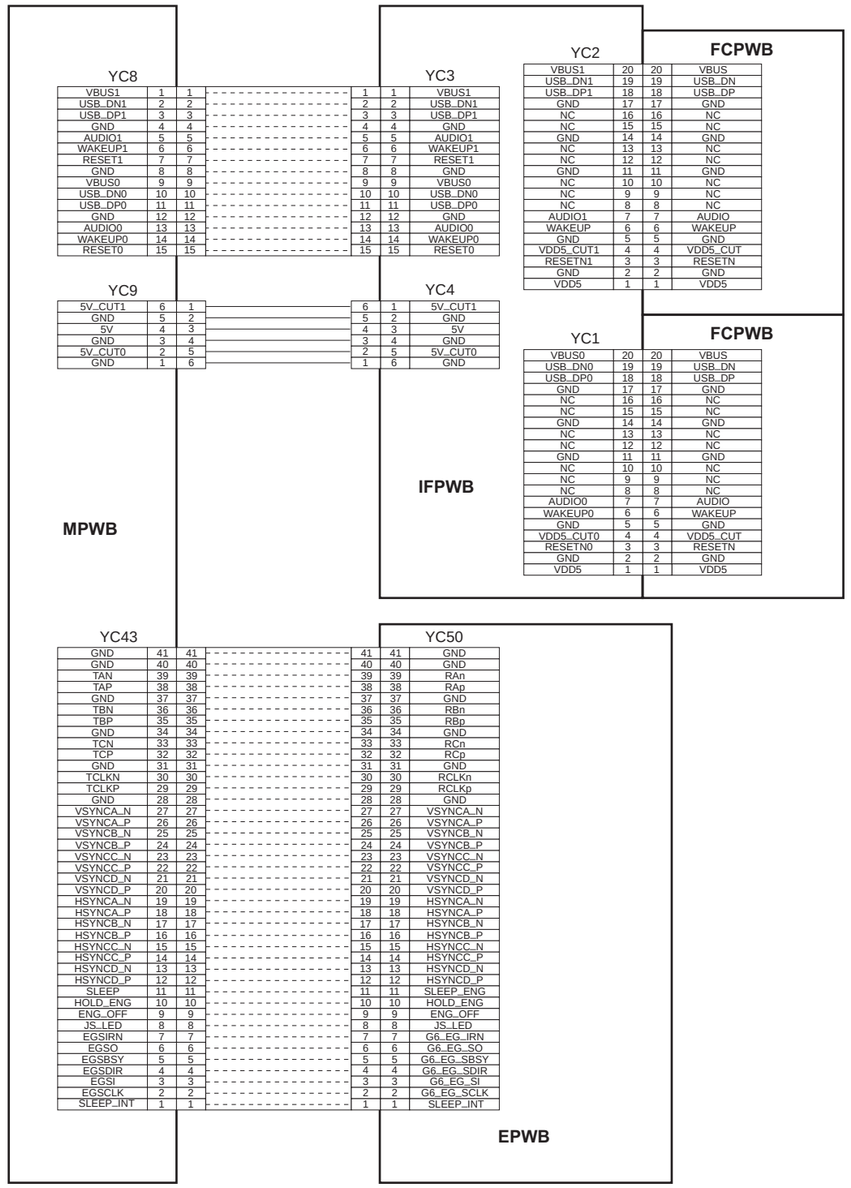
No.9


CCDPWB
YC2
GND(AFE_SHP) 1 1 40 40 GND(AFE_SHP)
CLPIN 2 2 39 39 CLPIN
GND(AFE_SHD) 3 3 38 38 GND(AFE_SHD)
MCLK 4 4 37 37 AFE_MCLK
GND 5 5 36 36 GND
CCDSEL 6 6 35 35 CCDSEL
GND 7 7 34 34 GND
TXCLK1P 8 8 33 33 DSI_CISCKP
TXCLK1N 9 9 32 32 DSI_CISCKN
GND 10 10 31 31 GND
TXOUTC1P 11 11 30 30 DSI_CIS_5P
TXOUTC1N 12 12 29 29 DSI_CIS_5N
GND 13 13 28 28 GND
TXOUTB1P 14 14 27 27 DSI_CIS_4P
TXOUTB1N 15 15 26 26 DSI_CIS_4N
GND 16 16 25 25 GND
TXOUTC2P 17 17 24 24 DSI_CIS_3P
TXOUTC2N 18 18 23 23 DSI_CIS_3N
GND 19 19 22 22 GND
TXOUTB2P 20 20 21 21 DSI_CIS_2P
TXOUTB2N 21 21 20 20 DSI_CIS_2N
GND 22 22 19 19 GND
TXOUTA2P 23 23 18 18 DSI_CIS_1P
TXOUTA2N 24 24 17 17 DSI_CIS_1N
GND 25 25 16 16 GND
SCLK 26 26 15 15 AFECLK
SDI 27 27 14 14 AFE_SO
SENB 28 28 13 13 AFE_EN
SDO 29 29 12 12 AFE_SI
SH 30 30 11 11 SH
TG 31 31 10 10 TG
VSG 32 32 9 9 VSG
RS 33 33 8 8 RS
GND 34 34 7 7 GND
CP 35 35 6 6 CP
GND 36 36 5 5 GND
CCDCLK2 37 37 4 4 CCDCLK2
GND 38 38 3 3 GND
CCDCLK1 39 39 2 2 CCDCLK1
GND 40 40 1 1 GND
YC1
+5.1V 6 6 1 1 +5.1V
GND 5 5 2 2 GND
+10V 4 4 3 3 +10V
GND 3 3 4 4 GND
+3.3V 2 2 5 5 +3.3V
GND 1 1 6 6 GND
YC11
OSS
GND 3 3 1 1 GND
ORGSW 2 2 2 2 ORG_SW
5V 1 1 3 3 +5.1V
YC13
LLPWB
YC6
11 11 11 11 +24V1
10 10 10 10 +24V1
9 9 9 9 POW
8 8 8 8 PWM
7 7 7 7 PGND
6 6 6 6 SGND
5 5 5 5 VSET
4 4 4 4 SCL
3 3 3 3 SDA
2 2 2 2 FAIL
1 1 1 1 +5V1
ISCPWB
ODSW
3.3V 3 3 1 1 +3.3V
GND 2 2 2 2 GND
COSW 1 1 3 3 CO_SW
YC14
HPS
3.3V 3 3 1 1 +3.3V
GND 2 2 2 2 GND
HPSW 1 1 3 3 HP_SW
YC8
SM
A 4 1 SMOT AP
B 3 2 SMOT BP
A/ 2 3 SMOT AN
B/ 1 4 SMOT BN
YC5
YC7
+24V1 1 1
GND 2 2
GND 3 3
GND 4 4
+24V2 5 5
+24V2 6 6
1 2 3 4 5 6
From PSPWB
YC12
16 16 24V2
15 15 24V2
14 14 24V2
13 13 Reserve
12 12 GND
11 11 GND
10 10 GND
9 9 Reserve
8 8 DP_OPEN
7 7 DP_SI
6 6 DP_SO
5 5 DP_CLK
4 4 DP_SEL
3 3 DP_RDY
2 2 DP_TMG
1 1 GND(SPARE)
DPMPWB
(option)
1 2 3 4 5 6 7
From DPRPWB
YC4
GND 1 1
HTPDN 2 2
LOCKN 3 3
GND 4 4
TX0N 5 5
TX0P 6 6
GND 7 7
YC25
YC3
SC_CLK 1 1
SC_SO 2 2
SC_SI 3 3
SC_BSY 4 4
SC_HLDN 5 5
SC_DIR 6 6
SC_IRN 7 7
GND(SPARE) 8 8
YC11
MPWB
YC10
YC4
DP_CONECTN 1 1 DP_CONECTN
DP_SYSCLKOUT 2 2 DP_SYSCLKOUT
PCIEN3_DP2A 3 3 PCIEN3_DP2A
GND 4 4 GND
PCIEP3_DP2A 5 5 PCIEP3_DP2A
GND 6 6 GND
GND 7 7 GND
PCIEN_REFCLK_D 8 8 PCIEN_REFCLK_D
GND 9 9 GND
PCIEP_REFCLK_D 10 10 PCIEP_REFCLK_D
PCIEN3_A2DP 11 11 PCIEN3_A2DP
GND 12 12 GND
PCIEP3_A2DP 13 13 PCIEP3_A2DP
GND 14 14 GND
GND 15 15 GND
URAN_RSTN 16 16 URAN_RSTN
PCIEN2_DP2A 17 17 PCIEN2_DP2A
+3.3V3 18 18 +3.3V3
PCIEP2_DP2A 19 19 PCIEP2_DP2A
+3.3V3 20 20 +3.3V3
GND 21 21 GND
+3.3V3 22 22 +3.3V3
PCIEN2_A2DP 23 23 PCIEN2_A2DP
+3.3V3 24 24 +3.3V3
PCIEP2_A2DP 25 25 PCIEP2_A2DP
+3.3V3 26 26 +3.3V3
GND 27 27 GND
+3.3V3 28 28 +3.3V3
PCIEN1_DP2A 29 29 PCIEN1_DP2A
+3.3V3 30 30 +3.3V3
PCIEP1_DP2A 31 31 PCIEP1_DP2A
+3.3V3 32 32 +3.3V3
GND 33 33 GND
+3.3V3 34 34 +3.3V3
PCIEN1_A2DP 35 35 PCIEN1_A2DP
GND 36 36 GND
PCIEP1_A2DP 37 37 PCIEP1_A2DP
GND 38 38 GND
GND 39 39 GND
GND 40 40 GND
PCIEN0_DP2A 41 41 PCIEN0_DP2A
GND 42 42 GND
PCIEP0_DP2A 43 43 PCIEP0_DP2A
GND 44 44 GND
GND 45 45 GND
PCIEN0_A2DP 46 46 PCIEN0_A2DP
GND 47 47 GND
PCIEP0_A2DP 48 48 PCIEP0_A2DP
PCIE3_SWRST_A2 49 49 PCIE3_SWRST_A2
GND 50 50 GND
DPRPWB
YC2
GND 1 1 GND
A+ 2 2 TXP
A- 3 3 TXN
GND 4 4 GND
B- 5 5 RXN
B+ 6 6 RXP
GND 7 7 GND
YC32
3.3V 1 1
3.3V 2 2
3.3V 3 3
GND 4 4
GND 5 5
GND 6 6
5V 7 7
5V 8 8
5V 9 9
GND 10 10
ACT 11 11
GND 12 12
12V 13 13
12V 14 14
12V 15 15
HDD2
YC27
YC1
HDD1
YC2
GND 1
HTPDN 2
LOCKN 3
GND 4
RX0N 5
RX0P 6
GND 7
1 2 3 4 5 6 7
To DPDPWB
PSPWB
YC14
5V1 1 1
GND 2 2
5V1 3 3
GND 4 4
5V1 5 5
GND 6 6
5V1 7 7
GND 8 8
5V1 9 9
GND 10 10
YC42

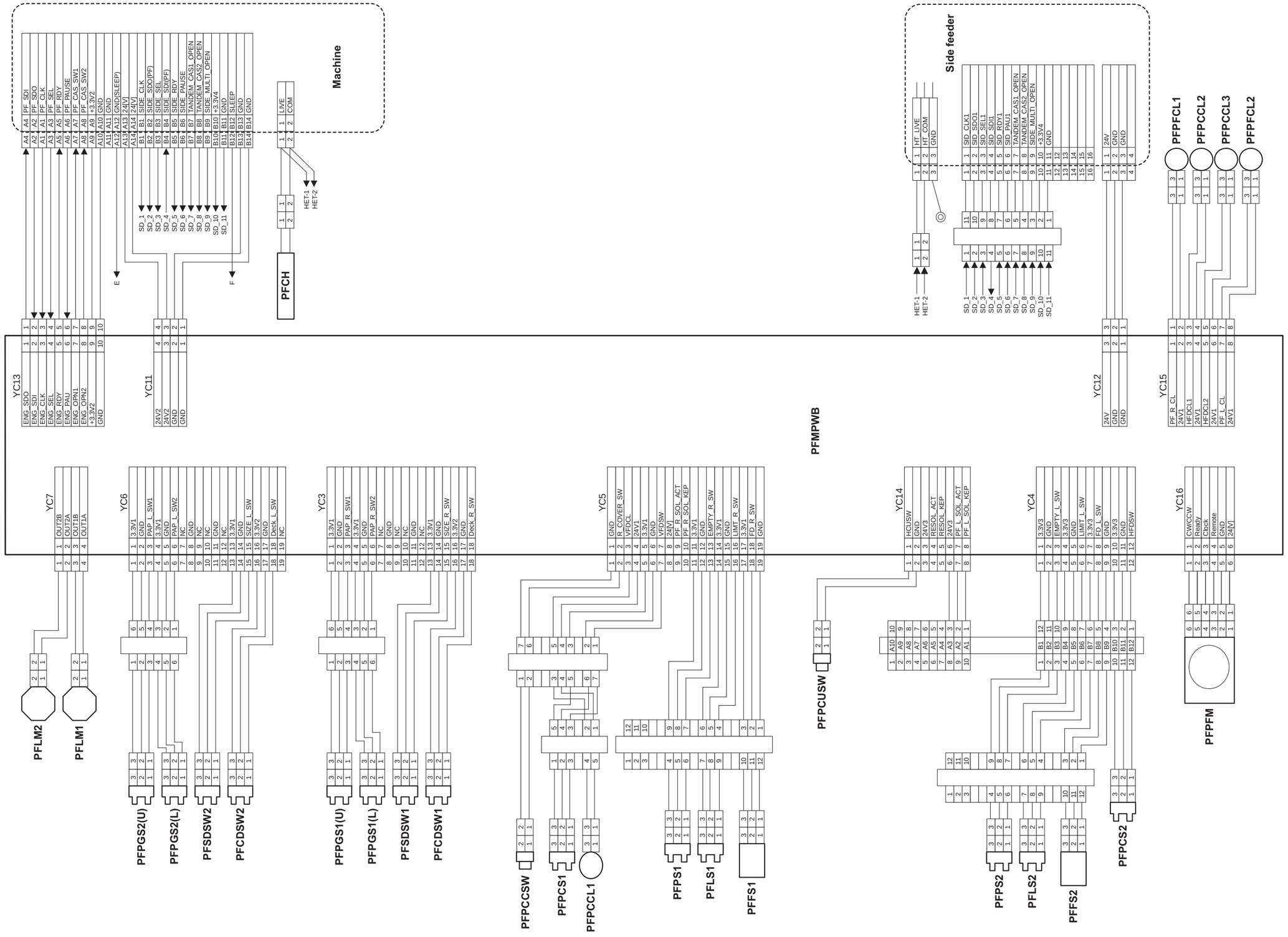
No.10


LCD
YC18
YC19
YC6
Touch panel
TOP
LEFT
BOTTOM
RIGHT
YC8
OPWB2
YC1
YC1
OPWB1
YC3
Speaker
YC15
YC30
YC10
YC12
YC22
YC6
USB host
YC21
YC11
OPWB3
YC1
Relay
YC7
CN1
CN2
CN3
KMASPWB
KMAS
KMAS
(option for JAPAN only)
YC5
Ethernet
YC23
CONFM
YC20
Type A+B
Card reader
Key boade
YC26
YC22
YC31
SD card
MPWB

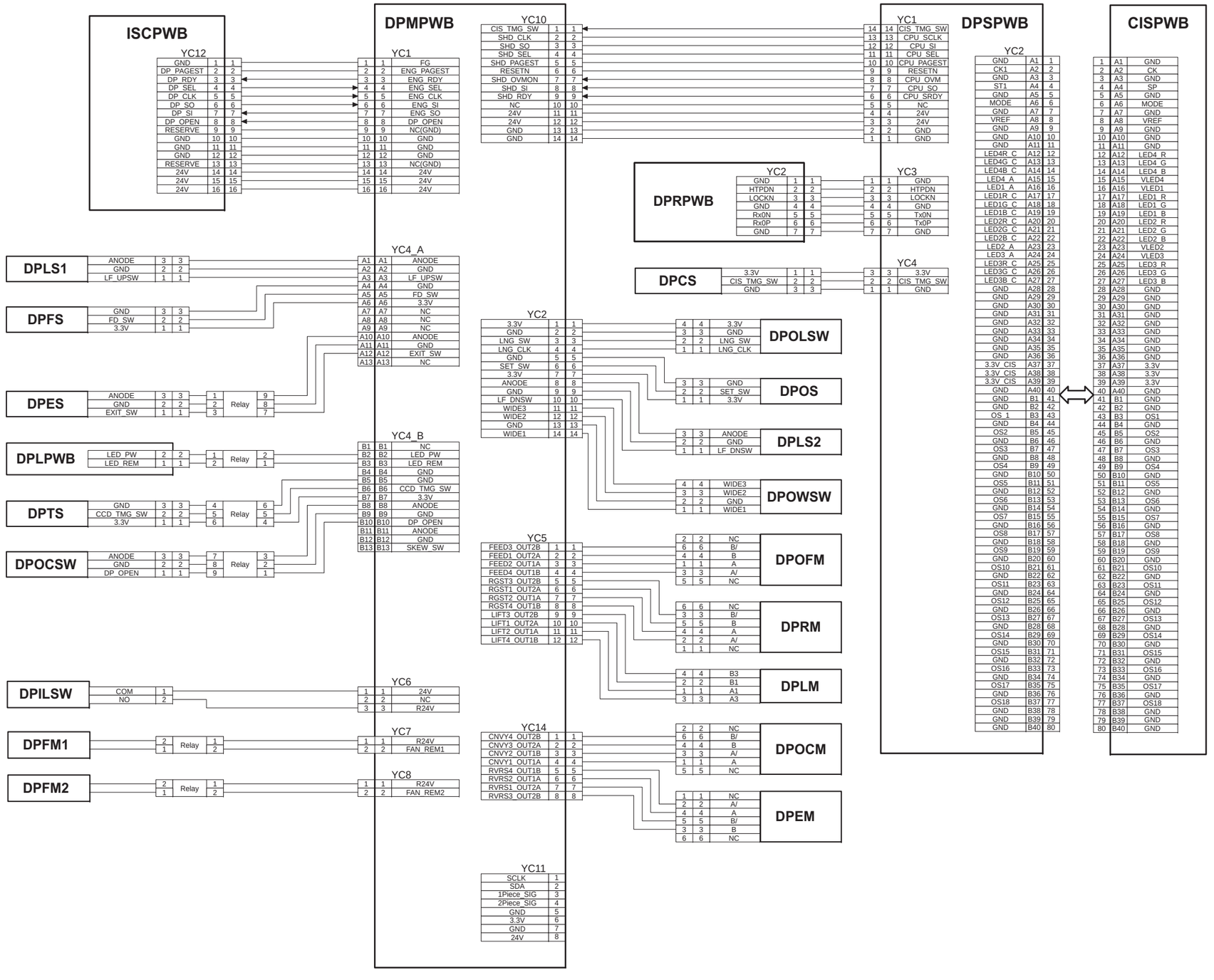
No.11


MPWB
IFPWB
FCPWB
FCPWB
EPWB
YC8
YC3
YC9
YC4
YC2
YC1
YC43
YC50
VBUS1 1 1 1 1 VBUS1
USB_DN1 2 2 2 2 USB_DN1
USB_DP1 3 3 3 3 USB_DP1
GND 4 4 4 4 GND
AUDIO1 5 5 5 5 AUDIO1
WAKEUP1 6 6 6 6 WAKEUP1
RESET1 7 7 7 7 RESET1
GND 8 8 8 8 GND
VBUS0 9 9 9 9 VBUS0
USB_DN0 10 10 10 10 USB_DN0
USB_DP0 11 11 11 11 USB_DP0
GND 12 12 12 12 GND
AUDIO0 13 13 13 13 AUDIO0
WAKEUP0 14 14 14 14 WAKEUP0
RESET0 15 15 15 15 RESET0
5V_CUT1 6 1 6 1 5V_CUT1
GND 5 2 5 2 GND
5V 4 3 4 3 5V
GND 3 4 3 4 GND
5V_CUT0 2 5 2 5 5V_CUT0
GND 1 6 1 6 GND
VBUS1 20 20 VBUS
USB_DN1 19 19 USB_DN
USB_DP1 18 18 USB_DP
GND 17 17 GND
NC 16 16 NC
NC 15 15 NC
GND 14 14 GND
NC 13 13 NC
NC 12 12 NC
GND 11 11 GND
NC 10 10 NC
NC 9 9 NC
NC 8 8 NC
AUDIO1 7 7 AUDIO
WAKEUP 6 6 WAKEUP
GND 5 5 GND
VDD5_CUT1 4 4 VDD5_CUT
RESETN1 3 3 RESETN
GND 2 2 GND
VDD5 1 1 VDD5
VBUS0 20 20 VBUS
USB_DN0 19 19 USB_DN
USB_DP0 18 18 USB_DP
GND 17 17 GND
NC 16 16 NC
NC 15 15 NC
GND 14 14 GND
NC 13 13 NC
NC 12 12 NC
GND 11 11 GND
NC 10 10 NC
NC 9 9 NC
NC 8 8 NC
AUDIO0 7 7 AUDIO
WAKEUP0 6 6 WAKEUP
GND 5 5 GND
VDD5_CUT0 4 4 VDD5_CUT
RESETN0 3 3 RESETN
GND 2 2 GND
VDD5 1 1 VDD5
GND 41 41 41 41 GND
GND 40 40 40 40 GND
TAN 39 39 39 39 RAn
TAP 38 38 38 38 RAp
GND 37 37 37 37 GND
TBN 36 36 36 36 RBn
TBP 35 35 35 35 RBp
GND 34 34 34 34 GND
TCN 33 33 33 33 RCn
TCP 32 32 32 32 RCp
GND 31 31 31 31 GND
TCLKN 30 30 30 30 RCLKn
TCLKP 29 29 29 29 RCLKp
GND 28 28 28 28 GND
VSYNCA_N 27 27 27 27 VSYNCA_N
VSYNCA_P 26 26 26 26 VSYNCA_P
VSYNCB_N 25 25 25 25 VSYNCB_N
VSYNCB_P 24 24 24 24 VSYNCB_P
VSYNCC_N 23 23 23 23 VSYNCC_N
VSYNCC_P 22 22 22 22 VSYNCC_P
VSYNCD_N 21 21 21 21 VSYNCD_N
VSYNCD_P 20 20 20 20 VSYNCD_P
HSYNCA_N 19 19 19 19 HSYNCA_N
HSYNCA_P 18 18 18 18 HSYNCA_P
HSYNCB_N 17 17 17 17 HSYNCB_N
HSYNCB_P 16 16 16 16 HSYNCB_P
HSYNCC_N 15 15 15 15 HSYNCC_N
HSYNCC_P 14 14 14 14 HSYNCC_P
HSYNCD_N 13 13 13 13 HSYNCD_N
HSYNCD_P 12 12 12 12 HSYNCD_P
SLEEP 11 11 11 11 SLEEP_ENG
HOLD_ENG 10 10 10 10 HOLD_ENG
ENG_OFF 9 9 9 9 ENG_OFF
JS_LED 8 8 8 8 JS_LED
EGSIRN 7 7 7 7 G6_EG_IRN
EGSO 6 6 6 6 G6_EG_SO
EGSBSY 5 5 5 5 G6_EG_SBSY
EGSDIR 4 4 4 4 G6_EG_SDIR
EGSI 3 3 3 3 G6_EG_SI
EGSCLK 2 2 2 2 G6_EG_SCLK
SLEEP_INT 1 1 1 1 SLEEP_INT

No.12


Machine
A4 PF_SDI
A2 PF_SDO
A1 PF_CLK
A3 PF_SEL
A5 PF_RDY
A6 PF_PAUSE
A7 PF_CAS_SW1
A8 PF_CAS_SW2
A9 +3.3V2
A10 GND
A11 GND
A12 GND(SLEEP)
A13 24V
A14 24V
B1 SIDE_CLK
B2 SIDE_SDO(PF)
B3 SIDE_SEL
B4 SIDE_SDI(PF)
B5 SIDE_RDY
B6 SIDE_PAUSE
B7 TANDEM_CAS1_OPEN
B8 TANDEM_CAS2_OPEN
B9 SIDE_MULTI_OPEN
B10 +3.3V4
B11 GND
B12 SLEEP
B13 GND
B14 GND
LIVE
COM
HET-1
HET-2
PFCH
SD_1
SD_2
SD_3
SD_4
SD_5
SD_6
SD_7
SD_8
SD_9
SD_10
SD_11
E
F
Side feeder
HT_LIVE
HT_COM
GND
SID_CLK1
SID_SDO1
SID_SEL1
SID_SDI1
SID_RDY1
SID_PAU1
TANDEM_CAS1_OPEN
TANDEM_CAS2_OPEN
SIDE_MULTI_OPEN
+3.3V4
GND
24V
GND
GND
PFPFCL1
PFPCCL2
PFPCCL3
PFPFCL2
YC13
ENG_SDO
ENG_SDI
ENG_CLK
ENG_SEL
ENG_RDY
ENG_PAU
ENG_OPN1
ENG_OPN2
+3.3V2
GND
YC11
24V2
24V2
GND
GND
YC12
24V
GND
GND
YC15
PF_R_CL
24V1
HFDCL1
HFDCL2
24V1
PF_L_CL
24V1
PFMPWB
YC7
OUT2B
OUT2A
OUT1B
OUT1A
YC6
3.3V1
GND
PAP_L_SW1
3.3V1
GND
PAP_L_SW2
NC
GND
NC
NC
GND
NC
3.3V1
GND
SIZE_L_SW
3.3V2
GND
Deck_L_SW
NC
YC3
3.3V1
GND
PAP_R_SW1
3.3V1
GND
PAP_R_SW2
NC
GND
NC
NC
GND
3.3V1
GND
SIZE_R_SW
3.3V2
GND
Deck_R_SW
YC5
GND
R_COVER_SW
VFDCL
24V1
3.3V1
GND
VFDSW
24[V]
PF_R_SOL_ACT
PF_R_SOL_KEP
3.3V1
GND
EMPTY_R_SW
3.3V1
GND
LIMIT_R_SW
3.3V4
FD_R_SW
GND
YC14
HCUSW
GND
24V3
RESOL_ACT
RESOL_KEP
24V3
PF_L_SOL_ACT
PF_L_SOL_KEP
YC4
3.3V3
GND
EMPTY_L_SW
3.3V3
GND
LIMIT_L_SW
3.3V3
FD_L_SW
GND
3.3V3
GND
HFDSW
YC16
CWICCW
Ready
Pos2k
Remote
GND
24[V]
PFLM2
PFLM1
PFPGS2(U)
PFPGS2(L)
PFSDSW2
PFCDSW2
PFPGS1(U)
PFPGS1(L)
PFSDSW1
PFCDSW1
PFPCCSW
PFPCS1
PFPCCL1
PFPS1
PFLS1
PFFS1
PFPCUSW
PFPS2
PFLS2
PFFS2
PFPCS2
PFFFM

No.12


ISCPWB
YC12
GND 1 1
DP_PAGEST 2 2
DP_RDY 3 3
DP_SEL 4 4
DP_CLK 5 5
DP_SO 6 6
DP_SI 7 7
DP_OPEN 8 8
RESERVE 9 9
GND 10 10
GND 11 11
GND 12 12
RESERVE 13 13
24V 14 14
24V 15 15
24V 16 16
DPMPWB
YC1
1 1 FG
2 2 ENG_PAGEST
3 3 ENG_RDY
4 4 ENG_SEL
5 5 ENG_CLK
6 6 ENG_SI
7 7 ENG_SO
8 8 DP_OPEN
9 9 NC(GND)
10 10 GND
11 11 GND
12 12 GND
13 13 NC(GND)
14 14 24V
15 15 24V
16 16 24V
YC10
CIS_TMG_SW 1 1
SHD_CLK 2 2
SHD_SO 3 3
SHD_SEL 4 4
SHD_PAGEST 5 5
RESETN 6 6
SHD_OVMON 7 7
SHD_SI 8 8
SHD_RDY 9 9
NC 10 10
24V 11 11
24V 12 12
GND 13 13
GND 14 14
YC1
14 14 CIS_TMG_SW
13 13 CPU_SCLK
12 12 CPU_SI
11 11 CPU_SEL
10 10 CPU_PAGEST
9 9 RESETN
8 8 CPU_OVM
7 7 CPU_SO
6 6 CPU_SRDY
5 5 NC
4 4 24V
3 3 24V
2 2 GND
1 1 GND
DPSPWB
YC2
GND A1 1
CK1 A2 2
GND A3 3
ST1 A4 4
GND A5 5
MODE A6 6
GND A7 7
VREF A8 8
GND A9 9
GND A10 10
GND A11 11
LED4R_C A12 12
LED4G_C A13 13
LED4B_C A14 14
LED4_A A15 15
LED1_A A16 16
LED1R_C A17 17
LED1G_C A18 18
LED1B_C A19 19
LED2R_C A20 20
LED2G_C A21 21
LED2B_C A22 22
LED2_A A23 23
LED3_A A24 24
LED3R_C A25 25
LED3G_C A26 26
LED3B_C A27 27
GND A28 28
GND A29 29
GND A30 30
GND A31 31
GND A32 32
GND A33 33
GND A34 34
GND A35 35
GND A36 36
3.3V_CIS A37 37
3.3V_CIS A38 38
3.3V_CIS A39 39
GND A40 40
GND B1 41
GND B2 42
OS_1 B3 43
GND B4 44
OS2 B5 45
GND B6 46
OS3 B7 47
GND B8 48
OS4 B9 49
GND B10 50
OS5 B11 51
GND B12 52
OS6 B13 53
GND B14 54
OS7 B15 55
GND B16 56
OS8 B17 57
GND B18 58
OS9 B19 59
GND B20 60
OS10 B21 61
GND B22 62
OS11 B23 63
GND B24 64
OS12 B25 65
GND B26 66
OS13 B27 67
GND B28 68
OS14 B29 69
GND B30 70
OS15 B31 71
GND B32 72
OS16 B33 73
GND B34 74
OS17 B35 75
GND B36 76
OS18 B37 77
GND B38 78
GND B39 79
GND B40 80
CISPWB
1 A1 GND
2 A2 CK
3 A3 GND
4 A4 SP
5 A5 GND
6 A6 MODE
7 A7 GND
8 A8 VREF
9 A9 GND
10 A10 GND
11 A11 GND
12 A12 LED4_R
13 A13 LED4_G
14 A14 LED4_B
15 A15 VLED4
16 A16 VLED1
17 A17 LED1_R
18 A18 LED1_G
19 A19 LED1_B
20 A20 LED2_R
21 A21 LED2_G
22 A22 LED2_B
23 A23 VLED2
24 A24 VLED3
25 A25 LED3_R
26 A26 LED3_G
27 A27 LED3_B
28 A28 GND
29 A29 GND
30 A30 GND
31 A31 GND
32 A32 GND
33 A33 GND
34 A34 GND
35 A35 GND
36 A36 GND
37 A37 3.3V
38 A38 3.3V
39 A39 3.3V
40 A40 GND
41 B1 GND
42 B2 GND
43 B3 OS1
44 B4 GND
45 B5 OS2
46 B6 GND
47 B7 OS3
48 B8 GND
49 B9 OS4
50 B10 GND
51 B11 OS5
52 B12 GND
53 B13 OS6
54 B14 GND
55 B15 OS7
56 B16 GND
57 B17 OS8
58 B18 GND
59 B19 OS9
60 B20 GND
61 B21 OS10
62 B22 GND
63 B23 OS11
64 B24 GND
65 B25 OS12
66 B26 GND
67 B27 OS13
68 B28 GND
69 B29 OS14
70 B30 GND
71 B31 OS15
72 B32 GND
73 B33 OS16
74 B34 GND
75 B35 OS17
76 B36 GND
77 B37 OS18
78 B38 GND
79 B39 GND
80 B40 GND
DPRPWB
YC2
GND 1 1
HTPDN 2 2
LOCKN 3 3
GND 4 4
RxON 5 5
RxOP 6 6
GND 7 7
YC3
1 1 GND
2 2 HTPDN
3 3 LOCKN
4 4 GND
5 5 TxON
6 6 TxOP
7 7 GND
DPCS
3.3V 1 1
CIS_TMG_SW 2 2
GND 3 3
YC4
3 3 3.3V
2 2 CIS_TMG_SW
1 1 GND
DPLS1
ANODE 3 3
GND 2 2
LF_UPSW 1 1
DPFS
GND 3 3
FD_SW 2 2
3.3V 1 1
DPES
ANODE 3 3
GND 2 2
EXIT_SW 1 1
Relay
1 9
2 8
3 7
DPLPWB
LED_PW 2 2
LED_REM 1 1
Relay
1 2
2 1
DPTS
GND 3 3
CCD_TMG_SW 2 2
3.3V 1 1
Relay
4 6
5 5
6 4
DPOCSW
ANODE 3 3
GND 2 2
DP_OPEN 1 1
Relay
7 3
8 2
9 1
YC4_A
A1 A1 ANODE
A2 A2 GND
A3 A3 LF_UPSW
A4 A4 GND
A5 A5 FD_SW
A6 A6 3.3V
A7 A7 NC
A8 A8 NC
A9 A9 NC
A10 A10 ANODE
A11 A11 GND
A12 A12 EXIT_SW
A13 A13 NC
YC4_B
B1 B1 NC
B2 B2 LED_PW
B3 B3 LED_REM
B4 B4 GND
B5 B5 GND
B6 B6 CCD_TMG_SW
B7 B7 3.3V
B8 B8 ANODE
B9 B9 GND
B10 B10 DP_OPEN
B11 B11 ANODE
B12 B12 GND
B13 B13 SKEW_SW
YC2
3.3V 1 1
GND 2 2
LNG_SW 3 3
LNG_CLK 4 4
GND 5 5
SET_SW 6 6
3.3V 7 7
ANODE 8 8
GND 9 9
LF_DNSW 10 10
WIDE3 11 11
WIDE2 12 12
GND 13 13
WIDE1 14 14
DPOLSW
4 4 3.3V
3 3 GND
2 2 LNG_SW
1 1 LNG_CLK
DPOS
3 3 GND
2 2 SET_SW
1 1 3.3V
DPLS2
3 3 ANODE
2 2 GND
1 1 LF_DNSW
DPOWSW
4 4 WIDE3
3 3 WIDE2
2 2 GND
1 1 WIDE1
YC5
FEED3_OUT2B 1 1
FEED1_OUT2A 2 2
FEED2_OUT1A 3 3
FEED4_OUT1B 4 4
RGST3_OUT2B 5 5
RGST1_OUT2A 6 6
RGST2_OUT1A 7 7
RGST4_OUT1B 8 8
LIFT3_OUT2B 9 9
LIFT1_OUT2A 10 10
LIFT2_OUT1A 11 11
LIFT4_OUT1B 12 12
DPOFM
2 2 NC
6 6 B/
4 4 B
1 1 A
3 3 A/
5 5 NC
DPRM
6 6 NC
3 3 B/
5 5 B
4 4 A
2 2 A/
1 1 NC
DPLM
4 4 B3
2 2 B1
1 1 A1
3 3 A3
YC6
COM 1
NO 2
1 1 24V
2 2 NC
3 3 R24V
DPILSW
YC7
2 Relay 1
1 2
1 1 R24V
2 2 FAN_REM1
DPFM1
YC8
2 Relay 1
1 2
1 1 R24V
2 2 FAN_REM2
DPFM2
YC14
CNVY4_OUT2B 1 1
CNVY3_OUT2A 2 2
CNVY2_OUT1B 3 3
CNVY1_OUT1A 4 4
RVRS4_OUT1B 5 5
RVRS2_OUT1A 6 6
RVRS1_OUT2A 7 7
RVRS3_OUT2B 8 8
DPOCM
2 2 NC
6 6 B/
4 4 B
3 3 A/
1 1 A
5 5 NC
DPEM
1 1 NC
2 2 A/
4 4 A
5 5 B/
3 3 B
6 6 NC
YC11
SCLK 1
SDA 2
1Piece_SIG 3
2Piece_SIG 4
GND 5
3.3V 6
GND 7
24V 8

INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR SIDE DECK

INSTALLATION GUIDE

GUIDE D’INSTALLATION

GUÍA DE INSTALACION

INSTALLATIONSANLEITUNG

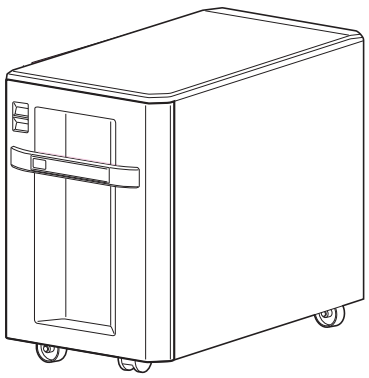
GUIDA ALL’INSTALLAZIONE

安装手册

설치안내서

設置手順書

PF-770



English

References to medium-speed MFPs in this document denote 30/30, 35/35, 45/45 and 55/50 ppm color machines, and 35, 45 and 55 ppm monochrome machines.
References to high-speed MFPs in this document denote 65/65 and 75/70 ppm color machines, and 65 and 80 ppm monochrome machines.

Français

Dans le présent document, les références aux MFP à vitesse moyenne renvoient aux machines couleurs 30/30, 35/35, 45/45 et 55/50 ppm et aux machines monochromes 35, 45 et 55 ppm.
Dans le présent document, les références aux MFP à grande vitesse renvoient aux machines couleurs 65/65 et 75/70 ppm et aux machines monochromes 65 et 80 ppm.

Español

Las referencias a las MFP de velocidad media de este documento corresponden a las máquinas a color de 30/30, 35/35, 45/45 y 55/50 ppm y a las máquinas monocromáticas de 35, 45 y 55 ppm.
Las referencias a las MFP de alta velocidad de este documento corresponden a las máquinas a color de 65/65 y 75/70 ppm y a las máquinas monocromáticas de 65 y 80 ppm.

Deutsch

Angaben für MFP der mittleren Leistungsklasse in dieser Anleitung gelten für die 30/30, 35/35, 45/45 und 55/50 ppm Vollfarbenkopierer sowie für die 35, 45 und 55 ppm Monochrommaschinen.
Angaben für MFP der Hochleistungsklasse in dieser Anleitung gelten für die 65/65 und 75/70 ppm Vollfarbenkopierer sowie für die 65 und 80 ppm Monochrommaschinen.

Italiano

I riferimenti per le MFP a velocità media riportati in questo documento indicano le macchine a colori 30/30, 35/35, 45/45 e 55/50 ppm, e le macchine monocromatiche 35, 45 e 55 ppm.
I riferimenti per le MFP a velocità alta riportati in questo documento indicano le macchine a colori 65/65 e 75/70 ppm, e le macchine monocromatiche 65 e 80 ppm.

简体中文

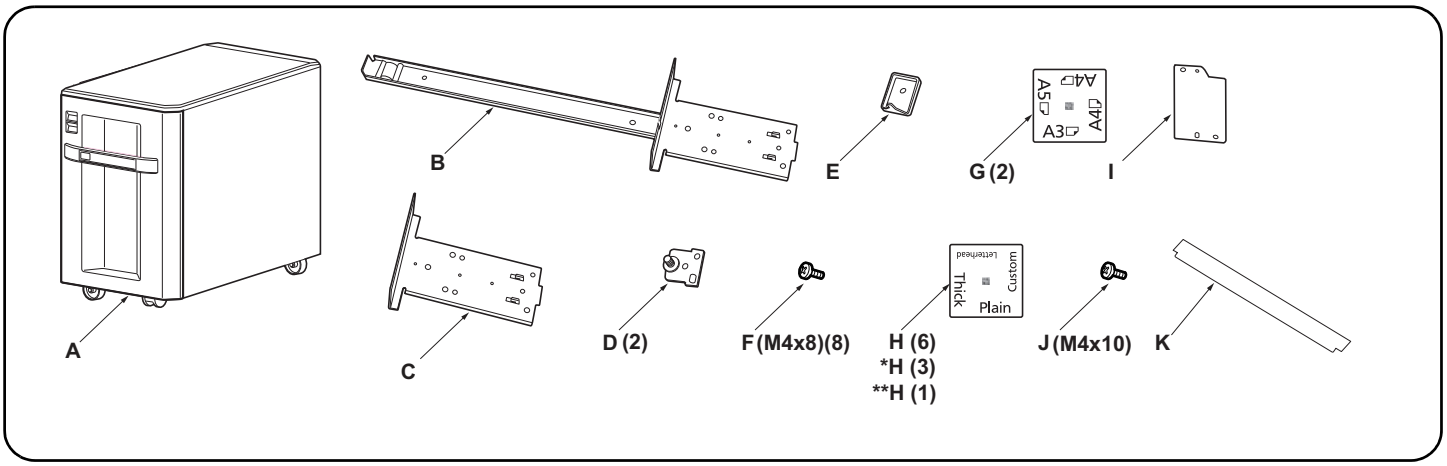
本文中的中速 MFP 代表彩色 30/30 页机型、35/35 页机型、45/45 页机型、55/50 页机型、黑白 35 页机型、45 页机型、55 页机型。
本文中的高速 MFP 代表彩色 65/65 页机型、75/70 页机型、黑白 65 页机型、80 页机型。

한국어

본문 중 중속 MFP 는 컬러 30/30 매기 , 35/35 매기 , 45/45 매기 , 55/50 매기 , 흑백 35 매기 , 45 매기 , 55 매기를 나타냅니다 .
본문 중 고속 MFP 는 컬러 65/65 매기 , 75/70 매기 , 흑백 65 매기 , 80 매기를 나타냅니다 .

日本語

本文中の中速 MFP はカラー機の 30/30 枚機、35/35 枚機、45/45 枚機、55/50 枚機、モノクロ機の 35 枚機、45 枚機、55 枚機を表す。
本文中の高速 MFP はカラー機の 65/65 枚機、75/70 枚機、モノクロ機の 65 枚機、80 枚機を表す。



Supplied parts
- **A.** Side feeder 1
- **B.** Large base slider 1
- **C.** Small base slider 1
- **D.** Lock pin 2
- **E.** Switch press plate 1
- **F.** M4 × 8 screw 8
- **G.** Paper size plate 2
- **H.** Media type plate(except for 120V model) .. 6
- ***H.** Media type plate(120V model only) 3
- **I.** Cover plate 1
- **J.** M4 × 10 tapping screw 1
- **K.** Film 1

Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning material from supplied parts.

Pièces fournies
- **A.** Plateau d'alimentation latéral 1
- **B.** Grande règle de base 1
- **C.** Petite règle de base 1
- **D.** Broche de verrouillage 2
- **E.** Plaque de pression de l'interrupteur 1
- **F.** Vis M4 × 8 8
- **G.** Plaquette du format de papier 2
- **H.** Plaquette du type de support 6
- **I.** Capot 1
- **J.** Vis de connexion M4 × 10 1
- **K.** Film 1

Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.

Partes suministradas
- **A.** Alimentador lateral 1
- **B.** Deslizador de base grande 1
- **C.** Deslizador de base pequeño 1
- **D.** Clavija de bloqueo 2
- **E.** Placa de presión del interruptor 1
- **F.** Tornillo M4 × 8 8
- **G.** Placa de tamaño de papel 2
- **H.** Placa de tipo de medio 6
- **I.** Tapa 1
- **J.** Tornillo de roscado M4 × 10 1
- **K.** Película 1

Asegúrese de despegar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.

Gelieferte Teile
- **A.** Seitlicher Einzug 1
- **B.** Großer Basis-Schieber 1
- **C.** Kleiner Basis-Schieber 1
- **D.** Arretierstift 2
- **E.** Schalterdruckplatte 1
- **F.** M4 × 8 Schraube 8
- **G.** Papierformatkarte 2
- **H.** Medientypkarte 6
- **I.** Abdeckplatte 1
- **J.** M4 × 10 Schneidschraube 1
- **K.** Film 1

Entfernen Sie Klebeband und/oder Dämpfungsmaterial vollständig von den mitgelieferten Teilen.

Parti di fornitura
- **A.** Unità di alimentazione laterale 1
- **B.** Scivolo di base grande 1
- **C.** Scivolo di base piccolo 1
- **D.** Perno di bloccaggio 2
- **E.** Piastra spingi interruttore 1
- **F.** Vite M4 × 8 8
- **G.** Piastra formato carta 2
- **H.** Piastra tipo carta 6
- **I.** Coperchio 1
- **J.** Vite autofilettante M4 × 10 1
- **K.** Pellicola 1

Accertarsi di rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o il materiale di imbottitura dalle parti fornite.

附属品
- A. 侧供纸盒 1
- B. 底座滑板（大） 1
- C. 底座滑板（小） 1
- D. 锁定插销 2
- E. 开关挡板 1
- F. M4×8 螺丝 8
- G. 纸张尺寸标示 2
- **H. 纸张种类标示 1
- I. 盖板 1
- J. M4×10 自攻螺丝 1
- K. 胶片 1

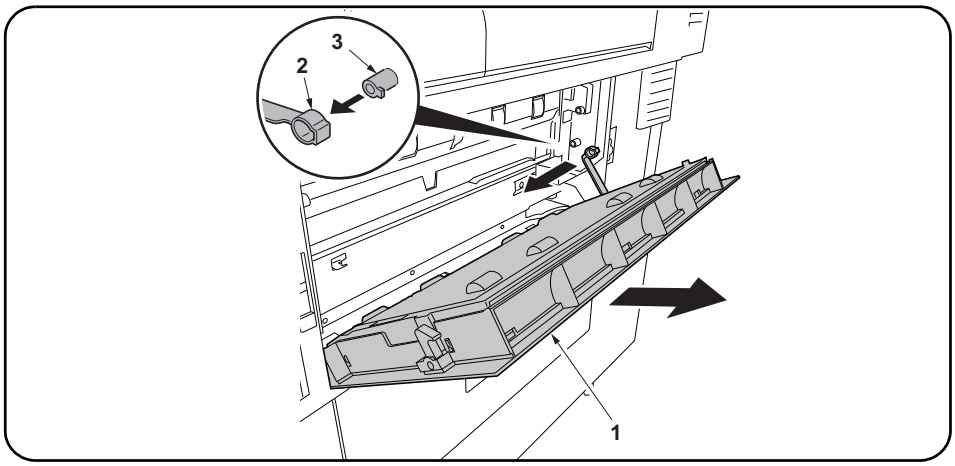
如果附属品上带有固定胶带，缓冲材料时务必揭下。

동봉품
- A. 사이드피더 1
- B. 베이스 슬라이더 대 1
- C. 베이스 슬라이더 소 1
- D. 잠금 핀 2
- E. 스위치 판 1
- F. 나사 M4×8 8
- G. 용지크기 플레이트 2
- **H. 용지종류 플레이트 1
- I. 커버 플레이트 1
- J. 탑핑 나사 M4×10 1
- K. 필름 1

동봉품에 고정 테이프 , 완충재가 붙어 있는 경우에는 반드시 제거할 것 .

同梱品
- A. サイドフィーダー 1
- B. ベーススライダー大 1
- C. ベーススライダー小 1
- D. ロックピン 2
- E. スイッチ当たり板 1
- F. ビス M4×8 8
- G. 用紙サイズプレート 2
- **H. 用紙種類プレート 1
- I. カバープレート 1
- J. タッピングビス M4×10 1
- K. フィルム 1

同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材がついている場合は、必ず取り外すこと。



Procedure
Be sure to turn the MFP main power switch off and disconnect the MFP power plug from the wall outlet before starting to install the side feeder.

Installation on medium-speed MFPs
If installing on a high-speed MFP, proceed to step 10.
1. Open the lower right cover (1) on the MFP.
Remove the strap (2) from the shaft (3) and remove lower right cover (1).

Procédure
Veiller à bien mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP hors tension et à débrancher la fiche d'alimentation du MFP de la prise murale avant de commencer l'installation du plateau d'alimentation latéral.

Montage sur des MFP à vitesse moyenne
Si le montage est fait sur un MFP à grande vitesse, passer à l'étape 10.
1. Ouvrir le couvercle inférieur droit (1) du MFP.
Déposer la courroie (2) de l'arbre (3) et déposer le couvercle inférieur droit (1).

Procedimiento
Asegúrese de apagar el interruptor principal del MFP y de desconectar el enchufe del MFP del receptáculo de pared antes de empezar a instalar el alimentador lateral.

Instalación en las MFP de velocidad media
Si se instala en una MFP de alta velocidad, vaya al paso 10.
1. Abra la cubierta frontal inferior (1) del MFP.
Quite la correa (2) del eje (3) y quite la cubierta frontal inferior (1).

Verfahren
Schalten Sie unbedingt den Hauptschalter des MFP aus, und ziehen Sie den Netzstecker des MFP von der Netzsteckdose ab, bevor Sie mit der Installation des seitlichen Einzugs beginnen.

Installation an MFP der mittleren Leistungsklasse
Gehen Sie zur Installation an einem MFP der Hochleistungsklasse weiter zu Schritt 10.
1. Die untere rechte Abdeckung (1) am MFP öffnen.
Den Riemen (2) von der Welle (3) abnehmen und dann die untere rechte Abdeckung (1) abnehmen.

Procedura
Prima di iniziare la procedura di installazione dell'unità di alimentazione laterale, assicurarsi di spegnere l'interruttore principale di alimentazione dell'MFP, e di scollegare la spina del cavo di alimentazione dalla presa elettrica a muro.

Installazione sulle MFP a velocità media
Se si installa su una MFP a velocità alta, procedere al passo 10.
1. Aprire il coperchio destro inferiore (1) sull'MFP.
Rimuovere la cinghietta (2) dall'asta (3) e quindi rimuovere il coperchio destro inferiore (1).

安装步骤
安装侧供纸盒时，必须先关闭 MFP 主机上的主电源开关，并拔出电源插头后方可进行工作。

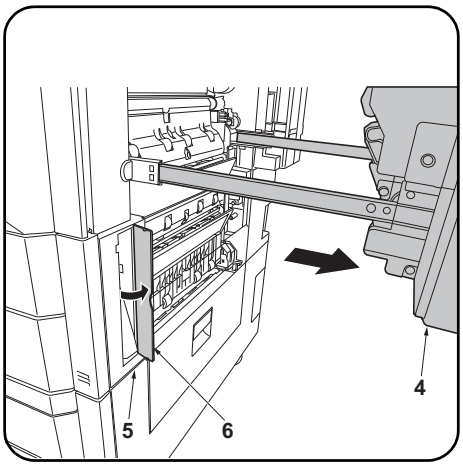
安装于中速 MFP 上时
安装于高速 MFP 上时，进至步骤 10。
1. 打开 MFP 主机的右下部盖板 (1)。
将带子 (2) 从轴 (3) 上拆除，拆下右下部盖板 (1)。

설치순서
사이드피더를 설치할 때에는 반드시 MFP 본체의 주전원 스위치를 OFF 로 하고 전원 프러그를 뺀 후 작업을 할 것 .

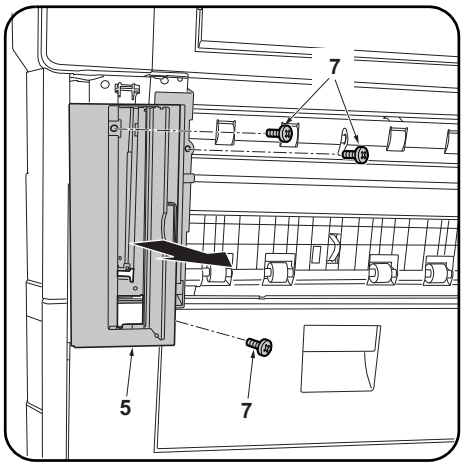
중속 MFP 에 설치하는 경우
고속 MFP 에 설치하는 경우에는 순서 10 로 진행합니다 .
1. MFP 본체의 오른쪽 아래 커버 (1) 를 엽니다 .
스트라프 (2) 를 축 (3) 에서 떼어내 오른쪽 아래 커버 (1) 를 제거합니다 .

取付手順
サイドフィーダーを設置するときは、必ずMFP本体の主電源スイッチをOFFにし、電源プラグを抜いてから作業すること。

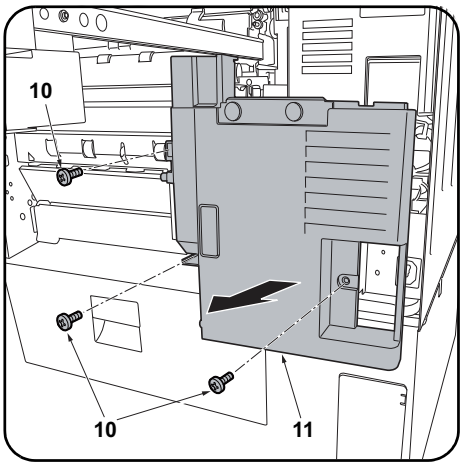
中速 MFP に設置の場合
高速 MFP に設置の場合は手順 10 に進む。
1. MFP 本体の右下カバー(1) を開く。
ストラップ (2) を軸 (3) から外し、右下カバー(1) を取り外す。



2. Open the MFP paper conveying cover (4).
3. Open the panel (6) on the MFP front right cover (5).



4. Remove 3 screws (7) and remove the front right cover (5).



5. Remove 3 screws (10). Remove the lower right rear cover (11).

---

2. Ouvrir le capot du transport du papier du MFP (4).
3. Ouvrir le panneau (6) sur le capot avant droit du MFP (5).

4. Déposer les 3 vis (7) et déposer le capot avant droit (5).

5. Déposer les 3 vis (10). Déposer le capot arrière droit inférieur (11).

---

2. Abra la cubierta de transporte del papel del MFP (4).
3. Abra el panel (6) en la cubierta delantera derecha (5).

4. Quite los 3 tornillos (7) y quite la cubierta delantera derecha (5).

5. Quite los 3 tornillos (10). Quite la cubierta trasera inferior derecha (11).

---

2. Öffnen Sie die Papierförderabdeckung (4) des MFP.
3. Öffnen Sie die Platte (6) der vorderen rechten Abdeckung (5) des MFP.

4. Entfernen Sie 3 Schrauben (7) und nehmen Sie die vordere rechte Abdeckung (5) ab.

5. Entfernen Sie 3 Schrauben (10). Nehmen Sie die untere rechte hintere Abdeckung (11) ab.

---

2. Aprire il coperchio (4) dell'unità di trasporto carta dell'MFP.
3. Aprire il pannello (6) sul coperchio destro anteriore (5) dell'MFP.

4. Rimuovere le 3 viti (7), e quindi rimuovere il coperchio destro posteriore (5).

5. Rimuovere le 3 viti (10). Rimuovere il coperchio posteriore inferiore destro (11).

---

2. 打开 MFP 主机的供纸盖板 (4)。
3. 打开 MFP 主机的右前部盖板 (5) 的盖子 (6)。

4. 拆除 3 颗螺丝 (7)，拆下右前部盖板 (5)。

5. 拆除 3 颗螺丝 (10)。 拆下右下后部盖板 (11)。

---

2. MFP 본체의 반송커버 (4) 를 엽니다 .
3. MFP 본체의 우측 전면커버 (5) 의 뚜껑 (6) 을 엽니다 .

4. 나사 (7) 3 개를 제거하고 우측 전면커버 (5) 를 떼어 냅니다 .

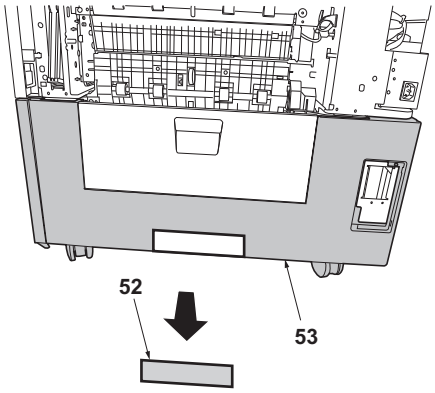
5. 나사 (10) 3 개를 제거합니다 . 우측 하단 뒷커버 (11) 를 제거합니다 .

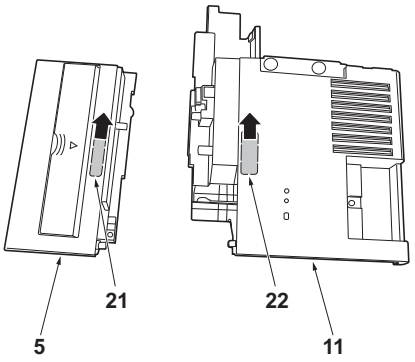
---

2. MFP 本体の搬送カバー(4) を開く。
3. MFP 本体の右前カバー(5) のふた (6) を開く。

4. ビス (7)3 本を外し、右前カバー(5) を取り外す。

5. ビス (10)3 本を外す。右下後カバー(11) を取り外す。





6. Remove the breakaway cover (52) from the paper feeder lower right cover (53).

7. Remove the breakaway cover (21) from the front right cover (5) and the breakaway cover (22) from the lower right rear cover (11).

---

6. Retirez le capot détachable (52) du capot inférieur droit du chargeur de papier (53).

7. Déposer le couvercle amovible (21) du capot avant droit (5) et le couvercle amovible (22) du capot arrière inférieur droit (11).

---

6. Quite la cubierta de separación (52) de la cubierta inferior derecha del depósito de papel (53).

7. Quite la cubierta divisoria (21) de la cubierta delantera derecha (5) y la cubierta divisoria (22) de la cubierta trasera inferior derecha (11).

---

6. Nehmen Sie die Ablösungsabdeckung (52) von der untere rechte Abdeckung (53) des Papiereinzugs ab.

7. Nehmen Sie die Ablösungsabdeckung (21) von der vorderen rechten Abdeckung (5) ab und die Ablösungsabdeckung (22) von der unteren rechten hinteren Abdeckung (11).

---

6. Rimuovere il coperchio di distacco (52) dal coperchio destro inferiore (53) dell'unità di alimentazione carta.

7. Rimuovere il coperchio di distacco (21) dal coperchio destro anteriore (5), e il coperchio di distacco (22) dal coperchio posteriore inferiore destro (11).

---

6. 去除供纸盒的右下部盖板（53）上的可去除部（52）。

7. 切除右前部盖板（5）的切割盖板（21）和右下后部盖板（11）的切割盖板（22）。

---

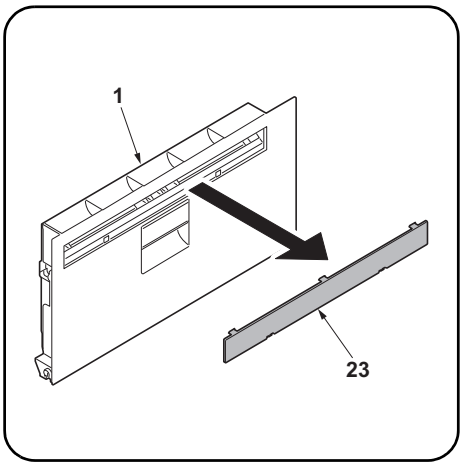
6. 용지 급지대의 우측 하단커버 (53) 의 분할커버부 (52) 를 떼어 냅니다 .

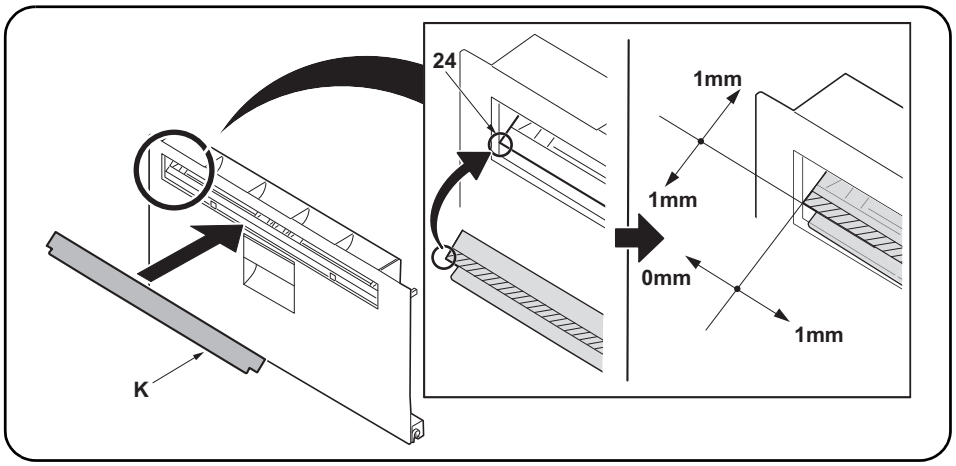
7. 우측 전면커버 (5) 의 분할커버 (21) 와 오른쪽 하단 뒷커버 (11) 의 분할커버 (22) 를 떼어 냅니다 .

---

6. ペーパーフィーダーの右下カバー（53）の割りカバー部（52）を切り取る。

7. 右前カバー(5) の割りカバー(21) と右下後カバー(11) の割りカバー(22) を切り取る。





8. Remove the panel (23) from the MFP lower right cover (1) with a flat blade screwdriver.

9. After using alcohol to clean place adhering the film, adhere the film (K) in the position (24) indicated in the illustration.
Proceed to step 21

---

8. Déposer le panneau (23) du capot inférieur droit du MFP (1) en procédant à l'aide d'un tournevis à lame.

9. Coller le film (K) sur l'emplacement (24) indiqué dans l'illustration, après avoir soigneusement nettoyé cet emplacement à l'alcool.
Passer à l'étape 21.

---

8. Extraiga el panel (23) de la cubierta derecha inferior del MFP (1) con un destornillador de pala plana.

9. Después de utilizar alcohol para limpiar la zona donde se va a pegar la película, pegue la película (K) en el lugar (24) que se indica en la ilustración.
Vaya al paso 21.

---

8. Nehmen Sie mit einem flachen Schraubendreher die Platte (23) von der unteren rechten Abdeckung (1) des MFP ab.

9. Zum Anbringen des Films (K) die Stelle zuvor mit Alkohol reinigen und den Film (K) dann in der in der Abbildung angegebenen Position (24) anbringen.
Gehen Sie weiter zu Schritt 21.

---

8. Rimuovere il pannello (23) dal coperchio destro inferiore (1) dell'MFP con un cacciavite a testa piana.

9. Dopo aver utilizzato alcol per pulire la piastra che aderisce alla pellicola, far aderire la pellicola (K) nella posizione (24) indicata nell'illustrazione.
Procedere al passo 21.

---

8. 使用一字螺丝刀将 MFP 主机的右下部盖板 (1) 的盖子 (23) 拆下。

9. 使用酒精对薄膜粘贴位置进行清洁后，按插图位置 (24) 粘贴薄膜 (K)。
进至步骤 21。

---

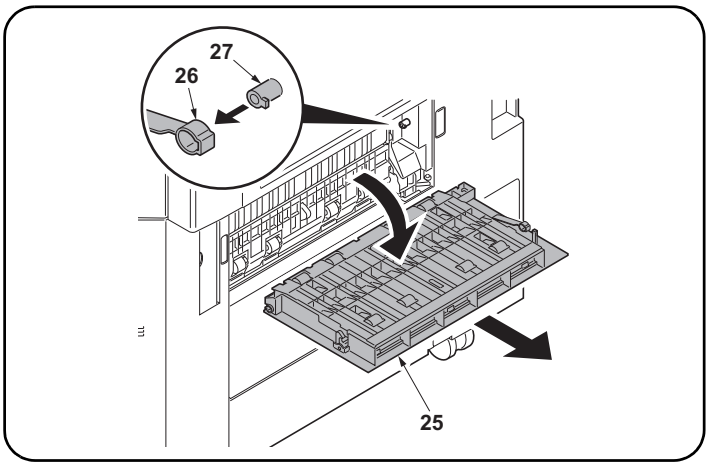
8. MFP 본체의 우측 뒷커버 (1) 의 뚜껑 (23) 을 마이너스 드라이버로 제거합니다 .

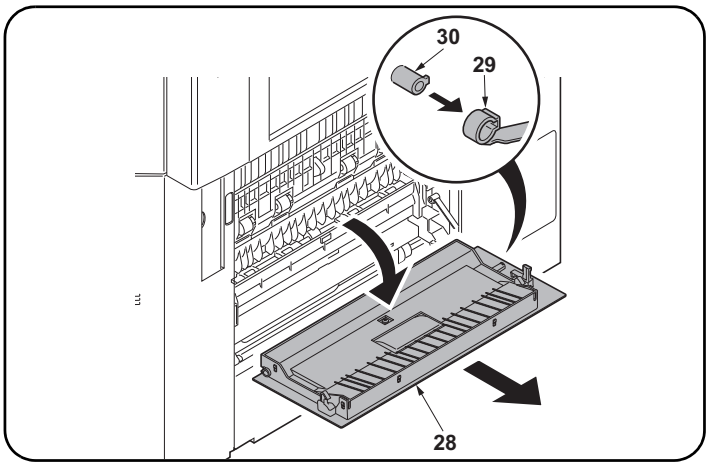
9. 필름 부착위치를 알코올 청소 후 , 일러스트의 위치 (24) 에 맞춰 필름 (K) 을 부착합니다 .
순서 21 로 진행합니다 .

---

8. MFP 本体の右下カバー(1) のふた (23) をマイナスドライバーで取り外す。

9. フィルム貼り付け位置をアルコール清掃後、イラストの位置 (24) にあわせて、フィルム(K)を貼り付ける。
手順 21 に進む。





Installation on high-speed MFPs

10. Open the right cover 1 (25) on the MFP.
Remove the strap (26) from the shaft (27) and remove right cover 1 (25).

11. Open the right cover 2 (28) on the MFP.
Remove the strap (29) from the right cover shaft (30) and remove the right cover 2 (28).

Montage sur des MFP à grande vitesse

10. Ouvrir le capot droit 1 (25) du MFP.
Déposer la courroie (26) de l'arbre (27) et déposer le capot droit 1 (25).

11. Ouvrir le capot droit 2 (28) du MFP.
Déposer la courroie (29) de l'axe du capot droit (30) et déposer le capot droit 2 (28).

Instalación en las MFP de alta velocidad

10. Abra la cubierta derecha 1 (25) del MFP.
Quite la correa (26) del eje (27) y quite la cubierta derecha 1 (25).

11. Abra la cubierta derecha 2 (28) del MFP.
Quite la correa (29) del eje de la cubierta derecha (30) y quite la cubierta derecha 2 (28).

Installation an MFP der Hochleistungsklasse

10. Die rechte Abdeckung 1 (25) am MFP öffnen.
Den Riemen (26) von der Welle (27) abnehmen und dann die rechte Abdeckung 1 (25) abnehmen.

11. Die rechte Abdeckung 2 (28) am MFP öffnen.
Nehmen Sie den Riemen (29) von der Welle (30) der rechten Abdeckung und dann die rechte Abdeckung 2 (28) ab.

Installazione sulle MFP a velocità alta

10. Aprire il coperchio destro 1 (25) sull'MFP.
Rimuovere la cinghietta (26) dall'asta (27) e quindi rimuovere il coperchio destro 1 (25).

11. Aprire il coperchio destro 2 (28) sull'MFP.
Rimuovere la cinghietta (29) dall'asta (30) del coperchio destro e quindi rimuovere il coperchio destro 2 (28).

安装于高速 MFP 上时

10. 打开 MFP 主机的右部盖板 1(25)。
将带子 (26) 从轴 (27) 上拆除，拆下右部盖板 1(25)。

11. 打开 MFP 主机的右部盖板 2(28)。
从右盖板的轴 (30) 上拆除挂绳 (29)，拆下右盖板 2(28)。

고속 MFP 에 설치하는 경우

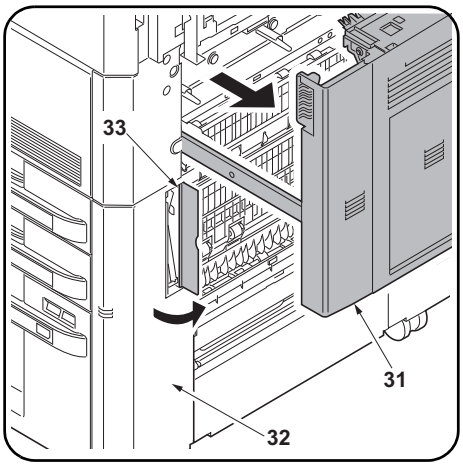
10. MFP 본체의 우측커버 1 (25) 를 엽니다 .
스트라프 (26) 를 축 (27) 에서 떼어내 우측커버 1 (25) 를 제거합니다 .

11. MFP 본체의 우측커버 2 (28) 를 엽니다 .
스트랩 (29) 을 우측커버의 축 (30) 에서 떼어내고 우측커버 2 (28) 를 제거합니다 .

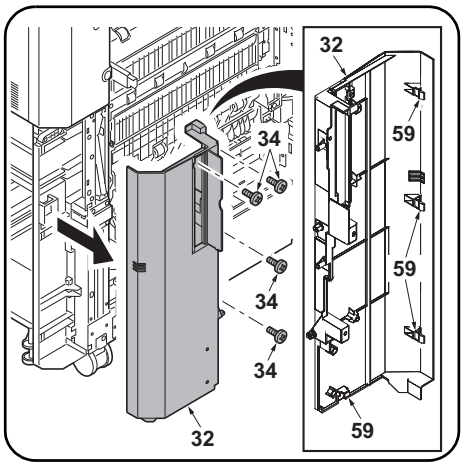
高速 MFP に設置の場合

10. MFP 本体の右カバー1(25) を開く。
ストラップ (26) を軸 (27) から外し、右カバー1(25) を取り外す。

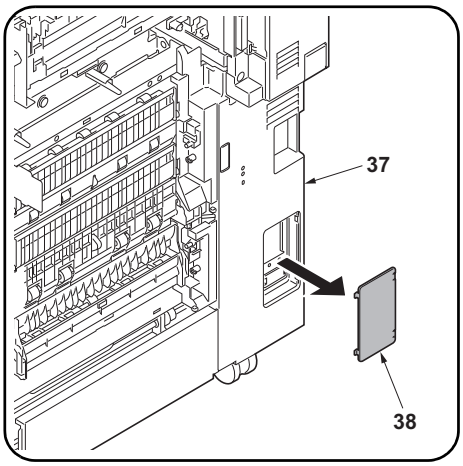
11. MFP 本体の右カバー2(28) を開く。
ストラップ (29) を右カバーの軸 (30) から外し、右カバー2(28) を取り外す。



12. Open the MFP paper conveying cover (31).
13. Open the panel (33) on the MFP front right cover (32).



14. Remove the 4 screws (34) and release the 4 hooks (59). Then remove the front right cover (32).



15. Remove the panel (38) from the lower right rear cover (37) with a flat blade screwdriver.

---

12. Ouvrir le capot du transport du papier du MFP (31).
13. Ouvrir le panneau (33) sur le capot avant droit du MFP (32).

14. Retirer les 4 vis (34) et libérer les 4 crochets (59). Retirer ensuite le capot avant droit (32).

15. Déposer le panneau (38) du capot arrière inférieur droit (37) en procédant à l'aide d'un tournevis à lame.

---

12. Abra la cubierta de transporte del papel del MFP (31).
13. Abra el panel (33) en la cubierta delantera derecha (32).

14. Quite los 4 tornillos (34) y libere los 4 ganchos (59). Después, quite la cubierta frontal derecha (32).

15. Extraiga el panel (38) de la cubierta trasera inferior derecha (37) con un destornillador de pala plana.

---

12. Öffnen Sie die Papierförderabdeckung (31) des MFP.
13. Öffnen Sie die Platte (33) der vorderen rechten Abdeckung (32) des MFP.

14. Entfernen Sie die 4 Schrauben (34) und lösen Sie die 4 Haken (59). Danach nehmen Sie die rechte vordere Abdeckung (32) ab.

15. Nehmen Sie mit einem flachen Schraubendreher die Platte (38) von der unteren rechten hinteren Abdeckung (37) ab.

---

12. Aprire il coperchio (31) dell'unità di trasporto carta dell'MFP.
13. Aprire il pannello (33) sul coperchio destro anteriore (32) dell'MFP.

14. Rimuovere le 4 viti (34) e rilasciare i 4 ganci (59). Rimuovere quindi il coperchio anteriore destro (32).

15. Rimuovere il pannello (38) dal coperchio posteriore inferiore destro (37) con un cacciavite a testa piana.

---

12. 打开 MFP 主机的供纸盖板 (31)。
13. 打开 MFP 主机的右前部盖板 (32) 的盖子 (33)。

14. 卸下 4 颗螺丝（34）并松开 4 个卡扣（59）。然后卸下右前盖板（32）。

15. 用一字螺丝刀等取下右下盖板（37）的盖子（38）。

---

12. MFP 본체의 반송커버 (31) 를 엽니다 .
13. MFP 본체의 우측 전면커버 (32) 의 뚜껑 (33) 을 엽니다 .

14. 나사 (34) 4 개를 제거하고 후크 (59) 4 개를 풉니다 . 그런 다음 우측 전면 커버 (32) 를 제거합니다 .

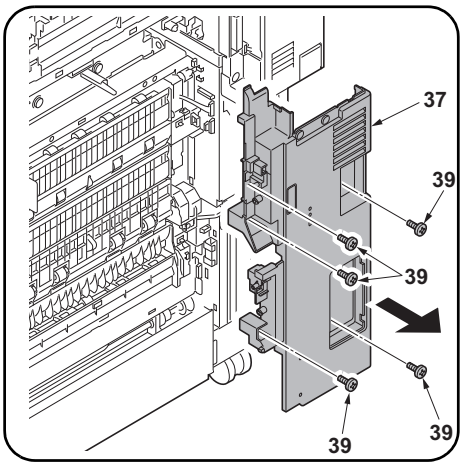
15. 우측 아래뒷면 커버 (37) 의 뚜껑 (38) 을 마이너스 드라이버 등으로 풉니다 .

---

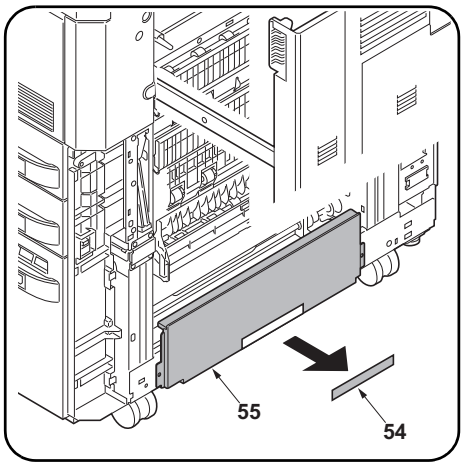
12. MFP 本体の搬送カバー(31) を開く。
13. MFP 本体の右前カバー(32) のふた (33) を開く。

14. ビス (34)4 本およびフック (59)4 箇所を外し、右前カバー(32) を取り外す。

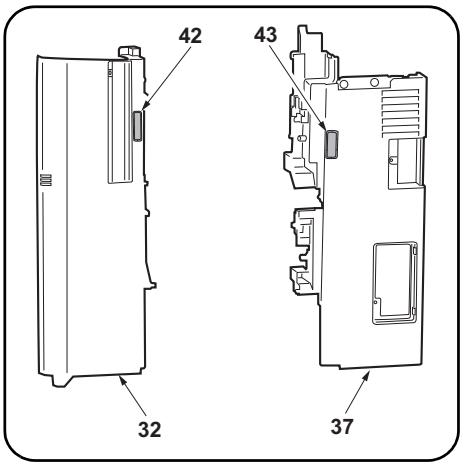
15. 右下後カバー(37) のふた (38) をマイナスドライバーなどで取る。



16. Remove 5 screws (39).Remove the lower right rear cover (37).



17. Remove the breakaway cover (54) from the lower right cover (55) .



18. Remove the breakaway cover (42) from the front right cover (32) and the breakaway cover (43) from the lower right rear cover (37).

---

16. Déposer les 5 vis (39). Déposer le capot arrière inférieur droit (37).

17. Retirez le capot détachable (54) du capot inférieur droit (55).

18. Déposer le couvercle amovible (42) du capot avant droit (32) et le couvercle amovible (43) du capot arrière inférieur droit (37).

---

16. Quite los 5 tornillos (39). Quite la cubierta trasera inferior derecha (37).

17. Quite la cubierta de separación (54) de la cubierta inferior derecha (55).

18. Quite la cubierta divisoria (42) de la cubierta delantera derecha (32) y la cubierta divisoria (43) de la cubierta trasera inferior derecha (37).

---

16. Entfernen Sie 5 Schrauben (39). Nehmen Sie die untere rechte hintere Abdeckung (37) ab.

17. Nehmen Sie die Ablösungsabdeckung (54) von untere rechte Abdeckung (55) ab.

18. Nehmen Sie die Ablösungsabdeckung (42) von der vorderen rechten Abdeckung (32) ab und die Ablösungsabdeckung (43) von der unteren rechten hinteren Abdeckung (37).

---

16. Rimuovere le 5 viti (39). Rimuovere il coperchio posteriore inferiore destro (37).

17. Rimuovere il coperchio di distacco (54) dal coperchio destro inferiore (55) .

18. Rimuovere il coperchio di distacco (42) dal coperchio destro anteriore (32), e il coperchio di distacco (43) dal coperchio posteriore inferiore destro (37).

---

16. 拆除 5 颗螺丝 (39)。拆下右下后部盖板 (37)。

17. 去除右下部盖板 (55) 上的可去除部 (54)。

18. 切除右前部盖板 (32) 的切割盖板 (42) 和右下后部盖板 (37) 的切割盖板 (43)。

---

16. 나사 (39) 5 개를 제거합니다 . 우측 하단 뒷커버 (37) 를 제거합니다 .

17. 우측 하단커버 (55) 의 분할커버부 (54) 를 떼어 냅니다 .

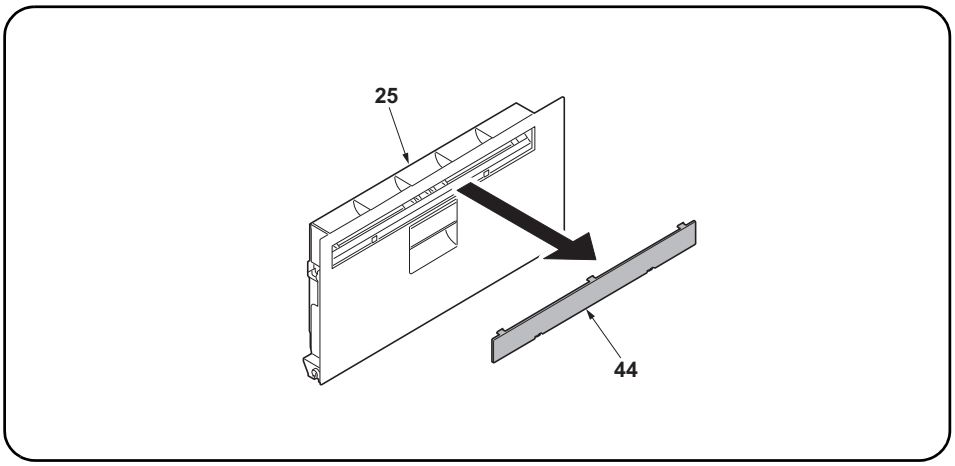
18. 우측 전면커버 (32) 의 분할커버 (42) 와 오른쪽 하단 뒷커버 (37) 의 분할커버 (43) 를 떼어 냅니다 .

---

16. ビス (39)5 本を外す。 右下後カバー(37) を取り外す。

17. 右下カバー(55) の割りカバー部 (54) を切り取る。

18. 右前カバー(32) の割りカバー(42) と右下後カバー(37) の割りカバー(43) を切り取る。



19. Remove the panel (44) from the MFP right cover 1 (25) with a flat blade screwdriver.

---

19. Déposer le panneau (44) du capot droit 1 du MFP (25) en procédant à l'aide d'un tournevis à lame.

---

19. Extraiga el panel (44) de la cubierta derecha 1 del MFP (25) con un destornillador de pala plana.

---

19. Nehmen Sie mit einem flachen Schraubendreher die Platte (44) von der rechten Abdeckung 1 (25) des MFP ab.

---

19. Rimuovere il pannello (44) dal coperchio destro 1 (25) dell'MFP con un cacciavite a testa piana.

---

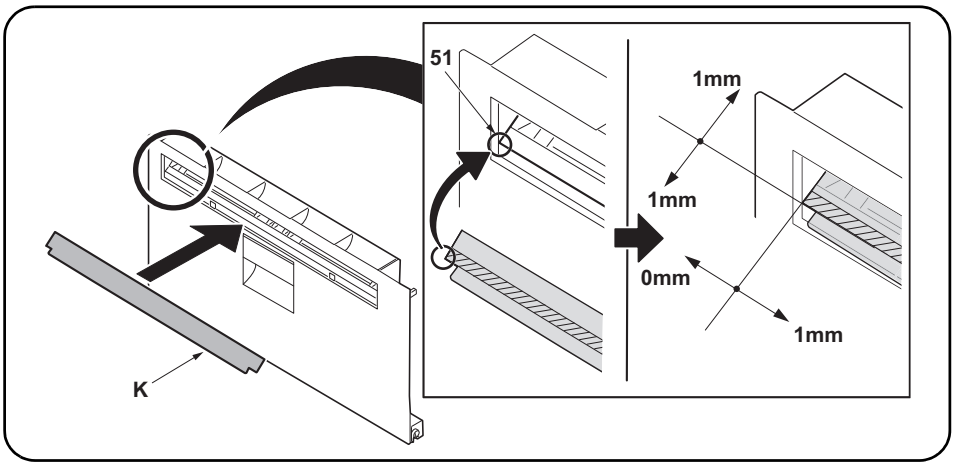
19. 使用一字螺丝刀将 MFP 主机的右部盖板 1(25) 的盖子 (44) 拆下。

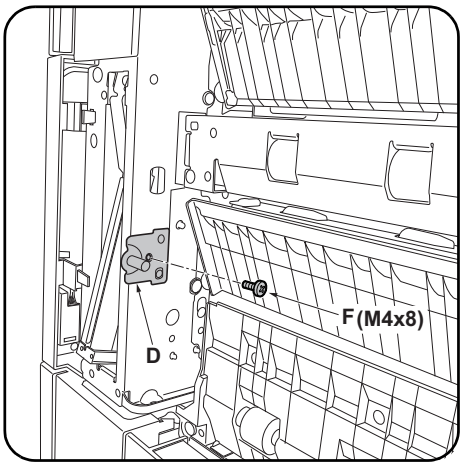
---

19. MFP 본체의 우측커버 1 (25) 의 뚜껑 (44) 을마이너스 드라이버로 제거합니다 .

---

19. MFP 本体の右カバー1(25) のふた (44) をマイナスドライバーで取り外す。





20. After using alcohol to clean place adhering the film, adhere the film (K) in the position (51) indicated in the illustration.

21. Install a lock pin (D) on the front right of the MFP using an M4 × 8 screw (F).

---

20. Coller le film (K) sur l'emplacement (51) indiqué dans l'illustration, après avoir soigneusement nettoyé cet emplacement à l'alcool.

21. Monter une broche de verrouillage (D) à droite et à l'avant du MFP en procédant à l'aide d'une vis M4 × 8 (F).

---

20. Después de utilizar alcohol para limpiar la zona donde se va a pegar la película, pegue la película (K) en el lugar (51) que se indica en la ilustración.

21. Instale una clavija de bloqueo (D) en la parte derecha frontal del MFP usando un tornillo M4 × 8 (F).

---

20. Zum Anbringen des Films (K) die Stelle zuvor mit Alkohol reinigen und den Film (K) dann in der in der Abbildung angegebenen Position (51) anbringen.

21. Bringen Sie mit einer M4 × 8 Schraube (F) den Arretierungsstift (D) vorne rechts am MFP an.

---

20. Dopo aver utilizzato alcol per pulire la piastra che aderisce alla pellicola, far aderire la pellicola (K) nella posizione (51) indicata nell'illustrazione.

21. Installare un perno di bloccaggio (D) sulla parte anteriore destra dell'MFP utilizzando una vite M4 × 8 (F).

---

20. 使用酒精对薄膜粘贴位置进行清洁后，按插图位置 (51) 粘贴薄膜 (K)。

21. 使用 1 颗 M4×8 螺丝 (F) 将锁定插销 (D) 安装到 MFP 主机的右前侧。

---

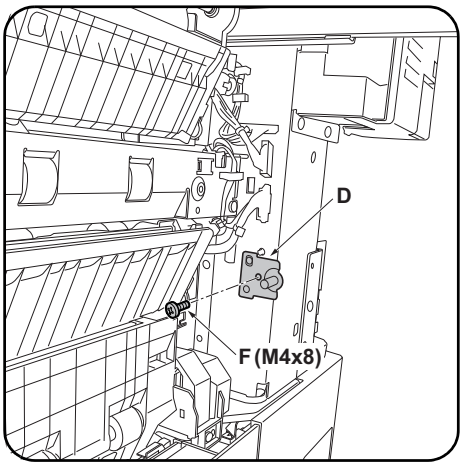
20. 필름 부착위치를 알코올 청소 후 , 일러스트의 위치 (51) 에 맞춰 필름 (K) 을 부착합니다 .

21. 나사 M4×8(F) 1 개로 잠금 핀 (D) 을 MFP 본체 우측 전면쪽에 설치합니다 .

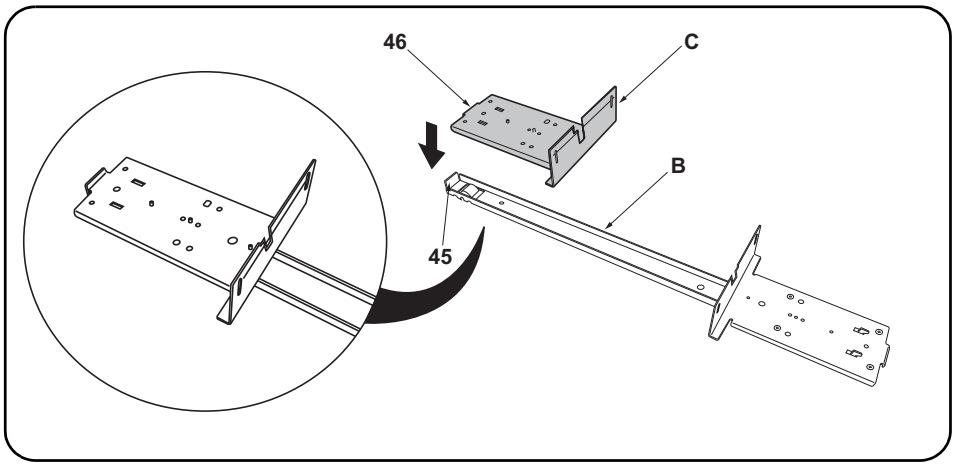
---

20. フィルム貼り付け位置をアルコール清掃後、イラストの位置(51)にあわせて、フィルム(K)を貼り付ける。

21. ビス M4×8(F)1 本で、ロックピン (D) を MFP 本体右前側に取り付ける。



22. Install a lock pin (D) on the rear right of the MFP using an M4 × 8 screw (F) in the same way.



23. Place the small base slider (C) on the large base slider (B). Place so that the bend (46) on the small base slider (C) abuts inside the rest (45) at the end of the large base slider (B).

---

22. Monter une broche de verrouillage (D) à droite et à l'arrière du MFP en procédant de la même manière à l'aide d'une vis M4 × 8 (F).

23. Placer la petite règle de base (C) sur la grande règle de base (B). Disposer la petite règle de base (C) de sorte que son extrémité repliée (46) s'encastre dans la butée (45) à l'extrémité de la grande règle de base (B).

---

22. Instale una clavija de bloqueo (D) en la parte derecha frontal del MFP usando un tornillo M4 × 8 (F).

23. Coloque el deslizador de base pequeño (C) sobre el deslizador de base grande (B). Haga que la dobladura (46) del deslizador de base pequeño (C) quede en el interior del apoyo (45) del extremo del deslizador de base grande (B).

---

22. Bringen Sie auf gleiche Weise mit einer M4 × 8 Schraube (F) den Arretierungsstift (D) hinten rechts am MFP an.

23. Setzen Sie den kleinen Basis-Schieber (C) auf den großen Basis-Schieber (B). Setzen Sie ihn so auf, dass die Biegung (46) am kleinen Basis-Schieber (C) innerhalb der Auflage (45) am Ende des großen Basis-Schiebers (B) anliegt.

---

22. Installare un perno di bloccaggio (D) sulla parte posteriore destra dell'MFP utilizzando una vite M4 × 8 (F) alla stessa maniera.

23. Posizionare lo scivolo di base piccolo (C) sullo scivolo di base grande (B). Posizionare in modo che la piegatura (46) sullo scivolo di base piccolo (C) si attesti all'interno del sostegno (45) all'estremità dello scivolo di base grande (B).

---

22. 按相同方法，使用 1 颗 M4×8 螺丝 (F) 将锁定插销 (D) 安装到 MFP 主机的右后侧。

23. 将底座滑板（小）(C) 放在底座滑板（大）(B)。此时底座滑板（小）(C) 的弯曲部 (46) 应处于底座滑板（大）(B) 的前端折弯部 (45) 的内侧。

---

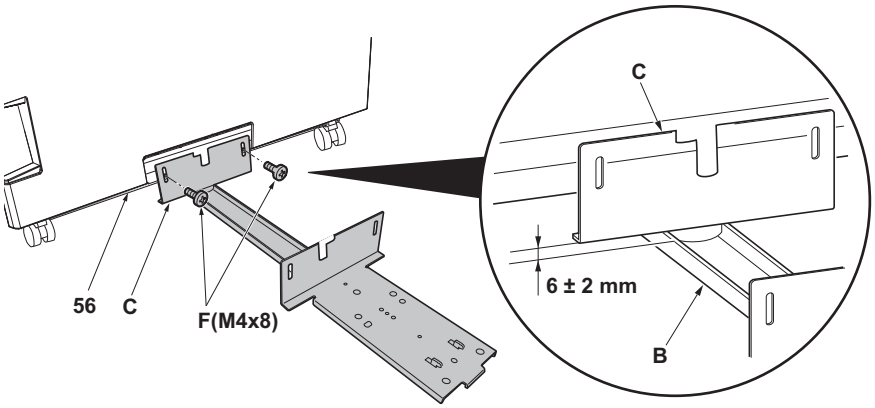
22. 같은 방식으로 나사 M4×8(F) 1 개로 잠금 핀 (D) 을 MFP 본체 우측 뒤쪽에 설치합니다 .

23. 베이스 슬라이더 대 (B) 의 위에 베이스 슬라이더 소 (C) 를 얹습니다 . 그 때 , 베이스 슬라이더 소 (C) 의 곡선부 (46) 가 베이스 슬라이더 대 (B) 의 맨 앞쪽의 꺾이고 구부러진 부분 (45) 의 안쪽으로 오도록 세트합니다 .

---

22. 同様にビス M4×8(F) 1 本で、ロックピン (D) を MFP 本体右後側に取り付ける。

23. ベーススライダー大 (B) の上にベーススライダー小 (C) を乗せる。その際、ベーススライダー小 (C) の曲げ (46) がベーススライダー大 (B) の先端折り曲げ部 (45) の内側にくるようにセットする。



24. Insert the small base slider (C) under the paper feeder. Install to the base (56) using 2 M4 × 8 screws (F) so that the gap between the small base slider (C) and the large base slider (B) is 6 ± 2 mm.
* For PF-730, install to the screw holes marked “R”.

---

24. Insérer la petite règle de base (C) sous le bureau papier. Fixer à la base (56) à l'aide de 2 vis M4 × 8 (F) de sorte que le battement entre la petite règle de base (C) et la grande règle de base (B) soit de 6 ± 2 mm.
* Pour le PF-730, fixer aux trous de vis marqués "R".

---

24. Inserte el deslizador de base pequeño (C) debajo del alimentador de papel. Instálelo en la base (56) usando 2 tornillos M4 × 8 (F) de manera tal que el huelgo entre el deslizador de base pequeño (C) y el deslizador de base grande (B) sea de 6 ± 2 mm.
* En el caso de PF-730, instale en los orificios para tornillo “R”.

---

24. Stecken Sie den kleinen Basis-Schieber (C) unter den Papiereinzug. Befestigen Sie ihn mit 2 M4 × 8 Schrauben (F) so an der Basis (56), dass der Abstand zwischen dem kleinen Basis-Schieber (C) und dem großen Basis-Schieber (B) 6 ± 2 mm beträgt.
* Bei Modell PF-730 an den mit "R" markierten Schraublöchern befestigen.

---

24. Inserire lo scivolo di base piccolo (C) sotto l'unità di alimentazione carta. Installare alla base (56) utilizzando 2 viti M4 × 8 (F) in modo che lo spazio tra lo scivolo di base piccolo (C) e lo scivolo di base grande (B) sia di 6 ± 2 mm.
* Per PF-730, installare ai fori per viti segnalati con “R”.

---

24. 将底座滑板（小）(C) 装入供纸盒的下方。使用 2 颗 M4×8(F) 螺丝将底座滑板（小）(C) 安装到底板 (56) 上，确保底座滑板（小）(C) 与底座滑板（大）(B) 之间的间隙为 6±2mm。
※PF-730 时，安装到带有 R 刻印的螺纹孔上。

---

24. 베이스 슬라이더 소 (C) 를 용지 급지대 밑에 넣습니다 . 베이스 슬라이더 소 (C) 와 베이스 슬라이더 대 (B) 의 틈이 6±2mm 가 되도록 나사 M4×8(F) 2 개로 바닥판 (56) 에 장착합니다 .
※PF-730 은 R 의 각인이 있는 나사구멍에 장착합니다 .

---

24. ベーススライダー小 (C) をペーパーフィーダーの下に入れる。ベーススライダー小 (C) とベーススライダー大 (B) の隙間が、6±2mm になるようにビス M4×8(F)2 本で底板 (56) に取り付ける。
※PF-730 は R の刻印のあるビス穴に取り付ける。

Installation on medium-speed MFPs
If installing on a high-speed MFP, proceed to step 28.
25. Reinstall the lower right rear cover (11).
26. Reinstall the front right cover (5).
27. Reinstall the lower right cover (1).
Proceed to step 32.

Installation on high-speed MFPs
28. Reinstall the lower right rear cover (37).
29. Reinstall the front right cover (32).
30. Reinstall the right cover 2 (28).
31. Reinstall the right cover 1 (25).

Montage sur des MFP à vitesse moyenne
Si le montage est fait sur un MFP à grande vitesse, passer à l'étape 28.
25. Reposer le capot arrière inférieur droit (11).
26. Reposer le capot avant droit (5).
27. Reposer le capot inférieur droit (1).
Passer à l'étape 32.

Montage sur des MFP à grande vitesse
28. Reposer le capot arrière inférieur droit (37).
29. Reposer le capot avant droit (32).
30. Reposer le capot droit 2 (28).
31. Reposer le capot droit 1 (25).

Instalación en las MFP de velocidad media
Si se instala en una MFP de alta velocidad, vaya al paso 28.
25. Reinstale la cubierta trasera inferior derecha (11).
26. Reinstale la cubierta delantera derecha (5).
27. Reinstale la cubierta derecha inferior (1).
Vaya al paso 32.

Instalación en las MFP de alta velocidad
28. Reinstale la cubierta trasera inferior derecha (37).
29. IReinstale la cubierta delantera derecha (32).
30. Reinstale la cubierta derecha 2 (28).
31. Reinstale la cubierta derecha 1 (25).

Installation an MFP der mittleren Leistungsklasse
Gehen Sie zur Installation an einem MFP der Hochleistungsklasse weiter zu Schritt 28.
25. Bringen Sie die untere rechte hintere Abdeckung (11) wieder an.
26. Bringen Sie die vordere rechte Abdeckung (5) wieder an.
27. Bringen Sie die untere rechte Abdeckung (1) wieder an.
Gehen Sie weiter zu Schritt 32.

Installation an MFP der Hochleistungsklasse
28. Bringen Sie die untere rechte hintere Abdeckung (37) wieder an.
29. Bringen Sie die vordere rechte Abdeckung (32) wieder an.
30. Bringen Sie die rechte Abdeckung 2 (28) wieder an.
31. Bringen Sie die rechte Abdeckung 1 (25) wieder an.

Installazione sulle MFP a velocità media
Se si installa su una MFP a velocità alta, procedere al passo 28.
25. Reinstallare il coperchio posteriore inferiore destro (11).
26. Reinstallare il coperchio destro anteriore (5).
27. Reinstallare il coperchio destro inferiore (1).
Procedere al passo 32.

Installazione sulle MFP a velocità alta
28. Reinstallare il coperchio posteriore inferiore destro (37).
29. Reinstallare il coperchio destro anteriore (32).
30. Reinstallare il coperchio destro 2 (28).
31. Reinstallare il coperchio destro 1 (25).

安装于中速 MFP 上时
安装于高速 MFP 上时，进至步骤 28。

25. 按原样安装右下后部盖板 (11)。
26. 按原样安装右前部盖板 (5)。
27. 按原样安装右下部盖板 (1)。
进至步骤 32。

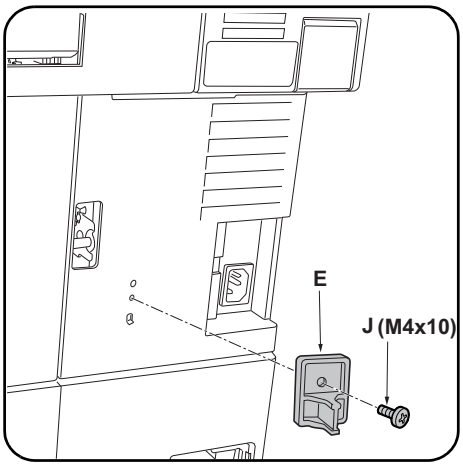
安装于高速 MFP 上时
28. 按原样安装右下后部盖板 (37)。
29. 按原样安装右前部盖板 (32)。
30. 按原样安装右部盖板 2(28)。
31. 按原样安装右部盖板 1(25)。

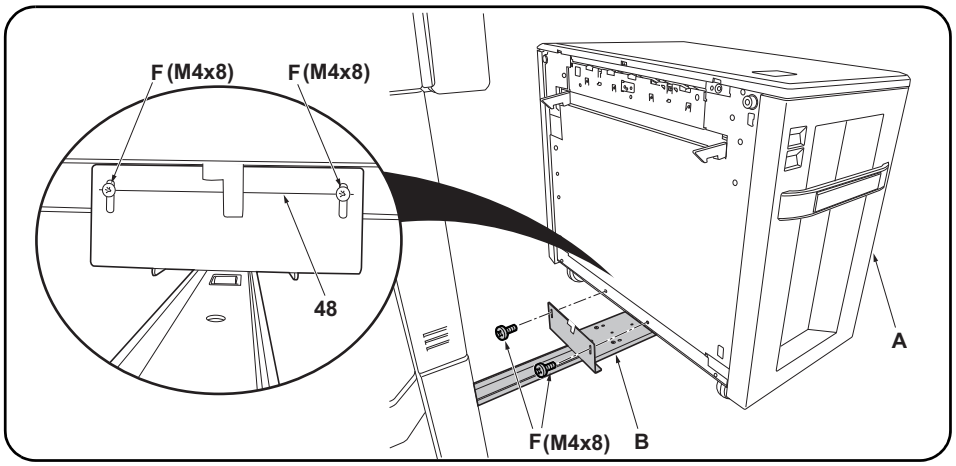
중속 MFP 에 설치하는 경우
고속 MFP 에 설치하는 경우에는 순서 28 로 진행합니다 .
25. 우측하단 뒷커버 (11) 를 원래대로 장착합니다 .
26. 우측 전면커버 (5) 를 원래대로 장착합니다 .
27. 우측 하단커버 (1) 를 원래대로 장착합니다 .
순서 32 로 진행합니다 .

고속 MFP 에 설치하는 경우
28. 우측하단 뒷커버 (37) 를 원래대로 장착합니다 .
29. 우측 전면커버 (32) 를 원래대로 장착합니다 .
30. 우측커버 2 (28) 를 원래대로 장착합니다 .
31. 우측커버 1 (25) 를 원래대로 장착합니다 .

中速 MFP に設置の場合
高速 MFP に設置の場合は手順 28 に進む。
25. 右下後カバー(11) を元通り取り付ける。
26. 右前カバー(5) を元通り取り付ける。
27. 右下カバー(1) を元通り取り付ける。
手順 32 に進む。

高速 MFP に設置の場合
28. 右下後カバー(37) を元通り取り付ける。
29. 右前カバー(32) を元通り取り付ける。
30. 右カバー2 (28) を元通り取り付ける。
31. 右カバー1 (25) を元通り取り付ける。





32. Install the switch press plate (E) using the M4 × 10 tapping screw (J).

33. Install the side feeder (A) to the large base slider (B) using 2 M4 × 8 screws (F). Install so that the center of the M4 × 8 screws (F) comes over the horizontal line (48) of the mounting plate on the large base slider (B).

---

32. Fixer la plaque de pression du contacteur (E) à l'aide d'une vis de connexion M4 × 10 (J).

33. Fixer le dispositif du plateau d'alimentation latéral (A) à la grande règle de base (B) à l'aide de 2 vis M4 × 8 (F). Procéder de sorte que l'axe des vis M4 × 8 (F) recouvre la ligne horizontale (48) du plateau de montage sur la grande règle de base (B).

---

32. Instale la placa de presión del interruptor (E) usando el tornillo de roscado M4 × 10 (J).

33. Instale el alimentador lateral (A) en el deslizador de base grande (B) usando 2 tornillos M4 × 8 (F). Instale de manera que el centro de los tornillos M4 × 8 (F) queden sobre la línea horizontal (48) de la placa de montaje del deslizador de base (B) grande.

---

32. Befestigen Sie mit der M4 × 10 Schneidschraube (J) die Schalterdruckplatte (E).

33. Befestigen Sie den seitlichen Einzug (A) mit 2 M4 × 8 Schrauben (F) am großen Basis-Schieber (B). Befestigen Sie ihn so, dass die Mitte der M4 × 8 Schrauben (F) über der Waagrechtlinie (48) der Montageplatte am großen Basis-Schieber (B) liegt.

---

32. Installare la piastra spingi interruttore (E) utilizzando la vite autofilettante M4 × 10 (J).

33. Installare l'unità di alimentazione laterale (A) allo scivolo di base grande (B) utilizzando 2 viti M4 × 8 (F). Installare in modo che il centro delle viti M4 × 8 (F) sia sulla linea orizzontale (48) della piastra di montaggio sullo scivolo di base grande (B).

---

32. 使用 1 颗 M4×10 自攻螺丝 (J) 安装开关挡板 (E)。

33. 使用 2 颗 M4×8 螺丝 (F) 将侧供纸盒 (A) 安装到底座滑板（大）(B) 上。此时，应确保 M4×8 螺丝 (F) 的中心处于底座滑板（大）(B) 的安装板的平行线 (48) 上。

---

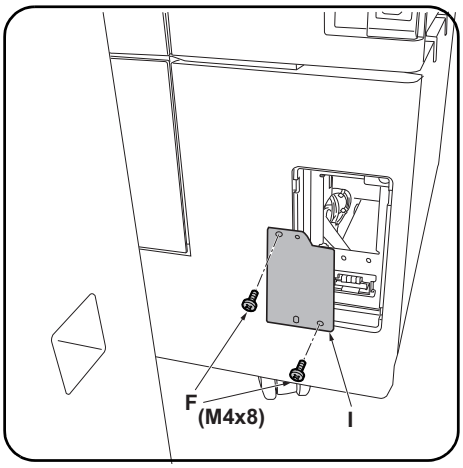
32. 탑핑나사 M4×10(J) 1 개로 스위치 판 (E) 을 장착합니다 .

33. 나사 M4×8(F) 2 개로 베이스 슬라이더 대 (B) 에 사이드 피더 (A) 를 장착합니다 . 그 때 , 베이스 슬라이더 대 (B) 의 설치판의 평행선 (48) 에 나사 M4×8(F) 의 센터가 오도록 장착합니다 .

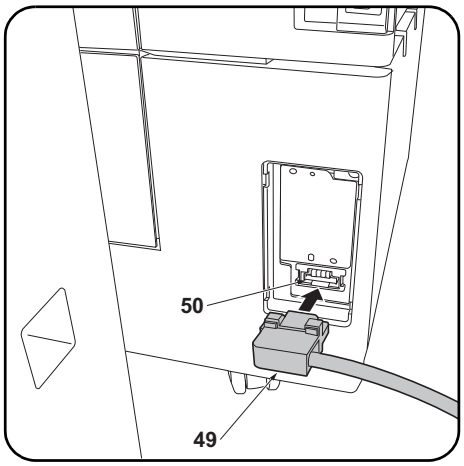
---

32. タッピングビス M4×10(J)1 本でスイッチ当たり板 (E) を取り付ける。

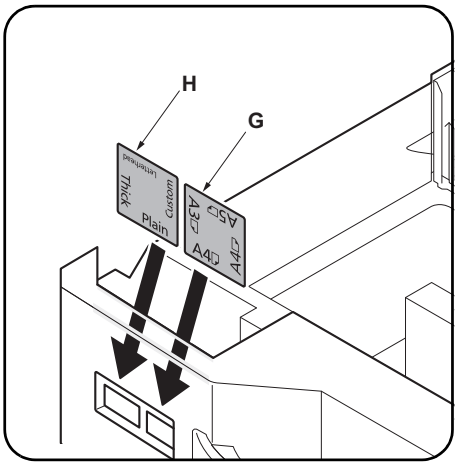
33. ビス M4×8(F)2 本でベーススライダー大 (B) にサイドフィーダー(A) を取り付ける。その際、ベーススライダー大 (B) の取付板の平行線 (48) にビス M4×8(F) のセンターがくるように取り付ける。



34. Install the cover plate (I) using 2 M4 × 8 screws (F).



35. Plug the signal cable (49) for the side feeder into the paper feeder connector (50).
36. Push the side feeder to connect it to the MFP.



Setting the paper size plate and media type plate
Insert the paper size plate (G) and media type plate (H) into the each slots respectively

---

34. Fixer le capot (I) à l'aide de 2 vis M4 × 8 (F).

35. Enficher le câble de signal (49) du dispositif du plateau d'alimentation latéral dans le connecteur (50) du bureau papier.
36. Pousser le dispositif du plateau d'alimentation latéral pour le raccorder au MFP.

Disposition des plaquettes du format de papier et du type de support
Introduire la plaquette du format de papier (G) et la plaquette du type de support (H) dans leur logement respectif.

---

34. Instale la tapa (I) usando los 2 tornillos M4 × 8 (F).

35. Conecte el cable de señal (49) del alimentador lateral en el conector del alimentador de papel (50).
36. Empuje el alimentador lateral para conectarlo al MFP.

Ajuste de la placa de tamaño de papel y la placa de tipo de medio
Inserte la placa de tamaño de papel (G) y la placa de tipo de medio (H) en cada uno de las ranuras, respectivamente.

---

34. Bringen Sie die Abdeckungsplatte (I) mit 2 M4 × 8 Schrauben (F) an.

35. Schließen Sie das Signalkabel (49) für den seitlichen Einzug am Papiereinzug-Steckverbinder (50) an.
36. Drücken Sie auf den seitlichen Einzug, um ihn mit dem MFP zu verbinden.

Einsetzen der Papierformatkarte und der Medientypkarte
Setzen Sie die Papierformatkarte (G) und die Medientypkarte (H) in die jeweiligen Führungen.

---

34. Installare il coperchio (I) utilizzando 2 viti M4 × 8 (F).

35. Collegare il cavo del segnale (49) per l'unità di alimentazione laterale nel connettore dell'unità di alimentazione carta (50).
36. Spingere l'unità di alimentazione laterale per collegarla all'MFP.

Impostazione della piastra di formato carta e della piastra del tipo di supporto
Inserire la piastra del formato carta (G) e la piastra del tipo di supporto (H) nei rispettivi alloggiamenti.

---

34. 使用 2 颗 M4×8 螺丝 (F) 安装盖板 (I)。

35. 将侧供纸盒的信号线 (49) 连接到供纸盒的接口 (50) 上。
36. 按住侧供纸盒，将其与 MFP 主机连接。

纸张尺寸标示和纸张种类标示的安装
将纸张尺寸标示 (G) 和纸张种类标示 (H) 分别插入到图示的插槽中。

---

34. 나사 M4×8(F) 2 개로 커버 플레이트 (I) 를 장착합니다 .

35. 사이드 피더의 신호선 (49) 을 용지 급지대의 커넥터 (50) 에 접속합니다 .
36. 사이드 피더를 밀어 MFP 본체에 접속합니다 .

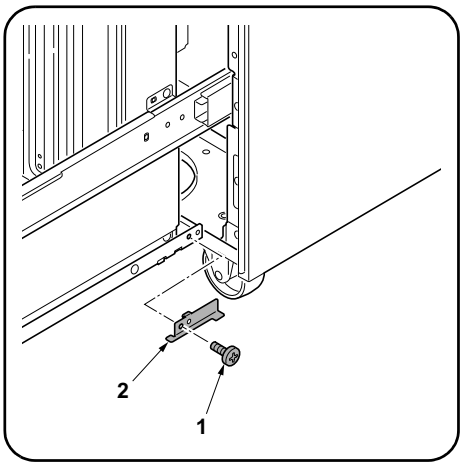
용지크기 플레이트와 용지종류 플레이트의 세트
용지크기 플레이트 (G) 와 용지종류 플레이트 (H) 를 각표시 슬롯에 각각 삽입한다 .

---

34. ビス M4×8(F) 2 本でカバープレート (I) を取り付ける。

35. サイドフィーダーの信号線 (49) をペーパーフィーダーのコネクター (50) に接続する。
36. サイドフィーダーを押し、MFP 本体に接続する。

用紙サイズプレートと用紙種類プレートのセット
用紙サイズプレート (G) と用紙種類プレート (H) を各表示スロットにそれぞれ挿入する。



Changing paper size (metric specifications only)
At shipment, Letter is set for inch models and A4 is set for metric models. Use the procedure below to change the size to B5.

1. Pull out the side feeder cassette.
2. Remove a screw (1) and remove the stopper (2).

Modification du format du papier (pour spécifications métriques seulement)
À expédition, les modèles à mesure en pouces sont réglés sur le format Letter et les modèles à mesure métrique sur le format A4. Pour passer au format B5, procéder de la manière suivante.

1. Sortir le tiroir du dispositif du plateau d'alimentation latéral.
2. Déposer la vis (1) et la butée (2).

Cómo cambiar el tamaño de papel (sólo para las especificaciones métricas)
En el momento de salida de fábrica, se configura Carta para los modelos en pulgadas y A4 para los modelos en sistema métrico. Siga este procedimiento para cambiar el tamaño a B5.

1. Extraiga el cajón del alimentador lateral.
2. Quite el tornillo (1) y quite el tope (2).

Ändern des Papierformats (nur metrische Spezifikationen)
Beim Werksversand ist bei Modellen mit Zollmaß das Format Letter voreingestellt und bei Modellen mit metrischem Maß das Format A4.
Das Format kann wie folgend auf B5 umgeschaltet werden.

1. Ziehen Sie die Papierlade des seitlichen Einzugs heraus.
2. Entfernen Sie eine Schraube (1) und nehmen Sie den Anschlag (2) heraus.

Cambio del formato della carta (solo per le specifiche metriche)
Al momento della spedizione, Letter è impostato per le specifiche in pollici e A4 è impostato per le specifiche metriche. Usare la procedura riportata sotto per cambiare il formato a B5.

1. Estrarre il cassetto dell'unità di alimentazione laterale.
2. Rimuovere la vite (1) e quindi rimuovere il fermo (2).

纸张尺寸更改（仅限公制规格）
产品出厂时，英制规格设定为 Letter、公制规格设定为 A4。要将尺寸更改为 B5 时，请按以下步骤进行操作。

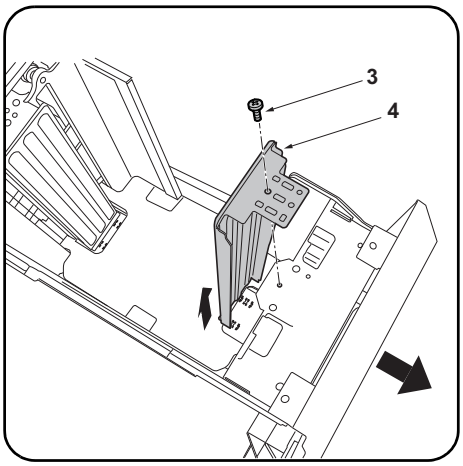
1. 拉出侧供纸盒的纸盒。
2. 拆除 1 颗螺丝 (1)，拆下挡块 (2)。

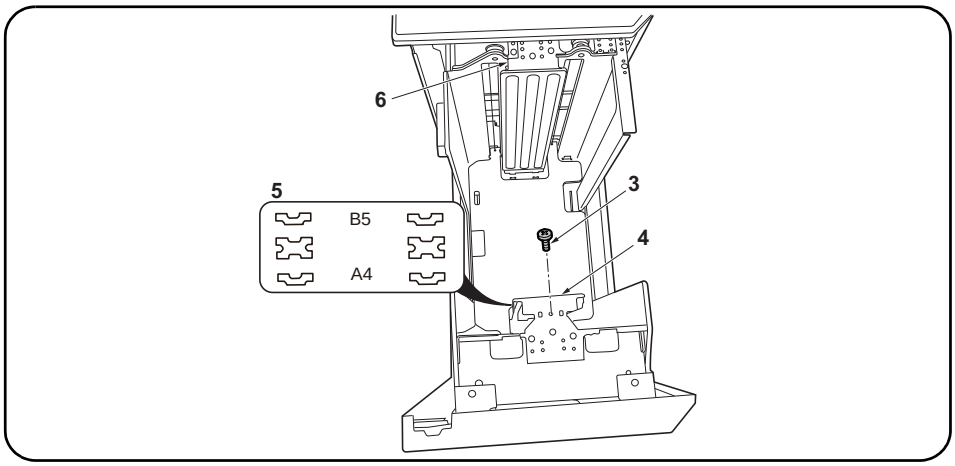
용지크기 변경 (센치 사양만)
출하시 , 인치사양은 Letter, 센치사양은 A4 로 설정되어 있습니다 . 크기를 B5 로 변경하는 경우에는 다음 순서를 진행해 주십시오 .

1. 사이드 피더의 카세트를 빼 냅니다 .
2. 나사 (1) 1 개를 제거하고 스토퍼 (2) 를 떼어 냅니다 .

[用紙サイズ変更(センチ仕様のみ)]
出荷時、インチ仕様は Letter、センチ仕様は A4 に設定されています。サイズを B5 に変更する場合は次の手順をおこなってください。

1. サイドフィーダーのカセットを引き出す。
2. ビス (1)1 本を外し、ストッパー (2) を取り外す。





3. Remove a screw (3) and remove the front deck cursor (4).

4. Move the front deck cursor (4) to match the size marking (5) (the outermost is A4, the innermost is B5) at the bottom of the cassette.
5. Fix the front deck cursor (4) using the screw (3).
6. Move the rear deck cursor (6) in the same way.

---

3. Déposer la vis (3) et le curseur de platine avant (4).

4. Déplacer le curseur de platine avant (4) en fonction du repère de format papier (5) (le repère le plus à l'extérieur est celui du format A4, celui le plus à l'intérieur, celui du format B5) se trouvant au fond de le tiroir.
5. Fixer le curseur de platine avant (4) à l'aide de la vis (3).
6. Déplacer le curseur de platine arrière (6) en procédant de la même manière.

---

3. Quite el tornillo (3) y quite el cursorfrontal de la plataforma (4).

4. Mueva el cursor frontal de la plataforma (4) para que corresponda con la marca de tamaño (5) (la más externa es A4, la más interna es B5) en la parte inferior del cajón.
5. Fije el cursor frontal de la plataforma (4) usando el tornillo (3).
6. Mueva el cursor trasero de la plataforma (6) de la misma forma.

---

3. Entfernen Sie eine Schraube (3) und nehmen Sie den vorderen Konsole-Cursor (4) heraus.

4. Versetzen Sie den vorderen Konsole-Cursor (4), um die Formatmarkierung (5) am Boden der Papierlade anzupassen (die äußerste ist A4, die innerste ist B5).
5. Befestigen Sie den vorderen Konsole-Cursor (4) mit der Schraube (3).
6. Versetzen Sie den hinteren Konsole-Cursor (6) auf gleiche Weise.

---

3. Rimuovere la vite (3) e quindi rimuovere il cursore frontale del deck (4).

4. Spostare il cursore frontale del deck (4) per farlo corrispondere al segno del formato (5) (il più esterno è A4, il più interno è B5) alla parte inferiore del cassetto.
5. Fissare il cursore frontale del deck (4) utilizzando la vite (3).
6. Spostare il cursore posteriore del deck (6) alla stessa maniera.

---

3. 拆除 1 颗螺丝 (3)，拆下前部纸张长度调节片 (4)。

4. 根据纸盒下部的刻印 (5) （最外侧为 A4、最内侧为 B5）移动前部纸张长度调节片 (4)。
5. 使用 1 颗螺丝 (3) 固定前部纸张长度调节片 (4)。
6. 按相同方法移动后部纸张长度调节片 (6)。

---

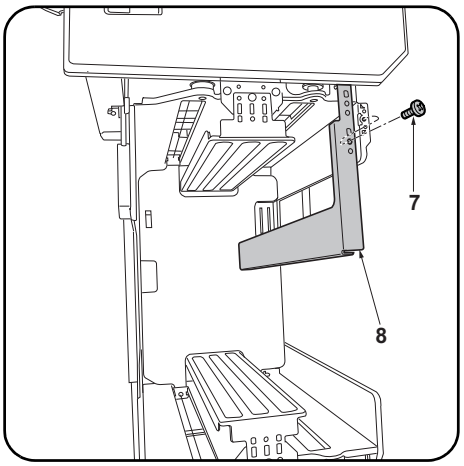
3. 나사 (3) 1 개를 제거하고 데크커서앞 (4) 을 제거합니다 .

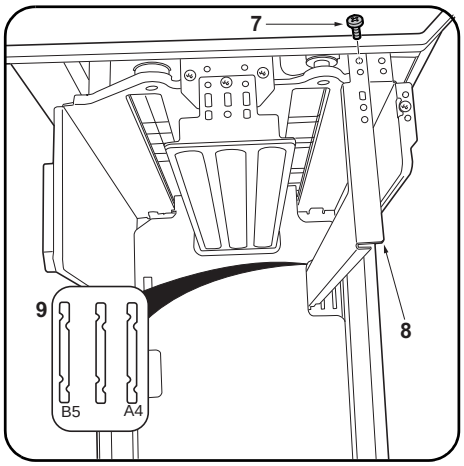
4. 카세트 아래의 사이즈각인 (5) (가장 바깥쪽이 A4, 가장 안쪽이 B5) 에 맞춰 데크커서앞 (4) 을 이동시킵니다 .
5. 나사 (3) 1 개로 데크커서앞 (4) 을 고정합니다 .
6. 같은 방식으로 데크커서뒤 (6) 를 이동시킵니다 .

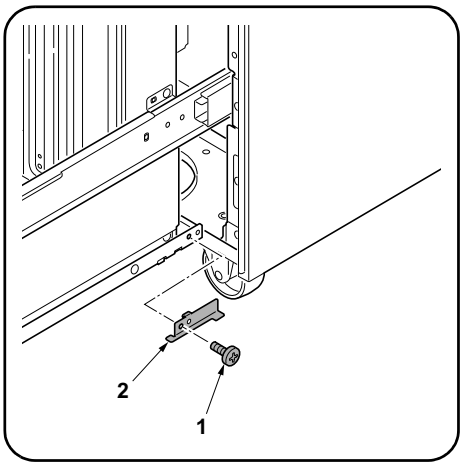
---

3. ビス (3)1 本を外し、デッキカーソル前 (4) を取り外す。

4. カセット下のサイズ刻印 (5) （一番外側が A4、一番内側が B5）に合わせてデッキカーソル前 (4) を移動させる。
5. ビス (3)1 本で、デッキカーソル前 (4) を固定する。
6. 同様にデッキカーソル後 (6) を移動させる。







7. Remove a screw (7) and remove the deck trailing edge cursor (8).

8. Move the deck trailing edge cursor (8) to match the size marking (9) at the bottom of the cassette.
9. Fix the deck trailing edge cursor (8) with the screw (7).

10. Reinstall the stopper (2) using the screw (1).
11. Run maintenance mode U208 and set the paper size.

---

7. Déposer la vis (7) et déposer le curseur du bord arrière de la platine (8).

8. Déplacer le curseur du bord arrière de la platine (8) en fonction du repère de format papier (9) se trouvant au fond de le tiroir.
9. Fixer le curseur du bord arrière de la platine (8) à l'aide de la vis (7).

10. Reposer la butée (2) à l'aide de la vis (1).
11. Exécuter le mode maintenance U208 et définir le format du papier.

---

7. Quite el tornillo (7) y quite el cursor del borde inferior de la plataforma (8).

8. Mueva el cursor del borde inferior de la plataforma (8) para que corresponda con la marca de tamaño (9) en la parte inferior del cajón.
9. Fije el cursor del borde inferior de la plataforma (8) con el tornillo (7).

10. Reinstale el tope (2) usando el tornillo (1).
11. Active el modo de mantenimiento U208 y ajuste el tamaño de papel.

---

7. Entfernen Sie eine Schraube (7) und nehmen Sie den Hinterkante-Cursor (8) heraus.

8. Versetzen Sie den Hinterkante-Cursor (8), um die Formatmarkierung (9) am Boden der Papierlade anzupassen.
9. Befestigen Sie den Hinterkante-Cursor (8) mit der Schraube (7).

10. Bringen Sie den Anschlag (2) wieder mit der Schraube (1) an.
11. Führen Sie den Wartungsmodus U208 aus und stellen Sie das Papierformat ein.

---

7. Rimuovere la vite (7) e quindi rimuovere il cursore del bordo finale del deck (8).

8. Spostare il cursore del bordo finale del deck (8) per farlo corrispondere al segno di formato (9) alla parte inferiore del cassetto.
9. Fissare il cursore del bordo finale del deck (8) con la vite (7).

10. Reinstallare il fermo (2) utilizzando la vite (1).
11. Eseguire la modalita manutenzione U208 e impostare il formato carta.

---

7. 拆除 1 颗螺丝 (7)，拆下后端纸张长度调节片 (8)。

8. 根据纸盒下部的刻印 (9) 移动后端纸张长度调节片 (8)。
9. 使用 1 颗螺丝 (7) 固定后端纸张长度调节片 (8)。

10. 使用 1 颗螺丝 (1)，按原样安装挡块 (2)。
11. 执行维修模式 U208，进行纸张尺寸的设定。

---

7. 나사 (7) 1 개를 제거하고 데크뒤커서 (8) 를 제거합니다 .

8. 카세트 아래의 사이즈각인 (9) 에 맞춰서 데크뒤커서 (8) 를 이동시킵니다 .
9. 나사 (7) 1 개로 데크뒤커서 (8) 를 고정합니다 .

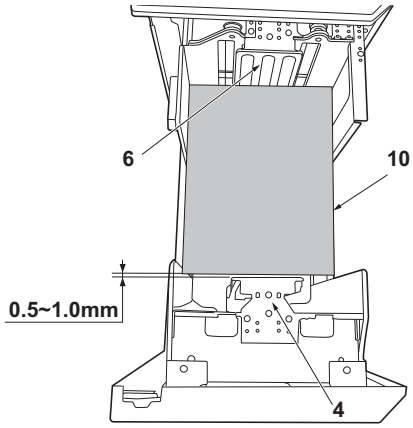
10. 나사 (1) 1 개로 스토퍼 (2) 를 원래대로 장착합니다 .
11. 메인터넌스 모드 U208 을 실행해 용지크기 설정을 합니다 .

---

7. ビス (7)1 本を外し、デッキ後端カーソル (8) を取り外す。

8. カセット下のサイズ刻印 (9) に合わせて、デッキ後端カーソル (8) を移動させる。
9. ビス (7)1 本で、デッキ後端カーソル (8) を固定する。

10. ビス (1)1 本で、ストッパー (2) を元通り取り付ける。
11. メンテナンスモード U208 を実行し、用紙サイズの設定をおこなう。



Adjusting the cursor width

1. Load paper in the cassettes.

2. If the gap between the front deck cursor (4) and the paper (10) is outside the 0.5 to 1.0 mm range when the paper (10) is touching up against the rear deck cursor (6), perform the following adjustment.

* A cursor width that is too small can hinder paper feeding, while a cursor width that is too large can lead to problems such as skewed paper feed.

Réglage de la largeur du curseur

1. Charger les tiroirs en papier.

2. Si l'écartement entre le curseur de platine avant (4) et le papier (10) est hors des limites de 0,5 à 1,0 mm quand le papier (10) touche le curseur de platine arrière (6), procéder au réglage suivant.

* Une largeur trop faible du curseur risque d'empêcher l'entraînement du papier et une largeur trop grande risque d'entraîner des problèmes du type entraînement du papier de biais.

Cómo ajustar la anchura del cursor

1. Cargue papel en los cajones.

2. Si la separación entre el cursor frontal de la plataforma (4) y el papel (10) está fuera del rango de 0,5 a 1,0 mm cuando el papel (10) toca el cursor trasero de la plataforma (6), haga el siguiente ajuste.

* Una anchura del cursor demasiado pequeña puede impedir la alimentación de papel; una anchura del cursor demasiado grande puede provocar problemas con la alimentación torcida de papel.

Einstellen der Cursor-Breite

1. Papier in die Papierladen einlegen.

2. Falls der Abstand zwischen dem vorderen Konsole-Cursor (4) und dem Papier (10) außerhalb des Bereichs 0,5 bis 1,0 mm liegt, wenn das Papier (10) am hinteren Konsole-Cursor (6) anliegt, ist folgende Einstellung vorzunehmen.

* Eine zu kleine Cursor-Breite kann den Papiereinzug behindern, wogegen eine zu große Cursor-Breite verkanteten Papiereinzug und ähnliche Probleme verursachen kann.

Regolazione della larghezza del cursore

1. Caricare carta nei cassetti.

2. Se lo spazio tra il cursore frontale del deck (4) e la carta (10) è fuori della gamma da 0,5 a 1,0 mm quando la carta (10) tocca il cursore postertiore del deck (6), eseguire la regolazione seguente.

* Una larghezza dei cursori troppo piccola può ostacolare l'alimentazione della carta, mentre unalarghezza dei cursori troppo grande può essere causa di problemi, come ad esempio l'alimentazione obbliqua della carta.

游标宽度的调节

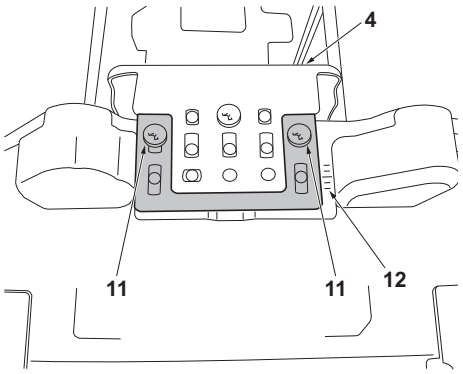
1. 在供纸盒中装入纸张。
2. 在堆纸板后部游标 (6) 与纸张 (10) 接触的状态下，如果堆纸板前部游标 (4) 与纸张 (10) 的间隙超出了 0.5 ～ 1.0㎜ 的范围，须进行以下调节。
   ※ 如果游标宽度过小，可能造成不供纸，游标宽度过大，则可能发生歪斜进纸等情况。

커서 폭 조정

1. 카세트에 용지를 장착합니다 .
2. 데크커서 뒤 (6) 에 용지 (10) 가 접하고 있는 상태에서 데크커서 앞 (4) 과 용지 (10) 의 틈이 0.5 ～ 1.0mm 의 범위외의 경우에는 이하의 조정을 합니다 .
   ※ 커서 폭이 작으면 무급지 , 커서 폭이 크면 경사급지 등이 발생할 가능성이 있습니다 .

[カーソル幅の調整]

1. カセットに用紙をセットする。
2. デッキカーソル後 (6) に用紙 (10) が接している状態で、デッキカーソル前 (4) と用紙 (10) の隙間が 0.5 ～ 1.0㎜ の範囲外の場合は、以下の調整をおこなう。
   ※ カーソル幅が小さいと無給紙、カーソル幅が大きいと斜め給紙などが発生する可能性がある。



3. Loosen 2 adjusting screws (11) on the front deck cursor (4) and move the cursor (4) while checking with the scale (12).
4. Retighten the 2 adjusting screws (11).
5. Check that the gap between the front deck cursor (4) and the paper is between 0.5 and 1.0 mm.

---

3. Desserrer les 2 vis de réglage (11) sur le curseur de platine avant (4) et déposer le curseur (4) tout en vérifiant à l'aide de l'échelle (12).
4. Resserrer les 2 vis de réglage (11).
5. Vérifier que l'écartement entre le curseur de platine avant (4) et le papier est entre 0,5 et 1,0 mm.

---

3. Afloje 2 tornillos de ajuste (11) en el cursor frontal de la plataforma (4) y mueva el cursor (4) mientras verifica con la escala (12).
4. Vuelva a apretar los 2 tornillos de ajuste (11).
5. Verifique que la separación entre el cursor frontal de la plataforma (4) y el papel sea de entre 0,5 y 1,0 mm.

---

3. Lösen Sie 2 Einstellschrauben (11) am vorderen Konsole-Cursor (4) und versetzen Sie den Cursor (4) unter Beobachtung der Skale (12).
4. Die 2 Einstellschrauben (11) wieder anziehen.
5. Vergewissern Sie sich, dass der Abstand zwischen dem vorderen Konsole-Cursor (4) und dem Papier im Bereich 0,5 bis 1,0 mm liegt.

---

3. Allentare le 2 viti di regolazione (11) sul cursore frontale del deck (4), e quindi rimuovere il cursore (4) controllando la scala (12).
4. Ristringere le 2 viti di regolazione (11).
5. Controllare che lo spazio tra il cursore frontale del deck (4) e la carta sia compreso nella gamma tra 0,5 e 1,0 mm.

---

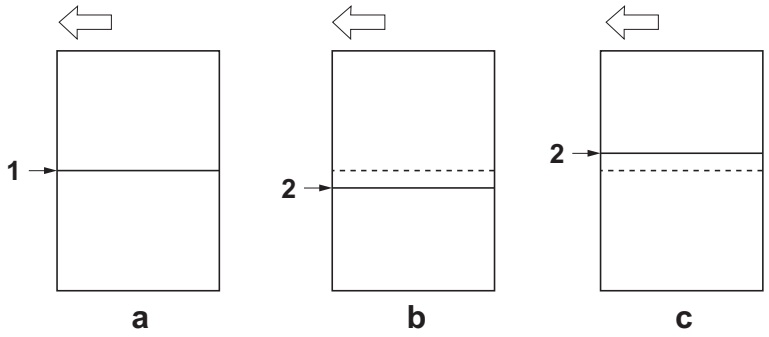
3. 拧松前部纸张长度调节片 (4) 的 2 颗调节螺丝 (11)，边确认刻度 (12) 边移动前部纸张长度调节片 (4)。
4. 拧紧 2 颗调节螺丝 (11)。
5. 确认堆纸板前部游标 (4) 与纸张的间隙在 0.5 ～ 1.0㎜ 的范围内。

---

3. 데크커서앞 (4) 의 조정나사 (11) 2 개를 풀어 눈금 (12) 을 확인하면서 데크커서앞 (4) 을 이동시킵니다 .
4. 조정나사 (11) 2 개를 조입니다 .
5. 데크커서 앞 (4) 과 용지의 틈이 0.5 ～ 1.0 mm 범위내가 되어 있는 것을 확인합니다 .

---

3. デッキカーソル前 (4) の調整ビス (11)2 本を緩め、目盛り (12) を確認しながらデッキカーソル前 (4) を移動させる。
4. 調整ビス (11)2 本を締め付ける。
5. デッキカーソル前 (4) と用紙の隙間が 0.5 ～ 1.0㎜ の範囲内になっていることを確認する。



Adjusting the center line
Check the deviation between the center (1) of a correct image (a) and the center (2) of a test pattern.
<Reference value> Wthin ± 2.0 mm
1. Set the maintenance mode U034. Select LSU Out Left and Cassette5.
2. Adjust the values.
Test pattern (b): Increase the setting value.
Test pattern (c): Decrease the setting value.
3. Press the Start key to confirm the setting value.

Réglage de l'axe
Vérifier la déviation entre l'axe (1) d'une image correcte (a) et l'axe (2) d'une forme d'essai.
<Valeur de référence> ±2,0 mm max.
1. Passer au mode maintenance U034. Sélectionner LSU Out Left et Cassette5.
2. Régler les valeurs.
Mire d' essai (b): Augmentez la valeur de réglage.
Mire d' essai (c): Diminuez la valeur de réglage.
3. Appuyer sur la touche de Start pour confirmer la valeur de réglage.

Ajuste de la línea central
Compruebe la desviación entre el centro (1) de una imagen correcta (a) y el centro (2) de un patrón de prueba.
<Valor de referencia> Dentro de ± 2,0 mm
1. Entre en el modo de mantenimiento U034. Seleccione LSU Out Left y Cassette5.
2. Ajuste los valores.
Patrón de prueba (b): Aumente el valor de configuración.
Patrón de prueba (c): Reduzca el valor de configuración.
3. Pulse la tecla de Start para confirmar el valor de configuración.

Einstellen der Mittenlinie
Überprüfen Sie die Abweichung zwischen der Mitte (1) eines korrekten Bilds (a) und der Mitte (2) eines Prüfmusters.
<Bezugswert> Innerhalb ± 2,0 mm
1. Stellen Sie den Wartungsmodus U034 ein. Wählen Sie LSU Out Left und Cassette5.
2. Die Werte einstellen.
Testmuster (b): Den Einstellwert erhöhen.
Testmuster (c): Den Einstellwert verringern.
3. Den Einstellwert durch Drücken der Start-Taste bestätigen.

Regolazione della linea centrale
Controllare la deviazione tra il centro (1) di un'immagine corretta (a) e il centro (2) di un modello di prova.
<Valore di riferimento> Entro ± 2,0 mm
1. Impostare la modalità manutenzione U034. Selezionare LSU Out Left e Cassette5.
2. Regolare i valori.
Modello di prova (b): Aumentare il valore dell'impostazione.
Modello di prova (c): Diminuire il valore dell'impostazione.
3. Premere il tasto di Start per confermare il valore dell'impostazione.

中心线调节
确认标准图像 (a) 的中心位置 (1) 与测试图案的中心位置 (2) 的偏移。
〈标准值〉±2.0㎜ 以内
1. 设置维修模式 U034，选择 LSU Out Left、Cassette5。
2. 调整设定值。
测试图案 (b)：调高设定值。
测试图案 (c)：调低设定值。
3. 按 Start 键，以确定设定值。

센터라인 조정
적정화상 (a) 의 센터 (1) 와 테스트패턴의 센터 (2) 의 차이를 확인합니다 .
<기준치> ±2.0mm 이내
1. 메인터넌스 모드 U034 을 세트하고 LSU Out Left, Cassette5 를 선택합니다 .
2. 설정치를 조정합니다 .
테트스 패턴 (b) :설정치를 높입니다 .
테스트 패턴 (c) :설정치를 내립니다 .
3. 시작키를 누르고 설정치를 확인합니다 .

センターライン調整
適正画像 (a) のセンター(1) とテストパターンのセンター(2) のずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合は調整をおこなう。
＜基準値＞ ±2.0㎜ 以内。
1. メンテナンスモード U034 をセットし、LSU Out Left、Cassette5 を選択する。
2. 設定値を調整する。
テストパターン (b) :設定値を上げる。
テストパターン (c) :設定値を下げる。
3. スタートキーを押し、設定値を確定する。

2013. 4
303NG56712-02

INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR SIDE MULTI TRAY

INSTALLATION GUIDE

GUIDE D'INSTALLATION

GUÍA DE INSTALACION

INSTALLATIONSANLEITUNG

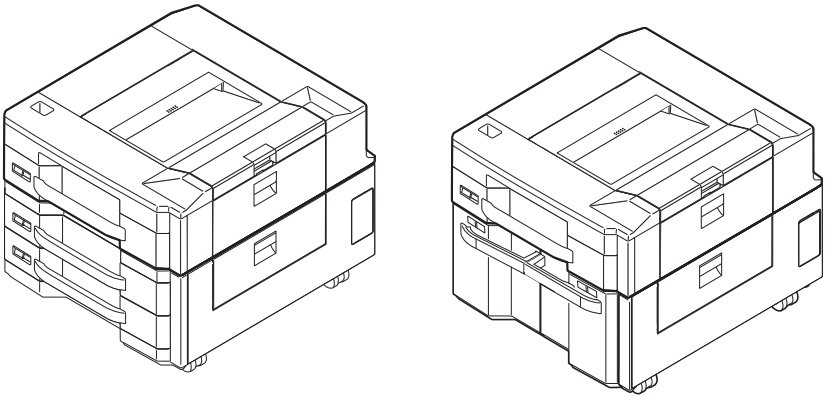
GUIDA ALL'INSTALLAZIONE

安装手册

설치안내서

設置手順書

PF-780



English

References to medium-speed MFPs in this document denote 45/45 and 55/50 ppm color machines.
References to high-speed MFPs in this document denote 65/65 and 75/70 ppm color machines, and 65 and 80 ppm monochrome machines.

Français

Dans le présent document, les références aux MFP à vitesse moyenne renvoient aux machines couleurs 45/45 et 55/50 ppm.
Dans le présent document, les références aux MFP à grande vitesse renvoient aux machines couleurs 65/65 et 75/70 ppm et aux machines monochromes 65 et 80 ppm.

Español

Las referencias a las MFP de velocidad media de este documento corresponden a las máquinas a color de 45/45 y 55/50 ppm.
Las referencias a las MFP de alta velocidad de este documento corresponden a las máquinas a color de 65/65 y 75/70 ppm y a las máquinas monocromáticas de 65 y 80 ppm.

Deutsch

Angaben für MFP der mittleren Leistungsklasse in dieser Anleitung gelten für die 45/45 und 55/50 ppm Vollfarbenkopierer.
Angaben für MFP der Hochleistungsklasse in dieser Anleitung gelten für die 65/65 und 75/70 ppm Vollfarbenkopierer sowie für die 65 und 80 ppm Monochrommaschinen.

Italiano

I riferimenti per le MFP a velocità media riportati in questo documento indicano le macchine a colori 45/45 e 55/50 ppm.
I riferimenti per le MFP a velocità alta riportati in questo documento indicano le macchine a colori 65/65 e 75/70 ppm, e le macchine monocromatiche 65 e 80 ppm.

简体中文

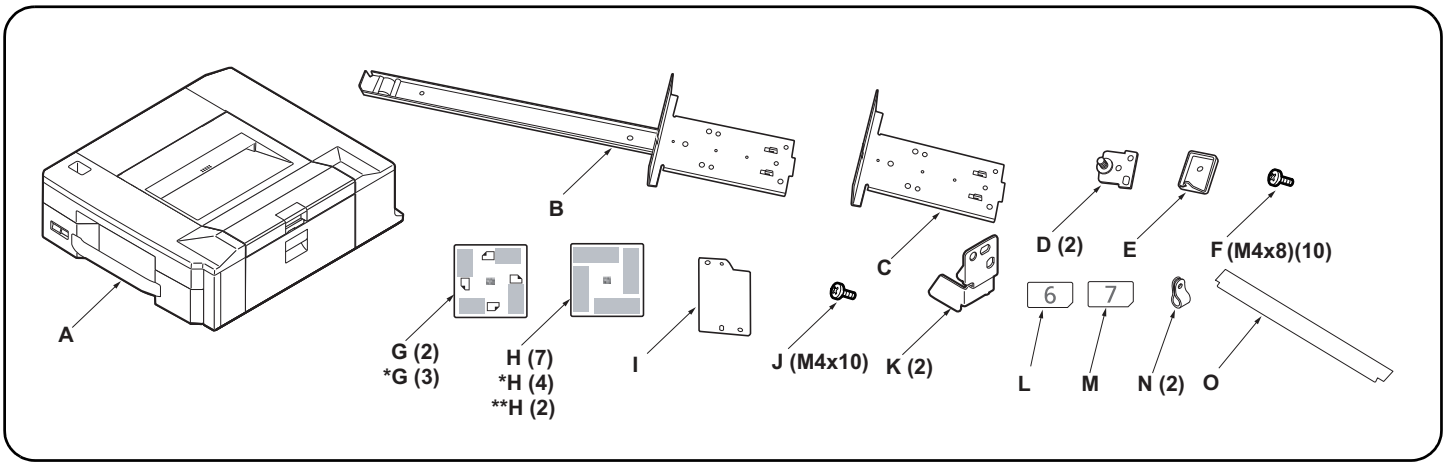
本文中的中速 MFP 代表彩色 45/45 页机型、55/50 页机型。
本文中的高速 MFP 代表彩色 65/65 页机型、75/70 页机型、黑白 65 页机型、80 页机型。

한국어

본문 중 중속 MFP 는 컬러 45/45 매기 , 55/50 매기 .
본문 중 고속 MFP 는 컬러 65/65 매기 , 75/70 매기 , 흑백 65 매기 , 80 매기를 나타냅니다 .

日本語

本文中の中速 MFP はカラー機の 45/45 枚機、55/50 枚機を表す。
本文中の高速 MFP はカラー機の 65/65 枚機、75/70 枚機、モノクロ機の 65 枚機、80 枚機を表す。



Supplied parts
A. Side multi-tray 1
B. Large base slider 1
C. Small base slider 1
D. Lock pin 2
E. Switch press plate 1
F. M4 × 8 screw 10
G. Paper size plate 2
H. Media type plate(except for 120V model) .. 7
***H.** Media type plate(120V model only) 4
I. Cover plate 1
J. M4 × 10 tapping screw 1
K. Stopper 2
L. Cassette Number Label 6 1
M. Cassette Number Label 7 1
N. Clamp 2
O. Film 1
Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning material from supplied parts.

Pièces fournies
A. Bac multiples usages latéral 1
B. Grande règle de base 1
C. Petite règle de base 1
D. Broche de verrouillage 2
E. Plaque de pression de l'interrupteur 1
F. Vis M4 × 8 10
G. Plaquette du format de papier 2
H. Plaquette du type de support 7
I. Capot 1
J. Vis de connexion M4 × 10 1
K. Butée 2
L. Étiquette de numéro de cassette 6 1
M. Étiquette de numéro de cassette 7 1
N. Collier 2
O. Film 1
Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.

Partes suministradas
A. Multi-bandeja lateral 1
B. Deslizador de base grande 1
C. Deslizador de base pequeño 1
D. Clavija de bloqueo 2
E. Placa de presión del interruptor 1
F. Tornillo M4 × 8 10
G. Placa de tamaño de papel 2
H. Placa de tipo de medio 7
I. Tapa 1
J. Tornillo de roscado M4 × 10 1
K. Tope 2
L. Etiqueta de casete con el número 6 1
M. Etiqueta de casete con el número 7 1
N. Abrazadera 2
O. Película 1
Asegúrese de despegar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.

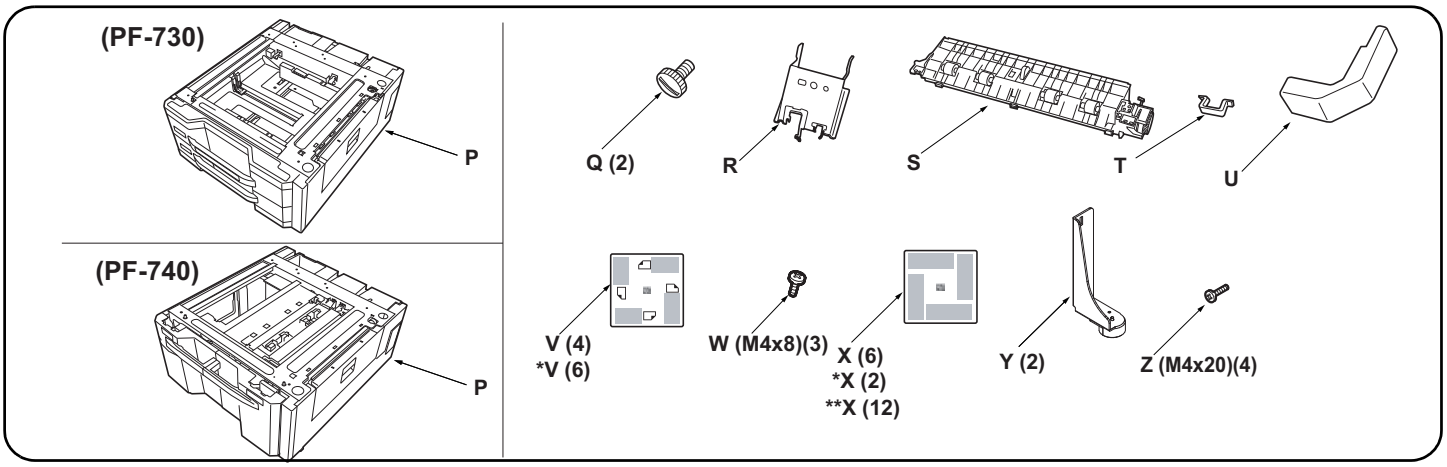
Gelieferte Teile
A. Seitliches Mehrzweck-Papierfach 1
B. Großer Basis-Schieber 1
C. Kleiner Basis-Schieber 1
D. Arretierstift 2
E. Schalterdruckplatte 1
F. M4 × 8 Schraube 10
G. Papierformatkarte 2
H. Medientypkarte 7
I. Abdeckplatte 1
J. M4 × 10 Schneidschraube 1
K. Anschlag 2
L. Aufkleber Kassettennummer 6 1
M. Aufkleber Kassettennummer 7 1
N. Schelle 2
O. Film 1
Entfernen Sie Klebeband und/oder Dämpfungsmaterial vollständig von den mitgelieferten Teilen.

Parti di fornitura
A. Vassoio multiplo laterale 1
B. Scivolo di base grande 1
C. Scivolo di base piccolo 1
D. Perno di bloccaggio 2
E. Piastra spingi interruttore 1
F. Vite M4 × 8 10
G. Piastra formato carta 2
H. Piastra tipo carta 7
I. Coperchio 1
J. Vite autofilettante M4 × 10 1
K. Fermo 2
L. Etichetta numero cassetta 6 1
M. Etichetta numero cassetta 7 1
N. Fascetta 2
O. Pellicola 1
Accertarsi di rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o il materiale di imbottitura dalle parti fornite.

附属品
A. 侧手送纸盘 1
B. 底座滑板（大） 1
C. 底座滑板（小） 1
D. 锁定插销 2
E. 开关挡板 1
F. M4×8 螺丝 10
*G. 纸张尺寸标示 3
**H. 纸张种类标示 2
I. 盖板 1
J. M4×10 自攻螺丝 1
K. 挡块 2
L. 纸盒编号标签 6 1
M. 纸盒编号标签 7 1
N. 束线夹 2
O. 胶片 1
如果附属品上带有固定胶带，缓冲材料时务必揭下。

동봉품
A. 사이드 멀티 트레이 1
B. 베이스 슬라이더 대 1
C. 베이스 슬라이더 소 1
D. 잠금 핀 2
E. 스위치 판 1
F. 나사 M4×8 10
G. 용지크기 플레이트 2
**H. 용지종류 플레이트 2
I. 커버 플레이트 1
J. 탑핑 나사 M4×10 1
K. 스토퍼 2
L. 카세트 넘버 라벨 6 1
M. 카세트 넘버 라벨 7 1
N. 클램프 2
O. 필름 1
동봉품에 고정 테이프 , 완충재가 붙어 있는 경우에는 반드시 제거할 것 .

PF-780 同梱品
A. サイドマルチトレイ 1
B. ベーススライダー大 1
C. ベーススライダー小 1
D. ロックピン 2
E. スイッチ当たり板 1
F. ビス M4×8 10
G. 用紙サイズプレート 2
**H. 用紙種類プレート 2
I. カバープレート 1
J. タッピングビス M4×10 1
K. ストッパー 2
L. カセットナンバーラベル 6 1
M. カセットナンバーラベル 7 1
N. クランプ 2
O. フィルム 1
同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材がついている場合は、必ず取り外すこと。



PF-730/740 Supplied parts

P. Paper feeder 1
Q. Pin 2
R. Retainer 1
S. Intermediate paper conveying unit 1
T. Clamp 1
U. Wire cover 1
V. Paper size plate 4
W. S Tite screw M4 × 8 3
X. Media type plate(120V model only) 6
***X.** Media type plate (PF-730:110V model only) 2
****X.** Media type plate (except for above models) 12
Y. Stopper 2
Z. S Tite screws M4 × 20 4

Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning material from supplied parts.

Do not use the following parts when installing PF-780: (R), (Y), (Z) and one (W).

PF-730/740 Pièces fournies

P. Bureau papier 1
Q. Broche 2
R. Élément de retenue 1
S. Unité de transport du papier intermédiaire 1
T. Collier 1
U. Couvercle de câble 1
V. Plaquette du format de papier 4
W. Vis S Tite M4 × 8 3
****X.** Plaquette du type de support 12
Y. Butée 2
Z. Vis S Tite M4 × 20 4

Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies

Ne pas utiliser les pièces suivantes pour l'installation de la PF-780 : (R), (Y), (Z) et un (W).

PF-730/740 Partes suministradas

P. Alimentador de papel 1
Q. Clavija 2
R. Retén 1
S. Unidad de transporte de papel intermedia. 1
T. Sujetador 1
U. Cubierta para el cable 1
V. Placa de tamaño de papel 4
W. Tornillo S Tite M4 × 8 3
****X.** Placa de tipo de medio 12
Y. Tope 2
Z. Tornillos S Tite M4 × 20 4

Asegúrese de despegar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.

No utilice las piezas siguientes cuando instale la PF-780: (R), (Y), (Z) y una (W).

PF-730/740 Gelieferte Teile

P. Papiereinzug 1
Q. Stift 2
R. Halterung 1
S. Eingesetzte Papierfördereinheit 1
T. Klemme 1
U. Kabelabdeckung 1
V. Papierformatkarte 4
W. S-Tite-Schraube M4 × 8 3
****X.** Medientypkarte 12
Y. Anschlag 2
Z. S-Tite-Schrauben M4 × 20 4

Entfernen Sie Klebeband und/oder Dämpfungsmaterial vollständig von den mitgelieferten Teilen.

Die folgenden Teile bei der Installation von PF-780 nicht verwenden: (R), (Y), (Z) und ein (W).

PF-730/740 Parti di fornitura

P. Unità di alimentazione della carta 1
Q. Perno 2
R. Fermo 1
S. Unità intermediale di trasporto carta 1
T. Morsetto 1
U. Coperchio cavi 1
V. Piastra formato carta 4
W. Vite S Tite M4 × 8 3
****X.** Piastra tipo carta 12
Y. Fermo 2
Z. Vite S Tite M4 × 20 4

Accertarsi di rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o il materiale di imbottitura dalle parti fornite.

Non utilizzare le seguenti parti quando si installa PF-780: (R), (Y), (Z) e uno (W).

PF-730/740 附属品

P. 供纸工作台 1
Q. 固定插销 2
R. 安装板 1
S. 中间搬运单元 1
T. 夹钳 1
U. 电线盖板 1
*V. 纸张尺寸标示 (PF-730) 6
V. 纸张尺寸标示 (PF-740) 4
W. 紧固型 S 螺丝 M4×8 3
*X. 纸张种类标示 2
Y. 限位器 2
Z. 紧固型 S 螺丝 M4 × 20 4

如果附属品上带有固定胶带，缓冲材料时务必揭下。
设置 PF-780 时，不使用以下部件：(R) (Y) (Z) 和 1 颗 (W)

PF-730/740 동봉품

P. 급지대 1
Q. 핀 2
R. 부착판 1
S. 중간반송유니트 1
T. 크램프 1
U. 전선커버 1
V. 용지크기 플레이트 4
W. 나사 M4×8S 타이트 3
*X. 용지종류 플레이트 2
Y. 전도방지쇠 2
Z. 나사 M4×20 S 타이트 4

동봉품에 고정 테이프 , 완충재가 붙어 있는 경우에는 반드시 제거할 것 .

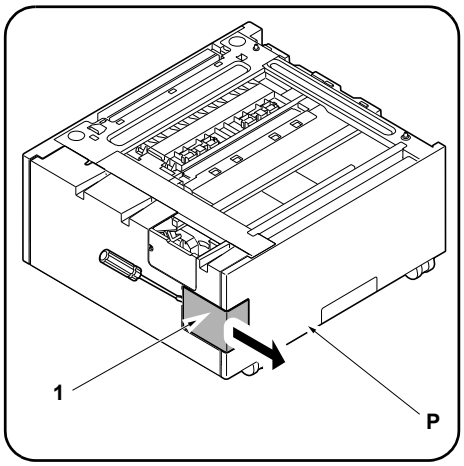
PF-780 을 설치할 경우에는 하기 부품은 사용하지 않음 : (R) (Y) (Z) 과 (W) 1 개

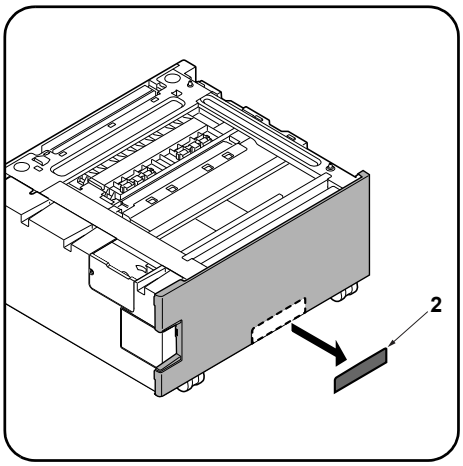
PF-730/740 同梱品

P. ペーパーフィーダー 1
Q. ピン 2
R. 取付板 1
S. 中間搬送ユニット 1
T. クランプ 1
U. 電線カバー 1
V. 用紙サイズプレート 4
W. ビス M4×8S タイト 3
*X. 用紙種類プレート 2
Y. 転倒防止金具 2
Z. ビス M4×20 S タイト 4

同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。

PF-780 を設置する場合は、下記のパーツは使用しない：(R) (Y) (Z) と (W) 1 本





Procedure
Be sure to turn the machine main power switch off and disconnect the machine power plug from the wall outlet before starting to install the side feeder.

[Side feeder assembly]
1. Remove the cover (1) of the paper feeder (P).
(Do not use cover (1).)

2. Cut the ribs with a nipper, and then remove the breakaway cover (2).

Procédure
Veiller à bien mettre la machine hors tension et à débrancher la fiche d'alimentation de la prise murale avant de commencer l'installation du chargeur latéral.

[Ensemble plateau d'alimentation latéral]
1. Déposer le capot (1) du bureau papier (P).
(Ne pas utiliser le capot (1).)

2. Couper les nervures avec une pince, puis déposer le couvercle amovible (2)

Procedimiento
Asegúrese de apagar el interruptor principal de la máquina y de desconectar el enchufe de la máquina del receptáculo de pared antes de empezar a instalar el depósito lateral.

[Ensamblaje del alimentador lateral]
1. Quite la cubierta (1) del alimentador de papel (P).
(No utilice la cubierta (1).)

2. Recorte las nervaduras con unos alicates de corte y, a continuación, retire la cubierta divisoria (2).

Verfahren
Schalten Sie unbedingt den Hauptschalter des Geräts aus und ziehen Sie den Netzstecker des Geräts von der Netzsteckdose ab, bevor Sie mit der Installation des Papiereinzugs beginnen.

[Seitlicher Einzug]
1. Die Abdeckung (1) des Papiereinzugs (P) abnehmen.
(Die Abdeckung (1) nicht verwenden.)

2. Die Rippen mit einer Zange schneiden und dann die Ablösungsabdeckung (2) entfernen.

Procedura
Prima di installare l'alimentatore laterale, spegnere la macchina e scollegare la spina dalla presa di corrente a muro.

[Assemblaggio unità di alimentazione laterale]
1. Rimuovere il coperchio (1) dall'unità di alimentazione della carta (P).
(Non usare il coperchio (1).)

2. Tagliare le pieghe con una pinzetta e poi rimuovere il coperchio di distacco (2).

安装步骤
安装侧供纸盒时，必须先关闭 机器 主机上的主电源开关，并拔出电源插头后方可进行工作。

[侧供纸盒的装配]
1. 拆下供纸工作台 (P) 的盖板 (1)。
(不使用盖板 (1)。)

2. 使用剪钳切断肋板，切除切割盖板 (2)。

설치순서
사이드 피더 설치를 시작하기 전에 본체의 주 전원 스위치를 끄고 본체 전원 플러그를 벽 콘센트에서 빼도록 합니다 .

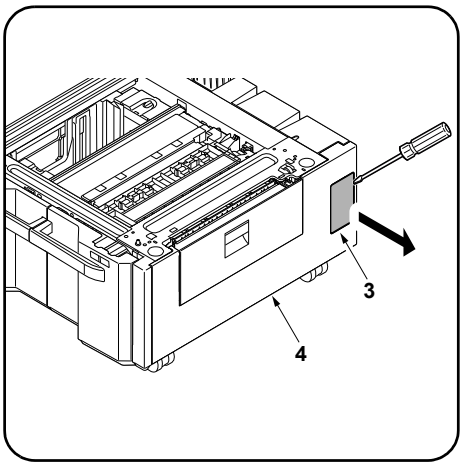
[사이드 피더 조립]
1. 용지 급지대 (P) 의 커버 (1) 을 제거합니다 .
(커버 (1) 은 사용하지 않습니다 .)

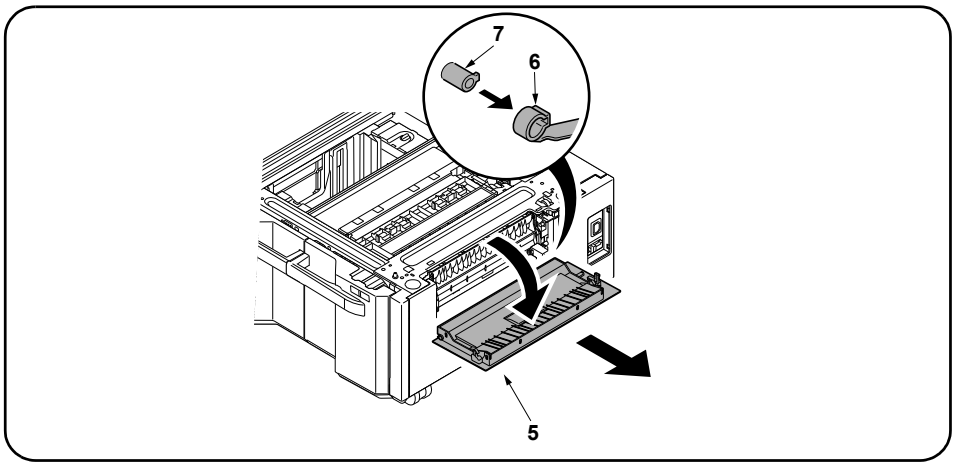
2. 니퍼로 리브를 자르고 분할커버 (2) 를 떼어 냅니다 .

取付手順
サイドフィーダーを設置するときは、必ず機械本体の主電源スイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを抜いてから作業すること。

[サイドフィーダーの組み立て]
1. ペーパーフィーダー(P)のカバー(1) を取り外す。
(カバー(1)は使用しません。)

2. ニッパーでリブを切り、割りカバー(2)を切り取る。





3. Remove the panel (3) from the lower right cover (4) on the paper feeder using a flat blade screwdriver.

4. Open the paper feeder right cover (5).
Remove the strap (6) from the right cover shaft (7) and remove the right cover (5).

---

3. Déposer le panneau (3) du capot inférieur droit (4) du bureau papier en procédant à l'aide d'un tournevis à lame.

4. Ouvrir le couvercle droit du bureau papier (5).
Déposer la courroie (6) de l'axe du capot droit (7) et déposer le capot droit (5).

---

3. Quite el panel (3) de la cubierta derecha inferior (4) del alimentador de papel con un destornillador de pala plana.

4. Abra la cubierta derecha del alimentador de papel (5).
Quite la correa (6) del eje de la cubierta derecha (7) y quite la cubierta derecha (5).

---

3. Nehmen Sie mit einem flachen Schraubendreher die Platte (3) von der unteren rechten Abdeckung (4) des Papiereinzugs ab.

4. Die rechte Abdeckung (5) des Papiereinzugs öffnen.
Nehmen Sie den Riemen (6) von der Welle (7) der rechten Abdeckung und dann die rechte Abdeckung (5) ab.

---

3. Rimuovere il pannello (3) dal coperchio destro inferiore (4) sull'unità di alimentazione carta utilizzando un cacciavite a testa piana.

4. Aprire il coperchio destro (5) dell'unità di alimentazione della carta.
Rimuovere la cinghietta (6) dall'asta (7) del coperchio destro e quindi rimuovere il coperchio destro (5).

---

3. 使用一字螺丝刀等将供纸盒的右下部盖板 (4) 的盖子 (3) 拆下。

4. 打开供纸盒的右部盖板 (5)。
从右盖板的轴 (7) 上拆除挂绳 (6)，拆下右盖板 (5)。

---

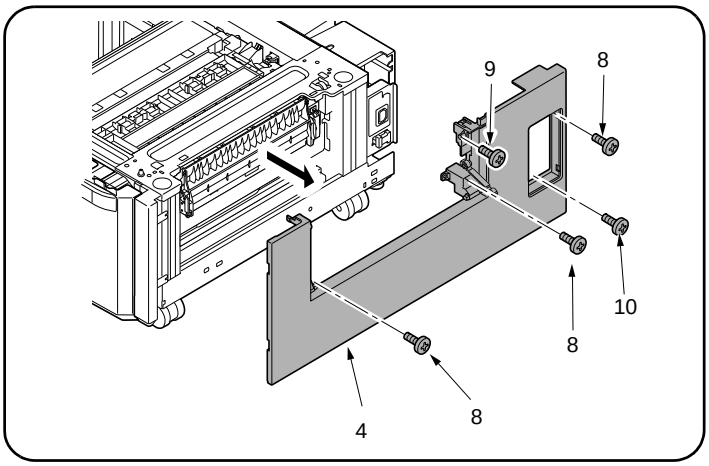
3. 용지 급지대의 우측 하단커버 (4) 의 뚜껑 (3) 을 마이너스 드라이버 등으로 떼어 냅니다 .

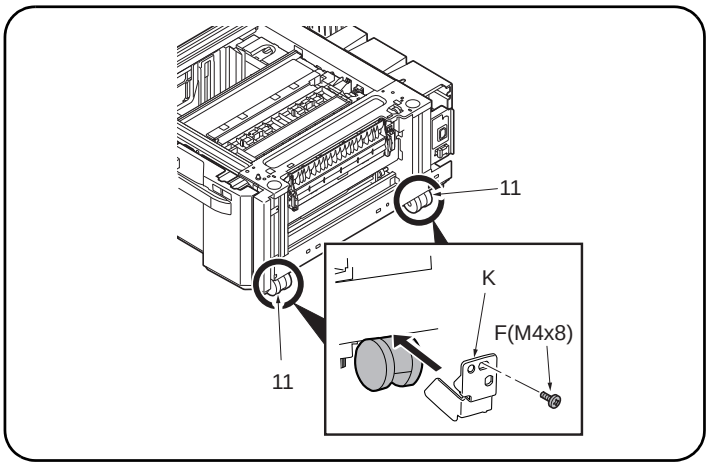
4. 급지대 우측커버 (5) 를 엽니다 .
스트랩 (6) 을 우측커버의 축 (7) 에서 떼어내고 우측커버 (5) 를 제거합니다 .

---

3. ペーパーフィーダーの右下カバー(4) のふた (3) をマイナスドライバーなどで取る。

4. ペーパーフィーダーの右カバー(5) を開く。
ストラップ (6) を右カバーの軸 (7) から外し、右カバー(5) を取り外す。





For PF-730

5. Remove 3 screws (8) and a screw (9) and remove the paper feeder lower right cover (4).

For PF-740

5. Remove 3 screws (8) and a screw (10) and remove the paper feeder lower right cover (4).

6. Align the 2 paper feeder casters (11) in the direction shown in the illustration, and fasten each of them to stopper (K) using an M4 × 8 screw (F).

7. Reinstall the paper feeder lower right cover (4).

8. Reinstall the paper feeder right cover (5).

Pour PF-730

5. Déposer les 3 vis (8) et la vis (9) puis déposer le capot inférieur droit du bureau papier (4).

Pour PF-740

5. Déposer les 3 vis (8) et la vis (10) puis déposer le capot inférieur droit du bureau papier (4).

6. Aligner les 2 roulettes (11) du bureau papier selon la direction indiquée sur l'illustration, et les fixer sur la butée (K) à l'aide d'une vis M4 × 8 (F).

7. Reposer le capot inférieur droit du bureau papier (4).

8. Reposer le capot droit du bureau papier (5).

Para PF-730

5. Quite los 3 tornillos (8) y el tornillo (9) y quite la cubierta derecha inferior del alimentador de papel (4).

Para PF-740

5. Quite los 3 tornillos (8) y el tornillo (10) y quite la cubierta derecha inferior del alimentador de papel (4).

6. Alinee las 2 ruedas del alimentador de papel (11) en el sentido que se indica en la ilustración, y apriételas hasta llegar al tope (K) con un tornillo M4 × 8 (F).

7. Reinstale la cubierta derecha inferior del alimentador de papel (4).

8. Reinstale la cubierta derecha del alimentador de papel (5).

Für PF-730

5. Entfernen Sie 3 Schrauben (8) und eine Schraube (9) und nehmen Sie die untere rechte Abdeckung (4) des Papiereinzugs ab.

Für PF-740

5. Entfernen Sie 3 Schrauben (8) und eine Schraube (10) und nehmen Sie die untere rechte Abdeckung (4) des Papiereinzugs ab.

6. Die 2 Laufrollen des Papiereinzugs (11) in der in der Abbildung angezeigten Richtung ausrichten und jede von ihnen mithilfe einer M4 × 8 Schraube (F) am Anschlag (K) befestigen.

7. Bringen Sie die untere rechte Abdeckung (4) des Papiereinzugs wieder an.

8. Bringen Sie die rechte Abdeckung (5) des Papiereinzugs wieder an.

Per PF-730

5. Rimuovere le 3 viti (8) e una vite (9), e quindi rimuovere il coperchio destro inferiore (4) dell'unità di alimentazione carta.

Per PF-740

5. Rimuovere le 3 viti (8) e una vite (10), e quindi rimuovere il coperchio destro inferiore (4) dell'unità di alimentazione carta.

6. Allineare le ruote orientabili dell'unità di alimentazione della carta (11) nella direzione mostrata nell'illustrazione e stringere ognuno al fermo (K) con una vite M4 × 8 (F).

7. Reinstallare il coperchio destro inferiore dell'unità di alimentazione carta (4).

8. Reinstallare il coperchio destro (5) dell'unità di alimentazione carta.

PF-730 时

5. 拆除 3 颗螺丝 (8) 和 1 颗螺丝 (9)，拆下供纸盒的右下部盖板 (4)。

PF-740 时

5. 拆除 3 颗螺丝 (8) 和 1 颗螺丝 (10)，拆下供纸盒的右下部盖板 (4)。

6. 将供纸工作台的 2 个脚轮（11）与图示方向对齐，各使用 1 颗 M4×8 螺丝（F）来安装挡块（K）。

7. 按原样安装供纸盒的右下部盖板 (4)。

8. 按原样安装供纸盒的右盖板 (5)。

PF-730 의 경우

5. 나사 (8) 3 개와 나사 (9) 1 개를 제거하고 , 용지 급지대의 우측 하단커버 (4) 를 제거합니다 .

PF-740 의 경우

5. 나사 (8) 3 개와 나사 (10) 1 개를 제거하고 , 용지 급지대의 우측 하단커버 (4) 를 제거합니다 .

6. 용지 급지대의 캐스터 (11) 2 개를 일러스트의 방향에 맞춰 각각 스토퍼 (K) 를 나사 M4×8 (F) 1 개로 장착합니다 .

7. 용지 급지대의 우측 하단커버 (4) 를 원래대로 장착합니다 .

8. 용지 급지대의 우측커버 (5) 를 원래대로 장착합니다 .

PF-730 の場合

ビス (8)3 本とビス (9)1 本を外して、ペーパーフィーダーの右下カバー (4) を取り外す。

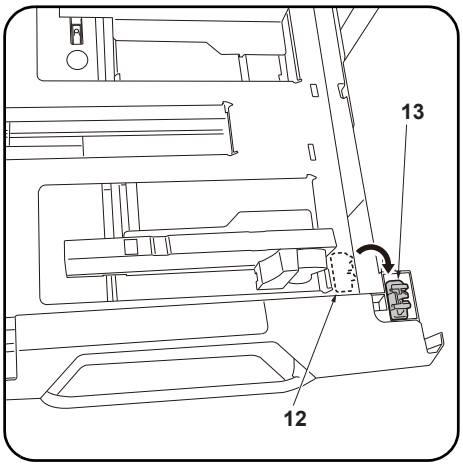
PF-740 の場合

5. ビス (8)3 本とビス (10)1 本を外して、ペーパーフィーダーの右下カバー (4) を取り外す。

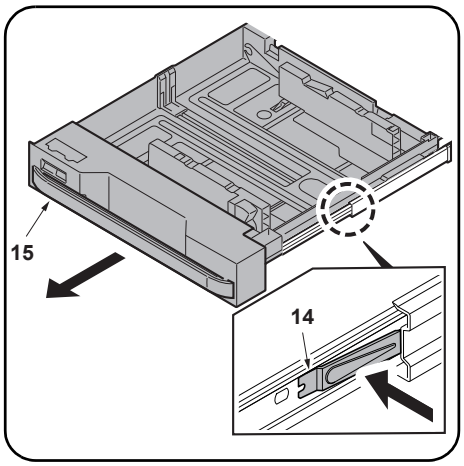
6. ペーパーフィーダーのキャスター (11)2 個をイラストの方向に合わせ、それぞれストッパー (K) をビス M4×8 (F)1 本で取り付ける。

7. ペーパーフィーダーの右下カバー (4) を元通り取り付ける。

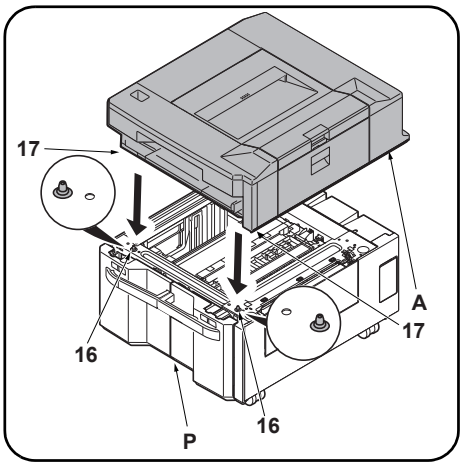
8. ペーパーフィーダーの右カバー (5) を元通り取り付ける。



9. Pull out the cassette of the side multi-tray, remove a lift plate stopper (12) and attach it in the storage location (13).



10. Press the release lever(14) and remove the cassette (15) of the side multi-tray (A).



11. Place the side multi-tray on the paper feeder (P) so that each pin (16) on the right and left sides of the front of the paper feeder (P) matches with the holes(17) in the base of the side multi-tray (A).

---

9. Tirer la cassette du bac multiples usages latéral vers l'extérieur, retirer la butée de plaque d'élévation (12) et la fixer à l'emplacement de rangement (13).

10. Appuyez sur le levier de libération (14) et retirez le magasin (15) du bac multiples usages latéral (A).

11. Placer le bac multiples usages latéral sur le bureau papier (P) de sorte à aligner chacune des broches (16) situées sur les côtés droit et gauche du devant du bureau papier (P) avec les orifices(17) de la base du bac multiples usages latéral (A).

---

9. Saque el casete de la multi-bandeja lateral, quite el tope de placa de elevación (12) y póngalo en el espacio reservado para guardarlo (13).

10. Presione sobre la palanca de liberación (14) y quite el depósito (15) del bypass lateral (A).

11. Coloque la multi-bandeja lateral sobre el alimentador de papel (P) de tal manera que los pasadores (16) que se encuentran a izquierda y derecha en la parte delantera del alimentador de papel (P) coincidan con los agujeros(17) que hay en la base de la multi-bandeja lateral (A).

---

9. Die Kassette aus dem seitlichen Mehrzweck-Papierfach herausziehen, den Hebeplattenanschlag (12) entfernen und an der Speicherposition (13) anbringen.

10. Drücken Sie den Freigabehebel (14) und entfernen Sie die Kassette (15) des seitlichen Mehrfacheinzugs (A).

11. Das seitliche Mehrzweck-Papierfach auf dem Papiereinzug (P) so platzieren, dass jeder Stift (16) auf der linken und rechten Vorderseite des Papiereinzugs (P) mit den Öffnungen(17) am Boden des seitlichen Mehrzweck-Papierfachs (A) übereinstimmt.

---

9. Estrarre il cassetto del vassoio multiplo laterale, rimuovere il fermo della piastra di sollevamento (12) e collegarlo nella posizione di stoccaggio (13).

10. Premere la leva di rilascio (14) e rimuovere il cassetto (15) del vassoio multiplo laterale (A).

11. Porre il vassoio multiplo laterale sull'unità di alimentazione della carta (P) in modo che ogni punta (16) a destra e sinistra davanti all'unità di alimentazione della carta (P) corrisponda i fori(17) nella base del vassoio multiplo laterale (A).

---

9. 拉出侧手送纸盘的纸盒，拆除 1 个升降板挡块 (12) 并将其安装到保存场所 (13)。

10. 压住解除杆 (14)，取出侧手送纸盘 (A) 的纸盒 (15)。

11. 将供纸工作台 (P) 左右前方的各插销 (16) 与侧手送纸盘 (A) 的底座的孔 (17) 对齐，将侧手送纸盘 (A) 放在供纸工作台 (P) 上。

---

9. 사이드 멀티 트레이 카세트를 빼 내고 리프트판 스토퍼 (12) 1 개를 빼 내어 보관장소 (13) 에 장착합니다 .

10. 해제 레버 (14) 를 누르고 사이드 멀티 트레이 (A) 의 카세트 (15) 를 제거합니다 .

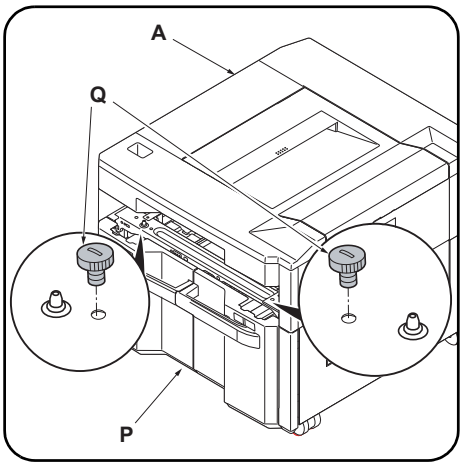
11. 용지 급지대 (P) 의 좌우전방의 각 핀 (16) 과 사이드 멀티 트레이 (A) 의 베이스 구멍 (17) 이 맞도록 용지 급지대 (P) 에 사이드 멀티 트레이 (A) 를 얹습니다 .

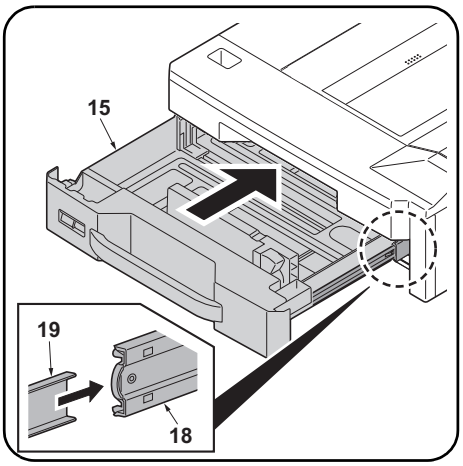
---

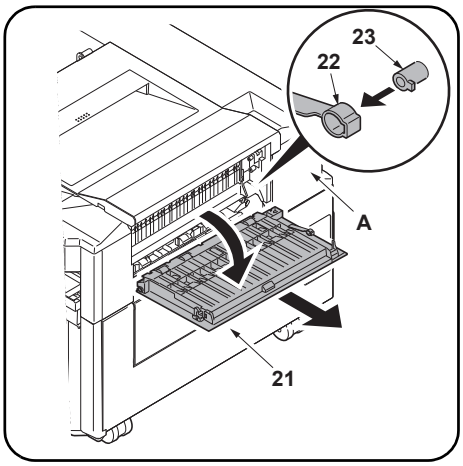
9. サイドマルチトレイのカセットを引き出し、リフト板ストッパー(12)1 個を外して保管場所 (13) に取り付ける。

10. 解除レバー(14) を押して、サイドマルチトレイ (A) のカセット (15) を取り外す。

11. ペーパーフィーダー(P) の左右前方の各ピン (16) とサイドマルチトレイ (A) のベースの穴 (17) が合うように、ペーパーフィーダー(P) にサイドマルチトレイ (A) を載せる。







12. Attach side multi-tray (A) to paper feeder (P) using 2 pins (Q).

13. Insert the cassette (15) into the side multi-tray.
Align the cassette slider (19) with the cassette slider (18) and insert the cassette.
14. Push the cassette (15) in fully.

15. Open the right cover (21) of the side multi-tray (A).
16. Remove the strap (22) from the right cover shaft (23) and remove the right cover (21).

---

12. Fixer le bac multiples usages latéral (A) au bureau papier (P) à l'aide de 2 broches (Q).

13. Insérez le magasin (15) dans le bac multiples usages latéral.
Aligner la règle de cassette (19) sur la règle de cassette (18) et insérer la cassette.
14. Renfoncer complètement la cassette (15) .

15. Ouvrir le capot de droite (21) du bac multiples usages latéral (A).
16. Déposer la courroie (22) de l'axe du capot droit (23) et déposer le capot droit (21).

---

12. Sujete la multi-bandeja lateral (A) al alimentador de papel (P) utilizando 2 pasadores (Q).

13. Inserte el depósito (15) en el bypass lateral.
Alinee el deslizador del depósito (19) con el deslizador del depósito (18) e inserte el depósito.
14. Introduzca el depósito (15) hasta el fondo.

15. Abra la cubierta derecha (21) de la multi-bandeja lateral (A).
16. Quite la correa (22) del eje de la cubierta derecha (23) y quite la cubierta derecha(21).

---

12. Das seitliche Mehrzweck-Papierfach (A) mithilfe der 2 Stifte (Q) am Papiereinzug (P) befestigen.

13. Setzen Sie die Kassette (15) in den seitlichen Mehrfacheinzug ein.
Richten Sie die Teleskopschiene (19) an der Teleskopschiene (18) aus und setzen Sie die Kassette hinein.
14. Schieben Sie die Kassette (15) vollständig ins Gerät.

15. Die rechte Abdeckung (21) des seitlichen Mehrzweck-Papierfachs (A) öffnen.
16. Nehmen Sie den Riemen (22) von der Welle (23) der rechten Abdeckung und dann die rechte Abdeckung (21) ab.

---

12. Collegare il vassoio multiplo laterale (A) all'unità di alimentazione della carta (P) utilizzando 2 puntine (Q).

13. Inserire il cassetto (15) nel vassoio multiplo laterale.
Allineare lo scivolo del cassetto (19) con lo scivolo del cassetto (18) e inserire il cassetto.
14. Spingere il cassetto (15) fino in fondo.

15. Aprire il pannello destro (21) del vassoio multiplo laterale (A).
16. Rimuovere la cinghietta (22) dall'asta (23) del coperchio destro e quindi rimuovere il coperchio destro (21).

---

12. 使用 2 枚插销 (Q) 将侧手送纸盘 (A) 固定在供纸工作台 (P) 上。

13. 把纸盒 (15) 插入侧手送纸盘。
对齐纸盒宽度调节板 (19) 和纸盒宽度调节板 (18)，然后插入纸盒。
14. 完全推入纸盒 (15)。

15. 打开侧手送纸盘 (A) 的右部盖板 (21)。
16. 从右盖板的轴 (23) 上拆除挂绳 (22)，拆下右盖板 (21)

---

12. 핀 (Q) 2 개로 사이드 멀티 트레이 (A) 를 용지 급지대 (P) 에 고정합니다 .

13. 카세트 (15) 를사이드 멀티 트레이에 장착합니다 .
카세트 슬라이더 (19) 를 카세트 슬라이더 (18) 에 맞게 삽입합니다 .
14. 카세트 (15) 를 완전히 밀어 넣습니다 .

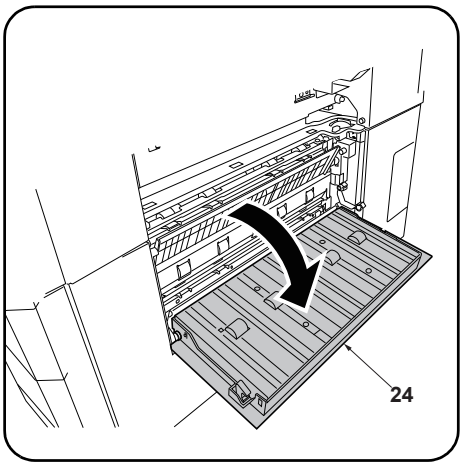
15. 사이드 멀티 트레이 (A) 의 우측커버 (21) 를 엽니다 .
16. 스트랩 (22) 을 우측커버의 축 (23) 에서 떼어내고 우측커버 (21) 를 제거합니다 .

---

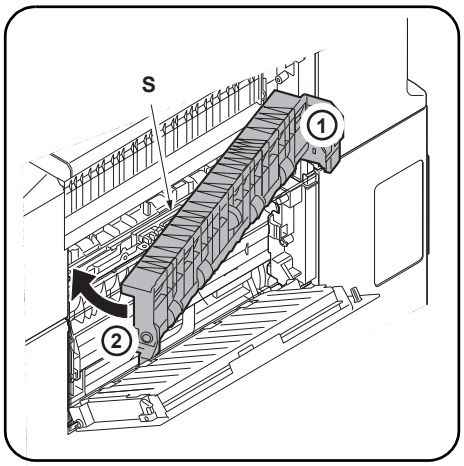
12. ピン (Q)2 本でサイドマルチトレイ (A) をペーパーフィーダー(P) に固定する。

13. カセット (15) をサイドマルチトレイに挿入する。
カセットスライダー(19) をカセットスライダー(18) に合せて挿入する。
14. カセット (15) を奥まで押し込む。

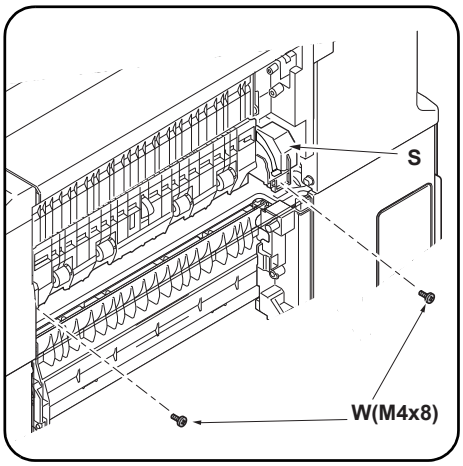
15. サイドマルチトレイ (A) の右カバー(21)を開く。
16. ストラップ (22) を右カバーの軸 (23) から外し、右カバー(21) を取り外す。



17. Open the paper feeder right cover (24).



18. Insert the intermediate paper conveying unit (S) in order of 1 to 2 on the illustration.



19. Secure the intermediate paper conveying unit (S) with the 2 S Tite screw M4 × 8 (W).

---

17. Ouvrir le couvercle droit du bureau papier (24).

18. Insérer l'unité de transport du papier intermédiaire (S) en suivant l'ordre 1 à 2 indiqué sur l'illustration.

19. Fixer l'unite de transport du papier intermediaire (S) a l'aide des 2 Vis S Tite M4 × 8 (W).

---

17. Abra la cubierta derecha del alimentador de papel (24).

18. Inserte la unidad de transporte de papel intermedia (S) siguiendo el orden de 1 a 2 de la ilustración.

19. Asegure la unidad de transporte de papel intermedia (S) con los 2 Tornillo S Tite M4 × 8 (W)

---

17. Die rechte Abdeckung (24) des Papiereinzugs öffnen.

18. Die eingesetzte Papierfördereinheit (S) in der in der Abbildung gezeigten Reihenfolge 1 bis 2 einbauen.

19. Die eingesetzte Papierfordereinheit (S) mit den 2 S-Tite-Schraube M4 × 8 (W) sichern.

---

17. Aprire il pannello destro (24) dell'unità di alimentazione della carta.

18. Inserire l'unità intermediale di trasporto carta (S) da 1 a 2 sull'illustrazione.

19. Fissare l'unita intermediale di trasporto carta (S) con le 2 Vite S Tite M4 × 8 (W).

---

17. 打开供纸盒的右部盖板 (24)。

18. 将中间搬运单元 (S) 按如图所示先插入①，再插到②。

19. 使用 2 颗紧固型 S 螺丝 M4 ×8(W) 来固定中间搬运单元 (S)。

---

17. 급지대 우측커버 (24) 를 엽니다 .

18. 중간반송 유니트 (S) 를 일러스트 와 같이 ①, ②의 순으로 삽입합니다 .

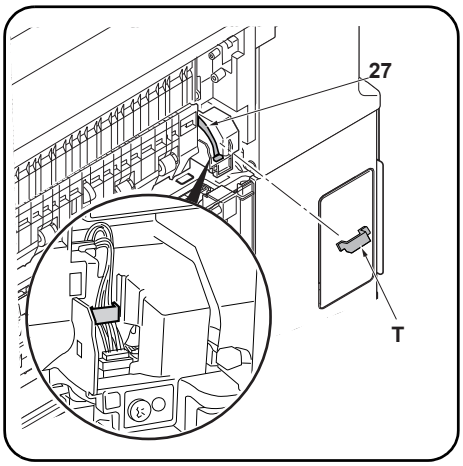
19. 나사 M4×8S 타이트 (W) 2 개로 중간반송유니트 (S) 를 고정합니다 .

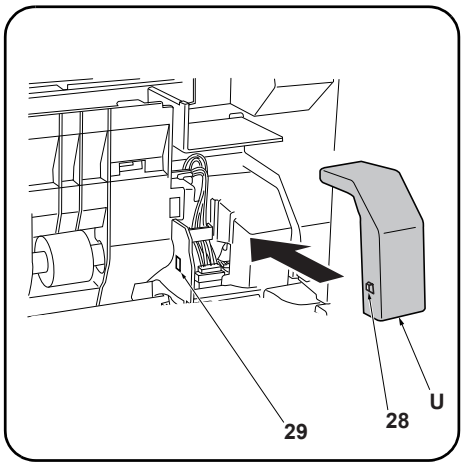
---

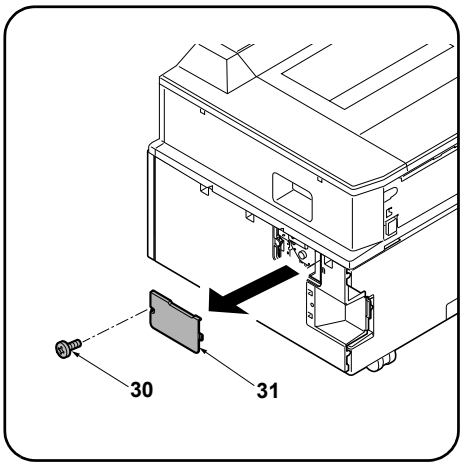
17. ペーパーフィーダーの右カバー(24)を開く。

18. 中間搬送ユニット(S)をイラストのように①から②の順で挿入する。

19. ビス M4×8S タイト (W)2 本で中間搬送ユニット (S) を固定する。







20. Connect the intermediate paper conveying unit connector (27).
21. Attach the clamp (T) and secure the connector wire.

22. Insert the projection (28) of the wire cover (U) into the hole (29) in the intermediate paper conveying unit, and attach the wire cover (U).
23. Replace the right cover (21) of the side multi-tray (A).
24. Close the right cover of the paper feeder (24).

25. Remove the screw (30) in the rear of the paper feeder and remove the cover (31).

---

20. Raccorder le connecteur (27) de l'unité de transport du papier intermédiaire.
21. Monter le collier (T) et fixer le câble du connecteur.

22. Insérer la saillie (28) du couvercle de câble (U) dans l'orifice (29) de l'unité de transport du papier intermédiaire, et fixer le couvercle de câble (U).
23. Remettre le capot de droite (21) du bac multiples usages latéral (A) en place.
24. Fermer le capot de droite du bureau papier (24).

25. Déposer la vis (30) à l'arrière du bureau papier et déposer le couvercle (31).

---

20. Conecte el conector de la unidad de transporte de papel intermedia (27).
21. Fije el sujetador (T) y asegure el cable del conector.

22. Introduzca el resalto (28) de la cubierta para el cable (U) por el agujero (29) de la unidad de transporte de papel intermedia y sujete la cubierta para el cable (U).
23. Sustituya la cubierta derecha (21) de la multibandeja lateral (A).
24. Cierre la cubierta derecha del alimentador de papel (24).

25. Quite el tornillo (30) del lado trasero del alimentador de papel y quite la cubierta (31).

---

20. Den Steckverbinder (27) der eingesetzten Papierfördereinheit anschließen.
21. Die Klemme (T) anbringen und das Kabel des Steckverbinders sichern.

22. Die Nase (28) der Kabelabdeckung (U) in die Öffnung (29) in der eingesetzten Papierfördereinheit einsetzen und die Kabelabdeckung (U) befestigen.
23. Die rechte Abdeckung (21) des seitlichen Mehrzweck-Papierfachs (A) wieder anbringen.
24. Die rechte Abdeckung des Papiereinzugs (24) schließen.

25. Die Schraube (30) an der Rückseite des Papiereinzugs entfernen und die Abdeckung (31) abnehmen.

---

20. Collegare il connettore (27) dell'unità intermediale di trasporto carta.
21. Applicare il morsetto (T) e fissare il cavo del connettore.

22. Inserire la proiezione (28) del coperchio cavi (U) nel foro (29) dell'unità intermediale di trasporto carta e collegare il coperchio cavi (U).
23. Sostituire il pannello destro (21) del vassoio multiplo laterale (A).
24. Chiudere il pannello destro dell'unità di alimentazione della carta (24).

25. Rimuovere la vite (30) nel retro dell'unità di alimentazione della carta e quindi rimuovere il coperchio (31).

---

20. 连接中间搬运单元的接插件 (27)。
21. 安装夹钳 (T)，以固定接插件电线。

22. 将电线盖板 (U) 的突起 (28) 插入中间搬运单元的孔 (29) 中，安装电线盖板 (U)。
23. 按原样安装侧手送纸盘 (A) 的右部盖板 (21)。
24. 关闭供纸工作台的右部盖板 (24)。

25. 拆除供纸盒后部的 1 颗螺丝 (30)，拆下盖板 (31) 。

---

20. 중간반송유니트의 커넥터 (27) 를 접속합니다 .
21. 클램프 (T) 를 부착 , 커넥터 전선을 고정합니다 .

22. 전선커버 (U) 의 돌기 (28) 를 중간반송 유니트의 구멍 (29) 에 넣고 전선커버 (U) 를 장착합니다 .
23. 사이드 멀티 트레이 (A) 의 우측커버 (21) 를 원래대로 장착합니다 .
24. 용지 급지대의 우측커버 (24) 를 닫습니다 .

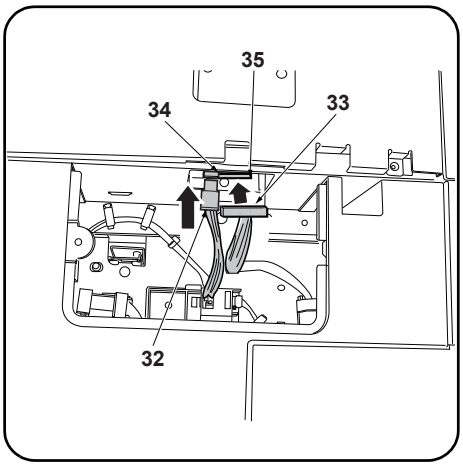
25. 급지대 후면의 뒤쪽 나사 (30) 1 개를 제거하고 커버 (31) 를 떼어 냅니다 .

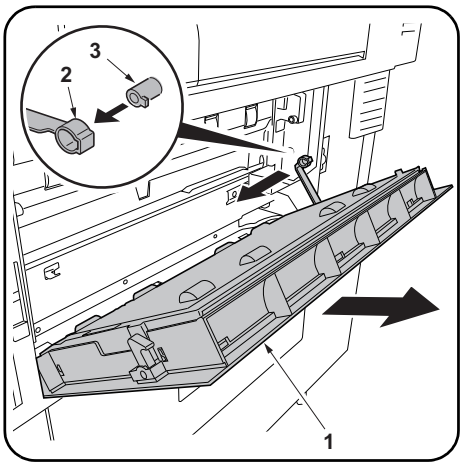
---

20. 中間搬送ユニットのコネクター(27) を接続する。
21. クランプ (T) を取り付け、コネクター電線を固定する。

22. 電線カバー(U) の突起 (28) を中間搬送ユニットの穴 (29) に入れて、電線カバー(U) を取り付ける。
23. サイドマルチトレイ (A) の右カバー(21)を元通りに取り付ける。
24. ペーパーフィーダーの右カバー(24)を閉じる。

25. ペーパーフィーダー後側のビス (30)1 本を外し、カバー(31) を取り外す。





26. Connect the power cord (32) and the signal cable (33) to connectors (34) (35) respectively on the Side multi-tray.

27. Replace the cover (31) using the screw (30) removed in step 26.

[Connecting the side feeder to the machine]
Installation with medium-speed MFPs and printers
If installing on a high-speed MFP, proceed to step 13.
1. Open the lower right cover (1) on the machine.Remove the strap (2) from the shaft (3) and remove lower right cover (1).

---

26. Raccorder respectivement le cordon d'alimentation (32) et le câble à signal (33) aux connecteurs (34) (35) du Bac multiples usages latéral.

27. Reposer le couvercle (31) à l'aide de la vis (30) déposée à l'étape 26.

[Connexion du chargeur latéral à la machine]
Installation avec les imprimantes multifonctions et les imprimantes à vitesse moyenne
Si le montage est fait sur un MFP à grande vitesse, passer à l'étape 13.
1. Ouvrir le capot inférieur droit (1) de la machine. Déposer la courroie (2) de l'arbre (3) et déposer le couvercle inférieur droit (1).

---

26. Conecte el cable de alimentación (32) y el cable de señales (33) a los conectores (34) (35) del Multi-bandeja lateral, respectivamente.

27. Vuelva a colocar la cubierta (31) usando el tornillo (30) quitado en el paso 26.

[Conexión del depósito lateral a la máquina]
Instalación con unidades MFP e impresoras de velocidad media
Si se instala en una MFP de alta velocidad, vaya al paso 13.
1. Abra la cubierta derecha inferior (1) de la máquina. Quite la correa (2) del eje (3) y quite la cubierta frontal inferior (1).

---

26. Das Netzkabel (32) und das Signalkabel (33) an den entsprechenden Steckverbindern (34) (35) des Seitliches Mehrzweck-Papierfach anschließen.

27. Die Abdeckung (31) mittels der in Schritt 26 entfernten Schraube (30) wieder anbringen.

[Anschluss des seitlichen Einzugs am Gerät.]
Installation an mittelschnellen MFPs und Druckern
Gehen Sie zur Installation an einem MFP der Hochleistungsklasse weiter zu Schritt 13.
1. Öffnen Sie die untere rechte Abdeckung (1) des Geräts.
Den Riemen (2) von der Welle (3) abnehmen und dann die untere rechte Abdeckung (1) abnehmen.

---

26. Collegare il cavo di alimentazione (32) e il cavo del segnale (33) rispettivamente ai connettori (34) e (35) sull'vassoio multiplo laterale.

27. Ricollocare il coperchio (31) utilizzando la vite (30) rimossa nel passo 26.

[Collegare l'alimentatore laterale alla macchina.]
Installazione con MFP e stampanti di media velocità
Se si installa su una MFP a velocità alta, procedere al passo 13.
1. Aprire il coperchio destro inferiore (1) sulla macchina.
Rimuovere la cinghietta (2) dall'asta (3) e quindi rimuovere il coperchio destro inferiore (1).

---

26. 将 AC 电线 (32) 以及信号线 (33) 分别与侧手送纸盘的接插件 (34)、(35) 连接。

27. 使用在步骤 26 中拆除的 1 颗螺丝 (30) 按原样安装盖板 (31)。

[侧供纸盒与机器主机的连接]
当安装到中速 MFP 和打印机上时
安装于高速 MFP 上时，进至步骤 13。
1. 打开机器主机的右下部盖板 (1)。
将带子 (2) 从轴 (3) 上拆除，拆下右下部盖板 (1)。

---

26. AC 전선 (32) 및 신호선 (33) 을 사이드 멀티 트레이체 커넥터 (34), (35) 에 각각 접속합니다 .

27. 순서 26 에서 제거한 나사 (30) 1 개로 커버 (31) 를 원래대로 부착합니다 .

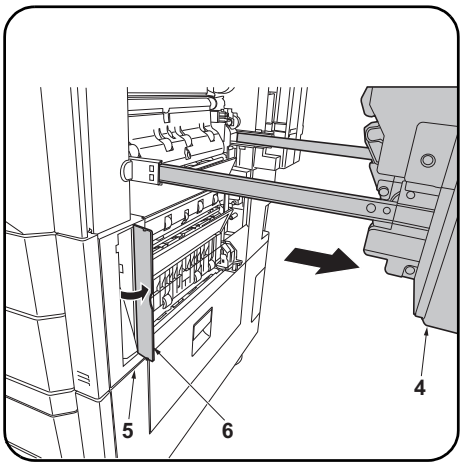
[사이드 피더와 본체 연결]
중속 MFP 또는 프린터에 설치하는 경우
고속 MFP 에 설치하는 경우에는 순서 13 로 진행합니다 .
1. 본체의 오른쪽 하단 커버 (1) 를 엽니다 .
스트라프 (2) 를 축 (3) 에서 떼어내 오른쪽 아래 커버 (1) 를 제거합니다 .

---

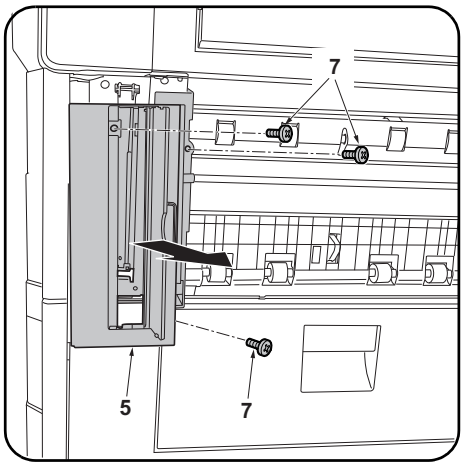
26. AC 電線 (32) および信号線 (33) をサイドマルチトレイのコネクター(34)、(35) にそれぞれ接続する。

27. 手順 25 で取り外したビス (30)1 本でカバー (31) を元通りに取り付ける。

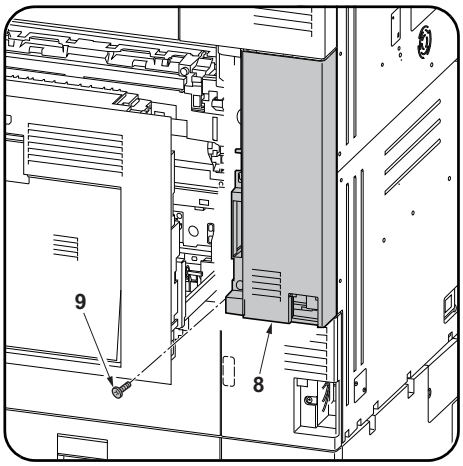
[サイドフィーダーと機械本体の接続]
中速 MFP またはプリンターに設置の場合
高速 MFP に設置の場合は手順 13 に進む。
1. 機械本体の右下カバー(1) を開く。
ストラップ (2) を軸 (3) から外し、右下カバー(1) を取り外す。



2. Open the machine paper conveying cover (4).
3. Open the panel (6) on the machine front right cover (5).



4. Remove 3 screws (7) and remove the front right cover (5).



5. Remove a screw (9) from the middle right rear cover (8).

---

2. Ouvrir le capot du transport du papier de la machine (4).
3. Ouvrir le panneau (6) sur le capot avant droit de la machine (5).

4. Déposer les 3 vis (7) et déposer le capot avant droit (5).

5. Déposer la vis (9) du capot arrière droit médian (8).

---

2. Abra la cubierta de transporte del papel de la máquina (4).
3. Abra el panel (6) en la cubierta delantera derecha (5) de la máquina.

4. Quite los 3 tornillos (7) y quite la cubierta delantera derecha (5).

5. Quite el tornillo (9) de la cubierta trasera central (8).

---

2. Öffnen Sie die Papiertransportabdeckung (4) des Geräts.
3. Öffnen Sie die Platte (6) der vorderen rechten Abdeckung (5) des Geräts.

4. Entfernen Sie 3 Schrauben (7) und nehmen Sie die vordere rechte Abdeckung (5) ab.

5. Entfernen Sie eine Schraube (9) von der mittleren rechten hinteren Abdeckung (8).

---

2. Aprire il coperchio (4) dell'unità di trasporto carta della macchina.
3. Aprire il pannello (6) sul coperchio destro anteriore (5) della macchina.

4. Rimuovere le 3 viti (7), e quindi rimuovere il coperchio destro posteriore (5).

5. Rimuovere la vite (9) dal coperchio posteriore centrale destro (8).

---

2. 打开机器主机的传输盖板 (4)。
3. 打开机器主机的右前部盖板 (5) 的盖子 (6)。

4. 拆除 3 颗螺丝 (7)，拆下右前部盖板 (5)。

5. 拆除右中后部盖板 (8) 的 1 颗螺丝 (9)。

---

2. 본체의 반송 커버 (4) 를 엽니다 .
3. 본체 오른쪽 전면 커버 (5) 의 패널 (6) 을 엽니다 .

4. 나사 (7) 3 개를 제거하고 우측 전면커버 (5) 를 떼어 냅니다 .

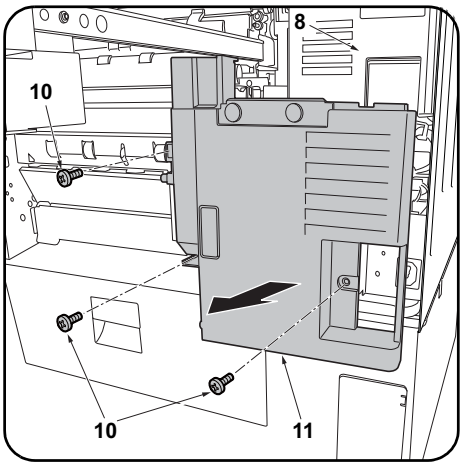
5. 우측 중간 뒷커버 (8) 의 나사 (9) 1 개를 제거합니다 .

---

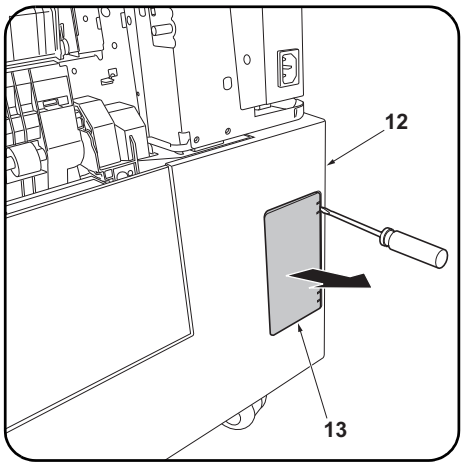
2. 機械本体の搬送カバー(4) を開く。
3. 機械本体の右前カバー(5) のふた (6) を開く。

4. ビス (7)3 本を外し、右前カバー(5) を取り外す。

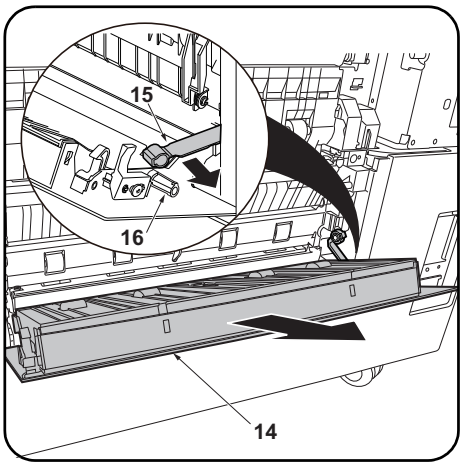
5. 右中後カバー(8) のビス (9)1 本を外す。



6. Remove 3 screws (10), then lift the bottom of the middle right rear cover (8) and remove the lower right rear cover (11).



7. Remove the panel (13) from the lower right cover (12) on the paper feeder using a flat blade screwdriver.



8. Open the paper feeder right cover (14). Remove the strap (15) from the right cover shaft (16) and remove the right cover (14).

---

6. Déposer les 3 vis (10) puis lever le bas du capot arrière droit médian (8) pour déposer le capot arrière droit inférieur (11).

7. Déposer le panneau (13) du capot inférieur droit (12) du bureau papier en procédant à l'aide d'un tournevis à lame.

8. Ouvrir le couvercle droit du bureau papier (14).
Déposer la courroie (15) de l'axe du capot droit (16) et déposer le capot droit (14).

---

6. Quite los 3 tornillos (10), luego levante la parte inferior de la cubierta trasera central derecha (8) y quite la cubierta trasera inferior derecha (11).

7. Quite el panel (13) de la cubierta derecha inferior (12) del alimentador de papel con un destornillador de pala plana.

8. Abra la cubierta derecha del alimentador de papel (14).
Quite la correa (15) del eje de la cubierta derecha (16) y quite la cubierta derecha (14).

---

6. Entfernen Sie 3 Schrauben (10), heben Sie die mittlere rechte hintere Abdeckung (8) von unten her an und nehmen Sie die untere rechte hintere Abdeckung (11) ab.

7. Nehmen Sie mit einem flachen Schraubendreher die Platte (13) von der unteren rechten Abdeckung (12) des Papiereinzugs ab.

8. Die rechte Abdeckung (14) des Papiereinzugs öffnen.
Nehmen Sie den Riemen (15) von der Welle (16) der rechten Abdeckung und dann die rechte Abdeckung (14) ab.

---

6. Rimuovere le 3 viti (10), quindi sollevare la parte in basso del coperchio posteriore centrale destro (8) e rimuovere il coperchio posteriore inferiore destro (11).

7. Rimuovere il pannello (13) dal coperchio destro inferiore (12) sull'unità di alimentazione carta utilizzando un cacciavite a testa piana.

8. Aprire il coperchio destro (14) dell'unità di alimentazione della carta.
Rimuovere la cinghietta (15) dall'asta (16) del coperchio destro e quindi rimuovere il coperchio destro (14).

---

6. 拆除 3 颗螺丝 (10)，抬起右中后部盖板 (8) 的下部，拆下右下后部盖板 (11)。

7. 使用一字螺丝刀等将供纸盒的右下部盖板 (12) 的盖子 (13) 拆下。

8. 打开供纸盒的右部盖板 (14)。
从右盖板的轴 (16) 上拆除挂绳 (15)，拆下右盖板 (14)。

---

6. 나사 (10) 3 개를 제거하고 우측 하단 뒷커버 (8) 의 하측을 올리고 우측 중간 뒷커버 (11) 를 제거합니다 .

7. 용지 급지대의 우측 하단커버 (12) 의 뚜껑 (13) 을 마이너스 드라이버 등으로 떼어 냅니다 .

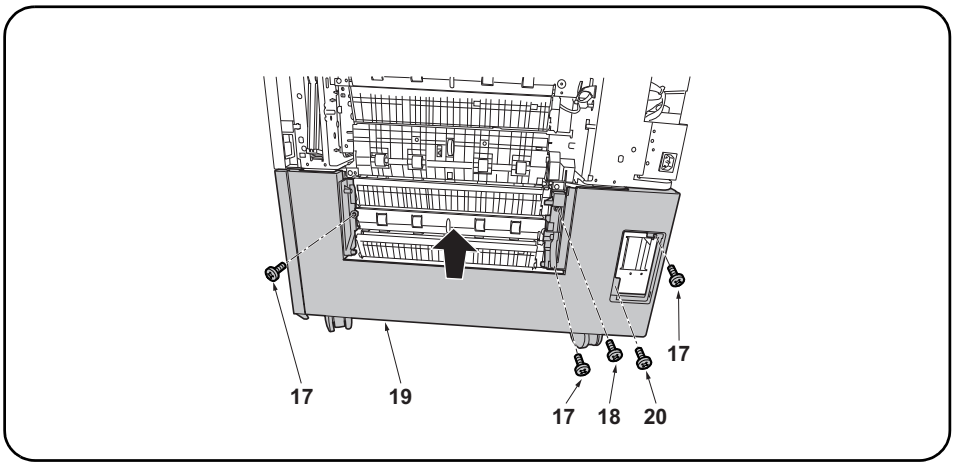
8. 급지대 우측커버 (14) 를 엽니다 .
스트랩 (15) 을 우측커버의 축 (16) 에서 떼어내고 우측커버 (14) 를 제거합니다 .

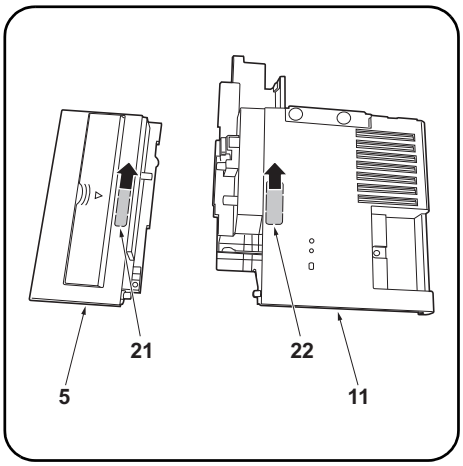
---

6. ビス (10)3 本を外し、右中後カバー(8) の下側を持ち上げて、右下後カバー(11) を取り外す。

7. ペーパーフィーダーの右下カバー(12) のふた (13) をマイナスドライバーなどで取る。

8. ペーパーフィーダーの右カバー(14) を開く。
ストラップ (15) を右カバーの軸 (16) から外し、右カバー(14) を取り外す。





For PF-730

9. Remove 3 screws (17) and a screw (18) and remove the paper feeder lower right cover (19).

For PF-740

9. Remove 3 screws (17) and a screw (20) and remove the paper feeder lower right cover (19).

10. Remove the breakaway cover (21) from the front right cover (5) and the breakaway cover (22) from the lower right rear cover (11).

Pour PF-730

9. Déposer les 3 vis (17) et la vis (18) puis déposer le capot inférieur droit du bureau papier (19).

Pour PF-740

9. Déposer les 3 vis (17) et la vis (20) puis déposer le capot inférieur droit du bureau papier (19).

10. Déposer le couvercle amovible (21) du capot avant droit (5) et le couvercle amovible (22) du capot arrière inférieur droit (11).

Para PF-730

9. Quite los 3 tornillos (17) y el tornillo (18) y quite la cubierta derecha inferior del alimentador de papel (19).

Para PF-740

9. Quite los 3 tornillos (17) y el tornillo (20) y quite la cubierta derecha inferior del alimentador de papel (19).

10. Quite la cubierta divisoria (21) de la cubierta delantera derecha (5) y la cubierta divisoria (22) de la cubierta trasera inferior derecha (11).

Für PF-730

9. Entfernen Sie 3 Schrauben (17) und eine Schraube (18) und nehmen Sie die untere rechte Abdeckung (19) des Papiereinzugs ab.

Für PF-740

9. Entfernen Sie 3 Schrauben (17) und eine Schraube (20) und nehmen Sie die untere rechte Abdeckung (19) des Papiereinzugs ab.

10. Nehmen Sie die Ablösungsabdeckung (21) von der vorderen rechten Abdeckung (5) ab und die Ablösungsabdeckung (22) von der unteren rechten hinteren Abdeckung (11).

Per PF-730

9. Rimuovere le 3 viti (17) e una vite (18), e quindi rimuovere il coperchio destro inferiore (19) dell'unità di alimentazione carta.

Per PF-740

9. Rimuovere le 3 viti (17) e una vite (20), e quindi rimuovere il coperchio destro inferiore (19) dell'unità di alimentazione carta.

10. Rimuovere il coperchio di distacco (21) dal coperchio destro anteriore (5), e il coperchio di distacco (22) dal coperchio posteriore inferiore destro (11).

PF-730 时

9. 拆除 3 颗螺丝 (17) 和 1 颗螺丝 (18)，拆下供纸盒的右下部盖板 (19)。

PF-740 时

9. 拆除 3 颗螺丝 (17) 和 1 颗螺丝 (20)，拆下供纸盒的右下部盖板 (19)。

10. 切除右前部盖板 (5) 的切割盖板 (21) 和右下后部盖板 (11) 的切割盖板 (22)。

PF-730 의 경우

9. 나사 (17) 3 개와 나사 (18) 1 개를 제거하고 , 용지 급지대의 우측 하단커버 (19) 를 제거합니다 .

PF-740 의 경우

9. 나사 (17) 3 개와 나사 (20) 1 개를 제거하고 , 용지 급지대의 우측 하단커버 (19) 를 제거합니다 .

10. 우측 전면커버 (5) 의 분할커버 (21) 와 오른쪽 하단 뒷커버 (11) 의 분할커버 (22) 를 떼어 냅니다 .

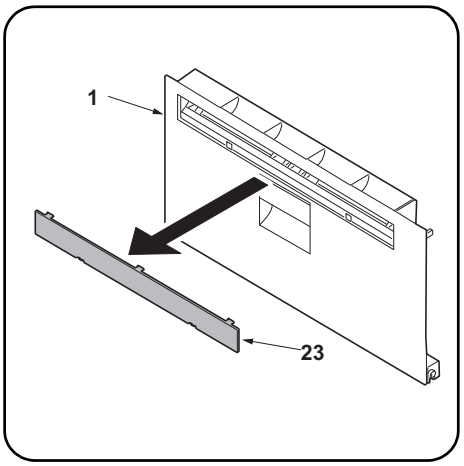
PF-730 の場合

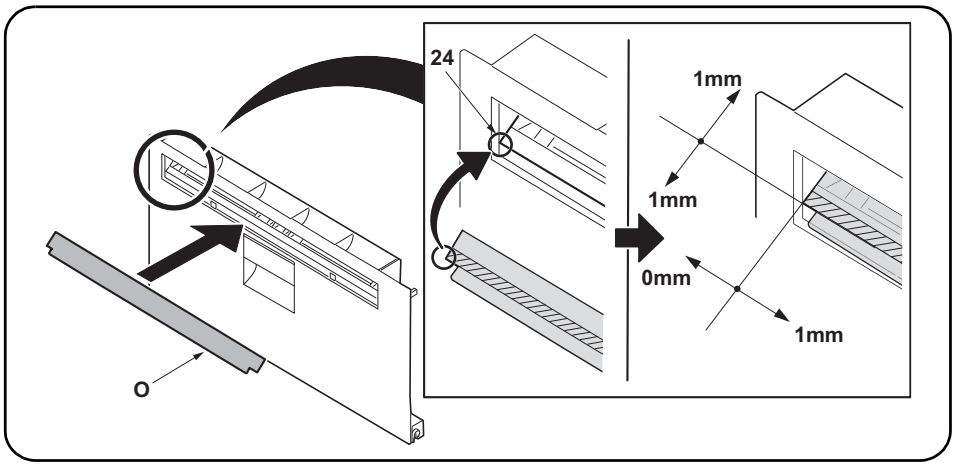
9. ビス (17)3 本とビス (18)1 本を外して、ペーパーフィーダーの右下カバー(19) を取り外す。

PF-740 の場合

9. ビス (17)3 本とビス (20)1 本を外して、ペーパーフィーダーの右下カバー(19) を取り外す。

10. 右前カバー(5) の割りカバー(21) と右下後カバー(11) の割りカバー(22) を切り取る。





11. Remove the panel (23) from the machine lower right cover (1) with a flat blade screwdriver.

12. After using alcohol to clean place adhering the film, adhere the film (O) in the position (24) indicated in the illustration.
Proceed to step 25.

---

11. Retirer le panneau (23) du capot inférieur droit de la machine (1) à l'aide d'un tournevis à lame plate.

12. Coller le film (O) sur l'emplacement (24) indiqué dans l'illustration, après avoir soigneusement nettoyé cet emplacement à l'alcool.
Passer à l'étape 25.

---

11. Extraiga el panel (23) de la cubierta derecha inferior de la máquina (1) con un destornillador de pala plana.

12. Después de utilizar alcohol para limpiar la zona donde se va a pegar la película, pegue la película (O) en el lugar (24) que se indica en la ilustración.
Vaya al paso 25.

---

11. Nehmen Sie mit einem flachen Schraubendreher die Platte (23) von der unteren rechten Abdeckung (1) des Geräts ab.

12. Zum Anbringen des Films (O) die Stelle zuvor mit Alkohol reinigen und den Film (O) dann in der in der Abbildung angegebenen Position (24) anbringen.
Gehen Sie weiter zu Schritt 25.

---

11. Rimuovere il pannello (23) dal coperchio destro inferiore (1) della macchina con un cacciavite a testa piatta.

12. Dopo aver utilizzato alcol per pulire la piastra che aderisce alla pellicola, far aderire la pellicola (O) nella posizione (24) indicata nell'illustrazione.
Procedere al passo 25.

---

11. 使用一字螺丝刀将机器主机的右下部盖板 (1) 的盖子 (23) 拆下。

12. 使用酒精对薄膜粘贴位置进行清洁后，按插图位置 (24) 粘贴薄膜 (O)。
进至步骤 25。

---

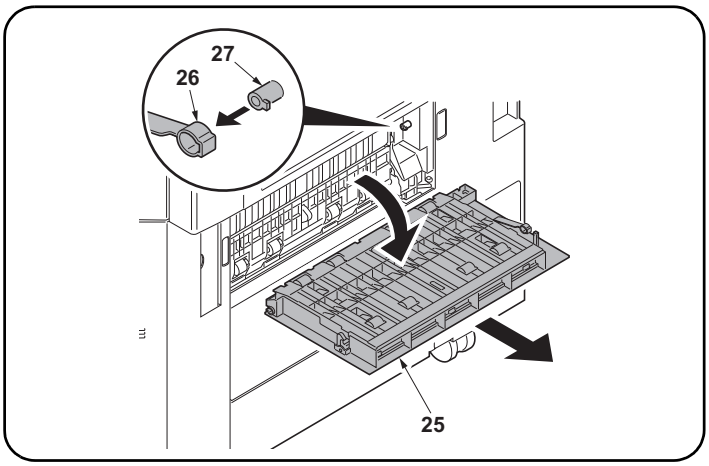
11. 일자 드라이버를 사용하여 본체 오른쪽 하단 커버 (1) 에서 패널 (23) 을 제거합니다 .

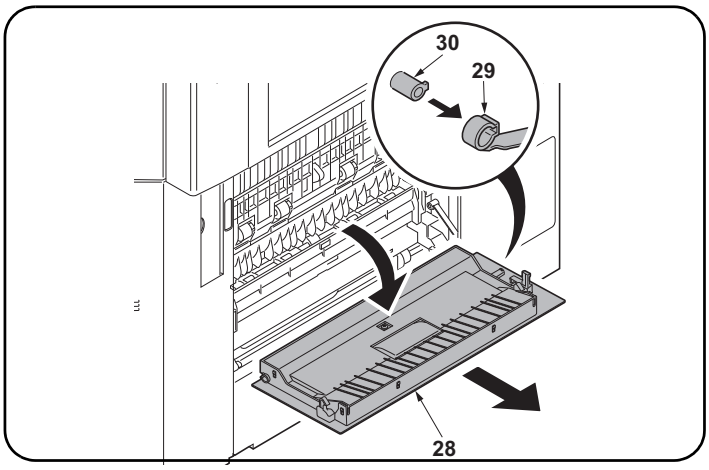
12. 필름 부착위치를 알코올 청소 후 , 일러스트의 위치 (24) 에 맞춰 필름 (O) 을 부착합니다 .
순서 25 로 진행합니다 .

---

11. 機械本体の右下カバー(1) のふた (23) をマイナスドライバーで取り外す。

12. フィルム貼り付け位置をアルコール清掃後、イラストの位置 (24) にあわせて、フィルム(0)を貼り付ける。
手順 25 に進む。





Installation on high-speed MFPs

13. Open the right cover 1 (25) on the machine.
Remove the strap (26) from the shaft (27) and remove right cover 1 (25).

14. Open the right cover 2 (28) on the machine.
Remove the strap (29) from the right cover shaft (30) and remove the right cover 2 (28).

Montage sur des MFP à grande vitesse

13. Ouvrir le capot droit 1 (25) de la machine.
Déposer la courroie (26) de l'arbre (27) et déposer le capot droit 1 (25).

14. Ouvrir le capot droit 2 (28) de la machine.
Déposer la courroie (29) de l'axe du capot droit (30) et déposer le capot droit 2 (28).

Instalación en las MFP de alta velocidad

13. Abra la cubierta derecha 1 (25) de la máquina.
Quite la correa (26) del eje (27) y quite la cubierta derecha 1 (25).

14. Abra la cubierta derecha 2 (28) de la máquina.
Quite la correa (29) del eje de la cubierta derecha (30) y quite la cubierta derecha 2 (28).

Installation an MFP der Hochleistungsklasse

13. Öffnen Sie die rechte Abdeckung 1 (25) des Geräts.
Den Riemen (26) von der Welle (27) abnehmen und dann die rechte Abdeckung 1 (25) abnehmen.

14. Öffnen Sie die rechte Abdeckung 2 (28) des Geräts.
Nehmen Sie den Riemen (29) von der Welle (30) der rechten Abdeckung und dann die rechte Abdeckung 2 (28) ab.

Installazione sulle MFP a velocità alta

13. Aprire il coperchio destro 1 (25) sulla macchina.
Rimuovere la cinghietta (26) dall'asta (27) e quindi rimuovere il coperchio destro 1 (25).

14. Aprire il coperchio destro 2 (28) sulla macchina.
Rimuovere la cinghietta (29) dall'asta (30) del coperchio destro e quindi rimuovere il coperchio destro 2 (28).

安装于高速 MFP 上时

13. 打开机器主机的右部盖板 1(25)。
将带子 (26) 从轴 (27) 上拆除，拆下右部盖板 1(25)。

14. 打开机器主机的右部盖板 2(28)。
从右盖板的轴 (30) 上拆除挂绳 (29)，拆下右盖板 2(28)。

고속 MFP 에 설치하는 경우

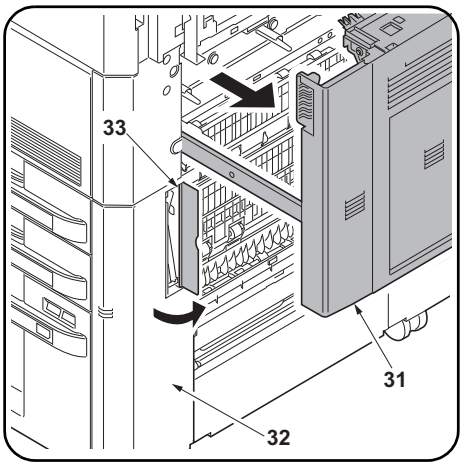
13. 본체의 오른쪽 커버 1(25) 을 엽니다 .
스트라프 (26) 를 축 (27) 에서 떼어내 우측커버 1 (25) 를 제거합니다 .

14. 본체의 오른쪽 커버 2(28) 을 엽니다 .
스트랩 (29) 을 우측커버의 축 (30) 에서 떼어내고 우측커버 2 (28) 를 제거합니다 .

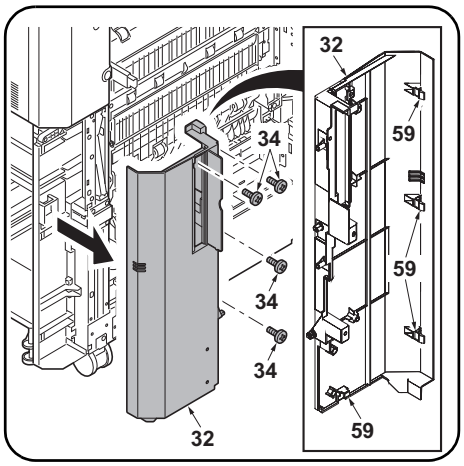
高速 MFP に設置の場合

13. 機械本体の右カバー1(25) を開く。
ストラップ (26) を軸 (27) から外し、右カバー1(25) を取り外す。

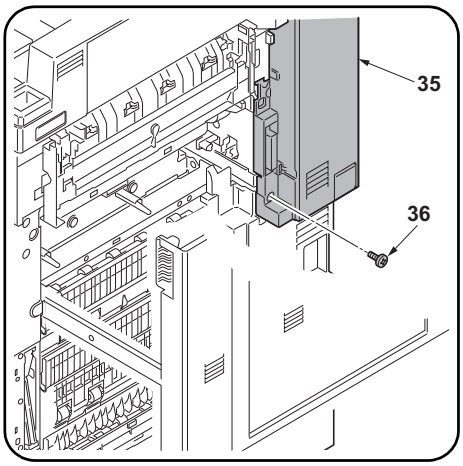
14. 機械本体の右カバー2(28) を開く。
ストラップ (29) を右カバーの軸 (30) から外し、右カバー2(28) を取り外す。



15. Open the machine paper conveying cover (31).
16. Open the panel (33) on the machine front right cover (32).



17. Remove the 4 screws (34) and release the 4 hooks (59). Then remove the front right cover (32).



18. Remove a screw (36) from the middle right rear cover (35).

---

15. Ouvrir le capot du transport du papier de la machine (31).
16. Ouvrir le panneau (33) sur le capot avant droit de la machine (32).

17. Retirer les 4 vis (34) et libérer les 4 crochets (59). Retirer ensuite le capot avant droit (32).

18. Déposer la vis (36) du capot arrière droit médian (35).

---

15. Abra la cubierta de transporte del papel de la máquina (31).
16. Abra el panel (33) en la cubierta delantera derecha (32) de la máquina.

17. Quite los 4 tornillos (34) y libere los 4 ganchos (59). Después, quite la cubierta frontal derecha (32).

18. Quite el tornillo (36) de la cubierta trasera central (35).

---

15. Öffnen Sie die Abdeckung des Papiertransports (31) des Geräts.
16. Öffnen Sie die Platte (33) der vorderen rechten Abdeckung (32) des Geräts.

17. Entfernen Sie die 4 Schrauben (34) und lösen Sie die 4 Haken (59). Danach nehmen Sie die rechte vordere Abdeckung (32) ab.

18. Entfernen Sie eine Schraube (36) von der mittleren rechten hinteren Abdeckung (35).

---

15. Aprire il coperchio (31) dell'unità di trasporto carta della macchina.
16. Aprire il pannello (33) sul coperchio destro anteriore (32) della macchina.

17. Rimuovere le 4 viti (34) e rilasciare i 4 ganci (59). Rimuovere quindi il coperchio anteriore destro (32).

18. Rimuovere la vite (36) dal coperchio posteriore centrale destro (35).

---

15. 打开机器主机的传输盖板 (31)。
16. 打开机器主机的右前部盖板 (32) 的盖子 (33)。

17. 卸下 4 颗螺丝 (34) 并松开 4 个卡扣 (59)。然后卸下右前盖板 (32)。

18. 拆除右中后部盖板 (35) 的 1 颗螺丝 (36)。

---

15. 본체의 반송 커버 (31) 를 엽니다 .
16. 본체 오른쪽 전면 커버 (32) 의 패널 (33) 을 엽니다 .

17. 나사 (34) 4 개를 제거하고 후크 (59) 4 개를 풉니다 . 그런 다음 우측 전면 커버 (32) 를 제거합니다 .

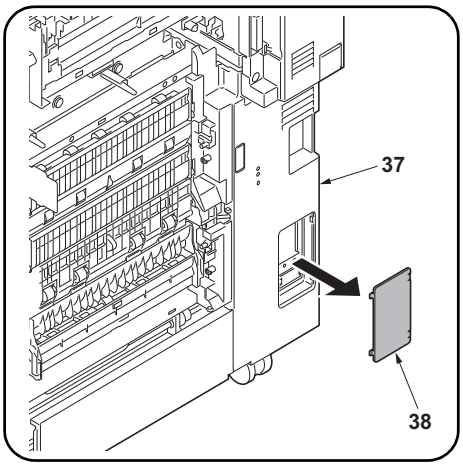
18. 우측 중간 뒷커버 (35) 의 나사 (36) 1 개를 제거합니다 .

---

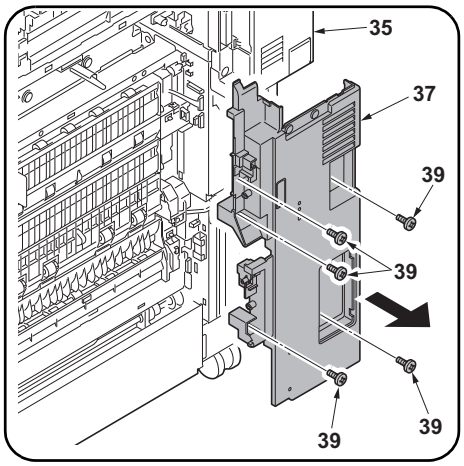
15. 機械本体の搬送カバー(31) を開く。
16. 機械本体の右前カバー(32) のふた (33) を開く。

17. ビス (34)4 本およびフック (59)4 箇所を外し、右前カバー(32) を取り外す。

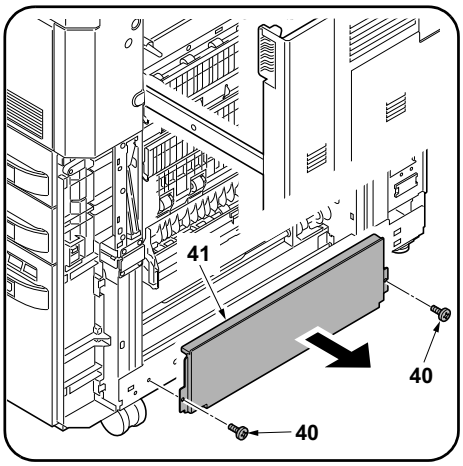
18. 右中後カバー(35) のビス (36)1 本を外す。



19. Remove the panel (38) from the lower right rear cover (37) with a flat blade screwdriver.



20. Remove 5 screws (39), then lift the bottom of the middle right rear cover (35) and remove the lower right rear cover (37).



21. Remove 2 screws (40) and remove the lower right cover (41).

---

19. Déposer le panneau (38) du capot arrière inférieur droit (37) en procédant à l'aide d'un tournevis à lame.

20. Déposer les 5 vis (39) puis lever le bas du capot arrière droit médian (35) pour déposer le capot arrière droit inférieur (37).

21. Déposer les 2 vis (40) et déposer le capot inférieur droit (41).

---

19. Extraiga el panel (38) de la cubierta trasera inferior derecha (37) con un destornillador de pala plana.

20. Quite los 5 tornillos (39), luego levante la parte inferior de la cubierta trasera central derecha (35) y quite la cubierta trasera inferior derecha (37).

21. Quite los 2 tornillos (40) y quite la cubierta derecha inferior (41).

---

19. Nehmen Sie mit einem flachen Schraubendreher die Platte (38) von der unteren rechten hinteren Abdeckung (37) ab.

20. Entfernen Sie 5 Schrauben (39), heben Sie die mittlere rechte hintere Abdeckung (35) von unten her an und nehmen Sie die untere rechte hintere Abdeckung (37) ab.

21. Entfernen Sie 2 Schrauben (40) und nehmen Sie die untere rechte Abdeckung (41) ab.

---

19. Rimuovere il pannello (38) dal coperchio posteriore inferiore destro (37) con un cacciavite a testa piana.

20. Rimuovere le 5 viti (39), quindi sollevare la parte in basso del coperchio posteriore centrale destro (35) e rimuovere il coperchio posteriore inferiore destro (37).

21. Rimuovere le 2 viti (40), e quindi rimuovere il coperchio destro inferiore (41).

---

19. 用一字螺丝刀等取下右下盖板（37）的盖子（38）。

20. 拆除 5 颗螺丝（39），抬起右中后部盖板（35）的下部，拆下右下后部盖板（37）。

21. 拆除 2 颗螺丝（40），拆下右下部盖板（41）。

---

19. 우측 아래뒷면 커버 (37) 의 뚜껑 (38) 을 마이너스 드라이버 등으로 뜹니다 .

20. 나사 (39) 5 개를 제거하고 우측 하단 뒷커버 (35) 의 하측을 올리고 우측 중간 뒷커버 (37) 를 제거합니다 .

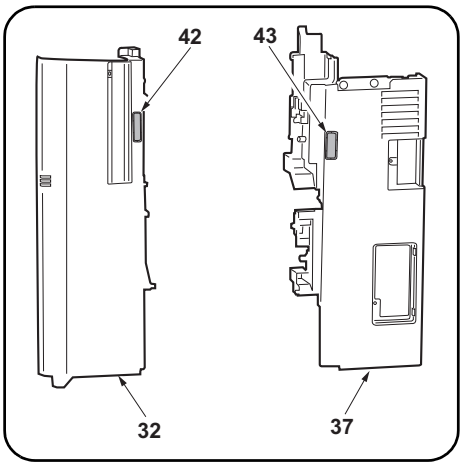
21. 나사 (40) 2 개를 제거하고 우측 하단커버 (41) 를 떼어 냅니다 .

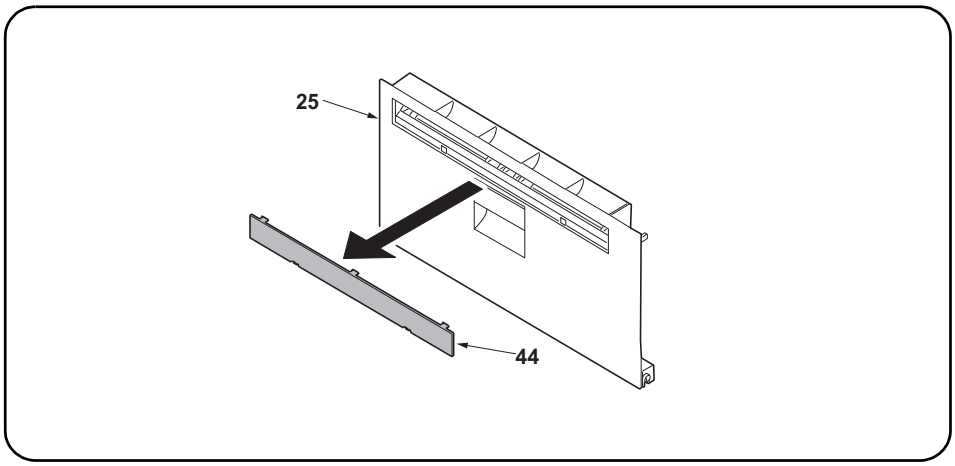
---

19. 右下後カバー(37) のふた (38) をマイナスドライバーなどで取る。

20. ビス (39)5 本を外し、右中後カバー(35) の下側を持ち上げて、右下後カバー(37) を取り外す。

21. ビス (40)2 本を外して、右下カバー(41) を取り外す。





22. Remove the breakaway cover (42) from the front right cover (32) and the breakaway cover (43) from the lower right rear cover (37).

23. Remove the panel (44) from the machine right cover 1 (25) with a flat blade screwdriver.

---

22. Déposer le couvercle amovible (42) du capot avant droit (32) et le couvercle amovible (43) du capot arrière inférieur droit (37).

23. Retirer le panneau (44) du capot droit 1 de la machine (25) à l'aide d'un tournevis à lame plate.

---

22. Quite la cubierta divisoria (42) de la cubierta delantera derecha (32) y la cubierta divisoria (43) de la cubierta trasera inferior derecha (37).

23. Extraiga el panel (44) de la cubierta derecha 1 de la máquina (25) con un destornillador de pala plana.

---

22. Nehmen Sie die Ablösungsabdeckung (42) von der vorderen rechten Abdeckung (32) ab und die Ablösungsabdeckung (43) von der unteren rechten hinteren Abdeckung (37).

23. Nehmen Sie mit einem flachen Schraubendreher die Platte (44) von der rechten Abdeckung 1 (25) des Geräts ab.

---

22. Rimuovere il coperchio di distacco (42) dal coperchio destro anteriore (32), e il coperchio di distacco (43) dal coperchio posteriore inferiore destro (37).

23. Rimuovere il pannello (44) dal coperchio destro 1 (25) della macchina con un cacciavite a testa piatta.

---

22. 切除右前部盖板 (32) 的切割盖板 (42) 和右下后部盖板 (37) 的切割盖板 (43)。

23. 使用一字螺丝刀将机器主机的右部盖板 1 (25) 的盖子 (44) 拆下。

---

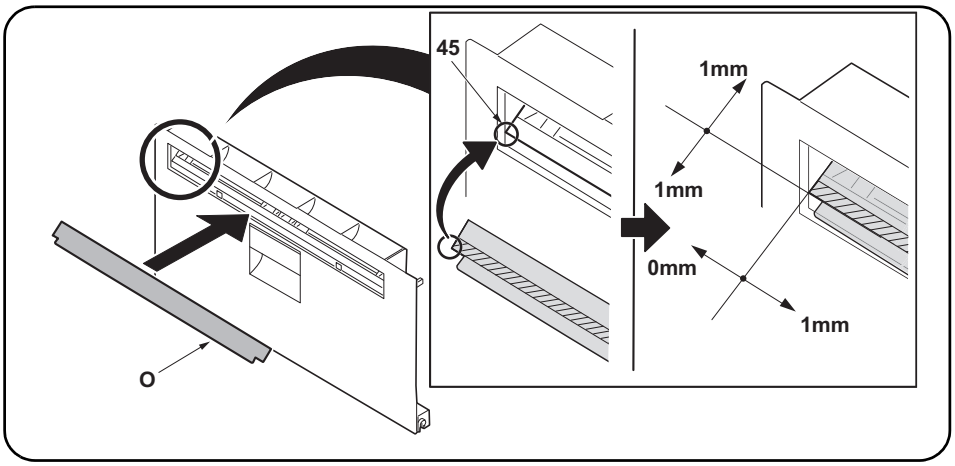
22. 우측 전면커버 (32) 의 분할커버 (42) 와 오른쪽 하단 뒷커버 (37) 의 분할커버 (43) 를 떼어 냅니다 .

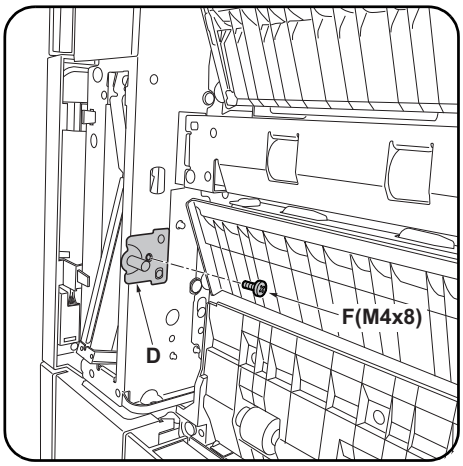
23. 일자 드라이버를 사용하여 본체 오른쪽 커버 1(25) 에서 패널 (44) 을 제거합니다 .

---

22. 右前カバー(32) の割りカバー(42) と右下後カバー(37) の割りカバー(43) を切り取る。

23. 機械本体の右カバー1(25) のふた (44) をマイナスドライバーで取り外す。





24. After using alcohol to clean place adhering the film, adhere the film (O) in the position (45) indicated in the illustration.

25. Install a lock pin (D) on the front right of the machine using an M4 × 8 screw (F).

---

24. Coller le film (O) sur l'emplacement (45) indiqué dans l'illustration, après avoir soigneusement nettoyé cet emplacement à l'alcool.

25. Monter une broche de verrouillage (D) sur l'avant droit de la machine à l'aide d'une vis M4 × 8 (F).

---

24. Después de utilizar alcohol para limpiar la zona donde se va a pegar la película, pegue la película (O) en el lugar (45) que se indica en la ilustración.

25. Instale una clavija de bloqueo (D) en la parte derecha frontal de la máquina usando un tornillo M4 × 8 (F).

---

24. Zum Anbringen des Films (O) die Stelle zuvor mit Alkohol reinigen und den Film (O) dann in der in der Abbildung angegebenen Position (45) anbringen.

25. Bringen Sie mit einer M4 × 8 Schraube (F) den Arretierungsstift (D) vorne rechts am Gerät an.

---

24. Dopo aver utilizzato alcol per pulire la piastra che aderisce alla pellicola, far aderire la pellicola (O) nella posizione (45) indicata nell'illustrazione.

25. Installare un perno di blocco (D) sul lato destro anteriore della macchina utilizzando una vite M4 × 8 (F).

---

24. 使用酒精对薄膜粘贴位置进行清洁后，按插图位置（45）粘贴薄膜（O）。

25. 使用 1 颗 M4×8 螺丝（F）将锁定插销（D）安装到机器主机的右前侧。

---

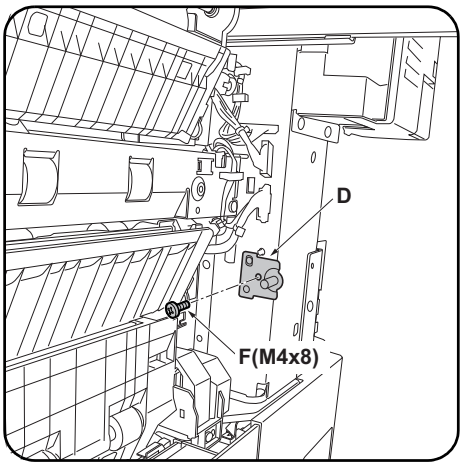
24. 필름 부착위치를 알코올 청소 후 , 일러스트의 위치 (45) 에 맞춰 필름 (O) 을 부착합니다 .

25. M4 × 8 나사 (F) 를 사용하여 잠금 핀 (D) 을 본체의 오른쪽 전면에 설치합니다 .

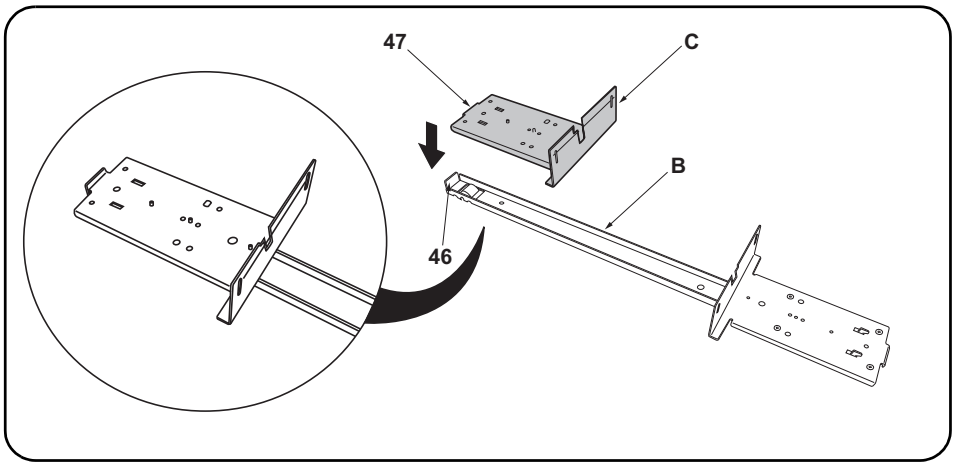
---

24. フィルム貼り付け位置をアルコール清掃後、イラストの位置(45)にあわせて、フィルム(O)を貼り付ける。

25. ビス M4×8(F)1 本で、ロックピン（D）を機械本体右前側に取り付ける。



26. Install a lock pin (D) on the rear right of the machine using an M4 × 8 screw (F) in the same way.



27. Place the small base slider (C) on the large base slider (B). Place so that the bend (47) on the small base slider (C) abuts inside the rest (46) at the end of the large base slider (B).

---

26. Monter une broche de verrouillage (D) sur l'arrière droit de la machine de la même manière à l'aide d'une vis M4 × 8 (F).

27. Placer la petite règle de base (C) sur la grande règle de base (B). Disposer la petite règle de base (C) de sorte que son extrémité repliée (47) s'encastre dans la butée (46) à l'extrémité de la grande règle de base (B).

---

26. Instale una clavija de bloqueo (D) en la parte derecha posterior de la máquina usando un tornillo M4 × 8 (F).

27. Coloque el deslizador de base pequeño (C) sobre el deslizador de base grande (B). Haga que la dobladura (47) del deslizador de base pequeño (C) quede en el interior del apoyo (46) del extremo del deslizador de base grande (B).

---

26. Bringen Sie auf gleiche Weise mit einer M4 × 8 Schraube (F) den Arretierungsstift (D) hinten rechts am Gerät an..

27. Setzen Sie den kleinen Basis-Schieber (C) auf den großen Basis-Schieber (B). Setzen Sie ihn so auf, dass die Biegung (47) am kleinen Basis-Schieber (C) innerhalb der Auflage (46) am Ende des großen Basis-Schiebers (B) anliegt.

---

26. Analogamente, installare un perno di blocco (D) sul lato destro posteriore della macchina utilizzando una vite M4 × 8 (F).

27. Posizionare lo scivolo di base piccolo (C) sullo scivolo di base grande (B). Posizionare in modo che la piegatura (47) sullo scivolo di base piccolo (C) si attesti all'interno del sostegno (46) all'estremità dello scivolo di base grande (B).

---

26. 按相同方法，使用 1 颗 M4×8 螺丝 (F) 将锁定插销 (D) 安装到机器主机的右后侧。

27. 将底座滑板（小）(C) 放在底座滑板（大）(B)。此时底座滑板（小）(C) 的弯曲部 (47) 应处于底座滑板（大）(B) 的前端折弯部 (46) 的内侧。

---

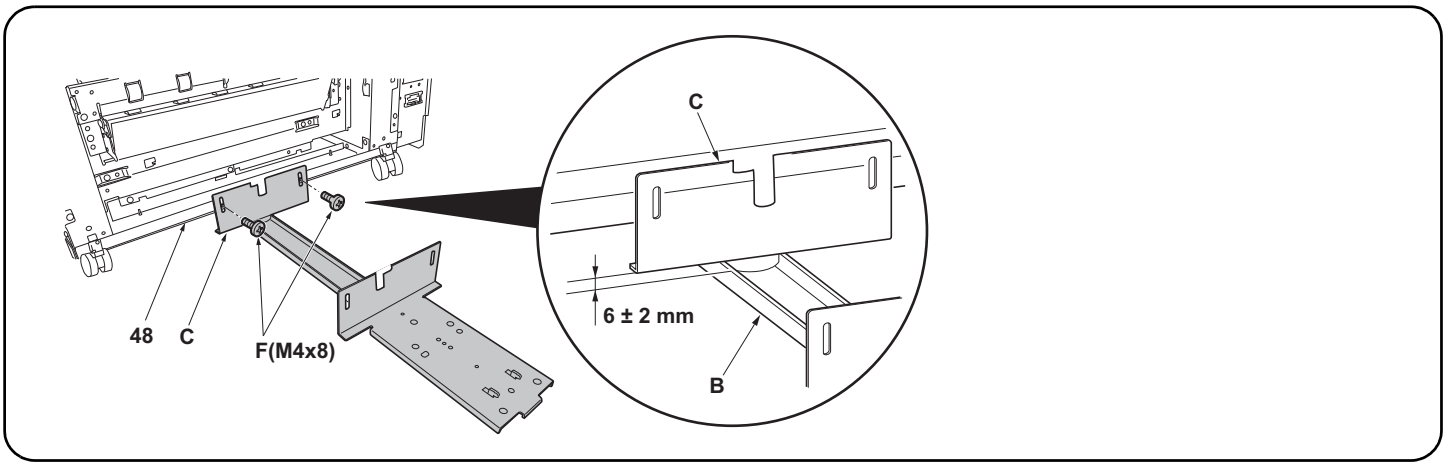
26. 같은 방식으로 M4 × 8 나사 (F) 를 사용하여 잠금 핀 (D) 을 본체의 오른쪽 뒷면에 설치합니다 .

27. 베이스 슬라이더 대 (B) 의 위에 베이스 슬라이더 소 (C) 를 얹습니다 . 그 때 , 베이스 슬라이더 소 (C) 의 곡선부 (47) 가 베이스 슬라이더 대 (B) 의 맨 앞쪽의 꺾이고 구부러진 부분 (46) 의 안쪽으로 오도록 세트합니다 .

---

26. 同様にビス M4×8(F) 1 本で、ロックピン (D) を機械本体右後側に取り付ける。

27. ベーススライダー大 (B) の上にベーススライダー小 (C) を乗せる。その際、ベーススライダー小 (C) の曲げ (47) がベーススライダー大 (B) の先端折り曲げ部 (46) の内側にくるようにセットする。



28. Insert the small base slider (C) under the machine. Install to the base (48) using 2 M4 × 8 screws (F) so that the gap between the small base slider (C) and the large base slider (B) is 6 ± 2 mm.
* For PF-730, install to the screw holes marked “R”.

---

28. Insérer la petite règle de base (C) sous l'appareil. Fixer à la base (48) à l'aide de 2 vis M4 × 8 (F) de sorte que l'interstice entre la petite règle de base (C) et la grande règle de base (B) soit de 6 ± 2 mm.
* Pour le PF-730, fixer aux trous de vis marqués "R".

---

28. Introduzca el deslizador de base pequeño (C) por debajo de la máquina. Instálelo en la base (48) usando 2 tornillos M4 × 8 (F) de modo que el espacio entre el deslizador de base pequeño (C) y el deslizador de base grande (B) sea de 6 ± 2 mm.
* En el caso de PF-730, instale en los orificios para tornillo “R”.

---

28. Setzen Sie die Führungsschiene (C) unter das Gerät. Befestigen Sie sie mit zwei M4 × 8 Schrauben (F) so an der Basis (48), dass der Abstand zwischen der kleinen Führungsschiene (C) und der großen Führungsschiene (B) 6 ± 2 mm beträgt.
* Bei Modell PF-730 an den mit "R" markierten Schraublöchern befestigen.

---

28. Inserire lo scivolo di base piccolo (C) sotto la macchina. Installare sulla base (48) utilizzando 2 viti M4 × 8 (F) in modo che lo spazio tra lo scivolo di base piccolo (C) e lo scivolo di base grande (B) sia di 6 ± 2 mm.
* Per PF-730, installare ai fori per viti segnalati con “R”.

---

28. 将底座滑板（小）(C) 插入机器主机侧的供纸工作台的下方。使用 2 颗 M4×8(F) 螺丝将底座滑板（小）(C) 安装到底板 (48) 上，确保底座滑板（小）(C) 与底座滑板（大）(B) 之间的间隙为 6±2mm。
※PF-730 时，安装到带有 R 刻印的螺纹孔上。

---

28. 소형 베이스 슬라이더 (C) 를 본체 하단에 삽입합니다 . 소형 베이스 슬라이더 (C) 와 대형 베이스 슬라이더 (B) 사이의 틈이 6 ± 2 mm 가 되도록 M4 × 8 나사 (F) 2 개를 사용하여 바닥판 (48) 에 장착합니다 .
※PF-730 은 R 의 각인이 있는 나사구멍에 장착합니다 .

---

28. ベーススライダー小 (C) を機械本体側のペーパーフィーダーの下に入れる。ベーススライダー小 (C) とベーススライダー大 (B) の隙間が、6±2mm になるようにビス M4×8(F)2 本で底板 (48) に取り付ける。
※PF-730 は R の刻印のあるビス穴に取り付ける。

Installation with medium-speed MFPs and printers
If installing on a high-speed MFP, proceed to step 35.
29. Reinstall the paper feeder lower right cover (19).
30. Reinstall the paper feeder right cover (14).
31. Reinstall the lower right rear cover (11).
32. Mount a screw (9) in the middle right rear cover (8).
33. Reinstall the front right cover (5).
34. Reinstall the lower right cover (1).
Proceed to step 41.

Installation avec les imprimantes multifonctions et les imprimantes à vitesse moyenne
Si le montage est fait sur un MFP à grande vitesse, passer à l'étape 35.
29. Reposer le capot inférieur droit du bureau papier (19).
30. Reposer le capot droit du bureau papier (14).
31. Reposer le capot arrière inférieur droit (11).
32. Fixer la vis (9) sur le capot arrière médian droit (8).
33. Reposer le capot avant droit (5).
34. Reposer le capot inférieur droit (1).
Passer à l'étape 41.

Instalación con unidades MFP e impresoras de velocidad media
Si se instala en una MFP de alta velocidad, vaya al paso 35.
29. Reinstale la cubierta derecha inferior del alimentador de papel (19).
30. Reinstale la cubierta derecha del alimentador de papel (14).
31. Reinstale la cubierta trasera inferior derecha (11).
32. Instale el tornillo (9) en la cubierta trasera central derecha (8).
33. Reinstale la cubierta delantera derecha (5).
34. Reinstale la cubierta derecha inferior (1).
Vaya al paso 41.

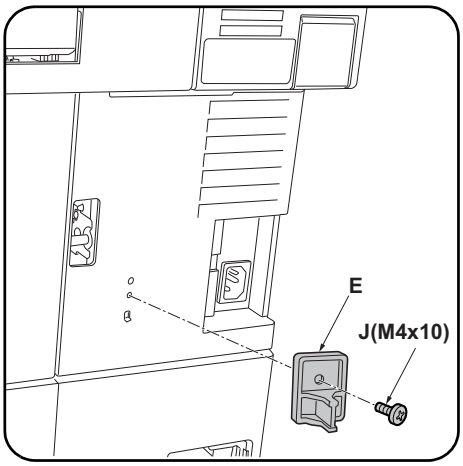
Installation an mittelschnellen MFPs und Druckern
Gehen Sie zur Installation an einem MFP der Hochleistungsklasse weiter zu Schritt 35.
29. Bringen Sie die untere rechte Abdeckung (19) des Papiereinzugs wieder an.
30. Bringen Sie die rechte Abdeckung (14) des Papiereinzugs wieder an.
31. Bringen Sie die untere rechte hintere Abdeckung (11) wieder an.
32. Befestigen Sie eine Schraube (9) an der mittleren rechten hinteren Abdeckung (8).
33. Bringen Sie die vordere rechte Abdeckung (5) wieder an.
34. Bringen Sie die untere rechte Abdeckung (1) wieder an.
Gehen Sie weiter zu Schritt 41.

Installazione con MFP e stampanti di media velocità
Se si installa su una MFP a velocità alta, procedere al passo 35.
29. Reinstallare il coperchio destro inferiore dell'unità di alimentazione carta (19).
30. Reinstallare il coperchio destro (14) dell'unità di alimentazione carta.
31. Reinstallare il coperchio posteriore inferiore destro (11).
32. Montare la vite (9) nel coperchio posteriore centrale destro (8).
33. Reinstallare il coperchio destro anteriore (5).
34. Reinstallare il coperchio destro inferiore (1).
Procedere al passo 41.

当安装到中速 MFP 和打印机上时
安装于高速 MFP 上时，进至步骤 35。
29. 按原样安装供纸盒的右下部盖板 (19)。
30. 按原样安装供纸盒的右盖板 (14)。
31. 按原样安装右下后部盖板 (11)。
32. 安装右中后部盖板 (8) 的 1 颗螺丝 (9)。
33. 按原样安装右前部盖板 (5)。
34. 按原样安装右下部盖板 (1)。
进至步骤 41。

중속 MFP 또는 프린터에 설치하는 경우
고속 MFP 에 설치하는 경우에는 순서 35 로 진행합니다 .
29. 용지 급지대의 우측 하단커버 (19) 를 원래대로 장착합니다 .
30. 용지 급지대의 우측커버 (14) 를 원래대로 장착합니다 .
31. 우측하단 뒷커버 (11) 를 원래대로 장착합니다 .
32. 우측 중간 뒷커버 (8) 의 나사 (9) 1 개를 장착합니다 .
33. 우측 전면커버 (5) 를 원래대로 장착합니다 .
34. 우측 하단커버 (1) 를 원래대로 장착합니다 .
순서 41 로 진행합니다 .

中速 MFP またはプリンターに設置の場合
高速 MFP に設置の場合は手順 35 に進む。
29. ペーパーフィーダーの右下カバー(19) を元通り取り付ける。
30. ペーパーフィーダーの右カバー(14) を元通り取り付ける。
31. 右下後カバー(11) を元通り取り付ける。
32. 右中後カバー(8) のビス (9)1 本を取り付ける。
33. 右前カバー(5) を元通り取り付ける。
34. 右下カバー(1) を元通り取り付ける。
手順 41 に進む。



Installation on high-speed MFPs

35. Reinstall the lower right cover (41).
36. Reinstall the lower right rear cover (37).
37. Mount a screw (36) in the middle right rear cover (35).
38. Reinstall the front right cover (32).
39. Reinstall the right cover 2 (28).
40. Reinstall the right cover 1 (25).
41. Install the switch press plate (E) using the M4 × 10 tapping screw (J).

Montage sur des MFP à grande vitesse

35. Reposer le capot inférieur droit (41).
36. Reposer le capot arrière inférieur droit (37).
37. Fixer la vis (36) sur le capot arrière médian droit (35).
38. Reposer le capot avant droit (32).
39. Reposer le capot droit 2 (28).
40. Reposer le capot droit 1 (25).
41. Fixer la plaque de pression du contacteur (E) à l'aide d'une vis de connexion M4 × 10 (J).

Instalación en las MFP de alta velocidad

35. Reinstale la cubierta derecha inferior (41).
36. Reinstale la cubierta trasera inferior derecha (37).
37. Instale el tornillo (36) en la cubierta trasera central derecha (35).
38. Reinstale la cubierta delantera derecha (32).
39. Reinstale la cubierta derecha 2 (28).
40. Reinstale la cubierta derecha 1 (25).
41. Instale la placa de presión del interruptor (E) usando el tornillo de roscado M4 × 10 (J).

Installation an MFP der Hochleistungsklasse

35. Bringen Sie die untere rechte Abdeckung (41) wieder an.
36. Bringen Sie die untere rechte hintere Abdeckung (37) wieder an.
37. Befestigen Sie eine Schraube (36) an der mittleren rechten hinteren Abdeckung (35).
38. Bringen Sie die vordere rechte Abdeckung (32) wieder an.
39. Bringen Sie die rechte Abdeckung 2 (28) wieder an.
40. Bringen Sie die rechte Abdeckung 1 (25) wieder an.
41. Befestigen Sie mit der M4 × 10 Schneidschraube (J) die Schalterdruckplatte (E).

Installazione sulle MFP a velocità alta

35. Reinstallare il coperchio destro inferiore (41).
36. Reinstallare il coperchio posteriore inferiore destro (37).
37. Montare la vite (36) nel coperchio posteriore centrale destro (35).
38. Reinstallare il coperchio destro anteriore (32).
39. Reinstallare il coperchio destro 2 (28).
40. Reinstallare il coperchio destro 1 (25).
41. Installare la piastra spingi interruttore (E) utilizzando la vite autofilettante M4 × 10 (J).

安装于高速 MFP 上时

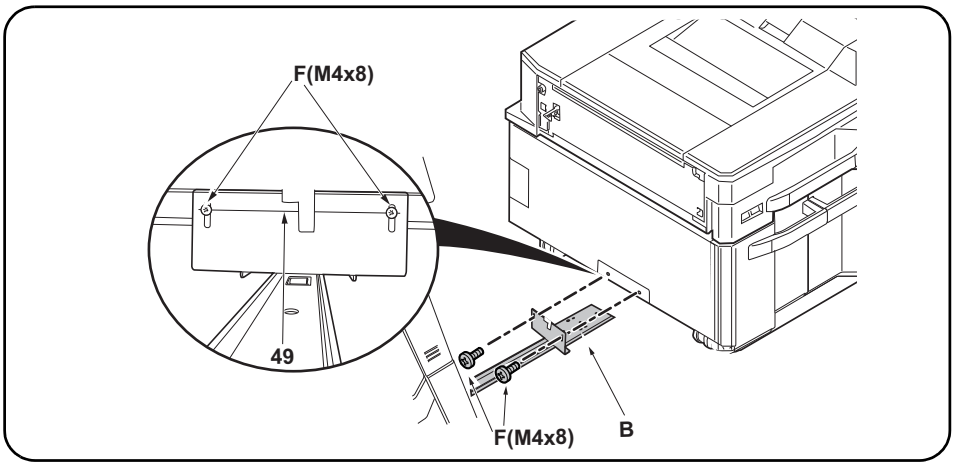
35. 按原样安装右下部盖板 (41)。
36. 按原样安装右下后部盖板 (37)。
37. 安装右中后部盖板 (35) 的 1 颗螺丝 (36)。
38. 按原样安装右前部盖板 (32)。
39. 按原样安装右部盖板 2(28)。
40. 按原样安装右部盖板 1(25)。
41. 使用 1 颗 M4×10 自攻螺丝 (J) 安装开关挡板 (E)。

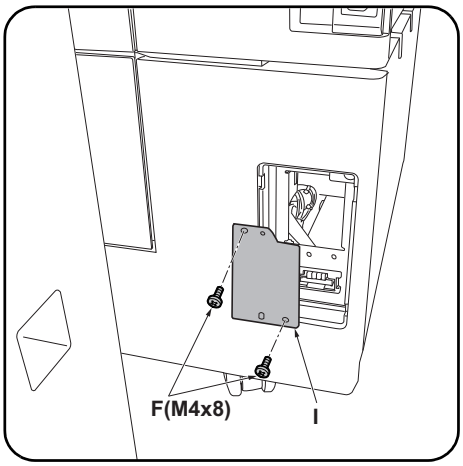
고속 MFP 에 설치하는 경우

35. 우측 하단커버 (41) 를 원래대로 장착합니다 .
36. 우측하단 뒷커버 (37) 를 원래대로 장착합니다 .
37. 우측 중간 뒷커버 (35) 의 나사 (36) 1 개를 장착합니다 .
38. 우측 전면커버 (32) 를 원래대로 장착합니다 .
39. 우측커버 2 (28) 를 원래대로 장착합니다 .
40. 우측커버 1 (25) 를 원래대로 장착합니다 .
41. 탑핑나사 M4×10(J) 1 개로 스위치 판 (E) 을 장착합니다 .

高速 MFP に設置の場合

35. 右下カバー(41) を元通り取り付ける。
36. 右下後カバー(37) を元通り取り付ける。
37. 右中後カバー(35) のビス (36)1 本を取り付ける。
38. 右前カバー(32) を元通り取り付ける。
39. 右カバー2 (28) を元通り取り付ける。
40. 右カバー1 (25) を元通り取り付ける。
41. タッピングビス M4×10(J)1 本でスイッチ当たり板 (E) を取り付ける。





42. Attach the side feeder to the large base slider (B) using 2 M4 × 8 screws (F).Install so that the center of the M4 × 8 screws (F) comes over the horizontal line (49) of the mounting plate on the large base slider (B).

43. Install the cover plate (I) using 2 M4 × 8 screws (F).

---

42. Fixer le plateau d'alimentation latéral à la grande règle de base (B) à l'aide de 2 vis M4 × 8 (F). Procéder de sorte que l'axe des vis M4 × 8 (F) recouvre la ligne horizontale (49) du plateau de montage sur la grande règle de base (B).

43. Fixer le capot (I) à l'aide de 2 vis M4 × 8 (F).

---

42. Sujete el alimentador lateral al deslizador de base grande (B) con 2 tornillos M4 × 8 (F). Instale de manera que el centro de los tornillos M4 × 8 (F) queden sobre la línea horizontal (49) de la placa de montaje del deslizador de base (B) grande.

43. Instale la tapa (I) usando los 2 tornillos M4 × 8 (F).

---

42. Den seitlichen Einzug am großen Basis-Schieber (B) mithilfe der 2 Schrauben 2 M4 × 8 (F) befestigen. Befestigen Sie ihn so, dass die Mitte der M4 × 8 Schrauben (F) über der Waagrechtlinie (49) der Montageplatte am großen Basis-Schieber (B) liegt.

43. Bringen Sie die Abdeckungsplatte (I) mit 2 M4 × 8 Schrauben (F) an.

---

42. Collegare l'unità di alimentazione laterale allo scivolo di base grande (B) usando 2 viti M4 × 8 (F). Installare in modo che il centro delle viti M4 × 8 (F) sia sulla linea orizzontale (49) della piastra di montaggio sullo scivolo di base grande (B).

43. Installare il coperchio (I) utilizzando 2 viti M4 × 8 (F).

---

42. 使用 2 颗 M4×8 螺丝 (F) 将侧供纸盒安装到底座滑板 (大) (B) 上。此时，应确保 M4×8 螺丝 (F) 的中心处于底座滑板 (大) (B) 的安装板的平行线 (49) 上。

43. 使用 2 颗 M4×8 螺丝 (F) 安装盖板 (I)。

---

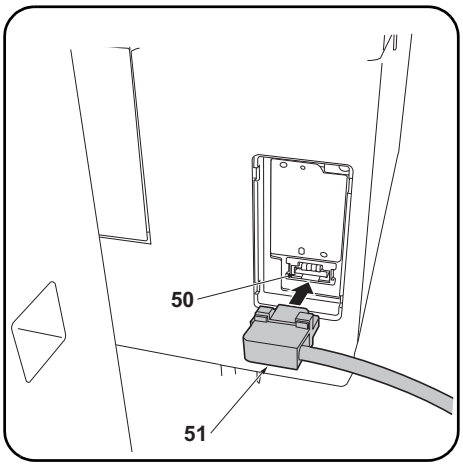
42. 나사 M4×8(F) 2 개로 베이스 슬라이더 대 (B) 에 사이드 피더를 장착합니다 . 그 때 , 베이스 슬라이더 대 (B) 의 설치판의 평행선 (49) 에 나사 M4×8(F) 의 센터가 오도록 장착합니다 .

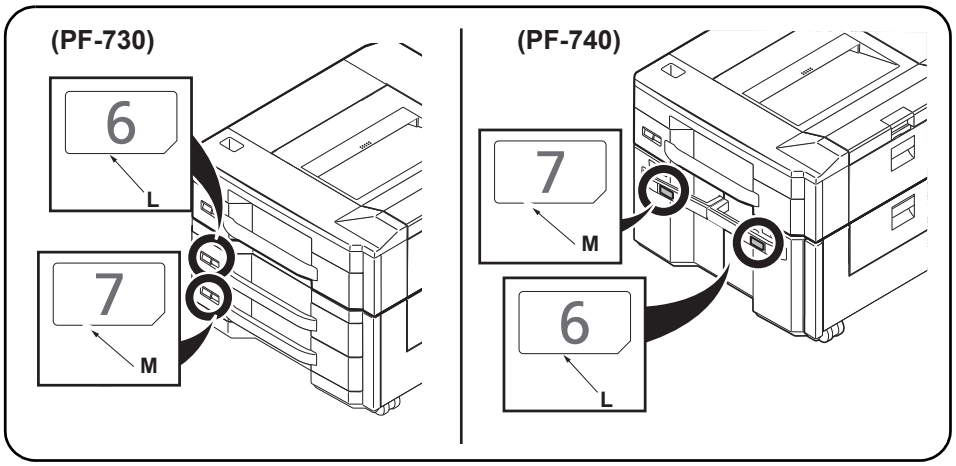
43. 나사 M4×8(F) 2 개로 커버 플레이트 (I) 를 장착합니다 .

---

42. ビス M4×8(F)2 本でベーススライダー大 (B) にサイドフィーダーを取り付ける。その際、ベーススライダー大 (B) の取付板の平行線 (49) にビス M4×8(F) のセンターがくるように取り付ける。

43. ビス M4×8(F)2 本でカバープレート (I) を取り付ける。





44. Connect the signal cable (51) of the side feeder to the connector (50) of the machine.
45. Push the side feeder to connect it to the machine.

46. After using alcohol to clean place adhering the cassette number label 6 (L) and the cassette number label 7 (M), adhere them in the positions indicated in the illustration.

---

44. Connecter le câble de signal (51) du chargeur latéral au connecteur (50) de la machine.
45. Pousser le chargeur latéral pour le raccorder à la machine.

46. Coller l'étiquette de numéro de cassette 6 (L) et l'étiquette de numéro de cassette 7 (M) sur les emplacements indiqués dans l'illustration, après avoir soigneusement nettoyé ces derniers à l'alcool.

---

44. .Conecte el cable de señal (51) del depósito lateral al conector (50) de la máquina.
45. Empuje el depósito lateral para conectarlo a la máquina.

46. Después de utilizar alcohol para limpiar la zona donde se va a pegar la etiqueta de casete con el número 6 (L) y la etiqueta de casete con el número 7 (M), péguelas en los lugares que se indican en la ilustración.

---

44. Das Signalkabel (51) des seitlichen Einzugs an den Stecker (50) des Geräts anschließen.
45. Drücken Sie auf den seitlichen Einzug, um ihn mit dem Geräts zu verbinden.

46. Zum Anbringen der Aufkleber Kassettennummer 6 (L) und Kassettennummer 7 (M) die Stellen zuvor mit Alkohol reinigen und die Aufkleber dann an den in der Abbildung angegebenen Positionen anbringen.

---

44. Collegare il cavo del segnale (51) dell'alimentatore laterale al connettore (50) della macchina.
45. Schieben Sie den seitlichen Einzug, um ihn mit dem Gerät zu verbinden.

46. Dopo aver utilizzato alcol per pulire la piastra che aderisce all'etichetta numero cassetta 6 (L) e l'etichetta numero cassetta 7 (M), farli aderire nelle posizioni indicate nell'illustrazione.

---

44. 将侧供纸盒的信号线 (51) 与机器主机的接插件 (50) 相连。
45. 按住侧供纸盒，将其与机器主机连接。

46. 使用酒精清洁要粘贴纸盒编号标签 6(L)、纸盒编号标签 7(M) 的位置后，按图示位置粘贴。

---

44. 사이드 피더의 신호 케이블 (51) 을 본체 커넥터 (50) 에 연결합니다 .
45. 사이드 피더가 본체에 연결되도록 사이드 피더를 밀어 넣습니다 .

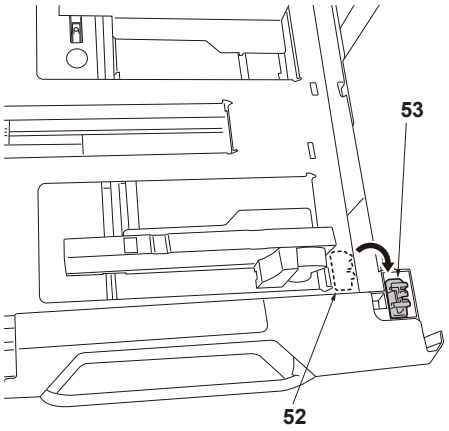
46. 카세트 넘버라벨 6 (L) , 카세트 넘버라벨 7 (M) 의 부착위치를 알코올 청소 후 , 일러스트의 위치에 부착합니다 .

---

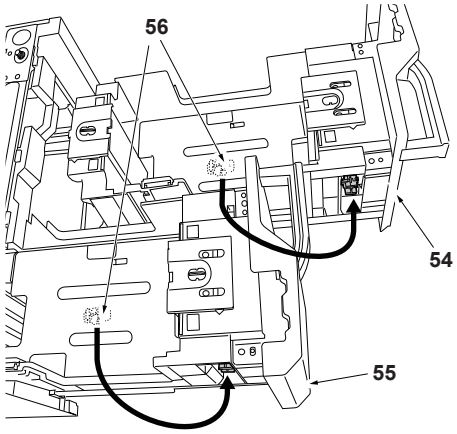
44. サイドフィーダーの信号線 (51) を機械本体のコネクター(50) に接続する。
45. サイドフィーダーを押し、機械本体に接続する。

46. カセットナンバーラベル 6(L)、カセットナンバーラベル 7(M) をアルコール清掃後、イラストの位置に貼り付ける。

(PF-730)



(PF-740)



For PF-730

47. Pull each cassette out and then remove the lift plate stopper (52) from each cassette and attach it to the storage location (53).

For PF-740

47. Pull out the right cassette (54) and left cassette (55), remove each of the lift plate stoppers (56) and attach them in the storage location.

48. Gently close each cassette.

Pour PF-730

47. Tirer chaque tiroir vers l'extérieur puis retirer la butée de plaque d'élévation (52) de chaque tiroir et la fixer à l'emplacement de rangement (53).

Pour PF-740

47. Sortir le tiroir droit (54) et le tiroir gauche (55), déposer toutes les butées du plateau de levage (56) et les ranger soigneusement.

48. Refermer progressivement chaque tiroir.

Para PF-730

47. Abra la bandeja y quite el tope de la placa de elevación (52) de cada bandeja y colóquela en su lugar de depósito (53).

Para PF-740

47. Extraiga el cajón derecho (54) y el cajón izquierdo (55), quite cada uno de los topes de placa de elevación (56) y fíjelos en el lugar de almacenamiento.

48. Cierre suavemente cada bandeja.

Für PF-730

47. Die einzelnen Kassetten herausziehen, dann den Hebeplattenanschlag (52) von jeder Kassette entfernen und an der Speicherposition (53) anbringen.

Für PF-740

47. Die rechte Papierlade (54) und die linke Papierlade (55) herausziehen, jeden der Hebeplattenanschläge (56) entfernen und in der vorgesehenen Position verstauen.

48. Alle Kassetten sachte schließen.

Per PF-730

47. Estrarre ciascun cassetto e poi rimuovere il fermo della piastra di sollevamento (52) da ciascun cassetto e fissarlo nella posizione di immagazzinaggio (53).

Per PF-740

47. Estrarre il cassetto destro (54) e il cassetto sinistro (55), rimuovere ciascuno dei fermi (56) della piastra di sollevamento ed applicarli nella posizione di conservazione.

48. Chiudere delicatamente ciascun cassetto.

PF-730 时

47. 拉出各供纸盒，拆下各 1 个升降板挡块 (52)，并安装在保管场所 (53) 上。

PF-740 时

47. 拉出右侧供纸盒 (54) 以及左侧供纸盒 (55)，拆下各 1 个升降板挡块 (56)，并安装在保管场所上。

48. 轻轻地推入各供纸盒。

PF-730 의 경우

47. 각 카세트를 빼고 리프트판 스토퍼 (52) 각 1 개를 빼내 보관장소 (53) 에 부착합니다 .

PF-740 의 경우

47. 카세트 오른쪽 (54) 및 카세트 왼쪽 (55) 을 꺼내어 리프트판 스토퍼 (56) 각 1 개를 제거하고 보관장소에 부착합니다

48. 각 카세트를 조용히 밀어 넣습니다 .

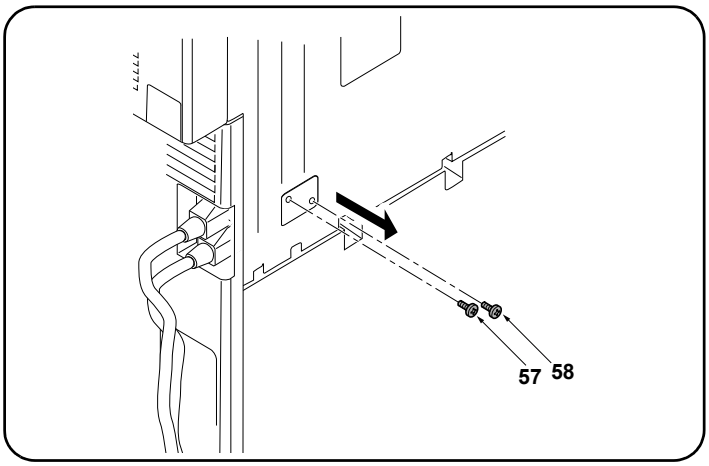
PF-730 の場合

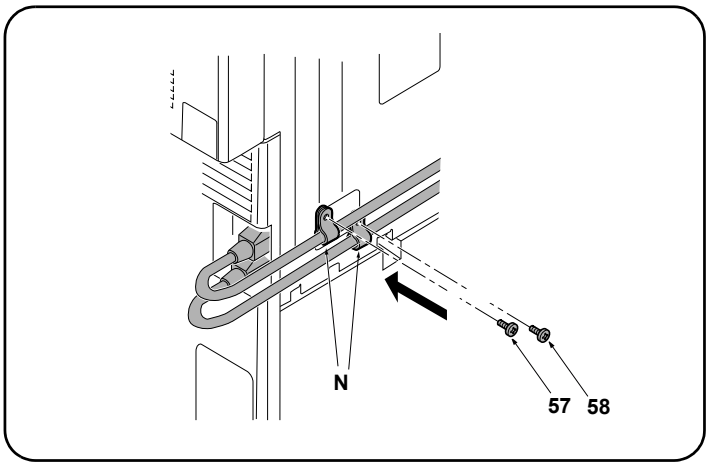
47. 各カセットを引き出し、リフト板ストッパー(52) 各 1 個を外して保管場所 (53) に取り付ける。

PF-740 の場合

47. カセット右 (54) およびカセット左 (55) を引き出し、リフト板ストッパー(56) 各 1 個を取り外し、保管場所に取り付ける。

48. 各カセットを静かに押し込む。





When there is 1 power cable
49. Remove a screw (58).
When there are 2 power cables
49. Remove 2 screws (57) and (58).

When there is 1 power cable
50. Pass the power cable through the clamp (N) and fasten it using a screw (58) removed in step 49.
When there are 2 power cables
50. Pass the power cable through clamp (N) and fasten it using 2 screws (57) (58) removed in step 49.

En cas d'utilisation de 1 seul cordon d'alimentation
49. Retirer la vis (58).
En cas d'utilisation de 2 cordons d'alimentation
49. Retirer les 2 vis (57) et (58).

En cas d'utilisation de 1 seul cordon d'alimentation
50. Faire passer le cordon d'alimentation au travers de collier (N) et le fixer à l'aide de la vis (58) déposée à l'étape 49.
En cas d'utilisation de 2 cordons d'alimentation
50. Faire passer les cordons d'alimentation au travers des colliers (N) et les fixer à l'aide des 2 vis (57) et (58) déposées à l'étape 49.

Si hay 1 cable eléctrico
49. Quite un tornillo (58).
Si hay 2 cables eléctricos
49. Quite 2 tornillos (57) y (58).

Si hay 1 cable eléctrico
50. Pase el cable eléctrico por el sujetador (N) y apriételo con el tornillo (58) que quitó en el paso 49.
Si hay 2 cables eléctricos
50. Pase el cable eléctrico por el sujetador (N) y apriételo con los 2 tornillos (57) y (58) que quitó en el paso 49.

Wenn 1 Netzkabel vorhanden ist
49. Die Schraube (58) entfernen.
Wenn 2 Netzkabel vorhanden sind
49. Die 2 Schrauben (57) und (58) entfernen.

Wenn 1 Netzkabel vorhanden ist
50. Das Netzkabel durch die Klemme (N) führen und es mit der in Schritt 49 entfernten Schraube (58) befestigen.
Wenn 2 Netzkabel vorhanden sind
50. Das Netzkabel durch die Klemme (N) führen und es mit den in Schritt 49 entfernten 2 Schrauben (57) (58) befestigen.

Quando esiste 1 cavo di alimentazione
49. Rimuovere una vite (58).
Quando esistono 2 cavi di alimentazione
49. Rimuovere 2 viti (57) e (58).

Quando esiste 1 cavo di alimentazione
50. Passare il cavo di alimentazione attraverso il morsetto (N) e stringerlo usando una vite (58) rimossa nel passo 49.
Quando esistono 2 cavi di alimentazione
50. Passare il cavo di alimentazione attraverso il morsetto (N) e stringerlo usando 2 viti (57) (58) rimosse nel passo 49.

---

1 根电源线时
49. 拆除 1 颗螺丝（58）。
2 根电源线时
49. 拆除 2 颗螺丝（57）（58）。

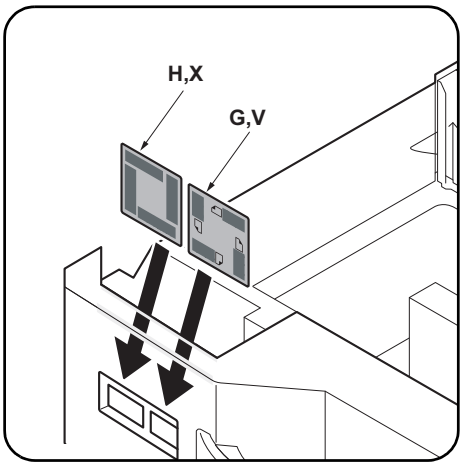
1 根电源线时
50. 将电源线穿过束线夹（N），使用在步骤 49 中拆除的 1 颗螺丝（58）固定电源线。
2 根电源线时
50. 将电源线穿过束线夹（N），使用在步骤 49 中拆除的 2 颗螺丝（57）（58）固定电源线。

전선 코드가 1 개인 경우
49. 나사 (58) 1 개를 제거합니다 .
전선 코드가 2 개인 경우
49. 나사 (57) (58) 2 개를 제거합니다 .

전선 코드가 1 개인 경우
50. 전선 코드를 클램프 (N) 에 통과시키고 순서 49 에서 제거한 나사 (58) 1 개로 고정합니다 .
전선 코드가 2 개인 경우
50. 전선 코드를 클램프 (N) 에 통과시키고 순서 49 에서 제거한 나사 (57) (58) 2 개로 고정합니다 .

電源コードが 1 本の場合
49. ビス(58)1 本を外す。
電源コードが 2 本の場合
49. ビス(57)(58)2 本を外す。

電源コードが 1 本の場合
50. 電源コードをクランプ(N)に通し、手順 49 で外したビス(58)1 本で固定する。
電源コードが 2 本の場合
50. 電源コードをクランプ(N)に通し、手順 49 で外したビス(57)(58)2 本で固定する。



Setting the paper size plate and media type plate
Insert the paper size plate (G,V) and media type plate (H,X) into the each slots respectively.

Skewed paper feed adjustment (PF-730 only)
1. Connect the machine power plug to the wall outlet and turn the machine main power switch on.
2. Load paper into the cassette and make a test copy to check the image.
3. If the image is skewed (skewed paper feed), make the adjustments described below.
<Reference value> Left-right difference of 1.5 mm or less

Disposition des plaquettes du format de papier et du type de support
Introduire la plaquette du format de papier (G,V) et la plaquette du type de support (H,X) dans leur logement respectif.

Réglage de l'entraînement du papier en biais (PF-730 uniquement)
1. Insérer la fiche d'alimentation de la machine dans la prise murale et mettre la machine sous tension.
2. Mettre du papier dans le tiroir et effectuer une copie d'essai pour vérifier l'image.
3. Si l'image est en biais (entraînement du papier en biais), régler en procédant comme décrit ci-dessous.
<Valeur de référence> Différence de droite à gauche de 1,5 mm ou moins.

4. Sortir le tiroir (1) du bureau papier et desserrer les 4 vis (2).

Ajuste de la placa de tamaño de papel y la placa de tipo de medio
Inserte la placa de tamaño de papel (G,V) y la placa de tipo de medio (H,X) en cada uno de las ranuras, respectivamente.

Ajuste de alimentación de papel torcida (PF-730 solamente)
1. Conecte el enchufe de la máquina en el receptáculo de pared y encienda el interruptor principal de la máquina.
2. Introduzca papel en el cajón y haga una copia de prueba para verificar la imagen.
3. Si la imagen está torcida (alimentación del papel torcida) haga los ajustes que se describen a continuación.

Einsetzen der Papierformatkarte und der Medientypkarte
Setzen Sie die Papierformatkarte (G,V) und die Medientypkarte (H,X) in die jeweiligen Führungen.

Einstellung bei verkantetem Papiereinzug (nur PF-730)
1. Stecken Sie den Netzstecker des Geräts in die Wandsteckdose und schalten Sie das Gerät am Hauptschalter ein.
2. Legen Sie Papier in die Papierlade ein und machen Sie eine Testkopie, um das Bild zu prüfen.
3. Nehmen Sie nachstehende Einstellungen vor, falls das Bild verkantet ist (verkanteter Papiereinzug).
<Bezugswert> Links-rechts-Differenz maximal 1,5 mm.

Impostazione della piastra di formato carta e della piastra del tipo di supporto
Inserire la piastra del formato carta (G,V) e la piastra del tipo di supporto (H,X) nei rispettivi alloggiamenti.

Regolazione alimentazione obliqua carta (solo PF-730)
1. Collegare la spina della macchina alla presa di corrente a muro e accendere l'interruttore di alimentazione della macchina.
2. Caricare carta nel cassetto ed eseguire una copia di prova per controllare l'immagine.
3. Se l'immagine risulta obliqua (alimentazione obliqua della carta), eseguire le regolazioni descritte sotto.
<Valore di riferimento> Differenza tra destra e sinistra di 1,5 mm o inferiore

---

纸张尺寸标示和纸张种类标示的安装
将纸张尺寸标示 (G,V) 和纸张种类标示 (H,X) 分别插入到图示的插槽中。

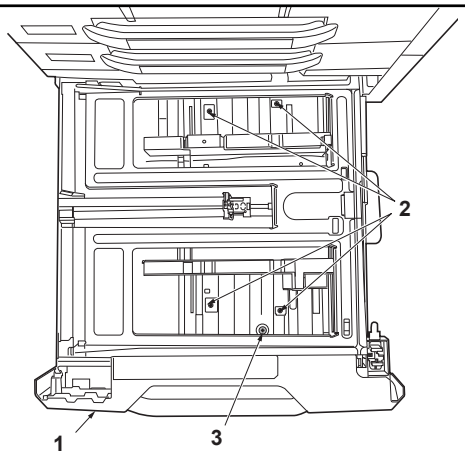
歪斜进纸调节（仅限 PF-730）
1. 将机器主机上的电源插头插入电源插座中，打开主电源开关。
2. 在纸盒中放入纸张。进行测试复印以确认图像。
3. 图像倾斜（歪斜进纸）时进行以下调节。
＜基准值＞左右差 1.5㎜ 以下

용지크기 플레이트와 용지종류 플레이트의 세트
용지크기 플레이트 (G,V) 와 용지종류 플레이트 (H,X) 를 각표시 슬롯에 각각 삽입한다 .

경사급지 조정 (PF-730 만)
1. 본체 전원 플러그를 벽 콘센트에 연결하고 본체의 주 전원 스위치를 켭니다 .
2. 카세트에 용지를 장착합니다 . 시험복사를 하고 화상을 확인합니다 .
3. 화상이 기울어져 있는 (경사급지) 경우에는 다음 조정을 합니다 .
＜기준치＞ 좌우차 1.5mm 이하

用紙サイズプレートと用紙種類プレートのセット
用紙サイズプレート (G,V) と用紙種類プレート (H,X) を各表示スロットにそれぞれ挿入する。

斜め給紙調整 (PF-730 のみ)
1. 機械本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、主電源スイッチを ON にする。
2. カセットに用紙をセットする。テストコピーをおこない、画像を確認する。
3. 画像が傾いている (斜め給紙) 場合は次の調整をおこなう。
＜基準値＞左右差 1.5㎜ 以下



4.Pull out the cassette (1) in the paper feeder and loosen the 4 screws (2).
5.Turn the adjusting screw (3) to adjust the cursor skew.
6.Retighten the 4 screws (2).
7.Make another test copy to check the image.

5.Faire tourner la vis de réglage (3) pour régler la déviation du curseur.
6.Resserrer les 4 vis (2).
7.Faire une autre copie d'essai pour vérifier l'image.

<Valor de referencia> diferencia izquierda-derecha de 1,5 mm o menor.

4.Extraiga el cajón (1) del alimentador de papel y afloje los 4 tornillos (2).
5.Gire el tornillo de ajuste (3) para ajustar la desviación del cursor.
6.Vuelva a apretar los 4 tornillos (2).
7.Haga otra copia de prueba para verificar la imagen.

4.Ziehen Sie die Papierlade (1) aus dem Papiereinzug und lösen Sie die 4 Schrauben (2).
5.Drehen Sie die Einstellschraube (3), um die Cursor-Verkantung zu korrigieren.
6.Ziehen Sie die 4 Schrauben (2) wieder an
7.Erstellen Sie zur Überprüfung des Bilds noch einmal eine Testkopie.

4.Estrarre il cassetto (1) dell'unità di alimentazione della carta e quindi allentare le 4 viti (2).
5.Ruotare la vite di regolazione (3) per regolare l'inclinazione del cursore.
6.Ristringere le 4 viti (2).
7.Eseguire un'altra copia di prova per controllare l'immagine.

---

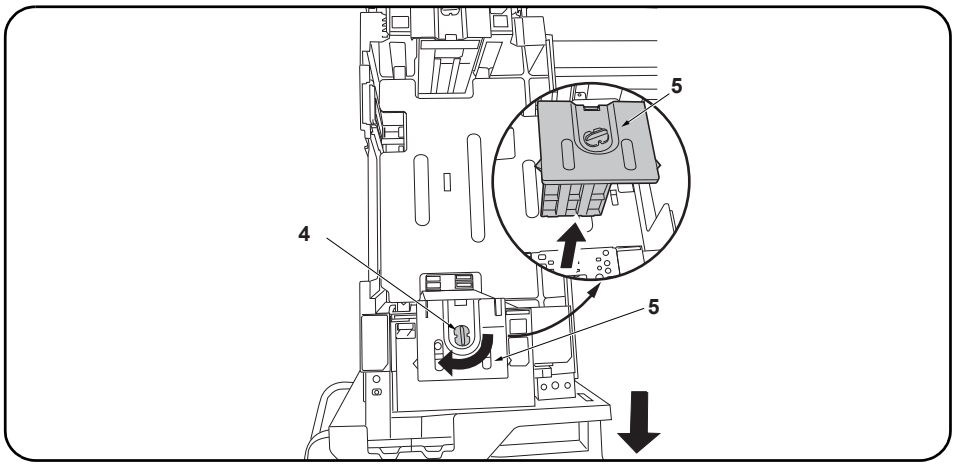
4. 拉出供纸盒 (1) ，拧松 4 颗螺丝 (2)。
5. 旋转调节螺丝 (3) ，以调节游标的倾斜。
6. 拧紧 4 颗螺丝 (2)。
7. 再次进行测试复印，确认图像。

---

4. 급지 카세트 (1) 를 빼 내어 나사 (2) 4 개를 느슨하게 합니다 .
5. 조정나사 (3) 을 돌려 커서 경사조정을 합니다 .
6. 나사 (2) 4 개를 조입니다 .
7. 다시 시험복사를 하고 화상을 확인합니다 .

---

4. ペーパーフィーダーのカセット (1) を引出し、ビス (2)4 本を緩める。
5. 調整ネジ (3) を回し、カーソルの傾き調整をおこなう。
6. ビス (2)4 本を締め付ける。
7. 再度、テストコピーをおこない、画像を確認する。



Changing paper size (PF-740, metric specifications only)
At shipment, Letter is set for inch models and A4 is set for metric models. Use the procedure below to change the size to B5.

1.Pull out the cassette of the paper feeder.
2.Turn the front lock lever (4) 90° and remove the front deck cursor (5).

Modification du format du papier (PF-740, pour spécifications métriques seulement)
À expédition, les modèles à mesure en pouces sont réglés sur le format Letter et les modèles à mesure métrique sur le format A4. Pour passer au format B5, procéder de la manière suivante.

1.Tirer le magasin du bureau papier vers soi.
2.Faire tourner le levier de verrouillage avant (4) de 90º et déposer le curseur de platine avant (5).

Cómo cambiar el tamaño de papel (PF-740, sólo para las especificaciones métricas)
En el momento de salida de fábrica, se configura Carta para los modelos en pulgadas y A4 para los modelos en sistema métrico. Siga este procedimiento para cambiar el tamaño a B5.

1.Abra el casete del alimentador de papel.
2.Gire la palanca de bloqueo frontal (4) 90º y quite el cursor frontal de la plataforma (5).

Ändern des Papierformats (PF-740, nur metrische Spezifikationen)
Beim Werksversand ist bei Modellen mit Zollmaß das Format Letter voreingestellt und bei Modellen mit metrischem Maß das Format A4.
Das Format kann wie folgend auf B5 umgeschaltet werden.

1.Ziehen Sie die Papierlade aus dem Papiereinzug.
2.Den vorderen Verriegelungshebel (4) um 90° drehen und den vorderen Konsole-Cursor (5) abnehmen.

Cambio del formato della carta (PF-740, solo per le specifiche metriche)
Al momento della spedizione, Letter è impostato per le specifiche in pollici e A4 è impostato per le specifiche metriche. Usare la procedura riportata sotto per cambiare il formato a B5.

1.Estrarre il cassetto dell'unità di alimentatore della carta.
2.Ruotare la leva frontale di blocco (4) di 90° e rimuovere il cursore frontale del deck (5).

纸张尺寸更改（PF-740，仅限公制规格）
产品出厂时，英制规格设定为 Letter、公制规格设定为 A4。要将尺寸更改为 B5 时，请按以下步骤进行操作。

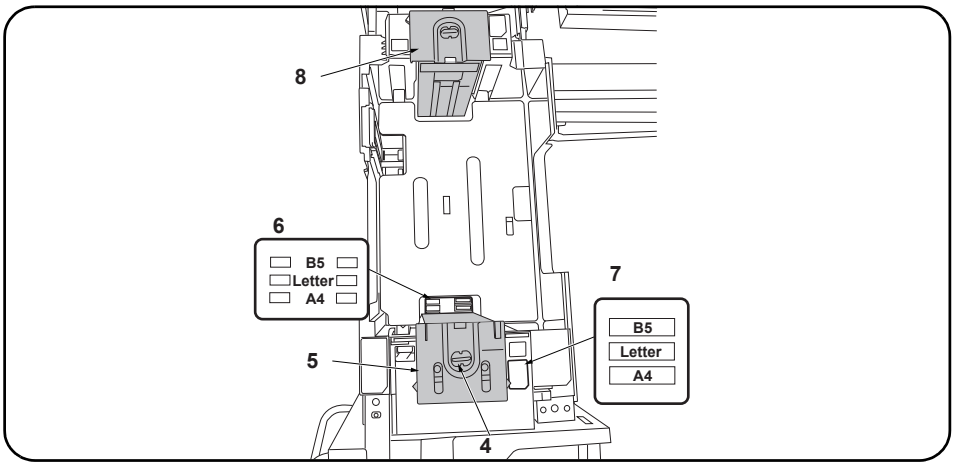
1. 拉出供纸工作台的供纸盒。
2. 将前部锁定杆 (4) 旋转 90°，拆下堆纸板前部游标（5）。

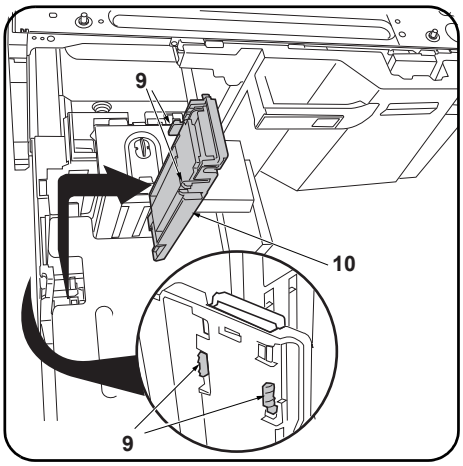
용지크기 변경 (PF-740, 센치 사양만)
출하시 , 인치사양은 Letter, 센치사양은 A4 로 설정되어 있습니다 . 크기를 B5 로 변경하는 경우에는 다음 순서를 진행해 주십시오 .

1. 급지대 카세트를 빼 냅니다 .
2. 잠금레버 앞 (4) 을 90° 회전시켜 데크커서 앞 (5) 을 제거합니다 .

用紙サイズ変更(PF-740，センチ仕様のみ)
出荷時、インチ仕様は Letter、センチ仕様は A4 に設定されています。サイズを B5 に変更する場合は次の手順をおこなってください。

1. ペーパーフィーダーのカセットを引き出す。
2. ロックレバー前 (4) を 90° 回転させ、デッキカーソル前(5)を取り外す。





3. Move the front deck cursor (5) so that it is aligned with the size indicators on the top (7) and bottom (6) of the cassette.
4. Turn the front lock lever (4) 90° to lock it.
5. Move the rear deck cursor (8) in the same way.

6. Release the hook (9) and remove the deck trailing edge cursor (10).

---

3. Déplacer le curseur de platine avant (5) de sorte qu'il soit aligné avec les indicateurs de format en haut (7) et en bas (6) du tiroir.
4. Faire tourner le levier de verrouillage avant (4) de 90º pour le verrouiller.
5. Déplacer le curseur de platine arrière (8) en procédant de la même manière.

6. Libérer le crochet (9) et déposer le curseur du bord arrière de la platine (10).

---

3. Mueva el cursor frontal de la plataforma (5) para que quede alineado con las indicadores de tamaño de la parte superior (7) e inferior (6) del cajón.
4. Gire la palanca de bloqueo frontal (4) 90º para bloquearla.
5. Mueva el cursor trasero de la plataforma (8) de la misma forma.

6. Libere el gancho (9) y quite el cursor del borde inferior de la plataforma (10).

---

3. Den vorderen Konsole-Cursor (5) so verschieben, dass er mit den Formatanzeigen oben (7) und unten (6) an der Kassette fluchtet.
4. Den vorderen Verriegelungshebel (4) zum Verriegeln um 90° drehen.
5. Den hinteren Konsole-Cursor (8) auf gleiche Weise verschieben.

6. Den Haken (9) lösen und den Hinterkante-Cursor (10) der Konsole abnehmen.

---

3. Spostare il cursore frontale del deck (5) in modo che esso risulti allineato con gli indicatori di formato sulla parte superiore (7) e inferiore (6) del cassetto.
4. Ruotare la leva frontale di blocco (4) di 90°, per bloccarla.
5. Spostare il cursore posteriore del deck (8) allo stesso modo.

6. Rilasciare il gancio (9) e rimuovere il cursore del bordo di uscita del deck (10).

---

3. 移动堆纸板前部游标 (5)，使供纸盒下部的尺寸标记 (6) 与供纸盒上部的尺寸标记 (7) 对齐。
4. 将前部锁定杆 (4) 旋转 90° 以固定。
5. 按同样方式移动后部堆纸板后部游标 (8)。

6. 解除卡扣 (9)，拆下堆纸板后部游标 (10)。

---

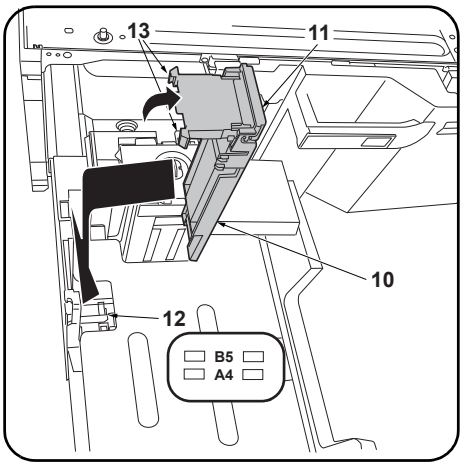
3. 카세트 밑의 크기표시 (6) 와 카세트 위의 크기 표시 (7) 에 맞춰 데크커서 앞 (5) 을 이동시킵니다 .
4. 잠금레버 앞 (4) 을 90° 회전시켜 고정합니다 .
5. 똑같이 데크커서 뒤 (8) 를 이동시킵니다 .

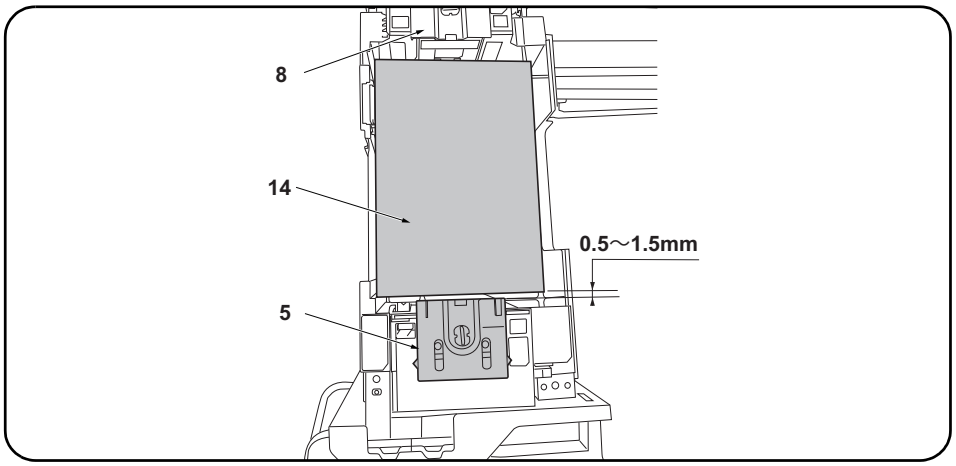
6. 후크 (9) 를 해제하고 데크 뒷단커서 (10) 를 제거합니다 .

---

3. カセット下のサイズ表示 (6) とカセット上のサイズ表示 (7) に合わせてデッキカーソル前 (5) を移動させる。
4. ロックレバー前 (4) を 90° 回転させ固定する。
5. 同様にデッキカーソル後 (8) を移動させる。

6. フック (9) を解除し、デッキ後端カーソル (10) を取り外す。





7. Lift up the sub-cursor (11).
8. Align with the size indicator (12), engage the hook (13) and install the deck trailing edge cursor (10).

Adjusting the cursor width (PF-740 only)

1. Load paper in the cassettes.
2. If the gap between the front deck cursor (5) and the paper (14) is outside the 0.5 to 1.5 mm range when the paper (14) is touching up against the rear deck cursor (8), perform the following adjustment.
* A cursor width that is too small can hinder paper feeding, while a cursor width that is too large can lead to problems such as skewed paper feed.

---

7. Lever le curseur secondaire (11).
8. Aligner avec l'indicateur de format (12), engager le crochet (13) et reposer le curseur du bord arrière de la platine (10).

Réglage de la largeur du curseur (PF-740 uniquement)

1. Charger les tiroirs en papier.
2. Si l'écartement entre le curseur de platine avant (5) et le papier (14) est hors des limites de 0,5 à 1,5 mm quand le papier (14) touche le curseur de platine arrière (8), procéder au réglage suivant.
* Une largeur trop faible du curseur risque d'empêcher l'entraînement du papier et une largeur trop grande risque d'entraîner des problèmes du type entraînement du papier de biais.

---

7. Levante el cursor secundario (11).
8. Alinee con el indicador de tamaño (12), enganche el gancho (13) e instale el cursor del borde inferior de la plataforma. (10).

Cómo ajustar la anchura del cursor (PF-740 solamente)

1. Cargue papel en los cajones.
2. Si la separación entre el cursor frontal de la plataforma (5) y el papel (14) está fuera del rango de 0,5 a 1,5 mm cuando el papel (14) toca el cursor trasero de la plataforma (8), haga el siguiente ajuste.
* Una anchura del cursor demasiado pequeña puede impedir la alimentación de papel; una anchura del cursor demasiado grande puede provocar problemas con la alimentación torcida de papel.

---

7. Den Unter-Cursor (11) anheben.
8. Auf die Formatanzeige (12) ausrichten, den Haken (13) einsetzen und den Hinterkante-Cursor (10) der Konsole anbringen.

Einstellen der Cursor-Breite (nur PF-740)

1. Papier in die Papierladen einlegen.
2. Falls der Abstand zwischen dem vorderen Konsole-Cursor (5) und dem Papier (14) außerhalb des Bereichs 0,5 bis 1,5 mm liegt, wenn das Papier (14) am hinteren Konsole-Cursor (8) anliegt, ist folgende Einstellung vorzunehmen.
* Eine zu kleine Cursor-Breite kann den Papiereinzug behindern, wogegen eine zu große Cursor-Breite verkanteten Papiereinzug und ähnliche Probleme verursachen kann.

---

7. Sollevare il cursore secondario (11).
8. Allineare con l'indicatore formato (12), fissare il gancio (13) e installare il cursore del bordo di uscita del deck (10).

Regolazione della larghezza del cursore (solo PF-740)

1. Caricare carta nei cassetti.
2. Se lo spazio tra il cursore frontale del deck (5) e la carta (14) è fuori della gamma da 0,5 a 1,5 mm quando la carta (14) tocca il cursore postertiore del deck (8), eseguire la regolazione seguente.
* Una larghezza dei cursori troppo piccola può ostacolare l'alimentazione della carta, mentre unalarghezza dei cursori troppo grande può essere causa di problemi, come ad esempio l'alimentazione obbliqua della carta.

---

7. 抬起副游标 (11)。
8. 对齐尺寸标记 (12)，将卡扣 (13) 嵌入以安装堆纸板后部游标 (10)。

游标宽度的调节 （仅限 PF-740）

1. 在供纸盒中装入纸张。
2. 在堆纸板后部游标 (8) 与纸张 (14) 接触的状态下，如果堆纸板前部游标 (5) 与纸张 (14) 的间隙超出了 0.5 ～ 1.5㎜ 的范围，须进行以下调节。
※ 如果游标宽度过小，可能造成不供纸，游标宽度过大，则可能发生歪斜进纸等情况。

---

7. 서브커서 (11) 를 세웁니다 .
8. 크기표시 (12) 에 맞춰 후크 (13) 를 판벽데크 후단커서 (10) 를 부착합니다 .

커서 폭 조정 (PF-740 만)

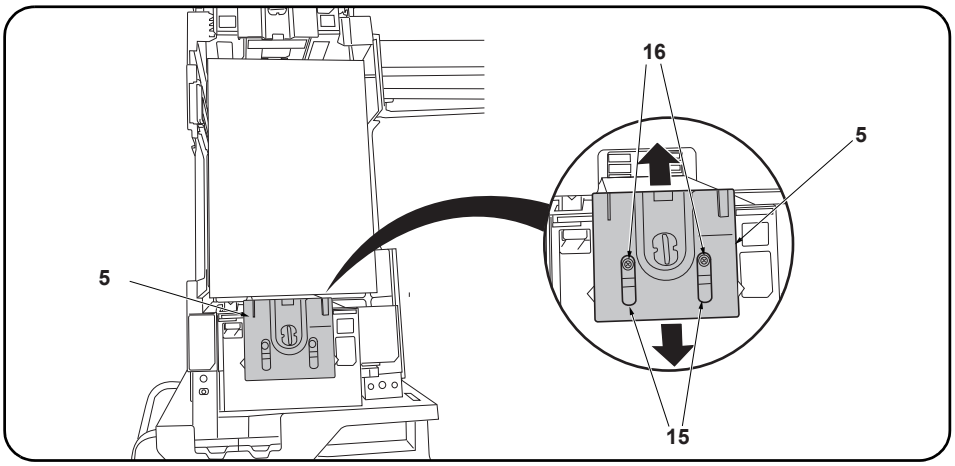
1. 카세트에 용지를 장착합니다 .
2. 데크커서 뒤 (8) 에 용지 (14) 가 접하고 있는 상태에서 데크커서 앞 (5) 과 용지 (14) 의 틈이 0.5 ~ 1.5mm 의 범위외의 경우에는 이하의 조정을 합니다 .
※ 커서 폭이 작으면 무급지 , 커서 폭이 크면 경사급지 등이 발생할 가능성이 있습니다 .

---

7. サブカーソル (11) を起こす。
8. サイズ表示 (12) に合わせて、フック (13) をはめデッキ後端カーソル (10) を取り付ける。

カーソル幅の調整 (PF-740 のみ)

1. カセットに用紙をセットする。
2. デッキカーソル後 (8) に用紙 (14) が接している状態で、デッキカーソル前 (5) と用紙 (14) の隙間が 0.5 ～ 1.5㎜ の範囲外の場合は、以下の調整をおこなう。
※ カーソル幅が小さいと無給紙、カーソル幅が大きいと斜め給紙などが発生する可能性がある。



3. Insert a Philips-head screwdriver into the 2 long slots (15) in the front deck cursor (5) and loosen the 2 adjusting screws (16). Then move the front deck cursor (5).

4. Retighten the 2 adjusting screws (16).
5. Check that the gap between the front deck cursor (5) and the paper is between 0.5 and 1.5 mm.

---

3. Insérer un tournevis cruciforme dans les 2 longues fentes (15) du curseur de platine avant (5) et desserrer les 2 vis de réglage (16). Déplacer ensuite le curseur de platine avant (5).

4. Resserrer les 2 vis de réglage (16).
5. Vérifier que l'écartement entre le curseur de platine avant (5) et le papier est entre 0,5 et 1,5 mm.

---

3. Inserte un destornillador de cabeza Philips en las dos ranuras largas (15) en el cursor frontal de la plataforma (5) y afloje los 2 tornillos de ajuste (16). Después, mueva el cursor frontal de la plataforma (5).

4. Vuelva a apretar los 2 tornillos de ajuste (16).
5. Verifique que la separación entre el cursor frontal de la plataforma (5) y el papel sea de entre 0,5 y 1,5 mm.

---

3. Einen Kreuzschlitzschraubendreher in die 2 langen Öffnungen (15) im vorderen Konsole-Cursor (5) stecken und die 2 Einstellschrauben (16) lösen. Danach den vorderen Konsole-Cursor (5) verschieben.

4. Die 2 Einstellschrauben (16) wieder anziehen.
5. Vergewissern Sie sich, dass der Abstand zwischen dem vorderen Konsole-Cursor (5) und dem Papier im Bereich 0,5 bis 1,5 mm liegt.

---

3. Inserire un cacciavite con testa a croce tipo Philips nelle 2 fessure lunghe (15) nel cursore frontale del deck (5) e allentare le 2 viti di regolazione (16). Quindi spostare il cursore frontale del deck (5).

4. Ristringere le 2 viti di regolazione (16).
5. Controllare che lo spazio tra il cursore frontale del deck (5) e la carta sia compreso nella gamma tra 0,5 e 1,5 mm.

---

3. 将十字螺丝刀从堆纸板前部游标 (5) 的 2 处长孔 (15) 处插入，拧松 2 颗调节螺丝 (16)，移动堆纸板前部游标 (5)。

4. 拧紧 2 颗调节螺丝 (16)。
5. 确认堆纸板前部游标 (5) 与纸张的间隙在 0.5 ～ 1.5㎜ 的范围内。

---

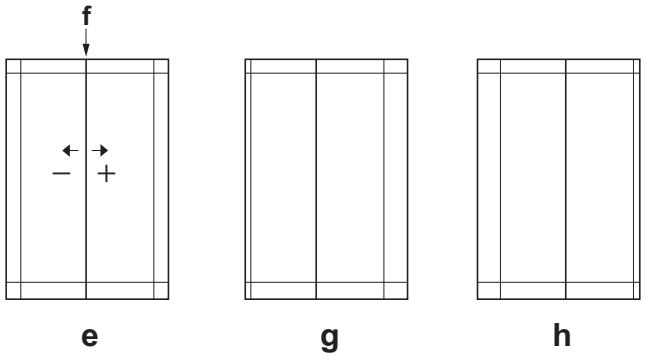
3. 데크커서 앞 (5) 2 곳의 긴 구멍 (15) 에서 플러스 드라이버를 넣어 조정나사 (16) 2 개를 느슨하게 하고 데크커서 앞 (5) 을 이동시킵니다 .

4. 조정나사 (16) 2 개를 조입니다 .
5. 데크커서 앞 (5) 과 용지의 틈이 0.5 ~ 1.5 mm 범위내가 되어 있는 것을 확인합니다 .

---

3. デッキカーソル前 (5) の 2 箇所の長穴 (15) からプラスドライバー挿入し、調整ビス (16)2 本を緩め、デッキカーソル前 (5) を移動させる。

4. 調整ビス (16)2 本を締め付ける。
5. デッキカーソル前 (5) と用紙の隙間が 0.5 ～ 1.5㎜ の範囲内になっていることを確認する。



Adjusting the center line
The reference value for the center line is ±0.5 mm or less at position (f) in the correct image (e). If the center line position is outside this range, perform the following adjustment.
1. Set maintenance mode U034, select LSU Out Left and Cassette 5, Cassette 6 or Cassette 7.
2. Adjust the values.
Test pattern (g): Increase the setting value. Test pattern (h): Decrease the setting value.
3. Press the Start key to confirm the setting value.

Réglage de l'axe
La valeur de référence pour l'axe est de ±0,5 mm ou moins à la position (f) d'une image correcte (e). Si la position de l'axe est hors de cette plage, effectuez le réglage suivant.
1. Passer au mode maintenance U034, sélectionner LSU Out Left et Cassette 5, Cassette 6 ou Cassette 7.
2. Régler les valeurs.
Mire d' essai (g): Augmentez la valeur de réglage. Mire d' essai (h): Diminuez la valeur de réglage.
3. Appuyer sur la touche de Start pour confirmer la valeur de réglage.

Ajuste de la línea central
El valor de referencia de la línea central es de ±0,5 mm o menor, en la posición (f) de la imagen correcta (e). Si la posición de la línea central estuviera fuera de este rango, haga el siguiente ajuste.
1. Entre al modo mantenimiento U034, seleccione LSU Out Left y Cassette 5, Cassette 6 o Cassette 7.
2. Ajuste los valores.
Patrón de prueba (g): Aumente el valor de configuración. Patrón de prueba (h): Reduzca el valor de configuración.
3. Pulse la tecla de Start para confirmar el valor de configuración.

Einstellen der Mittenlinie
Der Bezugswert für die Mittenlinie ist ±0,5 mm oder weniger an Position (f) des korrekten Bilds (e). Falls die Mittenlinie außerhalb dieses Bereichs liegt, ist folgende Einstellung vorzunehmen.
1. In den Wartungsmodus U034 schalten und LSU Out Left und Cassette 5, Cassette 6 oder Cassette 7 wählen.
2. Die Werte einstellen.
Testmuster (g): Den Einstellwert erhöhen. Testmuster (h): Den Einstellwert verringern.
3. Den Einstellwert durch Drücken der Start-Taste bestätigen.

Regolazione della linea centrale
Il valore di riferimento per la linea centrale è ±0,5 mm o inferiore alla posizione (f) nell'immagine corretta (e). Se la posizione della linea centrale è all'infuori di questa gamma, effettuare la regolazione seguente.
1. Impostare la modalità di manutenzione U034, selezionare LSU Out Left e Cassette 5, Cassette 6 o Cassette 7.
2. Regolare i valori.
Modello di prova (g): Aumentare il valore dell'impostazione. Modello di prova (h): Diminuire il valore dell'impostazione.
3. Premere il tasto di Start per confermare il valore dell'impostazione.

中心线调节
中心线的基准值在矫正图像 (e) 的 (f) 位置为 ±0.5mm 以内。超出该范围时，须进行以下调节。
1. 设置维护模式 U034，选择 LSU Out Left、Cassette5、Cassette6 或 Cassette7。
2. 调整设定值。
测试图案 (g)：调高设定值。 测试图案 (h)：调低设定值。
3. 按 Start 键，以确定设定值。

센터라인 조정
센터라인은 적정화상 (e) 의 (f) 위치에서 기준치는 ±0.5mm 이내 . 여기에서 벗어나는 것은 이하의 조정을 합니다 .
1. 메인터넌스 모드 U034 을 세트하고 LSU Out Left, Cassette5, Cassette6 또는 Cassette7 을 선택합니다 .
2. 설정치를 조정합니다 .
테트스 패턴 (g) :설정치를 높입니다 . 테스트 패턴 (h) :설정치를 내립니다 .
3. 시작키를 누르고 설정치를 확인합니다 .

センターライン調整
センターラインは、適正画像 (e) の (f) の位置で基準値は ±0.5mm 以内。これから外れるときは以下の調整をおこなう。
1. メンテナンスモード U034 をセットし、LSU Out Left、Cassette5、Cassette6 または Cassette7 を選択する。
2. 設定値を調整する。
テストパターン (g) :設定値を上げる。 テストパターン (h) :設定値を下げる。
3. スタートキーを押し、設定値を確定する。

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

2012. 9
303NL56712-02

INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR 4000-SHEETS FINISHER

INSTALLATION GUIDE

GUIDE D'INSTALLATION

GUÍA DE INSTALACION

INSTALLATIONSANLEITUNG

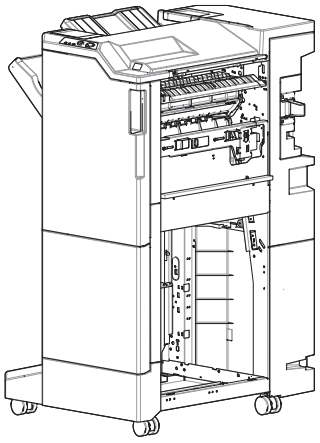
GUIDA ALL'INSTALLAZIONE

安装手册

설치안내서

設置手順書

DF-790(C)



English

A different procedure is required depending on the product which is installed with this unit.Each procedure is described in the following pages.
For installation with a MFP, see Page 1 to Page 7.
For installation with a Printer, see Page 8 to Page 14.
References to medium-speed MFPs in this document denote 30/30, 35/35, 45/45 and 55/50 ppm color machines, and 35, 45 and 55 ppm monochrome machines.
References to high-speed MFPs in this document denote 65/65 and 75/70 ppm color machines, and 65 and 80 ppm monochrome machines.

Français

Une procédure différente est requise selon le produit qui est installé avec cette unité.Chaque procédure est décrite dans les pages suivantes.
Pour l'installation avec une imprimante multifonction, voir Page 1 à Page 7.
Pour l'installation avec une imprimante, voir Page 8 à Page 14.
Dans le présent document, les références aux MFP à vitesse moyenne renvoient aux machines couleurs 30/30, 35/35, 45/45 et 55/50 ppm et aux machines monochromes 35, 45 et 55 ppm.
Dans le présent document, les références aux MFP à grande vitesse renvoient aux machines couleurs 65/65 et 75/70 ppm et aux machines monochromes 65 et 80 ppm.

Español

El procedimiento es diferente según el producto que se instale con esta unidad.En las siguientes páginas, se describe cada procedimiento.
Para la instalación con un MFP, consulte las páginas de la 1 a la 7.
Para la instalación con una impresora, consulte las páginas de la 8 a la 14
.
Las referencias a las MFP de velocidad media de este documento corresponden a las máquinas a color de 30/30, 35/35, 45/45 y 55/50 ppm y a las máquinas monocromáticas de 35, 45 y 55 ppm.
Las referencias a las MFP de alta velocidad de este documento corresponden a las máquinas a color de 65/65 y 75/70 ppm y a las máquinas

Deutsch

Je nach verwendetem Modell ist eine andere Vorgehensweise zur Installation dieses Teils erforderlich.Die unterschiedlichen Vorgehensweisen werden auf den folgenden Seiten erläutert.
Bei Installation an einem Dokumentenfinisher siehe Seiten 1 bis 7.
Bei Installation an einem Drucker siehe Seiten 8 bis 14.
Angaben für MFP der mittleren Leistungsklasse in dieser Anleitung gelten für die 30/30, 35/35, 45/45 und 55/50 ppm Vollfarbenkopierer sowie für die 35, 45 und 55 ppm Monochrommaschinen.
Angaben für MFP der Hochleistungsklasse in dieser Anleitung gelten für die 65/65 und 75/70 ppm Vollfarbenkopierer sowie für die 65 und 80 ppm Monochrommaschinen.

Italiano

Si richiede una procedura diversa in funzione del prodotto su cui è installata l'unità.Le singole procedure sono descritte nelle pagine seguenti.
Per l'installazione con un MFP, vedere le pagine da 1 a 7.
Per l'installazione con una stampante, vedere le pagine da 8 a 14.
I riferimenti per le MFP a velocità media riportati in questo documento indicano le macchine a colori 30/30, 35/35, 45/45 e 55/50 ppm, e le macchine monocromatiche 35, 45 e 55 ppm.
I riferimenti per le MFP a velocità alta riportati in questo documento indicano le macchine a colori 65/65 e 75/70 ppm, e le macchine monocromatiche 65 e 80 ppm.

简体中文

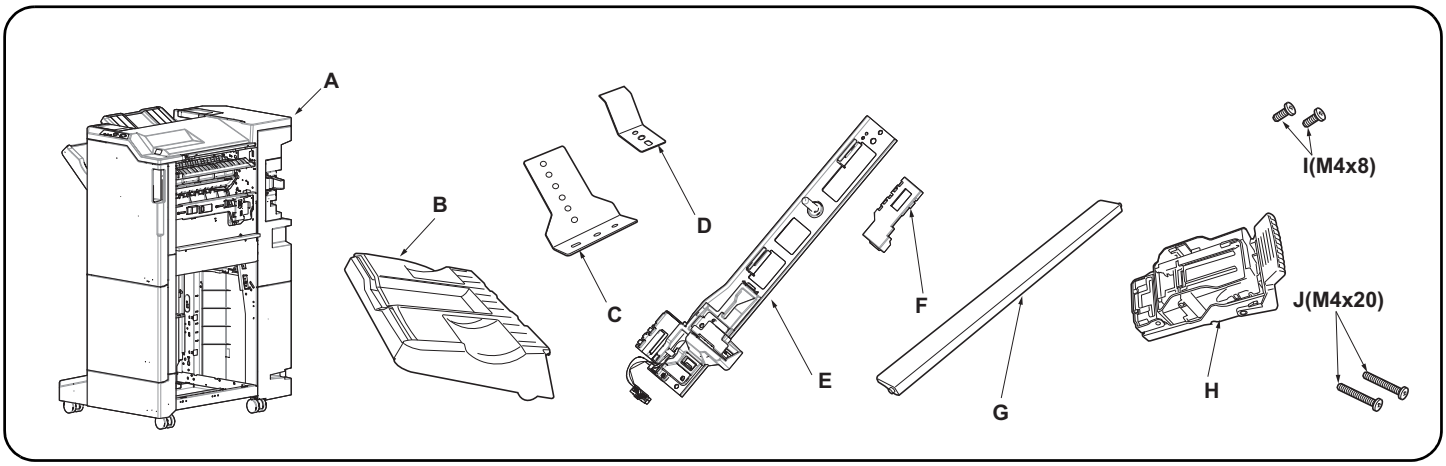
根据安装对象，安装步骤略有不同。各个步骤记载在下面的页面。
安装到 MFP 上时，请参见 P1-P7。
安装到打印机上时，请参见 P8-P14。
本文中的中速 MFP 代表彩色 30/30 页机型、35/35 页机型、45/45 页机型、55/50 页机型、黑白 35 页机型、45 页机型、55 页机型。
本文中的高速 MFP 代表彩色 65/65 页机型、75/70 页机型、黑白 65 页机型、80 页机型。

한국어

이 장치에 설치되는 제품에 따라 절차가 다릅니다 . 다음 페이지에서 각 절차를 설명합니다 .
MFP 에 설치하는 경우 1 페이지 ~7 페이지를 참조하십시오 .
프린터에 설치하는 경우 8 페이지 ~14 페이지를 참조하십시오 .
본문 중 중속 MFP 는 컬러 30/30 매기 , 35/35 매기 , 45/45 매기 , 55/50 매기 , 흑백 35 매기 , 45 매기 , 55 매기를 나타냅니다 .
본문 중 고속 MFP 는 컬러 65/65 매기 , 75/70 매기 , 흑백 65 매기 , 80 매기를 나타냅니다 .

日本語

装着する対象によって、取付手順は異なります。それぞれ、以下のページに記載しています。
MFP に設置する場合;1 ページ～ 7 ページ
プリンターに設置する場合;8 ページ～ 14 ページ
本文中の中速 MFP はカラー機の 30/30 枚機、35/35 枚機、45/45 枚機、55/50 枚機、モノクロ機の 35 枚機、45 枚機、55 枚機を表す。
本文中の高速 MFP はカラー機の 65/65 枚機、75/70 枚機、モノクロ機の 65 枚機、80 枚機を表す。



Supplied parts
- **A.** Document finisher 1
- **B.** Eject tray 1
- **C.** Earth connection plate 1
- **D.** Earth spring 1
- **E.** Connecting plate 1
- **F.** Connector cover 1
- **G.** Eject guide 1
- **H.** Staple cartridge 1
- **I.** M4 × 8 screw 2
- **J.** M4 × 20 screw 2

Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning materials from the parts supplied.

Pièces fournies
- **A.** Finisseur de document 1
- **B.** Bac d'éjection 1
- **C.** Plaque de raccordement de mise à la terre 1
- **D.** Ressort de mise à la terre 1
- **E.** Plaque de connexion 1
- **F.** Cache de connecteur 1
- **G.** Guide d'éjection 1
- **H.** Cartouche d'agrafes 1
- **I.** Vis M4 × 8 2
- **J.** Vis M4 × 20 2

Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.

Partes suministradas
- **A.** Finalizador de documentos 1
- **B.** Bandeja de salida 1
- **C.** Placa de conexión a tierra 1
- **D.** Resorte de conexión a tierra 1
- **E.** Placa de conexión 1
- **F.** Cubierta del conector 1
- **G.** Guía de salida 1
- **H.** Cartucho de grapas 1
- **I.** Tornillo M4 × 8 2
- **J.** Tornillo M4 × 20 2

Asegúrese de despegar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.

Enthaltene Teile
- **A.** Finisher 1
- **B.** Auswerffach 1
- **C.** Grundanschlussplatte 1
- **D.** Grundfeder 1
- **E.** Verbindungsplatte 1
- **F.** Stecker-Abdeckung 1
- **G.** Ausgabeführung 1
- **H.** Heftklammermagazin 1
- **I.** M4 × 8 Schraube 2
- **J.** M4 × 20 Schraube 2

Stellen Sie sicher, dass sämtliche Klebebänder und/oder Polstermaterial von den gelieferten Teilen entfernt wurden.

Parti fornite
- **A.** Finisher documenti 1
- **B.** Vassoio di espulsione 1
- **C.** Piastra di connessione per messa a terra . 1
- **D.** Molla di messa a terra 1
- **E.** Piastra di connessione 1
- **F.** Copri connettore 1
- **G.** Guida di espulsione 1
- **H.** Contenitore punti 1
- **I.** Vite M4 × 8 2
- **J.** Vite M4 × 20 2

Rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o i materiali di protezione dalle parti fornite.

附属品
- A. 装订器 1
- B. 排纸托盘 1
- C. 接地安装板 1
- D. 接地弹簧 1
- E. 连接板 1
- F. 接插件盖板 1
- G. 排纸导向板 1
- H. 装订针盒 1
- I. M4×8 螺丝 2
- J. M4×20 螺丝 2

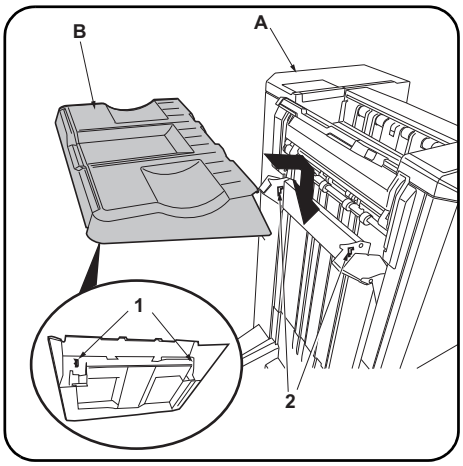
如果附属品上带有固定胶带，缓冲材料时务必揭下。

동봉품
- A. 문서 피니셔 1
- B. 배출 트레이 1
- C. 접지 부착판 1
- D. 접지 스프링 1
- E. 연결판 1
- F. 커넥터 커버 1
- G. 배출 가이드 1
- H. 스테이플 카트리지 1
- I. 나사 M4×8 2
- J. 나사 M4×20 2

동봉품에 고정 테이프 , 완충재가 붙어 있는 경우에는 반드시 제거할 것 .

同梱品
- A. ドキュメントフィニッシャー 1
- B. 排出トレイ 1
- C. アース取付板 1
- D. アースバネ 1
- E. 連結板 1
- F. コネクターカバー 1
- G. 排出ガイド 1
- H. ステープルカートリッジ 1
- I. ビス M4×8 2
- J. ビス M4×20 2

同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材がついている場合は、必ず取り外すこと。



NOTICE
When installing on a medium-speed MFP, the Attachment Kit (AK-730 or AK-731) must be installed before the document finisher is installed.

Procedure
Before starting installation, be sure to turn the main power switch of the machine off, and unplug the power plug from the wall outlet.

1. Install by inserting the 2 hooks (1) on the back of the eject tray (B) into the holes (2) in the document finisher (A) lift.

REMARQUE
Lors de l'installation sur une imprimante multifonction à vitesse moyenne, le kit de fixation (AK-730 ou AK-731) doit être installé avant d'installer le finisseur de document.

Procédure
Avant de commencer l'installation, s'assurer de mettre la machine hors tension et de débrancher la fiche d'alimentation de la prise murale.

1. Procéder en insérant les 2 crochets (1) au dos du bac d'éjection (B) dans les trous (2) du dispositif de levage du finisseur de document (A).

AVISO
Si se instala en un MFP de velocidad media, el Kit de conexión (AK-730 o AK-731) se debe instalar antes de instalarse el finalizador de documentos.

Procedimiento
Antes de iniciar la instalación, asegúrese de apagar el interruptor de encendido de la máquina y desenchufar el cable de alimentación de la toma de pared.

1. Instale insertando los 2 ganchos (1) de la parte posterior de la bandeja de salida (B) en los orificios (2) del elevador del finalizador de documentos (A).

ANMERKUNG
Bei der Installation an einem mittelschnellen MFP muss das Attachment-Kit (AK-730 oder AK-731) vor dem Finisher installiert werden.

Verfahren
Bevor Sie mit der Installation beginnen überzeugen Sie sich, dass der Netzschalter des Geräts ausgeschaltet und das Stromkabel aus der Steckdose gezogen ist.

1. Setzen Sie die 2 Haken (1) zur Befestigung an der Rückseite des Auswerffachs (B) in die Öffnungen (2) an der Hebeplatte des Finishers (A) ein.

AVVISO
Quando si installa un MFP di fascia media, prima di installare il finisher documenti occorre installare l'unità Attachment Kit (AK-730 o AK-731).

Procedura
Prima di iniziare l'installazione, spegnere la macchina e scollegare la spina dalla presa di corrente.

1. Installare inserendo i 2 ganci (1) sul retro del vassoio di espulsione (B) nei fori (2) sul sollevatore della finisher documenti (A).

注意
安装到中速 MFP 上时，在安装装订器前，请先安装连接组件（AK-730 或 AK-731）。

安装步骤
安装前务必关闭机器的主电源开关，并从墙壁插座拔下电源插头。

1. 将排纸托盘 (B) 内侧的 2 个挂钩 (1) 装入装订器 (A) 的升降板的孔 (2) 中。

주의
중속 MFP 에 설치하는 경우 문서 피니셔를 장착하기 전에 부착 키트 (AK-730 또는 AK-731) 를 설치해야 합니다 .

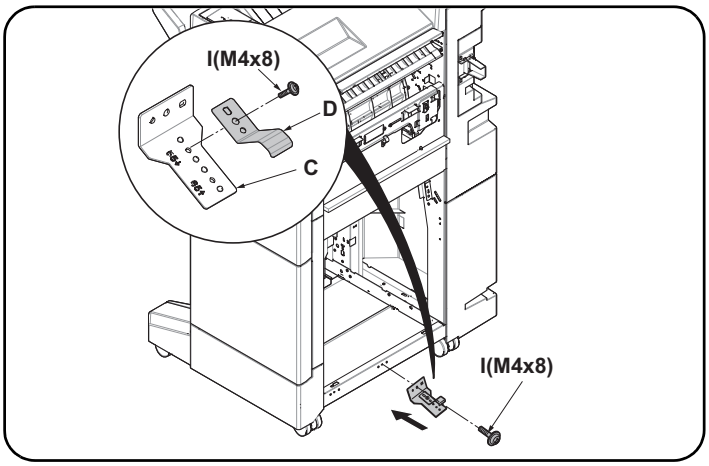
장착순서
설치를 시작하기 전에 반드시 본체의 주 전원 스위치를 끄고 벽 콘센트에서 전원 플러그를 분리하십시오 .

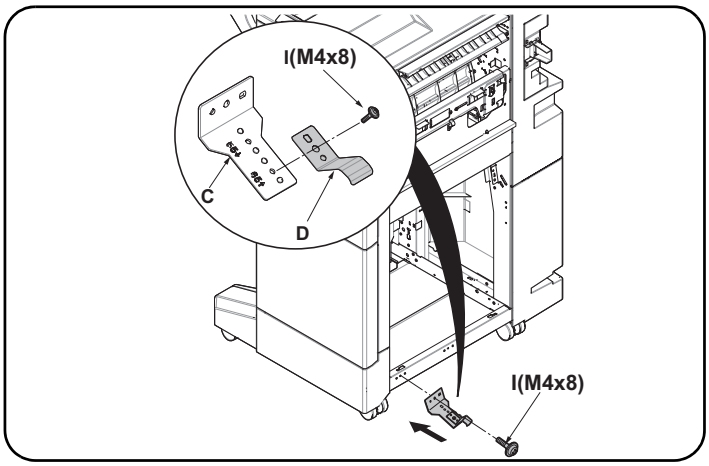
1. 배출 트레이 (B) 의 후면 후크 (1) 2 개를 문서 피니셔 (A) 의 승강판 구멍 (2) 에 넣고 장착합니다 .

注意
中速 MFP に設置する場合、ドキュメントフィニッシャーを取り付ける前に、アタッチメントキット (AK-730 または AK-731) の取り付けをおこなうこと。

取付手順
必ず機械本体の主電源スイッチを OFF にし、機械本体の電源プラグを抜いてから作業すること。

1. 排出トレイ (B) の裏側のフック (1)2 個をドキュメントフィニッシャー (A) の昇降板の穴 (2) に入れて、取り付ける。





Installation on medium-speed MFPs

2. Using an M4 × 8 screw (I), secure the earth spring (D) in the location indicated by the "55↓" marking on the earth connection plate (C).

3. Attach the earth connection plate (C) to the center of the bottom of the document finisher using an M4 × 8 screw (I).
Proceed to step 6.The procedure for installing the kit on a high-speed MFP is described on the following steps.

Installation on high-speed MFPs

2. Using an M4 × 8 screw (I), secure the earth spring (D) in the location indicated by the "65↑" marking on the earth connection plate (C).

3. Attach the earth connection plate (C) to the front side of the bottom of the document finisher using an M4 × 8 screw (I).

Montage sur des MFP à vitesse moyenne

2. En procédant à l'aide d'une vis M4 × 8 (I), fixez le ressort de mise à la terre (D) à l'endroit indiqué par la marque "55↓" sur la plaque de raccordement de mise à la terre (C).

3. Fixez la plaque de raccordement de mise à la terre (C) au milieu de la partie inférieure du finisseur de document avec une vis M4 × 8 (I).
Passer à l'étape 6. La procédure d'installation du kit sur l'imprimante multifonction à grande vitesse est décrite dans les étapes suivantes.

Montage sur des MFP à grande vitesse

2. En procédant à l'aide d'une vis M4 × 8 (I), fixez le ressort de mise à la terre (D) à l'endroit indiqué par la marque "65↑" sur la plaque de raccordement de mise à la terre (C).

3. Fixez la plaque de raccordement de mise à la terre (C) à l'avant de la partie inférieure du finisseur de document avec une vis M4 × 8 (I).

Instalación en las MFP de velocidad media

2. Con un tornillo M4 × 8 (I), asegure el resorte de conexión a tierra (D) en el lugar indicado por la marca "55↓" de la placa de conexión a tierra (C).

3. Fije la placa de conexión a tierra (C) en el centro de la parte inferior del finalizador de documentos usando un tornillo M4 × 8 (I).
Vaya al paso 6.En los siguientes pasos se describe el procedimiento de instalación del kit en un MFP de velocidad alta.

Instalación en las MFP de alta velocidad

2. Con un tornillo M4 × 8 (I), asegure el resorte de conexión a tierra (D) en el lugar indicado por la marca "65↑" de la placa de conexión a tierra (C).

3. Fije la placa de conexión a tierra (C) en el lado frontal de la parte inferior del finalizador de documentos usando un tornillo M4 × 8 (I).

Installation an MFP der mittleren Leistungsklasse

2. Befestigen Sie die Grundfeder (D) mit einer M4 × 8 Schraube (I) an der mit "55↓" bezeichneten Stelle der Grundanschlussplatte (C).

3. Bringen Sie die Grundanschlussplatte (C) mit einer M4 × 8 Schraube (I) mittig an der Unterseite des Finishers an.
Gehen Sie weiter zu Schritt 6.Die Vorgehensweise zur Installation des Kits an einem schnellen MFP wird in den folgenden Schritten beschrieben.

Installation an MFP der Hochleistungsklasse

2. Befestigen Sie die Grundfeder (D) mit einer M4 × 8 Schraube (I) an der mit "65↑" bezeichneten Stelle der Grundanschlussplatte (C).

3. Bringen Sie die Grundanschlussplatte (C) mit einer M4 × 8 Schraube (I) vorne an der Unterseite des Finishers an.

Installazione sulle MFP a velocità media

2. Utilizzando una vite M4 × 8 (I), fissare la molla di messa a terra (D) nella posizione indicata dal segno "55↓" sulla piastra di connessione per messa a terra (C).

3. Applicare la piastra di connessione per messa a terra (C) al centro in basso della finisher documenti utilizzando una vite M4 × 8 (I).
Procedere al passo 6. La procedura di installazione del Kit su un MFP di fascia alta è descritta nelle pagine successive.

Installazione sulle MFP a velocità alta

2. Utilizzando una vite M4 × 8 (I), fissare la molla di messa a terra (D) nella posizione indicata dal segno "65↑" sulla piastra di connessione per messa a terra (C).

3. Applicare la piastra di connessione per messa a terra (C) al lato anteriore in basso della finisher documenti utilizzando una vite M4 × 8 (I).

安装于中速 MFP 上时

2. 在接地安装板 (C) 上刻有 55 ↓的位置使用 1 颗 M4×8(I) 螺丝来固定接地弹簧 (D)。
3. 使用 M4×8(I) 螺丝将接地安装板 (C) 安装到装订器下部中心位置。
进至步骤 6。安装到高速 MFP 时，请参照下面的内容。

安装于高速 MFP 上时

2. 在接地安装板 (C) 上刻有 65 ↑的位置使用 1 颗 M4×8(I) 螺丝来固定接地弹簧 (D)。
3. 使用 M4×8(I) 螺丝将接地安装板 (C) 安装到装订器下部前侧位置。

중속 MFP 에 설치하는 경우

2. 접지 부착판 (C) 의 각인 55 ↓의 위치에 나사 M4×8(I) 1 개로 접지스프링 (D) 을 고정합니다 .
3. 나사 M4×8(I) 로 접지 부착판 (C) 을 문서 피니셔 하부중앙에 부착합니다 .
순서 6 로 진행합니다 .고속 MFP 에 키트를 설치하는 절차는 다음 단계에 설명되어 있습니다 .

고속 MFP 에 설치하는 경우

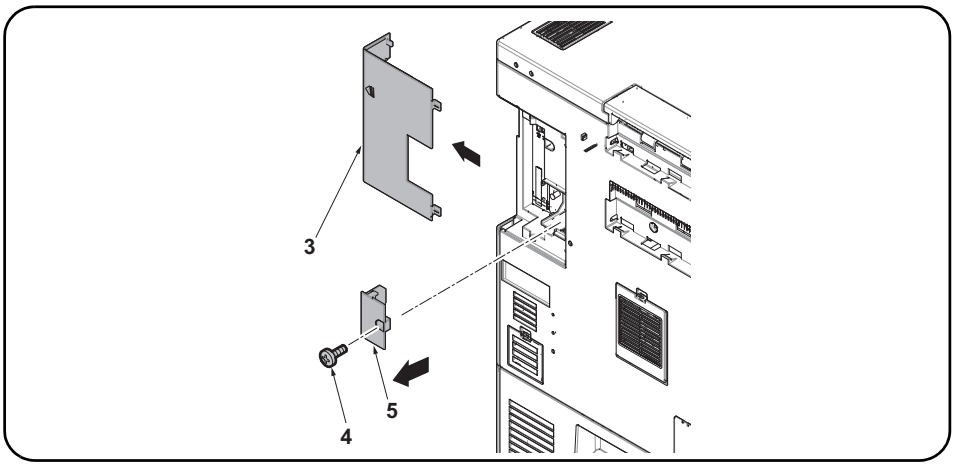
2. 접지 부착판 (C) 의 각인 65 ↑의 위치에 나사 M4×8(I) 1 개로 접지스프링 (D) 을 고정합니다 .
3. 나사 M4×8(I) 로 접지 부착판 (C) 을 문서 피니셔 하부앞측에 부착합니다 .

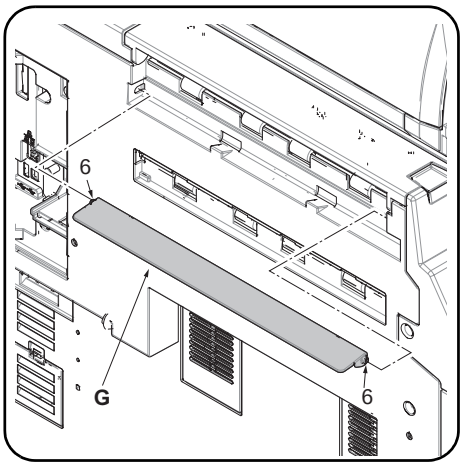
中速 MFP に設置の場合

2. アース取付板 (C) の刻印 55 ↓の位置にビス M4×8(I) でアースバネ (D) を固定する。
3. ビス M4×8(I) でアース取付板 (C) をドキュメントフィニッシャー下部センターに取り付ける。
手順 6 に進む。高速 MFP に設置の場合は次に記載しています。

高速 MFP に設置の場合

2. アース取付板 (C) の刻印 65 ↑の位置にビス M4×8(I) でアースバネ (D) を固定する。
3. ビス M4×8(I) でアース取付板 (C) をドキュメントフィニッシャー下部前側に取り付ける。





Only for installation on high-speed MFPs
If installing on a medium-speed MFP, proceed to step 6.
4. Remove the machine interface cover (3).
5. Remove the screw (4) and remove the controller cover (5).

6. Install the eject guide (G) by fitting the 2 eject guide pins (6) into the holes in the machine.

Pour montage sur des MFP à grande vitesse uniquement
Si le montage est fait sur un MFP à vitesse moyenne, passer à l'étape 6.
4. Déposer le couvercle d'interface (3) de la machine.
5. Déposer la vis (4) puis le couvercle du contrôleur (5).

6. Installer le guide d'éjection (G) en insérant les 2 ergots du guide d'éjection (6) dans les trous de la machine.

Solo para la instalación en las MFP de alta velocidad
Si se instala en una MFP de velocidad media, vaya al paso 6.
4. Quite la cubierta de la interfaz (3) de la máquina.
5. Quite el tornillo (4) y quite la cubierta del controlador (5).

6. Instale la guía de salida (G) encajando los 2 pasadores de la guía de salida (6) en los orificios de la máquina.

Nur bei Installation an MFP der Hochleistungsklasse
Gehen Sie zur Installation an einem MFP der mittleren Leistungsklasse weiter zu Schritt 6.
4. Nehmen Sie die Schnittstellenabdeckung (3) des Geräts ab.
5. Entfernen Sie die Schraube (4) und nehmen Sie die Controller-Abdeckung (5) ab.

6. Installieren Sie die Ausgabeführung (G), indem Sie die beiden Stifte (6) der Auswerfführung in die Aufnahmen des Geräts einsetzen.

Solo per l'installazione sulle MFP a velocità alta
Se si installa su una MFP a velocità media, procedere al passo 6.
4. Rimuovere la copertura di interfaccia (3) della macchina.
5. Rimuovere la vite (4) e quindi rimuovere il coperchio del controller (5).

6. Installare la guida di espulsione (G) inserendo i 2 perni (6) della guida di espulsione nei fori della macchina.

仅限安装于高速 MFP 上时
安装于中速 MFP 上时，进至步骤 6。
4. 拆下机器的接口盖板 (3)。
5. 拆除 1 颗螺丝 (4)，拆下控制器盖板 (5)。

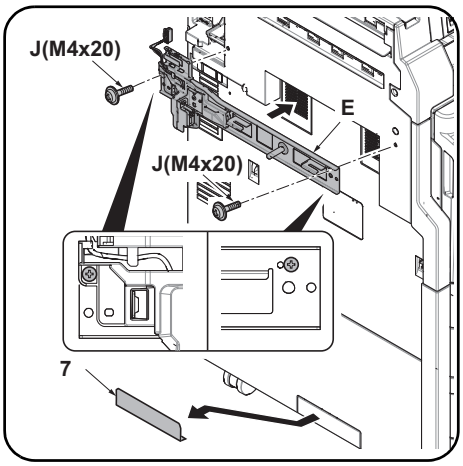
6. 将排纸导向板 (G) 的 2 根销钉 (6) 插入机器的孔中。

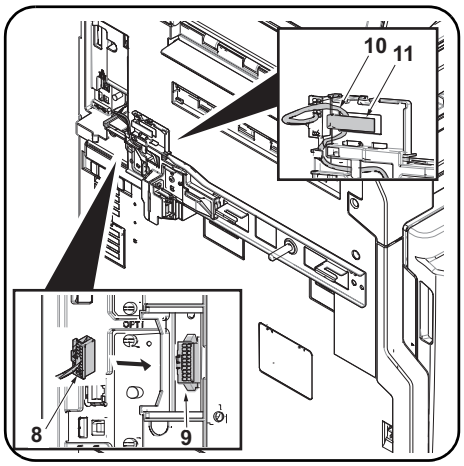
고속 MFP 에 설치하는 경우만
중속 MFP 에 설치하는 경우에는 순서 6 로 진행합니다 .
4. 본체의 인터페이스 커버 (3) 를 제거합니다 .
5. 나사 (4) 1 개를 빼고 컨트롤러덮개 (5) 를 제거합니다 .

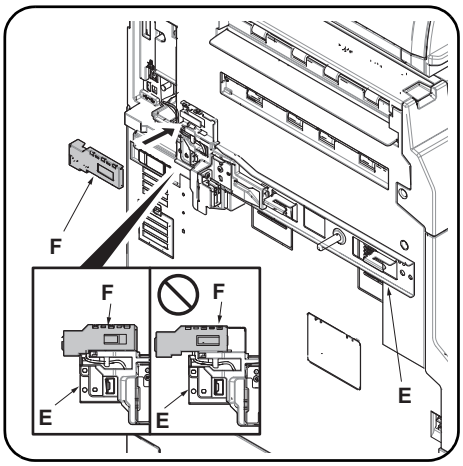
6. 배출 가이드 (G) 핀 (6) 2 개를 본체의 구멍에 맞추어 끼워서 부착합니다 .

高速 MFP に設置の場合のみ
中速 MFP に設置の場合は手順 6 に進む。
4. 機械本体のインターフェイスカバー (3) を取り外す。
5. ビス (4) を外し、コントローラーフタ (5) を取り外す。

6. 排出ガイド (G) のピン (6) 2 本を機械本体の穴に差し込み取り付ける。







7. Attach the connecting plate (E) to the machine using 2 M4 × 20 screws (J). Attach them at the point as shown above.

Only if installing to a medium-speed MFP

If installing on a high-speed MFP, proceed to step 9.

8. Remove the breakaway cover (7) from the left cover.

9. Connect the signal line connector (8) to the connector (9) on the machine. Hook the signal line wire (10) onto the hook (11).

10. Fit the connector cover (F) in the connecting plate (E). Take care not to get the cable pinched by objects. Attach it at the point as shown above. Check that the signal line connector is covered by the connector cover (F).

---

7. Fixez la plaque de connexion (E) à la machine à l'aide de 2 vis M4 × 20 (J).Raccordez-les au point indiqué ci-dessus.

Uniquement en cas d'installation sur un MFP à vitesse moyenne

Si le montage est fait sur un MFP à grande vitesse, passer à l'étape 9.

8. Déposer le couvercle amovible (7) du couvercle gauche.

9. Raccorder le connecteur de ligne de signal (8) sur le connecteur (9) de la machine. Accrocher le fil de ligne de signal (10) sur le crochet (11).

10. Placer le cache de connecteur (F) dans la plaque de connexion (E).Prendre soin à ne pas pincer le câble. Raccordez-les au point indiqué ci-dessus. Vérifier que le connecteur de ligne de signal est couvert par le cache de connecteur (F).

---

7. Fije la placa de conexión (E) a la máquina mediante 2 tornillos M4 × 20 (J).Conéctelas en el punto que se muestra arriba.

Solo si instala en una MFP de velocidad media

Si se instala en una MFP de alta velocidad, vaya al paso 9.

8. Quite la cubierta divisoria (7) de la cubierta izquierda.

9. Conecte el conector de línea de señales (8) al conector (9) de la máquina. Enganche el cable de la línea de señales (10) en el enganche (11).

10. Acople la cubierta del conector (F) en la placa de conexión (E).Tenga cuidado de que el cable no quede atrapado por objetos. Conéctelas en el punto que se muestra arriba. Compruebe que el conector de la línea de señales quede cubierto por la cubierta del conector (F).

---

7. Bringen Sie die Verbindungsplatte (E) mit 2 M4 × 20 Schrauben (J) am Gerät an.Bringen Sie diese an der in der Abbildung gezeigten Stelle an.

Nur bei Installation eines MFP der mittleren Leistungsklasse

Gehen Sie zur Installation an einem MFP der Hochleistungsklasse weiter zu Schritt 9.

8. Nehmen Sie die Ablösungsabdeckung (7) von der linken Abdeckung ab.

9. Verbinden Sie den Stecker der Signalleitung (8) mit dem Steckverbinder im Gerät (9). Hängen Sie das Kabel der Signalleitung (10) in den Befestigungshaken (11) ein.

10. Setzen Sie die Stecker-Abdeckung (F) in die Verbindungsplatte (E) ein. Stellen Sie sicher, dass das Kabel nicht eingeklemmt wird. Bringen Sie diese an der in der Abbildung gezeigten Stelle an. Überprüfen Sie, ob der Stecker der Signalleitung von der Stecker-Abdeckung (F) abgedeckt ist.

---

7. Applicare la piastra di connessione (E) alla macchina utilizzando le 2 viti M4 × 20 (J).Fissare nella posizione sopra indicata.

Solo se si installa ad un'MFP a velocità media

Se si installa su una MFP a velocità alta, procedere al passo 9.

8. Rimuovere il coperchio di distacco (7) dal coperchio sinistro.

9. Collegare il connettore di linea del segnale (8) al connettore (9) sulla periferica. Agganciare il cavo di linea del segnale (10) al gancio (11).

10. Inserire il copri connettore (F) nella piastra di connessione (E).Fare attenzione a non impigliare il cavo.Fissare nella posizione sopra indicata.Controllare che il connettore della linea del segnale sia coperto dal copri connettore (F).

---

7. 使用 2 颗 M4×20(J) 螺丝将连接板 (E) 安装到机器上。按图示位置来安装。

仅限安装于中速机上时

安装于高速 MFP 上时，进至步骤 9。

8. 去除左侧盖板上的可去除部（7）。

9. 把信号线的接插件（8）和机器本体的接插件（9）相连接。 把信号线（10）挂到挂钩（11）上。

10. 将接插件盖板 (F) 嵌入到连接板 (E)。请注意不要夹住电线。按图示位置来安装。请确认信号线的接插件是否完全隐藏在接插件盖板中 (F)。

---

7. 나사 M4 × 20(J) 2 개를 사용하여 연결판 (E) 을 본체에 부착합니다 . 위에 표시된 위치에 부착합니다 . 위에 표시된 위치에 부착합니다 .

중속 MFP 에 설치할 경우만

고속 MFP 에 설치하는 경우에는 순서 9 로 진행합니다 .

8. 좌측커버의 분할커버부 (7) 를 떼어 냅니다 .

9. 신호선 커넥터 (8) 를 본체의 커넥터 (9) 에 연결합니다 . 신호선 와이어 (10) 를 후크 (11) 에 겁니다 .

10. 커넥터 커버 (F) 를 연결판 (E) 에 맞추어 끼웁니다 . 전선이 커넥터 커버 (F) 에 끼이지 않도록 주의합니다 . 위에 표시된 위치에 부착합니다 . 신호선 커넥터가 커넥터 커버 (F) 에 덮여있는지 확인합니다 .

---

7. 連結板 (E) をビス M4×20(J)2 本で、機械本体に取り付ける。図の位置で取り付けること。

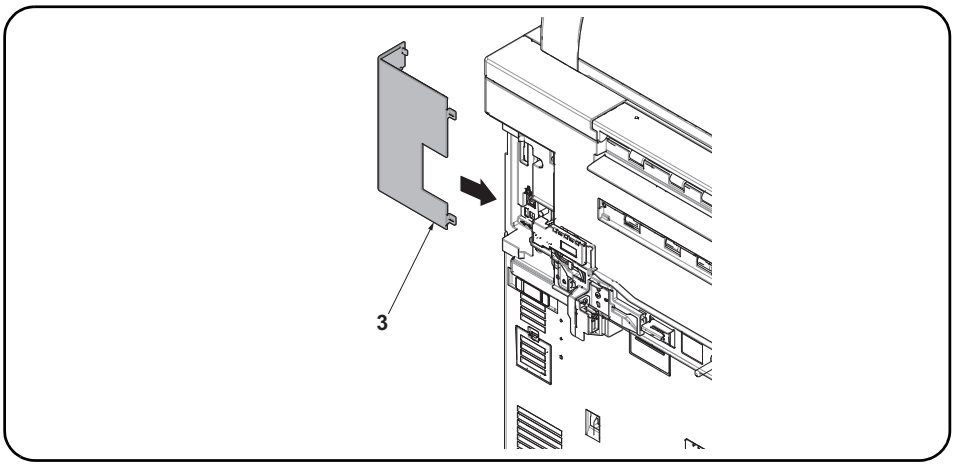
中速 MFP に設置の場合のみ

高速 MFP に設置の場合は手順 9 に進む。

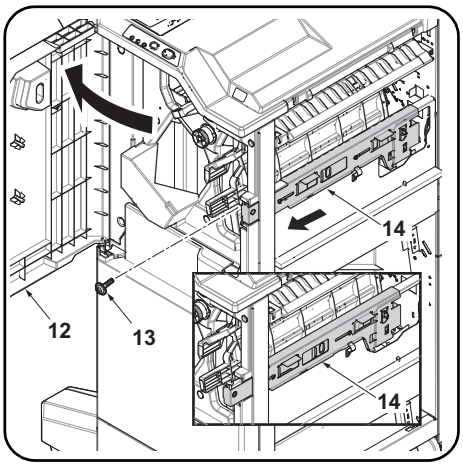
8. 左カバーの割りカバー部 (7) を切り取る。

9. 信号線のコネクター(8) を機械本体のコネクター(9) に接続する。信号線 (10) は、フック (11) に掛けること。

10. コネクターカバー(F) を連結板 (E) にはめ込む。電線を挟み込まない様注意すること。図の位置で取り付けること。信号線のコネクターがコネクターカバー(F) で隠れていることを確認する。



11. Attach the interface cover (3)* on the machine.
* Installing with a high-speed MFP : the cover which was removed in step 4.
Installing with a medium-speed MFP : the cover which was removed while installing the AK-730 or AK-731.



12. Open the document finisher upper front cover (12). Remove the screw (13). Pull the lock frame (14) frontwards.

---

11. Raccordez le couvercle d'interface (3)* à la machine.
* Installation avec une imprimante multifonction à grande vitesse : le cache qui a été retiré à l'étape 4.
Installation avec une imprimante multifonction à moyenne vitesse : le cache qui a été retiré lors de l'installation de l'AK-730 ou AK-731.

12. Ouvrir le couvercle avant supérieur du finisseur de document (12). Retirez la vis (13). Tirer le cadre de verrouillage (14) vers le bas.

---

11. Conecte la cubierta de interfaz (3)* de la máquina.
* Instalación con un MFP de velocidad alta : la cubierta que se quitó en el paso 4.
Instalación con un MFP de velocidad media : la cubierta que se quitó al instalar el kit AK-730 o AK-731.

12. Abra la cubierta frontal superior del finalizador de documentos (12). Quite el tornillo (13). Empuje el marco de cierre (14) hacia delante.

---

11. Bringen Sie die Schnittstellenabdeckung (3)* am Gerät an.
*Installation an einem MFP der Hochleistungsklasse : die Abdeckung, die in Schritt 4 entfernt wurde
Installation an einem MFP der mittleren Leistungsklasse : die Abdeckung, die zur Installation des AK-730 oder AK-731 entfernt wurde

12. Öffnen Sie die obere vordere Abdeckung des Finishers (12). Entfernen Sie die Schraube (13). Ziehen Sie die Verriegelung (14) nach vorne.

---

11. Fissare la copertura di interfaccia (3)* sulla macchina.
* Installazione su un MFP di fascia alta : il coperchio che è stato rimosso al punto 4
Installazione su un MFP di fascia media : il coperchio che è stato rimosso per installare il kit AK-730 o AK-731

12. Aprire il coperchio frontale superiore del finisher documenti (12). Togliere la vite (13). Tirare in avanti la frame di blocco (14).

---

11. 将接口盖板 (3)* 安装到机器主机。
* 安装到高速 MFP 时 : 在步骤 4 中取下的盖板
安装到中速 MFP 时 : 在安装 AK-730 或 AK-731 时取下的盖板

12. 打开装订器的前上盖板（12）。取下螺丝（13）。 向身体前侧拉出固定架（14）。

---

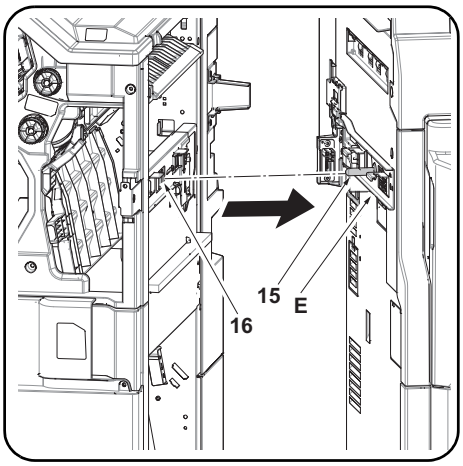
11. 인터페이스 커버 (3)* 를 본체에 부착합니다 .
* 고속 MFP 설치의 경우 : 순서 4 에서 제거한 커버
중속 MFP 설치의 경우 : AK-730 또는 AK-731 설치 시 분리한 커버

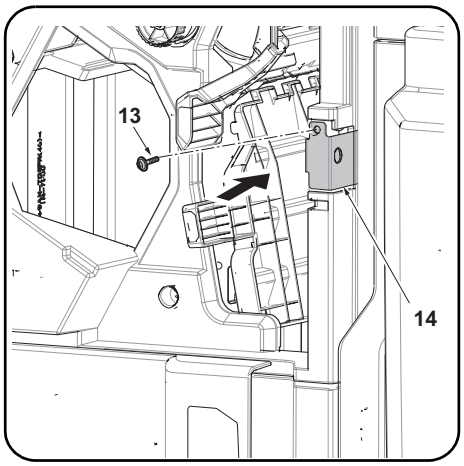
12. 문서 피니셔의 전면 상커버 (12) 를 엽니다 . 나사 (13) 를 제거합니다 . 잠금 프레임 (14) 을 앞으로 뺍니다 .

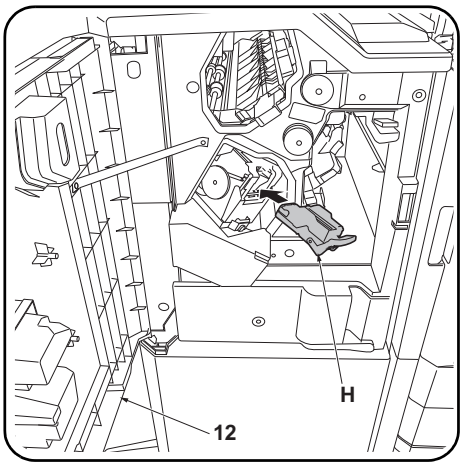
---

11. 機械本体にインターフェイスカバー(3)* を取り付ける。
* 高速 MFP に設置の場合 : 手順 4 で外したカバー
中速 MFP に設置の場合 : AK-730 または AK-731 設置時に取り外したカバー

12. ドキュメントフィニッシャーの前上カバー (12) を開く。ビス (13) を外す。ロックフレーム (14) を手前に引く。







13. Insert the pin (15) on the connecting plate (E) into the hole (16) on the document finisher. Connect the document finisher to the machine.
* If you cannot connect the document finisher, adjust the height as described on page 15.

14. Slowly push the lock frame (14) fully into the machine so that the connectors at the far end are connected.
15. Secure the lock frame (14) using the screw (13) removed in step 12.

16. Install the staple cartridge (H).
17. Close the upper front cover (12).

Proceed to adjusting the stapling position on page 20.

---

13. Introduire la broche (15) sur la plaque de connexion (E) dans le trou (16) sur le finisseur de document. Connecter le finisseur de document sur la machine.
* S'il s'avère impossible de connecter le finisseur de document, en régler la hauteur comme décrit en page 15.

14. Pousser doucement le cadre de verrouillage (14) à fond dans la machine de sorte que les connecteurs à l'extrémité soient raccordés.
15. Fixez le bâti de verrouillage (14) à l'aide de la vis (13) déposée à l'étape 12.

16. Installer la cartouche d'agrafes (H).
17. Refermer le couvercle avant supérieur (12).

Passez à l'ajustement de la position d'agrafage page 20.

---

13. Inserte el pasador (15) de la placa de conexión (E) en el orificio (16) del finalizador de documentos. Conecte el finalizador de documentos a la máquina.
* Si no puede conectar el finalizador de documentos, ajuste la altura como se describe en la página 15.

14. Empuje lentamente y hasta el fondo el marco del cierre (14) hacia la máquina de modo que se conecten los conectores en el extremo más lejano.
15. Asegure la carcasa de bloqueo (14) por medio del tornillo (13) quitado en el paso 12.

16. Instale el cartucho de grapas (H).
17. Cierre la cubierta frontal superior (12).

Proceda al ajuste de la posición de grapado en la página 20.

---

13. Setzen Sie den Stift (15) der Verbindungsplatte (E) in die Öffnung (16) des Finishers. Verbinden Sie den Finisher mit dem Gerät.
* Falls Sie den Finisher nicht anschließen können, sollten Sie die Höhe wie auf Seite 15 beschrieben einstellen.

14. Schieben Sie die Verriegelung (14) wieder langsam ins Gerät, so dass die Verbindungen am anderen Ende des Geräts geschlossen werden.
15. Befestigen Sie den Fixierrahmen (14) mit der in Schritt 12 entfernten Schraube (13).

16. Installieren Sie das Heftklammer-Magazin (H).
17. Schließen Sie die obere vordere Abdeckung (12).

Fahren Sie mit der Justage der Heftposition auf Seite 20 fort.

---

13. Inserire il perno (15) della piastra di connessione (E) nel foro (16) del finisher documenti. Collegare il finisher documenti alla macchina.
* Se non è possibile collegare la finisher documenti, regolare l'altezza come descritto a pagina 15.

14. Spingere lentamente la frame di blocco (14) nella macchina in modo che i connettori all'estremità risultino collegati.
15. Fissare il telaio di bloccaggio (14) utilizzando la vite (13) rimossa nel passo 12.

16. Installare il contenitore punti (H).
17. Chiudere il coperchio superiore anteriore (12).

Proseguire con la regolazione della posizione di pinzatura a pagina 20.

---

13. 将连接板 (E) 的销钉 (15) 插入装订器的孔 (16) 中。 把装订器连接到机器本体。
※ 如果无法连接，请进行 P15 的 “ 高度调节 ”。

14. 慢慢的把固定架 (14) 完全推入机器，这样机器里侧的接插件就可以顺利连接。
15. 使用在步骤 12 中取下的 1 颗螺丝 (13) 来固定锁框 (14)。

16. 安装装订针盒 (H)。
17. 关闭前部上盖板 (12)。

跳至 P20「调节装订位置」。

---

13. 연결판 (E) 의 핀 (15) 을 문서 피니셔의 구멍 (16) 에 삽입합니다 . 문서 피니셔를 본체에 연결합니다 .
※ 연결할 수 없는 경우에는 P15 의「높이조정」을 할 것 .

14. 본체 뒷쪽의 커넥터가 연결되도록 잠금 프레임 (14) 을 본체 안으로 천천히 밀어 넣습니다 .
15. 순서 12 에서 뺀 나사 (13) 1 개로 잠금 프레임 (14) 을 고정합니다 .

16. 스테이플 카트리지 (H) 를 설치합니다 .
17. 앞 상커버 (12) 를 닫습니다 .

20 페이지의 스테이플 위치 조정으로 진행합니다 .

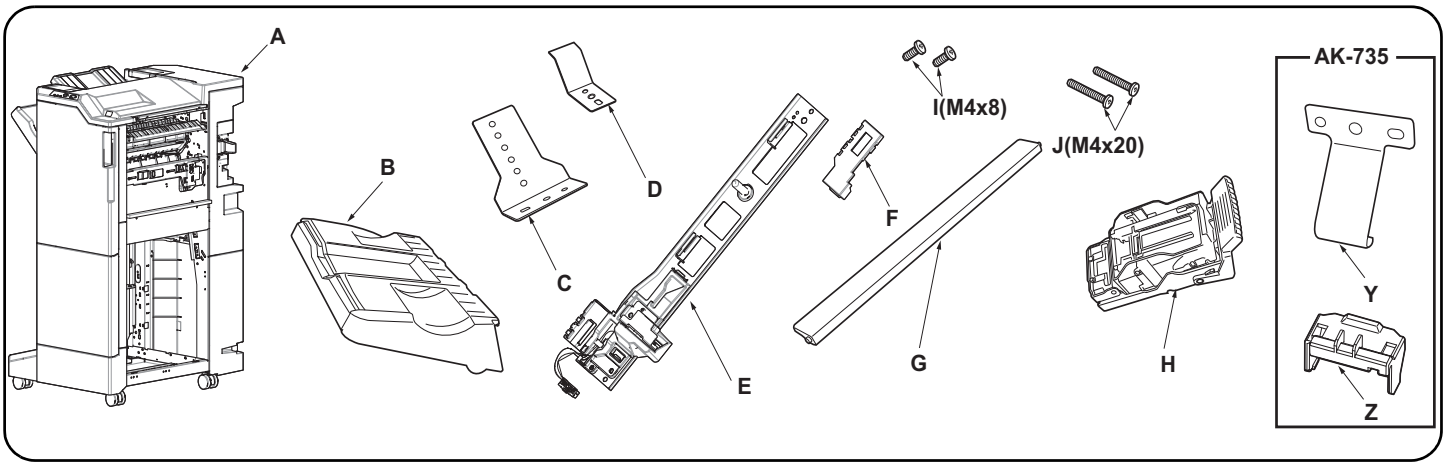
---

13. 連結板 (E) のピン (15) をドキュメントフィニッシャーの穴 (16) に挿入する。ドキュメントフィニッシャーを機械本体に接続する。
※ 連結できない場合は、P15 の「高さ調整」を行う。

14. 機械奥側のコネクタが接続されるように、ロックフレーム (14) をゆっくり奥に押す。
15. 手順 12 で外したビス (13) で、ロックフレーム (14) を固定する。

16. ステープルカートリッジ (H) を取り付ける。
17. 前上カバー (12) を閉じる。

P20「ステープル位置の調整」に進む。



Supplied parts
- **A.** Document finisher 1
- **B.** Eject tray 1
- **C.** Earth connection plate 1
- **D.** Earth spring 1
- **E.** Connecting plate 1
- **F.** Connector cover 1
- **G.** Eject guide 1
- **H.** Staple cartridge 1
- **I.** M4 × 8 screw 3
- **J.** M4 × 20 screw 2
- **K.** Earth Plate 1
- **L.** Cover 1

C ,D and Z are not used.

Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning materials from the parts supplied.

Pièces fournies
- **A.** Finisseur de document 1
- **B.** Bac d'éjection 1
- **C.** Plaque de raccordement de mise à la terre 1
- **D.** Ressort de mise à la terre 1
- **E.** Plaque de connexion 1
- **F.** Cache de connecteur 1
- **G.** Guide d'éjection 1
- **H.** Cartouche d'agrafes 1
- **I.** Vis M4 × 8 2
- **J.** Vis M4 × 20 2
- **Y.** Plaque de terre 1
- **Z.** Couvercle 1

C, D et Z ne sont pas utilisés.

Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.

Partes suministradas
- **A.** Finalizador de documentos 1
- **B.** Bandeja de salida 1
- **C.** Placa de conexión a tierra 1
- **D.** Resorte de conexión a tierra 1
- **E.** Placa de conexión 1
- **F.** Cubierta del conector 1
- **G.** Guía de salida 1
- **H.** Cartucho de grapas 1
- **I.** Tornillo M4 × 8 2
- **J.** Tornillo M4 × 20 2
- **Y.** Placa de conexión a tierra 1
- **Z.** Cubierta 1

C, D y Z no se utilizan.

Asegúrese de despegar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.

Enthaltene Teile
- **A.** Finisher 1
- **B.** Auswerffach 1
- **C.** Grundanschlussplatte 1
- **D.** Grundfeder 1
- **E.** Verbindungsplatte 1
- **F.** Stecker-Abdeckung 1
- **G.** Ausgabeführung 1
- **H.** Heftklammermagazin 1
- **I.** M4 × 8 Schraube 2
- **J.** M4 × 20 Schraube 2
- **Y.** Grundplatte 1
- **Z.** Abdeckung 1

C, D und Z werden nicht benötigt.

Stellen Sie sicher, dass sämtliche Klebebänder und/oder Polstermaterial von den gelieferten Teilen entfernt wurden.

Parti fornite
- **A.** Finisher documenti 1
- **B.** Vassoio di espulsione 1
- **C.** Piastra di connessione per messa a terra . 1
- **D.** Molla di messa a terra 1
- **E.** Piastra di connessione 1
- **F.** Copri connettore 1
- **G.** Guida di espulsione 1
- **H.** Contenitore punti 1
- **I.** Vite M4 × 8 2
- **J.** Vite M4 × 20 2
- **Y.** Piastra di messa a terra 1
- **Z.** Coperchio 1

C, D e Z non sono utilizzati.

Rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o i materiali di protezione dalle parti fornite.

附属品
- A. 装订器 1
- B. 排纸托盘 1
- C. 接地安装板 1
- D. 接地弹簧 1
- E. 连接板 1
- F. 接插件盖板 1
- G. 排纸导向板 1
- H. 装订针盒 1
- I. M4×8 螺丝 2
- J. M4×20 螺丝 2
- Y. 接地板 1
- Z. 盖板 1

不使用 C、D 和 Z。

如果附属品上带有固定胶带，缓冲材料时务必揭下。

동봉품
- A. 문서 피니셔 1
- B. 배출 트레이 1
- C. 접지 부착판 1
- D. 접지 스프링 1
- E. 연결판 1
- F. 커넥터 커버 1
- G. 배출 가이드 1
- H. 스테이플 카트리지 1
- I. 나사 M4×8 2
- J. 나사 M4×20 2
- Y. 접지판 1
- Z. 커버 1

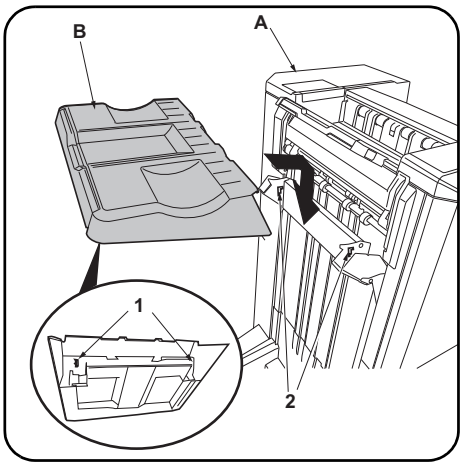
C, D 와 Z 는 사용되지 않습니다 .

동봉품에 고정 테이프 , 완충재가 붙어 있는 경우에는 반드시 제거할 것 .

同梱品
- A. ドキュメントフィニッシャー 1
- B. 排出トレイ 1
- C. アース取付板 1
- D. アースバネ 1
- E. 連結板 1
- F. コネクターカバー 1
- G. 排出ガイド 1
- H. ステープルカートリッジ 1
- I. ビス M4×8 2
- J. ビス M4×20 2
- Y. アース板 1
- Z. カバー 1

C,D,Z は使用しない。

同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材がついている場合は、必ず取り外すこと。



NOTICE
The Attachment Kit (AK-735) must be installed before the document finisher is installed.

Procedure
Before starting installation, be sure to turn the main power switch of the machine off, and unplug the power plug from the wall outlet.

1. Install by inserting the 2 hooks (1) on the back of the eject tray (B) into the holes (2) in the document finisher (A) lift.

REMARQUE
Le gabarit de fixation (AK-735) doit être en place avant de procéder à l'installation du finisseur de document.

Procédure
Avant de commencer l'installation, s'assurer de mettre la machine hors tension et de débrancher la fiche d'alimentation de la prise murale.

1. Procéder en insérant les 2 crochets (1) au dos du bac d'éjection (B) dans les trous (2) du dispositif de levage du finisseur document (A).

AVISO
El Kit de instalación (AK-735) debe instalarse antes de instalar el finalizador de documentos.

Procedimiento
Antes de iniciar la instalación, asegúrese de apagar el interruptor de encendido de la máquina y desenchufar el cable de alimentación de la toma de pared.

1. Instale insertando los 2 ganchos (1) de la parte posterior de la bandeja de salida (B) en los orificios (2) del elevador del finalizador de documentos (A).

ANMERKUNG
Das Gerätezusatz (AK-735) muss installiert werden, bevor man den Finisher installiert.

Verfahren
Bevor Sie mit der Installation beginnen überzeugen Sie sich, dass der Netzschalter des Geräts ausgeschaltet und das Stromkabel aus der Steckdose gezogen ist.

1. Setzen Sie die 2 Haken (1) zur Befestigung an der Rückseite des Auswerffachs (B) in die Öffnungen (2) an der Hebeplatte des Finishers (A) ein.

AVVISO
Il kit accessorio (AK-735) deve essere installato prima che sia installata la finisher documenti.

Procedura
Prima di iniziare l'installazione, spegnere la macchina e scollegare la spina dalla presa di corrente.

1. Installare inserendo i 2 ganci (1) sul retro del vassoio di espulsione (B) nei fori (2) sul sollevatore della finisher documenti (A).

注意
安装装订器之前，必须先安装连接组件（AK-735）。

安装步骤
安装前务必关闭机器的主电源开关，并从墙壁插座拔下电源插头。

1. 将排纸托盘 (B) 内侧的 2 个挂钩 (1) 装入装订器 (A) 的升降板的孔 (2) 中。

주의
문서 피니셔를 장착하기 전에 연결킷 (AK-735) 의 장착을 선행할 것 .

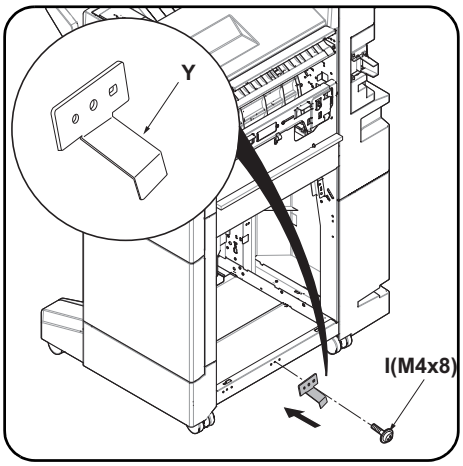
장착순서
설치를 시작하기 전에 반드시 본체의 주 전원 스위치를 끄고 벽 콘센트에서 전원 플러그를 분리하십시오 .

1. 배출 트레이 (B) 의 후면 후크 (1) 2 개를 문서 피니셔 (A) 의 승강판 구멍 (2) 에 넣고 장착합니다 .

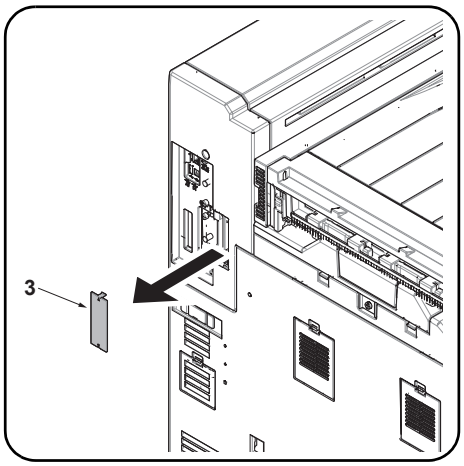
注意
ドキュメントフィニッシャーを取り付ける前に、アタッチメントキット(AK-735) の取り付けをおこなうこと。

取付手順
必ず機械本体の主電源スイッチを OFF にし、機械本体の電源プラグを抜いてから作業すること。

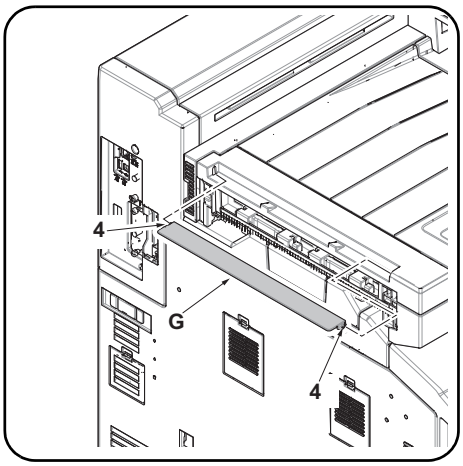
1. 排出トレイ (B) の裏側のフック (1)2 個をドキュメントフィニッシャー(A) の昇降板の穴 (2) に入れて、取り付ける。



2. Attach the earth plate (Y)* to the center of the bottom of the document finisher using an M4 × 8 screw (I).
*The part was supplied with AK-735



3. Remove the cover (3) from the machine.



4. Install the eject guide (G) by fitting the 2 eject guide pins (4) into the holes in the machine.

---

2. Raccordez la plaque de terre (Y)* en bas au centre du finisseur de document en utilisant une vis M4 × 8 (I).
*La pièce a été fournie avec l'AK-735

3. Retirer le couvercle (3) de la machine.

4. Installer le guide d'éjection (G) en insérant les 2 ergots du guide d'éjection (4) dans les trous de la machine.

---

2. Conecte la placa de conexión a tierra (Y)* al centro de la parte inferior del finalizador de documentos con un tornillo M4 × 8 (I).
*La pieza se proporcionó con AK-735

3. Quite la cubierta (3) de la máquina.

4. Instale la guía de salida (G) encajando los 2 pasadores de la guía de salida (4) en los orificios de la máquina.

---

2. Bringen Sie die Grundplatte (Y)* in der Mitte des Bodens des Finishers mit den M4 x 8 Schrauben (I) an.
*Dieses Teil ist im AK-735 enthalten.

3. Entfernen Sie die Abdeckung (3) vom Gerät.

4. Installieren Sie die Ausgabeführung (G), indem Sie die beiden Stifte (4) der Auswerfführung in die Aufnahmen des Geräts einsetzen.

---

2. Applicare la piastra di messa a terra (Y)* al centro dell'area inferiore della finisher documenti utilizzando una vite M4 × 8 (I).
*Parte fornita con AK-735

3. Rimuovere il coperchio (3) dalla macchina.

4. Installare la guida di espulsione (G) inserendo i 2 perni (4) della guida di espulsione nei fori della macchina.

---

2. 使用 M4×8(I) 螺丝将接地板 (Y)* 安装到装订器下部中央。
*AK-735 的附属品

3. 从机器上拆下盖板 (3)。

4. 将排纸导向板 (G) 的 2 根销钉 (4) 插入机器的孔中。

---

2. 나사 M4 × 8(I) 를 사용하여 접지판 (Y)* 을 문서 피니셔의 하단 중앙에 부착합니다 .
*AK-735 동봉 부품

3. 본체에서 커버 (3) 를 분리합니다 .

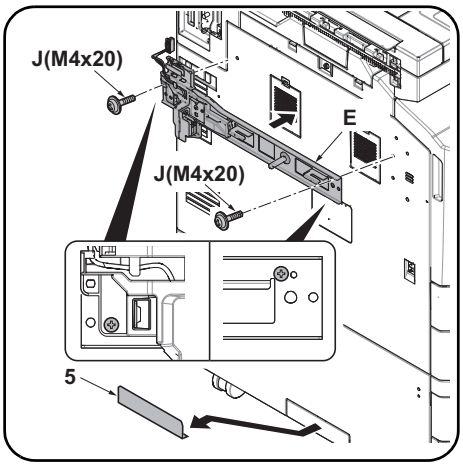
4. 배출 가이드 (G) 의 핀 (4) 2 개를 본체의 구멍에 맞추어 끼워서 부착합니다 .

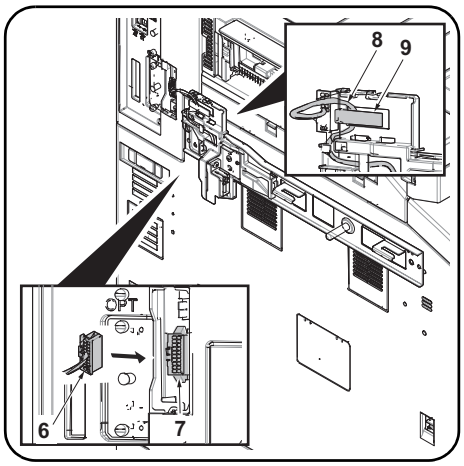
---

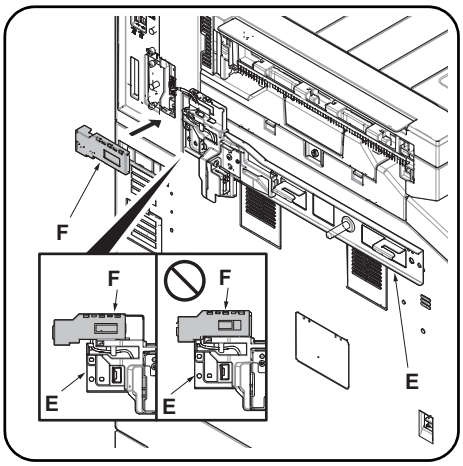
2. ビス M4×8(I) でアース板 (Y)* をドキュメントフィニッシャー下部センターに取り付ける。
*AK-735 の同梱品

3. 機械本体からカバー (3) を取り外す。

4. 排出ガイド (G) のピン (4)2 本を機械本体の穴に差し込み取り付ける。







5. Attach the connecting plate (E) to the machine using 2 M4 × 20 screws (J).Attach them at the point as shown above.
6. Remove the breakaway cover (5) from the left cover.

7. Connect the signal line connector (6) to the connector (7) on the machine. Hook the signal line wire (8) onto the hook (9).

8. Fit the connector cover (F) in the connecting plate (E).Take care not to get the cable pinched by objects.Attach it at the point as shown above.Check that the signal line connector is covered by the connector cover (F).

---

5. Fixez la plaque de connexion (E) à la machine à l'aide de 2 vis M4 × 20 (J). Raccordez-les au point indiqué ci-dessus.
6. Déposer le couvercle amovible (5) du couvercle gauche.

7. Raccorder le connecteur de ligne de signal (6) sur le connecteur (7) de la machine. Accrocher le fil de ligne de signal (8) sur le crochet (9).

8. Placer le cache de connecteur (F) dans la plaque de connexion (E). Prendre soin à ne pas pincer le câble. Raccordez-les au point indiqué ci-dessus. Vérifier que le connecteur de ligne de signal est couvert par le cache de connecteur (F).

---

5. Fije la placa de conexión (E) a la máquina mediante 2 tornillos M4 × 20 (J). Conéctelas en el punto que se muestra arriba.
6. Quite la cubierta divisoria (5) de la cubierta izquierda.

7. Conecte el conector de línea de señales (6) al conector (7) de la máquina. Enganche el cable de la línea de señales (8) en el enganche (9).

8. Acople la cubierta del conector (F) en la placa de conexión (E). Tenga cuidado de que el cable no quede atrapado por objetos. Conéctelas en el punto que se muestra arriba. Compruebe que el conector de la línea de señales quede cubierto por la cubierta del conector (F).

---

5. Bringen Sie die Verbindungsplatte (E) mit 2 M4 × 20 Schrauben (J) am Gerät an. Bringen Sie diese an der in der Abbildung gezeigten Stelle an.
6. Nehmen Sie die Ablösungsabdeckung (5) von der linken Abdeckung ab.

7. Verbinden Sie den Stecker der Signalleitung (6) mit dem Steckverbinder im Gerät (7). Hängen Sie das Kabel der Signalleitung (8) in den Befestigungshaken (9) ein.

8. Setzen Sie die Stecker-Abdeckung (F) in die Verbindungsplatte (E) ein. Stellen Sie sicher, dass das Kabel nicht eingeklemmt wird. Bringen Sie diese an der in der Abbildung gezeigten Stelle an. Überprüfen Sie, ob der Stecker der Signalleitung von der Stecker-Abdeckung (F) abgedeckt ist.

---

5. Applicare la piastra di connessione (E) alla macchina utilizzando le 2 viti M4 × 20 (J). Fissare nella posizione sopra indicata.
6. Rimuovere il coperchio di distacco (5) dal coperchio sinistro.

7. Collegare il connettore di linea del segnale (6) al connettore (7) sulla periferica. Agganciare il cavo di linea del segnale (8) al gancio (9).

8. Inserire il copri connettore (F) nella piastra di connessione (E). Fare attenzione a non impigliare il cavo. Fissare nella posizione sopra indicata. Controllare che il connettore della linea del segnale sia coperto dal copri connettore (F).

---

5. 使用 2 颗 M4×20(J) 螺丝将连接板 (E) 安装到机器上。 按图示位置来安装。
6. 去除左侧盖板上的可去除部(5)。

7. 把信号线的接插件 (6) 和机器本体的接插件 (7) 相连接。 把信号线 (8) 挂到挂钩 (9) 上。

8. 将接插件盖板 (F) 嵌入到连接板 (E)。 请注意不要夹住电线。 按图示位置来安装。请确认信号线的接插件是否完全隐藏在接插件盖板中 (F)。

---

5. 나사 M4 × 20(J) 2 개를 사용하여 연결판 (E) 을 본체에 부착합니다 . 위에 표시된 위치에 부착합니다 .
6. 좌측커버의 분할커버부 (5) 를 떼어 냅니다 .

7. 신호선 커넥터 (6) 를 본체의 커넥터 (7) 에 연결합니다 . 신호선 와이어 (8) 를 후크 (9) 에 겁니다 .

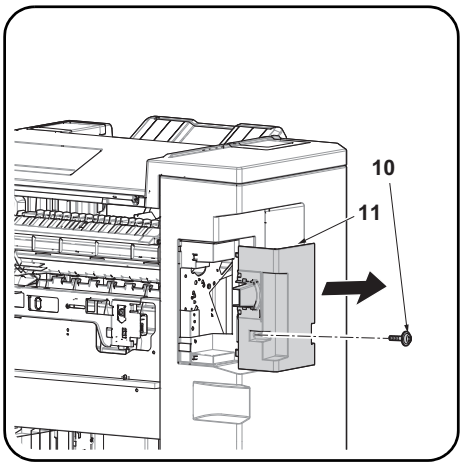
8. 커넥터 커버 (F) 를 연결판 (E) 에 맞추어 끼웁니다 . 전선이 커넥터 커버 (F) 에 끼이지 않도록 주의합니다 . 위에 표시된 위치에 부착합니다 . 신호선 커넥터가 커넥터 커버 (F) 에 덮여있는지 확인합니다 .

---

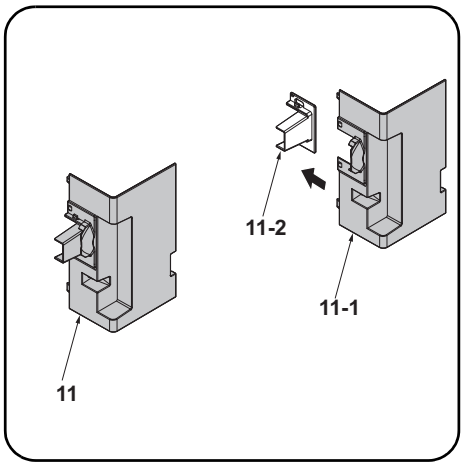
5. 連結板 (E) をビス M4×20(J)2 本で、機械本体に取り付ける。図の位置で取り付けること。
6. 左カバーの割りカバー部 (5) を切り取る。

7. 信号線のコネクター(6) を機械本体のコネクター(7) に接続する。信号線 (8) は、フック (9) に掛けること。

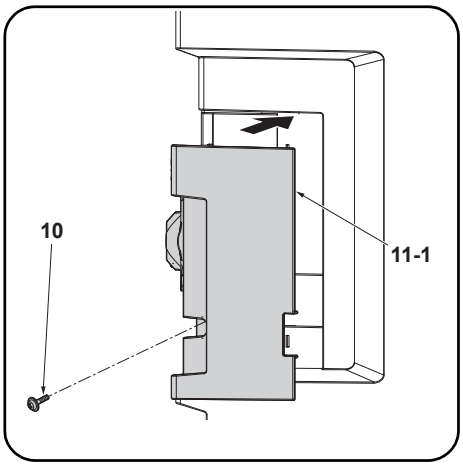
8. コネクターカバー(F) を連結板 (E) にはめ込む。電線を挟み込まない様注意すること。図の位置で取り付けること。信号線のコネクターがコネクターカバー(F) で隠れていることを確認する。



9. Remove the screw (10).Remove the rear cover (11) .



10. Separate the rear cover (11) into the two covers(11-1,11-2).
The cover(11-2) isnot used.



11. Install the cover (11-1) using the screw (10).

---

9. Retirez la vis (10). Retire le capot arrière (11).

10. Séparez le couvercle arrière (11) en deux couvercles (11-1, 11-2).
Le couvercle (11-2) n'est pas utilisé.

11. Installez le couvercle (11-1) à l'aide de la vis (10).

---

9. Quite el tornillo (10). Quite la cubierta posterior (11).

10. Separe la cubierta posterior (11) en las dos cubiertas (11-1, 11-2).
La cubierta (11-2) no se utiliza.

11. Instale la cubierta (11-1) con un tornillo (10).

---

9. Entfernen Sie die Schraube (10). Entfernen Sie die hintere Abdeckung (11).

10. Teilen Sie die hintere Abdeckung (11) in zwei Abdeckungen (11-1, 11-2) auf.
Die Abdeckung (11-2) wird nicht benötigt.

11. Installieren Sie die Abdeckung (11-1) mit den Schrauben (10).

---

9. Togliere la vite (10). Rimuovere il coperchio posteriore (11).

10. Separare il coperchio posteriore (11) in due coperchi (11-1,11-2).
Il coperchio (11-2) non viene utilizzato.

11. Installare il coperchio (11-1) utilizzando la vite (10).

---

9. 取下螺丝（10）。 取下后盖板（11）。

10. 将后盖板（11）分成 2 个盖板（11-1, 11-2）。
不需要盖板（11-2）。

11. 使用螺丝（10）来安装盖板（11-1）。

---

9. 나사 (10) 를 제거합니다 . 후면 커버 (11) 를 제거합니다 .

10. 후면 커버 (11) 를 2개의 커버 (11-1, 11-2) 로 분리합니다 .
커버 (11-2) 는 사용되지 않습니다 .

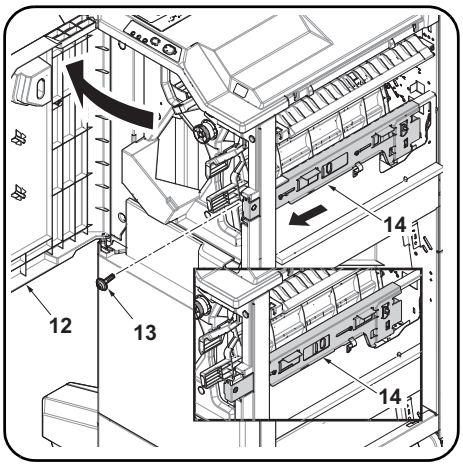
11. 나사 (10) 를 사용하여 커버 (11-1) 를 장착합니다 .

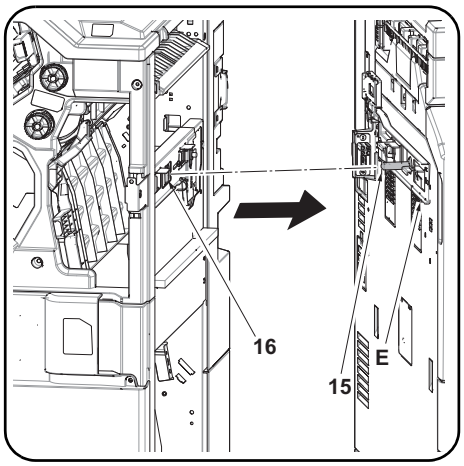
---

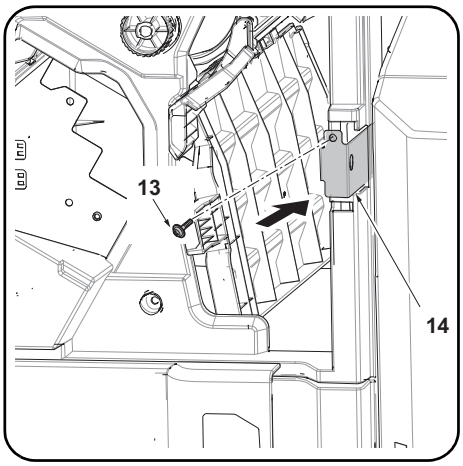
9. ビス（10）を外す。後カバー（11）を取り外す。

10. 後カバー（11）を 2 つのカバー（11-1, 11-2）に分ける。
カバー（11-2）は不要。

11. ビス（10）でカバー（11-1）を取り付ける。







12. Open the document finisher upper front cover (12). Remove the screw (13).Pull the lock frame (14) frontwards.

13. Insert the pin (15) on the connecting plate (E) into the hole (16) on the document finisher.Connect the document finisher to the machine.
* If you cannot connect the document finisher, adjust the height as described on page 15.

14. Slowly push the lock frame (14) fully into the machine so that the connectors at the far end are connected.
15. Secure the lock frame (14) using the screw (13) removed in step 12.

---

12. Ouvrir le couvercle avant supérieur du finisseur de document (12). Retirez la vis (13). Tirer le cadre de verrouillage (14) vers le bas.

13. Introduire la broche (15) sur la plaque de connexion (E) dans le trou (16) sur le finisseur de document.Connecter le finisseur de document sur la machine.
* S'il s'avère impossible de connecter le finisseur de document, en régler la hauteur comme décrit en page 15.

14. Pousser doucement le cadre de verrouillage (14) à fond dans la machine de sorte que les connecteurs à l'extrémité soient raccordés.
15. Fixez le bâti de verrouillage (14) à l'aide de la vis (13) déposée à l'étape 12.

---

12. Abra la cubierta frontal superior del finalizador de documentos (12). Quite el tornillo (13). Empuje el marco de cierre (14) hacia delante.

13. Inserte el pasador (15) de la placa de conexión (E) en el orificio (16) del finalizador de documentos.Conecte el finalizador de documentos a la máquina.
* Si no puede conectar el finalizador de documentos, ajuste la altura como se describe en la página 15.

14. Empuje lentamente y hasta el fondo el marco del cierre (14) hacia la máquina de modo que se conecten los conectores en el extremo más lejano.
15. Asegure la carcasa de bloqueo (14) por medio del tornillo (13) quitado en el paso 12.

---

12. Öffnen Sie die obere vordere Abdeckung des Finishers (12). Entfernen Sie die Schraube (13). Ziehen Sie die Verriegelung (14) nach vorne.

13. Setzen Sie den Stift (15) der Verbindungsplatte (E) in die Öffnung (16) des Finishers. Verbinden Sie den Finisher mit dem Gerät.
* Falls Sie den Finisher nicht anschließen können, sollten Sie die Höhe wie auf Seite 15 beschrieben einstellen.

14. Schieben Sie die Verriegelung (14) wieder langsam ins Gerät, so dass die Verbindungen am anderen Ende des Geräts geschlossen werden.
15. Befestigen Sie den Fixierrahmen (14) mit der in Schritt 12 entfernten Schraube (13).

---

12. Aprire il coperchio frontale superiore del finisher documenti (12). Togliere la vite (13). Tirare in avanti la frame di blocco (14).

13. Inserire il perno (15) della piastra di connessione (E) nel foro (16) del finisher documenti. Collegare il finisher documenti alla macchina.
* Se non è possibile collegare la finisher documenti, regolare l'altezza come descritto a pagina 15.

14. Spingere lentamente la frame di blocco (14) nella macchina in modo che i connettori all'estremità risultino collegati.
15. Fissare il telaio di bloccaggio (14) utilizzando la vite (13) rimossa nel passo 12.

---

12. 打开装订器的前上盖板（12）。 取下螺丝（13）。 向身体前侧拉出固定架（14）。

13. 将连接板 (E) 的销钉（15）插入装订器的孔（16）中。把装订器连接到机器本体。
※ 如果无法连接，请进行 P15 的“ 高度调节 ”。

14. 慢慢的把固定架（14）完全推入机器，这样机器里侧的接插件就可以顺利连接。
15. 使用在步骤 12 中取下的 1 颗螺丝 (13) 来固定锁框 (14)。

---

12. 문서 피니셔의 전면 상커버 (12) 를 엽니다 . 나사 (13) 를 제거합니다 . 잠금 프레임 (14) 을 앞으로 뺍니다 .

13. 연결판 (E) 의 핀 (15) 을 문서 피니셔의 구멍 (16) 에 삽입합니다 . 문서 피니셔를 본체에 연결합니다 .
※ 연결할 수 없는 경우에는 P15 의「높이조정」을 할 것 .

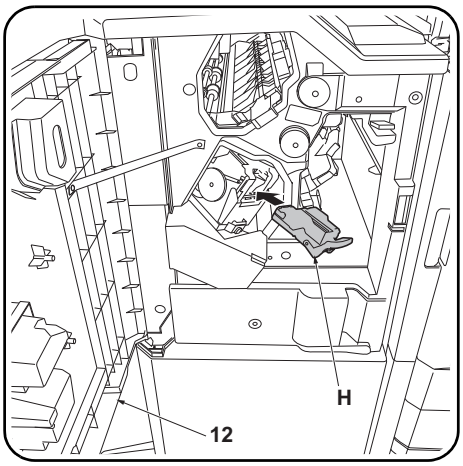
14. 본체 뒷쪽의 커넥터가 연결되도록 잠금 프레임 (14) 을 본체 안으로 천천히 밀어 넣습니다 .
15. 순서 12 에서 뺀 나사 (13) 1 개로 잠금 프레임 (14) 을 고정합니다 .

---

12. ドキュメントフィニッシャーの前上カバー (12) を開く。ビス (13) を外す。ロックフレーム (14) を手前に引く。

13. 連結板 (E) のピン (15) をドキュメントフィニッシャーの穴 (16) に挿入する。ドキュメントフィニッシャーを機械本体に接続する。
※ 連結できない場合は、P15 の「高さ調整」を行う。

14. 機械奥側のコネクタが接続されるように、ロックフレーム (14) をゆっくり奥に押す。
15. 手順 12 で外したビス (13) で、ロックフレーム (14) を固定する。



16. Install the staple cartridge (H).
17. Close the upper front cover (12).

Proceed to adjusting the stapling position on page 20.

---

16. Installer la cartouche d'agrafes (H).
17. Refermer le couvercle avant supérieur (12).

Passez à l'ajustement de la position d'agrafage page 20.

---

16. Instale el cartucho de grapas (H).
17. Cierre la cubierta frontal superior (12).

Proceda al ajuste de la posición de grapado en la página 20.

---

16. Installieren Sie das Heftklammer-Magazin (H).
17. Schließen Sie die obere vordere Abdeckung (12).

Fahren Sie mit der Justage der Heftposition auf Seite 20 fort.

---

16. Installare il contenitore punti (H).
17. Chiudere il coperchio superiore anteriore (12).

Proseguire con la regolazione della posizione di pinzatura a pagina 20.

---

16. 安装装订针盒 (H)。
17. 关闭前部上盖板 (12)。

跳至 P20「调节装订位置」。

---

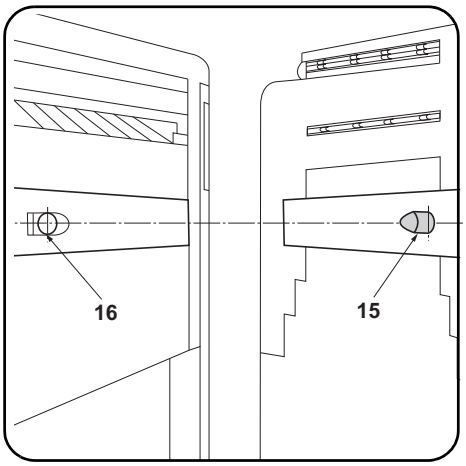
16. 스테이플 카트리지 (H) 를 설치합니다 .
17. 앞 상커버 (12) 를 닫습니다 .

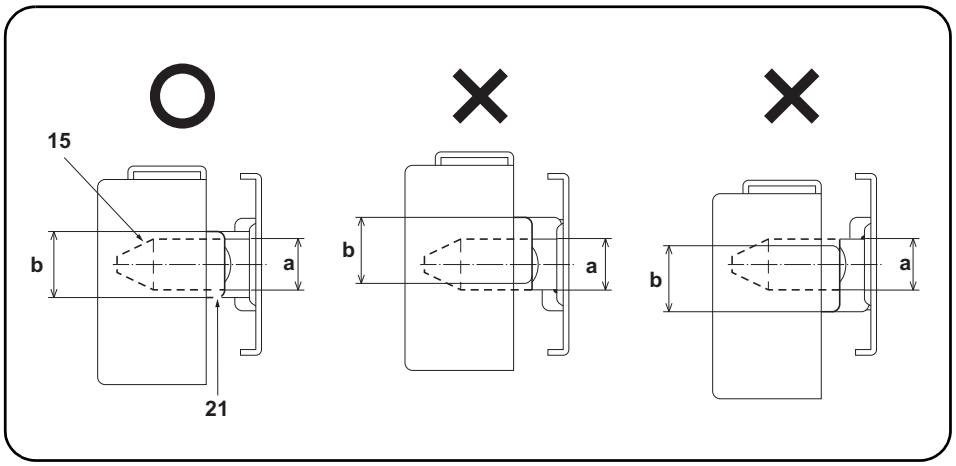
20 페이지의 스테이플 위치 조정으로 진행합니다 .

---

16. ステープルカートリッジ (H) を取り付ける。
17. 前上カバー(12) を閉じる。

P20「ステープル位置の調整」に進む。





Adjusting the height

1. Check that the respective heights of the pins (15) on the connecting plate installed on the machine and the connecting holes (16) on the document finisher comply with the references below.

Compliant: The diameter (a) of the pin (15) is within the height range (b) of the curved section (21).
Non-compliant: The diameter (a) of the pin (15) is extends beyond the height range (b) of the curved section (21).
If the heights are non-compliant, use the procedure below to adjust the height.

Réglage de la hauteur

1. Vérifiez que les hauteurs respectives des ergots (15) sur la plaque de connexion installée sur la machine et les trous de connexion (16) sur le finisseur de document sont conformes aux références ci-dessous.

Bon : Le diamètre (a) de l'ergot (15) est dans les limites de hauteur (b) de la partie courbée (21).
Mauvais : Le diamètre (a) de l'ergot (15) dépasse les limites de hauteur (b) de la partie courbée (21).
Si la hauteur n'est pas conforme, l'ajuster en procédant comme indiqué ci-dessous.

Ajuste de la altura

1. Compruebe que las alturas correspondientes de los pasadores (15) de la placa de fijación instalados en la máquina y los orificios de conexión (16) del finalizador de documentos cumplen las referencias de abajo.

Cumple: el diámetro (a) del pasador (15) está dentro del rango de altura (b) de la sección curvada (21).
No cumple: el diámetro (a) del pasador (15) sobrepasa el rango de altura (b) de la sección curvada (21).
Si las alturas no cumplen con las especificaciones, utilice el siguiente procedimiento para ajustar la altura.

Einstellen der Höhe

1. Überprüfen Sie, dass die jeweilige Höhe der Stifte (15) der am Gerät installierten Verbindungsplatte und Verbindungsöffnungen (16) des Finishers mit den unten angegebenen Werten übereinstimmen.

Korrekt: Der Durchmesser (a) des Stifts (15) befindet sich im Höhenbereich (b) des Kurvenabschnitts (21).
Nicht korrekt: Der Durchmesser (a) des Stifts (15) ragt über den Höhenbereich (b) des Kurvenabschnitts (21) hinaus.
Falls die Höhen nicht korrekt sind, müssen Sie sie wie folgend einstellen.

Regolazione dell'altezza

1. Controllare che le rispettive altezze dei perni (15) sulla piastra di connessione installata sulla macchina e i fori di connessione (16) sulla finisher documenti corrispondano ai riferimenti mostrati sotto.

Conformità: Il diametro (a) del perno (15) è compreso nella gamma di altezza (b) della sezione curvata (21).
Non conformità: Il diametro (a) del perno (15) si estende oltre la gamma di altezza (b) della sezione curvata (21).
Se le altezze sono non corrispondenti, utilizzare la procedura riportata sotto per regolare l'altezza.

高度调节

1. 确认机器主机上安装的连接板的销钉 (15) 和装订器的连接用的孔 (16) 的高度是否符合以下标准。

符　合: 销钉 (15) 的直径 (a) 在弯曲部 (21) 的高度 (b) 的范围内。
不符合: 销钉 (15) 的直径 (a) 超出了弯曲部 (21) 的高度 (b) 的范围。
不符合时，通过以下步骤进行调节。

높이조정

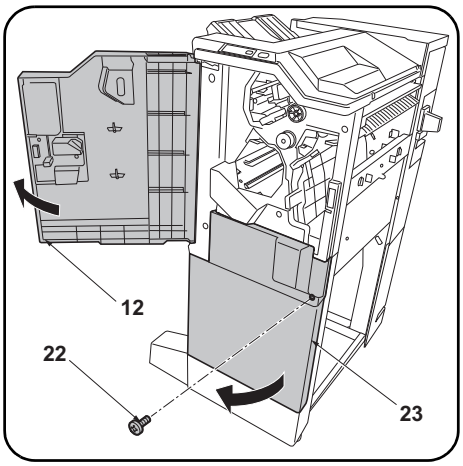
1. 본체에 설치된 연결판의 핀 (15) 과 문서 피니셔의 연결용 구멍 (16) 의 각 높이가 아래의 기준에 부합하는지 확인합니다 .

적 합 : 핀 (15) 의 직경 (a) 가 곡선부 (21) 의 높이 (b) 의 범위에 들어간다 .
부적합: 핀 (15) 의 직경 (a) 가 곡선부 (21) 의 높이 (b) 의 범위를 넘는다 .
부적합의 경우에는 이하의 순서대로 조정합니다 .

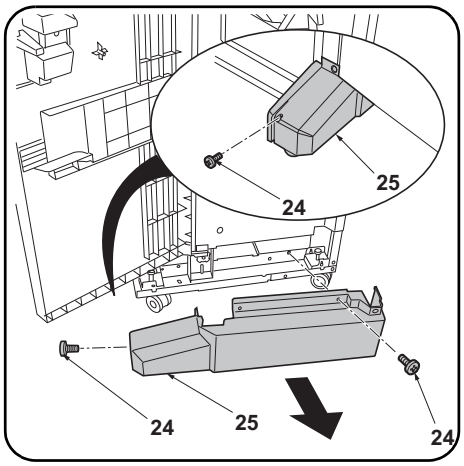
高さ調整

1. 機械本体に取り付けた連結板のピン (15) とドキュメントフィニッシャーの連結用の穴 (16) の高さが以下の基準に適合するか確認する。

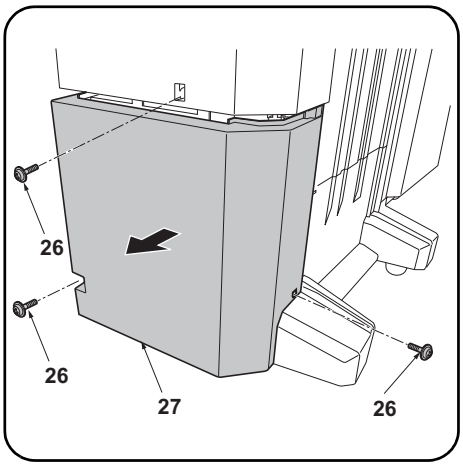
適　合: ピン (15) の直径 (a) が曲げ部 (21) の高さ (b) の範囲に収まっている。
不適合: ピン (15) の直径 (a) が曲げ部 (21) の高さ (b) の範囲からはみだしている。
不適合の場合は、以下の手順で調整する。



2. Open the upper front cover (12) of the document finisher.
3. Remove the screw (22) and open the lower front cover (23).



4. Remove the 2 screws (24) and remove the foot cover (25).



5. Remove the 3 screws (26) and remove the lower rear cover (27).

---

2. Ouvrir le couvercle avant supérieur (12) du finisseur de document.
3. Déposer la vis (22) et ouvrir le couvercle avant inférieur (23).

4. Déposer les 2 vis (24) puis le couvercle du pied (25).

5. Déposer les 3 vis (26) puis le couvercle arrière inférieur (27).

---

2. Abra la cubierta frontal superior (12) del finalizador de documentos.
3. Quite el tornillo (22) y abra la cubierta frontal inferior (23).

4. Quite los 2 tornillos (24) y quite la cubierta de la pata (25).

5. Quite los 3 tornillos (26) y quite la cubierta posterior inferior (27).

---

2. Öffnen Sie die obere vordere Abdeckung (12) des Finishers.
3. Entfernen Sie die Schraube (22) und öffnen Sie die untere vordere Abdeckung (23).

4. Entfernen Sie die 2 Schrauben (24) und nehmen Sie die Fußabdeckung (25) ab.

5. Entfernen Sie die 3 Schrauben (26) und nehmen Sie die untere hintere Abdeckung (27) ab.

---

2. Aprire il coperchio superiore anteriore (12) della finisher documenti.
3. Rimuovere la vite (22) ed aprire il coperchio inferiore anteriore (23).

4. Rimuovere le 2 viti (24) e quindi rimuovere la copertura del piede (25).

5. Rimuovere le 3 viti (26) e quindi rimuovere il coperchio inferiore posteriore (27).

---

2. 打开装订器的前部上盖板 (12)。
3. 拆除 1 颗螺丝 (22)，打开前部下盖板 (23)。

4. 拆除 2 颗螺丝 (24)，拆下脚座盖板 (25)。

5. 拆除 3 颗螺丝 (26)，拆下后部下盖板 (27)。

---

2. 문서 피니셔 앞 상커버 (12) 를 엽니다 .
3. 나사 (22) 1 개를 제거하고 앞 하커버 (23) 를 엽니다 .

4. 나사 (24) 2 개를 제거하고 , 풋커버 (25) 를 제거합니다 .

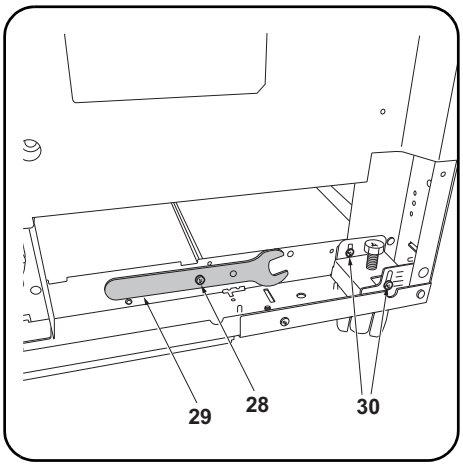
5. 나사 (26) 3 개를 제거하고 , 뒤 하커버 (27) 를 제거합니다 .

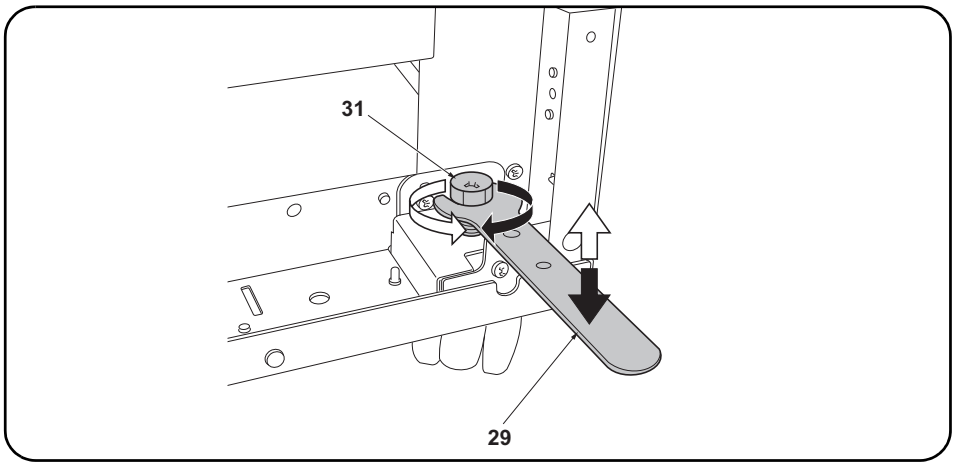
---

2. ドキュメントフィニッシャーの前上カバー (12) を開く。
3. ビス (22)1 本を外し、前下カバー(23) を開く。

4. ビス (24)2 本を外し、フットカバー(25) を取り外す。

5. ビス (26)3 本を外し、後下カバー(27) を取り外す。





6. Remove the screw (28) to remove the spanner (29).
7. Loosen the 2 screws (30) on the front right and on the rear right of the document finisher.
8. Turn the adjustment bolts (31) with the spanner (29) to adjust the height of the document finisher.
Turning the adjustment bolt clockwise lifts the document finisher, and turning it counterclockwise lowers the document finisher.
9. Retighten each of the 2 screws (30) and replace the spanner (29).

---

6. Déposer la vis (28) pour libérer la clé (29).
7. Desserrer les 2 vis (30) du côté avant droit et arrière droit du finisseur de document.
8. Faire tourner les boulons de réglage (31) avec la clé (29) pour ajuster la hauteur du finisseur de document.
Tourner le boulon de réglage dans le sens horloger pour lever le finisseur de document, et dans le sens contraire au sens horloger pour le descendre.
9. Resserrer les 2 vis (30) et repositionner la clé (29) au même endroit.

---

6. Quite el tornillo (28) para extraer la llave inglesa (29).
7. Afloje los 2 tornillos (30) en los lados derecho frontal y derecho posterior del finalizador de documentos.
8. Gire los pernos de ajuste (31) con la llave inglesa (29) para ajustar la altura del finalizador de documentos.
Al girar el perno de ajuste en la dirección de las manecillas del reloj se levanta el finalizador de documentos y al girar en sentido contrario a las manecillas del reloj baja el finalizador de documentos.
9. Vuelva a apretar los 2 tornillos (30) y coloque la llave inglesa en su lugar (29).

---

6. Entfernen Sie die Schraube (28), um den Schlüssel (29) abzunehmen
7. Lösen Sie die 2 Schrauben (30) vorne rechts und hinten rechts am Finisher.
8. Drehen Sie die Einstellschrauben (31) mit dem Schlüssel (29), um die Höhe des Finishers einzustellen.
Durch Drehen der Einstellschraube im Uhrzeigersinn wird der Finisher angehoben, während er durch Drehen entgegen dem Uhrzeigersinn abgesenkt wird.
9. Ziehen Sie die 2 Schrauben (30) wieder an und verstauen Sie den Schlüssel (29) wieder.

---

6. Rimuovere la vite (28) per rimuovere la chiave (29).
7. Allentare le 2 viti (30) sulla parte anteriore destra e posteriore destra della finisher documenti.
8. Ruotare i bulloni di regolazione (31) con la chiave (29) per regolare l'altezza della finisher documenti.
Ruotando il bullone di regolazione in senso orario si solleva la finisher documenti, mentre ruotandolo in senso antiorario si abbassa la finisher documenti.
9. Ristringere ciascuna delle 2 viti (30) e riporre la chiave (29).

---

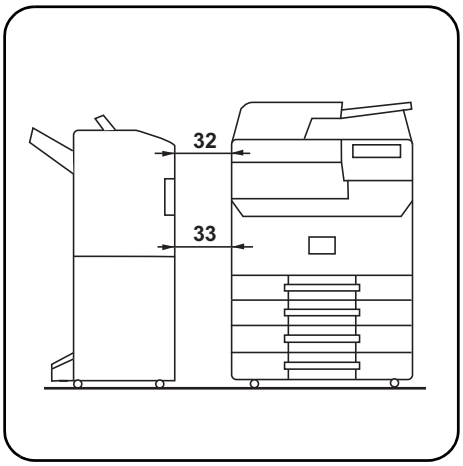
6. 取下螺丝 (28) 以便拆下扳手 (29)。
7. 拧松装订器右前侧与右后侧的各 2 颗螺丝 (30)。
8. 使用扳手 (29) 旋转调节螺栓 (31)，以调节装订器的高度。
将调节螺栓向顺时针方向旋转，装订器的高度升高，逆时针方向旋转则装订器的高度降低。
9. 拧紧各 2 颗螺丝 (30)，按原样安装扳手 (29)。

---

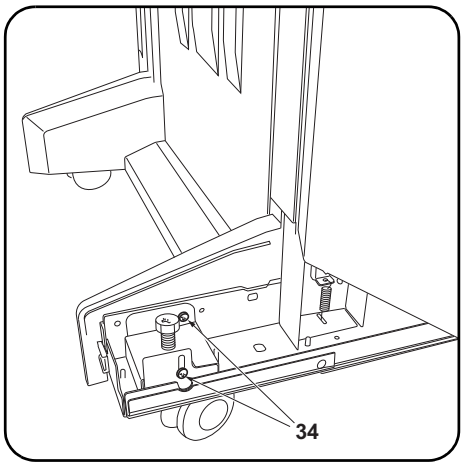
6. 나사 (28) 1 개를 빼고 , 스패너 (29) 를 떼어 냅니다 .
7. 문서 피니셔 우측 앞과 뒤의 나사 (30) 각 2 개를 느슨하게 합니다 .
8. 스패너 (29) 로 조정 볼트 (31) 를 돌려 문서 피니셔의 높이를 조정한다 .
조정 볼트를 시계방향으로 돌리면 문서 피니셔의 높이가 높아지고 , 반 시계방향으로 돌리면 낮아 집니다 .
9. 나사 (30) 각 2 개를 조이고 스패너 (29) 를 원래 자리에 장착합니다 .

---

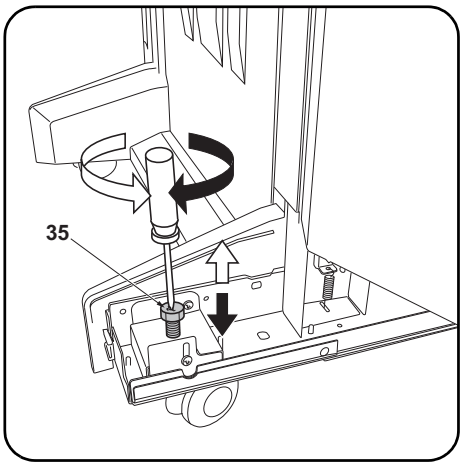
6. ビス (28)1 本を外し、スパナー(29) を取り外す。
7. ドキュメントフィニッシャー右前と右後のビス (30) 各 2 本を緩める。
8. スパナー(29) で調整ボルト (31) を回し、ドキュメントフィニッシャーの高さを調整する。
調整ボルトを時計方向に回すとドキュメントフィニッシャーの高さが高くなり、反時計方向に回すと低くなる。
9. ビス (30) 各 2 本を締め付け、スパナー(29) を元通り取り付ける。



10. If the distances between the document finisher and the machine (32, 33) are unequal, use the procedure below to adjust the spacing.



11. Loosen the 2 screws (34) on the front left and on the rear left of the document finisher.



12. Turn the adjustment bolts (35) with a Philips-head screwdriver to adjust the height of the document finisher.
Turning the adjustment bolt clockwise lifts the document finisher, and turning it counterclockwise lowers the document finisher.

---

10. Si les distances entre le finisseur de document et la machine (32, 33) sont inégales, régler l'espacement en procédant de la manière suivante.

11. Desserrer les 2 vis (34) du côté avant gauche et arrière gauche du finisseur de document.

12. Faire tourner les boulons de réglage (35) à l'aide d'un tournevis cruciforme pour ajuster la hauteur du finisseur de document.
Tourner le boulon de réglage dans le sens horloger pour lever le finisseur de document, et dans le sens contraire au sens horloger pour le descendre.

---

10. Si las distancias entre el finalizador de documentos y la máquina (32, 33) no son iguales, utilice el siguiente procedimiento para ajustar la separación.

11. Afloje los 2 tornillos (34) en los lados izquierdo frontal e izquierdo posterior del finalizador de documentos.

12. Gire los pernos de ajuste (35) con un destornillador de cabeza Philips para ajustar la altura del finalizador de documentos.
Al girar el perno de ajuste en la dirección de las manecillas del reloj se levanta el finalizador de documentos y al girar en sentido contrario a las manecillas del reloj baja el finalizador de documentos.

---

10. Falls die Abstände zwischen dem Finisher und dem Gerät (32, 33) ungleich sind, führen Sie die unten angegebenen Schritte aus, um den Abstand zu korrigieren.

11. Lösen Sie die 2 Schrauben (34) vorne links und hinten links am Finisher.

12. Stellen Sie die Einstellschrauben (35) mit einem Kreuzschlitzschraubendreher ein, um die Höhe des Finishers zu korrigieren.
Durch Drehen der Einstellschraube im Uhrzeigersinn wird der Finisher angehoben, während er durch Drehen entgegen dem Uhrzeigersinn abgesenkt wird.

---

10. Se le distanze tra la finisher documenti e la macchina (32, 33) sono diverse, attenersi alla sottostante procedura per regolare la spaziatura.

11. Allentare le 2 viti (34) sulla parte anteriore sinistra e posteriore sinistra della finisher documenti.

12. Ruotare i bulloni di regolazione (35) con un cacciavite con testa a croce tipo Philips per regolare l'altezza della finisher documenti.
Ruotando il bullone di regolazione in senso orario si solleva la finisher documenti, mentre ruotandolo in senso antiorario si abbassa la finisher documenti.

---

10. 装订器与机器的间隙 (32、33) 不等时，按以下步骤进行调节。

11. 拧松装订器左前侧与左后侧的各 2 颗螺丝 (34)。

12. 使用十字螺丝刀旋转调节螺栓 (35)，以调节装订器的高度。
将调节螺栓向顺时针方向旋转，装订器的高度升高，逆时针方向旋转则装订器的高度降低。

---

10. 문서 피니셔와 본체의 거리 (32, 33) 가 동일하지 않는 경우 아래의 절차에 따라 간격을 조정합니다 .

11. 문서 피니셔 좌측 앞과 뒤의 나사 (34) 각 2 개를 느슨하게 합니다 .

12. 플러스 드라이버로 조정 볼트 (35) 를 돌려 문서 피니셔 높이를 조정합니다 .
조정 볼트를 시계방향으로 돌리면 문서 피니셔의 높이가 높아지고 , 반 시계방향으로 돌리면 낮아 집니다 .

---

10. ドキュメントフィニッシャーと機械本体の間隔(32､33)が等しくない場合は､以下の手順で調整を行う。

11. ドキュメントフィニッシャー左前と左後のビス (34) 各 2 本を緩める。

12. プラスドライバーで調整ボルト (35) を回し､ドキュメントフィニッシャーの高さを調整する。
調整ボルトを時計方向に回すとドキュメントフィニッシャーの高さが高くなり､反時計方向に回すと低くなる。

13. Retighten each of the 2 screws (34).
14. Reinstall the foot cover (25) and lower rear cover (27).

---

13. Resserrer les 2 vis (34).
14. Reposer le couvercle du pied (25) et le couvercle arrière inférieur (27).

---

13. Vuelva a apretar los 2 tornillos (34).
14. Vuelva a instalar la cubierta de la pata (25) y la cubierta posterior inferior (27).

---

13. Ziehen Sie die 2 Schrauben (34) nach.
14. Setzen Sie die Fußabdeckung (25) und die untere hintere Abdeckung (27) wieder ein.

---

13. Ristringere ciascuna delle 2 viti (34).
14. Reinstallare la copertura del piede (25) e il coperchio inferiore posteriore (27).

---

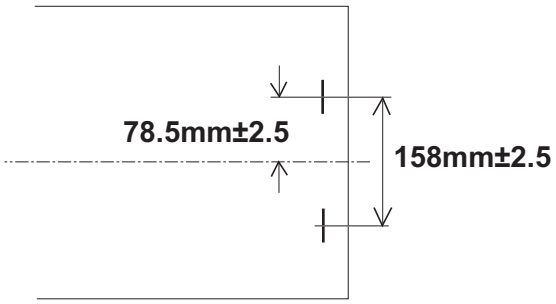
13. 拧紧各 2 颗螺丝 (34)。
14. 按原样安装脚座盖板 (25)、后部下盖板 (27)。

---

13. 나사 (34) 각 2 개를 조입니다 .
14. 풋커버 (25), 뒤 하커버 (27) 를 원래대로 제거합니다 .

---

13. ビス (34) 各 2 本を締め付ける。
14. フットカバー(25)、後下カバー(27) を元通りに取り付ける。



Adjusting the stapling position

1. Connect the machine power plug to the wall outlet and turn the machine main power switch on.
2. Make a test copy using staple mode (double stapled).
3. Check whether the stapling position is off-center. If the staple position is off-center, follow the procedure below to adjust the position.
<Reference value> 78.5 mm ±2.5 mm from the center of the paper

---

Ajustement de la position d'agrafage

1. Insérer la fiche d'alimentation de la machine dans la prise murale et mettre la machine sous tension.
2. Procéder à une copie d'essai en mode agrafage (double agrafage).
3. Vérifier que la position d'agrafage n'est pas en décalage.Si la position d'agrafage est décalée, la régler en procédant de la manière suivante.
<Valeur de référence> 78,5 mm ±2,5 mm depuis le milieu de la feuille de papier.

Ajuste de la posición de grapado

1. Conecte el enchufe de la máquina al receptáculo de pared y encienda el interruptor principal de la máquina.
2. Haga una copia de prueba en el modo de grapado (grapado doble).
3. Compruebe si la posición de grapado está descentrada.Si la posición de grapado está descentrada, realice el siguiente procedimiento para ajustar la posición.
<Valor de referencia> 78,5 mm ± 2,5 mm del centro del papel

Justage der Heftposition

1. Stecken Sie den Netzstecker des Geräts in die Wandsteckdose und schalten Sie das Gerät am Hauptschalter ein.
2. Erstellen Sie eine Probekopie im Heftmodus (doppelt geheftet).
3. Prüfen Sie, ob die Heftposition außermittig ist.Falls die Heftposition außermittig ist, müssen Sie sie wie folgend einstellen.
<Bezugswert> 78,5 mm ±2,5 mm von der Blattmitte

Regolazione della posizione di pinzatura

1. Collegare la spina alla presa di corrente a muro e accendere l'interruttore di alimentazione della macchina.
2. Eseguire una copia di prova utilizzando la modalità di spillatura con punti metallici (spillatura doppia).
3. Verificare che la posizione di spillatura non sia fuori centro.Se la posizione di spillatura è fuori centro, seguire la procedura riportata sotto per regolare la posizione.
<Valore di riferimento> 78,5 mm ± 2,5 mm dal centro del foglio

---

调节装订位置

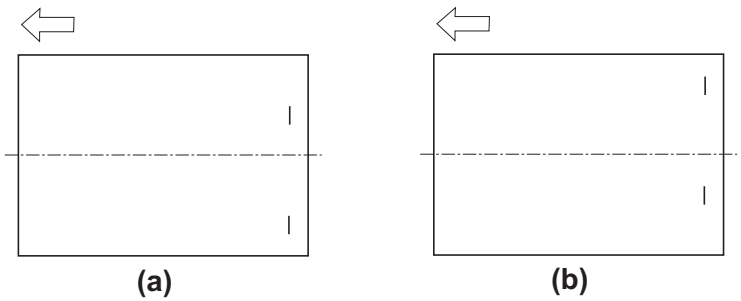
1. 将机器上的电源插头插入电源插座中，打开主电源开关。
2. 在装订模式（2 点固定）下进行测试复印。
3. 确认装订位置的中心偏差。装订位置偏离中心时，按以下步骤进行调节。
＜基准值＞ 距离纸张中心 78.5㎜± 2.5㎜

스테이플 위치 조정

1. 본체 전원플러그를 콘센트에 꽂고 주 전원 스위치를 ON 으로 합니다 .
2. 스테이플 모드 (2 곳) 에서 시험복사를 합니다 .
3. 스테이플 위치의 센터 어긋남을 확인합니다 . 스테이플 위치가 중심에서 벗어난 경우다음 순서로 조정을 합니다 .
＜기준치＞ 용지 센터에서 78.5mm± 2.5mm

ステープル位置の調整

1. 機械本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、主電源スイッチを ON にする。
2. ステープルモード(2 箇所止め)でテストコピーを行う。
3. ステープル位置のセンターずれを確認する。ステープル位置が中心からずれていた場合、次の手順で調整を行う。
＜基準値＞ 用紙センターより 78.5㎜± 2.5㎜



4. Set maintenance mode U246, select Finisher and Staple HP.
5. Adjust the values.
If the paper is stapled too close to the front of the machine (a): Increase the setting value.
If the paper is stapled too close to the rear of the machine (b): Decrease the setting value.
6. Perform a test copy.
7. Repeat steps 4 to 6 until the staple position is within the reference value.
<Reference value> 78.5 mm ±2.5 mm from the center of the paper

---

4. Passer en mode maintenance U246, sélectionner Finisher et Staple HP.
5. Régler les valeurs.
Si le papier est agrafé trop près de l'avant de la machine (a): augmenter la valeur de réglage.
Si le papier est agrafé trop près de l'arrière de la machine (b): réduire la valeur de réglage.
6. Effectuer une copie de test.
7. Recommencer les étapes 4 à 6 jusqu'à ce que la position d'agrafe soit conforme à la valeur de référence
<Valeur de référence> 78,5 mm ±2,5 mm depuis le milieu de la feuille de papier.

---

4. Entre en el modo de mantenimiento U246, seleccione Finisher y Staple HP.
5. Ajuste los valores.
Si el grapado del papel se encuentra demasiado cerca del frente de la máquina (a): aumente el valor de configuración.
Si el grapado del papel se encuentra demasiado cerca de la parte posterior de la máquina (b): disminuya el valor de configuración.
6. Haga una copia de prueba.
7. Repita los pasos 4 a 6 hasta que la posición de grapado se encuentre dentro del valor de referencia.
<Valor de referencia> 78,5 mm ± 2,5 mm del centro del papel

---

4. Schalten Sie in den Wartungsmodus U246, wählen Sie Finisher und Staple HP.
5. Die Werte einstellen.
Falls das Papier zu nahe am vorderen Rand des Geräts (a) abgestapelt wird: Vergrößern Sie den Stellwert.
Falls das Papier zu nahe am hinteren Rand des Geräts (b) abgestapelt wird: Verkleinern Sie den Stellwert.
6. Eine Testkopie erstellen.
7. Wiederholen Sie die Schritte 4 bis 6, bis die Heftposition im Bereich des Bezugswerts liegt.
<Bezugswert> 78,5 mm ±2,5 mm von der Blattmitte

---

4. Impostare la modalità manutenzione U246, selezionare Finisher e Staple HP.
5. Regolare i valori.
Se il foglio viene spillato troppo vicino alla parte anteriore della macchina (a): Aumentare il valore di impostazione.
Se il foglio viene spillato troppo vicino alla parte posteriore della macchina (b): Diminuire il valore di impostazione.
6. Eseguire una copia di prova.
7. Ripetere i passi 4 to 6 finché la posizione di spillatura risulta all'interno del valore di riferimento.
<Valore di riferimento> 78,5 mm ± 2,5 mm dal centro del foglio

---

4. 设置维护模式 U246，选择 Finisher、Staple HP。
5. 调整设定值。
装订位置向机器前部偏移时 (a)：调高设定值。
装订位置向机器后部偏移时 (b)：调低设定值。
6. 进行测试复印。
7. 重复步骤 4 ～ 6，直到装订位置在基准范围内为止。
＜基准值＞ 距离纸张中心 78.5mm± 2.5mm

---

4. 메인터넌스 모드 U246 을 세트하고 Finisher, Staple HP 를 선택합니다 .
5. 설정치를 조정합니다 .
스테이플 위치가 기기앞측으로 벗어난 경우 (a):설정치를 높입니다 .
스테이플 위치가 기기뒷측으로 벗어난 경우 (b):설정치를 내입니다 .
6. 시험복사를 합니다 .
7. 스테이플 위치가 기준치내가 될 때까지 순서 4 ~ 6 을 반복합니다 .
<기준치> 용지 센터에서 78.5mm± 2.5mm

---

4. メンテナンスモード U246 をセットし、Finisher、Staple HP を選択する。
5. 設定値を調整する。
ステープル位置が機械前側にずれている場合 (a):設定値を上げる。
ステープル位置が機械後側にずれている場合 (b):設定値を下げる。
6. テストコピーを行う。
7. ステープル位置が基準値内になるまで、手順 4 ～ 6 を繰り返す。
＜基準値＞ 用紙センターより 78.5mm± 2.5mm

2013. 1
303NB56760-01

INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR CENTER-FOLDING UNIT

INSTALLATION GUIDE

GUIDE D'INSTALLATION

GUÍA DE INSTALACION

INSTALLATIONSANLEITUNG

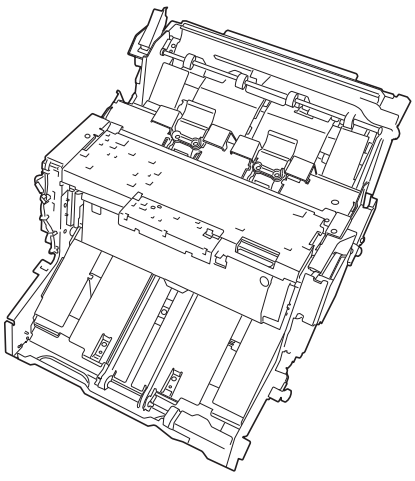
GUIDA ALL'INSTALLAZIONE

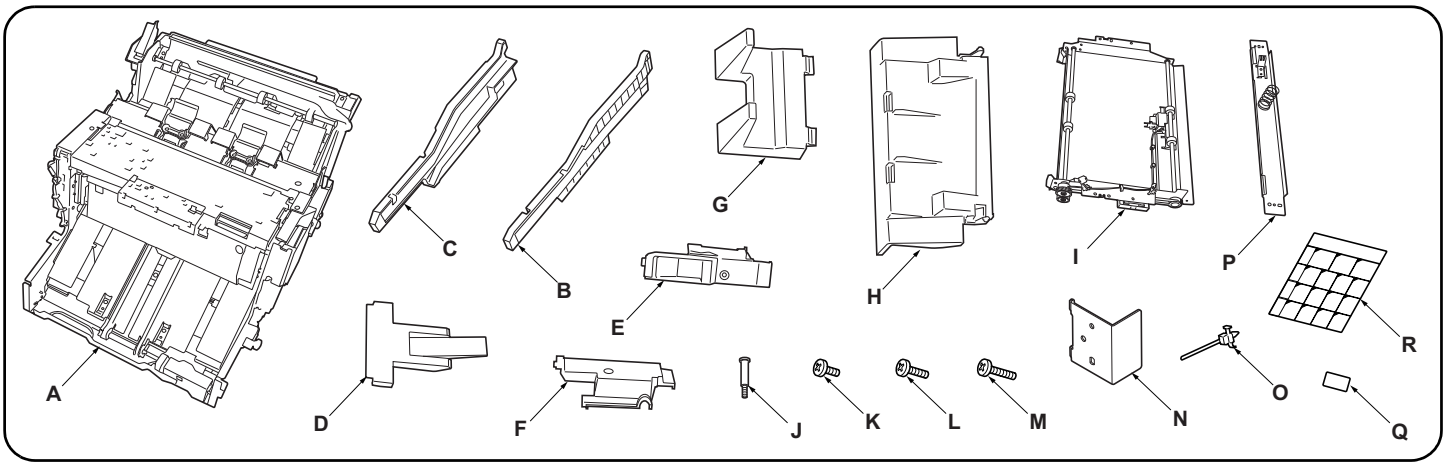
安装手册

설치안내서

設置手順書

BF-730





English

Supplied parts

A. Center-Folding unit 1
B. Front rail 1
C. Rear rail 1
D. Output stopper 1
E. Front side cover 1
F. Rear side cover 1
G. Output stock tray 1
H. Output tray 1
I. Relay paper conveying unit 1
J. Pin 1
K. M4 × 8 screw 11
L. M4 × 10 screw (black) 2
M. M4 × 12 screw 4
N. Lock plate 2
O. Binding band 1
P. Guide 1
Q. D7 label 1
R. Operation label 1

Français

Pièces fournies

A. Plieuse 1
B. Glissière avant 1
C. Glissière arrière 1
D. Butée de sortie 1
E. Capot latéral avant 1
F. Capot latéral arrière 1
G. Plateau de sortie du papier 1
H. Plateau de sortie 1
I. Unité de transport du papier de relais 1
J. Goupille 1
K. Vis M4 × 8 11
L. Vis M4 × 10 (noire) 2
M. Vis M4 × 12 4
N. Plaque de verrouillage 2
O. Collier de fixation 1
P. Guide 1
Q. Étiquette D7 1
R. Étiquette de fonctionnement 1

Español

Partes suministradas

A. Unidad de plegado 1
B. Carril frontal 1
C. Carril posterior 1
D. Tope de salida 1
E. Cubierta lateral frontal 1
F. Cubierta lateral posterior 1
G. Bandeja de recolección de papel de salida 1
H. Bandeja de salida 1
I. Unidad de transporte de papel por relevador 1
J. Pasador 1
K. Tornillo M4 × 8 11
L. Tornillo M4 × 10 (negro) 2
M. Tornillo M4 × 12 4
N. Placa de cierre 2
O. Correa de sujeción 1
P. Guía 1
Q. Etiqueta D7 1
R. Etiqueta de funcionamiento 1

Deutsch

Gelieferte Teile

A. Mittenfalteinheit 1
B. Vordere Schiene 1
C. Hintere Schiene 1
D. Ausgabeanschlag 1
E. Vordere Seitenabdeckung 1
F. Hintere Seitenabdeckung 1
G. Ausgabestapelfach 1
H. Ausgabefach 1
I. Eingesetzte Papierfördereinheit 1
J. Stift 1
K. M4 × 8 Schraube 11
L. M4 × 10 Schraube (schwarz) 2
M. M4 × 12 Schraube 4
N. Sperrplatte 2
O. Schellenband 1
P. Führung 1
Q. D7 Aufkleber 1
R. Bedienungsaufkleber 1

Italiano

Parti di fornitura

A. Unità di piegatura centrale 1
B. Rotaia anteriore 1
C. Rotaia posteriore 1
D. Fermo di uscita 1
E. Coperchio laterale anteriore 1
F. Coperchio laterale posteriore 1
G. Vassoio di uscita stoccaggio 1
H. Vassoio di uscita 1
I. Unità relay di trasporto carta 1
J. Perno 1
K. Vite M4 × 8 11
L. Vite M4 × 10 (nera) 2
M. Vite M4 × 12 4
N. Piastra di bloccaggio 2
O. Fascetta di legatura 1
P. Guida 1
Q. Etichetta D7 1
R. Etichetta di operazione 1

简体中文

附属品

A. 中缝装订一折页单元 1
B. 前部导轨 1
C. 后部导轨 1
D. 排纸挡板 1
E. 前部侧盖板 1
F. 后部侧盖板 1
G. 堆纸托盘 1
H. 排纸托盘 1
I. 中间搬运单元 1
J. 销钉 1
K. M4×8 螺丝 11
L. M4×10 螺丝（黑） 2
M. M4×12 螺丝 4
N. 锁定板 2
O. 束线带 1
P. 导板 1
Q. D7 标签 1
R. 操作标签 1

한국어

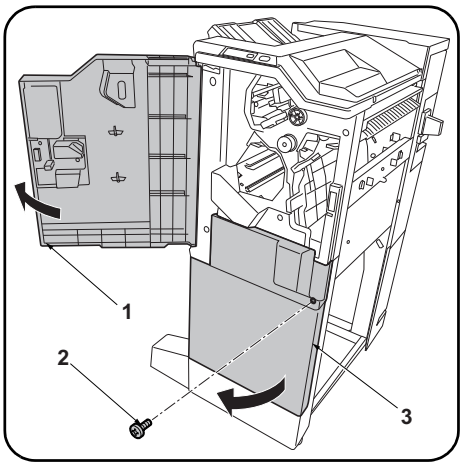
동봉품

A. 접기 유니트 1
B. 레일 앞 1
C. 레일 뒤 1
D. 배지 스토퍼 1
E. 사이드 커버 앞 1
F. 사이드 커버 뒤 1
G. 배지 저장트레이 1
H. 배지 트레이 1
I. 중계 반송유니트 1
J. 핀 1
K. 나사 M4×8 11
L. 나사 M4×10 (흑) 2
M. 나사 M4×12 4
N. 잠금 플레이트 2
O. 결속 밴드 1
P. 가이드 1
Q. D7 라벨 1
R. 조작라벨 1

日本語

同梱品

A. 中折りユニット 1
B. レール前 1
C. レール後 1
D. 排紙ストッパー 1
E. サイドカバー前 1
F. サイドカバー後 1
G. 排紙ストックトレイ 1
H. 排紙トレイ 1
I. 中継搬送ユニット 1
J. ピン 1
K. ビス M4×8 11
L. ビス M4×10(黒) 2
M. ビス M4×12 4
N. ロックプレート 2
O. 結束バンド 1
P. ガイド 1
Q. D7 ラベル 1
R. 操作ラベル 1



Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning material from supplied parts.

Procedure
Before installing the center-folding unit, turn the MFP's main power switch off and unplug the power cable from the power supply.
Install the document finisher, and then install the center-folding unit.

1. Open the upper front cover (1) of the document finisher.
2. Remove the screw (2) and open the lower front cover (3).
(NOTICE)
Discard the screw (2) and do not fasten the lower front cover (3).

Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.

Procédure
Avant d'installer la plieuse mettre l'interrupteur d'alimentation principal du MFP hors tension et débrancher le câble d'alimentation de la prise de courant.
Installer le finisseur de document, puis installer la plieuse.

1. Ouvrir le couvercle avant supérieur (1) du retoucheur de document.
2. Déposer la vis (2) et ouvrir le couvercle avant inférieur (3).
(AVIS)
Jeter la vis (2) et ne pas fixer le capot inférieur avant (3).

Asegúrese de despegar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.

Procedimiento
Antes de instalar la unidad de plegado, desconecte el interruptor de alimentación principal de la MFP y desenchufe el cable de alimentación de la toma de corriente.
Instale primero el finalizador de documentos y luego instale la unidad de plegado.

1. Abra la cubierta frontal superior (1) del finalizador de documentos.
2. Quite el tornillo (2) y abra la cubierta frontal inferior (3).
(AVISO)
Descarte el tornillo (2) y no ajuste la cubierta frontal inferior (3).

Entfernen Sie Klebeband und/oder Dämpfungsmaterial vollständig von den mitgelieferten Teilen.

Verfahren
Bevor Sie mit dem Einbau der Mittenfalteinheit beginnen, stellen Sie sicher, dass der Hauptschalter des Kopierers ausgeschaltet und das Netzkabel aus der Steckdose gezogen ist.
Bringen Sie den Dokument-Finisher zuerst und dann erst die Mittenfalteinheit an.

1. Öffnen Sie die obere vordere Abdeckung (1) des Dokument-Finishers.
2. Entfernen Sie die Schraube (2) und öffnen Sie die untere vordere Abdeckung (3).
(HINWEIS)
Entsorgen Sie die Schraube (2) und befestigen Sie nicht die untere vordere Abdeckung (3).

Accertarsi di rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o il materiale di imbottitura dalle parti fornite.

Procedura
Prima di installare l'unità di piegatura centrale, assicurarsi che l'interruttore principale della fotocopiatrice sia spento e che il cavo di alimentazione non sia inserito nella presa.
Installare prima la finitrice e poi procedere all'installazione dell'unità di piegatura centrale.

1. Aprire il coperchio superiore anteriore (1) della finitrice di documenti.
2. Rimuovere la vite (2) ed aprire il coperchio inferiore anteriore (3).
(NOTIFICA)
Eliminare le viti (2) e non fissare il coperchio inferiore anteriore (3).

如果附属品上带有固定胶带，缓冲材料时务必揭下。

安装步骤
安装中缝装订 — 折页单元前，请关闭 MFP 的主电源开关并从电源拔下电源线。
安装装订器，然后安装中缝装订 — 折页单元。

1. 打开装订器的前部上盖板（1）。
2. 拆除 1 颗螺丝（2），打开前部下盖板（3）。
（**注意**）
废除螺丝（2），前部下盖板（3）不需固定。

동봉품에 고정 테이프 , 완충재가 붙어 있는 경우에는 반드시 제거할 것 .

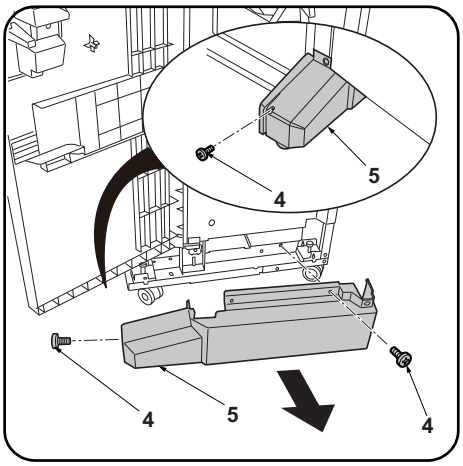
장착순서
중철 유니트를 설치할 때에는 반드시 MFP 본체의 주전원 스위치를 OFF 로 하고 전원플러그를 뺀 후 작업을 할 것 .
문서 피니셔를 설치 후 , 중철 유니트를 설치 할 것 .

1. 문서 피니셔 앞 상커버 (1) 를 엽니다 .
2. 나사 (2) 1 개를 제거하고 앞 하커버 (3) 를 엽니다 .
(주의)
나사 (2) 는 폐기하고 전면 아래커버 (3) 는 고정하지 않습니다 .

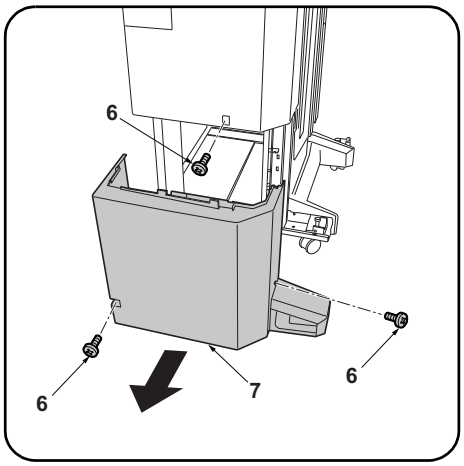
同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材がついている場合は、必ず取り外すこと。

取付手順
中折りユニットを設置するときは、必ず MFP 本体の主電源スイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを抜いてから作業すること。
ドキュメントフィニッシャーを設置後、中折りユニットを設置すること。

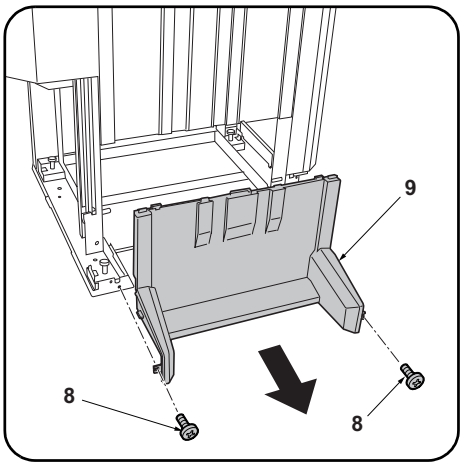
1. ドキュメントフィニッシャーの前上カバー (1) を開く。
2. ビス (2)1 本を外し、前下カバー (3) を開く。
(**注意**)
ビス (2) は廃棄とし、前下カバー (3) は固定しない。



3. Remove the 2 screws (4) and remove the foot cover (5).



4. Remove the 3 screws (6) and remove the lower rear cover (7).



5. Remove 2 screws (8) and remove the lower middle cover (9).

---

3. Déposer les 2 vis (4) puis le couvercle du pied (5).

4. Déposer les 3 vis (6) puis le couvercle arrière inférieur (7).

5. Déposer les 2 vis (8) et le couvercle intermédiaire inférieur (9).

---

3. Quite los 2 tornillos (4) y quite la cubierta de la pata (5).

4. Quite los 3 tornillos (6) y quite la cubierta posterior inferior (7).

5. Quite los 2 tornillos (8) y quite la cubierta intermedia inferior (9).

---

3. Entfernen Sie die 2 Schrauben (4) und nehmen Sie die Fußabdeckung (5) ab.

4. Entfernen Sie die 3 Schrauben (6) und nehmen Sie die untere hintere Abdeckung (7) ab.

5. Entfernen Sie die 2 Schrauben (8) und nehmen Sie die untere mittlere Abdeckung (9) ab.

---

3. Rimuovere le 2 viti (4) e quindi rimuovere la copertura del piede (5).

4. Rimuovere le 3 viti (6) e quindi rimuovere il coperchio inferiore posteriore (7).

5. Rimuovere le 2 viti (8) e quindi rimuovere il pannello centrale inferiore (9).

---

3. 拆除 2 颗螺丝（4），拆下脚座盖板（5）。

4. 拆除 3 颗螺丝（6），拆下后部下盖板（7）。

5. 拆除 2 颗螺钉 (8)，拆下中部下盖板 (9)。

---

3. 나사 (4) 2 개를 제거하고 , 풋커버 (5) 를 제거합니다 .

4. 나사 (6) 3 개를 제거하고 , 뒤 하커버 (7) 를 제거합니다 .

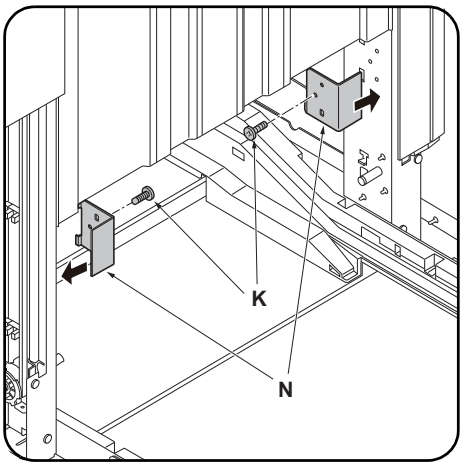
5. 나사 (8) 2 개를 제거하고 중하 커버 (9) 를 떼어 냅니다 .

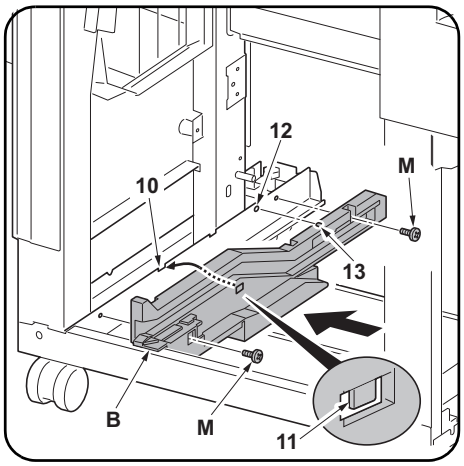
---

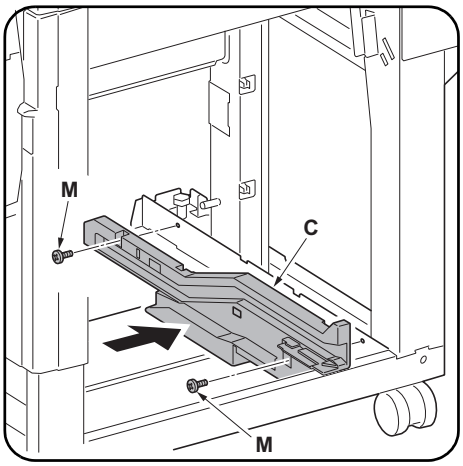
3. ビス (4)2 本を外し、フットカバー(5) を取り外す。

4. ビス (6)3 本を外し、後下カバー(7) を取り外す。

5. ビス (8)2 本を外し、中下カバー(9) を取り外す。







6. Install the lock plates (N) on the front and rear supports using an M4 × 8 screw (K) each.

7. Place the hook (11) of the front rail (B) on the notch (10) at the front of the document finisher, at the same time inserting the projection (13) on the front rail (B) in the hole (12) in the document finisher.
8. Fix the front rail (B) using 2 M4 × 12 screws (M).

9. Install the rear rail (C) at the rear of the document finisher using 2 M4× 12 screws (M) in the same way.

---

6. Monter les plaques de verrouillage (N) sur les supports avant et arrière en procédant à l'aide d'une vis M4 × 8 (K) dans les deux cas.

7. Placer le crochet (11) de la glissière avant (B) dans l'encoche (10) à l'avant du retoucheur de document tout en insérant la saillie (13) de la glisière avant (B) dans le trou (12) du retoucheur de document.
8. Fixer la glissière avant (B) à l'aide de 2 vis M4 × 12 (M).

9. Monter la glissière arrière (C) au dos du retoucheur de document en procédant de la même façon et à l'aide de 2 vis M4 × 12 (M).

---

6. Instale las placas de cierre (N) en los soportes frontal y posterior usando un tornillo M4 × 8 (K) en cada uno.

7. Coloque el gancho (11) del carril frontal (B) en la muesca (10) de la parte frontal del finalizador de documentos al mismo tiempo que inserta el resalto (13) del carril frontal (B) en el orificio (12) del finalizador de documentos.
8. Fije el carril frontal (B) usando 2 tornillos M4 × 12 (M).

9. Instale el carril posterior (C) en la parte posterior del finalizador de documentos usando 2 tornillos M4 × 12 (M) de la misma forma.

---

6. Montieren Sie die Sperrplatten (N) an den vorderen und hinteren Stützen mit jeweils einer M4 × 8 Schraube (K).

7. Setzen Sie den Haken (11) der vorderen Schiene (B) in die Aussparung (10) vorne am Dokument-Finisher ein, und setzen Sie dabei auch den Vorsprung (13) an der vorderen Schiene (B) in die Öffnung (12) des Dokument-Finishers ein.
8. Befestigen Sie die vordere Schiene (B) mit den 2 M4 × 12 Schrauben (M).

9. Montieren Sie die hintere Schiene (C) auf gleiche Weise mit 2 M4 × 12 Schrauben (M) an der Rückseite des Dokument-Finishers.

---

6. Installare le piastre di bloccaggio (N) sui supporti anteriore e posteriore utilizzando una vite M4 × 8 (K) ciascuna.

7. Posizionare il gancio (11) della rotaia anteriore (B) sull'incavo (10) alla parte anteriore della finitrice di documenti, contemporaneamente inserire la la sporgenza (13) sulla rotaia anteriore (B) nel foro (12) nella finitrice di documenti.
8. Fissare la rotaia anteriore (B) utilizzando 2 viti M4 × 12 (M).

9. Installare la rotaia posteriore (C) alla parte posteriore della finitrice di documenti utilizzando 2 viti M4 × 12 (M) alla stessa maniera.

---

6. 使用各 1 颗 M4×8(K) 螺钉将锁定板 (N) 安装在前后的支柱上。

7. 将前部导轨 (B) 的挂钩 (11) 嵌入装订器前部的缺口 (10)，同时将前部导轨 (B) 的卡销 (13) 插入到装订器的孔 (12) 中。
8. 使用 2 颗 M4×12(M) 螺钉来固定前部导轨 (B)。

9. 按相同方法，使用 2 颗 M4×12(M) 螺钉将后部导轨 (C) 安装在装订器后部。

---

6. 잠금 플레이트 (N) 를 앞뒤 지주에 나사 M4×8(K) 각 1 개로 장착합니다 .

7. 문서 피니셔 앞의 이음부분 (10) 에 레일 앞 (B) 의 후크 (11) 를 걸고 동시에 문서 피니셔 구멍 (12) 에 레일 앞 (B) 의 보스 (13) 를 넣습니다 .
8. 나사 M4×12(M) 2 개로 레일 앞 (B) 을 고정합니다 .

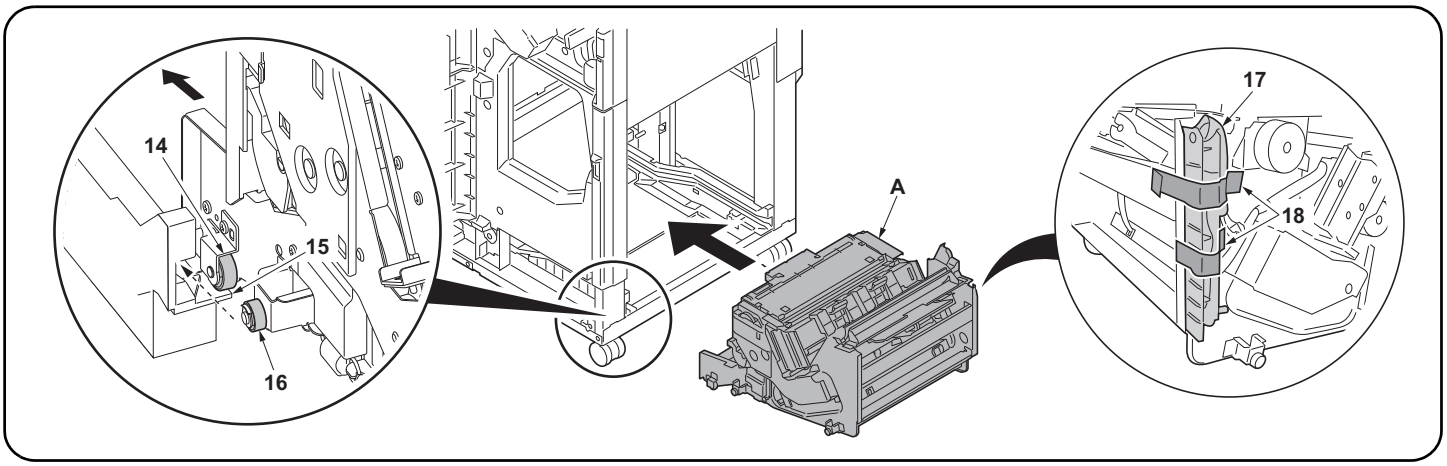
9. 같은 방식으로 나사 M4×12(M) 2 개로 문서 피니셔 뒤에 레일 뒤 (C) 를 장착합니다 .

---

6. ロックプレート (N) を前後の支柱にビス M4×8(K) 各 1 本で取り付ける。

7. ドキュメントフィニッシャー前の切り欠き (10) にレール前 (B) のフック (11) を引っかけ、同時にドキュメントフィニッシャーの穴 (12) にレール前 (B) のボス (13) を入れる。
8. ビス M4×12(M)2 本でレール前 (B) を固定する。

9. 同様に、ビス M4×12(M)2 本で、ドキュメントフィニッシャー後にレール後 (C) を取り付ける。



10. Place the left rollers (14) at the front and rear of the center-folding unit (A) on the tracks (15) on the inner sides of the rails, and roll in the direction shown. The middle rollers (16) will roll onto the rails.
11. Insert the center-folding unit (A) into the document finisher along the rails.
(NOTICE)
Insert without removing the fixing tape (18) for the wire guide (17). (The fixing tape (18) is removed at step 15)

---

10. Disposer les rouleaux gauche (14) à l'avant et à l'arrière de la plieuse (A) sur les voies (15) de côté interne des glissières et faire rouler dans la direction indiquée. Les rouleaux intermédiaires (16) vont se placer d'eux-mêmes sur les glissières.
11. Insérer la plieuse (A) dans le retoucheur de document le long des glissières.
(AVIS)
Insérer sans enlever la bande adhésive de fixation (18) pour le guide câble (17). (La bande adhésive de fixation (18) est enlevée à l'étape 15).

---

10. Coloque los rodillos izquierdos (14) en las partes frontal y posterior de la unidad de plegado (A) en las pistas (15) de los lados internos de los carriles y hágalos rodar en la dirección de la ilustración. Los rodillos intermedios (16) rodarán sobre los carriles.
11. Inserte la unidad de plegado (A) en el finalizador de documentos a lo largo de los carriles.
(AVISO)
Inserte sin quitar la cinta de fijación (18) de la guía para el cable (17). (La cinta de fijación (18) se quita en el paso 15.)

---

10. Setzen Sie die linken Rollen (14) an der Vorderseite und Rückseite der Mittenfalteinheit (A) auf die Bahnen (15) an den Innenseiten der Schienen, und rollen Sie sie in der dargestellten Richtung. Die mittleren Rollen (16) rollen nun auf die Schienen.
11. Schieben Sie die Mittenfalteinheit (A) entlang den Schienen in den Dokument-Finisher ein.
(HINWEIS)
Schieben Sie sie ein, ohne das Klebeband (18) für die Kabelführung (17) zu entfernen. (Das Klebeband (18) wird bei Schritt 15 entfernt.)

---

10. Posizionare i rulli di sinistra (14) alla parte anteriore e posteriore dell'unità di piegatura centrale (A) sulle piste (15) sui lati interni delle rotaie, e farli scorrere nella direzione mostrata. I rulli intermedi (16) scorreranno sulle rotaie.
11. Inserire l'unità di piegatura centrale (A) nella finitrice di documenti lungo le rotaie.
(NOTIFICA)
Inserire senza rimuovere il nastro di fissaggio (18) per la guida cavi (17). (Il nastro di fissaggio (18) viene rimosso al punto 15)

---

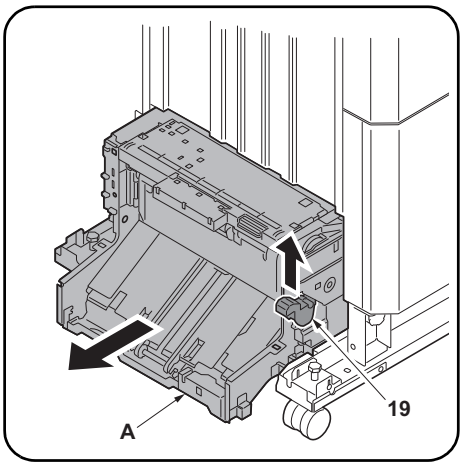
10. 将中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 前后的左侧滑轮 (14) 放在导轨内侧的转动部 (15) 上，并按箭头方向转动。将中间滑轮 (16) 插入到导轨上。
11. 将中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 沿着导轨插入到装订器中。
（**注意**）
插入时不需剥除电线导板 (17) 的固定胶带 (18)。(在步骤 15 时剥除固定胶带 (18))

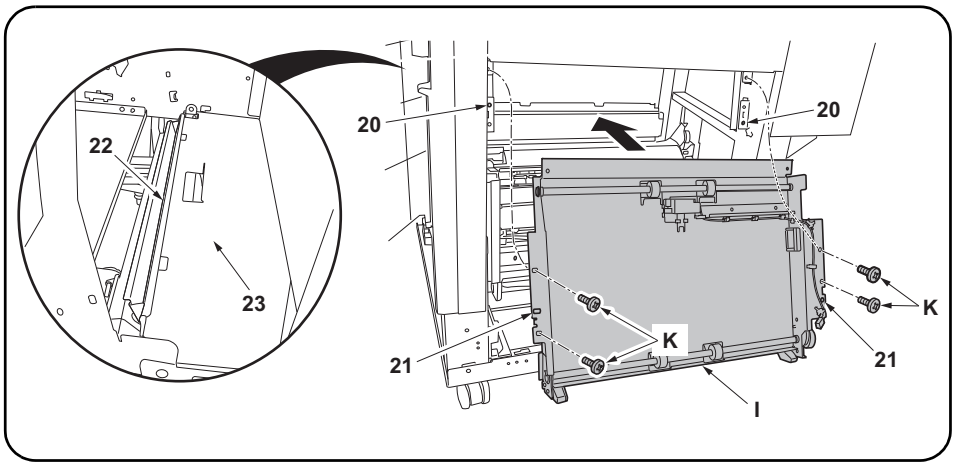
---

10. 접기 유니트 (A) 의 앞뒤에 있는 좌측 코로 (14) 를 레일 내측에 있는 굴림부 (15) 에 얹고 화살표 방향으로 굴립니다 . 중간코로 (16) 가 레일에 삽입됩니다 .
11. 접기 유니트 (A) 를 레일에 붙여 문서 피니셔에 삽입합니다 .
(주의)
전선 가이드 (17) 의 고정 테이프 (18) 를 떼어 내지 않고 삽입할 것 . (고정 테이프 (18) 는 순서 15 에서 떼어 냅니다 .)

---

10. 中折りユニット (A) の前後にある左コロ (14) を、レールより内側にある転がし部 (15) に乗せ、矢印方向に転がす。中間コロ (16) がレールに挿入される。
11. 中折りユニット (A) をレールに沿ってドキュメントフィニッシャーに挿入する。
（**注意**）
電線ガイド (17) の固定テープ (18) を剥がさずに挿入すること。(固定テープ (18) は手順 15 で剥がす)





12. Release the lock lever (19) and pull out the center-folding unit (A) to the left of the document finisher.

13. Align the holes (21) in the relay paper conveying unit (I) with the 2 projections (20) on the document finisher. Install so that the lip (22) on the top frame of the relay paper conveying unit rests on the document finisher's frame (23).
14. Install the relay paper conveying unit (I) using 4 M4 × 8 screws (K).

---

12. Libérer le levier de verrouillage (19) et sortir la plieuse (A) par la gauche du retoucheur de document.

13. Aligner les trous (21) de l'unité de transport de relais (I) avec les 2 saillies (20) du retoucheur de document. Procéder de sorte que la lèvre (22) du châssis supérieur de l'unité de transport de relais repose sur le châssis du retoucheur de document (23).
14. Installer l'unité de transport de relais (I) à l'aide de 4 vis M4 × 8 (K).

---

12. Libere la palanca de bloqueo (19) y extraiga la unidad de plegado (A) hacia la izquierda del finalizador de documentos.

13. Alinee los orificios (21) de la unidad de transporte de papel (I) con los dos resaltos (20) del finalizador de documentos. Instale de forma tal que el reborde (22) del marco superior de la unidad de transporte de papel apoye en el marco del finalizador de documentos (23).
14. Instale la unidad de transporte de papel por relevador (I) usando 4 tornillos M4 × 8 (K).

---

12. Lösen Sie den Verriegelungshebel (19) und ziehen Sie die Mittenfalteinheit (A) zur linken Seite des Dokument-Finishers heraus.

13. Richten Sie die Öffnungen (21) der eingesetzten Papierfördereinheit (I) auf die 2 Vorsprünge (20) des Dokument-Finishers aus. Montieren Sie so, dass die Lippe (22) am oberen Rahmen der eingesetzten Papierfördereinheit auf dem Rahmen des Dokument-Finishers (23) ruht.
14. Montieren Sie die eingesetzte Papierfördereinheit (I) mit 4 M4 × 8 Schrauben (K).

---

12. Rilasciare la leva di blocco (19) e quindi estrarre l'unità di piegatura centrale (A) alla sinistra della finitrice di documenti.

13. Allineare i fori (21) nell'unità relay di trasporto carta (I) con le 2 sporgenze (20) sulla finitrice di documenti. Installare in modo che il bordo (22) sulla struttura superiore dell'unità relay di trasporto carta rimanga sulla struttura (23) della finitrice di documenti.
14. Installare l'unità relay di trasporto carta (I) utilizzando 4 viti M4 × 8 (K).

---

12. 解除锁定杆（19），将中缝装订－折页单元（A）从文档整理器的左侧拉出。

13. 将装订器的 2 处突出部（20）与中间搬运单元（I）的孔（21）对齐。将中间搬运单元上部框架的弯曲部（22）放在装订器的框架上（23）以进行安装。
14. 使用 4 颗 M4×8(K) 螺钉来安装后中间搬运单元（I）。

---

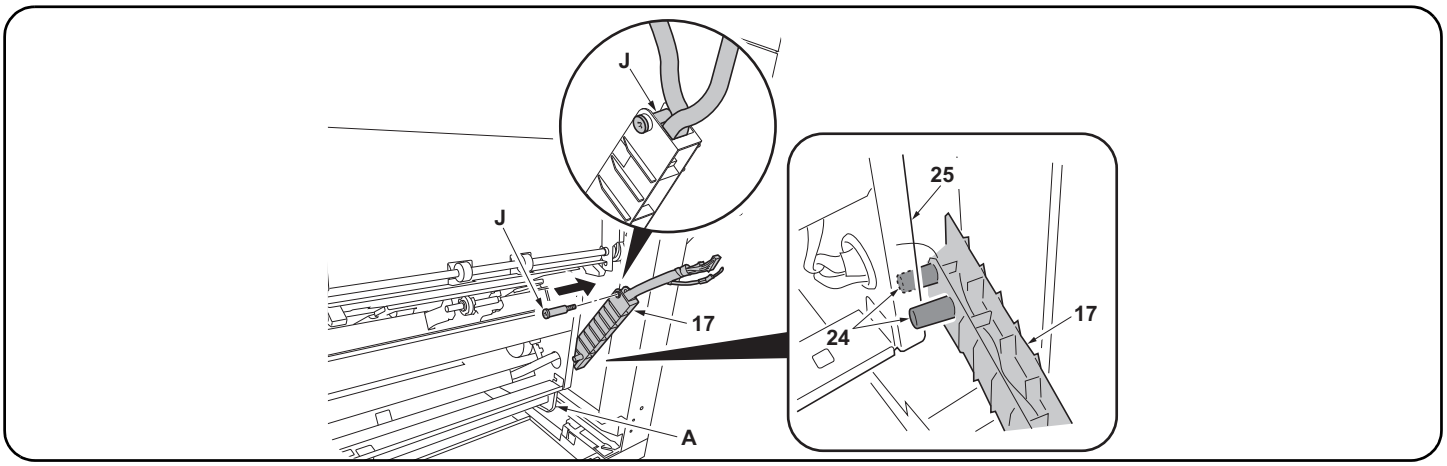
12. 잠금레버 (19) 를 해제하고 중철 유니트 (A) 를 문서 피니셔 좌측으로 이동시킵니다 .

13. 문서 피니셔의 돌기 (20) 2 개로 중계반송 유니트 (I) 의 구멍 (21) 을 맞춥니다 . 중계반송 유니트 상부 플레임의 구부러진 부분 (22) 이 문서 피니셔의 플레임 (23) 에 얹히게 장착합니다 .
14. 나사 M4×8(K) 4 개로 중계반송 유니트 (I) 를 장착합니다 .

---

12. ロックレバー(19) を解除し、中折りユニット (A) をドキュメントフィニッシャー左側へ引き出す。

13. ドキュメントフィニッシャーの突起 (20)2 個に中継搬送ユニット (I) の穴 (21) を合わせる。中継搬送ユニット上部フレームの折曲がり部 (22) がドキュメントフィニッシャーのフレーム (23) に乗るように取り付ける。
14. ビス M4×8(K)4 本で、中継搬送ユニット (I) を取り付ける。



15. Remove the fixing tape (18) for the wire guide (17) and insert the pin (J) into the wire guide (17), with the 2 projections (24) on either side of the frame (25).
(NOTICE)
Insert the pin (J) to keep wires in the wire guide (17).
16. Screw the pin (J) into the document finisher to anchor the wire guide (17).

---

15. Enlever la bande adhésive de fixation (18) du guide câble (17) et insérer la goupille (J) dans le guide câble (17) avec les 2 saillies (24) de chaque côté du bâti (25).
(AVIS)
Insérer la goupille (J) pour que les câbles demeurent dans le guide câble (17).
16. Visser la goupille (J) dans le retoucheur de document pour fixer le guide câble (17) en place.

---

15. Quite la cinta de fijación (18) de la guía para el cable (17) e inserte el pasador (J) en la guía para el cable (17) con los 2 resaltos (24) a cada lado del marco (25).
(AVISO)
Inserte el pasador (J) para mantener los cables en la guía para el cable (17).
16. Atornille el pasador (J) en el finalizador de documentos para anclar la guía para el cable (17).

---

15. Entfernen Sie das Klebeband (18) für die Kabelführung (17) und stecken Sie die Rändelschraube (J) in die Kabelführung (17), wobei der Rahmen (25) zwischen den 2 Vorsprüngen (24) liegen muss.
(HINWEIS)
Stecken Sie die Rändelschraube (J) ein, um die Kabel in der Kabelführung (17) zu halten.
16. Schrauben Sie die Rändelschraube (J) in den Dokument-Finisher, um die Kabelführung (17) zu verankern.

---

15. Rimuovere il nastro di fissaggio (18) per la guida cavi (17) e quindi inserire il perno (J) nella guida cavi (17), con le 2 sporgenze (24) su ciascun lato della struttura (25).
(NOTIFICA)
Inserire il perno (J) per mantenere i cavi nella guida cavi (17).
16. Avvitare il perno (J) nella finitrice di documenti per ancorare la guida cavi (17).

---

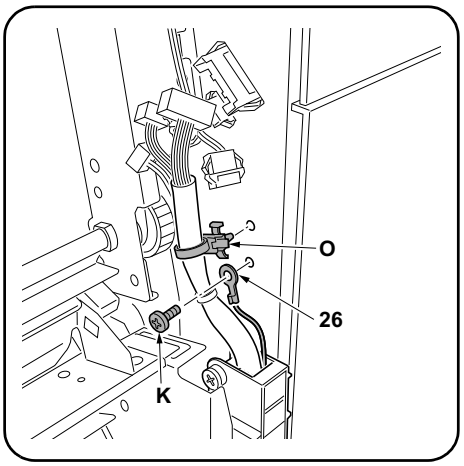
15. 剥除电线导板（17）的固定胶带（18），使框架（25）处于 2 个卡销（24）之间，将 1 个销子（J）从电线导板（17）上穿过。
（**注意**）
将销钉（J）穿过电线导板（17）时，注意避免电线露出电线导板（17）外。
16. 将销钉（J）的螺纹部分安装到装订器上，以固定电线导板（17）。

---

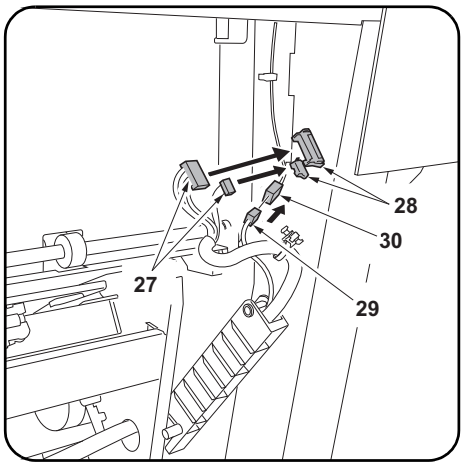
15. 전선 가이드 (17) 의 고정 테이프 (18) 를 떼어 내고 보스 (24) 2 개의 사이에 프레임 (25) 이 들어 있는 상태에서 핀 (J) 1 개를 전선 가이드 (17) 에 통과시킵니다 .
(주의)
핀 (J) 은 전선이 전선 가이드 (17) 에서 나오지 않도록 통하게 합니다 .
16. 핀 (J) 의 나사부분을 문서 피니셔에 장착하고 전선 가이드 (17) 를 고정합니다 .

---

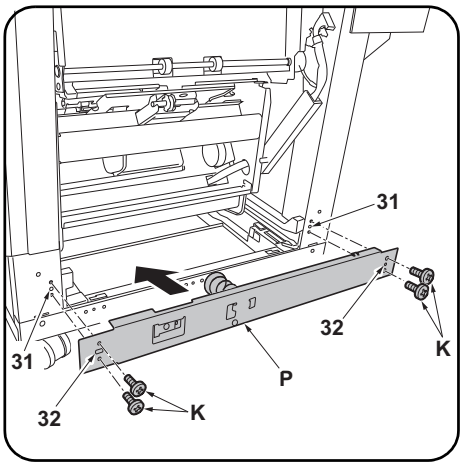
15. 電線ガイド (17) の固定テープ (18) を剥がし、ボス (24)2 本の間にフレーム (25) が入っている状態で、ピン (J)1 本を電線ガイド (17) に通す。
（**注意**）
ピン (J) は電線が電線ガイド (17) から出ないように通す。
16. ピン (J) のネジ部分をドキュメントフィニッシャーに取り付け、電線ガイド (17) を固定する。



17. Install the ground wire (26) to the frame using an M4 × 8 screw (K).
18. Install the binding band (O) to the wires and fit the band into the frame.



19. Plug the 2 connectors (27) into the connectors (28) on the document finisher.
20. Plug the connector (29) into the connector (30) on the relay paper conveying unit (I).



21. Align holes (32) at 2 locations in the guide (P) with projections (31) on the document finisher.
22. Install the guide (P) on the document finisher using 4 M4 × 8 screws (K).

---

17. Fixer le câble de terre (26) au châssis en procédant à l'aide d'une vis M4 × 8 (K).
18. Monter le collier de fixation (O) sur les câbles et assujettir le collier au châssis.

19. Enficher les 2 connecteurs (27) dans les connecteurs (28) du retoucheur de document.
20. Enficher le connecteur (29) dans le connecteur (30) de l'unité de transport de relais (I).

21. Aligner les trous (32) en 2 endroits du guide (P) avec les saillies (31) du retoucheur de document.
22. Monter le guide (P) sur le retoucheur de document à l'aide de 4 vis M4 × 8 (K).

---

17. Instale el cable de conexión a tierra (26) en el marco usando un tornillo M4 × 8 (K).
18. Instale la correa de sujeción (O) en los cables y coloque la correa en el marco.

19. Enchufe los 2 conectores (27) en los conectores (28) del finalizador de documentos.
20. Enchufe el conector (29) en el conector (30) de la unidad de transporte de papel por relevador (I).

21. Alinee los orificios (32) de los 2 lugares de la guía (P) con los resaltos (31) del finalizador de documentos.
22. Instale la guía (P) en el finalizador de documentos usando 4 tornillos M4 × 8 (K).

---

17. Montieren Sie das Massekabel (26) mit einer M4 × 8 Schraube (K) an den Rahmen.
18. Bringen Sie das Schellenband (O) an den Kabeln an und setzen Sie das Band in den Rahmen ein.

19. Verbinden Sie die 2 Steckverbinder (27) mit den Steckverbindern (28) des Dokument-Finishers.
20. Verbinden Sie den Steckverbinder (29) mit dem Steckverbinder (30) der eingesetzten Papierfördereinheit (I).

21. Richten Sie die Öffnungen (32) an 2 Stellen in der Führung (P) auf die Vorsprünge (31) des Dokument-Finishers aus.
22. Montieren Sie die Führung (P) mit 4 M4 × 8 Schrauben (K) am Dokument-Finisher.

---

17. Installare il cavo di terra (26) alla struttura utilizzando una vite M4 × 8 (K).
18. Installare la fascetta di legatura (O) ai cavi e quindi fissare la fascetta nella struttura.

19. Inserire i 2 connettori (27) nei connettori (28) sulla finitrice di documenti.
20. Inserire il connettore (29) nel connettore (30) sull'unità relay di trasporto carta (I).

21. Allineare i fori (32) alle 2 posizioni nella guida (P) con le sporgenze (31) sulla finitrice di documenti.
22. Installare la guida (P) sulla finitrice di documenti utilizzando 4 viti M4 × 8 (K).

---

17. 使用 M4×8(K) 螺钉将装接地线 (26) 安装到框架上。
18. 在电线上安装束线带 (O)，将束线带 (O) 嵌入到框架上。

19. 将 2 个连接器 (27) 与装订器的连接器 (28) 相连接。
20. 将连接器 (29) 与中间搬运单元 (H) 的连接器 (30) 相连接。

21. 将装订器的 2 处突出部 (31) 与导板 (P) 的孔 (32) 对齐。
22. 使用 4 颗螺钉 M4×8(K) 将导板 (P) 安装到装订器上。

---

17. 나사 M4×8(K) 로 접지선 (26) 을 플레임에 장착합니다 .
18. 전선에 결속 밴드 (O) 를 장착하고 플레임에 결속 밴드 (O) 를 꽂습니다 .

19. 커넥터 (27) 2 개를 문서 피니셔의 커넥터 (28) 에 접속합니다 .
20. 커넥터 (29) 를 중계 유니트 (I) 의 커넥터 (30) 에 접속합니다 .

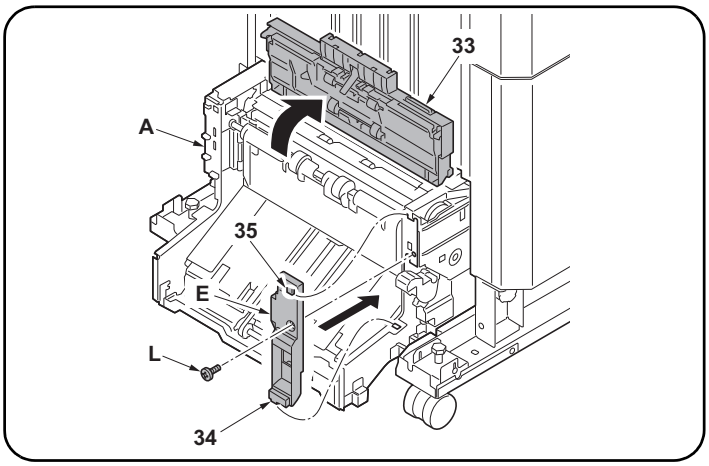
21. 문서 피니셔의 돌기 (31) 2 곳을 가이드 (P) 의 구멍 (32) 에 맞춥니다 .
22. 나사 M4×8(K) 4 개로 문서 피니셔에 가이드 (P) 를 장착합니다 .

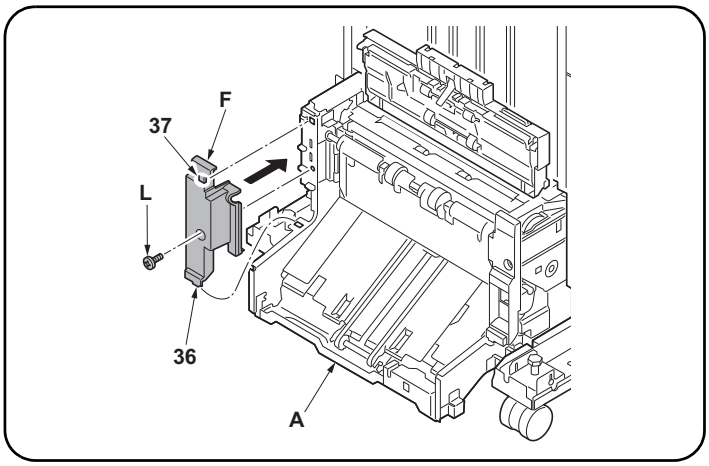
---

17. ビス M4×8(K) でアース線 (26) をフレームに取り付ける。
18. 電線に結束バンド (O) を取り付け、フレームに結束バンド (O) をはめ込む。

19. コネクター(27)2 個をドキュメントフィニッシャーのコネクター(28) に接続する。
20. コネクター(29) を中継搬送ユニット (I) のコネクター(30) に接続する。

21. ドキュメントフィニッシャーの突起 (31)2 箇所にガイド (P) の穴 (32) に合わせる。
22. ビス M4×8(K)4 本でドキュメントフィニッシャーにガイド (P) を取り付ける。





23. Open the eject cover (33).
24. Engage the projection (34) and hook (35) on the front side cover (E) with the center-folding unit (A). Complete installation of the front side cover (E) using an M4 × 10 screw (black) (L).

25. Engage the projection (36) and hook (37) on the rear side cover (F) with the center-folding unit (A). Complete installation of the rear side cover (F) using an M4 × 10 screw (black) (L).

---

23. Ouvrir le capot d'éjection (33).
24. Engager la saillie (34) et le crochet (35) du capot latéral avant (E) dans la plieuse (A). Finaliser l'installation du capot latéral avant (E) à l'aide d'une vis M4 × 10 (noire) (L).

25. Engager la saillie (36) et le crochet (37) du capot latéral arrière (F) dans la plieuse (A). Finaliser l'installation du capot latéral arrière (F) à l'aide d'une vis M4 × 10 (noire) (L).

---

23. Abra la cubierta de expulsión (33).
24. Enganche el resalto (34) y el gancho (35) de la cubierta lateral frontal (E) con la unidad de plegado (A). Complete la instalación de la cubierta lateral frontal (E) usando un tornillo M4 × 10 (negro) (L).

25. Enganche el resalto (36) y el gancho (37) de la cubierta lateral posterior (F) con la unidad de plegado (A). Complete la instalación de la cubierta lateral posterior (F) usando un tornillo M4 × 10 (negro) (L).

---

23. Öffnen Sie die Auswurfabdeckung (33).
24. Hängen Sie den Vorsprung (34) und den Haken (35) der vorderen Seitenabdeckung (E) in die Mittenfalteinheit (A) ein. Befestigen Sie die vordere Seitenabdeckung (E) mit einer M4 × 10 Schraube (schwarz) (L).

25. Hängen Sie den Vorsprung (36) und den Haken (37) der hinteren Seitenabdeckung (F) in die Mittenfalteinheit (A) ein. Befestigen Sie die hintere Seitenabdeckung (F) mit einer M4 × 10 Schraube (schwarz) (L).

---

23. Aprire il coperchio di espulsione carta (33).
24. Innestare la sporgenza (34) e il gancio (35) sul coperchio laterale anteriore (E) con l'unità di piegatura centrale (A). Completare l'installazione del coperchio laterale anteriore (E) utilizzando una vite M4 × 10 (nera) (L).

25. Innestare la sporgenza (36) e il gancio (37) sul coperchio laterale posteriore (F) con l'unità di piegatura centrale (A). Completare l'installazione del coperchio laterale posteriore (F) utilizzando una vite M4 × 10 (nera) (L).

---

23. 打开排纸盖板 (33)。
24. 将前部侧盖板 (E) 的突出部 (34) 以及挂钩 (35) 嵌入到中缝装订－折页单元 (A) 中，使用 1 颗 M4×10（黑）(L) 螺钉来安装前部侧盖板 (E)。

25. 将后部侧盖板 (F) 的突出部 (36) 以及挂钩 (37) 嵌入到中缝装订－折页单元 (A) 中，使用 1 颗 M4×10（黑）(L) 螺钉来安装后部侧盖板 (F)。

---

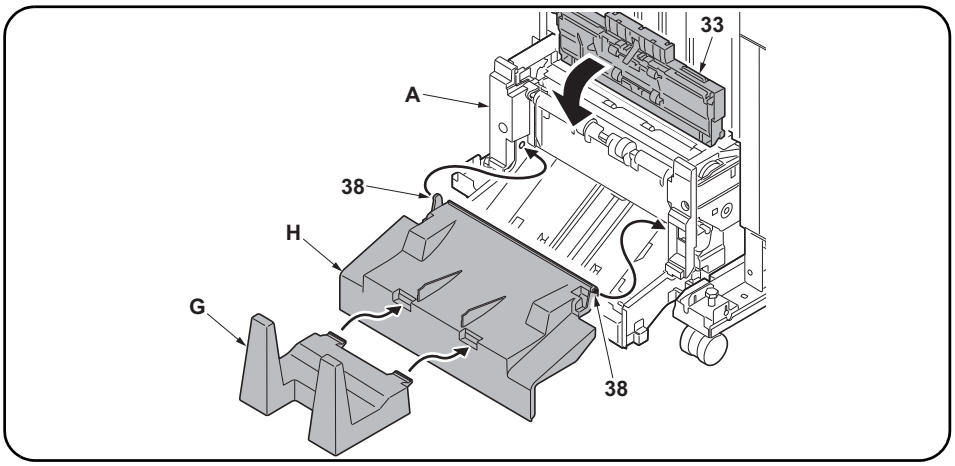
23. 배출 커버 (33) 를 엽니다 .
24. 사이드 커버 앞 (E) 의 돌기 (34) 및 후크 (35) 를 접기 유니트 (A) 에 꽂습니다 . 나사 M4×10 (흑) (L) 1 개로 사이드 커버 앞 (E) 을 장착합니다 .

25. 사이드 커버 뒤 (F) 의 돌기 (36) 및 후크 (37) 를 접기 유니트 (A) 에 꽂습니다 . 나사 M4×10 (흑) (L) 1 개로 사이드 커버 뒤 (F) 를 장착합니다 .

---

23. 排出カバー(33) を開く。
24. サイドカバー前 (E) の突起 (34) およびフック (35) を、中折りユニット (A) にはめ込む。
ビス M4×10(黒)(L)1 本で、サイドカバー前 (E) を取り付ける。

25. サイドカバー後 (F) の突起 (36) およびフック (37) を、中折りユニット (A) にはめ込む。
ビス M4×10(黒)(L)1 本で、サイドカバー後 (F) を取り付ける。



26. Insert the 2 pins (38) on the output tray (H) in the holes in the center-folding unit (A) to install the tray.
27. Install the output stock tray (G) on the output tray (H).
28. Close the eject cover (33).

---

26. Insérer les 2 goupilles (38) du plateau de sortie (H) dans les trous de la plieuse (A) pour installer le plateau.
27. Installer la butée de sortie du papier (G) sur le plateau de sortie (H).
28. Fermer le capot d'éjection (33).

---

26. Inserte los 2 pasadores (38) de la bandeja de salida (H) en los orificios de la unidad de plegado (A) para instalar la bandeja.
27. Instale la bandeja de recolección de papel de salida (G) en la bandeja de salida (H).
28. Cierre la cubierta de expulsión (33).

---

26. Stecken Sie die 2 Rändelschrauben (38) des Ausgabefachs (H) in die Öffnungen der Mittenfalteinheit (A) ein, um das Fach zu installieren.
27. Bringen Sie das Ausgabestapelfach (G) am Ausgabefach (H) an.
28. Schließen Sie die Auswurfabdeckung (33).

---

26. Inserire i 2 perni (38) sul vassoio di uscita (H) nei fori sull'unità di piegatura centrale (A) per installare il vassoio.
27. Installare il vassoio di uscita stoccaggio (G) sul vassoio di uscita (H).
28. Chiudere il coperchio di esplusione carta (33).

---

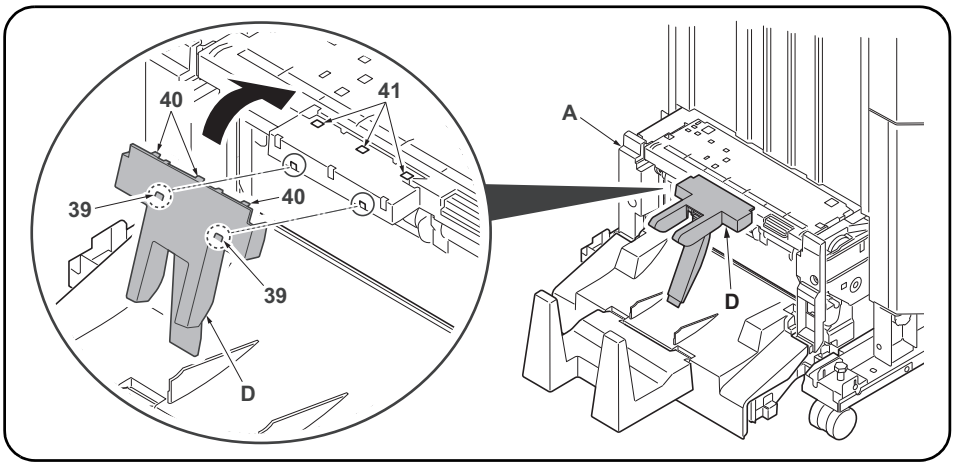
26. 将排纸托盘 (H) 的 2 根销钉 (38) 插入中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 的孔中，以安装排纸托盘 (H)。
27. 将堆纸托盘 (G) 安装到排纸托盘 (H) 上。
28. 关闭排纸盖板 (33)。

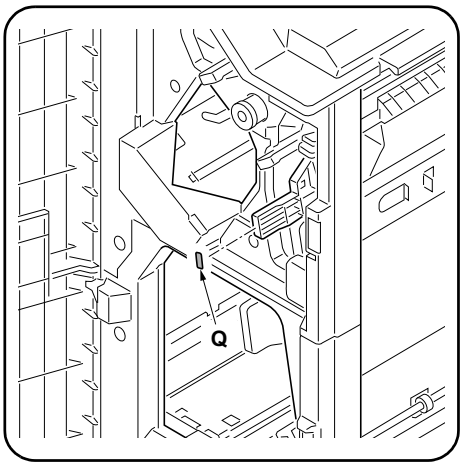
---

26. 배지트레이 (H) 의 핀 (38) 2 개를 접기 유니트 (A) 의 구멍에 넣고 배지 트레이 (H) 를 장착합니다 .
27. 배지 저장 트레이 (G) 를 배지 트레이 (H) 에 장착합니다 .
28. 배출커버 (33) 를 닫습니다 .

---

26. 排紙トレイ (H) のピン (38)2 本を中折りユニット (A) の穴に入れ、排紙トレイ (H) を取り付ける。
27. 排紙ストックトレイ (G) を排紙トレイ (H) に取り付ける。
28. 排出カバー(33) を閉じる。





29. Insert the 2 projections (39) on the back of the output stopper (D) in the portions circled on the center-folding unit (A).
Fit the 3 hooks (40) on the output stopper (D) in the holes (41) in the center-folding unit (A).

30. Adhere the D7 label (Q) at the location shown in the figure.

---

29. Insérer les 2 saillies (39) au dos de la butée de sortie (D) dans les parties encerclées de la plieuse (A).
Assujettir les 3 crochets (40) de la butée de sortie (D) dans les trous (41) de la plieuse (A).

30. Apposer l'étiquette D7 (Q) à l'endroit repéré sur la figure.

---

29. Inserte los 2 resaltos (39) de la parte posterior del tope de salida (D) en las porciones marcadas con un círculo de la unidad de plegado (A).
Coloque los 3 ganchos (40) del tope de salida (D) en los orificios (41) de la unidad de plegado (A).

30. Adhiera la etiqueta D7 (Q) en el lugar que se muestra en la ilustración.

---

29. Setzen Sie die 2 Vorsprünge (39) auf der Rückseite des Ausgabeanschlags (D) in die mit Kreis bezeichneten Positionen der Mittenfalteinheit (A) ein.
Setzen Sie die 3 Haken (40) des Ausgabeanschlags (D) in die Öffnungen (41) der Mittenfalteinheit (A) ein.

30. Kleben Sie den D7 Aufkleber (Q) an der abgebildeten Stelle an.

---

29. Inserire le 2 sporgenze (39) sulla parte posteriore del fermo di uscita (D) nelle porzioni cerchiate sull'unità di piegatura centrale (A).
Fissare i 3 ganci (40) sul fermo di uscita (D) nei fori (41) nell'unità di piegatura centrale (A).

30. Far aderire l'etichetta D7 (Q) alla posizione mostrata nella figura.

---

29. 将排纸挡板 (D) 内侧的 2 处突出部 (39) 插入到中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 的圆框部。
将排纸挡板 (D) 的 3 个挂钩 (40) 嵌入到中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 的孔 (41) 中。

30. 在图示位置黏贴 D7 标签 (Q)。

---

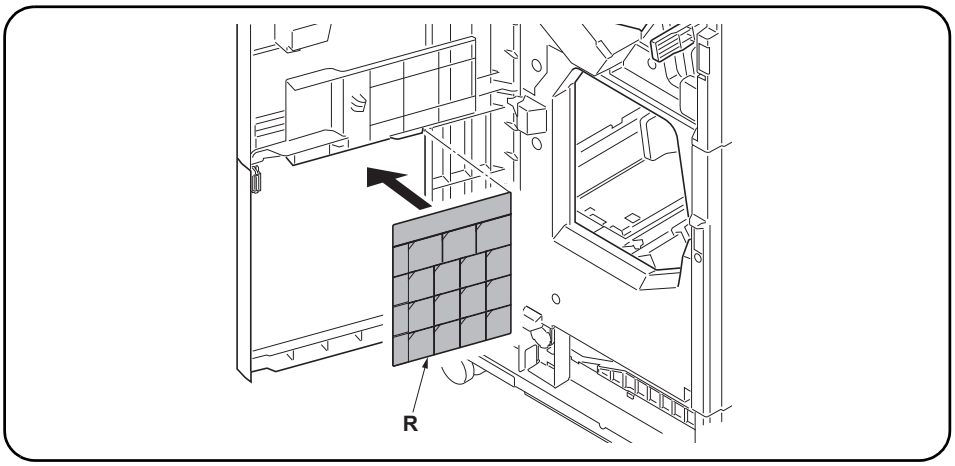
29. 배지 스토퍼 (D) 의 안쪽에 있는 돌기 (39) 2 곳을 접기 유니트 (A) 의에 삽입합니다 .
배지 스토퍼 (D) 의 후크 (40) 3 곳을 접기 유니트 (A) 의 구멍 (41) 에 끼웁니다 .

30. D7 라벨 (Q) 을 그림의 위치에 붙입니다 .

---

29. 排紙ストッパー(D) の裏側にある突起 (39)2 箇所を中折ユニット (A) の丸枠部に挿入する。
排紙ストッパー(D) のフック (40)3 箇所を中折りユニット (A) の穴 (41) にはめ込む。

30. D7 ラベル (Q) を図の位置に貼り付ける。



31. Adhere the Operation label (R) at the location shown in the figure.
32. Reinstall the foot cover (5) and lower rear cover (7).
33. Close the lower front cover (3) and the upper front cover (1).

---

31. Apposer l'étiquette de fonctionnement (R) à l'endroit repéré sur la figure.
32. Reposer le couvercle du pied (5) et le couvercle arrière inférieur (7).
33. Fermer le capot inférieur avant (3) et le couvercle avant supérieur (1).

---

31. Adhiera la etiqueta de funcionamiento (R) en el lugar que se muestra en la ilustración.
32. Vuelva a instalar la cubierta de la pata (5) y la cubierta posterior inferior (7).
33. Cierre la cubierta frontal inferior (3) y la cubierta frontal superior (1).

---

31. Kleben Sie den Bedienungsaufkleber (R) an der abgebildeten Stelle an.
32. Bringen Sie die Fußabdeckung (5) und die untere hintere Abdeckung (7) wieder an.
33. Schließen Sie die untere vordere Abdeckung (3) und die obere vordere Abdeckung (1).

---

31. Far aderire l'etichetta di operazione (R) alla posizione mostrata nella figura.
32. Reinstallare la copertura del piede (5) e il coperchio inferiore posteriore (7).
33. Chiudere il coperchio inferiore anteriore (3) e il coperchio superiore anteriore (1).

---

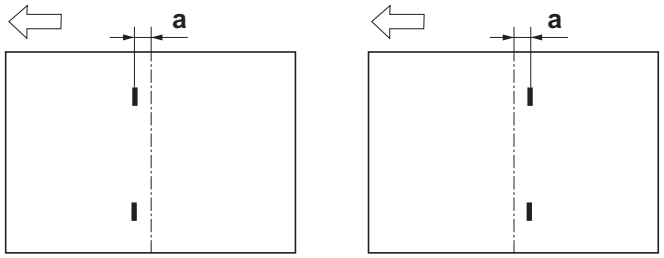
31. 在图示位置黏贴操作标签 (R)。
32. 按原样安装脚座盖板 (5) 和后部下盖板 (7)。
33. 关闭前部下盖板 (3) 和前部上盖板 (1)。

---

31. 조작 라벨 (R) 을 그림의 위치에 붙입니다 .
32. 풋커버 (5) 및 뒤하 커버 (7) 를 원래대로 장착합니다 .
33. 전면 아래커버 (3) 및 전면 윗커버 (1) 를 닫습니다 .

---

31. 操作ラベル (R) を図の位置に貼り付ける。
32. フットカバー(5) および後下カバー(7) を元通りに取り付ける。
33. 前下カバー(3) および前上カバー(1) を閉じる。



Adjustment of centerfold-stapling position
Check the distance (a) from the stapling position to the center of the paper. If the distance (a) is over the reference value, follow the procedure below to adjust the position.
<Reference value (a)> ±2 mm

1. Set maintenance mode U246, select Booklet and Staple Pos.
2. Adjust the values.
3. Press the Start key to confirm the setting value.

Réglage de la position d'agrafage des pages centrales dépliables
Vérifier la distance (a) entre la position d'agrafage et le milieu de la feuille de papier. Si cette distance (a) est supérieure à la valeur de référence, régler la position en procédant de la manière suivante.
<Valeur de référence (a)> ±2 mm

1. Passer en mode maintenance U246, sélectionner Booklet et Staple Pos.
2. Régler les valeurs.
3. Appuyer sur la touche de Start pour confirmer la valeur de réglage.

Ajuste de la posición de grapado de la unidad de plegado
Compruebe la distancia (a) desde la posición de grapado con respecto al centro del papel. Si dicha distancia (a) supera el valor de referencia, realice el siguiente procedimiento para ajustar la posición.
<Valor de referencia (a)> ±2 mm

1. Entre en el modo de mantenimiento U246, seleccione Booklet y Staple Pos.
2. Ajuste los valores.
3. Pulse la tecla de Start para confirmar el valor de configuración.

Einstellung der Mittenfalt-Heftposition
Überprüfen Sie den Abstand (a) zwischen der Heftposition und der Papiermitte. Falls der Abstand (a) größer als der Bezugswert ist, ist die Position gemäß der nachstehenden Prozedur nachzustellen.
<Bezugswert (a)> ±2 mm

1. Schalten Sie in den Wartungsmodus U246, wählen Sie Booklet und Staple Pos.
2. Die Werte einstellen.
3. Den Einstellwert durch Drücken der Start-Taste bestätigen.

Regolazione della posizione di cucitura dell'unità di piegatura centrale
Controllare la distanza (a) dalla posizione di spillatura al centro del foglio. Se la distanza (a) è superiore al valore di riferimento, seguire la procedura riportata sotto per regolare la posizione.
<Valore di riferimento (a)> ±2 mm

1. Impostare la modalità manutenzione U246, selezionare Booklet e Staple Pos.
2. Regolare i valori.
3. Premere il tasto di Start per confermare il valore dell'impostazione.

中缝装订位置调整
检查从装订位置到纸张中心的距离 (a)。如果距离 (a) 超出标准值范围，按照下列步骤调节装订位置。
＜标准值 (a) ＞ ±2mm

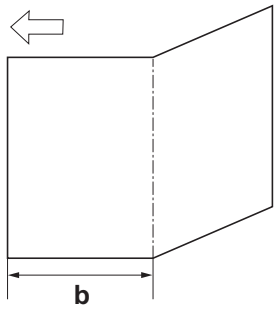
1. 设置维护模式 U246，选择 Booklet、Staple Pos。
2. 调整设定值。
3. 按 Start 键，以确定设定值。

접기 스테이플 위치조정
스테이플 위치에서 용지 중앙까지의 거리離 (a) 를 확인합니다 . 거리 (a) 가 기준치 외의 경우에는 다음 순서로 조정을 합니다 .
＜기준치 (a) ＞ ±2mm

1. 메인터넌스 모드 U246 을 세트하고 Booklet, Staple Pos 를 선택합니다 .
2. 설정치를 조정합니다 .
3. 시작키를 누르고 설정치를 확인합니다 .

中とじステープル位置調整
ステープル位置から用紙センターまでの距離 (a) を確認する。距離 (a) が基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。
＜基準値 (a) ＞ ±2mm

1. メンテナンスモード U246 をセットし、Booklet、Staple Pos を選択する。
2. 設定値を調整する。
3. スタートキーを押し、設定値を確定する。



Adjustment of center folding position
Check the distance (b) from the edge of the paper to the center folding position. If the distance (b) is over the reference value, follow the procedure below to adjust the position.
<Reference value (b)>
A4, Letter: Length of paper × 1/2 ±2 mm
A3, Ledger, B4: Length of paper × 1/2 ±3 mm

1. Set maintenance mode U246, select Booklet and Booklet Pos.
2. Adjust the values.
3. Press the Start key to confirm the setting value.

Réglage de la position de pliage central
Vérifier la distance (b) entre le bord de la feuille de papier et la position de pliage central. Si cette distance (b) est supérieure à la valeur de référence, régler la position en procédant de la manière suivante.
<Valeur de référence (b)>
A4, Letter : Longueur de la feuille × 1/2 ±2 mm
A3, Ledger, B4: Longueur de la feuille × 1/2 ±3 mm

1. Passer en mode maintenance U246, sélectionner Booklet et Booklet Pos.
2. Régler les valeurs.
3. Appuyer sur la touche de Start pour confirmer la valeur de réglage.

Ajuste de la posición de plegado
Compruebe la distancia (b) desde el borde del papel a la posición de plegado. Si dicha distancia (b) supera el valor de referencia, realice el siguiente procedimiento para ajustar la posición.
<Valor de referencia (b)>
A4, Letter: Longitud del papel × 1/2 ±2 mm
A3, Ledger, B4: Longitud del papel × 1/2 ±3 mm

1. Entre en el modo de mantenimiento U246, seleccione Booklet y Booklet Pos.
2. Ajuste los valores.
3. Pulse la tecla de Start para confirmar el valor de configuración.

Einstellung der Mittenfaltposition
Überprüfen Sie den Abstand (b) zwischen der Papierkante und der Mittenfaltposition. Falls der Abstand (b) größer als der Bezugswert ist, ist die Position gemäß der nachstehenden Prozedur nachzustellen.
<Bezugswert (b)>
A4, Letter: Papierlänge × 1/2 ±2 mm
A3, Ledger, B4: Papierlänge × 1/2 ±3 mm

1. Schalten Sie in den Wartungsmodus U246, wählen Sie Booklet und Booklet Pos.
2. Die Werte einstellen.
3. Den Einstellwert durch Drücken der Start-Taste bestätigen.

Regolazione della posizione centrale di piegatura
Controllare la distanza (b) dal bordo della carta alla posizione centrale di piegatura. Se la distanza (b) è superiore al valore di riferimento, seguire la procedura riportata sotto per regolare la posizione.
<Valore di riferimento (b)>
A4, Letter: Lunghezza carta × 1/2 ±2 mm
A3, Ledger, B4: Lunghezza carta × 1/2 ±3 mm

1. Impostare la modalità manutenzione U246, selezionare Booklet e Booklet Pos.
2. Regolare i valori.
3. Premere il tasto di Start per confermare il valore dell'impostazione.

中缝折叠位置调整
检查从纸张头部到折叠位置的距离 (b)。如果距离 (b) 超出标准值范围，按照下列步骤调节折叠位置。
＜标准值 (b) ＞
A4,Letter: 纸张长度 ×1/2 ± 2mm
A3,Ledger,B4: 纸张长度 ×1/2 ± 3mm

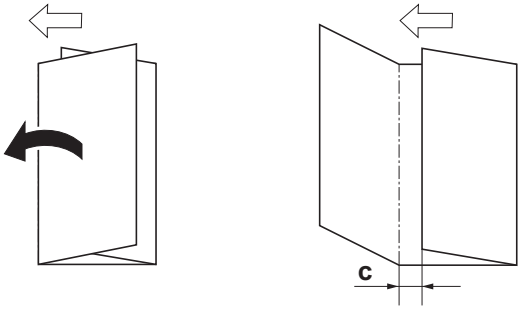
1. 设置维护模式 U246，选择 Booklet、Booklet Pos。
2. 调整设定值。
3. 按 Start 键，以确定设定值。

접기 위치조정
용지 끝에서 접기 위치까지의 거리 (b) 를 확인합니다 . 거리 (b) 가 기준치 외의 경우에는 다음 순서로 조정을 합니다 .
＜기준치 (b) ＞
A4,Letter: 용지길이 ×1/2 ± 2mm
A3,Ledger,B4: 용지길이 ×1/2 ± 3mm

1. 메인터넌스 모드 U246 을 세트하고 Booklet, Booklet Pos 를 선택합니다 .
2. 설정치를 조정합니다 .
3. 시작키를 누르고 설정치를 확인합니다 .

中折り位置調整
用紙端から中折り位置までの距離 (b) を確認する。距離 (b) が基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。
＜基準値 (b) ＞
A4,Letter: 用紙長 ×1/2 ± 2mm
A3,Ledger,B4: 用紙長 ×1/2 ± 3mm

1. メンテナンスモード U246 をセットし、Booklet、Booklet Pos を選択する。
2. 設定値を調整する。
3. スタートキーを押し、設定値を確定する。



Adjustment of tri-folding position
Check the distance (c) from the edge of the paper to the second folding position. If the distance (c) is over the reference value, follow the procedure below to adjust the position.
<Reference value (c)> 7.0 ±2 mm

1. Set maintenance mode U246, select Booklet and Three Fold.
2. Adjust the values.
3. Press the Start key to confirm the setting value.

Réglage de la position de triple pliage
Vérifier la distance (c) entre le bord de la feuille de papier et la position du deuxième pliage. Si cette distance (c) est supérieure à la valeur de référence, régler la position en procédant de la manière suivante.
<Valeur de référence (c)> 7,0 ±2 mm

1. Passer en mode maintenance U246, sélectionner Booklet et Three Fold.
2. Régler les valeurs.
3. Appuyer sur la touche de Start pour confirmer la valeur de réglage.

Ajuste de la posición de plegado tríptico
Compruebe la distancia (c) desde el borde del papel a la segunda posición de plegado. Si dicha distancia (c) supera el valor de referencia, realice el siguiente procedimiento para ajustar la posición.
<Valor de referencia (c)> 7,0 ±2 mm

1. Entre en el modo de mantenimiento U246, seleccione Booklet y Three Fold.
2. Ajuste los valores.
3. Pulse la tecla de Start para confirmar el valor de configuración.

Einstellung der Dreilagenfaltposition
Überprüfen Sie den Abstand (c) zwischen der Papierkante und der zweiten Faltposition. Falls der Abstand (c) größer als der Bezugswert ist, ist die Position gemäß der nachstehenden Prozedur nachzustellen.
<Bezugswert (c)> 7,0 ±2 mm

1. Schalten Sie in den Wartungsmodus U246, wählen Sie Booklet und Three Fold.
2. Die Werte einstellen.
3. Den Einstellwert durch Drücken der Start-Taste bestätigen.

Regolazione della posizione di piegatura tripla
Controllare la distanza (c) dal bordo della carta alla posizione della seconda piegatura. Se la distanza (c) è superiore al valore di riferimento, seguire la procedura riportata sotto per regolare la posizione.
<Valore di riferimento (c)> 7,0 ±2 mm

1. Impostare la modalità manutenzione U246, selezionare Booklet e Three Fold.
2. Regolare i valori.
3. Premere il tasto di Start per confermare il valore dell'impostazione.

三折位置调整
检查从纸张头部到第 2 个折叠位置的距离 (c)。如果距离 (c) 超出标准值范围，按照下列步骤调节折叠位置。
＜标准 (c) ＞ 7.0±2mm

1. 设置维护模式 U246，选择 Booklet、Three Fold。
2. 调整设定值。
3. 按 Start 键，以确定设定值。

두번 접기 위치 조정
용지끝과 두번째 접히는 위치까지의 거리 (c) 를 확인합니다 . 거리 (c) 가 기준치 외의 경우에는 다음 순서로 조정을 합니다 .
＜기준치 (c) ＞ 7.0±2mm

1. 메인터넌스 모드 U246 을 세트하고 Booklet, Three Fold 를 선택합니다 .
2. 설정치를 조정합니다 .
3. 시작키를 누르고 설정치를 확인합니다 .

三折り位置調整
用紙端と二つ目の折り位置までの距離 (c) を確認する。距離 (c) が基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。
＜基準値 (c) ＞ 7.0±2mm

1. メンテナンスモード U246 をセットし、Booklet、Three Fold を選択する。
2. 設定値を調整する。
3. スタートキーを押し、設定値を確定する。

NOTICE
This accessory is for use only with the following Applicant's Listed Machine.
Machine: DF-790,DF-7110

AVIS
Cet accessoire est utilisable uniquement avec le copieur figurant dans la liste du demandeur suivant.
Modèle: DF-790,DF-7110

AVISO
Este accesorio es sólo para usar en las siguientes fotocopiadoras de la lista de solicitantes.
Modelo: DF-790,DF-7110

HINWEIS
Dieses Zubehör ist nur für den Einsatz mit der folgenden Antragstellerlisten-Kopiermaschine vorgesehen.
Modell: DF-790,DF-7110

NOTIFICA
Questo accessorio deve essere usato solo con le seguenti fotocopiatrici nella lista dell'applicante.
Modello: DF-790,DF-7110

注意
本产品适用于以下机型。
机型： DF-790,DF-7110

주의
본 제품은 이하의 기종에 적용됩니다 .
기종: DF-790,DF-7110

注意
本製品は、以下の機種に適用します。
機種: DF-790,DF-7110

MEMO

2016. 3
303ND56710-02

INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR MAILBOX

INSTALLATION GUIDE

GUIDE D'INSTALLATION

GUÍA DE INSTALACION

INSTALLATIONSANLEITUNG

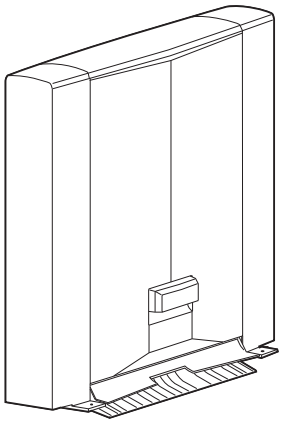
GUIDA ALL'INSTALLAZIONE

安装手册

설치안내서

設置手順書

MT-730(B)



English

A different procedure is required depending on the product which is installed with this unit.Each procedure is described in the following pages.
When installing to a document finisher, see Page 1 to Page 6.
When installing to a Printer, see Page 7 to Page 12.

Français

Une procédure différente est requise selon le produit qui est installé avec cette unité.Chaque procédure est décrite dans les pages suivantes.
Lors de l'installation sur un module finition de documents, voir Page 1 à Page 6.
Lors de l'installation sur une imprimante, voir Page 7 à Page 12.

Español

El procedimiento es diferente según el producto que se instale con esta unidad.En las siguientes páginas, se describe cada procedimiento.
Para la instalación con un finalizador de documentos, consulte las páginas de la 1 a la 6.
Para la instalación con una impresora, consulte las páginas de la 7 a la 12.

Deutsch

Je nach verwendetem Modell ist eine andere Vorgehensweise zur Installation dieses Teils erforderlich.Die unterschiedlichen Vorgehensweisen werden auf den folgenden Seiten erläutert.
Bei Installation an einem Dokumentenfinisher siehe Seiten 1 bis 6.
Bei Installation an einem Drucker siehe Seiten 7 bis 12.
.

Italiano

Si richiede una procedura diversa in funzione del prodotto su cui è installata l'unità.Le singole procedure sono descritte nelle pagine seguenti.
Quando si installa un finisher documenti, vedere le pagine da 1 a 6.
Quando si installa una stampante, vedere le pagine da 7 a 12.

简体中文

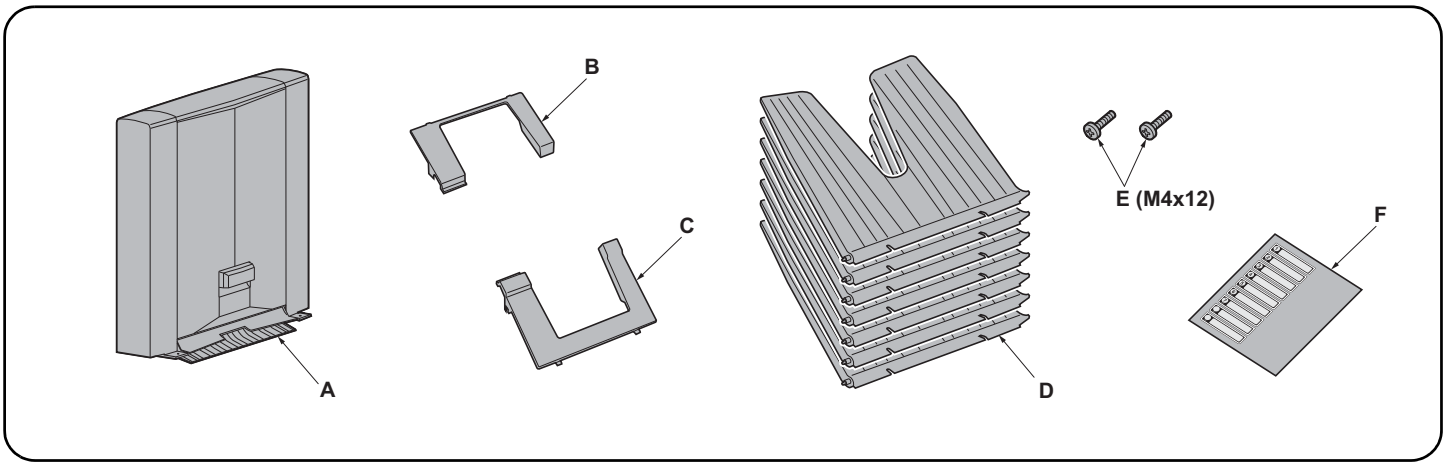
根据安装对象，安装步骤略有不同。各个步骤记载在下面的页面。
安装到装订器时，请参见第 1 ～ 6 页。
安装到打印机时，请参见第 7 ～ 12 页。

한국어

이 장치에 설치되는 제품에 따라 절차가 다릅니다 . 다음 페이지에서 각 절차를 설명합니다 .
문서 피니셔에 설치하는 경우 1 페이지 ~6 페이지를 참조하십시오 .
프린터에 설치하는 경우 7 페이지 ~12 페이지를 참조하십시오 .

日本語

装着する対象によって、取付手順は異なります。それぞれ、以下のページに記載しています。
ドキュメントフィニッシャーに設置する場合;1 ページ～ 6 ページ
プリンターに設置する場合;7 ページ～ 12 ページ



English

Supplied parts

A. Mailbox 1
B. Front mounting plate cover 1
C. Rear mounting plate cover 1
D. Copy eject bins 7
E. M4 × 12 screw 2
F. Tray name label (for users) 1

Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning materials from the parts supplied.

Français

Pièces fournies

A. Boîte à lettres 1
B. Couvercle de la plaque de montage avant 1
C. Couvercle de la plaque de montage arrière ... 1
D. Case d'éjection de copies 7
E. Vis M4 × 12 2
F. Étiquette de nom de plateau (pour les utilisateurs) 1

Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.

Español

Partes suministradas

A. Buzón de correo 1
B. Cubierta de la placa de montaje frontal 1
C. Cubierta de la placa de montaje trasera 1
D. Bandejas de expulsión de copias 7
E. Tornillo M4 × 12 2
F. Etiqueta de nombre de la bandeja (para usuarios) 1

Asegúrese de quitar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.

Deutsch

Enthaltene Teile

A. Mailbox 1
B. Vordere Abdeckung der Montageplatte 1
C. Hintere Abdeckung der Montageplatte 1
D. Kopienausgabefächer 7
E. Schraube M4 × 12 2
F. Fachnamenaufkleber (für Benutzer) 1

Stellen Sie sicher, dass sämtliche Klebebänder und/oder Polstermaterial von den gelieferten Teilen entfernt wurden.

Italiano

Parti fornite

A. Mailbox 1
B. Coperchio della piastra di montaggio anteriore .. 1
C. Coperchio della piastra di montaggio posteriore. 1
D. Scomparti di espulsione delle copie 7
E. Vite M4 × 12 2
F. Etichetta di nome del vassoio (per utenti) 1

Rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o i materiali di protezione dalle parti fornite.

简体中文

附属品

A. 邮箱 1
B. 支撑板前盖板 1
C. 支撑板后盖板 1
D. 接纸盘 7
E. M4×12 螺丝 2
F. 托盘名称标贴（用户用） 1

如果附属品上带有固定胶带，缓冲材料时务必揭下。

한국어

동봉품

A. 메일박스 1
B. 부착판커버 앞 1
C. 부착판커버 뒤 1
D. 배출핀 7
E. 나사 M4 × 12 2
F. 트레이 명칭 씰（사용자용） 1

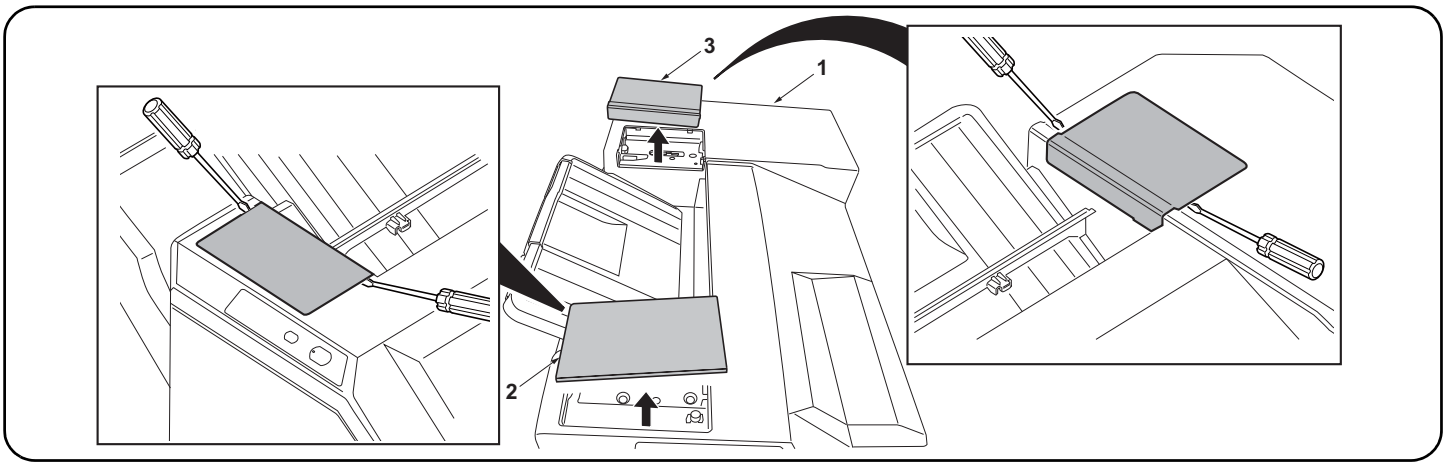
동봉품에 고정 테이프，완충재가 붙어 있는 경우에는 반드시 제거하십시오 .

日本語

同梱品

A. メールボックス 1
B. 取付板カバー前 1
C. 取付板カバー後 1
D. 排出ピン 7
E. ビス M4×12 2
F. トレイ名称シール(ユーザー用) 1

同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。



Procedure
Before starting installation, be sure to turn the main power switch of the machine off, and unplug the power plug from the wall outlet.

1. Remove the front top cover (2) and rear top cover (3) at the top of the finisher (1) using a flat-blade screwdriver or the like.

Procédure
Avant de commencer l'installation, s'assurer de mettre la machine hors tension et de débrancher la fiche d'alimentation de la prise murale.

1. Retirer le couvercle supérieur avant (2) et le couvercle supérieur arrière (3) situés en haut du retoucheur (1) à l'aide d'un tournevis à tête plate ou d'un outil équivalent.

Procedimiento
Antes de iniciar la instalación, asegúrese de apagar el interruptor de encendido de la máquina y desenchufar el cable de alimentación de la toma de pared.

1. Remueva la cubierta superior delantera (2) y la cubierta superior trasera (3) en la parte superior del finalizador (1) utilizando un destornillador de punta plana o similar.

Verfahren
Bevor Sie mit der Installation beginnen überzeugen Sie sich, dass der Netzschalter des Geräts ausgeschaltet und das Stromkabel aus der Steckdose gezogen ist.

1. Entfernen Sie die vordere obere Abdeckung (2) und die hintere obere Abdeckung (3) an der Oberseite des Finishers (1) mit einem Klingenschraubendreher oder dergleichen.

Procedura
Prima di iniziare l'installazione, spegnere la macchina e scollegare la spina dalla presa di corrente.

1. Rimuovere il coperchio superiore anteriore (2) e il coperchio superiore posteriore (3) dalla parte superiore del finitore (1) utilizzando un cacciavite a punta piatta, o un attrezzo simile.

安装步骤
安装前务必关闭机器的主电源开关，并从墙壁插座拔下电源插头。

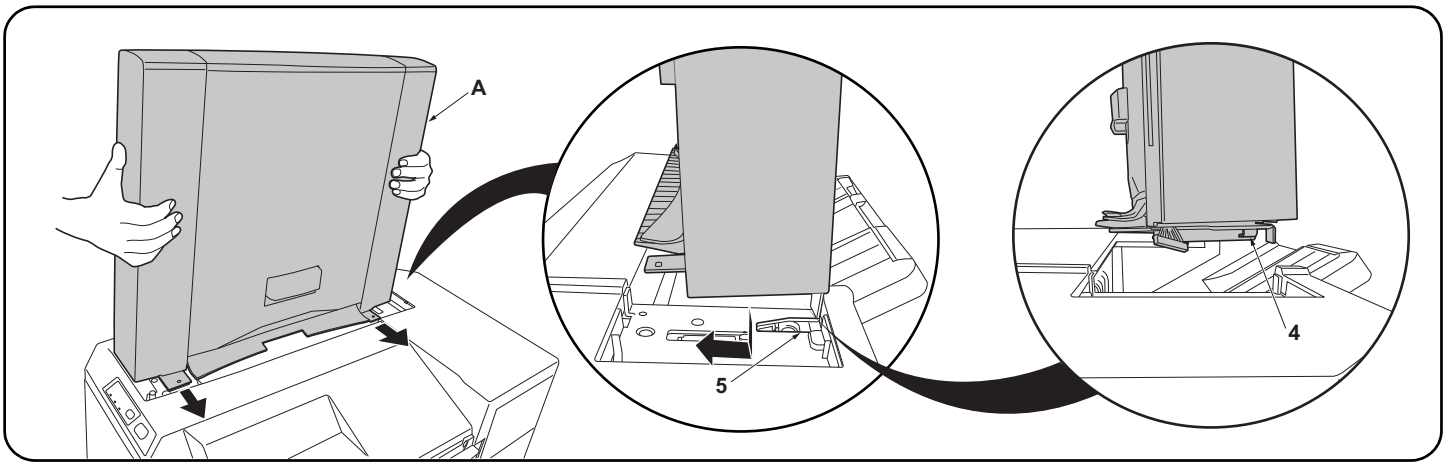
1. 用一字形螺丝刀拆下装订器 (1) 上部的顶罩前盖板 (2) 和顶罩后盖板 (3)。

설치순서
설치를 시작하기 전에 반드시 본체의 주 전원 스위치를 끄고 벽 콘센트에서 전원 플러그를 분리하십시오 .

1. 피니셔 (1) 상부의 윗커버 앞 덮개 (2), 윗커버 뒤 덮개 (3) 를 마이너스 드라이버 등으로 제거합니다 .

取付手順
必ず機械本体の主電源スイッチを OFF にし、機械本体の電源プラグを抜いてから作業すること。

1. フィニッシャー (1) 上部の天カバー前フタ (2) 、天カバー後フタ (3) をマイナスドライバーなどで取り外す。



2. Fit the hooks (4) located at the front and rear of the bottom of the mailbox (A) into the notches (5) located at the front and rear of the top of the finisher (1) as shown in the illustration and attach the mailbox (A) to the finisher (1).
Note:
Lift the front and rear of the mailbox (A) lightly upward to make sure that no gap is made between the mailbox (A) and the machine.

---

2. Insérer les crochets (4) se trouvant à l'avant et à l'arrière au fond de la boîte à lettres (A) dans les encoches (5) situées à l'avant et à l'arrière en haut du retoucheur (1) comme illustré ici, puis fixer la boîte à lettres (A) au retoucheur (1).
Remarque:
Lever légèrement l'avant et l'arrière de la boîte à lettres (A) de sorte qu'il n'y ait aucun interstice entre la boîte à lettres (A) et la machine.

---

2. Coloque los ganchos (4) ubicados en la parte inferior frontal y trasera del buzón de correo (A) en las muescas (5) ubicadas en la parte superior frontal y trasera del finalizador (1), como se muestra en la ilustración, y coloque el buzón de correo (A) en el finalizador (1).
Nota:
Levante ligeramente la parte frontal y trasera del buzón de correo (A) para asegurarse de que no queda espacio entre el buzón de correo (A) y la máquina.

---

2. Setzen Sie die Haken (4) an der Vorder- und Rückseite der Mailbox (A) in die Öffnungen (5) vorne und hinten an der Oberseite des Finishers (1) ein, wie in der Abbildung dargestellt, und bringen Sie die Mailbox (A) am Finisher (1) an.
Hinweis:
Heben Sie die Vorder- und Rückseite der Mailbox (A) ein wenig an, damit sich kein Spalt zwischen der Mailbox (A) und dem Gerät bildet.

---

2. Inserire i ganci (4) posizionati sul davanti e sul dietro della parte di fondo della mailbox (A), negli incavi (5) posizionati sul davanti e sul dietro della parte superiore del finitore (1) come mostrato nell'illustrazione, e fissare la mailbox (A) al finitore (1).
Nota:
Sollevare leggermente la parte anteriore e posteriore della mailbox (A) verso l'alto per accertarsi che non vi sia dello spazio tra la mailbox (A) e la macchina.

---

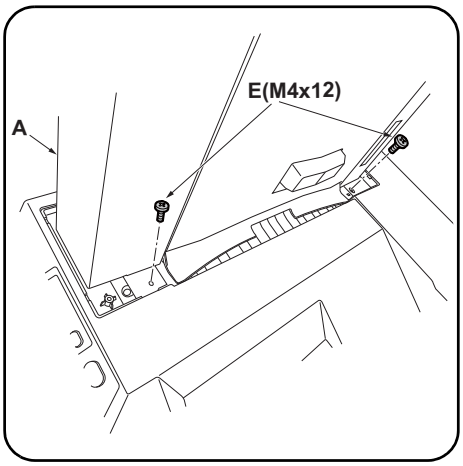
2. 如图所示，将位于邮箱 (A) 底部前后侧的卡扣 (4) 嵌入位于装订器 (1) 顶部前后侧的凹口 (5)，并将邮箱 (A) 安装至装订器 (1)。
注：
轻轻向上提升邮箱 (A) 的前后侧，确保邮箱 (A) 未处于悬浮状态。

---

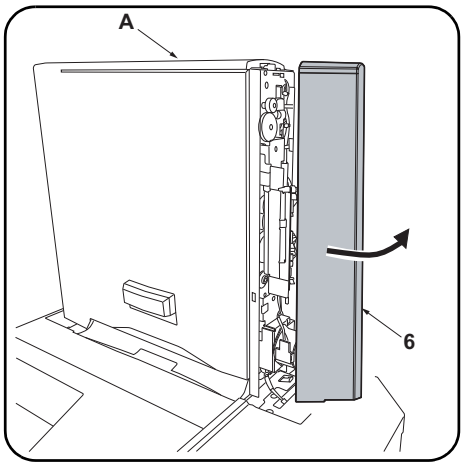
2. 메일박스 (A) 하부의 앞뒤에 있는 후크 (4) 를 피니셔 (1) 상부의 앞뒤에 있는 파인 홈에 (5) 에 일러스트와 같이 삽입하고 메일박스 (A) 를 피니셔측에 장착합니다 .
주
메일박스 (A) 의 앞뒤를 각각 상방향으로 가볍게 들어 메일박스 (A) 가 떠 있지 않은 것을 확인합니다 .

---

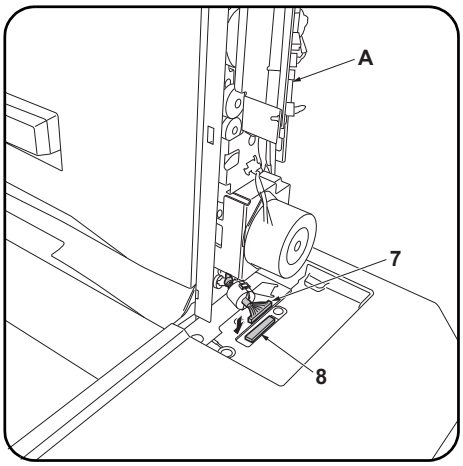
2. メールボックス (A) 下部の前後にあるフック (4) をフィニッシャー(1) 上部の前後にある切り欠き部 (5) にイラストのように挿入し、メールボックス (A) をフィニッシャー(1) に取り付ける。
注意
メールボックス (A) の前後をそれぞれ上方向に軽く持ち上げ、メールボックス (A) が浮かないことを確認する。



3. Secure the mailbox (A) using the two screws M4x12 (E).



4. Remove the rear cover (6) of the mailbox (A).



5. Plug the connector (7) of the mailbox (A) into the connector (8) of the machine body.
6. Reinstall the rear cover (6) of the mailbox (A).

---

3. Fixer la boîte à lettres (A) à l'aide de deux vis M4x12 (E).

4. Retirer le couvercle arrière (6) de la boîte à lettres (A).

5. Brancher le connecteur (7) de la boîte à lettres (A) dans le connecteur (8) du corps de la machine.
6. Remonter le couvercle arrière (6) de la boîte à lettres (A).

---

3. Fije el buzón de correo (A) con dos tornillos M4x12 (E).

4. Quite la cubierta posterior (6) del buzón de correo (A).

5. Enchufe el conector (7) del buzón de correo (A) al conector (8) del cuerpo de la máquina.
6. Vuelva a instalar la cubierta posterior (6) del buzón de correo (A).

---

3. Sichern Sie die Mailbox (A) mit zwei Schrauben M4x12 (E).

4. Entfernen Sie die hintere Abdeckung (6) der Mailbox (A).

5. Stecken Sie den Stecker (7) der Mailbox (A) in die Steckbuchse (8) des Gerätegehäuses.
6. Bringen Sie die hintere Abdeckung (6) der Mailbox (A) wieder an.

---

3. Fissare la mailbox (A) utilizzando le due viti M4x12 (E).

4. Rimuovere il coperchio posteriore (6) della mailbox (A).

5. Collegare il connettore (7) della mailbox (A) al connettore (8) del corpo macchina.
6. Reinstallare il coperchio posteriore (6) della mailbox (A).

---

3. 使用两个螺丝 M4x12（E）固定邮箱（A）。

4. 拆下邮箱 (A) 的后部盖板 (6)。

5. 将邮箱（A）的接插件（7）插入机器的接插件（8）。
6. 重新安装邮箱（A）的后盖板（6）。

---

3. M4x12 나사 (E) 두 개를 사용하여 메일박스 (A) 를 고정합니다 .

4. 메일박스 (A) 의 뒤커버 (6) 를 떼어냅니다 .

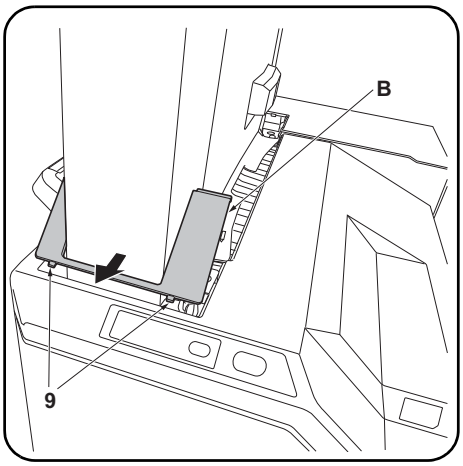
5. 메일박스 (A) 의 커넥터 (7) 를 본체의 커넥터 (8) 에 연결합니다
6. 메일박스 (A) 의 뒤커버 (6) 를 다시 장착합니다 .

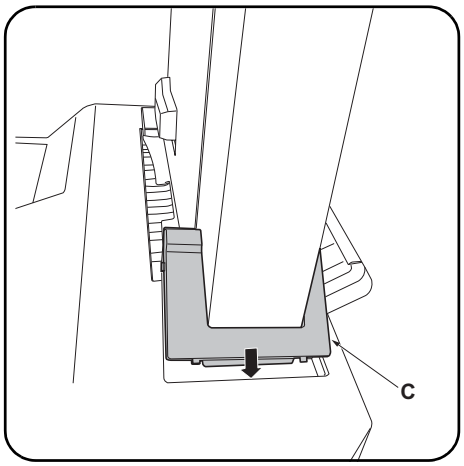
---

3. ビス M4×12(E)2 本で、メールボックス (A) を固定する。

4. メールボックス (A) の後カバー(6) を取り外す。

5. メールボックス (A) のコネクター(7) を機械本体のコネクター (8) に接続する。
6. メールボックス (A) の後カバー(6) を元通りに取り付ける。





7. Insert the 2 hooks (9) on the front mounting plate cover (B) for the mailbox into the finisher to install the cover (B).

8. Install the rear mounting plate cover (C) on the finisher in the same way.

---

7. Insérer les 2 crochets (9) du couvercle de la plaque de montage avant (B) de la boîte à lettres dans le retourcheur pour installer ce couvercle (B).

8. Installer le couvercle de la plaque de montage arrière (C) sur le retoucheur en procédant de la même manière.

---

7. Para instalar la cubierta (B), inserte los 2 ganchos (9) de la cubierta de la placa de montaje frontal (B) para el buzón de correo en el finalizador.

8. Instale de la misma manera la cubierta de la placa de montaje trasera (C) en el finalizador.

---

7. Setzen Sie die 2 Haken (9) an der vorderen Abdeckung der Montageplatte (B) für die Mailbox in den Finisher ein, um die Abdeckung (B) zu installieren.

8. Bringen Sie auf gleiche Weise die hintere Abdeckung der Montageplatte (C) am Finisher an.

---

7. Inserire nel finitore i 2 ganci (9) posizionati sul coperchio della piastra di montaggio anteriore (B) per la mailbox, per installare il coperchio (B).

8. Installare il coperchio della piastra di montaggio posteriore (C) sul finitore nella stessa maniera.

---

7. 将邮箱的安装板前部盖板 (B) 的 2 个卡扣 (9) 插入到装订器中，以安装安装板前部盖板 (B)。

8. 按相同方法将安装板后部盖板 (C) 安装到装订器上。

---

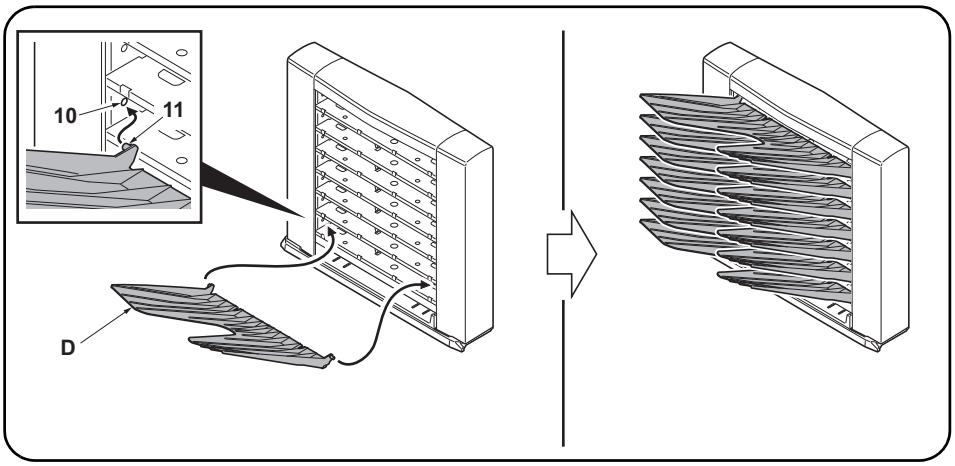
7. 메일박스의 부착판 커버 앞 (B) 의 후크 (9) 2 곳을 피니셔에 삽입하고 부착판 커버 앞 (B) 을 장착합니다 .

8. 같은 방식으로 부착판 커버 뒤 (C) 를 피니셔에 장착합니다 .

---

7. メールボックスの取付板カバー前 (B) のフック (9)2 箇所をフィニッシャーに挿入し、取付板カバー前 (B) を取り付ける。

8. 同様に取付板カバー後 (C) をフィニッシャーに取り付ける。



9. Fit the seven copy eject bins (D) to the ejection section of the mailbox (A) from the lowest bin to the highest.
Press both ends of each copy eject bin (D) to bend it a little, then fit the bin by inserting the front and rear pins (10) into the round holes (11) at the front and rear of the mailbox.

10. Insert the power plug from the machine into the outlet, turn the main power switch on, and verify the machine operates normally.

---

9. Fixer les sept cases d'éjection de copies (D) sur la section d'éjection de la boîte à lettres (A), en procédant de la case située tout en bas à celle située tout en haut.
Appuyer sur les deux extrémités de chaque case d'éjection des copies (D) pour cintrer légèrement cette pièce, puis monter la case en insérant les broches avant et arrière (10) dans les trous ronds (11) à l'avant et à l'arrière de la boîte à lettres.

10. Insérer la fiche d'alimentation de la machine dans la prise et mettre la machine sous tension, puis vérifier qu'elle fonctionne correctement.

---

9. Presione ambos extremos de cada bandeja de expulsión de copias (D) para doblarlas un poco; después, coloque la bandeja insertando los pasadores delantero y trasero (10) en los orificios redondos (11) en la parte frontal y posterior del buzón de correo.

10. Enchufe el cable de alimentación de la máquina en la toma de corriente y encienda el interruptor principal para comprobar que la máquina funciona correctamente.

---

9. Setzen Sie die sieben Kopienausgabefächer (D) in die Ausgabeöffnungen der Mailbox (A) ein, beginnend vom untersten Fach zum höchsten.
Drücken Sie beide Enden jedes Kopienausgabefachs (D) zusammen, um es etwas zu biegen. Setzen Sie das Fach ein, indem Sie die vorderen und hinteren Stifte (10) in die Rundlöcher (11) vorne und hinten an der Mailbox einsetzen.

10. Stecken Sie den Netzstecker des Geräts in eine Steckdose und schalten Sie den Hauptschalter des Geräts ein, um den Betrieb zu prüfen.

---

9. Installare i sette scomparti di espulsione delle copie (D) nella sezione di espulsione della mailbox (A), iniziando dallo scomparto più in basso fino a quello più in alto.
Premere le due estremità di ciascuno scomparto di espulsione delle copie (D) in modo da piegarlo leggermente, quindi installare lo scomparto inserendo i perni anteriore e posteriore (10) nei fori rotondi (11) presenti sul fronte e sul retro della mailbox.

10. Inserire la spina nella presa di corrente, accendere la macchina e controllare che funzioni correttamente.

---

9. 从邮箱 (A) 的排出部下面起按顺序安装 7 个接纸盘 (D)。
按住接纸盘 (D) 的左右两侧并使其稍稍下垂，通过将前后的销钉 (10) 插入邮箱前后的圆孔 (11) 中来安装接纸盘。

10. 将机器的电源插头插入插座，然后打开主电源开关并确认机器能否正常操作。

---

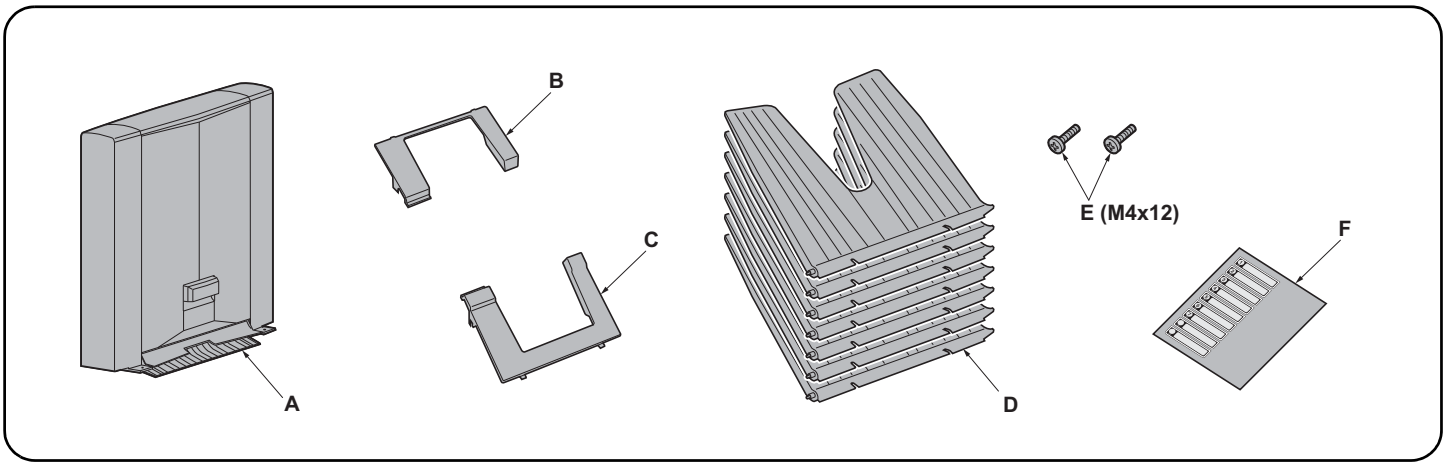
9. 배출핀 (D) 7 개를 메일박스 (A) 의 배출부에 밑에서부터 순서대로 장착합니다 .
배출핀 (D) 의 좌우를 밀어 조금 휘게해 앞뒤의 핀 (10) 을 메일박스의 앞뒤의 둥근 구멍 (11) 에 삽입합니다 .

10. 기기본체의 전원 플러그를 콘센트에 꼽고 주전원 스위치를 ON 으로 해서 동작을 확인 합니다 .

---

9. 排出ビン (D)7 枚をメールボックス (A) の排出部に下から順番に取り付ける。
排出ビン (D) の左右を押し少したわませ、前後のピン (10) をメールボックスの前後の丸穴 (11) に挿入する。

10. 機械本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、主電源スイッチを ON にして動作を確認する。



English

Supplied parts

A. Mailbox 1
B. Front mounting plate cover 1
C. Rear mounting plate cover 1
D. Copy eject bins 7
E. M4 × 12 screw 2
F. Tray name label (for users) 1

B and C are not used.

Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning materials from the parts supplied.

Français

Pièces fournies

A. Boîte à lettres 1
B. Couvercle de la plaque de montage avant 1
C. Couvercle de la plaque de montage arrière ... 1
D. Case d'éjection de copies 7
E. Vis M4 × 12 2
F. Étiquette de nom de plateau (pour les utilisateurs) 1

B et C ne sont pas utilisés.

Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.

Español

Partes suministradas

A. Buzón de correo 1
B. Cubierta de la placa de montaje frontal 1
C. Cubierta de la placa de montaje trasera 1
D. Bandejas de expulsión de copias 7
E. Tornillo M4 × 12 2
F. Etiqueta de nombre de la bandeja (para usuarios) 1

B y C no se utilizan.

Asegúrese de quitar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.

Deutsch

Enthaltene Teile

A. Mailbox 1
B. Vordere Abdeckung der Montageplatte 1
C. Hintere Abdeckung der Montageplatte 1
D. Kopienausgabefächer 7
E. Schraube M4 × 12 2
F. Fachnamenaufkleber (für Benutzer) 1

B und C werden nicht benötigt.

Stellen Sie sicher, dass sämtliche Klebebänder und/oder Polstermaterial von den gelieferten Teilen entfernt wurden.

Italiano

Parti fornite

A. Mailbox 1
B. Coperchio della piastra di montaggio anteriore .. 1
C. Coperchio della piastra di montaggio posteriore . 1
D. Scomparti di espulsione delle copie 7
E. Vite M4 × 12 2
F. Etichetta di nome del vassoio (per utenti) 1

B e C non sono utilizzati.

Rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o i materiali di protezione dalle parti fornite.

简体中文

附属品

A. 邮箱 1
B. 支撑板前盖板 1
C. 支撑板后盖板 1
D. 接纸盘 7
E. M4×12 螺丝 2
F. 托盘名称标贴（用户用） 1

不使用 B 和 C。

如果附属品上带有固定胶带，缓冲材料时务必揭下。

한국어

동봉품

A. 메일박스 1
B. 부착판커버 앞 1
C. 부착판커버 뒤 1
D. 배출핀 7
E. 나사 M4 × 12 2
F. 트레이 명칭 씰 (사용자용) 1

B 와 C 는 사용되지 않습니다 .

동봉품에 고정 테이프 , 완충재가 붙어 있는 경우에는 반드시 제거하십시오 .

日本語

同梱品

A. メールボックス 1
B. 取付板カバー前 1
C. 取付板カバー後 1
D. 排出ビン 7
E. ビス M4×12 2
F. トレイ名称シール(ユーザー用) 1

B,C は使用しない。

同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材がついている場合は、必ず取り外すこと。

Note
The Attachment Kit(AK-736) must be installed before the mailbox is installed.

Procedure
Before starting installation, be sure to turn the main power switch of the machine off, and unplug the power plug from the wall outlet.

Remarque
L'Attachment Kit (AK-736) doit être installé avant d'installer la boîte à lettres.

Procédure
Avant de commencer l'installation, s'assurer de mettre la machine hors tension et de débrancher la fiche d'alimentation de la prise murale.

Nota
El Attachment Kit (AK-736) se debe instalar antes de la instalación del buzón de correo.

Procedimiento
Antes de iniciar la instalación, asegúrese de apagar el interruptor de encendido de la máquina y desenchufar el cable de alimentación de la toma de pared.

Hinweis
Das Attachment Kit (AK-736) muss vor der Installation der Mailbox installiert werden.

Vorgehensweise
Bevor Sie mit der Installation beginnen überzeugen Sie sich, dass der Netzschalter des Geräts ausgeschaltet und das Stromkabel aus der Steckdose gezogen ist.

Nota
Installare l'Attachment Kit (AK-736) prima di installare il vassoio mailbox.

Procedura
Prima di iniziare l'installazione, spegnere la macchina e scollegare la spina dalla presa di corrente.

注
在安装邮箱前，请先安装连接组件（AK-736）。

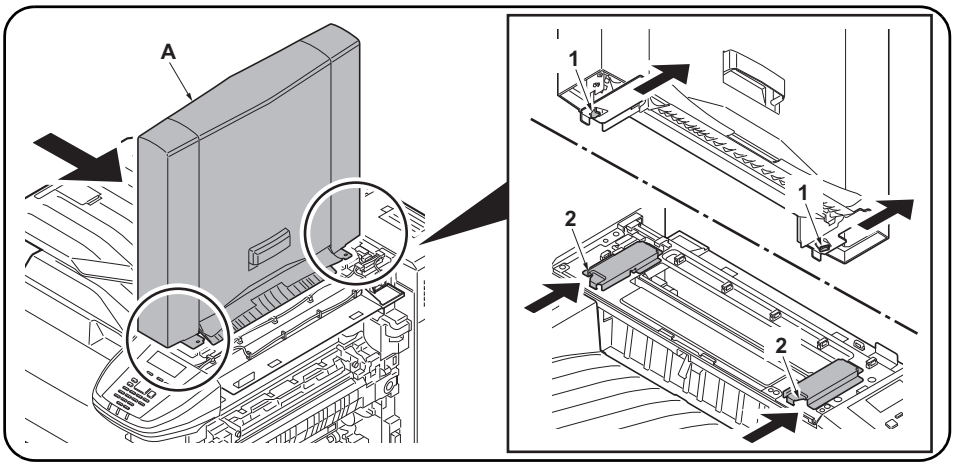
安装步骤
安装前务必关闭机器的主电源开关，并从墙壁插座拔下电源插头。

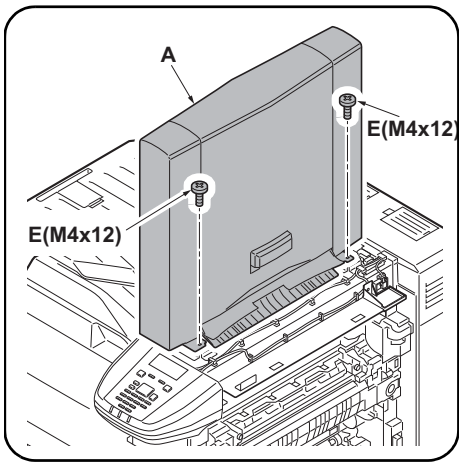
주
메일박스를 설치하기 전에 부착 키트 (AK-736)를 설치해야 합니다 .

설치순서
설치를 시작하기 전에 반드시 본체의 주 전원 스위치를 끄고 벽 콘센트에서 전원 플러그를 분리하십시오 .

注意
メールボックスを取付ける前にアタッチメントキット (AK-736) の取付けをおこなうこと。

取付手順
必ず機械本体の主電源スイッチを OFF にし、機械本体の電源プラグを抜いてから作業すること。





1. Insert the hooks (1) located at the front and rear of the bottom of the mailbox (A) into the notches (2) of the machine and attach the mailbox (A) to the machine.
Note
Lift the front and rear of the mailbox (A) lightly upward to make sure that no gap is made between the mailbox (A) and the machine.

2. Secure the mailbox (A) using the two screws M4x12 (E).

---

1. Insérer les crochets (1) situés à l'avant et à l'arrière du fond de la boîte à lettres (A) dans les encoches (2) de la machine et fixer la boîte aux lettres (A) à la machine.
Remarque
Lever légèrement l'avant et l'arrière de la boîte à lettres (A) de sorte qu'il n'y ait aucun interstice entre la boîte à lettres (A) et la machine.

2. Fixer la boîte à lettres (A) à l'aide de deux vis M4x12 (E).

---

1. Inserte los enganches (1) que se encuentran en la parte frontal y trasera de la parte inferior del buzón de correo (A) en las hendiduras (2) de la máquina y acople el buzón de correo (A) a la máquina.
Nota
Levante ligeramente la parte frontal y trasera del buzón de correo (A) para asegurarse de que no queda espacio entre el buzón de correo (A) y la máquina.

2. Fije el buzón de correo (A) con dos tornillos M4x12 (E).

---

1. Führen Sie die Haken (1), die sich hinten und vorne an der Unterseite der Mailbox (A) befinden, in die Aufnahmen (2) des Geräts ein und befestigen Sie die Mailbox (A) am Gerät.
Hinweis
Heben Sie die Vorder- und Rückseite der Mailbox (A) ein wenig an, damit sich kein Spalt zwischen der Mailbox (A) und dem Gerät bildet.

2. Sichern Sie die Mailbox (A) mit zwei Schrauben M4x12 (E).

---

1. Inserire i ganci (1) posti sul fronte e sul retro della sezione inferiore della mailbox (A) negli incavi (2) presenti sulla macchina e fissare la mailbox (A) sulla macchina.
Nota
Sollevare leggermente la parte anteriore e posteriore della mailbox (A) verso l'alto per accertarsi che non vi sia dello spazio tra la mailbox (A) e la macchina.

2. Fissare la mailbox(A) utilizzando le due viti M4x12 (E).

---

1. 将位于邮箱（A）底部前、后侧的挂钩（1）插入机器的凹槽（2），然后将邮箱（A）安装至机器。
注
轻轻向上提升邮箱 (A) 的前后侧，确保邮箱 (A) 未处于悬浮状态。

2. 使用两个螺丝 M4x12（E）固定邮箱（A）。

---

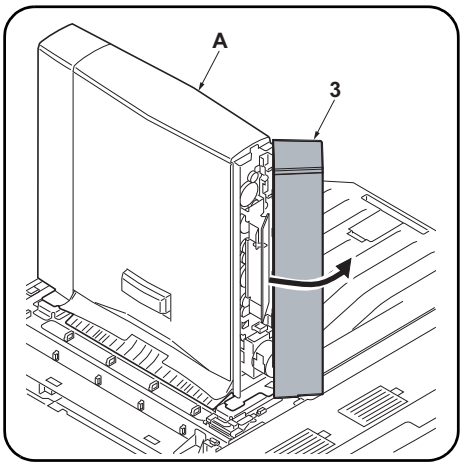
1. 메일박스 (A) 의 전후면 하단에 있는 후크 (1) 를 본체의 노치 (2) 에 삽입하여 메일박스 (A) 를 본체에 부착합니다 .
주
메일박스 (A) 의 앞뒤를 각각 상방향으로 가볍게 들어 메일박스 (A) 가 떠 있지 않은 것을 확인합니다 .

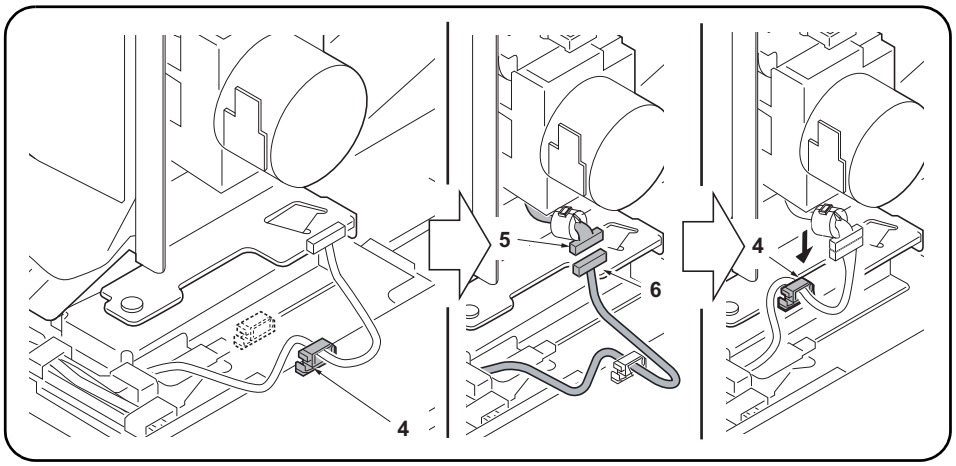
2. M4x12 나사 (E) 두 개를 사용하여 메일박스 (A) 를 고정합니다 .

---

1. メールボックス（A）下部の前後にあるフック（1）を機械本体の切り欠き（2）に挿入し、メールボックス（A）を機械本体に取り付ける。
注意
メールボックス（A）の前後をそれぞれ上方向に軽く持ち上げ、メールボックス（A）が浮かないことを確認する。

2. ビス M4×12(E)2 本で、メールボックス（A）を固定する。





3. Remove the rear cover (3) of the mailbox (A).

4. Remove the wire saddle (4).
5. Plug the connector (5) of the mailbox (A) into the connector (6) of the machine body.
6. Install the wire saddle (4) in the position as shown in the figure.
7. Reinstall the rear cover (3) of the mailbox (A).

---

3. Retirer le couvercle arrière (3) de la boîte à lettres (A).

4. Retirer le serre-câble (4).
5. Brancher le connecteur (5) de la boîte à lettres (A) dans le connecteur (6) du corps de la machine.
6. Installer le serre-câble (4) dans la position illustrée sur la figure.
7. Remonter le couvercle arrière (3) de la boîte à lettres (A).

---

3. Quite la cubierta posterior (3) del buzón de correo (A).

4. Retire la abrazadera del cable (4).
5. Enchufe el conector (5) del buzón de correo (A) al conector (6) del cuerpo de la máquina.
6. Instale la abrazadera del cable (4) en la posición que se muestra en la imagen.
7. Vuelva a instalar la cubierta posterior (3) del buzón de correo (A).

---

3. Entfernen Sie die hintere Abdeckung (3) der Mailbox (A).

4. Entfernen Sie die Kabelbefestigung (4).
5. Stecken Sie den Stecker (5) der Mailbox (A) in die Steckbuchse (6) des Gerätegehäuses.
6. Installieren Sie die Kabelbefestigung (4) an der im Bild gezeigten Position.
7. Bringen Sie die hintere Abdeckung (3) der Mailbox (A) wieder an.

---

3. Rimuovere il coperchio posteriore (3) della mailbox (A).

4. Rimuovere l'unità sella (4).
5. Collegare il connettore (5) della mailbox (A) al connettore (6) del corpo macchina.
6. Installare l'unità sella (4) nella posizione indicata in figura.
7. Reinstallare il coperchio posteriore (3) della mailbox (A).

---

3. 拆下邮箱（A）的后部盖板（3）。

4. 取下束线夹（4）。
5. 将邮箱（A）的接插件（5）插入机器的接插件（6）。
6. 把束线夹（4）安装到图示位置。
7. 重新安装邮箱（A）的后盖板（3）。

---

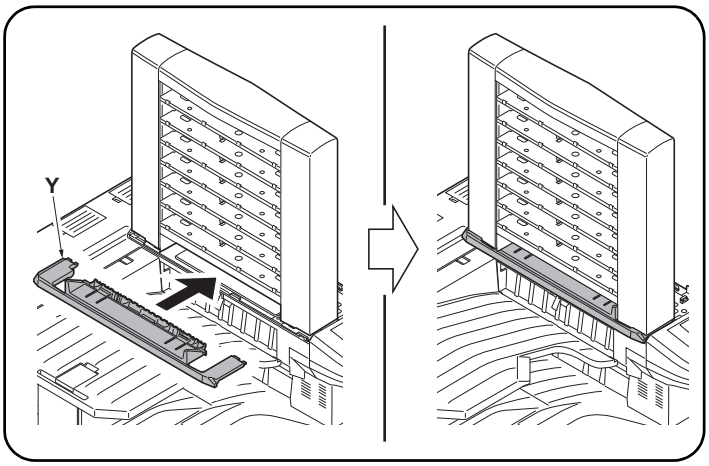
3. 메일박스 (A) 의 뒤커버 (3) 를 떼어냅니다 .

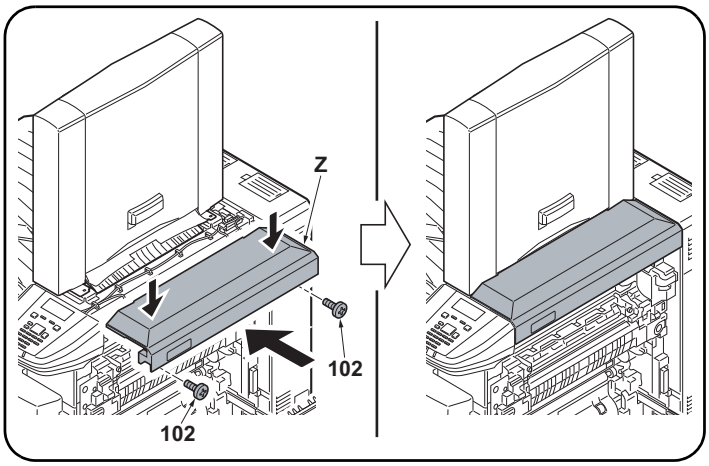
4. 와이어 새들 (4) 을 분리합니다 .
5. 메일박스 (A) 의 커넥터 (5) 를 본체의 커넥터 (6) 에 연결합니다 .
6. 와이어 새들 (4) 을 그림에 표시된 위치에 설치합니다 .
7. 메일박스 (A) 의 뒤커버 (3) 를 다시 장착합니다 .

---

3. メールボックス (A) の後カバー(3) を取り外す。

4. ワイヤーサドル (4) を外す。
5. メールボックス (A) のコネクター(5) を機械本体のコネクター (6) に接続する。
6. ワイヤーサドル (4) を図の位置に取り付ける。
7. メールボックス (A) の後カバー(3) を元通りに取り付ける。





8. Install the left cover (Y) in place.

9. Using the two screws (102) removed in step 2 in the installation guide for the AK-736, install the right cover (Z).
*While pressing the right cover(Z) downwards, fix the right cover(J).

---

8. Monter le couvercle gauche (Y) en position.

9. À l'aide des deux vis (102) retirées à l'étape 2 du guide d'installation pour l'AK-736, installer le capot droit (Z).
*Fixer le capot droit (Z) en le maintenant enfoncé vers le bas.

---

8. Instale la cubierta izquierda (Y) en la ubicación prevista.

9. Con los dos tornillos (102) que quitó en el paso 2 de la guía de instalación para AK-736, instale la cubierta derecha (Z).
*A la vez que ejerce presión sobre la cubierta derecha (Z), fije la cubierta derecha (Z).

---

8. Installieren Sie die linke Abdeckung (Y).

9. Mit den zwei Schrauben (102), die Sie in Schritt 2 der Installationsanleitung für das AK-736 entfernt haben, bringen Sie die rechte Abdeckung (Z) wieder an.
*Drücken Sie die rechte Abdeckung (Z) leicht nach unten, während Sie diese befestigen.

---

8. Installare il coperchio di sinistra (Y) in posizione.

9. Utilizzando le due viti (102) rimosse al punto 2 della procedura descritta nella guida di installazione del kit AK-736, installare il coperchio destro (Z).
*Premere verso il basso il coperchio destro (Z) per fissarlo in posizione.

---

8. 将左盖板（Y）安装到位。

9. 请用 AK-736 安装手册步骤 2 中取下的 2 颗螺丝（102）来安装右盖板（Z）。
＊把右盖板（Z）边向下按，边固定。

---

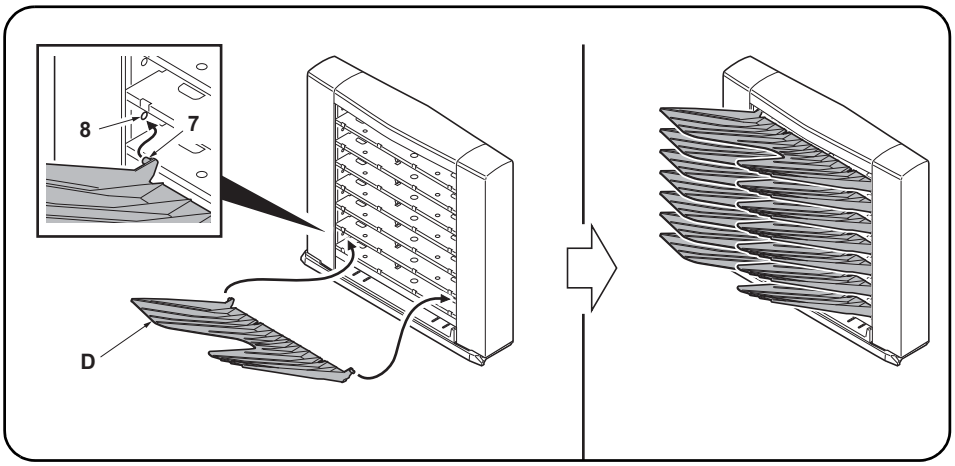
8. 좌측 커버 (Y) 를 제자리에 장착합니다 .

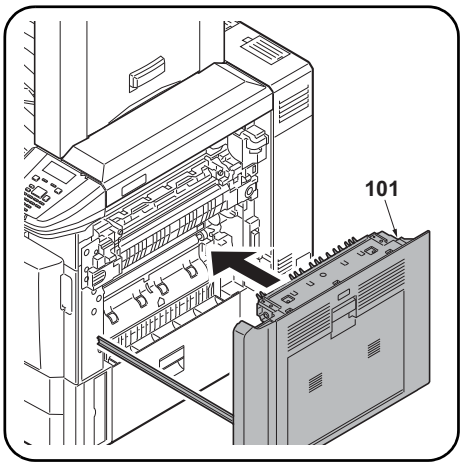
9. AK-736 설치 설명서의 2 단계에서 분리한 나사 (102) 두 개를 사용하여 우측 커버 (Z) 를 장착합니다 .
* 우측 커버 (Z) 를 아래쪽으로 누르는 동시에 우측 커버 (Z) 를 고정하십시오 .

---

8. 左カバー(Y) を取り付ける。

9. AK-736 設置手順書の手順 2 で外したビス (102)2 本で、右カバー(Z) を取付ける。
＊右カバー(Z) を下方向に押さえながら、固定する。





10. Fit the seven copy eject bins (D) to the ejection section of the mailbox (A) from the lowest bin to the highest.
Press both ends of each copy eject bin (D) to bend it a little, then fit the bin by inserting the front and rear pins (7) into the round holes (8) at the front and rear of the mailbox.

11. Close the paper conveying unit(101).
12. Insert the power plug from the machine into the outlet, turn the main power switch on, and verify the machine operates normally.

---

10. Fixer les sept cases d'éjection de copies (D) sur la section d'éjection de la boîte à lettres (A), en procédant de la case située tout en bas à celle située tout en haut.
Appuyer sur les deux extrémités de chaque case d'éjection des copies (D) pour cintrer légèrement cette pièce, puis monter la case en insérant les broches avant et arrière (7) dans les trous ronds (8) à l'avant et à l'arrière de la boîte à lettres.

11. Fermer l'unité de transport du papier (101).
12. Insérer la fiche d'alimentation de la machine dans la prise et mettre la machine sous tension, puis vérifier qu'elle fonctionne correctement.

---

10. Presione ambos extremos de cada bandeja de expulsión de copias (D) para doblarlas un poco; después, coloque la bandeja insertando los pasadores delantero y trasero (7) en los orificios redondos (8) en la parte frontal y posterior del buzón de correo.

11. Cierre la unidad de transporte de papel(101).
12. Enchufe el cable de alimentación de la máquina en la toma de corriente y encienda el interruptor principal para comprobar que la máquina funciona correctamente.

---

10. Setzen Sie die sieben Kopienausgabefächer (D) in die Ausgabeöffnungen der Mailbox (A) ein, beginnend vom untersten Fach zum höchsten.
Drücken Sie beide Enden jedes Kopienausgabefachs (D) zusammen, um es etwas zu biegen. Setzen Sie das Fach ein, indem Sie die vorderen und hinteren Stifte (7) in die Rundlöcher (8) vorne und hinten an der Mailbox einsetzen.

11. Schließen Sie die Papierführung (101).
12. Stecken Sie den Netzstecker des Geräts in eine Steckdose und schalten Sie den Hauptschalter des Geräts ein, um den Betrieb zu prüfen.

---

10. Installare i sette scomparti di espulsione delle copie (D) nella sezione di espulsione della mailbox (A), iniziando dallo scomparto più in basso fino a quello più in alto.
Premere le due estremità di ciascuno scomparto di espulsione delle copie (D) in modo da piegarlo leggermente, quindi installare lo scomparto inserendo i perni anteriore e posteriore (7) nei fori rotondi (8) presenti sul fronte e sul retro della mailbox.

11. Chiudere l'unità trasporto carta (101).
12. Inserire la spina nella presa di corrente, accendere la macchina e controllare che funzioni correttamente.

---

10. 从邮箱 (A) 的排出部下面起按顺序安装 7 个接纸盘 (D)。
按住接纸盘 (D) 的左右两侧并使其稍稍下垂，通过将前后的销钉 (7) 插入邮箱前后的圆孔 (8) 中来安装接纸盘。

11. 关闭纸张传输单元（101）。
12. 将机器的电源插头插入插座，然后打开主电源开关并确认机器能否正常操作。

---

10. 배출핀 (D) 7 개를 메일박스 (A) 의 배출부에 밑에서부터 순서대로 장착합니다 .
배출핀 (D) 의 좌우를 밀어 조금 휘게해 앞뒤의 핀 (7) 을 메일박스의 앞뒤의 둥근 구멍 (8) 에 삽입합니다 .

11. 반송 유니트 (101) 를 닫습니다 .
12. 기기본체의 전원 플러그를 콘센트에 꼽고 주전원 스위치를 ON 으로 해서 동작을 확인 합니다 .

---

10. 排出ビン (D)7 枚をメールボックス (A) の排出部に下から順番に取り付ける。
排出ビン (D) の左右を押し少したわませ、前後のピン (7) をメールボックスの前後の丸穴 (8) に挿入する。

11. 搬送ユニット (101) を閉じる。
12. 機械本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、主電源スイッチを ON にして動作を確認する。

MEMO

2012. 4
303N056730-01

INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR PUNCH UNIT

INSTALLATION GUIDE

GUIDE D’INSTALLATION

GUÍA DE INSTALACION

INSTALLATIONSANLEITUNG

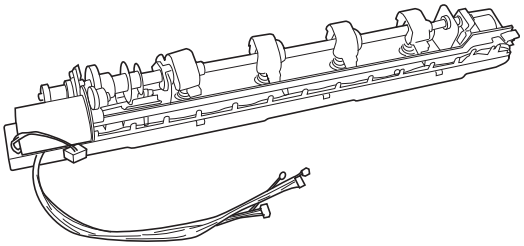
GUIDA ALL’INSTALLAZIONE

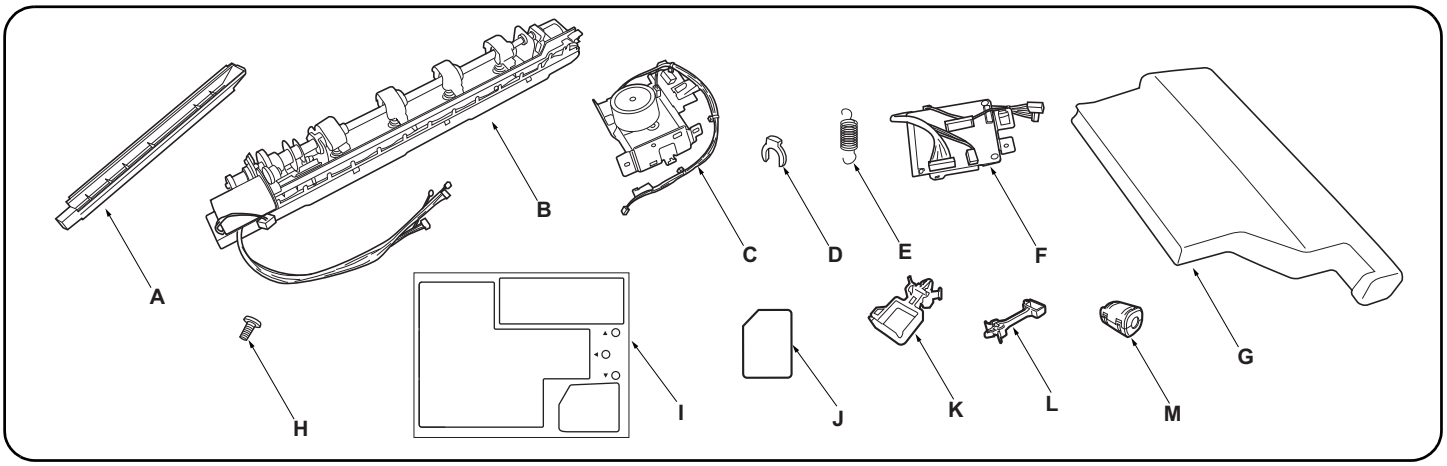
安装手册

설치안내서

設置手順書

PH-7A/PH-7B/PH-7C/PH-7D





English

Supplied parts

A. Punch guide 1
B. Hole punch unit 1
C. Motor unit 1
D. Stop ring 1
E. Spring 1
F. Punch PWB 1
G. Waste hole punch box 1
H. M3 × 8 tap Tight S screw 3
I. Label sheet 1
J. Film 1
K. Small clamp (for DF-770) 1
L. Large clamp (for DF-790/DF-791) 1
M. Ferrite core 1

Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning material from supplied parts.

Français

Pièces fournies

A. Guide de perforatrice 1
B. Perforatrice 1
C. Moteur 1
D. Bague d'arrêt 1
E. Ressort 1
F. PWB de la perforatrice 1
G. Bac de récupération de la perforatrice 1
H. Vis S taraudée M3 × 8 3
I. Feuillet d'étiquettes 1
J. Film 1
K. Petit collier (pour DF-770) 1
L. Grand collier (pour DF-790/DF-791) 1
M. Noyau de ferrite 1

Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.

Español

Partes suministradas

A. Guía de perforación 1
B. Perforadora 1
C. Unidad motriz 1
D. Anillo de tope 1
E. Resorte 1
F. PWB de perforación 1
G. Caja para desechos de la perforación 1
H. Tornillo de ajuste M3 × 8 3
I. Hoja con etiqueta 1
J. Película 1
K. Sujetador pequeño (para DF-770) 1
L. Sujetador grande (para DF-790/DF-791) 1
M. Núcleo de ferrita 1

Asegúrese de despegar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.

Deutsch

Gelieferte Teile

A. Locherführung 1
B. Lochereinheit 1
C. Motoreinheit 1
D. Anschlagring 1
E. Feder 1
F. Locher-PWB 1
G. Lochungsabfallbehälter 1
H. M3 × 8 Passstift-Verbundschrauben 3
I. Aufkleberbogen 1
J. Film 1
K. Kleine Klemme (für DF-770) 1
L. Große Klemme (für DF-790/DF-791) 1
M. Ferritkern 1

Entfernen Sie Klebeband und/oder Dämpfungsmaterial vollständig von den mitgelieferten Teilen.

Italiano

Parti di fornitura

A. Guida perforazione 1
B. Unità di perforazione 1
C. Unità motore 1
D. Anello di bloccaggio 1
E. Molla 1
F. Scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione 1
G. Scarto perforazione 1
H. Viti con testa a croce S M3 × 8 3
I. Foglio di etichette 1
J. Pellicola 1
K. Morsetto piccolo (per DF-770) 1
L. Morsetto grande (per DF-790/DF-791) 1
M. Nucleo di ferrite 1

Accertarsi di rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o il materiale di imbottitura dalle parti fornite.

简体中文

附属品

A. 打孔导向板 1
B. 打孔单元 1
C. 电机单元 1
D. 止动环 1
E. 弹簧 1
F. 打孔单元电路板 1
G. 打孔纸屑盒 1
H. M3 X 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺丝 3
I. 标签纸 1
J. 胶片 1
K. 固定夹 小(DF-770 用) 1
L. 固定夹 大(DF-790/DF-791 用) 1
M. 磁环 1

如果附属品上带有固定胶带，缓冲材料时务必揭下。

한국어

동봉품

A. 펀치가이드 1
B. 펀치유니트 1
C. 모터유니트 1
D. 스톱링 1
E. 스프링 1
F. 펀치기판 1
G. 펀치폐기박스 1
H. 나사 M3×8 탭타이트 S 3
I. 라벨 시트 1
J. 필름 1
K. 클램프 소 (DF-770 용) 1
L. 클램프 대 (DF-790/DF-791 용) 1
M. 페라이트 코어 1

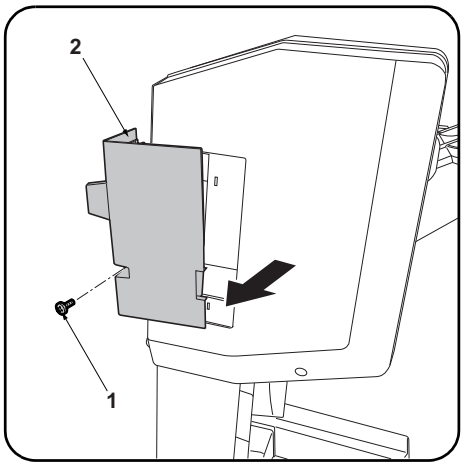
동봉품에 고정 테이프, 완충재가 붙어 있는 경우에는 반드시 제거할 것.

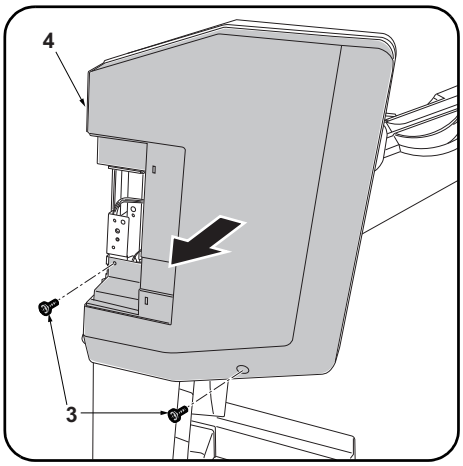
日本語

同梱品

A. パンチガイド 1
B. パンチユニット 1
C. モーターユニット 1
D. ストップリング 1
E. バネ 1
F. パンチ基板 1
G. パンチくずボックス 1
H. ビス M3×8 タップタイト S 3
I. ラベルシート 1
J. フィルム 1
K. クランプ小(DF-770 用) 1
L. クランプ大(DF-790/DF-791 用) 1
M. フェライトコア 1

同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。





Procedure
Before installing the hole punch unit, make sure the MFP's main power switch is turned off and that its power cord is unplugged from the power outlet.
Install the document finisher first and then install the hole punch unit.

Removing the cover (DF-770)
If installing on the DF-790/DF-791, proceed to step 1 on page 3.
1.Remove the screw (1) and remove the small rear cover (2).

2.Remove the 2 screws (3) and remove the upper rear cover (4).

Procédure
Avant d'installer la perforatrice, s'assurer que l'interrupteur d'alimentation principal du MFP est hors tension et que le câble d'alimentation est débranché de la prise secteur.
Installer d'abord le finisseur de document, puis installer la perforatrice.

Dépose du couvercle (DF-770)
Pour l'installation sur le modèle DF-790/DF-791, passer à l'étape 1 de la page 3.
1.Déposer la vis (1) et déposer le petit couvercle arrière (2).

2.Déposer les 2 vis (3) et déposer le couvercle supérieur arrière (4).

Procedimiento
Antes de instalar la perforadora, asegúrese de que el interruptor principal de la alimentación del MFP esté desconectado y de que el cable de alimentación esté desenchufado de la toma de corriente de la pared.
Instale primero el finalizador de documentos y luego instale la perforadora.

Extracción de la cubierta (DF-770)
Si realiza la instalación en el DF-790/DF-791, vaya al paso 1 de la página 3.
1.Quite el tornillo (1) y, después, quite la cubierta trasera pequeña (2).

2.Quite los 2 tornillos (3) y, después, quite la cubierta trasera superior (4).

Verfahren
Bevor Sie mit dem Einbau der Lochereinheit beginnen, stellen Sie sicher, dass der Hauptschalter des Kopierers ausgeschaltet und das Netzkabel aus der Steckdose gezogen ist. Bringen Sie den Dokument-Finisher zuerst und dann erst die Lochereinheit an.

Entfernen der Abdeckung (DF-770)
Zur Installation des DF-790/DF-791 weitergehen zu Schritt 1 auf Seite 3.
1.Die Schraube (1) entfernen und die kleine hintere Abdeckung (2) abnehmen.

2.Die 2 Schrauben (3) entfernen und die obere hintere Abdeckung (4) abnehmen.

Procedura
Prima di installate l'unità di perforazione, assicurarsi che l'interruttore principale dell'MFP sia spento e che il cavo di alimentazione sia scollegato dalla presa di corrente.
Installare prima la finitrice e poi procedere all'installazione dell'unità di perforazione.

Rimozione del coperchio (DF-770)
Se si installa sull'unità DF-790/DF-791, procedere al passo 1 a pagina 3.
1.Rimuovere la vite (1) e quindi rimuovere il pannello posteriore piccolo (2).

2.Rimuovere le 2 viti (3) e quindi rimuovere il pannello superiore posteriore (4).

安装步骤
安装打孔单元时，必须事先关闭 MFP 主机的主电源开关，并拔下电源插头后再进行作业。
首先安装装订器，然后安装打孔单元。

拆下盖板（DF-770 时）
安装到 DF-790/DF-791 上时，跳至 P3 的步骤 1。
1. 拆除 1 颗螺丝 (1)，拆下后部小盖板 (2)。

2. 拆除 2 颗螺丝 (3)，拆下后上部盖板 (4)。

설치순서
펀치유니트를 부착할 때에는 반드시 MFP 본체의 주 전원 스위치를 OFF 로 하고 전원플러그를 뺀 다음 작업을 할 것 .
문서 피니셔를 설치 후 , 펀치유니트를 설치 할 것 .

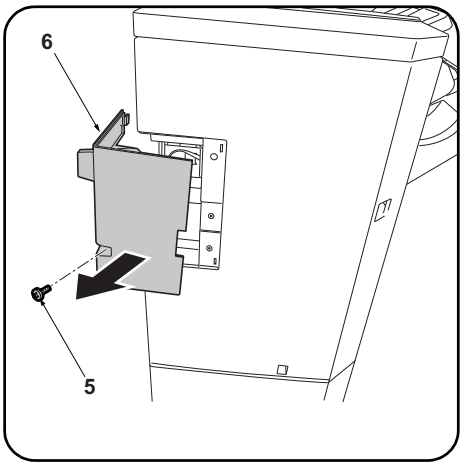
커버제거 (DF-770 의 경우)
DF-790/DF-791 에 장착하는 경우에는 P3 의 순서 1 로 진행합니다 .
1. 나사 (1) 1 개를 제거하고 뒷 소커버 (2) 를 제거합니다 .

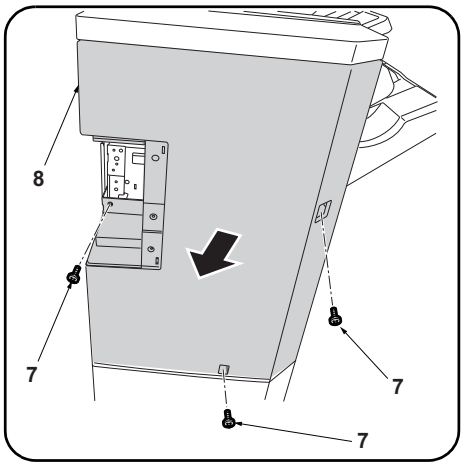
2. 나사 (3) 2 개를 제거하고 뒷 상커버 (4) 를 제거합니다 .

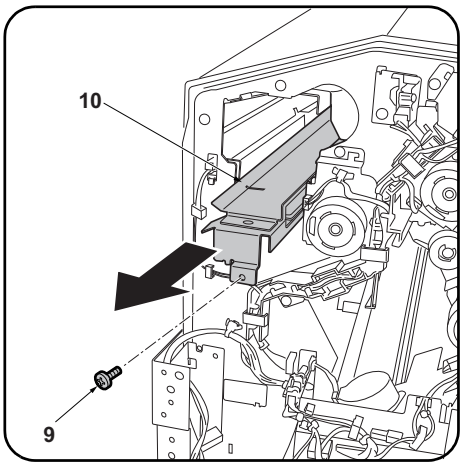
取付手順
パンチユニットを設置するときは、必ず MFP 本体の主電源スイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを抜いてから作業すること。
ドキュメントフィニッシャーを設置後、パンチユニットを設置すること。

カバーの取り外し（DF-770 の場合）
DF-790/DF-791 に装着の場合は、P3 の手順 1 へ進む。
1. ビス (1)1 本を外し、後小カバー (2) を取り外す。

2. ビス (3)2 本を外し、後上カバー (4) を取り外す。







Removing the cover (DF-790/DF-791)

1. Remove the screw (5) and remove the small rear cover (6).

2. Remove the 3 screws (7) and remove the upper rear cover (8).

Installing the hole punch unit

3. Remove the screw (9) and pull the guide (10) outwards.

Dépose du couvercle (DF-790/DF-791)

1. Déposer la vis (5) et déposer le petit couvercle arrière (6).

2. Déposer les 3 vis (7) et déposer le couvercle supérieur arrière (8).

Installation de la perforatrice

3. Déposer la vis (9) et tirer le guide (10) vers l'extérieur.

Extracción de la cubierta (DF-790/DF-791)

1. Quite el tornillo (5) y, después, quite la cubierta trasera pequeña (6).

2. Quite los 3 tornillos (7) y, después, quite la cubierta trasera superior (8).

Instalación de la perforadora

3. Quite el tornillo (9) y tire de la guía (10) hacia fuera.

Entfernen der Abdeckung (DF-790/DF-791)

1. Die Schraube (5) entfernen und die kleine hintere Abdeckung (6) abnehmen.

2. Die 3 Schrauben (7) entfernen und die obere hintere Abdeckung (8) abnehmen.

Anbringen der Lochereinheit

3. Die Schraube (9) entfernen und die Führung (10) nach außen ziehen.

Rimozione del coperchio (DF-790/DF-791)

1. Rimuovere la vite (5) e quindi rimuovere il pannello posteriore piccolo (6).

2. Rimuovere le 3 viti (7) e quindi rimuovere il pannello superiore posteriore (8).

Installare l'unità di perforazione

3. Rimuovere la vite (9) ed estrarre la guida (10) verso l'esterno.

拆下盖板（DF-790/DF-791 时）

1. 拆除 1 颗螺丝 (5)，拆下后部小盖板 (6)。

2. 拆除 3 颗螺丝 (7)，拆下后上部盖板 (8)。

安装打孔单元

3. 拆除 1 颗螺丝 (9)，将导向板 (10) 向外拉出。

커버제거 (DF-790/DF-791 의 경우)

1. 나사 (5) 1 개를 제거하고 뒷 소커버 (6) 를 제거합니다 .

2. 나사 (7) 3 개를 제거하고 뒷 상커버 (8) 를 제거합니다 .

펀치유니트 부착

3. 나사 (9) 1 개를 제거하고 가이드 (10) 을 앞으로 끌어 당깁니다 .

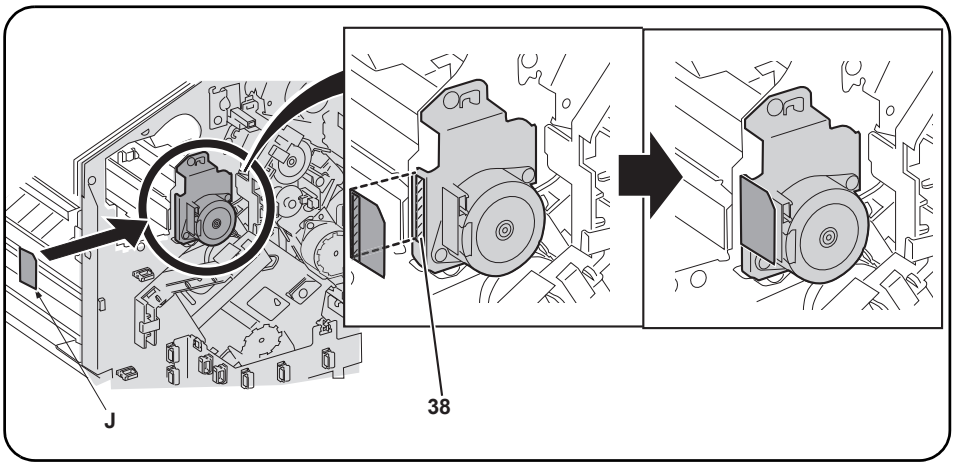
カバーの取り外し(DF-790/DF-791 の場合)

1. ビス (5)1 本を外し、後小カバー(6) を取り外す。

2. ビス (7)3 本を外し、後上カバー(8) を取り外す。

パンチユニットの取り付け

3. ビス (9)1 本を外し、ガイド (10) を手前に引き出す。



4.After using alcohol to clean the shaded portion (38) of the motor shown for adhering the film (J), adhere the film.

4.Après avoir utilisé de l'alcool pour nettoyer la partie du moteur hachurée (38) sur laquelle le film (J) est apposé, coller ce film.

4.Después de utilizar alcohol para limpiar la parte sombreada (38) del motor mostrada en la ilustración para pegar la película (J), pegue la película.

4.Den in der Abbildung grau dargestellten Teil (38) des Motors zum Anbringen des Films (J) mit Alkohol reinigen und dann den Film anbringen.

4.Dopo aver usato l'alcool per pulire la parte ombreggiata (38) del motore, illustrata per l'adesione della pellicola (J), far aderire la pellicola.

---

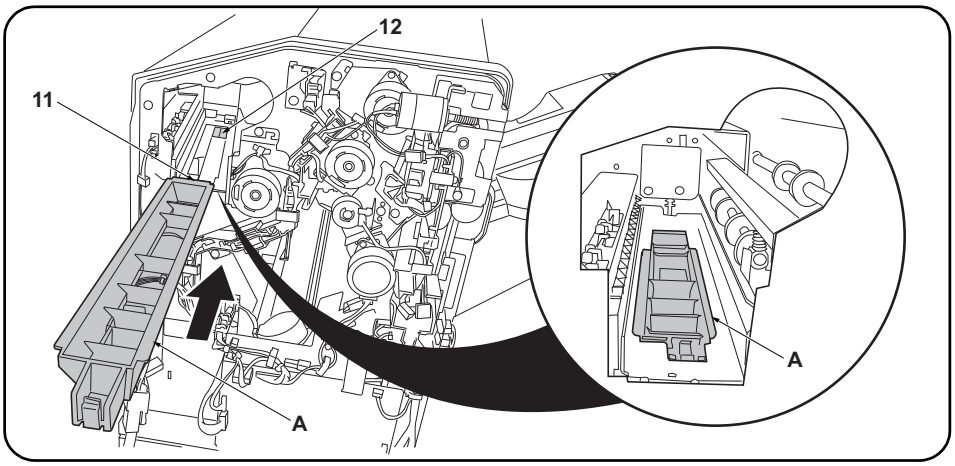
4. 用酒精清洁电机斜侧处（38）的粘贴位置后，粘贴胶片（J）。

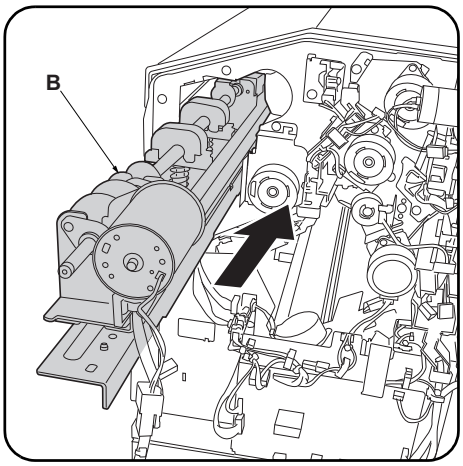
---

4. 모터 사선부 (38) 의 부착위치를 알코올 청소 후 , 필름 (J) 을 부착합니다 .

---

4. モーター斜線部(38)の貼り付け位置をアルコール清掃後、フィルム(J)を貼り付ける。





5. Install the punch guide (A) so that the leading edge of the guide (11) is below the document finisher frame (12).

6. Insert the hole punch unit (B) into the document finisher.

---

5. Monter le guide de la perforatrice (A) de sorte que le bord d'attaque du guide (11) se trouve sous le bâti du retoucheur de document (12).

6. Insérer la perforatrice (B) dans le retoucheur de document.

---

5. Instale la guía de perforación (A) de forma tal que el borde delantero de la guía (11) quede debajo de la carcasa del finalizador de documentos (12).

6. Inserte la perforadora (B) en el finalizador de documentos.

---

5. Die Locherführung (A) so einsetzen, dass die Vorderkante der Führung (11) unter dem Rahmen (12) des Dokument-Finishers liegt.

6. Die Lochereinheit (B) in den Dokument-Finisher einsetzen.

---

5. Installare la guida perforazione (A) in modo che il bordo principale della guida (11) sia sotto il telaio (12) della finitrice di documenti.

6. Inserire l'unità di perforazione (B) nella finitrice di documenti.

---

5. 将打孔导向板 (A) 的前端 (11) 安装在装订器的框架 (12) 的下部。

6. 将打孔单元 (B) 插入到装订器中。

---

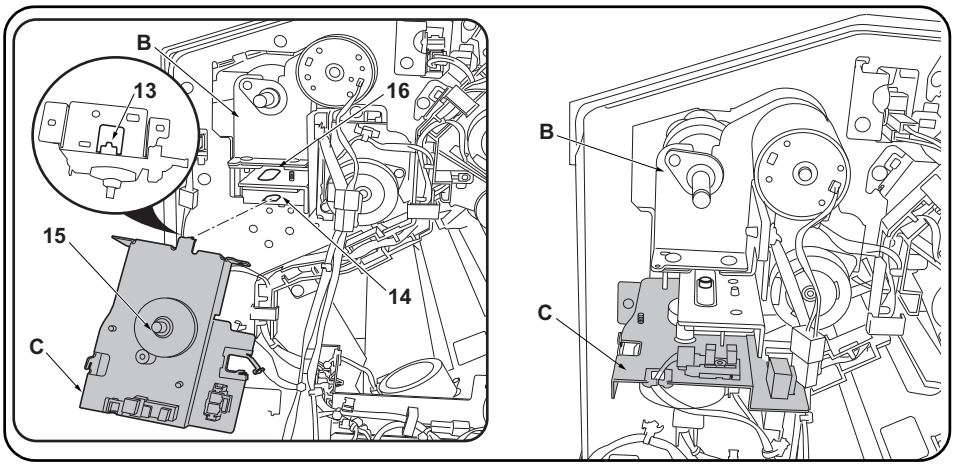
5. 펀치가이드 (A) 의 끝 (11) 이 문서 피니셔의 프레임 (12) 밑으로 되도록 장착합니다 .

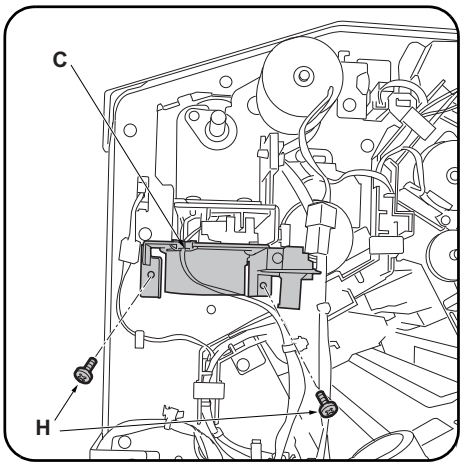
6. 펀치유니트 (B) 를 문서 피니셔에 삽입합니다 .

---

5. パンチガイド (A) の先端 (11) がドキュメントフィニッシャーのフレーム (12) の下になるように取り付ける。

6. パンチユニット (B) をドキュメントフィニッシャーに挿入する。





7. Raise the hole punch unit (B) slightly and fit the hook (13) on the motor unit (C) into the groove (14) in the document finisher. At the same time, insert the rod (15) on the motor unit (C) into the hole (16) in the hole punch unit (B).

8. Secure the motor unit (C) with the 2 screws (H).

---

7. Lever légèrement la perforatrice (B) et insérer le crochet (13) du moteur (C) dans la rainure (14) du retoucheur de document. Insérer en même temps la tige (15) du moteur (C) dans le trou (16) de la perforatrice (B).

8. Fixer le moteur (C) à l'aide de 2 vis (H).

---

7. Levante ligeramente la perforadora (B) y encaje el gancho (13) de la unidad motriz (C) en la ranura (14) del finalizador de documentos. Al mismo tiempo, inserte la varilla (15) de la unidad motriz (C) en el orificio (16) de la perforadora (B).

8. Asegure la unidad motriz (C) con los 2 tornillos (H).

---

7. Die Lochereinheit (B) leicht anheben und den Haken (13) an der Motoreinheit (C) in die Nut (14) des Dokument-Finishers einsetzen. Dabei auch die Stange (15) an der Motoreinheit (C) in die Öffnung (16) der Lochereinheit (B) einstecken.

8. Die Motoreinheit (C) mit den 2 Schrauben (H) sichern.

---

7. Sollevare leggermente l'unità di perforazione (B) ed inserire il gancio (13) sull'unità motore (C) nella scanalatura (14) della finitrice di documenti. Contemporaneamente, inserire l'asta (15) sull'unità motore (C) nel foro (16) dell'unità di perforazione (B).

8. Fissare l'unità motore (C) con le 2 viti (H).

---

7. 稍稍抬起打孔单元 (B)，将电机单元 (C) 的卡扣 (13) 嵌入装订器的沟槽 (14) 内。与此同时，将电机单元 (C) 的轴 (15) 插入打孔单元 (B) 的孔 (16) 中。

8. 使用 2 颗螺丝 (H) 来固定电机单元 (C)。

---

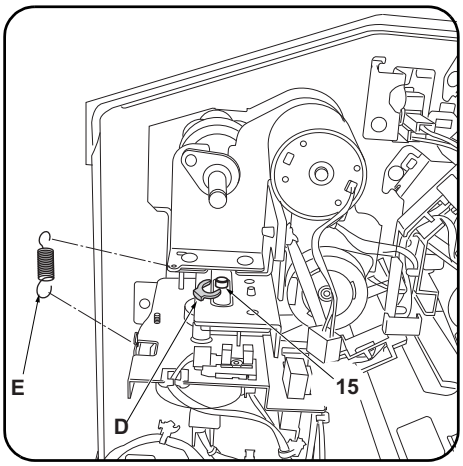
7. 펀치유니트 (B) 를 조금 들면서 모터유니트 (C) 후크 (13) 를 문서 피니셔의 구 (14) 에 꽂습니다 . 이것과 동시에 모터유니트 (C) 의 축 (15) 을 펀치유니트 (B) 구멍 (16) 에 삽입합니다 .

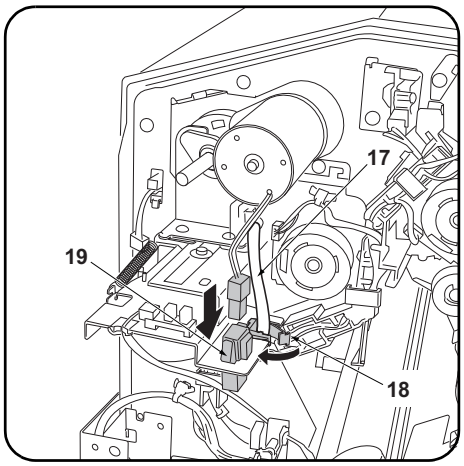
8. 나사 (H) 2 개로 모터유니트 (C) 를 고정합니다 .

---

7. パンチユニット (B) を少し持ち上げながら、モーターユニット (C) のフック (13) をドキュメントフィニッシャーの溝 (14) にはめ込む。これと同時に、モーターユニット (C) の軸 (15) をパンチユニット (B) の穴 (16) に挿入する。

8. ビス (H)2 本で、モーターユニット (C) を固定する。





9. Fit the stop ring (D) over the motor unit rod (15) and fit the spring (E) between the hole punch unit and motor unit.

10. Run the hole punch unit wire (17) through the motor unit edging (18).
11. Plug the wire from the hole punch unit motor into the connector on the motor unit (19).

---

9. Monter la bague d'arrêt (D) sur la tige du moteur (15) et insérer le ressort (E) entre la perforatrice et le moteur.

10. Faire passer le câble de la perforatrice (17) dans le passage de câbles du moteur (18)
11. Raccorder le câble du moteur de la perforatrice au connecteur du moteur (19).

---

9. Coloque el anillo de tope (D) sobre la varilla de la unidad motriz (15) y coloque el resorte (E) entre la perforadora y la unidad motriz.

10. Tienda el cable de la perforadora (17) a través de la pestaña de la unidad motriz (18).
11. Enchufe el cable del motor de la perforadora al conector de la unidad motriz (19).

---

9. Den Anschlagring (D) auf die Stange (15) der Motoreinheit setzen und die Feder (E) zwischen Lochereinheit und Motoreinheit einsetzen.

10. Das Kabel (17) der Lochereinheit durch den Kantenschutz (18) der Motoreinheit führen.
11. Das Kabel vom Motor der Lochereinheit an den Steckverbinder der Motoreinheit (19) anschließen.

---

9. Inserire l'anello di bloccaggio (D) sull'asta (15) dell'unità motore ed inserire molla (E) tra l'unità di perforazione e l'unità motore.

10. Far passare il cavo dell'unità di perforazione (17) attraverso il bordo (18) dell'unità motore.
11. Collegare il cavo dal motore dell'unità di perforazione nel connettore sull'unità motore (19).

---

9. 将止动环 (D) 嵌入到电机单元的轴 (15) 上，在打孔单元与电机单元之间安装弹簧 (E)。

10. 将打孔单元的电线 (17) 穿过电机单元的包边孔 (18)。
11. 将来自打孔单元的电机的电线与电机单元的接插件 (19) 相连接。

---

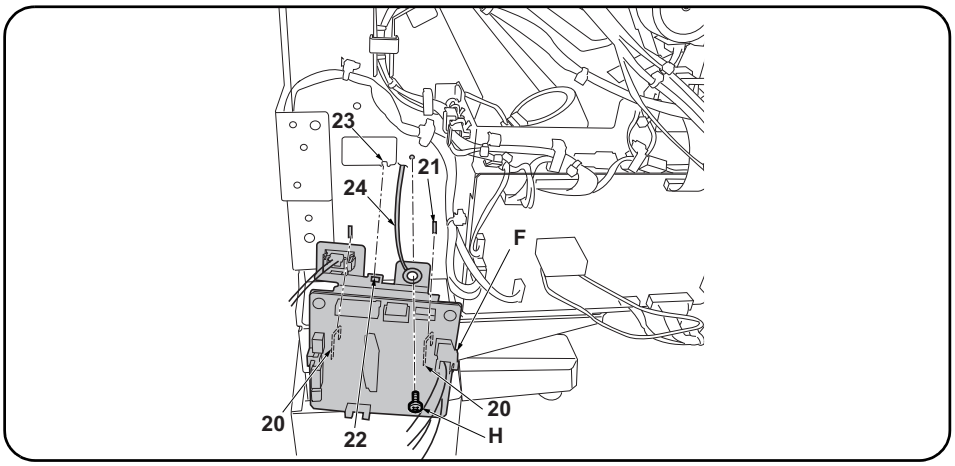
9. 모터유니트 축 (15) 에 스톱링 (D) 을 꽂고 펀치유니트와 모터유니트 사이에 스프링 (E) 을설치합니다 .

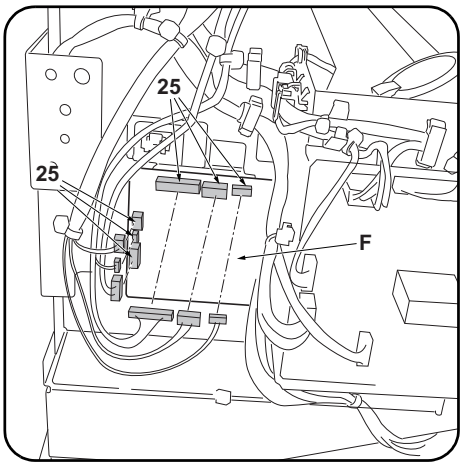
10. 펀치유니트의 전선 (17) 을 모터유니트의 에징 (18) 에 지나가게 합니다 .
11. 펀치유니트 모터에서의 전선을 모터유니트 커넥터 (19) 에 접속합니다 .

---

9. モーターユニットの軸 (15) にストップリング (D) をはめ、パンチユニットとモーターユニットの間にバネ (E) を取り付ける。

10. パンチユニットの電線 (17) をモーターユニットのエッジング (18) に通す。
11. パンチユニットのモーターからの電線をモーターユニットのコネクター(19) に接続する。





Installing the punch PWB and waste hole punch box (DF-770)
If installing on the DF-790/DF-791, proceed to step 12 on page 12.

12. Fit the 2 hooks (20) in the punch PWB (F) into the cut (21) in the document finisher. At the same time, insert the projection (23) on the document finisher into the hole (22) in the punch PWB (F).

13. Using the screw (H), tighten the hole punch unit ground wire (24) and the punch PWB (F) together.

14. Plug the 6 hole punch unit wires into the connectors (25) on the punch PWB (F).

Installation de la PWB de la perforatrice et du bac de récupération de la perforatrice (DF-770).
Pour une installation sur le modèle DF-790/DF-791, passer à l'étape 12 en page 12.

12. Insérer les 2 crochets (20) de la PWB de la perforatrice (F) dans la découpe (21) du retoucheur de document. Insérer en même temps la saillie (23) du retoucheur de document dans le trou (22) de la PWB de la perforatrice (F).

13. Fixer le câble de terre de la perforatrice (24) à la PWB de la perforatrice (F) à l'aide d'une vis (H).

14. Raccorder les 6 câbles de la perforatrice aux connecteurs (25) de la PWB de la perforatrice (F).

Instalación del PWB de perforación y la caja para desechos de la perforación (DF-770)
Si realiza la instalación en el DF-790/DF-791, vaya al paso 12 de la página 12.

12. Coloque los 2 ganchos (20) del PWB de perforación (F) en el corte (21) del finalizador de documentos. Al mismo tiempo, inserte el resalto (23) del finalizador de documentos en el orificio (22) del PWB de perforación (F).

13. Usando el tornillo (H), apriete juntos el cable de conexión a tierra de la perforadora (24) y el PWB de perforación (F).

14. Enchufe los 6 cables de la perforadora a los conectores (25) del PWB de perforación (F).

Installation der Locher-PWB und des Lochungsabfallbehälters (DF-770)
Zur Installation des DF-790/DF-791 weitergehen zu Schritt 12 auf Seite 12.

12. Die 2 Haken (20) in der Locher-PWB (F) in die Aussparung (21) am Dokument-Finisher einsetzen. Dabei auch den Vorsprung (23) am Dokument-Finisher in die Öffnung (22) auf der Locher-PWB (F) einsetzen.

13. Mit der Schraube (H) das Massekabel (24) der Lochereinheit an der Locher-PWB (F) festziehen.

14. Die 6 Kabel der Lochereinheit an die Steckverbinder (25) der Locher-PWB (F) anschließen.

Installazione della scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione e dello scarto perforazione (DF-770)
Se si installa sull'unità DF-790/DF-791, procedere al passo 12 a pagina 12.

12. Inserire i 2 ganci (20) della scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (F) nell'intaglio (21) della finitrice di documenti. Contemporaneamente, inserire la sporgenza (23) sulla finitrice di documenti nel foro (22) della scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (F).

13. Utilizzando la vite (H), stringere insieme il cavo di terra (24) dell'unità di perforazione e la scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (F).

14. Collegare i 6 cavi dell'unità di perforazione nei connettori (25) sulla scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (F).

安装电路板与打孔纸屑盒（DF-770 时）
安装到 DF-790/DF-791 上时，跳至 P12 的步骤 12。

12. 将打孔电路板 (F) 的 2 个卡扣 (20) 挂在装订器的缺口 (21) 上。同时，将打孔电路板 (F) 的孔 (22) 卡入装订器的突出部 (23)。

13. 使用 1 颗螺丝 (H) 将打孔单元的接地线 (24) 与打孔电路板 (F) 一起固定。

14. 将打孔单元的 6 根电线与打孔电路板 (F) 的接插件 (25) 相连接。

기판과 펀치폐기박스의 부착 (DF-770 의 경우)
DF-790/DF-791 에 장착하는 경우에는 P12 의 순서 12 로 진행합니다 .

12. 펀치기판 (F) 의 후크 (20) 2 곳을 문서 피니셔의 구멍 (21) 에 겁니다 . 동시에 펀치기판 (F) 구멍 (22) 을 문서 피니셔의 돌기 (23) 에 넣습니다 .

13. 나사 (H) 1 개로 펀치유니트의 접지선 (24) 과 펀치기판 (F) 을 함께 조입니다 .

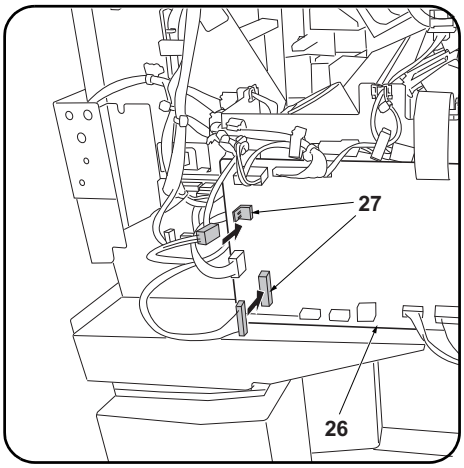
14. 펀치유니트의 전선 6 선을 펀치기판 (F) 커넥터 (25) 에 접속합니다 .

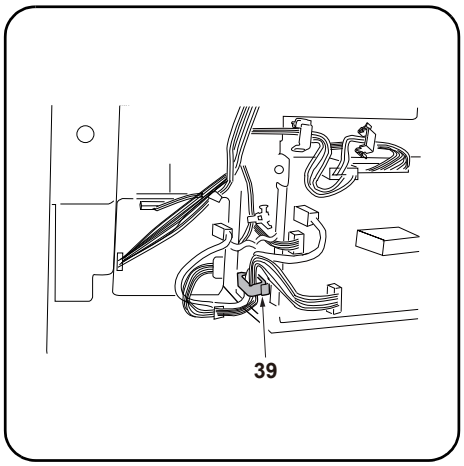
基板とパンチくずボックスの取り付け（DF-770 の場合）
DF-790/DF-791 に装着の場合は、P12 の手順 12 へ進む。

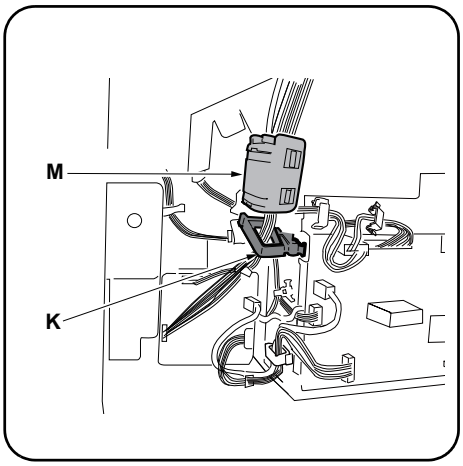
12. パンチ基板 (F) のフック (20)2 箇所をドキュメントフィニッシャーの切り欠き (21) に引っ掛ける。同時に、パンチ基板 (F) の穴 (22) をドキュメントフィニッシャーの突起 (23) に入れる。

13. ビス (H)1 本で、パンチユニットのアース線 (24) とパンチ基板 (F) を共締めする。

14. パンチユニットの電線 6 本を、パンチ基板 (F) のコネクター(25) に接続する。







15. Plug the 2 punch PWB wires into the connectors (27) on the DF main PWB (26).

16. Fasten two wires which were connected in step 15 with the clamp (39).

17. Install the small clamp (K) on the finisher, then pass and fasten the wires from the motor unit and hole punch unit.
18. Attach the ferrite core (M) to the wire.

---

15. Raccorder les 2 câbles de la PWB de la perforatrice aux connecteurs (27) de la PWB principale du DF (26).

16. Attacher les deux fils qui ont été connectés à l'étape 15 avec le collier (39).

17. Monter le petit collier (K) sur le retoucheur puis faire passer les câbles du moteur et de la perforatrice dans ce collier pour les fixer en place.
18. Fixer le noyau en ferrite (M) au câble.

---

15. Enchufe los 2 cables del PWB de perforación a los conectores (27) del PWB principal del DF (26).

16. Apriete los dos cables que conectó en el paso 15 con la abrazadera (39).

17. Instale el sujetador pequeño (K) en el finalizador, después tienda y ajuste los cables de la unidad motriz y la perforadora.
18. Fije el núcleo de ferrita (M) al cable.

---

15. Die 2 Kabel der Locher-PWB an die Steckverbinder (27) der DF-Haupt-PWB (26) anschließen.

16. Befestigen Sie die beiden Kabel, die in Schritt 15 verbunden wurden, mit der Schelle (39).

17. Die kleine Klemme (K) am Finisher anbringen, dann die Kabel von der Motoreinheit und der Lochereinheit hindurchführen und befestigen.
18. Den Ferritkern (M) am Kabel befestigen.

---

15. Collegare i 2 cavi della scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione nei connettori (27) sulla scheda principale PWB (26) della DF.

16. Fissare i due cavi collegati al punto 15 con il morsetto (39).

17. Installare il morsetto piccolo (K) sul finitore, e quindi passare e fissare i cavi dall'unità motore e dall'unità di perforazione.
18. Applicare il nucleo in ferrite (M) al cavo.

---

15. 将打孔电路板的 2 根电线与 DF 主电路板 (26) 的接插件 (27) 连接。

16. 使用固定夹 (39) 来固定步骤 15 中连接的 2 根电线。

17. 把小固定夹 (K) 安装在装订器上，从电机单元和打孔单元出来的导线穿过固定夹来固定。
18. 用磁环 (M) 套住导线。

---

15. 펀치기판의 전선 2 선을 DF 주 회로기판 (26) 의 커넥터 (27) 에 접속합니다 .

16. 순서 15 로 접속한 2 개의 전선을 클램프 (39) 로 고정해 주십시오 .

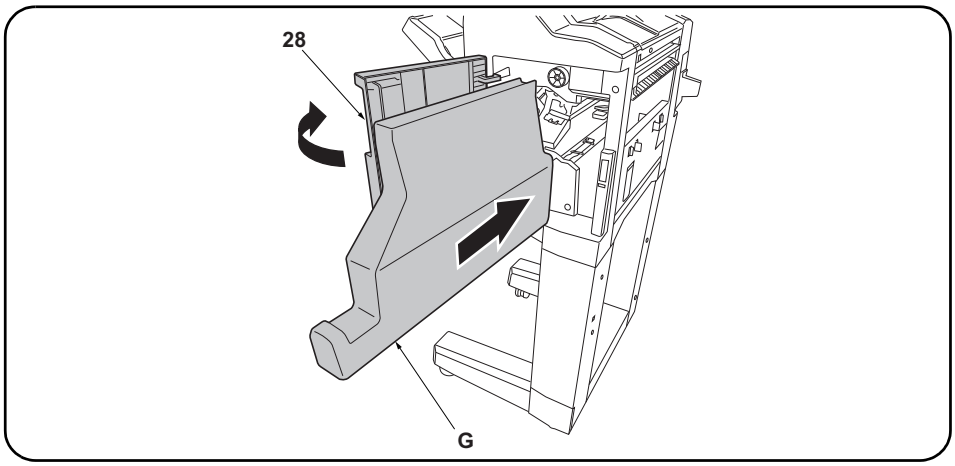
17. 클램프 소 (K) 를 피니셔에 장착 , 모터 유니트와 펀치 유니트에서부터 전선을 통과시키고 고정합니다 .
18. 페라이트 코어 (M) 를 전선으로 장착합니다 .

---

15. パンチ基板の電線 2 本を DF 主回路基板 (26) のコネクター(27) に接続する。

16. 手順 15 で接続した 2 本の電線をクランプ (39) で固定する。

17. クランプ小(K)をフィニッシャーに取り付け、モーターユニットとパンチユニットからの電線を通し、固定する。
18. フェライトコア(M)を電線に取り付ける。



19. Replace the upper rear cover (4) and small rear cover (2).

20. Open the upper front cover (28) and insert the waste hole punch box (G).

---

19. Reposer le couvercle supérieur arrière (4) et le petit couvercle arrière (2).

20. Ouvrir le couvercle supérieur avant (28) et insérer le bac de récupération de la perforatrice (G).

---

19. Vuelva a colocar la cubierta trasera superior (4) y la cubierta trasera pequeña (2).

20. Abra la cubierta delantera superior (28) e inserte la caja para desechos de la perforación (G).

---

19. Die obere hintere Abdeckung (4) und die kleine hintere Abdeckung (2) wieder einsetzen.

20. Die obere vordere Abdeckung (28) öffnen und den Lochungsabfallbehälter (G) einsetzen.

---

19. Ricollocare il pannello superiore posteriore (4) e il pannello posteriore piccolo (2).

20. Aprire il pannello superiore anteriore (28) ed inserire lo scarto perforazione (G).

---

19. 按原样安装后上部盖板 (4) 与后部小盖板 (2)。

20. 打开前上部盖板 (28)，插入打孔纸屑盒 (G)。

---

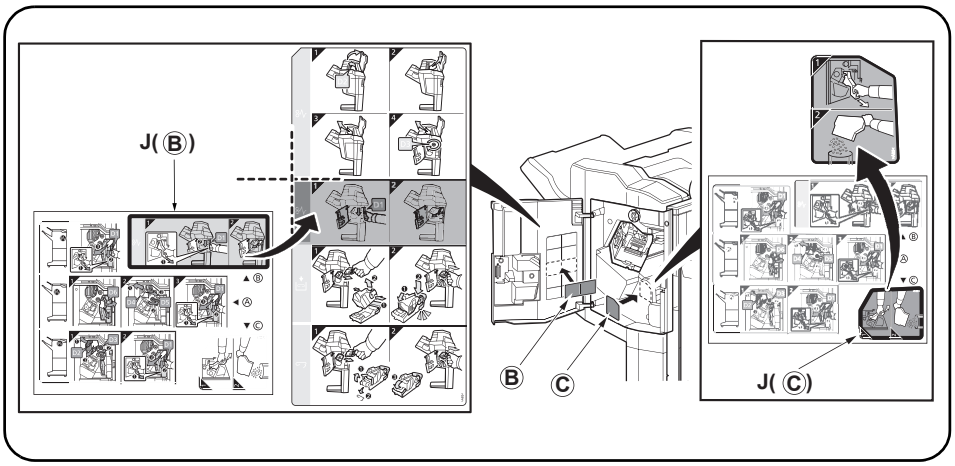
19. 뒷 상커버 (4) 와 후 소커버 (2) 를 원래대로 부착합니다 .

20. 앞 상커버 (28) 를 열고 펀치폐기박스 (G) 를 삽입합니다 .

---

19. 後上カバー(4) と後小カバー(2) を元通り取り付ける。

20. 前上カバー(28) を開き、パンチくずボックス (G) を挿入する。



21. After cleaning each area with alcohol, adhere the following labels from the label sheet (J) at the locations shown in the illustration: B, C.

22. Close the upper front cover (28).

---

21. Après avoir nettoyé chaque zone à l'alcool, apposer les étiquettes suivantes du feuillet d'étiquettes (J) aux emplacements indiqués dans l'illustration : B, C.

22. Fermer le couvercle supérieur avant (28).

---

21. Después de limpiar todas las zonas con alcohol, despegue de la hoja de etiquetas (J) las etiquetas siguientes, y péguelas en los sitios que se indican en la ilustración: B, C.

22. Cierre la cubierta delantera superior (28).

---

21. Nachdem Sie alle Flächen mit Alkohol gereinigt haben, kleben Sie bitte die folgenden Aufkleber vom Aufkleberbogen (J) an die in der Abbildung angegebenen Stellen: B, C.

22. Die obere vordere Abdeckung (28) schließen.

---

21. Dopo aver pulito ciascuna zona con alcol, applicare le seguenti etichette del foglio di etichette (J) sui punti mostrati nell'illustrazione: B, C.

22. Chiudere il pannello superiore anteriore (28).

---

21. 用酒精清洁各区域后，请在如图所示位置粘贴从标签纸上（J）撕下的下列标签：B、C。

22. 关闭前上部盖板（28）。

---

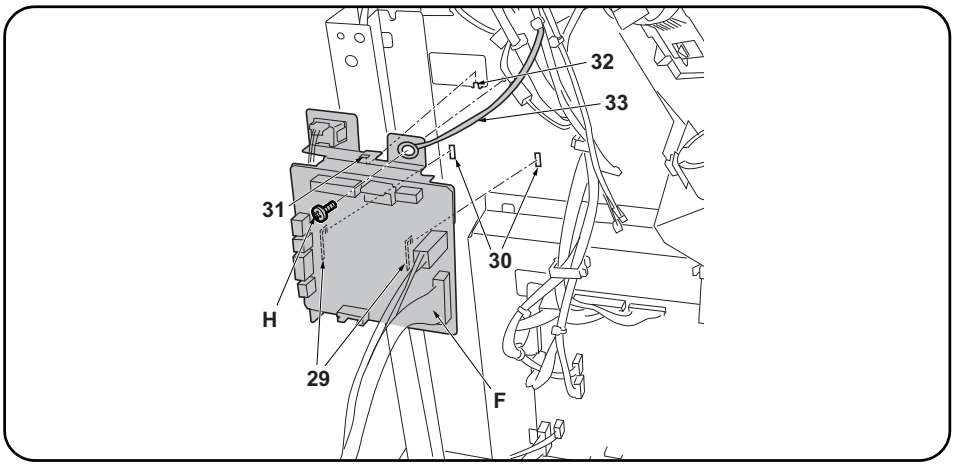
21. 라벨 시트 (J) 내의 하기 라벨을 일러스트의 위치에 알코올청소 후 붙입니다 : B, C .

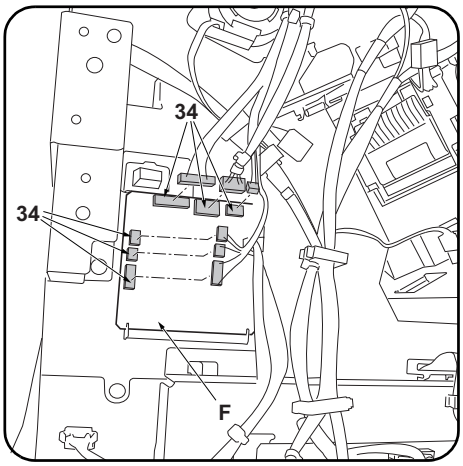
22. 앞 상커버 (28) 를 닫습니다 .

---

21. ラベルシート（J）内の B、C をイラストの位置にアルコール清掃後貼り付ける。

22. 前上カバー（28）を閉じる。





Installing the punch PWB and waste hole punch box (DF-790/DF-791)

12. Fit the 2 hooks (29) in the punch PWB (F) into the cut (30) in the document finisher. At the same time, insert the projection (32) on the document finisher into the hole (31) in the punch PWB (F).

13. Using the screw (H), tighten the hole punch unit ground wire (33) and the punch PWB (F) together.

14. Plug the 6 hole punch unit wires into the connectors (34) on the punch PWB (F).

Installation de la PWB de la perforatrice et du bac de récupération de la perforatrice (DF-790/DF-791).

12. Insérer les 2 crochets (29) de la PWB de la perforatrice (F) dans la découpe (30) du retoucheur de document. Insérer en même temps la saillie (32) du retoucheur de document dans le trou (31) de la PWB de la perforatrice (F).

13. Fixer le câble de terre de la perforatrice (33) à la PWB de la perforatrice (F) à l'aide d'une vis (H).

14. Raccorder les 6 câbles de la perforatrice aux connecteurs (34) de la PWB de la perforatrice (F).

Instalación del PWB de perforación y la caja para desechos de la perforación (DF-790/DF-791)

12. Coloque los 2 ganchos (29) del PWB de perforación (F) en el corte (30) del finalizador de documentos. Al mismo tiempo, inserte el resalto (32) del finalizador de documentos en el orificio (31) del PWB de perforación (F).

13. Usando el tornillo (H), apriete juntos el cable de conexión a tierra de la perforadora (33) y el PWB de perforación (F).

14. Enchufe los 6 cables de la perforadora a los conectores (34) del PWB de perforación (F).

Installation der Locher-PWB und des Lochungsabfallbehälters (DF-790/DF-791)

12. Die 2 Haken (29) in der Locher-PWB (F) in die Aussparung (30) am Dokument-Finisher einsetzen. Dabei auch den Vorsprung (32) am Dokument-Finisher in die Öffnung (31) auf der Locher-PWB (F) einsetzen.

13. Mit der Schraube (H) das Massekabel (33) der Lochereinheit an der Locher-PWB (F) festziehen.

14. Die 6 Kabel der Lochereinheit an die Steckverbinder (34) der Locher-PWB (F) anschließen.

Installazione della scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione e dello scarto perforazione (DF-790/DF-791)

12. Inserire i 2 ganci (29) della scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (F) nell'intaglio (30) della finitrice di documenti. Contemporaneamente, inserire la sporgenza (32) sulla finitrice di documenti nel foro (31) della scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (F).

13. Utilizzando la vite (H), stringere insieme il cavo di terra (33) dell'unità di perforazione e la scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (F).

14. Collegare i 6 cavi dell'unità di perforazione nei connettori (34) sulla scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (F).

安装电路板与打孔纸屑盒（DF-790/DF-791 时）

12. 将打孔电路板 (F) 的 2 个卡扣 (29) 挂在装订器的缺口 (30) 上。同时，将打孔电路板 (F) 的孔 (31) 卡入装订器的突出部 (32)。

13. 使用 1 颗螺丝 (H) 将打孔单元的接地线 (33) 与打孔电路板 (F) 一起固定。

14. 将打孔单元的 6 根电线与打孔电路板 (F) 的接插件 (34) 相连接。

기판과 펀치폐기박스의 부착 (DF-790/DF-791 의 경우)

12. 펀치기판 (F) 의 후크 (29) 2 곳을 문서 피니셔의 구멍 (30) 에 겁니다 . 동시에 펀치기판 (F) 구멍 (31) 을 문서 피니셔의 돌기 (32) 에 넣습니다 .

13. 나사 (H) 1 개로 펀치유니트의 접지선 (33) 과 펀치기판 (F) 을 함께 조입니다 .

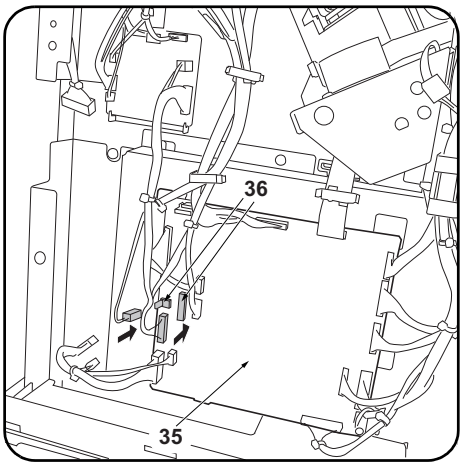
14. 펀치유니트의 전선 6 선을 펀치기판 (F) 커넥터 (34) 에 접속합니다 .

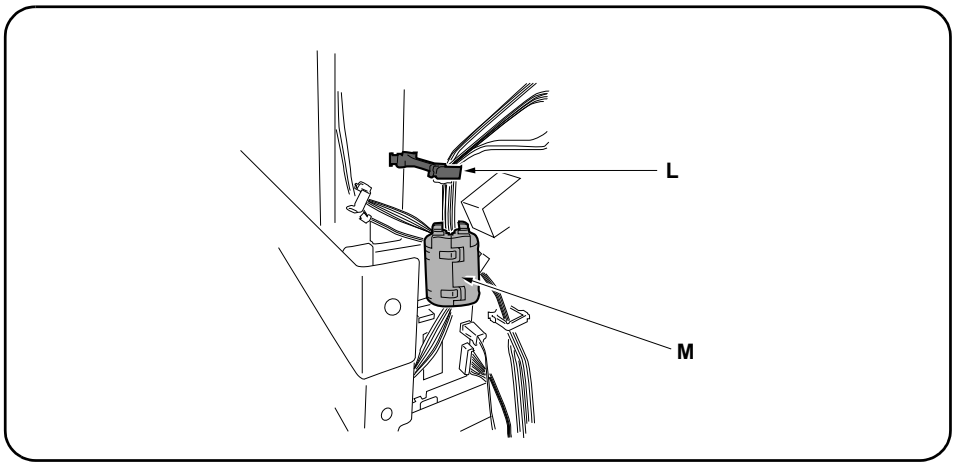
基板とパンチくずボックスの取り付け(DF-790/DF-791 の場合)

12. パンチ基板 (F) のフック (29)2 箇所をドキュメントフィニッシャーの切り欠き (30) に引っ掛ける。同時に、パンチ基板 (F) の穴 (31) をドキュメントフィニッシャーの突起 (32) に入れる。

13. ビス (H)1 本で、パンチユニットのアース線 (33) とパンチ基板 (F) を共締めする。

14. パンチユニットの電線 6 本を、パンチ基板 (F) のコネクター(34) に接続する。





15. Plug the 2 punch PWB wires into the connectors (36) on the DF main PWB (35).

16. Install the small clamp (L) on the finisher, then pass and fasten the wires from the motor unit and hole punch unit.
17. Attach the ferrite core (M) to the wire.

---

15. Raccorder les 2 câbles de la PWB de la perforatrice aux connecteurs (36) de la PWB principale du DF (35).

16. Installer le grand collier (L) sur le retoucheur puis faire passer les câbles du moteur et de la perforatrice dans ce collier pour les fixer en place.
17. Fixer le noyau en ferrite (M) au câble.

---

15. Enchufe los 2 cables del PWB de perforación a los conectores (36) del PWB principal del DF (35).

16. Instale el sujetador grande (L) en el finalizador, después tienda y ajuste los cables de la unidad motriz y la perforadora.
17. Fije el núcleo de ferrita (M) al cable.

---

15. Die 2 Kabel der Locher-PWB an die Steckverbinder (36) der DF-Haupt-PWB (35) anschließen.

16. Die große Klemme (L) am Finisher anbringen, dann die Kabel von der Motoreinheit und der Lochereinheit hindurchführen und befestigen.
17. Den Ferritkern (M) am Kabel befestigen.

---

15. Collegare i 2 cavi della scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione nei connettori (36) sulla scheda principale PWB (35) della DF.

16. Installare il morsetto grante (L) sul finitore, e quindi passare e fissare i cavi dall'unità motore e dall'unità di perforazione.
17. Applicare il nucleo in ferrite (M) al cavo.

---

15. 将打孔电路板的 2 根电线与 DF 主电路板 (35) 的接插件 (36) 连接。

16. 把大固定夹 (L) 安装在装订器上，从电机单元和打孔单元出来的导线穿过固定夹来固定。
17. 用磁环 (M) 套住导线。

---

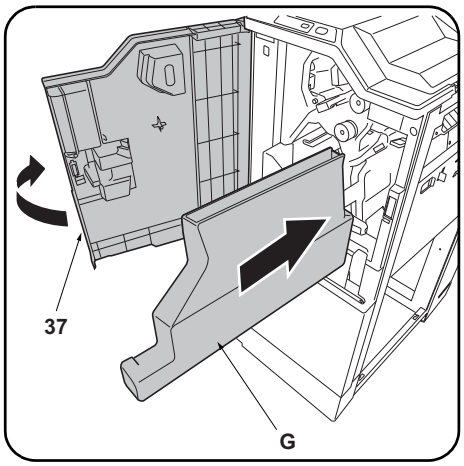
15. 펀치기판의 전선 2 선을 DF 주 회로기판 (35) 의 커넥터 (36) 에 접속합니다 .

16. 클램프 대 (L) 를 피니셔에 장착 , 모터 유니트와 펀치 유니트에서부터 전선을 통과시키고 고정합니다 .
17. 페라이트 코어 (M) 를 전선으로 장착합니다 .

---

15. パンチ基板の電線 2 本を DF 主回路基板 (35) のコネクター(36) に接続する。

16. クランプ大(L)をフィニッシャーに取り付け、モーターユニットとパンチユニットからの電線を通し、固定する。
17. フェライトコア(M)を電線に取り付ける。



18. Replace the upper rear cover (8) and small rear cover (6).

19. Open the upper front cover (37) and insert the waste hole punch box (G).

---

18. Reposer le couvercle supérieur arrière (8) et le petit couvercle arrière (6).

19. Ouvrir le couvercle supérieur avant (37) et insérer le bac de récupération de la perforatrice (G).

---

18. Vuelva a colocar la cubierta trasera superior (8) y la cubierta trasera pequeña (6).

19. Abra la cubierta delantera superior (37) e inserte la caja para desechos de la perforación (G).

---

18. Die obere hintere Abdeckung (8) und die kleine hintere Abdeckung (6) wieder einsetzen.

19. Die obere vordere Abdeckung (37) öffnen und den Lochungsabfallbehälter (G) einsetzen.

---

18. Ricollocare il pannello superiore posteriore (8) e il pannello posteriore piccolo (6).

19. Aprire il pannello superiore anteriore (37) ed inserire lo scarto perforazione (G).

---

18. 按原样安装后上部盖板 (8) 与后部小盖板 (6)。

19. 打开前上部盖板 (37)，插入打孔纸屑盒 (G)。

---

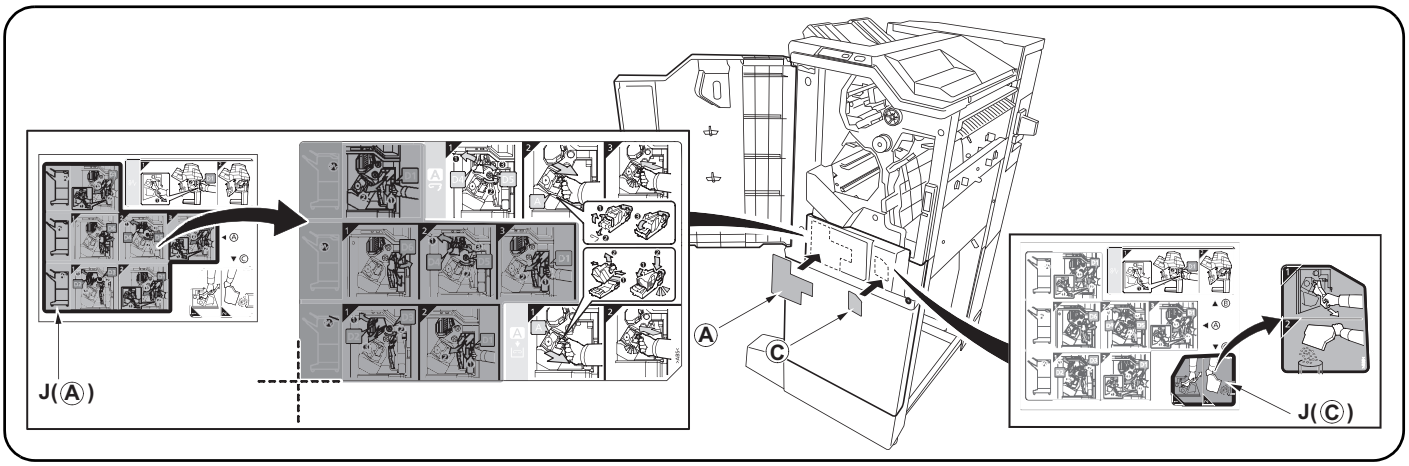
18. 뒷 상커버 (8) 와 후 소커버 (6) 를 원래대로 부착합니다 .

19. 앞 상커버 (37) 를 열고 펀치폐기박스 (G) 를 삽입합니다 .

---

18. 後上カバー(8) と後小カバー(6) を元通り取り付ける。

19. 前上カバー(37) を開き、パンチくずボックス (G) を挿入する。



20. After cleaning each area with alcohol, adhere the following labels from the label sheet (J) at the locations shown in the illustration: A, C.
21. Close the upper front cover (37).

---

20. Après avoir nettoyé chaque zone à l'alcool, apposer les étiquettes suivantes du feuillet d'étiquettes (J) aux emplacements indiqués dans l'illustration : A, C.
21. Fermer le couvercle supérieur avant (37).

---

20. Después de limpiar todas las zonas con alcohol, despegue de la hoja de etiquetas (J) las etiquetas siguientes, y péguelas en los sitios que se indican en la ilustración: A, C.
21. Cierre la cubierta delantera superior (37).

---

20. Nachdem Sie alle Flächen mit Alkohol gereinigt haben, kleben Sie bitte die folgenden Aufkleber vom Aufkleberbogen (J) an die in der Abbildung angegebenen Stellen: A, C.
21. Die obere vordere Abdeckung (37) schließen.

---

20. Dopo aver pulito ciascuna zona con alcol, applicare le seguenti etichette del foglio di etichette (J) sui punti mostrati nell'illustrazione: A, C.
21. Chiudere il pannello superiore anteriore (37).

---

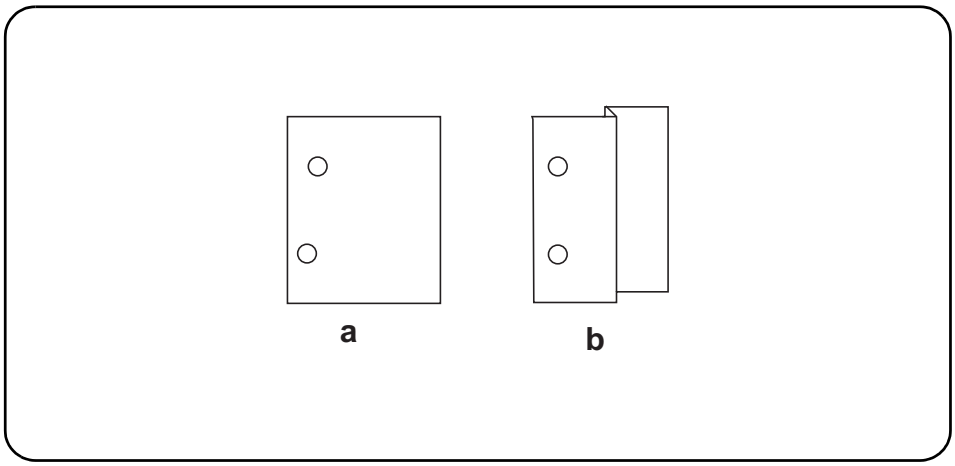
20. 用酒精清洁各区域后，请在如图所示位置粘贴从标签纸上（J）撕下的下列标签：A、C。
21. 关闭前上部盖板（37）。

---

20. 라벨 시트 (J) 내의 하기 라벨을 일러스트의 위치에 알코올청소 후 붙입니다:A, C .
21. 앞 상커버 (37) 를 닫습니다 .

---

20. ラベルシート（J）内の A、C をイラストの位置にアルコール清掃後貼り付ける。
21. 前上カバー(37) を閉じる。



[Adjusting the hole punch position]

1. Connect the MFP power plug to the wall outlet and turn the MFP main power switch on.
2. Make a test copy in punch mode.
3. If any off-centering is observed, follow the procedure below to adjust the hole position.

Adjusting the hole punch entry registration

1. Enter the maintenance mode U246, select Finisher and Punch Regist.
2. Adjust the values.
   When the paper fed in skewed copy example (a): Increase the setting value.
   When the paper crimped copy example (b): Decrease the setting value.
3. Press the Start key to confirm the setting value.

[Réglage de la position des perforations]

1. Insérer la fiche d'alimentation du MFP dans la prise murale et mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP sous tension.
2. Effectuer une copie d'essai en mode perforation.
3. Si les perforations sont décentrées, suivre la procédure ci-dessous pour ajuster la position de perforation.

Réglage de l'enregistrement de l'entrée des perforations

1. Passer en mode maintenance U246, sélectionner Finisher et Punch Regist.
2. Régler les valeurs.
   Si le papier est alimenté de travers exemple de copie (a): Augmentez la valeur de réglage.
   Si le papier est froissé exemple de copie (b): Diminuez la valeur de réglage.
3. Appuyer sur la touche de Start pour confirmer la valeur de réglage.

[Ajuste de la posición de perforación]

1. Conecte el enchufe del MFP en el receptáculo de pared y encienda el interruptor principal del MFP.
2. Haga una copia de prueba en el modo de perforación.
3. Si observa descentrado, siga el procedimiento de abajo para ajustar la posición del agujero.

Ajuste del registro de entrada de perforación

1. Entre en el modo de mantenimiento U246, seleccione Finisher y Punch Regist.
2. Ajuste los valores.
   Cuando el papel alimentado está torcido copia de muestra (a): Aumente el valor de configuración.
   Cuando el papel se dobló copia de muestra (b): Reduzca el valor de configuración.
3. Pulse la tecla de Start para confirmar el valor de configuración.

[Einstellen der Lochungsposition]

1. Stecken Sie den Netzstecker des MFP in die Wandsteckdose und schalten Sie den MFP am Hauptschalter ein.
2. Eine Testkopie im Lochungsmodus erstellen.
3. Falls eine außermittige Lochung erfolgte, ist die Lochungsposition wie folgend nachzustellen.

Einstellen der Lochungsregistrierung

1. Schalten Sie in den Wartungsmodus U246, wählen Sie Finisher und Punch Regist.
2. Die Werte einstellen.
   Wenn Papier verkantet eingezogen wird Kopiebeispiel (a): Den Einstellwert erhöhen.
   Wenn Papier verknittert wird Kopiebeispiel (b): Den Einstellwert verringern.
3. Den Einstellwert durch Drücken der Start-Taste bestätigen.

[Regolazione di posizione dei fori di perforazione]

1. Collegare la spina del cavo di alimentazione dell'MFP alla presa a muro della rete elettrica e accendere l'interruttore principale di alimentazione.
2. Eseguire una copia di prova in modalità di perforazione.
3. Nel caso in cui non lo siano, eseguire la procedura indicata qui di seguito per regolarne la posizione.

Regolazione del registro del foro di perforazione

1. Entrare in modalità manutenzione U246, selezionare Finisher e Punch Regist.
2. Regolare i valori.
   Quando l'alimentazione della carta risulta obliqua esempio di copia (a): Aumentare il valore dell'impostazione.
   Quando la carta risulta increspata esempio di copia (b): Diminuire il valore dell'impostazione.
3. Premere il tasto di Start per confermare il valore dell'impostazione.

[打孔位置的调节]

1. 将 MFP 主机上的电源插头插入电源插座中，打开主电源开关。
2. 在打孔模式下进行测试复印。
3. 打孔位置有偏差时，按以下步骤进行调节。

打孔装入定位调节

1. 设置维护模式 U246，选择 Finisher、Punch Regist。
2. 调整设定值。
   纸张斜向搬运时的复印样本 (a)：调高设定值。
   纸张作 Z 字折时的复印样本 (b)：调低设定值。
3. 按 Start 键，以确定设定值。

[펀치위치의 조정]

1. MFP 본체 전원플러그를 콘센트에 꽂고 주 전원 스위치를 ON 으로 합니다 .
2. 펀치모드에서 시험복사를 합니다 .
3. 펀치위치가 벗어난 경우에는 다음 순서로 조정합니다 .

펀치반입 레지스트 조정

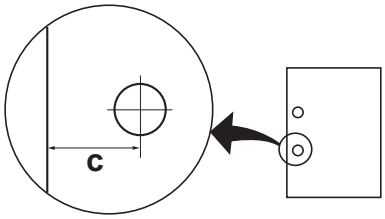
1. 메인터넌스 모드 U246 를 세트하고 Finisher, Punch Regist 를 선택합니다 .
2. 설정치를 조정합니다 .
   용지가 경사로 반송되는 경우의 복사샘플 (a):설정치를 높입니다 .
   용지가 Z 꺾임이 있는 경의 복사샘플 (b):설정치를 내립니다 .
3. 시작키를 누르고 설정치를 확인합니다 .

[パンチ位置の調整]

1. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、主電源スイッチを ON にする。
2. パンチモードでテストコピーを行う。
3. パンチ位置がずれていた場合、次の手順で調整を行う。

パンチ搬入レジスト調整

1. メンテナンスモード U246 をセットし、Finisher、Punch Regist を選択する。
2. 設定値を調整する。
   用紙が斜めに搬送される場合コピーサンプル (a):設定値を上げる。
   用紙が Z 折れする場合コピーサンプル (b):設定値を下げる。
3. スタートキーを押し、設定値を確定する。



Adjusting the hole punch position feed

1. Enter the maintenance mode U246, select Finisher and Punch Feed.

2. Adjust the values.
If the punch hole position is closer to the edge than the reference value (c): Increase the setting value.
If the punch hole position is further from the edge than the reference value (c): Decrease the setting value.

3. Press the Start key to confirm the setting value.
<Reference value (c)>
Metric specification: 13 mm; Inch specification: 9.5 mm

Réglage de la position du point de perforation

1. Passer en mode maintenance U246, sélectionner Finisher et Punch Feed.

2. Régler les valeurs.
Si la perforation est plus proche du bord de la feuille que défini par la valeur de référence (c): Augmentez la valeur de réglage.
Si la perforation est plus loin du bord de la feuille que défini par la valeur de référence (c): Diminuez la valeur de réglage.

3. Appuyer sur la touche de Start pour confirmer la valeur de réglage.
<Valeur de référence (c)>
Spécifications métriques: 13 mm; Spécifications en pouces: 9,5 mm

---

Ajuste de la alimentación de la posición de perforación

1. Entre en el modo de mantenimiento U246, seleccione Finisher y Punch Feed.

2. Ajuste los valores.
Si la posición de perforación está más cerca del borde que el valor de referencia (c): Aumente el valor de configuración.
Si la posición de perforación está más alejada del borde que el valor de referencia (c): Reduzca el valor de configuración.

3. Pulse la tecla de Start para confirmar el valor de configuración.
<Valor de referencia (c)>
Sistema métrico: 13 mm; en pulgadas: 9,5 mm

Einstellen des Transports der Lochungsposition

1. Schalten Sie in den Wartungsmodus U246, wählen Sie Finisher und Punch Feed.

2. Die Werte einstellen.
Falls die Lochungsposition näher an der Kante liegt als der Bezugswert (c) erlaubt: Den Einstellwert erhöhen.
Falls die Lochungsposition ferner von der Kante liegt als der Bezugswert (c) erlaubt: Den Einstellwert verringern.

3. Den Einstellwert durch Drücken der Start-Taste bestätigen.
<Bezugswert (c)>
Metrischer Abstand: 13 mm; Abstand in Zoll: 9,5 mm

Regolazione spostamento di posizione dei fori di perforazione

1. Entrare in modalità manutenzione U246, selezionare Finisher e Punch Feed.

2. Regolare i valori.
Se la posizione dei fori di perforazione è più vicina al bordo rispetto al valore di riferimento (c): Aumentare il valore dell'impostazione.
Se la posizione dei fori di perforazione è più lontana dal bordo rispetto al valore di riferimento (c): Diminuire il valore dell'impostazione.

3. Premere il tasto di Start per confermare il valore dell'impostazione.
<Valore di riferimento (c)>
Specificazione in unità metrica: 13 mm; Specificazione in pollici: 9,5 mm

---

打孔位置搬运调节

1. 设置维护模式 U246，选择 Finisher、Punch Feed。
2. 调整设定值。
打孔位置比基准值 (c) 短时: 调高设定值。
打孔位置比基准值 (c) 长时: 调低设定值。

3. 按 Start 键，以确定设定值。
＜基准值 (c) ＞
公制规格: 13㎜、英制规格: 9.5㎜

펀치위치 반송조정

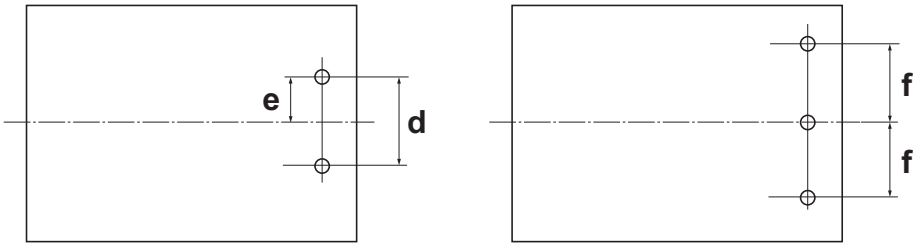
1. 메인터넌스 모드 U246 를 세트하고 Finisher, Punch Feed 를 선택합니다 .
2. 설정치를 조정합니다 .
펀치구멍의 위치가 기준치 (c) 보다 짧은 경우:설정치를 높입니다 .
펀치구멍의 위치가 기준치 (c) 보다 긴 경우:설정치를 내립니다 .

3. 시작키를 누르고 설정치를 확인합니다 .
＜기준치 (c) ＞
센치사양:13mm, 인치사양:9.5mm

パンチ位置搬送調整

1. メンテナンスモード U246 をセットし、Finisher、Punch Feed を選択する。
2. 設定値を調整する。
パンチ穴の位置が基準値 (c) より短い場合:設定値を上げる。
パンチ穴の位置が基準値 (c) より長い場合:設定値を下げる。

3. スタートキーを押し、設定値を確定する。
＜基準値 (c) ＞
センチ仕様:13㎜、インチ仕様:9.5㎜



Centering the hole punch position

1. Enter the maintenance mode U246, select Finisher and Punch Width.

2. Adjust the values.
If the punch hole is too close to the front of the machine: Decrease the setting value.
If the punch hole is too close to the rear of the machine: Increase the setting value.

3. Press the Start key to confirm the setting value.
<Reference value>
Metric specification: d = 80 mm ± 0.5, e = 40 mm ± 2
Inch specification: d = 2.75 inch ± 0.5, e = 1.375 inch ± 2,
f = 4.25 inch ± 0.5

Centrage de la position de perforation

1. Passer en mode maintenance U246, sélectionner Finisher et Punch Width.

2. Régler les valeurs.
Si la perforation est trop proche de l'avant de la machine: Diminuez la valeur de réglage.
Si la perforation est trop proche de l'arrière de la machine: Augmentez la valeur de réglage.

3. Appuyer sur la touche de Start pour confirmer la valeur de réglage.
<Valeur de référence>
Spécifications métriques: d = 80 mm ± 0,5, e = 40 mm ± 2
Spécifications en pouces: d = 2,75 pouces ± 0,5, e = 1,375 pouces ± 2,
f = 4.25 pouces ± 0,5

Centrado de la posición de perforación

1. Entre en el modo de mantenimiento U246, seleccione Finisher y Punch Width.

2. Ajuste los valores.
Si la perforación se encuentra demasiado cerca del frente de la máquina: Reduzca el valor de configuración.
Si la perforación se encuentra demasiado cerca de la parte trasera de la máquina: Aumente el valor de configuración.

3. Pulse la tecla de Start para confirmar el valor de configuración.
<Valor de referencia>
Sistema métrico: d = 80 mm ± 0,5, e = 40 mm ± 2
En pulgadas: d = 2,75 pulgada ± 0,5, e = 1,375 pulgada ± 2,
f = 4.25 ± 0,5 pulgada

Zentrieren der Stanzlochposition

1. Schalten Sie in den Wartungsmodus U246, wählen Sie Finisher und Punch Width.

2. Die Werte einstellen.
Falls die Lochung zu nah an der Gerätefront liegt: Den Einstellwert verringern.
Falls die Lochung zu weit weg von der Gerätefront liegt: Den Einstellwert erhöhen.

3. Den Einstellwert durch Drücken der Start-Taste bestätigen.
<Bezugswert>
Metrischer Abstand: d = 80 mm ± 0,5; e = 40 mm ± 2
Abstand in Zoll: d = 2,75 Zoll ± 0,5, e = 1,375 Zoll ± 2,
f = 4.25 Zoll ± 0,5

Centratura della posizione dei fori di perforazione

1. Entrare in modalità manutenzione U246, selezionare Finisher e Punch Width.

2. Regolare i valori.
Se la posizione dei fori di perforazione è troppo vicina alla parte anteriore della macchina: Diminuire il valore dell'impostazione.
Se la posizione dei fori di perforazione è troppo vicina alla parte posteriore della macchina: Aumentare il valore dell'impostazione.

3. Premere il tasto di Start per confermare il valore dell'impostazione.
<Valore di riferimento>
Specificazione in unità metrica: d = 80 mm ± 0,5, e = 40 mm ± 2
Specificazione in pollici: d = 2,75 pollici ± 0.5, e = 1,375 pollici ± 2,
f = 4.25 pollici ± 0.5

打孔位置中心调节

1. 设置维护模式 U246，选择 Finisher、Punch Width。
2. 调整设定值。
打孔位置向机器前部偏移时: 调低设定值。
打孔位置向机器后部偏移时: 调高设定值。

3. 按 Start 键，以确定设定值。
＜基准值＞
公制规格：d=80mm±0.5、e=40mm±2
英制规格：d=2.75inch±0.5、e=1.375inch±2、f=4.25inch±0.5

펀치위치 센터조정

1. 메인터넌스 모드 U246 를 세트하고 Finisher, Punch Width 를 선택합니다 .
2. 설정치를 조정합니다 .
펀치구멍이 기기 앞측으로 벗어난 경우:설정치를 내립니다 .
펀치구멍의 위치가 기기 뒷측으로 벗어난 경우:설정치를 높입니다 .

3. 시작키를 누르고 설정치를 확인합니다 .
＜기준치＞
센치 사양:d=80mm±0.5, e=40mm±2
인치사양:d=2.75inch±0.5, e=1.375inch±2, f=4.25inch±0.5

パンチ位置センター調整

1. メンテナンスモード U246 をセットし、Finisher、Punch Width を選択する。
2. 設定値を調整する。
パンチ穴の位置が機械前側にずれている場合:設定値を下げる。
パンチ穴の位置が機械後側にずれている場合:設定値を上げる。

3. スタートキーを押し、設定値を確定する。
＜基準値＞
センチ仕様:d=80mm±0.5、e=40mm±2
インチ仕様:d=2.75inch±0.5、e=1.375inch±2、f=4.25inch±0.5

MEMO

MEMO

MEMO

2014. 8
303NK56711-03

INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR FAX SYSTEM

INSTALLATION GUIDE

GUIDE D'INSTALLATION

GUÍA DE INSTALACION

INSTALLATIONSANLEITUNG

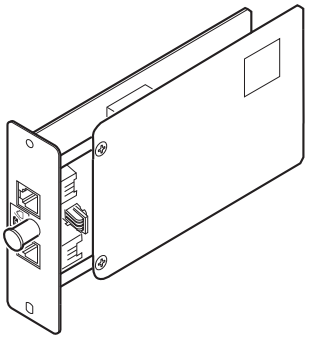
GUIDA ALL'INSTALLAZIONE

安装手册

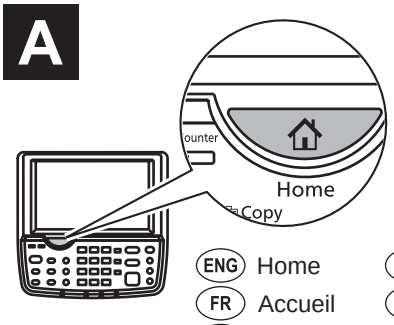
설치안내서

設置手順書

FAX System(W)

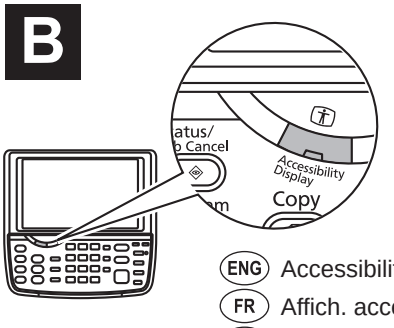


A



ENG Home
FR Accueil
ES Inicio
DE Startseite
IT Home
CN 主界面
KO 홈
JP ホーム

B



ENG Accessibility Display
FR Affich. accessibilité
ES Pantalla acceso
DE Zugriffsanzeige
IT Visual. Accessibilità
CN 扩大显示
KO 유니버셜
JP ユニバーサル

English

A different procedure is required depending on the product which is installed with this unit.Each procedure is described in the following pages.
When installing the Fax system on a machine (A) which has the 'Home' key in the operation panel, see Page 1 to Page 13.
When installing the multiport on a machine (A) which has the 'Home' key in the operation panel, see Page 14 to Page 21.
When installing the Fax system on a machine (B) which has the 'Accessibility Display' key in the operation panel, see Page 22 to Page 34.
When installing the multiport on a machine (B) which has the 'Accessibility Display' key in the operation panel, see Page 35 to Page 41.

Français

Une procédure différente est requise selon le produit qui est installé avec cette unité.Chaque procédure est décrite dans les pages suivantes.
Lors de l'installation du fax sur une machine (A) disposant de la touche 'Accueil' sur le panneau de commande, voir de Page 1 à Page 13.
Lors de l'installation du port multiple sur une machine (A) disposant de la touche 'Accueil' sur le panneau de commande, voir Page 14 à Page 21.
Lors de l'installation du fax sur une machine (B) disposant de la touche 'Affich. accessibilité' sur le panneau de commande, voir de Page 22 à Page 34.
Lors de l'installation du port multiple sur une machine (B) disposant de la touche 'Affich. accessibilité' sur le panneau de commande, voir Page 35 à Page 41.

Español

El procedimiento es diferente según el producto que se instale con esta unidad.En las siguientes páginas, se describe cada procedimiento.
Al instalar el sistema de fax en una máquina (A) que dispone de la tecla 'Inicio' en el panel de controles, consulte las páginas de la 1 a la 13.
Al instalar un puerto múltiple en una máquina (A) que dispone de la tecla 'Inicio' en el panel de controles, consulte las páginas de la 14 a la 21.
Al instalar el sistema de fax en una máquina (B) que dispone de la tecla 'Pantalla acceso' en el panel de controles, consulte las páginas de la 22 a la 34.
Al instalar un puerto múltiple en una máquina (B) que dispone de la tecla 'Pantalla acceso' en el panel de controles, consulte las páginas de la 35 a la 41.

Deutsch

Je nach verwendetem Modell ist eine andere Vorgehensweise zur Installation dieses Teils erforderlich.Die unterschiedlichen Vorgehensweisen werden auf den folgenden Seiten erläutert.
Bei Installation des FAX-Systems in einem Gerät (A), das über die Taste 'Startseite' im Bedienfeld verfügt, siehe Seite 1 bis 13.
Bei Installation einer zweiten Leitung in einem Gerät (A), das über die Taste 'Startseite' im Bedienfeld verfügt, siehe Seite 14 bis 21.
Bei Installation des FAX-Systems in einem Gerät (B), das über die Taste 'Zugriffsanzeige' im Bedienfeld verfügt, siehe Seite 22 bis 34.
Bei Installation einer zweiten Leitung in einem Gerät (B), das über die Taste 'Zugriffsanzeige' im Bedienfeld verfügt, siehe Seite 35 bis 41.

Italiano

Si richiede una procedura diversa in funzione del prodotto su cui è installata l'unità.Le singole procedure sono descritte nelle pagine seguenti.
Per l'installazione del modulo FAX su una macchina (A) dotata di tasto 'Home' sul pannello comandi, vedere le istruzioni da Pagina 1 a Pagina 13.
Per l'installazione di una porta multipla su una macchina (A) dotata di tasto 'Home' sul pannello comandi, vedere le istruzioni da Pagina 14 a Pagina 21.
Per l'installazione del modulo FAX su una macchina (B) dotata di tasto 'Visual. Accessibilità' sul pannello comandi, vedere le istruzioni da Pagina 22 a Pagina 34.
Per l'installazione di una porta multipla su una macchina (B) dotata di tasto 'Visual. Accessibilità' sul pannello comandi, vedere le istruzioni da Pagina 35 a Pagina 41.

简体中文

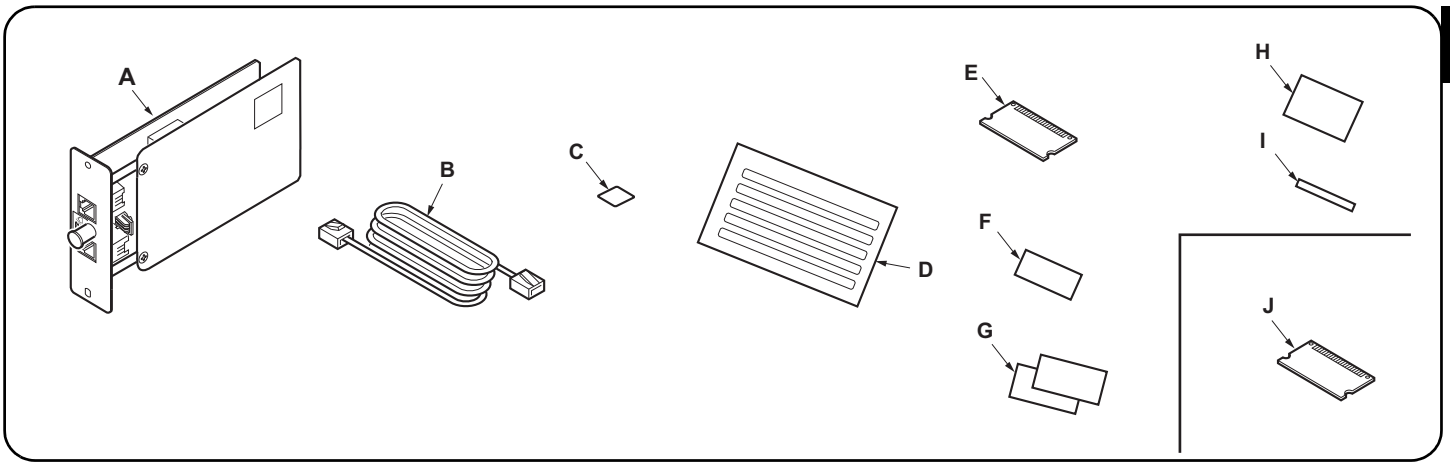
根据安装对象，安装步骤略有不同。各个步骤记载在下面的页面。
当安装传真系统到那些操作面板上有 ' 主界面 ' 按键的机器 (A) 时，请参见 P1-P13。
当安装双路传真系统到那些操作面板上有 ' 主界面 ' 按键的机器 (A) 时，请参见 P14-P21。
当安装传真系统到那些操作面板上有 ' 扩大显示 ' 按键的机器 (B) 时，请参见 P22-P34。
当安装双路传真系统到那些操作面板上有 ' 扩大显示 ' 按键的机器 (B) 时，请参见 P35-P41。

한국어

이 장치를 설치하는 제품에 따라 절차가 다릅니다 . 다음 페이지에서 각 절차를 설명합니다 .
조작판넬에 ' 홈 ' 키가 있는 본체 (A) 에 팩스 시스템을 설치하는 경우 1 페이지 ~ 13 페이지를 참조하십시오 .
조작판넬에 ' 홈 ' 키가 있는 본체 (A) 에 멀티 포트를 설치하는 경우 14 페이지 ~ 21 페이지를 참조하십시오 .
조작판넬에 ' 유니버셜 ' 키가 있는 본체 (B) 에 팩스 시스템을 설치하는 경우 22 페이지 ~ 34 페이지를 참조하십시오 .
조작판넬에 ' 유니버셜 ' 키가 있는 본체 (B) 에 멀티 포트를 설치하는 경우 35 페이지 ~ 41 페이지를 참조하십시오 .

日本語

装着する対象によって、取付手順は異なります。それぞれ、以下のページに記載しています。
操作パネルに ‘ ホーム ’ キーがある機械 (A) にファクスシステムを設置する場合;1 ページ～ 13 ページ
操作パネルに ‘ ホーム ’ キーがある機械 (A) にマルチポートを設置する場合;14 ページ～ 21 ページ
操作パネルに ‘ ユニバーサル ’ キーがある機械 (B) にファクスシステムを設置する場合;22 ページ～ 34 ページ
操作パネルに ‘ ユニバーサル ’ キーがある機械 (B) にマルチポートを設置する場合;35 ページ～ 41 ページ



When installing the Fax system on a machine (A) which has the 'Home' key in the operation panel

Supplied parts

- **A.** FAX circuit board 1
- **B.** Modular connector cable (120 V/Australian model only) PJJWC0016Z (UL Listed.HUAN HSIN Type TL:120 V only) 1
- **C.** Terminal seal 1
- **D.** Alphabet label 1
- **E.** Memory DIMM (16 MB) 1
- **F.** PTT label (110V model only) 1
- **G.** Approval label (Australian/New Zealand models only) 2

Option

- **J.** Memory DIMM (128 MB) 1

(H) and (I) are not supplied.

Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning materials from the parts supplied.

Lors de l'installation du fax sur une machine (A) disposant de la touche 'Accueil' sur le panneau de commande

Pièces fournies

- **A.** Carte à circuits FAX 1
- **B.** Câble du connecteur modulaire (modèles pour l'Australie/120 V seulement) 1
- **C.** Joint de borne 1
- **D.** Etiquette de l'alphabet 1
- **E.** Mémoire DIMM (16 MB) 1

Option

- **J.** Mémoire DIMM (128 MB) 1

(F),(G),(H) et (I) ne sont pas fournis.

Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.

Al instalar el sistema de fax en una máquina (A) que dispone de la tecla 'Inicio' en el panel de controles

Partes suministradas

- **A.** Tarjeta de circuitos de fax 1
- **B.** Cable conector modular (sólo para modelos de 120 V/Australianos) 1
- **C.** Sello del terminal 1
- **D.** Etiqueta de alfabeto 1
- **E.** Memoria DIMM (16 MB) 1

Opción

- **J.** Memoria DIMM (128 MB) 1

(F) ,(G) ,(H) y (I) no se suministran.

Asegúrese de quitar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.

Bei Installation des FAX-Systems in einem Gerät (A), das über die Taste 'Startseite' im Bedienfeld verfügt

Enthaltene Teile

- **A.** FAX-Leiterplatte 1
- **C.** Verschlusskappe 1
- **D.** Alphabetaufkleber 1
- **E.** Speicher-DIMM (16 MB) 1

Option

- **J.** Speicher-DIMM (128 MB) 1

(B), (F), (G) , (H) und (I) liegen nicht bei.

Stellen Sie sicher, dass sämtliche Klebebänder und/oder Polstermaterial von den gelieferten Teilen entfernt wurden.

Per l'installazione del modulo FAX su una macchina (A) dotata di tasto 'Home' sul pannello comandi

Parti fornite

- **A.** Scheda a circuiti FAX 1
- **C.** Guarnizione terminale 1
- **D.** Etichetta alfabetica 1
- **E.** Memoria DIMM (16 MB) 1

Opzioni

- **J.** Memoria DIMM (128 MB) 1

(B),(F), (G), (H) e (I) non sono in dotazione.

Rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o i materiali di protezione dalle parti fornite.

当安装传真系统到那些操作面板上有 ' 主界面 ' 按键的机器 (A) 时

附属品

- A. 传真电路板 1
- B. 电话线 1
- C. 端子密封 1
- D. 英文字母标签 1
- E. 内存模组 DIMM (16MB) 1
- F. 规格标签 1
- H. 贴片 1
- I. 名称标签 1

选购件

- J. 内存模组 DIMM (128MB) 1

(G) 并非附属品。

如果附属品上带有固定胶带，缓冲材料时务必揭下。

조작판넬에 ' 홈 ' 키가 있는 본체 (A) 에 팩스 시스템을 설치하는 경우

동봉품

- A. FAX 기판 1
- C. 단자씰 1
- D. 알파벳 라벨 1
- E. 메모리 DIMM (16MB) 1

옵션

- J. 메모리 DIMM (128MB) 1

(B) , (F) ,(G), (H) ,(I) 는 동봉되어 있지 않습니다 .

동봉품에 고정 테이프 , 완충재가 붙어 있는 경우에는 반드시 제거하십시오 .

操作パネルに ‘ホーム’ キーがある機械 (A) にファクスシステムを設置する場合

同梱品

- A. FAX 基板 1
- B. モジュラーコード 1
- C. 端子シール 1
- E. メモリーDIMM(16MB) 1

オプション

- J. メモリーDIMM(128MB) 1

(D),(F),(G),(H),(I) は、同梱されていない。

同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。

A

NOTICE

References to medium-speed MFPs in this document denote 25/25, 30/30, 35/35, 45/45 and 55/50 ppm color machines, and 30, 35, 45 and 55 ppm monochrome machines.
References to high-speed MFPs in this document denote 65/65 and 75/70 ppm color machines, and 65 and 80 ppm monochrome machines.
(The generic procedure figures in this document show medium-speed MFPs.)
If the finisher is already installed, remove the finisher before installing FAX System(W).
Before starting installation, be sure to turn the main power switch of the machine off, and unplug the power plug from the wall outlet.

REMARQUE

Dans le présent document, les références aux MFP à vitesse moyenne renvoient aux machines couleurs 25/25, 30/30, 35/35, 45/45 et 55/50 ppm et aux machines monochromes 30, 35, 45 et 55 ppm.
Dans le présent document, les références aux MFP à grande vitesse renvoient aux machines couleurs 65/65 et 75/70 ppm et aux machines monochromes 65 et 80 ppm. (Dans ce document, les chiffres des processus génériques renvoient aux MPF à vitesse moyenne.)
Si le retoucheur est déjà en place, le déposer avant de monter le FAX System(W).
Avant de commencer l'installation, s'assurer de mettre la machine hors tension et de débrancher la fiche d'alimentation de la prise murale.

AVISO

Las referencias a las MFP de velocidad media de este documento corresponden a las máquinas a color de 25/25, 30/30, 35/35, 45/45 y 55/50 ppm y a las máquinas monocromáticas de 30, 35, 45 y 55 ppm.
Las referencias a las MFP de alta velocidad de este documento corresponden a las máquinas a color de 65/65 y 75/70 ppm y a las máquinas monocromáticas de 65 y 80 ppm. (Las ilustraciones de procedimientos genéricos de este documento muestran las MFP de velocidad media.)
Si el finalizador ya se encuentra instalado, desmóntelo antes de instalar el FAX System(W).
Antes de iniciar la instalación, asegúrese de apagar el interruptor de encendido de la máquina y desenchufar el cable de alimentación de la toma de pared.

ANMERKUNG

Angaben für MFP der mittleren Leistungsklasse in dieser Anleitung gelten für die 25/25, 30/30, 35/35, 45/45 und 55/50 ppm Vollfarbenkopierer sowie für die 30, 35, 45 und 55 ppm Monochrommaschinen.
Angaben für MFP der Hochleistungsklasse in dieser Anleitung gelten für die 65/65 und 75/70 ppm Vollfarbenkopierer sowie für die 65 und 80 ppm Monochrommaschinen. (Die Abbildungen der allgemeinen Prozeduren zeigen MFP der mittleren Leistungsklasse.)
Falls der Finisher schon installiert ist, müssen Sie ihn ausbauen, bevor Sie das FAX System(W) installieren.
Bevor Sie mit der Installation beginnen überzeugen Sie sich, dass der Netzschalter des Geräts ausgeschaltet und das Stromkabel aus der Steckdose gezogen ist.

AVVISO

I riferimenti per le MFP a velocità media riportati in questo documento indicano le macchine a colori 25/25, 30/30, 35/35, 45/45 e 55/50 ppm, e le macchine monocromatiche 30, 35, 45 e 55 ppm.
I riferimenti per le MFP a velocità alta riportati in questo documento indicano le macchine a colori 65/65 e 75/70 ppm, e le macchine monocromatiche 65 e 80 ppm. (Le figure della procedura generica riportate in questo documento mostrano le MFP a velocitò media.)
Se la finitrice è già installata, rimuovere la finitrice prima di installare il FAX System(W).
Prima di iniziare l'installazione, spegnere la macchina e scollegare la spina dalla presa di corrente.

注意

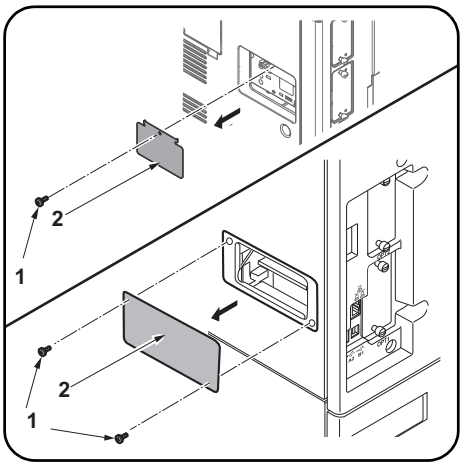
本文中的中速 MFP 代表彩色 25/25 页机型、30/30 页机型、35/35 页机型、45/45 页机型、55/50 页机型、黑白 30 页机型、35 页机型、45 页机型、55 页机型。
本文中的高速 MFP 代表彩色 65/65 页机型、75/70 页机型、黑白 65 页机型、80 页机型。（本文中的通用步骤的插图为中速 MFP。）
已安装装订器时，必须先拆下装订器再安装 FAX System(W)。
安装前务必关闭机器的主电源开关，并从墙壁插座拔下电源插头。

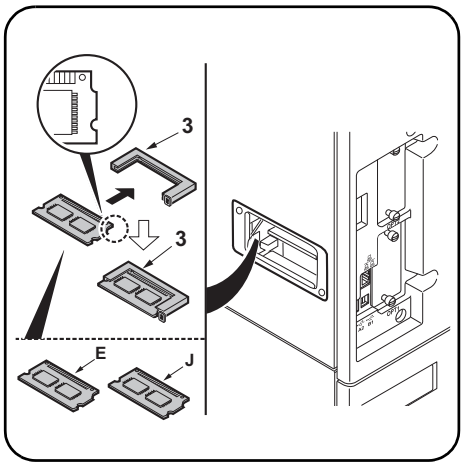
주의

본문 중 중속 MFP 는 컬러 25/25, 30/30, 35/35, 45/45, 55/50 ppm 기종 , 흑백 30, 35, 45, 55 ppm 기종을 나타냅니다 .
본문 내 고속 MFP 는 컬러 65/65, 75/70 ppm 기종 , 흑백 65, 80 ppm 기종을 나타냅니다 . (본문에있는 일반적인 순서 일러스트는 중속 MFP 가 보여집니다 .)
피니셔가 이미 장착되어 있는 경우에는 피니셔를 제거하고 FAX System(W) 를 설치할 것 .
설치 시작하기 전에 반드시 본체의 주 전원 스위치를 끄고 벽 콘센트에서 전원 플러그를 분리하십시오 .

注意

本文中の中速 MFP はカラー機の 25/25 枚機、30/30 枚機、35/35 枚機、45/45 枚機、55/50 枚機、モノクロ機の 30 枚機、35 枚機、45 枚機、55 枚機を表す。
本文中の高速 MFP はカラー機の 65/65 枚機、75/70 枚機、モノクロ機の 65 枚機、80 枚機を表す。(本文中の共通手順イラストは中速 MFP とする。)
フィニッシャーがすでに装着されている場合は、フィニッシャーを取り外してから、FAX System(W) を取り付けること。
必ず機械本体の主電源スイッチを OFF にし、機械本体の電源プラグを抜いてから作業すること。





Procedure
Installing the memory DIMM

1. Remove 1 or 2 screws (1), and then remove the cover (2).

2. Install the memory DIMM (E) or the optional memory DIMM (J) into the memory slot (3).
Install it with the IC side facing up.
Insert it in the direction of the arrow until it clicks.

3. Reinstall the cover (2) using the 1 or 2 screws (1).

Procédure
Installation de la mémoire DIMM

1. Déposer 1 ou 2 vis (1), puis retirez le couvercle (2).

2. Installer la mémoire DIMM (E) ou la mémoire DIMM en option (J) dans la fente mémoire (3).
L'installer avec le côté IC vers le haut.
L'insérer dans la direction de la flèche jusqu'au clic.

3. Reposez le couvercle (2) en position à l'aide de 1 ou 2 vis (1).

Procedimiento
Instalación de la memoria DIMM

1. Quite 1 o 2 tornillos (1) y después retire la cubierta (2).

2. Instale la memoria DIMM (E) o la memoria DIMM opcional (J) en la ranura para memoria (3).
Instálela con la cara IC hacia arriba.
Insértela en la dirección que indica la flecha hasta que escuche un clic.

3. Vuelva a colocar la cubierta (2) con 1 o 2 tornillos (1).

Vorgehensweise
Installation der DIMM-Speichermodule

1. Entfernen Sie 1 oder 2 Schrauben (1) und entfernen dann die Abdeckung (2).

2. Setzen Sie den DIMM-Speicher (E) oder den optionalen DIMM-Speicher (J) in der Speichersteckplatz (3).
Installieren Sie die Platine mit den Speicherbausteinen nach oben.
Schieben Sie das Modul in Pfeilrichtung, bis es hörbar einrastet.

3. Setzen Sie die Abdeckung (2) mit 1 oder 2 Schrauben (1) wieder ein.

Procedura
Installazione della memoria DIMM

1. Rimuovere 1 o 2 viti (1) per rimuovere il coperchio (2).

2. Installare la memoria DIMM (E) oppure la memoria opzionale DIMM (J) nello slot memoria (3).
Installarla con il lato IC rivolto verso l'alto.
Inserirla nella direzione della freccia finché non scatta in posizione.

3. Reinstallare il coperchio (2) utilizzando 1 o 2 viti (1).

安装步骤
安装内存模组 DIMM

1. 取下 1 颗或 2 颗螺丝（1），然后取下盖板（2）。

2. 将内存模块 (E) 或选购件内存模块 (J) 安装到内存插槽（3）。
将 IC 侧正面向上来安装。
沿箭头方向将其插入到底直至发出喀嗒声。

3. 使用 1 颗或 2 颗螺丝（1）重新安装盖板（2）。

설치순서
메모리 DIMM 설치

1. 나사 (1) 1 또는 2 개를 제거하고 커버 (2) 를 제거합니다 .

2. 메모리 DIMM(E) 또는 옵션 메모리 DIMM(J) 을 메모리 슬롯 (3) 에 장착합니다 .
IC 면을 위로 향하게 하여 설치합니다 .
딸깍하고 소리가 날 때까지 화살표 방향으로 삽입합니다 .

3. 나사 (1) 1 또는 2 개로 커버 (2) 를 원래대로 장착합니다 .

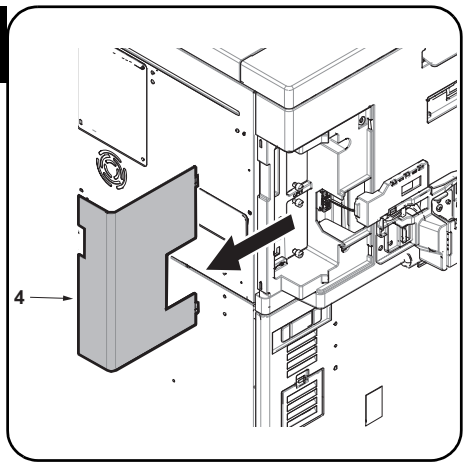
取付手順
メモリーDIMM の取り付け

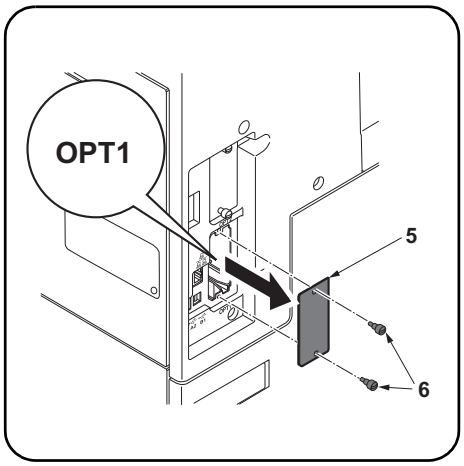
1. ビス (1)1 本または 2 本を外し、カバー(2) を取り外す。

2. メモリーDIMM(E)または、オプションのメモリーDIMM(J) をメモリースロット (3) に取り付ける。
IC 面を上向きに取り付けること。
カチッと音がするまで矢印方向に挿入する。

3. ビス (1)1 本または 2 本で、カバー(2) を元通り取り付ける。

A





Removing the slot cover

4. Remove the cover (4).
* For high-speed MFPs with/without the finisher and for medium-speed MFPs with the finisher installed.

5. Remove 2 screws (6) and then remove the OPT1 slot cover (5).
* Do not use OPT2.

Dépose du couvercle de la fente

4. Déposer le couvercle (4).
* Pour les imprimantes multifonction à grande vitesse avec/sans module de finition et pour les imprimantes multifonction à vitesse moyenne avec le module de finition installé.

5. Déposer les 2 vis (6) puis le couvercle de la fente OPT1 (5).
* Ne pas utiliser OPT2.

Desmontaje de la cubierta de la ranura

4. Quite la cubierta (4).
*Para los MFP de velocidad alta con/sin finalizador y para los MFP de velocidad media con el finalizador instalado.

5. Quite 2 tornillos (6) y, después, quite la cubierta de la ranura OPT1 (5).
* No utilice OPT2.

Entfernen der Einschubabdeckung

4. Die Abdeckung (4) entfernen.
* Bei schnellen MFPs mit/ohne Finisher oder mittelschnellen MFPs mit installiertem Finisher.

5. 2 Schrauben (6) entfernen und dann die Abdeckung (5) des Einschubs OPT1 entfernen.
* OPT2 nicht verrwenden.

Rimozione del coperchio vano

4. Rimuovere il coperchio (4).
* Per dispositivi MFP di fascia alta con/senza finisher e per dispositivi di fascia media con finisher installato.

5. Rimuovere le 2 viti (6) e quinidi rimuovere il coperchio (5) del vano OPT1.
* Non utilizzare OPT2.

拆下插槽盖板

4. 拆下盖板 (4)。
※ 对于高速机来说装订器可装可不装，对于中速机来说要安装。

5. 拆除 2 颗螺丝 (6)，拆下 OPT1 的插槽盖板 (5)。
※ 不使用 OPT2。

슬롯커버 제거

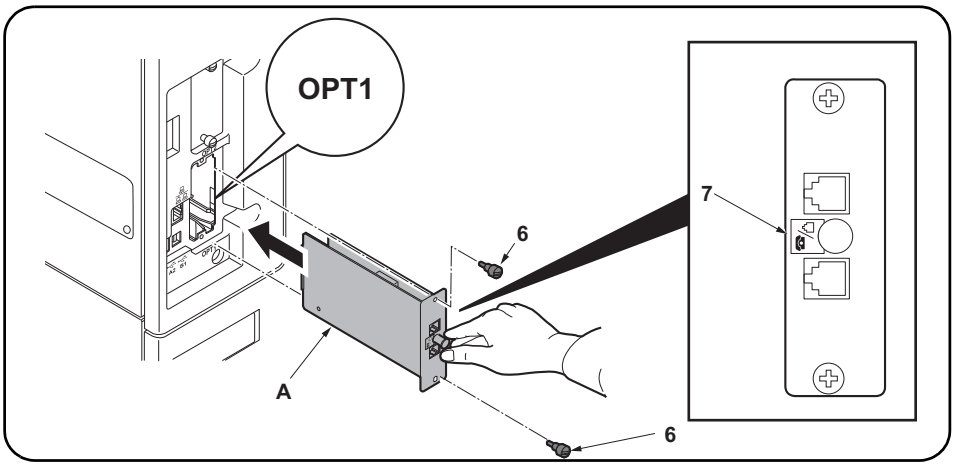
4. 커버 (4) 를 제거합니다 .
※ 피니셔 장착 및 비장착 고속 MFP 및 피니셔 장착 중속 MFP.

5. 나사 (6) 2 개를 제거하고 OPT1 의 슬롯커버 (5) 를 제거합니다 .
※OPT2 는 사용하지 말 것 .

スロットカバーの取り外し

4. カバー(4) を取り外す。
※ 高速 MFP の場合および中速 MFP にフィニッシャー装着時の場合。

5. ビス (6)2 本を外し、OPT1 のスロットカバー (5) を取り外す。
※OPT2 は使用しないこと。



Install the FAX circuit board.

6. Insert the FAX circuit board (A) along the groove in OPT1 and secure the board with two screws (6) that have been removed in step 5.
Do not directly touch the FAX circuit board (A) terminal. Hold the top and bottom of the FAX circuit board, or the projection of the board to insert the FAX circuit board (A).
Direct the label (7) on to the FAX circuit board (A) as indicated in the illustration and insert the board along the groove.

Installer la carte à circuits FAX.

6. Insérer la carte à circuits FAX (A) le long de la rainure dans l'OPT1 et la fixer à l'aide des deux vis (6) retirées à l'étape 5.
Ne pas toucher directement la borne de la carte à circuits FAX (A). Tenir les parties inférieure et supérieure de la carte à circuits FAX ou la saillie de la carte pour insérer la carte à circuits FAX (A).Orienter l'étiquette (7) de la carte à circuits FAX (A) comme illustré et insérer la plaquette le long de la rainure.

Instale la tarjeta de circuitos de fax.

6. Inserte la tarjeta de circuitos de fax (A) a lo largo de la ranura de OPT1 y asegúrela con los dos tornillos (6) que ha quitado en el paso 5.
No toque directamente el terminal de la tarjeta de circuitos del fax (A). Sujete las partes superior e inferior de la tarjeta de circuitos de fax o la saliente de la tarjeta para insertar la tarjeta de circuitos de fax (A).Oriente la etiqueta (7) en la tarjeta de circuitos del FAX (A) como se indica en la ilustración e inserte la tarjeta a lo largo de la ranura.

Installieren der FAX-Leiterplatte.

6. FAX-Leiterplatte (A) in die Nut des Einbauschachts OPT1 einsetzen und Leiterplatte mit den in Schritt 5 ausgebauten Schrauben (6) befestigen.
Berühren Sie die Anschlüsse der FAX-Platine (A) nicht mit den Fingern. Die FAX-Leiterplatte (A) bein Einsetzen oben und unten oder an dem Vorsprung festhalten.
Die FAX-Leiterplatte (A) so in die Nut einsetzen, dass der Aufkleber (7) wie abgebildet zur Leiterplatte zeigt.

Installare la scheda a circuiti FAX.

6. Inserire la scheda a circuiti FAX (A) lungo l'incavo nell'OPT1 e fissare la scheda con le due viti (6) rimosse nell'operazione 5.
Non toccare direttamente il terminale della scheda a circuiti FAX (A). Per inserire il circuito FAX (A), tenere l'estremit superiore e la base della scheda a circuiti FAX, o la sporgenza della scheda a circuiti FAX. Orientare l'etichetta (7) sulla scheda a circuiti FAX (A) come indicato nell'illustrazione e inserire la scheda lungo l'incavo.

安装传真电路板

6. 沿着 OPT1 的沟槽插入传真电路板 (A) 并用在步骤 5 中拆下的两颗螺钉 (6) 固定电路板。
请勿直接触摸传真电路板 (A) 端子。
按住传真电路板的顶部和底部，或者按住电路板的突出部将传真电路板 (A) 插入。
将传真电路板 (A) 上的标签 (7) 保持图示中的方向，将电路板沿着沟槽方向插入。

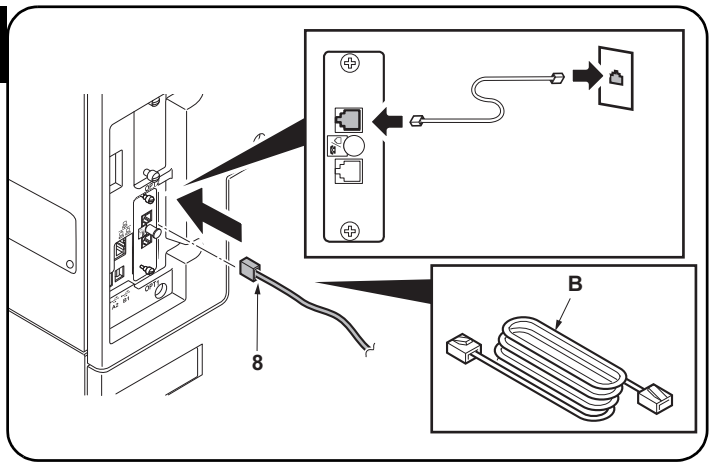
FAX 회로기판 장착

6. OPT1 의 홈을 따라 FAX 회로기판 (A) 를 삽입하고 앞 순서 5 에서 제거한 나사 (6) 2 개로 고정합니다 .
FAX 회로기판 (A) 의 단자에 직접 닿지 않도록 할 것 .
FAX 회로기판 (A) 삽입 시 , 회로기판의 상하 또는 돌출부를 잡을 것 .
FAX 회로기판 (A) 를 부착된 라벨 (7) 그림 표기 방향으로 삽입할 것 .

FAX 基板の取り付け

6. OPT1 の溝に沿って FAX 基板 (A) を挿入し、手順 5 で外したビス (6)2 本で固定する。
FAX 基板 (A) の端子に直接触れないこと。
FAX 基板 (A) の挿入時は基板の上下か突起を持つこと。
FAX 基板 (A) は、貼り付けられているラベル (7) が図に示す方向になるように、挿入すること。

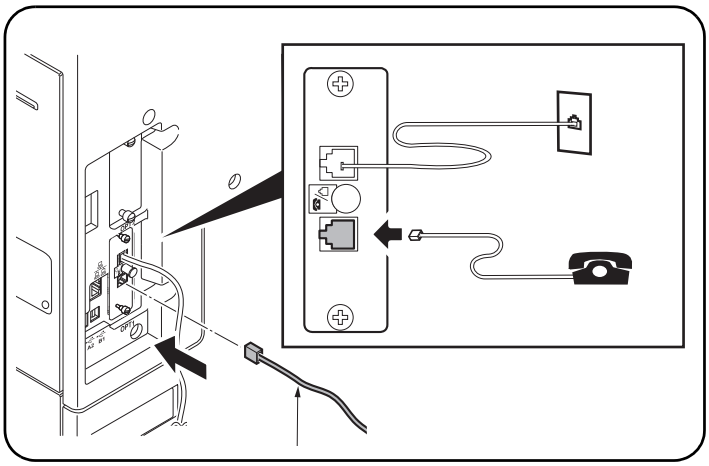
A



Connect the MFP to the telephone line.

7. Plug the modular connector cable (8) into the line terminal, and then connect the other end to the telephone line.

For 100 V/120 V/Australian or Chinese models, use the supplied modular connector cable (B).



Connect the MFP to the separate phone (except for New Zealand model).

8. Plug the modular connector cable (9) into the telephone terminal, and then connect the other end to the separate phone.

Connecter le MFP à la ligne de téléphone.

7. Brancher le câble du connecteur modulaire (8) à la borne de la ligne, puis connecter l'autre extrémité à la ligne de téléphone.

Pour les modèles 100 V/120 V/Australie ou Chine, utilisez le câble à connecteur modulaire (B) fourni.

Connecter le MFP au téléphone séparé.

8. Brancher le câble du connecteur modulaire (9) à la borne du téléphone, puis connecter l'autre extrémité au téléphone séparé.

Conecte el MFP a la línea telefónica.

7. Enchufe el cable del conector modular (8) en el terminal de línea y, a continuación, conecte el otro extremo a la línea telefónica.

Para los modelos de 100 V/120 V/Australiano o Chino, utilice el cable conector modular (B) suministrado.

Conecte el MFP al teléfono separado.

8. Enchufe el cable del conector modular (9) en el terminal del teléfono y, a continuación, conecte el otro extremo al teléfono separado.

Anschließen des MFP an die Telefonleitung.

7. Telefonmodulkabel (8) in die Gerätebuchse einstecken und das Kabel an der Telefondose anschließen.

Das mitgelieferte Modulartsteckerkabel (B) für die 100-V/120-V/Australien- oder China-Modelle verwenden.

Anschließen des MFP an das separate Telefon.

8. Das Telefonmodulkabel (9) in die Telefonbuchse einstecken und das andere Ende an das separate Telefon anschließen.

Collegamento dell'MFP alla linea del telefono.

7. Inserire il cavo connettore modulare (8) nel terminale della linea, e quindi collegare l'altro terminale alla linea del telefono.

Per modelli da 100 V/120 V/Australia o Cina, utilizzare il cavo connettore modulare (B) in dotazione.

Collegamento dell'MFP al telefono separato.

8. Inserire il cavo connettore modulare (9) nel terminale del telefono, e quindi collegare l'altro terminale al telefono separato.

将 MFP 连接到电话线

7. 将模块接插件电缆 (8) 插入电话线端子，然后将另一端与电话线连接。

对于 100V/120V/ 澳大利亚或中国机型，请使用随附的模块接插件电缆 (B)。

将 MFP 连接到其它电话

8. 将模块接插件电缆 (9) 插入电话端子，然后将另一端与其他电话连接。

전화회선 연결

7. 모듈 코드 (8) 을 선 단자에 꽂는다 . 다른 쪽 플러그는 전화선에 연결한다 .

100V/120V/ 오스트레일리아 / 중국 스펙은 부속 모듈 코드 (B) 를 사용할 것 .

외부 전화에 연결

8. 모듈 코드 (9) 를 TEL 단자에 꽂습니다 . 다른 한 쪽의 플러그는 외부 전화에 연결합니다 .

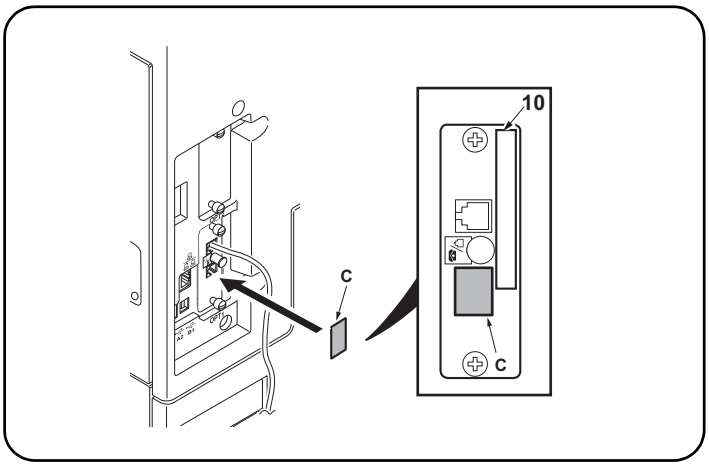
電話回線との接続

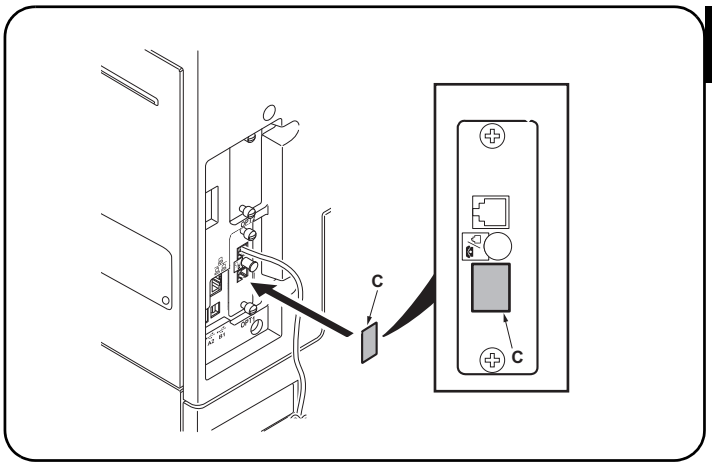
7. モジュラーコード (8) をライン端子に差し込む。もう片方のプラグは、電話回線へ接続する。

100V/120V/ オーストラリア / 中国仕様は付属のモジュラーコード (B) を使用すること。

外付け電話との接続

8. モジュラーコード (9) を TEL 端子に差し込む。もう片方のプラグは、外付け電話と接続する。





If you don't connect the MFP to the separate phone, wipe the surface of the telephone terminal with alcohol and adhere the terminal seal (C) upon the customer's request.
On 120 V models, be sure that it is not attached over the top of the approval label (10).

Seal the terminal (for New Zealand model).
9. Wipe the surface of the telephone terminal with alcohol and adhere the terminal seal (C).
Perform this procedure for New Zealand model only.

Si le MFP n'est pas connecté au téléphone séparé à la demande du client, nettoyer la surface de la borne de téléphone avec de l'alcool et apposer le joint de borne (C).
Sur les modèles 120 V, attention à ne pas installer en recouvrant le haut de l'étiquette d'approbation (10).

Fermer hermétiquement la borne (modèle pour la Nouvelle-Zélande).
9. Cette étape est superflue.

Si no conecta el MFP a un teléfono separado, limpie la superficie del terminal del teléfono con alcohol y pegue el sello del terminal (C), a solicitud del cliente.
En los modelos de 120 V, asegúrese de que no se fije sobre la etiqueta de aprobación (10).

Selle el terminal (para el modelo Nuevo Zelandés).
9. Este paso no es necesario.

Wenn der MFP nicht an das separate Telefon angeschlossen wird, die Oberfläche der Telefonbuchse mit Alkohol abwischen und Verschlusskappe (C) einsetzen, falls vom Kunden gewünscht.
Bei 120-V-Modellen darauf achten, dass der Aufkleber nicht den Genehmigungsaufkleber (10) verdeckt.

Versiegeln der Anschlussbuchse (für Neuseeland-Modell).
9. Dieser Schritt ist nicht erforderlich.

Nel caso in cui non si colleghi l'MFP al telefono separato, pulire la superficie del terminale del telefono con dell'alcol e applicare la guarnizione terminale (C) a richiesta del cliente.
Sui modelli da 120 V, assicurarsi che essa non venga applicata sopra l'etichetta di approvazione (10).

Sigillare il terminale (per il modello Nuova Zelanda).
9. Questo passo non è richiesto.

如果您没有将 MFP 连接至其他电话，请用酒精擦拭电话端子表面，并按照客户要求粘上端子密封 (C)。
120V 规格在粘贴时注意不要与认可标签 (10) 重叠。

安装端子密封（仅适用于新西兰型号）
9. 不需要本步骤。

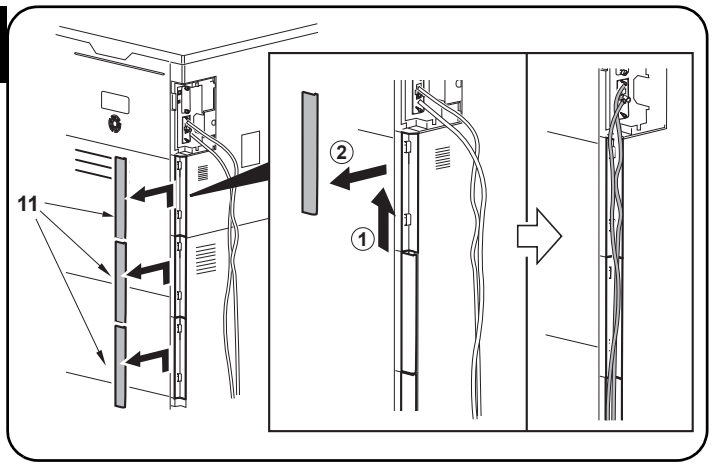
외부 전화에 연결하지 않는 경우 , 고객의 요청에 따라 TEL 단자 주위를 알코올 청소하고 단자씰 (C) 을 붙입니다 .
120V 사양은 허가 라벨 (10) 에 겹치지 않도록 붙일 것 .

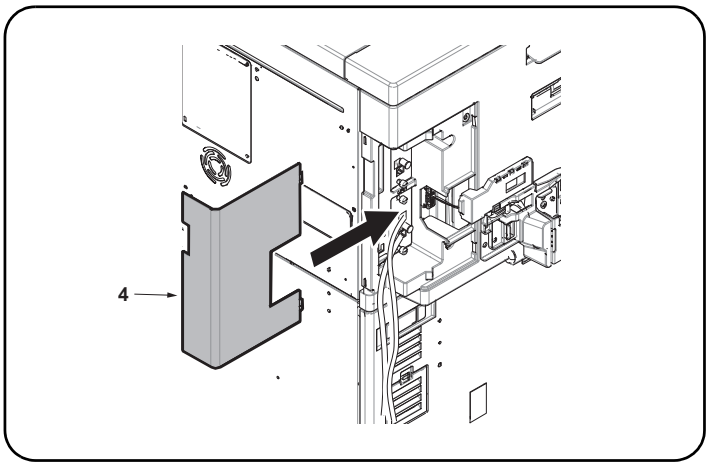
단자씰의 부착 (뉴질랜드 사양만)
9. 작업 불필요 .

外付け電話と接続しない場合、お客様の要望により、TEL 端子周囲をアルコール清掃し、端子シール (C) を貼り付ける。
120V 仕様は認可ラベル (10) に重ならないように、貼りつけること。

端子シールの貼り付け（ニュージーランド仕様のみ）
9. この作業は不要。

A





Wiring the modular connector cable
(High-speed MFPs only)

10. Remove the covers (11) and run the modular connector cable as shown in the figure.
11. Reinstall the covers (11).

12. Install the cover (4) which was removed in step 4.
* For high-speed MFPs with/without the finisher and for medium-speed MFPs with the finisher installed.
* This work is not required if a multiport is installed along with the fax system (OPT1).

Câblage du câble à connecteur modulaire
(MFP à grande vitesse uniquement)

10. Déposer les couvercles (11) et implanter le câble à connecteur modulaire comme illustré par la figure.
11. Reposer les couvercles (11).

12. Installer le cache (4) qui a été retiré à l'étape 4.
* Pour les imprimantes multifonction à grande vitesse avec/sans module de finition et pour les imprimantes multifonction à vitesse moyenne avec le module de finition installé.
* Cette opération n'est pas nécessaire si un port multiple est installé avec le fax (OPT1).

Tendido del cable conector modular
(Solo para las MFP de alta velocidad)

10. Quite las cubiertas (11) y tienda el cable conector modular como se muestra en la ilustración.
11. Vuelva a instalar las cubiertas (11).

12. Instale la cubierta (4) que se quitó en el paso 4.
* Para los MFP de velocidad alta con/sin finalizador y para los MFP de velocidad media con el finalizador instalado.
* Esto no es necesario realizarlo si hay instalado un puerto múltiple con el sistema de fax (OPT1).

Verlegung des Modularsteckerkabels
(Nur MFP der Hochleistungsklasse)

10. Die Abdeckungen (11) entfernen und das Modularsteckerkabel gemäß der Abbildung verlegen.
11. Die Abdeckungen (11) wieder anbringen.

12. Installieren Sie die Abdeckung (4), die in Schritt 4 entfernt wurde.
* Bei schnellen MFPs mit/ohne Finisher oder mittelschnellen MFPs mit installiertem Finisher.
*Dies ist nicht nötig, wenn eine zweite Leitung zusammen mit dem FAX-System (OPT1) installiert ist.

Cablaggio del cavo connettore modulare
(Solo per MFP a velocità alta)

10. Rimuovere i coperchi (11) e far passare il cavo connettore modulare come indicato nella figura.
11. Reinstallare i coperchi (11).

12. Installare il coperchio (4) rimosso al punto 4.
* Per dispositivi MFP di fascia alta con/senza finisher e per dispositivi di fascia media con finisher installato.
* Questa operazione non è richiesta quando con il modulo fax (OPT1) viene installata una porta multipla.

电话线的配线（仅限高速 MFP 时）

10. 拆下盖板（11），将电话线如图所示穿过。
11. 安装盖板（11）。

12. 安装在步骤 4 中取下的盖板（4）。
※ 对于高速机来说装订器可装可不装，对于中速机来说要安装。
※ 双路传真系统和传真系统（OPT1）同时安装时，不需要此步骤。

모듈러 코드의 배선 (고속 MFP 의 경우만)

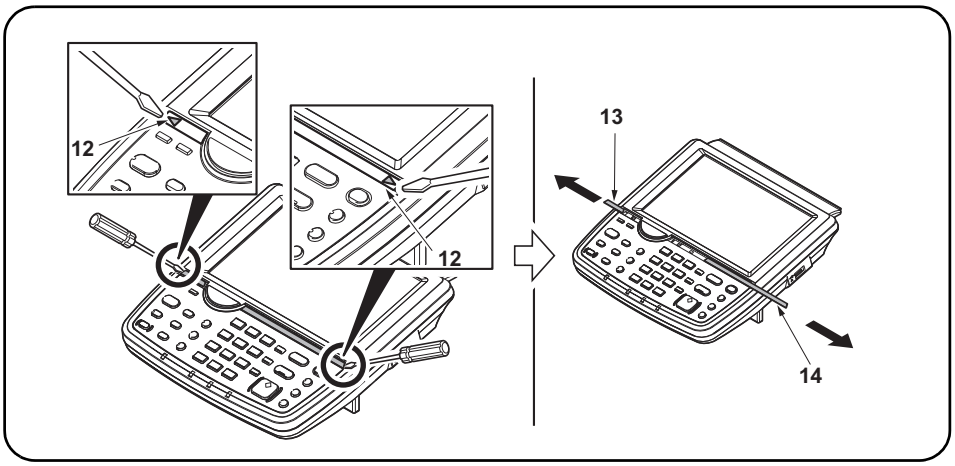
10. 커버 (11) 를 떼어 내고 모듈러 코드를 그림과 같이 지나가게 합니다 .
11. 커버 (11) 을 장착합니다 .

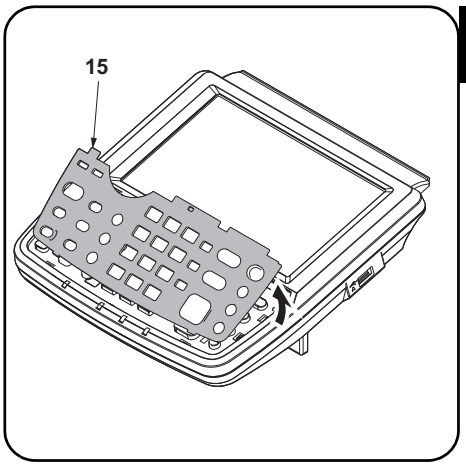
12. 4 단계에서 분리한 커버 (4) 를 설치합니다 .
※ 피니셔 장착 및 비장착의 고속 MFP 및 피니셔 장착 중속 MFP.
※ 이 작업은 멀티 포트가 팩스 시스템 (OPT1) 과 함께 설치되어 있는 경우에는 필요하지 않습니다 .

モジュラーコードの配線（高速 MFP の場合のみ）

10. カバー(11)を取り外し、モジュラーコードを図のように通す。
11. カバー(11)を取り付ける。

12. 手順 4 で取り外したカバー(4)を取り付ける。
※ 高速 MFP の場合および中速 MFP にフィニッシャー装着時の場合。
※ ファクスシステム（OPT1）と同時にマルチポートを設置する場合この作業は不要。





Attach the alphabet labels (excluding 100 V models).

13. Insert a flat-head screwdriver at the tip indicated by the arrows (12) as shown on the left, and slide the operation panel covers (13) (14) to remove them.

14. Remove the clear panel (15).

Apposer les étiquettes de l'alphabet (Sauf sur les modèles 100 V).

13. Insérer un tournevis à lame à l'endroit repéré par les flèches (12) comme illustré ci-contre à gauche et faire glisser les couvercles du panneau de commande (13) (14) pour les déposer.

14. Déposer le panneau transparent (15).

Fije las etiquetas de alfabeto (a excepción de los modelos de 100 V).

13. Inserte un destornillador de pala plana en la punta que indican las flechas (12) como se muestra a la izquierda y deslice las cubiertas del panel de trabajo (13) (14) para quitarlas.

14. Quite el panel transparente (15).

Anbringen der Alphabetaufkleber (ausgenommen 100-V-Modelle).

13. Einen flachen Schraubendreher an der links mit Pfeilen (12) bezeichneten Spitze einschieben und die Bedienfeldabdeckungen (13) (14) verschieben, um sie dann abzunehmen.

14. Die durchsichtige Platte (15) entfernen.

Applicare le etichette alfabetiche (esclusi i modelli da 100 V).

13. Inserire un cacciavite a testa piana nel punto indicato dalla freccia (12) come mostrato sulla sinistra, e slittare i coperchi (13) (14) del pannello operativo per rimuoverli.

14. Rimuovere il pannello trasparente (15).

粘贴英文字母标签（100V 规格以外）

13. 如图所示，在▲箭头（12）前方插入一字螺丝刀，滑动并取下操作面板的盖板（13）（14）。

14. 拆下透明面板（15）。

알파벳 라벨의 부착 (100V 사양 이외)

13. 그림과 같이 ▲ 표시 (12) 앞에 마이너스 드라이버를 삽입해 조작 판넬의 커버 (13) (14) 를 미끄러트리면서 떼어 냅니다 .

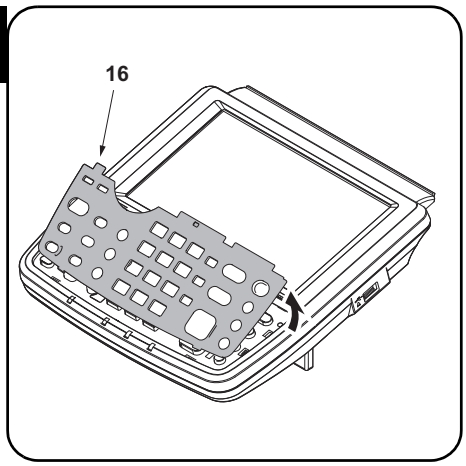
14. 클리어 판넬 (15) 을 제거합니다 .

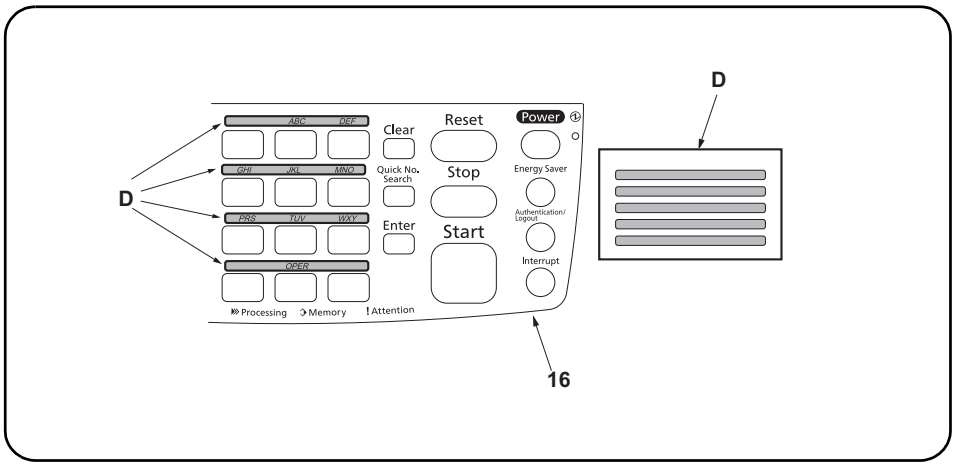
アルファベットラベルの貼り付け（100V 仕様以外）

13. この作業は不要。

14. この作業は不要。

A





15. Remove the operation panel sheet (16).

16. Wipe the area above the numeric keys on the operation panel sheet (16) with alcohol and attach the alphabet labels (D).
In Asia and Oceania, use PQRS TUV WXYZ label, and do not use PRS TUV WXY and OPER labels.

---

15. Déposer la tôle du panneau de commande (16).

16. Nettoyer à l'alcool la surface au-dessus des touches numériques sur la tôle du panneau de commande (16) et apposer les étiquettes alphabétiques (D).
En Asie et Océanie, utiliser l'étiquette PQRS TUV WXYZ et pas les étiquettes PRS TUV WXY et OPER.

---

15. Quite la hoja del panel de trabajo (16).

16. Limpie el área sobre las teclas numéricas de la hoja del panel de trabajo (16) con alcohol y fije las etiquetas de alfabeto (D).
En Asia y Oceanía, utilice la etiqueta PQRS TUV WXYZ y no use las PRS TUV WXY ni las OPER.

---

15. Die Bedienfeldfolie (16) entfernen.

16. Den Bereich über den Zifferntasten an der Bedienfeldfolie (16) mit Alkohol abwischen und die Alphabetaufkleber (D) hier anbringen.
In Asien und Ozeanien den Aufkleber PQRS TUV WXYZ verwenden; nicht die Aufkleber PRS TUV WXY und OPER verwenden.

---

15. Rimuovere il foglio (16) del pannello operativo.

16. Pulire l'area sopra i tasti numerici sul foglio del pannello operativo (16) con alcool ed applicare le etichette alfabetiche (D).
In Asia ed Oceania, utilizzare l'etichetta PQRS TUV WXYZ e non utilizzare le etichette PRS TUV WXY e OPER.

---

15. 拆下操作面板页（16）。

16. 使用酒精清洁操作面板页（16）的数字键上部，粘贴英文字母标签 (D)。
在亚洲和大洋州，请使用 PQRS TUV WXYZ 标签，而不要使用 PRS TUV WXY 和 OPER 标签。

---

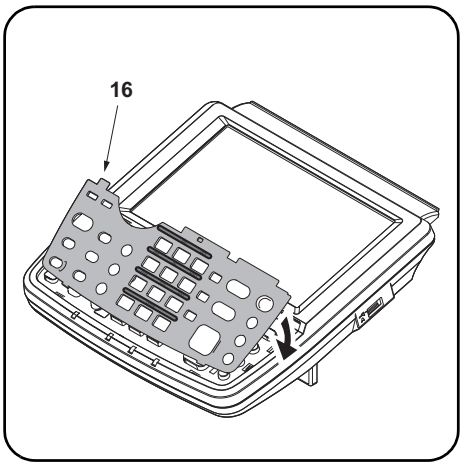
15. 조작판넬시트 (16) 를 제거합니다 .

16. 조작판넬시트 (16) 상에 숫자키 윗측을 알코올 청소하고 알파벳 라벨 (D) 을 붙입니다 . 아시아 / 오세아니아에서는「PRS TUV WXY」및「OPER」라벨을 사용하지 말고「PQRS TUV WXYZ」의 라벨을 사용할 것 .

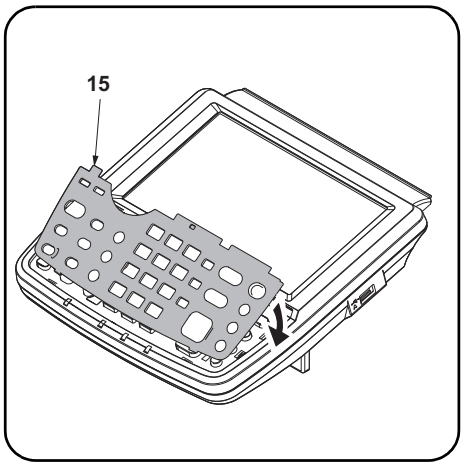
---

15. この作業は不要。

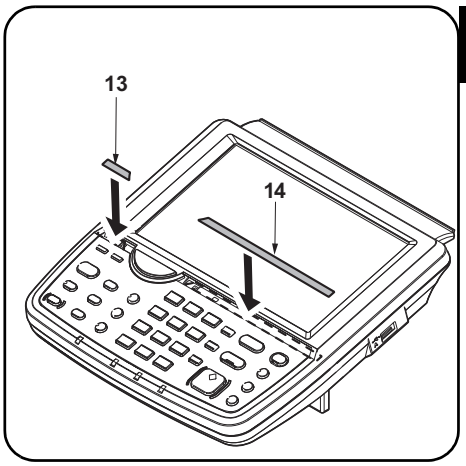
16. この作業は不要。



17. Attach the operation panel sheet (16).



18. Reinstall the clear panel (15).



19. Reinstall the operation panel covers (13) (14).

---

17. Fixer la tôle du panneau de commande (16).

18. Reposer le panneau transparent (15).

19. Reposer les couvercles du panneau de commande (13) (14).

---

17. Fije la hoja del panel de trabajo (16).

18. Vuelva a instalar el panel transparente (15).

19. Vuelva a instalar las cubiertas del panel de trabajo (13) (14).

---

17. Die Bedienfeldfolie (16) anbringen.

18. Die durchsichtige Platte (15) wieder anbringen.

19. Die Bedienfeldabdeckungen (13) (14) wieder anbringen.

---

17. Applicare il foglio del pannello operativo (16).

18. Reinstallare il pannello trasparente (15).

19. Reinstallare i coperchi (13) (14) del pannello operativo.

---

17. 安装操作面板页（16）。

18. 安装透明面板（15）。

19. 安装操作面板的盖板（13）（14）。

---

17. 조작판넬시트 (16) 를 붙입니다 .

18. 클리어판넬 (15) 를 부착합니다 .

19. 조작판넬 커버 (13) (14) 을 부착합니다 .

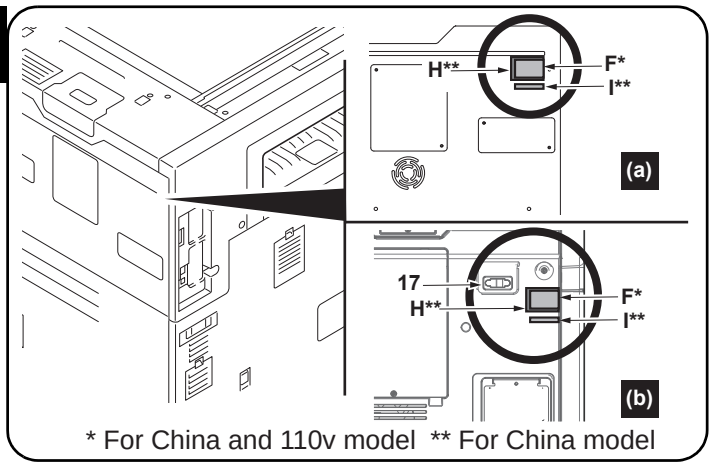
---

17. この作業は不要。

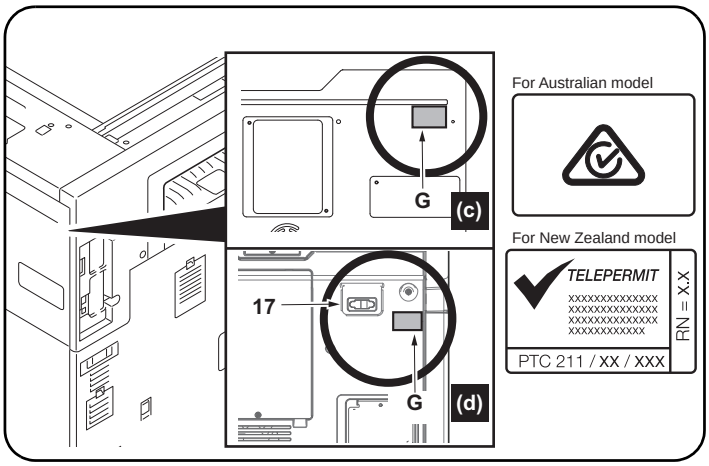
18. この作業は不要。

19. この作業は不要。

A



* For China and 110v model ** For China model



Attach the PTT label (for 110 V models only).

20. Wiping with alcohol in the position as shown above. Attach the PTT label (F) at the point as shown above.

If there isn't a connector(17),see the figure(a).

If there is a connector(17),see the figure(b).

Attach the approval label (for Australian/New Zealand model only).

21. Wiping with alcohol in the position as shown above. Attach the approval label (G) at the point as shown above.

If there isn't a connector(17),see the figure(c).

If there is a connector(17),see the figure(d).

Perform this procedure for Australian/New Zealand model only.

Fixer l'étiquette d'approbation (pour la Chine, modèles 110 V seulement).

20. Cette étape est superflue.

Fixer l'étiquette d'approbation (modèle pour l'Australie/Nouvelle-Zélande seulement).

21. Cette étape est superflue.

Coloque la etiqueta de aprobación (para China, solo para los modelos de 110 V).

20. Este paso no es necesario.

Coloque la etiqueta de aprobación (sólo para los modelos Australiano/Nuevo Zelandés)

21. Este paso no es necesario

Den Genehmigungsaufkleber anbringen (für China nur 110-V-Modelle).

20. Dieser Schritt ist nicht erforderlich.

Den Genehmigungsaufkleber anbringen (nur für Australien/Neuseeland-Modell).

21. Dieser Schritt ist nicht erforderlich.

Applicare l'etichetta di approvazione (per Cina, solo per i modelli da 110 V).

20. Questo passo non è richiesto.

Applicare l'etichetta di approvazione (solo per il modello Australia/Nuova Zelanda).

21. Questo passo non è richiesto.

粘贴规格标签（仅限中国规格）

20. 在粘贴标签或贴片前，请用酒精清洁粘贴位置。按照图示位置来粘贴贴片 (H)。把规格标签 (F) 粘贴在贴片 (H) 上面。按照图示位置来粘贴名称标签 (I)。
    如没有连接端子 (17)，请参照图 (a)
    如有连接端子 (17)，请参照图 (b)

粘贴规格标签（仅适用于澳大利亚 / 新西兰型号）

21. 不需要本步骤。

규격라벨의 부착 (중국 , 110V 사양만)

20. 이 단계가 필요하지 않습니다 .

규격라벨의 부착 (오스트레일리아 / 뉴질랜드 사양만)

21. 이 단계가 필요하지 않습니다 .

規格ラベルの貼り付け（中国、110V 仕様のみ）

20. この作業は不要。

規格ラベルの貼り付け（オーストラリア / ニュージーランド仕様のみ）

21. この作業は不要。

Initialize the FAX circuit board.

1. Plug the MFP into a power outlet, and turn on the main power.
2. Perform the maintenance mode U600 to initialize the FAX PWBs

---

Initialiser la carte à circuits FAX.

1. Brancher le MFP sur une prise d'alimentation et le mettre sous tension.
2. Exécuter le mode maintenance U600 pour initialiser les cartes de circuit imprimé du fax .

Inicialice la tarjeta de circuitos FAX.

1. Conecte el MFP a un receptáculo de pared y encienda el interruptor principal.
2. Ejecute el modo de mantenimiento U600 para inicializar los FAX PWB.

Initialisieren der FAX-Leiterplatte.

1. Netzstecker des MFP in eine Steckdose stecken und Hauptschalter einschalten.
2. Führen Sie den Wartungsmodus U600 aus, um die FAX-Karte zu initialisieren.

Inizializzare la scheda a circuiti FAX.

1. Collegare l'MFP ad una presa di corrente e portare l'interruttore principale su On.
2. Eseguire il modo manutenzione U600 per inizializzare le schede PWB FAX.

传真电话板的初始化

1. 将 MFP 的电源插头插入电源插座，打开主电源。
2. 执行维修保养模式 U600，初始化传真电路板。

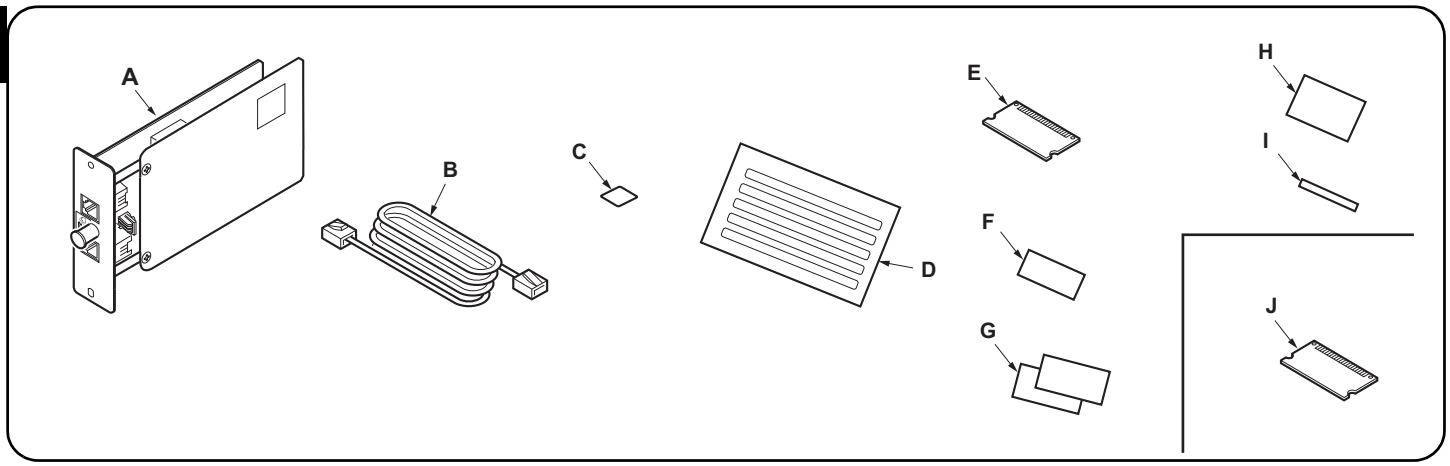
FAX 회로기판 초기화

1. MFP 본체 전원플러그를 콘센트에 꽂고 주 전원 스위치를 ON 으로 한다 .
2. 메인터넌스 모드 U600 을 실행하여 FAX 회로기판을 초기화합니다 .

FAX 基板の初期化

1. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、主電源スイッチを ON にする。
2. メンテナンスモード U600 を実行し、FAX 基板を初期化する。

A



When installing the multiport on a machine (A) which has the 'Home' key in the operation panel

Supplied parts
- **A.** FAX circuit board 1
- **B.** Modular connector cable (120 V/Australian model only) PJJWC0016Z (UL Listed.HUAN HSIN Type TL:120 V only) 1
- **C.** Terminal seal..... 1
- **D.** Alphabet label 1
- **E.** Memory DIMM (16 MB) 1
- **F.** PTT label (110V model only) 1
- **G.** Approval label (Australian/New Zealand models only)..... 2

Option
- **J.** Memory DIMM (128 MB) 1

(H) and (I) are not supplied.
(D), (E), (F), (G) and (J) are not used.
Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning materials from the parts supplied.

Lors de l'installation du port multiple sur une machine (A) disposant de la touche 'Accueil' sur le panneau de commande

Pièces fournies
- **A.** Carte à circuits FAX..... 1
- **B.** Câble du connecteur modulaire (modèles pour l'Australie/120 V seulement)..... 1
- **C.** Joint de borne..... 1
- **D.** Etiquette de l'alphabet 1
- **E.** Mémoire DIMM (16 MB) 1

Option
- **J.** Mémoire DIMM (128 MB) 1

(F), (G), (H) et (I) ne sont pas fournis.
(D), (E) et (J) ne sont pas utilisés.
Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.

Al instalar un puerto múltiple en una máquina (A) que dispone de la tecla 'Inicio' en el panel de controles

Partes suministradas
- **A.** Tarjeta de circuitos de fax..... 1
- **B.** Cable conector modular (sólo para modelos de 120 V/Australianos)..... 1
- **C.** Sello del terminal 1
- **D.** Etiqueta de alfabeto..... 1
- **E.** Memoria DIMM (16 MB) 1

Opción
- **J.** Memoria DIMM (128 MB) 1

(F), (G), (H) y (I) no se suministran.
(D), (E) y (J) no se utilizan.
Asegúrese de quitar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.

Bei Installation einer zweiten Leitung in einem Gerät (A), das über die Taste 'Startseite' im Bedienfeld verfügt

Enthaltene Teile
- **A.** FAX-Leiterplatte..... 1
- **C.** Verschlusskappe 1
- **D.** Alphabetaufkleber..... 1
- **E.** Speicher-DIMM (16 MB)..... 1

Option
- **J.** Speicher-DIMM (128 MB) 1

(B), (F), (G), (H) und (I) liegen nicht bei.
(D), (E) und (J) werden nicht benötigt.
Stellen Sie sicher, dass sämtliche Klebebänder und/oder Polstermaterial von den gelieferten Teilen entfernt wurden.

Per l'installazione di una porta multipla su una macchina (A) dotata di tasto 'Home' sul pannello comandi

Parti fornite
- **A.** Scheda a circuiti FAX 1
- **C.** Guarnizione terminale 1
- **D.** Etichetta alfabetica 1
- **E.** Memoria DIMM (16 MB) 1

Opzioni
- **J.** Memoria DIMM (128 MB) 1

(B), (F), (G), (H) e (I) non sono in dotazione.
(D), (E) e (J) non sono utilizzati.
Rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o i materiali di protezione dalle parti fornite.

当安装双路传真系统到那些操作面板上有 ' 主界面 ' 按键的机器 (A) 时

附属品
- A. 传真电路板..... 1
- B. 电话线..... 1
- C. 端子密封..... 1
- D. 英文字母标签..... 1
- E. 内存模组 DIMM (16MB) 1
- F. 规格标签 1
- H. 贴片 1
- I. 名称标签 1

选购件
- J. 内存模组 DIMM (128MB) 1

(G) 并非附属品。
不使用 (D),(E),(F),(H),(I) 和 (J)。
如果附属品上带有固定胶带，缓冲材料时务必揭下。

조작판넬에 ' 홈 ' 키가 있는 본체 (A) 에 멀티 포트를 설치하는 경우

동봉품
- A. FAX 기판 1
- C. 단자씰.....1
- D. 알파벳 라벨.....1
- E. 메모리 DIMM (16MB) 1

옵션
- J. 메모리 DIMM (128MB) 1

(B) , (F) , (G) , (H) , (I) 는 동봉되어 있지 않습니다 .
(D) , (E) ,(J) 는 사용되지 않습니다 .
동봉품에 고정 테이프 , 완충재가 붙어 있는 경우에는 반드시 제거하십시오 .

操作パネルに ‘ホーム’ キーがある機械 (A) にマルチポートを設置する場合

同梱品
- A. FAX 基板 1
- B. モジュラーコード..... 1
- C. 端子シール..... 1
- E. メモリーDIMM(16MB)..... 1

オプション
- J. メモリーDIMM(128MB) 1

(D),(F),(G),(H),(I) は、同梱されていない。
(E),(J) は、使用しない。
同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。

NOTICE
References to medium-speed MFPs in this document denote 25/25, 30/30, 35/35, 45/45 and 55/50 ppm color machines, and 30, 35, 45 and 55 ppm monochrome machines.
References to high-speed MFPs in this document denote 65/65 and 75/70 ppm color machines, and 65 and 80 ppm monochrome machines.
(The generic procedure figures in this document show medium-speed MFPs.)
If the finisher is already installed, remove the finisher before installing FAX System(W).Before starting installation, be sure to turn the main power switch of the machine off, and unplug the power plug from the wall outlet.

REMARQUE
Dans le présent document, les références aux MFP à vitesse moyenne renvoient aux machines couleurs 25/25, 30/30, 35/35, 45/45 et 55/50 ppm et aux machines monochromes 30, 35, 45 et 55 ppm.
Dans le présent document, les références aux MFP à grande vitesse renvoient aux machines couleurs 65/65 et 75/70 ppm et aux machines monochromes 65 et 80 ppm. (Dans ce document, les chiffres des processus génériques renvoient aux MPF à vitesse moyenne.)
Si le retoucheur est déjà en place, le déposer avant de monter le FAX System(W).
Avant de commencer l'installation, s'assurer de mettre la machine hors tension et de débrancher la fiche d'alimentation de la prise murale.

AVISO
Las referencias a las MFP de velocidad media de este documento corresponden a las máquinas a color de 25/25, 30/30, 35/35, 45/45 y 55/50 ppm y a las máquinas monocromáticas de 30, 35, 45 y 55 ppm.
Las referencias a las MFP de alta velocidad de este documento corresponden a las máquinas a color de 65/65 y 75/70 ppm y a las máquinas monocromáticas de 65 y 80 ppm. (Las ilustraciones de procedimientos genéricos de este documento muestran las MFP de velocidad media.)
Si el finalizador ya se encuentra instalado, desmóntelo antes de instalar el FAX System(W).
Antes de iniciar la instalación, asegúrese de apagar el interruptor de encendido de la máquina y desenchufar el cable de alimentación de la toma de pared.

ANMERKUNG
Angaben für MFP der mittleren Leistungsklasse in dieser Anleitung gelten für die 25/25, 30/30, 35/35, 45/45 und 55/50 ppm Vollfarbenkopierer sowie für die 30, 35, 45 und 55 ppm Monochrommaschinen.
Angaben für MFP der Hochleistungsklasse in dieser Anleitung gelten für die 65/65 und 75/70 ppm Vollfarbenkopierer sowie für die 65 und 80 ppm Monochrommaschinen. (Die Abbildungen der allgemeinen Prozeduren zeigen MFP der mittleren Leistungsklasse.)
Falls der Finisher schon installiert ist, müssen Sie ihn ausbauen, bevor Sie das FAX System(W) installieren.
Bevor Sie mit der Installation beginnen überzeugen Sie sich, dass der Netzschalter des Geräts ausgeschaltet und das Stromkabel aus der Steckdose gezogen ist.

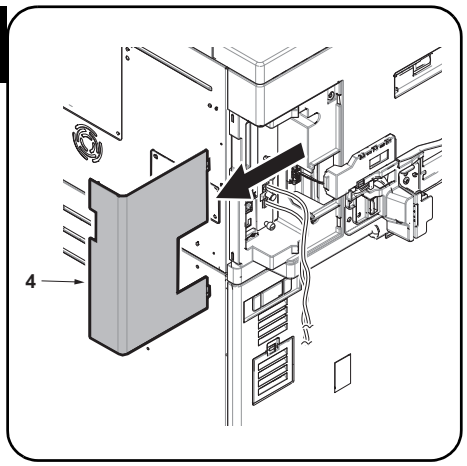
AVVISO
I riferimenti per le MFP a velocità media riportati in questo documento indicano le macchine a colori 25/25, 30/30, 35/35, 45/45 e 55/50 ppm, e le macchine monocromatiche 30, 35, 45 e 55 ppm.
I riferimenti per le MFP a velocità alta riportati in questo documento indicano le macchine a colori 65/65 e 75/70 ppm, e le macchine monocromatiche 65 e 80 ppm. (Le figure della procedura generica riportate in questo documento mostrano le MFP a velocitò media.)
Se la finitrice è già installata, rimuovere la finitrice prima di installare il FAX System(W).
Prima di iniziare l'installazione, spegnere la macchina e scollegare la spina dalla presa di corrente.

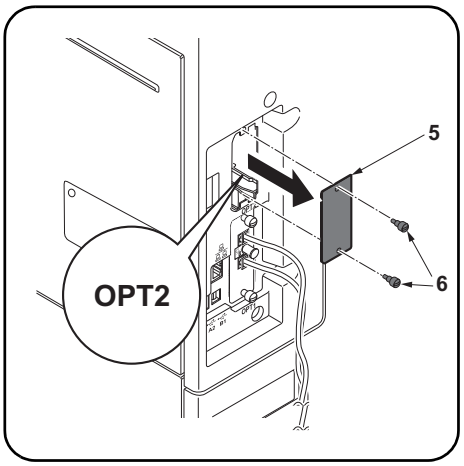
注意
本文中的中速 MFP 代表彩色 25/25 页机型、30/30 页机型、35/35 页机型、45/45 页机型、55/50 页机型、黑白 30 页机型、35 页机型、45 页机型、55 页机型。
本文中的高速 MFP 代表彩色 65/65 页机型、75/70 页机型、黑白 65 页机型、80 页机型。(本文中的通用步骤的插图为中速 MFP。)
已安装装订器时，必须先拆下装订器再安装 FAX System(W)。
安装前务必关闭机器的主电源开关，并从墙壁插座拔下电源插头。

주의
본문 중 중속 MFP 는 컬러 25/25, 30/30, 35/35, 45/45, 55/50 ppm 기종 , 흑백 30, 35, 45, 55 ppm 기종을 나타냅니다 .
본문 내 고속 MFP 는 컬러 65/65, 75/70 ppm 기종 , 흑백 65, 80 ppm 기종을 나타냅니다 . (본문에있는 일반적인 순서 일러스트는 중속 MFP 가 보여집니다 .)
피니셔가 이미 장착되어 있는 경우에는 피니셔를 제거하고 FAX System(W) 를 설치할 것 .
설치 시작하기 전에 반드시 본체의 주 전원 스위치를 끄고 벽 콘센트에서 전원 플러그를 분리하십시오 .

注意
本文中の中速 MFP はカラー機の 25/25 枚機、30/30 枚機、35/35 枚機、45/45 枚機、55/50 枚機、モノクロ機の 30 枚機、35 枚機、45 枚機、55 枚機を表す。
本文中の高速 MFP はカラー機の 65/65 枚機、75/70 枚機、モノクロ機の 65 枚機、80 枚機を表す。(本文中の共通手順イラストは中速 MFP とする。)
フィニッシャーがすでに装着されている場合は、フィニッシャーを取り外してから、FAX System(W) を取り付けること。
必ず機械本体の主電源スイッチを OFF にし、機械本体の電源プラグを抜いてから作業すること。

A





Procedure
Removing the slot cover

1. Remove the cover (4).
* For high-speed MFPs with/without the finisher and for medium-speed MFPs with the finisher installed.
* This work is not required if a multiport is installed along with the fax system (OPT1).

2. Remove 2 screws (6) and then remove the OPT2 slot cover (5).

Procédure
Dépose du couvercle de la fente

1. Déposer le couvercle (4).
* Pour les imprimantes multifonction à grande vitesse avec/sans module de finition et pour les imprimantes multifonction à vitesse moyenne avec le module de finition installé.
* Cette opération n'est pas nécessaire si un port multiple est installé avec le fax (OPT1).

2. Déposer les 2 vis (6) puis le couvercle de la fente OPT2 (5).

Procedimiento
Desmontaje de la cubierta de la ranura

1. Quite la cubierta (4).
* Para los MFP de velocidad alta con/sin finalizador y para los MFP de velocidad media con el finalizador instalado.
* Esto no es necesario realizarlo si hay instalado un puerto múltiple con el sistema de fax (OPT1).

2. Quite 2 tornillos (6) y, después, quite la cubierta de la ranura OPT2 (5).

Vorgehensweise
Entfernen der Einschubabdeckung

1. Die Abdeckung (4) entfernen.
* Bei schnellen MFPs mit/ohne Finisher oder mittelschnellen MFPs mit installiertem Finisher.
*Dies ist nicht nötig, wenn eine zweite Leitung zusammen mit dem FAX-System (OPT1) installiert ist.

2. 2 Schrauben (6) entfernen und dann die Abdeckung (5) des Einschubs OPT2 entfernen.

Procedura
Rimozione del coperchio vano

1. Rimuovere il coperchio (4).
* Per dispositivi MFP di fascia alta con/senza finisher e per dispositivi di fascia media con finisher installato.
* Questa operazione non è richiesta quando con il modulo fax (OPT1) viene installata una porta multipla.

2. Rimuovere le 2 viti (6) e quinidi rimuovere il coperchio (5) del vano OPT2.

安装步骤
拆下插槽盖板

1. 拆下盖板 (4)。
※ 对于高速机来说装订器可装可不装，对于中速机来说要安装。
※ 双路传真系统和传真系统 (OPT1) 同时安装时，不需要此步骤。

2. 拆除 2 颗螺丝 (6)，拆下 OPT2 的插槽盖板 (5)。

설치순서
슬롯커버 제거

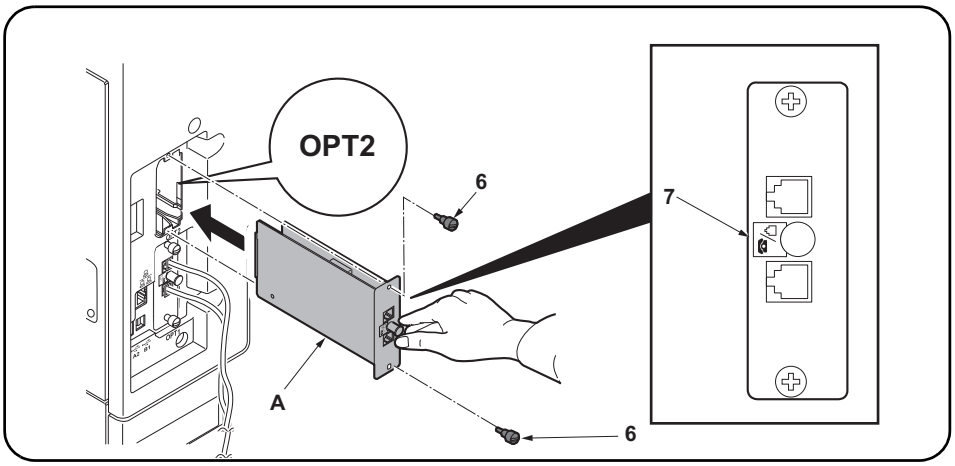
1. 커버 (4) 를 제거합니다 .
※ 피니셔 장착 또는 비장착의 고속 MFP 및 피니셔 장착 중속 MFP.
※ 이 작업은 멀티 포트가 팩스 시스템 (OPT1) 과 함께 설치되어 있는 경우에는 필요하지 않습니다 .

2. 나사 (6) 2 개를 제거하고 OPT2 의 슬롯커버 (5) 를 제거합니다 .

取付手順
スロットカバーの取り外し

1. カバー(4) を取り外す。
※ 高速 MFP の場合および中速 MFP にフィニッシャー装着時の場合
※ ファクスシステム (OPT1) と同時にマルチポートを設置する場合この作業は不要。

2. ビス (6)2 本を外し、OPT2 のスロットカバー (5) を取り外す。



Install the FAX circuit board.

3. Insert the FAX circuit board (A) along the groove in OPT2 and secure the board with two screws (6) that have been removed in step 2.
Do not directly touch the FAX circuit board (A) terminal.
Hold the top and bottom of the FAX circuit board, or the projection of the board to insert the FAX circuit board (A).
Direct the label (7) on to the FAX circuit board (A) toward left side and insert the board along the groove.

Installer la carte à circuits FAX.

3. Insérer la carte à circuits FAX (A) le long de la rainure dans l'OPT2 et la fixer à l'aide des deux vis (6) retirées à l'étape 2.
Ne pas toucher directement la borne de la carte à circuits FAX (A).
Tenir les parties inférieure et supérieure de la carte à circuits FAX ou la saillie de la carte pour insérer la carte à circuits FAX (A).
Orienter l'étiquette (7) de la carte à circuits FAX (A) comme illustré et insérer la plaquette le long de la rainure.

Instale la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX.

3. Inserte la tarjeta de circuitos de fax (A) a lo largo de la ranura de OPT2 y asegúrela con los dos tornillos (6) que ha quitado en el paso 2.
No toque directamente el terminal de la tarjeta de circuitos del FAX (A).
Sujete las partes superior e inferior de la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX o la saliente de la tarjeta para insertar la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX (A).
Oriente la etiqueta (7) en la tarjeta de circuitos del FAX (A) como se indica en la ilustración e inserte la tarjeta a lo largo de la ranura.

Installieren der FAX-Leiterplatte.

3. FAX-Leiterplatte (A) in die Nut des Einbauschachts OPT2 einsetzen und Leiterplatte mit den in Schritt 2 ausgebauten Schrauben (6) befestigen.
Berühren Sie die Anschlüsse der FAX-Platine (A) nicht mit den Fingern.
Die FAX-Leiterplatte (A) bein Einsetzen oben und unten oder an dem Vorsprung festhalten.
Die FAX-Leiterplatte (A) so in die Nut einsetzen, dass der Aufkleber (7) wie abgebildet zur Leiterplatte zeigt.

Installare la scheda a circuiti FAX.

3. Inserire la scheda a circuiti FAX (A) lungo l'incavo nell'OPT2 e fissare la scheda con le due viti (6) rimosse nell'operazione 2.
Non toccare direttamente il terminale della scheda a circuiti FAX (A),
Per inserire il circuito FAX (A), tenere l'estremit superiore e la base della scheda a circuiti FAX, o la sporgenza della scheda a circuiti FAX.
Orientare l'etichetta (7) sulla scheda a circuiti FAX (A) come indicato nell'illustrazione e inserire la scheda lungo l'incavo.

安装传真电路板

3. 沿着 OPT2 的沟槽插入传真电路板 (A) 并用在步骤 2 中拆下的两颗螺钉 (6) 固定电路板。
请勿直接触摸传真电路板 (A) 端子。
按住传真电路板的顶部和底部，或者按住电路板的突出部将传真电路板 (A) 插入。
将传真电路板 (A) 上的标签 (7) 保持图示中的方向，将电路板沿着沟槽方向插入。

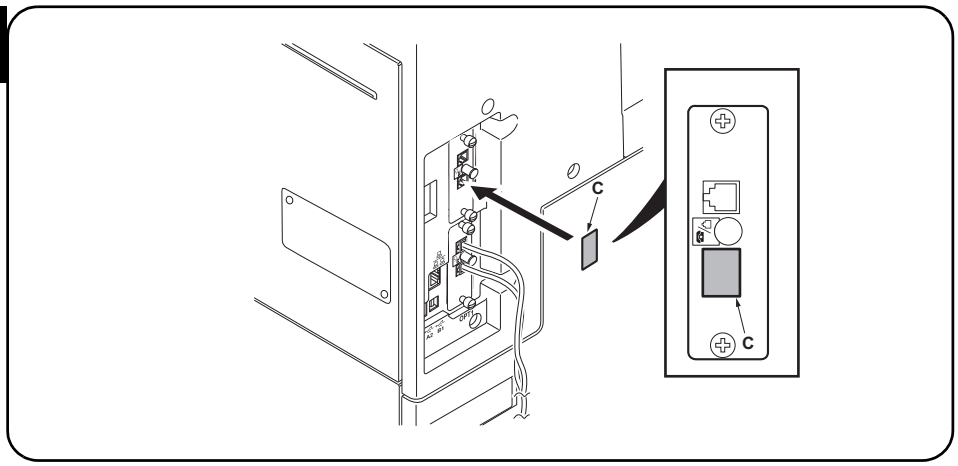
FAX 회로기판 장착

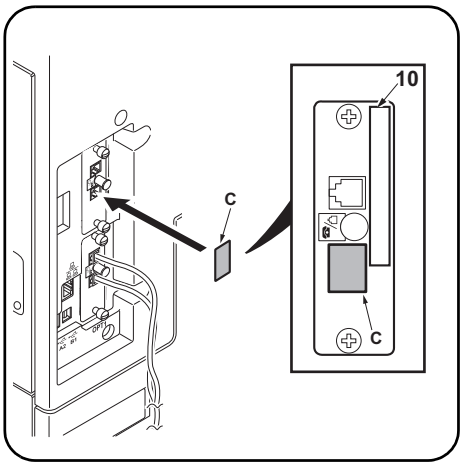
3. OPT2 의 홈을 따라 FAX 회로기판 (A) 를 삽입하고 앞 순서 2 에서 제거한 나사 (6) 2 개로 고정합니다 .
FAX 회로기판 (A) 의 단자에 직접 닿지 않도록 할 것 .
FAX 회로기판 (A) 삽입 시 , 회로기판의 상하 또는 돌출부를 잡을 것 .
FAX 회로기판 (A) 를 부착된 라벨 (7) 그림 표기 방향으로 삽입할 것 .

FAX 基板の取り付け

3. OPT2 の溝に沿って FAX 基板 (A) を挿入し、手順 2 で外したビス (6)2 本で固定する。
FAX 基板 (A) の端子に直接触れないこと。
FAX 基板 (A) の挿入時は基板の上下か突起を持つこと。
FAX 基板 (A) は、貼り付けられているラベル (7) が図に示す方向になるように、挿入すること。

A





Seal the terminal.

4. Wipe the surface of the telephone terminal with alcohol and adhere the terminal seal (C).
The telephone terminal on the FAX circuit board installed to OPT2 is unavailable (invalid). Seal the terminal securely to prevent a user from connecting a separate phone.

On 120 V models, be sure that it is not attached over the top of the approval label (10).

Fermer hermétiquement la borne.

4. Nettoyer la surface de la borne de téléphone avec de l'alcool, et apposer le joint de borne (C).
La borne de téléphone de la carte à circuits FAX installée sur l'OPT2 n'est pas utilisable (invalide). Fermer hermétiquement la borne pour empêcher tout utilisateur de connecter un téléphone séparé.

Sur les modèles 120 V, attention à ne pas installer en recouvrant le haut de l'étiquette d'approbation (10).

Selle el terminal.

4. Limpie la superficie del terminal de teléfono con alcohol y pegue el sello de terminal (C).
El terminal de teléfono de la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX instalado en el OPT2 no está disponible (inválido). Selle firmemente el terminal para evitar que un usuario conecte un teléfono por separado.

En los modelos de 120 V, asegúrese de que no se fije sobre la etiqueta de aprobación (10).

Versiegeln der Anschlussbuchse.

4. Die Oberfläche der Telefonanschlussbuchse mit Alkohol abwischen und die Verschlusskappe (C) anbringen.
Die Telefonanschlussbuchse der in OPT2 installierten FAX-Leiterplatte ist nicht verfügbar (ungültig). Die Anschlussbuchse vollkommen versiegeln, um den Anschluss eines separaten Telefons zu verhindern.

Bei 120-V-Modellen darauf achten, dass der Aufkleber nicht den Genehmigungsaufkleber (10) verdeckt.

Sigillare il terminale.

4. Pulire la superficie del terminale del telefono con alcol e fare aderire la guarnizione terminale (C).
Il terminale del telefono sulla scheda a circuiti FAX installata su OPT2 non è disponibile (invalido). Sigillare il terminale saldamente per prevenire a un utente di collegare un telefono separato.

Sui modelli da 120 V, assicurarsi che essa non venga applicata sopra l'etichetta di approvazione (10).

安装端子密封

4. 用酒精擦拭电话端子表面并粘上端子密封 (C)。
安装在 OPT2 上的传真电路板的电话端子不可使用 (无效)。为了避免用户错误与其它电话连接，必须确实粘贴好端子密封。

120V 规格在粘贴时注意不要与认可标签 (10) 重叠。

단자씰의 부착

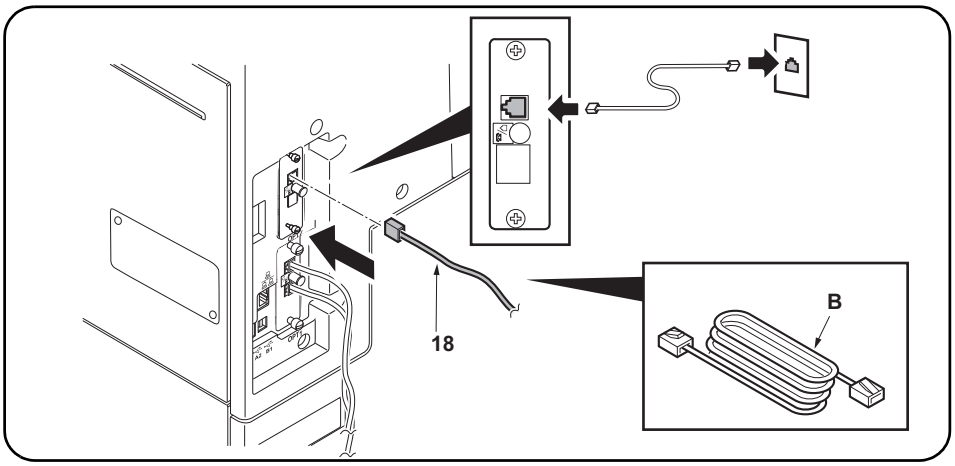
4. TEL 단자주위를 알코올청소하고 단자씰 (C) 을 부착합니다 .
OPT2 에 부착한 FAX 회로기판의 TEL 단자는 사용불가 (무효) 가 됩니다 . 사용자의 실수로 외부 전화에 연결하지 않도록 확실히 부착할 것 .

120V 사양은 허가 라벨 (10) 에 겹치지 않도록 붙일 것 .

端子シールの貼り付け

4. TEL 端子周囲をアルコール清掃し、端子シール (C) を貼り付ける。
OPT2 に取り付けた FAX 基板の TEL 端子は使用不可(無効)となる。ユーザーが誤って外付け電話を接続しないよう確実に貼り付けること。

120V 仕様は認可ラベル(10)に重ならないように、貼り付けること。



Connect the MFP to the telephone line.

5. Plug the modular connector cable (18) into the line terminal, and then connect the other end to the telephone line.
For 100 V/120 V/Australian or Chinese models, use the supplied modular connector cable (B).

Connecter le MFP à la ligne de téléphone.

5. Brancher le câble du connecteur modulaire (18) à la borne de la ligne, puis connecter l'autre extrémité à la ligne de téléphone.
Pour les modèles 100 V/120 V/Australie ou Chine, utilisez le câble à connecteur modulaire (B) fourni.

Conecte el MFP a la línea telefónica.

5. Enchufe el cable del conector modular (18) en el terminal de línea y, a continuación, conecte el otro extremo a la línea telefónica.
Para los modelos de 100 V/120 V/Australiano o Chino, utilice el cable conector modular (B) suministrado.

Anschließen des MFP an die Telefonleitung.

5. Telefonmodulkabel (18) in die Gerätebuchse einstecken und das Kabel an der Telefondose anschließen.
Das mitgelieferte Modularsteckerkabel (B) für die 100-V/120-V/Australien- oder China-Modelle verwenden.

Collegamento dell'MFP alla linea del telefono.

5. Inserire il cavo connettore modulare (18) nel terminale della linea, e quindi collegare l'altro terminale alla linea del telefono.
Per modelli da 100 V/120 V/Australia o Cina, utilizzare il cavo connettore modulare (B) in dotazione.

将 MFP 连接到电话线

5. 将模块接插件电缆 (18) 插入电话线端子，然后将另一端与电话线连接。
对于 100V/120V/ 澳大利亚或中国机型，请使用随附的模块接插件电缆 (B)。

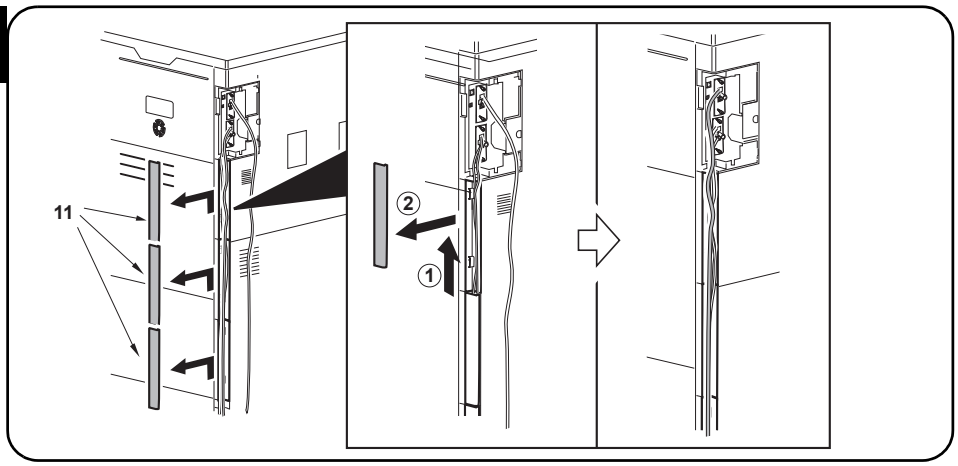
전화회선과의 연결

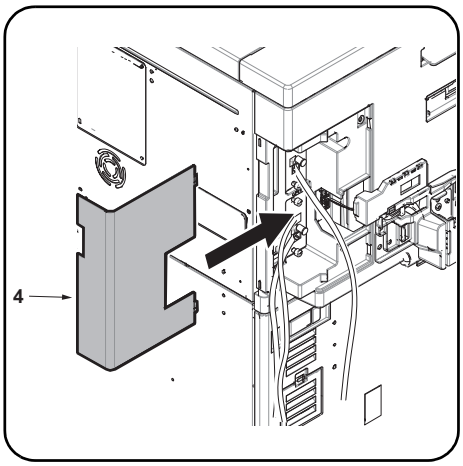
5. 모듈러 코드 (18) 를 라인단자에 꽂습니다 . 다른 한 쪽의 플러그는 전화회선과 연결합니다 .
100V/120V/ 오스트레일리아 / 중국사양은 부속 모듈코드 (B) 를 사용할 것 .

電話回線との接続

5. モジュラーコード (18) をライン端子に差し込む。もう片方のプラグは、電話回線へ接続する。
100V/120V/ オーストラリア / 中国仕様は付属のモジュラーコード (B) を使用すること。

A





Wiring the modular connector cable (High-speed MFPs only)

6. Remove the covers (11) and run the modular connector cable as shown in the figure.
*Run it by binding with the modular cords from the Fax System (OPT1).

7. Reinstall the covers (11).

8. Install the cover (4) which was removed in step 1.
* For high-speed MFPs with/without the finisher and for medium-speed MFPs with the finisher installed.

Câblage du câble à connecteur modulaire (MFP à grande vitesse uniquement)

6. Déposer les couvercles (11) et implanter le câble à connecteur modulaire comme illustré par la figure.
*Le faire passer avec les cordons modulaires du fax (OPT1).

7. Reposer les couvercles (11).

8. Installer le cache (4) qui a été retiré à l'étape 1.
* Pour les imprimantes multifonction à grande vitesse avec/sans module de finition et pour les imprimantes multifonction à vitesse moyenne avec le module de finition installé.

Tendido del cable conector modular (Solo para las MFP de alta velocidad)

6. Quite las cubiertas (11) y tienda el cable conector modular como se muestra en la ilustración.
* Tiéndalo uniéndolo con los cables modulares del sistema de fax (OPT1).

7. Vuelva a instalar las cubiertas (11).

8. Instale la cubierta (4) que se quitó en el paso 1.
* Para los MFP de velocidad alta con/sin finalizador y para los MFP de velocidad media con el finalizador instalado.

Verlegung des Modularsteckerkabels (Nur MFP der Hochleistungsklasse)

6. Die Abdeckungen (11) entfernen und das Modularsteckerkabel gemäß der Abbildung verlegen.
*Führen Sie es zusammen mit dem Kabel des FAX-Systems (OPT1).

7. Die Abdeckungen (11) wieder anbringen.

8. Installieren Sie die Abdeckung (4), die in Schritt 1 entfernt wurde.
* Bei schnellen MFPs mit/ohne Finisher oder mittelschnellen MFPs mit installiertem Finisher.

Cablaggio del cavo connettore modulare (Solo per MFP a velocità alta)

6. Rimuovere i coperchi (11) e far passare il cavo connettore modulare come indicato nella figura.
*Infilarlo collegandolo ai cavi modulari del modulo fax (OPT1).

7. Reinstallare i coperchi (11).

8. Installare il coperchio (4) rimosso al punto 1.
* Per dispositivi MFP di fascia alta con/senza finisher e per dispositivi di fascia media con finisher installato.

电话线的配线（仅限高速 MFP 时）

6. 拆下盖板（11），将电话线如图所示穿过。
※ 将传真系统（OPT1）的连接线整理成束。

7. 安装盖板（11）。

8. 安装在步骤 1 中取下的盖板（4）。
※ 对于高速机来说装订器可装可不装，对于中速机来说要安装。

모듈러 코드의 배선 (고속 MFP 의 경우만)

6. 커버 (11) 를 떼어 내고 모듈러 코드를 그림과 같이 지나가게 합니다 .
※ 팩스 시스템 (OPT1) 의 모듈러 코드와 묶어서 실행합니다 .

7. 커버 (11) 을 장착합니다 .

8. 1 단계에서 분리한 커버 (4) 를 설치합니다 .
※ 피니셔 장착 및 비장착의 고속 MFP 및 피니셔 장착 중속 MFP.

モジュラーコードの配線（高速 MFP の場合のみ）

6. カバー(11)を取り外し、モジュラーコードを図のように通す。
※ ファクスシステム（OPT1）のモジュラーコードと束ねて通す。

7. カバー(11)を取り付ける。

8. 手順 1 で取り外したカバー(4)を取り付ける。
※ 高速 MFP の場合および中速 MFP にフィニッシャー装着時の場合。

Initialize the FAX circuit board.

1. Plug the MFP into a power outlet, and turn on the main power.
2. If the FAX PWBs were installed simultaneously to OPT1 and OPT2 (all Fax PWBs are initialized), perform the maintenance mode U600 to initialize the FAX PWBs.
3. If the FAX circuit board has been added to OPT2 (to initialize the FAX circuit board in OPT2)
   Initialize OPT2 by pressing [PORT2], and the Start key in this order in the maintenance mode U698 and executing the maintenance mode U600. If [ALL] is selected in U698, both OPT1 and OPT2 are initialized.
   For details, see the service manual.

Initialiser la carte à circuits FAX.

1. Brancher le MFP sur une prise d'alimentation et le mettre sous tension.
2. Si les cartes de circuit imprimé du fax ont été installées en même temps que OPT1 et OPT2 (toutes les cartes de circuit imprimé du fax sont initialisées), exécuter le mode maintenance U600 pour initialiser les cartes de circuit imprimé du fax.
3. Si la carte à circuits FAX a été ajoutée à l'OPT2 (pour initialiser la carte à circuits FAX dans l'OPT2)
   Initialiser l'OPT2 en appuyant sur [PORT2] et la touche Départ dans cet ordre en mode de maintenance U698, et exécuter le mode de maintenance U600. Si [ALL] est sélectionné dans U698, l'OPT1 et l'OPT2 sont tous deux initialisés. Pour plus de détails, se reporter au manuel d'entretien.

Inicialice la tarjeta de circuitos FAX.

1. Conecte el MFP a un receptáculo de pared y encienda el interruptor principal.
2. Si se instalaron FAX PWB simultáneamente a OPT1 y OPT2 (se inicializan todos los FAX PWB), ejecute el modo de mantenimiento U600 para inicializar los FAX PWB.
3. Si la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX se agregó a OPT2 (para inicializar la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX en OPT2)
   Inicialice el OPT2 presionando [PORT2] y la tecla de Inicio en ese orden en el modo de mantenimiento U698 y ejecutando el modo de mantenimiento U600. Si se selecciona [ALL] en U698, se inicializan ambos OPT1 y OPT2. Para más detalles, lea el manual de servicio.

Initialisieren der FAX-Leiterplatte.

1. Netzstecker des MFP in eine Steckdose stecken und Hauptschalter einschalten.
2. Falls die FAX-Karten gleichzeitig in OPT1 und OPT2 installiert werden (alle FAX-Karten werden initialisiert), führen Sie den Wartungsmodus U600 aus, um die FAX-Karten zu initialisieren.
3. Wenn die FAX-Leiterplatte zu OPT2 hinzugefügt worden ist (um die FAX-Leiterplatte in OPT2 zu in7itialisieren)
   OPT2 initialisieren. Dazu [PORT2] und die Start-Taste im Wartungsmodus U698 in dieser Reihenfolge drücken und den Wartungsmodus U600 ausführen. Wenn [ALL] in U698 gewählt wird, werden OPT1 und OPT2 initialisiert. Weitere Einzelheiten siehe Wartungsanleitung.

Inizializzare la scheda a circuiti FAX.

1. Collegare l'MFP ad una presa di corrente e portare l'interruttore principale su On.
2. Se sono state installate simultaneamente le schede FAX PWB su OPT1 e OPT2 (tutte le schede FAX PWB sono inizializzate), eseguire il modo manutenzione U600 per inizializzare le schede FAX PWB.
3. Se la scheda a circuiti è stata aggiunta all'OPT2 (per inzializzare la scheda a circuiti FAX nell'OPT2)
   Inizializzare OPT2 premendo [PORT2] e il tasto Avvio in questo ordine nel modo di manutenzione U698 ed eseguendo il modo di manutenzione U600. Se viene selezionato [ALL] nel modo U698, entrambi OPT1 e OPT2 sono inizializzati. Per ulteriori dettagli leggere il manuale d'istruzioni.

传真电话板的初始化

1. 将 MFP 的电源插头插入电源插座，打开主电源。
2. 当把传真电路板同时安装到 OPT1 和 OPT2 时（全部的传真电路板初始化），执行维修保养模式 U600，初始化传真电路板。
3. 在 OPT2 上增设时
   （OPT2 的传真电路板初始化）
   只进行 OPT2 初始化时，在维修保养模式 U698 状态下，按顺序按下“PORT2”、开始键，执行维修保养模式 U600。
   在 U698 状态下设定 “ALL” 时，会使 OPT1 和 OPT2 均初始化。
   有关详信息，请参见维修手册。

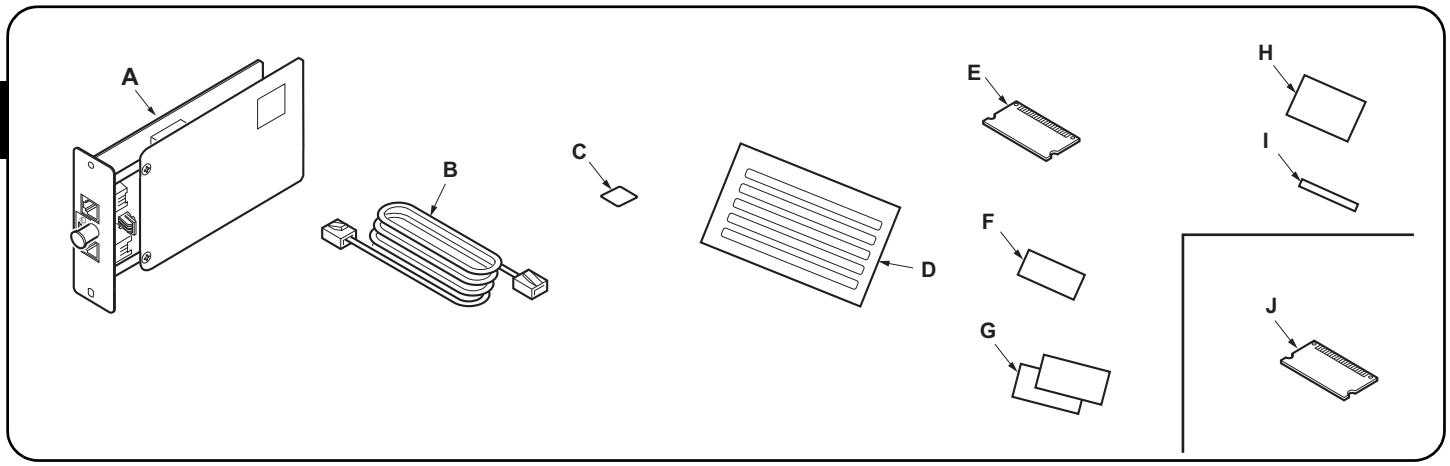
FAX 회로기판의 초기화

1. MFP 본체 전원플러그를 콘센트에 꼽고 주 전원 스위치를 ON 으로 한다 .
2. OPT1 과 OPT2 에 FAX 회로기판을 동시에 설치한 경우 (모든 FAX 회로기판이 초기화됨), 메인터넌스 모드 U600 을 수행하여 FAX 회로기판을 초기화합니다 .
3. OPT2 에 증설한 경우 (OPT2 의 FAX 기판을 초기화)
   메인터넌스모드 U698 에서「PORT2」, 시작키 순으로 누릅니다 . 메인터넌스 모드 U600 을 실행하고 FAX 회로기판을 초기화합니다 .
   U698 에서「ALL」을 설정하면 OPT1 과 OPT2 양쪽을 초기화하기 때문에 주의할 것 .
   상세는 서비스 매뉴얼을 참조할 것 .

FAX 基板の初期化

1. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、主電源スイッチを ON にする。
2. OPT1 と OPT2 に FAX 基板を同時に設置した場合 (すべての FAX 基板を初期化) メンテナンスモード U600 を実行し、FAX 基板を初期化する。
3. OPT2 に増設した場合 (OPT2 の FAX 基板を初期化)
   メンテナンスモード U698 で「PORT2」、スタートキーの順に押す。メンテナンスモード U600 を実行し、FAX 基板を初期化する。
   U698 で「ALL」を設定すると OPT1 と OPT2 両方を初期化するので注意すること。詳細はサービスマニュアルを参照のこと。

B



When installing the Fax system on a machine (B) which has the 'Accessibility Display' key in the operation panel

Supplied parts
- **A.** FAX circuit board 1
- **B.** Modular connector cable (120 V/Australian model only) PJJWC0016Z (UL Listed.HUAN HSIN Type TL:120 V only) 1
- **C.** Terminal seal..... 1
- **D.** Alphabet label..... 1
- **E.** Memory DIMM (16 MB) 1
- **F.** PTT label (110V model only) 1
- **G.** Approval label (Australian/New Zealand models only)..... 2

Option
- **J.** Memory DIMM (128 MB) 1

(H) and (I) are not supplied.

Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning materials from the parts supplied.

Lors de l'installation du fax sur une machine (B) disposant de la touche 'Affich. accessibilité' sur le panneau de commande

Pièces fournies
- **A.** Carte à circuits FAX..... 1
- **B.** Câble du connecteur modulaire (modèles pour l'Australie/120 V seulement)..... 1
- **C.** Joint de borne..... 1
- **D.** Etiquette de l'alphabet..... 1
- **E.** Mémoire DIMM (16 MB) 1

Option
- **J.** Mémoire DIMM (128 MB) 1

(F),(G),(H) et (I) ne sont pas fournis.

Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.

Al instalar el sistema de fax en una máquina (B) que dispone de la tecla 'Pantalla acceso' en el panel de controles

Partes suministradas
- **A.** Tarjeta de circuitos de fax..... 1
- **B.** Cable conector modular (sólo para modelos de 120 V/Australianos)..... 1
- **C.** Sello del terminal..... 1
- **D.** Etiqueta de alfabeto..... 1
- **E.** Memoria DIMM (16 MB) 1

Opción
- **J.** Memoria DIMM (128 MB) 1

(F) ,(G) ,(H) y (I) no se suministran.

Asegúrese de quitar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.

Bei Installation des FAX-Systems in einem Gerät (B), das über die Taste 'Zugriffsanzeige' im Bedienfeld verfügt

Enthaltene Teile
- **A.** FAX-Leiterplatte..... 1
- **C.** Verschlusskappe 1
- **D.** Alphabetaufkleber..... 1
- **E.** Speicher-DIMM (16 MB)..... 1

Option
- **J.** Speicher-DIMM (128 MB) 1

(B), (F), (G) , (H) und (I) liegen nicht bei.

Stellen Sie sicher, dass sämtliche Klebebänder und/oder Polstermaterial von den gelieferten Teilen entfernt wurden.

Per l'installazione del modulo FAX su una macchina (B) dotata di tasto 'Visual. Accessibilità' sul pannello comandi

Parti fornite
- **A.** Scheda a circuiti FAX 1
- **C.** Guarnizione terminale 1
- **D.** Etichetta alfabetica 1
- **E.** Memoria DIMM (16 MB) 1

Opzioni
- **J.** Memoria DIMM (128 MB) 1

(B), (F), (G), (H) e (I) non sono in dotazione.

Rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o i materiali di protezione dalle parti fornite.

当安装传真系统到那些操作面板上有 ' 扩大显示 ' 按键的机器 (B) 时

附属品
- A. 传真电路板..... 1
- B. 电话线..... 1
- C. 端子密封..... 1
- D. 英文字母标签..... 1
- E. 内存模组 DIMM (16MB) 1
- F. 规格标签 1
- H. 贴片 1
- I. 名称标签 1

选购件
- J. 内存模组 DIMM (128MB) 1

(G) 并非附属品。
不使用 (I)。

如果附属品上带有固定胶带，缓冲材料时务必揭下。

조작판넬에 ' 유니버셜 ' 키가 있는 본체 (B) 에 팩스 시스템을 설치하는 경우

동봉품
- A. FAX 기판 1
- C. 단자씰.....1
- D. 알파벳 라벨.....1
- E. 메모리 DIMM (16MB) 1

옵션
- J. 메모리 DIMM (128MB) 1

(B),(F),(G),(H),(I) 는 동봉되어 있지 않습니다 .

동봉품에 고정 테이프 , 완충재가 붙어 있는 경우에는 반드시 제거하십시오 .

操作パネルに ‘ユニバーサル’ キーがある機械 (B) にファクスシステムを設置する場合

同梱品
- A. FAX 基板 1
- B. モジュラーコード..... 1
- C. 端子シール..... 1
- E. メモリーDIMM(16MB)..... 1

オプション
- J. メモリーDIMM(128MB) 1

(D),(F),(G),(H),(I) は、同梱されていない。

同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材がついている場合は、必ず取り外すこと。

NOTICE
If the finisher is already installed, remove the finisher before installing FAX System(W).
Before starting installation, be sure to turn the main power switch of the machine off, and unplug the power plug from the wall outlet.

REMARQUE
Si le retoucheur est déjà en place, le déposer avant de monter le FAX System(W).
Avant de commencer l'installation, s'assurer de mettre la machine hors tension et de débrancher la fiche d'alimentation de la prise murale.

AVISO
Si el finalizador ya se encuentra instalado, desmóntelo antes de instalar el FAX System(W).
Antes de iniciar la instalación, asegúrese de apagar el interruptor de encendido de la máquina y desenchufar el cable de alimentación de la toma de pared.

ANMERKUNG
Falls der Finisher schon installiert ist, müssen Sie ihn ausbauen, bevor Sie das FAX System(W) installieren.
Bevor Sie mit der Installation beginnen überzeugen Sie sich, dass der Netzschalter des Geräts ausgeschaltet und das Stromkabel aus der Steckdose gezogen ist.

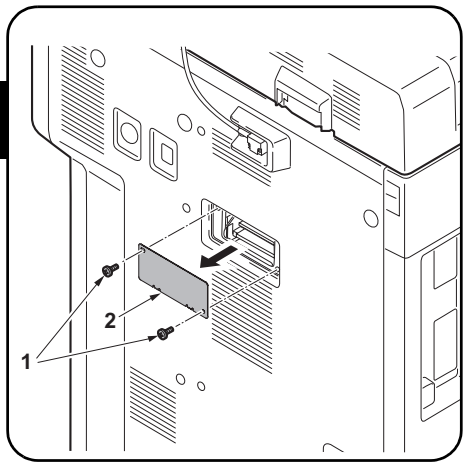
AVVISO
Se la finitrice è già installata, rimuovere la finitrice prima di installare il FAX System(W).
Prima di iniziare l'installazione, spegnere la macchina e scollegare la spina dalla presa di corrente.

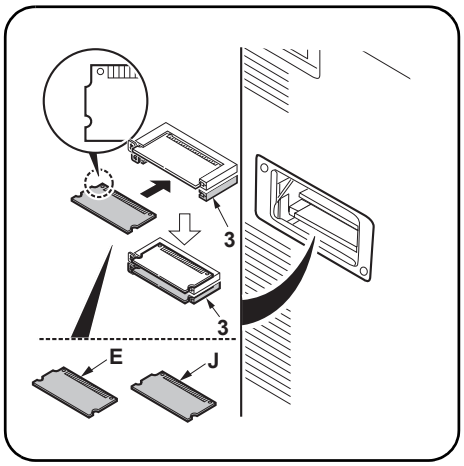
注意
已安装装订器时，必须先拆下装订器再安装 FAX System(W)。
安装前务必关闭机器的主电源开关，并从墙壁插座拔下电源插头。

주의
피니셔가 이미 장착되어 있는 경우에는 피니셔를 제거하고 FAX System(W) 를 설치할 것 .
설치를 시작하기 전에 반드시 본체의 주 전원 스위치를 끄고 벽 콘센트에서 전원 플러그를 분리하십시오 .

注意
フィニッシャーがすでに装着されている場合は、フィニッシャーを取り外してから、FAX System(W) を取り付けること。
必ず機械本体の主電源スイッチを OFF にし、機械本体の電源プラグを抜いてから作業すること。

B





Procedure
Installing the memory DIMM

1. Remove 2 screws (1), and then remove the cover (2).

2. Install the memory DIMM (E) or the optional memory DIMM (J) into the memory slot (3) on the lower level (FLS).
Install it with the IC side facing down.
Insert it in the direction of the arrow until it clicks.

3. Reinstall the cover (2) using the 2 screws (1).

Procédure
Installation de la mémoire DIMM

1. Déposer les 2 vis (1) puis enlevez le couvercle (2).

2. Installer la mémoire DIMM (E) ou la mémoire DIMM en option (J) dans la fente mémoire (3) se trouvant au niveau inférieur (FLS).
L'installer avec le côté IC en bas.
L'insérer dans la direction de la flèche jusqu'au clic.

3. Reposez le couvercle (2) à l'aide des 2 vis (1).

Procedimiento
Instalación de la memoria DIMM

1. Quite 2 tornillos (1) y, después, desmonte la cubierta (2).

2. Instale la memoria DIMM (E), o la memoria DIMM opcional (J), en la ranura para memoria (3) en el nivel inferior (FLS).
Instálelo con el lado IC hacia abajo.
Insértela en la dirección que indica la flecha hasta que escuche un clic.

3. Vuelva a colocar la cubierta (2) utilizando los 2 tornillos (1).

Vorgehensweise
Installation der DIMM-Speichermodule

1. Entfernen Sie 2 Schrauben (1) und nehmen Sie dann die Abdeckung (2) ab.

2. Setzen Sie das DIMM-Speichermodul (E) oder das optionale DIMM-Speichermodul (J) in die untere Position (FLS) der Speicherbank (3) ein.
Mit der IC-Seite nach unten weisend installieren.
Schieben Sie das Modul in Pfeilrichtung, bis es hörbar einrastet.

3. Setzen Sie die Abdeckung (2) wieder mit den 2 Schrauben (1) an.

Procedura
Installazione della memoria DIMM

1. Rimuovere 2 viti (1), e quindi rimuovere il coperchio (2).

2. Installare la memoria DIMM (E) o la memoria DIMM opzionale (J) nello slot della memoria (3) al livello inferiore (FLS).
Installare con il lato IC rivolto verso il basso.
Inserirla nella direzione della freccia finché non scatta in posizione.

3. Reinstallare il coperchio (2) utilizzando le 2 viti (1).

安装步骤
安装内存模组 DIMM

1. 取下 2 个螺丝 (1)，然后取下盖板 (2)。

2. 将内存模组 DIMM (E) 或选购件内存模组 DIMM (J) 安装至下层 (FLS) 的内存插槽 (3)。
安装时，将 IC 侧正面朝下。
沿箭头方向将其插入到底直至发出喀嗒声。

3. 使用 2 个螺丝 (1) 重新安装盖板 (2)。

설치순서
메모리 DIMM 설치

1. 나사 (1) 2 개를 제거하고 커버 (2) 를 제거합니다 .

2. 메모리 DIMM (E) 또는 옵션 메모리 DIMM(J) 를 하단 (FLS) 의 메모리 슬롯 (3) 에 장착합니다 .
IC 면을 밑으로 할 것 .
딸깍하고 소리가 날 때까지 화살표 방향으로 삽입합니다 .

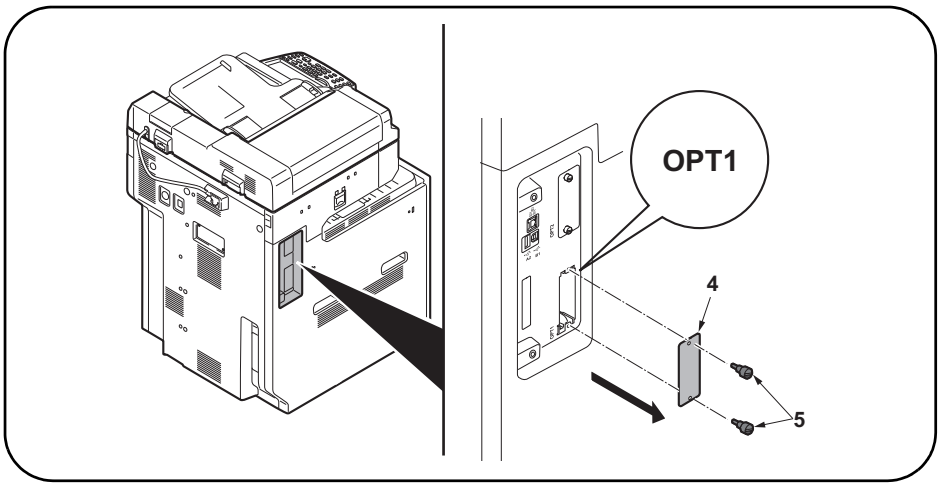
3. 나사 (1) 2 개로 커버 (2) 를 원래대로 장착합니다 .

取付手順
メモリーDIMM の取り付け

1. ビス (1)2 本を外し、カバー(2) を取り外す。

2. メモリーDIMM(E)または、オプションのメモリーDIMM(J) を下段 (FLS) のメモリースロット (3) に取り付ける。
IC 面を下向きに取り付けること。
カチッと音がするまで矢印方向に挿入する。

3. ビス (1)2 本で、カバー(2) を元通り取り付ける。



Removing the slot cover

4. Remove 2 screws (5) and then remove the OPT1 slot cover (4).
* Do not use OPT2.

Dépose du couvercle de la fente

4. Déposer les 2 vis (5) puis le couvercle de la fente OPT1 (4).
* Ne pas utiliser OPT2.

Desmontaje de la cubierta de la ranura

4. Quite 2 tornillos (5) y, después, quite la cubierta de la ranura OPT1 (4).
* No utilice OPT2.

Entfernen der Einschubabdeckung

4. 2 Schrauben (5) entfernen und dann die Abdeckung (4) des Einschubs OPT1 entfernen.
* OPT2 nicht verrwenden.

Rimozione del coperchio vano

4. Rimuovere le 2 viti (5) e quinidi rimuovere il coperchio (4) del vano OPT1.
* Non utilizzare OPT2.

拆下插槽盖板

4. 拆除 2 颗螺丝 (5)，拆下 OPT1 的插槽盖板 (4)。
※ 不使用 OPT2。

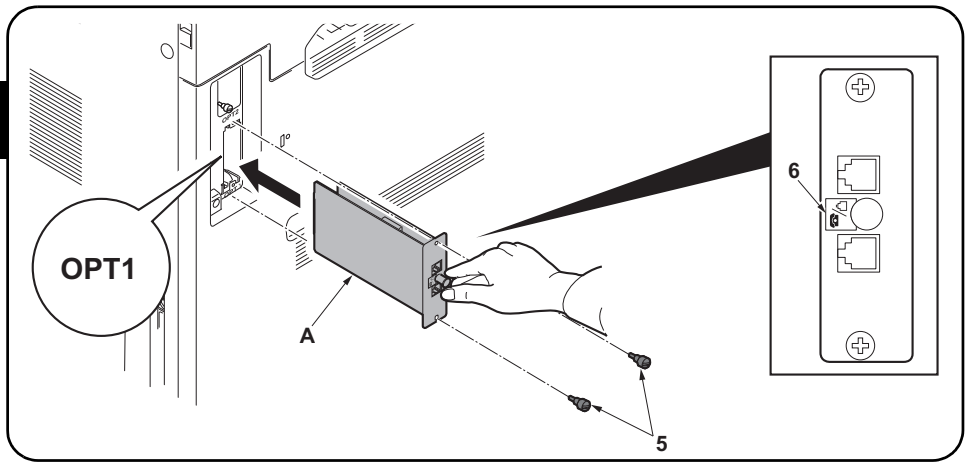
슬롯커버 제거

4. 나사 (5) 2 개를 제거하고 OPT1 의 슬롯커버 (4) 를 제거합니다 .
※ OPT2 는 사용하지 말 것 .

スロットカバーの取り外し

4. ビス (5)2 本を外し、OPT1 のスロットカバー(4) を取り外す。
※OPT2 は使用しないこと。

B



Install the FAX circuit board.

5. Insert the FAX circuit board (A) along the groove in OPT1 and secure the board with two screws (5) that have been removed in step 4.
Do not directly touch the FAX circuit board (A) terminal. Hold the top and bottom of the FAX circuit board, or the projection of the board to insert the FAX circuit board (A).
Direct the label (6) on to the FAX circuit board (A) as indicated in the illustration and insert the board along the groove.

Installer la carte à circuits FAX.

5. Insérer la carte à circuits FAX (A) le long de la rainure dans l'OPT1 et la fixer à l'aide des deux vis (5) retirées à l'étape 4.
Ne pas toucher directement la borne de la carte à circuits FAX (A). Tenir les parties inférieure et supérieure de la carte à circuits FAX ou la saillie de la carte pour insérer la carte à circuits FAX (A).Orienter l'étiquette (6) de la carte à circuits FAX (A) comme illustré et insérer la plaquette le long de la rainure.

Instale la tarjeta de circuitos de fax.

5. Inserte la tarjeta de circuitos de fax (A) a lo largo de la ranura de OPT1 y asegúrela con los dos tornillos (5) que ha quitado en el paso 4.
No toque directamente el terminal de la tarjeta de circuitos del fax (A). Sujete las partes superior e inferior de la tarjeta de circuitos de fax o la saliente de la tarjeta para insertar la tarjeta de circuitos de fax (A).Oriente la etiqueta (6) en la tarjeta de circuitos del FAX (A) como se indica en la ilustración e inserte la tarjeta a lo largo de la ranura.

Installieren der FAX-Leiterplatte.

5. FAX-Leiterplatte (A) in die Nut des Einbauschachts OPT1 einsetzen und Leiterplatte mit den in Schritt 4 ausgebauten Schrauben (5) befestigen.
Berühren Sie die Anschlüsse der FAX-Platine (A) nicht mit den Fingern. Die FAX-Leiterplatte (A) bein Einsetzen oben und unten oder an dem Vorsprung festhalten.
Die FAX-Leiterplatte (A) so in die Nut einsetzen, dass der Aufkleber (6) wie abgebildet zur Leiterplatte zeigt.

Installare la scheda a circuiti FAX.

5. Inserire la scheda a circuiti FAX (A) lungo l'incavo nell'OPT1 e fissare la scheda con le due viti (5) rimosse nell'operazione 4.
Non toccare direttamente il terminale della scheda a circuiti FAX (A). Per inserire il circuito FAX (A), tenere l'estremit superiore e la base della scheda a circuiti FAX, o la sporgenza della scheda a circuiti FAX. Orientare l'etichetta (6) sulla scheda a circuiti FAX (A) come indicato nell'illustrazione e inserire la scheda lungo l'incavo.

安装传真电路板

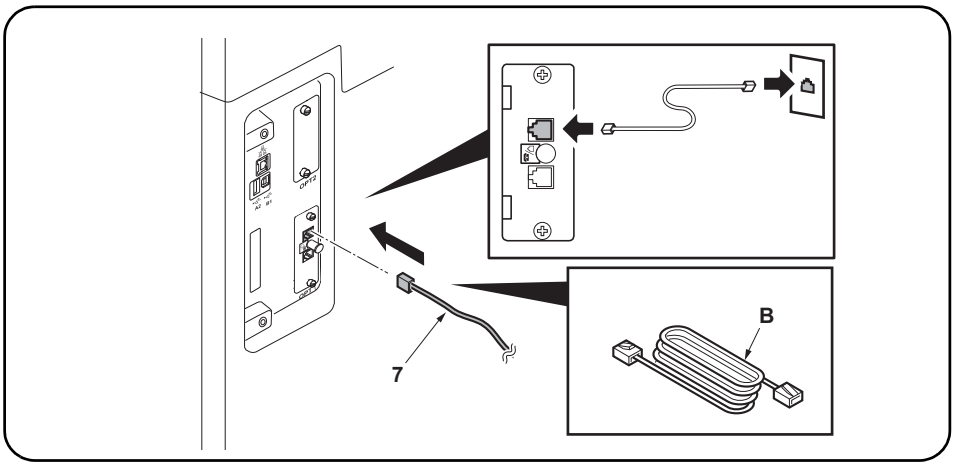
5. 沿着 OPT1 的沟槽插入传真电路板 (A) 并用在步骤 4 中拆下的两颗螺钉 (5) 固定电路板。
请勿直接触摸传真电路板 (A) 端子。
按住传真电路板的顶部和底部，或者按住电路板的突出部将传真电路板 (A) 插入。
将传真电路板 (A) 上的标签 (6) 保持图示中的方向，将电路板沿着沟槽方向插入。

FAX 회로기판 장착

5. OPT1 의 홈을 따라 FAX 회로기판 (A) 를 삽입하고 앞 순서 4 에서 제거한 나사 (5) 2 개로 고정합니다 .
FAX 회로기판 (A) 의 단자에 직접 닿지 않도록 할 것 .
FAX 회로기판 (A) 삽입 시 , 회로기판의 상하 또는 돌출부를 잡을 것 .
FAX 회로기판 (A) 를 부착된 라벨 (6) 그림 표기 방향으로 삽입할 것 .

FAX 基板の取り付け

5. OPT1 の溝に沿って FAX 基板 (A) を挿入し、手順 4 で外したビス (5)2 本で固定する。
FAX 基板 (A) の端子に直接触れないこと。
FAX 基板 (A) の挿入時は基板の上下か突起を持つこと。
FAX 基板 (A) は、貼り付けられているラベル (6) が図に示す方向になるように、挿入すること。



Connect the MFP to the telephone line.

6. Plug the modular connector cable (7) into the line terminal, and then connect the other end to the telephone line.

For 100 V/120 V/Australian or Chinese models, use the supplied modular connector cable (B).

Connecter le MFP à la ligne de téléphone.

6. Brancher le câble du connecteur modulaire (7) à la borne de la ligne, puis connecter l'autre extrémité à la ligne de téléphone.

Pour les modèles 100 V/120 V/Australie ou Chine, utilisez le câble à connecteur modulaire (B) fourni.

Conecte el MFP a la línea telefónica.

6. Enchufe el cable del conector modular (7) en el terminal de línea y, a continuación, conecte el otro extremo a la línea telefónica.

Para los modelos de 100 V/120 V/Australiano o Chino, utilice el cable conector modular (B) suministrado.

Anschließen des MFP an die Telefonleitung.

6. Telefonmodulkabel (7) in die Gerätebuchse einstecken und das Kabel an der Telefondose anschließen.

Das mitgelieferte Modularsteckerkabel (B) für die 100-V/120-V/Australien- oder China-Modelle verwenden.

Collegamento dell'MFP alla linea del telefono.

6. Inserire il cavo connettore modulare (7) nel terminale della linea, e quindi collegare l'altro terminale alla linea del telefono.

Per modelli da 100 V/120 V/Australia o Cina, utilizzare il cavo connettore modulare (B) in dotazione.

将 MFP 连接到电话线

6. 将模块接插件电缆 (7) 插入电话线端子，然后将另一端与电话线连接。

对于 100V/120V/ 澳大利亚或中国机型，请使用随附的模块接插件电缆 (B)。

전화회선 연결

6. 모듈 코드 (7) 을 라인단자에 꽂습니다 . 다른 한 쪽의 플러그는 전화회선과 연결합니다 .

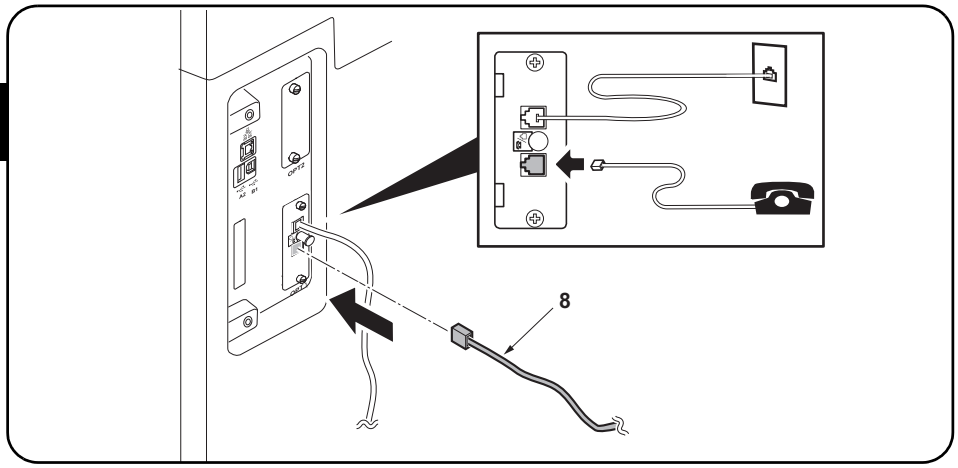
100V/120V/ 오스트레일리아 / 중국사양은 부속 모듈러 코드 (B) 를 사용할 것 .

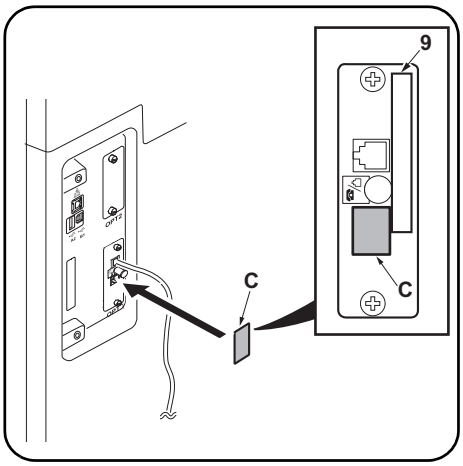
電話回線との接続

6. モジュラーコード (7) をライン端子に差し込む。もう片方のプラグは、電話回線へ接続する。

100V/120V/ オーストラリア / 中国仕様は付属のモジュラーコード (B) を使用すること。

B





Connect the MFP to the separate phone).

7. Plug the modular connector cable (8) into the telephone terminal, and then connect the other end to the separate phone.

If you don't connect the MFP to the separate phone, wipe the surface of the telephone terminal with alcohol and adhere the terminal seal (C) upon the customer's request.
On 120 V models, be sure that it is not attached over the top of the approval label (9).

Connecter le MFP au téléphone séparé.

7. Brancher le câble du connecteur modulaire (8) à la borne du téléphone, puis connecter l'autre extrémité au téléphone séparé.

Si le MFP n'est pas connecté au téléphone séparé à la demande du client, nettoyer la surface de la borne de téléphoneavec de l'alcool et apposer le joint de borne (C).
Sur les modèles 120 V, attention à ne pas installer en recouvrant le haut de l'étiquette d'approbation (9).

Conecte el MFP al teléfono separado.

7. Enchufe el cable del conector modular (8) en el terminal del teléfono y, a continuación, conecte el otro extremo al teléfono separado.

Si no conecta el MFP a un teléfono separado, limpie la superficie del terminal del teléfono con alcohol y pegue el sello del terminal (C), a solicitud del cliente.
En los modelos de 120 V, asegúrese de que no se fije sobre la etiqueta de aprobación (9).

Anschließen des MFP an das separate Telefon.

7. Das Telefonmodulkabel (8) in die Telefonbuchse einstecken und das andere Ende an das separate Telefon anschließen.

Wenn der MFP nicht an das separate Telefon angeschlossen wird, die Oberfläche der Telefonbuchse mit Alkohol abwischen und Verschlusskappe (C) einsetzen, falls vom Kunden gewünscht.
Bei 120-V-Modellen darauf achten, dass der Aufkleber nicht den Genehmigungsaufkleber (9) verdeckt.

Collegamento dell'MFP al telefono separato.

7. Inserire il cavo connettore modulare (8) nel terminale del telefono, e quindi collegare l'altro terminale al telefono separato.

Nel caso in cui non si colleghi l'MFP al telefono separato, pulire la superficie del terminale del telefono con dell'alcol e applicare la guarnizione terminale (C) a richiesta del cliente.
Sui modelli da 120 V, assicurarsi che essa non venga applicata sopra l'etichetta di approvazione (9).

将 MFP 连接到其它电话

7. 将模块接插件电缆 (8) 插入电话端子，然后将另一端与其他电话连接。

如果您没有将 MFP 连接至其他电话，请用酒精擦拭电话端子表面，并按照客户要求粘上端子密封 (C)。
120V 规格在粘贴时注意不要与认可标签 (9) 重叠。

외부 전화와 연결

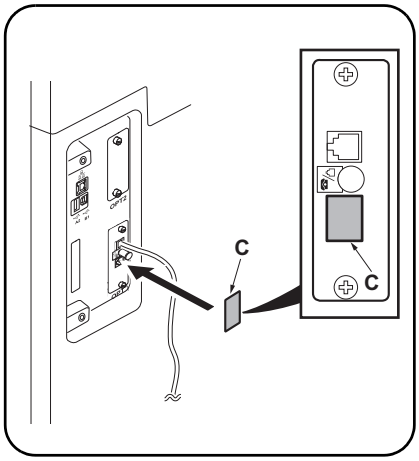
7. 모듈코드 (8) 를 TEL 단자에 꽂습니다 . 다른 한 쪽의 플러그는 외부 전화와 연결합니다 .

외부 전화와 연결하지 않는 경우 고객의 요청에 따라 TEL 단자 주위를 알코올 청소하고 단자씰 (C) 을 붙입니다 .
120V 사양은 허가 라벨 (9) 에 겹치지 않도록 붙일 것 .

外付け電話との接続

7. モジュラーコード (8) を TEL 端子に差し込む。もう片方のプラグは、外付け電話と接続する。

外付け電話と接続しない場合、お客様の要望により、TEL 端子周囲をアルコール清掃し、端子シール (C) を貼り付ける。
120V 仕様は認可ラベル (9) に重ならないように、貼りつけること。



Seal the terminal
(for New Zealand model)

8. Wipe the surface of the telephone terminal with alcohol and adhere the terminal seal (C).
Perform this procedure for New Zealand model only.

Fermer hermétiquement la borne
(modèle pour la Nouvelle-Zélande)

8. Cette étape est superflue.

Selle el terminal
(para el modelo Nuevo Zelandés)

8. Este paso no es necesario.

Versiegeln der Anschlussbuchse
(für Neuseeland-Modell)

8. Dieser Schritt ist nicht erforderlich.

Sigillare il terminale
(per il modello Nuova Zelanda)

8. Questo passo non è richiesto.

安装端子密封（仅适用于新西兰型号）

8. 不需要本步骤。

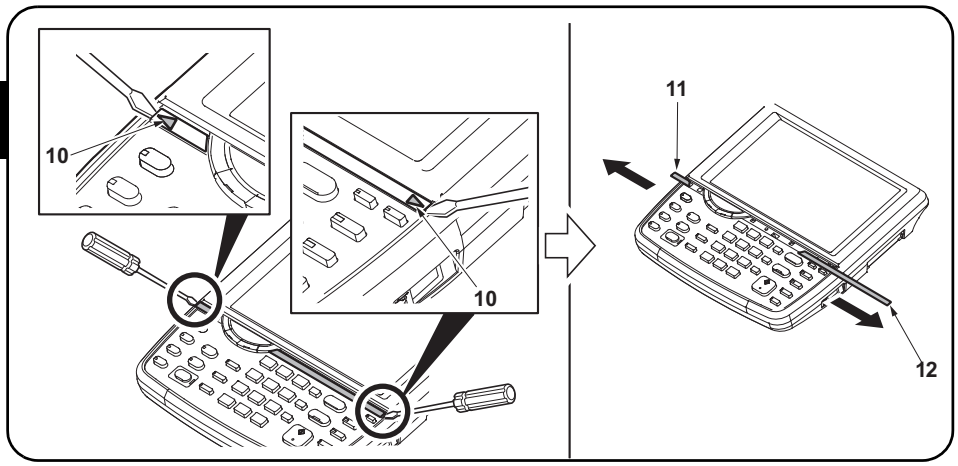
단자씰의 부착 (뉴질랜드 사양만)

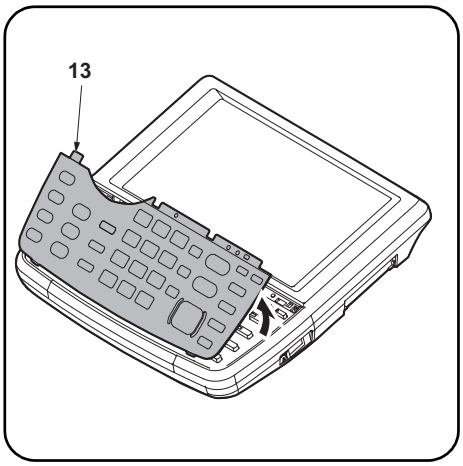
8. 이 단계가 필요하지 않습니다 .

端子シールの貼り付け
（ニュージーランド仕様のみ）

8. この作業は不要。

B





Attach the alphabet labels (excluding 100 V models).

9. Insert a flat-head screwdriver at the tip indicated by the arrows (10) as shown on the left, and slide the operation panel covers (11) (12) to remove them.

10. Remove the clear panel (13).

Apposer les étiquettes de l'alphabet (Sauf sur les modèles 100 V).

9. Insérer un tournevis à lame à l'endroit repéré par les flèches (10) comme illustré ci-contre à gauche et faire glisser les couvercles du panneau de commande (11) (12) pour les déposer.

10. Déposer le panneau transparent (13).

Fije las etiquetas de alfabeto (a excepción de los modelos de 100 V).

9. Inserte un destornillador de pala plana en la punta que indican las flechas (10) como se muestra a la izquierda y deslice las cubiertas del panel de trabajo (11) (12) para quitarlas.

10. Quite el panel transparente (13).

Anbringen der Alphabetaufkleber (ausgenommen 100-V-Modelle).

9. Einen flachen Schraubendreher an der links mit Pfeilen (10) bezeichneten Spitze einschieben und die Bedienfeldabdeckungen (11) (12) verschieben, um sie dann abzunehmen.

10. Die durchsichtige Platte (13) entfernen.

Applicare le etichette alfabetiche (esclusi i modelli da 100 V).

9. Inserire un cacciavite a testa piana nel punto indicato dalla freccia (10) come mostrato sulla sinistra, e slittare i coperchi (11) (12) del pannello operativo per rimuoverli.

10. Rimuovere il pannello trasparente (13).

粘贴英文字母标签（100V 规格以外）

9. 如图所示，在▲箭头（10）前方插入一字螺丝刀，滑动并取下操作面板的盖板（11）（12）。

10. 拆下透明面板（13）。

알파벳 라벨의 부착 (100V 사양 이외)

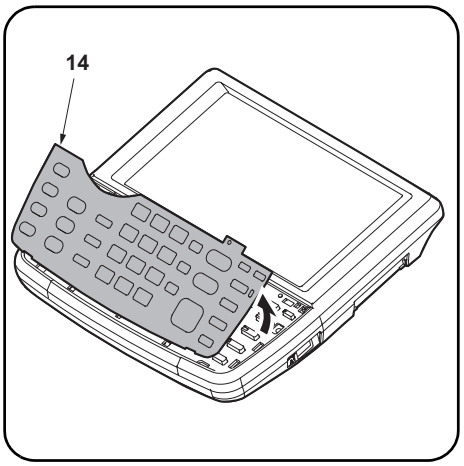
9. 그림과 같이 ▲ 표시 (10) 앞에 일자 드라이버를 삽입해 조작 판넬의 커버 (11) (12) 를 밀면서 떼어 냅니다 .

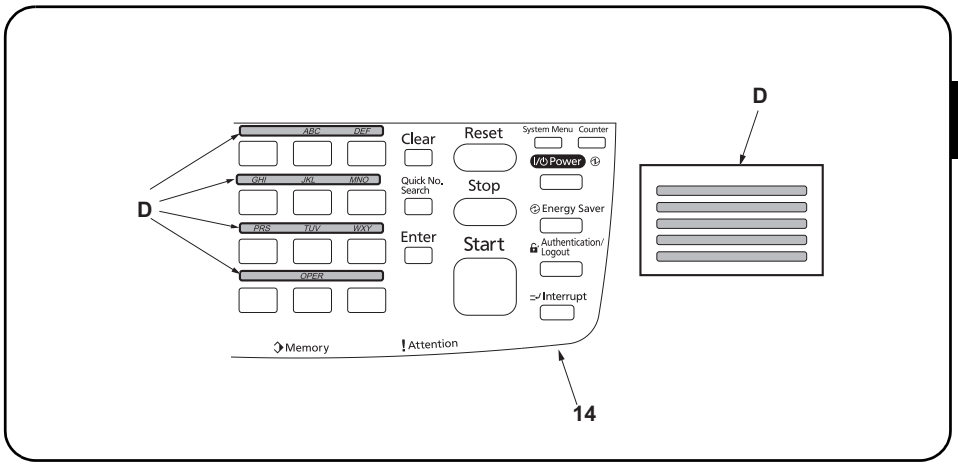
10. 클리어 판넬 (13) 을 제거합니다 .

アルファベットラベルの貼り付け（100V 仕様以外）

9. この作業は不要。

10. この作業は不要。





11. Remove the operation panel sheet (14).

12. Wipe the area above the numeric keys on the operation panel sheet (14) with alcohol and attach the alphabet labels (D).
In Asia and Oceania, use PQRS TUV WXYZ label, and do not use PRS TUV WXY and OPER labels.

---

11. Déposer la tôle du panneau de commande (14).

12. Nettoyer à l'alcool la surface au-dessus des touches numériques sur la tôle du panneau de commande (14) et apposer les étiquettes alphabétiques (D).
En Asie et Océanie, utiliser l'étiquette PQRS TUV WXYZ et pas les étiquettes PRS TUV WXY et OPER.

---

11. Quite la hoja del panel de trabajo (14).

12. Limpie el área sobre las teclas numéricas de la hoja del panel de trabajo (14) con alcohol y fije las etiquetas de alfabeto (D).
En Asia y Oceanía, utilice la etiqueta PQRS TUV WXYZ y no use las PRS TUV WXY ni las OPER.

---

11. Die Bedienfeldfolie (14) entfernen.

12. Den Bereich über den Zifferntasten an der Bedienfeldfolie (14) mit Alkohol abwischen und die Alphabetaufkleber (D) hier anbringen.
In Asien und Ozeanien den Aufkleber PQRS TUV WXYZ verwenden; nicht die Aufkleber PRS TUV WXY und OPER verwenden.

---

11. Rimuovere il foglio (14) del pannello operativo.

12. Pulire l'area sopra i tasti numerici sul foglio del pannello operativo (14) con alcool ed applicare le etichette alfabetiche (D).
In Asia ed Oceania, utilizzare l'etichetta PQRS TUV WXYZ e non utilizzare le etichette PRS TUV WXY e OPER.

---

11. 拆下操作面板页（14）。

12. 使用酒精清洁操作面板页（14）的数字键上部，粘贴英文字母标签 (D)。
在亚洲和大洋州，请使用 PQRS TUV WXYZ 标签，而不要使用 PRS TUV WXY 和 OPER 标签。

---

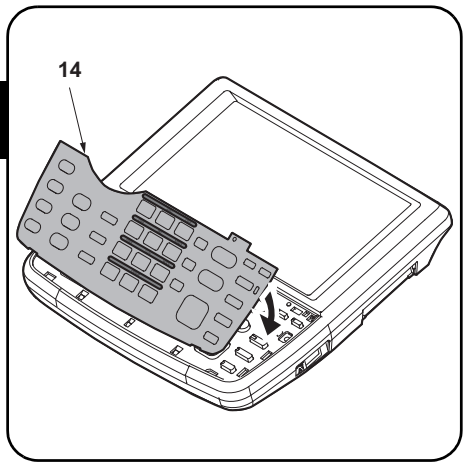
11. 조작판넬시트 (14) 를 제거합니다 .

12. 조작판넬시트 (14) 상에 숫자키 윗측을 알코올 청소하고 알파벳 라벨 (D) 을 붙입니다 .
아시아 / 오세아니아에서는「PRS TUV WXY」및「OPER」라벨을 사용하지 말고「PQRS TUV WXYZ」의 라벨을 사용할 것 .

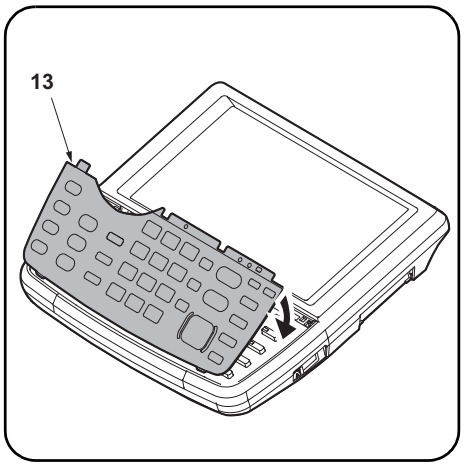
---

11. この作業は不要。

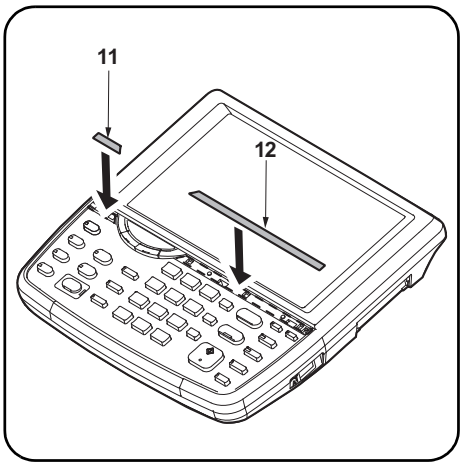
12. この作業は不要。



13. Attach the operation panel sheet (14).



14. Reinstall the clear panel (13).



15. Reinstall the operation panel covers (11) (12).

---

13. Fixer la tôle du panneau de commande (14).

14. Reposer le panneau transparent (13).

15. Reposer les couvercles du panneau de commande (11) (12).

---

13. Fije la hoja del panel de trabajo (14).

14. Vuelva a instalar el panel transparente (13).

15. Vuelva a instalar las cubiertas del panel de trabajo (11) (12).

---

13. Die Bedienfeldfolie (14) anbringen.

14. Die durchsichtige Platte (13) wieder anbringen.

15. Die Bedienfeldabdeckungen (11) (12) wieder anbringen.

---

13. Applicare il foglio del pannello operativo (14).

14. Reinstallare il pannello trasparente (13).

15. Reinstallare i coperchi (11) (12) del pannello operativo.

---

13. 安装操作面板页（14）。

14. 安装透明面板（13）。

15. 安装操作面板的盖板（11）（12）。

---

13. 조작판넬시트 (14) 를 붙입니다 .

14. 클리어판넬 (13) 를 부착합니다 .

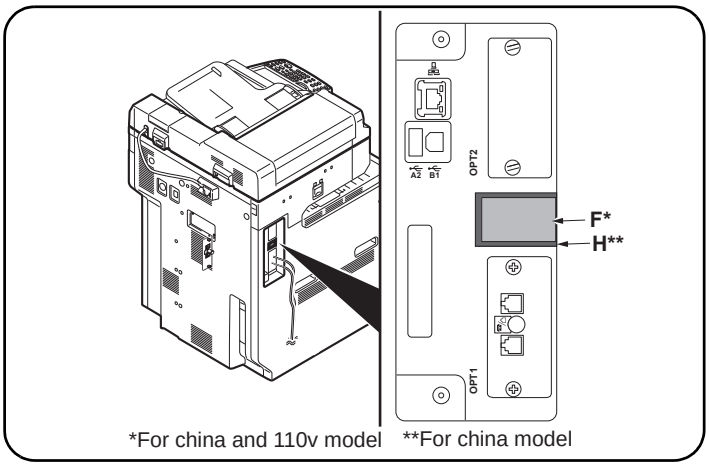
15. 조작판넬 커버 (11) (12) 을 부착합니다 .

---

13. この作業は不要。

14. この作業は不要。

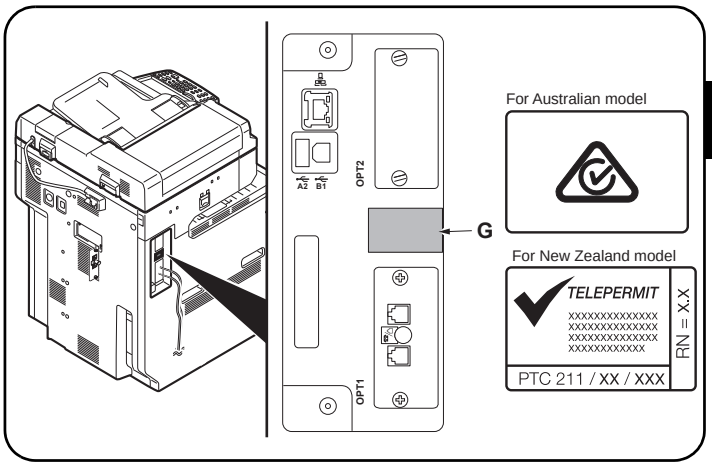
15. この作業は不要。



*For china and 110v model **For china model

Attach the PTT label (for 110 V model only).

16. Attach the PTT label (F) at the point as shown above after wiping with alcohol.



Attach the approval label (for Australian/New Zealand model only).

17. Attach the approval label (G) at the point as shown above after wiping with alcohol.

Perform this procedure for Australian/New Zealand model only.

Fixer l'étiquette d'approbation (pour la Chine, modèles 110 V seulement).

16. Cette étape est superflue.

Fixer l'étiquette d'approbation (modèle pour l'Australie/Nouvelle-Zélande seulement).

17. Cette étape est superflue.

Coloque la etiqueta de aprobación (para China, solo para los modelos de 110 V).

16. Este paso no es necesario.

Coloque la etiqueta de aprobación (sólo para los modelos Australiano/Nuevo Zelandés)

17. Este paso no es necesario.

Den Genehmigungsaufkleber anbringen (für China nur 110-V-Modelle).

16. Dieser Schritt ist nicht erforderlich.

Den Genehmigungsaufkleber anbringen (nur für Australien/Neuseeland-Modell).

17. Dieser Schritt ist nicht erforderlich.

Applicare l'etichetta di approvazione (per Cina, solo per i modelli da 110 V).

16. Questo passo non è richiesto.

Applicare l'etichetta di approvazione (solo per il modello Australia/Nuova Zelanda)

17. Questo passo non è richiesto.

粘贴规格标签（仅限中国规格）

16. 在粘贴标签或贴片前，请用酒精清洁粘贴位置。按照图示位置来粘贴贴片（H）。把规格标签（F）粘贴在贴片（H）上面。

粘贴规格标签（仅适用于澳大利亚 / 新西兰型号）

17. 不需要本步骤。

규격라벨의 부착 (중국 , 110V 사양만)

16. 이 단계가 필요하지 않습니다 .

규격라벨의 부착 (오스트레일리아 / 뉴질랜드 사양만)

17. 이 단계가 필요하지 않습니다 .

規格ラベルの貼り付け（中国、110V 仕様のみ）

16. この作業は不要。

規格ラベルの貼り付け（オーストラリア / ニュージーランド仕様のみ）

17. この作業は不要。

Initialize the FAX circuit board.

1. Plug the MFP into a power outlet, and turn on the main power.
2. Perform the maintenance mode U600 to initialize the FAX PWBs

---

Initialiser la carte à circuits FAX.

1. Brancher le MFP sur une prise d'alimentation et le mettre sous tension.
2. Exécuter le mode maintenance U600 pour initialiser les cartes de circuit imprimé du fax .

Inicialice la tarjeta de circuitos FAX.

1. Conecte el MFP a un receptáculo de pared y encienda el interruptor principal.
2. Ejecute el modo de mantenimiento U600 para inicializar los FAX PWB.

Initialisieren der FAX-Leiterplatte.

1. Netzstecker des MFP in eine Steckdose stecken und Hauptschalter einschalten.
2. Führen Sie den Wartungsmodus U600 aus, um die FAX-Karte zu initialisieren.

Questo passo non è richiesto.**Inizializzare la scheda a circuiti FAX.**

1. Collegare l'MFP ad una presa di corrente e portare l'interruttore principale su On.
2. Eseguire il modo manutenzione U600 per inizializzare le schede PWB FAX.

传真电话板的初始化

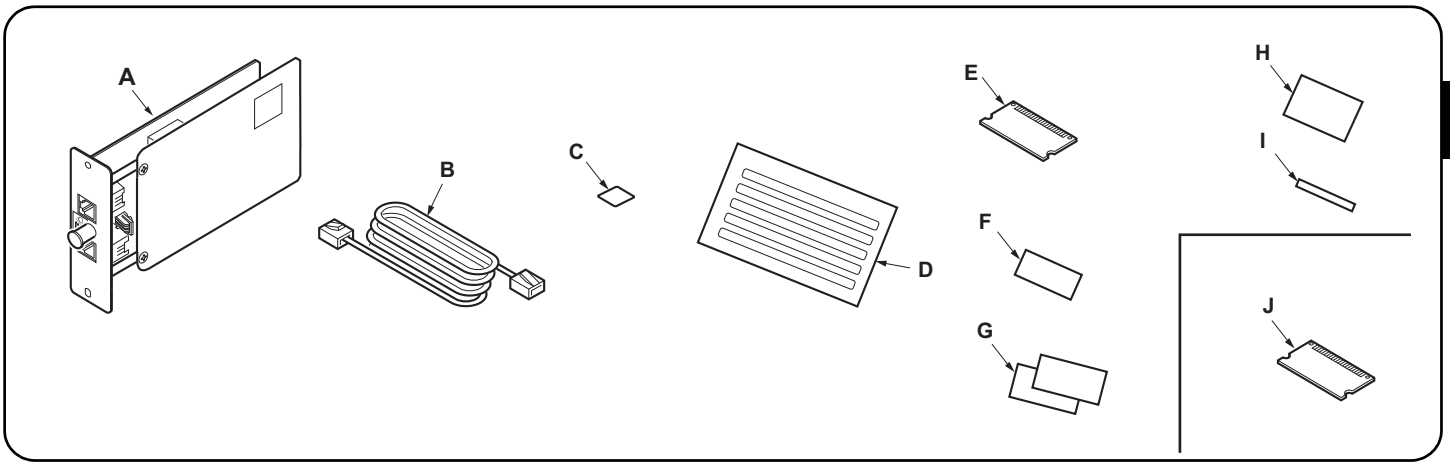
1. 将 MFP 的电源插头插入电源插座，打开主电源。
2. 执行维修保养模式 U600，初始化传真电路板。

FAX 회로기판의 초기화

1. MFP 본체 전원플러그를 콘센트에 꼽고 주 전원 스위치를 ON 으로 한다 .
2. 메인터넌스 모드 U600 을 수행하여 FAX 회로기판을 초기화합니다 .

FAX 基板の初期化

1. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、主電源スイッチを ON にする。
2. メンテナンスモード U600 を実行し、FAX 基板を初期化する。



When installing the multiport on a machine (B) which has the 'Accessibility Display' key in the operation panel

Supplied parts

- **A.** FAX circuit board 1
- **B.** Modular connector cable (120 V/Australian model only) PJJWC0016Z (UL Listed.HUAN HSIN Type TL:120 V only) 1
- **C.** Terminal seal..... 1
- **D.** Alphabet label..... 1
- **E.** Memory DIMM (16 MB) 1
- **F.** PTT label (110V model only) 1
- **G.** Approval label (Australian/New Zealand models only)..... 2

Option

- **J.** Memory DIMM (128 MB) 1

(H) and (I) are not supplied.
(D), (E), (F), (G) and (J) are not used.
Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning materials from the parts supplied.

Lors de l'installation du port multiple sur une machine (B) disposant de la touche 'Affich. accessibilité' sur le panneau de commande

Pièces fournies

- **A.** Carte à circuits FAX..... 1
- **B.** Câble du connecteur modulaire (modèles pour l'Australie/120 V seulement)..... 1
- **C.** Joint de borne..... 1
- **D.** Etiquette de l'alphabet..... 1
- **E.** Mémoire DIMM (16 MB) 1

Option

- **J.** Mémoire DIMM (128 MB) 1

(F), (G), (H) et (I) ne sont pas fournis.

(D), (E) et (J) ne sont pas utilisés.

Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.

Al instalar un puerto múltiple en una máquina (B) que dispone de la tecla 'Pantalla acceso' en el panel de controles

Partes suministradas

- **A.** Tarjeta de circuitos de fax..... 1
- **B.** Cable conector modular (sólo para modelos de 120 V/Australianos)..... 1
- **C.** Sello del terminal..... 1
- **D.** Etiqueta de alfabeto..... 1
- **E.** Memoria DIMM (16 MB) 1

Opción

- **J.** Memoria DIMM (128 MB) 1

(F), (G), (H) y (I) no se suministran.

(D), (E) y (J) no se utilizan.

Asegúrese de quitar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.

Bei Installation einer zweiten Leitung in einem Gerät (B), das über die Taste 'Zugriffsanzeige' im Bedienfeld verfügt

Enthaltene Teile

- **A.** FAX-Leiterplatte..... 1
- **C.** Verschlusskappe 1
- **D.** Alphabetaufkleber..... 1
- **E.** Speicher-DIMM (16 MB)..... 1

Option

- **J.** Speicher-DIMM (128 MB)..... 1

(B), (F), (G), (H) und (I) liegen nicht bei.
(D), (E) und (J) werden nicht benötigt.

Stellen Sie sicher, dass sämtliche Klebebänder und/oder Polstermaterial von den gelieferten Teilen entfernt wurden.

Per l'installazione di una porta multipla su una macchina (B) dotata di tasto 'Visual. Accessibilità' sul pannello comandi

Parti fornite

- **A.** Scheda a circuiti FAX 1
- **C.** Guarnizione terminale 1
- **D.** Etichetta alfabetica 1
- **E.** Memoria DIMM (16 MB) 1

Opzioni

- **J.** Memoria DIMM (128 MB) 1

(B), (F), (G), (H) e (I) non sono in dotazione.
(D), (E) e (J) non sono utilizzati.

Rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o i materiali di protezione dalle parti fornite.

当安装双路传真系统到那些操作面板上有 ' 扩大显示 ' 按键的机器 (B) 时

附属品

- A. 传真电路板..... 1
- B. 电话线..... 1
- C. 端子密封..... 1
- D. 英文字母标签..... 1
- E. 内存模组 DIMM (16MB) 1
- F. 规格标签 1
- H. 贴片 1
- I. 名称标签 1

选购件

- J. 内存模组 DIMM (128MB) 1

(G) 并非附属品。
不使用 (D),(E),(F),(H),(I), 和 (J)。

如果附属品上带有固定胶带，缓冲材料时务必揭下。

조작판넬에 ' 유니버셜 ' 키가 있는 본체 (B) 에 멀티 포트를 설치하는 경우

동봉품

- A. FAX 기판 1
- C. 단자씰.....1
- D. 알파벳 라벨.....1
- E. 메모리 DIMM (16MB) 1

옵션

- J. 메모리 DIMM (128MB) 1

(B) , (F) ,(G), (H) ,(I) 는 동봉되어 있지 않습니다 .
(D) , (E) ,(J) 는 사용되지 않습니다 .

동봉품에 고정 테이프 , 완충재가 붙어 있는 경우에는 반드시 제거하십시오 .

操作パネルに ‘ユニバーサル’ キーがある機械 (B) にマルチポートを設置する場合

同梱品

- A. FAX 基板 1
- B. モジュラーコード..... 1
- C. 端子シール..... 1
- E. メモリーDIMM(16MB)..... 1

オプション

- J. メモリーDIMM(128MB) 1

(D),(F),(G)),(H),(I) は、同梱されていない。
(E),(J) は、使用しない。

同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材がついている場合は、必ず取り外すこと。

B

NOTICE
If the finisher is already installed, remove the finisher before installing FAX System(W).
Before starting installation, be sure to turn the main power switch of the machine off, and unplug the power plug from the wall outlet.

REMARQUE
Si le retoucheur est déjà en place, le déposer avant de monter le FAX System(W).
Avant de commencer l'installation, s'assurer de mettre la machine hors tension et de débrancher la fiche d'alimentation de la prise murale.

AVISO
Si el finalizador ya se encuentra instalado, desmóntelo antes de instalar el FAX System(W).
Antes de iniciar la instalación, asegúrese de apagar el interruptor de encendido de la máquina y desenchufar el cable de alimentación de la toma de pared.

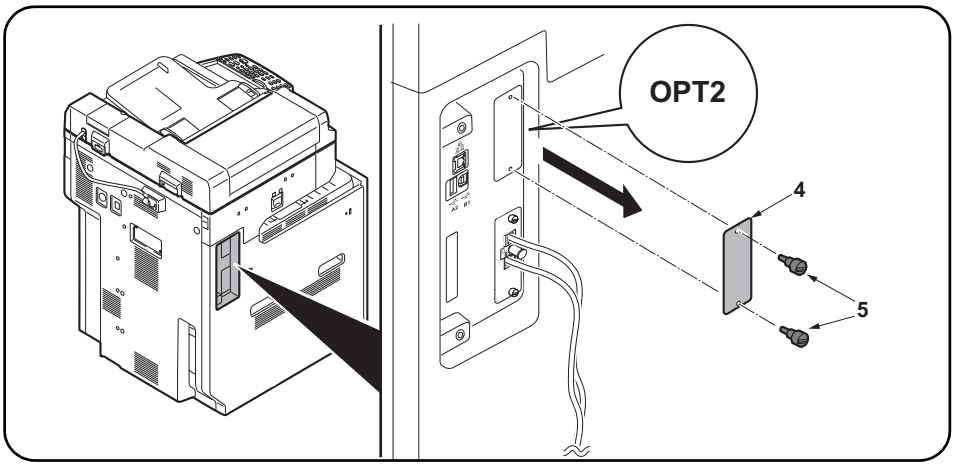
ANMERKUNG
Falls der Finisher schon installiert ist, müssen Sie ihn ausbauen, bevor Sie das FAX System(W) installieren.
Bevor Sie mit der Installation beginnen überzeugen Sie sich, dass der Netzschalter des Geräts ausgeschaltet und das Stromkabel aus der Steckdose gezogen ist.

AVVISO
Se la finitrice è già installata, rimuovere la finitrice prima di installare il FAX System(W).
Prima di iniziare l'installazione, spegnere la macchina e scollegare la spina dalla presa di corrente.

注意
已安装装订器时，必须先拆下装订器再安装 FAX System(W)。
安装前务必关闭机器的主电源开关，并从墙壁插座拔下电源插头。

주의
피니셔가 이미 장착되어 있는 경우에는 피니셔를 제거하고 FAX System(W) 를 설치할 것 .
설치를 시작하기 전에 반드시 본체의 주 전원 스위치를 끄고 벽 콘센트에서 전원 플러그를 분리하십시오 .

注意
フィニッシャーがすでに装着されている場合は、フィニッシャーを取り外してから、FAX System(W) を取り付けること。
必ず機械本体の主電源スイッチを OFF にし、機械本体の電源プラグを抜いてから作業すること。



Procedure
Removing the slot cover
1.Remove 2 screws (5) and then remove the OPT2 slot cover (4).

Procédure
Dépose du couvercle de la fente
1.Déposer les 2 vis (5) puis le couvercle de la fente OPT2 (4).

Procedimiento
Desmontaje de la cubierta de la ranura
1.Quite 2 tornillos (5) y, después, quite la cubierta de la ranura OPT2 (4).

Vorgehensweise
Entfernen der Einschubabdeckung
1.2 Schrauben (5) entfernen und dann die Abdeckung (4) des Einschubs OPT2 entfernen.

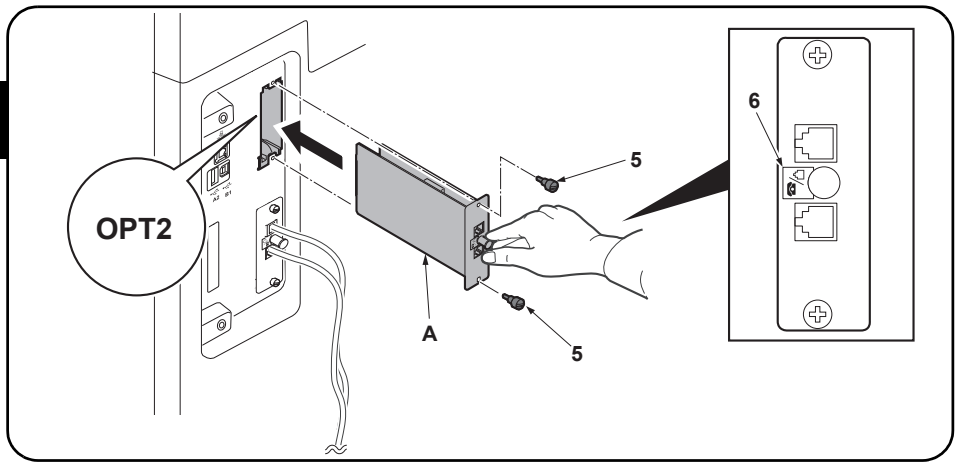
Procedura
Rimozione del coperchio vano
1.Rimuovere le 2 viti (2) e quinidi rimuovere il coperchio (1) del vano OPT2.

安装步骤
拆下插槽盖板
1. 拆除 2 颗螺丝 (5)，拆下 OPT2 的插槽盖板 (4)。

설치순서
슬롯커버 제거
1. 나사 (5) 2 개를 제거하고 OPT2 의 슬롯커버 (4) 를 제거합니다 .

取付手順
スロットカバーの取り外し
1. ビス (5)2 本を外し、OPT2 のスロットカバー(4) を取り外す。

B



Install the FAX circuit board.

2. Insert the FAX circuit board (A) along the groove in OPT2 and secure the board with two screws (5) that have been removed in step 1.
Do not directly touch the FAX circuit board (A) terminal.
Hold the top and bottom of the FAX circuit board, or the projection of the board to insert the FAX circuit board (A).
Direct the label (6) on to the FAX circuit board (A) toward left side and insert the board along the groove.

Installer la carte à circuits FAX.

2. Insérer la carte à circuits FAX (A) le long de la rainure dans l'OPT2 et la fixer à l'aide des deux vis (5) retirées à l'étape 1.
Ne pas toucher directement la borne de la carte à circuits FAX (A).
Tenir les parties inférieure et supérieure de la carte à circuits FAX ou la saillie de la carte pour insérer la carte à circuits FAX (A).
Orienter l'étiquette (6) de la carte à circuits FAX (A) comme illustré et insérer la plaquette le long de la rainure.

Instale la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX.

2. Inserte la tarjeta de circuitos de fax (A) a lo largo de la ranura de OPT2 y asegúrela con los dos tornillos (5) que ha quitado en el paso 1.
No toque directamente el terminal de la tarjeta de circuitos del FAX (A).
Sujete las partes superior e inferior de la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX o la saliente de la tarjeta para insertar la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX (A).
Oriente la etiqueta (6) en la tarjeta de circuitos del FAX (A) como se indica en la ilustración e inserte la tarjeta a lo largo de la ranura.

Installieren der FAX-Leiterplatte.

2. FAX-Leiterplatte (A) in die Nut des Einbauschachts OPT2 einsetzen und Leiterplatte mit den in Schritt1 ausgebauten Schrauben (5) befestigen.
Berühren Sie die Anschlüsse der FAX-Platine (A) nicht mit den Fingern.
Die FAX-Leiterplatte (A) bein Einsetzen oben und unten oder an dem Vorsprung festhalten.
Die FAX-Leiterplatte (A) so in die Nut einsetzen, dass der Aufkleber (6) wie abgebildet zur Leiterplatte zeigt.

Installare la scheda a circuiti FAX.

2. Inserire la scheda a circuiti FAX (A) lungo l'incavo nell'OPT2 e fissare la scheda con le due viti (5) rimosse nell'operazione 1.
Non toccare direttamente il terminale della scheda a circuiti FAX (A),
Per inserire il circuito FAX (A), tenere l'estremit superiore e la base della scheda a circuiti FAX, o la sporgenza della scheda a circuiti FAX.
Orientare l'etichetta (6) sulla scheda a circuiti FAX (A) come indicato nell'illustrazione e inserire la scheda lungo l'incavo.

安装传真电路板

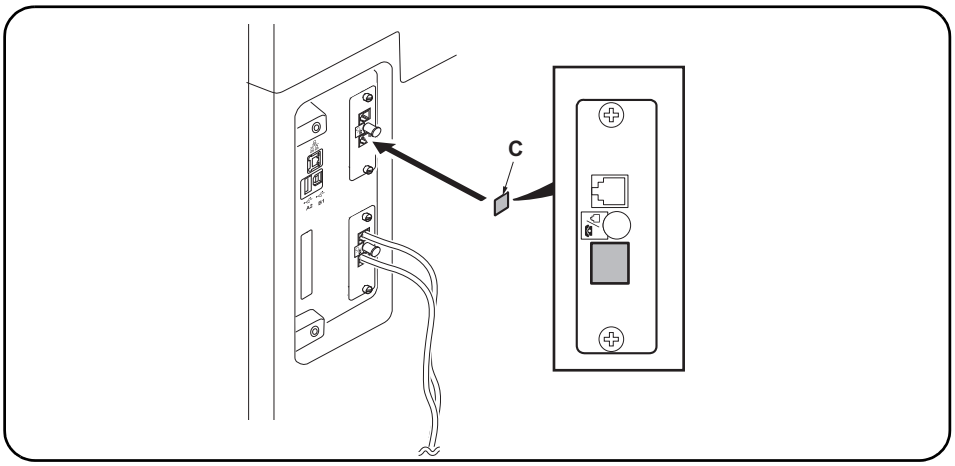
2. 沿着 OPT2 的沟槽插入传真电路板 (A) 并用在步骤 1 中拆下的两颗螺钉 (5) 固定电路板。
请勿直接触摸传真电路板 (A) 端子。
按住传真电路板的顶部和底部，或者按住电路板的突出部将传真电路板 (A) 插入。
将传真电路板 (A) 上的标签 (6) 保持图示中的方向，将电路板沿着沟槽方向插入。

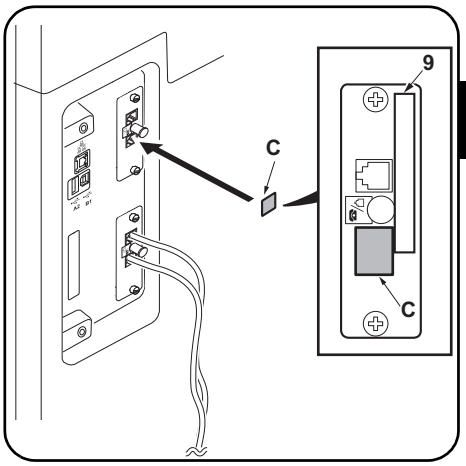
FAX 회로기판 장착

2. OPT2 의 홈을 따라 FAX 회로기판 (A) 를 삽입하고 앞 순서 1 에서 제거한 나사 (5) 2 개로 고정합니다 .
FAX 회로기판 (A) 의 단자에 직접 닿지 않도록 할 것 .
FAX 회로기판 (A) 삽입 시 , 회로기판의 상하 또는 돌출부를 잡을 것 .
FAX 회로기판 (A) 를 부착된 라벨 (6) 그림 표기 방향으로 삽입할 것 .

FAX 基板の取り付け

2. OPT2 の溝に沿って FAX 基板 (A) を挿入し、手順 1 で外したビス (5)2 本で固定する。
FAX 基板 (A) の端子に直接触れないこと。
FAX 基板 (A) の挿入時は基板の上下か突起を持つこと。
FAX 基板 (A) は、貼り付けられているラベル (6) が図に示す方向になるように、挿入すること。





Seal the terminal.

3. Wipe the surface of the telephone terminal with alcohol and adhere the terminal seal (C).
The telephone terminal on the FAX circuit board installed to OPT2 is unavailable (invalid). Seal the terminal securely to prevent a user from connecting a separate phone.

On 120 V models, be sure that it is not attached over the top of the approval label (9).

Fermer hermétiquement la borne.

3. Nettoyer la surface de la borne de téléphone avec de l'alcool, et apposer le joint de borne (C).
La borne de téléphone de la carte à circuits FAX installée sur l'OPT2 n'est pas utilisable (invalide). Fermer hermétiquement la borne pour empêcher tout utilisateur de connecter un téléphone séparé.

Sur les modèles 120 V, attention à ne pas installer en recouvrant le haut de l'étiquette d'approbation (9).

Selle el terminal.

3. Limpie la superficie del terminal de teléfono con alcohol y pegue el sello de terminal (C).
El terminal de teléfono de la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX instalado en el OPT2 no está disponible (inválido). Selle firmemente el terminal para evitar que un usuario conecte un teléfono por separado.

En los modelos de 120 V, asegúrese de que no se fije sobre la etiqueta de aprobación (9).

Versiegeln der Anschlussbuchse.

3. Die Oberfläche der Telefonanschlussbuchse mit Alkohol abwischen und die Verschlusskappe (C) anbringen.
Die Telefonanschlussbuchse der in OPT2 installierten FAX-Leiterplatte ist nicht verfügbar (ungültig). Die Anschlussbuchse vollkommen versiegeln, um den Anschluss eines separaten Telefons zu verhindern.

Bei 120-V-Modellen darauf achten, dass der Aufkleber nicht den Genehmigungsaufkleber (9) verdeckt.

Sigillare il terminale.

3. Pulire la superficie del terminale del telefono con alcol e fare aderire la guarnizione terminale (C).
Il terminale del telefono sulla scheda a circuiti FAX installata su OPT2 non è disponibile (invalido). Sigillare il terminale saldamente per prevenire a un utente di collegare un telefono separato.

Sui modelli da 120 V, assicurarsi che essa non venga applicata sopra l'etichetta di approvazione (9).

安装端子密封

3. 用酒精擦拭电话端子表面并粘上端子密封 (C)。
安装在 OPT2 上的传真电路板的电话端子不可使用 (无效)。为了避免用户错误与其它电话连接，必须确实粘贴好端子密封。

120V 规格在粘贴时注意不要与认可标签 (9) 重叠。

단자씰의 부착

3. TEL 단자주위를 알코올청소하고 단자씰 (C) 을 부착합니다 .
OPT2 에 부착한 FAX 기판의 TEL 단자는 사용불가 (무효) 가 됩니다 . 사용자가 잘못해 외부 전화를 연결하지 않도록 확실히 부착할 것 .

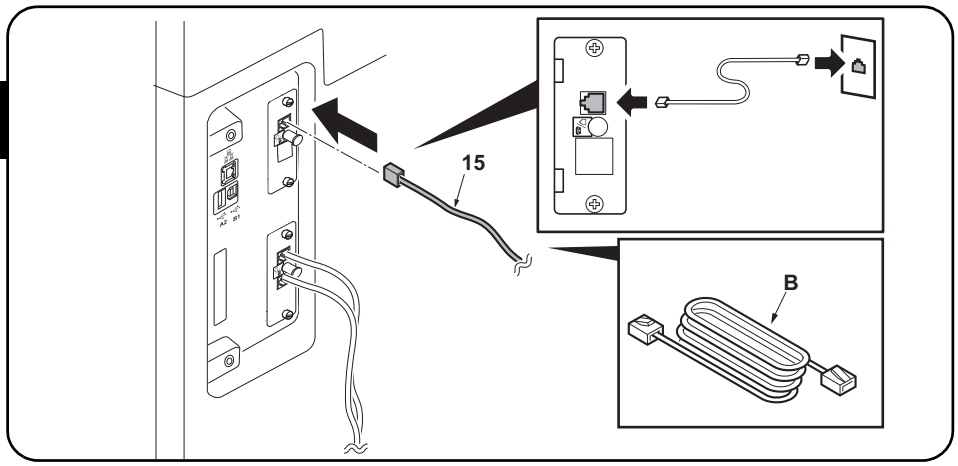
120V 사양은 허가 라벨 (9) 에 겹치지 않도록 붙일 것 .

端子シールの貼り付け

3. TEL 端子周囲をアルコール清掃し、端子シール (C) を貼り付ける。
OPT2 に取り付けた FAX 基板の TEL 端子は使用不可(無効)となる。ユーザーが誤って外付け電話を接続しないよう確実に貼り付けること。

120V 仕様は認可ラベル(9)に重ならないように、貼り付けること。

B



Connect the MFP to the telephone line.

4. Plug the modular connector cable (15) into the line terminal, and then connect the other end to the telephone line.
For 100 V/120 V/Australian or Chinese models, use the supplied modular connector cable (B).

Connecter le MFP à la ligne de téléphone.

4. Brancher le câble du connecteur modulaire (15) à la borne de la ligne, puis connecter l'autre extrémité à la ligne de téléphone.
Pour les modèles 100 V/120 V/Australie ou Chine, utilisez le câble à connecteur modulaire (B) fourni.

Conecte el MFP a la línea telefónica.

4. Enchufe el cable del conector modular (15) en el terminal de línea y, a continuación, conecte el otro extremo a la línea telefónica.
Para los modelos de 100 V/120 V/Australiano o Chino, utilice el cable conector modular (B) suministrado.

Anschließen des MFP an die Telefonleitung.

4. Telefonmodulkabel (15) in die Gerätebuchse einstecken und das Kabel an der Telefondose anschließen.
Das mitgelieferte Modularsteckerkabel (B) für die 100-V/120-V/Australien- oder China-Modelle verwenden.

Collegamento dell'MFP alla linea del telefono.

4. Inserire il cavo connettore modulare (15) nel terminale della linea, e quindi collegare l'altro terminale alla linea del telefono.
Per modelli da 100 V/120 V/Australia o Cina, utilizzare il cavo connettore modulare (B) in dotazione.

将 MFP 连接到电话线

4. 将模块接插件电缆 (15) 插入电话线端子，然后将另一端与电话线连接。
对于 100V/120V/ 澳大利亚或中国机型，请使用随附的模块接插件电缆 (B)。

전화회선과의 연결

4. 모듈러 코드 (15) 를 라인단자에 꽂습니다 . 다른 한 쪽의 플러그는 전화회선과 연결합니다 .
100V/120V/ 오스트레일리아 / 중국사양은 부속 모듈러 코드 (B) 를 사용할 것 .

電話回線との接続

4. モジュラーコード (15) をライン端子に差し込む。もう片方のプラグは、電話回線へ接続する。
100V/120V/ オーストラリア / 中国仕様は付属のモジュラーコード (B) を使用すること。

(Initialize the FAX circuit board.

1. Plug the MFP into a power outlet, and turn on the main power.

2. If the FAX PWBs were installed simultaneously to OPT1 and OPT2 (all Fax PWBs are initialized), perform the maintenance mode U600 to initialize the FAX PWBs.

3. If the FAX circuit board has been added to OPT2 (to initialize the FAX circuit board in OPT2)
Initialize OPT2 by pressing [PORT2], and the Start key in this order in the maintenance mode U698 and executing the maintenance mode U600. If [ALL] is selected in U698, both OPT1 and OPT2 are initialized. For details, see the service manual.

Initialiser la carte à circuits FAX.

1. Brancher le MFP sur une prise d'alimentation et le mettre sous tension.

2. Si les cartes de circuit imprimé du fax ont été installées en même temps que OPT1 et OPT2 (toutes les cartes de circuit imprimé du fax sont initialisées), exécuter le mode maintenance U600 pour initialiser les cartes de circuit imprimé du fax.

3. Si la carte à circuits FAX a été ajoutée à l'OPT2 (pour initialiser la carte à circuits FAX dans l'OPT2)
Initialiser l'OPT2 en appuyant sur [PORT2] et la touche Départ dans cet ordre en mode de maintenance U698, et exécuter le mode de maintenance U600. Si [ALL] est sélectionné dans U698, l'OPT1 et l'OPT2 sont tous deux initialisés. Pour plus de détails, se reporter au manuel d'entretien.

Inicialice la tarjeta de circuitos FAX.

1. Conecte el MFP a un receptáculo de pared y encienda el interruptor principal.

2. Si se instalaron FAX PWB simultáneamente a OPT1 y OPT2 (se inicializan todos los FAX PWB), ejecute el modo de mantenimiento U600 para inicializar los FAX PWB.

3. Si la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX se agregó a OPT2 (para inicializar la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX en OPT2)
Inicialice el OPT2 presionando [PORT2] y la tecla de Inicio en ese orden en el modo de mantenimiento U698 y ejecutando el modo de mantenimiento U600. Si se selecciona [ALL] en U698, se inicializan ambos OPT1 y OPT2. Para más detalles, lea el manual de servicio.

Initialisieren der FAX-Leiterplatte.

1. Netzstecker des MFP in eine Steckdose stecken und Hauptschalter einschalten.

2. Falls die FAX-Karten gleichzeitig in OPT1 und OPT2 installiert werden (alle FAX-Karten werden initialisiert), führen Sie den Wartungsmodus U600 aus, um die FAX-Karten zu initialisieren.

3. Wenn die FAX-Leiterplatte zu OPT2 hinzugefügt worden ist (um die FAX-Leiterplatte in OPT2 zu in7itialisieren)
OPT2 initialisieren. Dazu [PORT2] und die Start-Taste im Wartungsmodus U698 in dieser Reihenfolge drücken und den Wartungsmodus U600 ausführen. Wenn [ALL] in U698 gewählt wird, werden OPT1 und OPT2 initialisiert. Weitere Einzelheiten siehe Wartungsanleitung.

Inizializzare la scheda a circuiti FAX.

1. Collegare l'MFP ad una presa di corrente e portare l'interruttore principale su On.

2. Se sono state installate simultaneamente le schede FAX PWB su OPT1 e OPT2 (tutte le schede FAX PWB sono inizializzate), eseguire il modo manutenzione U600 per inizializzare le schede FAX PWB.

3. Se la scheda a circuiti è stata aggiunta all'OPT2 (per inzializzare la scheda a circuiti FAX nell'OPT2)
Inizializzare OPT2 premendo [PORT2] e il tasto Avvio in questo ordine nel modo di manutenzione U698 ed eseguendo il modo di manutenzione U600. Se viene selezionato [ALL] nel modo U698, entrambi OPT1 e OPT2 sono inizializzati. Per ulteriori dettagli leggere il manuale d'istruzioni.

传真电话板的初始化

1. 将 MFP 的电源插头插入电源插座，打开主电源。
2. 当把传真电路板同时安装到 OPT1 和 OPT2 时（全部的传真电路板初始化），执行维修保养模式 U600，初始化传真电路板。

3. 在 OPT2 上增设时
（OPT2 的传真电路板初始化）
只进行 OPT2 初始化时，在维修保养模式 U698 状态下，按顺序按下“PORT2”、开始键，执行维修保养模式 U600。
在 U698 状态下设定 “ALL” 时，会使 OPT1 和 OPT2 均初始化。
有关详信息，请参见维修手册。

FAX 회로기판의 초기화

1. MFP 본체 전원플러그를 콘센트에 꼽고 주 전원 스위치를 ON 으로 한다 .
2. OPT1 과 OPT2 에 FAX 회로기판을 동시에 설치한 경우 (모든 FAX 회로기판이 초기화됨), 메인터넌스 모드 U600 을 수행하여 FAX 회로기판을 초기화합니다 .

3. OPT2 에 증설한 경우 (OPT2 의 FAX 기판을 초기화)
메인터넌스모드 U698 에서「PORT2」, 시작키 순으로 누릅니다 . 메인터넌스 모드 U600 을 실행하고 FAX 회로기판을 초기화합니다 .
U698 에서「ALL」을 설정하면 OPT1 과 OPT2 양쪽을 초기화하기 때문에 주의할 것 .
상세는 서비스 매뉴얼을 참조할 것 .

FAX 基板の初期化

1. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、主電源スイッチを ON にする。
2. OPT1 と OPT2 に FAX 基板を同時に設置した場合（すべての FAX 基板を初期化）メンテナンスモード U600 を実行し、FAX 基板を初期化する。

3. OPT2 に増設した場合（OPT2 の FAX 基板を初期化）
メンテナンスモード U698 で「PORT2」、スタートキーの順に押す。メンテナンスモード U600 を実行し、FAX 基板を初期化する。
U698 で「ALL」を設定すると OPT1 と OPT2 両方を初期化するので注意すること。詳細はサービスマニュアルを参照のこと。

2015.11
303N656732-01

INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR BANNER GUIDE

INSTALLATION GUIDE

GUIDE D'INSTALLATION

GUÍA DE INSTALACION

INSTALLATIONSANLEITUNG

GUIDA ALL'INSTALLAZIONE

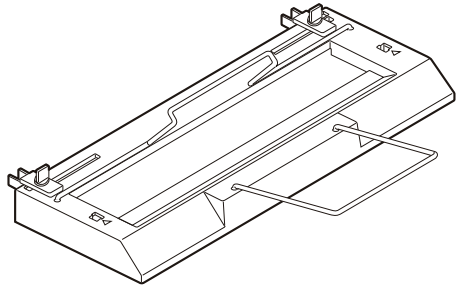
安装手册

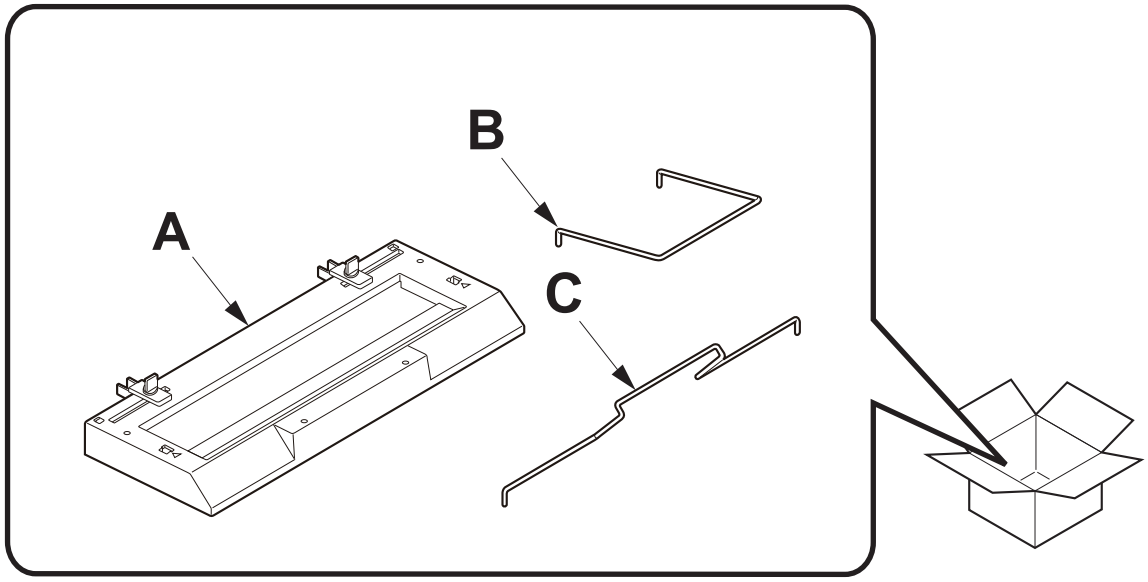
설치안내서

設置手順書

302K95672001

Banner Guide(A)





(ENG) Precautions
The illustrations of the machine in the Installation Guide are for color MFP. (30,35,45,55ppm)

(FR) Précautions
L'appareil représenté dans les illustrations du présent guide d'installation est le MFP couleur. (30,35,45,55ppm)

(ES) Precauciones
Las ilustraciones de la máquina que aparecen en la Guía de instalación corresponden a una MFP en color. (30,35,45,55ppm)

(DE) Vorsichtsmaßnahmen
Die Abbildungen der Maschine in der Installationsanleitung gelten für den Farb-MFP. (30,35,45,55ppm)

(IT) Precauzioni
Le illustrazioni della macchina nella guida di installazione sono per colore MFP. (30,35,45,55ppm)

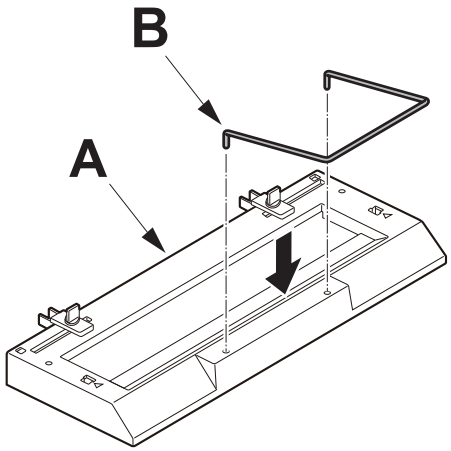
(CN) 注意事项
安装手册中记载的机器主机的插图是彩色机。(30, 35, 45, 55 页机型)

(KO) 주의사항
설치순서에 기재되어 있는 기기본체 일러스트는 컬러기 입니다 . (30,35,45,55매기)

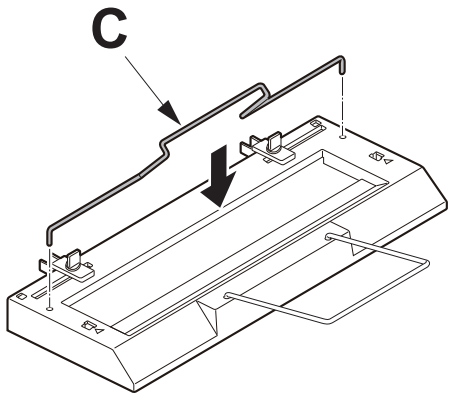
(JP) 注意事項
設置手順書に記載している機械本体のイラストはカラー機 (30, 35, 45, 55枚機) です。

2011.12
302K956720-01

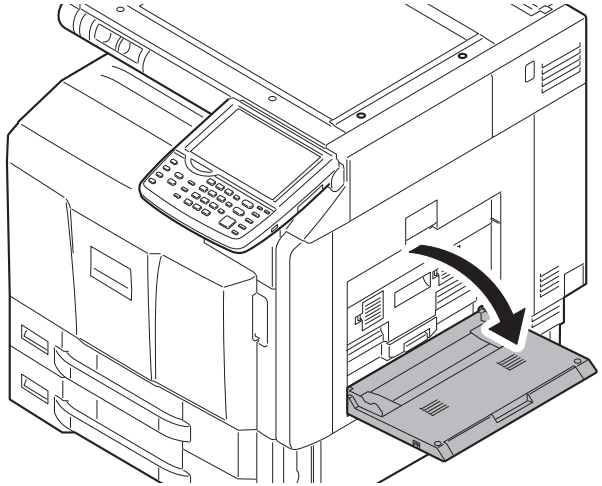
1



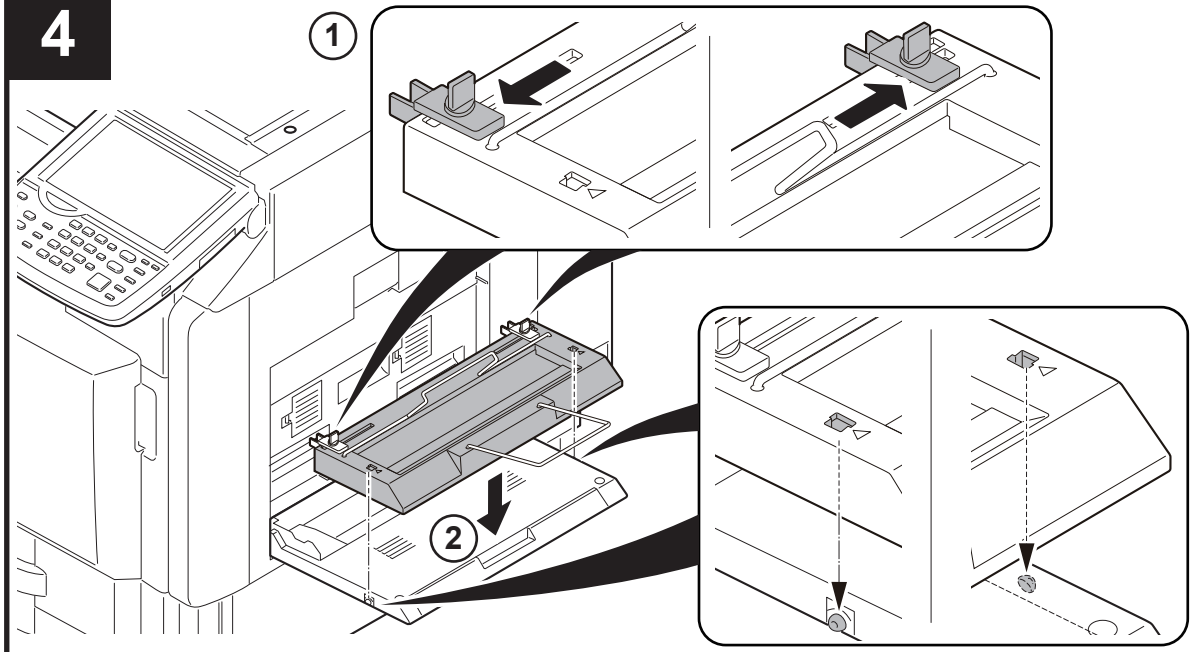
2



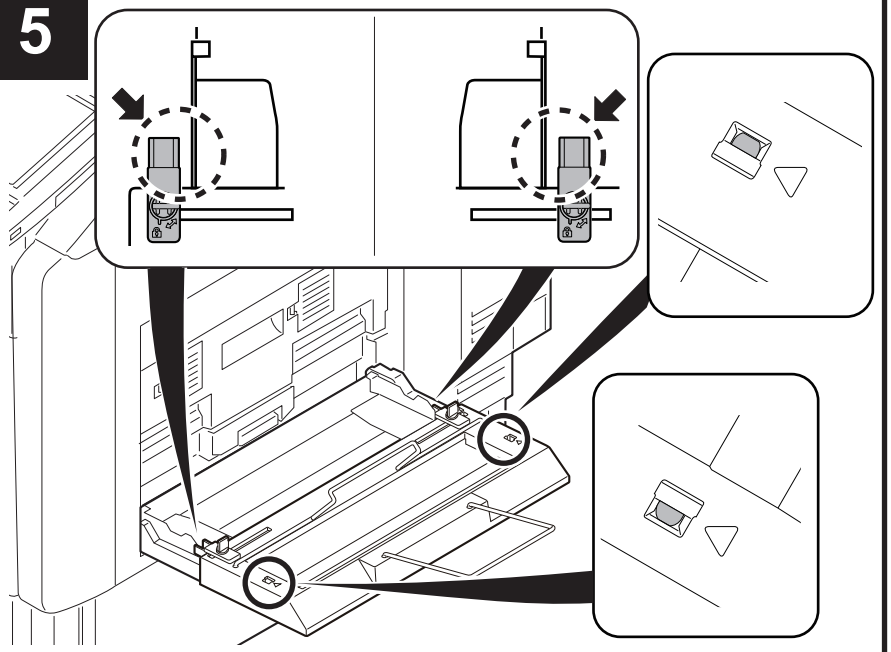
3



4



5



2011.12
302K956720-01

KYOCERA Document Solutions America, Inc.
Headquarters
225 Sand Road,
Fairfield, New Jersey 07004-0008, USA
Phone: +1-973-808-8444
Fax: +1-973-882-6000

Latin America
8240 NW 52nd Terrace Dawson Building, Suite 100
Miami, Florida 33166, USA
Phone: +1-305-421-6640
Fax: +1-305-421-6666

KYOCERA Document Solutions Canada, Ltd.
6120 Kestrel Rd., Mississauga, ON L5T 1S8,
Canada
Phone: +1-905-670-4425
Fax: +1-905-670-8116

KYOCERA Document Solutions
Mexico, S.A. de C.V.
Calle Arquimedes No. 130, 4 Piso, Colonia Polanco
Chapultepec, Delegacion Miguel Hidalgo,
Distrito Federal, C.P. 11560, México
Phone: +52-555-383-2741
Fax: +52-555-383-7804

KYOCERA Document Solutions Brazil, Ltda.
Alameda África, 545, Pólo Empresarial Consbrás,
Tamboré, Santana de Parnaíba, State of São Paulo, CEP
06543-306, Brazil
Phone: +55-11-2424-5353
Fax: +55-11-2424-5304

KYOCERA Document Solutions Chile SpA
Jose Ananias 505, Macul. Santiago, Chile
Phone: +562-2350-7000
Fax: +562-2350-7150

KYOCERA Document Solutions
Australia Pty. Ltd.
Level 3, 6-10 Talavera Road North Ryde N.S.W, 2113,
Australia
Phone: +61-2-9888-9999
Fax: +61-2-9888-9588

KYOCERA Document Solutions
New Zealand Ltd.
Ground Floor, 19 Byron Avenue, Takapuna, Auckland,
New Zealand
Phone: +64-9-415-4517
Fax: +64-9-415-4597

KYOCERA Document Solutions Asia Limited
Unit 3 & 5, 16/F.,Mita Centre, 552-566, Castle Peak Road
Ts*u*en Wan, New Territories, Hong Kong
Phone: +852-2496-5678
Fax: +852-2610-2063

KYOCERA Document Solutions
(China) Corporation
8F, No. 288 Nanjing Road West, Huangpu District,
Shanghai,200003, China
Phone: +86-21-5301-1777
Fax: +86-21-5302-8300

KYOCERA Document Solutions
(Thailand) Corp., Ltd.
335 Ratchadapisek Road, Wongsawang, Bangsue,
Bangkok 10800,
Thailand
Phone: +66-2-586-0333
Fax: +66-2-586-0278

KYOCERA Document Solutions
Singapore Pte. Ltd.
12 Tai Seng Street #04-01A,
Luxasia Building, Singapore 534118
Phone: +65-6741-8733
Fax: +65-6748-3788

KYOCERA Document Solutions
Hong Kong Limited
Unit 1,2,4,6,8 & 10, 16/F.,Mita Centre, 552-566, Castle
Peak Road Tsuen Wan, New Territories, Hong Kong
Phone: +852-3582-4000
Fax: +852-3185-1399

KYOCERA Document Solutions
Taiwan Corporation
6F., No.37, Sec. 3, Minquan E. Rd.,
Zhongshan Dist., Taipei 104, Taiwan R.O.C.
Phone: +886-2-2507-6709
Fax: +886-2-2507-8432

KYOCERA Document Solutions Korea Co., Ltd.
#3F Daewoo Foundation Bldg 18, Toegye-ro, Jung-gu,
Seoul, Korea
Phone: +822-6933-4050
Fax: +822-747-0084

KYOCERA Document Solutions
India Private Limited
Second Floor, Centrum Plaza, Golf Course Road,
Sector-53, Gurgaon, Haryana 122002, India
Phone: +91-0124-4671000
Fax: +91-0124-4671001

KYOCERA Document Solutions Europe B.V.
Bloemlaan 4, 2132 NP Hoofddorp,
The Netherlands
Phone: +31-20-654-0000
Fax: +31-20-653-1256

KYOCERA Document Solutions Nederland B.V.
Beechavenue 25, 1119 RA Schiphol-Rijk,
The Netherlands
Phone: +31-20-5877200
Fax: +31-20-5877260

KYOCERA Document Solutions (U.K.) Limited
Eldon Court, 75-77 London Road,
Reading, Berkshire RG1 5BS,
United Kingdom
Phone: +44-118-931-1500
Fax: +44-118-931-1108

KYOCERA Document Solutions Italia S.p.A.
Via Monfalcone 15, 20132, Milano, Italy,
Phone: +39-02-921791
Fax: +39-02-92179-600

KYOCERA Document Solutions Belgium N.V.
Sint-Martinusweg 199-201 1930 Zaventem,
Belgium
Phone: +32-2-7209270
Fax: +32-2-7208748

KYOCERA Document Solutions France S.A.S.
Espace Technologique de St Aubin
Route de l'Orme 91195 Gif-sur-Yvette CEDEX,
France
Phone: +33-1-69852600
Fax: +33-1-69853409

KYOCERA Document Solutions Espana, S.A.
Edificio Kyocera, Avda. de Manacor No.2,
28290 Las Matas (Madrid), Spain
Phone: +34-91-6318392
Fax: +34-91-6318219

KYOCERA Document Solutions Finland Oy
Atomitie 5C, 00370 Helsinki,
Finland
Phone: +358-9-47805200
Fax: +358-9-47805390

KYOCERA Document Solutions Europe B.V., Amsterdam (NL) Zürich Branch
Hohlstrasse 614, 8048 Zürich,
Switzerland
Phone: +41-44-9084949
Fax: +41-44-9084950

KYOCERA Bilgitas Document Solutions Turkey A.S.
Gülbahar Mahallesi Otello Kamil Sk. No:6 Mecidiyeköy
34394 Şişli İstanbul, Turkey
Phone: +90-212-356-7000
Fax: +90-212-356-6725

KYOCERA Document Solutions Deutschland GmbH
Otto-Hahn-Strasse 12, 40670 Meerbusch,
Germany
Phone: +49-2159-9180
Fax: +49-2159-918100

KYOCERA Document Solutions Austria GmbH
Altmannsdorferstraße 91, Stiege 1, 2. OG, Top 1, 1120,
Wien, Austria
Phone: +43-1-863380
Fax: +43-1-86338-400

KYOCERA Document Solutions Nordic AB
Esbogatan 16B 164 75 Kista, Sweden
Phone: +46-8-546-550-00
Fax: +46-8-546-550-10

KYOCERA Document Solutions Norge Nuf
Olaf Helsetsv. 6, 0619 Oslo, Norway
Phone: +47-22-62-73-00
Fax: +47-22-62-72-00

KYOCERA Document Solutions Danmark A/S
Ejby Industrivej 60, DK-2600 Glostrup,
Denmark
Phone: +45-70223880
Fax: +45-45765850

KYOCERA Document Solutions Portugal Lda.
Rua do Centro Cultural, 41 (Alvalade) 1700-106 Lisboa,
Portugal
Phone: +351-21-843-6780
Fax: +351-21-849-3312

KYOCERA Document Solutions South Africa (Pty) Ltd.
KYOCERA House, Hertford Office Park,
90 Bekker Road (Cnr. Allandale), Midrand, South Africa
Phone: +27-11-540-2600
Fax: +27-11-466-3050

KYOCERA Document Solutions Russia LLC.
Building 2, 51/4, Schepkina St., 129110, Moscow,
Russia
Phone: +7(495)741-0004
Fax: +7(495)741-0018

KYOCERA Document Solutions Middle East
Dubai Internet City, Bldg. 17,
Office 157 P.O. Box 500817, Dubai,
United Arab Emirates
Phone: +971-04-433-0412

KYOCERA Document Solutions Inc.
2-28, 1-chome, Tamatsukuri, Chuo-ku
Osaka 540-8585, Japan
Phone: +81-6-6764-3555
http://www.kyoceradocumentsolutions.com